Neutral Citation Number: [2022] EWHC 1178 (Ch)

Case No: HC-2015-001324

IN THE HIGH COURT OF JUSTICE
BUSINESS AND PROPERTY COURTS OF ENGLAND AND WALES
BUSINESS LIST (ChD)

Rolls Building,
7 Rolls Buildings,
Fetter Lane, London
EC4A 1NL

Date: 17 May 2022

Before:

THE HONOURABLE MR JUSTICE HILDYARD

- -

Between:

(1) ACL NETHERLANDS B.V. (AS SUCCESSOR TO AUTONOMY CORPORATION LIMITED)	**Claimants**
(2) HEWLETT-PACKARD THE HAGUE BV (AS SUCCESSOR TO HEWLETT-PACKARD VISION BV)	
(3) AUTONOMY SYSTEMS LIMITED	
(4) HEWLETT-PACKARD ENTERPRISE NEW JERSEY, INC	
- and –	
(1) MICHAEL RICHARD LYNCH **(2) SUSHOVAN TAREQUE HUSSAIN**	**Defendants**

- -
- -

MR LAURENCE RABINOWITZ QC & MR PATRICK GOODALL QC, CONALL PATTON, EMMA JONES, MAX SCHAEFER, JAMES FOX & BEN ZELENKA MARTIN (instructed by **Travers Smith LLP)** for the **Claimants**

MR ROBERT MILES QC, MR RICHARD HILL QC, SHARIF SHIVJI, TOM GENTLEMAN, LARA HASSELL-HART, ZARA MCGLONE & KARL ANDERSON (instructed by **Clifford Chance LLP**) for the **First Defendant**

MR PAUL CASEY (instructed by **Simmons & Simmons LLP**) for the **Second Defendant**

Hearing dates: 25 March 2019 - 15 January 2020, 25 February 2021

- -

APPROVED JUDGMENT

Covid-19 Protocol: This judgment was handed down by the judge remotely by circulation to the parties' representatives by email and release to the National Archives. The date and time for hand-down is deemed to be 12 pm Tuesday 17 May 2022.

PART A CONTENTS

Headings	*Paragraphs*
INTRODUCTION	1-7
The Parties	8-14
High-level synopsis of the case and defences	15-25
Some preliminary points	26-31
Structure of this judgment	32-33
Overview of the two principal entities	34
Autonomy	35-39
Autonomy's signature product: IDOL	40-47
Autonomy: structure and organisation	48
Board of Directors	49-50
Audit Committee	51-54
Management team	55-57
Autonomy Inc management team	58-59
Sales teams and sales process	60-66
Autonomy's finance department	67-71
Autonomy's Auditors: Deloitte	72-78
Work undertaken by Deloitte and engagement with finance department	79-85
External lawyers	86
Dr Lynch's role	87-105
Autonomy's Reporting	106
Annual and quarterly reports: Deloitte's review work	107
Deloitte's review of annual reports	108-113
(i)Deloitte's review of quarterly reports	114-117
(ii)Deloitte's review of revenue	118-119
(iii) Press releases and earnings calls	120-123
(iv) The relevance of Deloitte's review and approval	124-125
Revenue Reporting	
IFRS 8: Single operating segment	126-131
Was Autonomy being prepared and offered for sale?	132-137
HP	138-152
Identification of Autonomy as a target	153-157
Individuals principally involved	158-178
The development of interest culminating in a bid	179-183
HP's outlook and objectives	184-187
Development of Deal Models and valuations	188-191
HP's fear of a rival bidder and a takeover battle	192-194

Progression of the deal towards an offer	195-203
Consideration of potential offer by HP's board and their financial advisers	204-221
Negotiation of the price	222
July 2011 negotiation	223-233
HP's Due Diligence and KPMG	
Summary	234-240
Due diligence timetable	241-244
HP's approach to due diligence	245-249
Due diligence calls	250-252
Technical due diligence	253
Top 40 customer contracts	254-258
Discussions between KPMG and Deloitte	259-264
Due diligence findings	265-278
Price negotiations in August	279-287
Incorporation of Bidco	288-291
HP's final approval: boardroom spats and second thoughts	292-299
18 August meeting	300-303
The announcement of the bid and HP's loss of nerve	304-311
The Joe Bloggs emails	312-313
The ousting of Mr Apotheker	314-321
Immediate aftermath of the Acquisition	322-328
The need for, but difficulties of, integration	329-337
Autonomy misses its targets	338-357
The resignation of Mr Hussain and dismissal of Dr Lynch	358-366
Mr Joel Scott's whistleblowing	367-369
The Rebasing Exercise	370-379
August 2012 – the decision at that time not to impair the carrying value of Autonomy	380-383
November 2012: Announcement of Impairment	384-402
The revaluation and its announcement	403-414
After the announcement of impairment and the public assertion of fraud	415-422
Backdrop to these proceedings and the effect of the US criminal proceedings	423-431
LEGAL ISSUES AND TESTS OF LIABILITY UNDER FSMA	
(a) Overview and background to the provisions of FSMA	432-445
(b) Conditions for liability under s.90A and Sch 10A FSMA	446-448
(c) Published information	449-459
(d) Untrue or misleading statement or omission	460-466
(e) Guilty knowledge	467-477
(f) Reliance	478-480

Reliance by whom?	481-483
The 'Bidco Point'	484-500
Reliance on what?	501-506
What degree of reliance?	507-516
When is reliance reasonable?	517-523
(g) Loss in the context of FSMA claims	524-539
Knowledge of the Defendants	540-544
Claims in deceit and under the Misrepresentation Act 1967	545
Claims in deceit	546
Representation made to a claimant by a defendant	547-548
Defendant's state of mind	549-552
Reliance / inducement	553-557
Loss	558-569
Misrepresentation Act claims	570-575
Direct claims for breach of duty	576-583
Interpretation of accounting standards and statements of practice	584-591
Key accounting issues	592-606
Issues of nomenclature	607-610
Structure of the judgment	611-612
HARDWARE CLAIMS	
The Claimants' 'Hardware Case' in outline	613-628
Defendants' case in summary and matters primarily in dispute in the FSMA Claim	629-637
The Principal Issues	638-647
Issues of terminology	648-659
Issue (1): what was the Defendants' purpose in causing Autonomy to resell "pure hardware"?	660-661
Three notable features	662
A pleading issue: Is it open to the Claimants to impugn the sales on the basis that 'revenue pumping' was the predominant, even if not the only purpose of them?	663-675
An issue as to the evidence given by Mr Egan and Mr Sullivan in the US criminal trial	676-684
The relationship between purpose and concealment	685-688
Structure of this chapter	689-695
(A) The first hardware sales and the origins of the hardware reselling strategy	696-715
(B) The Defendants' case as to the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy	716
(1) Dr Lynch's evidence as to the rationale of the hardware reselling strategy	717-735
(2) Witness evidence which the Defendants contend supports their case	736-737
Mr Sullivan	738-749
Mr Egan	750-768

Dr Lynch	769-772
(3) Autonomy's relationship with EMC and the dispute as to why it abruptly ended	773-774
Contractual arrangements between Autonomy and EMC	775-781
Apparent success of the trading relationship with EMC	782-783
EMC decide not to proceed with the programme	784-788
(5) Autonomy's relationships with Dell and Hitachi	789-796
(5) The Defendants' further evidence as to the use and success of the programme	797-822
(6) The Defendants' case that the strategy was not secret nor the revenue disguised	823-824
Discussion within Autonomy itself	825-833
Disclosure to and review by Deloitte and the Audit Committee	834-848
(7) Defendants' support of and belief in the purpose asserted and its accounting treatment	849-887
Summary of the Defendants' Hardware case	888
(C) Elaboration of Claimants' case as to the real purpose of the hardware reselling strategy	889-893
(1) No documentary evidence of threats to Autonomy's software business	894-899
(2) Expansion of and dependence on the programme with EMC in Q3 2009	900-905
(3) Emails showing strategy's purpose and use as flexible source of revenue	906-911
(4) Use of hardware sales as a flexible source to 'plug' shortfalls in software sales	912-916
Efforts to mitigate the effect and visibility of loss-making hardware sales	917-923
Developing use of hardware revenues	924-927
Importance of hardware sales revenues relative to total revenues in Q3 2009	928-929
(5) EMC's withdrawal from the programme and its replacement by Dell in Q4 2009	930-938
The terms of the Value Added Reseller Agreement between Dell and Autonomy	939-948
(6) What a chronological summary of the hardware reselling programme with Dell by reference to the documentary evidence reveals	949-950
Chronology of Autonomy's relationship with Dell from Q1 2010 to Q2 2011	
Q1 2010	951-967
Q1 2010 – alleged post-quarter end manipulation of the hardware revenues recognised	968-989
Q1 2010 – the inventory	990-994
My assessment re Q1 2010	995
Q2 2010	996-1021
Q2 2010 – alleged post-quarter end manipulation of the hardware revenues recognised	1022-1029
Deloitte Report to the Audit Committee on the Q2 2010 Review	1030-1032
My assessment of Q2 2010	1033
Linkage Analysis	1034-1037

Q3 2010	1038-1045
Q4 2010	1046-1061
Q1 2011	1062-1073
Q1 2011 and alleged revenue deferral	1074-1095
Defendants' involvement/knowledge	1096-1100
Q2 2011	1101-1111
Q3 2011	1112-1117
(7) Incentivisation of Mr Sullivan purely by reference to hardware sales revenue	1118-1133
(8) No documentary evidence that discounted resales of hardware were used as a bargaining chip	1134-1140
(9) Three illustrative transactions where marketing was no part of the purpose	1141-1142
BofA	1143-1155
Citibank	1156-1158
Zones Inc	1159-1182
(10) The consistent pattern of concealing the hardware sales	1183-1186
Annual Reports: overview	1187-1198
Q3 2009 Quarterly Report	1199-1203
Q4 2009 Quarterly Report	1204
Q1 2010 Quarterly Report	1205-1211
Q2 2010 Quarterly Report	1212-1215
Q3 2010 Quarterly Report, Earnings Call and Investor Bulletin	1216-1227
Q4 2010 Quarterly Report, Earnings Call and Investor Relations Bulletin	1228-1232
Q4 2010 Earnings Call	1233
Q4 2010 Investor Relations Bulletin	1234-1248
Q1 2011 Quarterly Report	1249-1251
Q2 2011 Quarterly/Half yearly Report and Earnings Call	1252-1255
Summary of the Claimants' case as to the disclosure made in Quarterly Reports	1256-1261
Is the Defendants' avowed reliance on Deloitte a "trump card"?	1262-1270
The development of the narrative presented to Deloitte and the Audit Committee	1271
Efforts to obtain "a helpful form of words" from EMC to "wave in front of Deloitte"	1272-1289
Development of the Strategic Deals Memorandum	1290-1311
Mr Knights' own involvement in drafting the Strategic Deals Memorandum	1312-1325
Did the Strategic Deals Memorandum spin a false narrative?	1326-1340
Dr Lynch's knowledge of falsity of the Strategic Deals Memorandum	1341-1348
Assessment of the effect of Strategic Deals Memorandum	1349-1359
The issue of disclosure in Q3 2009	1360-1364
Quarterly Notes prepared by Mr Hussain/Mr Chamberlain	1365-1373

How the hardware reselling strategy was presented in the Quarterly Notes	1374-1375
Mr Hussain's Q3 2009 Quarterly Note	1376-1385
Deloitte's Q3 2009 Review	1386-1392
How Dr Lynch dealt with the Audit Committee's questions about disclosure (Q3 2009)	1393-1403
Mr Hussain's Q4 2009 Quarterly Note	1404-1411
Mr Hussain's Q1 2010 Quarterly Note	1412-1419
Mr Hussain's Q2 2010 Note	1420-1441
Mr Hussain's Q3 2010 Note	1442-1454
Mr Hussain's Q4 2010 Note	1455-1462
Mr Hussain's Q1 2011 Note	1463-1467
Mr Hussain's Q2 2011 Note	1468-1474
Conclusions in respect of Mr Hussain's Quarterly Notes	1475-1476
Linkage Analysis	1477-1496
Other examples showing the determination to avoid disclosure to the market	1497
Q&A scripts	1498-1519
Representations to disguise the hardware reselling strategy made in Earnings Calls	1520-1521
Q3 2009 Earnings Call	1522-1555
Summary	1556-1572
Q1 2010 Earnings Call	1573-1588
Q2 2010 Earnings Call	1589-1592
Conclusion on Hardware Sales Issue 1	1593-1597
Issue 2: Was Autonomy's published information untrue or misleading by reason of the hardware sales, and did the Defendants appreciate this?	1598-1600
The Claimants' alternative case	1601
Statements made in Autonomy's published information	1602-1603
The relevance of what the Defendants intended the representations to mean	1604-1608
The representation that Autonomy was a 'pure software company'	1609-1632
That the disclosed revenue categories comprised all sources of Autonomy's revenue	1633-1640
The representation that transactions in 2009 were the same in nature as those in 2008	1641-1643
Falsity of inclusion of hardware sales in "Organic Growth"	1644-1659
Overall conclusion on the claims in respect of statements made in the accounts	1660-1663
Did the Annual Reports/ Autonomy's published information omit information about hardware sales which was required to be disclosed?	1664-1669
Did Autonomy's published information omit a material fact required to be disclosed?	1670-1671
IAS 18.35	1672-1690
IAS 1	1691

IAS 1.1	1692
IAS 1.15	1693-1694
IAS 1.17	1695-1699
IAS 1.29	1700-1710
IFRS 8	1711-1714
IFRS 8.1	1715-1716
IFRS 8.32	1717-1728
Materiality	1729
My assessment	1730-1739
Did the Defendants determine dishonestly to conceal matters they knew to be material?	1740-1743
Conclusion	1744-1756
Issue (3): Did Autonomy's treatment of the costs of the hardware render Autonomy's published information untrue or misleading and did the Defendants appreciate this?	1757-1767
Issue (4): Should Autonomy, at the least, have made clear in its published information what its accounting policy was with respect to hardware costs?	1768-1776
Issue (5): Did Autonomy wrongly recognise revenue in Q2 2009 on a specific ($6 million) hardware transaction with Morgan Stanley?	1777-1798
Issue (6): Did HP know about the hardware sales pre-acquisition and continue them after it?	1799-1801
Pre-acquisition knowledge and due diligence	1802-1813
Post-acquisition knowledge and discussion of hardware	1814-1844
My assessment	1845-1852
Conclusion as to when HP became aware of "pure hardware sales"	1853-1854
CLAIMANTS' 'VAR CASE': THE 37 IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS	
Overview of the parties' respective cases on Autonomy's VAR sales	
The Claimants' case	1855-1867
Overview of the Defendants' case	1868-1879
Number and value, and the two categories, of impugned VAR sales	1880-1886
Reciprocal VARs	1887-1889
The Claimants' legal causes of action in respect of the impugned VAR transactions	1890-1891
The two hurdles for the Claimants in their FSMA claims in respect of impugned VAR sales	1892-1899
Structure of more detailed analysis of the claims based on false accounting	1900
(1) Usual provisions of VAR sales contracts	1901-1904
(2) Terms and interpretation of IAS 18	1905
Terms of IAS 18	1906-1910
Dispute as to interpretation of the Accounting Standards	1911-1925
(3) Expert evidence as to accountancy practice in applying IAS 18	1926-1929
Mr Holgates' approach on VARs in his reports	1930-1942

Mr MacGregor's approach on VARs in his reports	1943-1955
(4) Factual analysis	1956-1960
The Claimants' case that in reality the VARs were never at risk and Autonomy retained managerial control	1961-1962
The counterparties to the impugned VAR sales	1963-1964
Summary of the Claimant's overall approach in presenting the factual evidence	1965-1966
"Direct evidence" of the alleged side agreements or understandings	1967
"Direct evidence": the relevant witnesses	1968-1972
Overview of the witness evidence put forward by the Claimants	1973-1975
Overview of Mr Egan's evidence as to what he told the VARs in every impugned VAR transaction	1976-1998
Overview of Mr David Truitt's evidence as to MicroLink's role in impugned VAR deals	1999-2004
Overview of Mr Baiocco's evidence as to Capax Discovery's role in impugned VAR deals	2005-2019
The Goldberg Segalla letter	2020-2029
Evidence in relation to FileTek's single impugned VAR transaction	2030-2035
Overview of Mr Steve Truitt's evidence on the impugned MicroTech VAR transactions	2036-2048
Mr David Truitt's evidence on the impugned DiscoverTech VAR transactions	2049-2055
Dispute as to the effect of any assurances given	2056-2060
Assessment of the effect of the direct/witness evidence	2061-2066
(5) The alleged "pattern" and the Defendants' response it reveals "neutral features"	2067-2071
Was there demonstrated to be a pattern showing that VARs did not, and were not intended to, negotiate or effect an end-user sale?	2072-2087
The Defendants' position as regards the alleged 'pattern'	2088-2091
Quarter-end timing	2092
Recourse to a VAR simply to recognise revenue if the end-user deal was delayed	2093-2094
No assessment of status or prospects of end-user deal by VAR	2095-2096
No price negotiation for VAR sale	2097-2098
VAR sale but no added value	2099-2104
Autonomy's involvement with the end-user after the VAR sale	2105-2109
Sales to VARs of hosted products	2110-2111
Transactions going direct	2112-2116
VARs as 'designated payees' in respect of direct deal between Autonomy and end-user	2117-2125
Write-offs	2126-2127
Not suing debtors	2128
Reseller unwillingness to pay	2129-2131
MAFs	2132-2148

Summary of Defendants' position	2149-2153
My conclusion as to whether a pattern emerges and what is revealed	2154-2164
Relevance of Deloitte's approval of revenue recognition	2165-2167
(6) The Defendants' knowledge of improper accounting	2168-2169
Mr Hussain's knowledge	2170-2182
Dr Lynch's knowledge	2183-2227
Summary of my conclusions on the VAR case	2228-2231
The 'Hogenson episode'	2232-2289
The FSA and FRRP correspondence	2290-2292
Mr Hogenson's concerns about Autonomy's accounting treatment of VAR sales	2293-2319
Defendants' knowledge but alleged reliance on Deloitte	2320-2334
Summary in respect of the letters to the FRRP	2335-2336

MR JUSTICE HILDYARD :

INTRODUCTION

1. Fraud on a grand scale; or relentless witch-hunt? That is the question in this claim against two individuals for many billions arising out of a corporate acquisition more than a decade ago. The Claimants' case is that they were fundamentally misled and are victims of fraud. The Defendants' case is that the claim is "manufactured" to cover and justify a change of corporate mind, and to cast them as scapegoats for what in reality is buyer's remorse coupled with management failings.

2. The acquisition in question ("the Acquisition") was the purchase for approximately $11.1 billion in cash of the entire issued share capital of Autonomy Corporation plc ("Autonomy") by a special purpose vehicle ("Bidco"). Bidco was incorporated by Hewlett-Packard Company ("HP") for the purpose of the Acquisition. HP was the ultimate holding company in the Hewlett-Packard Group. The Acquisition was declared wholly unconditional on 3 October 2011. It was finally completed on 5 January 2012. The fall-out from it has spawned proceedings on both sides of the Atlantic, including at least two sets of criminal proceedings in the Northern District of California, USA.

3. The principal claim is brought by the Claimants under Schedule 10A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 ("FSMA"). There are further claims in misrepresentation, in the tort of deceit, and for breaches of fiduciary and employment duties. The gist of the claims under the FSMA, and in misrepresentation and deceit, is that the Defendants dishonestly and deliberately misrepresented the financial performance of Autonomy in the period ("the Relevant Period") from at least[1] the first quarter of 2009 ("Q1 2009")[2] until the second quarter of 2011 ("Q2 2011"), so that it was in truth a very different and less attractive proposition than was presented.

4. Put shortly: the Claimants' main case is that Autonomy was mis-sold, and they were deceived into paying for it much more than it was worth. That is by far the largest claim. The Claimants have also asserted other claims seeking recovery of transaction-based losses in respect of transactions which were entered into in breach of duty.

5. The First Defendant, Dr Michael Richard Lynch ("Dr Lynch") has vigorously denied both the fact of and his involvement in any impropriety. His case is that Autonomy at all times complied with applicable laws, regulations and International Financial Reporting Standards ("IFRS") and followed the advice of its auditors, Deloitte LLP ("Deloitte"); and that he never came to know of

[1] The Claimants' pleading defined the *"Relevant Period"* as *"the period from (at least) Q1 2009 to Q2 2011"*. The Claimants also criticized five transactions that took place in 2008, relating to what were referred to as "hosting transactions". However, I have understood the Claimants' claims for loss to refer to published information in Q1 2009 to Q2 2011; and I did not understand the Claimants to advance any claim in respect of any of Autonomy's Accounts for 2008 or any of its published information in 2008.

[2] Autonomy's financial quarters corresponded to calendar quarters and are referred to as Q1, Q2, Q3 and Q4 as appropriate.

any breach of such laws, regulations or accounting standards. He has consistently maintained that HP's case is the culmination of sustained effort on the part of HP to shift on to the Defendants the blame for its change of mind about the transformation of HP which the Acquisition was intended to promote, and its subsequent failure to facilitate the efficient integration of Autonomy on which the strategy had depended. He has brought a counterclaim against Autonomy alleging a breach of a duty of trust and confidence and/or duty of care, as well as a breach of the Data Protection Act 1998.

6. The Second Defendant, Mr Sushovan Tareque Hussain ("Mr Hussain"), has sought to defend himself through solicitors and counsel; but he did not attend in person. He is presently serving a 5-year jail sentence in Pennsylvania, having been convicted by a jury in earlier criminal proceedings in the USA of 14 counts of "wire fraud" and for securities fraud in respect of the Acquisition. In the proceedings in this court, he filed a witness statement, but withdrew it when it became clear that he could not attend court. Having filed no evidence, he relied to a considerable extent on the defence to the first limb of the case (the allegations of impropriety) presented by Dr Lynch (who himself may now face criminal proceedings in Northern California, USA brought on broadly the same basis, for which the US prosecuting authorities are presently seeking his extradition). On the issue as to his personal knowledge of impropriety, he offered no positive case, though the Claimants must still of course prove theirs.

7. Those are the barest bones of claims tested in a 93-day trial which I believe may rank amongst the longest and most complex in English legal history. The First Defendant was cross-examined for 21 days; there were some 45 factual witnesses, many hundreds of pages of hearsay evidence largely comprised of transcripts from the US criminal proceedings, expert witnesses in three fields whose reports with appendices ranged over eight lever-arch files and who were cross-examined over (in total) 11 days, a trial bundle containing more than 36,000 documents and a 'corpus' of many millions of electronical documents ranging over myriad transactions undertaken by Autonomy in various different fields between early 2009 and late 2011. The parties' written closing submissions were together almost 5,000 pages long (excluding schedules and other annexed material), including in aggregate some 10,000 footnotes. There were bundles of 183 authorities and other references. The Claimants and the First Defendant were each represented by two Leading Counsel and five junior counsel (two of whom, happily, became QCs during the course of the trial); the Second Defendant was represented by junior counsel; all had instructing solicitors of the highest quality fielding large teams. Although I should record my thanks to the parties for providing me with a judicial assistant (Mr William Paris of Counsel) during the trial and its immediate aftermath, it was tried before me as a judge sitting alone.

The Parties

8. Autonomy was incorporated under the laws of England and Wales in March 1996. Autonomy acted as a holding company for a group of companies all in the business of infrastructure software. Pursuant to a cross-border merger

completed on 26 September 2017, long after its acquisition and some time after the commencement of these proceedings, all of the assets and liabilities of Autonomy were transferred to the First Claimant, ACL Netherlands BV.

9. Hewlett-Packard Vision BV ("Bidco") was incorporated in the Netherlands on 15 August 2011. It was an indirect wholly owned subsidiary of HP until on 2 November 2015 it became an indirect and wholly owned subsidiary of Hewlett-Packard Enterprise Company. Pursuant to a merger which took effect on 27 October 2018, all of the assets and liabilities of Bidco were transferred to the Second Claimant, Hewlett-Packard The Hague BV.

10. The Third Claimant, Autonomy Systems Limited ("ASL"), was incorporated in England in 1995 and was an indirect wholly owned subsidiary of Autonomy. ASL operated as a licensor of Autonomy software to other Autonomy entities. Additionally, pursuant to transfer pricing agreements between ASL and some other Autonomy group companies, including the Fourth Claimant, costs and revenues of those other Autonomy group companies were transferred to ASL.

11. The Fourth Claimant, Hewlett-Packard Enterprise New Jersey Inc, was incorporated in New Jersey in 1996 and was formerly known as Autonomy Inc. I shall refer to it as Autonomy Inc in this judgment. At all relevant times Autonomy Inc was a wholly owned subsidiary of Autonomy and was Autonomy's main operating company in the USA, based in Palo Alto, California.

12. The First Defendant (hereafter, "Dr Lynch") was a director and the Chief Executive Officer of Autonomy from the time of its incorporation in 1996 up until 30 November 2011.

13. The Second Defendant (hereafter, "Mr Hussain") was the Autonomy group's Chief Financial Officer from June 2001 until 30 November 2011 and was a director of Autonomy from 01 June 2003 until 30 November 2011.

14. It is not disputed that both Defendants were, for the purposes of the FSMA claim, "persons discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer" ("PDMRs") within the meaning of Schedule 10A of FSMA (and previously s. 90A(4) before its amendment). The basis for the issuer's liability is fraud on the part of at least one PDMR.

High-level synopsis of the case and defences

15. The fraud alleged consisted of the publication of information to the market which was known by the Defendants to be false. The allegation was based on (a) the allegedly dishonest description of Autonomy as being a "pure software company" when in fact it undertook and had become accustomed to inflating its apparent revenues by undertaking substantial hardware sales and (b) the allegedly dishonest presentation of its financial performance, which did not disclose and instead disguised improper practices which Autonomy adopted to boost and accelerate revenue. The Claimants contended that all this resulted in Autonomy being in fact an enterprise of considerably less value than it

appeared to be on the basis of its published information. These improper practices included:

(1) artificially inflating and accelerating Autonomy's reported revenues;

(2) understating Autonomy's costs of goods sold so as to inflate gross margins;

(3) misrepresenting Autonomy's rate of organic growth; and

(4) misrepresenting the nature and quality of Autonomy's revenues, as well as overstating its gross and net profits.

16. In a little more detail, the claims relate to six areas of Autonomy's business and accounting:

(1) The "hardware case" relates to the purchase and resale by Autonomy (usually at a loss) of "pure" hardware (in broad terms, hardware unaccompanied by any Autonomy software)[3] in quantities (of approximately $200 million over the Relevant Period) which the Claimants allege were never disclosed to the market and which, by boosting apparent revenue, gave a false impression of the performance of Autonomy's business and belied its presentation in its published information as a "pure software company". The hardware case also raises issues as to (a) whether a proportion of the costs of the sales were improperly accounted for as sales and marketing expenses so as artificially to increase gross margins, and (b) whether Deloitte, who approved Autonomy's accounting treatment of the sales, were misled as to the true purpose of the hardware sales.

(2) The "reseller" or "VAR" case relates to 37 transactions between Autonomy (or in some cases, Autonomy Inc or another subsidiary, Zantaz Inc, "Zantaz") and a small group of Value Added Resellers, which the Defendants treated as sales giving rise to revenue which could be and was recognised immediately in Autonomy's accounts, but which the Claimants contended simply interposed a reseller between Autonomy and the true customer and were not in substance sales at all. The Claimants' case is that in each VAR sale the VAR was only a passive placeholder with no further participation expected or permitted of it after the VAR sale. Thus, the VAR sales were, in effect, devices to accelerate recognition of revenue in Autonomy's accounts, with the intended effect of misrepresenting its performance.

(3) The "reciprocal transactions" case relates to what the Claimants alleged were back-to-back transactions with friendly counterparties, in which Autonomy purchased from the counterparty software or other goods or services that Autonomy did not need in order to fund the

[3] The expression *"Pure hardware sales"* is not an accounting term or a term of art: it was newly minted by the Claimants. In their RRAPoC the expression is defined as "substantial sales of third-party computer hardware (with or without third party software) without modification by Autonomy and unaccompanied by any Autonomy software."

purchase by that counterparty of high margin software from Autonomy. The Claimants contended that these reciprocal or "round-trip" transactions also were contrived with the dishonest purpose of artificially boosting apparent high-margin software sales, with the effect of giving an exaggerated depiction of the success of Autonomy's core business.

(4) The "hosting case" relates to transactions between Autonomy (or one of its subsidiaries, Zantaz Inc, Autonomy Inc and ASL) and new or existing customers under which Autonomy agreed to forego future recurring revenue from the provision of hosted archiving and e-Discovery services (which was a substantial and lucrative part of Autonomy's business)[4] for monthly (or other periodic) fees in return for the customer paying a one-off capital sum for a licence to use Autonomy's software outside the hosted environment and whether in-house or in another provider's data centre. The licence was alleged to be illusory, and its issue and sale was said to be for the dishonest purpose of treating it as akin to a sale of goods so as to justify the immediate (that is at the transaction date) recognition of the sale proceeds as revenue. Again, it was alleged that the intended effect was artificially to boost apparent revenue in the period in question.

(5) The "OEM case" relates to transactions presented in Autonomy's published information as generating "OEM" and "OEM derived revenue". The Claimants' case is that revenue so presented would be taken in the market to have been generated by a transaction with an Original Equipment Manufacturer ("OEM") for Autonomy software to be embedded in the OEM's software in return for royalty payments to Autonomy on all the OEM's sales of the combined product (and thus a recurring revenue stream); but that in fact Autonomy included in what was compendiously described as the "OEM Metric" revenues from one-off sales of software licences to customers which were not OEMs and did not give rise to royalties or any other recurring revenue. The Claimants did not impugn the transactions themselves but contended that it was misleading and dishonest to include the latter revenues within the OEM metric because it gave the false impression of a valuable recurring category of revenues and thereby dishonestly misrepresented the quality and reliability of Autonomy's revenue and earnings.

(6) The "Other Transactions" case relates to four transactions entered into in late 2010 and early 2011 by ASL, Autonomy Spain SL and Autonomy Inc which the Claimants allege were also falsely accounted for in Autonomy's published information as being licence sales but which were in truth the provision of a service.

[4] This aspect of the group's business was the provision by Autonomy or another group company (principally a company called Zantaz) of data storage, archiving, e-Discovery and retrieval services using its own hardware at one of its data centres. Hosting services were typically provided over a period of years, resulting in a reliable revenue stream.

17. The FSMA claim has a dog-leg nature: the gist of the claim is fraud on the part of the issuer (Autonomy) for which the PDMRs are alleged to be liable. That claim thus depends on establishing first, that Autonomy was liable (as issuer) to Bidco and that secondly, the Defendants were liable to Autonomy.

18. It is common ground that the Claimants need to make good their case at each stage. That is so even though in fact, both being under the control of HP, Autonomy has admitted liability to Bidco: the Claimants have accepted that this admission does not bind the court. They have accepted also that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain will not be liable except in respect of misstatements or omissions about which they themselves knew. It is not sufficient for the Claimants to demonstrate that the transactions or the way they were accounted for was improper (the first limb); they need also to prove personal knowledge and dishonesty in respect of the false accounting on the part of the Defendants as PDMRs (the second limb).

19. Thus, for example, the "Other Transactions" case must fail against Dr Lynch, since he was not cross-examined on those transactions and his personal knowledge and involvement cannot be established: as the Claimants fairly and properly recognised in their closing submissions. By contrast, in the case of Mr Hussain, his decision not to give evidence means that it is difficult for him to resist a finding against him in all these claims at that second stage if the Claimants have succeeded at the first stage.

20. The claims under FSMA are by far the largest: the pleaded quantum of loss is at least $4.55 billion (being the amount for which Autonomy has accepted it is liable and for which it is alleged the Defendants are liable as PDMRs).

21. The claims for fraudulent misrepresentation and/or under s. 2(1) of the Misrepresentation Act 1967 are direct claims against the Defendants: they are based on personal liability, not on liability of the issuer. The quantum of the claims is much lower than the FSMA claims: the damages sought relate only to loss attributable to the shares and share options which the Defendants themselves each held and sold to Bidco. The pleaded quantum of loss is approximately $420 million.

22. The claims for transactional losses based on breaches of fiduciary and employee duties stand on a different footing. They do not arise in consequence of the Acquisition (except in the sense that they would almost certainly not have been brought if the Defendants still directed Autonomy). They are claims for direct losses suffered by ASL, Autonomy Inc and another group subsidiary called Zantaz as a result of the Defendants' breaches of duty in causing the relevant subsidiary to enter into the impugned transactions without regard to the interests of that subsidiary. In that context, the Claimants' primary case is that ASL is the proper claimant for these losses as a result of transfer pricing arrangements between ASL and each of Autonomy Inc, Zantaz and Verity Inc. That is disputed by the Defendants on the basis that the effect of the transfer pricing arrangements was only to shift costs and that in any event, whatever the effect of those arrangements in contract, the fact remains that no duties were owed to ASL in respect of transactions undertaken by different entities,

variously Autonomy Inc and Zantaz. The pleaded quantum of loss is in excess of $76.1 million.

23. The Claimants accept that in the ultimate quantification of loss they must give credit for a recovery of $45 million made in a settlement of a related claim (against Autonomy's auditors), after deducting the costs of such claim and any tax payable in respect of the settlement sum.

24. A 'Dramatis Personae' and a more detailed Schedule of Key Persons are attached as Appendix 1 and Appendix 2 respectively. A chart prepared by the Claimants setting out their various claims in diagrammatic form (at a very high level) is attached as Appendix 3. The Claimants also provided charts which they put forward as illustrating in graphic form (i) Autonomy's reported revenue in each quarter of the Relevant Period; (ii) the alleged impact of undisclosed pure hardware revenue and other revenue alleged to have been recognised improperly; (iii) how (according to the Claimants) the recognition of revenue from impugned transactions helped Autonomy create the appearance of meeting market expectations and (iv) an overview of the position in each full year of the Relevant Period, and the half year to the end of June 2011. These are attached in Appendix 4, but I have slightly modified their headings. Chart 3, in particular, provided an arresting overview of the Claimants' case that Autonomy used 'pure' hardware sales which were not disclosed and sales to VARs which had no real substance to give the appearance of meeting market expectations of revenue. Appendix 5 is a graphic depiction (again prepared by the Claimants) of the contribution of impugned VAR transactions to Autonomy's revenue in each quarter of the Relevant Period. Appendix 6 comprises a Summary of Conclusions which I read and made available in court on 28 January 2022 (and see paragraph 4120 below). These Appendices are attached to this judgment at the end of Part B; but any reader may be assisted by reference to them at this juncture. I have also prepared a separate (and independently page and paragraph numbered) Schedule analysing in more detail each of the impugned VAR transactions: this too appears at the end of Part B.

25. As already indicated, Mr Hussain adopted Dr Lynch's submissions. References to the Defendants should be taken to be references to each of them unless otherwise stated.

Some preliminary points

26. This is obviously an extremely long judgment. The factual detail provided to me in respect of each of the six main areas of the case is in my experience unprecedented. Whereas in many cases, only a few documents ever come to be relied on otherwise than in passing, here the relevant record and the number of documents cited was very considerable indeed. The process has involved a detailed examination, by reference to a myriad of transactions, of the way Autonomy's business was carried on at a fairly granular level.

27. I am very conscious that the length, detail and complexity of this judgment, and its focus in parts on individual transactions to determine whether some or all of the means used to generate and /or accelerate revenue were acceptable

commercial strategies or dishonest devices to cover shortfall in software revenue*s*, may obscure the ultimate question in both the FSMA and the deceit and/or misrepresentation claims which is whether the acquirer was dishonestly misled. In particular, it is necessary to bear in mind that, except as regards the claims for transactional losses, the question is not whether the impugned transactions were wrongful, but whether their purpose (and effect) was to enable Autonomy to cover shortfalls in its revenue from software sales, so as to appear to meet market revenue expectations and (especially when combined with giving an appearance of growth in its valuable OEM and Cloud business lines) present itself as a larger and more successful company than in reality it was.

28. Nevertheless, careful and detailed analysis of the impugned transactions is necessary in providing the answers. It is worth remembering that Autonomy's business appeared to most to be well run and growing fast because of the phenomenal capabilities and utility of its main product, called IDOL (its acronym for "Intelligent Data Operating Layer"). Autonomy became a FTSE 100 company on that basis. A few analysts were doubtful whether all was as it seemed; but most were not. The process of peeling back what was happening beneath the presentation is a tortuous one.

29. Furthermore, in respect of each of the six areas of business which the Claimants impugned, they asserted that there was a 'pattern' which revealed dishonesty. It might be tempting to assume that if a 'pattern' was revealed by, say five to 10 of the 37 impugned VAR transactions, that should be taken to demonstrate a pattern across the board. But such an assumption would, in my view, be unsafe. In short, though the phrase may have become over-used, the devil is in the detail.

30. I should acknowledge also that it has weighed heavily with me throughout that this judgment, whether logically or not, may affect Dr Lynch in other battles, on which his long-term freedom may depend. I have not wished to leave a stone unturned which might have yielded some different perspective or 'pattern'.

31. I feel I should also emphasise, in light of the decision of the Court of Appeal in *Bank of St Petersburg PJSC and others v Vitaly Arkhangelsky and others* [2020] EWCA Civ 408, that (a) although of necessity I have divided up separate sections of the judgment, I have sought at all stages to reflect on how the parts, and especially my views as to the state of mind of the Defendants, might impact on the whole or more generally; and (b) I have throughout borne in mind and applied the standard of proof applicable in all civil proceedings, that of the balance of probabilities, whilst taking into account in determining the probabilities that other things being equal, it is a fair starting point that people do not usually act dishonestly (and I would add with particular reference to this case) especially when any dishonesty is almost bound quickly to be revealed. Any "infelicities" in my expression should not be taken to connote that I have departed from adjudicating the case on the basis of the balance of probabilities: I have not.

Parts A and B of this judgment, the Schedule and Appendices

32. The Claimants and the Defendants adopted very different approaches in terms of the structure and approach of their respective written closing submissions. But all parties dealt separately with the six areas of claim I have identified in paragraphs 16(1) to 16(6) above, and this judgment does also. This (and the extreme detail) has further increased the need for a considerable amount of cross-referencing. I regret that this makes the judgment more unwieldy.

33. The judgment is divided into two main Parts (Part A and Part B), a division made necessary because of its length and website requirements. In addition to this Introduction and an analysis of relevant issues and the tests of liability under FSMA, this first Part (which ends at paragraph 2336) contains an Introduction describing the Claimants' allegations in respect of Autonomy's sales of hardware and the impugned VAR sales. With reference to the latter, and as mentioned above, I have also attached as a separate document a detailed Schedule analysing each of the impugned VAR transactions, which is also of considerable length. In Part B, I address the four remaining areas of the Claimants' FSMA case ("the reciprocals transactions", "the hosting case", "the OEM case" and "the Other transactions") and also the Claimants' claims in deceit and/or misrepresentation, the Claimants' various claims for direct loss, and issues relating to reliance and loss. I address Dr Lynch's Counterclaim in paragraphs 4106 to 4115 below of Part B. I summarise my conclusions in paragraphs 4116 to 4135. Lastly, I have included a postscript in paragraphs 4116 to 4155. This judgment does not address issues of quantum. That will be dealt with in a separate judgment in due course.

Overview of the two principal entities

34. An overview of the business of the two principal commercial entities, HP and Autonomy, and the way they were respectively structured and managed, is necessary in order to place in context the Claimants' allegations (which in numerical terms relate to only a small part of Autonomy's business but which impugn transactions of considerable value[5]). It is also necessary for an understanding of (a) the Claimants' overall case that the Defendants, and especially Dr Lynch, were in a position to and did conceive and direct all the impugned transactions with a view to presenting Autonomy as far more successful than it was, and thereby dishonestly misled HP into paying far more than its true value and (b) the Defendants' overall case that the reality is that HP's management had no stomach for the transformational change that was the objective of the Acquisition, and contrived this extraordinary series of proceedings to shift the blame away from themselves.

Autonomy

35. Autonomy was founded in 1996. It was spun out from a company called Cambridge Neurodynamics, which was an early venture into using "machine learning" to develop software, techniques which Dr Lynch had explored in his PhD thesis at Cambridge University and his subsequent research fellowship in "adaptive pattern recognition".

[5] The Claimants acknowledged that the impugned transactions *"represent a small fraction of Autonomy's total transactions by number"* but made the point that they were *"very significant by value",* the impugned transactions being amongst the largest in terms of revenue in a given quarter.

36. By the beginning of the Relevant Period, Autonomy had grown from a small start-up into a market leader in enterprise technology, especially in the field of unstructured data analysis. It went public in 1998, with an initial listing on the EASDAQ. It was admitted to the official list of the LSE in November 2000. It re-joined the FTSE 100 in 2008.

37. The Autonomy group was highly profitable, generated reported annual revenue in 2010 of $870 million, and (as an illustration) held cash reserves of $1.1 billion at the close of 2010 (though it is fair to qualify this by noting that this figure included proceeds of approximately $762 million raised by an issue of convertible loan notes in March 2010). Its customers included blue-chip companies in every sector.[6] In 2011, it was the UK's largest software company based on market capitalisation.

38. Autonomy was headquartered in the UK but operated in global markets, with (by the time of the Acquisition) more than 2,500 employees, over 25,000 customers and operations in more than 19 countries (including the USA, where it had set up Autonomy Inc with its own management, sales and legal teams in San Francisco).

39. Its worldwide development and product spread was partly in consequence of successful acquisitions before the Relevant Period. Most significant were the following (all but the last of which were completed before the Relevant Period):

    (1) The acquisition of Verity Inc (its then nearest competitor in enterprise search technology) in December 2005. Verity also had US federal security clearance, which until a change of the rules in Autumn 2009

---

[6] including (a) financial institutions (such as CitiBank, Barclays, BoA, RBS, Lloyds TSB, Deutsche Bank and Merrill Lynch, who used Autonomy's software for archiving and regulatory compliance and litigation data management); (b) government and public-sector agencies throughout the world (including the FSA and SFO in the UK) who used such software to recognise unusual patterns in money flow to identify laundering and for other security and surveillance; (c) manufacturers (including Ford and General Motors) who used the technology to manage engineering know-how; (d) Telecommunications providers (such as AT&T, Ericsson, Cable & Wireless, BT and Vodafone) who used the software for call monitoring and analysis; (e) Pharmaceutical corporations (including AstraZeneca, GlaxoSmithKline and Pfizer) who used the software to keep up with changing regulations, demographic information, general R&D and litigation; (f) Media organisations (such as the BBC, ITN, MTV, Bloomberg, CNN, Reuters and Forbes) who used Autonomy's software to manage their TV programmes, publish media, archive content, increase website traffic and advertising revenue; (g) eCommerce providers (such as Play.com, FedEx, Forbes and T-Mobile, which used the software to understand patterns in buyers' behaviour and to monitor customer satisfaction and boost 'upselling'); (h) Food and Beverage suppliers (such as Nestle, Coca-Cola and Britvic) who used the software to monitor product developments and market opportunities; (i) Intelligence and Defence organisations across the world to monitor and protect against security threats; (j) legal organisations including 75 out of the top 100 global law firms, who used the software for disclosure and litigation support; (k) IT companies (such as IBM, Oracle, HP and Lucent Technologies) who selected Autonomy software to support development; (l) Consulting and professional services customers (such as IBM Global, KPMG and PricewaterhouseCoopers) who used the software for profiling and data; (m) Energy and utility customers (such as BP and Shell); (n) Aerospace organisations (such as NASA, BAE Systems, Boeing and the US Air Force) which used the software for engineering knowledge sharing; and (o) Healthcare organisations (including the UK NHS, Eli Lilly and Blue Cross/Bleu Shield) which used Autonomy software to promote best practices and help protect patient safety and manage litigation.

enabled Autonomy to conduct business with the US Federal Government.

(2) The acquisition of Zantaz in July 2007, through which it acquired an archiving software solution, commonly sold under the name Digital Safe. Digital Safe enabled data to be processed and stored more efficiently, thus cutting down on storage costs and search times; and when integrated with Autonomy's own technology (especially IDOL), the combined solution enabled data to be processed once into a consolidated archive and used with multiple software products, thus eliminating the need to store and search for data across multiple repositories. Especially at a time of increased competition and falling data storage rates[7], this efficiency gave Autonomy/Zantaz a commercial advantage which was the springboard for the development of hosting as a major part of Autonomy's business. Also as part of the Zantaz acquisition, Autonomy acquired an e-Discovery or "EDD" product called Introspect, which it also offered as a hosted solution.

(3) The acquisition in early 2009 of Interwoven Inc which specialised in the provision of enterprise content management software (including a solution called iManage), in e-commerce[8], and also had a large law firm customer base.

(4) The acquisition of the Iron Mountain Digital business in May 2011, and through this a large archive product called LiveVault which handled large amounts of stored data and suited customers with especially large structured data storage requirements, and which could be integrated with a product called StorHouse which Autonomy acquired from a company called FileTek for further efficiencies[9].

Autonomy's signature product: IDOL

40. Nevertheless, Autonomy's success was principally based on its own market-leading core product called IDOL, an acronym for Intelligent Data Operating Layer. IDOL technology, focused on the analysis of unstructured data, was the core technology at the heart of Autonomy's software.

41. Some explanation of this technology is appropriate, not least because (a) its extraordinary and world-beating capabilities tended not to be acknowledged by HP in their complaints about the Acquisition, and (b) it is important for an understanding of a central issue in the context of the hardware case, which is

[7] According to Dr Lynch's evidence in his first witness statement, storage technology was rapidly advancing and data storage prices falling quickly: thus, the cost of storing a GB of data fell from around $1 million in the early 1980s, to around $10,000 in the 1990s, to around $10 in the early 2000s and to around $0.10 in 2010. There was huge demand; but obviously technological efficiency was the only means of securing competitive advantage.

[8] A specialisation emphasised by the Defendants because it was a key area where a product focused on structured data, and in particular, Autonomy's SPE (see later), would have an application.

[9] The acquisition of StorHouse from FileTek was impugned by the Claimants: see paragraphs 2030 to 2035 below.

as to what the Defendants meant by the sale of an "appliance". The following is based on Dr Lynch's explanation in his first witness statement.

42. There are two types of data: structured and unstructured. Structured data is found in spreadsheets or in prescribed fields in a database. When data is entered into a database it is easily searchable. For example, as Dr Lynch explained, a computer will know that the data in an "address" field of a database is an address. Unstructured data is data that is not contained in prescribed fields. Most data is unstructured. Books, newspaper articles, websites, pictures and indeed, most forms of communication, comprise unstructured data.

43. Unstructured data is obviously much more difficult for computers to interpret and analyse. In 2009, the vast majority of computer software could only process structured information. It was Autonomy's ability, using IDOL technology, to handle unstructured information that set it apart.

44. Dr Lynch explained that IDOL is an engine that can form a conceptual and contextual understanding of unstructured data using probabilistic theory based on the occurrence of certain word patterns, enabling the computer to infer meaning.[10]

45. Put shortly, using IDOL technology computers could make sense of unstructured data, and analyse and process raw information in the form of emails, voicemail, websites, telephone conversations and video recordings: a vast universe. It could analyse any digital document, speech or video, independent of its language, to identify and prioritise the main concepts within that document. IDOL users were enabled to automate a broad range of otherwise labour-intensive, iterative tasks, ranging from categorising information by subject matter, to inserting hypertext links to related material, to profiling users based on ideas in the text they read or wrote, to delivering information to those users most likely to be interested. Furthermore, IDOL was flexible and scalable: the fundamental capabilities of its core technology allowed it to be embedded in a wide range of applications.

46. Between 1996 and 2012, IDOL technology was continuously developed and refined by Autonomy's team of software engineers. Dr Lynch (whose fondness for analogies became very evident in his 22 days in the witness box) explained that:

> *"You could think of IDOL technology as a box of Lego. It could be made to do a lot of different things. It could be adapted by customers to suit themselves. Sometimes functions were packaged up together and sold as a product which could, depending on the circumstances,*

[10] Dr Lynch illustrated the connection between probabilistic theories and computing, and the use of an algorithm based on the rule that a large number of weak connections produce a better result than a single strong connection, by positing a search for the word "penguin". In a simple search engine, you might get results for flightless birds in the Antarctic, the book publishers, a character in the Batman comic series, a US ice hockey team or a brand of clothing. However, if unstructured data contains contextual references to the Antarctic, ice, fish, feathers, eggs and black and white, there is a very high likelihood that the text is about penguins (the birds), even if the word "penguin" does not appear in the data.

> *take on a variety of names. For example, the video functions were packaged together and often sold as "Virage". Other functions could be put together to be sold as "Digital Safe" or "ACA" (a suite of software that managed the entire process of archiving and indexing a company's data) or Autonomy Legal Hold (a document retention tool which ran on laptops, video archiving, ecommerce and website software and intelligence related products). When Autonomy wanted to do something new and radical like SPE[11], it developed new IDOL functions, which were like new Lego bricks. These bricks could work together with an existing Lego set, or be sold as a separate package, like a Lego helicopter."*

47. In addition to functions, the IDOL platform included (a) connectors, which enabled the IDOL platform to connect with many different systems, such as a bank's trading system or a law firm's document management system, and (b) interfaces, where a set of functions and connectors were put together to solve a problem (such as the Introspect e-Discovery interface which was a market-leading document processing, review and production application, used widely in the legal sector).

Autonomy: structure and organisation

48. Autonomy's corporate governance structure comprised (in 2010-2011) an experienced board of directors chaired by Mr Robert Webb QC (as non-executive chairman) and a three-man Audit Committee, with its external auditors being Deloitte.

Board of Directors

49. Appointed Queen's Counsel in 1988 and a Recorder of the Crown Court in 1993, Mr Webb had previously served as General Counsel at British Airways, and as at 2010 continued to serve as non-executive director of the London Stock Exchange, the BBC and two other companies.

50. In addition to Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain (the only executive members) the other board members were Mr Jonathan Bloomer (non-executive) who was also permanent chair of the Audit Committee, and who had been Group Chief Executive of Prudential Plc from March 2000 until May 2005, and before that senior partner in Arthur Andersen's financial markets division; Mr Richard Gaunt (non-executive), who was the co-founder of Autonomy; Dr Frank Kelly FRS (non-executive), Professor of Mathematics of Systems in the Statistical Laboratory, University of Cambridge and Master of Christ's College, Cambridge; and Mr John McMonigall (non-executive) a partner of Apax

[11] An Autonomy product called the Structured Probabilistic Engine ("SPE"). SPE was the subject-matter of a dispute arising principally out of the fact that Autonomy attributed considerable costs to its development and marketing whereas HP claimed that it was simply a hastily developed *"repositioning"* of IDOL technology containing no new features, which in reality cost next to nothing to develop and market but which was used as a cloak for some of the costs/losses of the hardware sales in Q3 2009. The Claimants relied on this as a basis for undermining the credibility of the Defendants.

Partners Worldwide LLP and previously a member of the Management Board of BT.

Audit Committee

51. Until September 2010, the members of the Audit Committee had been Mr Barry Ariko (a former senior executive at Oracle Corporation and of other software and hardware companies), Mr Richard Perle (a former US Assistant Secretary of Defense and a former director of various pharmaceutical and aerospace companies) and Mr McMonigall. There had not been a permanent Chair of the Audit Committee (so that its members served as Chair on an ad hoc basis) and none of the members was an accountant or had any formal accountancy training. Mr Bloomer told me when cross-examined that it would be normal to expect that the Chair would be "financially literate" but not necessarily that he or she would have an accountancy qualification (though he thought probably most did).

52. Mr Ariko and Mr Perle retired in September 2010 and from then until the Acquisition the Audit Committee comprised, in addition to its Chair (Mr Bloomer), Mr Kelly and Mr McMonigall. As noted later by Ernst & Young ("E&Y") (HP's auditor), both the Board and the Audit Committee had been expanded over the course of 2010 following analyst pressure, leading to what E&Y described as "the formalisation of the Audit Committee process and a more robust independent challenge to the board."

53. Before every meeting members of the Audit Committee would receive a pack including, amongst other things, a draft press release, a quarterly results analysis by the finance department, and Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee. Deloitte's report was a substantial document – between 20 and 40 pages – identifying the key risks identified by Deloitte in the quarter. Prior to each Audit Committee meeting, Mr Bloomer would read these documents, and would discuss Deloitte's findings at his meeting with the audit partner. The meeting of the Audit Committee itself would generally last around 2 hours.

54. Dr Lynch did not attend Audit Committee meetings. This accorded with good corporate governance. Deloitte did attend, and the Audit Committee could and did ask questions of them. A portion of every Audit Committee meeting took place without any executives present, to ensure that Deloitte had an opportunity to raise any concerns they may have had with management. This was an opportunity for completely frank discussion without any of the management team present. If there were any matters of importance, they would be escalated by Deloitte to the Audit Committee. Mr Lee Welham ("Mr Welham"), the senior manager on the Deloitte audit team from 2008 to August 2011, who had since 2005 been a member of the audit team (and was the only Deloitte witness the Claimants chose to call), never had a sense that there were any areas where the Audit Committee could not or would not go. Deloitte never raised any concerns about management with the Audit Committee.

Management team

55. Mr Hussain's predicament should not obscure the fact he was highly regarded. He had been a winner of the London Stock Exchange CFO of the year award. The finance department beneath him was substantial and was also led by experienced individuals (see below).

56. Apart from the Defendants at the apex, the members of the management team were:

(1) Mr Andrew Kanter ("Mr Kanter"), Autonomy's Chief Operating Officer (or "COO") and General Counsel throughout the Relevant Period (who provided a witness statement, which was withdrawn when Dr Lynch did not call him, see paragraph 426(4) below). He was mainly based in Cambridge. At the time of the trial and closing submissions Mr Kanter remained subject to continuing investigation by the US Department of Justice ("US DoJ").

(2) Dr Peter Menell, Autonomy's Chief Technology Officer (or "CTO") throughout the Relevant Period, who did not give evidence, see paragraph 428 below. He was based in Cambridge.

(3) Ms Nicole Eagan ("Ms Eagan"), Autonomy's Chief Marketing Officer throughout the Relevant Period, who like Mr Kanter provided a witness statement which was withdrawn when Dr Lynch did not call her (see paragraphs 426(4) and 1139 below). She was US-based. Like Mr Kanter, at the time of the trial and closing submissions she remained subject to continuing investigation by the US DoJ.

57. The above individuals were members of the "MRL Leadership" group, which was listed in an organisational chart dated August 2011. Another central figure was Mr Stephen Chamberlain ("Mr Chamberlain"). He was in the finance department, reporting to Mr Hussain: see paragraph 67 below. There were 26 senior individuals listed on that chart, which also shows their location in the various different global locations.[12] Thus, Autonomy's management would often be in different locations to each other.

Autonomy Inc management team

58. Autonomy Inc had its own management team, which consisted of:

(1) Mr Christopher 'Stouffer' Egan ("Mr Egan"), who was its CEO throughout the Relevant Period, who was responsible for sales activities in North and South America. He gave evidence in Mr Hussain's criminal trial in the US and provided a witness statement in these proceedings but declined to attend in the UK and was cross-examined over video link. He was based in San Francisco.

(2) Mr Joel Scott ("Mr Scott"), who was its COO and General Counsel throughout the Relevant Period. He too was based in San Francisco. He gave evidence in the criminal trial in the US also, but none in these proceedings.

[12] Mr Lucini was not listed.

(3) Mr James Crumbacher ("Mr Crumbacher"), who worked with Mr Scott in Autonomy Inc's legal department.

(4) Mr Michael Sullivan ("Mr Sullivan"), who was CEO of the Protect business, which was the archiving and litigation discovery division of Autonomy from 2009, carrying on business which before 2009 was carried on through Zantaz. Mr Sullivan had been Senior Vice president of Operations and Services of Zantaz, responsible for delivery of all products and services to customers, before its acquisition by Autonomy in 2007. After that acquisition, he became the CEO of Zantaz from 2007 (when it was acquired by Autonomy). He was based in Boston, Massachusetts. He gave oral evidence in the US criminal proceedings and a witness statement (which was admitted by a hearsay notice) in these, but declined to attend for cross-examination.

(5) Mr Eloy Avila ("Mr Avila"), who was Chief Corporate Architect from September 2009 to May 2010, when he became CTO for the Americas. He became worldwide CTO in November 2010 and was based in San Francisco. He provided a witness statement for Dr Lynch and was cross-examined in these proceedings.

(6) Mr Andrew Joiner ("Mr Joiner"), who was CEO of Autonomy's Promote/eTalk business and was based in the US. He did not give evidence in these proceedings, and was not central to the matters in issue.

(7) Mr Michael Mooney ("Mr Mooney"), who was a senior salesman based in Pleasanton. He did not give evidence.

59. Except for Mr Scott and Mr Crumbacher, all the individuals named in the preceding paragraph were members of the "MRL Leadership" group.

Sales teams and sales process

60. There were different sales teams for Autonomy's various business areas and locations. Mr Egan was effectively head of sales in the US. Mr Egan's reporting line was to Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain; but in practice he reported to Mr Hussain, whom he described in his witness statement as *"de facto Head of Sales for the entire company"*. Mr Sullivan headed up the Zantaz business.

61. Senior salesmen in the US included Mr Mooney (in California) and Mr Robert Sass ("Mr Sass") (in New York). Autonomy's federal business had its own sales team. There were different sales teams in the EMEA regions. The number of salesmen increased substantially in the period 2009-2011.

62. Autonomy's sales function was run using the Sales Management System or "SMS". This was a database of pipeline prospects. Salesmen were required to input details into SMS, detailing the opportunity, quotes, notes, call logs and the like. They were supposed to do so every day (although Mr Egan thought that was the hope rather than reality). There were weekly SMS sales calls which were broken up into multiple calls over several hours. US sales were

the majority of Autonomy's sales. The US part of the call was generally led by one of US management, such as Mr Egan or Mr Mooney. Very occasionally Mr Hussain might lead the call if none of US management was available. While Dr Lynch joined these calls in the very early days of the company, his evidence was that he very rarely did so in the Relevant Period.

63. Autonomy set quarterly revenue targets. Mr Egan accepted in cross-examination that these were an essential management tool. But they were also deployed in another way which is very central to this case. They were reported to the market quarterly and became the reference point for analysts and the market in assessing Autonomy's performance.

64. It is clear from their use, from documentary evidence of analyst and investor outlook, and from emails from Mr Marc Geall ("Mr Geall") in Autonomy's Investor Relations department that both Autonomy's success and to some extent its problem was that by mid-2009 Autonomy was being perceived in the market as a "beat and raise" growth stock.

65. A "beat and raise" stock was a well-known market expression connoting a company, often a technology company, with a track record or reputation of beating consensus estimates of revenue or earnings in one quarter and raising its own forward revenue or earnings forecasts for the next, and whose share price typically reacted according to its success or not in each quarter in that regard. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch sought to downplay this. He told me that although he did not think it *"a point worth labouring"*, and *"if some people looked it that way, then fair enough"*, he did not remember or consider Autonomy *"being a paradigm of beating and raising through this period"*. But the evidence was, and I find, that it was. Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch became obsessed with this performance marker, as will emerge.

66. That perhaps explains why the Defendants, who might have been expected to trumpet their successes, were surprisingly keen during the trial to emphasise that Autonomy did in fact miss its consensus revenue targets from time to time (five times in the period between 2009-2011). During the Relevant Period, they also sought to depict the increase of its overall revenue targets as the result of an increasing sales force, and launching new products continually, increasing market share, and operating in markets that were expanding rapidly. There was no mention ever of substantial sales of hardware separately from the provision of Autonomy software, or what the Claimants called *"pure hardware sales"*.

Autonomy's finance department

67. Autonomy had a substantial finance department, headed by Mr Hussain as CFO. His right-hand man was Mr Chamberlain, an ex-Deloitte Chartered Accountant. Mr Chamberlain, whom Mr Welham described as his *"main point of contact throughout the audit and review processes"* and the *"first point of contact for many requests from the Deloitte audit team for information"* did not give evidence in these proceedings. He has been indicted in US criminal proceedings, which I believe may now have commenced.

68. Mr Matthew Paul Stephan ("Mr Stephan") and Ms Poppy Gustafsson (nee Prentis, and whom I refer to as "Ms Gustafsson") and (from 2011 onwards) Ms Antonia Anderson ("Ms Anderson") also worked in the department, reporting to Mr Chamberlain. All three were based in Cambridge: they were all ex-Deloitte Chartered Accountants. Mr Stephan had been part of Deloitte's Autonomy audit team until December 2008 and joined Autonomy in March 2009, where he worked until early 2011. Ms Elizabeth "Lisa" Jane Harris ("Ms Harris"), another Chartered Accountant (ex-KPMG) also worked there. Mr Stephan and Ms Anderson gave evidence for the US Government in the US criminal proceedings, and Mr Stephan's evidence was admitted into these proceedings by hearsay notice served by the Claimants.

69. Ms Gustafsson (who is now Chief Executive Officer of Darktrace, a cyber security company of which Dr Lynch was a founder and remains a substantial shareholder) and Ms Harris (who is referred to as a *"co-conspirator"* in the most recent form of the Indictment in respect of Dr Lynch in US criminal proceedings for her role in the alleged theft of confidential information uploaded to a USB device/pen drive which seemed to her to evidence knowledge on the part of HP of the fact of Autonomy's hardware sales) gave evidence and each was cross-examined in these proceedings.

70. The finance team in Cambridge sat in an open plan office, with everyone within earshot of one another. Ms Harris explained that that team were able to share ideas and have discussions freely; and Mr Chamberlain would have discussions with Mr Hussain and with Deloitte at a table in this office, in earshot of everyone.

71. The UK finance team was responsible for all the accounting for the non-American countries and consolidation of all global accounts. There was also a team based in the Netherlands who did sales order processing for non-American sales. Accounting for Autonomy's American-based subsidiaries involved work by the US accounting teams, with consolidation taking place in the UK. There were several teams in the US from Autonomy Inc and legacy Autonomy acquisitions, including eTalk, Interwoven, Zantaz and Iron Mountain. All finance teams reported to Mr Chamberlain.

Autonomy's Auditors: Deloitte

72. Autonomy's auditors were Deloitte, a Big Four accounting firm. Deloitte's work for Autonomy was handled through its Cambridge office. Deloitte spent approximately 12 weeks per year on-site in the Cambridge offices of Autonomy. Deloitte had unfettered access to Autonomy's accounting records, as was clear in the evidence of Ms Gustafsson and Ms Harris referred to below.

73. Deloitte had day-to-day contact with members of Autonomy's finance team in Cambridge, including Mr Chamberlain, Ms Harris, Ms Gustafsson, Mr Stephan and (from 2011) Ms Anderson. Deloitte also had a reasonable amount of contact with Mr Hussain, although he was not based in Cambridge full time. Deloitte could and did also ask questions of Autonomy's technical staff (including Dr Menell, Mr Lucini, Mr Goodfellow, Mr Gallagher and Dr

Blanchflower, as to whom see below), as well as the sales staff, such as Mr Egan.

74. Deloitte's audit team numbered around 12 to 15 people. The audit team included:

(1) A lead audit partner/engagement partner. This was Mr Richard Knights ("Mr Knights") for 2009 and Mr Nigel Mercer ("Mr Mercer") for 2010 and until August 2011. In the transition period between those two individuals in Q1 2010 Mr Knights and Mr Robertson were the engagement partners. The Defendants invited me to note that although Mr Welham gave evidence as to judgements that Deloitte might have reached in a counterfactual world, he was a senior manager at the time, and these would ultimately not have been his judgements but those of his superiors (as indeed Mr Welham accepted in cross-examination).

(2) There were numerous accountants below the partner level. In the Deloitte hierarchy directors were below partners. Managers were below that. The professionals in the audit team included Mr Rob Knight (a director), Mr Welham (then a senior manager), Ms Anderson and Mr Murray (also managers). (Ms Anderson moved from Deloitte to Autonomy in early 2011.)

(3) Deloitte's engagement quality assurance review ("EQAR") partners. These provided second partner review and consultation, and were able to meet and ask questions of the client.

(4) Separate to the audit team there was an independent review partner ("IRP") who reviewed the work of the audit team and the EQAR partners. The IRP carried out an objective evaluation of the significant judgements made by the engagement team and the conclusions reached in formulating the auditors' report. The IRP could not meet or have any interaction with the client, so as to preserve their independence.

(5) There was also a professional standards reviewer ("PSR"), who together with the IRP and EQAR also reviewed the audit partner's work.

(6) Deloitte had an internal technical IT expert, Mr Johnstone, who was an accountant but also an IT specialist.

(7) Assistance on request (by either the engagement or EQAR partners) from Deloitte's National Accounting and Auditing technical team ("NAA"). Mr Philip Barden ("Mr Barden") was a partner in that team. He was a member of the Institute of Chartered Accountants' financial reporting committee, a senior person within Deloitte and one of the senior authors of Deloitte's 2009 guidance on IFRS.

(8) Around six people from the Deloitte team worked on site in Cambridge during the audit process. The audit team would always sit in an office close to the finance team, and had free rein to go about and talk to

anyone. Ms Harris's unchallenged evidence was that they were entitled to see anything and everything they wanted in any of the files, and the "audit team would take away revenue and any other files of working papers and review them at their leisure". In preparation for the audit or quarterly review, the finance team would put together bundles for every revenue contract in excess of $100k, including the contract, invoice, proof of delivery and payment history, together with the details of any accounting adjustments. If Deloitte had any questions regarding the wider context of a deal, its commercial rationale, or the features of the relevant products or services, they had ready access to Autonomy's sales or technical teams. They appear to have become almost an adjunct of the finance department.

75. Ms Gustafsson had been at Deloitte, working on the Autonomy audit, before she joined Autonomy. She said in cross-examination that *"the auditors were never isolated from the sort of general finance function and they were able to come and see all of the original documentation that I myself relied upon."*

76. As the audit team worked from the Autonomy offices, most requests were made in person, as the auditors could simply walk over to the desk of someone in the finance function, who could in most instances immediately pull the information required from Autonomy's electronic systems.

77. Mr Welham agreed that the Deloitte team were of high calibre and properly trained and they acted independently, competently and with integrity.

78. As Chairman of the Audit Committee (from September 2010), Mr Bloomer met Mr Mercer, the audit partner, on a regular basis. In unchallenged evidence, he said that he "found Deloitte to be thorough and diligent in their audits"; their reports to the Audit Committee were generally more detailed than he had come across in other audit committee roles, and struck him as *"detailed, open and direct*".

Work undertaken by Deloitte and engagement with finance department

79. Deloitte undertook detailed work not only in relation to Autonomy's annual accounts, but also in relation to its quarterly reporting. They also tested all of Autonomy's revenue transactions over $1m, and a sample of smaller revenue transactions. This covered the bulk of the transactions impugned in these proceedings.

80. Deloitte's audit work for the 2009 and 2010 annual audits was performed in accordance with the International Standards on Auditing. The general requirements of an audit were summarised at §5 of ISA 200:

> *"As the basis for the auditor's opinion, ISAs (UK and Ireland) require the auditor to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements as a whole are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error. Reasonable assurance is a high level of assurance. It is obtained when the*

> *auditor has obtained sufficient appropriate audit evidence to reduce audit risk (that is, the risk that the auditor expresses an inappropriate opinion when the financial statements are materially misstated) to an acceptably low level. However, reasonable assurance is not an absolute level of assurance, because there are inherent limitations of an audit which result in most of the audit evidence on which the auditor draws conclusions and bases the auditor's opinion being persuasive rather than conclusive."*

81. The requirement that the auditor exercise professional judgement and maintain professional scepticism was explained at §7. Professional scepticism was defined as: *"An attitude that includes a questioning mind, being alert to conditions which may indicate possible misstatement due to error or fraud, and a critical assessment of audit evidence."* The requirement to exercise professional scepticism was restated at §15 of the standards. The concept of professional scepticism was at the heart of the audit function, as Mr Welham agreed, and was drilled into the Deloitte team as part of their training.

82. Ms Gustafsson, speaking about her time at Deloitte, also stressed the importance of professional scepticism. She said in practice that this meant that Deloitte could not simply rely on information provided to it by the finance department in isolation, but would need to undertake its own information gathering process, checking contractual documents, making checks directly with third parties (suppliers, customers and technical experts), validating commercial justifications with technical teams, and seeing product demonstrations.

83. Mr Welham agreed that Deloitte did not simply rely on management representations. They looked for other audit evidence where possible. The auditors also had to be alive to anything that might suggest risk of misstatement or fraud, and to exercise a testing and enquiring frame of mind, not unthinkingly accepting what was put in front of them. Mr Welham considered that Deloitte's audit team for Autonomy fully complied with these requirements. Deloitte's audit team also approached the audits of Autonomy with the specific risks of fraud in mind, including risks of management being under pressure to meet various outcomes including financial targets.

84. None of the issues raised in this case was identified by Deloitte at the time as issues of fraud. Nor did Mr Welham consider at any stage that there had been any fraud. He saw nothing that caused him to be concerned that there was fraud at a senior management level as now alleged in this case. Mr Welham subsequently applied for the role as Autonomy CFO, after Mr Chamberlain's departure in December 2011. This would have involved working with Mr Hussain. Mr Welham had no concerns when he applied for that job about the accuracy or integrity of Autonomy's accounting functions. Nor did Mr Welham have any concerns about the ability or honesty of the technical people Deloitte were given access to, including Dr Menell, Mr Lucini and Dr Blanchflower.

85. Deloitte also confirmed to HP during due diligence that Deloitte did not have any disagreements with management regarding accounting policies or conclusions.[13]

External lawyers

86. Autonomy had Slaughter and May as its external lawyers. They were appointed as Autonomy's takeover defence counsel in November 2010 and provided advice on the acquisition process, including the NDA which set out Autonomy's limited obligations to provide information to HP during the due diligence process.[14]

Dr Lynch's role

87. Inevitably, given the dispute as to Dr Lynch's involvement in and knowledge of the impugned transactions and their accounting treatment, there was a dispute as to his role within the Autonomy group.

88. The role of a CEO may of course vary from company to company. But its principal focus usually is to direct the strategy of the company concerned, present and explain that strategy, and create and build the context in which that strategy may be achieved (including by using high level contacts), leaving it to line management to implement the strategy and report on its progress. It is not ordinarily the responsibility of a CEO in a larger enterprise to negotiate or execute transactions or account for them.

89. Dr Lynch maintained that his role in fact conformed to this usual template. Thus, according to his evidence and submissions:

(1) Perhaps the only more unusual aspect of his role was that as what he called a *"true technologist"* he continued to play an active role in product development strategy. This was probably atypical in an enterprise software company (as perhaps illustrated by Mr Léo Apotheker's ("Mr Apotheker") more standard role when CEO of HP).

(2) By the mid-2000s he was not generally involved in sales transactions, and had not been since Autonomy's fledgling days. He did from time to time meet at a high level with the most senior people in the large customer institutions. But he did not deal with the procurement people or with the negotiation of the transactions themselves (as the negotiation and contractual documents confirm in the sense that his name is not on them).

(3) From time to time (and especially towards quarter ends) Dr Lynch was sent lists by Mr Hussain of the large deals which were in the running, although their prospects fluctuated over time.[15] Mr Hussain provided

[13] Mr Welham also confirmed that there were no major disagreements to his knowledge.
[14] Mr Cooke, currently the senior partner of the firm, provided a witness statement which the Claimants did not challenge.
[15] That is not to say that Dr Lynch should be taken to have pored over and absorbed the detail of the long spreadsheets that Mr Hussain sent to him regularly, which he plainly treated as more Mr Hussain's

summary information to Dr Lynch showing expected revenue, and progress towards revenue targets. Dr Lynch was keen to stress in his closing submissions that his interest in having Autonomy meet its revenue and earnings targets was unsurprising for the CEO of a listed company. In general terms, I accept that.

(4) He was not involved in documenting the sales (or purchase) transactions. That was dealt with by the legal department, with some involvement from sales or from the finance department. The emails showed involvement from people such as Mr Scott, Mr Crumbacher and Mr Guiao (legal, in the US). Some involvement from Mr Chamberlain and Mr Stephan (finance, in Cambridge in the UK) is evident. The legal department also interacted with sales personnel such as Mr Egan, Mr Sass, Mr Mooney (all in the US) or more junior sales people. Dr Lynch was nowhere near this process.

(5) Likewise, the accounting for sales transactions was undertaken by the finance department. Decisions on collectability, for example, were taken by them. Their work was closely scrutinised by Deloitte.

(6) With respect to the VAR transactions complained of, Mr Egan had no communications with Dr Lynch about the details of the individual deals. Dr Lynch's evidence was that he had no dealings with any of the resellers themselves.

(7) Dr Lynch did have a role in purchases. For large purchases (which were not repeat business or sell throughs) he was generally one of the people approving. When he did give his approval, it was on the basis that he considered the purchase was a good idea for Autonomy. The Defendants made the point, which I accept, that if the purchase opportunity had been brought by a salesman such as Mr Egan, Dr Lynch's views and motivations in respect of the transaction might not necessarily have been the same as those of the salesman. Moreover, Dr Lynch was not privy to the discussions between the negotiating counterparties; Mr Egan could not give evidence of any discussion or interaction with Dr Lynch in relation to impugned purchase deals that he negotiated (EDD and StorHouse). In each case, Dr Lynch contended that his approval reflected his understanding that the purchase was in Autonomy's legitimate commercial interests.

(8) Dr Lynch did not negotiate the purchases, and was not usually involved in the detail of them. He relied to a large extent on the judgement of others, such as Dr Menell, when approving the transaction. In particular, the technical evaluation of the products was led by Dr Menell, who had a team working under him. Dr Lynch was entitled to rely on their assessments as confirming that the purchase was a sound idea from a technical perspective.

---

way of working than something he had to master: but he did often require, and usually showed signs of having absorbed, a synopsis of such spreadsheets, as I shall come on to illustrate more specifically.

(9) In the latter context, while he is highly able technologically, Dr Lynch was not generally involved in the detail of the technical matters being addressed by the Autonomy technical staff.

(10) Dr Lynch summarised the process for purchases, and his role in it, in his first witness statement:

> *"380. In terms of the process, certain purchases would be signed off by a small group of people and I would often not be informed of these purchases. For example, if Autonomy was purchasing a product for resale to a customer, making a repeat purchase or purchasing something of low-value, I would not typically sign off on the purchase or be informed of it. Thus, contrary to HP's claim, I did not sign off on each and every purchase over $30,000.*
>
> *381. On the other hand, high-value purchases would generally be considered by me, Mr Menell and Mr Hussain, among others. The purchase would be approved by numerous people and the final sign-off would come from me. In deciding whether or not to approve a purchase, I would ask myself whether the product was aligned with the company's strategy and whether Autonomy would be able to use or sell on the product. If the rest of the team had signed off on a purchase and its rationale had been explained to me, I was generally confident that it was a good deal and that a valid need or use had been established. If Autonomy purchased software, Mr Menell or one of the engineers on his team often created a technical analysis paper, either before the purchase or shortly thereafter, to memorialise the decision in a note to the file.*
>
> *382. The purchasing process did not take very long. Unlike many companies, Autonomy could make decisions quickly and projects could be started, paused, stopped or restarted at any time in response to market opportunities. Autonomy was an agile company, operating with little bureaucracy. Once Autonomy had purchased a product, the time it took for Autonomy to use the product varied. Sometimes it could take a few months to assemble development resources and either remove the team from, or let it finish, its work on other products. There were also times where Autonomy made a purchase in anticipation of an upcoming project, but due to changes in priority and market shifts, the project was ultimately abandoned and thus the product was not used in the manner anticipated. This was a reality of being a*

> *company in a fast-moving industry. Nonetheless, it is my understanding that the vast majority of Autonomy's purchases were in fact used."*

(11) Dr Lynch stressed that he did not involve himself in accounting for the purchase transactions which was, again, a matter for the finance department, scrutinised by Deloitte.

(12) Dr Lynch did have a high-level understanding and approval of the strategy behind the hybrid sales in the hosting business. He identified and saw it as a good business move in Autonomy's interest. He maintained that he was not generally involved in the individual hybrid transactions, whether new sales or restructurings, although from a revenue perspective he was made aware at a high level of the progress of some of the large deals that were being negotiated, and sometimes sought to use his contacts in higher levels of management to facilitate them. His evidence was that the detail and content of those deals was the province of the sales personnel, largely operating in the US, and that he was not involved in that nor in the accounting for them, which again was dealt with by the finance department, closely scrutinised by Deloitte.

90. Dr Lynch summarised his role, and his other commitments outside Autonomy, in his witness statement as follows (the detail of which was not challenged):

> *"69. Often CEOs of large software companies are salespeople; I am not. My role was to make sure the processes were in place to enable the company to make the best decisions. I made sure that we had the right people on Autonomy's board, Audit Committee and in management positions. As a true technologist, I had an active role in product development strategy and positioning, which was unusual for an enterprise software company. I worked on the strategy behind Autonomy's product development, the marketing and positioning of the company and telling Autonomy's story, as a statesman for the company.*
>
> *70. My role revolved primarily around setting the strategic direction for the company, making sure we had the right people supporting the company internally and externally, maintaining contact with key financiers and investors and making decisions relating to a wide range of matters that came up in the company's operations day to day. I was very involved whenever the company was considering or making any large, strategically important acquisition (i.e., buying any large company). I generally participated in interviews of marketing staff, but not finance, sales or technical staff. I spent a substantial amount of time staying up to date with technical developments by reading industry publications and attending*

> *conferences. I travelled a great deal, attending conferences, meeting stakeholders and visiting Autonomy's offices around the world. I visited the US for three or four weeks a year. Most of my contact was with the senior management team, but I interacted with many other employees as well, as well as the company's advisers (legal, accounting, PR, etc.). As I explain later, I maintained contact with very senior people at many of Autonomy's major customers.*
>
> *71. No two days were the same, but on an average day in the period between 2009 and 2011, I might meet or speak with Autonomy's management team to discuss any number of issues; attend, and often present at, a tech conference hosted by one of the banks; meet with an investment banker to discuss M&A and financing; attend a results roadshow, a BBC Executive Board meeting or a meeting for one of my other trusteeships. On an average day I would spend much of my time in meetings or on the telephone and travelling. I had a private office in Autonomy's Cambridge headquarters and I also worked in Autonomy's open plan office in London. Although it varied, I would estimate that I worked in the Cambridge office 20% of the time, in the London office 40% of the time and somewhere else the remainder of the time, such as meetings outside the office or travelling abroad."*

91. According to Ms Emily Margaret Orton ("Ms Orton")[16], a Cambridge University graduate who worked as Dr Lynch's assistant from early 2010 for around 18 months, Dr Lynch was primarily based in the London office (as was Ms Orton), and spent only about ten to twenty per cent of his time in the Cambridge office. When in London, Dr Lynch shared an office with Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter (though the latter was usually in Cambridge). In addition to meetings with external parties such as investors, bankers and journalists, and some non-executive responsibilities (including at the BBC), on which Ms Orton reckoned he spent some five to ten per cent of his time, Ms Orton estimated Dr Lynch spent 50% of his time on what she called *"public facing matters"*, rather than operational matters.

92. Dr Lynch accepted that, as CEO, he bore responsibility for Autonomy's financial reporting. But he was not an accountant and was not generally involved in the detail of the accounting or the presentation of the financial reports. His case was that he was entitled to rely on his large and experienced finance function to do that, and was also entitled to take comfort from the scrutiny of Deloitte. He submitted that in this respect the position was no different to any other CEO of a large enterprise: this was illustrated in the cross-examination of Mr Apotheker who described his very similar role as CEO of SAP, in which he also relied on others:

[16] Ms Orton left Autonomy to go to Invoke Capital with Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter, Dr Menell, Ms Eagan on around 23 May 2012.

"Q. So you have familiarity with IFRS?

A. Well, I have some knowledge of how IFRS works, but I'm not an accountant.

Q. Right, but you were the CEO –

A. I was.

Q. So you were ultimately responsible for the accounts, were you?

A. Yes.

Q. But you weren't involved in the process of producing them, is that right?

A. I wasn't involved in the process of producing them. I signed off on them, on the annual report, like any other CEO, and I made sure that we followed through our own control mechanisms through dialogue with the auditors, that we followed all of the right procedures.

Q. So you had no doubt a finance department at SAP, is that right?

A. Yes.

Q. So they would be internal accountants, trained accountants, is that right?

A. Yes.

Q. And then external auditors?

A. Yes.

Q. Who were the auditors?

A. I don't remember.

Q. Did you have an audit committee? Do you have audit committees in German companies?

A. Of course there's an audit committee.

Q. And they would no doubt recommend the accounts to you as the CEO for approval, is that right?

A. They would recommend the accounts -- they would review the accounts and recommend to the board to approve the accounts.

Q. Right.

A. That's the proper procedure. And before that, of course as the CEO I have to sign off on them, together with the CFO by the way.

Q. Right, but you wouldn't be involved in looking at the numbers and deciding what or what should not go into the accounts; that was a matter for the team, who then provided it to you, is that right?

A. That is correct."

93. This picture of him operating much as any CEO would ordinarily operate does not, however, capture the full extent of his role. Dr Lynch does appear to have concerned himself in certain contexts at a more operational level than would be typical of a CEO. It seems to me to be clear, for example, that his careful eye on whether Autonomy was going to meet its revenue targets in the last days of every quarter in the Relevant Period did result in him becoming aware of and sometimes involved in the progress of individual transactions to a greater extent and degree than I sensed that, to take the same example as previously, Mr Apotheker would likely have done.

94. In that connection, the Claimants placed considerable emphasis on a particular comment in a memo dated 23 January 2011 prepared by Deloitte which noted that:

> *"…Mike Lynch has the overall say in what happens to the group as a whole. It is a very unusual level of control for a FTSE 100 CEO to have…"*

95. Deloitte also noted in the same memo that Dr Lynch's approval was required for all purchase orders over $30,000 within the group, denoting a granular approach untypical for a CEO in a large enterprise, and the Claimants pointed to email exchanges with Ms Orton suggesting that Dr Lynch was involved in approving other expenditure of amounts as low as £300.

96. These approval requirements of themselves do not demonstrate involvement in granular detail. Dr Lynch's insistence on strict controls of expenditure was, more likely, a matter of corporate discipline: the need for approval is likely, and was probably intended, to ensure control of spending: but the details of the transactions probably seldom registered with him.

97. I would accept also that the context of the Deloitte memo has to be taken into account. Its accounting purpose was to establish that Autonomy, though it was a conglomeration of a number of acquisitions, could be treated as a company with a single Operating Segment subject to overall central control and direction by Dr Lynch as its Chief Operating Decision Maker (see IFRS 8), and was not stratified or compartmentalised in a way that precluded this. I agree with the Defendants that Deloitte were not saying that Dr Lynch was involved in all the details: indeed, they also noted that:

> *"Mike Lynch also only ever reviews and considers financial and resource information at a group level, with no consideration given to individual product lines or business units."*

98. Nevertheless, the impression I have gained from the evidence I have seen and heard is that Dr Lynch exercised very personal overall control. He was very definitely and insistently at the apex of an unusual management structure in which the non-executive members of the board of directors (from 2010 onwards, Mr Robert Webb QC and Mr Bloomer) were his appointees. He was a very dominant personality. He expected to get his way, and did so. He was resourceful and determined; and he did not expect or tolerate doubts from others as to his chosen strategy, and he expected his strategies to be implemented.

99. IDOL was substantially Dr Lynch's brainchild and Autonomy was, in his perception, his company. Having grown rapidly from being a start-up company, and made a number of acquisitions and launched many new products based on its innovative technology over a relatively short time, Autonomy seems to me to have been run with entrepreneurial disdain for bureaucracy, and with Dr Lynch in active and personal control of strategic direction.

100. There appeared to be no formal committee structure, and the board of directors was not the engine of decision-making. Indeed, it appears to have largely been side-lined, as the dearth of board minutes and the lack of any substantial sign of management direction illustrates[17]. It would be consulted about major corporate acquisitions: but there is no record of it being substantially involved in anything else. None of the Autonomy group companies acted on the basis of resolutions passed by its board of directors. I stress in this connection that

[17] By way of illustration, I found only two references to Autonomy's board of directors in the Claimants' written closing of 2558 pages and 5225 footnotes; and five references in Dr Lynch's written closing of 1692 pages and 4398 footnotes (two describing how it was comprised, and three dealing with major corporate acquisitions described later of (a) a company called Interwoven Inc and (b) a company called MicroLink).

nothing in this judgment is intended to suggest that any of the non-executive directors were implicated in any dishonesty: the strategies developed and now alleged to have been dishonest were not theirs.

101. Dr Lynch ran the Autonomy group informally and through small cliques of loyal lieutenants within the "MRL Leadership Group", namely Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain, with lesser input from Dr Menell and Ms Eagan, implementing decisions at the sales level, and through Mr Egan, Mr Scott and Mr Sullivan in the US. I describe them later as a cabal, of which Dr Lynch, when not ostensibly involved, was nevertheless the éminence grise. The impression I have formed is that his lieutenants would not have done anything of which they thought he might disapprove: and in practice, there was no higher authority within the group to whom they could look to justify what they did. As will be seen in relation to an episode which acquired some importance, when Autonomy's CFO in the USA, Mr Hogenson, questioned certain VAR transactions and sought to refer the matter to the Audit Committee, Dr Lynch was well able to control the process.

102. One consequence of this personal control is that there are limited evidential records of the decision making with regard, say, to certain purchases made, or strategies being contemplated. From time to time, the Claimants sought to rely on this as suggestive of wrongdoing, or as casting doubt on the explanations that Dr Lynch has given for various decisions. The Defendants contended that that is simply the way the group was run. In my view, the absence of a written record in a company run in this way (as I accept that, in general, it was) is not, of itself, indicative of impropriety or desire to leave no record. Something more has to be demonstrated in the particular context. Put another way, the vast bulk of its business is not impugned but was run no differently, and the suggestion that the way of running the business of itself suggests impropriety is untenable accordingly. I would add also that some aspects of the decision-making process were well, even if informally, documented. For example, the wealth of email exchanges illuminate both the hardware and the VAR transactions, and Mr Hussain's end of quarter schedules reporting with increasing focus on any shortfalls in expected software revenue are also illuminating, even if Dr Lynch professed to finding them hard to follow.

103. However, whereas in a more typically run large company, dishonest corporate strategy (as distinct from individual dishonesty) is unlikely because dishonesty is unusual and a board of directors unlikely to be unanimous in its pursuit, in a closely run company it is much more feasible, and much less unlikely. The fact of overall control is also, obviously, relevant to the issue of the Defendants' knowledge.

104. The emails also show that to a large extent Dr Lynch was happy to allow those under him to get on with their roles. The emails also show that it was relatively rare for Dr Lynch to involve himself in the detail of the company's day-to-day activities. When he did become involved this was usually because there was a strategic angle, such as a customer sensitivity.

105. Mr Webb QC gave unchallenged evidence on his own impression of Autonomy's culture. As Chairman, he visited the office from time to time and asked staff about their role and what it was like to work at the company. He said in his witness statement that:

> *"The consistent impression I had was that Autonomy was fast-paced and had an entrepreneurial feel to it. It was hard-driving, competitive and a demanding place to work, particularly in Sales. However, I did not come across anything that crossed the line beyond that. My impressions were that the atmosphere was one of excitement, rather than apprehension and fear. People seemed to enjoy the pace, the ambition of the company, and the challenge and the rigour of working for Autonomy. The Sales' kick-off had positive atmosphere. ... The impression I had was that the sales' force thought they were hard driven but that they enjoyed the challenges and the rewards. They, the scientists and the analysts seemed proud of their products."*

Autonomy's Reporting

106. This section provides an overview of Autonomy's approach to its reporting, both quarterly and annual. Some of the matters discussed in this section will be considered in further detail when dealing with the impugned transactions later in this judgment.

Annual and quarterly reports: Deloitte's review work

107. In addition to its annual accounts Autonomy reported on a quarterly basis. All Autonomy's reports, both annual and quarterly, were subject to detailed review by Deloitte.

Deloitte's review of annual reports

108. Deloitte reviewed and approved the financial statements in the annual accounts.

109. Deloitte also reviewed the narrative portion (the front end) of the reports. When reviewing the front end, Deloitte was required to identify:

    (1) whether any of the information in the front half was materially inconsistent with the financial information; and

    (2) whether there was any matter which came to their attention which caused them to believe that the narrative portion appeared to include a material misstatement of fact.

110. Deloitte's review of the front end followed the ISA issued by the Auditing Practices Board in April 2006 entitled *"Other information in documents*

containing audited financial statements". This required the auditor to read the front end of the report to identify material inconsistencies with the audited financial statements or material misstatements of fact. If any were identified, the auditor was required to resolve them, and if an amendment was necessary and the entity refused to make the amendment, the auditor was required to express a qualified or adverse opinion. See §§2, 11, 12 and 14 of the ISA. At no stage did Deloitte ever identify (other than internally) any material inconsistencies with the financial statements or any material misstatements of fact.

111. Mr Welham confirmed in cross-examination that if Deloitte had seen something in the narrative portion of either a press release or an annual report that they considered was misleading in any way they would have said something.

112. The consequence of this is that many of the Claimants' criticisms in these proceedings relate to presentations which were considered and approved by Deloitte. By way of example, the Claimants criticised the disclosures made and explanations given in the 2010 accounts. However, that document was reviewed by Deloitte in detail prior to sign off:

(1) A copy of the 2010 report is marked by Mr Murray (manager from Deloitte), on 22 February 2011: *"Reviewed throughout prior to sign off".*

(2) That document is replete with tick marks showing Deloitte's review and approval of the statements made in the 2010 accounts.

(3) This extended to the front end as well as the financial statements themselves. For example, and as developed later, the working papers in evidence show Deloitte's review of the data given for various non-IFRS metrics provided under categories now targeted by the Claimants as misleading and another means whereby to conceal the hardware sales: IDOL Product, IDOL Cloud, and IDOL OEM. Deloitte's review involved an analysis of spreadsheets provided by management. Their review involved qualitative as well as quantitative analysis.[18]

113. Mr Welham confirmed that this ticking exercise was part of the normal process. A similar exercise was undertaken for the quarterly reports, as discussed below.

(i) Deloitte's review of quarterly reports

114. Formally Deloitte's work on the quarterly reports constituted a voluntary review. However, as Mr Welham explained at §20 of his witness statement, Deloitte's quarterly review work was substantially similar to an interim (i.e.

[18] For example, the Defendants relied on the equivalent paper for H1 2011 as showing Deloitte specifically considering whether particular revenue was correctly categorised as OEM revenue, though the passive language is unclear whether Deloitte were noting what they were told or bringing judgment to bear.

H1) review. Deloitte undertook to conduct their reviews with an attitude of professional scepticism and:

> *"Reports or, in the case of the voluntary Q1 and Q3 quarterly reports, the recognition and measurement criteria of IFRS"…with the objective of providing us with a basis for reporting anything that came to our attention that caused us to believe that the interim financial information had not been prepared, in all material respects, in accordance with International Accounting Standard ("IAS") 34 (in the case of the H1 Interim Reports) or, in the case of the voluntary Q1 and Q3 quarterly reports, the recognition and measurement criteria of IFRS."*

115. Mr Welham also explained that in practice Deloitte's work went beyond what was required for the purposes of a quarterly or half-year review, and Deloitte used the opportunity to undertake audit work in relation to Autonomy's large transactions, and a sample of smaller ones:

> *"However, in practice the nature of the work we undertook on revenue in relation to our quarterly reviews for Autonomy went beyond what was required for the purposes of a review. We used the opportunity to undertake audit work in respect of all sales made by Autonomy of more than $1m, as well as undertaking audit work in relation to a sample of smaller value sales transactions. This work included tracing the sale to supporting evidence and seeking and receiving third party confirmations. The rationale for our approach was that as part of our audit plan we wanted to undertake audit work in relation to such transactions, and it was more efficient to avail ourselves of the opportunity to progress this work in the course of the quarterly reviews, rather than deferring it all until the year-end. However, as part of our year-end audit procedures we would re-visit the work undertaken during the course of the year."*

116. The process of a quarterly review took around six weeks from start to finish, including the planning stage.[19]

117. Following the preparation of their review, Deloitte would prepare a report for the Audit Committee. That was the Audit Committee's principal, and often in practice only, source of detailed information apart from public accounts.

(ii) Deloitte's review of revenue

118. When conducting its review work, one of the audit risks that Deloitte had in mind was that revenue might be incorrectly recognised. According to their defence in regulatory proceedings brought against them, which Mr Welham stood by, Deloitte considered that they went beyond what was required of

[19] The planning process started before the end of each quarter.

them by testing all licence transactions over $1m and a sample of smaller transactions below that level.

119. Deloitte's revenue testing process involved the audit team specifically considering each of the IAS 18.14 revenue recognition criteria for each transaction reviewed.

(iii) Press releases and earnings calls

120. Deloitte reviewed Autonomy's press releases. If Deloitte saw something in the narrative portion of either a press release or any annual report which was inconsistent with the financial statements or misleading in any way, Deloitte would have said something.

121. Following each quarter, the finance department would prepare a draft press release summarising and commenting on the quarterly results. Deloitte would check through the press release including the non-financial information and the non-IFRS metrics, and would "*tick them back*". The press release would then be provided to the Audit Committee which would consider and then approve the release.

122. An example of this ticking back process is a draft of the Q3 2009 press release. Deloitte ticked off all the financial information given in the document, including (as Mr Welham confirmed) the non-IFRS supplemental metrics which Autonomy chose to provide.

123. Deloitte also listened to Autonomy's earnings calls, and Mr Welham accepted that he often listened in himself. The documents show that someone from Deloitte listened in to the earnings call for each of the calls in the Relevant Period; Mr Welham listened in to almost all of them. The calls that Mr Welham listened to included the Q3 2009 earnings call. If Mr Welham had heard anything that he thought was misleading he would have raised it with his audit partner in the first instance. He did not, and no one else within Deloitte raised any concern arising out of any of the earnings calls, to Mr Welham's knowledge.

(iv) The relevance of Deloitte's review and approval

124. The Defendants placed much emphasis on Deloitte's review work in meeting allegations in this case. Dr Lynch's case, in very broad terms, is first that Autonomy's accounting was fair and reasonable, and the various accounting judgements and decisions inherently involved fell within the reasonable range that was available; secondly that he was unaware of and did not participate in any false accounting, and was entitled to believe, and did believe that the accounting was fair and reasonable; and thirdly, that although the narrative portion or 'front end' of the accounts was not audited, Deloitte were satisfied with both its factual accuracy and its consistency with the accounting information provided in the 'back end' of the accounts (which, of course, was audited). Mr Hussain's case was to the same effect; and in relation to the 'front end' of the accounts, his written closing submissions also relied specifically on the evidence of Mr Welham in cross-examination that Deloitte

were satisfied that the narrative portion of the various quarterly reports was not misleading.

125. The Claimants' answers to this were that the Defendants could not rely on Deloitte in circumstances where Deloitte had been misled; nor where they knew Deloitte to be wrong for whatever reason. If, as the Claimants contended was the case, the Defendants knew that the published information provided was deficient and/or inaccurate, they could not rely on Deloitte's mistaken imprimatur. They acknowledged that if Deloitte were not misled it would be more difficult for the Claimants to prove that the Defendants nevertheless knew them to be mistaken: but on the facts, they contended, that was proved.

Revenue Reporting

IFRS 8: Single operating segment

126. An important aspect of Autonomy's accounting, and one which (especially in the context of the hardware claims) had, in my view, a marked effect on the approach of both Deloitte and the Audit Committee, was that all its business was treated as a single operating segment for the purposes of IFRS 8. The Claimants did not dispute this.

127. IFRS 8 (Operating Segments) was a new provision in the "Relevant Period". It was applicable for accounting periods beginning on or after 1 January 2009 and was therefore applicable to Autonomy's 2009 (and subsequent) accounts.

128. In January 2010, Deloitte's audit team consulted with Mr Barden of Deloitte's NAA in response to a (generic) call by the FRRP encouraging Boards of Directors to test their initial conclusions about their segmental reporting under the (then) new standard. The consultation involved a detailed review of the conclusions that Autonomy's "chief operating decision-maker" was Dr Lynch and that Autonomy had a single operating segment for the purposes of IFRS 8. Deloitte and Mr Barden for the NAA confirmed those conclusions. The conclusions were re-confirmed on further review by Deloitte in November 2011.

129. I shall return to IFRS 8, and to the various further paragraphs within the Standard (and especially IFRS 8.32) when addressing the hardware case (to which it is most relevant).

130. The following synopsis of Deloitte's approach is intended to illustrate Deloitte's perception of the way Autonomy was managed (and of Dr Lynch's role in particular) as well as the rationale of the decision to confirm that Autonomy had a single Operating Segment:

(1) In January 2010, Deloitte concluded that Dr Lynch was the *"Chief Operating Decision Maker"* (which describes a function to allocate resources to and assess the performance of the operating segments of an entity). The basis for this conclusion was that they considered that he had an *"unusual level of control"* and that it was:

> *"very clear that he is actively involved in all areas of the business, making key strategic decisions on areas such as procurement, recruitment, acquisitions and communications with the market and financiers"*.

(2) Deloitte accepted Dr Lynch and management's central assertion, which was that IDOL technology was at the heart of all the Autonomy group's products, and that it was this technology's ability *"to extract meaning from unstructured information which allows Autonomy to grow at such a fast pace."* They accepted that IDOL was at the core of the entire business, and that this feature of being a *"one technology business",* together with Dr Lynch's highly centralised management of the entire group which was not based on divisions or disaggregated data relating to the business activities of the group, distinguished Autonomy from all other businesses in the FTSE 100.

(3) Deloitte's memo of 23 January 2011 (referred to previously at paragraph 94 above) revisited this conclusion in light of various changes including acquisitions and (of particular note):

> *"strategic hardware sales…on the basis that it now represents a relatively significant proportion of Autonomy's business"*.

In that context, strategic hardware sales were described as:

> *"predominantly related to Digital Safe (IDOL) sales and are a means to generate much more lucrative future IDOL software sales"*.

(4) The January 2011 memo also identified three new categories of software offerings which might affect the previous analysis, being (a) *"Power"* (described as being *"an infrastructure platform for understanding human-friendly data"*; (b) *"Protect"* (described as being a *"selection of legal, regulatory and compliance solutions"*); and (c) *"Promote"* (described as being *"a number of multichannel, customer interaction and revenue optimisation solutions").*

(5) The memo noted that whilst this might suggest to a reader of the financial statements and the Autonomy website that there could be three distinct segments of the business, nevertheless all:

> *"Autonomy products are based on the IDOL layer, and as this is pervasive throughout all product categories, this split of products into 'brands' is nothing more than what it appears, a branding exercise"*.

(6) Deloitte noted as further support for the analysis and their conclusion that Autonomy continued to have a single Operating Segment that:

i. Revenue was not broken down between or into products, divisions or brands;

ii. Cash flow forecasts and revenue figures were all undertaken at a group level, which:

> *"further highlights the fact that the way in which Autonomy's business is run is very different to that of any other FTSE 100 companies, with the main focus being on the group consolidated revenue figure"*;

iii. Functions within the business such as sales and marketing and R&D were managed centrally, each by a single member of the senior executive;

iv. The overall organisational hierarchy was very flat, with few middle managers;

v. All purchases over $30,000 had to be approved by the CEO, very few transactions were processed:

> *"without direct authorisation from Mike Lynch being required… This is a very unique and rare situation for a FTSE 100 company to be in, and serves to support the fact that this business is unlike any other in the top 250 listed companies in the UK in the way that it is operated. This top-down, single focused approach to the running of the group is reflective of the fact that the whole business revolves around one core element, being the IDOL layer and it is Mike's intention to continue to evidence strong organic growth in the sales of that core technology"*;

and that;

vi. Of particular interest to the question of disclosure:

> *"no separate information on strategic hardware sales is presented or discussed at analyst presentations; and no mention of these sales/this product offering is made on the company website."*

vii. Deloitte's review also covered §32 of IFRS 8 as it applied to Autonomy. IFRS 8.32 is part of the guidance dealing with "entity-wide disclosures" at §§31-34. The effect of these was to require separate reporting for certain revenues from products, services, geographical areas or customers, even where an entity had a single operating segment. As part of their review work Deloitte specifically considered whether notwithstanding that Autonomy had a single operating segment it was necessary to make separate disclosure of any products under IFRS 8.32. Deloitte considered the question in detail for the 2009 annual

accounts (and revisited their conclusion for the 2010 accounts). Their conclusion, approved by Mr Barden, was that Autonomy's approach of not making separate disclosure of different products, or groups of products, was reasonable.[20]

viii. Deloitte revisited this conclusion in 2010. As part of this consideration Deloitte specifically considered the strategic hardware sales in that year. Deloitte knew that hardware sales were in the region of 12% of Autonomy's group revenues for 2010. Deloitte concluded, again, that there was only one operating segment, and did not require any separate disclosure under §32 of IFRS 8.

131. Thus, in summary, Deloitte's analysis and the conclusions reached in respect of IFRS 8 confirm that Autonomy was run in a centralised and in some ways idiosyncratic way, with Dr Lynch very much at the apex of the management structure, and the Board of Directors and the Audit Committee being more spectators than active participants.

Was Autonomy being prepared and offered for sale?

132. The last topic in this introduction to Autonomy and its business which I need to address before turning to describe HP in more detail is the Claimants' contention that (a) by October 2010 Autonomy's financial performance and share price had slipped so much that (i) it was likely to become a takeover target and (ii) Dr Lynch was put in mind to promote its sale by Mr Frank Quattrone and his company Qatalyst Partners (a boutique investment bank well known for its success in achieving high bid prices[21]); and that thereafter, (b) following meetings between Dr Lynch and Mr Quattrone in late November/early December 2010, Mr Quattrone began approaching the *"acquiror universe"* he had identified (including Cisco, Oracle and HP) and (c) in January 2011 approached HP via HP's then Chairman, Mr Raymond Lane ("Mr Lane"), to encourage interest.

133. The Claimants contended, in effect, that Autonomy was fattened up and marketed for sale. Dr Lynch, however, consistently insisted that he did not want a sale of Autonomy, and would resist a bid if made unless at a price which made resistance futile because it was at a premium that shareholders would find irresistible.

---

[20] This was also summarised in a note to Mr Knights, copied to Mr Welham, from Ms Antonia Anderson on 26 January 2010, although some concern on behalf of Mr Barden about the issue of disclosure is apparent: *"Discussed this with Phil and he agreed that based on their argument that IDOL is pervasive and that decisions are made based on info that is not split by brand it does not seem unreasonable that the information is not available in order to provide subdivision of revenue into product type, but he thought the current explanation should go further to explain why this is not available. Something along the lines of: "Although branded differently, in effect all, customers buy the same one product and for financial reporting the group does not disaggregate into different categories by brand or any other method."*

[21] According to the *New York Times,* Mr Quattrone had become known as *"the go-to-guy for sellers looking to command sky-high prices".*

134. The following summary shows how Dr Lynch moved or was persuaded towards a sale:

(1) On 6 October 2010, Autonomy released its trading statement ahead of its Q3 2010 results. Although the statement highlighted *"record third-quarter 2010 revenues"*, in fact, it slightly missed consensus.[22] Further, the statement included a forecast that Autonomy expected *"to review our internal model for the full year with a revenue reduction of around 3%"*, implying full year revenue growth of 17%. The market had been expecting 21% growth: Autonomy shares promptly fell by 16% and never fully recovered. The headline in the Financial Times on the day of the trading statement read: "*Autonomy slides on reduced revenue forecast"* and the headline the following day (7 October 2010) in the Guardian read *"Autonomy shares plunge on fears of weak US orders"*.

(2) Almost immediately after this Mr Quattrone sent an email to Dr Lynch dated 6 October 2010 headed *"Checking in"* in which he wrote:

> *"saw the news and wanted to offer encouragement and assistance. Many large technology players have been waiting for a crack in the stock and I would be surprised if you didn't receive some overtures. We would be pleased to help you think through and prepare for such an approach…"*

(3) When Dr Lynch asked who would *"come knocking"* Mr Quattrone identified the most likely candidates as *"Cisco, Oracle, IBM, HP (more likely with Leo and Ray Lane)"* together with some less likely *"wild cards"*.

(4) Dr Lynch said that it would all come down to whether someone could offer *"a level the shareholders can't resist"*. In that context, he asked Mr Quattrone *"what kind of prices do you think they can get to?"*; to which Mr Quattrone replied on 8 October 2010 that *"top buyers could pay at least 70pct premium with no dilution even before considering any synergies"*.

(5) After receiving some further marketing material from Mr Quattrone, on 10 October 2010 Dr Lynch sent an email to Mr Quattrone, now with the heading *"CONFIDENTIAL"*, as follows:

> *"If you are saying there are people out there today ready to offer cash of over 26 pounds, we need to rethink the strategy. The London market does not value growth or understand future tech prospects (e.g. we get penalized for cloud revenues!) on that basis given there are no poison pills in the UK it would be*

[22] On the Claimants' case the "miss" was the more notable because it was *"despite revenue being inflated by 27% through the full array of fraudulent mechanisms"*.

like someone turning up and offering a native American chief 3 rifles and some firewater in return for Dakota, in short the shareholders would not allow the deal to be stopped. On that basis I fear you have missed the point and the strategy should be far more about coaxing the right buyer than any futile attempt at bid defence."

[Emphasis as in the Claimants' written closing submissions]

(6) This was of course good news for Mr Quattrone, and Autonomy engaged Qatalyst's services to obtain such a price. Although terms were not finally signed off until 16 August 2011 it seems clear from the available documentation (including exchanges between Mr Kanter and Qatalyst) that Qatalyst's engagement had been informally agreed by late 2010/early 2011.

(7) Mr Quattrone began approaching the *"acquiror universe"* he had identified. He arranged, and attended, meetings between Dr Lynch and key M&A contacts identified in his October analysis, including contacts at Cisco, Oracle, and Mr Shane Robison ("Mr Robison") and Mr Johnson of HP. Meetings were also pursued with some less likely potential acquirers identified by Qatalyst, such as Intel, Adobe and Dell. Other than HP, there seems to be no evidence that any of these potential buyers pursued Autonomy as a potential acquisition[23].

(8) Qatalyst approached HP on 25 January 2011 by Mr Quattrone sending an email to Mr Lane asking to *"discuss… confidentially"* a *"specific [situation] where we have some unique insight that things may be changing"*. The next day, Mr Quattrone emailed Mr Lane slide decks titled *"Autonomy Overview"* ("the January Slides") and *"Autonomy Trading and Financial Statistics"*.

(9) Shortly after sending HP the January Slides, Mr Quattrone spoke to Mr Robison and the two agreed to a *"fact-finding discussion."* Thereafter, Autonomy gave a presentation accompanied by further slides ("the February Slides") which updated the January Slides to take account of the 2010 financial year end accounts which trumpeted *"record full year revenues of $870 million, up 18% from 2009"*.

(10) On 4 March 2011, there was a further meeting between HP and Autonomy at HP's headquarters in Palo Alto. Dr Lynch attended by video link whilst Mr Hussain and Mr Quattrone attended in person. A further slide deck was presented (the "March Slides"). By then HP and

[23] After HP's acquisition of Autonomy was announced, Mr Larry Ellison of Oracle said on a conference call that *"Autonomy was shopped to us"* but that the price had been *"absurdly high"*. Dr Lynch categorically denied this, even suggesting that any approach was unauthorised, which he must have known was incorrect, since he knew that Mr Quattrone had put Oracle's name on a list of the most likely buyers for Autonomy.

Autonomy had entered into a nondisclosure agreement. I discuss later how HP's focus gradually narrowed to Autonomy as its bid target: see paragraphs 153 to 157 below.

135. It seems to me that this short chronological summary demonstrates that Dr Lynch, sometime in October 2010, began actively to contemplate a sale, and through Mr Quattrone, to sound out the *"acquiror universe"* and the possibility of a cash bid at a premium price (of say £26) in light of Mr Quattrone's advice that a very substantial premium might be payable despite the reverses in the previous quarter. In my view, Dr Lynch's insistence in his evidence that he made it clear to Mr Quattrone that *"Autonomy was not for sale"* smacks of protesting too much. I agree with the Claimants that the suggestion that the aim of Qatalyst's approaches was to line up *"white knights"* to ride to Autonomy's rescue if an unwanted suitor bid first is implausible.

136. I have taken into account the evidence of what the Defendants presented as a different perception held by Mr Robert Webb QC ("Mr Webb QC"), Autonomy's non-executive Chairman at the time. Mr Webb QC's evidence in his witness statement, on which he was not cross-examined, was that:

> *"When I became Chairman of Autonomy in May 2009, I was not aware of any need or particular desire on the part of the company's management team to sell the company. That remained the position for the duration of my Chairmanship of the company. It was a public company so management desire would not have been conclusive - shareholders have the final say.*
>
> *My perspective was that the company was doing extremely well and there were no signs of distress to motivate the management to sell the company. Autonomy was never short of cash. Its product was highly regarded and in great demand."*

137. I have no reason to doubt that that was Mr Webb's perception. I should also make clear that I do not think sale was really on Dr Lynch's mind before October 2010. But neither that nor Mr Webb's perception precludes the possibility that Dr Lynch, once he understood from Mr Quattrone the interest that might be generated, also understood that shareholders (of whom he was one, and a major one at that) would ultimately vote with their wallets, as indeed Mr Webb himself there identified. In my view the truth is, to quote Dr Lynch's own words, that the strategy became that of *"coaxing the right buyer"*. I turn to describe the buyer that was found, HP, in more detail.

HP

138. HP was an icon from the first days of the tech revolution in Silicon Valley, Northern California. It too had been a start-up, first housed in a garage which

was the birthplace of 'Silicon Valley'. HP had become a household name, some of its products having become almost synonymous with their function.

139. By the time of the Acquisition, however, HP was in the doldrums. Its heritage was in the hardware sector. This had become a highly competitive and low margin business. In the new computer world, software sales are the source of far greater profitability than hardware and the Cloud is King. HP had a Software division of considerable size; but it was lagging behind market leaders.

140. Furthermore, HP (and by that I include the group) had developed into a bureaucratic inward-thinking institution, which had lost its way and its confidence. Business units were siloed and complex, with infighting and little cooperation between them and poor systems of overall management and strategic direction, as Ms Whitman acknowledged in cross-examination.

141. Appreciating the need for change, HP had instigated *'Project Cielo'* in October 2010 to assess its overall strategy. This was led by HP's Strategy and Corporate Development ("SCD") group[24] and Bain & Company ("Bain & Co"), a well-known strategy consulting firm.

142. Bain & Co identified multiple concerns about HP as at November 2010. These included:

> "*Lack of a unifying pan-HP vision or mission… Long-term strategic plan required*."
>
> "*Declining GM% and P/E multiple, despite significant revenue and EPS expansion*."
>
> "*Portfolio skewed towards declining growth and/or low margin segments. Lack of scale and growth in software*."
>
> "*Power of portfolio not being leveraged adequately*."
>
> "*Weak track record on innovation, incubation & commercialisation*."
>
> "*Short-term, cost optimisation focus… Limited willingness to take risks … hardware-centric approach.*"

143. Mr Apotheker's first task as HP's CEO, which he embarked on even before his formal appointment, was to become engaged in *Project Cielo.* He quickly

[24] According to Mr Sarin's witness statement, which was not challenged in this respect, the SCD group included 30 to 40 people split between two sub-teams: one ("Strategy") focused on corporate strategy, the other ("Corporate Development") on identifying and carrying out acquisitions to execute that strategy. The head of the SCD Group was Mr Robison (who was HP's Chief Strategy & Technology Officer). Mr Johnson led the Corporate Development team (of which Mr Sarin was part, as a Senior Director). Mr Girish Nair was head of the Strategy sub-team. Both Mr Johnson and Mr Nair reported directly to Mr Robison.

agreed with Bain & Co's diagnosis, and its advice identifying what he also agreed were *"real problems for HP at that time"*.

144. The view Mr Apotheker formed, in line with that advice and as a principal conclusion of *Project Cielo*, was that HP needed to use its size, reputation and financial strength to evolve from being a producer of low-margin products and services to become (in his words):

> *"a full services and solutions partner for businesses, providing the essential/strategic parts of the technology "stack" [which] comprises the hardware, software, and network layers that stand between the basic infrastructure of data creation, storage and distribution and the end-user of information."*

145. Further, within the software 'space', Mr Apotheker's view was that HP's focus should be on *"analytics for big data – which is the combination of structured data…and the much faster growing unstructured data set"*: as explained at paragraph 42 above "structured data" being data maintained in a traditional database, and "unstructured data" being all other data including emails, word-processing, spreadsheet documents, video and sound recordings. This was, Mr Apotheker agreed in cross-examination, a *"potentially huge market"*.

146. As Mr Apotheker put it:

> *A. The dominant technology for data at this particular moment in time was to store data in what is called relational databases and for sake of simplicity, consider those to be a Excel spreadsheet, sometimes of monumental size. Unstructured data is everything else, everything covering voice, pictures and what-have-you, everything that you could not normally store in an Excel spreadsheet so to speak. Trying to combine the two would be a natural thing to do because that's how we all live and work and that's what is meant by the integration of these two things."*

147. Thus, Mr Apotheker envisaged HP becoming a one-stop shop for data. Operating across the entire IT stack would enable HP very considerably to increase its overall operating margins. Bain & Co's figures suggested that operating margins should increase from 10 to 15% and achieve 10% CAGR (Compounded Annual Growth Rate) revenue growth. The then recent acquisition of Vertica Systems Inc ("Vertica"), a structured data company that HP had acquired in early 2011, gave further shape to Mr Apotheker's plans for a "complete stack" with a combination of structured and unstructured data.

148. Unstructured data (sometimes referred to as *"Big data"*) formed one of the core areas of Mr Apotheker's plan. Bain & Co also identified "*enhancing*

portfolio for Enterprise Information Management" as one of the primary "*potential areas of improvement"*, in line with Mr Apotheker's view regarding an integrated "stack" of layers of technology providing a complete service for enterprise customers.

149. During 2011 Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison, the chief strategy and technology officer and head of HP's SCD group, identified and analysed a number of possible software targets with a view to assembling the complete technology "stack".

150. Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison initially focused on the possibility of acquiring TIBCO, which was a specialist in "middleware"[25]. A presentation to HP's finance and investment committee, and board, in relation to TIBCO (code named "Tacoma") showed that TIBCO's margins were regarded as being "strong", based on it having 30% operating margins by full year 2015 (current margins being around 25%, as per p.5 of the document). TIBCO's gross margins (actual and predicted) were around 76-77%. HP's discounted cash flow ("DCF") analysis gave a standalone enterprise value of $4.46bn, and a value with synergies of $8.5bn.[26]

151. The board authorised Mr Apotheker to pay up to $36 per share for TIBCO. This would have valued the company at about $6.6bn. It would have involved HP ceding approximately 53% of its anticipated synergy value. In the event HP offered $31 per share, valuing the company at about $5.7bn, approximately $1.2bn over HP's assessment of TIBCO's standalone value, and 30% of the total synergy value.[27] HP subsequently raised its offer (as Mr Apotheker recalled it, to a price of $33 or $34 per share), but could not reach agreement.

152. Having walked away from TIBCO in early April 2011, Mr Apotheker asked the SCD group to increase its focus on other potential targets, including Autonomy and another entity, Software AG. Mr Apotheker confirmed, however, that these were regarded then as alternatives. It was not at the time envisaged that HP could acquire both at the same time.

Identification of Autonomy as a target

153. Autonomy had for some time been recognised by HP as one of the market leaders in unstructured data. In a part of a Project Cielo presentation dated 13 November 2010, entitled *"HP Play: Technology Feasibility"* the highest end of an analysis of what were termed the *"key technology pain points by criticality"* identified the fact that there were *"limited insights from unstructured data"*. The document envisaged that the gaps would be closed by acquisitions in *"BI/Analytics (e.g. Autonomy, Endeca) and middleware*

[25] In cross-examination, Mr Apotheker described "middleware" as being, in simplified terms, *"software technology that sits between the application and the actual data layer and that enables the system to actually work as one"*. "Middleware" was another part or aspect of the technology "stack".
[26] The terminal growth rate used was 4%, and the weighted average cost of capital 10.5%. The 4% terminal growth rate was a rate selected by Mr Sarin's team.
[27] At $34 HP would have ceded more than 40% of the synergies.

(e.g. Tibco)". This objective was put at high feasibility albeit *"based on assumption that target companies indicated can be successfully acquired"*.

154. In May 2011 HP's strategy group developed some preliminary analyses of Autonomy and Software AG. These were presented both to the finance and investment committee of HP's board and to the technology committee. The presentation to the finance and investment committee was on 25 May 2011. That committee's key job was to review acquisitions and asset allocation.

155. According to their analysis of Autonomy (code named "Atlantis"):

(1) Autonomy provided a "*broad range of capabilities across all layers of the Enterprise Performance System stack, focused on unstructured content*". These capabilities supplemented HP's own in all layers of the enterprise "stack". Autonomy was described in the executive summary as "*Anchor asset to secure leading position in the Enterprise Information Management segment*". The executive summary stated, under "strategic":

> *"Anchor asset to secure leading position in the Enterprise Information Management segment - provides key IP for unstructured data analytics; Platform assets for Enterprise Search & Discovery, Backup / Archiving and Content Management.*
>
> *Atlantis addresses a $7.3B market in 2010 growing at a CAGR of 13%*
>
> *Key asset for unstructured data analytics: Intelligent Data Operating Layer (IDOL) technology is the de-facto standard among OEMs and supported by over 130 patents*
>
> *- Ability to extract meaning from information through an understanding of both the content and context of data*
>
> *-Over 400 connectors provide a competitive differentiation*
>
> *Capitalize on the opportunity to bring both structured and unstructured information across business processes*
>
> *Optimize Atlantis' IDOL technology to develop horizontal and vertical business process and analytical solutions."*

(2) The penultimate point regarding bringing structured and unstructured information across business processes chimed with a major part of Mr Apotheker's strategic thinking.

(3) As the "Financial" section of the executive summary explained, Autonomy was considered to have "*strong growth and margins*". HP came up with a stand-alone DCF valuation of $9.574bn based on 10.6% revenue CAGR and 46% operating margin by full year 2016 (i.e. higher operating margins than for the earlier TIBCO analysis).

(4) The presentation set out the synergy assumptions arrived at by HP's SCD group. Mr Apotheker reviewed them and considered them reasonable.

(5) A DCF analysis was also provided. Adding the various categories of synergy to the $9.5bn stand-alone valuation gave a stand-alone plus synergies value at that stage of $15.223bn. The terminal growth rate assumed in the stand-alone value was 4%.

(6) The presentation gave information about the current and predicted scale of Autonomy's markets, as well as market share. This information came from IDC and Gartner, respected independent industry sources.

(7) The presentation also identified "*other potential interested parties*" at p.28. These potential bidders included Oracle.

156. There had been some contact between HP and Autonomy prior to April 2011. This included initial contact from Mr Quattrone of Qatalyst, a video-conference in February 2011 and a further meeting in early March. During this period HP were provided with slides (the "January Slides", the "February Slides" and the "March Slides"), which (as part of their misrepresentation case) the Claimants asserted were misleading (and see paragraphs 3831 to 3872 below).

157. From April 2011 onwards, Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison became focused on the acquisition of Autonomy[28]. Mr Apotheker confirmed that he did not personally really focus on Autonomy as an acquisition target until April 2011, and after the attempted acquisition of TIBCO had failed.

Individuals principally involved

158. Before describing in more detail the development of HP's interest in and eventual offer for Autonomy, a short description of each of the individuals who were principally involved in the identification of Autonomy as a target, the development of plans for the Acquisition, the negotiation of an offer and/or the due diligence exercise undertaken by KPMG on the instructions of HP may assist an understanding of this section.

[28] Consideration was also given to a company called Software AG (see paragraph 181 below).

159. Mr Apotheker became President and Chief Executive Officer of HP in November 2010. He had a strong background in the software sector. He was head-hunted from a company called SAP, one of the largest software companies in the world at the time, where he had (latterly) been CEO. He had a track-record of successful acquisitions for SAP, having led more than a dozen, including SAP's successful $7 billion purchase of a company called Business Objects in 2007.

160. Before his appointment by HP he was asked by HP's Search Committee to prepare a paper that would provide an outsider's perspective of HP. When at SAP he had been the executive in charge of SAP's relationship with HP and had been an admiring observer for many years. His overall view, as expressed in his paper, was that although HP was financially sound, rapid changes in the technology industry represented a significant danger to HP, unless the company could develop and articulate an overarching growth and profit strategy, and rediscover its culture of innovation which had inspired its founders.

161. In Mr Apotheker's assessment:

(1) Personal computer sales (which were the main business of HP's *"Personal Systems Group"* or "PSG") had become a commoditized, low margin business: PSG should focus on the provision of mobile devices (such as smartphones, tablets and notebooks).

(2) HP's Imaging and Printing Group which was responsible for producing printers and inks, needed to adapt to deal with the possibility that printing of documents would become less common.

(3) The most important issues facing HP, however, were in its Enterprise Business, which provided solutions to businesses and enterprises. His prescription was that HP should evolve this business from low-margin products and services to become what he called in his witness statement *"a full services and solutions partner for businesses providing the essential/strategic parts of the technology 'stack'"*. (The 'stack', he explained, comprises *"the hardware, software, and network layers that stand between the basic infrastructure of data creation, storage and distribution and the end-user of information."*) An important element would be to expand HP's software offering to make it a more prominent part of HP's technology 'stack'.

162. Mr Apotheker was appointed on this 'ticket'. He was offered the role of Chairman also, but he refused this (preferring the European model of keeping the position separate) and recommended that Mr Lane be appointed to that position, as he was[29]. Their appointments were announced on the same day, though in fact Mr Apotheker began work before then.

163. Mr Apotheker gave evidence in these proceedings, and was cross-examined for two days. He came across to me as honest and professional, though his

[29] I was told nothing about the reasons for the choice of Mr Lane, nor about Mr Lane's experience, though I gathered it to be in software.

witness statement was over-lawyered. He was palpably hurt by his treatment by HP, which terminated his employment less than a year after his appointment in circumstances I elaborate later. His oral evidence was conspicuously moderate in tone, but he nevertheless communicated to me his experience of HP as an *"intensely political organisation"* with inter-departmental rivalries, set in its ways and difficult to change.

164. Mr Shane Robison was Chief Strategy & Technology Officer of HP and head of HP's SCD group from mid-2002 until November 2011. Before that he had been Chief Technology Officer at Compaq (which was acquired by HP in 2002). Mr Robison agreed with and supported the strategy to move further into enterprise software.

165. As head of SCD, and consistently with Mr Apotheker's prescription for HP, Mr Robison spent substantial time through 2011 analysing (with the assistance of Bain & Co) the software market in general and, in particular, the businesses and companies that had sufficient scale and profitability to be considered a potential strategic fit for HP. Mr Robison was Mr Apotheker's principal assistant in identifying and analysing potential acquisition targets, and they worked closely together in all the preliminary work culminating in the Acquisition (which he strongly supported). He was also involved in direct discussions and negotiations with Dr Lynch. He was selected by Mr Apotheker to be one of the three persons (the others being Mr Apotheker and Dr Lynch) who were to be joint heads of an integration committee which was to be established to steer the Acquisition and realise its objectives and the synergies that were its primary rationale.

166. Mr Robison provided a witness statement which was admitted as hearsay, but, on the basis of medical problems, he did not give evidence otherwise. His witness statement also bore hallmarks of being over-lawyered, especially when stating what his reaction would have been to various hypotheses put to him.

167. Ms Catherine Anne Lesjak ("Ms Lesjak") had been appointed as an interim or caretaker CEO of HP for three months during the search for a replacement for Mr Hurd who had been removed in connection with allegations about expenses. At the time of the Acquisition she was Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer ("CFO") of HP. She was not on HP's board. When HP separated into Hewlett-Packard Enterprise Company and HP Inc in November 2015 she became CFO of HP Inc. She stepped down from that role in July 2018 to become Interim Chief Operating Officer. She has worked for HP companies for more than 30 years.

168. Ms Lesjak's evidence in her witness statement was that she agreed with HP's strategy of expanding its software business. But she was never persuaded by Mr Apotheker's approach. In particular, she had *"reservations about the timing and price of the proposed acquisition, particularly with respect to how stockholders might react and other challenges facing the Company."* There was considerable antipathy between them. Mr Apotheker wanted to remove her, and her job ultimately depended on his failure as CEO.

169. Ms Lesjak was too invested in and loyal to HP to be a reliable witness. She was over-defensive and had a variable recollection of events, especially when they appeared to reveal inconsistency on her part, or to suggest that she must have known about matters that HP claimed had never been disclosed such as Autonomy's hardware sales. She tended to speculate on documents but almost invariably in favour of HP's position.

170. Mr Manish Sarin ("Mr Sarin") was a Senior Director in HP's SCD team from 2010 to 2012 (when he left HP). Mr Sarin had a background in banking (beginning in 1999 when he worked for JP Morgan as an Associate, with employment thereafter by Wells Fargo from 2003 to 2005, and then Merill Lynch & Co where he was promoted to Director in its Technology Investment Banking group). He is no longer employed by HP and he sought to present himself as an independent witness.

171. He was on the software side of the Corporate Development team. He worked with Mr Andy Johnson (whom Ms Lesjak routinely referred to as "Andy" and who was head of Corporate Development), Mr Bill Veghte (who was prior to the Acquisition Executive Vice President of HP's own Software division) and Mr Brian Humphries (Mr Johnson's predecessor as head of Corporate Development, until March 2011).

172. In that role, Mr Sarin was heavily involved in the due diligence exercise prior to the Acquisition, and the evaluation of the potential benefits it could bring HP. He considered that Autonomy *"appeared to be an attractive asset and a great fit for HP at all stages of the acquisition process"*. That view was based, he said, on Autonomy's published information, oral information provided by Autonomy's management directly to HP, and the material disclosed to HP during the acquisition process. His evidence was that he was not aware of any of the matters now impugned in these proceedings.

173. His evidence covered a number of areas of importance, including (a) the processes followed by HP for acquisitions in general and in respect of the Acquisition in particular, (b) how HP came to focus on Autonomy as a target, (c) HP's earlier consideration of a number of other targets, (d) HP's valuation methodology and use of a DCF model both generally and in the particular case of Autonomy, (e) how the DCF model was built up in the case of Autonomy, (f) how synergies were valued, (g) the planning for and the various meetings prior to and during the due diligence exercise, and (h) the process of deliberation about the proposed acquisition and its approval. His witness statement also included paragraphs setting out his view as to how knowledge of the matters alleged by the Claimants would have affected the valuation of Autonomy, and the decision to proceed with it.

174. Mr Sarin attended trial and was cross-examined. He struck me as intelligent and confident, but over-defensive of his role in due diligence and the limitations of it he accepted at the time.

175. Mr Andrew Keir Markham Gersh ("Mr Gersh") is a partner in KPMG LLP in the USA. He joined that firm in 1999, and became a US Certified Public Accountant in 2002. He has retained his licence as a UK accountant but cannot

perform audits or accounting services in the UK. He was familiar with software revenue recognition and US GAAP. In 2011-2012, he was also familiar with IFRS (including its revenue recognition principles) but his primary experience is with US GAAP. Between 2004 and 2011 he worked on at least 50 financial due diligence engagements for HP, working on all of them in conjunction with HP's SCD team and Enterprise Financial Reporting ("EFR") team.

176. He was first contacted to perform financial due diligence on Autonomy on 22 July 2011 by Mr John Blank in HP's EFR team and was told the next day that they would likely have until 15 August to perform financial due diligence procedures. He did not regard that as unduly rushed or unusual. His evidence addressed (a) whether he, his team or HP had any knowledge before the Acquisition that Autonomy was making substantial sales of 'pure' hardware (as distinct from hardware pre-loaded with Autonomy software), which he insisted none did; (b) whether Autonomy's published information disclosed such 'pure' hardware sales; (c) how the due diligence exercise was undertaken, and particular points of focus in the course of it; (d) Autonomy's other business lines, including sales through resellers ("VARs"), hosting arrangements and OEM transactions; (e) the constituents of Autonomy's revenue and (f) why KPMG never provided a final report.

177. He was engaged also in a post-acquisition closing balance sheet project for HP to assist it in understanding Autonomy's closing balance sheet so that Autonomy's financials could be incorporated into HP's October 2011 financial reporting.

178. Mr Gersh was in the difficult position of having to explain why, despite being aware that Autonomy sold some hardware (and having been shown three contracts referencing hardware), KPMG (for whom he was the lead partner in the due diligence exercise) never asked Autonomy how much hardware it was selling. After much prevarication, and what the Defendants described as close to "nit-picking" he eventually had to admit that they did know that Autonomy was selling hardware and had simply assumed that the hardware sold was *"a component"* of sales of software and were thus sales of appliances. (Yet, for example, none of the three contracts appeared to be such sales of appliances.) Both his witness evidence and his oral evidence when cross-examined seemed to me to reflect over-lawyering, and the fact that (so he acknowledged) he had previously given evidence (on 6 and 13 April 2018) in the US criminal trial, had had 5 to 10 meetings with US government lawyers, and had met with HP's lawyers at least 5 times also.

The development of interest culminating in a bid

179. Mr Apotheker first met with Dr Lynch on 12 April 2011. This was the first of a very small number of direct meetings or conversations between Dr Lynch and Mr Apotheker before the acquisition was announced on 18 August 2011. These comprised:

(1) This initial meeting between Dr Lynch and Mr Apotheker on 12 April 2011.

(2) A meeting on 16 June 2011, which according to Mr Apotheker lasted 1½ - 2 hours.

(3) A meeting lasting a few hours in France in late July 2011.

(4) A call on 14 August 2011 when there was final discussion of the price.

180. The meeting on 12 April 2011 lasted about an hour. Dr Lynch was in the US on other business. This was really a chance for two CEOs of technology companies to come together and exchange views. Mr Apotheker formed a favourable opinion of Dr Lynch, considering him very knowledgeable and enthusiastic about Autonomy and its products. He could not remember the meeting in any detail, but according to his evidence they discussed trends in the industry, including unstructured data, amongst other things.[30] Mr Apotheker thought that nothing really concrete was discussed in relation to a possible partnership between HP and Autonomy.

181. The SCD group also provided a presentation about Software AG (code named "Singapore"). The graphic showed that Software AG offered very different capabilities from those offered by Autonomy, with hardly any overlap.[31] Mr Apotheker said that he would have regarded Software AG as a "pure software" or "pure play software" company, although it had a more significant services business. Its anticipated operating margins, at 28% by full year 2016, were far lower than Autonomy's, but still regarded as "strong" in the executive summary at p.3. (In a similar presentation on TIBCO, it was estimated that operating margins would reach 30% by 2015 and that was also regarded as "strong").

182. Present at HP's finance and investment committee were Mr Apotheker, Ms Lesjak, Mr Johnson and Mr Robison. They supported the continued assessment of the potential acquisitions. The minutes of the 25 May meeting record the following, under "M&A update":

> *"The Committee also discussed HP's focus on larger scale acquisitions like Atlantis and Singapore to enhance HP's software portfolio around enterprise information management (EIM), analytics and digitization.*
>
> ...

[30] Mr Apotheker also (initially hesitantly) suggested in this passage that he *"believe[d]"* Dr Lynch had said, in explaining *"how he was able to deliver these kinds of results",* that Autonomy was a *"very focused pure play software company"*. At §38 of his witness statement Mr Apotheker said that Dr Lynch had spoken of its *""pure software" model"*. When cross-examined, he explained his understanding of this to be that *"it's a company that tries to do as much software as it possibly can, to the exclusion of everything else"* and subsequently that Autonomy's *"business model is essentially driven by software and software only"*. The Defendants submitted that this is likely to be something suggested to Mr Apotheker, and his repeated statement that this was something he "believed" had been said indicated that he did not in fact recall it, and it is unlikely that anything of this kind was said. I return to this later.

[31] As Mr Apotheker agreed, Software AG was strong in process management. It was not operating in the unstructured data field, nor doing search or content analytics.

> *The Committee noted its support of management's ongoing assessment of the strategic rationale surrounding executing the acquisitions discussed."*

183. The view was, however, that HP should make the Autonomy acquisition first, and undertake the Software AG acquisition after the Autonomy acquisition. See Mr Johnson's email of 28 May 2011 to Mr Veghte and others:

> *"Board meetings went well. There is some desire to do Singapore after Atlantis so next step is Shane is going to meet Atlantis CEO in London next week to test his desire to engage and then also meet with Singapore's CEO the following week to keep him warm."*

HP's outlook and objectives

184. By the end of May 2011 HP's thinking was accordingly as follows, as Mr Apotheker expressly accepted:

   (1) First, HP had reached the view that unstructured data was important and a growing part of the software market, and that HP had a limited number of capabilities in that field.

   (2) Secondly, HP considered that Autonomy had cutting edge and widely-accepted software which had become an industry standard for analysing and managing structured and unstructured data.

   (3) Thirdly, Autonomy was also attractive in view of the fact that HP owned Vertica, and had SQL database technology, a data management system used primarily by stock exchanges, telecommunications companies and banks for online transaction processing.

   (4) Fourthly, HP thought acquiring Autonomy would enable HP to combine the unstructured software expertise with its own products and offer an attractive product to the market (the integrated or unified information stack).

   (5) Fifthly, HP saw the acquisition as potentially transformative for HP.

185. The deal sponsors at HP were particularly excited about the potential synergies that could be achieved. Mr Apotheker's evidence in cross-examination confirmed this:

> *"Q. Of course, but what was driving it from your perspective was the synergies that you could make out of this acquisition, wasn't it?*
>
> *A. Yes."*

186. HP produced various valuations of these synergies, ranging as high as $30bn. The Defendants submitted that emails in July through September 2011 demonstrate that Mr Apotheker's focus at all times was on the synergies that could be created, and the considerably increased revenues and margins which would result were what drove the deal, rather than the stand-alone value. (This is of considerable relevance to the quantum of loss if liability is established).

187. The Defendants suggested that this may in part explain Mr Apotheker's evidence (to which I must also return later) that although he read Autonomy's 2010 annual report, he did not read Autonomy's 2011 quarterly or half-yearly releases at all. By July 2011, the 2010 annual report was already 7 months out of date. The Defendants posited that the fact that he did not read the 2011 quarterly or half-yearly releases demonstrates that the detail of Autonomy's trading results and metrics were not of great interest to him: what most mattered to him was Autonomy's technology and its potential as a transformative business.

Development of Deal Models and valuations

188. During the summer of 2011, HP's SCD group worked on various DCF valuations of Autonomy. These (which the Claimants called *"Deal Models"*) were prepared by Mr Sarin and his team and their objective was to assess the standalone value of Autonomy. An initial version had been prepared as early as February 2011, and Mr Sarin explained that the valuation went through various editions until 18 August 2011. The elaboration of the valuations is addressed later.

189. By the end of June 2011, both Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison were plainly very enthusiastic about Autonomy as a business. Their focus was on the technology and how it could be combined with HP's assets. Mr Robison wrote to Mr Apotheker on 29 June 2011 referring to a *"REALLY good meeting today*". Mr Robison wrote:

> "*This is our deal if we want it. Mike needs to be in a clear leadership role which I think is a GOOD thing. I would fold Vertica into this going forward and have a REAL leadership position on a combination of search and analytics.*"

190. Dr Lynch had also concluded by this time that Autonomy was a good fit for HP's vision. The combination of HP, their sales force and the Vertica database with Autonomy and its IDOL technology was a sound strategy.

191. Nonetheless, at this stage Dr Lynch still considered it was only possible, rather than probable, that HP would make an offer for Autonomy: he did not consider an acquisition as a real possibility until the meeting with Mr Apotheker in Deauville on 28 July. As he said in cross-examination,

> *"Remember a price hasn't even been agreed at this point and so, in my experience, you often have these kind of*

> *meetings and then a lot of them will fall away when a price is discussed and then a lot of them will fall away after an attempt to renegotiate the price, after due diligence. So when you get to this stage, you probably have a 10% chance of a deal."*

HP's fear of a rival bidder and a takeover battle

192. One of the threats perceived by HP and its advisers was the emergence of a rival bidder. Throughout the process of analysis, and until the announcement of the bid, HP was concerned that another bidder might emerge, which would turn any deal between HP and Autonomy into a public takeover battle. This risk was referenced in Mr Apotheker's email to Mr Robison of 18 June 2011:

> *"Atlantis CEO wants to do the deal with HP and he believes that we are the ideal partner. The concern is an interloper that will turn the deal into a public take over battle with a chance that Atlantis would be in the wrong hands. We should work with a true specialist in local take over practices and we can count on Atlantis support to help structure this in the best possible way."*

193. On 24 June 2011, BarCap gave HP advice on how to avoid a contested takeover, in a presentation headed "Project Plato – Deal Protection Considerations". This was circulated by Andy Johnson, whose covering email stressed the importance of working closely with Dr Lynch:

> *"Given Michael Lynch's ~ 8.5% ownership of Atlantis; board control and critical role as the founder / visionary / CEO- absolutely important to get his buy-in. HP enters into a hard irrevocable with him whereby he pledges his shares to HP (through a call option program). He also needs to have a very strong view about other buyers i.e. "not selling to anyone else"."*

194. The presentation itself noted the need for HP to move rapidly and offer a strong price. It recommended that "*With full Target CEO backing and Target Board support Hercules should move rapidly to formalise an offer and try to avoid a leak*", and again stressed that the "*Support of CEO is key to securing Atlantis*".

Progression of the deal towards an offer

195. There was a further meeting between HP and Autonomy personnel on 29 June 2011. Dr Lynch, together with Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Dr Menell met with representatives from HP's corporate development, software and cloud services teams to discuss how HP and Autonomy might be able to work together. The 29 June 2011 meeting was a high-level strategic discussion about how HP and Autonomy could work together; it was not the forum for

the provision of non-public information and there was no specific discussion at the meeting about price.

196. After the meeting, Dr Lynch had a private dinner with Mr Robison. The dinner was an opportunity for the two individuals to get to know each other and to discuss technology and the future of the technology industry. The meeting was around three hours long. It was attended also by (amongst others) Mr Sarin and Mr Jerome Levadoux (a Vice President in HP's Products, Information Management and Analytics group, and a former employee of SAP), both of whom made a note. Nevertheless, there was a dispute as to what was said:

(1) Mr Sarin accepted that this was a general introductory meeting, and that Mr Robison had been very positive.

(2) While Mr Sarin's notes record some discussion about the level of premium normally payable on a UK acquisition, he accepted that it was possible that was an internal HP discussion after the meeting.

(3) The point most disputed was Mr Sarin's evidence in his witness statement, that he thought Dr Lynch had described Autonomy as a "*pure software*" company. This was not something reflected either in his or Mr Levadoux's notes, and Mr Sarin's memory about what happened at the meeting outside the notes was poor. He said in evidence that he took the phrase *"pure software company"* to mean that Autonomy "*was a company that was predominantly software, sold a small number of appliances and was one of the more scaled businesses in the software industry*". The Claimants relied on this as support for their claim that Autonomy was sold on that basis; the Defendants rejected this as contrived and pointed out that Mr Sarin gave no basis for this very elaborate meaning. Although that elaboration does appear to me to be lawyer-crafted, it will be seen later in this judgment (see paragraphs 3878*ff*) that I have concluded that it is more likely than not that Dr Lynch did describe Autonomy (including to Mr Sarin) as a *"pure software company"* or *"pure play software company"* with the intention and effect of conveying a special selling point, the success and self-sufficiency of Autonomy's software business without the need for other revenue streams.

197. On 7 July 2011 Mr Apotheker asked the corporate development team to think "*aggressively and creatively*" about synergies. Mr Apotheker sought in evidence to underplay this, suggesting that this was "*just one exercise*", that he wanted to "*see how far we could stretch it*" and there was also a very pessimistic scenario. However, the contemporaneous documentation does not support this: Mr Apotheker was asking for more synergies because he wanted the FY14 revenue to be "*much higher than $2.18*" billion dollars. Dr Lynch cited an instant messaging conversation between Mr Sarin and Mr Levadoux, which ran as follows:

"[Sarin:] Leo has given some directional feedback

[Levadoux:] You want to call me now for 5 minutes? on my cell? I actually called HPK so I have some feedback too ...

[Sarin]: we just need to come up with more synergies

i don't have too much more color

he wants the FY14 revenue number to be "much higher than $2.18", which is where it is today".

198. Consistently with that, Mr Apotheker also asked Mr Risau (his Chief of Staff who had been COO at SAP, and CFO of a division but who was not part of the SCD group within HP) to look at synergies.

199. Mr Apotheker was not the only one pushing for higher synergies. A little earlier, according to a message from Mr Levadoux sent on 2 June 2011, Mr Bill Veghte (then Executive Vice President, HP Software) had "*challenged us to think how we can turn this into a $5B business (versus current assumption of $2B-$2.5B by 2015 with synergies)*".[32]

200. The SCD group prepared a further valuation in July with new figures for synergies. A tab named "Waterfall" in this spreadsheet posited a standalone value of $10.324bn. The identified synergies brought the value with synergies to $27.835bn. Mr Sarin described this in his witness statement (reflecting the filename of the relevant valuation model) as "*the "aggressive" synergy case*", and said that he thought it was not included in any of the decks subsequently provided to the board. In fact, certain revenue projections (of revenue, gross and operating profit, gross and operating margin, net income and net margin and EPS) which were modelled on *"Divesting Poseidon* [HP's Personal Systems Group] *and winning in the Big Data Analytics market"* were included in the deck presented to the board at its meeting in July 2011, as Mr Sarin accepted in cross-examination, although he also maintained that he only subsequently became aware of this when it was pointed out to him when he was preparing for his cross-examination. This was known either as the *"aggressive synergy case"* or as the *"Transformational case"*

201. Mr Apotheker's presentation to the Board did not address valuation; but it did refer to the possibility, under what he referred to as the *"transformational case"*, of total revenues of $6 billion in 2014. That compared to a base case projection of revenues in 2014 of $2.2 billion. Mr Apotheker had asked the SCD to model what the total value of Autonomy inclusive of synergies would have been on the basis of that *"transformational case"* and revenues of $6 billion, which had led to a DCF valuation of $46.589 billion (including synergies of $30 billion). Mr Robison had commented that he thought that this figure, which was premised on HP *"winning in the Big Data Analytics market"*, *"may be a bit much"*, and that more work would be required *"to*

[32] The references to numbers were to revenues.

make sure this is credible." I accept that the $46 billion valuation was never shown to the Board.[33]

202. HP's growing enthusiasm for the acquisition exacerbated apprehension about the threat of a rival take-over bid from an "interloper", in particular, Oracle. On 15 July Mr Robison provided Mr Apotheker, Ms Lesjak and others with summary points drawn up by Mr Johnson from an "Interloper Analysis" prepared by BarCap. The analysis had addressed how Oracle might interfere with HP's process. One of the points made related to due diligence. Mr Johnson wrote:

> *"O* [i.e. Oracle] *can say they are interested after we announce and get access to all the diligence we have received so the takeaway is to be careful about our diligence so we don't enable O to get a deep dive on sensitive data."*

203. Later, on 27 July, Mr Robison provided Mr Apotheker with a presentation from BarCap on Oracle's usual M&A processes, again reflecting HP's concern about a competitive bid from Oracle.

Consideration of potential offer by HP's board and their financial advisers

204. HP's board held a strategy meeting on 19 to 21 July 2011. This was a crucial meeting for HP because it was deciding on its future strategy. Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison were recommending not only the acquisition of Autonomy, but also the hiving off of the PC business (referred to as the "PSG" personal services group), amongst other things. The PC business had been part of HP's DNA.

205. As to Mr Apotheker's presentation to the board:

(1) In line with earlier documents, his proposal was that: "*HP will be the leading provider of information solutions on-premise and in the cloud*." The value proposition included "*Disruptive business intelligence and big data analytics stack.*"

(2) He advised the board that decisions needed to be made urgently, or immediately:

> *"Current challenges and timing pressures force some*

[33] Mr Apotheker told the Board of HP at the time that the business case for the Acquisition hinged on synergies. In an email to Mr Lane dated 5 September 2011 (and thus after the Acquisition, abut before his removal as CEO) Mr Apotheker reminded him that *"Autonomy makes total sense if one believes that HP can generate the synergies we build into our business plan. The quality of the synergies is high: you will remember that they exclude any drag-on revenues related to additional hardware sales and we only included a very small drag-on effect for services. All the other synergies are driven by leveraging the IDOL platform, combining it with HP IP/R&D, deeper penetration of existing markets and significant and identified upsell/cross sell opportunities…I for one, and so does my team, firmly believe that we can achieve these synergies in the allotted time frame."* The email chain was forwarded to Ms Whitman by Mr Lane on 25 September 2011 (after Mr Apotheker had been removed).

immediate choices- Management recommendation

- *Shift portfolio mix towards higher growth, higher margin businesses (e.g., Software)*
- *Decrease exposure to commoditizing, low-margin end-user devices*
- *Decrease dependency on consumer markets; focus on commercial…"*

(3) The first bullet point related to the Acquisition; the second and third to the hiving-off of the PSG business. The rationale for "*acquiring [Autonomy] now*" was set out in the document. The aim was to build a leading position for HP in enterprise software with the acquisition of Autonomy. Mr Apotheker's presentation explained about the creation of a data stack involving structured and unstructured data, and combining Autonomy's business with Vertica and HP's assets:

> *"Legacy business intelligence paradigm is shifting to "big data" paradigm*
>
> *- Explosion in volume and types of data sets (primarily unstructured) not suitable for traditional relational databases*
>
> *- Increased focus on integrating structured and unstructured data to enable richer, more actionable insights*
>
> *- Shift from historical analysis (reporting dashboards) to predictive analytics*
>
> *- Growing demand for real-time analytics*
>
> *The combination of Atlantis, Vertica, and HP's Open Source Database provides HP a disruptive data stack*
>
> *- Atlantis is the equivalent of Google for unstructured data (de-facto standard platform among Original Equipment Manufacturers for unstructured data analytics)*

> *- Vertica is an in-memory, compressed columnar database that can run real-time analytics on big data*
>
> *- HP is creating an open source database (based on our non-stop architecture)*
>
> *- The combination of these assets enables HP to integrate structured and unstructured information and enable enterprise search & discovery, content management, and real-time analytics on big data*
>
> *HP can build a leading position in Enterprise software via Atlantis acquisition"*

(4) The analytics market that HP was targeting was estimated as being a $31bn market.

(5) The board were told that Autonomy was the best option, having been tested against other potential candidates: Software AG and TIBCO were specifically identified (by code name) as other candidates which had been evaluated.

(6) The board were provided with Mr Apotheker's financial projections for the "transformational case" (including both the Autonomy acquisition and the PSG divestiture). The 2014 projections were based on the $6.1bn figure for Autonomy revenue (with synergies) that Mr Apotheker had previously targeted and which the SCD group had provided for him. When cross-examined, Mr Apotheker accepted that he thought that this was realistic, and that a statement in his witness statement (which he had repeated earlier in his testimony) that the *"more aggressive scenarios"* formed no part of the business case presented to the board were *"obviously"* inaccurate. However, he stressed that this was *"the theoretical potential highest number that we could achieve"* and assumed *"winning in the Big Data Analytics market"*: the *"base case"* forecast $2.2 billion of revenues in 2014 (taking into account expected synergies).[34]

(7) Mr Apotheker's proposal was to announce the intention to divest PSG simultaneous with the announcement of the Autonomy acquisition in mid-August. This was intended to coincide with the announcement of HP's Q3 results.

(8) The proposal was that in the following 6-12 month period HP would "*evaluate additional software targets such as [Software AG] and [TIBCO]*".

---

[34] It was the lower figure of $2.2 billion forecast revenues in 2014 which was used as the input for the DCF valuation, which attributed a stand-alone value to Autonomy of $10.3 billion and a value inclusive of synergies of $17.6 billion.

206. Perella Weinberg Partners were one of the two banks advising HP at the time. Mr Apotheker considered them competent and good at their job. They also made a presentation to the board. Perella Weinberg endorsed the strategy, and agreed that the intention to acquire additional software capabilities was critical to fulfil HP's vision and drive margin and growth. In their executive summary (dated 20 July 2011) their advice began as follows:

> *"We believe Hawk's strategic vision of leveraging Cloud, Connectivity and Software to provide seamless, secure and context-aware computing to enterprises and consumers as articulated in March is credible and well-conceived*
>
> *- Company's stated intention to acquire additional software capabilities is critical to fulfill its vision and drive margin and growth".*

207. Mr Apotheker told me that he agreed *"essentially"* with this assessment.

208. Perella Weinberg also noted that HP's management had reviewed other M&A targets but few were "truly transformational", unlike the Autonomy acquisition.

209. Perella Weinberg also noted HP's current difficulties, which put it in a "*precarious position*":

> *" Hawk is currently in a precarious position*
>
> *- Recent underinvestment has weakened Company's innovation credentials*
>
> *- Significant headwinds across multiple businesses; management changes and departures*
>
> *- Undermined investor confidence and credibility following two revisions of earnings guidance; uncertainty regarding Q3/4 and FY2012*
>
> *- Business will require considerable time to turn around*
>
> *- Current Hawk market valuation at bottom compared to peers, significant discount to sum-of-the-parts valuation"*

210. According to Mr Apotheker, the reference to "*uncertainty regarding Q3/4 and FY/2012*" arose because "*it appears that HP's forecasting capabilities and abilities under the CFO were not very good*". He told me that he considered

that "reality" had proven the CFO to be *"very bad at forecasting revenues"*. It appeared that there were tensions even at this stage between Mr Apotheker and Ms Lesjak (the CFO); and a little later, she and Mr Apotheker had a serious falling out with pivotal repercussions, and he considered her to be trying to undermine him and the transformational project from the beginning. Mr Apotheker also complained about the inaccuracy of Ms Lesjak's "flashes" (which he explained are forecasts of an immediately expected result).

211. Mr Apotheker agreed that the business would take a considerable time to turn around. The margins of the PC business were as high as they could ever get and could only deteriorate. The services business was also low margin and HP's corrective measures would take a long time. More than 70% of HP's revenues were accordingly either deteriorating or only very slowly improving.

212. Perella Weinberg also explained why the release of the Q3 results was an important "catalyst", and it was advisable to announce the acquisition at the same time as releasing the results, which were anticipated to be poor. Mr Apotheker also thought this was a good idea. The executive summary made the following points. Mr Apotheker agreed with all of them at the time (save that he did not confirm his agreement to the last point):

> *"Release of Q3 results potentially an important catalyst*
>
> *- Results will be heavily scrutinized*
>
> *- Financial business initiatives (e.g., share repurchases) are unlikely to address business fundamentals*
>
> *- Likely to prompt revision of FY2012 estimates and price targets*
>
> *- Pressure on share price potentially significant*
>
> *- Increased risk that vocal/activist shareholders come forward with public challenge/criticism and/or specific suggested strategic initiatives (e.g., break-up)*
>
> *- Potential threat of contesting board seats and/or proxy challenge".*

213. Perella Weinberg considered that HP would find it hard to "execute out" of this predicament on a timely basis, a point that Mr Apotheker agreed with. They also considered that in the near-term HP could not organically or incrementally address its fundamental challenges in a meaningful way. Mr Apotheker thought that this might have been possible, if HP had been given enough time, although this was something that the markets would react

negatively to. Thus it was never anything he suggested to the board and as he said in cross-examination he "*shelved that idea"* in his own mind.

214. Perella Weinberg made further recommendations with which Mr Apotheker also agreed, including the divestiture of the PSG group, and the announcement of that with the Q3 release. They also recommended that HP pursue the Autonomy acquisition expeditiously as a "*critical offensive move*" and a "*unique opportunity to reposition [HP] as the undisputed leader in context-aware computing*".

215. Perella Weinberg also adverted to the interloper risk, stating:

> *"Given UK takeover framework and potential interloper interest, the acquisition of Atlantis is not without risk; however, strength of Hawk's strategic rationale and value creation potential provide for very competitive positioning and firepower".*

216. The Defendants suggested that this was a reference to HP being in a position to knock out the competition with the size of its bid. Mr Apotheker thought that was one way of looking at it, but that another way was that another interloper (such as Oracle) with *"overlapping interests"* might have to divest or restructure and would thus not be able to make the same kind of offer.

217. However, Perella Weinberg also warned of the impact on the investor community and the real possibility of a hostile reception.

(1) First, they warned that the markets could react badly to the announcement:

> *"Confluence of Q3 and FY 2012 prospects, portfolio realignment and pro-forma impact potentially dislocating share price temporarily"*

Indeed, Mr Apotheker confirmed that this was actually his expectation.

(2) Secondly, they advised that the changes could "*catalyze fundamental re-rating*" and shift HP's shareholder base towards a more growth oriented profile i.e. moving away from value investors to growth investors, which as Mr Apotheker acknowledged would be good for HP.

218. Perella Weinberg in addition stressed the importance of flawless execution and management devotion to the integration and transformation:

> *"Combination of persisting challenges in existing core businesses, extraction of Poseidon and integration of Atlantis would demand flawless execution and significant senior*

> *management bandwidth while integration and transformation progress remains under heightened public scrutiny".*

219. As Mr Apotheker put it:

> *A. A proper integration plan, a proper extraction plan of the PC business, execute this to close to perfection and while at the same time continuing to run the existing business.*
>
> *Q. So it would be important for management to make these changes a top priority?*
>
> *A. Well, it would mean that management would be basically focused on these two changes, making sure that the existing business continue -- or the remainder of the business continues to run as well as possible. There were other changes that were required and all of this has to happen in [a] nicely synchronised way and would have been a lot of work.*

220. Mr Apotheker thought that he was the man to carry out this dedicated integration work, along with Mr Robison and the team. As elaborated below, in the event, shortly after the bid, and before the Acquisition had completed, HP jettisoned Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison, and according to the Defendants, did not give the integration anything like the priority and focus that Mr Apotheker and Perella Weinberg had envisaged.

221. After Mr Apotheker and Perella Weinberg had made their presentations on 20 July 2011 there was a board discussion. The board authorised Mr Apotheker and other members of management to pursue the Autonomy acquisition (code-named Project Tesla) with a maximum price of $11.7 billion. This was substantially in excess of HP's stand-alone valuation of Autonomy of $10.324 billion. (The same valuation showed an aggregate value plus synergies of $17.596 billion.) It was also at a significant premium to Autonomy's market capitalisation. The board also authorised Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison *"and other members of HP management"* to assess the potential divestiture of the PSG group (code-named Project Hermes), with a view to announcing this (if approved by the Board) at the Q3 earnings announcement.

Negotiation of the price

222. There were two phases of the discussions about price. The first was in July 2011. The second was in August 2011. Certain parameters framed HP's approach:

(1) First, HP realised that they needed to pay a substantial premium over market capitalisation in order to secure the asset. They also perceived that they needed Dr Lynch's support for the acquisition to go ahead:

they had no appetite for a contested bid, and they wanted him to stay on after the acquisition.

(2) Secondly, HP knew that (assuming Autonomy's financial position, performance and prospects to be as depicted in its published information) Dr Lynch would not go below £25 per share. He had made that clear, and seemed in no hurry to sell.

(3) Thirdly, HP had determined that Autonomy "uniquely" offered the transformational opportunity that HP needed, and that HP could not delay. HP were prepared to pay a price above Dr Lynch's floor even after Autonomy's share price had declined, such that the implied premium increased from that implied by the range of values originally agreed with Dr Lynch at the end of July.

(4) Fourthly, HP were not wedded to obtaining any particular proportion of the expected synergies on an acquisition, and had been prepared to cede 53% of their anticipated synergies in the proposed acquisition of TIBCO.

(5) Fifthly, HP wanted to avoid competitive bids. They were worried that there would be interlopers, including Oracle, and were prepared to pay a "compelling price" to forestall a bidding war.

July 2011 negotiation

223. Mr Apotheker recognised that he would have to pay a *"control premium"*, which would in the ordinary course be "*at a bare minimum*" 30%, and could be significantly higher *"depending on the quality of the asset"*.

224. He emphasised that he looked at two things: (a) present value as a stand-alone business and (b) synergies to be expected in the future. The acquiring company would wish, of course, to retain as much of the synergy value (which equally obviously depended on its own assets and effort) as it could. The company proposed to be acquired would regard synergy value as justifying a higher price (i) because of its value to the acquiring company, for which it ought to be willing to pay and (ii) because the value that it can provide is a valuable attribute of the business which should also be reflected in the price.

225. Mr Apotheker met with Dr Lynch in Deauville on 28 July 2011. It is common ground that they discussed the following:

(1) The strategic rationale of the deal.

(2) The integration of Autonomy, which would involve Autonomy being a semi-autonomous company within the group. Mr Robison had made it clear that if Autonomy was integrated into the greater HP group, the "*immune system*" of HP would kill Autonomy off and the value would be lost, as in other acquisitions.

(3) Dr Lynch's role, which would involve him being in charge of the software assets of HP, including the Vertica business. This was

appealing to Dr Lynch, given his passion for Autonomy's software and the technological synergies that could be created in combination with HP.

(4) Mr Apotheker confirmed that at this meeting they agreed that Dr Lynch would become head of HP's software business in place of Mr Veghte.

226. The position from Dr Lynch's perspective, based on his first witness statement, can be summarised as follows:

(1) He had not been looking for a sale[35], but HP's proposition was exciting. As regards his personal position Dr Lynch was already a successful and wealthy man. He had already sold a large part of his shareholding in Autonomy over time.

(2) However, he thought that Autonomy was a potential takeover target in any event, and had been advised as such by Mr Quattrone towards the end of 2010. If HP were to offer a premium of 60% or more, Dr Lynch knew that resistance to an offer would be very difficult.

(3) Having met with Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison, Dr Lynch saw HP as an attractive bidder. He could see the merit in the potential combination with HP and the integration of Vertica, and access to HP's much larger sales channels could take Autonomy to a higher level: HP could provide the firepower for Autonomy to take on competitors such as Oracle.

(4) After Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison explained to Dr Lynch that they would want him to stay on, and to lead Autonomy as a semi-independent company under HP's aegis, Dr Lynch expected to be working with HP during the years after the takeover, continuing to develop Autonomy's business as part of a larger group.

227. Price was discussed at this meeting for the first time. Dr Lynch had been pressing for £27 per share. It was agreed that if HP was to acquire Autonomy, HP would need to offer a price in an agreed range. Dr Lynch's recollection was that this range was between £25.50 and £26.50 per share. Dr Lynch considered that management would not have the ability to resist a deal within that range and Dr Lynch would recommend such an offer to shareholders.

228. Dr Lynch's unchallenged evidence is that:

(1) First, he was not willing to recommend the sale to Autonomy's shareholders unless they were getting what he believed they deserved, which needed to be an exceptional offer which accounted for the bright future of the company.

---

[35] As I explained earlier, HP did not accept this. Part of their case was that Dr Lynch had planned a sale with the encouragement of Mr Frank Quattrone and his boutique investment bank called Qatalyst Partners, which from late 2010 was "shopping" Autonomy to the *"potential acquirer universe"* including HP.

(2) Second, that as Mr Robison and Mr Apotheker knew, Dr Lynch would not be willing to support a bid below £25 per share.

229. Moreover, from HP's perspective, it was a condition of any offer that Dr Lynch would recommend the bid: they were not willing to embark on a hostile takeover without him; it would have been impossible to put Dr Lynch in charge of the business if he had not recommended it; and the whole thing required his agreement. This is borne out by events in August, when HP were considering the renegotiation of the acquisition price in light of falls in Autonomy's share price.

230. As previously explained, HP were at all times conscious of the interloper risk. Part of their strategy for dealing with that risk was to make a compelling offer, which was the "*highest logical price that still made sense in order to discourage everybody else*".

231. On behalf of HP, BarCap prepared a draft Letter of Intent dated 28 July 2011 which set out the strategic rationale for the sale as follows:

> *"As the business intelligence paradigm shifts to "Big Data", real-time and predictive analytics, we believe a unified analytics solution can be built around HP's technology assets coupled with Autonomy's structured and unstructured capabilities. In addition, we believe there will be opportunities to leverage HP's global channel relationships and technology assets with Autonomy's solutions to deliver end to end information lifecycle management and content analytics solutions tailored to various industry verticals and lines of businesses."*

232. The draft letter stated: "*HP would be prepared to make an all cash offer to acquire the entire issued and to be issued share capital of Autonomy at a price of between £24.94 and £26.94 per share*."

233. Dr Lynch commented that:

> *"At this range, I knew management would have no ability to resist HP's offer. This was precisely the scenario Mr Quattrone predicted toward the end of 2010, when we discussed market changes and the need to take defensive steps against a bid taking advantage of the US-UK valuation differential. A premium of over sixty per cent (60%) to the London market price would inevitably lead to the company being sold. Whether we liked it or not, Autonomy was "in play" as an acquisition target."*

HP's Due Diligence and KPMG

Summary

234. HP's agreement to the deal was subject to due diligence. HP's due diligence took place from 1 to 18 August 2011. HP was assisted by KPMG and had advice from two investment banks. When asked about this process, Mr Sarin described it as "*confirmatory due diligence*", that is to say, a process that took place after the agreement on price:

> *"You're trying to confirm certain things that you've made assumptions on, either in your model or your business case, your understanding of the business. And you recall before the July 29 meeting there was a letter of intent submitted to the Autonomy board of directors, so at some level there is an agreement on price so you are now digging into the details of what is this business all about? Does it sort of jive with our understanding of the business, just looking at information in the public domain."*

235. It was agreed to use oral discussions (by telephone) as much as possible to minimise the generation of hard-copy materials that might have to be provided to competing bidders under the Takeover Code. There was a dispute as to whether it was HP or Autonomy who asked for this. Mr Apotheker insisted in cross-examination that the request came from Dr Lynch and that HP agreed only *"because we were respectful of Autonomy's desire to keep sensitive data out of the hands of competition"*. However, an internal HP email dated 15 July 2011 from Mr Johnson to Mr Robison headed *"Interloper Analysis"* suggests that, amongst other concerns as to *"how the O company might interfere with our process"* HP was much concerned about the possibility that Oracle might get access to *"all the diligence we have received so the takeaway is to be careful about our diligence so we don't enable O to get a deep dive on sensitive data"*. It seems to me likely, and I find, that it was a matter of joint concern and common interests, that HP raised the issue and Autonomy readily agreed.

236. Dr Lynch played a very limited role in the process. The Claimants do not advance any claim against him in respect of the due diligence process, or anything said to HP during it: although various misrepresentations were allegedly made by Mr Hussain in the process, none is alleged against Dr Lynch. It is, however, alleged that he made a representation about HP's ability to rely on Autonomy's accounts at a meeting shortly before due diligence began, on 29 July. Later in this judgment I address broader issues relating to inducement and reliance in the various contexts in which they require to be considered (and see, especially, paragraphs 478 to 522 on the tests of reliance applicable in FSMA claims; paragraphs 3236 to 3252 in respect of the misrepresentations concerning Autonomy's OEM business; paragraphs 3979 to 3988 in respect of the direct deceit/misrepresentation claims; and paragraphs 3944 to 4055 in respect of the FSMA claims); but the following should be noted in relation to the due diligence process itself.

237. First, the process was, in Dr Lynch's view rushed; but the timetable was set by HP. Dr Lynch's position was that at no stage did he attempt to inhibit the due diligence process. It was not disputed that Autonomy refused to make available Deloitte's working papers to HP: but Mr Gersh of KPMG advised

and Perella Weinberg confirmed to HP that it would have been unusual if working papers had been provided in a transaction of this type. Further, Dr Lynch was content for KPMG to speak directly to Deloitte.

238. To the extent that HP did limit its exercise the Defendants suggested that this was their decision and it reflected two related facts:

(1) First, that HP was (at least until it had second thoughts) committed to the bid. The HP decision makers had relatively little interest in the outcome of the due diligence (at least in relation to financial aspects:[36] by contrast, technical due diligence, the solidity of the IP rights and the like were closely scrutinised).

(2) Secondly, HP was concerned about an interloper having access to Autonomy's information, which given HP's commitment to the bid was undesirable: that militated against a long process, especially since (as Mr Cooke explained at §10 of his (unchallenged) statement), due diligence in a public company takeover in the UK is relatively limited (in contrast to the acquisition of a private business) because of the Takeover Code requirement of equal access to all bidders.

239. HP was able to ask for all the information it wanted to during the due diligence process:

(1) HP was the buyer. It could ask any questions, or insist on any information, that it felt was necessary if it wanted to proceed with the bid.

(2) HP and KPMG had access to Deloitte. They were able to ask Deloitte about all aspects of Autonomy's accounts.

(3) From HP's perspective it was satisfied that it and KPMG had carried out all the due diligence they wanted to carry out.

(4) HP was able to take advice from two investments banks, who were satisfied that the deal was at fair value.

240. Secondly, the Defendants made three forensic points as follows:

(1) It was always obvious to Dr Lynch that any acquiror would want to do due diligence, and would insist on all the due diligence that it considered that it needed, and ask any questions that it liked (which is exactly what HP did). They submitted that this makes it most improbable that Dr Lynch could have been involved in, or aware of, any fraud.

(2) Similarly, it was always obvious that as the acquiror HP would have complete access to Autonomy's books and records after the acquisition. (Further, one would expect any competent acquiror to check its own books to see what business it did with the target, as well

[36] Mr Apotheker did not read the KPMG draft due diligence report on the financial aspects.

as talk to joint customers about what they bought from the target.) The Defendants submitted that in these circumstances, it would have been futile deliberately to conceal any of Autonomy's transactions.

(3) In any event, it could never have been assumed in advance by Dr Lynch that due diligence would necessarily be limited. If, as the Claimants contend, he had been consciously involved in a misreporting of Autonomy's business, the correct position would have been expected to be revealed.

Due diligence timetable

241. An internal HP preliminary due diligence timetable circulated on 30 July 2011 envisaged due diligence being conducted between 29 July 2011 and 18 August 2011, when there would be signing of the definitive agreement. Mr Apotheker's evidence was that *"the plan was to do proper due diligence, if possible, to finish it by the 18th"*. 18 August 2011 was the day on which the Q3 results were to be announced. In the event, due diligence did not begin until 1 August.

242. Dr Lynch regarded this as an extremely rushed timetable: as he said, he had *"never seen a deal done at this speed"*. But in cross-examination he explained that he thought the timetable was simply to motivate the team to get on with it: *"I thought they absolutely knew it wasn't going to happen…"*.

243. On 3 August 2011, Autonomy and HP entered into a letter agreement by which Autonomy agreed not to solicit, initiate or encourage an offer from anyone other than HP, until midnight on 17 August.

244. The Claimants' closing submissions depicted the period between 1 August 2011, when formal due diligence began, and 18 August 2011, when the Boards of both HP and Autonomy approved the deal – that is, HP's Board agreed that HP should make a cash offer for Autonomy's shares, and Autonomy's Board agreed to recommend the offer to its shareholders – as marked by intense activity by HP, Autonomy, and their respective advisers: for HP, BarCap, Perella, KPMG, Freshfields, and Gibson Dunn & Crutcher; for Autonomy, Qatalyst and Slaughter and May. Documents were uploaded to a virtual data room for HP's review; there were scheduled due diligence calls on particular topics; legal documents were negotiated; and HP planned its communications strategy. HP held daily internal due diligence update calls from 4 August.

HP's approach to due diligence

245. HP's approach was plainly influenced by its perception of and anxiety to reduce interloper risk. This was further informed by advice in a paper (dated 15 July 2011) from BarCap on *'Potential Interloper Spoiling Tactics'*, which was attached to the internal HP email which I have referred to in paragraph 202 above, and from which Mr Johnson took the message to be careful about diligence so as not to enable Oracle to do a deep dive.

246. To that end, the exercise was largely undertaken in a series of calls, between 1 August 2011 and 17 August 2011.

247. Mr Apotheker explained[37]:

> "*Q. The fact is that HP itself structured the due diligence process so as to minimise interloper risk, didn't it?*
>
> *A. Well, anybody who does an acquisition tries to minimise the interloper risk because that creates a lot of trouble, drives the price up and makes the acquisition much longer. So from that point of view, that is standard process. Everybody does that.*
>
> *Q. So is that a yes?*
>
> *A. Yes."*

248. He added that while HP agreed to structure due diligence so as to address this risk, this did not mean that there was not proper due diligence:

> "*Q. HP actually structured the way it went about doing due diligence in order to minimise this risk, didn't it? That's what happened?*
>
> *A. Yes, in accordance to the UK takeover rules, in order not to disclose the target's sensitive commercial information or financial information, we agreed to structure the way we structured it. And if I just may add, that doesn't mean that we didn't do, or the team didn't do a proper due diligence, but I'm sure we'll talk about that."*

249. In re-examination Mr Apotheker also explained that due diligence was structured so that meetings would take place where the team could review documents and discuss them, without them being stored in a traditional data room.

Due diligence calls

250. On Autonomy's side, the calls were largely with Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter. Dr Lynch's evidence was that he did not participate in any of the financial or legal due diligence calls, though he did join a few technical calls to discuss Autonomy's products. This was broadly confirmed by Mr Sarin in cross-examination:

> *"Q. ... if we just consider the due diligence process from 1 August onwards, okay, and just define it as that for a*

[37] In this passage Mr Apotheker suggested that this was at Autonomy's request, but as he accepted, HP considered this a good idea. The documents show that HP itself was advised about limiting due diligence because of the interloper risk. Mr Apotheker accepted (in the passages quoted in this paragraph) that HP structured due diligence so as to minimise interloper risk.

moment, during the period after 1 August, you can't recall Dr Lynch providing any information to you, can you?

A. *So just to make sure I understand the question, when confirmatory diligence begins with the first call on August 1, your question is do I recall Dr Lynch providing me specifically any information?*

Q. *Yes. During any call that you were involved with or any email that you received?*

A. *My calls were largely with Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter. I probably did speak with Dr Lynch occasionally about some things, for example the call with Deloitte that happened in -- later on down the road. I don't believe he and I were spending time going through diligence materials.*

Q. *Right. Just on that call involving Deloitte, you're not suggesting that he was actually part of the Deloitte call? Are you talking about process again?*

A. *Process again.*

Q. *Right, and he again says that he wasn't actually part of that conversation and that's something you've just misremembered?*

A. *I think there is an email to that effect, which says, "This is what Dr Lynch and I have agreed in a prior conversation and therefore we will -- instead of getting the auditor work papers, we will go ahead and have a call with Deloitte".*

Q. *We can look at that in due course –*

A. *Sure.*

Q. *-- but he cannot recall any discussion with you during the period after 1 August?*

A. *I don't recall any substantive diligence-related call. There might have been process-related calls."*

251. In a call on 4 August 2011, Mr Sarin (together with Mr Johnson and various others from HP) discussed some parts of HP's valuation model with Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain. Only a small part of the model was shown to them, and nothing was provided in advance of the call. Revenue projections were shown by product line, but only up until 2016. To the extent these were

commented on by Mr Hussain, those comments were not relied on by HP, as shown by the following exchange with Mr Sarin:

> *"Q ... Now, you, of course, understood that you were here looking at your own projections, and that projections like this are always a matter of opinion, aren't they?*
>
> *A. Yes, there is an element of subjectivity involved.*
>
> *Q. No buyer would ever rely on the target's own evaluation of these things; these were your own projections, correct?*
>
> *A. Correct."*

252. The conversation was a short one (perhaps an hour); and Mr Sarin's note is very brief. Certain changes were made to HP's model following the call, but these appear not to have been made in reliance on any comment of Mr Hussain, but rather on HP's own assumptions. In any event, substantial changes were made to the model at a later stage between 4 and 18 August 2011, as Mr Sarin accepted, though he did not accept that the changes would have had a *"substantial impact"* on valuation. (In fact, the changes made actually reduced the estimated enterprise value by half a billion dollars from $10.0117 billion to $9.5021 billion.)

Technical due diligence

253. In addition to their financial due diligence, HP conducted a technical due diligence of Autonomy's product portfolio. This was of primary importance to HP. When the due diligence findings were reported to HP's board, "R&D/Products/Technology" was first on the list of the due diligence areas identified: HP was satisfied with what they had found, which aligned with their synergy assumptions.

Top 40 customer contracts

254. The proposal to provide a selection of customer contracts arose at the meeting on 29 July 2011. According to Mr Sarin's email summarising the meeting:

> *"They will upload~80 of their largest customer contracts in the data room (the figure was suggested by Mike assuming a revenue cutoff of $5M / customer; they are open to providing more although Shane suggested this should suffice)".*

255. The proposal evolved, and the number of contracts sought was reduced (to 40). Mr Sarin gave the following explanation of why HP and KPMG wanted the lists:

> *"These lists were important to HP. The list of Autonomy's top 40 customers was important because we wanted to review Autonomy's customer concentration, so we could determine how reliant Autonomy was on specific customers, and to ensure that it was not over-reliant on any one customer. Autonomy's top 40 contracts were important because they would give KPMG and us insight into the revenue derived from Autonomy's largest contracts."*

256. On 4 August 2011, Autonomy (through Slaughter and May) placed in the virtual data room lists (with names redacted) of what were presented as Autonomy's top 40 customers, and top 40 contracts, by revenue. Mr Kanter informed HP that they were now in the data room. Redacted copies of the contracts followed. They were subsequently reviewed by KPMG. The top 40 contracts ranged in value from $3 million to $22.5 million.

257. Dr Lynch did not dispute, when cross-examined about it, that a number of contracts for the resale by Autonomy of third-party hardware within that value range (and worth up to $7 million) were omitted from the list. The Claimants ascribed this to deception; the Defendants ascribed it to Autonomy's understanding that this was not required, and that what HP was seeking was a list that would enable it to look at the concentration of Autonomy's business by industry, and a set of contracts so as to understand Autonomy's contract terms.

258. Three points may be noted:

 (1) Both Mr Sarin and Mr Gersh muddled up the two lists when giving evidence in the US criminal proceedings and neither could really remember which they had seen. The importance they have attached to the top 40 lists in these proceedings appears to be considerably greater than they ascribed to them at the time.

 (2) The Claimants did not seriously challenge Dr Lynch's evidence that he was not involved in the collation of the contracts or the compilation of the lists, and their cross-examination of him proceeded on the basis that he was unable to give evidence in this regard.

 (3) Some of the top 40 contracts showed that Autonomy sold hardware, not restricted to appliances, and some of KPMG's draft questions were about this; but Mr Sarin and HP never questioned how much hardware Autonomy sold.

Discussions between KPMG and Deloitte

259. As mentioned previously, although production of Deloitte's working papers had been denied to them, KPMG were not prevented from discussing matters with Deloitte, and on 17 August 2011 there was a call between them when they discussed specific questions which KPMG had prepared.

260. Mr Gersh of KPMG did most of the talking on HP's side, but Mr Johnson, Mr Sarin and others from HP also attended. The Deloitte representatives were Messrs Mercer, Knights and Welham. Mr Kanter was present in the room with the Deloitte personnel but did not speak. Mr Hussain dialled in. Autonomy management had provided suggested responses to KPMG's written questions ahead of the call. This apparently upset Mr Sarin when he learned about it subsequently (he did not know it at the time) since (he stated in his witness statement) the *"whole purpose of the call was to obtain Deloitte's independent view"*, adding *"Had I known then what I now know, this would have been a matter of concern to me."* (I think this was a comment plainly informed by hindsight. I doubt very much that he would have thought anything of the episode at the time.)

261. Mr Sarin noted the responses given to the questions as follows:

> *"[Q] Did you identify any instances of fraud, irrespective of the amount, during your audit? If so describe the cases. [A] Payroll fraud~$2mm; 2 employees in jail; small insurance fraud in '08 ~$500k*
>
> *[Q] Did you identify any control weaknesses or deficiencies during your audit? If so describe the specific instances. [A] No deficiencies; minor control weaknesses (internal audit be independent of finance ...*
>
> *[Q] Did you review any of Target's accounting issues with your national office/professional practice team? If so what policies were they and what was the nature of the issue. [A] for FTSE 100 client, add'l scrutiny; nothing out of the ordinary.*
>
> *[Q] Did you have any disagreements with management regarding accounting policies/accounting conclusions? If so describe the specific issues. [A] No*
>
> *[Q] Are the size and capabilities of the Tesla accounting/finance team adequate for a company of this size? [A] not overstaffed; quality of finance team v. strong".*

262. Mr Sarin confirmed, looking at the note in the margin, that Deloitte had explained that they had reviewed all revenue contracts over $1m and a sample of smaller ones as well. He accepted that on the call Deloitte had mentioned somebody who had made a whistleblowing query or complaint (see paragraphs 2232 to 2289 below).

263. Mr Welham also gave evidence about the call on 17 August 2011, which he remembered. He confirmed some of the answers noted by Mr Sarin. Asked whether there were any disagreements between management regarding accounting policies or conclusions, he said *"No major disagreements to my knowledge, no"*. He confirmed that the comment about the size and quality of

Autonomy's accounting/finance team was a fair reflection of how he saw things at the time.

264. The call with Deloitte was the last material stage in the due diligence exercise undertaken, though (see paragraphs 269 to 271 below) that exercise was incomplete.[38]

Due diligence findings

265. On 9 August, some time before the call with Deloitte on 17 August 2011, KPMG provided HP with a draft due diligence report. Although the Claimants contended that Dr Lynch was actively engaged behind the scenes, in particular in discussing behind the scenes with Mr Hussain how best to respond to requests from HP, they had to accept that his name is on very few of the emails or other documents connected with the process. The draft due diligence report itself did not suggest that Dr Lynch had been involved in the due diligence process; rather:

> *"Specific Target officers and management interviewed included: Andrew Kanter, Chief Operating Officer and General Counsel, Sushovan Hussain, Chief Financial Officer and Stephen Chamberlain, Vice President of Finance."*

266. The executive summary indicated the limitations of the work that had been done, noting that:

> *"Due diligence comprised telephone discussions with management and access to very limited proprietary financial and tax information. The majority of findings and observations are based on oral representations from management and reading published financial information.*
>
> *This acquisition is under the remit of the U.K. City Code on Takeovers and Mergers ("the Code'). The rules in the Code regarding treatment of bidders frequently results in very limited information being provided prior to a transaction closing. The data and access provided to us during due diligence was very limited but was comparable with other acquisitions involving large U.K. publicly traded companies."*

267. Mr Sarin confirmed that this reflected his understanding.

[38] Mr Sarin and Mr Gersh told me that it was not unusual that no final report was issued, nor was it unusual for reporting accountants to flag tasks in their statement of work ("SoW") that they had been unable to complete. However, in this case, the list of outstanding or yet to be completed matters were significant: and see paragraph 270 below. KPMG's warning that they had not completed due diligence needs to be seen in that context.

268. The report noted that Autonomy recognised revenue in accordance with IFRS, and stated that there were "*some policy differences [with US GAAP] related to extended payment terms, sales to VARs, and potentially fair value analysis*". It highlighted the fact that Autonomy "*recognizes revenue for license sales upon sell-in to its VARs rather than on a sell-through basis to end customers*". It identified the fact that under some of Autonomy's hosting arrangements, there was a licence element under which customers had the right to take the software on premise – a point which Mr Sarin confirmed he understood.

269. The report stated that the due diligence process was not complete, stating that:

> *"We have not yet completed our engagement to assist Hewlett-Packard Company ("Client" or "you") in performing due diligence of Autonomy Corporation plc ("Target") in accordance with the terms of our statement of work dated August 3, 2011 and the related Master Service Agreement as amended on January 13, 2011, including its Standard Terms and Conditions. This report reflects our findings to date based on the data provided in the data room and limited telephone meetings with management and it will be updated as further data and access is provided."*

270. The items in KPMG's statement of work not yet completed were significant. These included inquiries about Autonomy's historical revenues and revenue composition; enquiries about trends in revenues; enquiries about expenses and trends in costs, gross margins and operating margins. KPMG never completed these tasks.

271. Mr Sarin was unable to say who had decided that the deal should proceed despite the fact that the due diligence processes had not been completed, save to say that it was not his own decision. He accepted that the presentations that were put before the board never explained that KPMG had not carried out all of this work. It is to be noted, however, that the strategy decided at the July board meeting was that the acquisition (and the divestment) should be announced as part of the Q3 2011 report.

272. Mr Apotheker did not read the KPMG draft report (of 9 August 2011) on the due diligence process. He was not aware that KPMG had never finalised the report. He had relied on the *"very professional people…to make sure that things were in order…if somebody would have thought there was something for me to read, they would have told me."* Mr Apotheker referred to an overview of analysts, most of whom he said, *"were on the buy side",* though he was aware that *"there were a couple of analysts who held a contrary opinion".* He said he read "a couple" of analyst reports, but did not remember at which stage in the process. He did not involve himself in the top 40 customer list. His line overall was *"You have to trust your people…".*

273. A report to the HP board of the "key due diligence findings" was provided in advance of the board meeting of 12 August 2011. It gave the 'green light':

(1) Technical due diligence: Technical due diligence was the first item on the list. The findings recorded, amongst other things that Autonomy's product capabilities and features aligned with HP's synergy assumptions:

> *"Product portfolio with deep capabilities in analyzing large structured and unstructured data sets*
>
> *OEM: Large OEM customer base without significant customer concentration issues (IBM — $10M; Oracle $1M revenue contribution in FY10)*
>
> *Product capabilities and features align with synergy assumptions*
>
> *High degree of proprietary automation drives efficiency in cloud business".*

(2) VSOE: The report noted that Autonomy's approach to VSOE was different from HP's. It stated: "*Post-closing need to align Tesla VSOE with HP*".

(3) Top 40 customers: All that was reported to the board was that the review of the top 40 customers list was ongoing and no red flags had been found.

274. The report was updated for the 16 August 2011 board meeting:

(1) There were 'green lights' for all the functional areas identified.

(2) The technical due diligence was still first on the list. The updated section was very positive, and read:

> *"Product portfolio with deep capabilities in analyzing, processing, optimizing and protecting large structured and unstructured data sets*
>
> *Product capabilities and features align with synergy assumptions; cloud-based archiving/backup a strategic information asset*
>
> *Strong development methodology (Agile); Unicode and globalization throughout; IDOL platform fully leveraged across products*
>
> *Suited for LOB and industry-solution customization -- marketing, legal and risk officer portfolio in place".*

(3) In respect of legal/IP, the report made it clear that the review of the Top 40 contracts was in connection with the analysis of contractual documentation and terms (and not part of the financial due diligence, below). The section read:

> *"Review of open source practices and documentation satisfactory; Black Duck open source code scan and audit completed and reveals no significant issues*
>
> *Review of inbound technology licenses reveals no material issues*
>
> *Review of customer contracts, including top 40 (representing ~$300M in committed contract value), revealed no material issues. Certain deviations from HP standards are noted for integration*
>
> *On-going litigation represents no significant impact to business".*

(4) There was a new section dealing with the financial due diligence, which had not been in the report for the 12 August 2011 meeting. It read:

> *"KPMG engaged to conduct accounting diligence; no material issues found*
>
> *Potential $30M tax liability due to existing Tesla transfer pricing arrangement; HP Tax will pursue risk mitigation post-closing*
>
> *Post-closing need to align Tesla VSOE with HP".*

275. In the meantime, and in parallel with the due diligence exercise, in the first half of August 2011 HP finalised their decision to go ahead with the acquisition, which they announced on 18 August 2011. The following account of the process is taken very largely from Dr Lynch's written closing submissions, which unless otherwise recorded, I did not understand to be contradicted.

276. HP held a board meeting (by telephone) on 5 August 2011. The board presentation:

(1) summarised the strategic context as being (a) *"'Big Data' explosion"* bringing *"huge growth in unstructured data not suitable for traditional relational database analysis",* (b) *"opportunity to integrate structured + unstructured data"* and (c) *"shift from historical analysis to real-time, predictive analytics"*;

(2) summarised the strategic rationale of the choice of Autonomy as being its *"platform for unstructured + structured data analytics"* using IDOL (described later in the document as *"massively scalable"*); its ability to *"process all content types (e.g. Structured, Text, Audio, Video)"* and its successful transition to *"cloud product offerings and business model"*;

(3) summarised the strategic opportunity as being that *"HP can build a leading position in enterprise software via [Autonomy] acquisition, leveraging [Autonomy's] analytic capabilities with HP's brand, market reach and other technology assets"*;

(4) described the focus of due diligence as being *"on validating synergies, understanding key product capabilities and retaining key executives"*;

(5) gave a DCF stand-alone value for Autonomy of $10.012bn and implied stock price of $38.61 per share, compared with a current EV (on the basis of the shares' market price) of $6.229bn and $25.19 (£15.44) per share. The value with synergies was $17.376bn, yielding an implied stock price of $64.74;

(6) identified *"Potential revenue synergies from (a) Information Management (b) Unified Analytics (c) Document Processing Solution (d) Data Security Solution and (e) Channel geo-expansion strategy"*; and

(7) summarised the analysts' recommendations. Most were buy recommendations, although there were three holds and two sells. Mr Apotheker accepted in cross-examination that he would have paid more attention to the bigger houses such as Goldman Sachs and BNP Paribas than houses such as Peel Hunt (a sell recommendation), of which he had not heard.

277. The 2011-2016 projections in the board presentation were in part based on "Wall Street Research". HP used a combination of techniques in estimating future revenues, including analysts' forecasts.

278. The board presentation document highlighted the concern about the interloper risk. This impacted significantly on HP's approach to the deal:

(1) Potential interlopers were identified. Of those, Mr Apotheker confirmed that *"two companies were looked at in a little bit more detail, that was Oracle and IBM."*

(2) The document reiterated the requirement from Rule 20.2 of the Takeover Code for Autonomy to share information with other bidders. As Mr Apotheker accepted, that had influenced the structuring of the due diligence process.

(3) The document summarised the strategic considerations arising from the interloper risk. It read:

> *"The best way to discourage interlopers is to announce a compelling offer with Tesla Board recommendation, irrevocable commitments, a CEO call option and a low acceptance threshold*
>
> *Must take care not to request information in due diligence which could be damaging if revealed to a third party."*

(4) As Mr Apotheker explained, a "compelling offer" meant "*basically an offer where you would pay the highest logical price that still made sense in order to discourage everybody else*".

Price negotiations in August

279. The final price was negotiated at a time of generally increased market volatility and against a steep decline in Autonomy's share value[39] (and that of the market generally). Whereas the price range discussed in Deauville (a range of £24.94 to £26.94) represented a premium of roughly 44% to 56% at the time it was agreed, by the time of HP's Board Meeting on 5 August 2011, the premium had grown to a range of 61.5% to 74.5%. Although 30-, 60-, 90- and 180-day calculations of implicit premium were lower, and it needs also to be remembered that the calculations reflect gross premiums that did not take into account Autonomy's significant available cash, the decline in Autonomy's share price inevitably triggered concern, and prompted consideration by Perella Weinberg and the board as to how best to approach the possibility of a reduction in price.

280. On 7 August 2011, Perella Weinberg wrote to Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison to raise the possibility of seeking to reduce the acquisition price by £1 per share in light of the declining macroeconomic environment, the 10.1% decline in Autonomy's share price since 28 July 2011, and the 11.2% decline in the infrastructure software comparable group and 9.9% decline in HP's share price over the same period:

(1) Perella Weinberg reiterated that they believed in HP's strategy of transforming HP through the separation of PSG and the Autonomy acquisition and also believed that "*Autonomy was a unique asset and*

[39] During the period from 25 July to 27 July, Autonomy's share price had risen from £16.62 to £17.20; by 5 August it had fallen to £15.44.

is also uniquely capable of transforming [HP's] business" (as Mr Apotheker agreed).

(2) Perella Weinberg also noted that the acquisition was likely to be controversial regardless of the price paid, which also reflected what had been said at the HP July board meeting.

281. Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison expected an extreme reaction from Dr Lynch if they were to try to reduce the price significantly. In an unchallenged passage in his witness statement, Dr Lynch stated that he now understands "*that HP contemplated offering a price decrease in August, but that Messrs Robison and Apotheker both knew I would be unwilling to support a bid below £25 per share, and thus did not amend their offer*".

282. Perella Weinberg followed up with a further email to Mr Apotheker on the same day, 7 August 2011. The email noted the risks of the investor reaction. Mr Weinberg's central paragraph essentially suggested that the *status quo* was not a practical option, and despite the difficulties, proceeding with both the PSG divestiture and the Autonomy acquisition was the way forward:

> *"6. I know that you, your team and the board appreciate the imperfect set of choices that lie ahead. Unfortunately, Tesla is not available at a price that value investors would applaud; other targets do not exist which achieve the same magnitude of strategic repositioning; activist investors, or even the long only investor group, will not wait for tangible evidence that the services business will turn around. The company has the opportunity to change significantly, through both Tesla and Hermes; and we would go as far to say that the status quo is not a practical option, even if the market reaction is anticipated to be less positive upon announcement. While we respect and revere the responsibilities held by you, your team and the board, we believe that they point strongly toward proceeding with both Tesla and Hermes, the complexities and difficulties notwithstanding."*

283. Mr Apotheker agreed with this analysis. He also wanted to announce the two transactions together *"if feasible and possible"*.

284. Mr Robison was sent to London to have further discussions on price and seek to close the deal. Mr Robison agreed with the Perella Weinberg advice, like Mr Apotheker. Mr Robison also thought that Dr Lynch would not go below £25 per share; and he also thought it was "*very possibly now or never"*:

> *"Sitting on the plane and had a chance to read this again…the PE multiple is exactly why Mike will not come down below 25. As you know I agree with PW and feel it is very possibly now or never …."*.

285. On 12 August 2011 there was a further HP board meeting. The revised DCF is at p.15 of that presentation. It gave a revised stand-alone value for Autonomy

of $9.502bn (revised from $10.012bn from the 5 August 2011 presentation), and a value with synergies of $17.098bn (revised from $17.376bn).

286. At that board meeting the board unanimously agreed that HP should continue to pursue Autonomy but in a price range of £25-£25.50, which was towards the bottom quarter of the £24.94 - £26.94 range agreed between Mr Apotheker and Dr Lynch before the start of due diligence. This was after a board discussion, and in the light of the falling share price. The Defendants stressed that:

(1) First, this range (at least at the top end) was still within the range previously agreed with Dr Lynch.

(2) Secondly, the implied premium was now considerably higher than that which was implied when the range was agreed with Dr Lynch. Autonomy's shares had declined in price. According to the updated DCF valuation presented to the board on 12 August 2011, Autonomy's market price implied that its enterprise value was now $6.35bn.

287. Mr Apotheker had a final negotiation with Dr Lynch on 14 August 2011. Dr Lynch wanted £26 per share. HP countered with £25. The parties settled on a price of £25.50. This was still within the range previously agreed with Dr Lynch, albeit at the bottom of it; and it was within the range given by HP's board. Mr Apotheker confirmed with Mr Lane directly afterwards that he was content with this, though of course that was subject to board approval.

Incorporation of Bidco

288. Bidco was incorporated on 15 August 2011. HP's 18 August 2011 offer to Autonomy's shareholders stated that:

> *"HP Vision [i.e. Bidco] is a newly incorporated company formed for the purpose of the Offer and is an indirect wholly-owned subsidiary of HP. HP Vision is incorporated under the laws of the Netherlands and has not traded since incorporation, nor has it entered into any obligations, other than in connection with the Offer and the financing of the Offer."*

289. By the time Bidco was incorporated, the due diligence process was almost complete, and the price for the acquisition had already been agreed between Dr Lynch and Mr Apotheker. Bidco had played no part in the process.

290. Bidco's directors at the time of the acquisition were Ms Lesjak, Mr Paul Porrini (HP's Deputy General Counsel for Corporate Securities and M&A, who led the legal due diligence team) and Mr Sergio Letelier (an in-house HP lawyer). There was no evidence from any of these as to the matters that influenced the board of Bidco in deciding to proceed with the acquisition. Mr Porrini and Mr Letelier were not called by the Claimants. Ms Lesjak gave no evidence about what she did or thought in her capacity as a director of Bidco.

As the CFO of HP, she was actually opposed to the transaction (see further below). She gave no evidence of having relied on any of the published information or any misrepresentations.

291. That has led to a dispute ("the Bidco point") as to whether the FSMA claim must fail in any event: see paragraphs 484 to 500 below.

HP's final approval: boardroom spats and second thoughts

292. HP had a series of board meetings in the lead up to the final approval of the acquisition on 18 August 2011. There were meetings (by telephone) on 12 August 2011 (referred to above), and further meetings on 16 August 2011 and 18 August 2011 (both by telephone).

293. The minutes of the meeting on 16 August record that both Mr Frank of Joele Frank, Wilkinson Brimmer Katcher (a PR consultancy in New York) and Mr Weinberg of Perella Weinberg warned that:

> *"sentiment could be decidedly negative at the outset on the total mix and may include skepticism [sic] regarding HP's credibility and ability to execute on all of its initiatives in the context of the strategic, tactical and operational issues faced by HP's management with its current portfolio."*

294. The minutes record that after discussion the board's consensus was to proceed with the divestiture and acquisition. Although this is unclear from the minutes, this consensus was reached despite Ms Lesjak speaking against the acquisition at the meeting, supported by Mr Holston, HP's General Counsel. Ms Lesjak's unchallenged evidence in her witness statements was that she expressed reservations about the timing and price of the acquisition (but not, she emphasised, to the expansion of HP's software business, nor the projected synergies). Mr Apotheker's evidence was that Ms Lesjak said that *"HP should be deploying its capital elsewhere and could not afford the proposed transaction at that time"* but contrary to a suggestion made by Dr Lynch (who was not, of course, there) he had no recollection of her having expressed concerns about the synergies or the prospect of their realisation.

295. The depiction which appears to be suggested by Mr Apotheker and Ms Lesjak of friendly and constructive debate is not supported by the documentation, nor, on closer analysis, by Mr Apotheker's evidence. There were increasing tensions between Mr Apotheker (the CEO) and Ms Lesjak (CFO, though not a director of HP) suggestive of real personal animosity.

296. In cross-examination, Ms Lesjak (who had worked for HP for nearly 30 years and plainly feared she was about to lose her job) confirmed her evidence in the US criminal proceedings that she had *"pushed back"* at Mr Apotheker's suggestions of multiple acquisitions (TIBCO, Software AG and Autonomy) and told Mr Apotheker that HP *"could not afford all three"*. She said their relationship was *"strained"* from at least May/June 2011, and *"a little war"* had developed between them especially after a row between them about the

inaccuracy of her "flash" forecasts. At the board meeting on 16 August 2011 both Ms Lesjak and HP's General Counsel spoke out against his plans without prior warning: when asked whether he was furious with her, he told me that that was a *"fair way of putting it."* That was even before he was shown emails she sent to the Chairman during the meeting itself (so she told me), complaining in the first about his lack of interest in financial detail and the lack of any *"real plan"* or *"financial discipline"* and in the second sending a one-lined message:

> *"One pr person said…Leo is a dead man walking…he had never seen worse press for a CEO".*

297. Despite this sniping, and what Mr Apotheker described as *"a poisonous internal environment between Cathie Lesjak and myself"*, Mr Lane at that time continued to support the acquisition of Autonomy and so did the board.

298. However, after the meeting on 16 August 2011 Mr Lane was concerned about the acquisition. He arranged for a call between the non-executive directors on 17 August 2011 to reconsider matters. On 17 August 2011 Mr Lane also emailed the non-executives to report a conversation he had had with Mr Apotheker. The email was marked *'For your eyes only'* and related that he had told Mr Apotheker that the Board *"were shocked by Cathie's statements (and Mike's)",* were *"very concerned about how poorly this announcement will be perceived and how it will reflect on Leo and BOD"* and would be *"relieved"* if Mr Apotheker decided to defer the Autonomy announcement. It added that *"many of us believe it will still be there in a month or two."*

299. The same email described Mr Apotheker's response, to the effect that the Autonomy acquisition was critical, he did not think he had an alternative to begin the change to higher value businesses, and he did not believe that the opportunity would still be there if HP did not take it now. After stating that Mr Apotheker was *"furious with Cathie and believes she can't be counted on…"* he went on as follows:

> *"…he hears and understands the board on Tesla, but does not believe we will be able to purchase after all the negotiations and committed [sic.] that have already been made. And because he believes this, he feels he doesn't have an alternative to begin changing HP's business to higher value businesses. He thinks this is critical. But he added if the board is saying "defer", he will defer. I told him that was not the case. I said our confidence is shaken in operational execution and in him, and we want him to hear our sense, but if he wants to go ahead, we support him."*

18 August meeting

300. There was a further board meeting on 18 August 2011.

301. In the board presentation:

(1) The situation update gave the new agreed offer price of £25.50 per share. This implied a 64% one day and 58% 30 day average premium. At this price, the diluted equity value was £7.1bn ($11.7bn). The implied enterprise value was £6.7bn ($11.0bn).

(2) The DCF page gave more details of these figures and the valuation:

i. The latest valuation of Autonomy gave a stand-alone value of $9.502bn, and $17.080bn with synergies.

ii. The current market price implied enterprise value was at $6.365bn (at £15.58 per share). HP's offer price of £25.50 accordingly represented a 64% premium (enterprise value of $10.99bn).

(3) The board were reminded that once a firm intention to make an offer had been announced, HP would be obliged to make an offer on the terms described in the announcement.

302. The board were also told that there was a high potential that the rating agencies would put HP on negative outlook or downgrade HP, based on the expected leverage, strategic evaluation and near-term benefit to company performance. This followed from the advice at the previous meeting as to the prospects of an adverse shareholder reaction. Mr Apotheker confirmed that the board were aware of these risks, and that the board understood that it would have to hold its nerve in the face of these negative reactions.

303. On the same day:

(1) HP's Technology Committee confirmed their recommendation with respect to the technology aspects of the transaction.

(2) BarCap provided a fairness opinion and a supporting presentation. BarCap explained under the "strategic rationale" that Autonomy was the best-in class asset to address the market opportunity in enterprise information:

> *"Tesla is the best-in-class asset to address market opportunity*
>
> *~ Leader in worldwide search and archiving with a proven capability in unstructured data*
>
> *~ Proven business with consistent organic growth and history of solid profitability*
>
> *- Demonstrated double digit organic growth even during past downturns*

> *- Delivered 40%+ operating margins over the last 3 years- among the highest in the software industry".*

(3) BarCap's DCF was the same as HP's. They also set out a trading analysis of comparable software companies. All the companies featured had considerably lower operating margins than Autonomy's adjusted operating margins (shown at 42.7%), Software AG was stated at 27%, TIBCO was 26.3%, the mean operating margin was 23.7% and the median was 26.3%. Mr Apotheker regarded anything upward of 30% as high margin.[40]

(4) Perella Weinberg also gave a presentation and a supporting fairness opinion. Their DCF again replicated HP's. Perella Weinberg set out the anticipated growth of the stored information market, which represented a "massive market opportunity". Perella Weinberg noted Autonomy's unique capabilities and its centrality to HP's strategy:

> *"Tesla is unique in its ability to derive meaning from data*
>
> *Tesla represents the lynchpin to fulfilling Hawk's strategic vision of providing context-aware computing".*

(5) The board unanimously approved the acquisition at £25.50 per share.

The announcement of the bid and HP's loss of nerve

304. HP announced the takeover for $11.1 billion on 18 August 2011. HP's shareholders had to come to terms not only with the acquisition of Autonomy for $11.1bn, but also with the potential spinning off of HP's personal computer business (in effect a legacy business), and HP's disappointing Q3 results.

305. The announcement was not well received. A large and vocal section of the shareholders disapproved and the visible reaction was overwhelmingly negative. Moody's downgraded HP's outlook from stable to negative. HP's share price fell sharply (20% in a day). Shareholders lobbied the Chairman, directors and management to see whether it was possible to get out of the bid before it closed. Mr Lane's nervousness turned to fright and HP's board instead suffered a collective loss of nerve. Mr Apotheker broadly accepted this:

[40] BarCap's overall message was plainly positive, highlighting that Autonomy had *"demonstrated double digit organic growth even during past downturns"* and *"[d]elivered 40% + operating margins over the last 3 years – among the highest in the software industry"*. BarCap's expressed view was that the combination of Autonomy and HP was *"[h]ighly complementary with minimal overlap…"* and would *"form the basis of the next generation information platform"*.

> "*Q. We've agreed that the board needed to keep its nerve in the face of that kind of reaction?*
>
> *A. One would hope so, yes.*
>
> *Q. Do you think that the board in fact lost its nerve over the coming weeks?*
>
> *A. Well, the board ultimately made a series of decisions that could indicate that. That's probably a matter of interpretation. The chairman certainly lost his nerve."*

306. Mr Apotheker was still optimistic that he could steer a course through the difficulties and wanted to get on with the integration. He remained *"completely convinced about the validity of our approach."* He exchanged emails with Dr Lynch who encouraged him with nautical analogies to weather the storm. Mr Lane, however, had in effect abandoned ship.

307. On Sunday 4 September 2011 Mr Lane emailed Mr Apotheker with obvious signs of a revisionist approach, claiming *"still"* to be *"haunted by Autonomy itself"* and adding:

> *"I don't think it's the panacea we think it is. I read the analysis of their organic growth and I still see them as a roll-up. I don't think the board thought (at least I don't remember that discussion) this was largely a roll-up when we contemplated the price."*

308. He concluded by asking Mr Apotheker to *"analyze for the board"*:

(1) First, "*whether there is any way to get out of the Autonomy deal*".

(2) Secondly, what size of buyback HP could launch to try to recreate lost value for shareholders.

309. Mr Apotheker was sceptical about the buyback idea:

> "A. *Well to be quite honest with you I didn't understand the logic of this, because it's a bit of a circular reasoning. If you want to placate the value investors by repurchasing enough shares to fulfil Mr Lane's request to fill the gap between what they believe one should have paid and what one actually did pay, it becomes an impossible equation to solve."*

310. As for the idea of getting out of the deal, Mr Apotheker responded by email the same day to Mr Lane that he would ask HP's advisers to look at the

questions but also robustly defended the merits of the acquisition, which Mr Apotheker still believed in. Mr Apotheker reminded Mr Lane that the Autonomy acquisition was the only strategic solution that HP had:

> *"1. I disagree that Autonomy is a roll-up in the "classical" sense. They did a few acquisitions, less than many other sw companies of similar size, and integrated them all into their platform IDOL. By doing so at 40% margin they have demonstrated the power of the platform as well as the capability of the management team.*
>
> *2. I am 99% sure that the Autonomy deal is irreversible.*
>
> *3. I'm also convinced that Autonomy, as well as the additional organic steps that [w]e are undertaking, will allow HP to reshape itself as a company generating 8% to 9% of its revenues from software, with a better growth and margin profile. If financial markets are rational, we should be rewarded by a better P/E multiple as we move towards this objective.*
>
> *4. in addition, if Autonomy and more software isn't the solution, what is the alternative?"*

311. Mr Apotheker followed up the next day (5 September 2011), seeking to clarify some of the *"noise around Autonomy"* and reminding and stressing to Mr Lane that HP's business case hinged more on the synergies that the combined companies could generate than on Autonomy's stand-alone capabilities:

> *".... During the Strategy Board meeting as well as at the subsequent Board meetings, we always presented to the Board our full business case; a case hinging more on the synergies that the combined companies can generate than on Autonomy's stand alone capabilities. Indeed, by layering in the synergies we achieve a CAGR of 26.6%, while maintaining the operating margin at or above 40%.*
>
> *<u>Therefore, Autonomy makes total sense if one believes that HP can generate the synergies we build into our business plan.</u> The quality of the synergies is high: you will remember that they exclude any drag-on revenues related to additional hardware sales and we only included a very small drag-on effect for services. All the other synergies are driven by leveraging the IDOL platform, combining it with HP IP/R&D, deeper penetration of existing markets and significant and identified up sell/cross sell opportunities. Please also note that the business case does not include any additional large*

> *acquisition. I for one, and so does my team, firmly believe that we can achieve these synergies in the allotted time frame."* [Underlining as supplied in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions]

The Joe Bloggs emails

312. There was little in the evidence I was shown to illustrate and explain what I assume was a further deterioration of support for Mr Apotheker and the Acquisition in the period between 5 September and 21 September 2011, except that between 31 August 2011 and 15 September 2011, a series of three emails were posted to some 50 analysts and the press by Mr Harald Collet ("Mr Collet", who had been Head of OEM Sales in North America from May 2008 to June 2010) and his former Autonomy colleague, Mr Marshall, under the pseudonym "Joe Bloggs". The analysts selected appear all to have been Autonomy sceptics already. Mr Collet and his colleague *"suggested a number of key questions HP should be asking about Autonomy's OEM revenues*."

313. These emails ("the Joe Bloggs emails", which were sent from a specially created "Joe Bloggs" email account) followed an earlier email dated 23 August 2011 from Mr Collet personally to Ms Leslie Owens at Forrester, an analyst who had written a blog post critical of Autonomy on 19 August 2011, in which he set out a case that Autonomy's OEM revenues were too good to be true, arguing that there was an "*almost 'Madoff-like' consistency in their quarterly number of new OEM signings*". The Joe Bloggs emails were to similar effect. They appear to have encouraged further opposition to the Acquisition from analysts already sceptical of it, but their impact on sentiment and on HP is difficult to gauge. (I address a communication sent by Dr Lynch to HP following the Joe Bloggs emails later when dealing with the OEM case.)

The ousting of Mr Apotheker

314. In any event, on 21 September 2011, a story circulated on Reuters wire service that HP was considering removing Mr Apotheker and replacing him as CEO with Ms Meg Whitman (who had run eBay). On 22 September 2011, well before the acquisition had completed, Mr Apotheker was removed summarily by HP's board. His witness statement gave an anodyne version of events. The first that he heard of this was from a Bloomberg journalist; Mr Apotheker was shocked by the news. He was permitted to speak to the board for an hour, but that was pointless, as he was told at the end of the presentation that the decision was already made to appoint Ms Whitman as the new CEO. Soon after her appointment, Ms Whitman also asked Mr Robison to leave.

315. Ms Whitman's background was not in software, a business which in Mr Apotheker's opinion took a few years to understand. She described herself to me as *"more a consumer technology executive than an enterprise technology executive"*. Ms Lesjak, whose future had depended on Mr Apotheker's failure as CEO, continued as CFO.

316. Ms Whitman was cross-examined about the reasons for the sudden decision to remove Mr Apotheker. She suggested that it was not because, or certainly not only because, of the *"adverse market reaction"*. She said it was because Mr Lane had interviewed a number of HP executives *"who were very concerned about his leadership style"* and because he had spent the first two months of his appointment out of the USA. She told me *"so what it seemed like was that we needed new leadership for HP. So he was asked to leave."*

317. This seemed to me to be rather jejune. It was plain and obvious that Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison were sacked because the strategy of which they were the architects had proved unpopular amongst investors, and HP needed scapegoats and to demonstrate that the strategy had been abandoned. As she stated in an email a little later (on 14 December 2011), when Mr Apotheker had dared publicly to say that, at the time, the Acquisition had been supported by the Chairman and the whole board:

> *"Happy to throw Leo under the bus in tit for tat."*

318. Although in cross-examination she described the changes as *"largely tactical…a bit more of a stabilisation"* following her appointment Mr Apotheker's strategy was reversed. HP determined not to divest the consumer PC business and reaffirmed its primary commitment to hardware, which she described to analysts as the *"DNA of this company"*. Ms Whitman told the markets that HP were instead going to refocus on the existing core assets of the company, and she regarded her main and most immediate task as being to *"stabilise the core assets"*.

319. Ms Whitman stuck to the line that she remained committed to the Autonomy acquisition. She denied saying to an executive committee meeting that Autonomy was an *"unwanted stepchild"* and suggested that it was a phrase in fact used by Dr Lynch.[41] But for all her cavilling, the impression I formed was that she fell in with HP's corporate antipathy to any culture other than its own, and that the reference to Autonomy as an *"unwanted stepchild"* is how she regarded it, even if it was forensically not something to be admitted to; and although the Claimants stressed that she had initially maintained the Integration Steering Committee established by Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison and appointed Mr Brossard (whom she regarded as one of her most capable lieutenants) to focus on the process of integration, the low priority she set for Autonomy's welfare, and her predisposition to require Autonomy to conform to HP's way of doing things, was vividly illustrated by the abandonment at her direction of Mr Apotheker's plans for HP Software to be headed by Dr Lynch who would under those have had key oversight of the integration process, with Autonomy at the centre.

[41] The suggestion that it was Dr Lynch who deployed the term is supported by an email from Dr Lynch to Ms Whitman on 26 October 2011 (just a few weeks after the Acquisition) in which he twice used the term *"stepchild"* in describing Autonomy's status in HP, albeit in urging HP to welcome *"this talented stepchild"* which would *"need a little bit of help getting it accepted in the early days…"* Much later, in September 2017, Dr Lynch appears to have used the phrase in an interview with the Evening Standard, stating his view that *"if Leo Apotheker, HP's chief executive who was fired shortly after the takeover, had stayed it could have been "an industry-changing deal",* but instead, *"we were left there as an unwanted stepchild."*

320. The change of strategy is addressed further below. Understandably, Mr Apotheker disagreed with the change of strategy:

> *"A. I think that it would have been preferably – I think it would have been a smarter decision to let me try to execute the strategy. But it wasn't my decision to make.*
>
> ...
>
> *Q. You thought it would have made more sense to let you carry out the integration together with Mr Robison and Dr Lynch?*
>
> *A. Oh yes, at that moment in time I was completely convinced about the validity of our approach."*

321. As regards the Autonomy acquisition, under the UK takeover rules HP were stuck with the bid they had announced, which became unconditional on 3 October 2011.

Immediate aftermath of the Acquisition

322. After the Acquisition, as would always have been anticipated, HP had unrestricted access to Autonomy's full books and records. HP's advisors also had access to Deloitte's working papers. Ernst & Young ("EY") reviewed them.

323. In the event, HP and its advisors did in fact discern many of the matters now complained of. They did not cause any great concern at that time.

324. Of note in relation to HP's hardware case, it does seem that from early on in the aftermath of the Acquisition, they were aware of Autonomy's hardware sales. This is a point explored in more detail later (see paragraphs 1814 to 1854 below), but in brief summary:

    (1) Following the acquisition, KPMG were engaged to produce a closing balance sheet in respect of Autonomy for HP. This resulted in a draft report of 24 October 2011. At page 7, KPMG identified $41m payable to Dell, and stated:

    > "*We believe these payable are related to pass-through hardware sales to customers which Autonomy records on a gross basis*."

    (2) KPMG also conveyed the same point in its final draft of the report in March 2012, noting:

    > "*Accounts payable totalled $108 million at Close. Over 50% (or $58 million) of the account payable balance relates to*

transaction related costs…The remaining accounts payable balance mainly relate to data center server costs, or hardware Autonomy sells on a pass-through basis. Management stated these hardware sales are recorded on a gross basis."

(3) Separately, EY in their capacity as HP's auditors conducted a review of Autonomy's 2010 audit, including Deloitte's working papers. That work was complete by 4 November 2011, and EY specifically noted that Autonomy had about $100m in hardware revenue.

(4) EY also produced a slide presentation entitled "Q4 FY'11 CFO Update" for discussion at a pre-meeting with Ms Lesjak on 11 November 2011 as part of the preparatory work in advance of an HP Audit Committee meeting the following week.[42] There were only two substantive pages to the document. One of the four Q4 areas of focus identified in the Executive summary (on page 2) was the Autonomy acquisition. That item was covered on page 3 of the document. Four points were identified in respect of the Autonomy acquisition. One of them was that "*Revenue includes $115M of hardware*".

(5) Ms Lesjak was defensive about this when cross-examined. I return to consider her evidence as to what she made of the point in paragraphs 1835 to 1837A and 1848 to 1852 below.

325. On 16 November 2011, EY presented their results to HP's Audit Committee: Page 7 of that document gave a revenue breakdown (in the form of a bar chart) of the $1bn "Autonomy portfolio". It broke revenue into Services, Support, Cloud, Licences and Hardware, attributing 11% to hardware. That information does not appear to have given rise to any question or surprise, nor created an issue for anyone at HP. Ms Lesjak accepted that it is likely that she did *"flip through"* the document but she insisted that she *"didn't spend any time in the audit committee deck on the Autonomy section"*. She did not deny that EY went over the relevant page with the Audit Committee but she suggested that the Audit Committee's focus was on the *"purchase accounting"* and that the committee *"don't go over every item on the page"*. In light of its prominence, I cannot accept it went unnoticed: again, however, it caused neither surprise nor concern.

326. Furthermore, hardware purchases from Dell for resale continued through to at least March 2012. There was no secret about the purchases or the sales. Upon the appointment of Mr Christopher Yelland ("Mr Yelland") as CFO, but whilst he was still working in another division of HP, he was asked to approve a purchase of hardware. He was told explicitly in that email, which attached a

[42] Ms Lesjak explained in cross-examination that such a pre-meeting took place every quarter to talk through points that had arisen in the quarter. Usually only Ms Lesjak, Mr Jim Murrin (who was the controller of the EY team at that time) and the key audit partners of EY would attend, but others also did sometimes. After first circulating an earlier draft of this judgment, the Claimants reminded me that, contrary to the Defendants' submission and my assumption, there was no evidence before the court that Ms Lesjak received the presentation before the pre-meeting. However, even if not pre-circulated, it was not disputed that the two-page document was discussed at the pre-meeting.

spreadsheet of the relevant figures, that the hardware would be sold through to customers at a loss of 10%.

> *"Hi Chris,*
>
> *I need your approval to pay Dell an amount of $942,072.33. This is for the hardware orders that we source from them and sell through to our customers at a loss of approximately 10%. It has been our policy to pay weekly based on Steve's approval in the past. The numbers are in the tab – ready to pay. Dell's aging, our aging and the recon are in other tabs. The items in the tab "ready to pay" have been verified with POs, invoices, and payments have been received from our customers."*

327. Mr Yelland had not yet taken up his post, but he acknowledged the email and asked to be copied in on requests going forward, as he was. He accepted in cross-examination that he had read them and told the Court that he was interested to see the sorts of emails for which his approval was required, even prior to his formal arrival in post. In April 2012, Mr Yelland approved another purchase. That email again stated in terms that Autonomy would *"sell-through"* the hardware to customers at a loss of approximately 10%. Mr Yelland did not raise any objection to the *"sell-through"* hardware sales, or suggest that there was any problem with the practice at the time.

328. There was a similar situation with hybrid hosting deals. HP was aware of the hybrid hosting deals and its initial approach, far from putting a stop to them, was to seek to establish VSOE under US GAAP so that revenue from licences could be recognised up front (i.e. in the same way as Autonomy had always done). The VSOE workstream started in early 2012 and continued into at least May 2012. This too is addressed further below.

The need for, but difficulties of, integration

329. The integration of Autonomy into HP's business was bound to be difficult. I have already noted that HP's business was fractured in 'silos' with intra-division jealousies, poor co-operation and overall direction, and short-term focus. The Defendants described it, with (as it seems to me from the available documentation) good reason, as *"a huge, enervated, company, beset with systemic failings"*. Autonomy was, as it seemed to me, almost the opposite in terms of the way it was managed: centralised, energetic and driven by entrepreneurial zeal, with little formality or adherence to strict process. HP had become an ailing institution. Ms Whitman's own report to the HP Board dated 22 March 2012 (entitled *"The Road Ahead…")* spoke of a *"crisis of confidence among all constituents", "significant business challenges across every Business Group, HP Labs and Global Sales", "Suboptimal business processes and lack of focused strategies…unsustainable cost structure"* and acknowledged that *"HP culture is in tough shape, must be revitalised/realigned to be successful"*. Autonomy, on the other hand, retained the outlook of a start-up still under the direct control of its founder.

330. HP's earlier efforts to expand by acquisition had been problematic and unsuccessful:

(1) HP bought Electronic Data Systems for $13.9bn. It was rebranded as HP Enterprise Services in 2008. Its value was written down in Q3 2012 by some $8bn.

(2) Other acquisitions are listed in HP's M&A Scorecards, such as that for Q2 2012. One well known one was the Palm hand-held computer business which it had acquired for $1.2 billion in 2010. The acquired businesses being tracked had under-performed against budgeted revenue by $1.73bn or 26%.

331. The difficulties of integrating Autonomy were exacerbated by (a) the abandonment of the predicate of its acquisition as envisaged by Mr Apotheker, being the strategic reorientation of HP towards software, (b) the removal of the architects of that strategy, Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison, who were invested in its success, (c) the outlook of their replacements, whose focus was on rebuilding the old HP and its core hardware business, and who had little time to devote to Autonomy, (d) the lack of any properly considered integration plan and the abandonment of Mr Apotheker's plan for Dr Lynch to head HP Software and drive forward the constructive integration of Autonomy and (e) a culture clash between the two companies.

332. Perella Weinberg had consistently stressed the importance of flawless execution and management devotion to the integration and transformation:

> *"Combination of persisting challenges in existing core businesses, extraction of Poseidon and integration of Atlantis would demand flawless execution and significant senior management bandwidth while integration and transformation progress remains under heightened public scrutiny."*

333. As Mr Apotheker put it:

> *"A. A proper integration plan, a proper extraction plan of the PC business, execute this to close to perfection and while at the same time continuing to run the existing business.*
>
> *Q. So it would be important for management to make these changes a top priority?*
>
> *A. Well, it would mean that management would be basically focused on these two changes, making sure that the existing business continue -- or the remainder of the business continues to run as well as possible. There were other changes that were required and all of this has to happen in nicely synchronised way and would have been a*

lot of work."

334. The Defendants emphasised the problems which arose without oversight and planning and in a context where (as they saw it) Autonomy was regarded as an unwanted distraction foisted on a group already in difficulty, including (again, as they perceived it):

(1) The failure to establish proper processes for other business groups to sell Autonomy products and worse, infighting between business groups and the continuation of incentives to other business groups to sell third party software and not to sell Autonomy products;

(2) The difficulties which Autonomy experienced in acquiring hardware from HP group's ESSN unit[43] to sell with Autonomy products because the ESSN was remunerated according to sales quotas, and supply to Autonomy did not count towards quota. Dr Lynch acknowledged in cross-examination that Ms Whitman, in this instance and others, stepped in to fix the supply: but the fact that her intervention repeatedly had to be sought illustrated that Autonomy was not regarded or treated within HP as part of the family;

(3) The removal from Autonomy of its control over long-term relationships with established customers when HP Enterprise Services ("HPES") successfully lobbied HP management to take control, which in turn led to HPES adding a 35% mark-up on Autonomy prices to boost the reported revenues (and thus the bonuses) of the HPES team. (Ms Whitman did eventually intervene to stop this, but in the meantime Autonomy lost customers.)

(4) Autonomy's ostracization from HP marketing initiatives such as company gatherings and trade shows, whilst HP continued to insist that all marketing should be centralised and that Autonomy should not have any marketing strategy of its own;

(5) Autonomy's increasing problems with staff retention, and resulting loss of institutional knowledge and industry experience in consequence of (a) HP's bureaucratic process-obsessed outlook and stifling corporate culture; (b) HP's failure to recognise the experience and talent of Autonomy's key legacy employees, and corresponding failure to put in place promised staff incentive plans although it is obvious that the key asset of any software business is the talent of its employees. The Claimants countered this with evidence from Mr Youngjohns that Autonomy's attrition rate was in fact lower after the Acquisition than it had been before it, and that various key Autonomy employees including Mr David Jones (CEO and General Manager of Data Protection), Mr Rafiq Mohammadi (CEO and General Manager of Promote), Mr Mike Sullivan (CEO and General Manager of Protect, Enterprise Markets) and Mr Neil Araujo (CEO and General Manager

[43] HP's Enterprise Servers, Storage and Networking Division.

of Protect, Professional Markets) all stayed on for a number of years after the Acquisition and (according to Mr Youngjohns) *"only left to take up CEO positions elsewhere."* The fact remains, as I find, that the loss of senior staff in May 2012 is well documented; and Ms Whitman's approach was less than constructive: and see also paragraph [360] below;

(6) What Dr Lynch described as *"flip-flopping"* by HP in first agreeing to facilitate VSOE (see paragraphs 273(2) and 328 above), which is a technical accounting exercise required under US GAAP for the purposes of a profitable business product of Autonomy called "hybrid hosting" , but then changing its mind, causing customer confusion and dissatisfaction, because it would have constrained hardware discounting;

(7) Other integration failures including (a) changes to the structure of Autonomy without consultation, warning or explanation (b) bureaucratic practices such as refusing to supply Autonomy with HP hardware for sale to Autonomy customers using its Cloud offering until Autonomy was an "approved vendor" and (c) denial to Autonomy of crucial sales and services facilities and personnel. As to (c), the Claimants drew to my attention evidence to the contrary, showing that HP did arrange the transfer of more than the target number of 42 HP employees to work at Autonomy: but I accept and find that the problem of retaining skilled staff remained a difficulty which was exacerbated by HP's treatment of Autonomy leading to a sense that jobs were at risk, and its own stifling corporate culture. Mr Youngjohns seemed to me largely to accept this when cross-examined, though he maintained that he did his best to reassure staff that HP was going to build a successful business;

(8) What Dr Lynch saw as a lack of co-operation from HP management hindering the integration within Autonomy of the newly acquired Vertica and the Information Management business unit, which had been an essential part of Mr Apotheker's concept of a unified information stack;

(9) The imposition of Ms Whitman's appointee, Mr Bill Veghte, as head of strategy and software (including cloud and e-security) with a view to the eventual absorption of Autonomy within HP Software, in a reversal of the understanding before the acquisition that Mr Veghte would be leaving imminently and Dr Lynch would replace him and be put in charge of HP Software (as well as Autonomy);

(10) What Dr Lynch in cross-examination called *"a horrifically political environment"*.

335. On 14 February 2012, Dr Lynch emailed Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter stating *"Meeting meg 2 morrow, need all craziness examples"*. Mr Kanter replied listing problems that Autonomy was facing in its relationship with HP, including incentives which encouraged HP employees to sell competitors'

products; difficulties in procuring hardware internally; difficulties in accessing HP systems; and a sense of HP seeking to overwhelm Autonomy at internal meetings, with more than 25 employees of HP for every one from Autonomy; and the lack of any overall direction for integration.

336. Ms Whitman sought in cross-examination to brush all this off as Dr Lynch presenting himself as a *"victim"* without trying to be *"part of the solution"* and questioned why he did not try to work with the person she had appointed to help on integration, Mr Gerard Brossard ("Mr Brossard"). She depicted it as Dr Lynch's *"failure to adapt to his new role at HP"* and symptomatic of someone used only to *"leading a small group of dedicated start-up employees."* But again, I regret to say that I found this formulaic and (given Autonomy's past growth and success and HP's own problems) condescending.

337. The truth as I see it and find is that Ms Whitman had some time previously, and before Autonomy began to show worrying performance shortfalls, begun to look at a reversal of the model envisaged by Mr Apotheker, and instead of having Autonomy, led by Dr Lynch, at the apex, the absorption of Autonomy within HP Software under the direction of Mr Veghte (whom she had appointed head of strategy in January 2012 and had ultimately retained as head of Software): and see also paragraphs 364 to 366 below.

Autonomy misses its targets

338. By February 2012 (4 months after the Acquisition went unconditional on 3 October 2011) Autonomy had fallen materially behind forecast revenue: HP's February "Flash" results suggested a revenue shortfall of 15% compared to budget, whilst noting that *"Pipeline and underlying business remain strong"* and also that there were *"Very strong cloud signings leading to deferred recognition."*

339. A series of emails from Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch in April 2012 reveal a deteriorating position. By 27 April, Mr Hussain was reporting *"Revenue has collapsed on us. I am very sorry Mike."* On the day before the quarter end, Sunday 29 April 2012, Mr Hussain sent an email to Dr Lynch, timed at 12.07pm, with the subject "*revenue*", stating as follows:

> *"At the moment we have almost all managers at less than q1 – most of the VPs care, the cell leaders do not. I could try to give you reasons but it boils down to poor sales rep productivity and sms process not picking it up. In addition my big deals – Unicredit, Citi, Thompson Reuters, BofA and Dreamworks hid the reality of the sales organisation underperforming. For this level of revenue the organisation is too fat in sales."*

340. Thus, Mr Hussain identified the underlying cause of the revenue shortfall as being Autonomy issues: "*poor sales rep productivity*" and the "*sms process not picking it up*". Dr Lynch took a different view of the causes. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch accepted that he instructed Mr Hussain to produce a further email which he (Dr Lynch) could share with HP's senior management:

> *"Q. You asked him for this because you wanted to have an email that you could forward on to HP's senior management at the same time as informing them that the revenue target may not be met, correct?*
>
> *A. Yes, because most of the problems were coming from interactions with other parts of HP."*

341. Mr Hussain duly complied with that instruction. At 1.15pm, just over an hour after sending his first email on 29 April 2012 referred to above, Mr Hussain sent a second, freestanding email to Dr Lynch, with the subject "*Updates – not good*", stating as follows:

> *"Now that we are at that really crucial part of the quarter I am working hard to get as much revenue in as possible but i have to warn you that the probability of a very sizeable miss on revenue is likely. We are faced with an unprecedented set of blockages on top of the recession (which is hitting us particularly in Europe – many customers reference Lloyds, BBVA, Tesco are citing the market conditions for delaying:*
>
> *As we have started to close out the HP leads we are finding a set of previously unknown processes which prevent deals being signed in the quarter (although the appointment of Howard Hughes as the main point man has helped it has come too late for Q2) – the SOAR, CAN, TTAC etc are processes that our salesforce have not known about and so have not managed*
>
> *There are still a number of unhappy HP customers which are stopping our deals from progressing*
>
> *Our salesforce are getting a bit demoralised because other parts of HP seem not to be interested in closing out deals (reference IDA)*
>
> *We still have rev rec problems with vsoe on maintenance which has not been agreed with EY*
>
> *Finally the pressure for deep discount on software sales – reference HCL/Astra Zeneca – is affecting sales in that it gives hope to customers to delay signing*
>
> *I am still working round the clock to bring as much as i can in but again i have to warn you of a sizeable miss. I am very very sorry for this news. I own all of the issues, i will not shirk from my responsibilities to you and to HP."*

342. The Claimants emphasised the difference between Mr Hussain's first email (which did not seek to place any blame on HP) and his second email (which did); and they criticised Dr Lynch for having both "instructed" Mr Hussain to write it, and for (they implied) ensuring that it was drafted in such a way as to suggest that Dr Lynch was until then unaware of Autonomy's second quarter

revenue shortfall. They also criticised him for amending the first sentence in the version he sent on to Ms Whitman and Ms Lesjak by deleting the words *"very sizeable"* and for then dissembling as to the reason for the amendment.

343. I note, but do not attach great weight to, these criticisms. I do not accept that either of the Defendants was thereby intentionally *"papering the record"* (which was what Mr Rabinowitz suggested in his cross-examination of Dr Lynch). I can understand why Dr Lynch wished Mr Hussain to reflect the difficulties which he considered were of HP's making as well as those which Mr Hussain had earlier fixated on. Mr Hussain was self-critical to a fault, and apt to lose the broader picture. I can also understand the reason for the surreptitious amendment made by Dr Lynch to Mr Hussain's email when forwarding it to Ms Whitman, even if he should not have done it (as I readily accept).

344. More important was the effect on Ms Whitman and the repercussions of the large shortfall. In her evidence, Ms Whitman described herself as being "*completely blindsided*" by Dr Lynch's email. She emailed Dr Lynch to seek details of the scale of the shortfall ("*How big is the miss?*"), which in response he estimated at anywhere between "*7-15% depending on individual deals*". He suggested waiting a day, because some *"could be holding out for last minute negs."*

345. Ms Whitman expressed herself *"shocked at Dr Lynch's lack of urgency: it was Sunday, April 29, and the quarter was scheduled to close the next day."* She felt, ignorant perhaps of the last-minute nature of many such deals in the past, that it was "*completely unacceptable conduct*". She arranged for a conference call to take place later that same day.

346. The conference call took place at around 10.15pm UK time on the Sunday evening, which both Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain joined.[44] On the call, Dr Lynch indicated that Autonomy was likely to miss its revenue target by around \$30 million to \$50 million. He put this down to two reasons, both of which, perhaps predictably, he said were HP's fault: first, he said that HP's accounting rules prevented Autonomy from being able to recognise all of the revenue on the sales it was making as quickly as he had expected; and secondly, many of Autonomy's customers were dissatisfied with HP and were refusing to engage.

347. It appears that having given this explanation, Dr Lynch was then keen to ensure that others within Autonomy should provide a consistent explanation for the shortfall if asked. Before the call had even finished, Dr Lynch emailed Mr Hussain, with a high importance marking, with the subject "*RING STOF ASAP AFTER CALL*", stating "*Need tog et [sic] stories straight*". Mr Hussain immediately responded "*ok*". In other words, Dr Lynch instructed Mr Hussain to call Mr Egan immediately following the call so as to ensure that, if he was asked about the revenue shortfall, Mr Egan would give the same explanations as Dr Lynch had provided during the conference call. Dr Lynch did not dispute that in cross-examination.

---

[44] Dr Lynch accepted that Mr Hussain probably joined the call.

348. The Claimants submitted that patently, if the explanations that Dr Lynch had given during the conference call accurately reflected the reasons why the revenue shortfall had occurred, there would have been no need for Dr Lynch to have been so concerned to ensure that Mr Egan, Mr Hussain and he got their "*stories straight*". The Claimants added to this that it was notable that no copies of Dr Lynch's "*Need tog et [sic] stories straight*" email (which was disclosed by Dr Lynch, seemingly from the server which he used for his own personal storage purposes) were retained on Autonomy's systems – neither the copy sent by Dr Lynch from his Autonomy email address, nor the copy received by Mr Hussain at his Autonomy email address. Nor were any copies of Mr Hussain's response to that email (which was again disclosed by Dr Lynch) retained on Autonomy's systems – neither the copy sent by Mr Hussain from his Autonomy email address, nor the copy received by Dr Lynch at his Autonomy email address.

349. The Claimants submitted that the only plausible explanation for this state of affairs is that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain must both have deleted their respective copies of both emails from Autonomy's system, and that cannot have been a coincidence, so they must have agreed to do so. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch suggested an explanation was that his emails were not kept on Autonomy's system. The Claimants submitted that this fails to account for the fact that Mr Hussain's copies of the emails were not retained on Autonomy's systems either, nor for the fact that (a) Dr Lynch was the custodian for more than 15,000 emails or documents on Autonomy's systems and (b) a number of other emails between Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain from around this time were retrieved by the Claimants.

350. The position is certainly suspicious; but I prefer to make no finding in respect of it, given that the question of where and how Dr Lynch's internal emails were stored was not further pursued with him, and it seems inherently unlikely that either of the Defendants would have thought it important enough to remove traces of the particular exchange from the system, not least bearing in mind their equanimity in respect of other much more damaging records to which HP had full access.

351. In any event, I am not persuaded by what I take to be the Claimants' suggestion that their wish to present a consistent explanation of itself shows that the Defendants perceived it necessary to and did combine to concoct a reason for the shortfall which they knew belied the truth. The Defendants perceived themselves to be beleaguered in a highly political and antagonistic corporate environment, and the revenue shortfall was something for which they would need to have a consistent explanation; but that does not necessarily mean that the explanation was manufactured or untrue.

352. Indeed, at the time, there was in reality little between HP and Autonomy as to the reasons for the shortfall, even though it transpired that Dr Lynch had seriously underestimated its size in his reports to Ms Whitman, and at $136 million it amounted to nearly three times the top end of the range Dr Lynch had indicated to her on the Sunday conference call.

353. Broadly they were agreed that the main problem was not lack of demand nor any overall market or sales funnel problem[45], but failure to convert orders for Autonomy's proprietary software into completed sales, and that the effect was magnified by the fact that Autonomy had pinned their hopes on a smaller than usual number of larger than usual deals, which they had expected to close, but did not.

354. Where they disagreed was as to the reason for that failure to close licence deals, for which each blamed the other; and although Mr Kanter's report dated 7 May 2012 placed the blame heavily on (a) VSOE issues (b) HP paperwork demands (c) Autonomy having to cede control of deals to other parts of HP and (d) *"wider HP customer issues",* even HP's own reports acknowledged that revenues were adversely affected by the challenges with operating Autonomy in the HP environment (as Ms Whitman also admitted when cross-examined) and that there was an urgent need to address these issues and improve integration of processes and sales function across all business units.

355. Certainly, Ms Whitman emphasised that at the time there was no suggestion of demand for Autonomy software, or its competitiveness, having been exaggerated. When, at HP's Earnings Conference Call on 23 May 2012 (at which Dr Lynch's dismissal was announced, see below) she was asked whether Autonomy's *"weakness in revenue…changes your outlook on the business at all and how it integrates with HP"* she answered:

> *"When Autonomy turned in disappointing results we actually did a fairly deep dive to understand what had happened here. And in my view, this is not the product. Autonomy is a terrific product. It's not the market. There is an enormous demand for Autonomy. It's not the competition. I was wondering, is there a competitor that we didn't see, and the answer to that is no. This is a classic entrepreneurial Company scaling challenges.*
>
> *And I have seen this move before. When you try to go from $40 million to $400 million to $1 billion to $2 billion, boy, it takes, it's a whole different ballgame. And we need to put in some sales processes. We need to put in better interface into HP in terms of how Autonomy interfaces with our services business, as well as our server, storage and networking businesses, and we need a new organisational structure to support a $1 billion plus company.*
>
> *So we have the people to do this. We have the expertise to do this. Something I'm extremely familiar with, having grown eBay from $4*

[45] Thus, for example, Ms Meeta Sunderwala (a senior director in HP's EFR team), reported in an internal HP email dated 28 June 2012 that Ms Lesjak had *"told EY that the Autonomy issues were related to short-term challenges with working in the HP environment and not an issue with the overall market or sales funnel."* Ms Sunderwala noted also that *"[t]ypically, it is very unusual to impair an acquisition in the first year post close"* and that *"Based on the comments from Cathie, we were not planning on doing an impairment analysis in Q3…".* Ms Lesjak told me that she did not remember telling EY the above; but Ms Lesjak was, in my assessment, prone not to remember things which tended to embarrass her now or cast doubt on her cultivated image as prudent, assiduous and a safe pair of hands.

> *million in revenues to $8 billion. I really have seen this movie before. So I feel confident about the long haul. But it may take us a couple of quarters to work through some of the growing pains of the organisation.*
>
> *But I think this is a very smart acquisition, I feel great about the product, and we have absolutely hit one of the themes that is changing most in the technology business. The opportunity around big data and analytics is fantastic, and it can flow right across all our businesses."*

356. She elaborated in cross-examination:

> *"So, as I recall – so of the miss in Q2, I think it was a $134 million revenue miss, 106 million was this deal slippage. As I recall, what we thought at the time was that Autonomy had been pursuing a lot of leads from HP for big deals and they had perhaps taken their eye off the smaller deals that had been part of Autonomy's revenue as an independent company. So when I did the deep dive into the Autonomy miss in London after Q2, we thought, okay, still scaling challenges, you know, hard for an entrepreneur to go from a small company to a big company, and we said, all right, deal slippage, not great execution; all good, we will craft a plan that is exactly here to fix that problem.*
>
> *Of course, what we later found out when the whistle-blower came forward, that the fundamentals had been misrepresented. But as I understood it at the end of Q2, I never suspected fraud at the end of Q2. I was like: okay, yes, this makes sense to me, we've got things to work on, deal slippage; we're going to have to put this into a much tighter process."*

357. However, what Ms Whitman later described as the *"gigantic financial miss in Q2"*, and its late disclosure by Dr Lynch, had important repercussions. Dr Lynch was placed on garden leave on the same day that the Q2 2012 results were announced.

The resignation of Mr Hussain and dismissal of Dr Lynch

358. Earlier, on 3 May 2012, Mr Hussain had sent a formal email of resignation to Dr Lynch. This stated:

> *"Further to our conversations over the past few days, it is with great regret that I am confirming my resignation as President of Autonomy.*
>
> *It has been an extraordinary 11 years and I appreciate all the opportunities Autonomy and HP have given me. I believe that the HP structure may be better suited to other peoples' skills than mine, and look forward to whatever assistance I can provide during a transition.*

> *Having watched you in action I know how persuasive you can be. However, I have to inform you this is a final decision, and I hope you will respect this.*
>
> *I will discuss details with Andy."*

359. The Claimants undertook a considerable exegesis in their closing submissions to demonstrate that this final version of Mr Hussain's retirement email reflected input from Dr Lynch, as well as Mr Hussain's wife. It seemed that the punchline was that Dr Lynch leant on Mr Hussain not to accept responsibility for the earnings miss, as in his first draft he had suggested he did. It was not clear to me where this point really took the Claimants. What is clear is that, after the earnings miss, there was no real prospect of HP countenancing Autonomy continuing under the pre-acquisition management, and that HP were intent on accumulating reasons why they should be removed entirely as soon as possible.

360. For example, when Mr Hussain sent an email to "senior leaders" of HP on 24 May 2012 drawing attention to the fact that some 157 staff had left or resigned from Autonomy in the previous weeks, which was then forwarded to Ms Whitman under the heading *"Unacceptable email from Sushovan"*, Ms Whitman's immediate response to this was to send an email to Mr Schultz stating "*let's garden leave this guy."* Mr Schultz actioned this immediately and branded what Mr Hussain had said as *"highly unusual and… quite misleading."* In fact, as Mr Hussain demonstrated in his reply, the true total was 163. Mr Hussain also explained that his update reflected his practice previously of updating management on staff departures. The Defendants submitted, and I accept, that by this time, HP wanted rid of Autonomy's old management, and dismissed as self-serving anything they had to say.

361. Despite Ms Whitman's acknowledgement that many, if not most, of the difficulties lay in the problems of integration[46], late in the evening on 23 May 2012 HP's general counsel, Mr John Schultz, sent a formal notice of termination by email to Dr Lynch, confirming Dr Lynch's discussion with Ms Whitman earlier that day, and placing Dr Lynch on immediate garden leave for the remainder of his notice period. The reasons given for his termination were as follows:

> *"… Your failure to adequately perform your duties and responsibilities at Autonomy…, Including in particular a failure to meet the financial performance goals associated with your position, a failure to adequately manage, supervise and/or instruct the company's management team and employees, a failure to adequately communicate regarding the company's performance and operations, a failure to cooperate, communicate and work with others in a satisfactory manner and an inability to maintain the confidence of senior leadership."*

[46] Or, as the Claimants preferred to describe it, *"challenges with operating Autonomy in the HP environment"*.

362. Ms Whitman told me that by this time she had "*completely lost faith*" in Dr Lynch. She stated in her witness statement:

> *"The fact that Autonomy had missed its revenue targets (by extremely wide margins) was bad enough on its own. Exacerbating matters, however, was Dr Lynch's conduct at the end of the second quarter of 2012: only alerting me to the existence of a problem at the last minute, understating the size of it, and taking a passive 'wait and see' attitude rather than proactively trying to resolve the issue. Combined with his authoritarian managing style … and his attempts to defect blame away from himself, I came to the conclusion that I could not trust Dr Lynch and that he would not be capable of executing a plan to turn Autonomy around."*

363. To this she added in her witness statement that what she had seen of Autonomy at the close of Q2 2012 was:

> *"… a chaotic organisation chasing high-value targets rather than a disciplined office focused on achieving consistent results."*

364. As I shall elaborate later, the wider truth is that Dr Lynch did not fit in with Ms Whitman's concept of Autonomy's place in the group. In this concept, neither Autonomy nor Dr Lynch and his colleagues were seen as providing a new and invigorating direction for a transformative change; and for some time before Dr Lynch's removal, Ms Whitman had had in mind to *"adopt"* (her word) or (in reality) absorb Autonomy under the umbrella of and to make Mr Veghte (then head of HP's own software business) the CEO of that part of the HP group. Thus, whereas before the Acquisition, Mr Apotheker had told Dr Lynch that Mr Veghte would leave and that he, Dr Lynch, would be put in charge of HP Software, by January 2012 Mr Veghte had been appointed as head of strategy and by March 2012 Ms Whitman had determined and made it clear that Mr Veghte was in charge of driving both the cloud and security businesses also. In an email to him dated 26 March 2012 Ms Whitman spoke of there being no one better suited than he for the role of providing *"Strategic vision for HP and CEO partnership"* and with particular reference to the Software part of the business she wrote:

> *"Clearly, there is a lot of strategy work, product line rationalization and other work that needs to be done in here. The business is in a bit of a melt down. So it needs attention now. Also, in a bit, this Business unit will need to adopt Autonomy and help it prosper. How could we reshape the organization under you to give you real leverage to get this done? A COO? Another SVP to operationalize the whole thing?"*

365. Ms Whitman claimed, when cross-examined on the contents of the email, that she had not yet made a decision to bring Autonomy under the software unit. She spoke at length of the need for HP Software *"to adopt and put their arms around this division to help, to help it grow and prosper and I had not made a decision at all about whether this business should actually report to Bill."* But the longer her answers became (and they were often in the nature of prepared

pitches) the clearer it was that the direction of travel was to be rid of Dr Lynch, absorb Autonomy into the software division, and (instead of Dr Lynch becoming head of HP's software business in place of Mr Veghte) retain Mr Veghte in place and through him ensure central control; and that the only real hesitation in her mind, as she came close to accepting, was whether Mr Veghte (whom Ms Whitman had also appointed as Chief Strategy Officer) would agree to the role.

366. The removal of Dr Lynch (who had himself begun to think, following the retirement of Mr Hussain, the resignation of Ms Eagan and the departure of a raft of Autonomy personnel, that *"rapid assimilation back to the HP model"* might be the only remaining option), was the concluding stage of the decapitation of the project of 'transformation' envisaged by Mr Apotheker, which had started with his own dismissal and that of Mr Robison. It was probably more symbolic than substantive in effect. It seems to me likely that Dr Lynch had already determined to resign before his termination, as demonstrated by emails on the same day (23 May 2012) discussing a new venture (Invoke Capital) that he was to join, and which Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter, Dr Menell, Ms Eagan, Ms Colomar and Ms Orton had already joined or were about to join (each with a percentage of its equity).

Mr Joel Scott's whistleblowing

367. On 25 May 2012, two days after Dr Lynch had been placed on garden leave, Mr Scott, Autonomy's Chief Operating Officer and General Counsel for the US, asked to see Mr Schultz to discuss concerns he (Mr Scott) had about Autonomy's hardware reselling strategy which (according to Mr Scott's evidence in the US criminal proceedings) an earlier telephone conversation between them had suggested Mr Schultz knew nothing about.

368. According to Mr Scott's evidence in the US criminal proceedings, he had been *"curious"* and had felt uncomfortable about the sales; and, after Autonomy's core management team had left in circumstances Mr Schultz told him suggested some impropriety, he felt he had to raise his concerns about them, and also about the structuring of hosting deals.[47]

369. Be that as it may, after his conversations with Mr Schultz, HP commenced an investigation into the concerns Mr Scott had expressed, and retained for that purpose the law firm, Morgan Lewis & Bockius ("Morgan Lewis"). They have been continually involved since that time. PwC were also retained.

The Rebasing Exercise

370. In parallel with the Morgan Lewis investigation, in June and July 2012, a "rebasing exercise" was conducted by Mr Yelland. Mr Yelland had become

[47] Mr Scott gave his evidence in the US criminal proceedings, which was admitted in these proceedings as hearsay, on terms which gave him substantial immunity. I shall have more to say about its reliability later. In a nutshell, it was largely self-serving, and designed to insulate himself from threatened charges of wire fraud in the US (which carry a penalty of up to 20 years' imprisonment for every count) for his own role and complicity. In his meetings with HP and with the US DoJ in relation to these matters, Mr Scott was recommended to and represented by the law firm also representing HP.

CFO of Autonomy in April 2012 after Mr Chamberlain (who had replaced Mr Hussain as CFO shortly after the Acquisition) handed in his notice.

371. In his evidence in these proceedings, Mr Yelland suggested that the exercise required him to review the "*economic substance*" of Autonomy's business,[48] and sought to use this as a platform from which in cross-examination to cast doubt on the *"substance"* of a wide slate of impugned transactions. However, it was clarified in the course of his cross-examination that the exercise was not intended to assess and determine whether past accounting was right or wrong under IFRS. The primary purpose was to establish what Autonomy's business actually comprised and to strip out from the accounts revenues referable to business which HP would be unlikely or had decided not to continue, although Mr Yelland also maintained that he stripped out Autonomy's hardware sales on the further basis that:

> *"I was looking for what the real economic substance of the ... Autonomy software business was. And the standalone hardware transactions were not really part of that business."*

372. Mr Yelland's team was supported by PwC. PwC's email of 3 July 2012 (headed *"Autonomy review – privileged and confidential"* (and redacted in part for privilege)) noted that it understood that the analysis would be used in an acquisition valuation model, but both the analysis and the model was the "*responsibility of HP alone*".[49]

373. Mr Yelland's exercise took a broad-brush approach. It did not look at the detail of individual transactions, nor did it attempt to consider the information that had been available at the time the accounting judgements had been made. Ms Meeta Sunderwala ("Ms Sunderwala"), a senior director in HP's EFR team[50], noted on 18 July 2012 that Mr Yelland's rebasing exercise involved "*a lot of estimation and judgement (not all built up from specific deals etc)*".

374. Mr Yelland concluded the "rebasing" (sometimes "rebaselining") exercise on 17 July 2012 when he presented his results in a spreadsheet and PowerPoint. These were summarised (in an *Exec Summary*) as follows:

---

[48] In cross-examination, he rowed back from this, caveating it as "*the economic substance of the Autonomy business as a software business*" (signifying, as I understood this, that the exercise was to examine what businesses were a complementary part of Autonomy's software business, rather than to examine their propriety or accounting treatment).

[49] Ms Lesjak suggested that PwC were also undertaking a "forensic investigation" at this time: but as Mr Nigel Curl of PwC (in Forensic Services) confirmed in an email to Mr Yelland of 12 July 2012, the input that PwC were assisting Mr Yelland with was limited to a review of the methodology. Mr Yelland again confirmed this in cross-examination, though he added that PwC *"were themselves doing work on hardware at the time, which is work [he] used to help inform the rebasing exercise".* It is clear that PwC were retained in about May 2012, and both the engagement of *"Forensic Services"* and the rubric *"privileged and confidential"* on their exchanges with Mr Yelland as noted in paragraph 372 above suggest some anticipation of proceedings: but PwC did not produce a written report until March 2013 and there is a disputed question as to quite what their role was in any *"deep dive review"*: see below.

[50] HP's Enterprise Financial Reporting group focused on M&A technical accounting.

"Results: The study identified $193m of adjustments to 2010, $157m to first 9mths of 2011 and $38m to FY12.

- *Resale of hardware accounted for $108m of the 2010 adjustments, $85m of 2011 and all $38m of FY12*
- *The review of deals >$1m, a review of the acquisition balance sheet and a review of 'exceptional' costs booked in Sept 2011 identified the other half of the 2010 and 2011 impacts*
- *Rebaselining required against the FY12 revenue is driven by hardware sales for which the accounting treatment is under review by GRRO. These are now stopped and other impacts are minimal*

Impact: The FY11 rebased and annualised growth is 14%, FY12 growth rebased is 1%

- *Licence rebased growth was a decline of 2% in FY11 and a decline of 16% for FY12 forecast*
- *The OP[51] rate rebaseline did not change the 2010 OP of 36%, reduced the 2011 first 9mnths reported OP by 3pts to 21%, and increased the FY12 OP by 1pt to 21%*
- *Note: the FY11 reported OP for the first 6mths was 34% but dropped in Q3 2011 to 5%.*

Limitations:

- *The study does not consider the IFRS appropriateness of the accounting. This is under review by PwC. High risk areas include the appropriateness and disclosure of hardware accounting, acceleration of deals using channel partners and balance sheet adequacy especially w.r.t. bad and doutful debt provisions*
- *The study has to make certain assumptions related to deals and balance sheet impacts on prior period P&Ls, which have not been auIAdited".*

375. No further work was done on the rebasing exercise after July 2012: that was the evidence Mr Yelland gave in the US criminal proceedings, and he confirmed it to me.[52]

---

[51] Operating Profit.

[52] The Claimants' case, however, is that the rebasing exercise assisted the preparation of a new ten-year forecast for Autonomy which was in turn used to generate a ten-year DCF model which then informed the impairment analysis of HP's business units (including Autonomy). The Defendants themselves relied on the fact that *"HP…had Mr Yelland's rebasing conclusions when they considered whether an impairment was necessary in August 2012".*

376. In mid-July 2012, Mr Yelland was also asked to give an initial view on whether the revenue that had been removed under his rebasing exercise had been recognised in accordance with IFRS. The Claimants emphasised that this was a separate exercise. He delivered this on 22 July 2012. Mr Yelland confirmed that this view was not purporting to be definitive. His experience was primarily in US GAAP, not IFRS. He was not an IFRS expert, felt uncomfortable in doing the exercise and did not want any statements he made about IFRS "*to be over-interpreted*". He told the Court:

> "*I did not want to do this exercise because I had made it quite clear, I had thought, all the way through to my colleagues, and from the outset, that we were not trying in this exercise, under the timescales we had, to draw firm IFRS conclusions.*"

377. Ms Sunderwala's view was that it was "*truly an estimation exercise at this point because we have not verified whether these are truly incorrect under IFRS AND there is a significant amount of judgment (and even speculation) around what period these items really relate to*". This was a fair summary of the exercise, as Mr Yelland confirmed.

378. That initial view did not raise any red flags. For 2010, reported operating profit and the "rebased" operating profit was the same, at 36%. For 2011, it remained comparable (24%, as compared with 21%). Of the $155.9m revenue adjustment Mr Yelland proposed for FY11, he concluded just $2m of this was "*Not IFRS compliant confirmed*" (though a further $114.3m, which included $84.6m *"Hardware resale"* and $11.6m relating to *"Accelerated rev rec (channel and solution deals)"*, was described as *"Not IFRS compliant probable"*). No revenue relating to licence hosting deals or purchases from customers was judged to be "*Not IFRS compliant confirmed*". Licence revenue on hosting deals and 25% of revenue relating to 'reciprocal' deals was classed as "*Management judgement/US GAAP difference*".

379. In cross-examination, Mr Yelland sought to stress that (a) the need for further investigations was recognised and he had included reference to hardware revenues because although non-compliance had not been confirmed, his own view was that they were not IFRS-compliant and (b) revenue recognition was only one part of what it was necessary to consider, the other part being disclosure. He told me that he had reached the conclusion that hardware revenues should have been disclosed separately.

August 2012 – the decision at that time not to impair the carrying value of Autonomy

380. In August 2012 HP carried out an impairment analysis of its business units, including Autonomy. Mr Yelland's rebasing exercise had, of course, by then already been concluded. HP accordingly had Mr Yelland's rebasing conclusions when they considered whether an impairment was necessary in August 2012. HP concluded that no impairment was required, and that the carrying value of Autonomy should be maintained at the $11bn that HP had paid in October 2011. That was so notwithstanding that Ms Lesjak, HP's CFO and the person who ultimately had to determine whether or not to recommend

an impairment charge, stated (in her witness statement) that she had been informed that the exercise conducted by Mr Yelland had:

> *"identified very significant adverse potential accounting adjustments to correct the accounting treatment for, in particular, certain hardware and licence transactions. It indicated that Autonomy was a far less successful and fast-growing company than it had projected itself to be, both to HP and the market."*

381. Why that was the view taken in August 2012, whereas some three months later an impairment charge of $8.8 billion was suddenly announced (see below), was a matter of considerable dispute but the justification advanced at the time seems reasonably clear on the available documentary evidence. The quarterly goodwill memo from Ms Lesjak's department stated that the:

> "*decrease in operating margin is due to the miss on revenue targets and other execution issues caused by challenges with operating Autonomy in the HP environment and loss of the legacy Autonomy management team*"
>
> and that:
>
> "*HP Executive Management does not believe the short-term decline in revenue and operating margin is an indicative of longer term revenue and margin projections for this business. The market and competitive position for Autonomy remains strong, particularly in Cloud offerings*."[53]

382. In an internal email dated 28 June 2012, Ms Lesjak herself was recorded as having told EY (though, as explained in footnote [51] above, she said she could not recall this) that the Autonomy issues were related to *"short-term challenges with working in the HP environment and not an issue with the overall market or sales funnel."*

383. By contrast with HP's approach to Autonomy, an impairment was taken on the Enterprise Services division, which had been acquired in 2008 for $13.9bn; the write-down announced in August 2012 was $8bn, as Ms Lesjak confirmed. Ms Sunderwala also confirmed in June 2012 that, based on Ms Lesjak's comments, no impairment analysis was planned for Q3 2012, though one would ordinarily be undertaken at year end.

November 2012: Announcement of Impairment

384. Despite this, on 20 November 2012, HP publicly announced (as part of its Full Year 2012 Results announcement) that it was writing down the value of Autonomy by $8.8 billion and attributed $5 billion of that amount to fraud.

[53] Ms Lesjak attempted to suggest that this was not accurate, but accepted that the memo was prepared by senior people within her department and that they must have got this information from HP senior management. But it is consistent with the document recording what Ms Lesjak told EY at the time. In any event Ms Lesjak accepted that HP concluded that there were no impairment indicators at the time.

The Claimants and the Defendants disputed the reasons for this change of tack, and the basis for this serious allegation.

385. HP's position was heralded in its press release on the same day, which stated that the majority of the impairment charge of more than $5 billion was:

> *"linked to serious accounting improprieties, misrepresentation and disclosure failures discovered by an internal investigation by HP and forensic review into Autonomy's accounting practices prior to its acquisition by HP. The balance of the impairment charge is linked to the recent trading value of HP's stock and headwinds against anticipated synergies and marketplace performance."*

386. The press release continued:

> *"HP launched its internal investigation into these issues after a senior member of Autonomy's leadership team came forward, following the departure of Autonomy founder Mike Lynch, alleging that there had been a series of questionable accounting and business practices at Autonomy prior to the acquisition by HP. This individual provided numerous details about which HP previously had no knowledge or visibility.*
>
> *HP initiated an intense internal investigation, including a forensic review by PricewaterhouseCoopers of Autonomy's historical financial results, under the oversight of John Schultz, executive vice president and general counsel, HP.*
>
> *As a result of that investigation, HP now believes that Autonomy was substantially overvalued at the time of its acquisition due to the misstatement of Autonomy's financial performance, including its revenue, core growth rate and gross margins, and the misrepresentation of its business mix.*
>
> *Although HP's investigation is ongoing, examples of the accounting improprieties and misrepresentations include:*
>
> - *The mischaracterization of revenue from negative-margin, low-end hardware sales with little or no associated software content as "IDOL product", and the improper inclusion of such revenue as "license revenue" for purposes of the organic and IDOL growth calculations.*
>
>   *- This negative-margin, low-end hardware is estimated to have comprised 10-15% of Autonomy's revenue.*
>
> - *The use of licensing transactions with value-added resellers to inappropriately accelerate revenue recognition, or worse, create revenue where no end-user customer existed at the time of sale.*

> *This appears to have been a willful effort on behalf certain former Autonomy employees to inflate the underlying financial metrics of the company in order to mislead investors and potential buyers. These misrepresentations and lack of disclosure severely impacted HP management's ability to fairly value Autonomy at the time of the deal.*
>
> *HP has referred this matter to the US Securities and Exchange Commission's Enforcement Division and the UK's Serious Fraud Office for civil and criminal investigation. In addition, HP is preparing to seek redress against various parties in the appropriate civil courts to recoup what it can for its shareholders. The company intends to aggressively pursue this matter in the months to come."*

387. However, and as the Defendants repeatedly stressed, it was unclear quite what had changed since August 2012, after the conclusion of Mr Yelland's report on 17 July and his tentative expression of views on IFRS a little later.

388. Ms Whitman gave the following explanation during the media call which followed the announcement:

> *"Ian Sherr* [of the Wall Street Journal]*: Thanks for taking my question. Can you walk us through some of the details about who when all of this unravelling happened customer and you said it happened after Lynch left, but when exactly and how did you confirm all of this happened?*
>
> *Meg Whitman: Let me give you a little bit of chronology here. We bought Autonomy as you know four* [sic., for] *$11.1 billion a little over a year ago and Mike and his team ran Autonomy for two quarters and you might recall that I let Mike go after he missed his budget numbers in Q2 by a pretty wide margin. Sometime after he left, a senior executive from the Autonomy team[54] came forward asserting as I mentioned a whole host of accounting improprieties when Autonomy was a public company before HP bought the company.*
>
> *So led by John Schultz, our General Counsel, we begin an internal investigation, hired PWC to do a forensic examination, and that took place over a number of months. This was very difficult to unravel. It took a long time to actually come to the conclusion that we are announcing today because we needed to be sure what we were seeing in the financial statements. The conclusion that we made news* [sic., was?] *as I said there appears to have been a willful effort by some Autonomy employees to inflate the underlying financial metrics when Autonomy was a public company."*

[54] Mr Joel Scott, Chief Operating Officer and General Counsel of Autonomy Inc.

389. No doubt conscious that the sudden announcement a year after completion of the Acquisition required some further explanation, Mr Schultz also suggested at the same press conference that Autonomy did not have a proper set of accounting records and that:

> *"critical documents were missing from the obvious places and it required that we look in every nook and cranny to sew together, to stitch together different pieces of information that allowed us to get to the detail we have today and allowed us to do the re-baseline effort that we have engaged in…"*

390. Thus, it appears that HP sought to justify the write-down and accompanying accusations of fraud in November 2012 by reference to the whistleblowing in May, the matters identified and considered in the *"intense internal investigation"* and *"forensic review"*, and the piecing together of disparate and partly incomplete information after that.

391. The curiosity of this is not only that the earlier decision had been against impairment, but also the lack of any documentary evidence of any calculation of what amounts were to be attributed to the wrongdoing. Ms Lesjak[55] herself seemed unable to explain this: see further as to this paragraph [396] below.

392. Furthermore, the direct and contemporaneous documentary evidence might suggest a different and more benign explanation of the reasons for the write-down. Thus, according to the documents:

(1) $3.6bn of the $8.8bn impairment was referable to the effect of changing the WACC from 10% to 16%. I discuss this change further below; but for the present the point to note is that when asked whether this change was anything to do with the allegations of fraud, Ms Lesjak, after some equivocation, agreed that she did not believe that this was ever quantified.

(2) After the impact of the market capitalisation requirements, the remaining $5.2bn of the $8.8bn impairment was split into three categories, as set out in an infographic created internally, which corresponded substantially with the analysis set out in the presentation on the impairment given to HP's Board on 24 and 26 October 2012:

i. $2.9bn said to be attributable to the effect of lower margins;

ii. $1.8bn said to be attributable to the effect of lower growth rates; and

iii. $1.3bn said to be attributable to the effect of re-baselining revenue.

[55] As CFO, Ms Lesjak was the very person whose responsibility it was as CFO to recommend the impairment.

393. The reasons for lower margins were articulated in an email to, amongst others, Ms Lesjak on 19 November 2012 (i.e. the day before the announcement). That email, which was sent to Mr Schultz, stated there were three "buckets" that explained the lower margins:

> *"There are really 3 buckets why the op margins in steady-state (28%) are lower than the 40%'ish margins in Autonomy's prior reported results.*
>
> *1.* ***SaaS business model and impact of Iron Mountain's digital business*** *— Iron Mountain's results were not in Autonomy's reported results since the deal closed in Q3 '11. Iron Mtn earns ~12% margins and represent ~19% of total revenue so accounts for 4-5 pts of total Autonomy margin decline*
>
> *2.* ***Accounting treatment of certain costs*** *— In the dark period of Q3 '11, Autonomy incurred significant "1-time" costs associated with bad debt, vacation accruals, commissions/bonus accruals. Not all of these costs were spread back into the restated financials because it is very difficult to determine the appropriate period. However, if you spread these costs over a 12 month period, it accounts for 4-5 pts of margin*
>
> *3.* ***Under-investment*** *— Autonomy under-invested in each of its acquisitions, taking out R&D, IT, and other infrastructure costs. On a go-forward, steady-state model, we're assuming a benchmark level of investment, contributing 2-4 pts of margin".*

394. None of those factors identifying an impact on margin were tied in or shown to relate to the alleged accounting improprieties announced by HP the following day. This was reluctantly accepted, after two deflecting answers, by Ms Lesjak in cross-examination.[56] The same was true of the other factors identified in the board presentation and infographic. Ms Lesjak accepted that the points about "lower growth rates" were similar to the points about lower margins.

395. Further:

(1) Although it is not disputed that in May 2012, HP had retained Morgan Lewis and PwC, no written *"forensic review"* by PwC is apparent from the evidence until later (in 2013, long after this announcement), and none was disclosed;

[56] Ms Lesjak did attempt to suggest that the second "bucket" was to do with "*accounting improprieties*", but could not explain how and was forced to accept that it was limited to factors such as bad debt and one-off costs; they were nothing to do with the allegations relating to hardware, channel sales, hosting revenue or anything of that kind.

(2) Indeed, there is no evidence of any review, investigative report or analysis by PwC dating from before the announcement (or even a short period thereafter), except a commentary on the methodology adopted by Mr Yelland for which PwC disclaimed responsibility.[57]

(3) The original purpose of the rebasing exercise had nothing to do with possible mis-accounting under IFRS: it looked at the differences under US GAAP and how HP would have run the business. When Mr Yelland was asked to give a view on IFRS, he was uncomfortable doing so, his conclusions in any event did not support a conclusion that there had been wilful non-compliance with IFRS, and Ms Sunderwala thought that it was *"truly an estimation exercise"*, involving *"a lot of judgment (even speculation)"*.

(4) Mr Yelland's evidence was that his own rebasing exercise (produced in late July) did not materially change thereafter.

(5) Autonomy had a full and orderly set of books, accounts and ledgers which amongst other things identified all Autonomy's hardware transactions.

396. The Defendants supported their contention that there had been no such analysis as might be expected before making public claims of fraud by referring to events after the press release. Thus:

(1) On 29 November 2012, 9 days after the announcement, there was an email exchange involving Ms Lesjak, Mr Gomez (HP's Chief Communications Officer), and Mr Levine (HP's Corporate Controller). Ms Lesjak was told:

> *"We are getting a lot of push back from media that they cannot understand how the accounting issues at AU could result in a $5 billion writedown. Mike is using this to create the illusion of an issue. We'd like to create a simple graphic that demonstrates the impact of the reduced revenue starting point, margin and growth rate to the DCF model. Is there someone on your team that we could work with to produce something?"*

(2) Ms Lesjak plainly had not seen any analysis of this kind. She asked Mr Levine what he had. All Mr Levine had was some PowerPoint slides substantially the same as the board presentation referred to at paragraph 392(2) above. Mr Levine stated in an email to Ms Lesjak dated 30 November 2012 that:

> *"All I have is the attached. <u>We've never formally prepared anything to attribute the irregularities to the</u>*

[57] The Claimants invited me to note that PwC were involved in interviewing Autonomy personnel, and in particular, interviewed Ms Harris for some three hours on 13 November 2012. The *"Memorandum of Interview"* recorded that this was *"in connection with HP's internal investigation of Autonomy's accounting practices before, during, and after HP's acquisition."*

> <u>*amount of the write down*</u>*. Everything we did has been focused on the FV calculation based off the forward growth and profitability projections. I don't know whether Steve or Andy prepared something that translated the irregularities into their impact on the forward projections."* [My emphasis]

397. Unable otherwise to explain how, on that basis, the need for impact on margins was announced as relating to fraud, Ms Lesjak first suggested that HP had had input from PwC: but when shown that PwC did not report until 2013 and that in 2012 the work that PwC did to support Mr Yelland consisted of commentary on Mr Yelland's own work, for which, moreover, PwC disclaimed responsibility, she then told me in cross-examination that despite what appeared from that email, she had nevertheless been told by Mr Andy Johnson, who was then Head of HP's Corporate Development sub-team within the SCD group[58], that all the adjustments *"were based on new information that came out of the forensic investigation."*

398. Reliance on a conversation with "Andy" (whom she described, and said she relied on, as *"keeper"* of the original DCF model used by HP in its acquisition of Autonomy) became a refrain of her answers in this regard. The following answer was typical of a number of iterations:

> *"Q. …on your evidence now that you're giving to this court, you're saying that everything that changed in the DCF was entirely explained by the irregularities?*
>
> *A. That is what Andy told me. He told me that…looking at the information that they learned in the forensic investigation, that now the stand-alone value was 3.5, and he said that he believed that all of that was as a result of either accounting improprieties, disclosure failures or misrepresentations. That is what he said."*

399. When it was directly put to Ms Lesjak that she had no idea under any of the heads identified of how much could fairly be attributed to any wrongdoing, and that the announcement (for which she was jointly responsible) of a write-down on the grounds of a major fraud was reckless because she had never commissioned a proper calculation to correlate the allegations with the changes in the DCF she answered:

> *"So I believe I did when I went to Andy and I said – and Andy said he calculated the stand-alone value relative to the point in time we did the acquisitions, as he knew the model in detail, and he said the only changes he made were as a result of information coming out of the forensic investigation and that he was confident that at least the $6 billion was attributable to not just accounting irregularities but misrepresentations that we got during the due diligence process and also disclosure failures where it was not clear in the disclosure as to what was going on…"*

[58] HP's Strategy and Corporate Development group.

400. There were references in the record to some conversations between Ms Lesjak and Mr Johnson likely to have related to the impairment analysis: for example, in an email from Mr Sarin dated 28 September 2012, in an email from Ms Sunderwala dated 17 October 2012 (referring to a meeting with an electronic link that evening), in an email chain on 23 October (referring to a "deck" for discussion) and in a short email arranging a telephone call between them on 15 November 2012. But there was no documentary evidence produced to show how it was that Ms Lesjak was satisfied that the factors resulting in the write-off were attributable to accounting improprieties, disclosure failings and misrepresentation; and Ms Lesjak made no mention of having relied on Mr Johnson in her witness statement (in which she made no mention of him at all).

401. The Claimants sought to explain this lack of documentary support on the basis that (a) at the time the impairment charge was announced to the market, HP was in the midst of an internal forensic investigation *"communications in respect of which have been withheld for privilege"* and (b) it is *"unsurprising that there is a limit to the volume of documents that have been disclosed by the Claimants"*. But neither was or amounted to a direct assertion that there was any such documentary evidence; and the email exchanges after the event already quoted suggest there was not.

402. Further, as to the suggestion that such an investigation had uncovered impropriety of which HP was unaware, the Defendants' position was that:

(1) HP had been aware of hardware sales for some time. As explained at paragraphs 324 to 327 above, some were apparent from (and at any rate not hidden in) the due diligence.

(2) HP and its advisors were made aware of hardware sales in some detail following completion in the Autumn of 2011. Yet hardware purchases by Autonomy from Dell for resale continued to at least April 2012: Mr Yelland was asked on at least two documented occasions (one in March 2012 in anticipation of his appointment as CFO, and another after it, in April 2012) to approve such a purchase on the basis that the hardware would be sold through to customers at a loss of approximately 10%. In each case he gave the approval without objection. He sought to argue in cross-examination that he drew a distinction between "sell-through" and "pass through" which he told me *"sometimes is used to describe sales that are not connected to the rest of the business"*; but he provided no support for this, accepted that he had not focused on the difference at the time, and I find that this was an afterthought. The hardware revenues were included in spreadsheets provided by Autonomy to HP and were subsequently openly incorporated into HP's own financial reporting.

(3) As to the second alleged impropriety, the Defendants contended that there was no requirement at all under IFRS for an end-user to exist at the time of sale (even if there was under US GAAP). Moreover, HP had been made aware during the due diligence that Autonomy

recognised revenue from resellers on *"sell-in"* rather than *"sell-through"*.

The revaluation and its announcement

403. On 20 November 2012, HP announced that it was writing down the value of Autonomy by US $8.8 billion. Simultaneously, HP attributed a substantial part of the write down to fraud on the part of Autonomy prior to the Acquisition stating that there appeared to be a wilful effort on the part of certain former Autonomy employees to inflate the underlying financial metrics of the company in order to mislead investors and potential buyers.

404. In the circumstances described above, the Defendants' case is that HP had no basis for suggesting that the value written down (or any part of that) was attributable to fraud by the Defendants: the real reason for the write-down was the need to reduce the carrying value of some of HP's assets in order to take account of the diminution in HP's market capitalisation following a sustained fall in HP's share price. According to the Defendants, the excessive write-down of the value of Autonomy was the means of avoiding a write-down of HP's own software business.

405. HP's share price first began to decline significantly in Q4 2011. It continued to fall in 2012. In June 2012, HP's market capitalisation fell below its book value. By 1 August 2012, its share price was $17.66, around half of what it had been 12 months previously.[59] By 24 October 2012, it was $14.47.

406. Although the Claimants were apt to blame this on the Acquisition, the Defendants pointed out that the decline had much longer origin, and reflected very disappointing performance. Year-on-year revenues were falling by about 7%, year on year EPS had fallen by about 33%, and year on year cash flow from operations was down something over 60%. Ms Whitman accepted that these were pretty dire numbers.

407. The truth was that in 2012, HP was in crisis and performing poorly across its business. Ms Whitman agreed in cross-examination that when she looked more carefully after her appointment it was in a far worse state than she had initially thought and that there was a crisis of confidence around senior management, board and company strategy. I have already noted that the business was fractured in 'silos' with intra-division jealousies, poor co-operation and overall direction, and short-term focus. The Defendants described it, with (as it seems to me from the available documentation) good reason, as a huge, enervated, company, beset with systemic failings. It had (as Dean Acheson famously remarked of Great Britain now nearly 60 years ago) *"lost an empire but not yet found a role"*, having abandoned Mr Apotheker's plan and fallen back onto retrenchment to its core business, which was low margin and an outmoded model.

408. As previously noted, and quite apart from Autonomy, HP's efforts to expand by acquisition had been astonishingly problematic and unsuccessful:

[59] The share price on 1 August 2011 had been $35.20.

(1) HP bought Electronic Data Systems for $13.9bn. It was rebranded as HP Enterprise Services in 2008. Its value was written down in Q3 2012 by some $8bn.

(2) Other acquisitions are listed in HP's M&A Scorecards, such as that for Q2 2012. One well known one was the Palm hand-held computer business which it had acquired for $1.2 billion in 2010[60]. The acquired businesses being tracked had under-performed against budgeted revenue by $1.73bn or 26%.

409. The sustained fall in its share price had consequences for HP under US accounting rules. As Ms Lesjak explained in her witness statement, the fall in its share price meant that HP needed, in reconciling the value of its business units to market capitalisation, to (a) increase the discount rate (i.e. the premium to the weighted average cost of capital ("WACC")), which further decreased the value of the business units and (b) revalue its goodwill and intangible assets across all its business units: the sum of the parts of the business plus a control premium of 30% could not exceed HP's market capitalisation. Ms Lesjak considered this an arbitrary accounting construct. She accepted that it involved reverse engineering the value of segments of the business to get down to the required level.

410. The process of reverse engineering involved ascribing discount rates to various segments of the business. Through this, the reduction was loaded disproportionately onto certain parts of business, notably Autonomy. HP's Enterprise Services division was also ascribed a heavy discount rate, but had no goodwill left to impair following the $8bn impairment recorded in Q3 2012.

411. It appears that HP was keen to avoid its own Software division (other than Autonomy) being impaired. Ms Sunderwala noted in mid-August 2012: "*I feel that even at a $16 price, we could support no impairment in HP Software (without Autonomy) if we took a hit in Autonomy stand-alone*." By October 2012, this was being fed into further models, with the discount being loaded onto Autonomy and HP Enterprise Services as compared with Software, TS and ESSN.[61] It seems that this was motivated, at least in part, by tax reasons:

> "*during our Tax Department review we discussed if Tax had a preference as to the location/designation of a potential goodwill impairment for the HP Software business (including Autonomy). Although we want to provide a final confirmation once numbers become available, our expectation is that the best approach is to impair Autonomy's goodwill. Autonomy's legal entities are currently isolated, so the impact of an impairment thereon should carry less risk to existing or future tax attributes/opportunities.*"[62]

[60] The Palm business had been bought for $1.2bn in 2010.

[61] Ms Sunderwala noted: "*Add 1.25ppt discount rate to Autonomy and ES (most execution risk)…You can add 0.25ppt to Software, TS and ESSN if looks like we need more downward pressure; otherwise keep as is (not sure if Software can handle it…)*" Further documents also showed a desire to avoid increasing the discount rate for the Software division.

[62] Ms Lesjak was aware that this was the preference of the tax department.

412. A large write-down of Autonomy also mitigated the need to write down HP's hardware business, which Ms Whitman had affirmed to the market as the core business. Ms Sunderwala drew another advantage to the attention of HP's auditors, EY, quoting an article that mused:

> "*a write-down could have a cosmetic effect of making it easier for HP to show a return on invested capital. Less invested capital, easier for growth to look big*".

413. It was observed internally that to get down to the 30% control premium (see paragraph 409 above), discount rates would have to be "*crazy*" and that the result would be "*nonsensical*". The result was that, while a WACC of 9.5% had been deemed appropriate for valuing Autonomy in August 2012, by October 2012, HP had increased it to 15%. This was increased further to 16% after Ms Whitman asked, very late in the process (overnight between 23-24 October 2012, with the board meeting to discuss the impairment being scheduled for 24 October 2012) that the final value include some synergies.[63] The effect of changing the WACC from 10% to 16% by itself caused an impairment of $3.6bn.

414. Although the Claimants sought to dismiss as *"not credible"* the suggestion that the erosion of Autonomy's performance flowed from innocent causes, the fact is that remarkably little was provided by the Claimants to support their case that the impairment was the consequence of the revelation of fraud in the course of an in-depth forensic inquiry. Equally little was provided by the Claimants to substantiate the effect of the alleged fraud on the various "buckets" they had identified. On the other hand, the Defendants did provide a plausible account of the "reverse engineering" adopted to achieve a result which shifted blame away from under performance in HP's other enterprises at Autonomy's expense. Ultimately, I am not required to determine the reason for this erosion in Autonomy's performance. The fact it occurred is consistent with and provides some general support for the Claimants' case but the failure to connect the alleged fraud with the impairment means the establishment of the fraud depends on a detailed consideration of each head of claim.

After the announcement of impairment and the public assertion of fraud

415. By the time of the announcement HP had not given Dr Lynch an opportunity to address the allegations. HP went ahead with the announcement and accompanied it with a comprehensive press and public relations campaign,[64] even establishing a so-called "truth squad".

416. In December 2012, EY were asked to give their view as to whether the valuation of Autonomy in August 2011 was affected by the matters said to

[63] Email exchanges over 23 to 24 October 2012 show that this was done overnight. Ms Lesjak did not argue with this. Ms Lesjak attempted to suggest that the $11bn book value of Autonomy was in fact made up of $1.5bn of synergies and $9.5bn "stand-alone value", but that was incorrect.
[64] Mr Youngjohns explained in a blog at the time that HP had prepared one of the most extensive communication plans he had ever seen in 30 years. He explained in cross-examination that he had never "*seen anything quite like this in any other role*".

give rise to the impairment. EY prepared a memorandum dated December 2012, addressing:

> *"our considerations of the allegations on the original valuation of Autonomy at Q4'11, specifically around the determination of fair value at the time of the acquisition and the evaluation of the effect of known errors."*

417. EY recorded that they had reviewed HP's presentations to the SEC and to the SFO, and Autonomy's re-baselining review. They noted that, in determining Autonomy's enterprise value in 2011, HP had adopted a Discounted Cash Flow (DCF) model, with input from Duff & Phelps ("D&P").

418. EY stated their conclusion in the round to be that:

> *"The impact of the valuation at Q4'11 of the known accounting errors does not materially impact the valuation as contemplated at Q4 2011, and further, it would not be appropriate to consider them in isolation."*

419. On the various matters suggested by the Claimants to give rise to the question whether the 2011 accounts should be re-drawn, EY concluded as follows:

(1) That they did not believe that the stand-alone loss-making "pass-through" hardware sales would have had any material impact on valuation using HP's model to fair value Autonomy, which was a DCF valuation model. Indeed, loss making hardware sales operated to reduce cash flows.

(2) That neither reseller deals (referred to in the memorandum as "channel sales") nor sales of upfront hosting licences had a significant impact on the cash flows of the business. They involved moving revenue between quarters, and because HP used a DCF model to fair value Autonomy EY did not believe the timing differences would materially impact the valuation.

(3) As to concerns about reciprocal deals, if value received was legitimate, the arrangements did not impact cash flows either. The proposed adjustments identified by HP did not have a material impact on the original valuation model.

420. These conclusions were relied on by the Defendants as endorsing their case that (a) there was no fraud and (b) the Claimants' case on loss was a confected one.

421. The Claimants rejected the Defendants' reliance on EY's memorandum as misplaced because:

(1) The question at which it was aimed was whether HP, having recognised an impairment in November 2012, ought to restate its

accounts in respect of the purchase of Autonomy in 2011. Ms Lesjak had explained that that question turned on whether the change in forecast underlying the impairment calculation resulted from correcting an error, or a change in estimate; and as HP told the SEC, it took the view that its revised forecast did not amount to correcting an error, because the original forecasts were not erroneous based on the facts that existed at the time. Rather, it considered the revised forecast a change in estimate based on new information;

(2) The memorandum was not shared with HP at the time and its context is unclear because EY have taken the position that the Claimants were not entitled to disclosure of its working papers and the memorandum itself was made available to the parties in these proceedings only because it had been admitted into evidence in the US criminal proceedings. Its context was unknown, and it should not be read out of context.

422. The Defendants embraced EY's view as *"a far closer reflection of reality than the Claimants' case.*" Their overall position as to the financial effect of the allegations, leaving aside their defence to the allegations themselves, was summarised as follows:

> *"The Claimants' allegations ignore the fact that Autonomy's business was real business, and cash was received for the overwhelming majority of the transactions complained about. The hardware sales were real sales which generated revenue. In almost all cases the cash in respect of a reseller deal came in (whether from the reseller itself, or from an end-user). The alleged reciprocal deals involved cash payments from customers. The sales of licences to hosted customers all brought in real revenues. The OEM allegations are not suggested to have had any revenue (or cash) impact at all. This simple truth obviously calls into question the Claimants' case on loss, which is a confected one. It is also important to keep in mind when considering the Claimants' wider case as the existence of some over-arching fraudulent scheme to which Dr Lynch was party."*

Backdrop to these proceedings and the effect of the US criminal proceedings

423. The announcement of the impairment write-down, and the reasons for it, served as a catalyst for proceedings by HP's shareholders against HP and its directors in the US, including derivative claims as well as securities claims for their failures in relation to the Acquisition. Those proceedings were ultimately settled against the backdrop that HP was itself going to bring proceedings against Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain.

424. These proceedings, following criminal proceedings in Northern California against Mr Hussain which resulted in him being convicted of fraud, being sentenced to 5 years in prison, and having to pay circa $10 million in financial penalties, were issued on 30 March 2015, some two and a half years after HP had publicly accused the Defendants of fraud. They follow an astonishingly

extensive trawl through Autonomy's documents and transactions in an effort to make good those early accusations, for which they appear to have had precious little support at the time, and even to provide a basis for quantifying loss in exactly the same amount as HP had asserted (without any discernible basis) in its public announcement of those accusations.

425. Dr Lynch has been indicted and further to extradition proceedings commenced in September 2019 before the conclusion of evidence in this trial, the Home Secretary ordered his extradition on 28 January 2022. (On 9 February 2022, Dr Lynch applied for permission to appeal that decision.) Mr Chamberlain has also been indicted (on the same indictment as Dr Lynch), which Dr Lynch relied on to explain his absence (see paragraph [426(3)] below). A superseding indictment of 21 March 2019 showed that investigations had been extended to events relating to the founding and growth of Invoke and its investments, which the Defendants offered as the explanation for Mr Kanter and Ms Eagan declining to give evidence in these proceedings, for fear (according to the Defendants) of repercussions in potential US criminal proceedings.

426. The US criminal proceedings, actual and prospective, have cast long shadows over these proceedings. It is not for me to question the basis on which the US courts have been satisfied as to their jurisdiction, though it is to be noted that the only person likely to have suffered direct loss[65], wherever the claims are adjudicated, is HP; and HP agreed to this jurisdiction. But the fact is that the effect of the US proceedings in this, the natural forum for these claims, has been considerable:

(1) Mr Hussain was in practice unable to attend proceedings brought against him in their natural forum and in his place of habitual residence alleging fraud and damages well in excess of all he probably has in financial terms.

(2) Throughout the hearing and all through his mammoth cross-examination, Dr Lynch has had to bear the additional burden of indictments against him and, since September 2019, the persistent threat of extradition.

(3) The Claimants noted that even before he was indicted, Mr Chamberlain did not provide any witness statement in these proceedings; but the fact is that he has long been under threat and has now been indicted by the US DoJ and charged by the FRC with acting dishonestly and/or recklessly as well as failing to act with competence and due care. Although the Claimants submitted that this had not been suggested to be and was not a good explanation for Dr Lynch not having called Mr Chamberlain, Dr Lynch did note in his written closing submissions that *"it is to be expected that he would wish to*

[65] I suppose it is possible that short sellers and/or derivative traders may claim to have been indirectly prejudiced; but an irony is that all shareholders of Autonomy enjoyed a premium greater than on HP's case they should have received; and there is nothing to suggest that any customers or third parties suffered any loss on any transactions with Autonomy on either side of the Atlantic. Shareholders in HP would have their own recourse for loss allegedly resulting to HP, subject always to rules restricting claims for derivative loss.

remain silent pending those charges": although I accept that and have not drawn inferences, without more, from his absence, he was a central character and I have felt it unavoidable and necessary to make findings in respect of his conduct notwithstanding his absence (as, in my assessment, he must always have appreciated was on the cards).

(4) As mentioned above, Mr Kanter and Ms Eagan (who is based in the US) declined to appear before me, though both had provided witness statements. Dr Lynch was apparently informed by their lawyers on 19 and 21 August 2019 respectively of their decision not to give evidence. No explanation appears to have been provided by those individuals' lawyers, and certainly none was elaborated to me. The Defendants submitted that neither of them (though both worked for DarkTrace) was within Dr Lynch's control; but even if technically true, and even if it is a reasonable inference that the extension of the US criminal investigation may have made them more reluctant to give evidence at this trial, it seemed to me likely, in the light of the fact that they had provided witness statements and until August 2019 they were in his running order, that had Dr Lynch really wanted them to attend they would have been persuaded to do so. The Claimants also noted that Dr Lynch had caused the press to be informed that it was he who had decided not to call them. It is difficult and I consider unnecessary to decide why they were not called. I have not drawn general inferences from their absence; but I have necessarily in particular instances drawn conclusions without being able to weigh in the balance any contrary evidence. That is inevitable: both were central actors; and Mr Kanter especially could have provided useful evidence bearing on factual matters where I have in consequence had to make determinations without his assistance; and likewise, though less often, in the case of Ms Eagan.

(5) Certain key witnesses whose evidence in the US criminal trial was admitted into these proceedings by hearsay notice had been given immunity in return for their evidence (namely, Messrs Joel Scott and David and Steven Truitt, and Ms Antonia Anderson as to whom see later). Mr Egan had entered into a deferred prosecution agreement ("DPA") which bound him to give evidence admitting culpability in the terms of a statement of fact negotiated and agreed with the DoJ, and not to offer any contradictory evidence or arguments on pain of immediate prosecution without defence for breach. Inevitably this invites caution and at least *prima facie* wariness as to their reliability, especially if and when their documented conduct appeared to reveal a different explanation than they offered in their evidence.

(6) The position of Mr Sullivan, and whether he was promised immunity, was unclear in this regard; but although he provided a signed witness statement and it appeared that he was to give oral evidence, the Claimants informed the Defendants at a late stage that he was unwilling to attend, and that the Claimants did not propose to invoke the procedure for compelling his attendance that they did embark upon

in the case of Mr Egan. His evidence, and the transcripts of his evidence in the US criminal proceedings which dealt with many of the matters in issue here, but which he did not deal with in his witness statement, came in only as hearsay.

(7) Evidence from those witnesses in the US criminal proceedings who also provided a witness statement was often over-lawyered and too rehearsed to be authentic. Further, it became apparent that a number of the Claimants' witnesses had discussed their evidence with lawyers for the Claimants or the US prosecutors, often many times[66] , to the extent that I often felt I was being treated to a received and then rehearsed version of events, rather than the witnesses' actual recollection.

(8) But for the earlier criminal trial in the US the Claimants would almost certainly have felt they had to call in these proceedings and to expose to cross-examination witnesses whose evidence in the US they instead relied on by its introduction under a hearsay notice. I have in mind (i) Mr Scott (ii) Mr Stephan (iii) Mr Steven Truitt (iv) Mr David Truitt (v) Mr Loomis (vi) Mr Channing (vii) Mr Johnson and (as indicated above) (viii) Mr Sullivan. Dr Lynch thus had no opportunity to cross-examine any of those witnesses. Throughout this trial I have had to be careful to remind myself that much of the evidence on a transcript was only hearsay evidence untested in these proceedings.

427. There were notable absences. The only oral evidence from anyone at Deloitte, was that of Mr Welham (who also gave evidence in the US criminal proceedings). He was not a partner of Deloitte at the relevant times. The audit partners, Mr Richard Knights (for 2009 and Q1 2010) and then Mr Nigel Mercer (for the 2010 yearly audit), did not give any evidence. Their attendance would greatly have assisted me; and indeed the Defendants maintain that it is to be inferred from the fact that the Claimants did not call either, that (in a different way) it would ultimately have helped them. The Defendants pointed out in that regard that a Settlement Agreement entered into with Deloitte in April 2016 gave the Claimants unusual control over Mr Knights as a potential witness: clause 6 gave them the right (*inter alia*) to require Mr Knights to prepare for and attend interviews, sign statements and attend voluntarily as a witness at this trial. It follows that the Claimants had the ability to procure his attendance. The only explanation offered for not calling him is that he was involved in disciplinary proceedings brought by the FRC. But the Defendants submitted that that was not a good explanation, and pointed out also that the defence served on his behalf (and that of Deloitte) in those proceedings supported aspects of Dr Lynch's (and Mr Hussain's) position. I have had to bear that in mind also, though I do not consider any general inference such as the Defendants submitted should be made that their

[66] According to the Defendants' analysis, prior to the US criminal proceedings, Mr Egan had had 5 meetings with HP lawyers and 17 meetings with US prosecution lawyers in addition to meetings with his own lawyers. Mr Baiocco met with HP's lawyers some 3 or 4 times, and with US prosecutors some 6 times. By the time of this trial, he had also given evidence at length to the Grand Jury and in the US criminal proceedings. Mr Baiocco had his own lawyers, paid for by HP. Other witnesses had fewer but more than one meeting each with US prosecutors.

evidence would have supported their case is warranted. It depends obviously on the facts and circumstances out of which each issue arises.

428. There were gaps on the Defendants' side in addition to those already noted. Mr Zanchini, who also works for Darktrace, provided a witness statement, but this was withdrawn when the Defendants decided not to call him. Dr Menell, a central character who was copied into many of the critical emails, provided no evidence at all. With regard to Dr Menell, Dr Lynch said in cross-examination *"I guess you would call it a medical issue"*. I invited Mr Rabinowitz to explore this; but he declined on the basis that he did not wish to embarrass Dr Menell. I have drawn no inferences; but again, his evidence could have assisted me, and again I have in consequence had to make determinations (including as to their conduct) without their assistance.

429. Mr Zanchini's role was more limited. However, as will be seen, he was one of the individuals said by the Defendants to have spent all his technical time in Q1, Q2 and Q3 2009 on the development of a product called "SPE". The issue became one of some importance. As no documents had been identified to suggest that Mr Zanchini had spent any of his time in the first three quarters of 2009 doing any such work on SPE, the Claimants invited the inference that at least one of Dr Lynch's reasons for declining to call him was that Mr Zanchini could not have given truthful evidence in support of Dr Lynch's case on the matter. I take that into account also when considering the issue later, as I do in respect of his direct involvement in one of the impugned VAR transactions (the "Vatican Library" transaction, "VT13") where I have also had to make determinations (in the event, contrary to the Defendants) without the benefit of his evidence.

430. Lastly in this resume of problems with the witness evidence, there is always significant danger in rehearsed evidence, especially when expanded over time. Memory is never complete, and often it is an amalgam of real memory and the received, with confirmation bias accentuating those parts of it which have become important support for a given point of view. Further, the events in question took place nearly a decade before this trial. I have had to be careful throughout in my approach to the witness evidence, and the documents, as usual, provided a clearer and less tainted guide. Even in that context, however, a number of documents were labelled by the Claimants as "pre-textual". I have sought to indicate those in the course of this judgment.

431. I turn next to various legal issues which arise in respect of the various claims.

LEGAL ISSUES AND TESTS OF LIABILITY UNDER FSMA

(a) Overview and background to the provisions of FSMA

432. Autonomy's liability to Bidco is said to arise under s. 90A FSMA ("s. 90A"), and its successor Schedule 10A FSMA ("Sch 10A"). S. 90A, introduced into FSMA by the Companies Act 2006, was in force from 8 November 2006 to 30 September 2010. Sch 10A came into force on 1 October 2010, but s. 90A continues to apply to information first published before that date.[67]

433. S. 90A and Sch 10A share the same broad scheme. They impose liability on the issuers of securities for misleading statements or omissions in certain publications, but only in circumstances where a person discharging managerial responsibilities at the issuer (a "PDMR") knew that or was reckless as to whether the statement was untrue or misleading, or knew the omission to be a dishonest concealment of a material fact. The issuer is liable to pay compensation to anyone who has acquired[68] securities in reliance on the information contained in the publication, for any losses suffered as a result of the untrue or misleading statement or omission, but only where the reliance was reasonable.

434. In the present case, the alleged liability of Autonomy under s. 90A/Sch 10A is used as a stepping-stone to a claim against Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain: it is something of a 'dog leg claim' in which, having accepted full liability to Bidco, Autonomy now seeks to recover in turn from the Defendants. There is no conceptual impediment to this. However, it is right to bear in mind that in interpreting the provisions and conditions of liability, the relevant question is whether the issuer itself should be liable, bearing in mind that in the usual course, the issuer's liability will fall on the general body of its shareholders, rather than on the director or other individual primarily responsible for any misstatement.

435. FSMA was the first UK statute to provide a statutory scheme of liability to investors for misstatements made to the market by issuers, other than through prospectuses; and this case is believed to be the first s. 90A or Sch 10A case to come to trial in these Courts.

436. This statutory scheme for issuer liability for misstatements or deliberate omissions in published information has been some time in the making. English law had historically not provided a remedy for investors acquiring shares on the basis of inaccuracies in a company's financial statements. Until the introduction of s. 90A in 2006, there was no statutory regime imposing civil liability for inaccurate statements in information disclosed by issuers to the market. This stands in contrast to the long-established statutory scheme of liability for misstatements contained in prospectuses, first set out in the

[67] Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Liability of Issuers) Regulations 2010/1192, regulation 3 (Transitional provision).
[68] Or, under Sch 10A, acquired, continued to hold or sold.

Directors Liability Act 1890, and now contained in the widely drawn provisions of s. 90 FSMA.[69]

437. The rationale for the different treatment of liability for misstatements in prospectuses and those in other disclosures – with a tougher regime for prospectuses – is easy to understand. "*[T]he prospectus is a 'selling document', produced by the issuer to promote its securities to investors, whereas periodic and ad hoc reports are expressions of routine reporting requirements which do not typically coincide with a selling effort on the part of the company*".[70] An untrue statement in a prospectus can lead to payments being made to the company on a false basis, but the same cannot be said of an untrue statement contained in, say, an annual report.

438. Nor did the common law provide an easy route to recovery for an investor who had acquired shares in reliance on a misstatement in a company's periodic or *ad hoc* disclosures:

(1) Claims in deceit did not readily give rise to liability for such misstatements, because of the requirement in *Derry v Peek* (1889) 14 App Cas 337 that the maker of the statement should have intended that the recipient of the statement rely on it: as noted in the Davies Review[71], although that requirement might easily be satisfied in the case of a prospectus, which is a selling document, it is difficult to satisfy in the case of an annual or quarterly report, which is primarily a report to shareholders on the directors' stewardship and not obviously intended to induce reliance by securities trading.

(2) Claims in negligence were in general precluded by the House of Lords' decision in *Caparo v Dickman* [1990] 2 AC 605 that liability for economic loss due to negligent misstatement was confined to cases where the statement or advice had been given to a known recipient for a specific purpose of which the maker was aware. Since statutory accounts are prepared for the purposes of assisting shareholders to exercise their governance rights, rather than enabling them to take investment decisions, an investor who acquired shares in reliance on a company's published accounts would not normally have a cause of action.

(3) Furthermore, the 'safe harbour' provisions of s. 463 Companies Act 2006 entirely preclude liability to third parties in respect of 'narrative' reports, subject only to s.90A/Sch 10A FSMA.

439. Accordingly, until the enactment of s. 90A, there was no scope for a claim of the present type. The explanatory note to the legislation by which s. 90A was introduced in 2006 stated that as at that time, no issuer had been found liable

---

[69]For an overview of the liability of issuers prior to the enactment of s. 90A, see Professor Paul Davies QC, Davies Review of Issuer Liability: Discussion Paper (HMSO, March 2007) *("the Davies Review").*

[70]Davies Review of Issuer Liability: Discussion Paper.

[71] See *Davies Review of Issuer Liability - Discussion Paper* para 44.

in damages under English law in respect of statements made in narrative reports or financial statements.[72]

440. The ultimate catalyst for the introduction of a scheme of liability was the Transparency Directive ("TD")[73] in 2004. This required Member States to apply their national liability regimes to the disclosures required by that Directive and to apply them to *"at least…the issuer or its administrative… bodies."* The TD's insistence on enhanced disclosure obligations and the requirement for a responsibility statement gave rise to concerns that the English law's restrictive approach to issuer liability would be disturbed, and that issuers (and directors and auditors) might be made liable for merely negligent errors contained in narrative reports or financial statements.[74]

441. In light of these concerns, and in recognition of the historical tendency against liability, the regime for issuer liability was introduced in this jurisdiction piece-meal, starting with a stop-gap solution introduced into FSMA by the Companies Act 2006 in the original form of s.90A. This approach allowed for further enquiry and consideration whether any more extensive regime was appropriate.

442. Any such scheme inevitably involves a balance, especially between the desirability of encouraging proper disclosure and affording recourse to a defrauded investor in its absence, and the need to protect existing and longer term investors who, subject to any claim against relevant directors (who may not be good for the money), may indirectly bear the brunt of any award. The explanatory note referred to the uncertainty which the TD had created, and stated that the government was *"anxious not to extend unnecessarily the scope of any duties which might be owed to investors or wider classes of third parties, in order to protect the interests of company members, employees and creditors"*.[75] In the debates on the introduction of this provision, a government minister referred to *"the Government's desire to avoid radical change to the law in this area, to respect the preferences of stakeholders and, especially, to ensure that company resources are not inappropriately diverted from shareholders, employees and creditors to the benefit of a much wider group of actual and potential investors"*.[76]

443. Amongst the matters for particular consideration were (a) whether negligence or (as in the USA) gross negligence should suffice or whether liability should continue to depend on proof of fraud; (b) what should count as published information; and (c) who apart from the issuer should be prospectively liable.

444. After the Davies Review, and a process of consultation and subsequent Final Report by Professor Davies ("the Final Report"), the original s. 90A provisions were extended (a) to issuers with securities admitted to trading on a greater variety of trading facilities (b) to relevant information disclosed by an

---

[72]Explanatory note to Companies Act 2006, s. 1270, paragraph 1637.
[73] Council Directive 2004/1209/EC.
[74]Davies Review of Issuer Liability: Discussion Paper (above).
[75]Explanatory note to the Companies Act 2006, paragraphs 1637 and 1643.
[76]Margaret Hodge MP, Hansard, HC, Standing Committee D, Col, 482 (6 July 2006):
https://publications.parliament.uk/pa/cm200506/cmstand/d/st060706/am/60706s02.htm

issuer through a UK recognised information service (c) to permit sellers, as well as buyers, of securities to recover losses incurred through reliance on fraudulent misstatements or omissions and (d) to permit recovery for losses resulting from dishonest delay in disclosure. However, Professor Davies recommended that liability should continue to be based on fraud, and his recommendation was accepted. Further, no change was suggested or made to the limitation to PDMRs of the persons other than the issuer who could be made liable, and no specific provisions to determine the basis for the assessment of damages was introduced.

445. As emphasised by the Defendants, this history is not merely of antiquarian interest. It is relevant when considering the scope of the section, and in particular the matters left open by the draftsman such as the nature of the reliance that must be shown, and the measure of damages. I accept the Defendants' general admonition that the Court should not interpret and apply the section in a way which exposes public companies and their shareholders to unreasonably wide liability.

(b) Conditions for liability under s.90A and Sch 10A FSMA

446. S. 90A(3), in the form that applied until 30 September 2010, read as follows, so far as material:

> *"(3) The issuer of securities to which this section applies is liable to pay compensation to a person who has–*
>
> *(a) acquired such securities issued by it, and*
>
> *(b) suffered loss in respect of them as a result of–*
>
> *(i) any untrue or misleading statement in a publication to which this section applies*[77]*, or*
>
> *(ii) the omission from any such publication of any matter required to be included in it.*
>
> *(4) The issuer is so liable only if a person discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer in relation to the publication–*
>
> *(a) knew the statement to be untrue or misleading or was reckless as to whether it was untrue or misleading, or*
>
> *(b) knew the omission to be a dishonest concealment of a material fact.*

[77] That is, any reports and statements published in response to a requirement imposed by a provision implementing Article 4, 5 or 6 of the Transparency Directive, and any preliminary announcement of information to be included in such a report or statement: s. 90A(1).

(5) A loss is not regarded as suffered as a result of the statement or omission in the publication unless the person suffering it acquired the relevant securities–

(a) in reliance on the information in the publication, and

(b) at a time when, and in circumstances in which, it was reasonable for him to rely on that information. …"

447. The equivalent provision of Sch 10A is paragraph 3:

"(1) An issuer of securities to which this Schedule applies is liable to pay compensation to a person who—

(a) acquires, continues to hold or disposes of the securities in reliance on published information to which this Schedule applies, and

(b) suffers loss in respect of the securities as a result of —

(i) any untrue or misleading statement in that published information, or

(ii) the omission from that published information of any matter required to be included in it.

(2) The issuer is liable in respect of an untrue or misleading statement only if a person discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer knew the statement to be untrue or misleading or was reckless as to whether it was untrue or misleading.

(3) The issuer is liable in respect of the omission of any matter required to be included in published information only if a person discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer knew the omission to be a dishonest concealment of a material fact.

(4) A loss is not regarded as suffered as a result of the statement or omission unless the person suffering it acquired, continued to hold or disposed of the relevant securities—

(a) in reliance on the information in question, and

(b) at a time when, and in circumstances in which, it was reasonable for him to rely on it."

448. It is to be noted that the provisions make clear that there is both an objective test (the relevant information must be demonstrated to be "untrue or misleading" or the omissions a matter "required to be included") and a

subjective test (a PDMR must know that the statement was untrue or misleading, or know such omission to be a "dishonest concealment of a material fact", which I refer to here as "guilty knowledge"). To establish guilty knowledge, it must be proven that (i) the relevant information was objectively false, (ii) the defendant knew that, in the sense it was likely to be understood, it was false and that (iii) the claimant himself understood it in its false sense and relied on that false sense in making his investment decision. Also, whether a claimant's reliance was "reasonable" is to be tested at the time of the investment decision according to the circumstances applicable to him. I elaborate on these ingredients below.

(c) Published information

449. Whether under s. 90A of FSMA or under its successor, Schedule 10A of FSMA, liability can only be established against an issuer by a claimant proving reliance on (a) "*untrue or misleading statements*" in a *"publication"* (the expression used in s. 90A) or *"published information"* (the expression used in Schedule 10A) to which the provisions apply and which a PDMR within the issuer knew to be "*untrue or misleading*" (or was "*reckless*" in that regard), or (b) the omission of a matter required to be included in that publication or published information in circumstances where a PDMR knew the omission to be a "*dishonest concealment of a material fact*".

450. As regards the information to which the provisions apply, it is common ground that Autonomy's Annual and Quarterly Reports for the Relevant Period (that is, the Quarterly Reports for Q1 2009 to Q2 2011 and the Annual Reports for FY 2009 and FY 2010) were publications to which s. 90A applied or, in the case of those published after 1 October 2010, published information to which Sch 10A applied. It is also common ground that the earnings calls and transcripts of earnings calls from before 1 October 2010 were not covered by s. 90A.[78]

451. There is a dispute over whether earnings calls or transcripts of earnings calls for quarters after that date (Q3 2010 onwards) constituted published information for the purposes of Sch 10A. The Claimants said they did; the Defendants said they did not.

452. It is important first to clarify that:

(1) there was no evidence that anyone at HP ever listened to any of the earnings calls; and

(2) the transcripts were not themselves published by recognised means.

So the only live question is whether the availability of the transcripts was announced by Autonomy by recognised means within the meaning of paragraph 2(1)(b) of Sch 10A FSMA.

453. Paragraph 2(1) of Sch 10A of FSMA states:

[78] The relevant paragraph in the RRAPoC is confined to earnings calls in respect of Quarterly Reports published after 1 October 2010.

> *"(1) This Schedule applies to information published by the issuer of securities to which this Schedule applies:*
>
> *(a) by recognised means, or*
>
> *(b) by other means where the availability of the information has been announced by the issuer by recognised means."*

454. The Claimants submitted that the effect of paragraph 2(1)(b) was that the transcripts (and thus the information recorded as having been broadcast on those calls) after 1 October 2010 constituted published information because their availability was announced by Autonomy (the issuer) by recognised means. They relied on the following:

 (1) It is common ground that Autonomy's Quarterly Reports were published by recognised means (which include a "recognised information service" such as the RNS service); and these provided details of the time, date and website for the forthcoming earnings call;

 (2) This constituted an announcement by recognised means of the information that would end up being broadcast on that call; and

 (3) Accordingly, that information is subject to Sch 10A regardless of the fact that the transcripts of the earnings calls themselves were not published by recognised means.

455. The Defendants submitted that the Claimants are wrong:

 (1) Paragraph 2(1)(b) is intended to address the situation where, rather than transmitting a document directly by recognised means, the document is announced by recognised means but made available by other means, for instance where a company publishes its annual report on its website and puts out an announcement through a regulatory news service that it is so available.

 (2) That is to be distinguished from the case where (as in this case) the document in question is never itself published: and simply because a website address or telephone number is referenced by recognised means does not render all information on that website or given in the call "published information".

 (3) Thus, the provision of details needed to join the earnings call did not make the information communicated on the call itself published information.

 (4) Further, even if the above is wrong, the transcripts themselves do not amount to published information: it was not said that Autonomy announced the availability of the transcripts by recognised means, and it did not. If HP relied on a transcript of a call to which it did not dial in at the time, it would not be relying on published information.

(5) In any event, there is no evidence that anyone at HP ever read any of the transcripts other than those for Q1 and Q2 2011: the Claimants cannot have relied on documents they never read, nor on calls they never heard.

456. In my view, the question as to whether paragraph 2(1)(b) applied depends upon whether the provision by recognised means of details needed to join an earnings call should be taken to include the announcement by recognised means of the availability of any transcript made of the call even though the latter is not specifically announced.

457. In my judgment, the answer is that it does not. The announcement by recognised means made no mention of any transcript. All that was announced by recognised means was the information necessary to enable participation in the call itself. A transcript might be introduced as evidence of what had been said at an earnings call, but only to support a participant's primary evidence of what he or she had heard. Further, there may be various transcripts, sometimes in different form (as indeed there were in respect of at least one of the earnings calls in this case) sometimes produced by Bloomberg and/or Thomson Reuters and thus someone other than the issuer: it cannot have been intended that all versions should be treated as information published by the issuer, and there is no basis in the language for restricting the published information to a version approved by the issuer, nor in fact any evidence that Autonomy ever itself issued/published an approved version.

458. I also accept the view expressed in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions that, on the facts of this case, the point itself is largely academic since the Claimants cannot have relied on documents they never read or calls they never heard, and (as previously noted) there is no evidence that anyone from HP listened to any of the earnings calls, or read any of the transcripts other than the transcripts for Q1 and Q2 2011 which Mr Sarin said he had read. I develop this point at greater length later.

459. However, my conclusion that the transcripts do not constitute published information for the purposes of FSMA does not mean that they are inadmissible and/or irrelevant. For example, they may be relevant in the context of the OEM claim (see in this regard paragraphs 3162 and 3163 below); and also more to the question of what analysts and the investment community knew, or were told, though of course individual conversations should not be taken to import knowledge across a broader constituency.

(d) Untrue or misleading statement or omission

460. Unless a statement in published information (or a *"relevant publication"*) contains a *"false or misleading statement"* or omits any *"matter required to be included in it"*, there can be no question of liability under s. 90A or Sch 10A of FSMA. At this first stage, the question is as to the objective meaning of the impugned statement, that is the meaning which would be ascribed to it by the intended readership, having regard to the circumstances at that time.

461. As to the objective meaning of a statement, Christopher Clarke J (as he then was) provided the following further guidance as to what is required to be shown[79] in *Raiffeisen Zentralbank Osterreich AG v The Royal Bank of Scotland Plc* [2010] EWHC 1392 (Comm) at [81] to [82] and [86] to [87][80]:

> *"81. Whether any and if so what representation was made has to be "judged objectively according to the impact that whatever is said may be expected to have on a reasonable representee in the position and with the known characteristics of the actual representee". MCI WorldCom International Inc v Primus Telecommunications plc [2004] EWCA Civ 957, per Mance LJ, para 30. The reference to the characteristics of the representee is important…*
>
> *82. In the case of an express statement, "the court has to consider what a reasonable person would have understood from the words used in the context in which they were used": IFE Fund SA v Goldman Sachs International [2007] 1 Lloyd's Rep 264, per Toulson J at [50] (upheld by the Court of Appeal at [2007] 2 Lloyd's Rep 449). The answer to that question may depend on the nature and content of the statement, the context in which it was made, the characteristics of the maker and of the person to whom it was made, and the relationship between them.*
>
> *…*
>
> *86. It is also necessary for the statement relied on to have the character of a statement upon which the representee was intended, and was entitled, to rely. In some cases the statement in question may have been accompanied by other statements by way of qualification or explanation which would indicate to a reasonable person that the putative representor was not assuming a responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of the statement or was saying that no reliance can be placed upon it. Thus the representor may qualify what might otherwise have been an outright statement of fact by saying that it is only a statement of belief, that it may not be accurate, that he has not verified its accuracy or completeness, or that it is not to be relied on.*
>
> *87. Lastly the claimant must show that he in fact understood the statement in the sense (so far as material) which the court ascribed to it: Arkwright v Newbold (1881) 17 Ch D 301; Smith v Chadwick (1884) 9 App Cas 187; and that, having that understanding, he relied*

---

[79] Albeit in the context of the Misrepresentation Act 1967, rather than FSMA.

[80] See also *Barley v Muir* [2018] EWHC 619 (QB) at [177] per Soole J, contrasted with implied misrepresentation at [178]. See also *Primus Telecommunications Plc v MCI WorldCom International Inc* [2004] EWCA Civ 957 per Mance LJ at [30] (a case of implied misrepresentation but not in terms confined to that, Mance LJ also left the door open to a different approach in fraud). See also *Kyle Bay Ltd v Underwriters Subscribing under Policy No. 01957/08/01* [2007] 1 CLC 164, at [30]-[33], per Neuberger LJ.

> *on it. This may be of particular importance in the case of implied statements."*

462. Establishing, for these purposes, what was the context of the statement when made, and the characteristics of the representee, is not always straightforward, even in the context of a negotiation between parties in direct communication. In this case, at least as regards the FSMA claim, the difficulty is the greater because statements were addressed in publications issued generally over a period of time to diverse addressees, and in parallel and at various different times further information and/or explanations were given to various persons within the market (but not issued generally to the market), which might or might not have informed the view and understanding of the market as a whole.

463. Further, the content of the published information covered by s. 90A and Sch 10A will often[81] be governed by accounting standards, by the companies legislation and especially the Companies Act 2006, and by the Disclosure and Transparency Rules. Compliance with those standards, provisions and rules will frequently involve the exercise of accounting judgement on points where there may be a range of permissible views. A statement is not to be regarded as false or misleading where it can be justified by reference to that range of views.

464. Where the meaning of a given statement is unambiguous, and the only question is whether the defendants nevertheless believed it conveyed a different meaning, the genuineness of the defendant's belief in a different meaning may be usefully tested according to the obviousness or extravagance of its departure from the settled objective meaning, though even then mere implausibility is not capable of amounting to fraud and the test is always as to the genuineness of the defendant's state of mind. As Males J (as he then was) noted in *Leni Gas & Oil Investments v Malta Oil Pty Ltd* [2014] EWHC 893 (Comm):

> *"In practice, however, the objective meaning of the statement is not irrelevant. As the Privy Council went on to say [in Akerhielm]:*
>
> *"This general proposition is no doubt subject to limitations. For instance, the meaning placed by the defendant on the representation may be so far removed from the sense in which it would be understood by any reasonable person as to make it impossible to hold that the defendant honestly understood the representation to bear the meaning claimed by him and honestly believed it in that sense to be true.""*

465. Sometimes, two or more possible interpretations appear legitimate: that is a case of genuine ambiguity. In such a case, it is not the function of the court to determine which is the more likely meaning, as it would be in a case concerning contractual interpretation. Where the implicated statement is

---

[81] Invariably for a claim under s. 90A (which, broadly speaking, applies only to information in quarterly, interim or annual reports); but not invariably for a claim under Sch. 10A, given the broader range of "published information" that such a claim may cover.

genuinely ambiguous an election between two (or more) reasonable available meanings may well be unnecessary and even unwise. The claim may fail at the first hurdle, unless it is shown that the ambiguity was artful or contrived by the defendant, in which case that will be evidence (it may well be determinative evidence) of dishonesty at the second subjective stage.

466. Further, the claimant must prove also that he understood the statement in the sense ascribed to it by the court: as Cotton LJ explained in *Arkwright v Newbold* (1881) 17 Ch D 301:

> *"In my opinion it would not be right in an action of deceit to give a plaintiff relief on the ground that a particular statement, according to the construction put on it by the Court, is false, when the plaintiff does not venture to swear that he understood the statement in the same sense which the Court puts on it. If he did not, then, even if the construction may have been falsified by the facts, he was not deceived."*

(e) Guilty knowledge

467. The basis for the issuer's liability for a misstatement in published information being fraud on the part of at least one PDMR,[82] the ascertainment of objective meaning, even if the statement is unambiguous, is only the beginning of the enquiry. As the Privy Council held in *Akerhielm v de Mare* [1959] AC 789:

> *"The question is not whether the defendants in any given case honestly believed the representation to be true in the sense assigned to it by the court on an objective consideration of its truth or falsity, but whether he honestly believed the representation to be true in the sense in which he understood it albeit erroneously when it was made."*

468. As in the common law of deceit, it must be proven that a PDMR (as it is accepted each Defendant was) *"knew the statement to be untrue or misleading or was reckless as to whether it was untrue or misleading"*; or alternatively, that he knew that the omission of matters required to be included was the dishonest concealment of a material fact. For both s. 90A and Sch 10A, the language used shows that there is a requirement for actual knowledge.

469. *Derry v Peek* also sheds light on what it means to know a statement to be true or misleading. In the case of a statement, it is not sufficient that a person knows the facts which render a statement untrue: he will only be liable if those facts were present to his mind at the moment when the statement is made, such that he appreciates that the statement is untrue.[83] In the case of an omission, the PDMR must have applied his mind to the omission at the time the information was published, and appreciated that a material fact was being concealed (i.e. that it was required to be included, but was being deliberately

[82]Sch 10A §3(2) and 3(3). S. 90A contained a similar concept: see s. 90A(4) ("*person discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer in relation to a publication*").
[83]See the discussion of *Derry v Peek* and *Armstrong v Strain* at paragraphs 549 and 550 below, in the context of the claim in deceit.

left out). Otherwise, it could not be said that he "*knew the omission to be a dishonest concealment of a material fact*". In the context of this case, the Defendants submitted that means that the Claimants would need to prove in respect of any alleged omission that Dr Lynch knew there was a requirement to include the relevant fact.[84] Unless he knew there was such a requirement, there can be no liability for dishonest concealment.

470. Liability also extends to recklessness: but it is common ground that recklessness bears the meaning laid down in *Derry v Peek* (1889) 14 App. Cas. 337, that is, not caring about the truth of the statement, such as to lack an honest belief in its truth. Honest belief in the truth of a statement defeats a claim of recklessness, no matter how unreasonable the belief (though of course the more unreasonable the belief asserted the less likely the finder of fact is to accept that it was genuinely held).[85]

471. For the purposes of paragraph 3(3) and deliberate concealment by omission, but not, it would seem, paragraph 3(2) and overt misrepresentation, dishonesty has a special definition under Sch 10A, (though s. 90A contained no such special definition). Paragraph 6 provides that for the purposes of paragraphs 3(3) and 5(2) (re dishonest delay in publishing information) a person's conduct is regarded as dishonest only if:

> *"(a) it is regarded as dishonest by persons who regularly trade on the securities market in question, and*
>
> *(b) the person was aware (or must be taken to have been aware) that it was so regarded."*

472. As is apparent from the Government's July 2008 consultation paper on what would become Sch 10A, this was intended to be a statutory codification of the common law test for dishonesty laid down in *R v Ghosh* [1982] 1 QB 1053. As the Claimants noted, however, the Defendants have never relied on an argument based on the difference between that test and the revised and now applicable test in *Ivey v Genting Casinos (UK) Ltd* [2018] AC 391 which no longer requires that it be established that the defendant appreciated that his conduct was dishonest by the standards of ordinary decent people. As explained in *Ivey* (at [74]):

> *"When dishonesty is in question the fact-finding tribunal must first ascertain (subjectively) the actual state of the individual's knowledge or belief as to the facts. The reasonableness or otherwise of his belief is a matter of evidence (often in practice determinative) going to whether he held the belief, but it is not an additional requirement that his belief must be reasonable; the question is whether it is genuinely held. When once his actual state of mind as to knowledge or belief as to facts is established, the question whether his conduct was honest or dishonest is to be determined by the fact-finder by applying the*

[84] On that basis it would not be enough that Deloitte considered further disclosure might be preferable on a particular point.
[85] And see paragraph 472 below and the decision in *Ivey*.

> *(objective) standards of ordinary decent people. There is no requirement that the defendant must appreciate that what he has done is, by those standards, dishonest."*

473. Cogent evidence is required to justify a finding of fraud or discreditable conduct, and the courts recognise that it is generally unlikely that people engage in such conduct. Where a claimant seeks to prove a case of dishonesty, its inherent improbability means that, even on the civil burden of proof, the evidence must be strong enough to overcome the general presumption that innocent incompetence is more frequent and more likely than dishonest design and fraud. The more serious the allegation the more cogent the evidence required to overcome the unlikelihood of what is alleged and thus to prove it. The more serious the consequences for the individual involved, the less likely he would be to run the risk of those consequences. See *In re D* [2008] UKHL 33, at §§23-28 (Lord Carswell) and §§40-42 (Lord Brown); and *Fiona Trust & Holding Corp v Privalov* [2010] EWHC 3199 (Comm) at §§1438-1439 (Andrew Smith J). See also *Jafari-Fini v Skillglass Ltd* [2007] EWCA Civ 261, where Carnwath LJ said this (at §40):

> *"Thus in civil proceedings, the "presumption of innocence" is not so much a legal rule, as a common sense guide to the assessment of evidence. It is relevant not only where the cause of action requires proof of dishonesty, but, wherever the court is faced with a choice between two rival explanations of any particular incident, one innocent and the other not. Unless it is dealing with known fraudsters, the court should start from a strong presumption that the innocent explanation is more likely to be correct."*

474. For both allegedly misleading statements and omissions, it is relevant to consider any advice given to the company and its directors from professionals. The relevance of that advice to a determination of dishonesty is likely to depend on (a) whether the issue to which the statement or omission related was one which fell within the professional expertise and remit of the person providing the advice; (b) whether and to what extent the form or content of the relevant statement was necessarily based on the advice given; and (c) whether by contrast, the person providing the advice would not be in a position to assess how the readership would construe what was said and/or what its true likely import and impact would be.

475. Thus, where a director understands, on the basis of guidance from the company's auditors on an issue as to the intended scope of an accountancy statement, that such accountancy statement and practice do not require the disclosure of a particular fact in the company's published information, the omission of that fact on the basis of that advice is unlikely to amount to a dishonest concealment of a material fact. Even if the Court takes the view that disclosure of the fact was required, the requirement for dishonesty is unlikely to be satisfied where the director was acting in accordance with the advice of reputable professionals in such a context. Similarly, if a PDMR has been

advised by auditors that a particular statement included in the accounts was a fair description of some aspect of the company's business required to be disclosed under the acts or accountancy standards or statements of practice, it may be unlikely that he knew the statement to be untrue or misleading, or that he was reckless as to its truth, unless the auditors did not have the full picture or were misled.

476. Particular care is necessary in this context in the present case. In respect of every one of the allegations made against him, Dr Lynch (in particular) relied on the fact that Deloitte, who it was largely common ground had detailed knowledge of Autonomy's business and the specific transactions giving rise to the claim, had approved not only the accounts but also the narrative 'front-end' reports and presentations of Autonomy's business activities. He relied on their approval, or at least their lack of objection, as the demonstration of the integrity and honesty of those reports and presentations. However, there are good reasons, both theoretical and practical, why auditors have an attenuated role in respect of such reports. As a theoretical matter, the purpose and objective of these 'front-end' reports are to reflect the directors' view of the business rather than the auditors', and to require directors to provide an accurate account according to their own conscience and understanding, neither of which can properly be delegated. As a practical matter, directors are likely to be, and should be, in a better position than an auditor to assess the likely impact on their shareholders of what is reported, and (for example) to assess what shareholders will make of possibly ambiguous statements. In short, on matters within the directors' proper province, the view of the company's auditors cannot be regarded as a litmus test nor a 'safe harbour': auditors may prompt but they cannot keep the directors' conscience.

477. Another issue which arose is as to the necessary nexus between an allegedly false statement, knowledge of its falsity, and the investment decision made by the claimant said to have given rise to loss. The Claimants referred in their written opening to "*the relatively limited scope of the knowledge that must be proved in order for a Schedule 10A claim to arise,*" arguing that "*It is sufficient if the Defendants knew enough to appreciate that there was at least one statement in the published information that was false*." I do not accept that. I agree with the Defendants that it is clear from the language of the Schedule that a PDMR must have the relevant guilty knowledge in respect of each false statement or omission alleged to give rise to liability. Paragraph 3(2) states that "*The issuer is liable <u>in respect of an untrue or misleading statement</u> only if a person discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer <u>knew the statement to be untrue</u> or misleading or was reckless as to whether it was untrue or misleading.*" Liability is only engaged in respect of statements known to be untrue.[86] If a company's annual report contains ten misstatements, each of them relied on by a person acquiring the company, but it can only be shown that a PDMR knew about one of those misstatements, the company will only be liable in respect of that one, not the other nine.

[86] The same argument applies in relation to omissions: Sch 10A §3(3).

(f) Reliance

478. It will already be apparent that reasonable reliance is another necessary precondition to liability under s. 90A and Sch 10A. It is expressly provided that the reliance must be reasonable at the time of the investment decision and in the circumstances as they were then; and that a loss is not to be regarded as suffered as a result of the statement or omission unless the person suffering loss acquired securities "*in reliance on the information in question, and … at a time when, and in circumstances in which, it was reasonable for him to rely on it.*"[87]

479. As the Claimants noted in their written closing, Sch 10A does not define the requirement of reliance on published information. They submitted that the concept of reliance is therefore to be informed by the position at common law. The Defendants accepted this, but only insofar as the language of Sch 10A is unclear: and they submitted that the language of the section provides an answer on several of the points in issue.

480. The Defendants identified four questions: (i) reliance by whom? (ii) reliance on what? (iii) what degree of reliance? and (iv) when is reliance reasonable? I address each in turn, and in doing so (within question (i)) I address a particular issue which arose as to the position of Bidco ("the Bidco point") which is relevant not only in the context of the FSMA claim but also in the context of the Claimants' other 'direct' claims for deceit and/or misrepresentation.

Reliance by whom?

481. As to the question of "reliance by whom?", s. 90A and Sch 10A both require reliance by the person who acquired the relevant securities, not some other person. This is clear from the way the provisions are drafted: see in particular s. 90A(5) and Sch 10A §3(1)(a).[88] The latter provides a remedy to *"a person who…acquires, continues to hold or disposes of the securities in reliance on published information"*.

482. The Defendants also submitted that this point is consistent with and made clear in the cases on misrepresentation and deceit. In order to succeed on a claim in misrepresentation or deceit, the claimant must have relied on the misrepresentation. This means that it must have been present to the claimant's mind at the time when it took the action on which the claim is founded; or put another way, the claimant must give some contemporaneous, conscious thought to the representation. It is not enough that somebody else (not the claimant) applies his mind to the representation. As to this, the Defendants relied especially on:

[87] Sch 10A §3(4) and, in similar but not identical terms, S. 90A(5).
[88] S. 90A(5): "*A loss is not regarded as suffered as a result of the statement or omission in the publication unless the person suffering it acquired the relevant securities– (a) in reliance on the information in the publication…*"; Sch 10A §3(1): "*An issuer of securities to which this Schedule applies is liable to pay compensation to a person who—(a) acquires, continues to hold or disposes of the securities in reliance on published information to which this Schedule applies…*".

(a) Cartwright, Misrepresentation, Mistake and Non-Disclosure (4th Ed., 2017) at §3-50:

> *"The requirement of a causal link between statement and loss. Whichever remedy is sought for misrepresentation, it will be necessary to establish an adequate link between the statement and the consequence from which the representee claims to be relieved. If the claim is for damages, the question is whether the statement caused the loss. If the claim is for rescission of a contract, the inquiry is as to the causal link between the statement and the claimant's entry into the contract. The language used in the different remedies, and the legal tests employed for them, will vary, but generally the issue is similar: it is an issue of the claimant's reliance on the statement, and whether the statement caused the harm in issue. A false statement, even one made fraudulently, will not be actionable as a misrepresentation by the person to whom it was addressed if it had no impact on his actions, nor otherwise caused him loss. This means that the statement must have been present to the claimant's mind at the time when he took the action on which he bases his claim, but the claimant need not prove that he believed that the statement was true: it is sufficient that, as a matter of fact, he was influenced by the misrepresentation."*

(b) Chitty on Contracts (33rd Ed, 2018) at §7-036:

> *"Inducement*
>
> *It is essential if the misrepresentation is to have legal effect that it should have operated on the mind of the representee. It follows that if the misrepresentation did not affect the representee's mind, because he was unaware that it had been made or because he was not influenced by it, he has no remedy."*

(c) *Marme v Natwest Markets Plc* [2019] EWHC 366, at §§281-288 (Picken J). This was a case dealing with an alleged implied representation, to which the claimant had not addressed its mind when entering into a contract. At §286, the judge said:

> *"In the circumstances, I agree with Mr Howe QC when he submitted that these authorities support the proposition that a claimant in the position of Marme in the present case should have given some contemporaneous conscious thought to the fact that some representations were being impliedly made, even if the precise formulation of those representations may not correspond with what the Court subsequently decides that those representations comprised. If the position were otherwise, then, I agree with Mr Howe QC that the consequence would be that there would be a substantial watering down of the reliance requirement."*

(d) *Chagos Islanders v Attorney General* [2003] EWHC 2222, at §364. In that case, Ouseley J held that a person cannot sue in deceit

> *"in respect of representations which were not made to them directly or to an agent and in reliance upon which they did not act, being unaware of them. I regard that as obvious."*[89]

483. This gives rise to a point which only surfaced in its full form in the Defendants' written closing submissions: the *'Bidco point'*.

The 'Bidco Point'

484. The acquirer in the present case was Bidco, not HP. It was only Bidco that acquired an "*interest in securities*" within the meaning of Sch 10A §8(3).[90] Bidco is the only party that claims to be entitled to damages from Autonomy under FSMA.[91] HP is not a party to these proceedings. Accordingly, in order to establish liability under s. 90A / Sch 10A, the Claimants must establish that Bidco relied on the published information in deciding whether to acquire the share capital of Autonomy. This is common ground: in their written closing the Claimants accepted that one of the components of the FSMA claim is that "*Bidco must have relied on the information in question when deciding to buy*

[89]See also the Court of Appeal's comments on that conclusion: "*The judge may very well be right in his conclusion that, as a matter of law, no such cause of action exists as a matter of principle. But it is conceivable that in certain exceptional circumstances, for instance where the defendant, by the very making of the deceitful statement or for some other reason, had assumed liability to the claimant, a cause of action could exist*." *Chagos Islanders v Attorney General* [2004] EWCA Civ 997, at §36.
[90]Sch 10A §8(3): "*References in this Schedule to the acquisition or disposal of securities include— (a) acquisition or disposal of any interest in securities, or (b) contracting to acquire or dispose of securities or of any interest in securities, except where what is acquired or disposed of (or contracted to be acquired or disposed of) is a depositary receipt, derivative instrument or other financial instrument representing securities.*"
[91]See RRAPoC §§97-201, under the heading "*Liability of Autonomy to Bidco under Sch 10A FSMA*".

Autonomy shares, at a time when, and in circumstances in which, it was reasonable for Bidco so to rely."

485. The Claimants relied on two arguments in respect of the *'Bidco point'*. The first was that this was plainly an *"ambush"*, and that the point (a) should have been properly pleaded to alert the Claimants to it, and since it was not, (b) should not now be available to the Defendants. The second was that in any event the point was a contrived and bad one, since the reality was that HP was the controlling mind of Bidco, and Bidco simply did as it was directed by HP. The Defendants, and in particular Dr Lynch, did not accept either of the Claimants' points. I address each in turn below.

486. As to the pleading point and the "ambush", the Claimants had asserted in their RRAPoC that:

> *"Bidco acquired the share capital of Autonomy, including the shares held by Lynch and Hussain, in reliance on (i) the information contained in the Annual Reports and the Quarterly Reports (and as repeated and explained during earnings calls) and (ii) the misrepresentations made by Lynch and Hussain directly to HP (and thus to Bidco) as set out below."*

487. The Defendants had (in each case) denied this. But they had not pleaded any positive case that only proof of Bidco's reliance would suffice, that reliance by HP would not constitute reliance by Bidco and that since no separate reliance by Bidco was demonstrated the claim must fail. They had asked questions as to the identity of those alleged to have relied on the representations but made nothing ostensibly of it: they had not explained or relied on the point in their opening submissions, and had it now seemed, carefully tucked them away for later deployment after the conclusion of evidence, in their written closing submissions. The Claimants denounced this, and submitted that the Defendants should be precluded from pursuing the *Bidco point* as insufficiently pleaded.

488. In answer, Mr Miles took me through the relevant parts of Dr Lynch's defence to show that there was *"a flat denial, clear denial of reliance by Bidco"*, and that Dr Lynch had (a) made clear that the Defendants were unaware of Bidco's existence, and (b) expressly put the Claimants to strict proof and required them to provide information as to which individuals had relied on Autonomy's published information and the alleged misrepresentations, and (c) received the answer that they were Messrs Apotheker, Robison and Johnson, who had advised the HP Board whether to proceed. The Defendants denied having taken the Claimants by surprise. They contended that they had thus made clear and express their focus on the identity of the individuals who had allegedly relied on the information. Put shortly, the Defendants submitted that there was a clear issue on the pleadings and that in any event it was ultimately an issue of law.

489. They added that any deficiency in the pleadings, if relevant, was on the Claimants' side: the Claimants had simply failed to plead or prove how it was

that a representation made to HP and its bid team could be regarded as one made to and relied on by the Claimants (and in particular, Bidco). The answer contained in the Claimants' Reply did not identify anyone within the management of Bidco who was said to have relied on the published information. Bidco's directors at the time of the acquisition were Ms Lesjak, Paul Porrini and Sergio Letelier. The persons whom the Claimants had identified in answer were the bid team within HP itself:

> *"201.1. Mr Apotheker, Mr Robison and Mr Johnson relied on Autonomy's published information (or on the review by their subordinates or by HP's advisers of Autonomy's published information, who also so relied) when making recommendations to the board of directors of HP as to whether to proceed with the Autonomy Acquisition and at what price.*
>
> *201.2. The board of HP relied on those recommendations (and on the views of HP's advisers derived from Autonomy's published information) when determining whether Bidco should proceed with the Autonomy Acquisition and what price it should pay for Autonomy. Further, the board was given certain information taken directly from or derived from Autonomy's published information, and the board relied on the same."*

490. There is, to my mind, some substance in the submissions of both sides. The Defendants did keep their point, as it were, "under wraps", pleading at best the bare minimum. The Claimants did not plead out, as they should I think have pleaded out, their case that although Bidco had its own directors, none of whom was a director of HP, nevertheless its investment decision was made by HP's bid team and directors in alleged reliance on the relevant information. But the question to be determined is whether these points are such as on grounds of pleading deficiencies either (a) to preclude the Defendants pursuing the Bidco point or, more drastically, (b) to result in the total failure of the Claimants' case in all its aspects.

491. Neither is an inviting result; and inevitably perhaps, I have felt a great reluctance to countenance that these entire proceedings should be determined by a pleading point. I have concluded that:

(1) The Defendants' pleadings were sparse but sufficient, and their tactic of keeping the point and its powder dry was forensically unyielding but not impermissible in the context of a hard-fought fraud case with the best of legal representation and so much at stake.

(2) The Claimants' pleading was imperfect and technically incomplete, but the reality is that there has been no material prejudice to the Defendants, who were well aware of the point, had every opportunity to and did cross-examine the individuals said in fact to have relied on the relevant information (being the HP bid team and directors, rather

than the *de jure* directors of Bidco, namely, Mr Porrini and Mr Letelier).

(3) Ultimately, as Mr Miles himself submitted, the issue is really one of law.

492. As to the issue which substantively arises, the question is whether reliance can be demonstrated in the absence of (a) any evidence to show that Bidco itself, which was not incorporated until 15 August 2011, almost at the end of the due diligence process, six days after KPMG's draft due diligence report, and a day before the HP board meeting at which HP decided to carry out the acquisition[92] relied on, considered, or was even aware of the alleged misstatements contained in the published information; and (b) any evidence from any of the directors of Bidco, apart from Ms Lesjak, who gave no evidence about what she did or thought in her capacity as a director of Bidco, gave no evidence of having relied on any of the published information, and as the CFO of HP, was actually opposed to the transaction.

493. The Defendants submitted that the answer was "No". The Claimants had not adduced the required evidence: the statutory provision plainly required, and the Claimants had simply not sufficiently provided, proof that Bidco had itself considered and acted on the relevant information. Mr Miles also rejected the ancillary suggestion by the Claimants that the Defendants were applying an excessively restrictive interpretation of the statutory provision not required by the wording, and went on to submit:

> *"…they say it would be construing the issuer liability regime under FSMA in an unduly restrictive way so as to exclude a remedy simply because of the quite standard way in which HP decided to structure its investment. And they say our interpretation isn't required by the language of the statute. They seem to be suggesting that our interpretation would thwart the statutory purpose.*
>
> *Now we don't agree with that, about the language of the statute. They have not put forward any real argument as to how the statute allows a separation between the person who relies on the information and the person who suffers the loss, or the separation between the acquirer and the decision-maker, perhaps more precisely…*
>
> *But we also don't agree with the idea that it's thwarting the purpose of the statute. The purpose of the statute is to protect investors who rely on financial statements and decide to purchase shares. This isn't, we would suggest, an ordinary situation. Investors don't normally incorporate SPVs for the purpose of acquiring shares…"*

494. The Defendants' forthright conclusion was that HP chose to buy Autonomy through Bidco for its own commercial reasons: if the benefits of doing so

[92] As to Bidco's incorporation, it is pleaded in the RRAPoC that: "*Hewlett-Packard Vision BV ("Bidco") was incorporated in the Netherlands on 15 August 2011*". For the draft due diligence report, and HP's board meeting, see paragraphs 265 and 294 above.

came at the cost of depriving HP of a claim under FSMA, that is the consequence of HP's choice, and that reliance by HP cannot be equated to reliance by Bidco.

495. The answer the Claimants offered was that (quoting from Mr Rabinowitz's oral closing speech):

> *"…Bidco was an acquisition vehicle created to acquire Autonomy on HP's behalf with HP's money. The decision that Bidco would make an offer for Autonomy and on what terms was made by HP's board based on recommendations by HP's management…The board members of Bidco, on whom so much focus is now placed, merely implemented the HP's board decision that Bidco should make the offer as the Board directed them to."*

Mr Rabinowitz added in his oral reply that:

> *"We say that the people who took the decision that Bidco should purchase Autonomy were HP's board on the advice of HP's management and their reliance constitutes Bidco's reliance."*

496. The Claimants sought to support their arguments:

(1) By reference to an observation of my own in *SL Claimants v Tesco plc* [2019] EWHC 2858 (Ch) at [117] that in the context of FSMA:

> *"Unless the wording was without any semantic doubt entirely deficient to apply in such circumstances, ordinary principles of statutory construction require the court to ensure that the statutory purpose is not thwarted."*

(2) By relying on the decision of the Court of Appeal in *Abu Dhabi Investment Co v H Clarkson and Co* [2008] EWCA Civ 699 in which it was held that the claimants (ADIC and two of its subsidiary companies, ASH and ASMIC), each of whom had different claims, could successfully claim against the defendants (the Norasia defendants) in respect of dishonest misrepresentations made by the Norasia defendants to ADIC. In paragraph 38 of the judgment, May LJ explained:

> *"Certainly by the date of the Memorandum of Agreement…, the Norasia defendants knew quite well that the role of the special purpose vehicle was to be subscribed to the shares with money largely derived from a Paribas bridging loan. The underlying commercial thinking which led ADIC to adopt this structure is unimportant. What mattered was that the Norasia defendants knew that this was to be the structure, and that they plainly intended, by their dishonest misrepresentations, to deceive the controlling minds of the special purpose vehicle to induce them to give effect to the proposed investment by means of the proposed structure. It is not necessary, for ASH and*

> *ASMIC to succeed, to conclude that the Norasia defendants intended their representation to be passed on to any person whom ADIC might wish to interest in the investment. It is only necessary to conclude, as I do, that the Norasia defendants, knowing as they did the structure by means of which ADIC intended to, and did in fact, effect the investment, plainly intended that their representations should be passed on to those parts of the structure, that is ASH and ASMIC, which effected the investment. In fact, of course, those who controlled the special purpose vehicle were the same people who controlled ADIC, so that in reality the passing on of the representations is a lawyers' construct.""*

Mr Rabinowitz submitted that this was effectively the same as their case on reliance, substituting (as it were) HP in place of ADIC and Bidco in place of ASH and ASMIC.

497. I turn to the Claimants' second point that it was sufficient for the purpose of the statute for them to demonstrate that Bidco was simply implementing the HP Board's decision made on the basis of the information provided to them that Bidco should make the offer as the Board of HP directed them to do.

498. Mr Miles sought to side-line the *Abu Dhabi* case as concerned only with whether the Norasia defendants had the necessary intention to deceive for a deceit claim, and whether the second and third claimants (ASH and ASMIC, the two special vehicles) were within the contemplation of the Norasia defendants as likely, and therefore to have been intended to be deceived by the defendants, which Mr Miles stated *"wasn't an issue of reliance"*.

499. Given the fundamental effect of the point raised by the Defendants it is convenient to explain now the basis on which I have determined that the *Bidco point* has not the conclusive effect which, late in the day, the Defendants contended it had. I accept the Claimants' argument that the fact that it was HP which claims to have been influenced by Autonomy's published information (and specific representations) and it was HP which undertook due diligence does not mean that Bidco cannot satisfy this part of the reliance test.

500. In a little more detail:

(1) The *Abu Dhabi* case, though relating to common law deceit and not a statutory provision, does support the conclusion urged by the Claimants that for the purpose of the acquisition, HP can be treated as the controlling mind of Bidco, and that HP's reliance is to be treated as Bidco's reliance.

(2) There is no such separation on that basis between the person who relies on the information and the person who suffers the loss, nor between the acquirer and the decision-maker.

(3) Such a conclusion is consistent with the intent of the statutory provisions and avoids what to my mind would be the counter-intuitive

conclusion, that the use of an SPV which had no purpose or business nor any real part in the process except as a pocket in HP's trousers, should invalidate the claim.

Reliance on what?

501. Sch 10A paragraph (1)(a) refers to the payment of compensation to a person who acquires, continues to hold or disposes of securities "*in reliance on published information to which this Schedule applies*". (Its predecessor, s. 90A, related only to acquisitions of shares and referred to compensation to a person who acquired shares *"in reliance on the information in the publication"*). The loss claimed must be caused by reliance on that statement or omission.

502. The focus is on statements or omissions in published information on which reliance is demonstrated to have been placed. Paragraph 3(2) refers to the issuer being "*liable in respect of an untrue or misleading statement*". Further, paragraph 3(1) states that compensation is only to be paid where the acquirer "*suffers loss in respect of the securities as a result of—(i) any untrue or misleading statement in that published information, or (ii) the omission from that published information of any matter required to be included in it.*"

503. As Dr Lynch submitted in his written closing, it would not be enough for Bidco to show that it relied in some generalised sense on a piece of published information (e.g. the annual report for a given year): I accept the Defendants' submission that it cannot have been intended to give an acquirer of shares a cause of action based on a misstatement that he never even looked at, merely because it is contained in (say) an annual report, some other part of which he relied on. The requirement that loss be suffered as a result of the untrue or misleading statement can only be satisfied where the person acquiring securities applied his mind to the statement in question, and where that statement induced the acquisition or (more relevantly for this case) induced the acquirer to transact on the terms he did.

504. This view gains support from the Davies Review on Issuer Liability. Discussing s. 90A, Professor Davies QC said this:[93]

> *"Section 90A ..., by requiring reliance, seems to require a claimant to have been aware of the statement which subsequently turned out to be misleading and for that knowledge to have played a part in inducing the action which was later taken."*

The same reasoning would apply in relation to Sch 10A.

505. Similarly, the requirement for reliance cannot be satisfied in respect of a piece of published information which the acquirer did not consider at all: again, see *Marme v Natwest Markets Plc* at §§281-288. The statement must *"have been*

[93] Davies Review of Issuer Liability: Discussion Paper (above).

present to the claimant's mind at the time when he took the action on which he bases his claim."[94] Unless a document was reviewed, it cannot have been relied on. In this case, the Claimants have referred to alleged misstatements or omissions in a number of documents (for instance transcripts of earnings calls, and Quarterly Reports from long before the acquisition) which were not reviewed by or on behalf of any of the Claimants. These cannot found a claim, though they may be relevant evidence of intention.

506. That said, statements (or omissions) may in combination create an impression which no single one imparts. In my view, if the overall impression thus created is false it may found a claim, if the other conditions of liability are also met.

What degree of reliance?

507. The Claimants argued, by analogy with the common law relevant to claims in deceit, that only a weak causal connection is required between the false statement and the acquisition: they contended that:

> *"Although the claimant must have been induced to change his position (here, by buying the Autonomy shares), the representation need not have been the sole or dominant cause. If necessary, the Claimants will contend that, but for the representation, the claimant "might" have acted otherwise".*

508. They referred to *Reynell v Sprye* (1852) 42 EF 710 at 728 (where it was said that *"Once make out that there has been anything like deception…no contract resting in any degree on that foundation can stand"*); to *Barton v Armstrong* [1976] AC 104 at 118[F-H] (in the Privy Council, where it was stated that *"... in this field the court does not allow an examination into the relative importance of contributory causes"*); and to *Raiffeisen Zentralbank Osterreich AG v Royal Bank of Scotland Plc* [2011] 1 Lloyd's Rep 123 at [198]-[199] (where Christopher Clarke J stated *"There are sound reasons of policy why…those who set out to deceive should bear a liability even if it might well have been the case that, but for such behaviour, the contract might still have been made…"*). On this basis, inducement is made out if the representation had *"an impact on the mind"* or an *"influence on the judgement"* though the Claimants accepted that inducement is negated where the representation had *"no effect on the decision"* (*per* Lord Clarke in *Zurich Insurance Co plc v Hayward* [2017] AC 142 at [29]).

509. The Claimants further contended, again citing *Zurich Insurance Co plc v Hayward* [*supra*], that if a representation was material, that is, of such a nature as to be likely to induce a person in the claimant's position to enter into the contract, it is a fair inference of fact (though not an inference of law) that he was influenced by the statement; and the inference is particularly strong where the misrepresentation was fraudulent. Lord Clarke cited at [35] Lord Mustill's statement in the *Pan Atlantic* case [1995] 1 AC 501, 551 that the representor

[94] See *J Cartwright, 'Misrepresentation and Non-Disclosure'* (4th Ed.) at [3-50].

> *"will have an uphill task in persuading the court that the… misstatement…has made no difference…there is a presumption in favour of a causative effect."*

510. The Defendants, however, did not accept that these cases applied in the context of a s. 90A or Schedule 10A FSMA claim. They pointed out that FSMA does not require that the issuer should have intended the claimant to rely on the relevant published information, whereas that is a requirement of the tort of deceit, and it is that requirement and proof of its fulfilment which informs the presumption of causative effect. Accordingly, they did not accept that there was any such presumption in the context of a claim under s. 90A/ Sch 10A. In any event, they submitted, in its application to claims for misrepresentation/deceit such a presumption is one of fact, not law, and does not affect the burden of proof: see *per* Longmore LJ's analysis in *BV Nederlandse Industrie van Eiproducten v Rembrandt Enterprises Inc,* and his conclusion at [25] that:

> *"The tribunal of fact has to make up its mind on the question whether the representee was induced by the representation on the basis of all the evidence available to it."*

511. Further, they contended that it was not sufficient for the Claimants to show that HP/Bidco might have been induced; they had to show that they were induced, and that although the misrepresentation in question need not be the sole inducement, it must play a real and substantial part in inducing the representee to act. They relied again on the analysis and conclusions in *BV Nederlandse Industrie van Eiproducten v Rembrandt Enterprises Inc.*

512. Their analysis based on the wording of the statutory provisions was as follows:

    (1) A claimant under these provisions must, in the normal way, establish that the ingredients of the statutory cause of action are made out.

    (2) The burden of proof lies on the claimant.

    (3) The claimant must therefore establish (i) that he has "*acquire[d] … the securities in reliance on published information …*" and (ii) "*suffer[ed] loss in respect of the securities as a result of"* the untrue or misleading statement or omission.[95]

    (4) That requires proof that he would not have suffered loss but for the misleading statement. For this purpose, he must therefore show that he would have acted differently but for the statement (thereby suffering a loss), not that he might have acted differently. If he can only prove that he might have acted differently, all that can be said is that he might have suffered loss as a result of the statement – in which case the burden of proof has not been satisfied.

    (5) If the evidence shows that the acquirer would have acted in the same way had the published information not contained the false statement or

[95]Sch 10A §3(1); and see to similar effect s. 90A(3).

omission, it cannot be said that any loss is suffered as a result of the false statement or omission.

513. The Defendants submitted that given that the language of the section is clear, there is no need to look to the cases on misrepresentation or deceit in the context of the FSMA claims; but they went on to submit that in any event, those cases do not assist the Claimants, as follows:

(1) The burden is on the claimant in a deceit claim to prove reliance. See Clerk & Lindsell on Torts (22nd Ed, 2017) at §18-34:

> *"To entitle a claimant to succeed in an action in deceit, he must show that he acted (or in a suitable case refrained from acting) in reliance on the defendant's misrepresentation. If he would have done the same thing even in the absence of it, he will fail. What is relevant here is what the claimant would have done had no representation at all been made. In particular, if the making of the representation in fact influenced the claimant, it is not open to the defendant to argue that the claimant might have acted in the same way had the representation been true."*[96]

(2) It is not sufficient for a claimant to show that he might have been induced: he must show that he was induced: see *BV Nederlandse Industrie van Eiproducten v Rembrandt Enterprises Inc* [2019] 1 Lloyds Rep 491 (CA) at §34.

(3) The test for inducement has been expressed in different ways in claims for different types of misrepresentation. It is sufficient in a claim for fraudulent misrepresentation to show that the representation "was actively present to [the claimant's] mind", and whether "his mind was disturbed by the misstatement of the Defendants, and such disturbance was in part the cause of what he did".[97] While the misrepresentation need not be the sole inducement, it must play a "real and substantial part" in inducing the representee to act.[98]

514. The Defendants also submitted that in asking whether a claimant under the statutory provisions has relied on a false or misleading statement or omission, in the sense of being induced by that statement or omission to change his position, it is legitimate to ask whether the claimant would have acted differently had he known the truth. If he would have acted in the same way, even if he had known the truth, it cannot be said that he relied on or suffered

[96] The above passage shows that, once inducement has been established as a fact it is irrelevant to ask whether the Claimants would have acted in the same way had the statements made in the published information been true. However, as discussed below, it is relevant to ask the different question, whether the Claimants would have acted differently if accurate information had been published (assuming *arguendo* that the Claimants succeed in their case that there were inaccuracies in it).
[97] *Edgington v Fitzmaurice* (1885) 29 Ch. D. 459, at 483, followed in *BV Nederlandse Industrie van Eiproducten v Rembrandt Enterprises Inc* [2019] 1 Lloyds Rep 491, at §§28, 32 and 43 (Longmore LJ).
[98] *Dadourian v Simms* [2009] EWCA Civ 169 at §§99 and 101 (Arden LJ).

loss as a result of the false or misleading statement or omission. The Defendants cited *Raiffeisen Zentralbank v RBS* [2010] EWHC 1392 (Comm) at §185 (Christopher Clarke J):

> *"... a claimant who says that even if he had been told the whole truth it would have made no difference to his readiness to enter into the contract will be likely to fail to establish that he was induced to enter into the contract by the misrepresentation in question. There is an inherent contradiction in someone saying that a representation was an inducing cause and accepting that, if the truth had been told, he would have contracted on the same terms anyway."*

The Defendants referred also, to similar effect, to *Dadourian v Simms* at §107, and *JEB Fasteners* [1983] 1 All ER 583 (CA), at 588.

515. As to these competing submissions on the question of what degree of reliance is required and whether the presumption of inducement applies in the context of the FSMA claims, in my judgment:

(1) It is enough that a fraudulent representation has had *"an impact on the mind"* or an *"influence on the judgement"* of the claimant (see *per* Lord Goff of Chieveley in *Pan Atlantic Insurance Co Ltd v Pine Top Insurance Co Ltd* [1995] 1 AC 501, as quoted by Lord Clarke of Stone-cum-Ebony JSC in *Zurich Insurance Co plc v Hayward*). There is no "but for standard" in that context; and the fact that other considerations may have been predominant does not negate the deception if it did have some impact or influence, for (as Lord Cross of Chelsea said in *Barton v Armstrong* [1976] AC 104, 118-119) *"in this field the court does not allow an examination into the relative importance of contributory causes."*

(2) I was originally minded to agree with the Defendants that the so-called 'presumption of inducement' should not be read into the FSMA test; and that it would be difficult to integrate with the test of reasonable reliance which is expressly introduced by FSMA. On reflection, I think this would be to treat the *"presumption of inducement"* as, in effect, one of law: and as Lord Clarke explained in the *Zurich Insurance* case, it is simply an inference of fact. I have ultimately concluded that the presumption applies in the context of a FSMA claim no less than in other cases of deceit. The reason is simple: it aphoristically expresses the reality that once it has been established that a representor fraudulently intended his words to be taken in a certain sense and that the representee understood them in that sense and entered into the contract, it is natural to suppose, unless the presumption is rebutted on the facts, that the representee was induced to make his investment decision on the faith of the representor's statement.[99]

[99] Lord Mustill put it this way in the *Pan Atlantic* case (at [551]): the representor
"will have an uphill task in persuading the court that the…misstatement…has made no difference…there is a presumption in favour of causative effect."

(3) It remains a question of fact to be determined on the balance of probabilities whether having regard to all the circumstances it did in fact have *"an impact on the mind"* or an *"influence on the judgment"* (as Lord Goff put it in the *Pan Atlantic* case) of the representee in making that investment decision. But the presumption is difficult to shift.

(4) In *Hayward v Zurich Insurance Co plc*, Lord Clarke noted (at [36]) that the authorities are not entirely consistent as to what is required to rebut the presumption of inducement: and in particular, *"whether what must be proved is that the misrepresentation played "no part at all" or that it did not play a "determinative part", or that it did not play a "real and substantial part"*. It was not necessary to decide how the test should be worded in that case since it was found that the presumption was not rebutted in that case on any of the formulations; but Lord Clarke did go on to say that *"the authorities…support the conclusion that it is very difficult to rebut the presumption"*, citing Baroness Hale of Richmond DPSC's observation in *Sharland v Sharland* [2015] UKSC 60; [2016] AC 871 that a party who has practiced deception with a view to a particular end, which has been attained by it, cannot be allowed to deny its materiality or that it actually played a causative part in inducement.

(5) It seems to me that, it would be in accordance with the approach in the authorities cited above to avoid semantic debate and leave the issue to be determined according to a value judgment whether in all the circumstances the misrepresentation(s) should be taken as having influenced the decision, without entering into an assessment of its relevant importance amongst any other influences.

(6) Further, the additional requirement of FSMA that the reliance, if established, must also be shown by the claimant to have been reasonable does not remove, but does, in my view, mitigate the effect of the presumption. In my judgment, it introduces an additional test requiring consideration of whether it was reasonable for the representation so to have impacted on the mind and judgment of the representee; put another way, it seems to me that the claimant must show that the representation had a sufficient impact on its mind or influence on its judgment for it to have been reasonable in all the circumstances for the claimant to have relied on it: and see further paragraphs [517*ff*] below.

(7) It is also important to keep in mind that the propensity of a statement to influence the mind only gives rise to the presumption (if applicable) if it is shown to have been read or heard and understood by the representee in its deceptive sense and/or the claimant would have entered into the contract even if the misrepresentation had not been made: see *Leni Gas & Oil Investments v Malta Oil Pty Ltd* [2014] EWHC 893 (Comm) (Males J, at §§18, 19 and 171-172): if it did not influence the mind, or if the representee understood it in some different sense and it was by reference to that different meaning that he acted,

the presumption does not arise: and see the discussion about ambivalent or ambiguous statements in the recent decision of Cockerill J in *Leeds City Council and others v Barclays Bank plc and another* [2021] 2 WLR 1180.

(8) I agree, therefore, with Mr Miles that the Court should not assume reliance by Bidco on every statement alleged by the Claimants to be potentially false or misleading, drawn from hundreds of pages of financial statements and transcripts going back months or years before the acquisition of Autonomy, merely because the Claimants allege that these statements were deliberately false or misleading.

516. Once reliance/inducement has been established as a fact, it is (subject to the exception noted in *Raiffeisen Zentralbank v RBS*, where the representee accepts that he would have acted in the same way, even if he had known the truth) not legitimate or relevant for the defendant to enquire or suggest what the representee would have done had he been told the truth: for, as Hobhouse LJ said in *Downs v Chappell* [1997] 1 WLR 426 at 433, in fact the truth was never told. The question is whether the representee was induced by the false statement; not what the effect would have been if he had been told what he was not told.

When is reliance reasonable?

517. As explained above, and in a departure from the common law, FSMA s. 90A / Sch 10A stipulate also that to establish liability the acquirer of securities must have acted reasonably in relying on the information at a time when, and in circumstances in which, it was reasonable for him to rely on it. See Sch 10A §3(4):[100]

> *"A loss is not regarded as suffered as a result of the statement or omission unless the person suffering it acquired, continued to hold or disposed of the relevant securities —*
>
> *(a) in reliance on the information in question, and*
>
> *(b) at a time when, and in circumstances in which, it was reasonable for him to rely on it."*
>
> [Emphasis added]

518. The Claimants relied on *Redgrave v Hurd* (1881) 20 Ch D 1, 13 in which Sir George Jessel MR said:

> *"If a man is induced to enter into a contract by a false representation it is not a sufficient answer for him to say, 'If you had used due diligence you would have found out that the statement was untrue. You*

[100] S.90A(5) is in materially the same terms.

> *had the means afforded you of discovering its falsity, and did not choose to avail yourself of them."*

519. I did not understand this proposition, or its applicability in the context of FSMA as well as common law claims in deceit, to be contested: and although the Defendants pointed to various substantial deficiencies in due diligence they did not argue that on that account the Claimants could not complain they had been deceived. In any event, in my judgment, it is no defence to a FSMA or a fraud claim that the claimants had the means of discovering the truth; and no defence of contributory negligence or *"caveat emptor"* is available. The test of reasonableness relates to the form and timing of the misrepresentation and what it is reasonable for the representee to make of what he is told: it is not addressed to hypothetical matters such as what else the representee might have done to assess the reliability of the statement.

520. As mentioned above, the statutory provision requiring the claimant to show that at the time when and in the circumstances in which the relevant fraudulent misrepresentation was made his reliance on it was reasonable was regarded by Prof. Davies as a substitute for the common law requirement to show that the representor "intended reliance".[101] The test of reasonableness is not further defined, but it is plainly to be applied by reference to conditions at the time when the representee claimant relied on it. Circumstances, caveats or conditions which qualify the apparent reliability of the statement relied on by the claimant are all to be taken into account. The question of when reliance is reasonable is fact-sensitive.

521. In the present case, the Defendants instanced the following considerations, amongst others:

(1) The status and purpose of the particular statement being relied on: thus, the Defendants contended that it is more likely to be reasonable to rely on an IFRS figure stated in the accounts than to rely on a general statement contained in the directors report (for instance, a statement such as "*we believe that our products are the best in the market*"), or a comment made in passing in the course of an earnings call;[102]

(2) Whether the statement is qualified: the Defendants suggested that where a piece of information is qualified by a statement that it is "*provided for background information and may include qualitative estimates*" (as with the supplementary non-IFRS metrics given by Autonomy), reliance will be reasonable for narrower purposes than where there is no such qualification.

(3) The time at which the statement is relied on: the Defendants suggested that it is more likely to be reasonable to rely on up-to-date information than to rely on a quarterly report that is several years out of date.

(4) The purpose for which the information is relied on: the Defendants submitted that it will be unreasonable to rely on information for a

[101] See *Davies Review of Issuer Liability: Final Report para.30 p18.*
[102] Assuming (*arguendo*) that the call in question constitutes published information.

purpose for which it is not suited. Thus, they suggested, in the case of a non-IFRS metric expressly stated to involve qualitative estimates, it is unlikely to be reasonable to rely on it by plugging it into a valuation model whose output is highly sensitive to small variations in input.

522. I agree that the test is fact sensitive and that these factual matters do require consideration in assessing reasonableness. I address these matters at greater length after determining whether the Claimants have established the misrepresentations alleged: see chapter titled Reliance and Loss Revisited. But I would summarise my conclusions in this regard as follows:

(1) Although HP/Bidco undoubtedly saw Autonomy as a *"transformational opportunity"* and Mr Apotheker envisaged that a combination of HP and Autonomy would realise synergy values in excess of Autonomy's stand-alone value, the basic building bricks which informed HP's approach, negotiation, bid and the eventual Acquisition were the historic revenue figures and description of Autonomy's five revenue streams as represented in Autonomy's published information.

(2) It was entirely reasonable for HP/Bidco to rely, as it did, on the accuracy and completeness of the figures and description thus given, unless and to the extent that through persons acting on its behalf, and having responsibility to pass on to HP/Bidco what they had found out, HP/Bidco actually became aware (whether in the context of due diligence or otherwise) of some particular inaccuracy or material qualification.

(3) HP/Bidco did not, prior to the Acquisition, and whether in the course of due diligence or otherwise, actually become aware of anything in the course of due diligence to warn it of some inaccuracy or material qualification such as to invalidate or cause it not reasonably to be entitled to place reliance on Autonomy's figures and representations in its published information. None of the matters relied on by the Defendants made HP/Bidco's reliance unreasonable.

(4) The reasonableness of HP's reliance at least in material part on Autonomy's published information was reinforced, and such reliance was further encouraged, by representations made by Mr Hussain and others and by presentations made in the January, February and March Slides described and assessed in the chapter on Deceit and Misrpresentation later in this judgment below.

(5) HP/Bidco have established reasonable reliance on what was stated in the published information in respect of all the aspects of Autonomy's business now said to have been misrepresented; and more particularly, HP/Bidco reasonably relied on that published information as having conveyed expressly or by necessary implication that:

(a) Autonomy was a *"pure software company"* and its revenue and revenue growth were generated almost

exclusively from its software licence sales, demonstrating also the success and penetration of its signature product, IDOL;

(b) Autonomy's OEM business revenue was a particularly valuable source of recurring revenue derived at least predominantly from development licence sales and recurring revenue from royalties;

(c) Autonomy's hosting business, which was accounted for as part of its IDOL Cloud business, was growing as a result of increased hosting revenue streams which by their nature were recurrent;

(d) Sales by Autonomy from which revenue was recognized were genuine transactions of commercial substance, and properly accounted for accordingly.

523. I turn to issues of principle which arise in respect of the measure of damages in the context of the Claimants' FSMA claims.

(g) Loss in the context of FSMA claims

524. Neither s. 90A nor Sch 10A specifies the measure of damages that applies to a claim brought under them. Sch 10A §3(1) simply provides that an issuer *"is liable to pay compensation"* to a person who has acquired securities in reliance on published information, and who has "*suffer[ed] loss in respect of the securities as a result of*" any untrue or misleading statement, or the omission of any matter required to be included. It was not in dispute that damage is a separate component of the cause of action under s. 90A / Sch 10A; and must be proved separately from questions of inducement and reliance.[103] The burden of proving damage lies on the claimant, who must show on the balance of probabilities that he has suffered compensable loss.

525. One of the questions raised by Professor Davies at the consultation stage was which measure of damages was appropriate, that for fraud (deceit) or that for negligence. He concluded that it would be difficult to formulate effective rules that would not tie the court's hands in an unsatisfactory way, and he recommended that the issue should be left to the courts to decide. In doing so, however, he thought it likely that the courts would apply the same course as it followed in the case of common law claims for deceit *"since the section is closely modelled on the common law tort"*. He noted also that the damages would be likely to be assessed by reference to the loss caused by reliance on the statement, and not the loss caused by its falsity.

526. It was common ground that the starting point for the assessment of damages is the statement of Lord Blackburn in *Livingstone v The Rawyards Coal Company* (1880) 5 App. Cas. 25:

[103] As explained below, to the extent that analogies with the common law are relevant, loss and causation of loss is a separate element from inducement, and requires 'but for' causation.

> *"I do not think there is any difference of opinion as to its being a general rule that, where any injury is to be compensated by damages, in settling the sum of money to be given for reparation of damages you should as nearly as possible get at that sum of money which will put the party who has been injured, or who has suffered, in the same position as he would have been in if he had not sustained the wrong for which he is now getting his compensation or reparation. That must be qualified by a great many things which may arise—such, for instance, as by the consideration whether the damage has been maliciously done, or whether it has been done with full knowledge that the person doing it was doing wrong. There could be no doubt that there you would say that everything would be taken into view that would go most against the wilful wrongdoer—many things which you would properly allow in favour of an innocent mistaken trespasser would be disallowed as against a wilful and intentional trespasser on the ground that he must not qualify his own wrong, and various things of that sort."* [Emphasis added]

527. This is, as for all tort damages, a "but for" test of causation.[104] In a claim under these provisions of FSMA, the wrong for which the claimant is getting his compensation or reparation is the inclusion of a false or misleading statement in, or the omission of required information from, published information.

528. In assessing the losses flowing from that wrong, it is necessary to ask what would have happened had the false statements or omissions not been made (i.e. to identify the right counterfactual). The answer which I also took to be common ground is that if the published information had not contained false statements or omitted matters required to be included, the published information would have contained true statements and included all matters required to be included. Autonomy was under an obligation to produce annual, half yearly and quarterly reports covering everything it was required by the Companies Act and Disclosure and Transparency Rules to cover, having regard also to all applicable accounting standards. But for the alleged wrong, it would have complied with its obligations properly. It is not therefore a case where, but for the false statement, there would have been nothing said on the topic covered by the statement.[105]

529. It is indeed common ground that in assessing the FSMA Loss, the relevant counterfactual is that accurate information would have been published

[104]Again to the extent common law analogies are relevant, see the discussion of loss in relation to deceit below.

[105]Contrast the hypothetical example given by Christopher Clarke J in *RZB v RBS* where "*P buys a house from V. He had been considering several houses. He is minded to buy the one which he eventually buys because of its size, shape and character. Shortly before he makes his final decision V's agent tells him that a particular celebrity has the house next door, a circumstance which he regards as advantageous. … In fact, as it turns out, there is no celebrity next door.*" In that example, if the agent had not chosen to tell a lie, nothing would have been said about whether there was a celebrity next door. There was no obligation on V or his agent to volunteer information about whether the neighbours were celebrities.

historically. Thus, I also take it not to be in dispute that in determining whether HP would have proceeded with the transaction, it is to be (and, for the purpose of calculating any loss, has been) assumed that accurate information would have informed the market and thus Autonomy's share price and its shareholders' expectations. This is the basis on which Mr Bezant was instructed: see §1.67 of his First Report:

> *"In assessing the FSMA Loss, I am instructed to assume that, but for the breaches of duty alleged by the Claimants:*
>
> *(1) Autonomy's published financial information would not have been subject to the false accounting of which the Claimants complain; but*
>
> *(2) the impugned transactions would still have been entered into."*

530. The next step in the counterfactual analysis is to ask what would have happened in those circumstances. At §196A.1 of the RRAPoC, the Claimants state that:[106]

> *"But for the matters complained of, Bidco would have acquired Autonomy at a lower price. The Loss is therefore the difference between the price that Bidco actually paid for Autonomy (i.e. approximately US$11.1 billion) and the lower price that Bidco would have offered for Autonomy, had it known the true position (this being a price which the selling shareholders in Autonomy would certainly have accepted or which they would have been likely to accept had they, too, known the true position)."*

531. Despite this being their primary pleaded case, the Claimants took a different approach in their written opening. They argued that the prima facie measure of loss is that set out in *Smith New Court Securities v Scrimgeour Vickers* [1997] AC 254 – that is, the price paid by Bidco for Autonomy, less Autonomy's true value at the time of the acquisition. As they note, this measure of loss "*may be conceived of as applying an assumption that absent the fraud the transaction would not have taken place.*"

532. The Claimants also submitted that the primary pleaded measure discussed above, that is, the difference between the price paid and the lower price that would have been paid but for the wrong – should only apply to the extent that it gives them larger damages than the *Smith New Court* measure. Thus, they said that "*while it is open to a victim of fraud to increase damages above the prima facie measure by claiming losses from not entering into an alternative*

[106] Thus, the Claimants averred as their primary case that the bid would have proceeded, albeit at a lower price. By amendment the Claimants pleaded an alternative case that the bid would not have proceeded (see further below), in which case their loss would be the difference between the price that Bidco paid for Autonomy and Autonomy's true market value on the date that Bidco's offer became unconditional.

transaction, it is not open to the fraudster to eliminate (or reduce) damages on that basis."

533. The Claimants sought to justify this on the basis of the Court of Appeal's decision in *Downs v Chappell* [1997] 1 WLR 426. They contended that this precludes the Defendants from arguing that Bidco would have paid the same price even if it had known the truth. Further, they say that their position is consistent with the policy considerations that apply to fraud claims, referring to the following dictum of May J in *Slough Estates plc v Welwyn Hatfield DC* [1996] 2 PLR 50, at 124:

> "*If, as I conceive, the policy of the law is to transfer the whole foreseeable risk of a transaction induced by fraud to the fraudulent defendant, and if, as I conceive, the court does not speculate what, if any, different transaction the plaintiff might have done if the fraudulent representation had not been made, damages on this basis are not to be regarded as a windfall, but the proper application of the policy of the law."*

534. The Defendants rejected this on the basis that:

(1) First, whatever the position in relation to the tort of deceit, the Claimants' argument has no application in a claim under s. 90A / Sch 10A FSMA. The language of the statute contains no suggestion that the law on damages in deceit should be imported wholesale to claims under these provisions.[107] Different policy considerations apply to claims under FSMA. In a claim in fraud or deceit, "*the policy of the law is to transfer the whole foreseeable risk of a transaction induced by fraud to the fraudulent defendant*" (Slough Estates, above).[108] But in a claim under s. 90A / Sch 10A, there is no "*fraudulent defendant*" since the fraudster (i.e. the PDMR) and the defendant (i.e. the issuer) are different persons.[109] Unlike a successful fraudster, an issuer does not in general benefit from the PDMR's wrong in putting out misleading annual or quarterly reports because, as already discussed, these are not "selling" documents.[110] Transferring risks to the issuer penalises the general body of its shareholders, not the individual responsible for the misleading statement. Far from seeking to transfer risk to the issuer, the policy underlying s. 90A and Sch 10A was to avoid an inappropriate transfer of risk to, and diversion of resources from, defendant companies and their shareholders, employees and creditors.

(2) Secondly, and in any case, even in a claim in deceit or misrepresentation, the dice are not loaded in the way that the Claimants

[107]Contrast the language used in s. 2(1) of the Misrepresentation Act 1967, discussed at paragraph 570 ff below.
[108]See also *Smith New Court* at 279-280
[109]As argued at paragraphs 17 and 18 above, in the present claim, the FSMA claim against the issuer is being used as a stepping stone to the claim against the PDMRs; but that should not affect the court's interpretation of s. 90A and Sch 10A.
[110]See paragraph 437 above – and contrast the position with a prospectus.

suggested. When it comes to questions of damages it is for a claimant to prove his loss on a "but for" basis (see further below) and this requires the Court to examine what would have happened in the counterfactual world. As explained above, the first element of the counterfactual is that accurate accounts would have been prepared; the second step is to ask what would have happened had that occurred? The Defendants submitted that the Court has to decide these questions and, as with all factual questions, there can in principle only be one answer. The question is one of fact; and it is not open to the claimant to elect or opt for an outcome which would happen to give it the larger recovery.

(3) Thirdly, the passage from *Downs v Chappell* which the Claimants cited was not dealing with the assessment of damages. As already discussed, it was dealing with an unnecessary (indeed illogical) intermediate question posed by the judge at first instance, after inducement had been established, but before turning to the question of damages.[111] *Downs v Chappell* does not assist on this point.

535. The Defendants went on to contend on the basis set out above that the "no transaction" method of assessing loss discussed in *Smith New Court* will therefore be appropriate only if it is accepted or the Court concludes on the evidence that, absent the alleged misleading statements and omissions in the published information, Bidco would not have purchased Autonomy at all.

536. I agree with the Claimants that the basis of what was termed the *Smith New Court* measure is the *"assumption that absent the fraud the transaction would not have taken place."* That assumption is likely to reflect the reality in many cases of a transaction induced by fraud. But not invariably so: and in particular, in other cases, although the transaction would not have gone ahead at the agreed price, it might have proceeded at a lower price. In *Smith New Court* itself, it had been found as a fact that the sale and purchase would not have taken place because the seller would not have agreed to sell at the best price which the purchaser would have considered paying: see [260F-H]. Likewise in *Downs v Chappell* the judge had decided on the facts that no transaction would have eventuated. However:

(1) In this case, the Claimants averred that *"But for the matters complained of, Bidco would have acquired Autonomy at a lower price"* and pleaded the *"no transaction"* case only as an alternative. Dr Lynch admitted that *"as a matter of fact irrespective of the matters complained of, Bidco would have*

[111] There is another passage in the judgment of Hobhouse LJ, in the section dealing with damages, which states that "*In general, it is irrelevant to inquire what the representee would have done if some different representation had been made to him or what other transactions he might have entered into if he had not entered into the transaction in question*": p 441 at B-C . However, the words need to be read in context: on the facts the judge had decided that it was a no transaction case; and in such cases it is indeed irrelevant to go on to ask whether other hypothetical deals might have occurred. That has no application in a case where the court concludes that in the counterfactual world the same transaction would have occurred in any event; the question then is whether the claimant can show that it would have occurred on the same or different terms. Furthermore, as Leggatt J noted at §217(1) of *Yam Seng*, the dictum of Hobhouse LJ cannot have been intended to state a proposition of law.

proceeded with its acquisition of Autonomy". In such circumstances it seems to me that the *Smith New Court "assumption"* is displaced.

(2) It is to be noted that Mr Hussain denied the averment; but it still seems to me to be a question of fact whether or not an agreement at a lower price would have been agreed. In my judgment, this is a question of fact to be determined by the tribunal of fact, not an election to be made by the defrauded party; and see *Vald Nielsen Holdings A/S and anr v Baldorino and others* [2019] EWHC 1926 (Comm).

(3) I shall review and finally determine the issue in a subsequent judgment on quantum of loss; but my provisional conclusion is that HP would have purchased Autonomy notwithstanding the diminished historical performance which would have on the Claimants' case been revealed had its transactions been fully and properly described and accounted for, but at a lower price and reduced premium reflecting what would have been its lower share price in the market. The fact is, as I see it, that (a) the value (both actual and prospective) of Autonomy's main product and business, IDOL, was substantially unimpaired (b) Autonomy still offered HP the prospect of transformational change and the creation of a data stack which had been the strategic purpose of the acquisition and (c) the synergy values expected would have been little affected. In my provisional view, this is not a 'No transaction' case.

537. As I see the matter, I am further fortified in that view by the conceptual difficulties which would arise in adopting a 'No transaction' approach at the election of the Claimants but in circumstances such as these which do not justify it. For all the reasons given above, Autonomy was of special value to HP even in its deemed diminished state; to ignore that special value is to ignore the fact. The Claimants insistence that in a 'No transaction' context, no credit would be allowed for that special value would result in a windfall to HP. Though in a fraud case, the court is tender to the defrauded party, the calculation of loss remains an exercise of assessing proper compensation, not meting out punishment or conferring windfalls. If there is a doubt whether credit should be given for that windfall in a 'No transaction' context, that is another reason for adopting the 'transaction' approach which I have found to be appropriate and for denying the Claimants an opportunistic right of election.

538. However, and in case I am wrong, and contrary to my view the Claimants are entitled to elect, I should address the issue raised as to the approach to be adopted in a 'No transaction' case, especially in relation to synergy value. If damages did fall to be assessed on that basis, the Defendants submitted that:

(1) As Lord Browne-Wilkinson said in *Smith New Court*, in assessing damages in such a case "*the plaintiff is entitled to recover by way of*

damages the full price paid by him, but he must give credit for any benefits which he has received as a result of the transaction."[112]

(2) The aim in valuing the benefit received by Bidco must be to arrive at the figure "*that truly reflects the value of what the plaintiff has obtained.*"[113]

(3) There is no dispute about the date of valuation: the Claimants accept that it is appropriate in this case to value the property acquired as at the date of acquisition.

(4) It is ordinarily appropriate, in giving credit for the benefits received, to assess the market value of the asset to the claimant, which usually is determined by evidence of the price at which the stake could have been bought and sold between willing parties.

(5) The Claimants in this case submitted that this hypothetical purchase should not include special purchasers and (in accordance with the *IVS Framework of the International Valuation Standards Committee*) should not take into account synergies or any element of value available only to a specific buyer (and, in particular, any synergy value to HP).

(6) The Defendants accepted that market value is the measure of the credit to be given in a standard case, that is because that market value is a satisfactory measure of the benefits received; but where there are benefits to the purchaser of the thing acquired and then retained voluntarily it would be punitive and not compensatory to permit the purchaser to retain the value of what it has disavowed. That would not, echoing Lord Browne-Wilkinson's words, truly reflect the value of what the plaintiff has obtained. In a case such as this, the value to be ascertained for which credit is to be given is the value of the stake (the shares in Autonomy and the benefits to which they provide access, actual and potential) in the hands of the acquirer: and that must reflect the synergy values to the acquirer as well as any standalone value. A valuation ignoring synergies would not properly reflect the value of the asset obtained, and would result in a windfall to the Claimants.

(7) The Defendants also submitted that whereas in a deceit claim *"the policy of the law is to transfer the whole foreseeable risk of a transaction induced by fraud to the fraudulent defendant",* in claims under FSMA against the issuer there is no *"fraudulent defendant"* since the fraudster (the PDMR) and the defendant (the issuer) are different persons. Unlike a successful fraudster, an issuer does not in general benefit from the PDMR's wrong in putting out misleading annual or quarterly reports because they are not "selling" documents. Transferring risks to the issuer penalises the general body of its shareholders, not the individuals responsible for the misleading statement: and that is not consistent with the policy underlying

[112]*Smith New Court* at 266 C-D.
[113]*Smith New Court* at 267.

s.90A/Sch 10A which was to avoid an inappropriate transfer of risk to, and diversion of resources from, defendant companies, and their shareholders, employees and creditors: and see paragraph 534(1) above. The fact that the issuer may then have a stepping-stone for a claim against the PDMR should not affect the interpretation of s.90A and Sch 10A of FSMA.

539. These are novel and difficult issues, which so far as I am aware have not previously been tested. I shall return to them when addressing issues of quantum. For the present suffice it to say that my provisional view is that credit should be given for synergy value where that was the strategic purpose of the acquisition and the asset has been voluntarily retained.

Knowledge of the Defendants

540. If the Court concludes that Autonomy is liable to Bidco under s. 90A and/or Sch 10A, separate questions arise as to the Defendants' liability. Are the Defendants liable for breach of duty owed to Autonomy for exposing Autonomy to the FSMA Loss? And if so, for what parts of the FSMA Loss are they liable to pay damages?

541. In opening the case for the Claimants, Mr Rabinowitz appeared to accept that each of the Defendants would only be liable to pay damages to Autonomy to the extent that (i) he was legally responsible (i.e. in breach of duty to Autonomy) for any relevant wrongful statements in or omissions from the published information and (ii) those statements or omissions caused loss to Autonomy by becoming liable to Bidco. He expressly stated:

> "*I don't think there is anything between us because I certainly wasn't suggesting, and certainly wasn't intending to suggest, that if, for example, the accounts -- there were false and misleading statements and -- I'm using this as an example -- Mr Hussain was involved and knew and in breach of his duty but Dr Lynch didn't know, that because Mr Hussain knows, Autonomy has a claim against Dr Lynch. It seems to me plain that we wouldn't.*"

No correction or refinement was suggested in the Claimants' written closing submissions.

542. The Defendants took this to mean that it was common ground that it is necessary to consider the position of the two Defendants separately: Dr Lynch would not be liable save in respect of losses caused by his own breach of duty: he could only be liable for the consequences of the particular wrongful statements or omissions in respect of which he had the requisite guilty knowledge – not for the consequences of any other wrongful statements there may have been of which he was unaware, even if those statements give rise to a liability from Autonomy to Bidco (e.g. because another PDMR had the requisite guilty knowledge in relation to those other statements). However, I have been reminded by the Claimants[114] that in his oral closing, Mr

[114] After circulation of an earlier version of my judgment in draft.

Rabinowitz sought to revisit this, and he explained that all he had intended to convey by his submission in opening was that the Claimants accepted that they *"could not rely against Lynch on Hussain's knowledge that the financial statements were untrue or misleading if Dr Lynch did not know about this and vice-versa…[they] could not rely on the knowledge of defendant 1 to bring a claim against defendant 2 if defendant 2 understood the financial statement to be true and not misleading and vice-versa."* He submitted further that the way the Defendants had apparently interpreted what he had said would result in an inappropriate *"narrowing of the basis of the claim"*. He suggested that the point was simple:

> *"If Dr Lynch through his breach of duty caused Autonomy to be liable to Bidco under FSMA, then he will be liable for the whole loss caused to Autonomy…"*

543. Whilst maintaining that the Claimants were thereby departing from common ground, Mr Miles submitted that in any event the position as summarised in paragraph 542 was correct. He suggested the following example. Assume for the sake of argument that Autonomy's published information contained two misstatements, misstatement *A* and misstatement *B*. Dr Lynch was only aware of misstatement *A*; Mr Hussain was aware of misstatement *B*. The price HP actually paid was *P*. If HP had known the truth in respect of misstatements *A* and *B*, it would have paid a lower price (*X*) than the price it would have paid (*Y*) if it knew the truth only in respect of misstatement *A*. As against Dr Lynch, the maximum claim would be the difference between *P* and *Y* – a lesser sum than the difference between *P* and *X*. He cannot be liable for the additional losses caused by misstatement *B*, since that misstatement was known only to Mr Hussain.

544. In the event, as will become apparent, the point is academic, since in respect of all the claims I have found that both Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain had what by way of shorthand I shall refer to as *"guilty knowledge"*. However, in case it should become relevant, and because the point may have some general application, I should explain why (in addition to thinking that the Defendants were entitled to proceed on the basis of the matter being common ground) I consider Mr Miles's submissions to be correct. It seems to me that the essential point is that the claim against the Defendants is for breach of duty. It is not, as against them, a claim under the statute. The Claimants have not articulated their claim for breach of duty in any detail. They stated that Dr Lynch owed duties under ss. 171, 172 and 175 of the Companies Act 2006 (duties to exercise powers for proper purpose, to act in good faith to promote the success of the company and to avoid conflicts of interest), and they refer to the duties owed to Autonomy with regard to the proper preparation of its individual and consolidated group accounts (ss. 393, 394, 399 and 415-418 CA 2006). They also rely on duties owed under Dr Lynch's employment contract. They argue that further elaboration is unnecessary, saying that if the Defendants caused Autonomy to put out information containing knowingly untrue statements or omissions, then they must have been in breach of those duties, and they say that "*If Autonomy is liable to Bidco in damages by virtue of a misstatement or omission in Autonomy's published information made with*

the knowledge of the Defendants', then it is inevitable that the Defendants' must in turn be liable to Autonomy for those damages, which were caused by their breach of duty." But I agree with the Defendants that this is an oversimplification. A director may be liable for his own breach of duty and its consequences but (unless he has *"guilty knowledge"* of it) not for another director's breach. The Claimants did not address that possibility, and I agree that their generalized plea would have been insufficient, had the point not been academic (on my view of the facts).

Claims in deceit and under the Misrepresentation Act 1967

545. The claims against Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain in deceit and/or under the Misrepresentation Act 1967 do not assert any liability on the part of the issuer (Autonomy). They are claims directly against the Defendants based on misrepresentations allegedly made by them in the course of meetings with HP or in written presentations provided to HP in the run-up to the bid for Autonomy. The claims relate only to the loss allegedly suffered on the acquisition of the shares in Autonomy held by the Defendants.

Claims in deceit

546. The elements of the tort of deceit can be summarised as follows (per Jackson LJ in *Eco 3 Capital Limited v Ludsin Overseas Limited* [2013] EWCA Civ 413 at §77):

> *"What the cases show is that the tort of deceit contains four ingredients, namely:*
>
> *i) The defendant makes a false representation to the claimant.*
>
> *ii) The defendant knows that the representation is false, alternatively he is reckless as to whether it is true or false.*
>
> *iii) The defendant intends that the claimant should act in reliance on it.*
>
> *iv) The claimant does act in reliance on the representation and in consequence suffers loss.*
>
> *Ingredient (i) describes what the defendant does. Ingredients (ii) and (iii) describe the defendant's state of mind. Ingredient (iv) describes what the claimant does."*

A number of these elements are considered below.

Representation made to a claimant by a defendant

547. To succeed in the tort of deceit, a claimant must show that a misrepresentation was made to him or his agent: *Chagos Islanders v Attorney General* [2003] EWHC 222, at §364. Here, the Claimants allege that the misrepresentations were made to HP, not Bidco.

548. The representation must be one made by or on behalf of the defendant:[115]

(1) In this case, the Claimants rely on some representations allegedly made by Dr Lynch and on others allegedly made by Mr Hussain. There is no allegation that misrepresentations were made by Mr Hussain on Dr Lynch's behalf; and Dr Lynch can have no liability in respect of statements made by Mr Hussain. The Defendants submitted, and I agree, that each defendant must therefore be considered separately.

(2) As I explain at greater length later, some of the representations allegedly made by Dr Lynch were not made by him directly, but by means of slides produced and sent by Qatalyst. Dr Lynch submitted, and again I agree, that it is necessary for the Claimants to establish that Qatalyst was acting as Dr Lynch's agent (not Autonomy's agent) in sending those slides.

Defendant's state of mind

549. A claimant in deceit must establish that the representor was fraudulent, in that he did not honestly believe that his representation was true. See *Derry v Peek* (1889) 14 App. Cas. 337, (Lord Herschell):

> *"I think the authorities establish the following propositions: First, in order to sustain an action of deceit, there must be proof of fraud, and nothing short of that will suffice. Secondly, fraud is proved when it is shewn that a false representation has been made (1) knowingly, or (2) without belief in its truth, or (3) recklessly, careless whether it be true or false. Although I have treated the second and third as distinct cases, I think the third is but an instance of the second, for one who makes a statement under such circumstances can have no real belief in the truth of what he states. To prevent a false statement being fraudulent, there must, I think, always be an honest belief in its truth. And this probably covers the whole ground, for one who knowingly alleges that which is false, has obviously no such honest belief. Thirdly, if fraud be proved, the motive of the person guilty of it is immaterial. It matters not that there was no intention to cheat or injure the person to whom the statement was made."*

550. In the same case, Lord Bramwell explained that a defendant would not be found to be fraudulent unless the truth was present to his mind at the moment

[115] Cartwright, Misrepresentation, Mistake and Non-Disclosure (4th Ed., 2017), §5-07.

when the false statement was made.[116] Put another way, he must have been conscious of the truth, and thus the falsity of what is being said. It is not sufficient to show that the defendant has some knowledge stored away in his mind that, if it had been recalled would have, shown him that what he was saying was false. See also *Armstrong v Strain* [1951] 1 TLR 856 (Devlin J, at p 253):[117]

> *"A man may be said to know a fact when once he has been told it and pigeon-holed it somewhere in his brain where it is more or less accessible in case of need. In another sense of the word a man knows a fact only when he is fully conscious of it. For an action of deceit there must be knowledge in the narrower sense; and conscious knowledge of falsity must always amount to wickedness and dishonesty. When Judges say, therefore, that wickedness and dishonesty must be present, they are not requiring a new ingredient for the tort of deceit so much as describing the sort of knowledge which is necessary."*

551. Fraud is inherently improbable, and brings serious consequences, so evidence sufficient to overcome the starting point of improbability will be required to justify a finding of fraud, even on the civil standard: and see paragraph 473 above.

552. In addition, a claimant in deceit must establish that the representor intended the representation to be acted upon by the claimant.[118]

Reliance / inducement

553. In a claim for deceit, the claimant must establish that he relied on the statement, in the sense that the representation was an inducement to his action.

554. As with the FSMA claim, it must be shown that the representation was relied on by the claimant, not by some other person: the representation must have been present to the claimant's mind at the time when he took the action on

[116]*Derry v Peek*: "*Now, as to the evidence. The plaintiff's case is that the defendants made an untrue statement, which they knew to be untrue, and likely to influence persons reading it; therefore they were fraudulent. It is not necessary to consider whether a prima facie case was made out by the plaintiff. We have all the evidence before us, and must judge on the whole. The alleged untrue statement is that, "The company has the right to use steam or mechanical power instead of horses," and that a saving would be thereby effected. Now, this is certainly untrue, because it is stated as an absolute right, when in truth it was conditional on the approval of the Board of Trade, and the sanction or consent of two local boards; and a conditional right is not the same as an absolute right. It is also certain that the defendants knew what the truth was, and therefore knew that what they said was untrue. But it does not follow that the statement was fraudulently made. There are various kinds of untruth. There is an absolute untruth, an untruth in itself, that no addition or qualification can make true; as, if a man says a thing he saw was black, when it was white, as he remembers and knows. So, as to knowing the truth. A man may know it, and yet it may not be present to his mind at the moment of speaking; or, if the fact is present to his mind, it may not occur to him to be of any use to mention it. …*"

[117]Cited with approval by Rix LJ in *AIC Ltd v ITS Testing Services (UK) Ltd (The Kriti Palm)* [2007] 1 Lloyds Rep 555.

[118]Clerk and Lindsell on Torts (22nd Ed, 2017), §18-30, and see §77 in *Eco 3 Capital Limited v Ludsin Overseas Limited* [2013] EWCA Civ 413 (set out at paragraph 546 above).

which he bases his claim. As noted in respect of the FSMA claim, the claim is by Bidco alone and the Claimants pleaded simply that:

> *"Bidco acquired the share capital of Autonomy, including the shares held by Lynch and Hussain, in reliance on (i) the information contained in the Annual Reports and the Quarterly Reports (and as repeated and explained during earnings calls) and (ii) the misrepresentations made by Lynch and Hussain directly to HP (and thus to Bidco)".* [my emphasis].

555. The Claimants' pleading is at best sparse in this regard; and the Claimants did not elaborate their pleading in the evidence. However, for the reasons I have stated in paragraphs 499 to 500 above, I have concluded that I should accept that HP was Bidco's controlling mind, and that representations made to HP were thus made to Bidco.

556. As to the degree of reliance that the Claimants must show, see paragraphs 507 to 515 above. It is not sufficient for them to show that they might have been induced: they must demonstrate that they were induced as a matter of fact.

557. The legal burden is on the claimant to establish that he has been induced to act by the defendant's misrepresentation: *BV Nederlandse v Rembrandt Enterprises* at §25. However, and as explained in the context of the FSMA claims, once it has been established that a false statement has been made which is material, in the sense that it was likely to induce the contract, and which was intended to induce the representee's investment decision, the claimant/representee has the benefit of a fair inference or presumption of fact (though not an inference of law) that he was influenced by the statement.[119] This presumption is difficult to shift but can be so rebutted where it can be shown that the fraudulent statement or omission played no real or substantial part in the determination of the course of action adopted by the representee, whether because the representee did not hear or read it or because he chose entirely to ignore it, and/or the claimant would have entered into the contract even if the misrepresentation had not been made: see *Leni Gas & Oil Investments v Malta Oil Pty Ltd* [2014] EWHC 893 (Comm) (Males J, at §§18, 19 and 171-172)[120], and paragraph 515 above.

Loss

558. The only loss claimed in the direct claims is that sustained by Bidco in respect of the shares it contracted with the Defendants to buy. This loss has been carved out from the FSMA claim so that there is no double recovery.

559. As Picken J noted in *Marme v Natwest Markets Plc* [2019] EWHC 366, at §296, the distinction is sometimes overlooked: but the question whether loss

[119] *Zurich v Hayward* [2017] AC 142, at §34 (Lord Clarke); and *Rembrandt Enterprises* at §25.
[120] Males J found in that case that MOG had discharged the burden of shifting the presumption, even though, as he noted, amongst the problems for a defendants is that *"…it is not attractive, and will generally be unconvincing, for a fraudster…to assert that its fraud, which it may have gone to some lengths to perpetrate, has actually made no difference…"*

has been caused to the claimant as a result of a representation is a separate issue from inducement/reliance. There is a distinction between the questions (i) whether a misrepresentation has induced a claimant to act in a certain way and (ii) whether a loss has been caused to the claimant as a result of the misrepresentation. See also *Vald Nielsen v Baldorino* [2019] EWHC 1926, at §430.

560. On the question of loss, the starting point is again Lord Blackburne's statement in *Livingstone v Rawyards Coal Co*, that damages should be assessed so as to "*as nearly as possible get at that sum of money which will put the party who has been injured, or who has suffered, in the same position as he would have been in if he had not sustained the wrong for which he is now getting his compensation or reparation.*"[121]

561. Even in a case of fraud, the quantification of damages is compensatory, not punitive: *Vald Nielsen v Baldorino* at §549, and, like other claims in tort for damages, requires "but for" causation. However, English law adopts *"a policy of imposing more extensive liability on intentional wrongdoers than on merely careless defendants"*: *per* Lord Steyn in *Smith New Court Securities Ltd v Citibank NA* [1997] AC 254, 279-285. In particular, the limitations that only damage which was (a) foreseeable and (b) within the scope of the duty owed which have been adopted in the context of claims in negligence (see *South Australia Asset Management Corporation v York Montage Ltd* [1997] AC 191) do not apply in the case of fraud, where *"the defendant is bound to make reparation for all the damage directly flowing from the transaction"*: *Doyle v Olby (ironmongers) Ltd [1969] 2 QB 158, 167* and *Smith New Court [supra].* Thus, per Lord Briggs of Westbourne and Hamblen LJ in *UBS AG (London Branch) v Kommunale Wasserwerke Leipzig GmbH* [2017] 2 Lloyd's Rep 621 at [183]:

> *"…[t]he deceiver is liable, on the tortious basis of analysis, for all the loss directly caused to the representee by the fraudulent misrepresentation, without limits derived from the law as to foreseeability or scope of duty".*

562. The analysis is similar, but not identical, to that discussed above in the context of the FSMA claim. Damages, for the claims in deceit, are to compensate Bidco for the wrong suffered, and thus for having relied on the misrepresentations. So it is necessary to ask what would have happened if that wrong had not occurred, that is, if the misrepresentations had not been made.

563. The Claimants have instructed Mr Bezant to follow the counterfactual recorded as follows in his first report:

> *"In assessing the Misrepresentation Loss, I am instructed to assume that, but for the breaches of duty alleged by the Claimants, the misrepresentations alleged to have been made by the Defendants directly to HP would not have been made; but the impugned transactions would still have been entered*

[121] *Livingstone v Rawyards Coal Company* (1880) 5 App. Cas. 25.

> *into; and Autonomy's published financial information would have been the same as it was in fact."*

That counterfactual refers to "*the misrepresentations alleged to have been made by the Defendants*"; but Dr Lynch submitted, in my view correctly, that in considering the claim against him, only those misrepresentations found to have been made by him, or on his behalf, can be taken into account.

564. As already noted, the Claimants' primary case is that but for the matters which the Claimants complain, including the alleged misrepresentations, Bidco would still have acquired Autonomy. The Claimants will only prove their loss on their primary case to the extent that they can establish that there would have been an agreed bid at a lower price than that which Bidco in fact paid.

565. It is open to the Court, when considering the question of damages, to find that the fraud has caused no loss. Where the parties would have contracted on the same terms even in the absence of the fraud, no losses will be recoverable. See *Vald Nielsen v Baldorino* [2019] EWHC 1926 (Comm) (Jacobs J):

> *"430. As far as the law is concerned, it was common ground that the question of causation was a separate legal question from the issue of inducement. Whilst there might be an overlap on the facts relevant to both questions, a favourable answer to the Claimants on inducement did not enable the Claimants to bypass the question of causation. The Defendants referred to a number of authorities in support of that proposition, including the following passage in Chitty on Contracts 33rd edition, paragraph 7-039:*
>
> > *"It seems to be the normal rule that, <u>where a party has entered a contract after a misrepresentation has been made to him, he will not have a remedy unless he would not have entered the contract (or at least not on the same terms) but for the misrepresentation</u>. Certainly this is the case when the misrepresentee claims damages in tort for negligent misstatement; and it seems also to be required if damages are claimed for fraud."*
>
> > *431. The Defendants also cited the analysis of Doyle CJ in an Australian case, Copping v ANZ McCaughan Ltd (1997) 67 SASR 525, 539:*
>
> > *"It is sufficient if the relevant loss can be said to be caused by the representation, and it is not necessary to show that the loss is attributable to that which made the representation wrongful. In that sense the test is a relatively generous one, in that the misrepresenting party may have thrown upon it risks unrelated to the representation. <u>But there is still the requirement that the loss flows from the representation, and it seems to me</u>*

> *impossible to conclude that it does so flow if one concludes that quite apart from the representation the appellant would have entered into a transaction bringing with it the very risk which eventuated in the relevant transaction and which can be seen as the cause of the loss which the appellant seeks to recover. There may be an element of impression in all this."*

> *432. In the light of these authorities, it appeared to be common ground that one relevant factual question on causation was whether Updata Europe could prove that, but for the misrepresentation, it would not have entered into the contract with LMS on the same terms that it did. Where a question arose as to what Updata Europe would or would not have done, it was also common ground that the question was to be resolved on the balance of probabilities."*

> [Underlining added]

566. The same case (§493) shows that the burden is on a claimant to establish loss.

567. The exercise is again a counterfactual one to be determined on the balance of probabilities. Dr Lynch's case is that, but for the misrepresentations alleged against him, Bidco would still have acquired Autonomy on the same terms, so that no loss has been suffered. I address issues relating to this counterfactual question later.

568. If it is established, despite the Claimants' pleaded case, that but for the Defendants' alleged misrepresentations, Bidco would not have acquired Autonomy, then damages fall to be assessed on the "No transaction" basis: see paragraph 531 above which is for the most part applicable in this context likewise.

569. As explained in paragraph 534(2) above, the counterfactual issue (what would have happened but for the wrong) is like any question of fact (albeit an hypothetical one), to which there is a single answer; the Claimants cannot, as they contended in opening, plump for an outcome which would happen to give them a higher measure of loss at their election or option.

Misrepresentation Act claims

570. In the alternative to their claim in deceit, the Claimants claim damages under s. 2(1) of the Misrepresentation Act 1967 ("s. 2(1)"). This provides:

> *"Where a person has entered into a contract after a misrepresentation has been made to him by another party thereto and*
> *as a result thereof he has suffered loss, then, if the person making the misrepresentation would be liable to damages in*

> *respect thereof had the misrepresentation been made fraudulently, that person shall be so liable notwithstanding that the misrepresentation was not made fraudulently, unless he proves that he had reasonable ground to believe and did believe up to the time the contract was made the facts represented were true."*

571. It is a requirement of the section that the representation be made to the person who enters the contract, in this case, Bidco. Damages are only available where a person has entered into a contract "*after a misrepresentation has been* made to him *by another party thereto*". This again raised the *'Bidco point'* which I have addressed above.

572. There is no requirement for a claimant under s. 2(1) to prove fraud. But he must prove all of the other elements of the tort of deceit in respect of the defendant's statement except for the fraud. Thus, he must prove a false representation made to the claimant, by or on behalf of the defendant, that the defendant intended the claimant to act on it,[122] and that the representation was an inducement to the claimant's action as a result of which he suffered the loss he claims.[123] The arguments above on these elements in the context of the claim in deceit accordingly apply equally in the context of the claim under s. 2(1).

573. In that connection, the Claimants relied on the "fiction of fraud" as importing the "presumption of inducement" into this context also.

574. Liability will not arise where the defendant "*proves that he had reasonable ground to believe and did believe up to the time the contract was made the facts represented were true*". If the Defendants were each dishonest, this would not avail them. A more difficult question is if one or both were not dishonest because they were not aware of the falsity of the representation in question. The Defendants submitted that if it is found that the published information was inaccurate on any point, but that the relevant defendant was unaware of and had no responsibility for the inaccuracy, then if that Defendant repeated the statement made in the published information, it will (in practice) likely follow that he will have had reasonable grounds for believing, and did believe what he was saying to be true. Dr Lynch, in particular, submitted that he was entitled to, and did, rely on the accuracy of Autonomy's published information, prepared by experienced accountants in the finance department and reviewed by Deloitte. I return later to this defence also.

575. As regards the measure of damages under s. 2(1), the Claimants relied on *Royscot Trust v Rogerson* [1991] 2 QB 297 (CA) as establishing that the fraud measure of loss applies. The decision in *Royscot Trust* has been much criticised. In *Smith New Court*, Lord Browne-Wilkinson said that he

---

[122] As to this element, see *Raiffeisen Zentralbank v RBS* [2010] EWHC 1392 (Comm) at §221: "*The requirement that a representation must be made with the intention that it should be acted on by the other party applies equally under section 2(1) of the Misrepresentation Act as in a fraud case*".
[123] Cartwright, Misrepresentation, Mistake and Non-Disclosure (4th Ed., 2017), §7-17.

expressed no view on the correctness of the decision, as did Lord Steyn,[124] and it was also doubted by Leggatt J in *Yam Seng*.[125] Dr Lynch accepts that *Royscot Trust* is binding on this Court, and has the consequence which the Claimants state. However, he reserved the right to contend on appeal that the case was wrongly decided.

Direct claims for breach of duty

576. Independently of the claims relating to the acquisition, the second and third Claimants (Autonomy Inc and ASL) have brought direct claims to recover the direct loss that they and Zantaz suffered as a result of the Defendants' breach of duty in causing such company to enter into loss-making transactions for allegedly improper purposes giving rise to loss.

577. The breach of duty claims relate to four categories of transaction: (i) loss-making "pure hardware" sales (and a claim in respect of a hardware-related bonus that was paid by Zantaz to Mr Sullivan); (ii) VAR transactions where a marketing assistance fee (MAF) (or similar payment) was paid to the VAR (or the relevant Autonomy entity forewent receipts); (iii) alleged reciprocal transactions and VAR transactions involving a reciprocal element; and (iv) Schedule 12D hosting transactions.

578. Autonomy Inc was the contracting party for most of these transactions; Zantaz was the contracting party on the Schedule 12D hosting transactions (save for one transaction where Autonomy Inc was the contracting party). Nonetheless, the Claimants' primary claim is that damages are recoverable by ASL rather than Autonomy Inc or Zantaz, because of transfer pricing arrangements between Autonomy Inc / Zantaz / Verity Inc, and ASL, under which revenues and costs of the former were transferred to the latter. There is an issue in this regard; one of the points raised by Dr Lynch being that he had no detailed knowledge of the transfer pricing arrangements and no awareness of ASL having any exposure, nor that losses would be transferred from Autonomy Inc to ASL. To the extent the claim is alleged to be a breach of duty to ASL in entering the transfer pricing arrangements he contends no such claim could succeed against him. I deal with that contention later, but in summary I find that for the breach of duty claims to succeed the breach must have occurred in entering the impugned transactions, and not in the context of the transfer pricing arrangements. Thus his knowledge of those is not determinative of the direct claims.

---

[124] *Smith New Court* at 267 and 283.

[125] *Yam Seng* at §206: "*The decision in the Royscot Trust case has been much criticised. As has been pointed out by academic writers, the policy considerations which justify a broad measure of damages where fraud has been demonstrated do not apply, or in nothing like the same degree, in cases of mere negligence. Nor does the language of s 2(1) seem to me to compel such a conclusion. It is possible to construe the words 'and as a result thereof … has suffered loss' as requiring the claimant to show that he has suffered loss as a reasonably foreseeable result of a misrepresentation having been made to him, and to treat the following words as imposing an additional requirement (that the defendant would be liable to damages had the misrepresentation been made fraudulently) which must also be satisfied. Unless and until the Royscot Trust case is overruled, however, it represents the law; and I must therefore apply it.*"

579. In addition, according to the RRAPoC before becoming absorbed into HP with effect from 1 November 2014, Zantaz assigned to Autonomy Inc all its rights, title to and interest in, amongst other matters, any claims, rights and causes of action that Zantaz had against third parties, and notice of such assignment was given to the Defendants on 27 March 2015.

580. Mr Hussain was a director of all three entities alleged to have suffered loss (Autonomy Inc, ASL and Zantaz). Dr Lynch's case is that he was not a *de jure* director of any of them; the Claimants contended that he was President of Autonomy Inc (which he denied) and a *de facto* or shadow director of ASL (which also he denied), and that he owed fiduciary duties to each of those two entities accordingly.

581. The issue whether Dr Lynch was a *de facto* or shadow director is one of fact, and the burden of proving it is on the Claimants. It was stated by Morgan J in *Instant Properties Ltd v Rosser* [2018] BCC 751 at [219], citing Lord Hope's review of authority in *Revenue and Customs Cmrs v Holland* [2010] 1 WLR 2793, that:

> *"if it is unclear whether the acts of the person in question are referable to an assumed capacity or some other capacity such as shareholder or consultant the person in question must be entitled to the benefit of the doubt."*

582. The Claimants originally alleged that Dr Lynch was also a *de facto* director of Zantaz but when the conditions that would need to be satisfied to establish that under Californian law (Zantaz being an entity incorporated and existing under the law of the State of California) were explained they withdrew the claim against him by Zantaz: in the result, no claim on behalf or in right of Zantaz was properly entered against him.

583. As to the substantive merits of the claims, the Defendants contended that the transactions impugned were all ones that could properly be undertaken, acting in the best interests of the contracting party and the group. These points are developed below.

Interpretation of accounting standards and statements of practice

584. Except for its case relating to the representations made about IDOL OEM revenue, the Claimants' claims revolved around issues of accounting. The following paragraphs provide an overview of the accounting framework to be interpreted and applied. I return to particular aspects of these accounting issues in the context of the specific claims in which they arise.

585. The statutory underpinning is provided by the Companies Act 2006. Section 395 of the Companies Act 2006 requires that a company's accounts must present a "true and fair view" of its assets, liabilities, financial position and profit or loss. That standard is to be satisfied by preparing such accounts either under section 396 of the Companies Act 2006 ("section 396") and in accordance with Financial Reporting Standards issued by the Financial Reporting Council ("the FRC"), or under section 395 of the Companies Act

2006 ("section 395") and in accordance with international accounting standards as defined.

586. Accounts properly prepared either in accordance with section 396 or in accordance with IAS are said to be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting practice ("GAAP"). There are, however, different versions of GAAP. In the United States there are different practices together compendiously known as "US GAAP": the US has not adopted IAS, and US GAAP departs from IAS in key areas. US GAAP principles were not applicable to Autonomy before its acquisition by HP, though (as I explain later) they were familiar to and may incorrectly have influenced the Claimants in bringing their claims.

587. As a UK listed company, Autonomy was required to prepare its accounts in accordance with the international accounting standards customarily known in the accounting profession as "EU-adopted IFRS". IFRS are accounting standards issued since 2001 by the International Accounting Standards Board ("IASB"), and EU-adopted IFRS are those IFRS that have been adopted by the European Commission in accordance with EC Regulation No. 1606/2002. Between 1975 and 2001 accounting standards issued by the IASB's predecessor, the International Accounting Standards Committee ("IASC") were known as IAS, and they have for the most part continued in operation alongside newer IFRS developed and introduced since 2001. In practice, the terms "IAS" and "IFRS" are used interchangeably.

588. The aim of these standards is to harmonise regulations, accounting standards and procedures relating to the preparation and presentation of financial statements and to seek to ensure that financial statements achieve their purpose of providing the information about the financial position, performance and changes in the financial position of an entity which is likely to be necessary for the purposes of enabling their readership to make informed economic decisions. Application of the IAS/IFRS is presumed to achieve a fair presentation of the financial position, financial performance and cash flows of a company, though the EC Regulation and IAS 1 provide a saving where compliance would be so misleading as to conflict with the purpose of financial statements. The requirement that the accounts should *"fairly present"* the position and performance of the company is substantially the same as the requirement that they should present a *"true and fair view"* (which is the test long adopted in a sequence of English Companies Acts).

589. After some debate and expression of concern amongst both accountants and the market as to whether in the case of entities adopting IAS accounting the presumption that compliance with IAS/IFRS accounting standards would, save in an exceptional case, result in a 'fair presentation', replaced the age-old requirement that accounts should present a true and fair view, the present version of section 393 of the 2006 Act gave renewed recognition to the older test: it re-confirms that the directors must not approve annual accounts which they are not satisfied give a "true and fair view". Although the mechanism for that test to be paramount is now provided within IAS and not the 2006 Act, the result is in my judgment that the test is ultimately the standard to be achieved and the accounting standards are to be interpreted as the means of complying

with the underlying duty of directors to present a "true and fair view" of their company's financial position, performance and prospects. I would take it to be the test graven in the heart and mind of every director responsible for the accounting statements of a public listed company such as Autonomy.

590. I stress that because it is worth emphasising that a company's accounts are ultimately the product and responsibility of the directors. Auditors, even auditors with free access to detailed records, are at one remove, and in the end cannot know what the Directors had in mind except by reference to what directors choose to reveal.

591. In that connection, the Defendants placed great reliance and emphasis on the fact that Deloitte had free and open access to all Autonomy's books and records, considered in detail and reviewed with care the facts and accounting standards applicable to all the transactions which the Claimants have impugned, and approved Autonomy's financial statements and reports in every quarter and half and full year in the Relevant Period. The question whether that provides the Defendants with an answer to these claims depends not only on the facts and the extent of Deloitte's knowledge, and the interpretation of the variety of Accounting Standards and Statements of Practice which had to be satisfied in that context, but also on a determination of what in reality the directors regarded the economic effect as being or likely to be.

Key accounting issues

592. The key accounting matters in issue in these proceedings relate to

(1) The recognition of revenue (which is relevant to most of the Claimants' allegations); and

(2) The accounting for and/or disclosure of hardware sales transactions in Autonomy's various financial statements.

593. The standards bring necessary detail to the overall guidance provided by the '*Framework for the preparation and presentation of Financial Statements'* published in 1989 and subsequently partially revised by *'The Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting'* issued in September 2010 (which contained new material on the objective of general-purpose financial reporting and on qualitative characteristics of useful financial information).

594. Neither the *'Framework'* nor the *'Conceptual Framework'* has the status of an accounting standard; but they provide a framework for the development of more precise standards, a useful guide as to the meaning and intention of individual standards if unclear, and a reference point for the accounting treatment of transactions for which there are no specific rules. An example of the guidance given, and one which occasioned considerable debate in these proceedings, concerned the important concept of 'economic substance'. Both *Framework documents* and the relevant standards require that transactions and events must be accounted for *"in accordance with their substance and economic reality and not merely their legal form."*

595. The experts agreed that the Accounting Standards ("IAS(s)") issued by the IASC and newer International Financial Reporting Standard(s) ("IFRS") issued by the IASB of particular relevance are:

(1) IAS 1 ('Presentation of financial statements')

(2) IAS 2 ('Inventories')

(3) IAS 18 ('Revenue')

(4) IAS 34 ('Interim financial reporting')

(5) IFRS 8 ('Operating segments').

596. As I elaborate later, especially in the context of the application of the rules for revenue recognition contained in IAS 18.14 (which as I shall return to later, has since been replaced by IFRS 15), there was a dispute between the parties, and to a lesser extent between the experts, as to the proper approach to the interpretation of IFRS/IAS.

597. In summary, the dispute was as to the extent to which the legal attributes of a transaction should be taken to determine its true nature from the point of view of IAS/IFRS standards. The most obvious and usual case where it would be relevant is in seeking to determine how to apply IAS where the legal content of a transaction appears to differ from what circumstances reveal to be its intended or actual economic effect, and where if the legal effect is conclusive, revenue would fall to be recognised, but if a test of economic reality were to be applied, it would not be. (Thus, for example, Autonomy's VAR transactions plainly provided for ownership, managerial control and the significant risks and rewards of ownership to pass to the VAR, those being preconditions of revenue recognition; but at least arguably, the economic reality was that Autonomy retained the economic risk, effective managerial control and the real risks and rewards of ownership, raising acutely whether the preconditions were to be interpreted as imposing a legal test, or as imposing a test of their economic substance.)

598. In *Ball UK Holdings Ltd v HMRC* [2018] UKUT 407 (TCC), the issue as to whether the interpretation of an accounting standard was a process of legal analysis or accountancy practice arose in acute form in relation to a dispute as to the meaning of "the functional currency" in FRS 23. FRS 23 is the standard prescriptive of the selection of a single currency in financial statements. The Upper Tribunal, whilst acknowledging (at [38]) that *"accountancy clearly does meet up with legal principles…in the Companies Act, and in particular in the requirement now in s 393(1) Companies Act 2006 that accounts must give a "true and fair view…"*, stated as follows (at [37] and [40] to [41]):

> *"37. Accounting standards are not legal documents. They are not statutes or contracts. This is also not a case where public law concepts, such as the doctrine of legitimate expectation, are engaged in a way that means that the document in question may form the basis of a legal right. So it is not necessary to construe them to determine*

> *any legal effect to be given to them. They are documents written by accountants for accountants, and are intended to identify proper accounting practice, not law. No accountant would consider turning to a lawyer for assistance in their interpretation, nor should they.*
>
> *...*
>
> *40. In our view, the question of what is generally accepted accounting practice, as well as the question whether a particular set of accounts are prepared in accordance with it, is a question of fact to be determined with the assistance of expert evidence. Professional accountants are best placed to understand accounting statements in their context, and in particular their "spirit and reasoning".*
>
> *41. What is a matter for a court or tribunal, however, is the proper assessment of expert evidence. Clearly a judge may prefer the evidence of one expert to that of another, but this should be fully reasoned and the judge should not simply "develop his own theory" (see for example Devoran Joinery Co Ltd v Perkins (No 2)* [2003] EWCA Civ 1241 at [24])*."*

599. I must admit, with all respect, to some reservations about the generality of the last two sentences of [37] in its application to accounting standards for company accounts in general, and to IAS 18.14 in particular. I tend to think that it could be simplistic to regard such accounting standards as written by accountants for accountants, without recognising that such statements are issued after broad consultation and input, including from lawyers, and after regard has been had to the likely context of their application, which (at least in the case of IAS 18.14) will usually be a legal relationship. The law and the way lawyers apply and interpret the law, inform them and this is reflected in the drafting, even if the emphasis is on applying the standard in a way which reflects the economic reality of the entity's economic position and performance. Hence, for example, my understanding is that a lawyer was usually part of a panel of enquiry because law and accountancy were so closely enmeshed in determining the approach to and proper application of accounting standards with a view to achieving the statutory standard of a "true and fair view".

600. In that latter context, it is also to be noted that when the issue arose in 1983 as to the interaction between the requirement that accounts must state a "true and fair view" and statements of accounting principles, the Accounting Standards Committee turned to two lawyers, Mr Leonard Hoffmann QC and Miss Mary Arden (as they then were), for the answer; and the FRC turned to Mr Martin Moore QC when the question was revisited in the light of the European Directive and changes in the law in 2008.

601. However, with that caveat, I agree with the conclusion reached in *Ball UK Holdings Ltd v HMRC*, in which the Upper Tax Tribunal followed Arnold J's decision in *Smith v HMRC* [2011] STC 1724, that accounting standards are not law, and their interpretation is therefore not a question of law. Further, in

many, if not most cases, the question will not be as to what single approach is dictated: it will (in the event of dispute) be a question whether a given approach is within the range of possible proper applications of the standard according to the practice of accountants as revealed by expert evidence.

602. The court or tribunal will ordinarily have to determine that question by reference to the expert evidence, although ultimately it is for the Court or tribunal to determine the correct principle of commercial accountancy to be applied, or the permissible range which would constitute compliance. Whilst Mr Peter Holgate ("Mr Holgate") considered that the range would usually be *"relatively narrow"* he accepted that its scope and the application of IAS/IFRS to a specific company would be a matter of judgement having regard to all the particular facts and circumstances.

603. I also agree that the standard must be applied to the economic substance and real intended effect of the transaction and not merely its legal form and content; and whilst the contractual provisions are likely (as Mr Miles submitted) to define the relationship between the parties and their shared intent, they are the starting point and not the end-point in assessing the real substantive effect of the arrangements constituting and relating to the transaction.

604. The assessment involves an analysis of the entire commercial package of rights and an assessment of how the arrangements the parties have made are in substance intended to affect their relationship in respect of the subject-matter of the contract. The assessment must also take into account indicia which the court considers the evidence of accounting practice suggests should be taken into account as being relevant to that assessment.

605. Further, and although the court must be wary, in determining the attributes of a transaction, about taking into account matters which the parties have expressly stipulated should not be taken into account, and equally wary of promoting an assurance as to likely future conduct of another person (here, Autonomy) into a defining element in the relationship between the parties, the court has to keep well in mind that though a legal prohibition may deprive legal effect to something done in breach of it, cannot erase it as a fact. If it has happened, it has happened, and the law can only regulate its consequences in law and not deny it and its operation between the parties in point of fact.

606. Lastly on this issue, I agree with Mr Rabinowitz that the court must be careful in its approach to guard against viewing the matter though a legalistic prism. It must assess the substance in the round; and even where (as perhaps in the case of IAS 18.14), the examples given or rules expressed in explaining the standard appear to reflect legal principles) it must be guided in its reading and application of the standards by the approach of accountants as revealed by the expert evidence, and by the objective of IFRS accounting, being (in my view) to achieve a true and fair presentation and account of the substantive economic performance of the company, and to inform appraisals and investment decisions likely to be made in reliance on that account.

Issues of nomenclature

607. Throughout this judgment, unless stated to the contrary, I use the terms "the Claimants" as a shorthand to denote the Claimant making the particular claim. The Claimants do not in reality make any claims jointly. A summary of the individual claimant(s) making the various claims is provided in the next section.

608. I should also clarify that in terms of describing the acquirer, I use the descriptions HP and Bidco interchangeably in light of my conclusions on the 'Bidco Point'.

609. My references to 'Autonomy' in the context of the various impugned transactions are by way of shorthand convenience; but in the context of an impugned transaction the reference is intended to denote (unless otherwise stated) whichever of the Autonomy group companies was the contracting party.

610. References to the 'Defendants' are to whichever of the two of them is alleged to have been implicated in wrongdoing. I have sought to identify them individually when issues arise as to that individual's knowledge or involvement. Mr Hussain adopted all Dr Lynch's submissions as regards matters other than knowledge.

Structure of the judgment

611. As explained in paragraph 33 above, the length of this judgment has necessitated its division into two parts. I deal with the claims in separate chapters, in the following sequence, the first two chapters being in Part A and the remainder being in Part B:

(1) Hardware Claims and related issues (paragraphs 613 to 1854);

(2) Reseller/VAR Claims, including claims in relation to the VAR reciprocals, and related issues (paragraphs 1855 to 2336), in respect of which there is also a Schedule in a separately page- and paragraph-numbered document containing an analysis of each of the 37 impugned VAR transaction;

(3) Reciprocal Transactions (paragraphs 2337 to 2972B);

(4) OEM Claim (paragraphs 2973 to 3253);

(5) Hosting Claim, including Schedule 12D Hosting Direct Loss Claim (paragraphs 3254 to 3739);

(6) Other Transactions Claims (paragraphs 3740 to 3820);

(7) Deceit and Misrepresentation (paragraphs 3821 to 3993);

(8) Reliance and Loss Revisited (paragraphs 3994 to 4076);

(9) Direct Loss Claims (paragraphs 4077 to 4105);

(10) Dr Lynch's Counterclaim (paragraphs 4106 to 4115);

(11) Conclusion (paragraphs 4116 to 4135).

612. I have latterly also included a Postscript to address various matters raised in the process of providing comments and corrections on the embargoed drafts of this judgment (see paragraphs 4136 to 4155).

HARDWARE CLAIMS

The Claimants' 'Hardware Case' in outline

613. A flagship of the Claimants' case is their claim that although Autonomy was presented to the market (and in due course to HP) as deriving substantially all its revenue from the sale of high margin proprietary software, in fact from Q3 2009 onwards (and throughout the Relevant Period) a substantial (and certainly material) part of its revenue was derived from undisclosed sales of third-party hardware. In internal Autonomy emails, these hardware sales were often euphemistically referred to as *"low margin"* sales; but in fact they were almost invariably at a loss.[126]

614. The Claimants divided Autonomy's hardware sales into three categories: (i) *'pure hardware'* sales, (ii) '*Appliance sales'* and (iii) *'other hardware sales'*. These categories, and the difficulties or obfuscation which they caused, are explained further, together with other issues of terminology in relation to the Claimants' hardware claims, in paragraphs 648 to 659 below.

615. Of the three categories of hardware sales, by far the largest was *"pure hardware sales"*. Put shortly, *'pure hardware'* sales were sales of hardware where the hardware sold had no Autonomy software in it and the sale did not include any Autonomy software as part of the overall sale. The revenue generated by *'pure hardware'* sales was substantial: some $200 million over the course of the Relevant Period (constituting some 11% of total reported revenues), including $105 million in 2010 alone.

616. According to the Claimants, the sales of *'pure hardware'* lacked any legitimate commercial rationale. Their only real purpose was to assist Autonomy to meet (and if possible, *"beat and raise"*) market expectations for overall revenue in the quarter or other longer period in question. The Claimants dismissed as a pretence the Defendants' justification of the *'pure hardware'* sales and all the hardware sales as being to assist software sales and promote the development of Autonomy's core software business.

617. The Claimants contended further that to achieve the real purpose of what became a routine activity or programme ("the hardware reselling strategy"), it was necessary that the extent of the sales and their contribution to Autonomy's revenues should never be disclosed or visible to the market. The purpose being to present substantially all Autonomy's revenues as derived from sales of its own software, it would undermine that purpose if the market was told, or was able to discover, how much of Autonomy's revenues were in fact derived from loss-making hardware sales.

618. The necessity to hide the hardware sales in turn necessitated the concoction of a narrative which would persuade what the Claimants described as a *"very reluctant"* Deloitte and the Audit Committee to accept that revenue from hardware sales should be aggregated with revenue from software sales without

[126] because Autonomy had to purchase hardware from third party suppliers, and the purchase price paid by Autonomy exceeded the amount received by Autonomy in respect of the onward re-sale.

differentiation, and that no disclosure of the separate source of part of the revenue was required in Autonomy's accounts or published information.

619. In the result, although hardware sales were accounted for in that the revenue and costs of sales were brought into account, Autonomy's published information mentioned neither the *'pure hardware'* sales nor any other hardware sale, except the sale of a small quantity of 'appliances' at margins represented to be *"not dissimilar"* to software sales. The hardware reselling strategy was thus never mentioned to analysts and the market. The Claimants contended that the Defendants personally *"went out of their way to prevent the market knowing that this was happening"*.

620. In the Claimants' words in their written closing submissions, Autonomy's "*hardware reselling strategy"* in which both Defendants were *"centrally involved"* and *"actively concealed"*:

> *"…was little more than a scheme whereby Autonomy in effect 'bought and paid for' recognisable revenue to inflate reported revenue in order to mislead the market."*

621. The Claimants further contended that to mitigate and disguise the inevitably adverse effect which low margin/loss making hardware sales would have on Autonomy's gross margins[127] and gross profits, two further refinements of the scheme came to be adopted. Both further demonstrated that hardware sales had nothing to do with driving software growth (which, put broadly, was the Defendants' justification for it). The two refinements were:

 (1) if expected shortfalls in software sales did not eventuate, so that revenue from high-margin software transactions unexpectedly transpired to be sufficient to meet forecasts, revenue from hardware sales would be deferred to a subsequent quarter for later use; and

 (2) instead of accounting for all costs as Costs of Goods Sold ("COGS"), as much of such costs as ingenuity would allow and Deloitte could be persuaded to approve would be allocated as Sales and Marketing expenses, thereby diminishing the adverse effect of loss-making sales on Autonomy's gross profit margin and thus its apparent performance.

622. The Claimants' primary case is that the financial position and performance, and thus the long-term value, of Autonomy was thereby fundamentally distorted and overstated.

623. The gist of the FSMA claim against the Defendants is that they instigated all this, or at least had full knowledge of it, knew that this was wrong and repeatedly misled Autonomy's auditors, the Audit Committee, the market more generally, and during the pre-acquisition discussions and due diligence

[127] Gross margin is the margin on each incremental sale of a product; or, across a company, the average gross margin across all sales.

process, HP in particular. The Claimants contended that the contemporaneous documentary evidence makes all this plain.

624. The Claimants' case on *'pure hardware'* was summarised in paragraph 54A of their RRAPoC as follows:

> *"There was no legitimate business reason for Autonomy Inc to enter into any pure hardware transactions. In fact, the pure hardware transactions were not entered into genuinely in furtherance of, or pursuant to, Autonomy Inc's business, but rather were entered into for the improper purpose of allowing Autonomy falsely to portray itself as a high-margin software company whose revenues were growing rapidly and meeting market expectations, when in reality a substantial portion of these revenues and the apparent rate of revenue growth were the result of undisclosed (and indeed, as pleaded further below, actively concealed) pure hardware sales."*

625. The Claimants seek very large damages or compensation on the basis, in broad summary, that the fact that a material part of Autonomy's revenues was derived from loss-making or (at best) low margin hardware sales which were not disclosed meant that Autonomy was a very different company, and very much less valuable, than it was presented to be.

626. In addition to their FSMA claims, the Claimants also pursued direct claims against the Defendants on the basis that the Defendants breached their duties to Autonomy Inc and/or ASL by causing those companies to conduct hardware transactions at a loss.

627. Thus, the Claimants' causes of action in relation to their Hardware Case are:

(1) Claims pursuant to FSMA, on the basis that in consequence of the failure to disclose the hardware sales Autonomy's published information was untrue or misleading, rendering Autonomy liable to Bidco (which liability Autonomy admitted and now seeks to recover against the Defendants);

(2) Claims in deceit and under the Misrepresentation Act 1967 directly against both Defendants on the basis that they fraudulently made material misrepresentations as to the financial position, performance and prospects of Autonomy and thereby induced HP, and thus Bidco, to proceed with the acquisition of their shares in Autonomy at the offer price.

(3) Claims for breach of duty against both Defendants on the basis that at their instigation Autonomy Inc entered into what they termed *"pure hardware"* transactions (as to which, see below) *"not for any*

legitimate business purpose, but for the improper purpose of generating the revenues that would enable Autonomy to portray itself, falsely, as a high margin software company".

628. Claims within category (3) above seek recovery of transactional losses. However, the losses from the hardware transactions themselves were relatively small (in the region of $20 million) and transactional losses are not the real focus of the Claimants' complaint. It is important to keep those much smaller claims separate in order to preserve focus on the far larger claims based on misrepresentation and non-disclosure: and I consider the claims for transactional losses in another part of the judgment.

Defendants' case in summary and matters primarily in dispute in the FSMA Claim

629. The Defendants did not deny that Autonomy transacted substantial hardware sales in volume and value terms between Q2 2009 and Q2 2011. The Defendants' case was that reselling hardware at a discount to its customers was a carefully weighed strategy, the principal purpose of which was to protect, support and facilitate software sales and Autonomy's software business.

630. As presented by the Defendants, the strategy had two primary prongs: one pointing towards Autonomy's hardware suppliers and the other pointing towards its software customers:

(1) As regards hardware suppliers, its objects were to enhance Autonomy's relationships with those suppliers and increase the prospect of them (a) optimising their hardware products for use with IDOL software, (b) co-operating with Autonomy to develop a joint "appliance" if the market adopted what appeared to be a move towards appliances as the means of delivery of software and (c) generally, encouraging their hardware customers to buy Autonomy/IDOL software. Autonomy also hoped and expected thereby to increase Autonomy's market presence and the market penetration of Autonomy's software offerings.

(2) As regards Autonomy's customers, its objects were (a) to enhance its ability to offer one-stop shopping and bulk purchasing and thereby (b) to consolidate its position as a favoured IT supplier and achieve or retain "key supplier status" at a time when some of its customers were limiting the number of their IT customers in order to make procurement cheaper and more efficient. Further, many of its customers had procurement departments, whose performance was measured on the discounts they could obtain. Although the discounts offered by Autonomy caused most of its hardware reselling to be at a loss, the Defendants contended that the losses were small, especially in comparison to the very high margins on increased software sales encouraged by the strategy.

631. Their principal answers to the question posed by Mr Rabinowitz, put summarily, were that:

(1) The sales of hardware were never an end in themselves, and Autonomy never undertook a separate business as a hardware seller or reseller: its hardware reselling strategy was part of its single segment software business and, in effect, a loss leader and/or a form of marketing to protect and promote that business;

(2) The hardware sales or re-sales were disclosed to and reviewed in great detail by Deloitte, who approved their accounting treatment;

(3) Every deferral of revenue was justified, and the allocation of costs of hardware sales in part to Sales and Marketing was discussed and agreed with Deloitte and approved by both Deloitte and the Audit Committee;

(4) It was for Deloitte to advise, and they did advise, what disclosure was required by accounting standards, and Autonomy never acted contrary to that advice; and that

(5) It was a management judgment whether further disclosure should be made voluntarily, but on rational and substantial grounds, management determined not to provide further disclosure, and their decision was supported by both Deloitte and the Audit Committee who signed off on Autonomy's published information throughout the Relevant Period.

632. The Defendants relied principally on the evidence of the Claimants' own witnesses, and in particular, that of Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan, which (they submitted) confirmed that there was a valid commercial rationale for the hardware sales (including the *"pure hardware"* sales) as a means of driving software sales. The Defendants submitted that (since it is their own) the Claimants are bound by that evidence, which was also given support by another witness called by the Claimants, Mr Welham.

633. The Defendants acknowledged that the sales of hardware did provide *"flexibility"* in terms of supplementing revenue and could be and were used to enable revenue to be supplemented where quarterly revenue slipped. However, that was a collateral advantage rather than the purpose, let alone the primary purpose, of such sales.

634. In asserting that *"None of these claims bears scrutiny"* it was an important element of the Defendants' case that Deloitte reviewed all the published information now contended by the Claimants to have been fraudulently presented, and (as Mr Welham accepted) would not have allowed any statement or presentation to be made that they considered misleading.

635. According to the Defendants, Deloitte were aware of Autonomy's hardware sales, right down to a granular deal by deal basis, their amounts, their loss-

making nature (to the extent that they were so) and the identities of the counterparties. They knew that some of the hardware was sold without adding any software to it. Deloitte considered and discussed with Autonomy's finance department and the Audit Committee not only the inclusion of the revenues as revenue, but also the disclosure, categorisation and explanation of Autonomy's various types of revenue.

636. Dr Lynch also stressed that he was not an accountant; he was entitled to, and did, think that in preparing and scrutinising the accounts the finance department (made up of experienced accountants), Deloitte and the Audit Committee had properly done their job. Thus, if more disclosure was required, he expected them to say so; and if any of those people had thought the published information was misleading, he expected them to say so, explain why, and offer an alternative which would ensure its fairness and accuracy.

637. In the round, Dr Lynch depicted the aggregate gross losses from the hardware reselling strategy as a small price to pay for what in effect was, as he saw it, a successful marketing strategy at a time of threatening market changes which was of considerable benefit to Autonomy.

The Principal Issues

638. The Claimants identified and summarised the principal issues to be determined in relation to their case impugning the hardware transactions as follows:

(1) What was the Defendants' purpose in causing Autonomy to resell *"pure hardware"*?

(2) Was Autonomy's published information untrue or misleading by reason of the *'pure hardware'* sales, and did the Defendants appreciate this?

(3) Did Autonomy's treatment of the costs of the *'pure hardware'* sales render Autonomy's published information untrue or misleading, and did the Defendants appreciate this?

(4) Should Autonomy, at the least, have made clear in its published information what its accounting policy was with respect to hardware?

(5) Did Autonomy wrongly recognise revenue in Q2 2009 on a specific ($6 million) hardware transaction with Morgan Stanley?

639. That summary of the issues, which as to (2) to (5) follows the structure of the first report of the Claimants' expert witness, Mr Peter Holgate, provides a useful overall structure for the analysis and determination of the hardware case. However, these headline issues need to be broken down further to understand the various strands of the Claimants' hardware case as it was ultimately put forward, and the Defendants' answer to it (especially their contention that they relied on Deloitte's approval).

640. First, it is necessary to identify three different contexts in which the Claimants' case as to the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy (Issue (1) in paragraph 638 above), which was the central area of disputed fact, is relevant:

(1) Its principal context is the Claimants' contention that the overall purpose asserted by the Defendants was no more than a pretext falsely to justify describing and accounting for revenue from the hardware sales as if it were part of, or at least not to be distinguished from, revenue from software sales. That is a self-sufficient part of the Claimants' hardware case, in that they contended that if they established it, Autonomy's published information was plainly false and misleading, and can be determined to have been so without reference to the expert evidence. Mr Shelley, co-head of one of Autonomy's Corporate Brokers (UBS), had to concede in cross-examination that if the market had found out that Autonomy was selling hundreds of millions of dollars of hardware to inflate its apparent software revenues then that would have been fraud and the market would not have reacted well.

(2) A second context in which the identification of the purpose of the programme is relevant is the Defendants' defence that Deloitte approved all the published information relied on by the Claimants. The Claimants contended in that context that the defence is invalidated if it is established that the Defendants misrepresented to Deloitte the true purpose of the hardware reselling strategy.

(3) The third context in which a determination of the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy is relevant is in assessing the credibility of the Defendants, and in particular of their justification for their determination that the programme should not be disclosed to the market.

641. Secondly, it is necessary to distinguish between the two different limbs of the Claimants' case that Autonomy's published information was false and misleading:

(1) One limb relates to positive statements or representations in Autonomy's published information: this aspect ("the positive misrepresentations case") focuses especially on the way Autonomy chose to present its business and sources of revenue in the 'front-end' or 'narrative' part of its accounts.

(2) The other limb relates to alleged omissions from Autonomy's published information: this aspect ("the expert accountancy case") focuses especially on the Claimants' expert evidence that under IFRS rules hardware transactions should have been, but were not, separately disclosed.

642. The Claimants emphasised that their positive misrepresentations case is not dependent on expert evidence, since no expert evidence is needed for the proposition that a company's published information must not contain false or misleading statements. The issue is one of interpretation (and more particularly what meaning would have been given in the market to what was positively stated in Autonomy's published information about the nature of Autonomy's business and its sources of revenue). By contrast, the Claimants' expert accountancy case is reliant on the view of their expert, Mr Holgate , that the IFRS rules and statements required disclosure, and that this was too plain to be a matter of fine judgement.

643. Thirdly, it is important to understand the relationship between the Claimants' "purpose case" (see (1) in paragraph 638 above) and the other aspects of their hardware case (see (2) to (5) in paragraph 638 above). I have already explained that if the Claimants succeed in demonstrating that the avowed purpose was a pretence that also concludes Issue (2). The question now addressed is as to the effect if the Claimants do not succeed in that regard. As to that, in oral closing argument, Mr Rabinowitz emphasised that neither the Claimants' positive misrepresentations case nor their expert accountancy case is dependent on proof of pretence or even simply some improper purpose. As to the positive misrepresentations case, which became by the time of closing arguments, the Claimants' favoured route to success, Mr Rabinowitz submitted that:

> *"it really doesn't matter why Autonomy was selling this hardware, and whether, as we say, it was simply a revenue-pumping exercise or whether, as the Defendants say, it was part of some marketing strategy. Because either way this could not have justified misrepresenting the totality of its sources of revenue, which is what it did."*

644. Fourthly, however, and the above submission seems to me to offer an example, the Claimants tended to glide over the need to establish in relation to Issues (2) and (3) (see paragraph 638 above) not only that Autonomy's published information was untrue or misleading, but also that the Defendants appreciated this. As I have already signalled, the Defendants relied on Deloitte's approval of their narrative description and accounting treatment of the hardware reselling strategy (and, in particular, its revenue) as both justification and a litmus test of the acceptability of describing and treating hardware sales all as part of the IDOL Product business. If, to borrow the way Mr Rabinowitz put it in his oral closing submissions, *"the real question that arises",* is whether the Defendants had any legitimate basis for the way they presented their business and sources of revenue (which did not reveal the hardware reselling strategy), the Defendants' answer was both the purpose they asserted and the acceptance of that presentation by Deloitte. That is why identification of the 'purpose' of the programme is relevant also to the Claimants' positive misrepresentations case.

645. I would add three further glosses to the Claimants' adumbration of the issues as set out in paragraph 638 above. The first is that the Defendants raised two preliminary issues as to the permissible extent of the Claimants' case in respect of the purpose of the hardware reselling transactions. In particular, the

Defendants contested whether it was open to the Claimants (a) given the way they had pleaded and pursued the case prior to their closing submissions, to rely on an alternative claim that even if revenue pumping was not the only, it was the primary or preponderant, purpose of the hardware sales; and (b) given the evidence of their own witnesses, to contend that marketing and assisting software sales was not one of the substantive purposes of the hardware sales. I address those two issues as preliminary points in the course of my detailed discussion of the Claimant's 'purpose' case in paragraph 660 *et seq* below.

646. The second gloss is that the Defendants also raised a further issue, which is whether HP knew about Autonomy's hardware sales pre-acquisition and continued them post-acquisition. I address that issue in paragraph 1802 *et seq* below.

647. The third gloss is that there were also subsidiary, but important, disputes as to terminology, to which, to assist better understanding of the principal issues, I turn immediately.

Issues of terminology

648. Before turning to the substantive issues in more detail, it is convenient to identify and explain certain phrases deployed by the Claimants to define and confine their hardware reselling claims.

649. Although ultimately the Claimants' FSMA claims extended to all hardware sold on the basis that (because the margin on hardware sales was so much lower) they all should have been disclosed, initially their challenge to the legitimacy of the transactions was confined to sales of *"pure hardware"* (though, on their definition over 99% of the hardware revenue was attributable to *"pure hardware"* and *"other hardware"* was a small residual category); and they reserved particular criticism of *"pure hardware sales"* on the basis that there was no good reason, as they saw it, why a software business should want to sell *"pure hardware"*.

650. The expression *"pure hardware sales"* is not a term of art: it is a term of the Claimants' own devising. It is distinguished in their pleading from *"appliance sales"* and *"other hardware sales"*. Their case as pleaded is that *"pure hardware sales"* were any "*sales of third-party computer hardware (with or without third party software) without modification by Autonomy and unaccompanied by any Autonomy software"*. That last phrase engendered a further point of dispute, as to whether the sale of hardware with a view to later provision or use of Autonomy software was or was not a *"pure hardware sale"*.

651. The Claimants defined *"other hardware sales"*, which they described as *"insignificant compared with pure hardware sales"* as *"sales of hardware (that were not appliance sales) that were in connection with sales of Autonomy software"* (for example, because a sale of software appears on the same order). Thus *"other hardware sales"* were, in the Claimants lexicon, a residual category, being neither *"pure hardware sales"* nor *"Appliance"* sales. Obviously, it is not a term of art either and it is a rather loose categorisation.

The Defendants contended that all of Autonomy's hardware sales were in some sense *"in connection with"* sales of software: and for their own part, they characterised such sales as sales of an *"Appliance"* or an *"Appliance-type sale"*.

652. The content to be given to the expression *"appliance"* is also of considerable importance and was a contested issue. Again, the phrase *"appliance sales"* is not a term of art with a fixed meaning. The Claimants used "*appliance sales"* to mean *"[sales of] hardware on which Autonomy software had been pre-installed and which was offered where the customer had an urgent need to deploy IDOL"*. But that was not how the Defendants understood the term, nor how (they say) it was generally used at Autonomy. Mr Miles described it as a self-coined term of some elasticity. Dr Lynch emphasised, for example, that:

> *"…the term "appliance" was used, in different contexts, to refer to a variety of things, including hardware pre-packaged with software, hardware generally and hardware to be used with software. There was no singular definition of the term. If, for logistical or budgetary reasons, a customer bought hardware, such as servers, separately from the archiving software that went with it, customers, Autonomy staff and the auditors would still call these "appliances". I should add that the term "appliance" was an industry term and, like many technical terms, its meaning has evolved over time."*

653. Dr Lynch elaborated on this in the course of his cross-examination:

> *"…the fundamental essence of an appliance is that you have a standard block, usually of hardware but not always, with a standard block of software and the important point is that you put the two together and they do one thing. So a normal computer like your laptop, you can put lots of different programs on and it will do lots of things and you have to install those programs. In the enterprise world, when you sell a piece of software, someone then goes and gets some piece of hardware from many different possibilities, they then configure that hardware, they get the software, they then have to configure the software to match the hardware and that whole process, if you're a company, can take three or four months. If you're a government it seems to take years, but it's a big process.*
> *What an appliance is is something that is designed to do one thing, so you don't need to worry about all the other possibilities and to do that there's a standard block of hardware and a standard block of software and you put the two together and it does the standard task and it's much quicker and more reliable to get working. So "turnkey" is the phrase that's used in the industry for that. And that is the defining characteristic of an appliance. So, for example – I just used the example of a games appliance that people have in their homes, that's called an appliance because it's a standard thing that's designed to run games, it doesn't do anything else, you can put games in it and it will run games and that is an appliance.*

> *The term has been around for a while, it has changed its meaning over time, but the fundamental point is it's not a generic computing device, it's a standard block of hardware, standard block of software, standard function.*
> *…*
> *I do not believe that it is deterministic of whether something is an appliance as to whether the hardware and software are ordered together…*
>
> *Q. For it to be an appliance, would it have to be standard Autonomy software?*
>
> *A. Well, to be an Autonomy appliance, it would have to be one, yes.*
>
> *Q. All right, so when Autonomy talks of Autonomy selling appliances, what you are saying you sold or what you are saying you were talking about was the sale of hardware in order for Autonomy software to be loaded on it?*
>
> *A. Correct."*

654. A further important point of disputed terminology is the meaning (both (a) as intended and (b) as received)[128] of the phrase *"pure software model/company"* as used by Autonomy in its published information (and especially in its 2009 Annual Report and 2010 Annual Report)[129]. In the 2009 Annual Report, Autonomy's financial model was stated to be *"one of the very rare examples of a pure software model"*. In the 2010 Annual Report it was described as *"a rare 'pure software' model"* and the Business Overview section elaborated as follows:

> *"Autonomy is one of the very rare examples of a pure software model. Many software companies have a large percentage of revenues that stem from professional services, because they have to do a lot of customisation work on the product of every single implementation. In contrast, Autonomy ships a standard product that requires little tailoring, with the necessary implementation work carried out by approved partners such as IBM Global Services, Accenture and others."*

655. The Claimants also claimed that the same phrase had been used by the Defendants in pre-acquisition discussions, and that this was intended to

[128] The meaning which the Defendants insisted they intended was critically different from the meaning the Claimants insisted the phrase conveyed to the reasonable reader. This was the subject of extended dispute, both as to the facts and the law: this is summarised in paragraphs 1609 to 1632 below.
[129] It was not clear to me when it was first introduced in Autonomy's published information and other presentations. However, it is to my mind of some relevance to the dispute as to its intended meaning that it was in use by early 2008 and, for example, appeared in the *'Strategy Review'* in Autonomy's report for Q1 2008 [L/32/9] and thus before the hardware reselling programme commenced.

deceive (see the Chapter in this judgment on *"Deceit and Misrepresentation"*).

656. The Defendants contended that they intended the description to convey by the phrase that a distinguishing feature of Autonomy was that, unlike most software companies, it did not undertake or derive substantial revenues from any servicing work. They did not intend thereby to convey that Autonomy did not undertake or derive revenue from hardware sales, still less sales of hardware with no software content and/or entirely separately from any software sale. However, it is part of the Claimants' case in relation to hardware that by representing itself to be a "*pure software"* company, Autonomy not only sought to distinguish itself from a company that derived a significant proportion of revenue from services. Its description also, when combined with express references to appliance sales and the provision of categories of revenue which made up the total revenue of Autonomy in the Relevant Period, would either individually or cumulatively, lead a reasonable reader to conclude that:

(1) Autonomy was not engaging in any (or any material) sales of hardware apart from appliance sales, or in the very least was not engaging in any (or any material) pure hardware sales, and/or

(2) any revenue from hardware sales and/or pure hardware sales (apart from appliances) was lower than the revenue from appliance sales, and/or

(3) any revenue from hardware sales (apart from appliance sales) was lower than revenue from Services.

657. I have concluded that, at least in the way the statement was deployed after the commencement of volume hardware sales, the purpose of the statement was to convey a special selling point, the success and self-sufficiency of Autonomy's software business without the need for other revenue streams. A reader of the statement in its context would in such circumstances not have expected any substantial revenues from hardware sales to be as much as or more than its expressly disclosed activities, such as servicing. In the end, therefore, I have concluded in favour of the Claimants on the point.

658. There was also a dispute as to the meaning to be ascribed to the phrase *"organic growth"*. The Claimants pleaded and submitted that the inclusion within the metric of hardware sales improperly inflated it and gave a different and false picture. The Defendants disagreed: as Dr Lynch said, to exclude hardware from the calculations would be to produce a different metric, *"organic growth ex hardware"*.

659. These disputes are not merely semantic. They go to the root of the issue as to the interpretation to be given to certain statements in Autonomy's published information, and whether HP was misled, whether by Autonomy's published information or by what was said prior to the conclusion of the transaction. I shall return to each disputed phrase in context when dealing with the issues identified by the Claimants in paragraph 638 above. I turn now to the first of these.

Issue (1): what was the Defendants purpose in causing Autonomy to resell "pure hardware"?

660. The Defendants' case as to the purpose of Autonomy's hardware reselling strategy was very largely based on (a) the evidence of Dr Lynch as to its initial rationale, (b) the evidence of the key employees charged with its implementation (and in particular, Mr Sullivan, Mr Egan and Mr Scott), and (c) Deloitte's acceptance of the rationale and the conclusion that hardware sales were incidental to the software business so as to require no separate disclosure.

661. The Claimants' case that the reselling of *"pure hardware"* was simply *"a device deployed by the Defendants to assist in meeting Autonomy's revenue targets, inflating both overall revenue growth and 'organic growth'"* was based largely on the documentary evidence, and especially on what that evidence revealed as to the chronology and the way that hardware sales were in fact conducted. Their exegesis of the documents and chronology was very detailed, as indeed was the Defendants' response.

Three notable features

662. Before turning to that considerable detail, three general features of or issues relating to the Claimants' contentions on the hardware purpose case may be noted:

(1) First, as pleaded, the Claimants sought to impugn <u>all</u> *'pure hardware'* sales on the same basis of being in every case for the improper purpose of generating reportable revenue and presenting that revenue as if it were referable to software sales: the Claimants asserted a *"systematic policy"* in operation between Q2 2009 and Q2 2011, and did not make any distinction according to the context of the particular sale or the business of the purchaser. In his oral reply, Mr Rabinowitz accepted that there really was not the material to enable an informed assessment on a transaction-by-transaction basis. Thus, the Hardware Case concerned the propriety of a strategy of which the hallmarks were (almost invariably) loss-making sales of hardware, the revenue from which was recognised and then, without differentiation or disclosure, included as part of the overall revenues of Autonomy's software business.

(2) Secondly, the case (as pleaded) asserts the improper purpose identified as the only purpose of the strategy. As Mr Miles put it in his oral closing submissions, *"It is not a case that involves, as it were, the weighing of purposes"*. However, over the course of the Trial the Claimants increasingly sought to treat it as being sufficient for their case if revenue generation to enhance the appearance of software sales growth was shown to be a substantial purpose, even if not the exclusive purpose. In their written closing submissions, the Claimants relied on *"the primary – if not the only – purpose"* which seemed to allow for

the possibility of some subsidiary commercial rationale: but that was not pursued or pleaded by amendment, whether in the alternative or at all. Mr Miles submitted in his closing submissions that, having pleaded, and in their opening presented, their hardware case on the basis that the binary question was whether (their case) it was a device to pump revenue without revealing its source or (the Defendants' case) a rational strategy based on a business judgment that it would protect and promote Autonomy's software business, it is not open to the Claimants in closing to run a case based on primary or preponderant purpose. That gave rise to a pleading issue which it is convenient and necessary to deal with as one of two preliminary matters (see paragraphs 663 to 675 below).

(3) Thirdly, and obviously related to (2) above, the witnesses called by the Claimants on the issue as to the purpose of the policy or strategy (and, in particular, Mr Egan and Mr Sullivan) had all accepted in earlier evidence they had given in the US criminal proceedings, and they again accepted in these proceedings, that part of the purpose was to drive software sales and realise other benefits as explained below. It was submitted for the Defendants that the Claimants were bound by that evidence, and that this was fatal to their "binary" case. The Claimants did not accept this, their main submission being that there had *"been some cherry-picking of Mr Sullivan's evidence at Mr Hussain's criminal trial"*, and more generally, the evidence as a whole was more nuanced than the Defendants suggested, and in any event could not be read out of the context of the documentary evidence. That dispute gives rise to the second issue which it is also convenient and necessary to address as a preliminary matter.

A pleading issue: Is it open to the Claimants to impugn the sales on the basis that 'revenue pumping' was the predominant , even if not the <u>only</u> purpose of them?

663. The Claimants' Particulars of Claim at paragraph 54A plead the Claimants' factual case for impugning the hardware sales as follows:

> *"54A. There was no legitimate business reason for Autonomy Inc to enter into pure hardware transactions. In fact, the pure hardware transactions were not entered into genuinely in furtherance of, or pursuant to, Autonomy Inc's business, but rather were entered into for the improper purpose of allowing Autonomy falsely to portray itself as a high-margin software company whose revenues were growing rapidly and meeting market expectations, when in reality a substantial portion of these revenues and the apparent rate of revenue growth were the result of undisclosed (and, indeed, as pleaded further below, actively concealed) pure hardware sales."*

664. That pleading is, as to establish the FSMA claim it had to be, an allegation of dishonesty: the purpose pleaded is to achieve an objective (*"to portray itself as a high margin software company"* which undertook no substantial hardware sales) by deception. The Claimants' case as pleaded made no express allowance for any other purpose than to generate revenue from one source (hardware) and present it as derived from, and an expense of, another source (software sales). The allegation is that what was presented to be a commercial purpose was in fact a dishonest pretext contrived in order to present a false description of the true nature of its business.

665. Paragraph 57A then pleads a claim for the direct loss sustained on the pure hardware claims on the basis that:

> *"The Defendants each knew (since, as particularised at paragraphs 133 and 135 below, it was they who instigated the practice of Autonomy Inc entering into pure hardware transactions) that the practice of entering into pure hardware transactions was not genuinely in furtherance of Autonomy Inc's business but was for the improper purpose pleaded at paragraph 54A above. The losses suffered by Autonomy Inc on such transactions are therefore losses occasioned by the Defendants' breaches of duty".*

666. The direct claim also is based on dishonesty, even though in a claim for breach of duty it would ordinarily be sufficient to plead and establish that an improper purpose was in fact the predominant purpose.

667. Until closing submissions, the Claimants had never put their case on the basis that there might be legitimate business reasons for the hardware reselling, but they were secondary to some other improper purpose. Mr Miles, with a forensic side swipe that the change of tack was *"doubtless because of the difficulties they have with their own evidence"*, submitted that that would be a new, distinct and unpleaded case, and as such it was not open to the Claimants. His position was that having pleaded and opened the case on the basis that the entire purpose of the strategy was to generate revenue, even if at a loss, with a view to presenting that revenue as derived from Autonomy's software business without disclosure of its true extent and source, it was too late now for the Claimants to base their case on the weighting of preponderant purpose in respect of individual transactions.

668. Mr Miles stressed that this was not *"an arid pleading point"*: had the Defendants understood there to be a case based on the primacy amongst mixed motives the case would have taken a different course. He submitted that, for example:

(1) He would have wished to cross-examine Mr Welham and explore what difference it would have made to the accounting treatment;

(2) The Defendants *"might very well…have taken the view…that…steps should be taken to ensure that [Mr Sullivan] gave evidence by video"*

as a condition of his witness statement being admitted into evidence as hearsay (Mr Miles made clear he could put it no higher);

(3) They would certainly have wished to cross-examine Mr Holgate, and to explore with him how accountants would deal with the idea of mixed motives, and what if any guidance there is in accounting literature;

(4) They would have wished to assess the mixed purposes of each transaction, to weigh its preponderant purpose: and that was not possible, as Mr Rabinowitz had accepted; and

(5) Furthermore, even if such an enquiry had been possible, they would also have wished to question the experts as to the feasibility of such an enquiry in the course of an audit.

669. Mr Rabinowitz sought to answer all this with the submission that the possibility of mixed purposes, necessitating a determination of the primary purpose, had *"always been in play"*. He submitted that it was not a new case at all. He especially relied on (a) passages in Mr Hussain's Defence relying on the primary, if not the sole, purpose being to drive high-margin software business, (b) passages in witness statements by the Claimants' witnesses referring to "primary" or "principal" reasons, (c) passages in the cross-examination of the Claimants' witnesses, and in particular Mr Egan, exploring whether driving software sales was or was not a principal or predominant reason, and (d) references in the experts' respective reports identifying the key area of judgement as being (to quote Mr MacGregor):

> *"whether management considered that the sale of hardware was the separate sale of a different product to the sale of Autonomy's core IDOL Product, or that it was incidental to sales of the core product, with its principal purpose being to facilitate further software sales."*

670. I must confess that during the hearing I tended to follow and accept the argument that the question was whether the Claimants' pleading accommodated a weighing of purposes; and if that was the right question, I would agree with Mr Miles that it does not.

671. On reflection, however, I think that is a mischaracterisation. The true gist of the Claimants' pleading is that the transaction was dishonest. The real question is not whether the hardware sales could be said to have been intended to have had, and in fact had, some potentially beneficial effects such as to suggest that that was their purpose, or part of it; it is whether a dishonest purpose underlay the transaction. In other words, the real answer lies in the plea of dishonesty.

672. In my judgment, if a substantial part of the reason for a transaction is found to have been dishonest, the fact (even if established) that it may have been perceived that it would also have beneficial effects cannot save it. The dishonest purpose need not be exclusive or even predominant (though it is unlikely not to be so).

673. In this case, dishonesty, not predominance of improper purpose, has always been the Claimants' case. According to their pleading, what caused Autonomy to enter into the hardware sales was not only improper (which might include a purpose beyond the powers of the directors) but dishonest: the false portrayal of Autonomy as a high-margin software company deriving all its revenues from software sales when in reality a substantial proportion of its revenues and its apparent revenue growth were the result of undisclosed, and indeed actively concealed, *'pure hardware'* sales. If that is proved, that is sufficient. No weighing of purpose or other effect is required.

674. It follows that the pleading point raised is based on a false premise, perhaps encouraged by some of the language used, the focus on whether avowed purposes were real, and the dispute that developed as to whether revenue recognition or relationship development to facilitate software sales most weighed with the witnesses and in particular, Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan. The Claimants' hardware case has never been about competing purposes: it has always been that the objectives and purposes deployed by the Defendants to justify the hardware reselling strategy were pretexts: the real purpose of the programme was to generate revenue which could dishonestly be presented in the accounts and Autonomy's published information as part of the revenue from Autonomy's main software business. In my judgment, that case, which requires proof of pretext and dishonest concealment but not the weighing of purposes, is sufficiently pleaded.

675. Two other matters connected to this need also to be borne in mind:

(1) First, an important part of the defence (of both Defendants) was their reliance on Deloitte's approval of Autonomy's accounts and published information even though Deloitte were well aware that the hardware sales generated revenue which was included in those accounts without differentiation from Autonomy's revenues from its software business. However, any such reliance would be negated if what Deloitte were told was the purpose of the hardware reselling (protecting and promoting software sales) was an anticipated incidental benefit of what was in truth a device to preserve the appearance of revenue growth by covering from hardware revenue a shortfall in software revenue. If the Claimants establish that those were incidental benefits to disguise the true purpose, and that the true purpose was never disclosed, then Deloitte will have been shown to have been misled. Put another way, although the Claimants' case did not allow for a weighing of competing commercial purposes, it did extend to demonstrating that the purpose asserted, though fulfilled, was (or became at some point in the implementation of the programme) no more than an incidental or ancillary benefit and not the real purpose.

(2) Secondly, in the context of the expert accountancy case, Mr Holgate's evidence was that the purpose of the hardware sales did not ultimately matter, it being his opinion that any proper application of the accountancy rules required separate disclosure of the hardware reselling strategy in any event. By contrast, on Mr MacGregor's evidence as I understood it, only showing that revenue pumping was

the sole real purpose would require such disclosure. On that basis, as to the expert evidence, a case based on primary purpose would not have been necessary for the one expert or sufficient for the other. (I shall address further the expert evidence in this regard in the context of the Claimants' alternative case.)

An issue as to the evidence given by Mr Egan and Mr Sullivan in the US criminal trial

676. As to the proof of the Claimants' case that the real purpose of the hardware reselling strategy (what they described as *"this…bizarre and expensive programme"*) was to generate revenue from covert hardware sales to make good shortfalls in sales of software, and thus continue the depiction of Autonomy as a high margin software company which was (usually) meeting or beating market expectation, the Claimants placed primary reliance on the contemporary documentation.

677. The Claimants observed that the Defendants tended to shy away from this documentary evidence, and especially the correspondence between Mr Sullivan, Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch, almost all of which, the Claimants pointed out, appeared to be directed towards the issue of revenue generation and what hardware deals would be needed to plug gaps in revenue.

678. There is force in this, as will be clear later; but similarly, there is something in the Defendants' opposing contention that the Claimants have themselves sought to shy away from the evidence of their own witnesses on the issue as to the purpose of the hardware strategy, which is barely mentioned in the witness statements of Mr Egan and Mr Sullivan, but which is more substantially dealt with in their evidence in the US criminal proceedings. In those US criminal proceedings, evidence from many of the witnesses for the Claimants had already been examined on substantially the same issues.

679. Both sides referred to and prayed in aid parts of the transcripts of that witness evidence (which in the case of Mr Sullivan, for example, was entered into evidence under a hearsay notice since he did not appear at the trial here). Before discussing its substance, the question I address now relates to the status of that evidence.

680. At a pre-trial hearing, I directed the parties to side-line what parts of the transcripts of evidence given in the US criminal trial by witnesses who would not be called in this trial they respectively intended to refer me to or rely on. Evidence side-lined by one party was taken at trial to be the evidence of that party. During the trial, evidence was taken to be that of the party that had indicated that they wanted to refer to it, as if it was that party's evidence. However, in every case, the witness concerned was called in the US criminal proceedings in support of the case against Mr Hussain; and in assessing their evidence I have always taken that into account, and that each was in reality the Claimants' witness.

681. However, and I did not understand any party to contend to the contrary, the side-lining did not preclude any party or the Court from referring to parts of the transcripts of evidence as necessary to obtain a proper understanding of the

evidence as a whole. The whole of the relevant transcripts were before the court in agreed bundles (and see CPR PD32/27.2) and were admissible as to their contents, and although the Defendants in correspondence expressly stated that they did not thereby accept their treatment as evidence of the facts stated in them, it was nevertheless open to them, and in any event to the Court, to have regard to the whole in testing the true meaning, reliability and veracity of the side-lined parts.

682. In addition, as it seems to me, and as was submitted by the Defendants, the party which has sought to rely on the witness as a witness of truth, cannot invite the Court to believe the parts identified by that party as helpful to its case and yet disbelieve other parts which go the other way. The whole is the evidence of that party's witness, for good and ill. As Brooke LJ said in *McPhilemy v Times Newspapers Ltd (No 2)* [2000] 1 W.L.R. 1732, at 1740:

> *"I know of no principle of the law of evidence by which a party may put in evidence a written statement of a witness knowing that his evidence conflicts to a substantial degree with the case he is seeking to place before the jury, on the basis that he will say straight away in the witness's absence that the jury should disbelieve as untrue a substantial part of that evidence."* [130]

683. In any event, and as the Defendants also pointed out, the passages in the evidence of Mr Sullivan in the US criminal proceedings on which the Claimants have chosen to rely include evidence as to the existence and legitimacy of the hardware sales strategy: and there can be no doubt that that evidence must be taken to be part of the Claimants' own case. However, that does not, of course, preclude them from reliance on other evidence, such as that of Mr Camden on whose evidence in the US criminal proceedings, about three transactions with Zones Inc, the Claimants focused in considerable detail (and see paragraphs 1159 to 1182 below).

684. The position is less unusual in the case of Mr Egan. He did attend, albeit via video link. I did not take it to be disputed that the whole of his evidence, including that in the US criminal proceedings, needs to be weighed.

The relationship between purpose and concealment

685. The Defendants' depiction of the purpose of the hardware sales as being to protect and promote Autonomy's software business is the basis on which they sought to justify both the loss-making sales themselves (Autonomy not having previously engaged in material sales of hardware) and their treatment as part

[130] See also the following passage from the judgment of Holroyd J in *Ewer v Ambrose* (1825) 3 B. & C. 746, at 750 (cited by Brooke LJ in *McPhilemy v Times Newspapers Ltd (No 2)* [2000] 1 W.L.R. 1732, at 1739F): "*if a witness proves a case against the party calling him, the latter may show the truth by other witnesses. But it is undoubtedly true, that if a party calls a witness to prove a fact, he cannot, when he finds the witness proves the contrary, give general evidence to show that the witness was not to be believed on his oath, but he may show by other evidence that he is mistaken as to the fact which he is called to prove*."

and parcel of Autonomy's software business in Autonomy's accounts (both in the narrative 'front end' part and in the 'back end' accounts proper).

686. For the purposes of analysis, two related questions need to be addressed. The first is what in truth was the real purpose of the hardware sales. The second is whether having regard to that purpose it was rational and permissible to treat and account for the hardware sales and the revenues from them as an integral part of Autonomy's software business and all its revenues, requiring no separate identification or explanation.

687. That, on the Claimants' case, is the link to concealment. The Claimants' case is that the true purpose of the hardware reselling strategy is revealed by the Defendants' determination that the sales and the revenues they generated should never separately be identified: even if the 'purpose' case and the 'disclosure' case have for the purpose of analysis, to be separately examined, they are inseparable. Their true driving purpose was never, and could never, be disclosed: because that true purpose was to generate revenue in order covertly to make good shortfalls in software business revenues by including hardware revenue without differentiation or disclosure in Autonomy's accounts and reports as if it had been generated by Autonomy's 'pure software' business.

688. Thus, in his oral closing, Mr Rabinowitz melded, and in a sense reversed, the two related questions in submitting that ultimately what has to be determined is whether the Defendants have been able to identify any legitimate basis for having withheld from the market information which would have had a *"devastating impact on the picture that was painted of Autonomy in the published information"*.

Structure of this chapter

689. The Claimants' hardware case, as one of their lead cases (with their case on VARs), engendered a great deal of paper and gave rise to a plethora of issues and a considerable volume of evidence. That has resulted in this part of the judgment being of considerable length and factual density. There was a marked contrast in the way the two sides approached the issues.

690. The Defendants based their main defence to the claim on (a) Dr Lynch's explanation of the rationality of the strategy (b) an analysis of the witness evidence, and especially the evidence in cross-examination of the Claimants' two principal witnesses on the Hardware Claims, Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan, and (c) Deloitte's approval of the accounting treatment which the Claimants now criticised.

691. They also sought to rely on evidence which they suggested revealed that HP knew about the hardware reselling before the acquisition; and certainly did so after it; but until, in the context of serious investor criticism of the acquisition, blaming the Defendants became a commercial imperative, neither HP nor its accountancy advisers (Ernst & Young for these purposes) were concerned.

692. The Claimants did not accept the Defendants' depiction of the evidence of Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan; but their main approach was to focus on the documentary evidence of the way the hardware reselling strategy was actually implemented, not only initially in Q3 2009, but over the course of the Relevant Period. In that context, they relied, not only on the documents that revealed the structure and nature of the transactions and contemporaneous exchanges within Autonomy as to their objectives, but also the lack of documentation to support the Defendants' suggestion that the programme was in the nature of a marketing exercise and was succeeding in its objective of driving software sales.

693. Contending that the programme was simply a device for *"in effect, paying for, or buying, revenue that could be recognised"* without disclosing its real source and nature, the Claimants rejected as dishonest the reasons given for the hardware sales and for the inclusion of the revenues they generated as if they were part of, or at least not to be distinguished from, revenue from software sales.

694. In light of these differences in approach I have felt it necessary to deal in turn with each side's case in the round. That has further increased the length of this part of this judgment. But it was a centre-piece of the claims and invites and (to my mind) requires, detailed treatment.

695. In broad outline:

(1) I discuss first the dispute between and competing cases of the parties as to the origins of the hardware reselling strategy.

(2) I address next (somewhat unusually) the Defendants' case that its purpose was to protect and promote Autonomy's software business and that it was both properly accounted for and sufficiently disclosed. The Defendants' case focused on the approval of Deloitte and the evidence of certain key witnesses, especially Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan (both of whom were, of course, the Claimants' witnesses), as well as Dr Lynch himself.

(3) I then turn to the Claimants' case that the purpose asserted by the Defendants was or swiftly became a pretext for what in reality was a relentless drive to generate sales from hardware to cover shortfalls in sales in software licences, which had to be and was dishonestly disguised to maintain the appearance of continuing to maintain or increase revenues in line with market forecasts. The Claimants' case focused on the documentary evidence, a detailed assessment of the sequence of the hardware sales, of the correlation with the need to make good shortfalls in revenue from Autonomy's software business, and of what Deloitte were actually told from time to time.

(4) Lastly, I summarise my conclusions, and their relevance to other aspects of the overall case.

(A) The first hardware sales and the origins of the hardware reselling strategy

696. In seeking to demonstrate its true purpose, it was important to both the Defendants and the Claimants to explain and establish the origins of the hardware reselling strategy.

697. The Defendants' case centred in this respect on elaborating upon the risks to the software business which they perceived in mid-2009 and to which they contended the hardware reselling strategy was a strategic response, and upon the benefits to the software business which the programme was conceived and intended to secure, including closer associations with hardware suppliers and the ability to present itself as a one-stop shop to its customers.

698. It was common ground that Autonomy's first substantial sales of hardware commenced in the early summer of 2009. Until then, Autonomy had purchased substantial amounts of hardware for deployment in its datacentres (principally for hosting and archiving services), but its sales of hardware were minimal. Reflecting their dispute as to the purpose of the programme, the parties disagreed as to what prompted the initial hardware sales.

699. The Claimants placed the origin of these sales, and what became a programme of hardware reselling, in the sudden and urgent need to find revenue in order to meet forecasts after (a) what Mr Hussain described in an email to Mr Egan and Mr Mooney (cc Dr Menell) dated 10 June 2009 as a *"major disaster"* in the form of the sudden collapse of two OEM deals (one with Adobe and the other with Microsoft) that he had confidently expected to complete by the end of Q2 2009, and (b) more generally, Autonomy's uncharacteristic failure in Q2 2009 to achieve analysts' consensus expectations of revenue in the quarter.

700. On the day before the email from Mr Hussain referred to in paragraph 699 above, which was subject-headed *"OEM disaster",* Mr Hussain had notified Dr Lynch by email that the Adobe transaction was *"not happening"*, but he had cushioned that by stating that *"MS frank cook actively considering hardware – so hope to replace".* In that email, Mr Hussain noted that *"50 IDOL reps in the US…are delivering very little"*; and he put forward *"MS hardware to have a total $10m"* as first amongst other things to be done to ensure recovery.

701. On the terms of a one-off letter agreement reached on 30 June 2009 between Autonomy Inc and Morgan Stanley, Morgan Stanley agreed to purchase from Autonomy on or before 30 June 2010, $20m worth of Hitachi hardware (or other third-party hardware agreed between the parties) for a discounted price of $13.5m. At around the same time, Autonomy Inc entered into a *"One-Time Reseller Authorization Agreement"* with Hitachi, under which the latter authorised Autonomy Inc to resell Hitachi hardware to Morgan Stanley.

702. The overall effect of these arrangements was that Morgan Stanley bought the hardware at a discount from Autonomy as reseller, and Autonomy funded the discount by buying from Hitachi at full price and selling on at the discounted price, thereby incurring a financial loss.

703. The Claimants relied on these arrangements as demonstrating that Autonomy had resorted to the loss-making hardware sale to Morgan Stanley as an expedient to cover an unexpected shortfall in software revenue, and not to advance its software business. They also relied on an internal Autonomy email chain relating to the execution of the agreement with Hitachi which was copied to both Defendants to show that both were aware of these arrangements.

704. They submitted that this loss-making agreement with Morgan Stanley became the start of and template for *"an extended and more ambitious programme of reselling pure hardware at a loss"* in which Autonomy's only involvement was its interposition as a seller into an existing deal for the supply of hardware by a hardware supplier to its customer, which might or might not be a customer of Autonomy. The benefit to the hardware supplier was that Autonomy paid it the full price whilst the end customer would purchase from Autonomy at a discounted price with Autonomy subsidising the difference or *'delta'*: a 'win' for the hardware supplier, and a 'win' for the end customer: the only 'loss' was to Autonomy.

705. On the Claimants' case, Autonomy's only part in these sales to Morgan Stanley, and all that the hardware sales ever involved in terms of Autonomy's role, was Autonomy's interposition as a seller into an existing deal for the supply of hardware by a hardware manufacturer to its customer; and the *quid pro quo* was simply that Autonomy charged the customer substantially less for the hardware than the price that Autonomy paid to the hardware manufacturer (by itself taking the loss).

706. According to the Claimants, once its potential had been established, the hardware reselling strategy developed quickly to become one of the principal *"levers"* (another was the VAR sales) deployed by Autonomy at the instance of the Defendants in the context of concerns about shortfalls in software sales. Hardware (like VAR) sales enabled Autonomy to supplement or accelerate and manage revenue in each quarter to enable Autonomy to meet, and if possible, to *"beat and raise"*, analysts' consensus expectations notwithstanding, and to cover, software sales shortfalls.

707. The Claimants contended that the context of the instigation of the hardware reselling strategy, and the reason why it quickly became and remained such an important and addictive strategy, was the constant pressure of the market perception of Autonomy and its stock as being, to quote Mr Marc Geall ("Mr Geall"), who was Autonomy's head of Corporate Strategy and Investor Relations until May 2010, *"an expensive growth stock that needs to 'beat and raise'"*. The problem with such a reputation is, of course, the difficulty of consistent fulfilment of ever-increasing expectations without regard to market conditions.

708. The Claimants illustrated this (and the volatility of market perception and in consequence Autonomy's share price) by reference to analysts' reaction to two announcements relating to Autonomy's revenue forecasts or forward guidance about revenue expectations:

(1) An announcement by Autonomy on 7 July 2009, ahead of reporting its final figures, that it expected to report *"revenues in line with current consensus estimates"* [my emphasis]: so accustomed was the market to Autonomy exceeding analysts' consensus expectations that merely meeting those expectations was a disappointment, and Autonomy's share price immediately fell 8%.

(2) Further forward guidance on 16 July 2009 (when the Q2 2009 figures were announced) estimating for Q3 2009 $180 million for revenue and EPS at 19 cents per share, compared to an earlier market consensus forecast for the quarter of $198-199 million and EPS at around 26 to 27 cents per share. Autonomy's share price fell again, so that by August 2009 its share price had fallen 18% since the pre-announcement of the Q2 2009 results.

709. The Claimants also referred me to the analysis and prescription put forward by Mr Geall in the light of (a) a continuing aggressive fall in Autonomy's share price in mid-2009 and (b) a UBS note written by its house analyst, Mr Briest, dated 4 August 2009 suggesting that part of the reason for the decline was *"disappointment at the level of Q3 guidance and the seeming loss of Autonomy's 'beat-and-raise' status"*. Mr Geall observed that:

> *"…lack of beat and raise in Q2 and the weaker Q3 outlook which means that there is a lot to do in Q4 is going to continue to get some legs. Obviously delivering $190 – 200m in Q3 will help off-set this fear".*

710. According to the Claimants, these circumstances show that the importance to Autonomy of shoring up its *'beat and raise'* status, and the fact that in Q3 2009 and following quarters this was not possible to achieve on the basis of software sales revenues, drove the Defendants to the hardware reselling strategy. What the Defendants advanced as the purpose of the expedient was a pretext contrived:

(1) to justify sales of third party hardware by a software company which touted itself as selling only its own proprietary software;

(2) to justify the fact that such sales were not only so out of character but also at a loss;

(3) to justify the description and treatment of revenue from sales of hardware as all being sufficiently part of Autonomy's software business to be included in software revenues without differentiation or explanation, and thus to obviate disclosure and prevent discovery.

711. The Defendants, however, submitted that it is the Claimants' case which is contrived. Their case is that the hardware reselling strategy was not a response to the failure of any particular transaction, nor to concerns about diminishing or fluctuating results and the need to satisfy and exceed analysts' expectations of revenue or other performance: it was a commercial response in the interests

of the software business in changing, and possibly threatening, market conditions, and a successful and cost-effective marketing strategy.

712. As to contrivance, the Defendants dismissed the Claimants' notion that the programme was directed to the sale of *"pure hardware"* as misplaced and the Claimants concept of *"pure hardware"* sales, as if there were some category of sales which by nature were unconnected to Autonomy's software business as self-coined. Dr Lynch insisted consistently that Autonomy never did sell *"pure hardware"*: it was never interested or engaged in the sale of hardware as a separate line of business. For the Defendants, a mischaracterisation of the programme as almost a separate enterprise, and a *"bizarre and expensive programme"* to boost reportable revenue to cover any shortfall in software sales, rather than an extension of the way it needed to conduct its software business, lay at the heart of the Claimants' mistaken approach.

713. An example, according to the Defendants, of the Claimants' misunderstanding and mis-presentation of the nature of the hardware sales was the transaction with Morgan Stanley which the Claimants relied on as marking the beginning of and establishing the pattern for the hardware reselling strategy. The Defendants contended that the Morgan Stanley transaction should not be regarded as a sale of *"pure hardware"* even on the Claimants' definition of the term. They pointed out that:

(1) It was concluded on the same day as, and should be considered in the context of, two software agreements with Morgan Stanley, which was a longstanding software customer of Autonomy.

(2) In the contractual documentation the link between the software and hardware transactions was explicit; and it also made express provision for Morgan Stanley to deploy the equipment purchased not only in any of its own but also in Autonomy's (or any third-party service provider's) facilities, connoting that Morgan Stanley wanted the flexibility to use the hardware with Autonomy's software in Autonomy data centres.

(3) The hardware transaction should be regarded, in effect, as a *"strategic package"* or *"appliance"* sale, in the broader sense which the Defendants supported: a sale of hardware for use with Autonomy software.

(4) Mr Egan, who was involved in the transaction as the relationship manager with Morgan Stanley, accepted in evidence that the document made that link clear and obvious.

(5) Furthermore, in an email chain in May 2010 involving Mr Scott, Mr Hussain and Mr Egan, which is not said to be pretextual by the Claimants, Mr Egan referred to the sales as part of *"a large solution sold to them which included HW, restructuring the safe, and the SW licences to cover ILM"* and Mr Scott responded on 10 May 2010, stating *inter alia:*

> *"…I don't know what TJs take is on this or whether he feels $2m is suitable but we obviously had to make major concessions across the board to get the Morgan business, including giving Morgan a very aggressive discount on their hardware purchase commitment in June 2009, the same time at which we set the $2m option for Morgan to purchase the ILM license".*

714. The Defendants contended that, contrary to the Claimants' case that the Morgan Stanley hardware transactions had nothing to do with protecting and promoting software sales, the discount funded by Autonomy in respect of the hardware sale to Morgan Stanley was the price that Autonomy felt it had to pay to be sure of securing the high-margin software business and (as Dr Lynch put it) *"snuggling up"* to both hardware suppliers and the ultimate customer.

715. Thus, the dispute as to the origins of the hardware reselling strategy reveals the main issue between the parties as to the purpose and objectives of the hardware reselling strategy.

(B) The Defendants' case as to the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy

716. I elaborate the Defendants' case under the following headings:

(1) The Loudham Hall meeting in July 2009 and Dr Lynch's evidence as to the development and rationale of the hardware reselling strategy.

(2) The Defendants' depiction of the evidence of Mr Egan and Mr Sullivan as to their understanding of the purpose of the programme as initially conceived and thereafter implemented, and of Mr Welham's evidence (which is said by the Defendants to be corroborative).

(3) Autonomy's relationship with EMC: the development of their relationship in Q3 2009 and the dispute as to the reasons for EMC bringing an end to its participation in the hardware reselling programme at the end of the same quarter.

(4) The replacement of EMC and the continuation and expansion of the hardware reselling strategy with Dell (after EMC withdrew) in every quarter from Q4 2009 to Q2 2011 and (on a more limited basis) with Hitachi.

(5) The further evidence relied on by the Defendants as showing the use and success of the hardware reselling strategy in protecting and promoting Autonomy's core software business.

(6) The Defendants' case that the Claimants' assertion of secrecy is unsustainable: and that the hardware reselling strategy was openly recorded in Autonomy's ledgers and discussed within Autonomy, fully

explained to Deloitte and approved by them, and had become well known in the market;

(7) The Defendants' honest belief in the rationale of the purpose and the support given to that and the propriety of the way the programme was presented and accounted for by the approval of Deloitte and the Audit Committee with full knowledge of the facts.

(1) Dr Lynch's evidence as to the rationale of the hardware reselling strategy

717. Just as the transaction with Morgan Stanley was not, in the Defendants' presentation, an expedient to pump up revenue, but a strategy to promote a software sale, so too the Defendants presented the hardware reselling strategy as a carefully weighed strategy to safeguard its software business, which was presented and launched, and thereafter openly discussed, within Autonomy.

718. There were two main limbs of the Defendants' justification of what they often referred to as *"strategic hardware sales"*, though the ultimate objective was the same: to drive software sales. One limb was essentially defensive: it was to meet the risk posed by two market changes which Dr Lynch considered threatened Autonomy's software business. The other was more proactive: to use hardware sales as a marketing tool.

719. At what the Defendants depicted as the formal presentation and official launch of the strategy in July 2009, at a management meeting which took place between 8 to 10 July 2009 at Dr Lynch's country house in Suffolk, Loudham Hall ("the Loudham Hall meeting"), the emphasis was on the marketing strategy.

720. I was not shown any agenda for or contemporaneous record of the Loudham Hall meeting.[131] Dr Lynch told me that it was unlikely that there was any: *"We didn't take notes at the meetings".* But he described it in his witness statement, as follows:

> *"In July 2009, at a management offsite meeting in Loudham, Messrs Hussain, Egan, Scott, Mike Sullivan and I discussed Autonomy's hardware strategy. I believe that around 20 people were present at the management offsite meeting, so there would have been several other people present during this discussion. Although I cannot recall precisely what we discussed, the gist was that we should sell hardware to the company's biggest customers in an effort to drive software sales. The commercial strategy was not to sell hardware at a loss in order to inflate revenue, it was to sell hardware to strategic customers, even if we made a loss on the hardware sales, for the dual purpose of servicing our strategic customers at a time of industry*

[131] Though the Defendant latterly relied on an email exchange between Dr Lynch and Mr Egan on 2 September 2009, which was subject headed *"key customer strategy"*, as evidence of the nature and purpose of the hardware reselling strategy said to have been discussed and agreed at the Loudham Hall meeting in July 2009. The Claimants contended that the email exchange was pretextual: see paragraphs 811 to 822 below.

> *consolidation and to improve our position with hardware manufacturers with which we could develop appliances. We discussed the level of sales we would aim for in pursuit of these objectives. I cannot remember if we decided on $10M as HP claims, or some other figure. We agreed that Mr Sullivan would take the lead in this. In that context, HP claims that Mr Hussain or I joked that we would buy Mr Sullivan a Porsche if he succeeded in executing the strategy. He was not given a Porsche; his remuneration was based on a sales package, as I explain below."*

721. That description of the presentation at the Loudham Hall meeting focused on what the Defendants often referred to as *"strategic hardware sales"* as a marketing strategy and does not mention the other more defensive rationale for the programme which was asserted by the Defendants. In his witness statement Dr Lynch explained those threats he considered were posed by *"a few key market changes"*. In more detail:

(1) Dr Lynch perceived that in the wake of the financial crisis in 2008-2009 customers had started consolidating their vendor lists and limiting what suppliers they would use because they thought that it would make procurement cheaper. Dr Lynch described this when cross-examined as *"an industry trend at the time"*. He was concerned that some of Autonomy's key customers, in particular financial institutions, were reducing the number of approved suppliers or would be likely to do so, and that if Autonomy was removed from the list, Autonomy would likely be forced to sell via a third-party provider still on the list. This would make Autonomy reliant on another company (which could well also be a software competitor) for the sale of software and lead to an erosion in its margins because the third-party supplier would demand a margin on sale (typically 30%). He added:

> *"We held internal discussions as to what we should sell to increase overall volumes of sales to these customers. We concluded that we did not want to sell third-party software owned by our competitors and we did not want to sell services because that was against the ethos of the company and carried significant overhead. Hardware was a good option as all our customers were also hardware customers*[132], *and it supported our software business."*

(2) Dr Lynch's objective was *"strategic package sales"* or "*one-stop shopping"* under which Autonomy would supply all customers' IT needs (hardware as well as software) as a means of tying such customers into Autonomy and reducing the risk of customers looking to mainstream hardware suppliers which might seek to introduce other software companies. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch elaborated that:

[132] Dr Lynch estimated that only about one percent of overall sales of hardware were to prospective rather than existing software customers.

> *"So we were very, very keen to avoid that happening and we spoke to the banks and one of the things they said to us is: there's going to be an element in this of how much you are selling us. And it was actually a suggestion that came from the banks that hardware was something they would be happy to do this way.*
>
> *That was the customer-facing part of the strategy and it turned out to be very successful and unlike companies that were selling more than us, we did not get pushed into being a supplier through one of the majors and that saved us 30%. So the amount of business we're talking about here is about $150 million, so that saved us $50 million profit immediately, so it was a very good outcome."*

722. As to the second threat Dr Lynch identified, which was the perception that the software industry appeared to be moving towards appliances as the means of packaging and selling its offering:

(1) Dr Lynch's assessment was that the way software was delivered was changing. At that time, the Cloud (which in fact ultimately became, to Autonomy's advantage, the predominant delivery mode) was in its early development: appliance sales appeared at the time to be the most likely platform and mode of delivery of software offerings.

(2) The threat was that companies focusing exclusively (or almost exclusively[133]) on software, and which could not offer any packaged solution, would find it difficult to compete with large companies that had the capability to provide both. Dr Lynch gave as an example, Google's development and production of an appliance that overlapped with some of Autonomy's products; he was concerned that some analysts, such as Mr Whit Andrews of Gartner (an influential industry analyst), had identified Google Search Appliances as one of the main competitive threats to Autonomy.

(3) Dr Lynch described the perceived likely industry move to appliance sales as *"an existential threat to our software business"*, unless Autonomy could establish a relationship with one or more hardware suppliers to develop an appliance or packaged solution which it would be to their joint benefit to market in a combined product or (as it was often referred to) *"solution"*. For that purpose, he considered, Autonomy needed to establish strong *"strategic relationships"* with hardware suppliers (what he described as a *"partnership that we could leverage and rely on if the market did aggressively move (as feared) to appliances"*) so as to be able to procure appropriate basic hardware (*"without unnecessary bells and whistles"*) at a competitive price. That hardware could efficiently and economically be configured with Autonomy software and then either sold and delivered as a package

[133] The Claimants accepted that Autonomy had always sold some hardware, and of course it had always had to purchase large amounts of hardware for its data centres and hosted and archiving businesses.

either with Autonomy software embedded or already configured for Autonomy software to be supplied later. (Either package was, as Dr Lynch used the term, capable of being an "appliance".)

(4) Dr Lynch's evidence was that his perception was that:

> *"Autonomy's hardware sales helped us overcome that threat: they enabled us to partner with hardware suppliers to purchase appropriate hardware at a competitive price, develop an appliance and meet the perceived market demand."*

723. When the *"existential threat"* subsided, as in the event it did with the increasing dominance of the Cloud as the means of both the delivery and the archiving of software, the assistance of a hardware supplier to develop an appliance became much less of a concern. Dr Lynch accepted that the weight given to the various objectives of the hardware reselling strategy shifted from about Q2 2010 onwards, and became more centred on what he called *"strategic package sales"* and the *"customer-facing aspect"*: or, in other words, positioning Autonomy to make software sales by becoming the customers' preferred supplier across the spectrum of its IT needs.

724. Dr Lynch always emphasised, however, that it was never intended that Autonomy should become, and he insisted that it never did become, a generic reseller of hardware. In his witness statement his evidence was that:

> *"…we did not seek to sell hardware into companies who were not in the market for our software and we did not support the hardware we sold with related services. We sold hardware to our actual or prospective software customers, for a variety of reasons connected to our core business, which I will explain…"*

725. That is consistent with what he said close to the time, for instance, in an email dated 23 October 2009 to Mr Barry Ariko, a member of Autonomy's Audit Committee:

> "*Personally despite the benefits you cite I feel we would not want to become resellers of unrelated hardware which is not about furthering our software sales.*"[134]

726. It is also consistent with Mr Sullivan's evidence that Dr Lynch explained from the outset that the aim of the hardware sales was to get a bigger share of the financial market and in particular, big banks' software business. (As Mr Sullivan told the US court, those banks and financial institutions were his largest customers: that marked him out as the logical person to drive forward the programme.)

[134] The benefits cited by Mr Ariko, in the email to which Dr Lynch was replying, were "*incremental revenue and margin contributions*".

727. Dr Lynch also referred in his witness statement to a number of *"additional benefits to the hardware strategy"*, some anticipated, and some which emerged, including:

   (1) Autonomy could leverage its buying power to negotiate discounts on hardware needed for its own data storage centres.

   (2) Many of Autonomy's customers had procurement departments, the performance of which tended to be measured on the discounts they obtained. Autonomy found that, if it sold hardware at a loss, it could more easily maintain its margins on its software. If Autonomy failed to maintain its margins on its software with one customer, the company faced erosion of its margins with all of its other customers. Commercially, it was better for Autonomy to discount certain hardware sales to large customers with strong negotiating positions in order to maintain (typically very much more substantial) margins on its sales of software.

728. Dr Lynch did not dispute or seek to disguise the fact that a further material but collateral advantage was that the hardware strategy gave *"a degree of flexibility"* and *"a little bit of a degree of freedom"* which enabled Autonomy *"on occasion"* to *"plug gaps in relation to other revenues"*. Dr Lynch confirmed further that he was sure that the freedom and flexibility had been used. However, he was adamant that this was not, and never became, the driving force or reason for the strategy.

729. He also contended that hardware sales would be a poor tool for inflating revenue, and that if that had been Autonomy's goal, it would have been easier and more efficient to sell third party software. He explained in cross-examination:

> *"...If the goal was to produce recognisable revenue, we would have just resold third party software, which would have been a far more efficient way of doing things. It would have not had the delivery issues. So one of the big problems with this as a strategy for trying to get revenue of course is that hardware has to be physically delivered. So you've got 30% of your business in the quarter is done in the last week and generally, although there can be other arrangements, that's too late to turn on a hardware tap. So if the goal of the exercise was to –- solely to get revenue, you would resell third party software, which you could do on exactly the same basis but obviously it wouldn't meet our strategic goals."*

730. On that point, Ms Harris also gave evidence about the relative complexity and timing problems inherent in hardware sales. Whereas with sales of software, delivery was effected by sending an email key, and revenue could be recognised straight away provided the other revenue recognition criteria were met (e.g. collectability), the process was much less simple for hardware, with

no guarantee that the revenue would be recognisable in the quarter: again, it was suggested that this meant that hardware sales would not have been an effective tool to enable Autonomy to "plug gaps" in order to meet its targets.

731. In the round, Dr Lynch portrayed the hardware reselling strategy as "the right decision and a good insurance policy for the company". He was also adamant that at a net cost of no more than $20 million the hardware reselling strategy was good value for money in marketing terms. He submitted that when looking at the commercial sense of the strategy, it is not the size of the revenues that matters, but the cost to Autonomy. When cross-examined he expressed this as follows:

> *"So if we just look at this in context of what's actually going on here. Autonomy spends $500 million over this period on marketing. This strategy costs us about $20 million and we get back through the fact that the linked discounts come – meant that we don't have to discount software to get the procurement discount, so it costs us less than $20 million. We then get EMC, for example, bringing us into their extended deals where they replace EMC with us and that goes into multiple customers. Dell bring us into 40 customers. They all make appliances for us. We displace our main competitor FAST out of Hitachi so we actually become the software for Hitachi. And we protect losing the profit margin on about $160 million of software business. So what's going on here is the execution of what actually is probably the best $20 million I ever spent on marketing in terms of the return that we got for it."*

732. He summarised what he saw as its advantages and successes in his witness statement, as follows:

> *(a) "Autonomy maintained its strategic supplier status with its major customers.*
>
> *(b) Autonomy demonstrated that it was not threatened by the move to appliances.*
>
> *(c) Autonomy protected its software margins.*
>
> *(d) Autonomy developed its appliances with Dell, and sold them to customers.*
>
> *(e) Autonomy and Hitachi were developing an appliance as well.*
>
> *(f) Autonomy and EMC agreed to develop an appliance[135].*
>
> *(g) Autonomy and EMC entered into discussions for the purchase of Documentum[136] for $2.2bn (which did not ultimately proceed).*

[135] After a reconciliation, by August 2010, according to Dr Lynch.
[136] EMC's content management and archiving division.

> *(h) EMC changed the code on its hardware to enable it to run Autonomy software, leading to sales.*
>
> *(i) Autonomy obtained discounts worth several million dollars on its own hardware purchases."*

733. Dr Lynch could not and did not shy away from the fact that the hardware sales were, on a stand-alone basis, almost invariably loss-making; but his case was that when the benefits (especially increased high-margin software sales, but also including discounts on hardware purchases for its own considerable needs in its archiving and hosting offerings) were weighed in the balance, the costs were outweighed by the advantages.

734. In the round, the Defendants stressed especially the importance of putting the programme in proper perspective: when looking at the commercial sense of the strategy, it was not the size of the revenues that matters, but the cost to Autonomy; and even the gross cost was small in comparison to the very high margins that could be made on software sales, as Mr Welham agreed.

735. There is no evidence of the hardware reselling strategy having been discussed by the board: the strategy was presented as having been discussed at the Loudham Hall meeting and developed thereafter.

(2) Witness evidence which the Defendants contend supports their case

736. As indicated previously, the Defendants reinforced their case as explained by Dr Lynch principally by reference to the evidence of the Claimants' own witnesses. They relied in particular on the evidence of Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan, which they contended supported their case as to the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy in all its aspects, and on the evidence of Mr Welham.

737. Both Mr Egan and Mr Sullivan were directly involved in the hardware reselling strategy, which was almost exclusively centred in the US. Both had given evidence in the US criminal proceedings. Both appear from that evidence to have considered that there was a valid commercial rationale for the hardware sales, including sales of what the Claimants would characterise as "*pure hardware*". The omission from their respective witness statements of any substantial recognition or explanation of the outlook they expressed at the time has tended rather to emphasise the Defendants point that the Claimants' case now is not supported by their own witnesses.

Mr Sullivan

738. In his witness statement, Mr Sullivan did not express any view as to the purpose of the strategy of hardware sales, which he considered began to be implemented in Q3 2009 after the meeting at Loudham Hall and his return to the US after that. He accepted that it was not unusual for software companies to sell hardware. However, the emphasis in his witness statement was on the

fact that Autonomy's hardware sales were at a loss; and that although he was familiar with the process of reselling hardware, had engaged in it when at SteelPoint, and had a well-established network of large institutional customers to which hardware could be sold, he stressed that in his experience there the sales had been for a profit and never at a loss.

739. Mr Sullivan explained that he was in regular contact with Mr Hussain, who regularly set revenue targets for hardware resales and frequently requested updates on the status of hardware sales (which, he added, were often referred to as "low margin" business). He acknowledged that he was offered and received bonuses if he achieved the targets. He identified EMC as the initial usual hardware provider; they were replaced by Dell after Q3 2009.

740. His evidence was that after the HP acquisition Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain agreed that reselling hardware should cease except for committed deals, though he was asked to do some new deals after that; and that the programme finally came to an end in April 2012. He seemed to imply that termination post-acquisition signified some suspicion about propriety.

741. The Defendants depicted Mr Sullivan's evidence in the US criminal proceedings as giving a fuller and fairer picture of his view of the hardware reselling strategy. They relied on his evidence in that context as demonstrating that in his perception:

(1) There was nothing wrong or illegal in a software company selling hardware at a loss as part of a marketing programme: he considered that it was something that happened frequently in the software and hardware industries. He explained his own thought process as follows:

> *"Absolutely. I mean companies sell printers at a loss to sell ink. Companies sell razors to sell blades. You know, we were a software company. We gave away professional services for free to get software deals. We gave away training for free to get software deals. I mean, in the end what matters is you make more than you don't make when you add it all up and group it together. That's the way I looked at it."*

(2) Autonomy and its then preferred hardware provider, EMC, had mutual customers (in particular, large financial institutions) and it was with a view to mutual benefit that *"we specifically targeted, you know, our mutual customer list to provide this benefit too, yeah."*

(3) Autonomy wanted the hardware manufacturers to drive sales of Autonomy products, and there were opportunities for mutual benefits if they did. For example, if a manufacturer's introduction led to Autonomy selling Digital Safe to a customer, that in turn would increase Autonomy's or the customer's need for hardware, which would result in further hardware purchases from the manufacturer.

(4) After mid-2009, when he started selling the low-margin hardware, he only sold it to big software customers of Autonomy and such customers included Citigroup, Bank of New York, and Bloomberg. He explained that a lot of software was sold to a company called Insight which was Citi's purchasing agent for hardware so that when they were selling to Insight they were selling to Citi. He also confirmed that a company called SHI played the same function for Bank of America as Insight for Citi and so if they were selling to SHI they were selling to Bank of America. All of those financial institutions were software customers of Autonomy before the hardware program started.

(5) He agreed that the programme or strategy was *"a way to develop good relationships and to induce further business…an investment in the relationship…"*

(6) It was never suggested to him that he should, and he never did, try to conceal hardware sales, saying that he *"never thought there was a reason to. In fact, I tried to make it clear".* He expressly told both EMC and Dell that the sales were part of a marketing programme, and never thought there was anything at all wrong in it.

(7) He saw nothing wrong in either the payment of bonuses, nor in the setting of targets measured by sales under the programme: he said he did not know *"why you would do it any other way".*

(8) It was impressed on him by Mr Chamberlain and the legal department that to that end, it was essential for Autonomy (a) to take title and own the hardware before reselling it (as he put it *"We had to hold the receivables risk…"*) and (b) to ship the product before the end of the quarter for which revenue was to be recognised: if shipment was delayed, then revenue recognition would have to be deferred (which he said *"happened regularly"*).

742. The Defendants relied also on Mr Sullivan's evidence when asked in the US criminal proceedings in "direct" examination what in September 2010 he understood the purpose of the *"Dell resells"* to be:

> *"Well, clearly there was an element of wanting more revenue. That was one. But there was also the overarching purpose…The overarching purpose, again, as I asked multiple times, was to generate good will and marketing benefit…"*

743. However, Mr Sullivan's evidence in the US criminal proceedings also signalled that he was not himself verifying the rationale of the programme: he was explaining what he had been told by the Defendants and that that was the basis on which he had proceeded. Thus:

(1) When asked whether the explanation of the strategy in focusing on big financial institutions and selling them discounted hardware which he was given by Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch, which was that this would help to develop relationships with them with a view to getting a bigger

share of their software business was plausible, he side-stepped, and simply answered that the big financial institutions were his *"largest customers for the portion of the business that I ran."*

(2) When asked whether he knew that the marketing aspects of discounted hardware sales were important to, for example, Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch he said he did *"because of their words and that's what they told me."*

(3) He was aware that it was important for Autonomy that the sales of hardware should be papered and structured to result in recognised revenue: he accepted that revenue recognition was part of the rationale.

744. It is clear from Mr Sullivan's evidence in the US criminal trial that he was personally unsure what was the purpose of the sales of hardware at a discount on the price which Autonomy had paid the supplier and thus at a loss to it. The fact that he repeatedly asked Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch for an explanation suggests that he remained unsure and needed reassurance from them. His evidence was replete with the variety of answers he was given, though all revolved around the central theme of fostering goodwill with suppliers and software customers, and mining that to develop and extend relationships with them both.

745. Of course it is dangerous to place too much reliance on nuance having not had the opportunity to watch and listen to him being cross-examined, but I also formed the impression from the transcripts of his evidence in the US criminal proceedings that he was ultimately unsure quite what the story was that he had been told and tended to grasp at different formulations according to whether he was being examined or cross-examined, being anxious to satisfy both and insulate himself.

746. Further, although Mr Sullivan well understood and accepted the notion of a promotional deal and using discounting for marketing purposes (see, for example, paragraph 801(1) below), when confronted with particular transactions, he often had to accept that the reality was that the real driver was revenue generation albeit at a loss. Thus:

(1) As elaborated below (see paragraph 773 *et seq*) in considering the nature of the relationship between Autonomy and its first major hardware supplier, EMC, Mr Sullivan confirmed that though he *"certainly characterised the deal as, you know, a marketing deal"* and had told them that he *"had marketing funds to use to spend on some of our mutual customers"* the reality was that:

> *"You know, really, the deal that I had with EMC was just to help us sell some hardware. It really didn't go much beyond that."*

(2) In relation to Autonomy's dealings with a Dell customer called Zones Inc, which Dell introduced to Autonomy (and which I address in more

detail later, see paragraph 1159 *et seq*) Autonomy was contractually precluded from revealing its involvement. Mr Sullivan duly confirmed that he never mentioned Autonomy's involvement in any transactions with Zones, or in other transactions with Dell customers such as Oracle where like prohibitions had been imposed.

(3) Mr Sullivan had to accept, in relation to an email from Mr Hussain dated 25 March 2011 in which Mr Hussain had written that making further hardware sales was *"the last part of the low margin jigsaw"*, that this was being done to try to hit a revenue number, rather than for any marketing purposes.

747. More generally, Mr Sullivan's role, as the person chosen to develop business with hardware suppliers (first, with EMC and subsequently with Dell), was defined exclusively by reference to revenue generated from hardware sales. He reported regularly to Mr Hussain as to (a) what *"low margin"* sales could realistically be achieved and (b) the value, purely in revenue terms, of hardware sales secured from time to time. In other words, the accent was almost exclusively on revenue, without a thought to the pursuit or accomplishment of any other benefit. In that connection, Mr Sullivan stated in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings that he did not know whether there was any effort at all at head office in England to try to track or relate *"low-margin hardware deals with software sales"*.

748. My overall impression was that Mr Sullivan had been carefully assisted as to the line to be followed for his own protection if and when questioned about the purpose of the hardware sales. He tried to repeat his lines (with some glitches in his recital of them), that he had been assured and had then persuaded himself that there was nothing improper in what was being done. However, although I should stress that the Claimants did not accuse Mr Sullivan of dishonesty, he knew that it was all about revenue, with any other benefits being uncertain and peripheral, and unproductive in terms of his take-home pay.

749. Indeed, in a passage from his evidence which was not quoted in the Defendants' respective closing submissions, even though it was part of the same passage quoted at the end of paragraph 742 above which was especially relied on by Dr Lynch, Mr Sullivan appears to have accepted that where the deals were arranged at the very end of the quarter, their real purpose was simply to generate revenue. Thus, when giving his answer that *"the overarching purpose"* was to generate *"good will and marketing benefit"* he expressly differentiated what he referred to as *"the last second request"*. He was asked to explain what he meant by this:

> *"Q. What do you mean by the last second request?*
>
> *A. Well, in this case this is two days before the end of the quarter*
>
> *Q. What significance do you attach to that?*
>
> *A. To get more revenue for the quarter."*

Mr Egan

750. As mentioned above, Mr Egan (like Mr Sullivan) said very little in his witness statement about the rationale of the hardware sales, and he tended to minimise his own involvement. However, Mr Egan (unlike Mr Sullivan) did attend to be cross-examined via video-link in these proceedings; and when cross-examined he confirmed that he did not think there was anything wrong with Autonomy's strategy of selling hardware, even though it typically involved a loss on the resale.

751. Mr Egan also confirmed that the evidence he had given in the US criminal proceedings was correct, and could be taken still to be his evidence. The gist of that evidence was captured in the following exchange:

> *"Q. Did you believe that the sales to these banks of hardware had the extended benefit of enhancing the relationship with the banks?*
>
> *A. I did believe that.*
>
> *Q. Who were big customers for software?*
>
> *A. Some, yes; some targets.*
>
> *Q. Did you consider it a relationship builder to sell the hardware to these targets or customers for software?*
>
> *A. I did.*
>
> *Q. And did you see it as a benefit to future software purchases?*
>
> *A. Absolutely.*
>
> *Q. Did you believe that hardware and software were leveraged together with these big customers?*
>
> *A. Often, yes.*
>
> *Q. And did you believe it increased Autonomy's standing with the big financial institutions that bought their software?*
>
> *A. The hardware sales?*
>
> *Q. Yes.*

> *A. Absolutely."*

752. Mr Egan's evidence thus seemed directly to corroborate Dr Lynch's explanation of the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy, and (perhaps more importantly) that the purpose was pursued and seemed to him to be realised in its implementation. Again, the absence of any acknowledgement of this in his witness statement tended to support the Defendants' submission that the Claimants had provided no reason to suggest that the rationale was contrived or implausible.

753. The Claimants pointed out, however, that Mr Egan was never once asked to identify the basis of his stated belief as to the purpose of the hardware sales. Apart from the so-called *"Linkage Analysis"* which I refer to later, no objective evidence such as to inform or validate the statements of belief was ever provided. They contended that it is clear from other parts of his evidence that his understanding was based on discussions with Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain, and cited in particular the following evidence in his witness statement:

> *"I understood from discussion with Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch that a reason for making these sales was to engender goodwill with customers that were also customers for Autonomy software; and that was always a stated reason for these money-losing sales."*

754. Further, Mr Egan, who (with Mr Sullivan) was present at the Loudham Hall meeting in July 2009, but did not address it in his witness statement, implied that the notion of hardware sales driving software sales might have informed the strategy initially, but soon faded when the revenue-generating potential of hardware sales was recognised. He stated in his witness statement that:

> *"…it was also clear to me over time that a principal reason for these money-losing sales was to generate revenue that could be recognised in the quarter in which the sale was made so that Autonomy could achieve its revenue target and meet market expectations. This benefit was discussed as a primary motivation for doing these deals amongst myself and others, including Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch."*

755. Mr Egan agreed with Mr Miles in cross-examination that this was carefully phrased, and that the use of *"a"* rather than *"the"* before *"principal reason"* was deliberate and what he was *"comfortable with"*. That was not least perhaps because in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings Mr Egan (when cross-examined in that context) had accepted that he had regarded hardware sales, and in particular sales to large banks who were big customers for software, to be *"a relationship builder"* so that *"hardware and software were leveraged together with these big customers"*. He was careful to maintain the position that even if, *"later in the process",* such reasons *"became*

secondary in a couple of cases to the absolute desire for revenue", they always, in his view, subsisted.

756. Most importantly, at least from the Defendants' perspective, Mr Egan's evidence was that he considered that it was genuinely always part of the purpose of hardware reselling to turn Autonomy into a favoured seller to large customers and particularly banks and other financial institutions, and that engendering goodwill with customers that were also customers for Autonomy software was not only a stated but *"always a very big reason"* for the money-losing hardware sales.

757. Mr Egan made the point also that *"...you could have an argument in any one transaction about whether something was secondary or primary to the other..."* He accepted that the evidence he had given in his witness statement that revenue generation had *"been discussed as a primary motivation for doing these deals amongst myself and others, including Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch"* was not based on any actual or specific conversation. He accepted as correct Mr Miles's suggestion to him that the notion of a primary motivation for a deal:

> *"...sounds rather like the kind of thing a lawyer would say rather than what business people would say at the time..."*

758. That is probably realistic. Different transactions may have differently weighted purposes and objectives, and business decisions are usually multi-faceted; the weighing of which is the primary or predominant purpose is beloved by lawyers, looking at the matter after the event; but commercial men tend to take a more holistic approach and weighting as between various commercially welcome effects is not the reality of commercial life. Mr Egan sought in this way to reconcile his evidence in the US criminal proceedings, his witness statement, his conscience and what increasingly also struck me as a desire so far as possible, not further to implicate Dr Lynch, or indeed himself[137].

759. This difficult line was easier to follow where Mr Egan was involved in, or did know of a prior or contemporaneous hardware sale; and it is clear that in those instances, Mr Egan did try to leverage the hardware and software sales together.

760. The Defendants made much in this regard of an email exchange between Mr Egan and Mr Hussain on 23 December 2009 which had as its subject heading *"A few additional points for your prep".* This exchange (which Mr Egan had not mentioned in his witness statement) appeared to suggest that when 'prepping' Mr Hussain how best to present to Mr Christian Lucas of Morgan Stanley a large proposed deal with Morgan Stanley which also involved a 'loss leader' sale to Morgan Stanley of Dell hardware at a discounted price, Mr Egan had presented what was described as the *"Dell/reseller"* deal as a loss leader which promoted good relations with Dell and led to faster adoption of

[137] He also emphasised, for example, that though he was *"involved in making this type of hardware sale when Autonomy first began this practice in Q2 2009…[he] was involved only occasionally thereafter."*

Autonomy software and *"grease[d] the process of lucrative OEM bundling of Autonomy software on Dell kit"* especially when Dell could see *"the level of usage of our software in a prestigious account like MS…"*

761. The Defendants also relied on a passage of evidence from Mr Egan's re-examination in which Mr Rabinowitz had sought to elicit from him that the use of hardware sales to leverage software sales in the Morgan Stanley deal was a single exception, and that Mr Egan had not been involved in any other hardware sales which were linked to a sale of software. Mr Egan, contrary perhaps to the re-examiner's expectation, replied that he was sure he was, causing Mr Rabinowitz quickly to break away from that line of questioning.

762. However, the surprise of the initial answer may have somewhat obscured Mr Egan's addition, which explained its limited scope:

> *"To be clear, I answered that question based on knowing that I've sold what I believe I referred to the other day as more occasional hardware in conjunction with software versus very large hardware deals."*

Earlier, in the course of his cross-examination, Mr Egan had referred to having

> *"sold some incidental hardware prior to the period that we're talking about and I don't think anyone has questioned, or that's not under scrutiny."*

763. What in the round I took from Mr Egan's evidence was that:

(1) Although he knew of money-losing hardware sales, and of their general justification as *"to engender goodwill with customers that were also customers for Autonomy software"*, he was *"more tasked with selling software"* and it was Mr Sullivan who *"was tasked by Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain with managing most of the hardware reselling."* In other words, the tasks were usually separately undertaken, and Mr Egan was only occasionally involved in hardware sales.

(2) *"As a general matter, [he] did not know which companies had purchased hardware from Autonomy or how much third-party hardware was being sold"*; and he was not, therefore, in a position to and did not *"use the fact of a prior or contemporaneous hardware sale to promote the software sale [he] was trying to make"*.

(3) Even in some cases where there were long running negotiations for software sales he was simply not told or aware of the fact of a prior or contemporaneous hardware sale which might have assisted him in concluding a software sale. The example given in his witness statement of a software licensing and data hosting transaction eventually concluded with BofA was especially instructive because not only did he not know of a prior large hardware sale to BoA which might well have assisted him in his negotiations but also he *"never heard Dr Lynch or Mr Hussain…refer to these hardware sales during our extensive negotiations with Bank of America"* either).

(4) As to what he described in cross-examination as the *"small universe"* of large value end of quarter hardware sales, his evidence to me was that in his discussions with Dr Lynch about this *"I feel as though we had an understanding that they were needed from a revenue perspective…".*

(5) It was, inferentially, for that reason that he was not told and usually did not know any of the details of such sales, or (in particular) which companies had purchased hardware from Autonomy or what the sales involved.

764. I accept that evidence. If Mr Egan, who was so often responsible for software sales, (a) in important instances where there were ongoing negotiations for software sales did not know and could not and did not use the fact of prior or contemporaneous hardware sales as a negotiating point , and (b) often did not know relevant details of end of quarter hardware sales and in any event understood them to be directed simply to revenue generation, that tends substantially to undermine the notion that the objective of such hardware sales was to benefit software sales and that *"hardware and software were leveraged together with these big customers".*

765. This fed through into the main difficulty for the Defendants. This was that although Mr Egan sought to emphasise what he called (see paragraph 751 above) the *"extended benefit"* (of enhancing relationships with the banks), the overall impression persisted in his evidence that the *sine qua non* and driving force of the hardware sales was revenue generation to meet what he knew was the Defendants' desire and need to satisfy revenue forecasts.

766. That impression was supported further by other parts of his witness statement which illuminated how little part any ancillary benefits for software sales actually played in the planning and practical implementation of Autonomy's hardware sales. To exploit an advantage in terms of software sales that might be gained from a sale of hardware, the software salesman had to know of the hardware sale; but in his witness statement, he stated:

> *"As a general matter, I did not know which companies had purchased hardware from Autonomy or how much third-party hardware was being sold. When I was involved in selling software licences to end-users, I usually did not know whether hardware had been sold to that end-user and when I was not involved in, or aware of, a hardware sale I did not use the fact of a prior or contemporaneous hardware sale to promote the software sale I was trying to make."* [138]

767. It may also be noted that Mr Egan stated in re-examination that: (i) he was unaware that each quarter from Q3 2009 to Q2 2011 the Defendants set hardware revenue targets for Mr Sullivan; (ii) he was generally not aware of the dealings that took place between the Defendants and Mr Sullivan in

[138] Mr Egan elaborated on this by reference to a large software licensing and data hosting transaction with Bank of America in which he was involved in Q1 2011: and I have quoted further from the same passage in his witness statement in examining that example at greater length in paragraph 1140 *et seq* below.

relation to the generation of revenue through hardware sales; and (iii) he did not know that bonus payments were offered and paid to Mr Sullivan linked to the amount that he generated from hardware sales. All were factors tending further to undermine any belief that the hardware reselling strategy was intended to generate and increase software sales.

768. My overall assessment is that Mr Egan's evidence was more a recital of reasons he had been given as to the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy dressed in the language of belief, and that the real import of his evidence was that his own experience in practice was that the hardware reselling strategy had very little relevance to, and no measurable benefit for, the software business, and that it was the need to show revenue which was its true explanation.

Dr Lynch

769. Dr Lynch's evidence did not attempt to show any direct or causative link between hardware reselling and increased software sales. His justification was stated in general terms with little or no evidence-based examples:

(1) His overall justification was to depict the programme as similar in intended effect to an advertising campaign, but (at a net cost of about $20 million) cheaper.

(2) He offered the further justification that the discounts which Autonomy offered its software customers on hardware sales could be used to maintain prices for software products, because it meant *"that Autonomy did not have to discount software sales in the same amount"*.

770. He contended also that what he called the customer-facing part of the strategy turned out to be very successful, and that the effect of promoting good relationships with hardware suppliers was that:

> "*unlike companies that were selling more than us, we did not get pushed into being a supplier through one of the majors and that saved us 30%. So the amount of business we're talking about here is about $150 million, so that saved us [$]50 million profit immediately, so it was a very good outcome*."

771. As will be seen later, these issues were reflected both in a *'Strategic Deals Memorandum'*, which referred to the "*continuing rationalization of IT suppliers to major financial institution customers*"; and also in Autonomy's Quarterly Results for Q3 2009, which noted that "*During the quarter we saw some of our large customers promote Autonomy to strategic supplier status.*"

772. However, none of this could explain:

(1) The frantic use of hardware reselling when gaps emerged in expected revenue from software sales;

(2) The determined efforts not to disclose the hardware reselling strategy, to the point of accounting for the costs in such a way as to minimise the

risk of revelation as well as reducing the adverse effect of loss-making sales on the 'bottom line';

(3) The repeated efforts to paint a misleading picture of Autonomy's efforts to establish a partnership with the first of its main hardware suppliers, EMC (to which I now turn).

(1) Autonomy's relationship with EMC and the dispute as to why it abruptly ended

773. Mr Sullivan's evidence on Autonomy and his own relationship with EMC was:

(1) Whilst at Zantaz (which had purchased servers and storage from EMC for use in its hosting business) and then after the acquisition of Zantaz by Autonomy, Mr Sullivan had established a good working relationship with EMC's director of Global Sales and Marketing Operations, Mr Bill Scannell ("Mr Scannell").

(2) The potential for some collaboration with EMC preceded the Loudham Hall meeting. Autonomy was, even before the adoption of the hardware reselling strategy, one of the largest buyers of data storage in the world. EMC was *"a very large hardware provider, really the leader in storage systems…a top-notch company"*. There was advantage to both in securing and increasing each other's business.

(3) At the same time, Autonomy and EMC were in discussions about building appliances. Also in June 2009, following a difficult negotiation, Autonomy had convinced EMC to create a "*custom configuration for us that will be useful for the Digital Safe*" during this period, and as also Mr Goodfellow accepted in cross-examination.

(4) On 18 June 2009, Mr Sullivan wrote to Mr Scannell of EMC to say that Autonomy would like "*a more strategic relationship with EMC,*" in view of the large investment Autonomy was making in purchases from EMC, in particular in relation to Digital Safe and Introspect. In his evidence, Mr Sullivan explained that what he meant was getting some of EMC's hardware customers to buy Autonomy software:

> "*Q. And what you wanted them to do in this more strategic relationship, you were buying a lot of hardware from them, you wanted them to drive some revenue to you; right?*
>
> *A. Absolutely.*
>
> *Q. And what did that mean? Did that mean get some of their hardware customers to buy Autonomy software?*
>
> *A. Yes."*

(5) To encourage EMC further, Mr Sullivan had mentioned to Mr Scannell the possibility of an alternative tie-up of some kind between Autonomy

and HDS (Hitachi). This was intended to and did excite some rivalry and interest from Mr Scannell. The exchange and its upshot seem to me to have some bearing on the dispute as to the nature of the subsequent arrangements between EMC and Autonomy:

(a) Mr Scannell's email to Mr Sullivan stated in relevant part:

> *"This is what I took from our discussion last night. Please clarify if I missed anything or misstated anything.*
> *HDS is looking to provide Autonomy a slick deal where they would provide you:*
> - *a close configuration to what you have with EMC infrastructure already*
> - *they will become a reseller of Autonomy hosting services*
> - *Autonomy are now moving Digital Safe to HDS drives and away from the current vendor*
>
> *You would like to see EMC try to take a stab at the same type of deal where we would drive Autonomy Hosting Service deals and that would allow us to perhaps do a larger overall deal with you (grow from $2.9m to $5m)???"*

(a) Mr Sullivan's reply stated in relevant part:

> *"Correct. We would commit to the current deal (subject to some details) plus make an additional commitment for more hardware related to DS and/or Introspect (to be determined). Since we would be making a very large investment in EMC*[139]*, we would like a more strategic relationship with EMC so that you could also drive revenue for us. We would also be looking for a commitment this QTR."*

(6) The upshot as reported by Mr Sullivan in an email dated 26 June 2009 to Mr Hussain and Dr Menell was a good deal on the purchase price for EMC hardware which Autonomy was proposing to lease through Bank of America for its own use[140], and also a commitment by EMC to refine its hardware for Digital Safe needs, as emails sent at the time demonstrated.[141]

[139] According to Mr Sullivan's evidence in the US criminal trial, this included what was known as the HULK, *"a big giant storage system that was supposed to store stuff…very, very cheap"* which EMC had just produced and Autonomy was thinking of trying out.

[140]Mr Hussain's email to Mr Sullivan, 30 June 2009 stated: "*I am very happy with the negotiations that you guys have carried out. My understanding is that you have managed to strike a very aggressive pricing on the existing hardware refresh ($3m) having taken formal pricing from Hitachi (the only alternative) and also pre bought digital safe storage capacity at the same attractive rates for $6m (all including 3 year maintenance). This hardware will save significant costs as our digital safe business is increasing at a very rapid rate.*"

[141]For example, in an email of 25 June 2009 to Dr Menell Mr Wang stated: *"we had a breakthrough with EMC today in having them agree to sell us essentially hard drives without their fancy software which is irrelevant for Digital Safe... Given that we will be using EMC only for storage, we also convinced them to removed [sic] the IU server that was bundled in the unit. so what we're essentially left with a cabinet with 360 hard drives, the price of which should be substantially better than the standard ATMOS unit*".

(7) On 1 July 2009, Mr Sullivan emailed Dr Lynch and Ms Eagan, noting that:

"EMC would like to setup a day where we could get our respective product people together to discuss our respective offerings and see if there are more opportunities for us to work together. For example, they do not have a supervision product or a legal hold product. Not sure what is realistic given that we compete in other areas, but I think it is worth having the conversations."

774. It was natural therefore that it was to EMC that, on his return to the US after the Loudham Hall meeting, Mr Sullivan immediately turned to take forward the hardware reselling strategy that had been agreed upon at Loudham Hall. Mr Sullivan elaborated on the relationship established between Autonomy and EMC, which was (as appears later) a point of dispute, as follows:

(1) After the Loudham Hall meeting, Autonomy worked for a relationship with EMC in the nature of a partnership: there was advantage for both in that Autonomy was on its own behalf a large purchaser of hardware from EMC for its data storage business (which Mr Sullivan explained was one of the largest in the world) at the time (before the end of Q3 2009), and EMC was a large and successful provider of hardware, and an OEM willing to embed IDOL into its hardware and thus increase market penetration of IDOL. There was a strong incentive for Autonomy to secure its supply chain for hardware and EMC's partnership for software by purchasing EMC hardware using its negotiating power to secure material discounts[142].

(2) With the EMC hardware sales, Autonomy focused on mutual customers for hardware sales. As Mr Sullivan said, "*we specifically targeted ... our mutual customer list to provide this benefit.*" The way he saw the programme was set out in an email sent by Mr Sullivan to EMC on 15 September 2009:

"The purpose of the program is to strengthen our relationship with enterprise customers in the NYC region by offering them EMC information management products at attractive pricing. We will focus primarily on existing Autonomy Enterprise customers in the financial sector, but other companies may be added as we mutually agree."

(3) Mr Sullivan said that the goal was to get some of EMC's hardware customers to buy Autonomy software and to encourage EMC to push Autonomy products: *"We would have loved to have them, for example, push our Digital Safe project."*

[142] On the basis that increasing Autonomy's volumes of hardware further gave it serious negotiating power which could lower the price of its purchases. Dr Lynch gave unchallenged evidence that this led to a saving of $10m for Autonomy on hardware purchases – a saving equivalent to around half of the $21m of losses incurred (on the Claimants' case) on hardware transactions during the Relevant Period.

(4) Mr Sullivan also explained that he opened and pursued discussions with EMC in the latter half of 2009 about *"building an appliance, so something like potentially shipping a Digital Safe or actually e-Discovery on [sic] bundling it on their hardware and shipping it…"*

(5) Discussions about an appliance continued after that and on 5 October 2009 Mr Sullivan wrote to Mr Scannell to say: "*Per our previous conversations, I would like to get together to discuss the continuation of the programme to include development of an appliance bundle, mutual cross referrals, account introductions, reselling and other opportunities.*"

(6) Mr Sullivan explained that this referred to discussions he had been having with EMC about building an appliance to bundle Digital Safe or e-Discovery on EMC software and discussions from November 2009 onwards between technical teams evaluating EMC hardware that might be used in an appliance. These discussions continued through 2010.

Contractual arrangements between Autonomy and EMC

775. The Claimants could not dispute the fact of those discussions; and indeed Mr Goodfellow had to accept in cross-examination (after at least three obviously evasive answers) that EMC hardware was being refined for use with Digital Safe towards the end of 2009. Instead, the Claimants contended that in the event, EMC never made any enforceable commitment beyond those set out in a *"Purchase & Fulfillment Agreement"* executed on 10 September 2009, which they submitted was definitive of the relationship between Autonomy and EMC, and involved nothing more than *"a straightforward purchase by Autonomy of EMC hardware for resale (at a loss to Autonomy) to EMC's customers."* The Claimants submitted further that this was illustrative of the hardware reselling arrangements as a whole.

776. The Claimants highlighted the following substantive provisions of that agreement:

(1) Under clause 2, EMC would discuss with the end Customer its (the end customer's) needs and EMC and the Customer would agree the specification, which Autonomy could not change or amend. EMC would then issue a price quote to Autonomy based on that specification.

(2) Under clause 3, Autonomy would issue a purchase order to EMC based on the quote, stating the name and address of the Customer, the specific products and/or services to be purchased by the Agent for resale to Customer and *"total fees payable to EMC by Fulfillment Agent."* EMC would then arrange for the hardware to be shipped directly by EMC to the customer.

(3) Clause 9 (headed "*relationship of parties*") made clear that Autonomy was "*not a reseller (except as described herein), referral partner, joint venturer or any other sales agent or representative of EMC*". Instead,

the parties' relationship was "*that of non-exclusive independent contractors*".

(4) Clause 13 provided that the agreement constituted the entire agreement between EMC and Autonomy in relation to the hardware resales.[143]

777. However, that summary gave no content to the first clause which envisaged that "the Customer" would be someone with whom Autonomy had an existing relationship, and who might be interested in the enhancement of the hardware in question by the provision of Autonomy software and other "enhancements". Its first clause, headed "Background", recited as follows:

> *"A 'Customer' is a third party buyer located in the USA (excluding any United States federal government entity, agency or department) which desires to obtain one or more products or services offered by EMC, and with whom Agent may: (i) hold one or more relationships; and/or (ii) through its resources, other relationships, product offerings, or otherwise, be capable of enhancing Customer's purchase of such EMC products or services. The term 'products' may include both hardware and software. This Agreement states the terms and conditions under which EMC agrees to (a) accept purchase orders and collect payment from Agent for purchases made hereunder, and (b) permit Agent to sell EMC products or services to Customers."*

778. That first clause seemed to me to support the Defendants' case that Autonomy selected its own customers, or at least, supplied to companies which, even if customers of EMC, were also customers of its as well. On that basis, the arrangements did enable it to further the purpose it had identified by supplying its customers with a packaged solution, whilst strengthening its relationship with the hardware supplier. That case was further supported by the fact that although selected by EMC, most (perhaps all, see below) of the "Customers" (principally banks and other financial institutions, such as BofA, JPMC, Deutsche Bank and Societe Generale), were also large customers of Autonomy[144], with large software and archiving needs and an existing relationship with Autonomy (such as the hosting of their archives in Digital Safe at an Autonomy/Zantaz datacentre).

779. However, as often transpired, the contractual wording did not in fact confine the relationship as it developed. An example given by the Claimants to explain their perception of the operation in practice of the hardware reselling arrangements with EMC in Q3 2009 suggested that the chosen "Customer"

[143] It is to be noted also that there was nothing in the agreement that obliged EMC to use the money it received from Autonomy in any particular way. The potential significance of this is developed further later in the context of how the Defendants sought to justify the allocation of a substantial portion of the hardware costs as sales and marketing expenses.

[144] This was a point Dr Lynch was especially quick to emphasise when cross-examined on the EMC arrangements.

was not always an existing customer of Autonomy with software needs. The example given was as follows:

(1) On 22 September 2009, the specification having previously been agreed between Bloomberg and EMC, Autonomy agreed to sell EMC hardware to Bloomberg for $8.663 million.

(2) On 24 September 2009, Autonomy issued a purchase order to EMC for that hardware in the sum of $10.089 million. The shipping instruction was for hardware to be shipped directly by EMC to Bloomberg's offices in New York and New Jersey.

(3) The upshot was that Bloomberg received the hardware at a discount of almost 15%, but otherwise its position was identical to that which would have applied had it purchased the hardware directly from EMC.[145]

(4) The Claimants emphasised that Dr Lynch accepted when cross-examined, that Autonomy was effectively paying money to EMC to allow Autonomy to sell EMC hardware at a fairly substantial loss.

780. As the Claimants pointed out (albeit in a different context), the documentary evidence suggests that Bloomberg made no software licence purchases during the period Q1 2009 to Q4 2010. It did not purchase software from Autonomy until 2011. Although Dr Lynch suggested in cross-examination that it had made a large software purchase just before the hardware deal, it appears from the documentary evidence that it was not a purchaser of Autonomy software in 2009 or in 2010, and (except obviously for the hardware purchase) it does not appear to have been an Autonomy customer at all in that period.

781. The "devil in the detail" of the evidence thus suggests that Autonomy was content to take a loss to generate income without either any existing relationship with the customer chosen by EMC, or any reason to suppose that it would service a software need or generate a software sale in the immediate future.

Apparent success of the trading relationship with EMC

782. The Claimants further supported their case by reference to the immediate availability of as many hardware transactions as Mr Sullivan could handle. At the Loudham Hall meeting, Mr Sullivan had said that it would not be difficult to resell $5 million to $10 million of hardware, and Dr Lynch had joked that if he could do that, he would buy him a Porsche. As it was, within the week (on 15 July 2009) Mr Sullivan reported to Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain by email confirming that he was confident that he could:

[145]As Mr Chamberlain noted in an email dated 25 September 2009: "*We are not taking on any performance rights in respect of hardware, software, maintenance or services that remains with EMC. Bloomberg owe us the full amount and the only thing we have to do is deliver the equipment*".

> *"deliver all the revenue we need per our discussions at Loudham. I have verbal commitments for up to $20MM and could probably get twice that if you want it…My biggest concern is that 4 or 5 Porsches are not practical for me. Perhaps we need to discuss a small plane or yacht?"*

783. The Claimants relied on that jocular confidence and the exclusive reference to "*the revenue we need*" as confirming their contention that all that was involved was agreeing with an established supplier a means of purchasing from the hardware manufacturer and then reselling on hardware to end-users at a discounted price, the discount in effect being funded by Autonomy. Both manufacturer/supplier and end-user gained, and it cannot have been difficult to interest them, if all that was sought by Autonomy was revenue without any further tie or commitment. The Claimants relied on that, and also on the almost immediate expansion of the programme well beyond what was envisioned at the Loudham Hall meeting, apparently without any re-assessment, as further indications that the programme had nothing substantively to do with business building and everything to do with revenue generation.

EMC decide not to proceed with the programme

784. Nevertheless, what appeared to be a developing relationship with EMC on hardware reselling rather abruptly came to an end, just after the end of Q3 2009 in December 2009. The reasons for this too were disputed:

(1) The Claimants contended that EMC's sudden refusal to remain involved with the programme (a) suggested some sense on its part that there was something amiss and, in any event, (b) confirmed that there was nothing beyond the reselling arrangements to bind them, and that Autonomy's suggestion that EMC had committed to a strategic partnership and the development of a joint appliance was baseless. They cited an exchange of emails between Mr Sullivan and Mr Scannell at the beginning of December 2009, in which, in response to a request from Mr Sullivan asking "can you help us out at all in Q4?", Mr Scannell had emailed Mr Sullivan on 9 December 2009 that

> *"At this point we unfortunately are uncomfortable with these deals".*

(2) The Defendants, on the other hand, dismissed any suggestion that EMC had sensed anything untoward. They ascribed the change to EMC having bought one of Autonomy's competitors, a company called Kazeon. Employees of EMC working in the division that had bought Kazeon were lobbying against the Autonomy hardware reselling deals. Mr Sullivan told the US court:

> *"I think that the dynamic that I understood within EMC is that the software business within EMC would rather have EMC bringing them into the deals rather than – rather than us."*

(3) The Defendants suggested that this too was telling in that it appeared to reflect a concern that the hardware sales strategy did assist in driving software sales. (They suggested further that the fact that it was possible for a hardware manufacturer suddenly to cease supplying hardware without any prior notice confirmed the importance of having strong relationships with them.)

(4) The Defendants relied also on the fact that not long after, in March 2010, EMC indicated they would be prepared to consider exploring a different business relationship with Autonomy, suggesting that the reason for the break was not based in any suspicion of impropriety.

785. The evidence is incomplete, and of itself provides no certain explanation for the sudden decision of EMC to withdraw. However, Dr Lynch plainly regarded it as important to his case to demonstrate that there was nothing sinister in EMC's withdrawal, and that it did not indicate that what Deloitte and the Audit Committee had been told in Q3 2009 – that Autonomy and EMC were in a strategic partnership and were developing an appliance – was baseless. He developed a complex explanation which the Claimants denounced as a demonstrable lie.

786. The explanation Dr Lynch developed was that people within one of EMC's divisions, called Documentum, were lobbying against the pure hardware deals. He continued:

> "*But then unbeknown to Mr Scannell or Mr Sullivan at this point, a conversation broke out with the senior people at EMC which was about buying a division of EMC which was called Documentum for about $2.2 billion and because of that everything got very sensitive about how it was handled from that point onwards*".

787. The Claimants submitted that in fact, it is clear on the documents that the discussions with EMC about Autonomy potentially purchasing Documentum did not commence until <u>much later</u>, in April 2010. They relied on the following:

(1) An internal Autonomy memorandum produced on 28 May 2010, which set out the background to a possible deal (under the name "*Project Dynamo*") . The memorandum stated as follows: "*Morgan Stanley have made the senior level introductions between the two companies and MRL met with Harry You (Executive Vice President, Office of the Chairman, reporting to Joe Tucci Chairman and CEO) in April 2010*" . Nowhere does the memorandum suggest, nor is it consistent with, discussions having taken place any earlier, and certainly not as early as August 2009 as Dr Lynch suggested in his evidence.

(2) Other documents further demonstrate the inconsistency. On 5 March 2010, Dr Lynch sought an update from Mr Sullivan about relations with EMC. Mr Sullivan responded:

> "*As for EMC, the tone on "working with us" is very positive in general. They still are not willing to do reselling deals but have said they are happy to explore other types of partnerships. Billy [Scannell] is always willing to consider creative ideas. Billy says the software group (Documentum / Kazeon etc.) is the only group where we might see resistance…*
> *…*
> *They are very interested in keeping us as a customer and we have discussed working on the appliances with them although it does not seem a great fit vs alternatives.*"

(3) The Claimants submitted that the document indicated that (a) Documentum's anticipated "*resistance*" was to EMC exploring any type of collaboration with Autonomy in March 2010; and (b) no appliance was being developed with EMC by March 2010, nor was there any plan to do so in the future, given that Autonomy did not view EMC as "*a great fit vs alternatives*". Even by August 2010, the possibility of EMC creating an archiving appliance utilising Autonomy software had not proceeded beyond tentative discussions between the parties: see the "*Discussion Paper re Strategic Relationship*" prepared by Autonomy for EMC in August 2010, which identified the creation of an appliance as no more than a possibility under "*Expansion of Existing Relationship*". The "*Existing Relationships*" section of the paper made no reference to appliances.

(4) The discussions with EMC about Autonomy purchasing Documentum did not, in the event, lead anywhere. Dr Lynch's evidence in cross-examination was that "*the deal [with EMC regarding Documentum] was all ready to go by the summer*". Again, that was not supported by the contemporaneous documents; these suggested that the discussions remained tentative by October and November 2010. Ultimately, as Dr Lynch accepted, no deal took place.

788. Even if (and I do not need to decide this) the analysis may not reveal a lie, I would accept that it supports the Claimants' suggestions that:

(1) The relationship with EMC never amounted to anything like a partnership: the essence was that EMC was content to sell hardware at a full price which it could offer at a discount subsidised by Autonomy until (as seems to me more likely than not) concerns were expressed higher up the management chain to the effect that it seemed too good to be true;

(2) Any suggestion that the EMC relationship demonstrated or offered the potential of a strong nexus with software sales and development was exaggerated;

(3) The nature of the EMC relationship was not in consequence properly represented to Deloitte.

(4) Autonomy's relationships with Dell and Hitachi

789. EMC's withdrawal necessitated urgent action to find a replacement hardware provider. As I elaborate in paragraph 912 *et seq* below, there is no doubt that by now, Autonomy had become addicted to hardware reselling to cover any software revenue shortfall headaches. Mr Sullivan found Dell. Dell had already supplied *"thousands of servers"* for Autonomy's data centres and hosted offerings which (Mr Sullivan elaborated) included *"the world's largest archiving and discovery offerings, which we were at the time"*: The parties' very different depictions of the relationship between Autonomy and Dell provides one of the clearest illustrations of the clash between, on the one hand, what the Defendants extracted from the evidence of Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan, and, on the other hand, what the Claimants submitted the actual sequence of events and the documentation revealed. In this part of my judgment, I focus on what the Defendants made of the witnesses' evidence; but it must be borne in mind that a very different story emerges when I turn later to the Claimants' analysis.

790. The Defendants relied on Mr Sullivan's evidence in the US criminal proceedings as providing substantial support for the Defendants' case that as with EMC, there were sound reasons for extending Autonomy's co-operation with Dell:

(1) Dell was a natural choice: as well as being large in its own right, Dell was the largest EMC reseller in the world as well.

(2) Further, at the time, Dell was seeking to build its own intelligent storage product, and was evaluating IDOL technology for that purpose, in a project known as Project BlueJay.

(3) Project Bluejay (which Mr Sullivan sometimes referred to as 'Bluebird') was Dell's response to an industry move to build 'intelligent storage', which Mr Sullivan explained in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings meant *"systems that indexed everything and made it searchable and provided analytics and things like that".* Dell was evaluating technology with a view to developing its own product for the market, including Autonomy's IDOL.

(4) Discussions on this had begun in February 2009, but moved into "*high-gear*" in November 2009 (about the time that Autonomy started reselling Dell hardware). In this context, Mr Sullivan explained that Autonomy was heavily engaged working with Dell's R&D team.

(5) In an email to Mr Hussain on 6 November 2009, Mr Sullivan outlined *"Potential components of Autonomy/Dell deal"*. Among other things, they included Autonomy launching archiving and e-Discovery appliances with Dell, Dell acting as an OEM for Autonomy's IDOL search platform, Dell reselling Autonomy appliances and software, and Autonomy using Dell equipment and storage for its archiving and discovery offerings. As Mr Sullivan explained,

> *"…we really wanted to win that because that would mean every time they sold this, we would get a little piece of it. It was an OEM project…That would have been a very large software deal if it closed…".*

791. Although Project Bluejay did not ultimately result in an OEM deal, the Defendants relied on it as exemplifying the sort of collaboration which Autonomy's reselling of Dell hardware was intended to support. They relied in this regard also on the following exchanges:

    (1) An email dated 19 November 2009 from Mr Craig Irons of Dell to his colleague Mr Bob Barris, introducing him to Mr Sullivan. His email explained that Mr Barris was "*Dell's Vice President of Sales responsible for the Financial Services vertical in New York*", and it emphasised the benefits both sides could obtain from collaboration:

    > *"As you and I have discussed Dell Product Group is currently engaged in strategic partnership discussions with Autonomy (Zantaz' parent company). As those discussion continue I thought it might make sense for you and Mike to know each other as much of Autonomy/Zantaz's enterprise search, archiving, and ediscovery market leadership resides within the financial services community. As such there may be great synergies available to both you and Mike if you were to begin collaborating within the finserv vertical."*

    (2) In an email sent at the time, Mr Egan described some of the benefits of the reselling arrangements with Dell as follows:

    > *"Regarding the Dell/reseller deal:*
    >
    > - *This is a purely commercial deal done on a lost* [sic., loss] *leader basis by Autonomy.*
    >
    > - *We gain greatly by seeing faster adoption of our software and we view Morgan Stanley as one of the fastest innovators in the space.*
    >
    > - *Dell appreciates the relationship and it greases the process of lucrative OEM bundling of Autonomy software on Dell kit. This is strategic and we pride ourselves at getting our OEMs to move fast and adopt IDOL as a standard. When they have front row seats to the level of usage of our software in a*

> *prestigious account like MS they move faster on OEM decisions."*

(3) Emails from March 2010 demonstrated that discussions continued between Dell and Autonomy (run on Autonomy's side by Mr Sullivan and Mr Matt DeLuca, not Dr Lynch) regarding a strategic partnership between the two companies. Mr Mollo of Dell stated that "*The intent is to get a strategic partnership arranged in several key areas short and long term*" and referred to the intended relationship with Dell as a "*strategic and important partnership*."

792. Autonomy's collaboration with Dell continued until HP acquired Autonomy. An email of 17 August 2011 summarising "*Dell recent activities*" dealt with discussions about Autonomy as a "*GTM [go to market] partner*" for Dell with respect to eDiscovery and Cloud, noting that the Dell Software Partner Management Team was "*engaged at highest levels*", and that this was *"key because insistence from Dell HQ we will be promoted by Dell sales will be very helpful in our relationship building in the field."*

793. While the principal focus was on EMC and later Dell, Mr Sullivan explained in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings that Autonomy also worked on a strategic relationship with Hitachi/HDS:

> *"Q. And you were working on a similar strategic relationship with Hitachi at that time, weren't you?*
>
> *A. Yes. A little different but, yes."*

794. By way of example, in 2010, Autonomy partnered with HDS on a proof of concept for Morgan Stanley. The proof of concept involved running HDS's software – Hitachi Content Archive Platform – using IDOL, rather than Microsoft's FAST. The parties sought to showcase this product to Morgan Stanley, as a replacement for Morgan Stanley's existing third-party product:

> *"The purpose is to show Morgan Stanley an archive platform that has the strengths of Hitachi storage coupled to the advanced features of the IDOL index as well as the ability to plug this solution into Morgan's existing IDOL implementation. The instance of IDOL running on HCAP can be easily "connected" into other IDOL servers, providing an immediate link between the HCAP data and the existing Autonomy solution-set. This is a far cleaner solution than inserting an archive platform that runs a different index application (i.e. MSFT FAST)."*

795. Throughout 2011, Autonomy continued to work with HDS, and its parent, Hitachi Data Systems, on promoting each other's products to customers. Autonomy secured an OEM agreement with Hitachi Data Systems just prior to the HP acquisition. The deal envisaged Hitachi OEM-ing Autonomy

technology into its own enterprise search and storage solutions and reselling the solutions to customers.

796. In summary, the Defendants depicted Autonomy's relationships with EMC, Dell and Hitachi as having been intended to enhance Autonomy's relationships with key suppliers, enable it to provide its own customers with a one-stop and complete solution, and protect it against the threat posed to it, given its focus on software, if appliances did become the preferred means of providing software. They urged that the programme should be regarded as a commercially rational way of protecting and promoting Autonomy's software business.

(5) The Defendants' further evidence as to the use and success of the programme

797. As to what the Defendants claimed was the networking effect of the hardware sales and the potential that offered of leveraging into far more valuable software deals, Mr Hussain's closing submissions focused especially on Autonomy's dealings with UBS.

798. Mr Hussain provided the following chronology in support of this:

(1) After unsuccessful attempts by Autonomy in December 2009 to sell a Legal Hold software product to UBS, Mr Egan approached Mr Dominic Lester (UBS's head of EMEA Technology) the next quarter with a proposal to resell to UBS $10 million of Dell hardware, fishing for an introduction to UBS senior IT people (with whom Autonomy had no existing relationship).

(2) Although the initial proposal came too late (UBS had already contracted directly with Dell) Mr Lester was sufficiently interested to arrange a meeting between Mr Hussain and Mr Sullivan for Autonomy and senior managers in UBS's procurement team (Mr Jaffrey and Mr Dille) which took place in February 2010.

(3) In Q2 2010, Autonomy as reseller sold $6.3 million of Dell hardware to UBS via another reseller, Metro (which is one of the 'pure hardware' transactions alleged to have been fraudulent). Until then Autonomy had not sold UBS either any hardware or any significant software.

(4) In May 2010, Dr Lynch met with Ms Michele Trogni (the UBS Group CIO) *"to discuss [Autonomy's] vendor relationship with UBS"*, following which two telephone conferences were arranged: (a) the first was *"to introduce [Autonomy] to Senior Management within our Compliance Group and for [Autonomy] to provide an overview of their compliance solutions and views on industry best practices"* and was to be attended by the senior technology officers from UBS's London and Zurich offices, including the Global Head of Compliance and the Group Chief CIO ; and (b) the second, which took place on 10

September 2010, was for Autonomy to present its offerings for archiving and e-Discovery, and was attended by even more senior UBS personnel, including the Global Heads of IT (Contracting and Shared Services), of Legal and Compliance IT and of Strategic Planning.

(5) In Q1 2011, Autonomy and UBS began negotiations in which Mr Jaffrey of UBS was closely involved for the software deal that Autonomy had (until now unsuccessfully) been trying to interest UBS in since Q4 2009; and on 20 July 2011, UBS entered into a master agreement with Autonomy and made a supply order pursuant to that agreement for a package of software including ACA, DS Mail Supervisor and Legal Hold. The licence fees totalled $13,585,860.

799. Mr Hussain submitted in his written closing submissions that:

> *"…the chronology shows that the hardware sales, and proposals for hardware sales, in 2010 were the means by which Autonomy was introduced to and built relationships with the bank's key technical and procurement officers. These were the individuals who would decide what software UBS would buy, and it was the hardware sales that put Autonomy on their radar. As a result of selling hardware at minimal cost, Autonomy was able to close a high margin US$13 million sale of its flagship software."*

800. Other evidence put forward by Mr Hussain of hardware sales being used to facilitate software sales or oil the wheels of a desired or difficult relationship included:

(1) An email from Mr Sullivan to Messrs Hussain, Menell and Egan dated 16 September 2009 sent after receiving a forwarded serious complaint from Citi about deficiencies in Autonomy's provision of support for e-Discovery software supplied to Citi's subsidiary, Primerica. The complainant had stated in an email to Mr Hussain and others that the deficiencies had caused him to question whether he was *"going down the correct path"* in proposing to buy software from Autonomy and that he could not recommend that course to *"Tony DiSanto CTI Head North America and the guy I have to convince we should be buying Autonomy products"*. Mr Sullivan wrote that *"Toni DiSanto is also at least in the loop on our EMC deal with Citi. Pete – I will call to share some thoughts and some history…"* It was submitted on behalf of Mr Hussain that this showed that (a) earlier hardware sales to Citi had the attention of the bank's key procurement officer and (b) Mr Sullivan considered, or at least hoped, that this would influence the general relationship for the better, and translate into software deals then under discussion[146].

[146] It appears from an email dated 17 October 2009 from Mr Robert Mark to Mr Hussain that Autonomy was pursuing two software deals with Citi in Q4 2009, one for the migration of Citi data from Iron Mountain to Zantaz and the other an EAS deal. The same email also suggests that a 23% hardware discount was to (in effect) be compensated by a higher maintenance fee.

(2) An internal Autonomy email dated 5 August 2009 (cc Mr Hussain) from which it appears that Autonomy sold discounted hardware to SJ Berwin Solicitors to facilitate the migration to Autonomy from Vivismo, a competitor.

(3) Three discounted hardware sales to Citi in March 2010, August 2010 and December 2010: (a) the first to encourage Citi to proceed with a proposal in relation to email management; (b) the second, a discounted sale of storage cells to persuade Citi to persist with Digital Safe after "relationship problems"; and (c) the third, a discounted sale of storage cells to facilitate negotiations for the data migration to Digital Safe from Iron Mountain.

(4) An email dated 29 June 2011 from Mr Egan to Mr Mooney outlined the strategic advantages of Autonomy agreeing to act as a reseller for SGI in return for SGI embedding Autonomy software[147].

(5) An email dated 20 December 2010 from Mr Egan to Mr Dan Manners of Deutsche Bank from which it appears that Autonomy offered Deutsche Bank discounted hardware to encourage the bank to sign off on a deal for the IDOL-isation of its Digital Safe.

801. Mr Hussain contended that these were merely documented examples of the type of dealings between Autonomy and its customers and suppliers. He suggested that *"based on Mr Egan's and Mr Sullivan's evidence, [they] happened all the time in face-to-face meetings and by telephone…"* He supported this with the following:

(1) Mr Sullivan informed HP after the Acquisition that his *modus operandi* was to negotiate the initial discount with the hardware supplier and that, on at least some occasions, this would be followed by direct negotiations with the customer.

(2) Mr Hussain offered two examples from the evidence to support this. Thus, in March 2010, Mr Sullivan met representatives of Bank of New York Mellon to discuss the possibility of Autonomy supplying it with Dell hardware. On 10 June 2011, Mr Sullivan informed Mr Hussain that he was engaging directly with JPMC's procurement team to offer them direct incentives in relation to hardware sales.

802. Such or similar conversations were relied on also by Dr Lynch, whose evidence in his supplemental witness statement was that in seeking to encourage BofA to enter into a software sale before the end of Q4 2010 he had had *"several private conversations"* with a senior director of BofA, Mr Simon Mackenzie-Smith (then head of BofA in London) when he:

[147] Which Mr Egan depicted as not only initiating a *"strategic sale relationship into the Federal space where we have decided to invest heavily"* but also (and illustrating the dual purpose) *"to sell with SGI and work to add HW to our book of business and add SW to SGI in a lucrative quarter."*

> *"sought Mr MacKenzie-Smith's assistance in encouraging the bank's procurement team to prioritise the deal, [and] emphasised that Autonomy was a big supplier of software and hardware to the bank."*

803. However, this was not accepted by the Claimants. They urged me to reject this on the footing that it was unsupported by documentation or by any witness evidence from Mr Mackenzie-Smith, had not been referred to in any communication in the period and had not been mentioned by Dr Lynch in his first witness statement. For reasons I have set out later in this Chapter (see paragraphs 1143 to 1155) when dealing specifically with the BofA transaction in question, I have concluded that whatever discussions there were, and even if Dr Lynch did in passing mention the previous discounted hardware sales, the mention of them had no immediate or discernible effect. The evidence of Mr Reagan Smith, who was negotiating the deal for BofA, was to the effect that he had never heard of any such discounted sales, and accordingly they had no influence on the negotiations at all.

804. Another point made in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions in seeking to show that Autonomy was discriminating in its hardware sales was that Autonomy was not prepared to take hardware sales where they did not fit with the strategy explained above. There was some factual foundation for this. For example, the evidence appeared to show that Autonomy was not interested in the revenue that could have been obtained from providing services to EMC customers – even pass-through services where the obligation to provide services would be passed on by Autonomy. It refused to provide services despite some pressure from EMC: as Mr Hussain wrote at the time, "*I don't want us fronting any of the services on behalf of EMC. If it means the deals disappear then I think we have to accept that*"; and he persisted in this position even after Mr Sullivan gave his view that a refusal to provide services "*will be a disaster. All the deals will go away and we will ruin our relationship.*"

805. Dr Lynch submitted that had the aim of the strategy been to drive revenue, Autonomy would not have taken this position; and that if it had been pursuing revenue as an end in itself, it would not have confined its hardware sales to its actual or potential software customers: it would have sold to any company that was prepared to buy discounted hardware. The Defendants relied in this regard on an analysis prepared for Deloitte in January 2011 which had shown that 75% of the hardware sales in the period Q3 2009 to Q4 2010 were made to software customers of Autonomy who entered into large software deals in 2009 and 2010.

806. Dr Lynch accepted that the sales gave Autonomy a small secondary source of revenue; but he was adamant that there is nothing improper in that. As mentioned previously (see paragraphs 633 and 728 above) he accepted that the hardware sales gave Mr Hussain a degree of flexibility that he would not otherwise have in meeting targets and plugging any gaps in revenue: but he presented that as a perfectly legitimate benefit. Autonomy's 2010 Annual Report made clear that one of the risks which the company faced was "*fluctuations in results due to quarterly reporting, and variability in results*

due [to] late-in-the-quarter purchasing cycles common in the software industry" and that to mitigate that risk it engaged in "*Close management of sales pipelines on a quarterly basis to improve visibility in results expectations.*"

807. Dr Lynch added to this the consideration that not only were hardware sales logistically complex (as explained by Ms Harris, see paragraph 730 above), but also it would have been counterproductive for Autonomy to use loss making hardware sales as a tool in a scheme to inflate its revenues and to portray itself as a "*a high-margin software company whose revenues were growing rapidly*", as the Claimants allege. The strategy depressed rather than inflated Autonomy's margins, and other metrics that were important to investors and analysts. In short, whilst headline revenue was increased, profit margins were eroded, as also were critical valuation criteria such as earnings momentum, organic revenue growth and cash generation/flow. The point relied on by Dr Lynch was illustrated by calculations, which were put to Dr Lynch in re-examination. These showed that Autonomy's organic revenue growth would have been significantly higher if the hardware transactions were stripped out, both for Q2 2011 and H1 2011 (in each case, compared against the equivalent period the previous year).

808. Thus, the Core Business Organic Growth Rate Calculation in Autonomy's interim results up to 30 June 2011 gave growth rates of 15% (Q2 2011) and 17% (H1 2011). Adjusting these figures to remove the "pure hardware" sales listed by the Claimants in Schedule 1 of the RRAPoC, those figures are increased to 28% (Q2 2011) and 21% (H1 2011). Of course, according to the periods compared, different results going the other way may be obtained: and the Claimants cross-examined Dr Lynch on such different comparisons. But the Defendants contended that the point endured that, in the key period before the acquisition, organic growth increased if hardware was stripped out; and that if hardware sales were a ruse, as the Claimants claimed, artificially to inflate the apparent value of Autonomy, then according to those valuation criteria, it backfired.

809. All relevant witnesses had to accept (though some were reluctant) that stripping out hardware would have increased profit margin and cash generation/flow, as did HP's investigating accountants Ernst & Young in 2012. Thus:

(1) Even one of Autonomy's then harshest critics, Mr Morland, accepted (eventually) when cross-examined that higher growth rates would have given a higher valuation (though he also stressed that the decrease in sales would have exerted downward pressure which he considered to be greater).

(2) Mr Apotheker, somewhat obstinately and ultimately unsuccessfully, cavilled against this conclusion in cross-examination; and in particular, he initially sought to maintain and defend a point that he had made in his witness statement that but for the hardware sales Autonomy would not only have been a smaller company in revenue terms (which is obviously true) but also that it would have had *"significantly lower*

profit margins" (which almost equally obviously is incorrect in circumstances where, as was common ground, Autonomy's accounts did include all losses and costs of hardware sales, and the issue is whether the separate source should have been disclosed).

(3) Mr Giles made a similar point: "*Without hardware sales – which were loss-making – the Autonomy business may have lower revenues, but it would have generated more profits and more cash*."

(4) Mr Pearson explained that "*because Autonomy's hardware sales were made at a loss, the sales actually depressed Autonomy's cash flow, profit and EPS. Given EPS was the key valuation driver, these sales would more likely have the effect of reducing Autonomy's value, not increasing it.*" In his view, a missed earnings target was more likely to have an adverse impact than a missed revenue target, and loss-making hardware sales would only make it more difficult for Autonomy to hit its earnings target.

(5) Ernst & Young reached a similar conclusion in December 2012, in its paper addressing "*our considerations of the allegations on the original valuation of Autonomy at Q4'11*":

"Gross treatment of hardware pass-through

The Autonomy standalone hardware sold in FY 10 and FY11 (prior to acquisition (January – September)) was roughly $105 million and $85 million respectively. Having evaluated ASC 605-45-15 – Principal Agent Considerations Management concluded that the majority of indicators support net accounting treatment.

While this does impact the presentation of the income statement we do not believe these items have an impact on the "run-rate" cash flows of the business. <u>Since Autonomy sold the hardware at a loss, these transaction reduced cash flows</u>. Alternatively, HP may have considered different growth rate assumptions Therefore, it is unclear as the impact on HP's used DCF valuation model that was used to estimate a fair value of the Autonomy business."

810. Pausing there briefly, the mathematical logic that loss-making sales will reduce gross margin seems clear. However, I shall return later to discuss whether that correlation was a disincentive to using hardware sales as a means of enabling Autonomy to generate revenue or an incentive to the Defendants devising ways in which to account for hardware sales so as to attenuate the adverse effect (in particular, as will be seen, by inventively accounting for the costs).

811. Returning to the Defendants' presentation, and lastly under this heading, and in relation to the Claimants' point that the Defendants' presentation of the

rationale of the hardware reselling strategy lacked any documentary support, I should deal with a dispute about a document which was uploaded onto the trial Magnum system only after the conclusion of the evidence. The document comprises an email exchange on 2 September 2009 between Dr Lynch and Messrs Egan, Hussain and Dr Menell, with the subject heading *"key customer strategy"*.

812. The Defendants relied on this email exchange to underpin their case as to the challenges which Dr Lynch explained the hardware reselling strategy was meant to address, and to contradict the Claimants' point that the explanation had no documentary support. But what Mr Miles described in his oral closing submissions as *"an important document in the case"* the Claimants sought to dismiss as *"pretextual"* and in any event, in its singularity or egregiousness, simply demonstrative of the dearth of documentary evidence supporting the Defendants' case.

813. The exchange is thus of some relevance (a) for what it says, (b) as to whether it was indeed contrived or pretextual, but also (c) as another litmus test of the honesty of the Defendants and the reliability of the record they have put forward.

814. The first in the thread was an email from Dr Lynch to Mr Egan, Mr Hussain and Dr Menell which the Claimants depicted as pretextual:

> *"As we have achieved scale in a set of major accounts such as Bloomberg, Citi, jpmc etc and are dealing at CIO level let me make it clear I am happy to supply these firms with the full turnkey package in order to maintain key supplier status....sw hw services etc so we cement our vital key supplier status. This is so strategic and valuable in the long term that even if a sub component of this strategy is at a loss that is fine...overall keeping the strategic nature of the relationship will pay dividends."*

815. Mr Egan responded as follow:

> *"Agreed, as evidenced by the continued orders from JPMC etc for extended areas of software that in part come from our status as large scale and strategic supplier."*

816. The Defendants relied on this exchange as encapsulating and demonstrating the fundamental aspects of the rationale for the programme, that is (a) consolidating relationships with hardware suppliers and (b) consolidating and developing relationships with key customers such as Bloomberg, Citi, JPMC and the like, as the means of (c) protecting and promoting Autonomy's software business.

817. The Claimants sought to interpret the reference to a *"full turnkey package"* as a reference to appliances; but Mr Miles in his closing submissions rejected this

and insisted that it was a reference to *"the full series of suppliers: software, hardware, services, etc."*

818. Of course, that interpretation was Mr Miles' gloss; and in that regard and more generally, the Claimants invited me to discount the document in any event on the ground that it had been put forward too late for any examination of witnesses about it. But Mr Miles pointed out that the document was in the Claimants' own disclosure, and although lately uploaded onto the Magnum trial bundle, it had always been part of the wider *'corpus'* of disclosed and available documents. He submitted that, on that basis, if they considered the emails in question to be, or wished to explore whether they were, pretextual they should have identified them and then cross-examined the respective authors of each email to give him the opportunity to deal with any doubt as to its meaning, any contention as to its authenticity, and any insinuation or allegation that it had been contrived to *'paper the record.'* They had not done so, and should not now be heard to make any such contention or allegation.

819. Eventually, and as foreshadowed above, the Claimants' substantive response was that:

(1) The simple fact that this is an example of only one or two documents that Dr Lynch has been able to find undermines rather than supports his contention as to the purpose of the hardware program being a marketing one;

(2) Especially having not (as they put it) had the opportunity of cross-examining Dr Lynch, it cannot, in the context of $200m worth of hardware being sold in the Relevant Period, alter the conclusion to be drawn from many contemporaneous documents passing between them that the primary purpose of the programme was revenue generation rather than anything else;

(3) Furthermore, the email was "pretextual", in that (so they alleged):

i. it was sent "out of the blue" by Dr Lynch to his core management team but notably not Mr Sullivan: there was no need for Dr Lynch to convey his thoughts in this way, unless the email was designed for some ulterior purpose;

ii. it is wholly uncharacteristically formal in content and style and it reads as if it is designed for the record;

iii. its factual basis is contrived: Autonomy was not dealing at CIO level in relation to these hardware sales, which were instead co-ordinated and brought to Autonomy by EMC. Nor is there any documentary support for any dealings taking place between Autonomy and the customers at CIO level in relation to these pure hardware sales;

iv. Autonomy finance department needed something to persuade Deloitte to allow Autonomy to account for these hardware sales

how they wished, and the strong inference is that this email was part of that process and designed to put in place a paper trail.

820. In response to those submissions of the Claimants that both emails of 2 September 2009 were pretextual, Mr Miles submitted in his oral closing that:

(1) In order to accept that it was a pre-textual email, it would be necessary to *"postulate someone you're trying to fool"*: whilst the Claimants had contended that Deloitte was the intended audience, the email in question was not the sort that would ever go to Deloitte, nor is there anything to suggest that Deloitte would ever have asked or looked for emails of this kind; and there was no evidence that it had been shown to Deloitte;

(2) Contrary to the Claimants' suggestion, there is evidence of dealings at CIO level. Mr Miles cited an email chain from 17 July 2009 to 22 July 2009:

(3) This began with an email from Mr Sullivan to Mr Hussain, Mr Egan and Mr Mooney stating:

> *"We want to identify our mutual large customers where we can become their EMC reseller. This will be the easiest path. DB, Citi, & JPMC are very large customers. Who are our highest level contacts there? What other companies do we have at CIO level contacts with that we can leverage?"*

(4) Mr Egan's response stated:

> *"Updated*
>
> *Morgan Stanley-Not so good as we alreayd [sic] have Hitachi thing going and Morgan expressed their preference ot [sic] us so I would not involve EMC*
>
> *Eli Lilly-Perfect, My relationship is with Mike Heim, CIO*
> *GSK-Perfect, Ingo Elfering, VP IT Strategy at GlaxoSmithKline*
> *SOC Gen-*
> *BofA- I'm going to get you a name of a guy I haven't met yet but who knows us and of me well.*
> *Apple-Dounbt they buy EMC*
> *AT&T-Not mine*
> *Bloomberg-Tom Secunda, Co founder and chief of technology*
> *Bayer-William (Bill) Dodero, GC US*
> *MacAffee-Ron Wills, Associate General Council, and Dave Dewault CEO (former EMC) May be very tight with Billy or they may not get along??*
>
> 1. *JPMC- We are close to Larry Feinsmith, Paul McEwen, Fernando Castenheira, and Guy Chiarello*
> 2. *Deutsche Bank-Firstly, let Billy know we could team up on the Storage Buy Back RFP at DB coming from Rolf Riemenschnitter and Chares White. I*

know Charles White very well. Dan Manners is also a big champ and recently promoted…"

All this was consistent with the emails in question.

(5) Although in other contexts, Mr Egan had accepted that he had concocted, and had accused others of, concocting pretextual documents[148], this was not such a context, and he accepted when cross-examined in these proceedings that he could not point to any evidence to support the assertion as against Dr Lynch and, furthermore, had not suggested any such thing to the US Grand Jury some time earlier than his witness statement.

(6) In fact, the emails are consistent more generally with the evidence of Mr Egan in these proceedings, to the effect that the hardware sales had benefitted the software selling by the company and that was their purpose: there was no reason to think that he was being pretextual in what he said.

(7) Mr Miles also submitted that, despite only being uploaded to the electronic repository of documents for this trial after Dr Lynch's evidence, the email was disclosed by the Claimants years ago and was part of the Claimants' disclosure so that they did have the opportunity to cross-examine him on this document. If the Claimants had wished to characterise the document as pretextual they should have said so and cross-examined Dr Lynch about it. It was not open to them now, having themselves disclosed the document and not tested Dr Lynch, to contend that the document was false and dishonest.

821. I accept that the email exchange was curiously and uncharacteristically formal. But I doubt that either Dr Lynch or Mr Egan would have thought to leave a confected exchange of emails in case of litigation, kept the exchange away from view and then contrived to pull it out of a hat in court late in the day. I have not been persuaded that the exchange was pretextual. As to its introduction into the trial bundle after cross-examination of Dr Lynch had concluded, both sides share the 'blame' (though the word is too strong for an oversight in respect of one document amongst 11 million or so). As a document in their own disclosure, the Claimants must be taken to have accepted its authenticity as a document; and though that does not, in my view, extend to accepting that its content was not pretextual, if they wished to allege that it was, they should have identified it and put it to Dr Lynch if they perceived he would rely on it. However, even though it was in the Claimants'

[148] In his evidence in these proceedings, and in the US criminal proceedings, Mr Egan accepted that he had, and he accused others of having, concocted pretextual documents in the context of (a) reciprocal transactions to give apparent credence to Autonomy's stated need for the product it was purchasing; and (b) a transaction with Capax to provide EDD services (as to which see paragraph 1963(2) of this judgment) to give the appearance that the services were actually being provided by Capax (though it is the Claimants' case that they were not).

disclosure, if Dr Lynch wished to rely on it, it was for him and his advisers to see to it that it was included in the bundle in good time.

822. In such circumstances, I will not exclude the exchange; but I will take into account in weighing its effect that it appears to me somewhat contrived; and having had no opportunity to see whether Dr Lynch would be able to dispel that prima facie impression I cannot attach to it such importance as Dr Lynch at a very late stage came to place on it.

(1) The Defendants' case that the strategy was not secret nor the revenue disguised

823. The Defendants also submitted that if there had been an illegitimate scheme to inflate revenue, it would have been carefully concealed: but they were adamant that it was not.

824. The Defendants contended that, on the contrary, the sales were (a) widely discussed within the company and (b) fully disclosed to and reviewed by Deloitte and the Audit Committee.

Discussion within Autonomy itself

825. The Defendants submitted that the strategy and the hardware sales were well known within the company, and that there is no evidence that Autonomy concealed or attempted to conceal either.

826. Mr Sullivan explained that when the hardware reselling strategy was discussed and formally launched at the Loudham Hall meeting in July 2009, there were at least 10 people present; and he said that the sales were well known within the company. Dr Lynch's evidence in his first witness statement was that *"a wide group of people knew about Autonomy's hardware sales, including employees, customers and suppliers."*

827. The hardware sales were recorded separately in Autonomy's ledgers, were open to analysis (including being made available to HP after the acquisition), and would inevitably have been discovered by a future purchaser. In this regard, Ms Harris noted that:

> "*The ledger codings clearly separated hardware sales and costs from software. For example, 47000 referred to hardware revenue, 57000 referred to the cost of hardware, and there was also a specific marketing code for hardware costs attributable to sales and marketing.*"

828. Mr Sullivan said that he had "*never concealed [the fact that Autonomy was selling hardware] and never thought there was a reason to. In fact, I tried to make it clear.*" When asked whether he had been told to tell customers that Autonomy was reselling discounted hardware, he answered:

> *"Absolutely. In fact, it actually said that in the contracts and it said it in all the POs.[149] Or most of the POs I should say…"*

[149] Purchase Orders.

When asked whether as regards the EMC and Dell transactions he told the customers that the sales were part of a marketing programme, he unequivocally answered *"Yes"*.

829. Mr Egan (who also had attended the Loudham Hall meeting) was aware of the hardware reselling strategy, though not its detail. So was Ms Gustafsson/Prentis. As I shall come back to in explaining the Audit Committee's understanding, Mr Bloomer did not regard the hardware sales as a secret: the topic was regularly and openly discussed during his tenure as Chairman of the Audit Committee, as also Mr Webb confirmed.

830. Understanding of the extent and purpose of the hardware sales programme, however, was, leaving aside the Defendants, Mr Sullivan and what I have termed the clique or cabal of three (see paragraph 833 below), much more limited. The lack of any minute or other record of the Loudham Hall meeting has made it difficult to determine exactly what was stated there to be the purpose, save as it has years later been presented to have been by Dr Lynch. However, given that at that meeting hardware sales of $5 million to $10 million were envisaged to be something of a stretch, I suspect that when the far greater potential had soon become clearer[150], the true purpose may have changed, and become understood only by the few in control of the strategy, and, in particular, the clique or 'cabal'.

831. For example, as will be apparent from my later discussion of Mr Egan's evidence in the context of the SHI/BofA transaction in Q1 2011 (see paragraphs 1140 to 1155 below) that by then at least he had lost touch with the programme, which was being conducted by Mr Sullivan; and his evidence in his witness statement, which on this point was not challenged or unsettled in cross-examination, was that as a general matter he *"did not know which companies had purchased hardware from Autonomy or how much third-party hardware was being sold…*" and usually did not know of hardware sales to his software companies (so that he could not *"use the fact of a prior or contemporaneous hardware sale to promote the software sale that I was trying to make."*)

832. Ms Gustafsson similarly made clear in her witness statement that her understanding was that *"Autonomy's hardware sales were fairly limited and made available only to key customers"* (though it may be noted that her understanding was that these sales were *"with the genuine commercial purpose of maintaining a customer relationship and generating further software sales"*).

833. The overall impression I have formed was that though hardware reselling was not a secret, and nor were there any efforts to keep it so, the hardware reselling strategy had a very low profile within Autonomy. It was directed by the small group I have called the 'cabal' and Dr Lynch, and implemented almost entirely by Mr Sullivan, without any substantial discussion or coordination with Mr Egan or anyone else involved in software sales. The email exchanges

[150] This became clear by mid-July 2009 when, after approaching EMC, Mr Sullivan reported to Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain by email dated 15 July 2009 that he had already got verbal commitments for up to $20 million of hardware and could *"probably get twice that if you want"* (see paragraph 782 above also).

concerning the details and targets of hardware sales appear to be almost entirely confined within that group. It does not appear from the evidence that, beyond that small group, it was a matter which aroused either interest or concern. That in itself may be indicative of the fact that the hardware reselling strategy had very little day to day nexus with the mainstream software business.

Disclosure to and review by Deloitte and the Audit Committee

834. However, there is no dispute about the fact that the nature and extent of Autonomy's hardware sales were fully disclosed to Deloitte and scrutinised in detail. Deloitte had detailed knowledge of the sales and their avowed purpose; and the fact and avowed purpose of the hardware sales programme was also explained to the Audit Committee.

835. I am aware that the successive lead partners, Mr Knights and Mr Mercer, have been severely criticised in a FRC Report in disciplinary proceedings, where it was determined that their approach was insufficiently sceptical, and their ultimate judgments were flawed.[151] But that does not signify that the audit process, as distinct from the judgements made by lead partners, was deficient. The evidence before me revealed a very careful and open audit process, with full cooperation in it by the finance department and all concerned within Autonomy.

836. Mr Bloomer statement in his witness statement that he *"found Deloitte to be thorough and diligent in their audits"* was not challenged; and their reports struck him as *"detailed, open and direct"*.

837. Ms Gustafsson stated in her witness statement that she considered that the process was thorough and robust. Subject to the caveat I mention below as to whether Mr Knights and Mr Mercer lost objectivity and the requisite degree of scepticism[152], I would accept that.

838. I also accept her unchallenged evidence that throughout the audit, Deloitte (who were often on-site at Autonomy) had unfettered access to all Autonomy's files and to the finance department functions and its sales and technical teams. It is a fair inference that the Defendants would have expected any accounting records relating to the hardware reselling to be carefully scrutinised.[153]

[151] I should clarify that although tempted to do so, I have not read that report. At a virtual hearing in February 2021, submissions were made to me on behalf of the Claimants that I should do so; that was opposed by the Defendants. I was not asked to state a decision and did not do so. However, I determined privately that, notwithstanding the eminence of its authors and its status more generally, I should not take account of what was and is opinion evidence, even if akin to expert evidence, which I should not accept collaterally nor weigh with or against the expert evidence admitted and tested in these proceedings.

[152] They may also have lost their way in their response to Mr Hogenson's letter and its aftermath.

[153] However, a gloss on that is important, especially since I understood the Defendants occasionally to take the inference as extending to an expectation that all Autonomy's correspondence would also be open for review. Such an extended inference would not be justified. There were various instances, of which the clearest was extended correspondence between Mr Sullivan and EMC (see paragraph 773 *et seq* below), in which it was clear that Deloitte had not seen or sought to see emails. The impression I have gathered is that, in terms of documentation, Deloitte confined itself to accounting records and neither they nor Autonomy expected Deloitte to be shown or seek out Autonomy's internal or third

839. In cross-examination before me, Mr Welham confirmed the truth of the following evidence he had given in the US criminal trial against Mr Hussain:

> *"Q. ...From 2009, 2010, and 2011, Deloitte knew that Autonomy was reselling EMC and Dell hardware; correct?*
>
> *A. Correct.*
>
> *Q. And Deloitte, the Deloitte audit team, knew how much hardware Autonomy was reselling; correct?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. Probably down to the penny? I mean did you know exactly how much hardware was being sold?*
>
> *A. We would test the majority of the hardware transactions. They would have good – good level of understanding, yes.*
>
> *Q. And Deloitte knew that Autonomy was reselling the hardware at a loss; correct?*
>
> *A. Yes, for the most part.*
>
> *Q. And Deloitte also knew that some of the hardware that Autonomy was reselling was sold without adding any software to it?*
>
> *A. Correct.*
>
> *Q. Deloitte knew that Autonomy was reselling hardware through hardware resellers as well; correct?*
>
> *A. Correct.*
>
> *Q. And all of this was known to and discussed, not only with the Deloitte audit team, but also the audit committee and the board as well?*
>
> *A. Correct."*

party emails unless Autonomy chose to copy them.

840. Mr Welham summarised what Deloitte understood the purpose of the programme to be in cross-examination in the US criminal proceedings as follows[154]:

> *"Q. Deloitte, the Deloitte audit team, understood Autonomy's strategic rationale for selling this hardware at a loss; correct?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And is it fair to say that in the third quarter of 2009, management explained that Autonomy wanted to meet existing and potential customers' demand for one-stop shopping?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. In other words, to be able to supply hardware along with software?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. To big customers?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. Like the banks?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And Autonomy also wanted to develop a relationship in Q3/2009 with a particular hardware supplier, EMC; correct?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> ...
>
> *Q. And in sum, you understood that big picture, Autonomy was selling hardware at a loss to increase its software sales down the road; correct?*
>
> *A. Correct.*

[154] This was in a sequence of questions and answers, the first part of which is quoted in paragraph 839 above. In cross-examination in these proceedings he confirmed the truth of what he had said.

Q. And the audit team, applying your professional scepticism, you considered and you challenged Autonomy on that rationale; right?

A. Yes.

Q. But in the end, you weren't aware of any evidence contradicting management's explanation for the reason for why they were doing these sales; right?

A. Correct."

841. Mr Welham agreed with the following comments made by Mr Mercer in an interview with the FRC about the use of hardware sales as a means of driving software sales and in cross-examination, he confirmed that they accorded with how he saw things at the time:

> *"Yes, I think the most important background or context to make on hardware is that Autonomy had no desire just to sell hardware. This was not a different business. This was not something that they were doing as an end in itself. The only reason they ever sold hardware was to sell more software. That's massively important to get that understanding for all the questions that you – the two or three questions that we need to concentrate on.*
>
> *We were – Richard was and I was completely aware that Autonomy did not want to sell hardware as an end in itself. They were conscious that some of their competitors were offering hardware and software and combinations thereof. They were conscious that the marketplace was becoming ever more competitive. They didn't want to lose out on software sales because their offering was short of this area."*
>
> [My emphasis]

842. Mr Welham also confirmed the statement in the Deloitte Defence in the FRC Proceedings that Deloitte considered that the motivation for the hardware sales as being to drive software sales appeared commercially plausible, and after consideration was accepted as such by the Deloitte audit team. He gave the following evidence:

"Q. But the audit team's position was that there was no problem as such with Autonomy selling hardware for strategic reasons and that also what is called their plain vanilla hardware sales are also okay?

A. Yes."

843. In the absence of evidence from any other of those involved in Deloitte, I take and find that to be Deloitte's understanding, as well as Mr Welham's own, of the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy. That is reinforced by what Autonomy's management told Deloitte in discussions on the connected issue of the allocation of the costs of hardware sales (see paragraph 1262 *et seq.* below).

844. In summary, I consider and find that Deloitte understood from the material they had:

(1) The full extent of the hardware sales, the terms on which they were contractually undertaken and the identities of all suppliers and end-customers concerned;

(2) That the strategy included, indeed largely comprised, the sale of hardware without Autonomy software;

(3) That the effectiveness of the strategy in marketing terms was largely a matter of assertion without documented analysis (except the *"Linkage Analysis"* as to which see below);

(4) The typical structure of hardware sales, including the introduction of Autonomy into existing transactions and the payment by Autonomy of subsidies to end-users, resulting in a loss to Autonomy because the price it paid to the hardware suppliers exceeded the net (of subsidy) price it received from end customers;

(5) That the finance department repeatedly demonstrated their determination that no distinction be drawn between that revenue and revenues from Autonomy's IDOL Product core business, and that the revenues were combined when described in Autonomy's published information.

845. In my judgment, Deloitte did not understand (or perhaps, through Mr Knights, chose not to understand) that the "strategy" was not to drive software sales, but to use hardware reselling as a flexible resource from which to make up for shortfalls in software sales. Deloitte (who, as I understand it, did not see Autonomy's internal emails) could not know or (for whatever reason) did not focus on what truly lay behind the hardware sales, nor the careful calculation of what hardware sales were necessary in light of the identification of any shortfall with growing precision as each quarter came to its end. If Deloitte were misled, or fed a line which they were prepared to swallow, it was not as to the basic facts: it was as to the real over-arching purpose of the hardware sales in the minds of the Defendants and the 'cabal'. The key part (which I have underlined) of what Mr Mercer told the FRC in the passage quoted in paragraph 841 above, and the part which he himself said was *"massively important"*, was the perception that *"The only reason they ever sold hardware*

was to sell more software". Led by Mr Knights and subsequently Mr Mercer in the Cambridge office, they allowed themselves to use the lens that Mr Hussain and the 'cabal' provided to them. If Deloitte were at fault, it was in accepting that justification and thereafter in continuing to accept it despite growing concern as to the lack of documentary support for it, and management's severe allergic reaction against any revelation of the strategy in any published information or public calls. How they came to accept it, and how Mr Knights came to abandon any scepticism, is at the heart of the hardware case, for the strategy depended on it.

846. Turning to the Audit Committee, Mr Bloomer (who became Chairman of the Audit Committee in August 2010) made clear that he did not regard the hardware sales as a secret. His evidence in his witness statement was that the existence and disclosure of hardware was regularly and thoroughly considered by Deloitte and discussed at every meeting of the Audit Committee whilst he was its Chairman: it was *"always one of the key accounting issues we considered."*

847. That the Audit Committee was fully kept informed is apparent from Deloitte's reports to the Audit Committee quarterly, half yearly and yearly on their review of Autonomy's accounts and notes prepared by Mr Hussain, with Mr Chamberlain, also quarterly (which were always circulated to Dr Lynch in advance). By way of example:

(1) In their Q3 2009 Report, Deloitte, having set out that revenue from hardware sales for the quarter ($36 million) amounted to 19% of the total revenues for the period and that the sales (disclosed to be at a loss of some $9 million) did not include any IDOL software component, outlined the explanation they had themselves accepted: this was that the sales reflected *"early targeting of the merging market of appliance solutions"*. This was elaborated later in the Report as involving *"the provision of appliance related solutions to leading multi-national financial institutions"* and it was stated that to that end Autonomy had entered into a *"significant hardware and marketing purchase"* with EMC to provide (a) hardware for delivery to existing Autonomy customers (b) ongoing *"joint sales and marketing support to promote further sales in this emerging market"* and to (c) *"begin to develop an appliance based hardware and software configuration whereby Autonomy software might be fully integrated into EMC hardware for products aimed at the appliance sector and major institutions"*.

(2) In their Q1 2010 Report, again under the heading *"Key Risks"*, Deloitte noted that included in revenues for the quarter was $12.2 million of hardware sales (mostly sales of Dell hardware to Morgan Stanley, SHI and Fanny Mae, but also sales to *"other blue-chip companies in order to become the preferred supplier for all archiving requirements, including both software and hardware")* at an overall loss. In a further explanation which is of more particular relevance to the related issue as to the allocation of costs between COGS and Sales and Marketing expenses (see paragraphs 1412 to 1419 below) Deloitte stated that Autonomy had had to pay a price considerably higher than they would

normally have to pay in order *"to gain a strategic partnership and become the preferred hardware reseller with EMC, Dell, SHI and HDS."*

(3) In their Q2 2010 Interim Report, Deloitte (again under *"Key Risks"*) reported hardware sales of $27.5 million at a loss of approximately $3.8 million. They explained management's rationale in entering into these loss-making contracts as being *"that Autonomy is seeking to develop a long term strategic relationship with the end-users in order to secure future profitable software sales."* Deloitte referred for the first time to a *Linkage Analysis* (see paragraphs 1477 to 1496 below) *"demonstrating strong linkage between the loss making hardware sales and highly profitable software sales"* and stated that having reviewed it they had accepted that the loss of $3.8 million should be allocated to Sales and Marketing.

(4) In their Q3 2010 Report, under the heading as ever of *"Key Risks",* Deloitte signalled loss-making hardware sales of $26 million (10% of total revenues). Deloitte again reported that they had reviewed and accepted *"management's analysis of the linkage between the loss making strategic sales and subsequent highly profitable software sales…";*

(5) In their FY 2010 Report, (as always under *"Key [Audit] Risks"*) Deloitte noted (mostly loss-making) hardware sales of $29 million for Q4 2010, representing some 11% of Group revenues. The rationale for this was stated to be *"in order to procure future, profitable software sales."* Deloitte also notified a change in proposed accounting treatment of the associated costs of the sales. They explained that given that Autonomy had purchased and on-sold $110 million of hardware during 2010, *"management now considers that the level of sales being made is equivalent to that of a hardware reseller"* and proposed that as:

> *"an equivalent sized reseller would expect to make a modest profit on such sales…it would better reflect the nature and volume of the strategic hardware sales if Autonomy recognised an equivalent margin on these sales, estimated at 5%...[which] would then reflect the true sales and marketing expense incurred in making these sales in order to procure further, profitable software sales."*

(6) Deloitte added to this that the total amount thus proposed by management to be allocated to sales and marketing for the year would be $16.4 million, which would be lower than for 2009 ($37.8 million) because:

> *"those initial [2009] hardware purchases (mainly from EMC) including an amount paid for additional marketing services and future development costs as part of an effort to build strategic relationships with those suppliers…No*

equivalent marketing services or future development costs were purchased with the 2010 hardware, which is evidenced by the much smaller net loss made on these sales."

(7) Deloitte stated its response to these proposals which was that (a) they would accept the allocation to sales and marketing expenses of a sum of $4 million equal to the loss on hardware sales in Q4 2010 but (b) this would be justified as a *"judgmental adjustment"* not as proposed by Autonomy's management because (c) management's proposal did not, in Deloitte's judgement, *"better reflect the nature of these transactions"* and was *"inconsistent with management's assessment that the group has just one Operating Segment, being sales of IDOL software."*

(8) In their Q1 2011 Report, Deloitte reported loss making hardware sales of $20.4 million for the quarter, again using the description *"strategic"* to connote that the sales were *"only made at a loss in order to procure further, profitable software sales"*. They also noted that *"Management has further extended its analysis determining the strong linkage between the loss making hardware sales and subsequent highly profitable software sales"* and responded to it only by stating that *"given the scale and consistency in allocation with the prior quarters, [we] accept the decision taken by management to allocate the loss of $2.0 million to sales and marketing expense in Q1."*

(9) In their Q2 2011 Report, Deloitte noted loss making hardware sales in the quarter of $20.9 million (some 8% of Group revenues, down from the previous quarter) and recorded the same rationale for those *"strategic sales"*.

848. Like Deloitte, and in reality following their lead, Mr Bloomer and the Audit Committee accepted that hardware sales were purely to promote and protect the software business. Satisfied of that, and satisfied in consequence that no separate business requiring segmental accounting was required, the Audit Committee was content.

(1) Defendants' support of and belief in the purpose asserted and its accounting treatment

849. Two warning notes at the outset of this section are appropriate.

850. First, not only did the Claimants reject the honesty of the Defendants in respect of the asserted purpose or rationale of the hardware reselling strategy, but they also relied, as a further manifestation of dishonesty, on what they regarded as the Defendants' deceptive presentation of the programme to Deloitte, especially to obtain the accounting treatment of its costs which they needed to perpetuate its disguise. I return to deal with those matters in greater detail later. This section addresses the Defendants' case that they honestly believed in the rationale of the hardware reselling strategy they avowed and

were reassured in that by Deloitte's acceptance of it, and of Autonomy's accounting treatment of the sales revenue it generated (albeit at a stand-alone loss).

851. Secondly, especially given the fact that the question of whether Deloitte properly understood the relevant requirements (which the Claimants submitted and Mr Holgate was definite they did not) was one of the matters in issue and determined against Mr Knights and Mr Mercer by the FRC's Disciplinary Tribunal, I should at the outset clarify that, in my view, what is of relevance in the present context is what Deloitte and the Audit Committee understood at the time the Standards to require, and their approval of the accounts and advice to Autonomy on the basis of their understanding. Whether they were right or wrong is a matter relevant to issues numbered (2) to (4) in the Claimants' summary of the main issues in the hardware case (as set out in paragraph 638 above), which I address in turn later; but it is not relevant in the present context. Even if Deloitte were wrong (and Mr Holgate is adamant that they were) the fact remains that they did give the approval and advice then; and if the Defendants really did rely on it then, they are entitled to rely on it now, unless of course they knew that Deloitte had given it no proper consideration, or that their conclusion was plainly and obviously wrong and/or based on a material misunderstanding of the underlying facts.

852. The Defendants' case is that they honestly believed, in reliance on the approval of both Deloitte and the Audit Committee throughout the Relevant Period, that:

(1) having regard to the purpose of the programme, there was no requirement to distinguish hardware revenue from software revenue either in the narrative to the accounts (what the Claimants called the 'front-end') or in the accounts themselves (what the Claimants called the 'back-end');

(2) the disclosure provided was in accordance with the requirements set out in Accounting Standards devised to enable the presentation of a true and fair view of a company's financial position;

(3) the further disclosure they provided, in particular in '*Supplemental Information'* in the 'front-end', was fair and approved by Deloitte; and

(4) the decision whether or not to give further voluntary disclosure either in accounting or narrative form was a commercial one taken for good commercial reasons and in good faith, after careful iterative exchanges with Deloitte.

853. Deloitte considered the issue of disclosure from two angles:

(1) they considered whether or not the Accounting Standards mandatorily required disclosure of revenue from hardware sales separately from other revenues; and

(2) in their Reports to the Audit Committee, they identified for discussion anything they considered merited further disclosure and made recommendations in that regard.

854. As to (1) in the preceding paragraph (paragraph 853(1)), there is a variety of contemporaneous documents which show that Deloitte considered the relevant Accounting Standards relating to the separate identification and disclosure of sources of revenue at the time:

(1) Their principal focus was on the issue of segmental accounting and the application of IFRS 8. Mr Welham said that the audit team considered IFRS 8 particularly carefully, because it was a new piece of guidance, introduced in 2009. Deloitte approved management's assessment that Autonomy had just one operating segment. Their analysis specifically considered the hardware sales, in order to assess whether they would meet the criteria to be classed as a separate operating segment under IFRS 8, and concluded that they would not. For the FY 2009 audit, this conclusion was reviewed by Mr Barden, in the context of a "*Consultation on difficult or contentious matters.*" The Financial Reporting Review Panel was also happy with the analysis. The Claimants accepted for the purpose of these proceedings that this determination was correct.

(2) As well as considering whether there was more than one operating segment, Deloitte's reports to the Audit Committee for FY 2009 and FY 2010 showed that Deloitte considered whether there was a need for entity-wide disclosures (under IFRS 8 §§32-34).[155] Those provisions apply even where a company has only one operating segment for the purposes of IFRS 8. This point was also considered in consultation with Mr Barden, who agreed with the audit team's determination that no analysis of revenues by product type was required for the purposes of §32.

(3) Deloitte considered the application of IAS 18 §35 and (as Mr Welham confirmed when cross-examined) determined that Autonomy was required to break out services, as that was mandatory (under IAS 18 §35), but that there was no mandatory requirement to disclose hardware separately in the accounts.

855. In considering these matters, Deloitte were well aware of the extent and nature of the hardware sales (see above). Deloitte specifically addressed their attention to the <u>extent</u> of the sales: the working paper on operating segments for the FY 2010 audit stated that:

[155] The FY 2010 Report to the Audit Committee stated "*Under IFRS 8, additional entity-wide disclosures are prescribed that are required even when an entity has only one reportable segment. These include information about each product and service or groups of products and services ... As part of our audit of the notes to the financial statements, we shall review the disclosure made in relation to operating segments and we shall ensure that this meets the requirements of IFRS 8.*"

> "*The level of these sales has continued to increase on a quarterly basis and now contribute approximately 12% of the group's revenue in FY 2010. On the basis that it now represents a relatively significant proportion of Autonomy's business, we must consider whether it would meet the criteria to be classed as a separate Operating Segment under IFRS 8.*"

856. In assessing whether or not entity-wide disclosure was required under IFRS 8 §§32-34, Deloitte were fully aware of all the various details identified by Mr Holgate as relevant to such an assessment as being liable to *"influence decisions that users make on the basis of financial information"*: absolute amounts of hardware sales, the amounts of hardware sales relative to total revenues, the significant effect that hardware sales had on growth percentages, the very different gross profit percentages on hardware and software, as well as the fact that Autonomy described itself as a *"pure software company"*. Deloitte also knew that Autonomy was rated in the market as a *"beat and raise"* stock with particular importance being attached to (and its share price being liable to fall in the event of any material decline in) its organic revenue growth and high gross margins.

857. Mr Welham confirmed in cross-examination that his view (and Deloitte's) at the time was correctly summarised in the following passage of Deloitte's Defence in the FRC Proceedings:

> "*There was no need for Autonomy to disclose the hardware sales in the financial statements because Autonomy was a single segment business*";
>
> and further that:
>
> "*there are no mandatory disclosure requirements for the financial statements prescribed by IFRS (or other legislation) to disclose the 'existence, nature and extent of pure hardware sales'.*"

858. In relation to FY 2009, the absence of disclosure in respect of hardware sales was a point specifically considered by Ms Lisa Bennett of Deloitte's professional standards review team. Her note raised the question why there was no mention of the hardware sales in note 2(e) to the financial statements. The response given (by, so it appears, the audit team) was "*Not material.*" Mr Welham confirmed that this assessment, founded it would seem on a numerical consideration, rather than on any broader consideration of what it might tell about Autonomy's quality of earnings, was a further reason for Deloitte's advice that there was no need to disclose hardware in the back-end of the accounts.

859. Whether the Accounting Standards required separate disclosure of hardware revenue in the accounts was also a matter repeatedly considered with the Audit Committee (especially under Mr Bloomer's chairmanship from mid-2010 onwards):

(1) According to Dr Lynch, careful consideration was given to advice from Mr Knights in Q3 2009 that disclosure of the hardware sales should be discussed since there was a prospect that it could be mandatory at year-end *"particularly if they became material to the numbers"*. His evidence in cross-examination was that although he had no specific memory of it, he thought that there had been a decision not to disclose at that time because *"we didn't expect the numbers to be material"*.

(2) In 2010, shortly after joining the Audit Committee in mid-2010, Mr Bloomer had a long discussion with Mr Mercer, addressing the decision not to separate out hardware as a separate operating segment. Certainly during his tenure as Chairman of the Audit Committee, the Audit Committee discussed the level of hardware sales regularly with Deloitte, in considering whether further disclosure was required. Mr Bloomer stated in his witness statement that the hardware sales and their disclosure were regularly and thoroughly considered by Deloitte, and discussed at every Audit Committee he chaired: indeed, "*It was always one of the key accounting issues we considered.*"

860. In cross-examination, Mr Bloomer explained that:

> *"A. ... it was a regular topic at the audit committee, not least because we were discussing, certainly at least two of the audit committees, whether there was a need under what was then a relatively recent accounting standard to split out separate segments of the business, and there was clearly a view for a range of reasons that are set out that there was no need to do that for hardware. We also considered it for a geographical split where there was some information given but again that wasn't felt to be an operating segment. It was quite clear in both Deloitte's mind, management's mind, Deloitte's and mine, that we had one operating segment.*
>
> *Q. Did Deloitte give any indication that you can recall as to the level of sales at which it would then become an issue?*
>
> *A. No. No. And as I say, the levels of -- the proportion of hardware sales started to fall anyway so it became less relevant."*

861. Mr Bloomer, whom the Claimants described as *"a straightforward and reliable witness"*, explained his view that, in circumstances where, as he emphasised his perception to be, *"hardware sales were not a strategic goal of the company (as opposed to a tool to further software sales)"* and the assessment had been made that hardware was not a separate operating

segment, the decision not to disclose hardware sales separately naturally followed. Viewing the matter as an issue relating to segmental accounting and whether the hardware sales undermined the conclusion that Autonomy was a single segment (software) business, he was adamant that:

> *"The decision not to disclose hardware sales separately was not an attempt to hide anything. It just did not make sense to separate out hardware sales because we did not consider hardware sales a separate part of Autonomy's business. Had hardware been a higher portion of sales, say 25% or more, we would have considered whether hardware sales had become more important such that it was, in fact, a separate operating segment or, in any event, significant enough to warrant further disclosure."*

862. What I take to be the Audit Committee's overall view was summarised by Mr Bloomer in his witness statement, in two passages which were not challenged, as follows:

    (1) *"I really did not see the disclosure of hardware sales as a major concern at the time. I saw it as a tool Autonomy used to develop key relationships, get big sales over the line and maintain the headline price of its software. The purpose of hardware sales, as I understood it, was to drive Autonomy's software sales. This did not necessarily mean there was always a direct link between any particular sale of hardware and a sale of software. Sales of hardware and software were not necessarily simultaneous but, as I understood it, the underlying strategy behind hardware sales was always to further software sales."*

    (2) *"Had hardware been a higher portion of sales, say 25% or more, we would have considered whether hardware sales had become more important such that it was, in fact, a separate operating segment or, in any event, significant enough to warrant further disclosure.*"

863. In short, neither Deloitte nor the Audit Committee ever considered that further disclosure of the hardware reselling strategy was mandatorily required by the Accounting Standards; and both were content to approve Autonomy's published information in respect of its financial position in the Relevant Period accordingly. Mr Webb QC, Autonomy's Chairman, gave the following unchallenged evidence:

> *"I can remember occasionally discussing hardware sales and accounting for hardware. I was not a member of the Audit Committee, but I attended Audit Committee meetings once or twice and met with Deloitte from time to time. I do not recall the context of the conversation, but I remember someone explaining the sales of hardware using an analogy along the lines of "if you sell long playing records, sometimes you have to sell a few gramophones", which I thought was a light-hearted dig at my generation. I do not recall the discussions around the disclosure of hardware being particularly heated.*

> *There was a discussion and the conclusion was to account for hardware sales in whatever way Deloitte said the company was required to account for it.*
>
> *If Deloitte had any concerns, they could have contacted me easily. I feel confident they would have done so had any issues arisen. They never did."*

864. Dr Lynch was equally clear that if Deloitte or the Audit Committee had said that the hardware sales had to be disclosed, they would have been disclosed.

865. However, as the Defendants recognised and accepted, there is a distinction between these decisions as to whether a separation between revenue streams in the accounts was needed (and in particular that there was no need to account for hardware revenues separately), and whether nevertheless some narrative or other non-IFRS disclosure of the nature and extent of hardware sales was required in the front-end of the accounts, or at least advisable.

866. The Defendants countered the two limbs of the Claimants' case in this regard, on the basis that:

    (1) Autonomy always carefully considered any recommendations or suggestions made by Deloitte as to whether further 'narrative' or 'front-end'/non-IFRS disclosure should be provided; but Deloitte always accepted that this was a matter of balance and commercial judgement, and thus ultimately a commercial decision for Autonomy's directors. The Defendants rejected as *"wrong"* the Claimants' argument that Autonomy ignored repeatedly advice from Deloitte to provide further narrative or other non-IFRS disclosure.

    (2) Autonomy provided *Supplemental Metrics* from Q3 2009 to Q2 2011 to assist a better understanding of its business. Nothing was kept from Deloitte. When Deloitte considered the form of disclosure to be potentially misleading, there were discussions between Autonomy and Deloitte which resulted in an amended presentation suggested originally by Deloitte themselves, which Deloitte and the Audit Committee approved.

867. Further as to (1) above, the Defendants accepted that Deloitte did repeatedly press the Audit Committee and Autonomy's management to consider whether further disclosure was required. The following examples illustrate this pressure:

    (1) On 14 October 2009, following receipt of the Strategic Deals Memorandum, Mr Knights wrote to the Defendants noting that there would be an issue at year-end as to whether the hardware sales needed to be disclosed and raised the possibility of disclosure in October 2009, as something that Autonomy might like to consider voluntarily, in case disclosure later became mandatory:

> *"One additional point to be considered at the year end will be whether under IFRS you could be required to disclose hardware sales- particularly if they became material to the numbers. Whilst this is a year end matter, if disclosure did become necessary and in the absence of any previous indication through the year, it would be the first time that this information would be made available to your investor and analyst community. This might be worthy of some consideration at Q3?"*

(2) Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee for Q3 2009 dated 16 October 2009 noted that hardware sales represented 19% of the total revenues for the quarter and that the Autonomy board:

> "*should consider how best to communicate this new opportunity to the shareholders as these revenues are not driven from the organic IDOL technology of the Group*".

Deloitte added that, if hardware sales in the year were significant, there might be a requirement to disclose them in the year-end financial statements.

(3) Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee at Q2 2010 advised that:

> "*Given the increasing significance of hardware sales to the Group's revenues, and the resultant impact on the gross and operating margin in the quarter and half year results we would expect appropriate explanation to be given in the Q2 2010 press release*".

(4) Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee for Q3 2010 again advised that given the:

> "*increasing significance of the hardware sales to the Group's revenues, and the resultant impact on the gross and operating margin in the quarter and half year results we would expect appropriate explanation to be given in the Q3 2010 press release*".

(5) Deloitte also suggested that it was likely that in light of questions raised at the Q2 2010 press conference:

> *"it would be helpful to include narrative regarding the nature of these revenues in the quarterly report."*

(6) Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee on the 2010 audit stated that "*Given that Autonomy has purchased and on-sold $110 million of hardware during 2010, management now considers that the level of*

sales being made is equivalent to that of a hardware reseller". Deloitte expressed the view that:

> "*Given the increasing significance of hardware sales to the Group's revenues, and the resultant impact on the gross and operating margin in the quarter and full year results, we expect appropriate explanation to be given in the 2010 Annual Report*".

868. However, there was always iterative discussion and according to Dr Lynch, management would always seek to find wording that addressed the concern in discussion with Deloitte. The Defendants provided illustrations of what they presented as a typical iterative approach as follows.

869. The first illustration related to Deloitte's Report to the Audit Committee in Q2 2010 (see paragraph 867 above) and their statement that given the increasing significance of hardware sales to the group's revenues, and the resultant impact on gross and operating margins "*we would expect appropriate explanation to be given in the Q2 2010 press release.*" As to this:

(1) Following the Audit Committee meeting, at which management had agreed to give disclosure in respect of the impact of strategic hardware sales in the front end of the accounts (the narrative part), Mr Chamberlain prepared some proposed wording for Deloitte. Mr Chamberlain's proposal was to say that "*The fall in gross margins in Q2 2010 was in line with our expectations due to Arcpliance sales as discussed last quarter*." Deloitte did not regard that first draft of the wording as adequate.

(2) Further wording, with what Mr Chamberlain described as *"MRL's tweaks"* was accordingly suggested. The revised wording was that "*The small variation in gross margins in Q2 2010 was in line with our expectations due to the sales mix as discussed last quarter.*"

(3) Discussions took place between Deloitte and management in which the wording was further revised, as shown in Mr Welham's email dated 21 July 2010 to Mr Robertson and Mr Lumb (each of Deloitte):

> *"Please find attached the final draft of the Autonomy press release. There have been a few tweaks but nothing substantial since the previous version you saw. The one significant point is the wording on the appliance/hardware sales. We have spent some time going through this with management and the proposed wording is as follows:*
>
> *The small variation in gross margins in Q2 2010 was in line with our expectations due to the sales mix including appliances as discussed last quarter.*
>
> *As an engagement team, we are comfortable with the wording because it makes reference to appliance sales*

> *and the resultant impact on gross margin. Chris Brough has also confirmed that he can accept this wording.*
>
> *Can you confirm by return that you are happy from a PSR perspective."*

(4) Mr Welham confirmed that the discussions with management referred to in this email were with Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain. The PSR (Mr Robertson, then the professional standards reviewer) provided the confirmation sought by Mr Welham and on 22 July, Deloitte signed off its independent review of the results, with an unqualified opinion.

(5) The results contained the phrase approved by Deloitte, which had added the words underlined:

> "*The small variation in gross margins in Q2 2010 was in line with our expectations due to the sales mix including appliances as discussed last quarter.*"

(6) In cross-examination, Dr Lynch was criticised about the sentence quoted above from the Q2 2010 results. His response was that Deloitte had a detailed knowledge of the nature of the hardware sold by Autonomy; they had pressed for further disclosure, which Autonomy agreed to give; and Deloitte had discussed various forms of wording with management (not with Dr Lynch), and arrived at a form of words with which they were comfortable, as Mr Welham confirmed they were in his oral evidence.

870. Another illustration suggested by the Defendants related to Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee for the Q3 2010 review, when they (Deloitte) again stated that given the increasing significance of the hardware sales to the Group's revenues, "*we would expect appropriate explanation to be given in the Q3 2010 press release.*" In this regard:

(1) A sentence was added by management, as noted in Mr Welham's email to Mr Brough dated 18 October 2010:

> *"Hardware — they have added in an explanatory sentence similar to that included in the Q2 release which states that the gross margin has once again being [sic] impacted by sales mix as highlighted in Q2. In Q2 they talked about the strategic appliance sales, so this is a direct reference to this."*

(2) Mr Welham confirmed that, having had a discussion with management, Deloitte was comfortable with the wording in the Q3 press release. Again, Deloitte issued an unqualified review opinion.

871. The third illustration the Defendants advanced concerned discussions on the wording of the Q4 2010 press release. As to this:

(1) Mr Welham had informed Mr Chamberlain by email on 30 January 2011 (cc Mr Mercer) that it would be "*necessary to have some comment on hardware sales in the year and the impact of these on GP margin*." Interestingly, I think, he added *"At present, this section states that the principal reason is IDOL cloud but surely this would result in fewer hardware sales."*

(2) There were then discussions between management and Deloitte.

(3) In the final version of the press release, in a section discussing gross profits and gross margins, the press release approved by Deloitte noted:

> "*During the year Autonomy has seen success in addressing the urgent needs of a small number of customers with package solutions, constructed of services, hardware and software, such as Arcpliance. The gross margin in these cases is lower than the normal business.*"

(4) Again, Dr Lynch was cross-examined about this, and it was put to him that the statement was only "*about Arcpliance"* and as such was misleading. Having pointed out that the words were actually *"such as Arcpliance"* (connoting a subset of *"hardware and software"*) his answers more broadly exemplified his defence:

> *"Well, that's language that was worked out with Deloitte and I don't think Deloitte would have done anything that was misleading…*
>
> …
>
> *…we have some disagreement about which hardware is which type, which we haven't really addressed, so there is a difference between us. But, again, I just come back to the fact that Deloitte were completely alive to this issue. They consider it – it actually is not just the audit team, it's something that goes up to their technical experts and there's a conversation and we agree a form of words, and this is it, and you know, I'm relying on my finance department and I'm relying on the audit committee and most of all I'm relying on Deloitte and it looks like a reasonable sentence to me."*

872. The Defendants instanced the following evidence of ultimate consensus after constructive discussion:

(1) Mr Welham confirmed in cross-examination that Deloitte had discussions with Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and the Audit Committee from time to time about potentially including further

narrative concerning hardware sales, but that they never considered Autonomy's disclosure was false or misleading because it did not contain further detail on this point:

> *"Q.... We've seen a couple of references so far to Deloitte from time to time discussing with management potentially putting further explanation into the published information.*
>
> *A. That's correct, yes.*
>
> *Q. If we can just turn to that for a moment. Is it fair to summarise it this way, that Deloitte had discussions with management and the audit committee from time to time about potentially including further narrative concerning hardware sales because Deloitte thought it would be preferable to say more?*
>
> *A. That's a valid statement, yes.*
>
> *Q. But Deloitte never thought that the quarterly releases or the annual reports misrepresented things or were false or misleading because they didn't contain that further narrative?*
>
> *A. That's correct, yes.*
>
> *Q. And when you had those discussions with management, those were discussions with Mr Chamberlain and Mr Hussain?*
>
> *A. Yes, and with the audit committee as well."*

(2) As to the Audit Committee's perception in 2010, Mr Bloomer emphasised again, with I think his focus on the issue of segmental accounting, that:

> *"...from a Deloitte point of view, and clearly from the previous audit committee's point of view, hardware was not seen as a big topic actually to flag."*

(3) In re-examination, Mr Bloomer added this:

> *"As I said at the time, Deloitte were not – although they flagged that they'd like to see some mention of it, it wasn't a huge point for them. It was more of a point, the essence of it, that looking forward, if these get much bigger, then we're going to have to talk more about them. In practice, the volume*

> *of hardware sales certainly in the first two quarters of 2011, dropped somewhat and were starting to become a smaller percentage of total revenue and that was the way I interpreted it at the time. It was certainly not a big issue that this must be. If it had have been, Deloitte would have insisted more on it and they didn't and I didn't."*

873. Dr Lynch also stressed that further voluntary disclosure was kept under review: he accepted that where hardware sales represented a substantial percentage of total revenue (say, 20%) disclosure was *"certainly something one needs to think about"* but *"it depends on the purpose";* and in circumstances where the Accounting Standards imposed no obligation to provide further disclosure, they contended that it was a matter of commercial judgement.

874. What he presented as the *"judgement call for management"* was whether voluntarily to disclose (a) the amount and/or (b) a breakdown of the type of the hardware it sold and the nature of the sales. He regarded that, as any such judgement call, to require:

> *"balancing the market's desire to know as much as they can find out about the company's business with Autonomy's commercial interest in keeping confidential information away from its competitors and counterparties."*

875. The Defendants supported the decision not to provide further narrative disclosure as commercially rational and justified in circumstances where (a) after careful investigation by Deloitte and its reviewers and by the Audit Committee it had been determined that hardware sales did not constitute a separate operating segment of Autonomy's business and accordingly that it did not have to break out hardware revenue separately in its accounts <u>whatever proportion of revenue hardware sales comprised in any financial year</u> and (b) though both (and especially Deloitte) favoured further disclosure, neither Deloitte nor the Audit Committee had ever suggested that it was required under the Accountancy Standards nor that determining against it would be improper.

876. In a sense, the most surprising aspect of the issue of disclosure is the Defendants' consistent efforts to avoid or minimise it and Deloitte's passive acceptance of anodyne wording (see paragraphs 869 to 871) which obviously did more to obfuscate than to clarify and reeked of reluctance to give any real insight into a strategy justified as being of such benefit to Autonomy's overall business. Mr Knights and in his turn, Mr Mercer, seem to have been quite extraordinarily reluctant to stand back from the rules and the mantra of management judgement to ask themselves and press management really hard as to quite what was the reason for such reticence.

877. After all (as the FRC put it to Mr Mercer when they interviewed him), if the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy was as avowed and successful, it would be more natural to expect the Defendants to *"want to sort of shout this*

strategy explicitly from the rooftops." Mr Mercer's response was that Autonomy's management would not necessarily *"from a competitive point of view, want to shout from the rooftops the way we are being successful at driving our software sales by selling them hardware. So there's a commercial sensitivity point, I suspect…"*. This was worse than lame: the hardware sellers were, on the Defendants' case, collaborating to that end. The fact remains, however, that both Deloitte and the Audit Committee were fully aware of what the analysts and the market were being told, or rather, not being told; and although they occasionally pressed for more disclosure, both clung to the belief that the hardware reselling was all part of the software business and in any event immaterial, and ultimately shrank from insisting on more than the opaque wording which Autonomy was persuaded upon from time to time to include.

878. Dr Lynch, in his witness statement and subsequently when cross-examined:

(1) Stressed what he regarded as the *"defensive nature"* of the strategy, and his concern that if Autonomy were to break down its revenue into hardware and software, *"let alone into different types of hardware"*, competitors would perceive Autonomy's concern about its weakness in the appliances sector and about its vulnerability to the risk of being removed from strategic supplier lists or to others copying its strategy from a position of greater strength;

(2) Explained that he was also concerned lest revelation of a special relationship with one hardware supplier could preclude Autonomy from working with another, and also lest if news of special deals were broadcast, everyone would be demanding the same;

(3) Stated his assessment that the *"more details we disclosed about our hardware sales, the more we would expose these commercial sensitivities"*;

(4) In cross-examination, added to the above (a) concern about *"most favoured nation situations that we have to be very careful about"* and (b) his understanding that *"EMC wanted to keep the arrangement confidential, as did the customers."*

(5) When it was suggested to him that the truth was that he did not want to disclose the programme because he preferred that the market should be misled about Autonomy's real source of revenue rather than being told the true position, he was adamant:

"No, there was no intention to mislead the market."

879. The Defendants maintained that this was also consistent with a comment made by Dr Lynch at the time: in his email to Mr Ariko dated 23 October 2009, after Mr Ariko voiced his concern and wish to review further hardware disclosure, Dr Lynch noted that it was "*also very commercially sensitive to our partner us and our customer and concerning new product developments.*"

880. It is, of course, important to strip out the effect of hindsight. But even having done so, Dr Lynch's attempted justification appears to me paper-thin.

Furthermore, Dr Lynch's reply to Mr Ariko dated 23 October 2009 (also wishing him well for an excellent retirement) sought to mollify him by assuring him that (a) *"the market is already aware we sell hardware, something we have done for 5 years or so…"* (b) Autonomy would be issuing *"a new press release next week on these matters relating to hardware"* and (c) that *"if this approach were to develop into a larger part of our business on an ongoing basis we would review the current master press release template."*

881. The falsity of each point is elaborated later: the exchange with Mr Ariko is an important part of the story and provides very considerable support to the Claimants' case that the hardware reselling strategy was deliberately concealed: see paragraphs 1397 to 1403 below. A summary suffices for the present. Dr Lynch's email to Mr Ariko was false in every respect. The market did not know of the hardware sales. The press release did no such thing: it talked in general terms of Arcpliance. The reassurance provided was never fulfilled.

882. Nevertheless, to return to focus on the Defendants' case, they rejected also the second part of the Claimants' allegations, which was an attack on the non-IFRS *Supplemental Metrics* included in Autonomy's Quarterly Reports from Q3 2009 to Q2 2011, and in the 2010 Annual Report, which (for the first time) broke down Autonomy's revenues into IDOL Product, IDOL OEM, Services and Deferred Revenue Release, and at a later point IDOL Cloud.

883. Hardware revenue was included in these categories, but the Claimants argued that they were defined in a way that could not properly include hardware, and thereby both overstated software revenues and at least implicitly represented that there were no material revenues from hardware sales. In other words, the Claimants contended that the further disclosure the Defendants did decide to provide was in truth a further exercise in disguise: the non-IFRS *Supplemental Metrics* in what was called the "front-end of the Accounts" further disguised the fact of the hardware sales.

884. The Defendants rejected these criticisms of the non-IFRS *Supplemental Metrics* and maintained that:

(1) As the Quarterly Reports and 2010 Annual Report made clear, these were metrics "*provided for background information and may include qualitative estimates.*" They were not precisely defined.

(2) Deloitte scrutinised the calculation of the non-IFRS metrics each quarter, and was well aware that Autonomy's hardware sales were included in the category "IDOL Product". Each quarter, they prepared a working paper, whose stated aim was "*To agree the metrics used in the quarterly press release to the supporting schedules and to test the validity of these schedules.*"[156] Mr Welham confirmed that, as part of the audit or review process, Deloitte would have reviewed the underlying contracts for at least some of the transactions included in those schedules – all that were over $1m in value, or that were part of the sampling process. He said that Deloitte knew that certain deals

[156] Mr Welham confirmed that this process was carried out every quarter.

included within IDOL Product were hardware deals: indeed, that is clear from the face of the working paper, and from Deloitte's tickmarks.[157]

(3) Deloitte were of course aware of how IDOL Product was described in the Annual Reports, as demonstrated by the ticked off versions, where the number is ticked next to the description in question.[158] They knew that some of the hardware sales did not include an IDOL software component.[159] They did not consider that this rendered Autonomy's Quarterly or Annual Reports misleading, as Mr Welham confirmed:

> *"Q. Then looking at what you did know, going back for example to IDOL Product, you knew that as part of the total amount that was being stated as IDOL Product, that included the hardware deals that we've looked at?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *...*
>
> *Q. ... So you knew those facts, you didn't think that the way that then Autonomy presented itself to the financial markets through its published information was misleading in any way, did you?*
>
> *A. We did not, no."*

885. Thus, the Defendants presented the non-IFRS *Supplemental Metrics* as intended to assist in the understanding of Autonomy's core business by providing a breakdown of the main sources of IDOL revenue: they contended that they were not intended to mislead, and certainly did not suggest any such improper purpose and dishonesty as was alleged.

886. In summary, the Defendants contended that they were entitled to rely on the fact that, knowing all the details of the hardware sales, and with the means and commercial acumen to test the commercial justification which the Defendants advanced in support of them, Deloitte and the Audit Committee:

(1) were persuaded, as according to the Defendants was the fact, that Autonomy's directors and management (and thus the Defendants) had conceived and were implementing the hardware reselling strategy for genuine commercial purposes;

(2) approved Autonomy's financial statements (sometimes known as the 'back-end' of the accounts, for which Deloitte had full auditing

[157] Mr Welham confirmed that the tickmarks were prepared by Deloitte, and that the whole spreadsheet, although based on a document provided by Autonomy, was a Deloitte working paper.
[158] The description is as follows: "*IDOL Product is normally delivered as licensed software paid for up-front with an ongoing support and maintenance stream. This model is becoming less significant with the rise of cloud computing. In 2010, IDOL Product revenue totalled $251 million*"; Deloitte has ticked off the number $251 million.
[159] See e.g. Deloitte's Report to the Audit Committee on the 2009 Audit: "*These hardware sales did not include any IDOL software component.*

responsibilities) as compliant with all applicable Accounting Standards and as showing a true and fair view of its financial position;

(3) did not object to the content of the 'front-end' of the accounts (which Deloitte did not audit but had to review for fairness and consistency) and approved the Supplemental Metrics provided by Autonomy;

(4) accepted that what further disclosure to give was a commercial judgment;

(5) never required further disclosure in Autonomy's published information than was from time to time provided.

887. The Defendants relied also on the fact that when KPMG spoke to Deloitte during the due diligence process on 17 August 2011, Deloitte confirmed that there were no disagreements with management regarding accounting policies and accounting conclusions.[160] They could not have given that confirmation if they considered that further disclosure was required which Autonomy was refusing to make.

Summary of the Defendants' Hardware case

888. In conclusion on this section, therefore, the Defendants:

(1) Insisted that the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy was clearly elaborated, objectively plausible, intended in good faith to protect and promote the software business, and accepted as such by the Claimants' own principal witnesses on the hardware part of the case, Messrs Sullivan and Egan.

(2) Submitted that Autonomy would not have engaged in the programme simply for the revenue benefit, since (to quote from Dr Lynch's supplemental witness statement), *"hardware created a negative impact on metrics that were of greater importance to me and the market"* (and especially profitability and earnings per share).

(3) Maintained that the programme was successful in that regard, and that its costs (which Mr Mercer estimated[161] as in total less than 10% of the sales and marketing budget) were minimal compared to the value of the software business secured.

(4) Relied on the approval of Deloitte who had full information and knowledge of the nature, extent and costs of the hardware reselling strategy, in relation to both the narrative description and the accounting treatment of the hardware sales, including the costs associated with them.

[160] In cross-examination, Mr Welham confirmed that he remembered this conversation, and that to his knowledge, there never were any major disagreements with management regarding accounting policies or conclusions.
[161] In the course of his evidence to the FRC on 4 September 2013.

(5) Made (as they claimed Deloitte had advised they were entitled to make) a commercial judgement on the extent of any other disclosure, having established that no more detailed disclosure was required, and determined in that context that more disclosure could damage the company.

(6) Accepted that a collateral benefit of the programme was increased revenue which could be recognised in Autonomy's accounts, but pointed out that Autonomy would not have chosen the programme had revenue pumping been its purpose, given the availability of other means of achieving that purpose (including sales of third-party software) which would not have had the adverse effect of the programme in adversely reducing gross margin and gross profits, and which would have been considerably more flexible.

(7) In all the circumstances rejected the Claimants' case theory that the sales were intended to bring in extra revenue without disclosing its source.

(C) *Elaboration of Claimants' case on the real purpose of the hardware reselling strategy*

889. The Claimants' overall response to the Defendants' case was that even if the commercial rationale of the hardware reselling strategy, as articulated by Dr Lynch and echoed by Messrs Egan and Sullivan, was theoretically reasonable and sustainable, that rationale:

(1) was not in reality what informed, or at least quickly came to inform, the programme as in fact it came to be implemented; and

(2) could not explain, and indeed raised the question, why the Defendants actively sought to disguise and hide from the market what was presented as a commercially beneficial programme to promote and protect Autonomy's core business.

890. To recapitulate the principal elements or limbs of the Claimants' case:

(1) What the hardware reselling strategy was directed towards and entailed was the sale of third-party hardware (at a loss) in order to generate revenue which would be presented and accounted for as derived from Autonomy's software business: its purpose was to cover and disguise shortfalls in software sales;

(2) The intended benefits asserted by the Defendants were never more than side-benefits used as a pretext to persuade Deloitte and the Audit Committee to include revenue from hardware sales as part of the revenues of a single segment software business without disclosing their true source;

(3) The Defendants were well aware that if the true source, nature and extent of the hardware reselling strategy was disclosed or discovered, the market (and in due course HP) would have considered it to be improper and an erosion of the quality of Autonomy's earnings: and that this would have adversely impacted Autonomy's share price and the value placed on IDOL and Autonomy's software business as a whole;

(4) The extensive steps and representations taken and made by the Defendants, and further steps and representations they were prepared to take and make, to ensure that the hardware reselling strategy was neither disclosed nor discovered, confirm its impropriety and their knowledge that Autonomy's published information was false in this regard.

891. The Claimants supported that case by reference to:

(1) The lack of any documentary support for Dr Lynch's explanation that the hardware reselling strategy was conceived as a response to changes in the market which posed real threats to Autonomy's core business;

(2) The almost immediate increase in Autonomy's appetite for hardware reselling transactions between Autonomy and EMC well beyond anything contemplated at the Loudham Hall meeting;

(3) The resort to hardware sales purely as a response (which became routine) to shortfalls in software revenue which were identified at the end of a quarter, and the use of, and accounting for, revenue from such sales as if it were derived from software sales;

(4) The development of ways of using that source as a discretionary fund without any discernible appraisal whether such expansion and use would proportionately benefit Autonomy's core business, and if so, how;

(5) The Defendants' internal written communications between themselves and others in their team[162], which focused, not on how hardware sales might generate additional software sales, but on how much revenue would be needed and raised from that source to 'plug the gap' as regards Autonomy's aggregate revenue targets.

(6) EMC's sudden withdrawal as a supplier to Autonomy of hardware for reselling, and Dr Lynch's misrepresentation of the nature of Autonomy's relationship with EMC and the reasons for its severance;

(7) EMC's immediate replacement by Dell, and Dell's participation in the programme on the terms of a hardware reselling agreement between Autonomy and Dell which in name and substance provided for no more than Autonomy being interposed as a reseller of Dell products to Dell's

[162] (Largely comprised of email exchanges between the individuals at Autonomy principally involved and especially, in addition to the Defendants, Mr Kanter, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Sullivan).

own customers (albeit in the expectation that most if not all would also be customers of Autonomy) at a discount funded by Autonomy.

(8) A chronological summary, based on documentary evidence, of the dealings between Autonomy, Dell and Hitachi and their customers between Q1 2010 and Q2 2011, demonstrating in particular that:

i. It became routine for Autonomy to rely on loss-making hardware reselling transactions as the means of achieving revenue forecasts calibrated to meet, and if possible *"beat and raise"*, market expectations.

ii. In almost every such transaction Autonomy was simply interposed into a hardware sale originally intended to be between Dell and the end-user, with the end-user seldom (if ever) being made aware of the fact that Autonomy was funding the discounted price.

iii. Recognition of revenue from hardware reselling was manipulated so as to minimise the adverse effect on Autonomy's 'bottom line' and thus reduce the visibility and the chances of the programme being revealed or discovered.

iv. Autonomy developed and soon came to depend upon the practice of transacting sufficient loss-making hardware reselling to cover any anticipated shortfall in high margin software sales, but then deferring recognition of revenue arising from such hardware reselling transactions if at the end of the relevant quarter software sales (which, being high margin, maintained its gross margins and EPS) in the event proved sufficient to meet forecast.

(9) The way Mr Sullivan was incentivised solely by reference to hardware revenue generated and recognised, without any reference or regard to software sales resulting from discounted hardware sales nor to any other criteria relevant to the software business.

(10) The absence of contemporaneous documentary evidence to suggest that:

i. Autonomy's marketing department was in any way cognisant or involved in the hardware reselling strategy;

ii. Autonomy's software sales team was instructed to use the loss-making hardware sales (with discounts funded by Autonomy) as a bargaining chip when negotiating sales of software to Autonomy's hardware customers or in any other way as part of

any software sales pitch to customers of Autonomy (whether prospective or existing);

iii. apart from the Linkage Analysis (see further in paragraphs 1477 to 1496 below and paragraphs 1034 to 1307 below), there was ever any internal discussion or assessment of any measurable impact or effect of the hardware reselling strategy as a marketing strategy.

(11) The evidence that the Defendants, in conjunction with Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain, repeatedly sought to and often did mislead Deloitte and the Audit Committee, or circumvent their concerns and recommendations, and in particular, the steps they took:

i. to persuade Deloitte and the Audit Committee (including by pressing Mr Sullivan to extract a false depiction from EMC of the nature of its relationship with Autonomy) to approve the allocation of costs and losses referable to the hardware reselling strategy as marketing expenses rather than COGS in order to reduce the adverse effect on Autonomy's apparent financial results and prevent revelation of the strategy;

ii. to present to Deloitte and the Audit Committee information designed to show a *"strong linkage"* which did not exist between hardware sales and software sales especially to answer Deloitte's concerns in 2010 that the hardware reselling strategy had become *"business as usual"*;

iii. to convince Deloitte and the Audit Committee, when the increase of marketing expenses itself began to invite scrutiny, that R&D and increased sales and marketing expenses were referable to the development and marketing of a new product, SPE.

(12) Autonomy's management's determination not to make the full disclosure which the Claimants submitted it is obvious they would have actively wished to make had the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy been as the Defendants asserted it to be.

892. INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK.

893. These points are elaborated and assessed below.

(1) No documentary evidence of threats to Autonomy's software business

894. The Claimants put to Dr Lynch that his oral evidence that Autonomy adopted its hardware strategy in response to two market shifts which seriously threatened Autonomy's core software business, being (as he summarised them in his supplemental witness statement) (a) vendor consolidation and (b) a perceived shift towards consuming software as an appliance, was not supported by any documentary evidence prior to October 2009.

895. When further pressed that there was *"not a single document…and you know it, that supports your suggestion that the sale of hardware at a loss was in response to the two trends in the market you identify"* Dr Lynch's response was that he disagreed with that; and he told me that he thought there were (a) *"multiple emails"* (b) analysts reports (c) *"commentary inside the company"* and (d) information easily available on the internet (especially as to the perceived threat from Google's Search appliance), all of which should be *"very easy to find."* Mr Rabinowitz challenged the Defendants to identify them. None was, either during cross-examination or in re-examination.

896. Nor was there any record of any meeting or discussions within Autonomy about these market shifts or how to address and respond to them. Dr Lynch's explanation for this was that it was not the practice within Autonomy to record discussions in writing. For example, when it was put to him that there was no record of any discussion of any of this either before, at or after the Loudham Hall meeting[163], he accepted that this was "*unlikely. We didn't take notes at the meetings."*

897. The question is whether this lack of any documentary support indicates, as the Claimants contended, that the alleged risks were simply manufactured by Dr Lynch as an overall justification for the hardware reselling strategy (additional to the promotion of software sales) and had no real basis. That possibility is to some extent supported by the fact that (as I elaborate later when addressing the development of the Strategic Deals Memorandum) Mr Hussain did not make any reference to those risks when first seeking to explain and justify the relationship with EMC.

898. Nevertheless, I doubt that Dr Lynch would have cited repeatedly an entirely fanciful justification. A characteristic of the justifications for the various stratagems deployed by the Defendants was that they appeared outwardly or apparently reasonable and had enough substance to persuade Deloitte and the Audit Committee, and key employees such as Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan. It seems to me to be plausible and even likely that financial organisations would have wished to reduce the number of IT suppliers and, to the extent possible, to have all their IT requirements met from a single supplier; and likewise it seems plausible that, before development of the Cloud, appliances might have been seen as a necessary part of a software company's offering as the means of making available its software products.

899. To my mind, however, the real question is whether it was the alleged risks which really prompted the programme; or whether the risks were relied on as convenient context for what in reality was a response to concerns about shortfalls in software sales in Q2 2009, and the need to find other sources of revenue to maintain Autonomy's record as a "beat and raise" stock[164] and shore up its share price.

(2) Expansion of and dependence on the programme with EMC in Q3 2009

[163] Of which the only detailed description was in Dr Lynch's own witness statement: see paragraph 720 above.
[164] See the explanation of this in paragraph 65 above.

900. Dr Lynch told me that no fixed amount of hardware transactions to be undertaken had been agreed at the Loudham Hall meeting[165]. But Mr Sullivan's evidence (which I accept) was that the figure he had suggested as easily achievable in a quarter was $5 million to $10 million (which had elicited Dr Lynch's joke that if he could do this, Dr Lynch would buy him a Porsche). It is reasonably clear, and I find, that this was the range contemplated at Loudham Hall; and it is to be inferred (and I find) that any assessment of the cost/benefit of the hardware reselling strategy when incepted was by reference to that range.

901. It quickly became apparent from Mr Sullivan's meetings with EMC after he returned from the Loudham Hall meeting, and as by email dated 15 July 2009 Mr Sullivan reported to Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain, that there would be no difficulty in arranging sufficient hardware transactions with EMC to deliver *"all the revenue we need per our discussions at Loudham."* He said he already had commitments for up to $20 million of hardware. He added that he *"could probably get twice that if you want"*.[166]

902. This apparently considerable source of revenue seems to have opened the Defendants' eyes to the potential of hardware reselling as a more significant resort; and the hardware reselling strategy with EMC soon increased very considerably beyond what had been contemplated when it was incepted. The Claimants cited an exchange of emails in early September 2009 between EMC's Mr Joe Profeta and Mr Sullivan in this regard:

(1) In an email on 2 September 2009 Mr Profeta set out the deals that EMC was "*chasing for the quarter*" , listing the customers and the deal values as being (a) Bloomberg ($7-10m) (b) Citi ($8-12m) (c) Sony Corporation ($4-7m) (d) JPMC ($10-20m) (e) Deutsche Bank ($8-15m) and (f) DTCC ($4-6m). The customers appear to have been selected by EMC. Most, though probably not all, were existing customers of Autonomy. There is no reference to any identification of their software needs.

(2) Mr Sullivan forwarded this email to Mr Hussain, noting that there was a "*Big range from total $46MM to $80MM*".

(3) The following day, Mr Hussain forwarded Mr Sullivan's email to Dr Lynch[167] stating that he had "*listened in on a call with the head of sales at EMC and Sullivan yesterday*", that they (EMC) were "*committed*

[165] Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that he did not think that a fixed amount had been fixed at the Loudham meeting: *"As I recall the conversation, it was more people offering how much they could do and what might be possible".* That answer itself points to the focus being on revenue maximisation rather than on promoting the software business, though of course the Defendants contended that what was good for one would be good for the other.

[166] Hence his reference to 4 or 5 Porsches instead of the one Dr Lynch had jokingly offered him: see paragraph 782 above.

[167] Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that Mr Hussain kept him abreast of the position in relation to these hardware deals.

internally, their selling style is v aggressive", and that they (EMC) believed that "*$60m will be the eventual number (equates to around $73m cost)*".

(4) That was of course some six times the value of hardware sales which Mr Sullivan recollected had been canvassed at the Loudham Hall meeting. Although Dr Lynch was at pains to emphasise that this was a maximum potentially available, and not a target, the fact that such a considerably increased figure was in contemplation as a recourse seems to me to demonstrate how far the programme had extended from its originally conceived size without any re-assessment of its value as a marketing exercise (if that was what it was).

903. The Claimants emphasised especially a number of aspects of this exchange:

(1) First, the focus of Mr Hussain was on the amount of revenue that could be obtained by Autonomy through this arrangement, coupled with the cost to Autonomy of participating. Dr Lynch had to accept this when cross-examined.

(2) Second, Mr Hussain did not appear to mention or be concerned with the marketing potential of these sales, nor does he suggest that they were designed to achieve anything other than meeting Autonomy's revenue targets. Dr Lynch also accepted this, but sought to dismiss it on the basis that (a) discussion about marketing effect would have taken place in a different context and (b) this was just a discussion about *"salespeople getting the revenue"* and simply showed *"the sausage-making machine making sausages".* However, there was no record provided of any discussion about marketing effect in a different context; and the email did not relate to a discussion between *"salespeople"*: it was a communication between Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain solely focused on revenue generation.

(3) Third, it is plain that responsibility for securing the hardware deals was to lie with EMC alone, utilising their "*v aggressive*" selling style. Consistent with this, it was EMC, rather than Autonomy, that had visibility as to the level of hardware deals that could be secured. The hardware was almost invariably to be physically delivered directly by EMC to the customer, as Dr Lynch accepted[168].

(4) Taken together, the Claimants described Autonomy's role as therefore being "*limited to being slotted into the transaction to provide the customer with the discounted pricing."* In that context, the Claimants rejected a somewhat half-hearted suggestion made by Dr Lynch that EMC and Autonomy co-ordinated in determining the selection of customers. When tested against particular transactions it was clear that the customers were simply selected by EMC and Autonomy was inserted into the transaction thereafter. Dr Lynch had to admit that the

[168] Though Dr Lynch understood (as did Mr Sullivan) that for legal purposes Autonomy did have the right to delivery.

selection was not by reference to any marketing potential for Autonomy: it was, he said, *"the sausage machine making sausages"*.

904. The Claimants submitted that all this, and the apparent absence of any evidence of any attempt to identify or monitor whether this expansion of the programme with a single supplier to the same pool of customers offered any or any commensurate incremental marketing benefit to Autonomy, or occasioned any review of the programme such as might be expected when a marketing programme potentially expands by a factor of six or seven times its originally conceived size and cost[169], strongly supported their case that "relationship building" and "marketing potential" and the benefits avowed by the Defendants were nothing more than a pretext, and that the real purpose was

> *"simply to, in effect, 'buy' (at a substantial cost) recognisable revenue that would be included in the revenue figures reported to the market without revealing the true source (or cost) of this additional revenue stream."*

905. The Claimants added that *"It is inconceivable that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain, intelligent individuals, could have considered that what they were doing was honest."* I return to the issue of "guilty knowledge" later.

(1) Emails showing strategy's purpose and use as flexible source of revenue

906. There is no doubt, and it was not disputed, that the Defendants were heavily focused on revenue growth as a key performance metric. Autonomy's share price was volatile, and as a *"beat and raise"* stock tended to experience sharp declines if in any quarter the Autonomy group failed to meet market expectations of revenue growth. The Claimants did not suggest that such promotion of revenue growth as an indicia or metric of performance was of itself improper; but they did contend that it became improper when it was not disclosed that in reality a material proportion of it was not generated by software sales, and overall revenue generation became an end in itself irrespective of its source.

907. The Claimants relied especially on a sequence of emails on 10 August 2009 between Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain under the subject heading *"revenue updates"* as revealing that hardware sales were simply part of a relentless drive for more revenue after disappointing Q2 2009 results, without so much as a whisper of any objective of consolidating and extending relationships with customers and suppliers with a view to enhanced software sales or co-operation towards a joint product and joint marketing. Thus:

  (1) In an email at 09:14 Dr Lynch urged Mr Hussain *"are you doing sms today…you need to grab it revenue revenue revenue*".

[169] Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that this figure was *"the forecastable revenue that can be obtained, not the theoretical maximum"* by which I took him to mean that not all the EMC deals would proceed. Even if that is so, the excess over the figures in contemplation at the Loudham Hall meeting is very considerable and in my view such as to invite reassessment of the alleged strategy.

(2) Mr Hussain responded 30 minutes later that "*EMC is key to quarter*" and that he was "*tracking $190m with EMC*".

(3) Dr Lynch's reply was: *"NOT ENOUGH"* (though in cross-examination Dr Lynch accepted that $190 million was the top end of the analysts' revenue forecast for the quarter).

(4) Later that day Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch a further email (under the same subject heading) setting out expected and projected revenues and confirming that he was *"still targeting"* $20m to $25m of EMC and that including the MS-Hitachi order of *"$6m to $7m"* he was now at *"$196m so far but Iwov*[170] *is a bit week [sic]"*.

908. Much the same obsessive focus on revenue generation is apparent from an exchange between them only a fortnight later, on 31 August 2009. This commenced with a query from Mr Hussain whether to spend some time on planning for two acquisition prospects (in fact, Coremetrics and Informatica[171]), and also demonstrates how even Mr Hussain as CFO felt obliged to obtain permission as to how best to use his time. Dr Lynch responded:

> *"Your call, I guess a day on acq is OK but in general revenue revenue revenue."*

909. Dr Lynch sought in his witness statement to shrug this off as *"a fairly typical push on my part for progress from the salesforce"* and as not being *"addressed to hardware in particular"*. He likewise sought to shrug off his message on 31 August 2009 as *"One of my standard motivational emails…"*. His explanation in cross-examination, when pressed to accept that he had pushed Mr Hussain especially hard for more revenue following the disappointing Q2 2009 results, was that:

> *"It was the case every month, so until we had the quarter in, it was always revenue revenue revenue"*.

910. Dr Lynch emphasised that the focus evidenced by these emails was on revenue generally, and was not confined to hardware revenue. But the largest single component mentioned in the emails was the $20 million or more expected from sales of EMC hardware, and Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he appreciated at the time that *"EMC was the key to the quarter"* in terms of achieving the overall revenue forecast.

911. The Claimants contended that what was starkly confirmed by these emails was a consistent and obsessive focus, which had become an end in itself, unconnected to any marketing drive or perceived threat, and which was fuelled

[170] Interwoven.
[171] Informatica was a large NASDAQ quoted company, Coremetrics a small one; Autonomy was considering acquiring both.

by the availability of far more revenue from the reselling of hardware than had been contemplated when the programme was incepted.

(1) Use of hardware sales as a flexible source to 'plug' shortfalls in software sales

912. The financially incentivised willingness of EMC to agree to the interposition of Autonomy into existing and prospective hardware sales transactions meant that hardware reselling offered a much more considerable source of revenue than had originally been contemplated at the Loudham Hall meeting.

913. Total revenue forecasts for Q3 2009 were fixed before the potential of the resource was apparent, and hardware revenues were used *ad hoc* to make good software revenue shortfalls. In quarters subsequent to Q3 2009, once the resource had become clearer, the potential for hardware sales revenue was also taken into account in the forecasting process. Overall forecasted revenue would take into account and include a targeted sum in respect of revenue from hardware sales: and the target developed for hardware reselling revenue would typically be whatever sum was needed over and above forecast software sales revenue to meet market expectations of likely overall revenue targets.

914. Thus, the practice within Autonomy became that, early in each quarter, Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain would agree goals for revenue to be achieved from what they called *"low margin"* or *"strategic sales",* meaning hardware reselling. Mr Hussain would then inform Mr Sullivan of these goals, which would also set the framework for Mr Sullivan's incentive payments (see further below). The hardware sales were a 'stop-gap' in the sense that the targeted revenue from them made good the gap between what Autonomy expected software revenues to be and the expectations in the market of total revenue for the quarter which Autonomy's *"beat and raise"* status had engendered.

915. However, *ad hoc* recourse continued to be made and in the course of every quarter, the target for hardware sales would often be adjusted in response to (a) indications from the hardware supplier (EMC or subsequently Dell, or less often Hitachi) as to their own expected sales and (b) Autonomy's progress towards achieving (also) pre-determined software sales targets: whilst high margin software sales would be primarily targeted, any shortfall might need to be made good or plugged by recourse to hardware sales. In other words, the hardware reselling strategy came to be used as an available resource not only to pump up quarterly forecasting but also as and when required to *"plug gaps"* in software revenues.[172]

[172] Dr Lynch sought to dismiss the argument that hardware sales were used as a "stop-gap" on the basis that such sales were themselves built into and part of the monthly overall targets, and had to be achieved accordingly. That would be an answer if hardware revenues did not exceed the target set for them: but it soon was evident and known to Dr Lynch that it would be possible to obtain significantly more revenue from sales of EMC hardware than had been contemplated at Loudham Hall or budgeted for thereafter.

916. This required careful balancing of the various sources of revenue. The need to strike this balance became a feature of Mr Hussain's exchanges with Dr Lynch in Q3 2009. As the quarter progressed – and as in all subsequent quarters – Mr Hussain closely monitored the level of revenue that had been secured or was anticipated from hardware sales and updated Dr Lynch accordingly.

Efforts to mitigate the effect and visibility of loss-making hardware sales

917. There was, however, a serious downside of the hardware reselling strategy: an inevitable consequence of its considerable expansion was a considerable increase in its costs (of purchases) and losses (since all, or almost all, the hardware resales were at a loss).

918. These costs and losses would barely have been significant at the levels of hardware purchases and resales which seem initially to have been contemplated at the Loudham Hall meeting. But as they grew, their effect on Autonomy's bottom line, and on the prime parameters of gross profit and gross margin (which Mr Morland explained was a calculation of sales minus costs of goods divided by sales, expressed as a percentage), was potentially very considerable.

919. A material effect and deterioration of gross margin would inevitably cause analyst concern and give rise to questions. A hallmark of software companies is a typically very high gross margin on software sales (80 to 95%) compared to hardware sales by hardware suppliers. This is largely because the direct cost of reproducing software for licence is extremely low. The high gross margins which software companies characteristically enjoy, together with high operating margins which are a key determinant of how much cash a company ultimately generates, are important reasons why software companies tend to command high valuation multiples. Autonomy itself tended to boast very high gross margins of in the region of 90%, and high operating margins of in the region of 40%.

920. Expanding costs of the hardware reselling strategy might have put that at risk; and any deterioration in gross margin not only meant that the hardware reselling would jeopardise a key value parameter, but it would also increase the risk of scrutiny which would expose its nature and extent. Although, as Dr Lynch acknowledged, Autonomy took steps to confine the use of hardware reselling strategy, with its easy but high-cost revenue, to that which was necessary to fulfil consensus revenue projections, the deterioration in software sales in Q3 2009 (and even more markedly in Q4 2009) made that straightforward solution insufficient. The balance between Autonomy's need to plug the gap and the risk it exposed was a tricky one.

921. In subsequent quarters (from Q1 2010 onwards) Mr Hussain and the finance department devised ways of treating revenue from such sales as a discretionary fund to which Autonomy could fine tune its recourse according to the figures for quarterly software revenue: see Q1 2010 (paragraphs 968 to 989), Q2 2010 (paragraphs 1022 to 1029 and 1033(1)) and Q1 2011 (paragraphs 1074 to

1100) below. But in Q3 2009 and Q4 2009, their efforts were directed towards attenuating the adverse effect of hardware sales on its 'bottom line.'

922. As to attenuating the adverse effect of loss making sales, as I shall elaborate later, what was required was some way of justifying accounting for the costs/losses not as costs of sales but rather as Sales and Marketing Expenses which would not affect gross margin.

923. These, together with (so the Claimants alleged) the depiction of the increase in Sales and Marketing expenses as referable to the development and marketing of SPE are matters of principal importance in the context of assessing whether and how Autonomy misled its auditors, Audit Committee and the market, and I shall return to them each in that context.

Developing use of hardware revenues

924. The Claimants illustrated the emerging use of the hardware reselling strategy as a flexible source of revenue whereby to meet market expectations notwithstanding software sale shortfalls by reference to email exchanges between Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch as Q3 2009 was coming to an end:

(1) On 26 September 2009, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch (under subject heading *"update"*) as follows:

> *"Went thru deals with brent[173] and mooney this evening. Yesterday was v bad. Iwov[174]- $2m off and US idol $6m off. Covered with part jpmc/ emc. But now worried more will fall out. Am at $189m to $190m with $30.7m of EMC stuff. We have $41m so $10.3m left to recognise…"*

(2) The Claimants made two points in relation to that email. First, the words "*Covered with part jpmc/emc*" showed that hardware deals were being used to plug gaps in software sales. In other words, they submitted, the hardware deals were being treated as a source of income that assisted Autonomy in meeting or exceeding its revenue targets where a shortfall had arisen, or was likely, due to lost software sales. Dr Lynch himself said in cross-examination that the EMC hardware sales provided "*a back-up plan*" if needed. Secondly, and relatedly, it appears from the words "*Am at $189m to $190m with $30.7m of EMC stuff. We have $41m so $10.3m left to recognise*" that Mr Hussain had yet to decide whether to recognise the $10.3 million of hardware revenue within the quarter, or to hold it over until the next quarter; and the approach apparently taken was that recognition would be dictated by the Defendants' wish to meet the market's revenue expectations: in other words, the amount of hardware revenue to be recognised would be set in order to achieve that end.

[173] Mr Brent Hogenson (then Autonomy's CFO for the Americas) and Mr Michael Mooney (then Senior Vice President, Field Sales Operations at Autonomy).
[174] Interwoven.

(3) The next day, 27 September 2009, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch with a further update. He said:

> "*So from Thursday collapse is heavy. Excluding kraft and including 30.7m from emc derived = $188.5m. Stouff says kraft is possible so with that and $26m from emc we are looking at 190m at this stage*".

(4) The Claimants submitted that again, this confirmed the approach suggested above: if the Kraft deal concluded, it would only be necessary to recognise $26 million of hardware revenue, rather than $30.7 million, that quarter: the extent of resort to hardware revenue again appears to be treated as (a) optional and (b) unrelated to protecting or driving Autonomy's software business, or any of Dr Lynch's stated purposes.

(5) On 28 September 2009, Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with a further update, stating "*With 41m from emc related I am at 200m plus but….*" . That tallied with the $41 million figure for EMC hardware revenue which appeared in Mr Hussain's email to Dr Lynch of a few days earlier (on 26 September 2009).

925. There is once again no sign that these fluctuations in the amount of hardware which Mr Hussain asked for were referable to any specific software objective. More generally, there is no record relating to this quarter of any projections or analysis or even discussion as to whether hardware sales could benefit software sales. The *ad hoc* use of hardware reselling revenue as a discretionary recourse to the extent necessary if and to the extent of a shortfall in software sales was a third feature relied on by the Claimants as demonstrating that the hardware reselling strategy had nothing to do with promoting or protecting software business and everything to do with covering emerging deficiencies.

926. Dr Lynch did not address any of these emails in his witness statement, though the Claimants pointed out that they had been identified and relied on expressly in the Claimants' responses to Requests for Information. When cross-examined, Dr Lynch sought to present the figures as estimates or projections, rather than actual sales; but he did have to accept that even if that were so, the fact remained that Mr Hussain was calibrating the amount required from hardware sales according to whether or not software sales eventuated within the quarter and thus according to revenue targets or software revenue shortfalls.

927. It was in this context that he accepted (as mentioned in paragraph 728 above) that Mr Hussain had *"a degree of flexibility"* and that *"on occasion"* hardware revenue would be used to *"plug gaps in relation to other revenue which may not be achieved."* Further, when asked whether he told Mr Hussain not to seek to use the arrangement with EMC to raise further revenue at a loss once he was confident of hitting what Dr Lynch recollected as a target of $180 million, he said:

> *"If I knew we were about to do 196, then that would – if we were making a loss on that hardware, it's probably one of the first things we'd stop doing."*

Importance of hardware sales revenues relative to total revenues in Q3 2009

928. In the event, Autonomy's total hardware purchases from EMC in Q3 2009 amounted to about $47.3 million, and its reselling receipts on resales to JP Morgan, Citi and Bloomberg amounted to about $37.6 million. It thus apparently adventitiously resorted to some $7.6 million additional hardware sales revenue to cover the software sales shortfall. Total revenue reported in Q3 2009 was $191.6 million, of which hardware sales revenue comprised over 19%. That met, indeed just exceeded, best expectations. It was within a range of $190m to $200m which Mr Geall had advised would *"help set-off"* the fear of bears in the market if Autonomy once more failed to *"beat and raise"* (see paragraph 65 above).

929. Without that hardware revenue, Autonomy would not have achieved top-end forecast, nor even the lower end forecast. The Claimants' case was that the use made of the hardware revenues to meet the need which emerged neatly demonstrated the true purpose.

(5) EMC's withdrawal from the programme and its replacement by Dell in Q4 2009

930. Mr Sullivan's intention had been to continue reselling EMC hardware in Q4 2009. However, as explained in paragraph 784 *et seq* above, at the beginning of December 2009 EMC suddenly withdrew from the programme. As foreshadowed in describing in those paragraphs the Defendants' case as to what the witness evidence revealed, the Claimants contended that the sequence of events and documentation belied the Defendants' presentation of the relationship as primarily or at least substantially driven by the objective of promoting software sales through an OEM relationship.

931. It is clear that by the time of EMC's departure, Autonomy had become dependent on hardware reselling to maintain its revenue and meet its forecasts, and needed to replace EMC as the hardware supplier to enable the programme. Mr Hussain's emails in particular, show some considerable urgency to establish another reselling arrangement.

932. On 17 November 2009, Mr Hussain sent an email to Mr Mooney and Mr Sullivan with the subject "*Dell*". He stated that he wanted a call that day as "*this is now critical*". He continued: "*We need oem ($10m) plus appliance resell (v large). This is a priority*". The Claimants contended that Mr Hussain's use of the expression "*appliance*", given the sums involved ("*v large*") and the reference to "*resell*", was code to refer to *"pure"* hardware sales. I accept that.

933. On 20 November 2009, Mr Hussain reported to Dr Lynch on a conversation that Mr Sullivan was due to have with Dell. That conversation took place with Bob Barris, a Dell Vice President of Sales, who told Mr Sullivan that Dell had:

> "*a few pending deals in the $10m range that could potentially go through Autonomy ... The catch might be that these deals are going to happen rather quickly and if there are other contingencies we may miss the window*".

934. As the Claimants noted, that would suggest that all Dell had to offer at that stage were deals already in the pipeline with existing or immediately prospective Dell hardware customers, into which Autonomy would simply be injected as reseller: hence Mr Barris' reference to Dell already having pending deals that could be made to "*go through Autonomy*". The Claimants made the point that in such circumstances, if Dell's customer happened also to be an existing Autonomy customer (as in fact Mr Sullivan said in direct examination in the US criminal trial they happened to be) that was just a coincidence. The Claimants relied on this as undermining the suggestion by Dr Lynch about the 'marketing' purpose of these sales.

935. Later that day (20 November 2009), Mr Sullivan reported back to Mr Hussain that there had been "*Great progress with Dell today on the reselling*" and that $10-15 million of potential revenue had been identified, though Autonomy would "*Need to move very fast on paperwork*".

936. This development prompted Mr Hussain to start sketching out his thoughts on what Autonomy's reselling agreement with Dell should say. It is plain that Mr Hussain's objectives were to be able to point to provisions in the agreement which would reinforce Autonomy's presentation of it as constituting something more than a resellers' agreement, and as directed to enhancing software sales.

937. On 23 November 2009, Mr Hussain set out these thoughts in an email to Mr Sullivan. In that email, he stated *"our ideal"* would be that the agreement should (a) provide for Autonomy to have the ability to set prices, (b) rehearse that Autonomy would take risk as principal in the transaction with the end customer, (c) provide for the purchase order from Autonomy to Dell to split the price between hardware and marketing, and (d) provide for the purchase order from the customer to Autonomy to contain wording such as "*includes software*". The Claimants submitted that, in other words, the idea was to use the form of the purchase orders to support the impression that these hardware resales were linked to sales of Autonomy software.

938. The idea and its purpose were further reflected in internal email exchanges within Autonomy. Thus, for example, in an email from Mr Guiao to Mr Chamberlain and Mr Sullivan (cc Mr Scott) dated 2 December 2009 which attached a travelling draft of the proposed agreement with Dell, Mr Guiao referred to the draft as *"based off of the Dell-required VAR agreement"* but which would have additions to:

> *"contemplate both a "standard" VAR relationship, as well as one where pricing is based on Dell marketing efforts…Also I had a discussion with Mike, and mentioned that each PO we submit to Dell will have a line item for Dell marketing…"*

The terms of the Value Added Reseller Agreement between Dell and Autonomy

939. On 22 December 2009, a *"Value Added Reseller Agreement"* was concluded between Dell and Autonomy. This authorised Autonomy Inc to re-sell Dell branded computer hardware and related products, including software, to Morgan Stanley and SHI International ("SHI"), a company that purchased computer hardware and resold it to BofA. Thereafter, Autonomy used Dell as its primary source of pure hardware for resale.[175]

940. The provisions of the agreement between Autonomy and Dell included:

(1) Clause 3.1: Dell appointed Autonomy to resell "*Products*" to "*Approved Accounts*". The "*Products*" were defined in clause 2 as "*Dell-branded computer hardware and related products, including Software*"[176]. The "*Approved Accounts*" were set out in "*Attachment A*", which named Morgan Stanley and SHI.

(2) Clause 4.6 dealt with "*Shipping and Handling Options*" and made clear that the products would be shipped by Dell to Dell's customer.

(3) Attachment B (which was referenced in clause 3.1) set out further terms regarding the obligations of the parties in relation to the reselling arrangements. Clause 2 made clear that Dell was to deal directly with its customer, following which Dell would issue a quote to Autonomy, which in turn would issue a corresponding quote to the customer "*based upon the agreed upon pricing between*" the Dell customer and Dell.

(4) Clause 7 of Attachment B contained a provision headed "*Joint Marketing Efforts*". This wording was included at the behest of Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain so as to facilitate the allocation of the hardware costs to sales and marketing expenses. However, whether or not Dell participated in any sales and marketing efforts was "*in its sole discretion*".

941. The Claimants summarised these arrangements with Dell as in effect providing for Dell marketing its own hardware to its own customers, and then, when terms had been agreed, offering its customers the opportunity of a discount, funded by Autonomy, as a nominated reseller.

[175] A chronological summary of Autonomy's hardware reselling programme with Dell follows in section (6) starting at page 383 below.
[176] The Claimants submitted that this must be a reference to software provided by Dell on the basis that Autonomy would not need Dell's permission to sell its own software: but it is clear from e.g. clause 8 that it included third-party software and I do not agree that it did not include Autonomy software.

942. On that basis, according to the Claimants, these arrangements were in substance broadly the same as the arrangements with EMC, with cosmetic changes to seek to improve Autonomy's arguments in relation to the allocation of a proportion of the costs of the hardware reselling strategy as sales and marketing expenses rather than entirely as COGS.

943. As with EMC, the Defendants contended that Autonomy's relationship with Dell went far deeper and covered much more ground than was expressed in their agreement. They emphasised that:

(1) The Claimants' own witness, Mr Sullivan, had incepted the relationship: and he was its instigator and the person chiefly responsible for its development. Mr Sullivan had told the court in the US criminal proceedings that Autonomy not only had used Dell for years, deployed its servers in all its data centres and was buying *"thousands of servers at the time"* , but also Dell were:

"actually a customer as well. They were an e-Discovery customer, and we were just trying to get them to use more of our e-Discovery products."

(2) Autonomy's many projects with Dell included working on development of an appliance with new Dell hardware running IDOL software, under code-name *"Project Blue Jay."* Discussions on this had begun in February 2009 and certainly by November 2009 had moved into *"high gear"*. Although Project Blue Jay eventually did not proceed, Mr Sullivan said *"That would have been a very large software deal if it closed, which it didn't"*.

944. However, the Claimants contended that these were no more than potential side benefits of association with Dell, and were not the purpose of the hardware reselling arrangements or the hardware sales.

945. Just as Autonomy had swiftly become dependent on EMC to interpose it in hardware sales of EMC hardware to EMC customers (most of which were also Autonomy customers too) so too it became dependent on Dell (albeit with occasional resort to Hitachi) to do likewise in respect of Dell deals.

946. The inter-company exchanges between Mr Sullivan and Mr Barris show Autonomy consistently seeking to boost revenue from hardware deals, and the disappointment and growing anxiety as quarter end approached on the part of Mr Hussain (in particular) when sales were delayed or failed. None of the exchanges mentioned or even hinted that the sales were intended to achieve a marketing objective for Autonomy. As in Q3 2009, so in this quarter, there is no record of any projections, analysis or even discussion as to whether hardware sales could benefit software. In his evidence in the US criminal proceedings, Mr Sullivan confirmed that none of the sales involved software,

although he also confirmed that the end-users were existing customers of Autonomy.

947. The continued importance of hardware sales in terms of Autonomy's Q4 2009 revenue is apparent from a number of the contemporaneous documents:

(1) The market consensus for Autonomy's Q4 2009 revenue was between $223 million and $225 million;

(2) Consistent with that, on 15 December 2009, Mr Hussain sent an email to Dr Lynch, with the subject "*as requested*", attaching a document entitled "*ROUTE TO 225*". The attachment identified that one of the elements to achieving the $225 million upper end of market consensus was obtaining a further $5m of hardware sales through Dell/Hitachi, which "*could be ok with the MS deal*" (which was a reference to a possible deal involving Autonomy buying hardware from Dell for $6.28 million and then selling it to Morgan Stanley for $5.712 million).

(3) A few days later, on 19 December 2009, Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with a further update. By this point, to achieve revenues of $224.5 million, further hardware sales of $6.8 million were being targeted. That $6.8 million was comprised of two Dell hardware deals: one with Morgan Stanley for $5.7 million (referred to in the previous sub-paragraph) and a deal for $1.1 million with SHI for the end customer BofA.

(4) Dr Lynch emailed Mr Sullivan on 21 December 2009 (copied to Mr Hussain) stating "*So its [sic] all down to you and 10m from Dell*". In cross-examination, Dr Lynch agreed that he was making it clear to Mr Sullivan that whether market expectations as to Autonomy's Q4 2009 revenue could be met depended on getting a hardware deal with Dell.

(5) Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch with further *"quick updates"* on 22 December 2009, which highlighted the possibility of a $20 million Dell hardware deal with Bank of New York, and also noted that EMC had (through Mr Scannell) contacted Mr Sullivan to express interest in this large deal.

(6) Further revenue updates were provided to Dr Lynch by Mr Hussain on 23 December 2009 ("*225m*"), 24 December 2009 ("*224*"), 28 December 2009, 29 December 2009, and then again later that same day.

(7) On the evening of 28 December 2009, Dr Lynch emailed Mr Hussain enquiring whether he had had "*any luck with mooney/sullivan?*" Mr Hussain's response again illustrated the importance of the hardware revenue: "*Was on call with Sullivan – nothing, though I urged him to keep trying".* Later on 28 December 2009, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch: "*US – talked with mooney (dell oem said no), stouff and Sullivan. They are doing what we agreed though Sullivan has*

nothing". The Claimants pointed out that this suggested close co-operation between Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain.

(8) In the event, Autonomy recognised $9.1 million of pure hardware revenue in Q4 2009, according to the figures in Autonomy Inc's general ledger. Revenue from impugned VAR and reciprocal transactions was $37.8 million.

(9) The total revenue which the Claimants contended was from an improper activity or source was $46.9 million.

(10) Without that total Autonomy's revenue for the quarter would have been $158.4 million, a miss of 29% as against the analysts' consensus of $226.1 million, and that figure included add-back of revenue from previous quarters.

948. From Q1 2010 onwards, Autonomy continued to purchase and resell Dell hardware and also Hitachi hardware, without there being any software included in the sale, nor any sale of software agreed at the same time.

(1) What a chronological summary of the hardware reselling strategy with Dell by reference to the documentary evidence reveals

949. In a long section of their written closing submissions, the Claimants set out, separately in respect of Q1 2010 to Q2 2011 (and for good measure, Q3 2011), the facts on which they primarily relied to establish the first limb of their case, to the effect that the hardware reselling strategy was simply a means of pumping revenue, and that the purpose asserted by the Defendants was just a pretext to justify treating the hardware sales revenues as part of the software business without separate identification and disclosure.

950. They also included within that factual resume the second limb of their case, to the effect that in every quarter both Deloitte and the Audit Committee were materially misled in this regard. In this chapter I focus on the chronology revealed by the documentary evidence as to the first limb. I start with a chronological outline.

Chronology of Autonomy's relationship with Dell from Q1 2010 to Q2 2011

Q1 2010

951. Towards the end of Q4 2009 there were, as had become the norm, discussions within Autonomy as to what level of Dell hardware resales should be targeted for Q1 2010:

(1) On 30 December 2009, Mr Mooney sent Dr Lynch an email with the subject "*Dell* resale" . Mr Mooney asked, "*Should we target $20M for Q1?*", to which Dr Lynch replied, "*yep*" .

(2) Mr Mooney passed this instruction on to Mr Sullivan within minutes of receiving it from Dr Lynch: "*We need to target $20M for next Q and get as much in January as we can*".

(3) Mr Sullivan then emailed Dell's Mr Barris stating: "*Autonomy's goal is to do $20m in reselling business in Q1 with Dell. We would like to do as much as possible in January*" .

(4) On 4 January 2010, Mr Barris informed Mr Sullivan of the hardware deals that Dell was "*tracking*", which he said "*should be able to get us to our desired targets each quarter*" .

952. In none of these exchanges was there any discussion of which customers might be targeted, or of any marketing benefit that might flow from these deals.

953. In cross-examination, in response to the suggestion that this was all directed towards generating revenue to fill any gap in software sales, Dr Lynch told me: "*once we were selling the hardware, that had to go into the forecast and once it was in the forecast, it had to be hit*". He continued:

> *"So there will be a forecast -- from the point where we decided to do this, we would have our quarterly forecasts and those would be what analysts would try to coalesce around with consensus. Because we know we're going to be selling hardware, that hardware number has to be built into the forecast because we can't have it coming on top of it and so the forecast is actually constructed to take account of the expected amount of hardware business."*

954. The Claimants submitted that Dr Lynch thus accepted, at least implicitly, that the purpose of the hardware sales was to generate the revenue necessary so as to meet Autonomy's forecasts, which drove in large part market expectations.

955. The chronology for Q1 2010 in this regard was as follows:

(1) As referred to above, Dr Lynch's confirmation that Autonomy should target $20 million of hardware sales was given on 30 December 2009.

(2) It was only subsequently, from 7 January 2010, that Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch started discussing the revenue targets for each quarter in 2010.

(3) On 7 January 2010, Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with details of the Bloomberg consensus for the year and how that might be achieved.

(4) On 11 January 2010, Dr Lynch responded as follows:

> *"go with 192*
>
> *map out the year*
>
> *work out the acceptable q1 eps*

map out the eps year

report back

maintian [sic] y o y margins"

(5) On 15 January 2010, Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with a forecast breakdown for the year. He suggested that for Q1 2010 they should target $194 million of revenue, with 45% operating margin and 25 cents earnings per share. He continued: "*I have analysed how to get to $194m and can get the 25 cennts [sic] EPS with around $15m or so of appliance sales*". In other words, in order to generate $194 million of revenue in Q1 2010, with earnings per share of 25 cents, Mr Hussain estimated that they would need to include what he called "*appliance*" sales of $15 million or so. Dr Lynch confirmed in cross-examination that this was a reference to building hardware sales into the forecast to achieve the target.

(6) Dr Lynch was content with Mr Hussain's proposals.

956. Pausing there, the Claimants submitted in their written closing submissions that this chronology demonstrated that it could not have been the 2010 targets that drove Dr Lynch's instructions to target $20 million through Dell for Q1 2010, for the *"Simple reason that that instruction was given before the setting of the 2010 targets."* But that submission seems to me to be based on a misunderstanding: Dr Lynch's point (as I understood it) was that because hardware sales were included in the forecast, they cannot have been there to plug shortfalls in software revenues if they emerged, and that point is substantiated by the chronology, rather than upset by it. How far that takes Dr Lynch is another matter: the Claimants' contention remains that Autonomy needed to show growth and the forecast Autonomy felt able to give was on one view "padded" with hardware sales to enable it to do so. Whether plug or padding seems to me to make little difference in the context.

957. To return to the factual résumé, throughout Q1 2010, as in previous quarters, Mr Hussain provided regular updates to Dr Lynch in relation to the achieved and projected hardware revenue. The Claimants submitted that every exchange supports their contention that the primary, if not sole, purpose of these sales was the production of recognisable revenue, rather than any 'marketing' objective:

(1) On 8 February 2010, Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with an update on projected revenue and earnings per share for Q1 2010. This forecasted revenue at $197 million and earnings per share of 26 cents. Mr Hussain made clear that in order to achieve $197 million, a number of hardware sales would need to be secured, including "*Hit[a]chi / MS + BofA $5m*" and "*Dell (Ubs) $10m (in negotiations)"*. Mr Hussain concluded that he was "*happy that we have sufficient backup to hit the numbers at this stage*".

(2) On 11 February 2010, Mr Sullivan sent an email to Mr Hussain identifying "*the more probable deals for the qtr*". As can be seen from the attachment to that email, by that time, Mr Sullivan was anticipating the possibility of Dell hardware deals in Q1 2010 totalling $30.7 million.

(3) In Mr Sullivan's commentary on each of these deals there is no suggestion that any of these transactions involved the sale of an appliance or a package that included Autonomy software; nor that the sale of Autonomy software was of the remotest interest to Mr Sullivan, as Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination.

(4) Further, as the Claimants especially drew to my attention, the entry in relation to a $10 million deal with Citibank indicated that Autonomy's involvement in the deal was unlikely to be known by Citibank. Dr Lynch recognised that is hardly consistent with these deals forming part of an Autonomy marketing strategy:

"I wouldn't be happy with that, unless we could tell Citi. ... I wouldn't accept that order if I had known – if I knew that it was not possible to tell Citi, but I don't know how they would stop us telling citi".

(5) On 23 February 2010, Dr Lynch sent an email to himself which included details of secured and anticipated revenue. By that time, $100 million of revenue had already been achieved in the quarter, of which $5.5 million was "*low margin*", i.e., loss-making hardware sales. The email appears to note that further hardware deals were projected for the quarter ("*3 dell/hiatachi [sic]*", "*10 HW ******"), with total revenue forecast totalling $200 million.

(6) By 1 March 2010, Dell deals of only approximately $5 million had actually closed. An email from Mr Sullivan to Autonomy's Mr Matt de Luca of that date, noted that by that point $50 million of deals had been talked about with Dell but that "*much of the $50m are bids that dell may not win or won't hit this qtr*". The concern appears to have been lest the revenue targets were not hit: and the Claimants made the point that had the purpose of these sales been 'marketing', then whether or not the deals would conclude that quarter would have been a matter of little moment for Mr Sullivan.

(7) On 12 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent himself a further email containing an update in relation to the revenue position as it stood at that time. Revenue from deals "*done*" at that time totalled $108 million, which included $9.3 million of "*low margin*" hardware sales. Further hardware sales were forecast at $8 million ("*8 HW ***** (Silicon G, rita,,Dell 3, emc?, Hit[achi]/ms 4.5, dell5 2, Target)*") in order to arrive at a total revenue figure for the quarter of $195 million.

(8) A few days later, on 15 March 2010, Mr Hussain told Mr Sullivan that they would "*definitely need*" a further Hitachi deal and that he would also "*like*" a further Dell deal, which were two of the hardware deals included in Dr Lynch's 12 March update to himself. On the same day, Mr Hussain provided an update to Dr Lynch stating that revenue was "*currently at 195.5m*", but "*5-8 more*" was needed.

(9) The following day, 16 March 2010, Mr Hussain sought an update from Mr Sullivan on the status of hardware deals with Dell and Hitachi. Mr Sullivan responded as follows:

> *"HDS will be about $2.1m – final orders coming in this week – I need to calc the final number based on final margin agreement with Morgan. Morgan is not willing to place the additional $4m order this qtr.*
>
> - *should have another $500k to $1m from Dell/SHI. discussing some other orders as well – we could provide extra incentive to accelerate this.*
>
> - *also working on a deal to sell DB a dedicated safe. this could be about $300k to $400k and could be delivered this qtr. There is no rep involved as Dan Manners came directly to us (Roger, Rob and I). I am in Pleasanton and we are trying to cut a deal with him ASAP.*
>
> *other longer shots for Q1*
>
> - *Will get orders from UBS in March for up to $1m, but unlikely to ship. Calls later today on this should provide more info.*
>
> - *I am meeting Bank of NY in NYC on Thursday re: potential dell orders.*
>
> - *We will probably get an order from Citi through a reseller called insight in March. Around $1m. Shipping will likely make this a q2 deal."*

(10) There is no mention of any sales of Autonomy software to those customers. Mr Hussain's response was that he "*was counting on hds so need ubs and citi orders to be shipped"*. Mr Sullivan immediately actioned that.

(11) Shortly after receiving Mr Sullivan's email, Mr Hussain updated Dr Lynch, informing him that it was "*getting more difficult, low margin is down for hds – confirmed* for *2.1m out of 4.5m (but with 2m from ubs and citi as possibles). have 1 m from bofa dell so need another c 1.5m from somewhere*".

958. In a pattern becoming familiar, as Q1 2010 came to an end, Mr Hussain became increasingly concerned about whether enough hardware reselling revenue would be raised, and the Defendants continued to monitor whether $20 million of hardware revenue would suffice to meet aggregate revenue expectations:

(1) On 24 March 2010, Mr Hussain, in an email to Mr Sullivan, expressed concern that two hardware orders that Mr Sullivan had mentioned might not ship in time to enable revenue to be recognised in the quarter: *"… I need $1m to ship*".

(2) The next day, Mr Hussain told Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan, in connection with a contemplated hardware sale to Morgan Stanley, "I just want the revenue gents".

(3) On 27 March 2010, Mr Hussain wrote to Dr Lynch, "Keeping you informed that I have increased the appliance sales to $19.215m (with another $1.7m possible)".

(4) Dr Lynch disagreed that this was simply a false description for what were in truth pure hardware sales and suggested in cross-examination that some of these sales would have been appliance sales.

(5) However, in his evidence to the US court, Mr Sullivan stated that he did not consider any of the Dell sales in 2010 to have been sales of appliances; and there is no documentary evidence to suggest that any part of the $19.215 million of potential revenue related to appliances. Furthermore, the amount of appliance sales was stated to be very small. I accept Mr Sullivan's evidence.

959. On 29 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent Mr Hussain an email attachment recording in short form the Q1 2010 aggregate revenue figure. This stated that $132 million had already been achieved "*INCL 20 Low margin*". Dr Lynch's email noted *"- 5 replace low margin in closed with hi"* which the Claimants maintained was a suggestion that $5 million of the loss-making hardware revenue should be replaced with "*hi*", i.e. revenue from high margin software sales, if such sales could be achieved.

960. This was put to Dr Lynch in cross-examination. After patient but rigorous cross-examination, he said he was *"having trouble following this"* and subsequently that this was ten years ago, that it was one of 100 million pages in the case, that he did not know the context, and that the suggested interpretation *"might be on the right lines, or it may be something completely different, I don't know".* This reluctance to speak to selected documents from 10 years ago is understandable; but it was uncharacteristic of Dr Lynch; and his equivocation was likewise uncharacteristic and unconvincing. There is nothing of substance to contradict the Claimants' suggestion, which I thus accept: Dr Lynch's equivocation does not suffice.

961. The following day, 30 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent Mr Hussain, in a format which had become habitual for Dr Lynch of a column of numbers and opposite each number an abbreviated reference to a counterparty (such as *"5: PMI*

Partner") or description of type of business or activity (such as *"- 5: replace low margin in closed with hi"*), a revision of his suggested list of transactions to achieve forecast. The first entry was *"138: Done (INCL 20 Low margin)"*. The list following now included two alternatives, the second catering for the possibility that no Vatican Library VAR transaction (discussed in paragraphs 280 to 397 of the Schedule of Impugned VAR Transactions) were to materialise; in that event, Dr Lynch envisaged "*22 Low margin*", i.e. $22 million of pure hardware revenue. When cross-examined on this, Dr Lynch accepted, that this anticipated the possibility of Autonomy including anywhere from $15 million of pure hardware revenue ($20 million less $5 million) to $22 million.

962. Later that same day, 30 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent Mr Hussain a further revision of his earlier notes on sales, again containing two alternatives, stating as follows:

> *"Ok heres my list*
>
> *note the without vat list*
>
> *good to hear vat looking fine but even if vat were compromised, even if you could get 5 from Valueteam it might just scrape it at 193."*

963. On 31 March 2010, the last day of the quarter, Mr Hussain sent an email to Dr Lynch entitled "*route*". The attachment, entitled "*SH route to 25c*", identified that, if "*Low margin cost*" (i.e. if the cost to Autonomy of purchasing hardware sold in the quarter) were $20 million, total revenue of $200 million would be required in order to achieve earnings per share of 25 cents in Q1 2010. This reflected the fact that although the hardware sales boosted revenue, they were loss-making, and thus had a deleterious effect on earnings per share. As Ms Gustafsson had explained:

> "*Selling hardware …, particularly hardware at a loss, involved a cost that hit Autonomy's earnings per share. … While higher hardware sales may have led to a higher quarterly revenue figure, they led to a lower EPS figure given they resulted in a negative margin*".

964. Dr Lynch responded to Mr Hussain later that day, attaching a revised version of the "*SH route to 25c*" document. Based on Dr Lynch's alternative calculations, earnings per share of 25 cents could be achieved with total revenue of $195 million ("*EPS 25c 195*"). Dr Lynch's apparent intention was to suggest that the target earnings per share could be achieved if less hardware revenue (and thus less cost) was recognised in the quarter. He appears to have reached this view having checked with Mr Goodman where market consensus was at for Q1 2010. Mr Goodman informed Dr Lynch that a "*more accurate reflection of where Q1 consensus really is, excluding the two clear outliers*

that are above $200m" was revenues of $193.12 million with earnings per share of 25 cents. Dr Lynch forwarded this on to Mr Hussain.

965. Numerous further versions of the "*SH route to 25c*" schedule were exchanged between Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain on 31 March 2010, which the Claimants suggested was a demonstration of the importance that they attached to ensuring that an appropriate balance was struck between achieving revenue through (loss-making) hardware sales and maintaining an adequate earnings per share.

966. In the event, Autonomy reported revenues for Q1 2010 of $194.2 million and earnings per share of 25 cents in its Q1 2010 Quarterly Report. This was exactly the Reuters consensus figure. Reported revenues included $11.8 million of revenue (reduced from the original target of $20 million) from the hardware sales programme (as well as some $26.8 million which the Claimants alleged was improperly recognised in respect of five impugned VAR transactions, $8.5 million from reciprocal transactions which they also impugned, and a further $12.7 million from hosting arrangements which they alleged ought not to have been recognised in Q1 2010). That left $149 million from sources not impugned by the Claimants.

967. That $11.8 million of revenue for the hardware sales programme was less than the value of the hardware sales achieved and shipped in Q1 2010, which was just over $19.2 million.[177]In the days following the end of the quarter, Mr Chamberlain, at the instance of what he described as *"powers greater than me",* directed *"adjustments to revenue".* The Claimants alleged that this was improper and illustrated both the Autonomy management's attitude to hardware revenues and their propensity to mislead the market, Deloitte and the Audit Committee. I turn now to the issue of revenue manipulation.

Q1 2010: alleged post-quarter end manipulation of the hardware revenues recognised

968. I have mentioned previously the problems to which an expansion in Autonomy's recourse to hardware sales to make good shortfalls in software sales gave rise in Q3 2009, and the 'solution' adopted at that time of persuading Deloitte to approve the allocation of a substantial proportion of the costs/losses as marketing costs (see paragraphs 917 to 922 above). The continued material recourse to such sales after EMC had withdrawn and Dell had replaced it as hardware supplier for the programme necessitated the development of other ways of minimising the adverse effect of the programme on Autonomy's 'bottom line' figures.

969. That was, however, easier said than done; and the problem was exacerbated by two factors:

(1) The problem of identifying final figures for quarterly software sales revenue. Delivery of software could be achieved instantaneously over the internet. A considerable proportion of software sales tended to be concluded at the very end (often on the last day) of the relevant quarter,

[177] And see further paragraph 980 below.

and so software revenues could not accurately be measured until the last moment. Hardware sales, by contrast, required physical delivery and in any event, EMC (or subsequently, Dell and/or Hitachi), would typically wish to fulfil the sale contract in the ordinary course of the quarter.

(2) In the case of both software and hardware, once delivery was effected unconditionally, revenue from the sale was mandated under IAS rules.

970. The only 'solution' available to this mismatch was to find some way of justifying deferring recognition of hardware revenue which had proved to be, as it were, excess to requirements. The expedient developed by Mr Hussain was to find some basis on which to assert that the hardware sales had not been completed, usually by reference to some alleged delay or imperfection in delivery.

971. According to the Claimants, Q1 2010 was the first quarter in which Autonomy deferred revenue recognition from hardware sales. The Claimants' case in closing was to the effect that Autonomy, at the instigation of the Defendants, treated hardware sales revenue as a discretionary fund, recognising or deferring recognition of such revenue as they pleased in order to achieve (or appear to be achieving) targeted revenue growth whilst at the same time protecting Autonomy's bottom line and consequently key parameters including organic growth figure and EPS.

972. The Claimants contended that this was not only improper in itself, but also was another powerful indication that the hardware programme had nothing to do with protecting and promoting Autonomy's software business and was never calibrated or pursued for the purposes avowed by Dr Lynch: it was always about *"revenue revenue revenue"* and the need for and use of it was a function of revenue targets.

973. There was a dispute, however, not only as to whether this reduction in recognised hardware revenue was dishonest manipulation (rather than an appropriate decision against recognition), but also as to whether any such claim was open to the Claimants on their pleading. Before turning to the dispute in more detail, it is convenient to determine whether or not the allegation against the Defendants was sufficiently pleaded.

974. The Defendants had to acknowledge that there was a reference in a different part of the RRAPoC (under the heading *"Involvement of Lynch and Hussain in the transactions themselves"*) but Mr Miles submitted that in the allegations of false accounting for hardware in the RRAPoC there was no express allegation that the deferral of revenue was illegitimate. Nor was it alleged that the matters referred to resulted in an inaccuracy in Autonomy's published information.

975. The Claimants maintained that the plea was plain, that it was well understood by the Defendants to extend to an allegation of impropriety, and that the

parties had as a matter of pleading and submission joined issue on it. The pleading on which they relied was expressed as follows:

> *"On occasion, Lynch and Hussain also discussed and (it is to be inferred) agreed to defer recognising revenue from pure hardware sales from one quarter to the next, and to reduce the level of pure hardware sales that could otherwise have been achieved (and thus to postpone or avoid recognising the associated costs of hardware) where they anticipated that they could meet market expectations with a lower level of hardware sales than had been, or could be, achieved."*

976. The Claimants submitted that:

(1) Dr Lynch and his lawyers plainly understood the allegation that he (Dr Lynch) faced: when pleading to that paragraph, he stated that the email communications which the Claimants went on to refer to in PoC §135 "*did not relate to any improper deferral in recognising revenue from existing sales* ...". Indeed, Dr Lynch sought further particulars of the allegation, which the Claimants provided;

(2) The same is true in relation to Mr Hussain, stating that "*[a]ll revenue was appropriately recognised in accordance with the relevant accounting standards*";

(3) Contrary to Mr Miles' assertion, this issue was in fact addressed by Mr Welham in his witness statement, in passages on which he was not cross-examined: It was also addressed by Dr Lynch's own witnesses.

(4) The point was also addressed in the Claimants' written opening submissions.

977. To my mind, there is force in Mr Miles's objection to the extent that such an allegation should have been pleaded so as expressly to state in the more relevant part of the pleading that impropriety was being asserted. However, I do not think the Defendants can realistically claim to have misunderstood what was being alleged, or to have been taken by surprise. The evidence engaged with the point. In my judgment, the allegation cannot be disposed of on the basis of a pleading point; and the allegation is relevant to probity in any event.

978. As to the substance of the allegation, the Defendants argued that (a) the decision was taken because additional information became available such that the finance department considered that part of the hardware resales revenue could not properly be recognised in that quarter; (b) late changes such as these were subjected to intense scrutiny by Deloitte and approved by them; and (c) Autonomy was in any event entitled to manage its sales pipeline carefully to ensure predictability of its results, and was open about doing so in its Annual Reports.

979. Dr Lynch contended further that there was no basis demonstrated for the Claimants' contention that he was involved in the decision. However, when cross-examined, although he could not speak to the actual facts, he justified the principle and practice of such changes as entirely normal: enquiries post-quarter end would often reveal some impediment to recognition such as late delivery or failure to deliver *"in good stead"*. He insisted that *"There's nothing inappropriate about that happening past the quarter end"*.

980. To demonstrate the contrary, the Claimants relied on the following demonstration of manipulation, in addition to the matters I have referred to above:

(1) On 31 March 2010, Mr Sullivan provided Mr Hussain with "*a preliminary estimate of how it will come down based on updates from Dell*". He set out the status and details of the Hitachi and Dell hardware sales that had been achieved in Q1 2010. He stated that he would not have the final "*shipping numbers*" until the end of the day "*so these numbers could change a little*", but that the preliminary estimate was that $18,583,976 of hardware had been shipped in Q1 2010 (with a further $7,043,598 falling into Q2 2010).

(2) Later that evening, Mr Sullivan provided updated numbers to Mr Hussain and Ms Cynthia Watkins (Autonomy's Corporate Controller). These showed that $19,224,547.76 of hardware had been shipped in Q1 2010, with a further $7,595,180.74 falling into Q2 2010.

(3) On that basis, just over $19.2 million of hardware sales had been achieved, and shipped, in Q1 2010.

(4) That, therefore, is the amount of hardware revenue that should have been recognised in Q1 2010: but it was not.

981. As to the thinking behind the sudden reduction in hardware sales in the Q1 2010 Quarterly Report the Claimants contended that:

(1) On 8 April 2010, over a week after quarter end, Mr Chamberlain sent an email to Ms Watkins, copied to Mr Stephan and Ms Harris, subject "*Revenue adjustments*", stating as follows:

> *"Firstly, I apologise for the constant changing of your numbers. Powers greater than me are making these decisions and whilst I understand them I know they will be causing you a lot of pain. I will make sure this is remembered when it comes to sorting out Q1 bonuses.*
>
> *We need to make adjustments to revenue which affects hardware revenue and costs as well as normal licence.*

> 1) *Defer Capax (FSA) - $4,285k*
>
> 2) *Defer additional hardware deals as per attached – some ins and outs from last nights schedule*
>
> *Once processed can you resend TB, consol pack and revenue sheets.*
>
> *Thanks and apologies again".*

(2) The attachment to Mr Chamberlain's email was a schedule which showed the percentage of resold hardware which had been shipped in Q1 2010; and the totals after applying the percentages equate to those which appeared in Mr Sullivan's email of 31 March 2010 referred to in paragraph 980(2) above.

(3) The Claimants submitted that it was to be inferred that what was under consideration was that revenue in relation to certain deals should be deferred for some reason other than delay in shipment.

982. As to who was responsible for or involved in this revenue manipulation, the Claimants contended:

(1) It was plain from his covering email of 8 April 2010 that Mr Chamberlain was not deciding off his own back what revenue should or should not be recognised in Q1 2010. He was being directed by "*powers greater than me*".

(2) At the very least must have included Mr Hussain. (Ms Harris thought it likely that it was Mr Hussain, but did not know the extent to which he would have discussed the matter with Dr Lynch). Indeed, that is apparent from Mr Hussain's email to Mr Chamberlain of earlier that day (with the subject "*costs*"): "*If we can defer $4m from HDS (Morgan Stanley) then I believe we get there*".

(3) Mr Hussain would have wanted to check with Dr Lynch, and given the close interest that Dr Lynch clearly took in ensuring an appropriate balance between revenue and earnings per share (see paragraph 965 above), as well as his previous (and subsequent) input into how much hardware revenue to recognise, it is improbable that he would not have been involved on this occasion too.

983. The Claimants contended that given the familiarity that each of them had with the revenue recognition rules (and this would have involved the most basic

application of those rules), absent any good reason for such deferral, it would have been obvious to Mr Chamberlain, and also to Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch, that what was under consideration was wholly improper, but that this was not thought by them to be an impediment.

984. The Claimants sought further to support this contention by reference to various crosses against hardware shipments made on a succession of versions of the schedule prepared by Mr Sullivan (see paragraph 980 above), which appeared to show changing plans in succeeding versions as to what hardware sales (marked with a cross) should be stripped out. They suggested, for example, that:

(1) As at 7 April 2010, the plan had been to defer the revenue (and corresponding costs) in relation to eight hardware sales with a total revenue of $4,472,575, meaning that $15,054,428.69 would be recognised in Q1 2010 (column G, row 38); whereas

(2) By 8 April 2010, only five crosses were included, but the ‘crossed’ deals now included a $5.6 million deal with Morgan Stanley showing a loss to Autonomy of 30% (much higher than the standard 10% and therefore a considerable negative in respect of EPS): this meant that $7,748,041.69 (column H, row 36) of hardware revenue would be deferred, with $11,779,144 being recognised in Q1 2010 (column H, row 38).

985. A few days later the position had changed again. On 12 April 2010, Mr Chamberlain sent a further email to Ms Watkins, copied to Mr Stephan and Ms Harris, with the subject “Further changes”:

> *“We have had to make further changes to your numbers.*
>
> *Capax (FSA) – back in*
>
> *Hardware – have had to recognize more HW*
>
> *The revised hardware sheet is attached again with a column identifying the changes. We have manually updated the consol packs and TBs and processed the journals so you should tie in to these revised numbers.”*

986. The Claimants submitted that by 12 April 2010, it would have been entirely clear what hardware had been sold and delivered in Q1 2010: and that these latter changes cannot sensibly be explained by reference to changes emerging from 8 April onwards. They also pointed out that the one person – indeed perhaps the only person – who would have known exactly what hardware had been delivered was Mr Sullivan, but he was not copied in on any of the above exchanges and does not appear to have been involved in the discussions or decisions as to what hardware revenue to recognise.

987. Furthermore, they pointed to later documentary evidence that Mr Hussain, at least, was concerned to ensure that Mr Sullivan was not involved or made aware of the late changes. Thus, on 26 April 2010, in an email with the subject "*Low margin business*", Mr Hussain instructed Mr Stephan that he (Mr Stephan) was responsible for "*keeping right on top of how much has been sold, how much is in deferred revenue, how much in the pipeline*", requesting that Mr Stephan provide him with "*daily updates*". In response, Mr Stephan enquired whether he could "*share with Sullivan the changes we made to what was recognised/deferred in Q1*". Mr Hussain's reply was categorical:

> "*No – you do not give this info to mike S – why would he need it? just get what he has sold on a daily basis – create a spreadsheet – I do not want any inventory at the end of this q*".

988. The Claimants concluded with the point that in any event, it is clear from the delivery notes for the deferred deals that (a) the hardware was indeed shipped in Q1 2010 and, save for one, was delivered in Q1 2010 too; and (b) in respect of many of the deferred deals, Autonomy had actually received payment in Q1 2010, disproving (if it were otherwise contended) that these deferrals were anything to do with collectability or issues as to whether the customer had accepted the goods. Payment had been received by Autonomy in Q1 2010.

989. In my judgment, the decision to defer recognition of this hardware revenue was taken because the revenue was (a) not needed for that quarter to make good any shortfall in software revenue (they had already been covered in other ways); (b) 'expensive' in that the costs of it exceeded its sale price and thus had an adverse impact on gross margin, so that (in pursuit of the objectives of the strategy) it was best kept back for use when more necessary; (c) likely to prove useful in future quarters if and when shortfalls arose which had not been covered. That was improper, and the Defendants knew it.

Q1 2010 – the inventory

990. A consequence of the decision was that the hardware of which the sale had not yet been recognised for accounting purposes needed to be shown as an asset on Autonomy's balance sheet as at 31 March 2010 until it was purportedly sold. This meant that there was a significant increase in Autonomy's inventory for Q1 2010:

   (1) The inventory appearing as a sub-heading *"Inventory"* under the heading *"Assets"* in Autonomy's balance sheet as at 31 March 2010 (and included in the Q1 2010 Quarterly Report) was $10.250 million. That represented an increase of over $9.75 million as compared to the previous quarter.

   (2) In cross-examination, Ms Harris did not dispute that the increase in inventory as at the end of Q1 2010 was referable to the revenue from certain of the hardware sales not having been recognised in that quarter.

(3) That can also be seen from the contemporaneous documentation.

i. On 16 April 2010, Ms Harris sent an email to Ms Watkins with the comment: "*We want to classify the 3 invoices at the bottom of the attached list (4,170,350; 4,666,928 & 1024,093) as inventory rather than prepayments*"). Those three entries – $4,170,350, $4,666,927.90 and $1,024,093.37 – totalled $9,861,371.27. In a further email to Ms Watkins later that same day, Ms Harris stated that the "*equipment was shipped directly to the customer which is stated on the invoices*".

ii. On 17 April 2010, Ms Watkins responded: "*This is for the balance of 8.3M as an additional 1.5M was recognized. Helen will be sending to you. Its more like 15 invoices* ☺" .

iii. Following accounting revisions on 12 April 2010, $8,209,780.60 of costs relating to the four hardware deals was deferred (column M, row 36); with $1,508,340 of additional costs being recognised as a result of a further revision in the 8 April 2010 version of the spreadsheet. (column M, row 39).

iv. The fact that the inventory related to these hardware deals can also be seen from an attachment to Mr Chamberlain's email to Mr Hussain of 16 April 2010.

991. The Claimants contended, and I accept and find, that Deloitte were misled in relation to the inventory.

(1) On 20 April 2010, Mr Chamberlain sent an email to Mr Stephan, which he copied to Mr Welham, referring to the hardware deals in respect of which revenue was not being recognised in Q1 2010 and stated:

> "*to cut a long story short we were not able to prove delivery on these deals, each of them having problems and so we have deferred until Q2 2010. The future receipt of cash and satisfactory delivery notes will provide me with the evidence I need to recognize. They are currently deferred as goods in transit/inventory.*"

(2) In response, Mr Welham stated:

> "*The issue we have is ensuring that you have the asset at the balance sheet date. Can you prove delivery now, i.e. post period end to show that you had the hardware and delivered just after period end?*"

(3) Mr Chamberlain responded:

"*We have many delivery notes that show delivery leaving in March but not reaching customer until early April.*"

(4) This was false: as set out in paragraph 988 above, all bar one of the hardware deals had been delivered by quarter end (31 March 2010) and, in many cases, Autonomy had actually received payment for it by that date.

992. However, the substantial increase in inventory therefore required some explanation to the market.

(1) On 16 April 2010, five days before the results were released, Autonomy issued a trading statement, stating that it expected to:

"*report record first quarter 2010 results in line with analyst consensus estimates of revenues of approximately $193 million and fully diluted EPS (adjusted) of approximately $0.25*" .

(2) The trading statement continued:

"*In Q1 the company took advantage of discounted offers to purchase stock for the Arcpliance product in advance of Q2 sales, which affected the cash position. These sales have now been completed*" (emphasis added).

(3) Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain were both involved in approving this wording prior to its release.

(4) In a similar vein, the Q1 2010 Quarterly Report stated:

"*Movements in cash flow during the first quarter of 2010 of note included: … Purchasing of inventory of $10 million for Q2 2010 sales, most of which have now completed.*"

993. However, as both Defendants knew:

(1) The increased inventory in Q1 2010 was not due to stock having been purchased in Q1 2010 for sale in Q2 2010: as explained above, it was due to the decision not to recognise the revenue in Q1 2010.

(2) Further, it was not "*stock for the Arcpliance product*". Arcpliance was sometimes referred to as 'Digital Safe in a Box', as Mr Avila confirmed in cross-examination. It involved Autonomy pre-loading Digital Safe on to hardware and then pre-configuring it.[178] In contrast,

[178] See also Yan 1 §28, which was unchallenged in cross-examination: "*Following Autonomy's acquisition of Zantaz, the Product Development team was encouraged, and at times, pressurized, into trying to package Digital Safe into a self-contained appliance for sale to on-premise customers. This led to the development of what was known amongst the software developers as "Safe in a Box" (subsequently marketed as "Arcpliance"), which was essentially a computer box with the capacity to*

the inventory related to pure hardware which had already been sold and, as Ms Harris confirmed in her email to Ms Watkins on 16 April 2010, had been shipped directly by the manufacturer to the customer.

(3) Nor was it stock that was purchased by Autonomy to take "*advantage of discounted offers*", but was instead hardware that Autonomy was selling (indeed, had sold) at a loss.

994. The story was false: but once spun it had to be kept going. As I describe later, the false representation that the $10 million of inventory related to Arcpliance was subsequently reinforced by the Defendants on the Q1 2010 earnings call: see paragraphs 1573 to 1588 below.

My assessment re Q1 2010

995. In my judgment, these facts and those set out in paragraphs 951 to 994 above demonstrate that:

(1) In Q1 2010 a pattern of manipulating recognition of revenues from the hardware reselling strategy to achieve the best balance between revenue growth and gross margin/EPS is clearly evident;

(2) The deferral of hardware revenue recognition gave rise to the problem that the amount of the deferral was (logically and properly) posted as an asset to Inventory: but the truth as to its source could not be told without revealing the hardware reselling strategy;

(3) At the Earnings Call for the quarter both Defendants provided an explanation for the Inventory which was patently false: see below.

Q2 2010

996. The hardware reselling strategy continued in Q2 2010. A particular feature of this quarter, which served to increase Autonomy's reliance on hardware, was the dramatic reduction in VAR transactions.[179] There were no allegedly 'reciprocal' transactions in Q2 2010 either. It was in this quarter that the Hogenson episode occurred, which placed the spotlight on the propriety of both.

997. The Claimants contended that Q2 2010 provides a particularly striking illustration both of the Defendants' reliance on hardware sales and of the way the Defendants tailored their sales, or at least recognition of revenue arising from them, in order to meet market revenue expectations.

archive a limited amount of data".

[179] Only one VAR transaction was concluded (VT15); and that did not involve any of Autonomy's usual VARs.

998. On 16 April 2010, Mr Sullivan sent the Defendants a summary of where things stood regarding hardware sales for the quarter. He referred to an *"Additional Pipeline of approx. $67m"* with caveats that (a) some was *"low probability"* (b) about $17m was *"70% probability or greater"* and (c) *"Some will likely book or ship outside Q2 2010".* He provided a schedule of prospective deals assigning to each a probability percentage. He said he was:

> "*Looking for any guidance on where to draw the line on new pipeline or target Q2 Low Margin Revenue range*".

999. On 19 April 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch an email referring to the "*consensus*" market expectation of aggregate revenue of $222 million and earnings per share of 30 cents for Q2 2010. Mr Hussain then set out a number of different models:

(1) Taking the cost base excluding hardware as $94.5 million, in order to hit earnings per share of 30 cents (sometimes referred to in shorthand as *"30c")*, software sales of $190.5 million would be required.

(2) If it was assumed that there would be $15 million of hardware sales and if various software deals could be concluded, revenue of $201.5 million for the quarter would be achieved with earnings per share of 28 cents.

(3) In order to hit aggregate revenue of $215 million with earnings per share of 30.6 cents, Autonomy would need "*$20m hardware*" along with various software sales; or, if aiming for aggregate revenue of $220 million with earnings per share of 30 cents, "*[we] will need either 5m more h/w and lower cost or more s/w*".

1000. He suggested two alternative targets, explaining that the question was "*more of how much h/w to take…*"

(1) *"So could go for $215 m and 30c (most likely outcome) but 10% organic growth means share price likely off a lot";*

(2) *"Or could go for $220m and 30c (13% organic growth) – will need either 5m more h/w and lower cost or more s/w".*

1001. Mr Rabinowitz asked Dr Lynch about this in cross-examination, and put to him that *"the consideration of how much hardware deals to do was all about what revenue figures you want to get to, correct?"* Dr Lynch answered this as follows:

> *"Yes, I think that's reasonable. What's happening here is we're working out what the forecast is going to be, so, as we were discussing the other day, we lower and raise the forecast as we think prospects are. And, yes, we are using, or at least in one of his options, the option in the middle, he's using the possibility of 5 million of hardware flex to fit that forecast together."*

1002. Mr Rabinowitz followed this by asking him to accept that "*it's all about revenue figures…it was about producing revenue, albeit at a cost, that might be used to achieve particular revenue targets?"* Dr Lynch's calmly delivered answer encapsulates the essence of the defence:

> "*There's no doubt that they come with revenue and there's no doubt that that does have the advantage of giving us a bit of flexibility. Not much because of the delivery issue. But that's not the primary reason why this was chosen as the strategy. If the primary reason was revenue, there would be better things to do."*

1003. The next day, 20 April 2010, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch some further thoughts as to how to achieve the target. He explained how earnings per share of 30 cents could be achieved by reference to different overall revenue levels with differing levels of hardware sales:[180]

> *"FURTHER THOUGHTS on outlook – tax rate in Q2 is higher:*
> 1. *Tax losses mean full year rate will be 24.4%, means Q2 rate will be 21.8% (catch up on Q1)*
> 2. *Costs exc. Hardware = $94.5m*
> 3. *To hit 30c in Q2 without h/w need $194.8m revenue. My current forecast (inc 15m from jpm and 13m from bav) is $186.5m so $8.3m short*
> 4. *To hit 30c with $215m of revs = $18.3m of hardware, means $10m short*
> 5. *To hit 30c with $220m of revs = $23.2m of hardware, means $10.5m short*
>
> *So overall we will need to find $10m or so if we forecast 195, 215 or 220*
>
> *How can I find it?*
>
> - *CA deal should yield $6m to $7m*
> - *Grow Safenet, BlueArc etc*

[180] The reference in Mr Hussain's email to "*bav*" was to the Vatican Library.

> *My suggestion is to go with 220m and 30c but we can discuss when you waken."*

1004. Later that day, Mr Hussain sent an email to Dr Lynch with the subject "*Interesting point on deals for hardware*", stating: "*Would be $40m to have no effect on gross margins – i.e. big visibility on q2*". It is unclear quite what Mr Hussain meant, but the Claimants suggested (and I accept) that the effect of what he was saying was that if $40 million of hardware sales were made in the quarter that would have no effect on gross margin, but that sales at that sort of level would be very visible to the market.

1005. It appears that, shortly thereafter, Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain agreed the amount of revenue required from hardware sales in Q2 2010. Thus, following a discussion he had had with Mr Hussain on 21 April 2010, Mr Sullivan emailed Mr Chamberlain (with subject heading *"Low Margin Revenue"*) that the pure hardware sales revenue goal for Q2 2010 was now $30 million. When cross-examined, Dr Lynch said he assumed that the $30 million figure was one that they had agreed would be the objective.

1006. In an email to Dr Lynch dated 28 April 2010, Mr Hussain referred to the pure hardware sales revenue earned to date in Q2 2010 (*"Deferred was $15m New so far is $15.5m Expect $10m more minimum"*) and stated "*I am slowing it down ok*?" Dr Lynch replied two minutes later, "*ok*".

1007. The Claimants suggested that all this once more confirmed that hardware revenue, or at least its recognition by Autonomy, was a tap which the Defendants turned on or off more or less at will, without regard to any business consideration other than meeting market expectations for aggregate revenue and earnings per share. The Claimants also relied on exchanges between Mr Hussain and Mr Barris of Dell, which showed Mr Sullivan (a) seeking to control the hardware revenue and (b) suggesting deferral to the next quarter once the $10 million which he had mentioned to Dr Lynch seemed likely to be considerably exceeded.

1008. On 5 May 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch a document entitled "*Getting to 220 SH.doc*". This was an updated routemap to achieving $220 million of aggregate revenue in Q2 2010. The document referred to $16.4 million of "*low margin*" revenue being needed that quarter, and noted (as Dr Lynch accepted) that $13.2 million of such revenue had not been recognised in, but had been deferred from, Q1 2010. This version of the routemap anticipated $13.5 million of revenue from "*BAV*", i.e. the Vatican Library.

1009. Dr Lynch reviewed and amended the routemap. On 12 May 2010, he sent a revised version to Mr Hussain. The following day, 13 May 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch a further version of the routemap. In this 13 May version, the amount of $13.5 million previously shown for BAV was reduced to zero, recognising that no revenue could be achieved that quarter from a VAR transaction with the Vatican Library (discussed in paragraphs 280 to 397 of the Schedule of Impugned VAR Transactions). Instead, a new line-item "*Low margin (cover for BAV)*" of $13.5 million was added. As Dr Lynch accepted in

cross-examination, Mr Hussain was proposing that, if the sale of software to Vatican Library (through a VAR) was not concluded in this quarter, it could be covered by an equivalent dollar amount of low margin hardware sales: as Dr Lynch put it *"that gives him his certainty of 220…".*

1010. On 25 May 2010, in a further version of the "*Getting to 220 SH.doc*" document sent by Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch, next to the line item "*Low margin (cover for BAV)*", the comment "*BP can cover this*" had been added. This was a reference to a hosting contract which Autonomy hoped to conclude with BP that quarter. The comment appears to signify that if the hosting contract materialised, the pure hardware sales would no longer be needed to meet Autonomy's revenue target for Q2 2010.

1011. On 2 June 2010, Mr Sullivan informed Mr Hussain that "*We have hit $30m in reselling for the qtr*", with "*Still more to come*".

1012. On 7 June 2010, Mr Hussain sent an email to Dr Lynch attaching a document entitled "*Getting to 220 SH 7th june 2010 (snap shot)*". Mr Hussain said in his covering email, "*Positive moves on Msft and deloitte allows lower low margin deals means 29c*". The Claimants suggested that this signified that if increased software sales were to be made, that would give room for lower hardware sales and thereby allow Autonomy to report higher earnings per share of 29 cents.

1013. In this context, Mr Hussain's attachment reduced the amount shown for "*Low margin (cover for BAV)*" from $13.5 million to $5.8 million, and annotated the change with the comment, "*Have closed 38m, recognising 23.1m*". That, as interpreted by the Claimants, suggests that, even though Autonomy had in fact closed 'pure' hardware transactions which would entitle it to recognise $38 million of revenue in Q2 2010, Mr Hussain was proposing that Autonomy should recognise only $23.1 million of that revenue within the quarter, leaving an amount of further pure hardware revenue that Autonomy could recognise in a later quarter as and when required.

1014. Dr Lynch did not agree with this interpretation and suggested that all that Mr Hussain meant was that *"he may have some discretion in terms of saying to the customer Can I deliver that to you in three weeks 'time…."* That was not convincing: and Mr Hussain did not suggest that his proposal had anything to do with what hardware had been delivered in the quarter, because he was plainly assuming that it would all be delivered before quarter end, which was still over three weeks away.

1015. A few days later, on 11 June 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch a further version of the routemap. As before, $38 million of low margin hardware deals had closed, with $23.1 million of the revenue to be recognised.

1016. On 16 June 2010, Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with another update: by this point, with revenue for the quarter at $217 million, Mr Hussain planned to include low margin hardware sales of $23 million, meaning that earnings per share would be at 28.3 cents. As at 18 June 2010, the plan remained to recognise $23 million of hardware sales in Q2 2010. The same was true as at 21 June 2010.

1017. On 29 June 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch a further update tracking Autonomy's success in concluding large deals prior to the end of Q2 2010. The update gave a snapshot of the status of each deal as at five dates between 16 June 2010 and 29 June 2010 and also identified the amount of revenue proposed to be recognised in respect of "*Low margin*", i.e. pure hardware sales. As stated above, at 16 June 2010, 18 June 2010 and 21 June 2010, the proposal was to recognise $23 million in respect of pure hardware sales. However, by 28 June 2010 it had become apparent that "*NO DEAL*" could be secured on three hoped-for software transactions. As a result, the figure for "*Low margin*" was increased to $30 million to compensate for the corresponding shortfall.

1018. At the foot of the spreadsheet, Mr Hussain identified the effect on earnings per share of recognising more hardware revenue. He stated that if $30 million of hardware revenue was recognised, earnings per share would be 26 cents (row 38); whereas if only $23 million of hardware revenue was recognised, with a further $7 million of software sales instead ("*EPS (with $7m s/w)*"), earnings per share would be 28.7 cents (row 39). Dr Lynch accepted that this reflected the balancing act that he and Mr Hussain were having to perform:

> *"Q. And that really reflects the balancing act that you and Mr Hussain were having to perform with how much hardware sales should be included or recognised because, although it could help you get to a revenue figure, it had a knock-on deleterious effect on your ability to hit the particular earnings per share figures, correct?*
>
> *A. Yes, that's accurate. We're having to balance not only the revenue, the EPS, but cash positions, a whole series of metrics that we'll be trying to optimise in the balancing.*
>
> *Q. And that is why, if you could have a software deal which you could recognise, you would not recognise the hardware?*
>
> *A. If that was an option, if we had the ability to not recognise the hardware, then in that situation where we had too much revenue then we wouldn't do the loss-making hardware transaction, that's correct."*

1019. Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with a yet further update on the afternoon of 30 June 2010 (the last day of the quarter). As before, $30 million of hardware revenue was to be recognised in the quarter.

1020. In the event, Autonomy recognised $31.1 million of pure hardware revenue in Q2 2010. That was one of the highest quarterly amounts in the Relevant Period and constituted over 14% of total revenues reported for the quarter ($221.1 million). It enabled Autonomy almost to hit the consensus projection of $223 million notwithstanding the restrictions on VAR sales and the continuing depression of software sales revenues.

1021. I was not shown and am not aware of any document or exchange between Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain relating to these contemplated sales and Mr Hussain's projections and modelling, that suggests that any of this had anything to do with marketing.

Q2 2010 – alleged post-quarter end manipulation of the hardware revenues recognised

1022. The revenue recognised for Q2 2010 was once again, however, not the full amount of revenue generated from the hardware reselling strategy. As in the previous quarter, management again determined not to recognise all the hardware revenues from hardware transactions that had taken place in Q2 2010.

1023. On 7 July 2010, a week after the close of the quarter, Ms Cynthia Watkins sent an email to Mr Chamberlain with the subject "*H/W Cost*". She stated that "*H/W cost is coming in @ 45M*", providing a breakdown of "*H/W Orders (Shipped)*". That included "*Q1 related 9,914,858 not accrued in Q1*" and "*Q1 Deferred 9,861,371*" which reflected the fact that certain hardware revenues and costs had been deferred, rather than being recognised, in Q1 2010. Mr Chamberlain forwarded Ms Watkins' email on to Mr Hussain with the comment: "*disaster*".

1024. Mr Hussain's responded to Mr Chamberlain as follows:

> *"You need to check this.*
>
> *We deferred $15m or so last q (cost $20m or so – including the expensive Morgan Stanley). We are recognizing $16m more ($17.5m or so) – unfortunately that gives $37.5m.*
>
> *If you can defer the more expensive ones then we hit the $34.2m I have."*

1025. The Claimants contended that, after the end of the quarter, Mr Hussain was thereby instructing Mr Chamberlain to defer the recognition of certain "*expensive*" hardware deals in Q2 2010. They submitted (and I accept) that it is plain that Mr Hussain's focus was solely on the amount of revenue that needed to be deferred to meet the targets he had set. That was why he had selected *"the more expensive ones"*. The Claimants added that there is no suggestion of deferral being based on whether the revenue recognition criteria were met in respect of them, except what may conceivably be implicit in the words *"If you can…"* , though both Defendants knew that if the revenue recognition criteria were met, Autonomy had no discretion as to whether or not to recognise the revenue.

1026. It would appear that Mr Hussain's instruction was actioned. Two days later, on 9 July 2010, he emailed Ms Harris, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Stephan, with the subject "*US costs for the low margin business*", stating as follows:

> *"The US team has put in the complete costs but of course they don't know that we are deferring some revenues.*
>
> *I have the US pack giving us total costs (EXC. R&D, OPTIONS & BAD DEBTS) from Lisa of $72.9m*
>
> *If I take out the relevant costs from the latest forecast then we have $27.5m – the difference being $45.4m. I would like you to confirm that this relates to the low margin business and then we will put in the relevant $35.6m number.*
>
> *Please confirm and report back as the difference is quite large!!"*

1027. The Claimants emphasised especially, and described as *"striking"*, the comment that the "*US team*" (including, I assume, Mr Sullivan) did not know that some of the hardware was being deferred. The *"US team"* had operational control of the transactions. If there had been problems delivering some of the hardware sold in the quarter, then the "*US team*" would have known that the revenue in question would have to be deferred. This email was not copied to Mr Sullivan; nor to Dr Lynch, who maintained that he was not involved in or aware of this aspect of the Q2 2010 hardware programme.

1028. The Defendants contended that there was nothing odd in the fact that Mr Sullivan was not involved. They cited their witness Ms Harris's explanation that revenue recognition was for the accountants to sort out, *"not the salesmen who conducted the sales."* Ms Harris told me she *"didn't have contact with the salespeople."* But after some equivocation as to whom she would approach for the basic facts about delivery and the like, and after suggesting that Mr Hussain might be the more likely contact as he was more senior and *"these are big strategic deals"*, she conceded in cross-examination that in fact she did not know: she would not have been the *"person having those conversations"* because she was not in the revenue recognition/revenue accounting team. In any event, the disconnect between the accounting function and the sales operation seems to emphasise the point that the deferrals were driven without reference to the facts.

1029. In terms of the facts, I was not shown any evidence of any factual reason for deferral of revenue recognition from the Q2 2010 hardware resales in question.

Deloitte Report to the Audit Committee on the Q2 2010 Review

1030. In its report to the Audit Committee for Q2 2010, Deloitte concluded:

> "*Given the increasing significance of hardware sales to the Group's revenues, and the resultant impact on the gross and operating margin in the quarter and half year results we would expect appropriate explanation to be given in the Q2 2010 press release*".

1031. At the Audit Committee meeting on 20 July 2010, as reflected in Mr Welham's email of later that day, it was agreed that disclosure of the impact of the hardware sales should be included in the front-end of the press release for Q2 2010.

1032. I address the exchanges which followed, with Deloitte pressing for transparency and principally Dr Lynch pushing back hard, in paragraph 869 above. For the present I can summarise the result as being that Dr Lynch got his way. All that the market was told was:

> "*The small variation in gross margins in Q2 2010 was in line with our expectations due to the sales mix including appliances as discussed last quarter*".

My assessment of Q2 2010

1033. In my judgment:

(1) The facts relating to Q2 2010 as set out above repeat and reinforce the pattern evident in Q1 2010 of covering shortfalls in software sales revenue compared to forecast, and of also manipulating recognition of revenues from the hardware reselling strategy to achieve the best possible balance between revenue growth and gross margin/EPS;

(2) Dr Lynch resorted to (at best) half-truths to (as the Claimants put it):

> *"put the market off the scent as to the existence of the pure hardware sales and their use as one of the means by which Autonomy was able to meet market expectations."*

Linkage Analysis

1034. Before turning to the hardware transactions in the next quarter (Q3 2010), I should mention in passing[181] the fact that it was from Q2 2010 that Autonomy started providing to Deloitte what were known as *"Linkage Analyses"*. This was its response to Deloitte's expression of concern about the accounting for hardware sales, and in particular their perception that what (according to Mr Welham's witness statement) they had perceived to be a one-off strategic initiative with EMC was becoming "business as usual".

1035. It was Mr Welham's evidence that Deloitte requested (it is not clear when) what he described as:

> *"an analysis…setting out, on a customer-by-customer basis, what management said was the evidence of the linkage between the loss-making hardware sales and software sales and hosted revenue to the same customers".*

[181] I address this at greater length later: see paragraph 1477 *et seq* below.

1036. A dispute developed as to what prompted this request, and whether what was provided by Autonomy properly addressed it. Again, I return to consider this in greater detail later. I mention it now primarily as a marker: (a) Deloitte's request and the concern that gave rise to it further demonstrates how the hardware sales were being presented to Deloitte as ancillary to the software business; (b) since there was no real linkage, any response was, necessarily, an exercise in disguising that fact; (c) linkage analysis for every quarter became routine from this time on, and became an important part of the way Autonomy presented the hardware sales to Deloitte; and (d) the Defendants were required to devise explanations of the hardware selling for Deloitte which were increasingly detached from reality.

1037. This was matched (indeed exceeded in terms of detachment from reality) by what Dr Lynch chose to tell analysts in the Earnings Call for Q2 2010 which took place on 22 July 2010. I address this further when assessing the evidence that the Defendants consciously sought to conceal the hardware reselling strategy and the inclusion of hardware revenues without differentiation in the revenues attributed to Autonomy's software businesses.

Q3 2010

1038. The hardware reselling strategy continued in Q3 2010. Mr Sullivan was set revenue goals which were calibrated, as before, simply by reference to the volume of recognised revenue and incentivised according to their achievement.

1039. By now, Mr Hogenson's concerns had apparently been disposed of, and VAR transactions were accordingly restarted after the pause in Q2 2010 in light of his enquiries. This slightly reduced the requirement to make good shortfalls in software revenue out of revenues from hardware sales, since part of the shortfall could, once more, be covered by VAR sales. Thus, in Q3 2010, hardware revenues, though still considerable, reduced to $26.7 million from $31.1 million in Q2 2010, and VAR revenue increased from $2 million in Q2 2010 (having been $26.8 million in Q1 2010) to $23.3 million in Q3 2010. These correlations tell their own story.

1040. An exchange of emails when Mr Sullivan canvassed Mr Barris at Dell as to the value of deals it would be prepared to transact in Q3 2010 revealed an interesting thread of earlier emails:

(1) On 1 July 2010 Mr Sullivan asked Mr Barris to *"encourage your team to show us more deals"* to which Mr Barris replied the next day *"How much do you want?"*

(2) Mr Sullivan responded "An additional $20 million." Mr Barris said that they would "do what we can here…"

(3) The thread is all subject-headed "BofA SW". That reflects the fact that the first email in the chain was dated 10 June 2010. It was from Mr

Thomas Carlisle, Global Account Manager at Dell, to Mr Sullivan. It read:

> *"I think we can pull off a large SW deal if you are interested. It seems everyone I've talked to agrees we can do this. Let me know. It would be 10-20M."*

(4) Mr Sullivan expressed immediate interest. But after Mr Carlisle had emailed Mr Barris, the latter was less than enthusiastic in an email to Mr Sullivan the next day:

> *"Hello Mike*
>
> *Thanks for your interest. However, I don't want a deal like this to lessen your interest in hardware transactions. This would be less strategic to me than hardware."*

(5) Mr Sullivan did not respond: the next email in the print-out of the chain is that referred to in (1) above.

1041. I should acknowledge that none of the parties made any point about those earlier emails in the chain. But, as it seems to me, they appear to indicate a clear focus on Mr Barris' part on hardware sales which is difficult to square with the depiction of Dell assisting Autonomy to protect and promote its software sales and coordinating its choice of customers to that end; and Mr Barris was Mr Sullivan's main point of contact in this context.

1042. In any event, the familiar pattern of Mr Hussain asking for more or less *"low margin"* according to what he from time to time forecasted or feared he would require to meet forecast overall revenue is evident from email exchanges in this quarter, as in the last.

1043. Thus:

(1) On 30 August 2010, Mr Hussain sent an email to Mr Sullivan with the subject heading *"I'll need more margin-thought there were $4m in the pipe for q3?"*. There was no suggestion of any link to software sales nor of any advantage to Autonomy's software business.

(2) On 6 September 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch an email entitled *"group revenue"* attaching a spreadsheet *"6th sept group revenue MRL format"*. Within the spreadsheet was a column stating:

	2nd sept	3rd sept	6th Sept	Commentary
Memo-low margin	*15*	*15*	*17*	*$24m done*

(3) It appears from that spreadsheet that at that time Mr Hussain was envisaging the recognition of $17 million of revenue from hardware sales in the quarter (column E, row 3), as compared to the $15 million included in the spreadsheet as at 2 and 3 September 2010 (columns C and D, row 3), though the spreadsheet also recorded $24m as *"done"*.

(4) On 28 September 2010, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Sullivan with the subject *"deals"* stating *"DB is fine So need EMC please And probably $2m more low margin*."

1044. In the event, Autonomy recognised about $26.7 million in revenue from hardware sales in Q3 2010, which amounted to about 12.7% of total revenue reported in the quarter ($211 million). Autonomy's Quarterly Report stated that this was *"the highest Q3 revenues in the company's history"* and also that *"IDOL business grew organically at 18% during the first nine months of 2010"*.

1045. No mention was made of hardware sales: in cross-examination Dr Lynch accepted that they were not disclosed to the market.

Q4 2010

1046. Autonomy's hardware sales increased again in Q4 2010. In a quarter where revenue had been forecast at about $236 million, which was a considerable increase, Mr Hussain's apparent need for the additional revenue from them became especially marked, particularly in December (see paragraph 1054 below).

1047. The pure hardware sales goal for the quarter was $30 million of revenue, as recorded in an email from Mr Hussain to Mr Sullivan dated 8 October 2010 headed "*low margin*". Mr Hussain wrote: "*Need 30m this q as it's a big q. Can you get EMC to do some?*".

1048. On 15 October 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch an email on 15 October 2010 entitled "*getting to 236*" which specified the targets that had been provided to each part of the business, including "*Strategic sales $30m*". The subtext is plain: in order to achieve aggregate revenues of $236 million in Q4 2010, Autonomy needed pure hardware sales of $30 million. There is no record of an objection from Dr Lynch.

1049. At around the same time, Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain agreed that Mr Sullivan should be paid a bonus of $50,000 for Q3 2010 because of the "*good job for us*" he was doing. The *"good job"* was that *"last q he got us the emc deal plus the low margin strategic sales"*. There is no suggestion of his job extending to any results in terms of building relationships or driving software sales.

1050. Similarly, the group revenue updates sent by Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch (among others) on 31 October 2010, 7 November 2010, 18 November 2010 and 7 December 2010 identified, in the worksheet entitled "*MRL sheet*" intended for Dr Lynch, $30 million as the target set for "*Strategic*", "*low margin*" revenue.

1051. An email dated 13 October 2010 from Dell's Mr Michael Faughnan to Mr Sullivan, subject headed *"Dell/Autonomy Top Line"* expressed Dell's perception of the purpose as being to drive revenue. Mr Faughnan:

> *"….wanted to know if Autonomy is still looking to drive top line in Q4 – and if so, what conditions you have for the incentives being offered – we are putting end of year plays in front of JPMC & MS before month end and will bundle with your incentives if the appetite for top line on your side is still there."*

-

1052. Mr Sullivan did not dissent from this perception, replying on 18 October 2010 that Autonomy had a "*large appetite for Q4 deals*". In a similar vein, on 5 November 2010, Mr Sullivan told Dell's Mr Barris that Autonomy "*was very interest[ed] in doing more Q4 business with you. Are there more things we can work on together?*"

1053. Dr Lynch accepted that *"top line"* in the email quoted in paragraph 1051 above was a reference to revenue; but with a characteristic illustration of his point by an analogy, he shrugged it off as a conversation between people in the engine room being told to get the engine running and it is *"not the same as the reason as why the captain is taking the ship in a particular direction"*. As to Mr Sullivan not having suggested any other reason in his response to Mr Faughnan, Dr Lynch said that this is *"the sales people executing on selling"*, and that a sale to JPMC and Morgan Stanley would be very much in line with a software business development strategy as asserted by the Defendants. Not unusually, Dr Lynch's explanation appeared to me worldly and reasonable; but my education in the case has made me more sceptical, and in my view, there was little more to it than *"appeared on the tin"*: Autonomy needed to sell hardware to *"drive top line"* and Dell were keen to sell it hardware for that purpose.

1054. The acuteness of this need was demonstrated by a despairing email sent on 10 December 2010 by Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch (under subject heading *"US idol"*):

> *"Really don't know what to do mike. As I guessed revenue fell away completely yet SMS report shows massive activity. But I speak with the vp's [sic] who are far more accurate. Also stouff, Joel and mike I think keep separate sheets and unless I am v wrong don't discuss the sheets hence plane crashes and they don't know. We've covered up with bofa and hopefully db and doi but if latter two don't happen it's totally bad. There are swathes of reps with nothing to do maybe chase imaginary deals.*
>
> *So radical action is required, really radical, we can't wait any more.*
>
> *Everywhere I look at us idol it's bad."*

1055. Dr Lynch accepted that he would have discussed this *cri de coeur* with Mr Hussain, but said that it had to be seen in the context of what he depicted as *"a sales management issue in the US, which is about 25% of our revenue, where forecasted deals are turning out to have a much lower probability of closing…"* and that Mr Hussain's unhappiness was *"about the forecasting"*.

1056. When cross-examined as to what he had thought Mr Hussain had in mind in suggesting the need for *"really radical"* action, Dr Lynch initially suggested that this was a call to *"basically reorganise the US IDOL sales management"*. That may also be so: but the underlying concern expressed is that software sales in the US have fallen away, and hardware sales have been and will be required to plug the difference.

1057. As it was, the action which in fact immediately followed was that Mr Hussain authorised Mr Sullivan to find more hardware deals even if this meant improving the incentives and so increasing the cost to Autonomy. When this was put to Dr Lynch, Dr Lynch said that he did not know whether that was the case *"but it may well be"*. On 13 December 2010, just three days after Mr Hussain's "*radical action*" email, Mr Sullivan informed SHI[182] that Autonomy would "*extend an additional 5% discount to SHI provided that SHI orders an additional $3m in Dell product prior to 12/29/2010*".

1058. SHI's initial reaction was that "*3 million is an awful lot for us to bring in by the end of the year. Especially when it would sit in our warehouse for 3 months*" . As a result, they enquired whether any of the existing orders could count towards the $3 million. Mr Sullivan responded that he was "*trying to incent for net new revenue so anything that is already in does not help*" . Following further discussion with SHI, Autonomy offered, with Mr Hussain's express approval, the additional 5% discount to SHI, provided that it placed hardware orders totalling $2.5 million before the end of the quarter. The goal of "*new net revenue*", even if it would cost more to bring in, appears clear.

1059. The revenue goal remained the same as of early December. On 3 December 2010, Mr Hussain sent Mr Sullivan an email headed "*what i need*": "*Low margin - $30m delivered*". Mr Sullivan then informed Dell of Autonomy's appetite for hardware deals that quarter, indicating that it had "*a goal to do $35m in Q4 deals with Dell*".

1060. The incentives appear to have worked. By 21 December 2010, Mr Sullivan was forecasting that he would secure "*low margin*" sales "*in the range of $28.5m*" and said that "*[o]rders from SHI will be coming in right until the last day of the year*". Within two days, Mr Sullivan's forecast had increased to $29 million, with $27.86 million already having been secured. On 29 December 2010, Mr Sullivan informed Mr Hussain that, with further "*SHI orders coming tomorrow*", hardware sales should be over $29 million.

1061. In the event, Autonomy recognised pure hardware revenue in Q4 2010 of $35.4 million, which constituted almost 14.5% of total revenue reported for

[182] It may be recalled (and see paragraph 939 above) that SHI International was a company that purchased computer hardware (typically from Dell) and resold it to BofA.

that quarter ($244.5 million). The Claimants noted that a further $25 million of revenue came from impugned VAR transactions, and some $6 million from impugned reciprocal transactions, and some $15.2 million from impugned *"Other"* transactions, so that on their case, revenue from legitimate sources was $161.4 million, which would have been some 33% short of consensus estimates.

Q1 2011

1062. The pattern of hardware sales continued also in Q1 2011, for which the market consensus projected overall quarterly revenue of $215.9 million (a slight decrease from the previous quarter).

1063. On 10 January 2010, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch with the subject *"Targets for 2011"* stating:

> *"Mike,*
> *Below shows achievement for 2010:*
> *EMEA (Perachio, Murray, Hutchinson) $102m*
> *ASIA (Aurora) $13m*
> *US IDOL (inc. OEM Latam) $114m*
> *Protect (Neil) $37m*
> *Promote (Rafiq) $44m*
> *Strategic low margin $101m*
> *Management sales (stouffer) $75.5m*
> *Maintenance, hosted etc $381m*
> *Totals $868.5m*
>
> *The target for 2011 I propose to be $978m (up 12.6%). I believe that the analyst consensus is $972m with UBS at $979m.*
>
> *EMEA (Perachio, Murray, Hutchinson) $125m (up 22.5%)*
> *ASIA (Aurora) $13m (up 92%)*
> *US IDOL (inc. OEM Latam) $105m*
> *US Latam $13m (up 50%)*
> *Protect (Neil) $45m (up 22%)*
> *Promote (Rafiq) $55m (up 22%)*
> *Strategic low margin $110m (up 9%)*
> *Management sales (stouffer, Mooney) $100m*
> *Maintenance, hosted etc $400m (up 5%)*
> *Totals $978m*
> *…I have told Mike S that the target is $25m minimum for Q1*
>
> *Please confirm you are ok with these targets for 2011."*

1064. That set a *"Strategic low margin"* target for the (whole) year of over 11% of the aggregate revenue target of $978 million. Dr Lynch responded on 12 January 2011 stating, *"your call but build in some headroom"*.

1065. On 16 January 2011, Mr Hussain emailed both Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter suggesting a target of $977m but still with $110m of *"Strategic low margin"*. He followed this with a further email to Dr Lynch dated 26 January 2011 under subject heading *"draft forecast"* also attaching a *"forecast for analysts"*. The email set out the following, which included a comparison with 2010:

> *"$975m revenue (up 12%)*
> *125c fully diluted (up 12.5%)*
>
> *Gross margin 88% (vs 87% '10)*
> *Operating margin 46% (vs 43% '10)*
>
> *Strategic Sales $97m vs $100m '10*
>
> *Q1 '11 Revs $217m (up 12%), EPS 26 cents (vs 25 cents Q1 '10 – remember no dilutive effect in Q1 '10 from the convertible)"*

1066. The Claimants invited me to note especially, as being *"difficult to square with the Defendants' contention as to the primary purpose of this activity"*, that these targets were set without any analysis, or even mention, as to how they would be achieved, the identities of the parties to whom the hardware would be sold, or how the hardware sales would be used to drive software sales. I am not persuaded that to prove its substance or intent it was necessary for the Defendants to rehearse its purpose, or that whenever a target was mentioned, it would be expected to be accompanied by a statement of "how and to whom" in a forecast for analysts. But I accept that the overall impression given is of the measurement, balancing and use of strategic sales by reference to an objective of growing revenue whilst at the same time preserving gross margin and EPS.

1067. Also clear, to my mind, is that the pressure for hardware sales continued to fluctuate inversely according to the success of software selling, and that the calls over the course of the period to increase or find another source for hardware selling were prompted not by success in encouraging software sales, but on the contrary by any diminution in Mr Hussain's confidence in them eventuating, or simply and more immediately, if an anticipated hardware transaction fell away.

1068. As an example of the latter, on 25 March 2011, after Mr Sullivan had informed him that a sale to Morgan Stanley of Hitachi hardware which Mr Hussain had described to Mr Sullivan as *"the last part of the low margin jigsaw"* would not proceed, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Sullivan:

> *"Need a plan b*
> *Anything you can do on hitachi is good*
> *Aggressively pursue SHI, JPMC etc. Really need to hit $25m"*

1069. Mr Hussain's email the same day to Dr Lynch to report the position spoke only of missed revenue:

> *"We have done deals many times and were confidently expecting $3m this time round. Although I pressed we didn't get it and MS have given the orders ($4m) directly…*
>
> *V v v v frustrating as its $4m of revenue missed."*

1070. The exchanges thereafter also speak loudly of Mr Hussain's by now almost desperate focus on revenue, with blame and recrimination following any apparent failure to meet his expectations. Thus:

(1) Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with a further update early on 28 March 2011. In relation to further hardware revenue, the position remained as it was on 25 March 2011.

(2) Shortly thereafter, Mr Hussain enquired of Mr Sullivan *"how are you getting on with replacing MS / Hitachi. Need as much as we can get from SHI"*. Mr Sullivan responded that *"SHI can't do anything",* but that there was *"[p]ossibly another $1m from BNY, but not looking good to get to $25m"*.

(3) Mr Hussain was not impressed. On 29 March 2011, Mr Hussain sent an email to Dr Lynch stating that *"Sullivan's psychology is interesting. MS / Hitachi was a complete cock up yet he isn't trying to get a replacement for it as his life depended on it"*.

(4) Dr Lynch chose to send that email on to Mr Sullivan with the comment *"WOW Sushovan says you have interesting psychology................"* .

(5) Mr Sullivan replied to Dr Lynch saying:

> *"Sushovan is wrong. I have been burning up the phone lines trying to find more revenue. Was I suppose [sic] to lie and give him a more rosy outlook? He just doesn't like my forecast. It is hard to drum up $3.5m in revenue in just a few days. But In fact I have found more revenue and am pushing on the reps, Dell managers and resellers I know. Revenue is now up to $23m in to date. If you check with Chamberlain he will tell you that I was working a deal just yesterday in Ireland (It fell out of the qtr). I tried to pull in some JPMC business in Europe - no go. I have offered incentive to resellers (no takers). We processed about 300 orders this qtr so far. I am basically running a small side business and it takes a lot of time, networking, paperwork etc. I am not sitting on my ass."*

(6) On 30 March 2011, Mr Hussain sent further updates to Dr Lynch. By this stage, $152 million of revenue had closed, with Mr Hussain saying that it was unlikely that there would be more than $250,000 of further hardware revenue (row 18).

(7) Later that day, Mr Hussain's only response to an email from Mr Sullivan reporting on progress with a prospective $1.6 million software deal which he thought would not come in before the (imminent) end of the quarter was to ask Mr Sullivan whether he had found "*some more hardware revenue? I need it*".

(8) Mr Sullivan responded (presumably sarcastically, as the Claimants said) "*I did not know that"*, and indicated that he was expecting "*another approx $100k tomorrow*".

1071. The Claimants presented these exchanges as further demonstrating that (a) the hardware reselling was all about generating revenue, with no other objective discernible from any of the emails and being evident from Mr Hussain's almost panicked reaction to any sign of impending shortfalls, and (b) Mr Sullivan's perception of himself to be running a *"small side business"* was in substance accurate and revealed that there was no properly integrated sales approach, with the two sides of the business working together and utilising contacts and discounted hardware sales to sweeten and encourage software deals, such as surely would have been readily apparent if the strategy really had been to use hardware sales to drive software sales.

1072. In the event, and once again, Mr Hussain's panic was unwarranted. Autonomy beat the market consensus for Q1 2011 of $215.9 million with reported revenue for the quarter of $220 million, gross margins of 88% and adjusted earnings per share of 26 cents[183]. Of this, reported revenue of some $20.1 million represented what the Claimants described as 'pure' hardware sales in Q1 2011, which constituted just over 9% of total revenues of $220 million reported for the quarter.

1073. There is, however, a story behind the figures as presented, and in particular, as to how the balance was so successfully struck between low margin hardware sales and the important metrics of gross margin and EPS.

Q1 2011 and alleged revenue deferral

1074. The story arose out of an incident at around this time which the Claimants contended was a further demonstration of dishonesty on the part of the Defendants in their approach to the question of revenue recognition and their use of hardware revenues as a discretionary fund.

1075. On 9 April 2011, over a week after the end of the quarter, Mr Hussain sent an email to Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter with the subject "*management meeting analysis*". He attached a spreadsheet – entitled "*revenue analysis SH MRL AK only*" – which he said could "*be used as the basis for data analysis at the management meeting*". That spreadsheet showed, in the "*Q1 actuals*" tab, that, as compared to his hardware revenue target for Q1 2011 of $25 million, Mr Sullivan had achieved $22.1 million. However, as in previous quarters,

[183] That is to say, adjusted for conversion of loan notes, as Mr Hussain had alluded to in his email of 16 January 2011 to Dr Lynch (see paragraph 1065 above) when comparing Q1 2011 and Q1 2010.

discussions took place as to whether all that hardware revenue should be recognised in Q1 2011.

1076. On 11 April 2011, Mr Hussain sent an email to Dr Lynch, with the subject "*Q/e*", stating:

> "*If we defer prisa*[184] *then we are at 218.1m but 24c and 85% [gross margin]. If we don't defer prisa but defer equiv low margin we are at same revs but now at 25c and 88%. To discuss when I land or you can discuss with steve.*"

1077. In short, the Claimants submitted that Mr Hussain was identifying various options that he considered might be adopted in relation to revenue recognition at this time: he was questioning whether to recognise revenue in Q1 2011 on the DiscoverTech transaction (which was, according to the Claimants, not entered into until early April 2011, but was backdated to 31 March 2011), or instead to recognise hardware revenue.

1078. The former course would have an advantageous effect on gross margin and earnings per share. If hardware sales were made and hardware delivered, the associated revenue had to be recognised. If a deal with or for Prisa had not been completed before the end of the quarter, there was no revenue to recognise.

1079. What, according to the Claimants, Mr Hussain was engaged on and seeking approval for was a 'pick-and-choose' approach to revenue recognition, reverse engineering their decision from the desired level of Q1 2011 aggregate revenue, gross margin and earnings per share, regardless of the underlying facts. Mr Welham had told the US criminal trial court that he was *"troubled"* by Mr Hussain's suggestion that, two weeks after the end of the quarter, there was an open choice whether to defer recognition of revenue from the Prisa transaction or defer recognition of a hardware sale.

1080. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch stated that he did not accept that Mr Hussain was "*saying that there's necessarily a choice in all of this*". He suggested that there might be issues and a judgment to be made, for example, as to the reseller's credit, or, in the case of the hardware, as to whether delivery had been accepted. However, this was not convincing: Mr Hussain certainly appeared to be offering a choice, making clear to Dr Lynch that they could do one thing ("*defer prisa*") or the other ("*defer equiv low margin*"). Dr Lynch said that he did not know whether he had a discussion with Mr Hussain following the email, but I accept that it is unlikely that, having raised the point with Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain would then have acted on his own.

[184] The Prisa deal was a VAR transaction entered into with DiscoverTech (as to which see paragraphs 591 to 707 of the Schedule of Impugned VAR Transactions) for which the licence fee payable was $3.6 million.

1081. In any event, the Claimants submitted, the fact that Mr Hussain was presenting a choice for discussion is put beyond doubt by Mr Chamberlain's email to Mr Hussain the following day, 12 April 2011, with the subject "*Numbers*":

> *"Three options:*
>
> *1) recognize Prisa, defer $3.6m Hardware - $218.1m, 88%, 24.8c*
>
> *2) Defer Prisa, recognize $3.6m HW - $218.1m, 86%, 23.7c*
>
> *3) recognise BBC $1.6m, defer Prisa, recognize $2.0m HW - $218.1m, 87%, 24.2c*
>
> *Need to speak asap to lock this down. We announce in 9 days and if we don't stop moving I cannot deliver timetable."*

1082. The Claimants interpreted the "*Three options*" that Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain presented as being the following:

(1) The first option was to recognise the Prisa VAR transaction and to defer the equivalent amount of hardware revenue ($3.6 million), which would result in total revenue for the quarter of $218.1 million, a gross margin of 88%, with earnings per share of 24.8 cents.

(2) The second option was to defer Prisa and instead recognise hardware revenue of $3.6 million, which would result in the same overall revenue ($216.1 million), but a lower gross margin (86%) and earnings per share (24.8 cents) due to the hardware deals being loss-making.

(3) The third option was to recognise a transaction with the BBC with revenue of $1.6 million, again defer Prisa, but recognise hardware revenue of $2 million, which would generate the same overall revenue, but mean that gross margin and earnings per share were at 87% and 24.2 cents respectively.

The need to decide between the options was emphasised by Mr Chamberlain's concluding paragraph, in which he said that he needed to speak to Mr Hussain as soon as possible so as "*to lock this down*".

1083. Shortly after sending his email to Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain forwarded it to Ms Gustafsson and Ms Harris, stating "*These are the options and the impacts if he calls again*" (emphasis added).

1084. Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination on Day 43 that this was not how he would interpret the "three options" email. As the BBC contract contained a services component where the customer had to inform Autonomy that milestones had been met, he thought it may well be that Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain were trying to get the milestone confirmation out of them. He added:

> *"What Mr Hussain I think is doing is saying: this is the minimum ways, but obviously we could end up in a situation where we get confirmation from the BBC, the VAR pay us some money and we can take that, in which case we have the upside.*
>
> *I don't think there's an idea that these things are completely moveable parts. Some are judgement, but some aren't*."

1085. Dr Lynch was further cross-examined on this aspect a few days later (Day 52). By then, he seems to have felt able to be more certain and more specific, although he was a little unclear whether he was aware at the time and could now remember these matters from that time, or whether they were reconstructions from documentation he had seen, or whether he had gathered the information from emails or other such sources. He clarified that he did not have *"an explicit memory of it"* but the best he could do to explain his source was to refer to an email he thought he had seen *"where there was a discussion of the fact that there were multiple purchase orders and what they were going to do"* and *"some sort of email that was sent to me about which deal was going to be taken or not"*.

1086. When further cross-examined on this issue, he asserted that *"The BBC was an acceptance issue"* and that Dr Menell was talking with someone called Chris Westmacott at the BBC *"to get them to sign off on and acceptance within the quarter"*; and as to the multiple purchase orders issue he now clarified that DiscoverTech had submitted three orders in the same quarter, and *"there was a judgment to be made about whether DiscoverTech's credit was worthy of having three or two or one, or which of the two, and that decision had to be made"*. He added that at the same time there were issues about whether all the necessary proof to meet acceptance criteria had been met and stressed that *"this is part of the normal process that happens past the quarter end where all the paperwork and the terms and the evidence is reviewed."*

1087. I do not consider that I should place any substantial weight on Dr Lynch's evidence as to particular factors which might have justified deferral of revenue recognitions. My impression was that his second, more detailed, version was a reconstruction worked out by Dr Lynch by reference to other witness statements and documents. There are echoes of (and it may be that Dr Lynch may have borrowed or half-remembered) Ms Gustafsson's witness statement, where she stated that the "*Three options*" "*email does not strike me as problematic*", and suggested that there may have been accounting judgements under consideration bearing upon what revenue could be recognised in the quarter.

1088. I do not consider Dr Lynch was knowingly misstating the position; but I do consider that he was trying to varnish his previous evidence on the same issue, and that the truth is that he had no reliable evidence to give of the actual events. In a way it is surprising that he even attempted to suggest otherwise: for his ultimate defence was that he was not involved in the deferral process, except as a recipient of and probably brief consultee on Mr Hussain's email of 11 April 2011 (see paragraphs 1076 to 1080 above), which (as explained below) he submitted was a report updating him as to different possible outcomes of deferral, rather than an invitation to choose between options.

1089. In general terms I accept that the final resolution of matters such as whether goods shipped have been duly delivered and accepted without objection, and whether revenue may properly be recognised accordingly, will take place in the days after the end of the quarter, and in the event of real doubt may take some time, as for example, Mr Bloomer confirmed, (and Mr Welham had, after much equivocation, and contrary to the impression he sought to give before me, also agreed when cross-examined in the US criminal proceedings). In my judgment, therefore, the Claimants' supposition that everything should have been determined by the end of the quarter is unrealistic, given the typical end of quarter flurry; and the Claimants' criticism of that process is misplaced. I also consider it likely that the decisions may be influenced in fact by the animus with which the issue is addressed: if more revenue is not required there may be, without real impropriety, a tendency to resolve any small doubt as regards the fundamentals such as time of actual acceptance in favour of the preferred result.

1090. Nevertheless, the question is whether in the particular context the exercise and delay were in fact occasioned by the need to check matters relevant to proper revenue recognition ("the fundamentals"), or whether the exercise was simply one of how best to manipulate the timing of revenue recognition without regard to those fundamentals, with the objective of improving Autonomy's figures, and especially EPS. It is not an issue as to the ordinary process; it is a question whether (a) there was any doubt as to the fundamentals and (b) whether the cabal ignored the fundamentals and simply chose the best solution from the point of view of EPS.

1091. There was no documentary evidence to suggest any real doubt as to the fundamentals. In addition to the "options" emails, the email exchanges suggest that the figures given for hardware revenue change according to the objective of increasing EPS whilst maintaining revenue growth, rather than by reference to any new emerging evidence or concerns. Thus, for example, the Claimants made the point that on 14 April 2011, Mr Hussain sent an email to Mr Chamberlain, Ms Gustafsson and Ms Harris, with the subject "*Q1*", in the following terms:

> *"Apologies upfront for this, i wouldn't be pushing if it wasn't important:*
> *Please could you look at:*

- *Any more maintenance revs (maybe $250k)*

- *Defer similar amount of low margin*

- *R&d capitalisation / Depreciation / bad debt / accruals of $750k*

- *Taxes - i wonder if you can hit 26.75% ($500k save?)*

Does this get 25.6c?"

1092. There is no sign that any of this was being driven by any new evidence about fundamentals or revised accounting judgements: the plain focus is on getting to EPS of 25.6c.

1093. Perhaps a different slant might have been put on the matter had any of the three persons definitely and directly involved (Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain) appeared before me as witnesses; but none did. There was no documentation to support the theory, as Dr Lynch acknowledged. Mr Chamberlain did not mention any matters of accounting judgement in his email. Mr Sullivan, who would be the person most likely to know the operational details, was not copied in on the emails and was very definitely not invited to the "management meeting" (see paragraph 1075 above).

1094. I have concluded and find that the management meeting and the exchanges described, which smacked of decision-making by a clique or cabal of three (with Dr Lynch as the éminence grise) determined to and did choose between the options, not according to the fundamentals, but according to the objective of minimising any adverse financial effect of the loss-making hardware sales and maximising earnings per share.

1095. Had the issue been about 'fundamentals' it seems to me likely that the advice of Deloitte and approval of the Audit Committee might have been sought. It was not. None of the 'cabal' (or Dr Lynch) consulted or shared the issue or their decision with either Deloitte or the Audit Committee. I accept the evidence of Mr Welham and Mr Bloomer that neither was informed or aware that this had occurred.

Defendants' involvement/knowledge

1096. Mr Hussain did not dispute that he well understood that this was not a choice properly open: if delivery had been completed the revenue arising had to be recognised. He did not need Deloitte to tell him that; and he was in a better position than they were to determine the matter. In his written closing submissions, Mr Hussain appeared to rely on a defence that the revenue was properly deferred and that this was confirmed by Deloitte's approval. It was submitted that Deloitte checked every major sale as part of its quarterly and annual audit testing and had never identified any revenue which was improperly deferred. However, Deloitte were obviously not party to the cabal, or aware of it; and it is not clear what they were told from time to time about

what I have called the fundamentals. I do not think any such defence avails Mr Hussain.

1097. Except for Mr Hussain's email of 11 April 2011 (see paragraph 1076 above) setting out the varying effects (Dr Lynch said *"possible outcomes")* according to whether the Prisa transaction or the *"equiv low margin"* were to be deferred, none of the other emails was sent or copied to Dr Lynch, and he was not at the meeting of the cabal of three. He was adamant that he would have played no role in such decisions. He felt able to offer his understanding of the process in general terms, supplemented by his reading of the documents for the purpose of his evidence; but his evidence was that he was not involved in any of the details of such matters at the time.

1098. Ms Harris confirmed, when she was cross-examined, that Dr Lynch was not really involved in this level of detail; but this was a somewhat generalised statement, and, for example, she accepted that she had no way of knowing whether Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain had discussed the decision between options presented in Mr Hussain's email. Dr Lynch himself was less than certain in this regard: he told me that he did not know *"if [he] would have done or not"*.

1099. I have described Dr Lynch earlier as the éminence grise of the clique or cabal. It seems to me most unlikely that he did not discuss the options carefully with Mr Hussain, especially since Mr Hussain had expressly asked for such a discussion. In any event, this was not the sort of decision Mr Hussain would have made without Dr Lynch's approval. For reasons to which I turn and elaborate when discussing later all the instances of backdating and the issue of what Dr Lynch knew about them, I consider that Dr Lynch was aware that Mr Hussain would take steps necessary to ensure recognition of revenue or not according to the election made, and that this would depend on whether the revenue was needed in the previous quarter to make up a shortfall, or was better reserved for the subsequent quarter. It may be that Dr Lynch did not know how the election would be documented, and it is possible that Mr Hussain did not refer back to Dr Lynch before finalising that (the die having already been cast), but I cannot accept that Dr Lynch was not aware that the decision was going to be made on the basis not of chronological truth but revenue need, and that if the latter prevailed, any documentation of the decision would be false. I consider and find that Dr Lynch (a) discussed the matter with Mr Hussain (b) was party to and/or approved the decision ultimately made and (c) knew that the choice made involved dishonest backdating and the improper deferral of low margin revenue in Q1 2011, falsifying Autonomy's accounts and published information.

1100. In my view, that is the more likely pattern of the events in question; but it is reinforced by my general view that no decision of real substance regarding revenue recognition was done without Dr Lynch's approval.

Q2 2011

1101. The hardware sales goal for the whole of 2011 set in early January 2011 was $110 million (as part of an aggregate target revenue of $978 million). This had

been revised later in January: on 26 January 2011 Mr Hussain had sent Dr Lynch a further spreadsheet with revised targets for overall revenue of $975 million (a reduction of $3 million) and for hardware (described as *"strategic sales")* of $97 million (a reduction of $3 million also, so that the entire reduction was to come from reduced hardware sales). That same spreadsheet had targeted "strategic sales" of $30 million for Q2 2011.

1102. The hardware sales goal was then revised down to $27.5 million at the beginning of Q2, as recorded in an email from Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch on 9 April 2011. At some point in May or early June it was further revised down to $25 million: it was a difficult quarter for hardware sales. That target too proved to be unattainable, and in the end, Autonomy recognised revenue from hardware reselling totalling $20.8 million for Q2 2011 (compared to $20.1 million in the previous quarter).

1103. As before, most of the hardware business this quarter was done through Dell in the usual way, with Autonomy acting as reseller. The pattern was much the same as in previous quarters, but the following points were singled out by the Claimants as further demonstrating their case that the only true objective of these sales was revenue, and not the promotion of Autonomy's software business (which is not mentioned in the relevant correspondence).

1104. First, the Claimants submitted that a good illustration of the typical way in which these deals worked can be seen from an email chain relating to a transaction involving Dell (as hardware supplier), Autonomy (as reseller) and an insurance company called Progressive (as end customer):

(1) On 2 March 2011, Autonomy quoted for the supply of certain Dell hardware to Progressive.

(2) Three months later, on 2 June 2011, Dell informed Autonomy that they had "*ended up losing this round*", but that:

> *"They have another potential purchase coming up later this month. Will you be able to participate? They told me we are close on your pricing. I would imagine that another $25 off will win the business. This order may be for approximately 2000 systems."*

(3) Thus, it was Dell rather than Autonomy that was dealing with Progressive; indeed, Autonomy had no knowledge of the deal. It was Dell that was seeking to make the sale. Dell invited Autonomy to participate in the deal, for its benefit: Autonomy was to be interposed into the deal and its involvement limited to funding the discount so as to make Dell's bid more attractive.

(4) Mr Jorge Salazar, an Autonomy Contracts Manager, responded the same day to say that he was sure that Autonomy could "*make ourselves available to participate on a new bid*", but that the decision lay with Mr Sullivan who he copied to his email.

(5) On 3 June 2011, Mr Sullivan enquired as to the total deal value and timing of the orders. He made clear that Autonomy's willingness to increase the discount depended on it being able to count this hardware sale as revenue in Q2 2011. Mr Sullivan concluded: "*We can only get more aggressive if the orders come by June 30*".

(6) There is nothing to suggest that Mr Sullivan displayed any interest in using the prospective hardware sale as a way of promoting a related software sale to Progressive: it would appear that he was entirely focused on what he had described as his *"small side business"*.

1105. Secondly, the push to secure revenue in Q2 2011, with undisguised emphasis on the need for revenue without reference to any other objective, was directed from the top. So, for example, on 1 May 2011, Dr Lynch informed Mr Egan and Ms Eagan that they both "*must be focused on this Q revenue now and NOTHING else*".

1106. Thirdly, when Mr Sullivan, after being pressed by Mr Hussain by email dated 10 June 2011 whether it was *"still on for 25m?"*, replied negatively, citing *"Way more moving parts than normal at this time of the qtr",* complaining that *"We were tied to a lot of deals, but Dell keeps losing them",* and stating that *"I don't see a way to get to $25 without absolutely everything coming in on time which is a longshot"*, Mr Hussain the next day reported to Dr Lynch somewhat hysterically that Mr Sullivan was *"backtracking on his commitment of $25m"* and *"being slippery"*. This arguably illustrated that Dr Lynch was very much involved, and that Mr Hussain (who had on 28 May 2011 told Dr Lynch that *"Low margin should hit $25m…"*) was increasingly desperate both to please him and avoid blame.

1107. Fourthly, the Claimants cited also Mr Hussain's reaction which was to increase the target for pure hardware revenue. He directed Mr Sullivan to generate $29 million of pure hardware revenue: "*As you know this is a key quarter. So what we need from you is as follows: ... Low margin $20.5m net new ($8.5m done already, you need to close Morgan Stanley and JPMC)*". In order to provide an additional incentive, he offered Mr Sullivan a $50,000 "*spiff*" (i.e. bonus) if he achieved this goal as well as a goal of $12 million of new licence revenue. Dr Lynch accepted that he and Mr Hussain offered Mr Sullivan this bonus in the hope that he (Mr Sullivan) might be able to land further hardware deals so as to reach the increased revenue target.

1108. Fifthly, the email reports seem to indicate the compulsive focus, with ever changing forecasts, and collapses met with immediate offers of further incentives, despite the cost, and without any sign of any measurement against benefit in terms of anything other than revenue. Thus:

(1) On 16 June 2011, Mr Hussain informed Dr Lynch that the "*low margin*" deal with JP Morgan "*was strong again yesterday so 20m total should be achievable*".

(2) On the same day, Mr Hussain sent a spreadsheet to Ms Gustafsson asking that she "*have a look at the low margin and the management sheet and check closed deals*". The attached spreadsheet contained a tab labelled "*Sullivan*", which detailed hardware deals. Row 40 in that spreadsheet noted that Autonomy should "*consider throwing some incentive at JPMC to place $10m in orders before June 30 – an extra 1%...?*".

(3) Two days later, on 18 June 2011, Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with a further update, stating that the JP Morgan hardware deal was "*difficult again – likely $16m to $17m*". By this time, Mr Hussain was projecting $24 million of hardware revenue in the quarter of which $18 million was "*new*": see the fourth entry in the table.

(4) On 25 June 2011, Mr Hussain sought an update from Mr Sullivan, including in relation to "*Low margin*". Mr Sullivan's response set out the "*reselling*" deals that had been secured and the status of the deals that were still in the pipeline. He identified a likely deal with Morgan Stanley/Hitachi for $2 million, stating that it had "*[r]educed $ this week but is coming in*". He reported that he was trying to secure a hardware deal with BofA by "*[g]iving some extra incentive to get [it]*".

(5) On 29 June 2011, Mr Sullivan informed Mr Hussain that, "*Out of left field*", the Morgan Stanley deal had gone away. Mr Sullivan forwarded an email chain from Hitachi, which recorded that "*Morgan will not be doing the deal through Autonomy or Direct. They now want to trade in other equipment*". Mr Hussain's response to this news was "*Shit*".

(6) On 30 June 2011, Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with an update on the "*state of play*", listing out deals which it was hoped would still close before quarter end.

(7) As it was, as previously explained, Autonomy recognised revenue from pure hardware sales totalling $20.8 million, thus falling materially short of its target.

1109. In the round, the Claimants submitted that this pattern demonstrated that the objective was plainly to produce reportable revenue, with no sign or evidence to support the Defendants' case that the purpose was a marketing one designed to drive software sales.

1110. In the event, for Q2 2011, Autonomy recognised revenue from what the Claimants categorised as *"pure"* hardware sales totalling $20.8 million out of a total reported revenue of $256.3 million, beating the market consensus estimate of $250.5 million.

1111. The Claimants' case was that if revenue from transactions impugned by them (i.e. from hardware sales, impugned VARs, improperly accelerated Hosting revenue and improper *"Other"* transactions) only some $190.5 million revenue was achieved (a miss of some 24% on consensus estimate).

Q3 2011

1112. Although their hardware claim relates to the period from Q3 2009 to Q2 2011, the Claimants referred also to the continued focus on hardware sales to achieve revenue forecasts and to evidence of exchanges in Q3 2011 and at the time of the HP acquisition as providing further support for their case.

1113. Thus:

(1) On 27 July 2011, Mr Hussain sent Mr Sullivan an email headed "*low margin sales*" asking "*What is your expected number for this q. As usual i will need $25m*". Mr Sullivan replied that he was "*on it*" and that there was "*Lots of good stuff in the works*".

(2) On 18 August 2011, the day that HP's acquisition of Autonomy was announced, Mr Sullivan forwarded an email to the Defendants saying:

> "*Getting bombarded with calls from Dell and EMC. I have a lot lined up with Dell. Given the competitive situation, I will need guidance. <u>I have committed to a lot of Q3 reselling revenue</u>. I assume I keep going… There are deals lined up in future qtrs as well*" (emphasis added by the Claimants).

1114. There is no hint in any of this of any marketing purpose; the focus is entirely on the production of recognisable revenue.

1115. Following the completion of the Autonomy acquisition (on 3 October 2011), Mr Sullivan emailed Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain (on 11 October 2011) stating, "*I am still taking reselling orders from Dell. Do you have a reselling revenue goal for the quarter (through Jan)?*". On 7 February 2012, Mr Sullivan stated that the hardware deals were to continue for the time being as "*MRL still wants the revenue for now*". Again, these emails simply confirm what is already apparent from the material set out above, namely that the purpose of the pure hardware sales was to generate revenue.

1116. In a rather different vein, the Claimants referred to representations made by Dr Lynch before and at the time of the acquisition which they contended demonstrated the extent to which the hardware reselling strategy was kept quiet, and Autonomy was presented as being differentiated by its exclusive focus on software sales.

1117. In particular, they cited (a) a copy of a Q&A script posing and answering questions which might be put by the press on announcement of the acquisition, which Autonomy prepared and shared with HP on 17 August 2011 (which was the day before the acquisition) and (b) a rebuttal prepared by Dr Lynch to a

negative description of the HP acquisition in an article in the *'eDiscovery Journal'* which was sent to him in draft. As to this:

(1) In the Q&A script, Question 31 was "*What is the product fit between the businesses?*", to which the planned response was "*Perfect fit, no overlap. Barcelona [HP] is a hardware and IT Services business and Arsenal [Autonomy] is a pure software company*". Dr Lynch reviewed earlier drafts of the script that contained this planned answer. The Claimants cited this as demonstrating a contrast of what was to be stated then and the case now being advanced by the Defendants: then, the distinction was being drawn between HP as "*a hardware and IT Services business*" on the one hand and Autonomy as "*a pure software company*" on the other. The assertion that there was "*no overlap*" between the two companies was designed to reinforce the message that Autonomy was not a company engaged in the sales of hardware.

(2) E-Discovery Journal was planning to publish a negative description of the HP acquisition, which it shared with Autonomy in draft prior to publication. Dr Lynch took umbrage in relation to the draft, describing it as "*a real mess of rumor [sic] innuendo and incorrect technical comments*". He produced what he called a "*rebuttal*", which he shared with others within HP and Autonomy. This contained a section headed "*Product rationalisation and overlap*", which stated as follows (emphasis added):

> *"The report poses the question:*
>
> *'What is the go-forward plan for product rationalization, both within the Autonomy portfolio and between the Autonomy and HP portfolios?'*
>
> *But none of this is analysed either in the report, which instead makes vague references to product overlap. In fact there is very little overlap which is why the acquisition makes so much sense. The eDiscoveryJournal seems to deliberately shy away from stating the obvious: that HP is primarily a hardware company and Autonomy is a pure software business."*

(1) Incentivisation of Mr Sullivan purely by reference to hardware sales revenue

1118. The Claimants also relied, as being consistent with and demonstrative of the Defendants focus on pumping revenue from loss-making hardware reselling, on the fact that in Q3 2009 and various subsequent quarters the Defendants pressed and incentivised Mr Sullivan to achieve revenue targets by offering bonuses calibrated by reference to revenue, without any suggestion of any regard being had to the identity of the customer, its IT needs or the volume of any sales of Autonomy software that might flow from hardware sales.

1119. These bonus targets and promises started from the first quarter of the programme, and continued throughout the Relevant Period. Thus, in respect of Q3 2009, Autonomy agreed to pay Mr Sullivan what was described by Mr Hussain in an email to Mr Sullivan dated 15 September 2009 as *"a special $200,000 bonus"* for delivering $30 million of recognisable revenue by 30 September 2009, with a promised supplement of another $100,000 *"should you manage to get to $50m of recognisable revenue"*.

1120. Similarly calibrated and very handsome bonus payments were promised and made to Mr Sullivan in subsequent quarters, with no stipulation or even mention on any occasion of any required correlation of hardware sales to software sales or contacts.

1121. The Claimants pointed out also that none of these bonus payments was revealed to Deloitte or the Audit Committee, nor was the fact that they were promising incentives calibrated by reference to hardware sales targets.

1122. In their written closing submissions, the Claimants contended that if the purpose of the hardware sales was as the Defendants contended:

> *"…it is incomprehensible that Mr Sullivan was promised bonuses – which were also concealed from Deloitte and the Audit Committee – by reference to one, and only one criterion: namely, the level of hardware revenue he generated, regardless of the identity of the hardware purchaser, the terms on which it transacted or the need for any software purchase to eventuate, let alone even be contemplated."*

1123. The Claimants suggested that it would have been perfectly straightforward and, on the Defendants' case, more logical – to tie Mr Sullivan's bonus payments to some other measurable standard, such as the volume of software purchases entered into by customers who also bought discounted hardware from Autonomy; and that the reason why it was tied to hardware sales only was because in reality that was the only target he or Autonomy ever had.

1124. Dr Lynch sought to counter this on the basis that the calibration by reference to revenue only was simply to ensure clarity. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch suggested that the bonus compensation[185] had necessarily to be set by reference to *"recognisable revenue"* so as to ensure that it was measurable by reference to *"a clear target"*. In his written closing submissions, Dr Lynch submitted that any other criterion would have been unworkable, or likely to lead to dispute. [186] Dr Lynch added that it was in his view *"inherent"* that the revenue achieved would be referable to the protection and/or promotion of the software business because otherwise Autonomy would not have agreed to participate in the revenue-raising hardware transaction in the first place.

[185] Or 'spiff'. Dr Lynch also made the point that Mr Sullivan was also rewarded for software sales.
[186] Dr Lynch did not elaborate what disputes he had in mind; but it seems to me that they could have included issues as to what time lag between one purchase and the other should be permitted, how pre-purchases of software in advance of hardware sales might be treated, or whether any account should be taken of customer retention by virtue of the other advantages to existing customers of dealing with a single supplier for all IT needs.

1125. Dr Lynch's explanation struck me initially as plausible; and Mr Sullivan's evidence in the US criminal proceedings was also in line with it. However, the fact remains that if protection and promotion of the software business was truly the underlying objective, the omission of any mention, still less provision, for Mr Sullivan to prioritise customer and hardware sales according to their propensity to engender software sales is notable; as is the complete absence from the correspondence of so much as a whisper of encouragement of such a priority.

1126. Dr Lynch's suggestion that it was *"inherent"* in Autonomy's ability to decline any Dell transaction that sales would be confined to existing or strongly prospective customers was untested since he could offer no concrete example of a transaction proposed by Dell having been declined; in any event, it simply amounted on analysis to an assumption that Mr Sullivan would put aside the temptation of greater sales and a larger bonus by reference to the unstated objective. Furthermore, Dr Lynch's suggestion of an *"inherent"* filter begged the question why it was not quite easily and clearly made express.

1127. Again in passing, since this too is more conveniently elaborated when I address later the question whether the Defendants misled Deloitte and the Audit Committee, it is to be noted that Mr Hussain's email dated 15 September 2009 promising Mr Sullivan bonuses for obtaining recognised revenue also promised a further:

> *"special bonus of $50,000 if you are able to extract an email that allows us to allocate the associated costs appropriately in my opinion"*.

1128. This was, the Claimants suggested, an extraordinary provision, which tied Mr Sullivan into trying to get some form of email from EMC sufficient to present their arrangements in such a way as to justify part of the sums paid to EMC as referable to marketing and expenses (and see further paragraphs 1272 to 1284 below). It is noteworthy also that the payments were to be made only after the auditors had signed off the Q3 results (then expected in the third week of October): demonstrating the concern that Deloitte had to be persuaded that the accounting allocation was correct.

1129. In the event, the conditions were satisfied (though Autonomy restricted the first part of the bonus to $200,000 and refused Mr Sullivan's request to pay a further *pro rata* amount to reflect the higher recognisable revenue in fact achieved). By email of 11 November 2009, which had been approved in draft by Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain confirmed the arrangements (though no Porsche) and put forward further bonus arrangements for Q4 2009, as follows:

> *"Hi Mike*
> *Apologies for the delay in my response. Whilst the email [earlier in the thread] was clear in that there were 2 distinct triggers for the EMC deals ($30m and $50m), given the out performance in Q3 here's what I would propose:*

> 1. *You receive $200,000 for delivering $30m of recognizable revenue in Q3*
> 2. *You receive $50,000 for extracting the necessary written confirmation for allocation of costs signed off by the auditors*
> 3. *For Q4 for newly contracted and recognized appliance related revenue from EMC~~,~~ and HDS ~~and Dell~~ amounting to ~~$15m~~ $10m (excludes any HDS / MS revenues) you will receive ~~$150,000~~ $100,000 plus an additional linearly calculated commission from Q3 of $54,000 (see below for calculation). This will require the necessary confirmations for the allocation of costs and also inclusion of Autn software in the sale as we have already discussed.*
> 4. *For additional Q4 contracted and recognized revenue from ~~EMC, HDS~~ ~~and~~ Dell (excluding OEM related revenue) amounting to a further ~~$15m~~ $10m you will receive an additional ~~$150,000~~ $100,000.*
>
> *The usual Autn ts and cs apply and good luck! I will get the cheque cut tomorrow on this basis*
>
> *Regards Sushovan."*

1130. That also serves to illustrate that the bonuses were by no means insubstantial: for Q3 2009, gross $250,000 ($200,000 for delivering recognisable revenue in excess of $30 million plus the 'special bonus' of $50,000); and a further $100,000 in Q4 2009 if revenue from hardware exceeded $10 million (excluding OEM-related revenue). (I was not provided with the details of every promise or payment, but note, for example, that for his *"good job"* including in relation to hardware sales in Q3 2010 he was promised $50,000 , and for Q2 2011 a further $50,000).

1131. The following evidence in Mr Welham's witness statement relating to the $50,000 'special bonus' was not challenged:

> *"I was not aware of the existence of this bonus at the time of our audit and review work. I have never known of a situation in which an employee of one of our audit clients has been offered a financial incentive to obtain documentation to support representations being made by management to the auditor as to what should be the appropriate accounting treatment. Had we been made aware of this bonus arrangement at the time, we would have asked questions of management in relation to the rationale for the bonus."*

1132. As a consequence, it would not have been raised by Deloitte with the Audit Committee and, accordingly, the Audit Committee would have been unaware too.

1133. In summary, the structure and calibration of Mr Sullivan's incentive arrangements were, at the least, entirely consistent with the Claimants' case, even if not in isolation probative of it. They add to the indications that the hardware reselling strategy was carried on without ostensible regard to any measured benefit to the software business. The fact (as I find it to be) that the incentive payments were never revealed to Deloitte or the Audit Committee reinforces that view.

(1) No documentary evidence that discounted resales of hardware were used as a bargaining chip

1134. It may be recalled that an important element of the Defendants' justification for the hardware reselling strategy was the evidence of Mr Sullivan in the US criminal proceedings, and of Mr Egan in those proceedings and in this action, to the effect that they always understood that the principal purpose of the resale of discounted hardware was (as Mr Keker, Mr Hussain's counsel in the US criminal proceedings, put it when cross-examining Mr Sullivan) to build *"a bigger share of the financial market and use discounted hardware as a means to that end"* (see paragraphs 726 and 743(1) above).

1135. The Claimants relied on the documentary material in evidence to counter the Defendants' case based on that evidence (whilst, of course, maintaining the argument, which I have in the event accepted, that the understanding of both Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan was really based on what they were told by the Defendants). They submitted that there was nothing in the documentary evidence to suggest that either the marketing department or even those in Autonomy's sales team (apart from Mr Sullivan, and to some extent, Mr Egan) had any knowledge of the hardware sales; and that in any event, there is no contemporaneous documentary evidence to suggest that the discounted resales were ever used as leverage in promoting and negotiating the terms of software sales.

1136. Further, in at least some of the documented arrangements (see the Zones transactions below) the contractual arrangements were structured to seek to ensure that the end-user (a long-standing customer of Dell) did not and never could find out about Autonomy's subsidy and involvement.

1137. The Claimants submitted that this made a mockery of the purported justification of the programme as a loss-leader for marketing purposes, as does the basic fact that (a) hardware reselling targets were fixed by reference to market expectations of overall quarterly revenues and (b) hardware reselling was, within the overall target, increased or decreased by reference to Autonomy's success or failure in selling software offerings in that quarter.

1138. They elaborated on this in submitting that had sales of hardware really been designed to drive software sales, matters would have looked quite different, and there would have been (as Mr Rabinowitz put it in his oral closing) *"if not mountains of documents, at least some pile of documents, at least an anthill's worth of documents"* to show (for example) continuing cost/benefit analysis,

consultation with the salesforce as to the impact of offering discounts, selection of customers according to likely requirement for hardware and software, and some form of input from the marketing department; but there was *"no such thing"*.

1139. As the Claimants noted in their written closing submissions, there is not a single email or document in evidence passing either to or from Ms Nicole Eagan, Autonomy's Chief Marketing Officer, to suggest that either she or anyone else reporting to her had any knowledge of, or involvement in, this supposedly important and cost effective marketing strategy. Ms Eagan was not called as a witness either and the witness statement she had made (giving a London address) was withdrawn.[187] In the recitation of the chronology, I noted Ms Eagan's involvement only once in this context: this was that she was one of the two recipients (Mr Egan being the other) of Dr Lynch's email on 1 May 2011 stating:

> *"Folks, you two must be focused on this Q revenue now and NOTHING else"* (see also paragraph 1105 above).

1140. Mr Egan's evidence in this context was that although he was aware of the hardware reselling strategy, even he generally did not know which companies had purchased hardware from Autonomy or how much third-party hardware was being sold. In a passage of his witness statement from which I have previously quoted in part in paragraph 766 above, he illustrated this by reference to a particular transaction with Bank of America, as follows:

> *"I was involved in making this type of hardware sale when Autonomy first began this practice in Q2 2009, but was involved only occasionally thereafter. To my knowledge, Mike Sullivan, the CEO of Autonomy Zantaz, was tasked by Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain with managing most of the hardware reselling. I was more tasked with selling software licences. As a general matter, I did not know which companies had purchased hardware from Autonomy or how much third-party hardware was being sold. When I was involved in selling software licences to end-users, I usually did not know whether hardware had been sold to that end-user and when I was not involved in, or aware of, a hardware sale I did not use the fact of a prior or contemporaneous hardware sale to promote the software sale that I was trying to make. For example, I discuss below a very large software licensing and data hosting transaction with Bank of America that I was closely involved in and which we eventually executed in Q1 2011. I did not know at the time, but have since been informed, that in 2010 Autonomy resold, at a loss, more than $30 million of Dell hardware to a reseller called SHI whom in turn, on-sold the hardware to Bank of America. Had I known about this at the time, it might well have been useful information in our discussions with Bank of America. However,*

[187] Ms Eagan was one of those (with Mr Kanter and Dr Menell, and also Ms Orton) who joined Invoke Capital in May 2012 after leaving Autonomy. She was co-CEO (with Ms Gustafsson) of Darktrace prior to its IPO with particular responsibility for the marketing side of the business. She is now the Chief Strategy and AI Officer at Darktrace. She has always been based in the United States.

> *I did not know about it, and I never heard Dr Lynch or Mr Hussain refer to these hardware sales during our extensive negotiations with Bank of America."*

(9) Three illustrative transactions where marketing was no part of the purpose

1141. The Claimants put forward three examples to illustrate and support their proposition that the hardware reselling strategy cannot really have been conceived of as a marketing programme because it is the essence of a loss leader marketing strategy that the purchaser should know who covered the loss, and Autonomy's salesmen did not have that knowledge, and certainly did not deploy it as a 'bargaining chip'.

1142. The examples were (1) a transaction with BofA (2) a transaction with Citibank and (3) various transactions via Zones Inc (to H&R Block, Target and Oracle).

BofA

1143. Mr Egan's evidence in relation to the Bank of America (which was not directly challenged in cross-examination) was corroborated by the evidence of Mr Reagan Smith, who ran BofA's procurement team for software purchases. Mr Reagan Smith did not give evidence before me, but his evidence in the US criminal proceedings was admitted into these proceedings by a hearsay notice issued by the Claimants. That evidence was to the effect that he was not aware of any hardware sales by Autonomy to BofA (or to SHI) and that, in the course of the negotiations with Autonomy, neither Mr Egan nor Mr Scott (who he said were the individuals principally involved for Autonomy) or Mr Hussain or Mr Krakoski (who had responsibility for sales to BofA) or anyone else raised the hardware sales as a selling point in any way.

1144. More generally, the Claimants submitted that:

   (1) The documentary record disclosed no evidence of a reference to a prior sale of hardware in any sales pitch made to any software company.

   (2) If a marketing strategy had existed, senior management within Autonomy would have ensured that, if nothing else, the hardware deals were widely publicised within the software sales team so that they could be used to secure software sales.

1145. Against this, Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that Mr Egan did in fact know that Autonomy *"had a history of selling hardware to Bank of America and that's covered in some documents"*, and referred in support to an email from Mr Egan to Mr Hussain dated 23 December 2009 in which Mr Egan expressly referred to the Morgan Stanley Dell reseller deal (for hardware) being done *"on a lost [sic] leader basis by Autonomy"*.

1146. Dr Lynch also relied on his own evidence (in his supplemental witness statement) to the effect that he had *"several private conversations"* with another more senior director of BofA, Mr Simon Mackenzie-Smith ("Mr Mackenzie-Smith", then head of BofA in London) when he:

> *"sought Mr MacKenzie-Smith's assistance in encouraging the bank's procurement team to prioritise the deal, [and] emphasised that Autonomy was a big supplier of software and hardware to the bank."*

1147. This issue developed some importance, both as a microcosm of the larger disparity in the context of the hardware sales between Dr Lynch's oral evidence and the documentation, and in terms of credibility.

1148. The Claimants urged me to reject Dr Lynch's evidence that he had sought to deploy the discounted hardware sales in support of the software sales: it was unsupported by documentation or by any witness evidence from Mr Mackenzie-Smith, had not been referred to in any communication in the period and had not been mentioned by Dr Lynch in his first witness statement. In his first witness statement, Dr Lynch had mentioned that he had spoken to Mr Mackenzie-Smith but had made no mention at all of any hardware deals, still less their use as leverage:

> "*In Q4 2010, I spoke with high-level contacts at Bank of America (namely Simon MacKenzie-Smith, who I believe was the head of Bank of America in London, and Mr Thomas Fakhouri) to seek their assistance in encouraging the bank's procurement team to prioritise the direct deal, in the hopes of closing the deal within the quarter*".

1149. In cross-examining Dr Lynch, Mr Rabinowitz deployed as his anvil the disparity between his first and second witness statements, and also (a) that Mr Egan had claimed that in late 2010, when he was negotiating the software deal with BofA's Mr Reagan Smith, neither he nor (as far as he was aware) Mr Reagan Smith had any awareness that Autonomy had sold discounted hardware to Bank of America[188], and so obviously he had never thought to use that as leverage, and (b) more specifically, that not only did Mr Egan say that he did not know of the hardware sales to Bank of America, but also that he had *"never heard Dr Lynch or Mr Hussain…refer to these hardware sales during our extensive negotiations with Bank of America."*

1150. Mr Rabinowitz took Dr Lynch through a series of emails between Dr Lynch and Mr Mackenzie-Smith at this time which demonstrated that Dr Lynch was trying to enlist Mr Mackenzie-Smith to cut through some bureaucratic impediments which were delaying the software transaction (which involved a hosting restructuring) but in which there was no mention or reference to any parallel telephone conversations. Mr Rabinowitz repeatedly put to Dr Lynch that if there had been parallel telephone conversations between them in which Dr Lynch had sought to use the hardware sales as further leverage, there would

[188] Autonomy had resold, at a loss, more than $30 million of Dell hardware to SHI (as reseller) who, in turn, on-sold to Bank of America.

surely have been some reference to them in that chain of email correspondence.

1151. Dr Lynch displayed uncharacteristic irritation in answering these questions, and sought to dismiss the suggestion that he had no such discussions as *"unrealistic",* on the basis that in a one-to-one conversation between people as senior as they were it was inherently likely that Dr Lynch would have sought to deploy such an argument, and correspondingly unlikely that either would have recorded the private discussion in any formal record or note.

1152. In the absence of any evidence (oral or written) from Mr Mackenzie-Smith, I have had to reach a view on the basis of (a) my appreciation of Dr Lynch's oral evidence, (b) the points made by the Claimants about the lack of any reference to these conversations in the first round of evidence and (c) the content and tone of the email exchanges.

1153. I have concluded that in the general way of things it is more likely than not that Dr Lynch made some passing remarks about the previous relationship and discounted sales; but not in a way that caused Mr Mackenzie-Smith to treat it as a sufficient consideration to influence the decision or mention the matter to BofA's negotiator Mr Reagan Smith.

1154. In a sense, Dr Lynch's version of the discussions in his second witness statement tells against his case that the hardware sales were a potent and successful marketing tool. The fact is that whatever the conversations were, they do not appear to have accelerated the proposed software sales to BofA: no deal was concluded with BofA in Q4 2010 (which is what Dr Lynch had been pressing for) and Autonomy, desperate for the revenue, had instead to restructure the deal, split it into smaller parts, and parcel it out and effect a sale to two VARs (DiscoverTech and Capax Discovery) from which it purported to recognise revenue, as I explain in the Schedule to this judgment on the impugned VAR transactions. Dr Lynch's explanation did not answer the real point that the sales were negotiated by and between Mr Egan and Mr Reagan Smith, and the latter's evidence, which I accept, was that he did not even know of the hardware sales.

1155. In all these circumstances, I accept the Claimants' submission and find that the hardware deals with BofA played no material part in relation to BofA's agreement to enter into the software deal. The Claimants further submitted, and again I accept, that this seriously undermines any suggestion on the part of the Defendants that the purpose of those hardware sales was primarily marketing, to drive (in some way) separate sales of software.

Citibank

1156. In the case of the Insight/Citibank transaction, which was a $10 million transaction for the supply of Dell hardware, the Claimants drew particular attention to commentary in a spreadsheet, prepared by Mr Sullivan and attached to an email dated 11 February 2011 from him to Mr Hussain which notes:

> *"Dell in competitive bid for business to be awarded in Feb. Purchase in March. Dell is incumbant [sic] and gives themselves 60-70% chance to win. We would need to put this through an existing reseller (Insight) who inventories so Citi may not know we are involved. Not clear if this revenue would all hit in Q1."*

1157. The Claimants pointed out (and in cross-examination, Dr Lynch accepted) there is no indication anywhere in his comments or elsewhere that this was the sale of an appliance or a package that contained Autonomy software, or that Mr Sullivan had any interest in some related sale of software: his eyes appear firmly fixed on the revenue target and its timing.

1158. What the Claimants suggested was particularly telling was that it appears that Mr Sullivan anticipated that Citibank might not even know of Autonomy's involvement. Dr Lynch recognised this when cross-examined; and although he told me that he *"wouldn't be happy with that, unless we could tell Citi…I wouldn't accept the order if I had known…"*, the Claimants understandably pressed the point that whatever Dr Lynch might now choose to say, the fact remained that, at the time no-one, including Mr Hussain, suggested that the deal should not be accepted or concluded unless Autonomy's involvement was disclosed to Citibank. I accept that.

Zones Inc

1159. As to the various deals through Zones (a substantial Dell reseller and *"IT solutions provider"*), the Claimants' principal point was that, as they read it, each of the letter agreements which governed Autonomy's relationship with Zones provided that its terms should be confidential and that no party should *"disclose the terms hereof without the consent of the other party"*.

1160. Furthermore, the Claimants relied on each of the three deals with Zones as illustrating their case that Autonomy had no role apart from injecting or insinuating itself into arrangements between Zones and Dell so as to establish a contract from which it could derive recognised revenue. Thus, in each case and in the context of an existing relationship between Dell and Zones:

    (1) The arrangement was that Zones would procure Dell hardware which Zones needed for supply to its own customers not (as would have been normal) from Dell but from Autonomy;

    (2) The advantage offered to Zones for this process of what was described in an email dated 20 May 2010 from Mr Dean Bordeaux ("Mr Bordeaux", an account executive with Dell) to Zones (including Mr Camden, of whom see below) as *"injecting a new reseller between Dell and Zones"* was a discount on the cost to it of the hardware: the discount resulted from Autonomy purchasing Dell hardware from Dell at its undiscounted price and then selling it on to Zones at a discounted price;

(3) Autonomy would account for the purchase from Dell as a sale giving rise to recognised revenue, but its involvement would be minimal in that the hardware in question would not be delivered physically to Autonomy and then by Autonomy to Zones or Zones' customer, nor would it be loaded with Autonomy software: instead, it would be delivered by Dell to Zones or Zones' customer;

(4) The first of the three Zones deals was a large deal of over $7 million with a tax preparation services company called H&R Block. As Dr Lynch accepted, the hardware was not going to be loaded with any Autonomy software: it was *'pure hardware'* according to the Claimants' definition. The evidence principally relied on by the Claimants was in the form of a transcript of the evidence in the US criminal proceedings given by the head of Zones' sales organisation, Mr Dominic Camden ("Mr Camden"). This was introduced into evidence by hearsay notice served by the Claimants. The Claimants also relied on Mr Bordeaux's contemporaneous emails.

1161. Mr Camden, who did not provide evidence in these proceedings and whose hearsay evidence could not, therefore, be tested, stated in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings that whilst the discount was attractive, he had concerns about the introduction of Autonomy into this deal with a long-time customer (as was H&R Block), lest Zones should lose a client if the client found out that it could secure the solution it wanted for less money from Autonomy.

1162. He explained that it was for that reason that he insisted on there being both non-solicitation and confidentiality clauses in the contract with Autonomy. He regarded that as very important. A clause was negotiated to address this and was included, as follows:

> *"The terms of this Letter shall be confidential. No party hereto shall disclose the terms hereof without the consent of the other party. For a period of one (1) year from the date Autonomy receives the most recent Customer PO [i.e. Purchase Order] hereunder, Autonomy shall not actively solicit H&R for purposes of reselling the Products directly to H&R Block. For avoidance of doubt, nothing herein shall prelude Autonomy from selling to H&R Block any Autonomy products, in any manner whatsoever."*

1163. Mr Camden said in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings that he took from this that Autonomy would have no contact with H&R Block. This reflected and was reinforced by an assurance Mr Bordeaux had given in his email of 20 May 2010 quoted from earlier that:

> *"Autonomy has and will have no direct contact with Block but does need the attached simple agreement executed with Zones."*

1164. That "simple agreement" was substantively like the agreement eventually signed. In the event, it seems that the confidentiality of Autonomy's involvement was preserved: Mr John Meiers ("Mr Meiers"), who was in charge of H&R Block's software procurement team in 2010, gave a witness statement in these proceedings (which was not challenged) in which he said that when in September 2010 he negotiated a $2 million software deal with Autonomy, he was unaware that, just three months earlier, Autonomy had been involved in the resale transaction. Mr Meiers added that to the best of his knowledge, no-one else at H&R Block involved in the software purchase was aware of Autonomy's involvement either. The Defendants chose not to cross-examine Mr Meiers.

1165. The Claimants posed the question why in such circumstances Autonomy wanted to be involved at all. Understandably, the Zones management team was puzzled at being offered the opportunity to sell its own longstanding customer cheap hardware, subsidised by Autonomy, with the customer kept in the dark about Autonomy's role.

1166. In this context, Mr Camden sent an internal email to the Zones team on 7 July 2010 offering a theory as to why Autonomy should be prepared to act in that way. He speculated that "*Dell must be an Autonomy client*" which received preferential discounting and pricing for business driven through Autonomy. His Zones colleague replied the same day, observing that this "*will go in the books of unresolved mysteries*". The Claimants contended that:

> "*These contemporaneous exchanges merely confirm what is obvious; that it made no apparent commercial sense for Autonomy secretly to subsidise Dell's sale to a hardware reseller and the reseller's sale to its customer. These Zones' employees could not have known that the Defendants had a very good reason for having Autonomy engage in this activity, namely facilitating the ability of Autonomy to report the revenues thereby achieved, without disclosing their source; and in this way, misleading the market.*"

1167. The same *modus operandi* was adopted to subsidise Dell's sales to Zones for other Zones customers. Thus, a quotation dated June 2010 issued by Zones for the sale of hardware to Oracle, the large software company, contained no reference at all to Autonomy. The deal between Autonomy and Zones, again, was that Oracle should not be notified of Autonomy's involvement in the deal.

1168. The same was true of the third of the Zones deals, that in late 2010 for the sale of Dell hardware to Zones for resale to yet another Zones customer, Target Corporation ("Target"), a US chain of retail stores. The letter agreement between Autonomy and Zones dated 11 November 2010 contained, at clause 10, a confidentiality provision preventing disclosure of its terms to anyone, which would include Target itself.

1169. The Claimants described and relied on the third Zones transaction as follows:

(1) In an email exchange on 11 November 2010 (the same date as the letter agreement) between representatives of Dell, Zones and Autonomy (Mr Sullivan), Mr John Niemier of Zones sought clarification that the way things would work was that Autonomy would provide a quote to Zones, and Zones would in turn deliver the final quote to Target. On 12 November 2010, Dell's Mr Randall Johnsen responded agreeing that "*Zones is the only entity that should provide Target a quote for this transaction*": in other words, Autonomy was not to deal directly with Target.

(2) In parallel with this exchange of emails, there was an internal email discussion at Zones between Mr Niemier and Mr Camden. In an email dated 11 November 2010, Mr Niemier expressed confusion as to how the process would work. Mr Camden's response was clear: "*Zones places PO with Autonomy, yes. Autonomy places order with Dell. Autonomy and Target don't touch*".

(3) When Mr Niemier asked who would issue the quote to Target, Mr Camden's response was "*Zones*", in the same way as for H&R Block. He added, "*HRB [i.e. H&R Block] never knew about Autonomy and neither should Target*".

(4) Mr Camden confirmed during his testimony in the US criminal proceedings that this email reflected his understanding of how the deals with Autonomy were set up.

(5) On 22 November 2010, Dell's Mr Johnsen contacted Mr Camden about the Target deal. He reminded Mr Camden, "*not to use Autonomy name in messaging*", i.e. in the messaging Zones sent to Target about the hardware sale.

(6) Consistent with this, a Mr Tom Corley of Zones sent an email on 30 November 2010 to Mr Camden confirming that Autonomy had received the Zones purchase order for Target. Mr Corley noted that the delivery would be a

> "*blind drop-ship from Dell directly to Target. So there should be* nothing *that says Autonomy on any packing slip*".

(7) Mr Camden testified in the US criminal proceedings that a "*blind drop-ship*" meant that the hardware would be shipped directly from Dell to Target, rather than coming via Zones.

(8) The Claimants submitted that the significance of the lack of any reference to Autonomy, even on the packing slip received by Target, is plain: Autonomy was to get revenue, but no customer relationship.

1170. The Claimants submitted that these Zones deals were an illustration of the true nature and purpose of the overall strategy: it was plain and obvious that there was no question of Autonomy using cheap hardware sales to H&R Block, Oracle or Target, as a means of driving software sales to those companies, in circumstances where the companies in question had no idea, and were contractually forbidden from knowing, that Autonomy was responsible for subsidising their purchases of hardware.

1171. They submitted more generally that:

> *"at no time during the Relevant Period was any attempt whatsoever made to identify or monitor the extent to which these hardware sales produced any marketing benefit to Autonomy. That, again, is consistent with the real purpose of the hardware reselling strategy being simply to, in effect, 'buy' (at a substantial cost) recognisable revenue that would be included in the revenue figures reported to the market without revealing the true source (or cost) of this additional revenue stream. It is inconceivable that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain, intelligent individuals, could have considered that what they were doing was honest."*

1172. The Defendants, however, submitted that:

(1) Even in the three Zones deals the only restriction as a matter of construction of the letter agreement was that Autonomy was required to keep the terms of the letter agreement confidential and did not extend to prohibiting Autonomy from saying that it was involved as the party supplying hardware to Zones, or that this was part of a marketing programme;

(2) There was no evidence that either of the Defendants was made aware of the contractual restriction;

(3) Dr Lynch stressed that (a) he had no involvement in the Zones/H&R Block transaction, and he was not aware at the time of any contractual term preventing Autonomy from disclosing its role in the transaction (and it was not suggested to him in cross-examination that he did) and he *"wouldn't have been happy with the lawyers if I'd known about that"*; (b) the position was likewise as regards the sale via Zones to Target; and (c) he was also unaware of any sales of hardware via Zones to Oracle, and thus was not aware of any such restriction: but he added that he did not see how a term could have been agreed with Zones precluding Autonomy from soliciting business from Oracle given that Oracle were an existing customer;

(4) The Zones sales, even if they did not assist to reinforce a customer relationship, achieved the other objective of the strategy as (according to Dr Lynch) formulated at the Loudham Hall meeting of reinforcing

relationships with the hardware suppliers themselves, and in particular with Dell (see above).

1173. The Defendants also drew my attention to other parts of Mr Camden's testimony in the US criminal proceedings in which he accepted that (a) there was a customer demand for *"complete solutions"* (where a seller of software would act as a *"one-stop shop"* and also provide the hardware) and (b) if one of Autonomy's customers wanted a package or complete solution, it would make good sense to provide the hardware that those customers needed as well as the software. Mr Camden accepted also that Zones itself often planned, and it was perfectly standard business practice, to use a relationship (such as Zones' with Target) established initially by sales of hardware to sell them other products like software; and that it made sense likewise for Autonomy to sell hardware to a customer with a view to using that relationship to introduce their own software products.

1174. In any event, the Defendants submitted that the Claimants' focus on the Zones deals flagged that they were the exception not the rule, and that for the large majority of hardware transactions the customer was aware of Autonomy's involvement and sales were deployed to promote the customer relationship. Mr Sullivan acknowledged in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings that *"absolutely"* he was instructed to and did tell customers that the sales were *"part of a marketing programme"*, and he did not consider that to be wrong in any way.

1175. Further, even though I would accept the Claimants' more general point that most Autonomy software salesmen probably did not know of the hardware reselling strategy and did not therefore consciously use it as leverage for software sales (and see above as to my impression that the fact of the programme was known only to a small circle within Autonomy), the fact is that most of the hardware deals in question were undertaken by Mr Sullivan, who plainly did know all about the programme. It seems to me likely, consistently with Mr Sullivan's evidence, that he would have felt some need to explain, in deals where he had some contact with the purchaser, what the rationale for offering a discount was; but all he said was that it was *"part of a marketing programme".* That seems to me to be little if anything more than a statement of the patently obvious. There was, however, no suggestion in his evidence or any other evidence (apart from Dr Lynch's discussions with Mr Mackenzie-Smith) that he ever said anything more.

1176. In any event, the Defendants' broader point was that there is evidence that both Mr Egan and Mr Sullivan did think that the hardware reselling strategy was a catalyst for software customer loyalty and software sales. Mr Egan's evidence is of particular interest in the broader context of the utility of the hardware reselling strategy as a marketing strategy.

1177. I have previously quoted his witness statement in relation to this (see paragraph 754 above). As usual in his case, Mr Egan's evidence was carefully modulated, seeking to find interstices as best he could in the heavily lawyered agreed evidence he had given in the US criminal proceedings (from which he

could not depart on pain of imprisonment) when it appeared or was presented as at odds with other evidence. But subject to the caveat that in his perception *"a principal reason"* for the hardware sales *"was to generate income"*, he accepted that there were other substantial reasons for it, and in particular, agreed with his cross-examiner's recital of propositions dressed as questions and designed to elicit the answers that he gave that *"often"* hardware and software sales *"were leveraged together"* and the hardware reselling strategy *"increased Autonomy's standing with the big financial institutions that bought their software"* (and see also paragraph 751 above).

1178. The problem for the Defendants, as it seems to me, has always been that it is not sufficient for them to demonstrate that at least in some, perhaps many, cases, the fact that Autonomy was providing or subsidising the discount on hardware sold to customers, including software customers, encouraged goodwill and warm feelings about Autonomy which might in due course translate into future sales, including software sales. The case they have always had to meet is that even if that was a benefit it was never the real reason or driving purpose, as demonstrated by the fact that Autonomy made at least some substantial sales for which even that benefit would not be obtained, because the purchaser had no idea of Autonomy's involvement: the Zones deals being the clearest examples, it being obvious in those transactions that it was no part of their purpose to promote or protect the prospect of software sales to Zones.

1179. In Mr Hussain's written closing submissions, it was stated that the above three deals *"were the exception and not the rule."* The additional contention was advanced that *"in any event, these sales achieved the objective of building relationships with the hardware suppliers themselves"*.

1180. The latter argument was given greater prominence by both Defendants as the case developed. It was, to my mind, paper-thin, even taking into account the possibility that Autonomy may have got discounts on its purchases of hardware for its own use (for archive hosting and the like). There was little or no evidence of any special relationship being developed, nor that such a relationship promoted software sales. (It may have assisted OEM ventures, but that is a different matter and would not justify the accounting treatment of the costs.) Autonomy's supposed 'partnership' with EMC was extinguished with minimal notice. Dell was in it because it is not often that a third-party agrees to subsidise a company's sales. But I was not persuaded that opportunism metamorphosed into a relationship of such real benefit to the software business as to be a substantial purpose of Autonomy's hardware sales.

1181. As to whether the three sets of transactions addressed above were exceptions or outliers, the express contractual prohibition on Autonomy being involved or asserting involvement at all was unusual. But it seems to me that the question in relation to the Zones transactions (and the others singled out by the Claimants described above) is ultimately whether or to what extent there can be discerned or established from them what the driving purpose and objective of the hardware sales really was, and what credence can be given to the

Defendants' assertions that the sales were driven by the interests of, and to enhance, Autonomy's software business.

1182. In my judgment:

(1) The Zones transactions, and those with BofA and Citibank (another example being the transaction with Progressive), give substantial general support to the Claimants' case that the real purpose of the hardware reselling strategy was revenue generation: they demonstrate clearly that any marketing benefits in terms of Autonomy's software customers might be desirable by-products but were certainly dispensable, and were not what was driving hardware reselling.

(2) It may be that Mr Egan's qualification in responding *"often, yes"* to the proposition put to him in cross-examination in the US criminal proceedings that *"hardware and software were leveraged together with these big customers"* was intended to accommodate cases such as Zones where no such leverage was possible at all. But neither Mr Egan nor anyone else ever provided any evidence, apart from their say-so, of any co-ordination, let alone leveraging, beyond some attempt to aim at mutual customers (and the evidence for even that is scanty). I suspect that Mr Egan satisfied himself, in his interstitial efforts, that he could agree to the proposition, and seek thereby to put the strategy and his own involvement in a kinder light, on the basis that in certain cases the discount might generally be supposed to have oiled the wheels of the relationship with software users. But Mr Egan had no reason to believe that there was any greater nexus than that; and it seems to me likely (and I find) that he knew that whilst any benefit which might loosely be termed marketing was readily dispensable, recognisable revenue, being the real objective, was not.

(3) The real importance of the Zones and the other transactions, in which no marketing benefit was possible, was that they provided proof of what really mattered to Autonomy and the Defendants: revenue irrespective of benefit.

(10) The consistent pattern of concealing the hardware sales

1183. The second limb of the Claimants' hardware case (as pleaded in paragraph 54A of the RRAPoC) was that in its published information Autonomy actively concealed its 'pure' hardware sales. They relied on that not only as a facet of the improper purpose but also as further proof of it: disclosure would have undermined the purpose as alleged by the Claimants (being to drive up revenue by hardware sales and to present it as all won as part of the business of a successful 'pure software company'); whereas if the purpose had been in any material part as the Defendants contended it was, there would have been no reason not to disclose it to the market.

1184. As one of the Deloitte Reviewers (Mr Robertson) queried rhetorically when the issue of disclosure arose in respect of the Q3 2009 Report:

> *"What's the sensitivity about being more transparent on this score? If it's a strong strategic move for them, why wouldn't they want to explain this?"*

1185. There is no doubt, and the Defendants did not deny, that they and Autonomy's management consistently and insistently declined to disclose any more than they were advised by Deloitte was mandatory under the Accountancy Standards and thus a pre-condition of approval of the Defendants' accounts and financial statements.

1186. I shall discuss later the Defendants' reasons (based on *"commercial sensitivities"*) for restricting disclosure and their defence that whilst they did no more, they did no less, than Deloitte advised was required and cannot be said to have been dishonest in following their advice. In this section, I summarise what (if any) disclosure relevant to hardware revenues was made in Autonomy's Yearly and Quarterly Results in the Relevant Period. (I also indicate the Defendants' explanations, as appropriate.)

Annual Reports: overview

1187. As previously mentioned (see, for example, paragraph 654 above), Autonomy presented itself to the market generally, and to HP during the pre-acquisition discussions and due diligence, as a *"pure software company"*. The Defendants maintained that this was to distinguish itself from software companies deriving a significant part of their revenue from services and installation. The Claimants maintained that it was intended to and did connote a company whose revenues were almost exclusively derived from the sale of its IDOL software and related software (with some small amounts of 'appliance sales' as later described), and that is the basis on which they acquired it.

1188. The Business Overview section of its 2009 Annual Report provides an example of the use of the phrase to distinguish Autonomy from other software companies. The following was stated under the heading "*Financial Model*":

> *"Autonomy is one of the very rare examples of a pure software model. Many software companies have a large percentage of revenues that stem from professional services, because they have to do a lot of customisation work on the product for every single implementation. In contrast, Autonomy ships a standard product that requires little tailoring, with the necessary implementation work carried out by approved partners such as IBM Global Services, Accenture and others. This means that after the cost base has been covered, for every extra dollar of revenue that comes in significant benefits can fall straight through to the bottom line. What this offers is a business model with a proven record of strong operating leverage and that is expected to continue to deliver industry leading operating margins and revenue to cash conversion."*

1189. Materially identical wording appeared in the 2010 Annual Report.

1190. The Claimants accepted that it may be true that, in these passages, Autonomy was seeking to emphasise its distinctiveness from companies that made significant revenues from the provision of services. However, their case is that the reasonable reader – including HP – would also and more importantly have understood the phrase to distinguish Autonomy as being unusual in carrying on no other business, and thus in its financial position being based entirely on its software business and not on any significant revenues from sales of non-software products, particularly products, such as hardware, that were burdened with substantial associated costs. They submitted that this is what the Defendants must have known and intended in emphasising that aspect of Autonomy's business. The reason for such emphasis and its importance was the same as that which the Defendants expressly gave for emphasising how little of its revenue came from services: in the case of software, "*after the cost base has been covered, for every extra dollar of revenue that comes in significant benefits can fall straight through to the bottom line*", while services commanded much lower margins. The Claimants contended that that is an equally fundamental difference between software and hardware sales.

1191. The 2009 and 2010 Annual Reports both referred to a hardware-based product described as an "*appliance*" in terms of hardware with Autonomy software pre-loaded on it. The explanation in the 2009 Annual Report was as follows:

> *"**Appliance***
>
> *Currently a small part of the business focused on quick time-to-value and high return. Where customers have an urgent need to deploy IDOL, either for regulatory or commercial imperatives, we are able to provide a complete solution installable on a turnkey basis to be used in a discrete part of the customer's business. The value of these solutions is in the high end functions they offer in a complete package, and thus the margin profile is not dissimilar to our traditional license business."*

1192. The equivalent wording in the 2010 Annual Report was more explicit about the fact that an appliance involved hardware:

> *"**Appliance***
>
> *This is currently a small part of Autonomy's business, focused on quick time-to-value and high return. Where customers have an urgent need to deploy IDOL, either for regulatory or commercial imperatives, we are able to provide a pre-installed licence on appropriate hardware to start generating an immediate return. The value of these solutions is attributable almost entirely to the functions offered by the licence, so*

> *although there are some hardware costs involved, the margin profile is not widely dissimilar to our traditional licence business."*

1193. Beyond this, there was no mention in the Annual Reports issued in the Relevant Period of Autonomy earning revenues on sales of hardware. Thus, the Financial Review section in the 2009 Annual Report stated that the increase in revenues in 2009 "*is a combination of strong organic growth and the successful integration of Interwoven*" (a company Autonomy had acquired in early 2009). Similarly, the Financial Review section in the 2010 Annual Report ascribed Autonomy's reported revenue growth between 2009 and 2010 entirely to the deployment by customers of Autonomy software.

1194. Furthermore, the accumulated yearly costs of the hardware reselling strategy which might have revealed its extent, were not disclosed either, even though in 2009 there was an increase in the amounts allocated to Sales and Marketing Expenses of $35.6 million as compared to 2008, and the hardware sales were a major, if not the sole, cause of the increase.

1195. Instead, this increase was addressed in Autonomy's 2009 Annual Report as follows:

> *"**Sales and marketing expenses** totalled $170.8 million in 2009, up 26% from $135.2 million in 2008. The increase in sales and marketing expenses from 2008 to 2009 was primarily due to increased advertising, additional headcount and an increase in sales commissions due to an increase in sales and a change in the geographic and size-of-transaction mix, all of which also increased with the expansion of the group in 2009. As a percentage of revenues sales and marketing expense has fallen to 23% in 2009 from 27% in 2008."*

1196. When cross-examined about this, Dr Lynch nonetheless sought to defend the passage in the 2009 Annual Report as "*a reasonable explanation*". He identified especially the effect of Autonomy's acquisition of Interwoven which, he said, had been an increase not only in advertising spend, but also of the numbers employed in marketing from around 238 to around 510 people. This is difficult to square with the fact that in 2009, $35.8 million of the costs of purchasing pure hardware were treated as sales and marketing expenses, whereas the total reported increase in sales and marketing expenses was only $35.6 million, leaving no room for the suggested Interwoven factor. When pressed again, Dr Lynch added that:

> *"Again, this is signed off by Deloitte, they consider it reasonable, and that's good enough for me."*

1197. In the 2010 Annual Report, the explanation given for the increase of some 20% in sales and marketing expenses made no mention anywhere of any loss-

making hardware sales or the hardware reselling strategy. The explanation then given was that:

> *"The increase in sales and marketing expenses from 2009 to 2010 was primarily due to increased advertising, additional headcount and an increase in sales commissions due to an increase in sales and a change in the geographic and size-of-transaction mix, all of which increased with the expansion of the group in 2010…[189]"*

1198. The Quarterly Reports followed suit and contained no disclosure of the hardware reselling strategy either. On the contrary, the Claimants contended, they revealed varying efforts to camouflage the source of revenue.

Q3 2009 Quarterly Report

1199. Thus, although of course the hardware revenues were included in the total, the way the results were presented in the Q3 2009 Quarterly Report did not distinguish their source. This was not apparent and could not be ascertained.

1200. Four categories of revenue were presented under the heading *"Supplemental Metrics"*[190]: "*Product including hosted and OEM*" ($125 million), "*Service revenues*" ($9 million) and "*Deferred revenue release*" ($58 million) which equated (after rounding) to the total revenue figure of $191.6 million as shown under "*Financial Highlights*" and under "*Revenues*".

1201. Furthermore, the Q3 2009 Quarterly Report noted a reduction in adjusted gross margin (86% compared to 92% in the previous year) and attributed it to the *"unexpected demand for our new product programs…We do not expect this to be a trend."*

1202. The hardware reselling strategy, which was in fact the principal drag on gross margins since hardware sales were at a discount funded by Autonomy, throwing up a loss, was not mentioned in this Quarterly Report, just as it was not in the Annual Reports (see above), except that in one cryptic sentence later relied on by the Defendants the following statement (agreed with Deloitte) was made:

> *"During the quarter we saw some of our large customers promote Autonomy to strategic supplier status. This has led them to adopt a broader set of our solutions in a number of significant deals."*

1203. As Mr Knight of Deloitte pointed out at the time (and see further paragraphs 1360 to 1364 below as to the discussions between Autonomy and Deloitte which led to this formulation), this could quite naturally be read as a reference

[189] A reference to the Interwoven acquisition (as also is the reference to *"additional headcount"*).
[190] As will be seen, the way the sources of revenue were presented was changed in Q1 2010: broadly speaking, from the start of 2010, "*Product including hosted and OEM*" was reported as three separate categories: (i) IDOL Product, (ii) IDOL Cloud and (iii) IDOL OEM. The Claimants emphasised that whatever the breakdown, it always added up to 100% of Autonomy's total reported revenues.

to more IDOL sales: and it certainly did not constitute transparency about the hardware sales.

Q4 2009 Quarterly Report

1204. The Q4 2009 Quarterly Report did not mention hardware sales either. The following points may be noted:

(1) Autonomy boasted increased revenues in the quarter and for the year, ascribing its performance to *"a combination of strong organic growth and the successful integration of Interwoven"*.[191]

(2) Dr Lynch wrote: *"We continue to see our strongest growth in the new models of the software industry such as OEM and cloud computing…"*

(3) Gross margins were marginally down on Q4 2008 (89% compared to 92% adjusted, 83% compared to 89% on IFRS) but had improved since Q3 2009. The Report stated: *"As previously announced, the one-time additional costs in Q3 2009 from the IDOL SPE Quick Start program were not repeated in Q4."*

(4) The Report also stated:

"*Cost base returned to traditional model after Q3 2009 product launch costs, with fixed cost base modulated by seasonal market spend and revenue-tracking sales commission."*

(5) Amongst reported highlights were *"Successful launch of IDOL SPE, Arcpliance, ICE, IDOL Social Media and Interwoven product range built on IDOL"*.

(6) Increased R&D expenditure was ascribed to:

> *"new R&D efforts associated with the acquisition of Interwoven and the one-off spend in relation to the development of new products"*.

(7) Autonomy again provided *"supplemental metrics to assist in understanding and analysis of Autonomy's business"*. As in the Q3 2009 Quarterly Report, hardware revenue was incorporated homogeneously into *"Product including hosted and OEM"*[192] and was effectively invisible as a separate source.

Q1 2010 Quarterly Report

[191] Autonomy acquired Interwoven Inc earlier in 2009 for approximately $800 million.

[192] A different format for *"Supplemental Metrics"* was adopted for the Q1 2010 Quarterly Report and thereafter, dividing Autonomy's business into IDOL Product; IDOL Cloud; Service revenues; Deferred revenue release (primarily maintenance); and OEM derived revenues.

1205. Autonomy's Q1 2010 Quarterly Report made no mention of hardware sales, and in the *"Supplemental Metrics"* revenues from such sales were now included amorphously within the category *'IDOL Product'*. The Claimants' specific criticisms in addition referred to the explanation of the sudden emergence of a figure for *"Inventory"*.

1206. As I have explained in paragraph 990 above, the decision to defer recognition of part of the revenues from hardware sales in the quarter brought with it the need to post the amount deferred as Inventory. Autonomy had not historically held noticeable amounts in Inventory; and the increase by some $9.75 million (to a total of $10.250 million) had to be explained in the Q1 2010 Quarterly Report.[193]

1207. In summary:

(1) A trading statement issued by Autonomy on 16 April 2010 (five days before the results were released) included an explanation of Inventory as follows:

> *"In Q1 the company took advantage of discounted offers to purchase stock for the Arcpliance product in advance of Q2 sales, which affected the cash position. These sales have now been completed."*

(2) The Q1 2010 Quarterly Report explained the position as follows:

> *"Movements in cash flow during the first quarter of 2010 of note included:...Purchasing of inventory of $10 million for Q2 2010 sales, most of which have now been completed."*

(3) The Inventory was thus presented as comprised of stock acquired with a view to sale as part of Arcpliance products.

1208. The Claimants' case was that this was all false: (a) the increased inventory was not due to stock purchases: it was the balance of goods sold and delivered but in respect of which revenue recognition had been deferred; (b) it was not *"stock for the Arcpliance product"*; and (c) it was not stock purchased to take *"advantage of discounted offers"*: it was as yet unrecognised revenue for hardware sold at a loss.

1209. The statement that the $10 million of inventory related to purchases of Arcpliance for sale to meet unexpected demand was tested by questioning in the Q1 2010 Earnings Call; as I explain below (see paragraphs 1573 to 1588 below, the Claimants contended and I have broadly accepted) that to maintain the story Dr Lynch had to lie.

[193] The Claimants alleged that what they presented as subterfuge was apparent in the Q&A scripts for the Earnings Call and in what was said at the Q1 2010 Earnings Call. Their case was that not only the market was misled: so too were Deloitte and the Audit Committee. Even with that explanation it triggered inquiry, as I elaborate on when dealing with the Earnings Call for that quarter.

1210. As previously, the figures for "*IDOL Product*" ($47 million), "*IDOL Cloud*" ($45 million), "*Service revenues*" ($11 million), "*Deferred revenue release*" ($62 million) and "*OEM derived revenues*" ($29 million) (presented in tabular form) amounted (after rounding) to the total revenues of $194.2 million appearing under "*Financial Highlights*" and under "*First quarter 2010 Highlights*".

1211. One further matter which I mention in passing to set it in its chronological context, but on which also I elaborate later, is that in their Report to the Audit Committee on the Q1 2010 Review, Deloitte did confront the issue of the presentation of costs associated with hardware sales, highlighting that:

(1) The revenues for the quarter included $12.2 million of hardware sales, most of which they observed had been made at an overall loss.

(2) Management's rationale for the hardware sales was noted as being that they were seeking *"to develop a strategic relationship with Dell. The intention is that both Autonomy and Dell will market Dell hardware that incorporates Autonomy search software."*

(3) Autonomy had sought to allocate $3.8 million of the costs to Sales and Marketing expenses, as they had allocated the costs in the previous quarter, but Deloitte had made clear that this would not be acceptable. It was explained that they had sanctioned the previous allocation on the understanding that the deals in that earlier quarter had involved Autonomy "*purchasing hardware at a price which was considerably higher than they would normally have paid in order to become the preferred hardware reseller with EMC, Dell, SHI and HDS"* but they had *"expected these to be more one-off in nature"* and had concluded that for Q1 2010 *"it would be more appropriate to reflect all the costs of hardware sold in costs of goods sold"*.

(4) Further, Deloitte noted that *"we have included the $3.8 million as a classification adjustment…and would not expect to see such amounts in sales and marketing in subsequent quarters."*

(5) From Q2 2010 onwards, it was only the loss sustained on the hardware sales (normally about 10% of the costs of the hardware) which was allocated to Sales and Marketing expenses, with the balance being allocated to COGS.

Q2 2010 Quarterly Report

1212. Once again, revenue from hardware sales was not mentioned in the Q2 2010 Quarterly Report. All that was said to explain an erosion in gross margins was:

> *"The small variation in gross margins in Q2 2010 was in line with our expectations due to the sales mix including appliances as discussed last quarter."*

1213. It is fair to point out, however, and the Defendants naturally emphasised, that that form of words was approved by Deloitte, after an extended negotiation with management, as described in greater detail in paragraph 869 above.

1214. The *Supplemental Metrics* as provided again presented all revenue as derived from IDOL (except, arguably, those described as *"OEM derived revenues"*), with no clue that any such revenues might be derived from sales other than software sales (save the reference to *"appliances"* in paragraph 1212 above).

1215. Contrary to a suggestion made by Dr Lynch when cross-examined (albeit in a different context of the Q&A scripts prepared for the quarter), there was no mention of *"strategic sales"* either: that shorthand (the Claimants would say euphemism) for hardware sales made its appearance in the Q4 2010 Quarterly Report, but not this one (or indeed any other Quarterly Report in the Relevant Period).

Q3 2010 Quarterly Report, Earnings Call and Investor Bulletin

1216. The Q3 2010 Quarterly Report did not mention hardware or "*Arcpliance", "Appliances"* or *"Strategic Packages"*. As an echo of the explanation given in the Q2 2010 Quarterly Report for the erosion of gross margins (see above) the recovery in gross margins was very briefly referred to as being *"due largely to changes in the sales mix."* There was no mention of Arcpliance, appliance sales, strategic sales, or hardware.

1217. Again, the *Supplemental Metrics* showed all revenue as IDOL-derived. The figures for "*IDOL Product*" ($59 million), "*IDOL Cloud*" ($47 million), "*Service revenues*" ($10 million), "*Deferred revenue release*" ($64 million) and "*OEM derived revenues*" ($31 million) (presented in a table) equated to the total revenues of $211 million appearing under "*Financial Highlights*" and the $210.6 million appearing under "*Revenues*".

1218. A new Autonomy publication in this quarter (Q3 2010) was an Investor Relations Bulletin ("the Q3 2010 Bulletin").[194] In the Q3 2010 Bulletin, there was no express mention of appliance sales, and the only mention of Arcpliance was in explaining that deferred revenue declined because of *"the sell-through of the remaining hardware"*. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that this was a reference to the sale of hardware as part of an appliance (Arcpliance) and not a sale of *'pure hardware'*.

[194] Mr Miles pointed out in his oral closing submissions that there is no evidence that any of the Claimants relied on either of the Investor Bulletins referred to by the Claimants, and they are not the basis of any claim (nor is any mention made of any such Bulletin in the RRAPoC). However, the Claimants relied on them as part of the evidence demonstrating how any hardware sales were depicted as "appliance" or "Arcpliance" sales, the fact of *"pure hardware"* was enveloped in that fog, and revenue from *"pure hardware"* sales of which recognition had been deferred tucked away as *"Inventory"* (and its source and nature was subsequently falsely described).

1219. The Q3 2010 Investor Relations Bulletin also represented that Autonomy's adjusted gross margin had:

> "*snapped back to 87.6% from 86.3% in Q2'10, as the one off effects experienced in Q2 subsided. So despite there being around $6m of hardware revenue in the mix in Q3'10, the gross margin is now back in the usual 88-90% range*".

1220. This, as written, gave the impression that Autonomy had recognised $6 million in hardware revenue in Q3 2010[195]. In truth, as already stated, Autonomy had recognised $26.7 million in pure hardware revenue that quarter Dr Lynch sought to explain this away as *"an error. It's referring to the inventory that's gone through and it shouldn't be saying – it should say hardware inventory revenue, not hardware revenue."* But on that basis the suggestion that the erosion in gross margins was simply due to inventory sales is incorrect, and the hardware sales of some $26.7 million in the quarter were not alluded to let alone disclosed.

1221. Dr Lynch sought to argue that he was not responsible for the inaccurate description because he had not reviewed the last draft of the Q3 2010 Bulletin because *"By the time it was available I was already in the television studios, so it went out without my review."* The Claimants provided a detailed examination of the contemporaneous documentation showing that this was, at best, mistaken memory and that Dr Lynch cannot have been in the TV studios at the time; and in any event, he had seen previous drafts with the same error. It seems reasonably clear, and I find, that this was another example of the efforts made to conceal the fact of substantial *"pure hardware"* sales.

1222. The Q3 2010 Earnings Call took place on 19 October 2010, after the publication of the Q3 2010 Bulletin and the Q3 2010 Quarterly Report. No mention was made of either appliances or Arcpliance or "strategic sales". Mr Khan asked a question about the impact of *"hardware sales"* on deferred revenue, plainly referring to the appliance sales referred to in Q2 2010: but Mr Hussain (who dealt with the question) made no attempt to clarify what sales there had been or what their effect was: still less did he reveal anything about any hardware reselling.

1223. As in respect of previous relevant quarters, I was not shown any document or exchange between Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain relating to these contemplated sales and Mr Hussain's projections and modelling, that suggests that any of this had anything to do with marketing.

1224. A further demonstration of not only the efforts made by the Defendants to conceal *'pure hardware'* sales but also their apparent success is apparent from an email sent by Autonomy's Mr Ganesh Vaidyanathan to Mr Yelland some time later in the story, on 22 March 2012, which referred to *"hardware orders which we source from [Dell] and sell through to our customers"*

[195] The Claimants submitted that given the extensive inventory-related discussions on the Q1 and Q2 2010 earnings calls, a reader of the Bulletin would have understood this all to be appliance-related.

(emphasis added). It was suggested to Mr Yelland in cross-examination that he must have known from the email that Autonomy was selling pure hardware. Mr Yelland explained that, even at that stage, he did not understand 'sell-through' in that way.

1225. Support for Mr Yelland's position can be derived from the Q3 2010 Bulletin, which, as Dr Lynch accepted, used the expression "sell through" to refer to the sale of hardware as part of an appliance, not as a sale of *'pure hardware'*: (emphasis added):

> *"There were two principle effects that led to a modest decline in the deferred revenue balance in Q3'10, which fell to $167.7m (from $175.5m in Q2'10). Firstly, the sell-through of the remaining hardware related to Arcpliance, which if excluded would mean that deferred revenue would actually have risen sequentially given the related revenue that the hardware supports."*

1226. That explanation plainly assumes that analysts had no idea that Autonomy had sold substantial amounts of pure hardware in this (or any other) quarter. The explanation appears to have been accepted, strengthening that assumption. Had it been or been thought to be common knowledge it seems most unlikely that Dr Lynch should have remained so determined to conceal it from them.

1227. This is of relevance to a question which is bound to occur to observers of this long saga, and has troubled me: this is whether it was common knowledge in the sector, and amongst analysts and those paid to find out about this sort of thing, that Autonomy was buying and re-selling large amounts of hardware? I have concluded that although it was known to some (including, for example, Mr Morland and Mr Khan) that Autonomy was buying and selling hardware, the assumption, which it can be inferred was fuelled by the supposition that anything material would have been disclosed, was that these were immaterial.

Q4 2010 Quarterly Report, Earnings Call and Investor Relations Bulletin

1228. Once again, in the Q4 2010 Quarterly Report, the *Supplemental Metrics* made no mention of hardware revenues. They were amorphously included in the figures for "*IDOL Product*" ($84 million); and Autonomy's other revenues were included as "*IDOL Cloud*" ($51 million), "*IDOL OEM*" ($34 million), "*Deferred Revenue Release*" ($66 million) and "*Services revenue*" ($10-11 million) (now in narrative rather than tabular form). Total revenues thus comprised amounted (after rounding) to $244.5 million.

1229. The key point to emerge in the Q4 2010 Quarterly Report and that quarter's edition of the Investor Relations Bulletin ("the Q4 2010 Bulletin") was that hardware was mentioned, and so was "*Arcpliance";* and the description *"package solution"* also figured for the first time. The Defendants' position as to whether this did or did not amount to disclosure of hardware sales was somewhat variable.

1230. It may be remembered that in the presentations in the preceding quarter (Q3 2010) no mention had been made of such sales, except for a fleeting reference to *"the sell-through of the remaining hardware"* purchased at a discount for future Arcpliance sales to explain a decline in deferred revenue. Dr Lynch was pressed in cross-examination to explain why no mention had been made of hardware sales which he had to accept amounted to some 14% of the total revenue in this quarter (Q4 2010). His response was that (a) it was not correct to say that no mention had been made, (b) on the contrary, language agreed with Deloitte had been added, at Deloitte's request and in a form they approved, to disclose such sales.

1231. As to (a) in paragraph 1230 above, when asked to identify where in the Q4 2010 Quarterly Report this was the case, Dr Lynch pointed to the following passage:

> "*During the year Autonomy has seen success in addressing the urgent needs of a small number of customers with package solutions, constructed of services, hardware and software, such as Arcpliance. The gross margin in these cases is lower than the normal business.*"

1232. As to (b) in paragraph 1230 above, and when the passage above was then criticised as inadequate and misleading, Dr Lynch remonstrated that it had been *"worked out with Deloitte"* who were *"completely alive to this issue"* and had thought it *"suitable to put in and we followed Deloitte's directions in these matters"*. He also insisted, when told by Mr Rabinowitz to "*Never mind that, let's just look at what you said…",* that he did not himself think it misleading, though he did emphasise that Arcpliance was simply given as an example of a wider category.

Q4 2010 Earnings Call

1233. The Q4 2010 Earnings Call took place on 1 February 2011. Yet again, the focus of the Claimants' submissions was on the Q&A script. Indeed, they made no complaint about what in the event was said on the call about hardware.

Q4 2010 Investor Relations Bulletin

1234. A few days after the Earnings Call, Autonomy produced an Investor Relations Bulletin for Q4 2010, which was published on 7 February 2011 ("the Q4 2010 Bulletin"). The Claimants focused much attention on the drafting stages of this also; but the essential point is that in each succeeding draft, as in the Q4 2010 Bulletin as eventually published, the *"Organic Growth calculation"* was described as intended to be a measure of *"growth in the core IDOL business"*, but included revenue generated by hardware sales at a loss without any distinction or explanation.

1235. The Q4 2010 Bulletin contained references to *"package solution sales…such as Arcpliance",* similar to those in the Q4 2010 Quarterly Report. If anything,

greater emphasis was given to Arcpliance as the prime exemplar, though the elaboration sought also to explain that any hardware sales with a software solution in prospect (as well as with software installed) were included.

1236. The Q4 2010 Bulletin included the following explanation of the calculation of organic growth (the emphasis is as in the original):

> *"This calculation arrives at growth in the core IDOL business, whether through up front license sales, on an appliance, in our private Cloud or through our IDOL OEM partners. We remain indifferent to the means by which a customer chooses to purchase the technology, because the share of the value in all of these models is so dramatically skewed towards the software component.*
> ***The value is in the software:*** *Arcpliance is a good example, whereby Autonomy delivers its software pre-loaded onto a suitable piece of hardware in order to dramatically cut the time to value for the customer, who is often responding to crisis situations (early case assessment in eDiscovery, for instance). Where Arcpliance is concerned, the value of the IDOL software solution and the complex processing it performs is many times higher than the cost of the hardware on it is installed.*
> *Therefore we do not think the approach of attempting to strip out the various components of a sale – e.g. Arcpliance internal hardware costs – makes sense. We would also point out that if one wanted to perform such a calculation one would also need to strip out the hardware element from the year ago period, in order to compare apples with apples, which in this case would actually increase the organic growth."*

1237. In fact, on the Claimants' calculations, if hardware revenue had been excluded, organic "*growth*" would have been negative:

(1) The Q4 2010 Bulletin stated that Q4 2010 growth was 12%. Without hardware revenues, there would have been negative growth of 5%.

(2) Similarly, FY 2010 growth was stated to be 17% in the Q4 2010 Bulletin. Removing the hardware revenues would have reduced annual growth to 7%.

(3) Accordingly, on those figures, the last sentence of the passage quoted in paragraph 1236 above appeared to be untrue: in relation to this, Mr Rabinowitz accused Dr Lynch in cross-examination of a *"bare-faced lie"*.

1238. When cross-examined on these comparisons, Dr Lynch had to accept the calculations, but he made three points:

(1) For the purpose of their calculations the Claimants had stripped out what they considered to be more *"pure hardware sales"* whereas, as already well apparent, his position is that many such sales were

properly characterised as Arcpliance and/or *"appliance"* or *"appliance-type"* sales;

(2) More important than the organic growth figure for understanding the momentum of sales of IDOL was earnings growth which was not affected by the calculation (because, of course, the hardware sales were not profitable); and

(3) There had been *"a little bit of picking of periods here"* by the Claimants: he suggested that a comparison with the more relevant preacquisition period between H1 2010 and H1 2011 would yield a very different result.

1239. What Dr Lynch's answers in cross-examination in the context of the Q4 2010 Bulletin served to emphasise was the inextricable connection, on the Defendants' case (at least as it was developed by Dr Lynch), between the purpose of the sale and its characterisation as an appliance: and as the purpose of all the hardware sales, on the Defendants' case, was to drive software sales, substantially all, if not all, its hardware sales were *"Appliance"* or *"Appliance-type"* sales. Put another way, Dr Lynch's ultimate answer to Mr Rabinowitz's accusation that the last sentence of the passage quoted in paragraph 1236 above was a *"bare-faced lie"* depended on what was comprised in the phrase *"the hardware element"*.

1240. A problem for the Defendants in this way of developing their case is that at one and the same time they and management also represented that *'appliance sales'* comprised only a very small proportion of total sales, say 1%. The argument that the nature and extent of hardware sales were revealed by the disclosure of the fact of appliance sales was untenable; and the mere revelation of the fact of such sales took the Defendants next to nowhere.

1241. Mr Rabinowitz also suggested to Dr Lynch that the second of Dr Lynch's points summarised in paragraph 1238 above was inconsistent with a passage earlier in the Investor Bulletin itself stating that *"In analysing organic growth Autonomy considers organic IDOL growth to be the most meaningful performance metric for understanding the momentum in the business"*. Dr Lynch's answer to this was that the sentence was limited to stating that for the purpose of analysing organic growth the important factor was organic IDOL growth and did not affect the fact that, in his view, the most important metric in valuing Autonomy was not organic growth, but earnings growth (EPS) and/or free cash flow growth.

1242. I agree that the metrics are different. I also agree, of course, that it is a tenable view that the more important valuation metric is earnings growth, and EPS. Further, though Dr Lynch accepted that growth driven by the sale of 'pure' hardware was not a meaningful metric for understanding the momentum of IDOL sales, and it seems to me it would follow that its inclusion would thus have skewed the presentation of IDOL organic growth, he did not accept that any of the sales were 'pure' hardware sales. He argued that the Claimants' calculation, and its utility, depends on accepting their definitions. Again, at the

heart of this was Dr Lynch's elastic definition of *"the hardware element"*. What was said entirely altered in significance according to the content of that phrase. In my view, all this was an exercise in obfuscation on the part of Dr Lynch. What he needed to do, and what this part of the Investor Bulletin did, was to count all hardware revenue in for one purpose, but remove only part of it for another, in order to maintain the picture of growth without material past adverse effect, and the prospect of future improvement, in gross margin.

1243. Mr Miles took up in re-examination the last of Dr Lynch's points as summarised in paragraph 1238 above. Mr Miles put to Dr Lynch two different comparisons. These, as Dr Lynch had suggested in cross-examination, were based on information extracted from the interim results for the six months ended 30 June 2011.

1244. The comparisons Mr Miles put were (a) between Q2 2010 and Q2 2011 and (b) between H1 2010 and H1 2011. Those comparisons, as Dr Lynch happily agreed, showed that if what the Claimants termed *"pure hardware"* was stripped out from both, the effect was actually to increase the organic growth rate from one period to the other. But this did not take Dr Lynch very far: the exclusion of *"pure hardware"* in both periods might show comparative organic growth, but at the price of reducing the revenue growth and ruining the whole picture which hardware sales were intended to paint.

1245. In any event, even accepting (to test the argument) every part of Dr Lynch's three-part rebuttal summarised in paragraph 1238 above, the fact remains that if what was termed in the passage quoted *"the hardware element"* had been stripped out, Autonomy's revenue would have been materially reduced. That of itself would almost certainly have invited questions, which would have revealed the programme. Further, depending on exactly which sales were treated as the *"hardware element"* the comparison between the two periods selected by the Claimants would depend on the relative amounts of such sales in each period; but I suspect that, whatever the content given to the *"hardware element"* the claim that "organic growth" would have increased is a shaky one. And if, as at one moment in his cross-examination Dr Lynch suggested, all sales with a hardware content except Arcpliance sales were excluded, the statement made would have been false.

1246. More generally, I cannot avoid the conclusion that the part of the Investor Bulletin with reference to organic growth quoted in paragraph 1236 above omitted any reference to hardware sales, other than Arcpliance or appliance sales, not because of the difficulty of comparing apples with apples, but as part of the continuing determination of the Defendants not to disclose to the market that a material part of Autonomy's revenue and IDOL "organic growth" was derived from such sales.

1247. The Claimants' contentions in that respect are fortified by another passage in the same Bulletin which again presented the variability in gross margins as being due to appliance sales ("*pre-packaged, turnkey solutions*"), with no reference being made to the substantial 'pure' hardware sales that Autonomy

had made both in this and previous quarters. Under the heading "*Profitability analysis*", the following passage appeared (emphasis added):

> "***Other factors to consider:*** *There are a number of other factors that affect the gross margin. During the year Autonomy has also succeeded in addressing the urgent needs of a small number of customers with pre-packaged, turnkey solutions, constructed of services, hardware and software, of which Arcpliance is an example. The gross margin for such solutions is lower than for pure software. As a result, over the last few years the gross margin has fluctuated anywhere between around 85-92% without an easily discernible pattern. Autonomy has indicated that it expects the gross margin to remain within the range of 85-90% for the foreseeable future."*

1248. Lastly in respect of Q4 2010, and to repeat my refrain from previous quarters: I was not shown any document or exchange between Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain relating to these contemplated sales and Mr Hussain's projections and modelling that suggests that any of this had anything to do with marketing.

Q1 2011 Quarterly Report

1249. I did not understand the Claimants to take any specific point or make any specific criticism of the Q1 2011 Quarterly Report (released on 21 April 2011) (nor, for that matter, of the Q1 2011 Q&A or the Earnings Call for that quarter), apart of course from the criticism that the hardware reselling strategy was once again not properly disclosed.

1250. However, it is noticeable that the Q1 2011 Quarterly Report did not repeat the sentence which Dr Lynch stated Deloitte had insisted be included in the Q4 2010 Quarterly Report and (according to him) had regarded as sufficient disclosure of the hardware reselling strategy (see paragraph 1232 above), and (as in the Q3 2010 Quarterly Report) did not mention hardware or "*Arcpliance, Appliances or Strategic Package/Solutions"*. By now, gross margins had recovered, and indeed were shown as having increased to 88%, with improvements forecasted. That, at least in part, reflected a reduction in loss-making hardware sales.

1251. The figures for "*IDOL Product*" ($54.4 million), "*IDOL Cloud*" ($52.7 million), "*IDOL OEM*" ($37.2 million)[196] and "*Services revenue*" ($9 million) in the narrative descriptions and "*Deferred Revenue Release*" ($66.5 million) amounted (after rounding) to the total revenues of $220 million as stated under "*Revenue*": the categories left no room for other sources of revenue.

Q2 2011 Quarterly/Half yearly Report and Earnings Call

[196] The "*Core IDOL reported revenues*" ($144.3 million) appearing in the table at the top of page 3 of the Report was – as stated in footnote 1 to the table – the sum of the IDOL Product ($54.4 million), IDOL Cloud ($52.7 million) and IDOL OEM ($37.2 million) categories.

1252. There was no mention of hardware sales, or Arcpliance, or *"strategic Package/solutions"* in the Q2 2011 Quarterly Report either. The only reference was to 'appliances', and then only as follows:

> *"Autonomy saw expected improvements in gross margins in Q2 2011 compared to 2010 due to the sales mix including more appliances in prior years. Gross profits (IFRS) for H1 2011 were $388.3 million, up 16% from $334.0 million in H1 2010."*

1253. Software sales had recovered well in Q2 2011, and with the increase in gross profit and gross margin, there was no longer any need for words to explain *"low margin"* sales. As elaborated later, it is clear from the Q&A scripts that had questions been asked about the reference to appliance sales in prior years, the answers would not have disclosed the fact of hardware sales, otherwise than as Arcpliance or *"strategic"* packages or solutions. In the event, no such question was asked.

1254. Once more, the figures for "*IDOL Product*" ($68.5 million), "*IDOL Cloud*" ($64.3 million), "*IDOL OEM*" ($47.2 million), "*Deferred revenue release*" ($67.5 million) and "*Services*" ($8.8 million) (this time in a table) amounted to the total revenue figure of $256.3 million appearing at the foot of that table, as well as under "*Highlights*".[197]

1255. No mention was made of hardware sales in either the Q2 2011 Quarterly Report or in the Q2 2011 Earnings Call, although Autonomy recognised some $20.8 million in respect of *'pure hardware'* in Q2 2011. Apart from that observation, no particular point needs to be noted in respect of either the report or the call: however, as I elaborate later, it is clear from the Q&A scripts prepared for the Q2 2011 Earnings Call that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain remained determined that the market should not know about these *'pure hardware'* sales.

Summary of the Claimants' case as to the disclosure made in Quarterly Reports

1256. In my judgment, this review of the Annual and Quarterly Reports in the Relevant Period demonstrates that the hardware sales were almost entirely concealed. Concealment required considerable invention.

1257. When, as an inconvenient by-product of the deferment of revenue recognition, $10 million was required to be parked in 'Inventory', a story was invented that this was hardware inventory purchased in preparation for Arcpliance sales. The story was false. In subsequent quarters, any reference to 'hardware' was excused as being referable to appliance or Arcpliance sales: the fact and extent of what the Claimants have called *'pure hardware'* sales were to that extent disguised and as to the rest concealed.

1258. As will be examined in more detail later, the costs of hardware were allocated, not to *'Cost of Sales'* or *'COGS'* but as to large part as *'Sales and marketing*

[197] I was not referred to any Investor Relations Bulletin for this period.

expenses', serving a dual function of (a) disguising the true costs of the hardware purchases and loss-making sales and (b) reducing the adverse impact on gross margin.

1259. It also appears that, in line with the Claimants' case:

(1) When gross margins were not impacted, or not impacted materially, by loss-making hardware sales, so that the gross margin percentage remained stable or had improved, no reference was included to anything except sales of software: that was the case, for example, in Q4 2009, Q1 2011 and Q2 2011.

(2) When gross margins were adversely impacted, a variety of explanations were put forward, none of which revealed the real reason (loss making hardware sales). Thus:

i. In Q3 2009 the reduction in gross margins was presented as being referable to *"unexpected demand for new [products*]*"* (SPE and Quick Start);

ii. In Q1 2010, the sudden increase in Inventory in consequence of the deferral of revenue from hardware sales was incorrectly ascribed to the purchase of hardware for Arcpliance;

iii. In Q2 2010, the deterioration in gross margins was ascribed to the quarter's *"sales mix including Appliances"* (appliance sales being at lower margins) without any reference to loss-making hardware sales;

iv. In Q3 2010, when gross profits were once more stable, the past was explained in terms of the *"sales mix"* in the previous quarter;

v. In Q4 2010, at Deloitte's insistence, words to capture low margin and loss-making sales were included, but in very opaque terms ("*package solutions, constructed of services, hardware and software, such as Arcpliance"*);

vi. In Q1 2011 and Q2 2011, by which time gross margins first stabilised and then increased in percentage terms, no reference was made to hardware, or even to some broad description such as "*package solutions, constructed of services, hardware and software, such as Arcpliance"*.

1260. Overall, the impression given in every report was that all revenues were generated through IDOL software transactions, except those relating to services, which were separately accounted for. That further appeared to confirm the Claimants' case (as summarised above) that Autonomy presented itself to the market generally, and to HP during the pre-acquisition discussions and due diligence, as a *'pure software company'* whose revenues were almost

exclusively derived from the sale of its IDOL software and related software (and a small amount of 'appliance sales').

1261. What was said, or not said, about the sales in the quarterly earnings calls was correspondingly disingenuous at best. I have determined that what Dr Lynch said at the Earnings Call for the quarter (Q1 2010) when both Defendants provided an explanation for the Inventory was patently false, and he elaborated on the falsity during the call which exacerbated the falsity. Allowing for his hearing problem, I was not persuaded that Dr Lynch was in some way at cross-purposes because volcanic ash had marooned him in California and he was on a mobile phone which he could not connect to his hearing aid: the transcript is clear and consistent and his responses did not seem to me to suggest that he misheard the relevant question.

Is the Defendants' avowed reliance on Deloitte a "trump card"?

1262. The fact remains that Deloitte approved the Quarterly Reports and Autonomy's quarterly, half-yearly and annual accounts throughout the Relevant Period, and so too did the Audit Committee. Furthermore, at least one representative of Deloitte (I think invariably Mr Welham) sat in on each of the Earnings Calls (see further paragraphs 123 above, 1437 and 1519(6) below) in the course of which it is clear, at least in retrospect, that (at best) incomplete and on various occasions fundamentally inaccurate information was provided about the hardware reselling revenue's contribution to overall revenues.

1263. Neither Deloitte nor the Audit Committee expressed any material doubt as to the commercial propriety of the hardware reselling or the Defendants' explanation of its purpose: on the contrary, both accepted the purpose given as a valid basis for accounting for and treating hardware reselling revenue as part and parcel of Autonomy's core software business.

1264. As was essential in order to achieve the true purpose of the hardware reselling strategy, both Deloitte and the Audit Committee were also persuaded, despite reservations they expressed, not to insist on separate disclosure of the hardware transactions, either in the 'back-end' of the accounts, or in any of Autonomy's published information.

1265. The fact that Mr Welham and all those concerned at Deloitte, including the audit engagement partners in overall charge of the Autonomy audit in the Relevant Period, Mr Knights (from 2005 to 2010) and Mr Mercer (from May 2010), considered the hardware sales in great detail and were persuaded (a) that their purpose was to protect and promote software sales; (b) that some proportion of the costs were properly to be accounted for as marketing expenses; and (c) that the accounting treatment, the *Supplemental Metrics* and the cryptic and limited information given could properly be approved, is obviously much relied on by the Defendants.

1266. The Defendants accepted that the responsibility for the accounting treatment was ultimately that of the Directors. Directors put forward their account of the

performance of the company of which they have management control: auditors audit that account. However, they insisted that unless materially misled, Deloitte's acceptance of the accounting put forward by the directors, after careful audit, with full access to the accounting information, and with knowledge of the extent of the hardware reselling, demonstrates that, whatever else, they were not dishonest. Indeed, their case was that they believed the hardware reselling and the way it was accounted for to be entirely proper, and were confirmed in that belief by Deloitte.

1267. However, if the Defendants did mislead Deloitte, that would of itself be powerful evidence, not only of the impropriety inherent in any deliberate misrepresentation, but also that they considered that disclosure would fatally undermine the programme (which could only be the case if its purpose was as the Claimants alleged).

1268. The Claimants' case is that the reason why Deloitte and the Audit Committee did not raise any red flags, accepted accounting treatment of the hardware reselling revenues and costs which undoubtedly obscured their nature and source, and never insisted on more transparency, was that both were fundamentally misled by an avowed purpose which was bogus and a false narrative which was developed by the Defendants with the assistance of (in particular) Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain and adjusted over time as events progressively raised more questions as to its legitimacy.

1269. The Claimants' case on the reasons for avoiding disclosure and the falsity of the Defendants' presentation of the purpose of the hardware sales come together and are mutually supportive at this point. The presentation of the purpose of the hardware sales as being to drive software sales was necessary to persuade Deloitte that the hardware revenues did not have to be differentiated in the accounts nor did their source need to be disclosed. If the true nature and extent of the sales were to be disclosed, the programme would be revealed for what it was: a means of covering up disappointing software sales, and there would have been no point in it.

1270. It was on that basis that Mr Rabinowitz submitted in his oral closing that:

> *"Deloitte is not the trump card that Dr Lynch would like it to be."*

The development of the narrative presented to Deloitte and the Audit Committee

1271. It seems to me that the most convenient way of addressing and determining this key aspect of the hardware case is to track the development of the narrative by reference to the phases in the programme marked by:

    (1) The background and development, and the presentation and effect, of the *Strategic Deals Memorandum,* which was principally focused on the arrangements between Autonomy and EMC but was formative of Deloitte's perception of the hardware reselling strategy even after Dell replaced EMC as Autonomy's hardware supplier for the programme.

(2) The reinforcement and adjustment of the justification of the hardware reselling strategy and its costs after the replacement of EMC by Dell (and especially from early 2010 onwards), principally in Quarterly Notes prepared by Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain for the Audit Committee ("Mr Hussain's Quarterly Notes"). These Notes were always pre-circulated to Dr Lynch and Deloitte, and when presented to the Audit Committee were accompanied by Deloitte's own quarterly reports on their reviews in each quarter of the accounts for that quarter ("Deloitte's Quarterly Reports"), and its effect.

(3) The development of the *"Linkage Analysis"* in successive editions from Q2 2010 to persuade Deloitte and the Audit Committee that the hardware reselling strategy had discernible effect on and was of benefit to software sales.

Efforts to obtain "a helpful form of words" from EMC to "wave in front of Deloitte"

1272. It will be recalled that in its original incarnation, when EMC was Autonomy's hardware supplier, the Defendants presented the hardware reselling strategy as involving a 'partnership' with EMC for the development jointly of an 'appliance' and for marketing and related arrangements to be undertaken by EMC, funded in part out of the purchase price for the hardware purchased by Autonomy. This was bound to raise Deloitte's expectation of confirmatory evidence from EMC.

1273. Autonomy's management spent much of September 2009 pressing Mr Sullivan to use his contacts in EMC to get them to agree to wording which would provide confirmation of the arrangements, and especially of some commitment on the part of EMC to begin the joint development of an appliance and to treat part of its receipts from the sale of its hardware as a *"marketing incentive"* (there being none in the relevant contracts).

1274. The Claimants' closing submissions contained a detailed chronological description, by reference to a number of email exchanges, of what they presented as the orchestration by Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain, in conjunction with Mr Sullivan, of efforts to extract from EMC *"a helpful form of words...that could be waved in front of Deloitte."*

1275. They also described how on 15 September 2009, Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain had agreed to pay Mr Sullivan a special bonus of $50,000 if he succeeded in this regard (I have quoted the email in question and the incentive arrangements in greater detail in paragraphs 1119 and 1127 above).

1276. I do not think it is necessary for me to rehearse in as much detail as the Claimants provided the numerous exchanges between Mr Sullivan and Mr Hussain and/or Mr Chamberlain, which were characterised by the latter two formulating, re-formulating and pressing for the wording to which they wanted EMC to agree, and Mr Sullivan consistently having to suggest modifications and to warn (in effect, even if not in so many words) that EMC would not

agree wording which did not reasonably accurately reflect his actual discussions with them.

1277. It is, however, necessary to refer to the exchanges in summary to illustrate why it seems to me to be clear that what Dr Lynch in cross-examination sought to justify as the efforts of Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain to *"get the right accounting…the accounting… reflecting the reality of the situation"* (and see also paragraph 1342 below) ultimately exposed the fact that EMC did not regard itself as committed in any way, and was not willing to provide more than anodyne enthusiasm for the reselling programme which provided it (EMC) with undoubted benefit (a discount for its customers at Autonomy's expense).

1278. In summary:

(1) Initially, what Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain wanted (as is clear from the email of 15 September 2009) and urged Mr Sullivan to *"extract"* was EMC's agreement (actual or tacit) to the presentation of the price paid by Autonomy for their hardware as comprised of three components, being *"hardware cost"*, *"commission for resale"* and a *"marketing fee"*, each with an allocated dollar amount. Mr Chamberlain gave as an illustrative example a $31 million hardware order, and the suggested description of $20 million as *"hardware cost"*, $6 million as a *"commission for resale"* and $5 million as a *"marketing fee"*. Mr Chamberlain explained to Mr Sullivan that this was *"the sort of thing we need from EMC for internal cost allocation"*. Mr Sullivan did not feel able to propose this since he did not think EMC would be *"that specific on their cost"*.

(2) Mr Sullivan's proposal for blander wording sparked a counter-proposal from Mr Chamberlain which he presented as a *"minor tweak"*, but which the Claimants (justifiably, in my view) presented as a substantive change designed *"to allow us to show $20m as COGS and $10m of marketing"*.

(3) When Mr Sullivan balked at seeking the proposed wording from EMC, there followed a further exchange culminating in agreement on revised wording to be put to EMC providing *"details of Autonomy's Q3 marketing program"* under which Autonomy would *"purchase products from EMC at a price consisting of"* (i) *"EMC's discounted price to Autonomy, which typically will represent a substantial discount off list price but will be determined on a deal by deal basis"* and (ii) *"plus a marketing incentive supplied to EMC to be determined on a deal by deal basis"*. Mr Sullivan put this version to EMC in an email dated 18 September 2009 ending his email *"I would appreciate it if you could confirm your understanding of the program."*

(4) Even though Mr Sullivan's email involved no suggestion that EMC had assumed any obligation to provide marketing assistance to Autonomy, still less any suggestion of the agreed development of an

appliance, EMC's reply that afternoon was studiously non-committal, simply stating:

"This looks like a great programme and we are excited to participate in it."

(5) All that appears to have been sent to Deloitte (addressed to Mr Knight and Mr Welham) by Mr Chamberlain (and only at a later date, in early October 2009) is the thread of (a) Mr Sullivan's email and (b) EMC's response on 18 September 2009. Mr Knight forwarded that thread to Mr Knights with the comment:

> *"Helpful but not enough to substantiate a $25m marketing element in my view. I have asked if EMC can quantify but I suspect that this is all we will get."*

(6) On 2 October 2009, by email to Mr Sullivan, copying Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain proposed new wording which invited EMC to confirm that (a) EMC would spend a material proportion of the difference between the Autonomy selling price and the EMC selling price, which was labelled *"the premium"*, together with a *"distributor premium"*, on *"development of the EMC cells and working on training the sales force and joint marketing with Autonomy to further develop the EMC-Autonomy partnership"*; and also (b) that *"the standard reseller margin is approximately 55%"*.

(7) Mr Sullivan could not support this tack either. His response (by email to Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain dated 2 October 2009) was that he was *"Not optimistic about this…"* [198]

(8) Mr Hussain immediately replied to both Mr Sullivan and Mr Chamberlain, *"Give me an idea of what you could get"*. The Claimants suggested also that Mr Hussain's reply showed that *"Mr Hussain simply wanted whatever form of words could be extracted from EMC to show Deloitte, whether or not it bore any relationship to the truth"*.

(9) Mr Sullivan was not, however, to be pushed too far. As he put it in his witness statement:

"On occasion, I was asked by Mr Hussain or Mr Chamberlain to extract certain language from EMC and when the suggested language was not accurate, I offered modified language that was accurate."

(10) Mr Sullivan's further email response of 2 October 2009 to Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain (but not, it seems, Dr Lynch) was unequivocal:

[198] The notion of a *"standard reseller margin"* of 55% was contradicted by Autonomy's references only days before to an allocation based on a 25% and then a 35% margin.

"…They will not OK anything that says that what we paid them was for something other than for the product we purchased in this period. Nor will they say the money will be spent on marketing etc. They are extremely sensitive to these kinds of letters.

If I can get them to agree to anything it will need to be more general:

1. *Maybe acknowledge that our marketing program is not limited to Q2. This would imply that we would do more of the same in Q4 and beyond.*

2. *They have already acknowledged that the fees paid were a marketing incentive…"*

(11) Mr Sullivan could scarcely have been plainer; but still Mr Chamberlain persisted. On 5 October 2009 he emailed Mr Sullivan, copying Mr Hussain, stating:

"We have to get EMC to state that they will spend $'s over next few quarters on developing their cells…the key at this stage is to get something that will state that their [sic] will be a future investment by EMC".

(12) Mr Chamberlain proposed new and briefer language including:

"EMC plan to continue to invest in the relationship through continued development of our cells and similar joint marketing with other customers".

(13) Mr Sullivan could not accept this either. On 5 October 2009 he proposed and sent, with the reluctant but resigned approval of Mr Chamberlain and Mr Hussain, an email which thanked EMC for *"participating in our key customer marketing program"* and looked forward to the possibility of *"the continuation of the program to include: development of an appliance bundle, mutual cross referrals, account introductions, reselling and other opportunities*" (as also quoted in paragraph 774(5) above). As the Claimants pointed out, that wording contained no suggestion that such matter had been agreed with EMC: rather, these were to be discussed in the future.

(14) Having received no reply, Mr Sullivan chased Mr Scannell by email dated 14 October 2009. The content of that email demonstrated that Mr Sullivan (a) recognised there was no prospect of the sort of confirmation that Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain had sought and (b) well understood that there never had been any commitment on the part of EMC either to spend money on marketing for Autonomy or to

collaborate on a joint appliance. All that was left was to talk lamely of wanting:

> *"to follow up again to see if we could spend some time talking about other ways we could help each other. Amongst other things, we are going to launch some appliance products and will need hardware to bundle into the product."*

(15) Mr Scannell again sent no reply.

1279. It seems to me that it was plain by then to Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain, as illustrated by their reluctant retreat from seeking to persuade Mr Sullivan to try yet again to extract wording from EMC showing some definite commitment to apply the 'delta' in pre-agreed ways, that some other justification for the allocation of a proportion of the hardware costs to sales and marketing had to be found and substantiated.

1280. From then on, as it seems to me, their focus was no longer on obtaining from EMC any acknowledgement of any commitment. Instead, management turned to seek through Mr Sullivan EMC's acknowledgement of some generally applicable but quantified parameter, whether a quantified *"hardware amount"* or "*the standard reseller margin"*, with a view to persuading Deloitte that the difference between the amount to be regarded as the selling price and the amount actually paid to EMC by Autonomy (the 'delta') should be treated as referable to marketing incentives or development funding. This was what became known as the *"residual approach."*

1281. In the meantime, as the Claimants presented it, Mr Hussain had gone ahead with efforts to maximise the amount of hardware costs that could be allocated to sales and marketing expenses in Autonomy's accounts. This process too had gone through a number of stages:

(1) On 29 September 2009, Mr Chamberlain sent Mr Hussain by email a summary of the Q3 hardware deals. He attached a spreadsheet showing that by that point Autonomy had purchased hardware from EMC for a total of $50.722 million and Autonomy had re-sold that hardware for $40.873 million, thereby incurring a loss of $9.859 million. Mr Chamberlain had proposed (as shown in the spreadsheet) to allocate $30.654 million of the $50.722 million spent to COGS and the remaining $20.068 million to sales and marketing.

(2) Mr Hussain was not satisfied. On 30 September 2009 he told Mr Chamberlain in an email that he needed *"to get cogs down by at least $5 million so that it's 50:50".* That necessitated decreasing the amount allocated to COGS by $5 million, and increasing the amount allocated to marketing by that amount, to achieve a roughly 50:50 split. No basis for the change in allocation was suggested. The Claimants therefore submitted that the allocation was driven simply by a desire to attribute as much as possible to marketing and reduce to a minimum the amount allocated to COGS.

(3) In response, Mr Chamberlain duly amended the spreadsheet, though he had to adopt a slightly more complex method to achieve the result. The $50.722 million was now allocated as follows: $26.567 million to COGS and the remaining $24.155 million to sales and marketing. This was achieved by reducing (artificially, according to the Claimants) the so-called *"wholesale price"* of the hardware. Whereas in the original spreadsheet the wholesale price ($30.654 million) was shown as 75% of the retail price ($40.873 million) showing a *"Normal margin to reseller"* of 25%, in the revised version, the wholesale price was reduced to $26.567 million (i.e. 65% of the retail price), with the "*Normal margin to reseller"* increasing to 35%.

(4) The Claimant labelled this as *"entirely artificial",* in that Autonomy was not at that stage aware of EMC's real *"wholesale price"*, and the reduction of that *"wholesale price"* enabling an increase of the *"Normal Margin to reseller"* was arrived at without any input from or discussion with EMC, and to achieve only one end, being to maximise the amount of hardware costs allocated to marketing so that the effect on the bottom line of the hardware reselling costs would commensurately be reduced. It is difficult to disagree with that label: and I accept it.

(5) The evidence did not disclose whether Deloitte knew of these alterations or their basis.

1282. Quite what Deloitte came to know of these unsuccessful efforts to extract serviceable wording from EMC to persuade them of a commitment on EMC's part to apply the 'delta' to marketing and/or development is not clear. It was not disputed that Deloitte always had access to all emails and other internal documents: Autonomy appears to have operated an 'open book' policy. There was, however, no documentary trail or evidence demonstrating that Deloitte were sent or saw the emails internal to Autonomy referred to above. Nor, apart from the email from EMC of 18 September 2009 which was sent to Deloitte on 9 October 2009 (see paragraph 1278(5) above), was there evidence of Deloitte having been shown the emails to EMC or Mr Sullivan's follow-up email dated 14 October 2009 when Mr Scannell did not reply, in which the best that Mr Sullivan felt able to achieve was an acknowledgment of some possibility of such an agreement in the future:

> *"I wanted to follow up again to see if we could spend some time talking about other ways we could help each other. Amongst other things, we are going to launch some appliance products and will need hardware to bundle into the product."*

1283. In such circumstances, I have concluded that it is unlikely that Deloitte were aware of the exchanges within Autonomy, or (except for the email of 18 September 2009) those (which were few) between Autonomy and EMC.

1284. As a result, it seems to me more likely than not, and I find, that, prior to the final drafts of the *Strategic Deals Memorandum,* Deloitte were (a) unaware that the metric central to the *"residual approach"* (EMC's real *"wholesale price"*) was a figure contrived by Autonomy and (b) still looking to Autonomy to supply the substantive evidential support of the collaboration and agreement with EMC which Autonomy's management continued to cite as justification for the accounting treatment which they proposed.

1285. Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence in his witness statement was that on 7 October 2009 Mr Hussain met with members of the Deloitte team to explain the background to the EMC hardware transactions. A review working paper with the subject heading *"EMC related revenue deals"*, (which is actually dated at its top 5 October, but which refers to later events and was described by Ms Anderson of Deloitte, who prepared it, as an extract from a full memorandum), recorded what Deloitte had been told of the commercial rationale at that stage. This included the following:

(1) *"Autonomy has decided to apply, in the case of large ongoing projects, a package approach to the demand for strategic selling at major institutions."*

(2) *"This will replace the existing situation where a customer has the choice of purchasing software from Autonomy or another software provider and purchasing hardware in a separate transaction from EMC or another hardware provider."*

(3) *"Autonomy will encourage customers to purchase EMC hardware and the customer will get a better deal by purchasing through Autonomy than they would receive directly with EMC."*

(4) *"The benefit will be seen in the long term with these and other customers as they purchase additional cells to replace or expand their existing storage cells. As Autonomy has aligned themselves strategically with EMC, customers will purchase their cells from EMC via Autonomy. EMC will have configured their cells to make them completely compatible with Digital Safe. Customers will be able to choose Autonomy as their strategic supplier for hardware and software."*

(5) *"Autonomy has considered the cost to them in respect of these deals"* [the reference being to the deals with Citi, JPMC and Bloomberg] in three portions:

"Costs of goods sold: This is equal to the standard wholesale price… and is equal to 55% of the selling price
Marketing: Autonomy has repaid the reseller margin back to EMC. The standard reseller margin is 45% of the selling price. Autonomy considers this is a marketing cost that they need to incur…
Development: Autonomy has then paid an additional sum on top of the cost of goods and marketing cost which they consider to be a

development cost…This amount represents a contribution to EMC's development costs and is being expensed over the period during which Autonomy is expected to benefit. EMC has confirmed that they expect to spend these $'s over the next few quarters and Autonomy is expecting to generate additional benefit through further sales in that period."

(6) A note from Mr Welham reads *"But is this really a marketing cost. Remember IAS 38 has been amended to clarify this point…"*

1286. Behind the scenes at Deloitte, the attitude in September, and up to mid-October 2009, was quite plainly one of considerable scepticism. Mr Welham had also put comments in the margin on Ms Anderson's Memo. These included:

(1) A comment next to the statement in that Memo that the *"standard wholesale price of the goods"* was 55% of the selling price, the question *"How can we evidence this?"*;

(2) Three exclamation marks and the comment *"That is a nice incentive"* next to Ms Anderson's note that Autonomy had *"repaid the reseller margin back to EMC"* and the standard reseller margin was 45% of the selling price;

(3) A comment next to Ms Anderson's note that Autonomy had additionally paid what they were describing as a *"development cost",* which read *"This makes no sense. Why would Autonomy pay for EMC to develop their products, especially they are making no margin on such deals"*; and

(4) Next to Ms Anderson's note that Autonomy accepted they could not capitalise what they asserted were development costs because they could not demonstrate probable future benefit, a comment *"...so we are expecting this to be taken as a cost"*.

1287. On 7 October 2009 (and presumably after the meeting the same day referred to above), Mr Knight sent an email to Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Knights and Mr Welham (and thus to the four finance persons principally involved). In addition to asking for further details of the three deals (with Citi, JPMC and Bloomberg), Deloitte requested documentation, and an explanatory memorandum, to be circulated to the Finance and "wider" audit team and also the Audit Committee, to justify what Autonomy proposed.

1288. Deloitte asked that this explanatory memorandum should include:

(1) *"a clear explanation of the commercial rationale for selling at a loss. This needs to explain the exact nature of the benefit you are getting from this deal at a loss and how it alters your relationship with JPMC, Citi etc and also the relationship with EMC* [which] *will need input from those who negotiated the deal"*;

(2) an explanation of *"your rationale for showing the costs associated with the hardware purchase below the line rather than as a cost of sale"* given that the contracts themselves *"appear to suggest we are buying on and selling equipment as a straight sell through."*

1289. Mr Knight also noted in the email that Mr Hussain had spoken *"of an appliance being developed by EMC which will have Autonomy embedded into it"* and he asked Autonomy to *"please provide the documentation around this"* and if to be accounted for as an intangible asset (as I assume must have been suggested at the meeting), an explanation of how its value could be identified, and how it could meet the IAS 38 definition (see below).

Development of the Strategic Deals Memorandum

1290. The Strategic Deals Memorandum was developed as a response to Deloitte's request for further information as above described. It was itself a development of a document originally file-named *"EMC transactions – Audit memo"*.

1291. The first draft of the *"EMC transactions – Audit memo"* was prepared by Mr Hussain and the finance department on 1 October 2009. They amended it the same day, but not substantially. Its subject was presented as:

> *"a number of additional transactions with EMC whereby Autonomy and EMC sell to existing Autonomy customers product which is subsequently used with Autonomy software.*
>
> *These transactions represent the commencement of a significant new partnership between EMC and Autonomy to develop EMC data cells such that they are readily compatible with Autonomy software and in particular the Digital Safe. The initial transactions have revolved around common customers of both entities but the long term goal is that customers with EMC storage cells will be referred to Autonomy for data storage software needs…*
>
> *…*
>
> *In recognition of the investment that EMC needs to make to ensure marketing focus and further development of the cells, Autonomy has paid a premium to EMC. This premium has two parts:*
>
> 1. *The normal reseller margin (35%) has been returned to EMC; and*
> 2. *An additional premium of 20-25% has been paid.*
>
> *The purpose of the premium is to enable EMC to provide marketing dollars, encourage the EMC salesforce to jointly sell, develop EMC cells and provide joint marketing with Autonomy…*

…

The cost to Autonomy is higher [than the price on the onward sale]… *and comprises three elements: the cost of the goods and the two elements which make up the premium paid for marketing and development costs to be incurred by EMC.*

The standard reseller margin for EMC distribution channels – to which Autonomy is entitled – is 35% so the cost of goods sold represents $23,804,684 (65% of customer selling price)…As previously noted the reseller profit margin of $12,817,907, normally retained by Autonomy, has been passed to EMC and as an additional incentive to deepen and widen the relationship a further $8,789,662 has been paid to EMC."

1292. The Claimants highlighted numerous falsities in that draft, including:

(1) In cross-examination, Dr Lynch accepted that the statement that the hardware sold was for use with Autonomy software was not accurate, at least in some circumstances, since the customer was under no obligation to use the hardware with Autonomy software and although in some instances the hardware would be used with Autonomy software, in others it would not.

(2) As and in the respects previously explained, Autonomy's relationship with EMC was not as described.

(3) The arrangements in relation to the amounts paid by Autonomy to EMC were falsely described.

(4) So too were the statements as to the reasons for the *"premium"*. Autonomy had not agreed to pay EMC a "*premium*" in order for it to take any of the steps suggested in the draft memorandum, and EMC had not agreed to make any "*investment*", nor had there been any discussion between Autonomy and EMC about Autonomy paying a "*premium*" for product development or marketing efforts.

(5) EMC had not agreed with Autonomy to incur any marketing and developments costs; nor had it provided any confirmation that it expected to expend $8.8 million over the period up to 30 June 2010.

1293. On 2 October 2009, Mr Hussain circulated a draft to Dr Lynch's PA for him to consider. Dr Lynch did not seek to correct any of the inaccuracies referred to above. Instead, he suggested a change of structure and a new introduction to extend it to cover and explain transactions with other hardware sellers (such as, at that time, Hitachi). The recast document (file-named *"EMC accounting memo v3"*) was renamed *"Review of strategic transactions with very large organisations – Audit memo (Q2 and Q3 2009)."* It is not clear who drafted

the amendments. Mr Hussain sent a copy to Dr Lynch's PA later the same day (2 October 2009).

1294. That recast document (v3) opened with the following (after which the same basic explanation as previously was given of the elements explaining the total costs):

> *"During the current downturn, to reduce costs, Autonomy has seen a major shift taking place with companies seeking to reduce the number of IT suppliers to 6 or 7 strategic ones. A significant part of these customer's IT base is related to storage and archiving and, as part of this process, <u>Autonomy has been asked to extend its role into becoming strategic suppliers to these companies.</u>*
>
> *…*
> *Autonomy decided to apply a package approach to this demand for strategic selling at these major institutions which may mean that in certain instances Autonomy takes terms which may appear loss making initially but when considering the bigger picture are hugely profitable. Autonomy expects this approach to pay off in the longer term as it becomes a key part of the architecture for companies such as Citi, JPMC and Morgan Stanley…*
> *…*
>
> *<u>Autonomy approached EMC and Hitachi for a strategic partnership to deliver the requirements in Q2</u>… EMC have proven quicker…*
> *…*
>
> *In recognition of the investment that EMC needs to make to ensure marketing focus and further development of the cells, for certain transactions Autonomy has paid a premium to EMC. This premium has two parts – <u>the normal reseller margin (45%) has been returned to EMC plus a premium of 20-25% has been agreed</u>. The purpose of the premium is to enable EMC to provide marketing dollars, encourage the EMC salesforce to jointly sell, develop EMC cells and provide joint marketing with Autonomy."* [My underlining for emphasis]

1295. The underlined phrases were new. The Claimants contended that each was inaccurate or false, for the following reasons:

(1) The first underlined phrase was false: there was no evidence that the hardware reselling strategy was a response to customer demand, and the presentation had previously been that it was an initiative by Autonomy.

(2) The second underlined phrase was inaccurate: (a) it was EMC, at Autonomy's request, that found and delivered up to Autonomy customers wishing to buy hardware; (b) there was no *"strategic partnership"* between Autonomy and EMC; and (c) there was no

"strategic partnership" between Autonomy and Hitachi either: only a *"One-Time Reseller Authorisation Agreement"*.

(3) As to the third underlined passage, the figure of 45% as the *"normal reseller margin"* contrasted with the percentage given as *"the standard reseller margin"* in the previous draft (of 35%). The Claimants submitted that (a) neither percentage was substantiated and (b) the change to the higher figure in the recast memorandum was designed simply to justify an increase in the amount of costs to be allocated to sales and marketing (Autonomy by now suggesting that only $20.1 million would be allocated to COGS, with $25.3 million to sales and marketing.)

1296. A yet further (fourth) version was worked on and sent to Dr Lynch by Mr Hussain in the evening of 2 October 2009. This version (which Mr Hussain had envisaged to be the last) contained two additional passages which the Claimants considered to be worth flagging:

(1) A revised opening sentence of the third paragraph was amended to read "*Autonomy <u>has</u> decided to* apply*, <u>in the case of large ongoing projects</u>, a package approach to this demand for strategic selling to these major institutions*" (new words underlined). The Claimants submitted that this was inaccurate because Autonomy was selling EMC hardware on a freestanding basis and not as any part of an "*ongoing project*" or on a "*package*" basis.

(2) A further sentence was added stating: "*EMC is banking on Autonomy's bid for strategic supplier in* return *for the promotion of their solution*". According to the Claimants, this again was fictitious: EMC had not agreed to promote any "*solution*" nor was EMC "*banking*" on anything.

1297. About half an hour later, Dr Lynch responded *"Very clear"*, having obviously read the re-revised draft.

1298. Another (supposedly) final version of that document marked v5 but still, contrary to Dr Lynch's express direction, subject headed *"EMC accounting memo"*, was circulated by Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Stephan on 4 October 2009. This version was re-circulated at Dr Lynch's insistence under the revised subject-heading *"strategic deals and partnerships memo final"* with a covering email from Mr Hussain stating *"this is the final document for the files"*. However, further drafts followed and the latest draft was sent to Mr Knight and Ms Anderson on 7 October 2009.

1299. Prior to this, according to the Claimants, two things had happened:

(1) Some preliminary discussion had already taken place between Autonomy and Deloitte about the EMC relationship. This appears to be supported by an email that Deloitte's Mr Rob Knight (not to be confused with Mr Richard Knights, also of Deloitte) sent to Mr

Hussain and Mr Chamberlain on 7 October 2009. It is plain from the third paragraph of the email that, by this point, Mr Hussain had told Deloitte that an appliance was "*being developed by EMC which will have Autonomy embedded in it*". But as already stated, this was exaggerated. EMC was plainly not committed and had repeatedly brushed off Autonomy's efforts to obtain some sort of confirmation of intent (see paragraphs 1272 to 1284 above).

(2) Relatedly, steps were being taken to produce further documentation that the Claimants suggested was to be provided to Deloitte to support Autonomy's accounting for these transactions. On 7 October 2009, Mr Hussain sent an email to Ms Julie Dolan (Autonomy Senior Corporate Counsel), copied to Mr Kanter, with the subject "*draft partnership agreement*", in the following terms:

> *"Can you draft up a one pager with the following:*
>
> - *between emc and autn*
>
> - *partnership to work on developing an appliance that combines Autonomy compliance software (digital safe, introspect) with EMC hardware*
> - *timescale 6 months*
> - *both parties to respect confidentiality of information*
> - *neither party has obligation to perform etc*
>
> *need it immediately"*

1300. The Claimants submitted that this was plainly an effort on the part of Mr Hussain (involving also Mr Kanter) to paper the record to support what he had told the auditors, who could be expected to wish to see some sort of written confirmation that EMC had committed to spend the significant profit that it was making from these deals – at Autonomy's expense – on a variety of marketing and development initiatives.

1301. The Claimants further submitted that it was plainly a contrivance given that (a) EMC had not entered into a partnership with Autonomy, and had not agreed to develop an appliance with Autonomy, (b) no such partnership agreement was even under active discussion (as is apparent from Mr Sullivan's email to Mr Scannell of 5 October 2009), (c) at most, this was all something that might be discussed in the future, and had no such urgency as was imported by the last sentence of the email, and (d) there is nothing to suggest that this draft partnership agreement was in fact ever shared with EMC: the Claimants suggested that this was because it was recognised that EMC would not sign even a non-binding statement of intent.

1302. However, there is no evidence either that any such draft Partnership Agreement was prepared; still less that such a draft was shown to Deloitte. Quite what its purpose was remains unclear, and though I accept that the Claimants' explanation of Mr Hussain's sudden call for a draft is probably the most likely one in all the circumstances, he seems to have thought better of it.

1303. No mention was made of it in the recast document, renamed and referred to from now on as the *Strategic Deals Memorandum* or *SDM*, the objective of which continued to be to overcome Deloitte's scepticism as to the justification for (a) reselling at a loss and (b) allocating a substantial proportion of the costs as Sales and Marketing expenses. The drafting process continued in tandem with the faltering and ultimately unsuccessful efforts by Autonomy's finance department (described above) to extract some confirmation from EMC which would satisfy Deloitte on both points and Autonomy's assertion as to the development of an EMC/Autonomy appliance. The document went through a number of drafts, usually being exchanged between Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Sullivan, but not, until the final draft, with Dr Lynch.

1304. Exchanges evidencing the drafting process show, to my mind, (a) Deloitte's focus turning increasingly (as might be expected, since it was an accounting not merely a narrative matter) to the issue of cost allocation and whether there was any justification for a proportion being allocated as a sales and marketing expense or R&D costs; and in consequence (b) Mr Hussain continuing to try (i) to get from EMC (via Mr Sullivan) some details, especially as to the *"standard reseller margin"* to substantiate the figure of 45% given to Deloitte, and (ii) to plump up the description of the *"strategic supplier relationship"* with EMC in such a way as to persuade Deloitte that in surrendering to EMC the difference or *"non-reseller margin"* Autonomy was paying sales and marketing expenses or R&D costs.

1305. An example of the latter was Mr Hussain's email to Mr Chamberlain of 12 October 2009, which was forwarded to Deloitte later that day, and which included the following:

> *"The customer relationships are very hard to achieve and Autonomy has accepted that for its part paying for the marketing, sales and r&d effort of the h/w vendors is of major long term benefit. EMC and Autonomy are developing an appliance for the future … In terms of the accounting we have provided evidence of the reseller margin, so the remainder of the cost is accounted as sales, marketing and r&d – we have allocated to sales and marketing. The non reseller margin monies are being used to incentivise the emc, hds, acs salesforce, provide discounts to the customer, provide funds for the development of the appliances, to hold marketing programs … We would strongly argue that a large proportion of the monies are being used for the development of the appliance which has a significant future value but we have taken a very prudent view and have expensed the total amounts."*

1306. The problem continued to be, however, that there was nothing emanating from EMC to substantiate any of this, which is really what Deloitte had asked for in order to justify the accounting treatment Autonomy's finance department were pressing for. Later that day (12 October 2009), Mr Knight responded to Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain as follows:

> *"Can we get anything from EMC quantifying the hardware amount? Is there a set marketing programme or any further information available which can help us to quantify the marketing element – eg a joint marketing plan or similar? Evidence which helps us understand the marketing side in some more depth would be very helpful.*
>
> *Again on the appliance development, is there anything to further substantiate the amount of development you are funding as opposed to relying on this being a balancing figure."*[199]

1307. Thus, as at 12 October 2009, it was plain that Deloitte's attitude to the proposed accountancy treatment of the hardware sales costs/losses still remained sceptical. The email from Mr Scannell at EMC of 18 September 2009, which Mr Chamberlain had forwarded to Deloitte on 9 October 2009 (see paragraph 1278(5) above) had not changed this substantively. In particular, and as Mr Chamberlain had anticipated, as already recorded above, it was not regarded by Deloitte as *"enough to substantiate a $25m marketing element"*.

1308. Mr Hussain was well aware that Deloitte were, at that stage, unpersuaded. Knowing by now (that is, by 12 October) that evidence of any bilateral agreement would not eventuate, he pressed Mr Sullivan instead to get the basic information necessary to substantiate the figure for the *"standard reseller margin"* which was the foundation of the "residual approach":

    (1) On 12 October 2009, in an email chain between Mr Hussain and Mr Sullivan, copying in Mr Chamberlain, Mr Hussain asked Mr Sullivan to contact EMC:

    > *"Having issues with the auditors.*
    >
    > *Can you get someone to send us an email stating what their standard reseller margin (can be for s/w or appliance sales) is between 40% and 50%?"*

    (2) Mr Sullivan responded on the same day with:

[199] Shortly after receiving that email, Mr Chamberlain asked Mr Hussain whether he could forward on Deloitte's email to Mr Sullivan. The Claimants drew my attention to Mr Hussain's response, in which he stated that Mr Sullivan could be emailed in relation to the first point only, namely obtaining evidence from EMC quantifying the hardware amount. As for the "*other points*" (i.e. Deloitte's requests relating to the asserted marketing programme and appliance development initiative), Mr Hussain refused Mr Chamberlain's request, describing these requests as "*more management stuff*". The Claimants contended that Mr Hussain's refusal must be seen against the backdrop of (a) Mr Sullivan having already made clear to Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain that none of these matters had been discussed with EMC and that EMC had not committed to anything, and (b) Deloitte having expressly suggested that when providing the clearer explanation of the rationale for the strategy they required, Autonomy would need to involve *"those who negotiated the deal"*, i.e. Mr Sullivan. They submitted that the reality is that Mr Hussain did not want Mr Sullivan to see how he (Mr Hussain) had described the arrangements with EMC to Deloitte, because Mr Sullivan would know that the description was untrue. I accept this.

> *"I will try, but it is holiday today in Mass. So it will be tough. Also, I have learned that EMC guards the details of their reseller program closely. I believe the answer is that standard margins are lower than what you indicate, but on a one-off basis, EMC will approve deeper discounts for larger or more strategic accounts similar to those that we did in Q3."*

(3) Later, on 12 October 2009 at 9.38pm, Mr Hussain sent an email to Mr Chamberlain with the subject "strategic appliance sales" stating:

> *"Steve,*
>
> *Auditors already have our draft memo which explains the strategic supplier status we have established with the likes of Citi, jpmc, Morgan Stanley etc by selling both software and hardware for compliance application. In addition I have explained the nature of the relationship with the suppliers emc, hds and acs to the auditors. The driving force for the sales has come from our joint customers. The customer relationships are very hard to achieve and Autonomy has accepted that for its part paying for the marketing, sales and r&d effort of the h/w vendors is of major long term benefit. EMC and Autonomy are developing an appliance for the future and we are engaged in negotiations with HDS for installing our software on their hardware for our data centres.*
>
> *In terms of the accounting we have provided evidence of the reseller margin, so the remainder of the cost is accounted as sales, marketing and r&d-we have allocated to sales and marketing. The non reseller margin monies are being used to incentivise the emc, hds, acs salesforce, provide discounts to the customer, provide funds for the development of the appliances, to hold marketing programs (e.g. we attended a major EMC marketing event for JPMC last week which we would not have without the marketing dollars). We would strongly argue that a large proportion of the monies are being used for the development of the appliance which has significant future value but we have taken a very prudent view and have expensed the total amounts. The sales and marketing spend has resulted in new accounts being developed- for example more deals have been identified already.*
>
> *Please let me know what additional information the auditors need but we are being prudent in our accounting. Add what you need that is relevant otherwise feel free to share this email with Rob and Lee."*

(4) Mr Chamberlain sent the above email on to Mr Knight and Mr Welham of Deloitte within 5 minutes of receiving the email from Mr Hussain under cover of an email stating:

> *"See below from Sushovan.*
>
> *I have provided an analysis of standard reseller rates as well as evidence from EMC regarding the fact that we are paying for hardware and marketing incentive. Below is further explanation of what we are getting for our marketing $'s. There is an argument that some of this is future development costs but we did not feel we met the IAS38 definitions and so have expensed those balances."*

(5) Mr Knight responded shortly thereafter copying in Mr Hussain stating:

> *"Steve/Sushovan,*
>
> *Can we get anything from EMC quantifying the hardware amount?*
>
> *Is there a set marketing programme or any further information which can help us quantify the marketing element-eg a joint marketing plan or similar? Evidence which helps us understand the marketing side in some more depth would be very helpful.*
>
> *Again on the appliance development, is there anything further to substantiate the amount of development you are funding as opposed to relying on this being a balancing figure…"*

(6) On 13 October 2009, at 9.31am, Mr Hussain sent an email to Mr Sullivan (which I have no reason to think was seen by Deloitte) in the following terms:

> *"This is what I'd like from emc*
>
> *Dear Mike*
>
> *I confirm that the standard reseller margin is around 35% but for large strategic deals this can go as high as 45%".*

(7) Mr Hussain then forwarded that email to Dr Lynch at the same time stating:

> *"We have spoken a number of times-this is in essence what he is trying to get."*

(8) Later on 13 October 2009, Mr Hussain informed Dr Lynch that Deloitte may wish to speak to him in relation to the matter. To prepare for this, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch an email (cc'd to Mr Chamberlain) timed at 1.24pm, which largely recited the themes that Mr Hussain had developed in his email of 12 October 2009 to Mr Chamberlain (see

paragraph 1305 above). The Claimants contended that this email was not only *"replete with the same falsehoods"* but also that it was designed to give the impression that Dr Lynch had no knowledge of the strategy whilst nevertheless reminding him of the storyline:

> *"The auditors would like some more colour on the strategic relationships with EMC and HDS in order to understand the accounting for the costs associated with the strategic deals signed with Citi, MS, JPMC and Bloomberg this quarter. I have spoken to the auditors several times and have submitted a paper that described the background to the sales made.*
>
> *The relationship with EMC and HDS are very important to Autonomy. These are companies with multi billion dollar sales and with significant relationships with global companies. The trend with these global companies is to move towards limiting the number of strategic suppliers and Autonomy is positioning itself as the key vendor of choice for compliance and related software and appliances.*
>
> *Based on the success of the last six months, Autonomy is paying EMC and HDS for marketing and also for r&d in developing the next generation integrated appliance. The marketing is very targeted because there are relatively few companies both of us would want to market to. Already we have taken part in a large marketing event organised by EMC for JPMC-all the senior IT and business decision makers were at this event-and Autonomy took part in it. These marketing events are focussed and Autonomy's payment to EMC allows participation.*
>
> *Autonomy is also paying for EMC and Hitachi salesforce to be incentivised and to introduce Autonomy to the key identified accounts. Finally there is expenditure related to the development of the appliance. Already Autonomy uses EMC hardware with compliance software in its data centres and EMC have OEMed Autonomy into a number of its strategic products. The appliance is the next stage in the development of the relationship.*
>
> *So overall the payment to EMC and HDS consists of a refund of the reseller margin (COGS) and the remainder is funding sales and marketing (events, advertising, seminars, commissions and r&d (development of the appliance).*
>
> *The auditors may call you later today to discuss."*

(9) Mr Hussain followed this up some 10 minutes later with the following email (also cc'd to Mr Chamberlain) under subject heading *"reseller margins for h/w"*:

> *"The auditors may ask you a question that reseller margins for h/w are not 45%. Points I have made are:*
>
> 1. *Its not pure hardware but part of an appliance sale*
> 2. *The level of sales were large and strategic so reseller margins would be higher.*
> 3. *The margins for pure h/w are actually much bigger."*

1309. I am not persuaded by the Claimants' suggestion that the purpose of these emails was to give the impression that Dr Lynch had no knowledge of the strategy. In my view, their purpose was to 'prep' Dr Lynch, and update him as to the then position. However, given Dr Lynch's previous involvement, the emails do seem to me to betray Mr Hussain's recognition and concern that the presentation to Deloitte had become so embellished that its detailed recitation was necessary to cover any changes from that previously agreed or understood. Even if its toes were in the truth, its exaggerations had become significant (to the point of falsity), and its full recitation was necessary lest Dr Lynch speak out of turn.

1310. So far as I am aware from the evidence, there was no record of the discussion between Deloitte and Dr Lynch for which it appears Mr Hussain was 'prepping' Dr Lynch; but it seems likely that there was one[200], and that it was the catalyst for a turn in events which to my mind substantially shaped Deloitte's move from scepticism to acceptance.

1311. That turn of events was that, on the evening of 13 October 2009, Mr Knights himself became involved in the re-drafting of the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum",* the document intended to answer questions raised by his own firm.

Mr Knights' own involvement in drafting the Strategic Deals Memorandum

1312. Although he was careful to direct that the final version as sent to Deloitte should come from Autonomy, and when sending it to others in Deloitte on 14 October 2009 described it as *"the client produced memo which I have been through with the CEO and CFO…"* , it was Mr Knights who was responsible for the penultimate (or possibly pre-penultimate) version of the *Strategic Deals Memorandum*, and for instigating the work which resulted in its finalised form the next day.

1313. It is apparent from an email dated 13 October 2009 (timed at 10.11pm) sent from the email address of Claire Knights to Mr Hussain (copied to Mr Chamberlain) with the subject *"draft of your EMC paper-from RK"* and attaching a file entitled *"Autonomy EMC transactions"*. The body of the email set out:

[200] Mr Knights' annotations on the draft he prepared seem to confirm an earlier discussion with Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain: see paragraph 1314 below.

"S&S

"After a glass or two of red wine and a plate ful [sic] of Mrs K medieval pasta I've had a stab at writing the Autonomy paper on EMC-

This needs to come form [sic] you to us.

I need it to square the position on COGS allocation-i've still not seen anything from EMC.

If it is useless please re-write but hopefully it points in the right direction. As per our discussion on Mike L's ideas the paper goes through this analysis - you need to beef it up - the one key area is setting out quite what "sales and marketing" type stuff or further product development stuff EMC might provide you.

Please improve this and together with the EMC email I'm hoping this will move to where it needs to be.

I do need to run through this with Mike as well tomorrow.

As mentioned above this was rattled out pretty quickly and fortified with a few liveners so as a modest bookkeeper it would benefit from the cutting edge of you software gurus….!!

R".

1314. The basic structure of the arguments to get *"where it needs to be"* remained in the final version, but as the above email indicated, there were matters which, when drafting his late-night version, Mr Knights identified as needing further support or elaboration. In particular, there were five important parts relating to the allocation of the hardware costs (which Mr Knights in a later mail described as *"the nub of this"*) left uncompleted in Mr Knights' 13 October evening draft, which needed (and on which Mr Knights expressly invited) explanation and further detail:

(1) After a reference to the potential *"value add opportunities"* that could arise from *"this relationship with EMC"*, a sentence followed which read *"It is possible that if successful it may be possible to move towards an "Intel Inside" type of arrangement with EMC hardware"*: Mr Knights has in square brackets noted: *["Sush this is probably simplistic…are there any other upsides??"].*

(2) After a sentence which read *"The hardware component of this transaction was used to supply our customers [Bloomberg/Citi ???] with equipment for their existing data warehousing and storage functions"*, Mr Knights, has in addition to the words square bracketed above, put in square brackets: *"[Sush/Steve….please improve]"*.

(3) After a sentence which read *"The allocation of $45m between hardware and other marketing services is not established in the purchase order or invoice from EMC",* Mr Knights has in square brackets asked: *"[can you comment here on how the $45 m was arrived at ???]".*

(4) After a sentence which read *"The Autonomy rationale for this transaction was to combine the delivery of hardware to key customers (thereby beginning to develop the recognition of being an application player) together with making an investment in the growing relationship with EMC"*, Mr Knights has noted in square brackets: "*[I need help explaining what EMC and you think you will be getting. Trade sales/customer meetings ??? This is the part that Mike Lynch was alluding to this morning – so can you put some ideas in here]".*

(5) After a reference to *"...the standard reseller margins that [EMC] would expect to see in the sale of its hardware through a third party"* Mr Knights has in brackets noted: *(see appendix XX. Insert confirmation)*; and also he has interpolated the words in square brackets in the following: *"This demonstrates that in normal situations a range of [37.5% - 50%...check I've not seen this yet] is the standard reseller margin".*

1315. It appears that first thing the next morning (14 October 2009), Mr Knights met with Mr Hussain to go through his draft and the questions raised. At 9.30am, Mr Knights emailed Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain (under subject heading "*EMC – can we have a brief chat today?"* and commencing *"Dear Mike"*) recounting that he and Mr Hussain had been going over the Q3 position. Remarking that he had *"a sense that the engine is running a little hot in certain areas of the Q3 numbers"*, he stated that he would appreciate Dr Lynch's thoughts on the EMC transactions and *"the strategic long term importance of the deal"* so as to assist in determining *"the nub of this"* which he identified as being *"how to appropriately reflect the costs of this transaction."*

1316. He identified three potential *"landing areas"*:

> *"-$45 million to be shown as a cost of sale (and therefore shown in the gross margin)*
>
> *-$36m to be shown as a cost of sale (on say assumed net margin of nil) with $9m classified as sales and marketing expense, or*
>
> *-A different split. If however this is arrived at it does need to be fully supported. To date we've only seen a purchase order for the $45m albeit I understand there has been some further correspondence with EMC to determine what was actually included in this transaction."*

1317. The further correspondence that Mr Knights was referring to comprised:

(1) An email dated 13 October 2009 from a Mr Mussulli at EMC (which was in due course appended to the *Strategic Deals Memorandum*) stating (and see also paragraph 1324 above):

> *"Mike, per your request, our typical pricing for entry level partners in our Velocity programme is 36% off Clarion and 56% off on DMX. If you have any additional questions please feel free to call me at the number below…"*[201]

(2) An email from Mr Sullivan with the subject "Re pricing info" with an explanation (which I assume came from Mr Mussulli) explaining the split between Clarion and DMX stating:

> *"Fortunately-this breaks out along customer lines:*
>
> *JPMC =100% DMX*
> *Bloomberg =100% Clarion*
> *CS = 100% DMX*
> *Citi = approx.: 35% Clarion; 65% DMX…"*

1318. Dr Lynch forwarded that email to Mr Hussain, who replied immediately to Dr Lynch by email:

> "…*We have firm evidence of the product cost of the hardware* <u>*so the residual is clearly marketing which we have explained to Richard*</u> *as being for:*
>
> - *Seminars*
> - *Meetings*
> - *Customer events*
> - *Incentives to the emc salesforce to bring us deals*
> - *Development of the appliance"*
>
> [My emphasis]

1319. It appears from Mr Welham's witness statement (which was in this respect not challenged) that at some point in the morning (I assume after the exchanges between Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch) Mr Welham and Mr Knights had a telephone call with Dr Lynch. The purpose of this (as described by Mr Welham) was to hear directly from Dr Lynch, as Autonomy's CEO,

> *"as to the rationale for what was a material transaction for the quarter involving a new strategy, that is reselling third party hardware at a loss in order, we understood, to support a broader marketing objective."*

[201] Clarion (a mid-range product) and DMX (a high-range product often called Symmetric) were different EMC product lines. According to an earlier email from Mr Mussulli to Mr Sullivan, the breakdown as regards the three end-purchasers in the Q3 2009 transactions was: JPMC = 100% DMX; Bloomberg = 100% Clarion; Citi = 35% Clarion, 65% DMX.

Mr Welham went on to say that during the call, Dr Lynch confirmed to them that this was the rationale.

1320. There is no suggestion in Mr Welham's evidence that he or Mr Knights discussed with Dr Lynch the other questions that Mr Knights had raised, which went to the proper accounting treatment and allocation of the costs of the purchase from EMC (as distinct from the narrative of the rationale for the hardware reselling strategy). However, the Claimants put to Dr Lynch in cross examination that Mr Knights (in particular, in an email to colleagues in Deloitte enclosing the final draft of the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* further described in paragraph 1324 below) stated that he had been through the memorandum with the CEO and CFO in relation to hardware sales.

1321. Dr Lynch was asked repeatedly about this; and his invariable response was that he did not think he had done this. He sought to maintain throughout that his discussions with Deloitte were limited to dealing with questions as to *"why we wanted to do this"* and explaining *"what we were trying to achieve"* and that *"his role and recollection in dealing with Mr Knights was to talk about commercial rationale"*.

1322. For reasons which I elaborate in paragraphs 1341 to 1348 below (when assessing what Dr Lynch knew of the decision to account for part of COGS as marketing expenses) I have concluded that it is more likely than not that Dr Lynch had been through all aspects of the memorandum, including the part relating to the costs allocation between COGS and sales and marketing.

1323. After changes had been made in the draft memorandum to fill in the gaps left by Mr Knights in his draft the previous evening, and in particular to reflect the email exchanges with EMC (which were not forwarded to Mr Knights until after he had sent out his 13 October 2009 draft), the final version of the *"Strategic Deals Memorandum"* was sent to Deloitte on 14 October 2009 at 10.19am in an attachment *"Strategic deals memo 14th Oct*" (copied to Mr Hussain) stating *"here is our paper updated for additional items received from EMC last night"*.

1324. Showing my own underlining of passages especially emphasised by the Claimants, the final version of the *Strategic Deals Memorandum*, which also included in its Appendix 1 all the email correspondence from EMC quoted in paragraphs 1278 and 1317 above, stated in full:

> ***"Background***
>
> *As part of the Directors' continual assessment of the strategic opportunities for the business the Executive management recognized an opportunity to develop <u>an application based sales and marketing initiative</u>. The background to this position was the recognition that there was likely to be a continuing rationalization of IT suppliers to major financial institution customers resulting from both the impact of the global credit crisis and the continuing evolution of hardware/software applications to major multi-national organisations.*

In terms of specifics, after a meeting between Guy Chiarello (global CIO) of JPMC and Mike Lynch in Q2, Autonomy was asked to step into a strategic supplier role for JPMC. This has resulted in 2 deals- one in Q2 ($6m) and one in Q3 ($11m) following on from the $10m deal in Q4'08. There have also been a number of senior level conversations between Autonomy and Morgan Stanley again resulting in two sales in Q2 ($7m) and two more in Q3 ($4m) which followed the $18m deal in Q3'08. Similarly significant discussions have taken place between Citi and Autonomy resulting in multiple sales ($22m) in Q2 and Q3 following on from the $20m plus deals in 2008. Discussions have taken place between Sushovan Hussain and John Goaynes (CIO of Deutsche Bank) but a deal has yet to be consummated although a major $10m plus deal is expected in Q4. Finally major companies such as Eli Lilly, Kellog Brown and Root (KBR) and Pfizer have chosen Autonomy as strategic vendor for compliance.

Autonomy has decided to apply, in the case of large ongoing projects, a package approach to this demand for strategic selling at these major institutions. This may mean that, for certain individual components, Autonomy takes terms which may appear less attractive initially but, when considering the bigger picture, are significantly profitable. Autonomy expects this approach to allow it to become a key part of the architecture for companies such as Citi, JPMC, Deutsche Bank, Eli Lilly and Morgan Stanley going forward.

It was noted that IBM, EMC, HP amongst others were increasingly going to market with a combined hardware/software application offerings in the compliance space. For example, EMC acquired a company called Kazeon solely for the purpose of creating an appliance for the compliance space. Another company Clearwell Systems has partnered with EMC and IBM to offer an appliance for the ediscovery space.

Autonomy recognized the importance of being able to demonstrate to substantial multi-national organisations that they could deliver a combined application solution. In order to put together such a solution it was necessary to find an appropriate hardware supplier that could provide:

-Global reach
-Highest quality product reputation
-Industry accepted product recognition
-A management team/culture that was similar to Autonomy and who could recognize the value in a trade association
-Networking and major customer relationships that could be exploited by Autonomy
-The need for reciprocal benefitting from Autonomy's relationships with existing major customer relationships.

Our management team had previously attempted to establish through a working relationship with Hitachi Data Systems on a basis set out above but found that the Hitachi business culture and speed/flexibility was not compatible with Autonomy. Through Mike Sullivan, worldwide head of Zantaz, our executive management team had a strong connection with EMC and we have begun to develop a relationship with this business to enhance the Autonomy presence in the application space. The strategic partnership with EMC has been led by Bill Scannell (head of worldwide sales at EMC) showing the level of importance afforded to the relationship. As part of the strategic relationship EMC extended the Autonomy OEM agreements by 3 years and extended to new products and Autonomy extended the use of EMC products within its data centres. In addition EMC is spending monies developing an appliance with Autonomy software pre loaded and immediately operational on its hardware. Hitachi have been slower but are actively considering replacing Fast with Autonomy as an OEM as part of the strategic relationship and also creating an appliance which Autonomy would host in its data centres for Hitachi and Autonomy customers. EMC have proven quicker in being able to deliver in the timescale required by the customers (Citi, JPMC, Bloomberg) although Hitachi have started (albeit more slowly) with Morgan Stanley.

Additionally, we consider that there will be further value add opportunities that will arise from developing this relationship further with EMC. We are working on the possibility to move toward an "Intel Inside" type of arrangement with EMC hardware. i.e. the creation of appliances whereby archiving, ediscovery and compliance solutions are offered as a one stop solution to key strategic customers. The key element of this strategy is that by investing significant dollars in the relationship today, Autonomy will "own" the customer for many years yielding multi-million dollars of revenue from each customer.

Q3 Transaction

During Q3 Autonomy entered into a $45m purchase of hardware and additional sales and marketing support. The hardware element represents the purchase of hardware that was sold on to the above mentioned customers. The sales and marketing incentive reflects the payment of $'s for the investment in the relationship and future development of cells as well as joint marketing initiatives.

This transaction was appropriately approved and authorized by Executive management in accordance with the standard business procedures. The hardware component of this transaction was used to supply Autonomy's own customers (Citi, JPMC, Morgan Stanley and Bloomberg) with equipment for their existing data warehousing and storage functions. In addition Autonomy has sold software for the applications over the past few quarters to Citi, JPMC and Morgan

Stanley. Our intention is to use this opportunity to aggressively further exploit software opportunities with these types of organisations.

The revenue recognized on these hardware sales in the Q is $36m. The transactions with each of these customers was appropriately structured so that Autonomy acted as principal to these transactions. The key accounting consideration is the recognition of the $45m of costs, negotiated at arms length by the executive management teams of both companies. [sic] with particular reference to the allocation of costs between COGS and Sales and Marketing. The allocation of $45m between product and other marketing services is not established in the purchase order or invoice from EMC and HDS but has been identified from confirmatory documentation from EMC (refer to email 1 in Appendix 1).

The Autonomy rationale for the transaction was to combine the delivery of hardware to key customers (thereby beginning to develop the recognition of being an application player) together with making an investment in the growing relationship with EMC.

Having established the product cost at between 63% and 43% directly from EMC (depending on product type), the residual cost is for sales, marketing and development efforts. There are significant sales and marketing activities and a series of plans including seminars, trade show stands, customer specific events, sponsorships and incentive payments to the EMC salesforce to market the Autonomy sales. The number of customers and type of customer is very targeted and does not require general advertising. In addition, EMC and Autonomy are obtaining joint meetings with customers and the payment by Autonomy to EMC incentivizes the EMC salesforce to obtain these meetings.

To determine the appropriate allocation of costs between COGS and Sales and marketing the executive management have received confirmation from EMC of the standard reseller margins that it would expect to see in the sale of hardware through a third party. This confirmation was received from Mike Mussulli-Regional Partner Manager (refer to email 2 in appendix 1). The standard reseller discount is 36% for Clarion and 57% for DMX. This has been applied to the sales made by Autonomy this quarter and is computed in the attached spreadsheet (EMC summary Q3 2009 Final.xls.)

The table below-extracted from the spreadsheet-shows the relevant cost of sales based on the standard discounts:

Customer	Product	Discount		COGS
Citi (65%)	DMX	57%	5,193,026.18	
Citi	Clarion	36%	4,161,852.82	
Bloomberg	DMX	57%	3,065,520.60	

JPMC	DMX	57%	4,692,922.39	
			17,113,321.98	

On this basis Autonomy has allocated $17.1m cost to COGS- representing the standard cost of hardware- with the remaining costs being split between sales and marketing expense and research and development. The sales and marketing amount represents the return of the Autonomy profit of the transaction which it has been agreed with EMC will be reinvested in the relationship in the manner set out above.

The additional payment relates to payment to EMC for the development of the appliance referred to above. Management did not feel that this payment met the definitions of IAS 38 for capitalization and hence has expensed this payment during the quarter.

Final cost allocation

COGS	*17,113,322*
Sales and marketing incentive	*19,509,269*
R&D costs	*8,860,079*
	45,482,670

Having reviewed this allocation the directors have concluded that this represents the fair and appropriate split of the costs of this transaction with EMC."

1325. The alterations from the version sent by Mr Knights the previous evening (so far as not editorial or stylistic) have echoes of Mr Hussain's earlier briefing note to Dr Lynch (see paragraph 1308 above), and earlier memos he had sent Deloitte, re-ordered and re-formulated to fit into Mr Knights' revised structure.

Did the Strategic Deals Memorandum spin a false narrative?

1326. The Claimants denounced the final version of the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* as *"replete with falsehoods"* (see above). By reference in particular to the underlined passages in the full quotation at paragraph 1324 above, the Claimants submitted that the main thrust of the memorandum was thus to frame Autonomy's supposed relationship with EMC to be all about the delivery of an appliance (or application solution), and that this was false. They encapsulated their case as to this falsity in their written closing submissions as follows:

> "*Whatever semantics Dr Lynch may wish to employ, the basic indisputable fact is that the EMC sales were of pure, standalone hardware – not appliances, not applications, not solutions, and not packages. The sales were of EMC hardware, sold unmodified to customers selected by EMC. Autonomy's sole contribution was to*

> *interpose itself into an existing relationship and to buy the hardware at one price and resell the same hardware to the EMC customer at a lower price."*

1327. In addition, the Claimants submitted that the final version of the memorandum repeated falsities that appeared in the previous versions, giving as an example, the statement in it, for which Dr Lynch had not been able to identify any documentary material in support, that there were:

> "*significant sales and marketing activities and series of plans including seminars, trade show stands, customer specific events, sponsorships and incentive payments to the EMC salesforce to market the Autonomy sales.*"

1328. In his oral closing submissions, Mr Rabinowitz dismissed as *"spin"* the submission in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions, that this:

> *"fairly reflected the twin drivers for the hardware sales, namely (i) the need for strategic package sales to major financial institutions and (ii) the need to find an appropriate hardware supplier with which Autonomy could work on an appliance."*

1329. Mr Rabinowitz submitted that this was not what the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* actually said:

> *"…rather what it said in the memo is that EMC was in fact developing an appliance with Autonomy software loaded on to it and that it was spending money on this. That….was completely untrue, because EMC had not agreed to develop such an appliance and nor was it spending any money doing so."*

1330. As so often in this case, this presentation of falsity is too black and white: even the passages in the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* highlighted by the Claimants which predominantly related to the accounting treatment might be said to have had a toe in the truth, and to be more in the nature of exaggerations rather than falsities. Thus, for example:

(1) Both Mr Sullivan's evidence in the US criminal proceedings and (after much circumlocution) Mr Goodfellow's evidence[202] in cross-examination in these proceedings confirmed that EMC was (in the summer of 2009) refining its hardware product at the request of Autonomy in order to make it more suitable, efficient and cost effective for use with Digital Safe and with a view to Digital Safe being embedded in it. Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that he

[202] Mr Goodfellow was, in my view, a partisan witness and sometimes a rather too strident advocate of the Claimants' case.

too had understood and seen emails confirming *"that they were configuring hardware for us."*

(2) Mr Sullivan expressly confirmed in cross-examination in the US criminal proceedings that he had further discussions later in 2009 about (a) *"building potentially an appliance, so something like potentially shipping a Digital Safe or actually e-Discovery [and] bundling it on their hardware and shipping it…"*; (b) a Digital Safe appliance using EMC hardware and *"split cell technology"*; and also about (c) getting into packaged servers, as well as *"bringing each other into each other's accounts, linking up our sales teams…"*

(3) More generally, Mr Sullivan agreed that Autonomy's relationship with EMC *"was not just hardware reselling, it was more a strategic general discussion of possibilities to work together…"*

(4) He also regarded the purpose of the hardware purchases and the development of the relationship as being to *"drive some revenue to Autonomy",* which the Claimants seized on as showing that the driver was revenue by selling on the hardware at a loss, but which Mr Sullivan clarified in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings meant getting some of EMC's hardware customers to buy Autonomy software.

(5) There were also email exchanges, in June 2009, albeit internally within Autonomy, which referred to telephone calls between Autonomy and EMC which culminated in EMC agreeing to configure and provide hard drives which suited Digital Safe. For example, an email dated 26 June 2009 from Mr Wang to Dr Menell referred to Autonomy having:

> *"had a breakthrough with EMC today in having them agree to sell us essentially hard drives without their fancy software which is irrelevant for Digital Safe…"*

(6) This *"custom configuration"* was also referred to in emails from Mr Sullivan. This inevitably required investment by EMC: as Dr Lynch said when it was suggested that EMC had not agreed to spend money, *"…you can't do it without spending money".*

(7) Mr Hussain's written submissions also drew attention to the evidence in an email chain dated 23 to 25 November 2009 (under the subject heading *"Re: Appliance"*) of further technical discussions between Autonomy and EMC with the view to the harmonisation of EMC hardware with Autonomy products and the development of an Appliance.

(8) These later discussions involved the relevant departments of each company and continued in subsequent emails that year and the next, including an email chain in February 2010 in which Mr McLaughlin of

EMC spoke encouragingly of the integration of Autonomy software into EMC products as a *"win-win"*.

(9) In those circumstances, Mr Hussain made the further point that:

> *"the very worst that could be said of the Strategic Deals Memo is that it suggested that steps were being taken in October which were in fact taken the very next month…it is highly improbable that [Autonomy] manufactured the story of EMC's commitment to an appliance programme to achieve a spurious accounting treatment only for the lie to come true in the next quarter."*

1331. It might also be said that the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* was also in terms aspirational, casting the relationship with EMC as offering future opportunities. For example,

(1) It stated:

"Additionally, we consider that there will be further value add opportunities that will arise from developing this relationship further with EMC. We are working on the possibility to move towards an "Intel Inside" type arrangement with EMC hardware, i.e. the creation of appliances whereby archiving, ediscovery and compliance solutions are offered as a one stop solution to key strategic customers. The key element of this strategy is that by investing significant dollars in the relationship today, Autonomy will "own" the customer for many years yielding multi-million dollars of revenue from each customer."

(2) Similarly, with specific reference to the Q3 2009 transactions themselves, the memorandum emphasised both the rationale of the immediate deal and the future prospects:

"The Autonomy rationale for the transaction was to combine the delivery of hardware to key customers (thereby beginning to develop the recognition of being an application player) together with making an investment in the growing relationship with EMC."

1332. Further, and in contrast to earlier drafts, some of the limitations on the evidence available to substantiate the accounting treatment of part of the costs as marketing expenses, and capitalising a proportion, were expressly recognised (even if the positives may be said to have been accentuated). It was recorded:

(1) As to allocating part of the costs to marketing, that:

"The allocation of $45m between product and other marketing services is not established in the purchase order or invoice from EMC and HDS but has been identified from confirmatory documentation from EMC (refer to email 1 in Appendix 1)" and

(2) As to capitalisation of what Mr Hussain had wanted to characterise as development costs, that:

"Management did not feel that this payment met the definitions of IAS 38 for capitalization and hence has expensed this payment during the quarter."

1333. Nevertheless, all this said, and though (like the hardware reselling strategy itself) some of its constituent elements appeared rational and could be justified, and others were expressly aspirational and not ostensibly false in being so, I have concluded that the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* was, in the round, seriously misleading.

1334. The fundamental realities which the *Strategic Deals Memorandum* disguised were that:

(1) As Mr Hussain acknowledged, Autonomy and EMC never did form a "strategic partnership".

(2) There is no evidence that their discussions for the development of an appliance moved beyond the discussion stage. The *Strategic Deals Memorandum* papered over Autonomy's repeatedly unsuccessful efforts to obtain any actual agreement or commitment from EMC (beyond agreeing to sell its hardware through Autonomy to customers (largely) in common). Mr Sullivan's vague description of the relationship (see paragraph 1330(3) above) as comprising *"more a strategic general discussion of possibilities to work together…"* was really the extent of it, save of course for the purchase and reselling itself.

(3) There was some evidence that EMC spent some money on reconfiguring its hardware to enable easier and more effective use of IDOL software, but no evidence of any definite programme or commitment on the part of EMC.

(4) The extent of the sales, marketing and development activities in fact taking place at the time was (as I find) overstated considerably[203]; and

[203] The only documentary evidence actually produced was an email dated 11 September 2009 from Mr Egan to Dr Lynch, copied to Mr Hussain, with subject heading *"JPMC NPower thing",* recommending $35k level sponsorship of a JPMC evening, and stating that it would be *"an evening honouring Joe [T]ucci* [CEO of EMC] *and all the EMC deal people who are doing this quarter deal will be there. So will all the JPMC upper management of IT…"* Dr Lynch's response was *"ok"*. In fact, the event was not a joint marketing event with EMC, but an event organised by JPMC to which Autonomy agreed to make a charitable 'sponsorship' donation in a relatively small sum which Mr Egan (in the same email) said would be *"deductible at some level"*.

any plans for the future were general in nature and not supported by documentary evidence or any confirmation of commitment by EMC.

(5) The emails from EMC attached to the *Strategic Deals Memorandum* did not confirm the allocation of $45 million between product and other marketing services, nor even did they confirm that the sale price covered both hardware costs and marketing and support: the most EMC was prepared to do was speak in general terms which, especially in the context of previous exchanges (not referred to in or attached to the memorandum), demonstrated a refusal rather than agreement to give any such confirmation.

1335. More particularly, the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* covered up the lack of any evidence such as Deloitte had originally asked for *"to substantiate a $25m marketing element"* (see paragraphs 1278(5) and 1307 above). It advanced and relied on a proxy (the "residual method") to persuade Deloitte to approve an accounting treatment which perpetuated an impression of there being commitments on the part of EMC to spend the 'delta' on marketing for Autonomy and the joint development of an appliance for which management knew there was no substance, and when in fact EMC would have denied any, as Mr Sullivan had explicitly warned in his email of 2 October 2009 (also quoted in paragraph 1278(10) above):

> *"…They will not OK anything that says that what we paid them was for something other than for the product we purchased in this period. Nor will they say the money will be spent on marketing etc."*

1336. In my judgment, the picture presented in the *Strategic Deals Memorandum* of a *"strategic partnership"* with EMC involving joint marketing, joint development of an appliance and cost-sharing of both via a *"premium"* paid by Autonomy was false. EMC never committed to any of that. Had it done so, the document would almost certainly have been unnecessary.

1337. The Defendants argued that these were matters which principally, and certainly most directly, affected the issue of cost allocation, and that it was essentially an accounting judgement as to what part, if any, of the costs could be allocated as marketing expenses. However, for so long as the principal means of achieving the overall purpose could plausibly be presented as being the pursuit and formation of a partnership, Autonomy did not need to show any more measurable result to justify treating the programme as calculated to protect and promote its core software business: a partnership to develop an appliance in which to embed Autonomy software could fairly easily be (and was) presented as both a legitimate objective and a legitimate part of the software business. If Autonomy could only rely on the alleged benefits of the hardware reselling in terms of generating new software business to justify the programme, it was bound sooner rather than later to provide some evidence of real linkage.

1338. Furthermore, whilst the issue of cost allocation would usually be a matter of judgment, I do not accept that it was so in the particular context in which the

allocation of the costs of the hardware purchases and loss-making sales was determined in this case. That allocation was part of the means of concealing the hardware reselling and attenuating, and thereby disguising, its real effect. Unexplained costs would be likely to be queried by analysts; and any material erosion in gross margin would be a concern to the market and undermine the success of the strategy. In this case, what was involved was not a judgement; it was a necessary part of the scheme.

1339. The false presentation was, in my judgment, driven by three complementary imperatives:

(1) One was that the programme should appear to be justified by the prospect or actuality of a partnership for the sale of Autonomy software without the need to show any other measurable benefit.

(2) A second was that the effect on key metrics of losses incurred in the hardware reselling strategy should be attenuated.

(3) The third was to hide or disguise the programme so as not to expose it to enquiry and/or undermine its utility as a surreptitious means of maintaining the appearance of continuing organic growth by including hardware revenues in forecasts and drawing on them as and when required.

1340. In my judgment, this was not honest judgment but dishonest expedient.

Dr Lynch's knowledge of falsity of the Strategic Deals Memorandum

1341. As will already be apparent, Dr Lynch did not dispute that he was aware and indeed involved in the presentation of the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy and EMC's participation in it. For the reasons given above, I have concluded that that presentation was misleading. But even if I am wrong about that there can be no real doubt that the presentation of the nature of the arrangement with EMC was misleading in any event.

1342. Dr Lynch did dispute that he was involved in or aware of the efforts in exchanges with EMC to find some written acknowledgement to justify the allocation of a large proportion of the costs to marketing expenses; and he insisted that he was not aware of any impropriety in this context. As far as he was concerned, he told me, *"what Autonomy was trying to do was get the right accounting…the accounting…reflecting the reality of the situation"* (as quoted previously in paragraph 1277 above). He added, when further pressed in cross-examination (with particular reference to the emails sent to EMC):

> *"What is happening at this time – and I'm not involved but I've seen the emails – is that a combination of Mr Chamberlain, Mr Sullivan, EMC and ultimately Deloitte are trying to get the right answer. It is a complex situation and lots of people are involved in that and they work*

> *through it and they ultimately come up with an answer that they're all agreed on and that's what I'm relying on when I go forward."*

1343. He emphasised also that, as CEO, he could not be involved in the details of this sort of matter. He relied on what he was told by his lieutenants (hence needing prepping by Mr Hussain before meeting Deloitte about the *Strategic Deals Memorandum*, for example). He said this in cross-examination:

> *"So just to keep some perspective here, I'm running a FTSE 100, I spend most of my time not dealing with this sort of thing. I'm not on top of it. I have a finance department which does all of this that has very good people in it…"*

1344. Some support for Dr Lynch's oral evidence that though involved in the explanation of the genesis and rationale of the programme he was not involved in the issue as to the accounting allocation of its costs ("the COGS issue"), is provided by the emails from Mr Hussain prepping Dr Lynch as referred to in paragraph 1308 above. Thus, as recorded in paragraph 1318 above when Mr Knights emailed Dr Lynch asking to discuss the issue as to allocation of the costs of the EMC purchases and resales on 14 October 2009, Dr Lynch immediately forwarded the email to Mr Hussain, which prompted Mr Hussain's second email of 14 October 2009 (referred to in paragraph 1318 above). That email was plainly intended feed Dr Lynch with what to say. As to its content, Dr Lynch was pressed in cross-examination to accept that he knew it was *"pure fiction"*; he rejected this and told me:

> *"A. Well, at this time I am relying on emails and information from other people, but, no, I understand seminars, meetings and customer events were happening. The incentives to the sales force is sort of self-evident. And EMC – I'd seen emails that EMC confirmed that they were configuring hardware for us. So I'm reasonably confident that that is accurate.*
>
> *Q. Had you attended any of these seminars, meetings, customer events?*
>
> *A. No, they were in the US, because, if you remember, the arrangement was for New York; I'm based in Cambridge in the UK."*

1345. Nevertheless, though Dr Lynch's answers were persuasively delivered, I have concluded that I cannot accept that Dr Lynch was not involved in the discussions relating to the COGS issue. It seems to me that the issue as to the rationale of the programme and the issue of the accounting treatment of its costs were and are intertwined, despite Dr Lynch's efforts to cordon off the one from the other.

1346. I have reached this conclusion principally on the following grounds:

(1) Although undoubtedly Dr Lynch was busy, and he was not an accountant, he had time and accounting awareness enough to know that the loss-making hardware reselling strategy had a serious potential disadvantage in terms of its adverse effect on Autonomy's 'bottom line', which if it could properly be attenuated should be so.

(2) As, on his own evidence, the hardware reselling strategy was his concept, I think it unlikely that he would not have been interested in its accounting treatment, even if its rationale was as he depicted: and if the rationale was a pretext, then all the more reason to be engaged to disguise it as much as possible.

(3) Furthermore, it is not disputed that, unless advised that it was a requirement to disclose, Dr Lynch was very keen to ensure that the hardware reselling strategy was not disclosed: and it was always obvious that material increases in COGS would be likely to lead to inquiry which would in turn reveal the nature and extent of the programme. This was a concern which it seems to me would have been likely to have prompted his interest and involvement.

(4) Mr Knights seems to have thought that Dr Lynch was involved in devising ways to deal with the COGS issue: it will be recalled that in his email (using his wife's email address) of 13 October 2009 to Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain (see paragraph 1313 above) Mr Knights had referred to *"Mike L's ideas"* in relation to the *"key area"* of *"quite what 'sales and marketing' type of stuff or further development stuff EMC might provide you."*

(5) Albeit not quite contemporaneous, there is documentary evidence, in the form of an email dated 18 July 2010 from Mr Hussain to the Deloitte audit team (copied to Mr Chamberlain), recording Dr Lynch's *"strong views"* on the issue of COGS in the context of hardware sales; and although the evidence is from a later date, there is no reason to suppose that these strong views only crystallised in 2010, rather than when first relevant.

(6) More generally, the conclusion seems to me to follow from my conclusion that the allocation of costs to *'Sales and Marketing expenses'* was all part of the strategy; and Dr Lynch was well aware of that.

1347. My conclusion has been reinforced by my other conclusion that Dr Lynch was a knowing party to the exaggeration of the amounts properly referable to the launch and marketing of SPE, which were treated and accounted for as sales and marketing expenses as another stratagem to cover up the substantial costs in Q3 2009 of the hardware reselling strategy.

1348. In summary, therefore, I have concluded and find that both Defendants were involved, not only in elaborating the extent of the relationship with EMC, but also more particularly in the false presentation to Deloitte of the COGS issue

in order to attenuate (by moving part of COGS to sales and marketing) the adverse effect on Autonomy's gross profit and gross margin figures resulting from a very considerable expansion of the hardware reselling strategy.

Assessment of the effect of the "Strategic Deals Memorandum"

1349. The question then is how Mr Knights came not only to accept, but also to help present, the accounting treatment based on the "residual approach" (see paragraph 1280 above), and later to require no clear disclosure.

1350. This is not easy to fathom, given that it seems to me to be clear that Mr Knight, Mr Knights and Mr Welham all fairly quickly identified that Mr Hussain and the finance department had exaggerated the extent of Autonomy's relationship with EMC. That is evident from Mr Knight's email of 9 October 2009 to Mr Knights and Mr Welham after receipt of what, by then, was the best that Autonomy appeared to be able to offer by way of substantiation, which was EMC's email of 18 September 2009 (and see paragraphs 1278 and 1282 above)[204]. Further, of course, the fact that neither Mr Knights nor any other person who was in the Deloitte audit team apart from Mr Welham, gave evidence in these proceedings, has made the task of unravelling why Mr Knights, and subsequently Mr Mercer, accepted the unacceptable even more difficult.

1351. There may have been a combination of factors, including:

(1) Until tested sceptically against email exchanges demonstrating a very different objective, the overall rationale of the hardware reselling strategy appeared broadly credible. Except that he saw and considered the final emails between Autonomy and EMC as referred to above, there is no evidence that Mr Knights saw the emails from Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch focused entirely on *"revenue revenue revenue" (*see, for example, paragraphs 906 to 911 above) or other internal Autonomy emails conveying the same focus. He was thus not confronted with material to excite further scepticism; and it seems plain that his mindset was always to seek to assist his client to overcome apparent inconsistencies, rather than sceptically to test the reasons for them. That mindset appears to have distracted him from a more sceptical review of the true reasons for the resort to the "residual approach"[205] and management's disproportionate determination (relative to the comparatively small amount of costs to which the accounting treatment related) to mitigate the adverse effect of the programme and reduce its visibility.

(2) The process of collaborative engagement with Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain in working up a document which they were to present as their own caused him to become parti pris. Instead of testing Deloitte's

[204] *"This looks like a great program and we are excited to participate in it".*

[205] which also had the effect of minimising the importance of justifying the various suggested categories of alleged allocation of the 'premium'.

objectives, Mr Knights had become too close to question them: in his own word, "wordsmithing" replaced sceptical review. Caught up in presenting on Autonomy's behalf the narrative of the overall purpose of the programme, he failed to assess objectively the significance of the continuing lack of any of the evidence of commitment on the part of EMC which his own audit team had required, and of Autonomy's resort to a proxy in the form of the residual approach. He convinced himself of what he had helped to write, and his auditing team followed suit.

(3) Last, but I suspect not least, it seems more than likely that Mr Knights felt considerable pressure to retain for Deloitte's office in Cambridge (of which he was head and which seems to have committed most of its resources to this one client) a valuable account in respect of a FTSE 100 company which was a leading light in a high-profile sector.

1352. Whatever the reason, ultimately the more important point for the purposes of this case is the fact of his involvement, and the effect of it. In my judgment, there can be no real doubt that Mr Knights ceased to be a sceptical auditor and became an inventive wordsmith, who was even prepared to disguise his own contribution, which included using (a) his wife's email to send his draft; (b) emphasising in his covering email attaching it the need for it *"to come from you to us";* and (c) artfully describing the final version as *"the client produced memo"* when sending it to the Reviewers the next day.

1353. Although (as will be seen) in future quarters Deloitte would only accept a lower proportion of the costs of the programme being accounted for as Sales and Marketing expenses, Mr Knights' contribution to and support for the narrative in the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* had an important influence in overcoming Deloitte's original scepticism, and in leading them to treat the issue of cost allocation as purely one of accounting judgment, rather than as one which invited questions as to the use and propriety of the programme in the manner in which it came to be implemented.

1354. More generally, the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"*, reinforced by Mr Hussain's Quarterly Notes (see below), in substance shaped Deloitte's view of the hardware reselling strategy from then on until at least Q2 2010 when the arrival of Mr Mercer and the growing obviousness that the hardware sales had become *"business as usual"* prompted Autonomy to provide the further support of the *Linkage Analysis.*

1355. Mr Knights' conversion and support seems to me likely also to have had some influence on the attitude of the reviewing agencies ("the Reviewers") whose involvement was stipulated by Deloitte as part of its internal oversight and control of complex audits. The Reviewers were its Professional Standards Reviewer ("PSR", at that time in Q3 2009, Ms Lisa Bennett)[206], Engagement Quality Assurance Review ("EQAR", at that time, in 2009, Mr Stuart

[206] According to Mr Welham's witness statement, the PSR for H1 2009 was Ms Joanna Hacking, but Ms Bennett was the PSR for the remainder of 2009. The PSR in Q1 2010 was Ms Lisanne Fitzgerald; during the period Q2 2010 to Q2 2011 it was Mr Garrie Lumb.

Henderson[207]), and Independent Review Partner ("IRP", in 2009 for Autonomy, Mr Robertson[208]). Deloitte's final approval depended on their sign off.

1356. Again, the determination of what persuaded them is compounded by the fact that like Mr Knights, none of the Reviewers gave evidence, and there seem to me to be gaps in the documentary evidence provided (despite its immensity). However, what is apparent is that:

(1) Mr Knights gave them very limited time for review and response: after sending them the final version at 11:40 on 14 October 2009 he not only chased for a response that day but then chased again at 13:54.

(2) Although Mr Knights stated that he was happy to discuss with each of them individually, or collectively and Mr Welham's evidence was that their practice was to perform a collective process together, there is no record of any such collective decision, perhaps because of time constraints.

(3) There was a one-line email (timed at 14:23 on 14 October 2009 and apparently in response to Mr Knights' chaser at 13:54) from the then PSR, Ms Bennett, stating "I am OK with it" (which supports the inference that there was no collective process).

(4) There is no record (or at least I have no record of having been shown one, and I have found none in the Trial Bundle), of any written response from the EQAR or the IRP.

(5) It seems that by 16:30 Mr Knights had received their response(s), since he emailed Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain at that time on 14 October 2009 stating that Deloitte had considered the *"cost analysis on the transactions we have been discussing"* and were *"satisfied that your paper appropriately sets out the accounting",* but subject to three caveats (which, since Mr Knights had not previously mentioned them, I assume reflected further consideration with the EQAR and/or the IRP).

1357. Again, the more important matter than trying to discern in their absence what persuaded them is that the Reviewers signed off on the basis of the three caveats and a further cautionary note that the board should consider what further disclosure might be appropriate.

1358. The caveats appear to me to signify that the approval was somewhat hesitant, and that the Reviewers and Deloitte would require more convincing detail about the allocation of costs in future transactions. Their central or common theme was to treat the Q3 transactions as something of a one-off and to leave

[207] According to Mr Welham's witness statement, in Q1 2010, the EQAR was Mr Chris Brough, in H1 2010 and Q3 2010, Mr Chris Robertson, and thereafter until Q2 2011 Mr Jonathan Dodsworth.
[208] According to Mr Welham's witness statement, Mr Brough was the IRP for the Q1 to Q3 2010 reviews, followed by Mr Stuart Barnett until Q2 2011.

open the prospect of more rigorous review in the event of further hardware deals. In detail they were that:

(1) The split between COGS and marketing expenses had been considered for this *"initial transaction"* and *"would not necessarily recur in subsequent deals"*;

(2) The allocation for further transactions *"would need to be assessed on its own merits"*;

(3) The expectation would be that any future deals *"would not necessarily include the same level of marketing costs"* and

> *"importantly it will be necessary to have a more itemised breakdown of component parts of any purchase between Hardware and other items."*

1359. Mr Knights set out these caveats when reporting back to Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain by email timed at 16:31 the same day (14 October 2009). He ended the email with the following, which I take also to have reflected part of the basis on which the Reviewers acquiesced:

> *"One additional point to be considered at the year end will be whether under IFRS you could be required to disclose hardware sales- particularly if they became material to the numbers. Whilst this is a year end matter, if disclosure did become necessary and in the absence of any previous indication through the year, it would be the first time that this information would be made available to your investor and analyst community. This might be worthy of some consideration at Q3?"*

The issue of disclosure in Q3 2009

1360. That leads on to the issue of disclosure, and the way that Mr Knights was persuaded, perhaps against his initial and better judgement, to agree to minimal disclosure and only tinkering changes in the Q3 2009 Accounts. This, like the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum",* seems to me to have set a pattern, with Deloitte repeatedly raising the issue of further disclosure but then either deferring to management as being a matter of commercial judgement, or settling for bland or cryptic sentences which were only decipherable by those in the know already and fell a very long way short of the transparency about the *"quantum and nature of these sales"* which Deloitte's Report has suggested should be *"considered"* for Q3 2009 and had warned could well be *"necessary"* in the full or half-year accounts.

1361. Although I have set out previously in chronological sequence what was said about hardware in the Yearly and Quarterly Reports throughout the Relevant Period (see paragraphs 1187 to 1261 above), an elaboration of the way

Deloitte's initial concerns were dealt with in Q3 2009 seems to me to illustrate how Deloitte was led to agree to so little disclosure then and thereafter. Thus:

(1) When provided by Mr Kanter (on 15 October 2009) with his suggestion for the way the new *Supplemental Metrics* might be presented[209], Mr Knights' response expressed concerns including the absence of anything to show the hardware sales: he put this in the form of a question *"...I'm not sure where hardware sales would sit in your table?"*. But he softened his other concerns with a final sentence:

> *"It might be that with some word smithing it can be achieved."*

(2) He amplified his concerns in red type on a revised draft "Updated Press Release" which he circulated within Deloitte (to Messrs Welham and Knight and Ms Anderson) on 15 October 2009 which included the following:

   i. A comment next to a bullet point in the draft highlighting *"Strong organic IDOL growth of 15%"* which read *"check this calculation excludes impact of hardware sales"*;

   ii. Comments next to a description of revenues for the quarter having *"totalled $191.6 million, up 51% from $127.1 million for the third quarter of 2008 due to strong organic growth"* which (a) queried whether *"due to"* should be amended to *"including"* and (b) stated *"but hardware sales are not organic"*.

(3) In a follow-up email to Mr Hussain on 16 October 2009, setting out Deloitte's role and responsibility as regards the "front-end of the accounts",[210] Mr Knights noted at the end (the underlining is mine):

> *"Can we have a detailed breakdown on how the figures are compiled. <u>My biggest concern will be that hardware sales were neither IDOL based or organic !!</u>*
>
> *Let's see the analysis and work out how to sensibly disclose."*

[209] Mr Kanter produced a mock-up of a table of revenue sources which did not in any way differentiate software revenue from hardware sales as such. Instead, and in contrast to a proposed differentiation from *"Interwoven-related revenues"*, it seemed to envisage hardware revenues being lumped into "*Core Autonomy IDOL revenues"* and included in the calculation a figure to be given for *"IDOL Organic Growth"*.

[210] Which he explained as follows:

> *"In principle if these are to be included in the press release Deloitte have a responsibility to ensure that they are not inconsistent with our understanding of the numbers.*
>
> *We do however need to ensure that the information is consistent with the approach applied in putting together the financial statements and does not invalidate the segmental or revenue analysis arguments that have previously been put forward."*

(4) Yet none of these concerns was reflected in an updated draft press release sent to the Audit Committee prior to its meeting the next day (16 October 2009). That draft, which Mr Welham also sent to Mr Robertson and Mr Henderson (cc Ms Anderson) to consider in time before anticipated release on 19/20 October, set out under *"Supplemental Metrics (not reviewed)"* the following, none of which gave any hint that the source of a proportion of the revenue was hardware sales:

> *"**Supplemental Metrics (not reviewed)***
> *Autonomy is supplying supplemental metrics to assist in the understanding and analysis of Autonomy's business*
>
> *Software sales including hosted and OEM……………$125m*
> *Service and support revenues…………….……………$9m*
> *Deferred revenue release (primarily maintenance).. .$58m*
> *IDOL OEM derived revenues………………………….$24m*
> *IDOL Organic Growth………………………………….$15%"*

(5) In response, Mr Henderson (in an email to both Mr Welham and Mr Knights and copied to Mr Robertson, sent some 20 minutes after Mr Welham's email) did not focus on the *Supplemental Metrics* but expressed considerable and more general disquiet:

> *"As anticipated I am deeply concerned by the total lack of reference to the fact that nearly 20% of their Q3 revenues representing a major strategic change in the nature of their business attracts no comment….They don't even seem to mention the customers to whom these highly material hardware sales have been made. I will take a fair amount of convincing this is appropriate."*

(6) Given the first phrase, it seems likely that Mr Henderson had voiced this concern earlier, or at any rate it would not have come as a surprise. Mr Knights replied immediately to say that the matter would be discussed at the Audit Committee Meeting later, and he would then revert. Mr Knights followed up again some 30 minutes later in an email to Mr Henderson, Mr Robertson and Mr Welham, it seems likely after a discussion with Dr Lynch or perhaps Mr Hussain and/or Mr Chamberlain, stating:

> *"Wording being now put into Mike's quote….*
>
> *during the quarter we saw some of our customers promote Autonomy to strategic supplier status. This led them to adopt a broader set of our solutions in a number of significant deals.*
>
> *We should remember that the 36 is split into 3 deals of around 9-11m I think - Moving the battle ship [sic] slowly-this is bound to go round and change a few times…"*

(7) As Mr Knight pointed out after Mr Knights had forwarded the same email to him, a problem with the proposed wording was that it *"talks about the strategic supplier status but doesn't talk about the nature of the deals. It could be read as they have bought more IDOL".* Mr Knight then suggested that:

> *"If they do not want to talk about hardware then the solution could be to get them to remove comments about organic growth and idol growth."*

(8) Later that day (at 17:03), Mr Robertson also replied by email to Messrs Welham, Henderson and Knights (cc Ms Anderson) making two points:

i. With reference to the proposed statement in the gross margin section that *"The unexpected demand for our new product programme had a small depressing effect on gross margins",* he asked, *"Do we think this explains things sufficiently?"* and suggested that the drop in margin was considerable and not done justice by the description;

ii. In the same connection, he also posed the question at the heart of things:

> *"What's the sensitivity about being more transparent on this score? If it's a strong strategic move for them, why wouldn't they want to explain this? I'd have thought the analysts will be bound to ask a lot of questions about it given the results look quite different this Q (usual big increase in revenue but comparatively small increase in profit)";*

iii. With reference to the statement in the draft *"We do not expect this to be a trend"*, he made the point that he had the impression *"from our various conversations over the last few days that they were planning on doing more of this"* and posed the question also at the heart of things: *"Can they really make this statement?"*

iv. He ended with the comment that he would be interested to hear how the discussions at the Audit Committee *"have moved on the transparency around these transactions."*

1362. These comments went to the root of the issues which have arisen since. Yet apart from prompting further apparently inconclusive discussion at the Audit Committee about the description *"IDOL organic growth"* (which was not minuted) and the debate I have mentioned previously as to how that might be

altered, there is nothing in the evidence before me to suggest that the full discussion about the need and rationale for greater transparency ever took place.

1363. It seems that the issue of transparency became subsumed, and indeed lost, in a discussion (without any evident further involvement of Deloitte's review partners) about the *Supplemental Metrics* and the description of organic growth.

(1) The nature of the discussion is illustrated by an email from Mr Chamberlain to Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter on 16 October 2009 stating that:

> *"The key issue with the auditors seems to be around the use of the word IDOL.*
>
> *Strong organic growth and strong organic IDOL growth - to them the former includes hardware sales and the latter does not Product including hosted and OEM and IDOL product including hosted and OEM-same point*
> *IDOL organic growth and organic growth*
>
> *Whilst we may find a way to get there on organic growth through allocations they are going to really struggle with including hardware within the description of IDOL product or IDOL organic growth.*
>
> *Battle lines have been drawn."*

(2) The "battle" was not fierce. Its upshot was that (a) Autonomy (with the intervention of Dr Lynch) agreed to remove the prefix *"IDOL"* when describing the various categories of revenue in the "*Supplemental Metrics"* (so that, for example, *"IDOL Organic growth"* became *"Organic growth"*) and (b) after further exchanges, Autonomy overcame Deloitte's concerns about including hardware revenues within *"Organic growth"* with the argument that all revenue growth should be treated as organic unless its source was an acquisition.

(3) Mr Welham stated in his witness statement (without further elaboration) that:

> *"Ultimately, we agreed that growth in hardware sales was organic, in that it did not derive from the acquisition by Autonomy of a pre-existing business."*

(4) In the final tie-through version of the Q3 press release checked by Deloitte on 19 October 2009 both the statement *"Strong organic growth of 15%"* and the statement *"Revenues for the third quarter of 2009 totalled $191.6 million, up 51% from $127.1 million for the third*

quarter of 2008 including strong organic growth" which Mr Knights had expressed concerns about in his email of 16 October 2009 (see paragraph 1361 above) were ticked off by Deloitte.

(5) As previously noted in paragraph 1259(2)(i) above, and apparently heedless of Mr Robertson's query as quoted in paragraph 1361(8)(iii) above, in the final version of the Q3 2009 Report an erosion in gross margin was ascribed to unexpected demand for SPE and Quick Start, which was not expected to be *"a trend"* and did not mention the hardware reselling strategy, which was in fact the principal drag on gross margins and was expected to be a "trend"; and the only reference which the initiated might have recognised related to hardware was the cryptic sentence also already quoted that:

> *"During the quarter we saw some of our large customers promote Autonomy to strategic supplier status. This has led them to adopt a broader set of our solutions in a number of significant deals."*

(6) There is no sign of the concerns expressed by Mr Henderson and Mr Robertson having been addressed; as far as the evidence before me goes, they appear to have sunk without trace.

(7) Thus, Autonomy's management had got its way with Deloitte, overcoming Mr Knights' earlier concerns and the Reviewers' objections, for the price of a false explanation, a cryptic sentence and the removal of the prefix *"IDOL"* before the description of the categories of revenue. (Even that retreat was soon made good: in subsequent quarters and half and full year accounts, the prefix was restored.)

1364. As my earlier chronological review of the Annual and Quarterly Reports (see paragraphs 1187 to 1261 above) demonstrates, none contained any further disclosure of the hardware reselling strategy, except (and as only the initiated could have surmised) (a) an even more cryptic explanation for an erosion in gross margins in Q2 2010 as being *"due largely to changes in the sales mix"* and (b) a very opaque reference in Q4 2010 to "*package solutions, constructed of services, hardware and software, such as Arcpliance"*.

Quarterly Notes prepared by Mr Hussain/Mr Chamberlain

1365. Although Dr Lynch had been insistent that what became the *Strategic Deals Memorandum* should not be restricted to justifying the programme with EMC, its principal focus had been on the Autonomy/EMC relationship as at Q3 2009. As the hardware reselling strategy continued in subsequent quarters its results and justification required confirmation and refreshment. The Claimants contended that the false and misleading description of the hardware reselling strategy in the *Strategic Deals Memorandum* was perpetuated, reinforced and as necessary modified throughout the Relevant Period in Quarterly Notes

(which were marked as having been *"Prepared by: Sushovan Hussain, Steve Chamberlain"*).

1366. These *"Quarterly Notes"* contained an analysis of the quarter's results which were circulated to the Audit Committee (and also to Deloitte), usually a day before their quarterly meeting, as part of the pack of material which included (a) such a memorandum (b) Deloitte's report on its review of the financial statements and (c) a draft press release for the quarter.

1367. The Claimants alleged that in these Quarterly Notes, Mr Hussain consistently misled Deloitte and the Audit Committee about the nature of Autonomy's relationships with its hardware suppliers, and the purpose and extent of the hardware reselling strategy; and that Dr Lynch, who in every quarter was sent a draft in advance, knew that Deloitte and the Audit Committee were being misled in this way, but said nothing.

1368. The Claimants alleged further that the fact that Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch perceived that they needed to mislead the Audit Committee and Deloitte in this way gives rise to the inference that they knew that (a) the accounting description and treatment of the hardware sales they had adopted could not be justified except on the basis of a false description of their context, nature and extent and (b) if the Audit Committee and/or Deloitte had been told the truth, they would have objected to the hardware reselling strategy and/or the accounting treatment of its costs, and required its disclosure to the market.

1369. In other words, the burden of the Claimants' case in this regard is that the Defendants' resort to the misrepresentation to Deloitte and the Audit Committee of the extent of the hardware sales and the nature of Autonomy's relationships with hardware suppliers and the hardware reselling strategy (a) betrays the real purpose and impropriety of the sales and the programme, (b) exposes as futile their claim to have relied on the approval of their published information by Deloitte and the Audit Committee, and (c) damns conclusively the Defendants' relentless efforts to ensure that the extent of the sales and the nature of the programme were never disclosed to the market.

1370. The Claimants' written closing submissions analysed in some detail both Mr Hussain's Quarterly Notes (referred to in the Claimants' RRAPoC as *"memoranda"*), and Deloitte's own quarterly reports which were likewise provided to the Audit Committee every quarter. They also cross-examined Dr Lynch on these documents, which he acknowledged he would usually review cursorily but not consider in detail. He made the point also that he did not attend meetings of the Audit Committee; and could not provide any evidence of any discussions.

1371. It will be necessary to consider various of Mr Hussain's Quarterly Notes and Deloitte's Quarterly Reviews in some detail. But as an overview, (a) the Quarterly Notes served to reinforce, elaborate and, as circumstances changed, refresh what had been said in the *Strategic Deals Memorandum* (b) Deloitte's own Reviews appear to have borrowed in relevant part from the Quarterly Notes but tended to be more restrained in their description of the purpose and

effect of the hardware sales and (c) the Audit Committee were largely unquestioning of what they were told, and content to rely on Deloitte.

1372. As to (c), the evidence showed that the Audit Committee, having satisfied themselves that the segmental analysis confirmed that Autonomy had only one operating segment, being its IDOL-based software business, would have been troubled only if the hardware sales appeared to be of such nature, extent and materiality as to undermine that conclusion and amount to a separate business.

1373. As it was, that never became a real concern, and a flavour of their attitude emerges from the evidence of Mr Robert Webb, who was not a member of the Audit Committee but as Non-Executive Chairman of Autonomy from May 2009 until its acquisition by HP in 2011, occasionally attended its meetings. Although he could not recall the context, and it may not have been at the Audit Committee meeting to consider the Q3 2009 Reports itself[211], Mr Webb related in his witness statement, on which he was not cross-examined, that:

> *"I do not recall the discussions around the disclosure of hardware being particularly heated. There was a discussion and the conclusion was to account for hardware sales in whatever way Deloitte said the company was to account for it."*

How the hardware reselling strategy was presented in the Quarterly Notes

1374. The focus of the Quarterly Notes and Quarterly Reviews in dealing with the hardware reselling strategy altered over time. In my view, the following themes and changes of emphasis emerge:

(1) In Q3 2009, the embellishment of the depiction in the *Strategic Deals Memorandum* of the relationship between Autonomy and EMC, principally with a view to justifying the accounting treatment of the costs of the hardware sales in Q3 2009.

(2) From Q3 2010, and especially from Q1 2010 after EMC had withdrawn, the recasting of the justification of the hardware reselling strategy towards its "customer-facing" aspects, and *"strategic package sales"* to meet all their IT needs, with a view to justifying the treatment of hardware sales as an integral part of the software business and continuing to justify accounting for part of the costs of the sales as sales and marketing expenses.

[211] His attendance is not recorded in the Minutes for the Audit Committee meeting to consider the Q3 results held on 16 October 2009. The three members of the Committee were present. Messrs Hussain, Kanter (Secretary), and Chamberlain of Autonomy, and Messrs Knights, Knight, Welham and Ferguson of Deloitte were recorded as having been in attendance.

(3) The introduction in Q2 2010 of the notion that such *"strategic package sales"* had already been *"flagged"* to the market, in response to increasing concern from Deloitte about the absence of disclosure, with a view to deflecting any requirement for further disclosure.

(4) In tandem with the *Linkage Analysis,* increasing focus from Q2 2010 onwards on the line that hardware sales had generated significant new software business for Autonomy, and that there was a *"strong linkage"* between hardware sales and *"highly profitable software sales"*, with a view to addressing increasing concern on the part of Deloitte that the hardware reselling strategy had become *"business as usual".*

(5) The disguise of the various stratagems which Autonomy came to adopt to reduce the effect of loss-making sales on accounting metrics, and thereby to support efforts to prevent discovery and disclosure of the extent and nature of the hardware reselling strategy.

1375. These themes are elaborated and illustrated below by reference to individual Quarterly Notes and Reviews.

Mr Hussain's Q3 2009 Quarterly Note

1376. The final version of Mr Hussain's Quarterly Note for Q3 2009 was sent by Mr Kanter to each of the members of the Audit Committee (namely, at that time, Mr Richard Perle, Mr John McMonigall and Mr Barry Ariko) late in the evening (9:54 pm) on 15 October 2009 before the meeting next day. Those to whom Mr Hussain's Quarterly Note was circulated included Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain. (As I describe below an earlier draft, in a different form, was sent to Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain by Mr Chamberlain at 16:23 on the evening of 14 October 2009.)

1377. As became characteristic, Mr Hussain's Q3 2009 Quarterly Note embroidered on the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* in a rather expansive way. Four facets of this embroidery were particularly striking in this quarter.

1378. First, what had been described in the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* as *"continuing rationalisation of IT suppliers to financial institutions"* was embellished considerably into an assertion that:

> *"… These organisations are restricting their key suppliers to 6 or 7 companies comprising the usual suspects, Cisco, Microsoft etc. Because of the strategic nature of Autonomy they have asked us to assume the last of these slots. In doing so, however, this has pushed EMC, a major supplier of storage, out. It should be noted EMC's business with these organisations is very large. In order to allow all parties to accept this outcome the companies have asked Autonomy and EMC to partner closely together. This close tie has given Autonomy the scale the banks require and has given EMC the security to acquiesce to the arrangement. Obtaining this strategic supplier*

status we believe will be very valuable to Autonomy in the coming years."

1379. As to this:

(1) The Claimants submitted that almost every part of this was false, and none of it was supported by the contemporaneous documentation.

(2) Thus, they said, it was not the case that EMC had been "*pushed out*" by Autonomy; nor was Autonomy appointed as a panel supplier to any of these organisations. On the contrary, the hardware sales, through EMC, had come about by Autonomy approaching EMC: it was EMC that was bringing the hardware deals to Autonomy, and it was EMC that was selling the hardware into its customer base.

(3) The passage was introduced after Dr Lynch had been provided with the proposed last draft (which did not include it). When cross-examined, Dr Lynch denied having had more than a *"quick look"* at the draft, but the Claimants submitted and I accept that the most likely explanation of the change is input from him, especially since the contribution reflects previous amendments he had suggested to pre-final versions of the *Strategic Deals Memorandum*.

(4) Dr Lynch sought to support Mr Hussain's description: but he had no documentary evidence to substantiate any of it. Dr Lynch maintained that the companies had indeed indicated that there was not room for both EMC and Autonomy in their supplier lists, and encouraged them to collaborate. He instanced especially a conversation with a Mr Chiarello, whom he described as JPMC's CIO, and another person whom he described as Mr Chiarello's right-hand man, a Mr Feinstein, who he said *"were dealing with Autonomy and EMC, sometimes even together."* His evidence was that:

> *"…there was a discussion at the time that the way that it was played by JPMC was that we were both vying for the final place and that if we could put together this kind of an arrangement then it would be workable for both of us. That was what was presented."*

(5) There was no documentary record of this. Even though I would accept Dr Lynch's dismissal as *"just not realistic"* the suggestion that this sort of conversation would have been minuted (and it is also fair to note that the draft sent to him did not include this passage), he did indicate that he thought there would definitely be emails between him and *"people at JPMC"*; but none was ever produced.

1380. Second, what had been described in the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* as *"a package approach to this demand for strategic selling"* and *"combined hardware/software application offerings in the compliance space"* was elaborated into *"large sales in Q3 (comprising software and hardware*

utilising the software in an appliance model)" and sales of *"software and hardware as part of their compliance solution"*. The Claimants submitted that this reference to an *"appliance model"* was false. No such *"appliance model"* had been developed, and the sales were of *'pure hardware'*.

1381. Third, what had been referred to in the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* as *"the strategic partnership with EMC… led by Bill Scannell"* was elaborated into:

> *"The partnership with EMC is allowing the development of joint products and marketing of EMC/Autonomy solutions to the customer. This has served to give EMC confidence despite no longer owning the relationship. These arrangements have been brokered at the highest level by the CTOs and we view these sales as part of a bigger strategic picture."*

1382. As to this:

(1) The Claimants dismissed the passage as also untrue in every material particular, contending that (i) there was no partnership with EMC; (ii) there was no development of joint products with EMC; (iii) there was no joint marketing initiative between EMC and Autonomy; (iv) EMC still *"owned"* its relationship with the customers to whom the hardware was being sold; and (v) any arrangements between Autonomy and EMC had been made between Mr Sullivan and Mr Scannell, and no part had been played by Dr Menell.

(2) When cross-examined on it, Dr Lynch disagreed that there was no partnership with EMC and stuck to his line that the process of developing a joint product with EMC had *"already happened at one level by this time and we then go on to work on other things with them"*. He also defended the description of *"strategic package sales"* as extending to sales of hardware to established customers for Autonomy software with a view to supporting software already acquired, or further software to be supplied whether as part of the hardware sale or later. But all this was a semantic exercise, with Dr Lynch's justification amounting in reality to insistence on his own dictionary. The plain import of what was said was against him.

1383. Fourth, the explanation in the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* of the increase in *"Operating costs"* including costs of sales was expanded in Mr Hussain's Q3 2009 Note as follows:

> *"There were 2 large movements. Firstly, in sales and marketing we spent around $20m on sharing marketing costs with EMC and extra marketing on our new product launch (Structured Probabilistic Engine). EMC are using the monies in highly targeted joint marketing programmes with companies such as JPMC and Citi and in also jointly developing further appliances for future sales. Secondly we capitalised $11m of R&D under IAS 38 as a direct result of significant development effort on the new product release (SPE)…"*

1384. The Claimants alleged that both aspects of these explanations were false. More particularly:

    (1) The aspect relating to R&D and SPE has been dealt with separately.

    (2) The aspect relating to statements as to there being a *"highly targeted joint marketing programme"* with EMC and as to joint development of further appliances for future sales was exaggerated: as previously explained, there was no such *"targeted joint marketing programme"*; EMC had not committed, and was not required, to use the money it received for the hardware in any particular way; and any development plans for joint Autonomy/EMC appliances were at best inchoate.

1385. In my judgment, the intended effect of Mr Hussain's Q3 2009 Quarterly Note was to confirm and amplify for the particular attention of the Audit Committee the message that the hardware sales did not indicate that Autonomy was engaged in a new and separate (and loss-making) business of hardware reselling: that they were part and parcel of the existing software business and could properly be accounted for as such.

Deloitte's Q3 2009 Review

1386. On 16 October 2009, Deloitte issued their Q3 2009 report to the Audit Committee. Prior to its finalisation, Deloitte had sent a copy in draft to Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain. Mr Hussain forwarded it on to Dr Lynch stating: "*See the positioning re emc – any comments?*"

1387. The wording of that report is a further refined version of the "*Strategic Deals Memorandum"* which may have borrowed also from Mr Hussain's Q3 2009 Quarterly Note. It displays the same misleading depiction of the extent of the relationship between Autonomy and EMC, with the same implicit suggestion of commitment on the part of EMC to invest the 'delta' in agreed ways (though Deloitte was more circumspect in avoiding any reference to a 'partnership' than Mr Hussain had been). Its references to the prospective development of an appliance described the cost/loss as *"Autonomy's upfront investment in working jointly with EMC to develop this proposition."*

1388. The opening paragraph stated as follows:

> *"During the quarter, the executive management identified a new and significant longer term market opportunity for Autonomy to develop in*

> *the provision of appliance related solutions to leading multi-national financial institutions. In order to begin to establish the Group's presence in this space Autonomy management identified the need to develop a close working relationship with a major hardware company. EMC were approached by the executive management team and a significant hardware, marketing and development purchase entered into with this organisation. The purpose of this transaction with EMC was:*
>
> - *to provide hardware to Autonomy for it to deliver to its existing customers,*
> - *to provide ongoing joint sales and marketing support to promote further sales to this emerging market and*
> - *to begin to develop an appliance based hardware and software configuration whereby Autonomy software might be fully integrated into EMC hardware for products aimed at the appliance sector and major financial institutions."*

1389. This was at best exaggerated: the arrangements made with EMC were not concerned with developing "*appliance related solutions*"; there was no "*hardware, marketing and development purchase*" entered into with EMC; EMC did not "*provide hardware to Autonomy for it to deliver to its existing customers*"; there was no "*joint sales and marketing*" arrangement with EMC; and there was no agreement, or even discussions, between EMC and Autonomy regarding the development of "*an appliance based hardware and software configuration*".

1390. Deloitte's draft report went on to state:

> *"The procurement of goods, marketing services and future development costs have been allocated between cost of goods (within gross margin) and sales and marketing costs (which fall to be treated as operating costs). … The marketing cost is being used to incentivise the EMC salesforce; provide discounts to the customer; provide funds for the development of the appliances; and to attend marketing events.*
>
> *Management's rationale behind entering into these loss making contracts is that Autonomy is seeking to develop a strategic relationship with EMC whereby in future an appliance will be marketed which combines Autonomy's software with EMC's hardware. The $9 million cost over and above the $36 million recovered through the sales reflects Autonomy's upfront investment in working jointly with EMC to develop this proposition. Management has considered whether these costs should be capitalised but has concluded that they do not meet the necessary asset criteria and accordingly has expensed them as incurred."*

1391. Again, this was based on what Deloitte had been told by Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain. Although Deloitte steered away more carefully than had Mr Hussain from asserting a partnership or any commitment on the part of EMC, I accept the Claimants' contentions that (a) the scope and extent of Autonomy's then existing relationship with EMC was exaggerated, and (b) there was next to no substance in the assertion that part of the amounts paid by Autonomy went towards attendance at marketing events. Except for the emails attached to the Strategic Deals Memorandum, these calculations were arrived at unilaterally by Autonomy, without any input from or discussion with EMC. The only prices of which Autonomy in fact had knowledge were (i) the price they had agreed to pay EMC and (ii) the price at which it was on-selling to the customer.

1392. At that time, none of the members of the Audit Committee had any accountancy qualification; and it is unsurprising that they accepted Deloitte's approval of the Q3 2009 Report (subject to the caveats referred to above) without (so far as the evidence goes) any question, except as to disclosure.

How Dr Lynch dealt with the Audit Committee's questions about disclosure (Q3 2009)

1393. Before resuming my description of how Mr Hussain's Quarterly Notes and Deloitte's Quarterly Reviews shaped the attitude of the Audit Committee over the course of the Relevant Period, it is convenient to interpose an episode which arose immediately after the Q3 2009 Audit Committee meeting relating to the issue of disclosure.

1394. An important detail in Deloitte's Q3 2009 review was a passage as follows:

> *"These hardware sales did not include any IDOL software component and reflect Autonomy's early targeting of the emerging market of appliance solutions. <u>The Board should consider how best to communicate this new opportunity to the shareholders as these revenues are not driven from the IDOL technology of the Group</u>."*
>
> [Emphasis supplied by me]

1395. On 21 October 2009, and following up earlier emails from him and his colleagues about the lack of any mention in draft minutes (prepared by Mr Kanter) of discussions they all recollected having had at the Audit Committee meeting about (in Mr Ariko's words) "*how to best represent and incorporate the EMC servers we are reselling into our financial results",* Mr Ariko sent an email to Dr Lynch regarding *"the revenue we're putting on our books from the reselling of these storage servers".* He stated that he agreed that *"our Strategic position with many of our large customers is a good thing"* and noted also that *"because of that reselling another companies products does present us with incremental revenue and margin contributions."*

1396. Mr Ariko's only real concern was with disclosure. Perhaps prompted by a passage in Deloitte's Q3 2009 Review, he wanted to ensure that the effect of this new revenue stream, and the performance of Autonomy's software business (which he described as *"our most strategic products"*), were fairly presented both for internal purposes and also from the point of view of the market. He was explicit:

> *"…I think we have a potential problem with how we discuss the revenue we're putting on our books from the reselling of these storage services. We need to agree how best to present those numbers to the Street and how best to review the performance of the Company without those revenue/profit numbers included to best understand the state of our business regarding our most strategic products. I believe this needs to be an extensive discussion at the next Board meeting and I think we should review our [current] press release so that it adequately reflects the effects of this new business line."*

1397. This concern was shared by all his colleagues on the Audit Committee, and expressed clearly after it transpired that the Press Release was issued notwithstanding these concerns. All three members wrote expressing concern about the lack of discussion about and disclosure of the hardware reselling strategy in the Q3 Press announcement:

(1) On 19 October 2009 at 4.18pm, in response to having been sent for approval the draft minutes of the Audit Committee meeting held on 16 October 2009, which did not record any discussion about hardware sales and revenues, Mr McMonigall sent an email to his fellow Committee members, and also to Mr Kanter, copying Mr Hussain and others at Autonomy, which stated:

> *"Fine with me. But how did we deal with the hardware GM issue in the announcement?"*.

(2) Mr Ariko sent an email less than an hour later stating:

> *"I think the minutes need to reflect that we had a discussion about how to best represent and incorporate the EMC servers we are reselling into our financial results"*.

(3) The third member, Mr Perle, later that evening sent an email agreeing with Mr Ariko and stating that he:

> *"share[d] John's interest in knowing what the press release says"*.

1398. As has already been seen, the Press Release had been issued earlier that day. It made no mention of the *"new business line"*. Although one of the functions of the Audit Committee was to approve the quarterly results and press release, it appears that they, and these concerns, were by-passed. The responsibility for

this is not clear. There is no record of Mr Kanter having sent to Deloitte his draft minutes, which the members of the Audit Committee all thought missed out this vital discussion. I did not hear from any of those members; or from Mr Kanter; or from Mr Knights, who did attend the meeting. I have had no opportunity to assess properly what may be competing recollections.

1399. But, to my mind, who was responsible matters less than the undoubted confirmation that the episode provides of (a) the natural reaction at the time of informed but objective persons, asked to consider the rationale for the hardware sales, that in any event they should be disclosed; (b) the determination on the part of management that they should not be so; (c) the inevitable suspicion surrounding (i) the omission from the minutes of the discussion all three members of the Audit Committee recalled and (ii) the apparent failure (including by Mr Knights, if the discussion took place) to factor in the Audit Committee's views on a matter which was part of their remit. Both (a) and (b) above were further demonstrated by two further emails.

1400. Mr Hussain's reaction to Mr Ariko's email was to send an email to Mr Kanter (only) which provides an insight into his outlook on the issue of disclosure:

> *"We made a statement about the strategic sales in MRL's quote – we cannot give too much detail in the press release as it's commercially sensitive. In the press release we said "during the quarter we saw some of our large customers promote autonomy to strategic supplier status. This has led them to adopt a broader set of solutions in a number of significant sales.""*

1401. Dr Lynch responded directly to Mr Ariko on 23 October 2009. The Claimants fastened on his response as showing clearly that he was *"perfectly content to mislead Mr Ariko".* His response was prefaced by an assurance of complete agreement that the matter needed to be monitored closely, and a reference to Mr Knights having *"explained his treatment of this to me and Andy and Sushovan advised that they felt the positioning was correct but also added that like you something we needed to keep under review".* The remainder and the Claimants' basis for criticising particular parts of it are summarised below:

(1) Dr Lynch stated that:

> "*The market is already aware we sell hardware, something we have done for 5 years or so and indeed we mentioned it as being relevant to q3 on the conference call and in Q3 shareholder meetings and indeed that this had been more pronounced this quarter. This has been mentioned by financial analysts in their coverage of the quarter."*

(2) The Claimants contended that the market had not been informed that Autonomy was selling pure hardware, and that the transcript for the Q3 2009 earnings call does not contain a single reference to the hardware sales. They paraphrased Dr Lynch's references to the situation in Q3

being *"quite complex involving hardware, our software to customers and a partnership development"* and to "*the move ... towards an appliance model rather than usual hardware re-sell*" and a "*new strategic product offering*" as intended to maintain a fiction of a partnership with EMC for the development of an appliance which did not accurately reflect the reality of the position with EMC.

(3) Dr Lynch stated that Autonomy "*would not want to become resellers of unrelated hardware which is not about furthering our software sales*".

The Claimants contended that was the reverse of the truth because according to the Claimants' case that was precisely the strategy that had been implemented and the hardware sales during Q3 2009 were a means of producing recognisable revenue, rather than having anything to do with "*furthering ... software sales*".

(4) Dr Lynch assured Mr Ariko that Autonomy was "*issuing a new press release next week on these matters relating to hardware*".

(5) According to the Claimants, this was incorrect. As Dr Lynch well knew, the press release in question had nothing to do with pure hardware sales: it concerned the launch of the Arcpliance appliance: and they cited a press release issued on 28 October 2009 ("*Autonomy Announces New Archiving Appliance*").

(6) Dr Lynch concluded:

> *"I think its a good subject to discuss at the board meeting although perhaps we need to monitor the next couple of quarters to see if this is a one off or a trend before reacting".*

(7) The Claimants said that this was misleading because by that time, it was already clear that these hardware sales were not intended to be a one-off (as Dr Lynch acknowledged in his own witness statement by the words "*EMC was just one of the hardware providers we planned on working with as the hardware strategy developed*"). Rather, the Claimants continued, the sales had become an important means of generating revenue for Autonomy and indeed, as explained below, a matter of days later, Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain were setting an ambitious hardware revenue target for Q4 2009.

1402. I accept that Dr Lynch's email was misleading. Tracking the sub-paragraphs above:

(1) As to (1), Dr Lynch's assertion that the market was already aware that Autonomy sold hardware was true only in the most literal sense; it skated over the fact that the very considerable increase in the volume of sales had been kept from the market, and the sales were only ever mentioned in the context of sales of appliances or Arcpliance. Further,

and more concretely, it is correct that there was no mention of hardware sales in the Q3 earnings call; and though Dr Lynch may have confused the call with his own public statement on the Q3 results, which did contain the Delphic reference to Autonomy having, in consequence of certain large customers having promoted it to *"strategic supplier status",* adopted *"a broader set of our solutions in a number of significant deals"*, the inaccuracy and evasiveness are very striking.

(2) As to (2), Dr Lynch's references to partnership coupled with references to a *"a new strategic product offering"* had no real grounding in the truth.

(3) As to (3), I have determined that whatever its purpose when first formulated, by the time of this exchange the hardware reselling strategy's purpose was the generation of revenue to make good shortfalls in software sales without disclosure of their extent or true source.

(4) As to (4) and (5), the Claimants were correct in their contention that Dr Lynch must have been referring to a press release dated 27 October 2009 which announced Autonomy's Arcpliance product, which had nothing to do with the hardware sales to which Mr Ariko was referring.

(5) As to (6) and Dr Lynch's concluding statement to the effect that board discussion of hardware sales might be better postponed because *"perhaps we need to monitor the next couple of quarters to see if this is a one off or a trend before reacting*" smacks of evasion and sits uneasily with Dr Lynch's presentation of the hardware reselling strategy as a continuing strategy, involving not only EMC but also other hardware sellers.

1403. Again, this is plainly at odds with the picture of open and constructive engagement painted by the Defendants as described above. The impression that Dr Lynch interpreted Deloitte's advice that the Accounting Standards did not require separate disclosure of revenue from the hardware reselling strategy as justifying him taking active steps to disguise or distract attention from it is reinforced by what he said at the Earnings Call for Q3 2009 (which took place on 20 October 2009).

Mr Hussain's Q4 2009 Quarterly Note

1404. A draft of Mr Hussain's Q4 2009 Quarterly Note was, as usual, pre-circulated to Dr Lynch for his comments. The final version was dated 29 January 2010 and circulated to the Audit Committee in advance of its meeting on 1 February 2010. The Note did not mention EMC or appliance sales, but contained a passage on *"Strategic Sales"*, as follows:

> ***"Strategic sales*** *– only one new strategic sale for $1m this quarter (Bank of America) and 2 were delivered from deals concluded last*

> *quarter (Morgan Stanley for $6m and Credit Suisse for $4m). The total is $11m or 4.9% of total sales. The Morgan Stanley sale is particularly strategic as we made a further $12m of software sales to Morgan Stanley in the quarter. The Bank of America sale is also strategic in that we are in the midst of a large 7-figure sale of software in Q1'10."*

1405. The Claimants submitted that this was misleading because:

(1) As Dr Lynch accepted, the "*$12m of software sales to Morgan Stanley*" was in fact the restructuring of the hosting arrangement with Morgan Stanley. That transaction was entirely unrelated to the hardware sales that had been made to Morgan Stanley. There was no linkage between the two. Thus, it was misleading to state that the hardware sale to Morgan Stanley was "*strategic*" to the software sale.

(2) The same was true in relation to the BofA hardware sale, which was made to the reseller SHI. Again, the hardware deal was not "*strategic*" to the software deal referenced, which was a hosting arrangement that was negotiated entirely independently.

1406. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch sought to justify their description on the basis that both were nevertheless *"part of our strategic solutions problem"*. He explained this as follows:

> *Q. How do you say there was a relationship between a restructuring of the hosting deals and a sale of hardware to Morgan Stanley which was going to go on site?*
>
> *A. Because they're being done under the Morgan Stanley arrangement from 30 June 2009 which is an arrangement that is to do with hardware and also mentions Digital Safe, and then the other aspect of this is that Morgan Stanley owns some of the hardware that we host, and then the last aspect of this is that Morgan Stanley also has some safes which we're not hosting.*
> *…*
>
> *Q. I suggest to you that the way in which this has been presented to the audit committee, suggesting some kind of close link, or link between these transactions, was just misleading, wasn't it?*
>
> *A. No, that's incorrect. And Deloitte were well aware of the level of linkage in each deal and there are working papers that discuss their understanding of that in detail…"*

1407. In relation to the BofA deal, he explained the linkage as being:

> *"..that they are part of our strategic program…which by selling these large banks the hardware, we are able to fulfil the strategic need. Now, there are other sales if you're correct about these ones, where actually the software is running on the hardware and there are other ones*

> *which are the appliance-type sales. So there's a mixture going on here but the basic principle is that we are doing one-stop shopping for the banks."*

1408. The effect of this was to cover all situations. In his oral evidence before me Dr Lynch extended his asserted meaning of *"strategic sales"* to apply to any sale of hardware to a software customer of Autonomy, existing or prospective. As also appears from the passage quoted in paragraph 1406 above he also told me that Deloitte were *"well aware"* of the *"level of linkage"*. However, what Deloitte had been told appears from a passage in Deloitte's own Report to the Audit Committee on the Q4 2009 Audit:

> *"These hardware sales did not include any IDOL software component and reflect Autonomy's continued targeting of the emerging market of appliance solutions. However, we do note that during Q4 2009, Autonomy sold and have also sold significant software to Bank of America (who are the end-user in the SHI deal) in recent quarters. As consistent with the hardware sales reported to the Audit Committee in our Q3 report, these sales have been made at an overall loss with the costs being allocated between costs of sales and marketing expenses. Management's rationale for entering into these loss-making contracts is that Autonomy is seeking to develop a strategic relationship with EMC whereby in future an appliance will be marketed which combines Autonomy's software with EMC's hardware. It should be noted that the sale to SHI international was not connected to this strategy with EMC and involved a sale of 1,000 laptops to Bank of America via SHI International which Autonomy had purchased from Dell. The intention here is that both Autonomy and Dell will market Dell hardware that incorporates Autonomy search software."*

1409. There are a number of problems with Dr Lynch's evidence in this regard:

   (1) In respect of each transaction, Deloitte appear to have proceeded on a much more specific basis than Dr Lynch's very broad extension of the concept of a strategic sale in cross-examination.

   (2) But in neither could the basis on which they proceeded be supported.

   (3) By the beginning of Q4 2009 EMC had withdrawn from the hardware reselling strategy. There was no *"strategic relationship"* or agreement for marketing of a joint appliance. Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence was that Deloitte had not been told this during the course of the 2009 year-end audit.[212] Nor had the Audit Committee.

   (4) Any arrangements for the development of an appliance with Dell were inchoate and uncertain.

[212] Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that he did not know this.

1410. I am persuaded and find that Deloitte were misled and the Audit Committee likewise.

1411. Mr Hussain's Q4 2009 Note was also misleading in stating as follows under "*Operating costs*": "*... the costs associated with the strategic sales (joint marketing and cost of sales) were down ...*". However, no "*joint marketing*" had been agreed, let alone undertaken, with any of the hardware manufacturers.

Mr Hussain's Q1 2010 Quarterly Note

1412. By Q1 2010, Deloitte knew that Dell had taken over from EMC as the primary hardware supplier. Some recasting of the justification for hardware sales was required. The Claimants' allegations in respect of Mr Hussain's Q1 2010 Quarterly Note (the Claimants called it a 'paper') related particularly to the alleged depiction of a sale of hardware to BofA as part of a *"package sale"* resulting in a software purchase by BofA from Autonomy, both in Q1 2010.

1413. These allegations were particularly directed against Dr Lynch, as having been responsible for changing a draft of Mr Hussain's Q1 2010 Note in the manner shown by the text and deletions below:

> ***"Strategic Package ~~ie~~ sales*** *– the total was $7m (3.5% of total sales) of lower margin business including a strategic sale to the Bank of America for $14~~5~~m$9m of ~~. This should be seen in the light of a separate $9m major strategic sale of~~ compliance software and 5m of low margin business ~~also in the quarter~~ (we flagged this sale in the Q4 Audit Pack). We also sold $4~~1~~m to Fannie Mae ~~and at the same time sold~~ $3m of compliance software and $1m low margin ~~to Freddie Mae~~."*

1414. Thus, whereas the original draft had described the software and hardware sales as separate (indeed, that very word was used in the pre-circulation version in relation to the BofA software sale), the effect of what I accept were changes made by Dr Lynch[213] was to suggest that they constituted part of the same "*package sale*". These changes, which recast the justification for the hardware reselling strategy in conjunction with Dell as a means of enabling Autonomy to deliver its software through "*package*" sales of both software and hardware, were all adopted by Mr Hussain in the final version.

1415. As amended, the wording conveyed an inaccurate impression of composite sales; but, read on its own, the justification was no longer based on the quest for a joint appliance solution. Yet it is clear that Deloitte understood the

[213] Dr Lynch denied this, relying on the fact that he was in California (marooned there by the Icelandic volcano eruption which restricted international flights), and suggesting that *"I don't think these would be my changes. The words may be my changes but there's certainly something else going on here as well"*. However, it is clear, in my view, that Dr Lynch did make the changes. The changes were attached to an email from Dr Lynch to Mr Hussain in response to a request for comments, the message in that email being *"some suggested edits you may want to check for accuracy"*.

strategic rationale still to be to develop a strategic relationship with Dell, as can be seen from their own Report to the Audit Committee on the Q1 2010 Review dated 20 April 2010 in which, in the section on *"Hardware"*, it was stated that:

> "*Management's rationale for entering into these loss making contracts is that Autonomy is seeking to develop a strategic relationship with Dell. The intention is that both Autonomy and Dell will market Dell hardware that incorporates Autonomy search software*".

1416. It is not clear to me from the evidence what the source or basis was for this gloss on what was stated in Mr Hussain's Q1 2010 Note. The gloss was wrong: there was no strategic relationship between Autonomy and Dell, and any intention of marketing a joint appliance was vague and inchoate. Indeed, Mr Chamberlain expressly acknowledged this in an email to Mr Welham and Mr Knights (cc Ms Harris and Mr Hussain) dated 19 April 2010 seeking to justify the allocation of 62.4% of the costs of sales of Hitachi hardware to Sales and Marketing on the basis that *"HDS are developing appliances and providing similar levels of support to EMC"*, but an allocation of the reduced figure of 37.6% in the case of sales of Dell hardware because *"there is no development effort for Dell…"*

1417. In such circumstances, it does not seem to me that Deloitte was misled in this regard by Mr Hussain's Note; nor by Mr Chamberlain. That does not alter the fact, however, that Deloitte's gloss on the justification was put forward to the Audit Committee without correction by Mr Hussain or Mr Chamberlain (or anyone else at Autonomy). It seems to me that Autonomy was content not to correct a confusion which was to its advantage in offering the best prospect of securing the result it wanted, and more especially, the allocation of part of its costs to Sales and Marketing.

1418. That said, and as Deloitte's Report explained, even on the basis of part of the costs being referable to building a *"strategic relationship"* Deloitte was not prepared to agree to the allocation percentages presented by Autonomy[214]. This was reflected in their report:

[214] The discomfort within Deloitte was expressed by the PSR on the Autonomy account for Q1 2010, Ms Lisanne Fitzgerald, whose comments on 18 April 2010 on the draft Q1 2010 report to the Audit Committee were summarised to Mr Chamberlain by Mr Welham; she stated:

> *"I feel pretty uncomfortable about this – it seems that the magnitude of these hardware sales will grow and have been occurring over a period of months – how long can they really be deemed to be marketing and not cost of sales. It strikes me that this is a way of them preserving gross margin which I am not sure is right…"*.

"Given the period that has elapsed since these initial deals were transacted and the fact that we expected these to be more one-off in nature, we conclude that it would be more appropriate to reflect all of the costs of hardware sold in cost of goods sold.

We understand that management has allocated the $3.8 million to sales and marketing based on the previous analysis prepared for the EMC sales in Q3 2009 which demonstrated that Autonomy were purchasing hardware at a price which was considerably higher than they would normally pay in order to gain a strategic partnership and become the preferred hardware reseller with EMC, Dell, SHI and HDS.

Based on the limited information available, we have included the $3.8 million as a classification adjustment in Appendix 1 and would not expect to see such amounts in sales and marketing in subsequent quarters."

1419. In summary, Mr Hussain's Q1 2010 Note:

(1) paved the way for a shift in the justification of the hardware reselling strategy away from the development of an appliance to the customer-facing justification of a *"one-stop shop"*;

(2) reinforced the presentation of the hardware reselling strategy as nevertheless intended to promote Autonomy's software core business;

(3) was interpreted by Deloitte, when taken together with other representations, to justify the accounting treatment of hardware revenues as part of the overall revenues of the group without differentiation.

Mr Hussain's Q2 2010 Note

1420. The shift in the justification for hardware reselling which had been commenced in Q1 2010 was confirmed in Q2 2010. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that there was a shift:

"Q. It's right, isn't it, from Q2 2010 onwards, rather than trying to position the hardware sales as being part of some strategic relationship with a hardware manufacturer, including the production of appliances, what one finds going forward is a somewhat different justification being advanced?

A. Yes, it changes. What we're doing changes. It starts to move away from the appliance-type situation more to the strategic package sales.

Q. ....it's not about appliance sales any more, it's about how this positions Autonomy well in order to make valuable software sales not loaded on to the hardware but just separately to some of the customers, correct?

A. Yes, I think it's shifted."

1421. That was consistent also with an earlier passage in his cross-examination:

"I would say at the beginning of the strategy it was more heavily weighted towards the appliance than the hardware providers, but a few months later, probably around Q2 2010, we were seeing more of Cloud take-off rather than appliance and that became less important and at that point we had more interest in the customer-facing aspect of it..."

1422. In their submissions as to the alleged deception of Deloitte and the Audit Committee in Q2 2010 the Claimants focused on three points in Mr Hussain's Q2 2010 Note dated 20 July 2010 (a draft of which was, as usual, pre-circulated to Dr Lynch):

(1) The first was the statement under the heading *"Strategic package sales"* that:

"...these types of sales were flagged in the Q1 results presentation so the market is aware of them".

(2) The second was that:

"*These lower margin sales have generated significant new software business for us (over $80m of sales have been associated with these sales over the past few quarters).*"

(3) The third was the statement under a heading *"Gross margins"* that:

"We have charged the cost of the lower margin sales to the cost of sales line even though we had agreed with our suppliers that the 50% of the cost could be used for marketing purposes."

1423. On the first point, the Claimants submitted that the statement that *"strategic package sales"* had been *"flagged"* in the Q1 results presentation was not true. There had been a reference in the Q1 2010 Earnings Call to having purchased hardware inventory to take *"advantage of discounted stock offers to purchase stock in advance of Q2 sales"* and the PowerPoint presentation used for that call referred to *"Pre-investment in inventory for Q2'10 sales"*. But in ensuing discussion when asked what *"Arcpliance or appliance sales and hardware sales would have been in a normal quarter",* Dr Lynch had replied *"...It would be a fraction of that number"*.

1424. The Claimants placed the blame for the untrue statement on Dr Lynch because it did not appear in the draft that was sent to Dr Lynch and was inserted only after that. When asked about this, Dr Lynch told me that he did not know whether the addition had been made at his request; but he submitted that there was no basis for the Claimants' suggestion that the text was inserted at his suggestion, or even that he saw it. But no other explanation was suggested as to how the amendment to the pre-circulated draft came to be made.

1425. Dr Lynch was obviously discomfited when confronted with this in cross-examination, both as regards the inclusion of the statement and as to what it stated. As to whether the false statement was his suggestion, I have been struck by how often Dr Lynch used the words "flag" or "flagged": 11 times in his first witness statement, for example. Taking account also the fact that the amendment was introduced sequentially following the draft having been sent to him for his consideration, and the lack of any other explanation for it, on balance, I think it more likely than not, and I find, that he did cause the insertion of those words, even if he cannot now remember that he did.

1426. He admitted that the statement was *"not as clear as I would like it to be"*. When pressed on whether it was misleading, he first suggested that the intended reference was probably to the Q3 2009 Earnings Call, but then added that there had been more information given in Q1 2010 as well in respect of *"the Arcpliance solutions"* which he described as a *"subset"* of *"strategic package sales"*. But this was glib, and I formed the impression that Dr Lynch was grasping at straws. None of his efforts to explain really addressed the point: they did not justify the statement that volume sales of "strategic" hardware had been undertaken.

1427. Mr Bloomer, asked about the same statement appearing in the Q3 2010 Audit Committee presentation, indicated that the text would not necessarily have concerned him, because "*at the time, hardware sales were not a particularly big issue in Deloitte's report*". He added when asked whether, if he had become aware that the strategic package sales which he was told had been flagged had not been so, that would have concerned him, that:

> *"It would have been interesting rather than concerning…hardware was not seen as a big topic actually to flag."*

1428. This was, as I see it, because Mr Bloomer, and the other members of the Audit Committee took the view that unless the hardware sales were of such an amount as to (a) undermine, or potentially undermine, the judgement that Autonomy had a single operating segment (its core IDOL-based software business) and (b) be material, hardware reselling was not a problem unless of course Deloitte said it was: and they never did.

1429. The statement in the Note (see (2) in paragraph 1422 above) that "*over $80m of sales have been associated with these sales over the past few quarters*", was based on Mr Stephan's analysis (see below), which became known as *"the Linkage Analysis"*. This showed $78m of software sales to Autonomy's hardware customers in the period from Q2 2009 onwards. As I develop in the

context of my analysis of the dispute relating to the "linkage analysis", 'linkage' between events or transactions is an elastic expression which could denote anything from temporal coincidence to causation; but the Defendants submitted that the wording "*associated with*" did not suggest a direct, close, causal link. While the version sent to Dr Lynch contained the text, the number it contained was different ($40m rather than $80m). In any event, as Dr Lynch said, the document would have gone to Deloitte, who would have checked it and flagged to the Audit Committee if it contained anything misleading; and they never did so.

1430. Behind the statement in Mr Hussain's Q2 2010 Note (see (3) in paragraph 1422 above) that Autonomy had *"charged the cost of the lower margin sales to the cost of sales line even though we had agreed with our suppliers that the 50% of the cost could be used for marketing purposes"* lay a debate between Autonomy's finance department (and, in particular, Mr Chamberlain) and Deloitte (with both Mr Knights and Mr Mercer involved) on the abiding issue of costs allocation.

1431. In the previous quarter (Q1 2010), Deloitte had pushed back and after much wrangling obtained an agreement to limit the allocation to Sales and Marketing to an immaterial $3.8 million, on the basis of *"a classification adjustment in Appendix 1"* (see paragraph 1418 above). It is clear, as also intimated previously, that Deloitte were very uncomfortable with any allocation at all; and the identification of the relatively small allocation permitted as a *"disclosure deficiency"* (which appears to have been Mr Welham's idea) was intended (in Mr Welham's words in his witness statement) *"to flag to management that we would not expect such classification going forward."* Deloitte gave the same explanation and admonition to the Audit Committee.

1432. Even so, Mr Chamberlain pressed in Q2 2010 for a 50% split between COGS and Sales and Marketing. In a Memo to 'The Files' cc Mr Hussain dated 16 July 2010 and headed *"Product – cost allocation"*, Mr Chamberlain sought to justify this as follows:

> *"During Q2 2010 Autonomy has continued its practice of procuring hardware at a perceived loss on behalf of its most strategic customers. As has been previously explained the purpose of these deals is to become the single source supplier for all of the major banks in relation to its data management activities…*
>
> …
>
> *…the total cost represents a "loss" on the hardware sales. However, these sales should not be considered in isolation. A proportion of the payment represents an investment in the customer relationship and has helped enormously in the procurement of significant software sales. In the last 4 quarters alone we have signed licence deals that have generated almost $80 million in revenues with a further $40-60 million in backlog of estimated hosting fees that will be generated for the initial term of the agreements.*

The cost allocation of 50% to COGS and 50% to sales and marketing is consistent with the quotations provided to the hardware vendors. The sales and marketing payment is effectively a commission payment to the hardware vendors for allowing us to secure the sole supplier relationship with the banks and has been a very successful enabler in closing the larger, much more valuable, software deals.

Every purchase quotation provided to the vendors contains the following clause:

"The purchase order amount above includes payment for the equipment/services listed in the attached quote, in addition to payments for the joint marketing support referenced in the Agreement. For Autonomy purposes, the value of these transactions has been apportioned as follows: equipment/services 50% and marketing support 50%".

The allocation reflects two things. 1) normal cost allocation to COGS such that hardware margin is consistent with margins earned by large hardware vendors; 2) balance of payment being allocated to S&M."

1433. I would make the following observations on this:

(1) In the teeth of Deloitte's obvious discomfort and express warning that they did not consider allocation of the costs of hardware sales to Sales and marketing rather than COGS to be justified as a proper expense, and were only prepared to permit the allocation of a much smaller amount ($3.8 million) than Autonomy had pressed for as an exceptional *"disclosure deficiency"* which they would not expect to sanction in future quarters, Mr Chamberlain's tenacity is notable and indicative of quite how important was the allocation of costs issue to the finance department for the very reason which Deloitte's PSR had identified in Q1 2010 – preserving gross margin.

(2) Mr Chamberlain presented the *"commission payments"* as if the hardware suppliers had agreed that this is what they represented: whereas the purchase orders themselves simply indicated how Autonomy was intending internally to account for them (*"For Autonomy's purposes"*).

(3) Mr Chamberlain's assertion that Autonomy's funding of discounts on hardware had *"helped enormously in the procurement of significant software sales"*, with a further suggestion of the generation thereby of *"almost $80 million in revenues with a further $40-60 million in backlog of estimated hosting fees",* had no support beyond the Linkage Analysis (which from now on became the principal basis of justifying the desired allocation of Hardware sales costs), but which the

Defendants have had to accept amounted to little more than what its author Mr Stephan referred to as a *"matching up names"* exercise to show a correlation between buyers of hardware and buyers of software and sometimes a broad temporal correlation, which, since all purchasers were existing customers for Autonomy software, demonstrated little.

(4) The basis on which Mr Chamberlain felt able to determine and represent that the *"normal cost allocation to COGS such that hardware margin is consistent with margins earned by large hardware vendors"* is unclear, just as it had been in Q3 2009.

(5) Although Mr Hussain's Q2 2010 Note stated that Autonomy had agreed to forego the benefit in terms of cost allocation of what was presented as an agreement *"with our suppliers that the 50% of the cost could be used for marketing purposes"* (see paragraphs 1422 and 1430 above), adding that Deloitte concurred *"with this prudent approach"*, behind the scenes Mr Chamberlain and the Defendants continued their efforts to persuade Deloitte to agree to some allocation of costs to Sales and marketing. The importance of this to them all was again evident from an email dated 18 July 2010 from Mr Hussain to Mr Mercer, Mr Knights and Mr Welham, in which he made clear that *"The main issue to get across the line on is COGS. Steve will discuss with Lee"* and noted *"Also MRL has strong views on this in terms of the business rationale"*.

1434. In the event, Deloitte were not persuaded to accept the proportions proposed by Mr Chamberlain. However, rather extraordinarily in general terms, but by now characteristically in the context of the relationship that had developed between Autonomy and Deloitte, they were persuaded to permit the allocation of losses to sales and marketing on the basis of *"a solution"* devised by Mr Knights and recorded in an email from him to Mr Hussain, Mr Mercer, and Mr Welham (cc Mr Chamberlain) late in the evening on 18 July 2010.

1435. The email is quoted later as a further illustration of the extent to which Mr Knights had adopted the role as supportive and constructive adviser rather than questioning and sceptical auditor, and was quite prepared to "workaround" his own compliance people. It is sufficient to note for the present that the upshot was that once again Deloitte approved the allocation of some $4 million to Sales and Marketing, which enabled Autonomy to present its gross margin figure as 88% for the six months ended 30 June 2010 compared to 89% for the first six months of 2009, and the small variation in the comparative Q2 2009 and Q2 2010 quarterly gross margin (89% as compared with 86%) as (quoting from the Q2 2010 Quarterly Report released on 22 July 2010):

> *"...in line with our expectations due to the sales mix including appliances as discussed last quarter."*

1436. In summary, Mr Hussain's Q2 2010 Note, Deloitte's own Report to the Audit Committee on the Q2 2010 Review, and the work done behind the scenes for both:

(1) completed and reinforced the 'shift' in the justification for the hardware reselling strategy;

(2) reassured the Audit Committee that the hardware reselling strategy did not destabilise the previous analysis that Autonomy was a single segment business with revenue from sources which required no differentiation; but to do that;

(3) contained a demonstrably false assertion that *"strategic"* hardware sales had previously been *"flagged"* to the market which I have concluded was inserted at the suggestion of Dr Lynch;

(4) confirmed yet again the Defendants' determination to say as little as possible about the hardware reselling strategy, and nothing as to its nature and extent (apart from the falsity mentioned above);

(5) demonstrated Mr Knights' role as presenter of 'solutions' even in the teeth of concern from his team and the Reviewers, and the warning from one of the latter that it appeared likely that Autonomy's objective in posting as much as Deloitte would endorse of the costs to 'Sales and Marketing' instead of COGS was to preserve gross margin.

1437. Whether Deloitte were actually deceived by the Q2 2010 Note, however, is a more problematic question. As previously noted, Deloitte had full and detailed information about the hardware sales, except perhaps what was revealed in email exchanges between Autonomy and hardware suppliers. It seems to me to be difficult to conclude that Mr Knights was misled by the representations adumbrated in paragraph 1422 above; and, for example, Mr Welham, who attended all the Earnings Calls, must surely have known that the hardware sales had not been *"flagged"* to the market.

1438. Obviously, it would have been helpful, in this context especially, to have had evidence which could be tested from one or more of Mr Knights, Mr Mercer, Mr Knight and the Reviewers. On what has been put before me, the uncomfortable truth appears to me to be that by this time, at least Mr Knights and thereafter, Mr Mercer, no longer had the sceptical approach required of an auditor: neither in his turn retained the detachment and independence of mind that was required to call out Autonomy. Instead, they were content to take at face value representations which sceptical reflection would have revealed to be inconsistent with what they or the market had been told in the recent past. Autonomy was an important client; and I should imagine (though I had no direct evidence about this) of very great importance to the Cambridge office which Mr Knights had managed.

1439. That raises further questions as to (a) whether this undermines the Claimants' submission that had Deloitte and/or the Audit Committee been told the truth,

they would have objected to the programme and/or its accounting treatment and required its disclosure to the market (see paragraph 1368 above) and (b) whether this establishes, or at least strongly supports, the Defendants' case that the propriety of what they were doing had been confirmed by Deloitte and the claim of dishonesty should fail accordingly.

1440. As to (a) above, in my view, even if Deloitte continued to rely on what they knew to be unreliable or false, it seems to me that it was the story spun by Autonomy which continued to be the basis on which Deloitte themselves reported to the Audit Committee and on which both Deloitte and the Audit Committee approved the accounts in Q2 2010, as before. Even if Deloitte had no proper basis for relying on what they were told in the respects identified above, these proceedings contain no claim against Deloitte, and in these proceedings, it is the fact that the misrepresentations were made, and not any issue as to Deloitte's reliance, which is in issue. In other words, the fact that Deloitte acted does not excuse the way the matter was presented to them in the Q2 2010 Note (see paragraph 1422 above) or justify an accounting treatment on a false basis.

1441. Further as to (b) in paragraph 1439 above, and in any event, although the Claimants have presented the question as being whether reliance on Deloitte is a trump card for the Defendants, the real question is whether the fact that Deloitte and the Audit Committee approved both the accounts and the narrative demonstrates honesty on the part of the Defendants: and the truth as I find it is that what was stated in the Q2 2010 Note was false to their knowledge.

Mr Hussain's Q3 2010 Note

1442. The Claimants' allegations in respect of statements made in Mr Hussain's Q3 2010 Note that the strategic package sales had been *"flagged"* in the Q1 and Q2 results presentations, mirrored those concerning his Q2 2010 Note and discussed above. The best Dr Lynch could offer to support the statement in Q3 2010 that the hardware sales had been *'flagged'* in Q2 2010 was to say that in the Q2 2010 Earnings Call *"we'd talked about Arcpliance, which is a type of strategic package sale"*.

1443. However, not only was there no record of any such reference to Arcpliance in the transcript of the Q2 2010 results presentation, but Dr Lynch had told one of the analysts, in response to a question as to the effect on gross margin of the sale of Arcpliance inventory, that what he described as *"the appliance model"* would *"account for about 1%..."* and was an *"exceptional situation"*. There was thus a fundamental inconsistency in Dr Lynch's position: even if *'appliance'* sales had been flagged, his minimisation of them destroyed any argument that thereby the very considerable hardware sales had been flagged also.

1444. The Claimants relied on this as a further demonstration that Dr Lynch was determined not to disclose the extent and nature of the hardware reselling, and

would resort to very incomplete answers if that is what he felt was required. I agree and find accordingly.

1445. The Claimants alleged that Mr Hussain also misrepresented the position in his Q3 2010 Note in claiming that *"lower margin sales have generated significant new software business for us"*. They tied this in with statements in Deloitte's report that management's linkage analysis showed a *"strong linkage between the loss making hardware sales and subsequent highly profitable software sales."* They made the further point, which was not contradicted by the Defendants, that the Audit Committee was not provided with the *Linkage Analysis* in that quarter or any subsequent quarter, and were reliant on the summary provided by Deloitte and Mr Hussain. The Claimants alleged that Mr Bloomer and the Audit Committee had been misled into a misunderstanding that *"the linkage analysis showed that hardware sales to a particular customer had driven software sales to that customer"*.

1446. The Claimants made two further allegations in respect of Mr Hussain's Q3 2010 Note. The first concerned the bonus payments to Mr Sullivan. Mr Bloomer told me in cross-examination that he was not aware either of the payments, or that they were calibrated according to the amount of revenue Mr Sullivan generated from hardware sales. But the Claimants did not suggest that this made any particular difference.

1447. The second further allegation relating to the Q3 2010 Note concerned the costs allocation issue. The Note went on to state, under "*Gross margins*", that:

> "*We have charged the cost of the lower margin sales to the cost of sales line even though we had agreed with our suppliers that the 50% of the cost would be used for marketing purposes*".

1448. The Claimants alleged that this too was false: no such agreement had been reached with any hardware supplier; and not all of the cost of the pure hardware sales was included in "*the cost of sales line*". Mr Bloomer stated that he thought that this passage may have "*related to prior periods*", but the Claimants alleged that it was not true in relation to earlier periods either.

1449. I agree that the Q3 2010 Note misstated the position. As previously noted, Mr Hussain habitually and incorrectly presented the justification for allocating part of the costs of the hardware sales to Sales and Marketing expenses as lying in a bilateral agreement, rather than in the (obviously unilateral proxy) *"residual method"* which I have described previously as a proxy in the absence of any such agreement.

1450. Deloitte's own report on their Q3 2010 review to the Audit Committee likewise re-hashed the false line that *"these types of sales were flagged in the Q1 and Q2 results presentation so the market is aware of them."* Deloitte also stated in their report that management's analysis showed a *"strong linkage between the loss making hardware sales and subsequent highly profitable software sales"*.

1451. I took from Mr Bloomer's evidence when cross-examined that, on what they were told, his mindset and that of his committee continued in this quarter to be that on the basis that (a) the hardware sales did not cause Autonomy to be a *"hardware seller"* in the sense of running a separate business not incidental to the IDOL software business so as to upset the segmental analysis, and had also been *"flagged"* and (b) the issue of costs allocation involved amounts that were *"tiny", "just immaterial"*, there was no real issue or problem.

1452. More generally, in my view, both Deloitte and the Audit Committee settled into the view from Q2 2010 onwards that subject to (a) taking steps to restrict the allocation of costs to Sales and Marketing to amounts which were comparatively immaterial (b) requiring some paperwork to lend some general support to the notion of the hardware sales assisting the software business and (c) repeating in each quarter their advice to make disclosure, whilst accepting that ultimately this was a commercial decision for Autonomy's board, the hardware reselling was not a matter of concern.

1453. What would have awakened Mr Bloomer and the Audit Committee's concern was anything which suggested that the hardware reselling was in the nature of a separate business or otherwise than intended to drive software sales, or in any sense clandestine. Mr Bloomer made clear that:

(1) He never thought that hardware reselling was a *"secret"*; he assumed (including from what he described to me as *"meetings with at least one of the shareholders where the shareholder was aware of the hardware sales"*) and *"that there were a variety of things which to me seemed that the market knew about hardware"*; but he acknowledged later in his cross-examination that he was not suggesting that the market was aware that in 2010 Autonomy resold over $100 million of third party hardware *"without any Autonomy software"*;

(2) Had he appreciated that, contrary to what was stated in the Q3 2010 Note and Deloitte's Report, hardware sales had not been *"flagged"* to the market, he would have wanted to know why they had stated they had;

(3) He was not aware that every quarter management would set Mr Sullivan revenue targets and that Mr Sullivan was regularly asked by management to generate further revenue from hardware sales, particularly towards the end of the quarter, nor that bonus payments were offered and paid to Mr Sullivan linked to the amount of revenue that he generated from hardware sales;

(4) He was not made aware (and nor according to Mr Welham's witness statement was Mr Welham) that separate revenue targets were set for hardware each quarter, nor that Dr Lynch received updates on the revenue from hardware sales as each quarter progressed.[215]

[215] Mr Welham was not challenged on his witness statement in this regard. The point was of some importance to the segmental analysis; and in Mr Chamberlain's report sent to Deloitte on 18 January 2011 it was emphasised, entirely falsely, that *"No information is provided to MRL on hardware*

1454. What the Q3 2010 Note and Deloitte's report did in the round was confirm the Audit Committee's mindset that the hardware sales were part and parcel of the software business, and that the issue as to costs allocation was an immaterial detail which could be left to Deloitte. Nothing was said to unsettle the Audit Committee's preconceptions, or to suggest the need for discussion and review of the real issues raised by the continuation of the hardware reselling strategy, including (a) what more exactly the market had been told (b) what, if the market remained unaware of the nature and extent of the programme and its contribution to overall revenue the reaction of the market would be if it were to be revealed (c) why, if immaterial, the issue of cost allocation was of such apparent and abiding importance to management, (d) why a proper Linkage Analysis had not been provided, and whether any linkage demonstrated was sufficient to justify loss-making sales of non-IDOL goods[216] and more generally (e) whether the programme, as it had developed, could properly be said to be wholly focused on driving software sales.

Mr Hussain's Q4 2010 Note

1455. The Claimants' allegations in respect of Mr Hussain's Q4 2010 Note largely mirrored their allegations in respect of his previous Notes in the Relevant Period.

1456. As in previous quarters, in Q4 2010 the Audit Committee were led to believe that there was a strong linkage between hardware sales and software sales. Thus:

(1) Mr Hussain's Q4 2010 Note stated, under "*Gross margins*", that the "*lower margin sales have generated significant new software business for us*" (emphasis added). Deloitte stated in their report to the Audit Committee for Q4 2010 that management's analysis demonstrated a "*strong linkage between the loss making hardware sales and subsequent highly profitable software sales*" (emphasis added).

(2) Again, as in earlier quarters, the Note stated, in the "*Strategic sales*" section, that "*these types of sales were flagged in the previous quarters' results presentation so the market is aware of them*" .

(3) Mr Hussain's Q4 2010 Note went on to state:

> "*We sold to Bank of America following on from the software sales made this quarter and several deals in q1. … Large deals in Q4 included a large sale to Bank of America (we won the*

revenues".

[216] Mr Bloomer confirmed that (a) he and his committee had relied on what they were told by Mr Hussain and Deloitte (b) they understood the linkage to show that hardware sales for a particular customer had driven subsequent software sales to that customer (though he subsequently said that *"… my understanding at the time was that there were a number of major customers who bought both hardware and software and that selling the hardware was an aid to selling the software….But there was no – in my mind at the time – there was no sort of chicken and egg debate about which came first. There was a series of big customers who bought both hardware and software.")*

> *Merrill Lynch legacy data migration to our hosted digital safe environment). This is a major win for Autonomy as we are now a major strategic supplier to the BofA worldwide*".

1457. Notably, Mr Bloomer and the Audit Committee were given to understand that the analysis showed a strong linkage between the hardware sales and subsequent software sales. He confirmed that the Audit Committee was not provided with the Q4 2010 linkage analysis prepared by Autonomy, which he understood had been reviewed by Deloitte.

1458. That might have led to a train of enquiry which would have revealed, as was in my judgment the fact, that none of the statements summarised in paragraph 1456 above could be justified:

(1) There was no linkage between the hardware sales and software sales in any causative sense.[217]

(2) The market had no visibility in relation to the substantial pure hardware sales that Autonomy had undertaken: they were not "*flagged*" in Q1 or Q2 2010, nor does it appear from the transcript that they were disclosed during the Q3 2010 earnings call. When faced with this in cross-examination, Dr Lynch suggested that the hardware sales were "*mentioned in Q3 2009*":

> "*I think there was language added to the Q3 earnings call about something along the line of strategic sales*".

No such language was identified. There was no reference to hardware sales, whether "*strategic*" or otherwise, during the earnings call for Q3 2009 . There were the following cryptic sentences in the Q3 2009 Quarterly Report:

> "*During the quarter we saw some of our large customers promote Autonomy to strategic supplier status. This has led them to adopt a broader set of our solutions in a number of significant deals*".

But without prior awareness it would be difficult to extract from those sentences that Autonomy was making hardware sales.

(3) As to (3) in paragraph 1456 above, no software deal was concluded with BofA in Q4 2010. As already mentioned in paragraphs 1154 to

[217] Shortly before written closing submissions were submitted, Dr Lynch uploaded an email that Mr Egan appears to have sent to Mr Hussain on 3 November 2010 concerning a Morgan Stanley deal. In response to Mr Hussain's query ("*Software and hardware together?*"), Mr Egan responded: "*Separate but proposed in concert as it helps Morgan get arms around discounted hw as part of larger relations*" . In fact, Autonomy's own linkage analysis does not suggest that Morgan Stanley entered into a software deal in Q4 2010 that was 'linked' to any hardware deal (see column U, row 12). In any event, as is plain from the way in which the hardware sales were generated and concluded, Morgan Stanley's ability to get its "*arms around discounted hw*" was not in any way dependent upon or linked to its software purchases from Autonomy.

1155 above, Autonomy had been pushing hard to close a deal with BofA. When a BofA deal could not be completed in the quarter, Autonomy instead entered into deals with two VARs, DiscoverTech and Capax Discovery, on the last day of the quarter, 31 December 2010. Dr Lynch attempted an argument that in conversations between him and Mr Mackenzie-Smith (head of BofA in London) he reminded Mr Mackenzie-Smith of the discounted hardware sales Autonomy had arranged for it: but I have determined that even if they took place, such conversations had no material effect, and more generally that the hardware sale to BofA in Q4 2010 played no part in the deals with DiscoverTech or Capax Discovery, nor in the subsequent direct deal between Autonomy and BofA.

1459. On the issue of cost allocation, and similarly to the previous quarter, Mr Hussain's Q4 2010 Note stated, under "*Gross margins*", that:

> "*We have charged the majority of the cost of the strategic sales to the cost of sales line even though we had agreed with our suppliers that the 50% of the cost would be used for marketing purposes.*"

1460. However, no such agreement had been reached with any hardware supplier; nor were the sales "*strategic sales*"; they were sales of (adopting the Claimants' phrase) *'pure hardware'*.

1461. It follows that Mr Hussain's Q4 Note was misleading, intentionally so in my judgment. As in the case of his previous Notes, Mr Hussain's Q4 2010 Note and Deloitte's own report were calculated to reinforce the Audit Committee's preconceptions and the Defendants' justification of the hardware sales: the Note does not establish the falsity of that justification, but the justification being false, it once more perpetuated it.

1462. Before turning to Mr Hussain's Q1 2011 Note, a point of detail which arose at this time in relation to continuing review of the issue of segmental analysis (see paragraphs 854 to 863 above)[218] illustrates the disregard for the truth that had developed within the cabal whenever it was necessary to depart from it to achieve a desired accounting treatment or approval. On 18 January 2011, Mr Chamberlain provided a paper to Deloitte which was intended to support the conclusion that Autonomy had only one operating segment. One of the points made in the paper was that "*No information is provided to MRL on hardware revenues*". That was false. As set out in detail above, Dr Lynch discussed and agreed the hardware revenue targets in each quarter, and Mr Hussain provided

[218] The issue of segmental analysis was an abiding and important one. It may be recalled that Autonomy management's view was that the group had just one operating segment, being the sale of IDOL software. The importance of that is that if a company has more than one operating segment, each segment must be differentiated in the accounts. The importance of this is clear: segmental accounting would have destroyed the achievement of the purposes of the hardware reselling strategy. By the same token, however, it has seemed to me that it was Deloitte's approval of the view that Autonomy had a single operating segment which caused Mr Bloomer and the Audit Committee not to query the hardware sales further and to accept the allocation of costs from what was in reality a different business to the software business, without any differentiation or warning note.

Dr Lynch with regular updates on hardware revenue throughout each quarter. It is clear that Deloitte were misled in this regard: Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence is that he was not aware that separate revenue targets were set for hardware each quarter or that Dr Lynch received updates from Mr Hussain on the revenue from hardware sales as each quarter progressed.

Mr Hussain's Q1 2011 Note

1463. In addition to familiar complaints about references to *"strong linkage…and subsequent highly profitable software sales"*, to which the answer was the same as in earlier quarters, the Claimants focused especially on words added in the final version circulated to the Audit Committee to the draft Note sent to Dr Lynch (which I have underlined below for the purpose of identification):

> "*strategic package sales that included approximately $20m (9% of total sales) of lower margin business included JPMC and Bank of New York. These sales are part of strategic sales to these companies — for example JPMC is one of our largest customers of compliance software*."

1464. The Claimants took issue with the underlined words. They suggested that those words had been put in at Dr Lynch's request, and they alleged that the suggested strategic link was spurious, not least because no software deal had been entered into by Autonomy with JPMC in Q1 2011 (it had happened much earlier, in Q2 2010).

1465. In addition to their submission (which I accept) that careful consideration of the sequence of drafts shows that Dr Lynch was unlikely to be the person who inserted the words,[219] the Defendants submitted that in any event, the words are unobjectionable: contrary to the Claimants' suggestion, they did not say that there was a software sale to JPMC in Q1 2011, and any linkage which might be taken to be suggested was not inaccurate.

1466. That submission did not, however, negate the fact that it was the overall message which was received which counts; and that message perpetuated and reinforced the Audit Committee's mindset. Both message and mindset can be seen from Mr Bloomer's evidence in his witness statement. Mr Bloomer explained that in Q1 2011 he understood that:

> *"As they had done in their previous reports, Deloitte reviewed Autonomy's strategic hardware sales and concluded that the linkage between the loss making strategic hardware sales and subsequent profit-making software sales justified the allocation of the loss to sales and marketing expense*".

[219]Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch a draft for comment at 13:11 on 16 April 2011: that draft did not include the underlined words. Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch a further draft half an hour later, including the underlined words; the covering email stated "*Please use this draft for review – updated with frrp and shareholder letters comments*". This suggests that Dr Lynch had not yet reviewed the earlier draft, and also that the changes between the two drafts were not proposed by him.

1467. As before, the Audit Committee was not provided with the linkage analysis for that quarter. Mr Bloomer said that both he and the other members of the Audit Committee would have relied on what Deloitte and Mr Hussain had said in their respective reports regarding linkage.

Mr Hussain's Q2 2011 Note

1468. The position in relation to Q2 2011 was much the same. The pattern had been set, the message and the mindset established. In the usual way, Mr Hussain produced a Note for the Audit Committee meeting for Q2 2011, which he shared in draft in advance with Dr Lynch, seeking his comments. Both the draft (which Dr Lynch had reviewed) and the final version presented to the Audit Committee contained the following passage:

> *"Strategic package sales – new strategic package sales in the quarter included approximately $16m (6% of total sales) of lower margin business (JPMC, Bank of America and Bank of New York). In addition, we had deferred lower margin business of $5m from previous quarter due to delivery. These sales are part of strategic sales to these companies – for example at JPMC we sold ediscovery software, continued archiving services and strategic package sales. And at Bank of America we have sold web content management software, archiving and is one of our largest customers of compliance software."*

1469. The Claimants advanced two specific allegations:

(1) First, that the statement that $5 million of hardware sales had been deferred from the previous quarter "*due to delivery*" was false. At least some $2 million of hardware revenue was not recognised in Q1 2011 because the Defendants chose instead to recognise the DiscoverTech/Prisa VAR transaction. The Claimants contended that this had nothing to do with the delivery of hardware, and was instead driven by the desire to achieve a particular level of revenue without unduly affecting gross margin and earnings per share. The Claimants relied on Mr Bloomer's acceptance that he had understood that $5 million of hardware sales revenue had not been recognised in Q1 2011 because the hardware had not been delivered in that quarter and contended that, therefore, the Audit Committee were misled in relation to this issue.

(2) Secondly, that the Note was misleading in stating that the sales to JP Morgan and BofA were strategic package sales and in giving the impression that the hardware sales were linked to software sales in the same quarter. The Claimants contended that in truth, Autonomy did not enter into any software licences with BofA in Q2 2011: the only transaction between Autonomy and those companies in that quarter was a restructured hosting deal where JP Morgan were offered very substantial savings, and there is no evidence whatever to suggest that

that restructuring of an existing hosting deal was in any way driven or impacted by any hardware deal that may have been done with JP Morgan during Q2 2011.

1470. I have concluded in a previous section of this judgment (see paragraphs 1074 to 1100 above) that revenue was improperly deferred in Q1 2011, at the instigation of what I have called the clique or cabal of three, including Mr Hussain, and (so I have found) to the knowledge of Dr Lynch as its éminence grise (see paragraphs 1094 and 1099 above). I accept also, therefore, that in stating that the reason for the deferral was a problem with delivery Mr Hussain's Note was misleading to the knowledge of both Defendants.

1471. In cross-examination, Mr Bloomer agreed that his understanding at the time was that deferral was in consequence of late delivery, and that if in fact it was not delivered late, obviously he would have wanted to understand what the reason was for the apparently unjustified deferral, and if an impermissible one it might have given rise to concern about the approach management was taking in relation to the recognition of revenue. He pointed out, however, that (a) he would have expected the issue as to the cut-off for the quarter (which he told me was always a point of debate which had to be sorted out) to have been carefully checked and verified by Deloitte and would have relied principally on that, and (b) an element which would have had to be considered was that of materiality: *"I mean, 250-odd million of sales in these quarters, 5 million is not that material one way or the other"*.

1472. As to the depiction of the sales to JPMC and BofA as strategic package sales, I would accept that little more was claimed by Mr Hussain than that the hardware sales provided the context for, and may have helped in getting, the software sales. No causal connection was expressly claimed: indeed, the nexus asserted was that which might be claimed for any advertising campaign or customer-oriented effort to encourage sales or customer loyalty. I accept that the hosting restructurings offered sufficient incentive of themselves to make unnecessary any further incentive from discounted sales of hardware; but that does not necessarily mean that the context did not also include such hardware sales, nor that they did not provide a further incentive.

1473. But once more, as it seems to me, this parsing of the separate statements overlooks the fundamental message being conveyed in Q2 2011 as in previous quarters, to the effect that hardware resales were driving software sales, and the rest was anodyne and immaterial detail. Once more the message reinforced the Audit Committee's bedded-in perception of the purpose of the sales, and ensured passive acceptance, rather than quizzical discussion.

1474. The message as the Audit Committee received it is again apparent from the evidence of Mr Bloomer:

(1) Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee for Q2 2011 stated the following:

> "*Management has further extended its analysis determining the strong linkage between the loss making hardware sales and subsequent highly profitable software sales. This continues to show a high degree of correlation between hardware sales and much more profitable licence sales to the same companies*" (emphasis added).

(2) Mr Bloomer understood that Deloitte had reviewed the linkage analysis prepared by management for Q2 2011, and that linkage was established. Again, management's linkage analysis was not shared with the Audit Committee.

(3) Based on what the Audit Committee was told by Deloitte in their report, Mr Bloomer understood that the analysis showed a strong linkage and high degree of correlation between the hardware sales and subsequent software sales.

Conclusions in respect of Mr Hussain's Quarterly Notes

1475. In the round, in my judgment:

(1) Mr Hussain's Quarterly Notes embellished and amplified the message that both Deloitte and the Audit Committee had already accepted from the time of Mr Knights' "conversion" (when he became a "wordsmith").

(2) Deloitte were largely tied into their initial acceptance of the presented purpose of the strategy (in Q3 2009), and the Audit Committee followed their lead.

(3) The Audit Committee were in a sense distracted by conceiving as the principal issue whether or not the newly introduced segmental accounting provisions in IFRS 8 were being properly applied. Mr Bloomer's witness statement, and to a great extent his oral evidence, appear to me to take as the litmus test of the propriety of the accounting and disclosure of the hardware sales whether by reason of their extent or otherwise such sales had come to constitute a separate segment of Autonomy's business, necessitating separate identification, accounting treatment and disclosure of its performance.

(4) The Audit Committee had no idea, for example, that Mr Sullivan considered himself to be, and in reality was, *"basically running a small side business"*.

(5) Mr Hussain's Quarterly Notes do illustrate yet again that management and one or more of the Defendants were content to dissemble if that was necessary to ensure that there was no further disclosure of the hardware sales programme which would have revealed, or would be likely to lead to a train of enquiry that probably would reveal, their true extent and contribution to Autonomy's revenues.

1476. It seems clear and I find that the predominant reason for dissembling, and for the false presentation repeatedly reinforced by Mr Hussain's Quarterly Notes, was that those involved were concerned that revelation of the programme would be perceived in the market to diminish the quality of Autonomy's earning record and prospects and would materially adversely affect analysts' and the market's rating of Autonomy.

Linkage Analysis

1477. I have repeatedly referred in the preceding analysis to the *Linkage Analysis* and the way in which it was deployed by Autonomy's management will by now already be apparent, as will be its purpose. In summary, it served as management's response to:

(1) The shift from placing primary emphasis on the avowed *"joint development programme"* (in collaboration with EMC) as the principal justification for the programme to placing emphasis in justifying the hardware sales (in conjunction with Dell) on their success as an investment in customer relationships and in enabling Autonomy to become a one-stop supplier of both software and hardware to its customers, and

(2) Deloitte's natural requirement for some demonstration of the nexus and growing concern that the hardware reselling strategy, which had initially been presented as a one-off initiative with EMC, was becoming *"business as usual"* (as Mr Welham put it in his witness statement).

1478. In this part of my judgment, I address certain issues in relation to the *Linkage Analysis* raised by the Claimants, and in particular the issue as to (a) what it was designed to show and (b) whether it demonstrated the *"strong linkage"* and *"high degree of correlation"* between hardware and software sales which management asserted in its deployment.

1479. The first is as to what Deloitte expected from it and its format. Although it seems clear that this exercise was in response to a request from Deloitte for an analysis of hardware revenues paid to customers to whom Autonomy also sold software, there was not in evidence any email or other document setting out the terms of the request, and there was a dispute as to what Deloitte gave Autonomy to understand was required.

1480. It was Mr Welham's evidence that Deloitte requested (it is not clear when) what he described as:

> *"an analysis…setting out, on a customer-by-customer basis, what management said was the evidence of the linkage between the loss-making hardware sales and software sales and hosted revenue to the same customers".*

1481. Mr Welham was not cross-examined on this statement. However, in his oral closing argument, Mr Miles suggested that Mr Welham's description was not of the request but of what Deloitte received in answer; and that it accordingly amounted to no more than Mr Welham's own perception of the content and effect of the analysis: any request would have been in line with the simpler one already referred to (but made later in January 2011).

1482. That would tally with Mr Stephan's evidence in chief ("direct" evidence as described in the US) in the US criminal trial as to what he conceived his task in preparing the analysis to be. That evidence (which was adduced by the Claimants under a hearsay notice) was that the spreadsheet did not contain any real analysis of whether the hardware deal actually related to a software deal: it was simply (in Mr Stephan's words):

> *"a mathematical exercise of matching names of customers…So if we sold a hardware to Customer A, we'd be looking for Customer A through the historic revenue to try and find software sales to them."*

1483. Ms Gustafsson's evidence of her understanding of the analysis, in its original form but also as updated, was to the same effect.

1484. In conjunction with the dispute as to what Deloitte had asked for, there was also a dispute about what Deloitte really understood the analysis to show when they received it (and successive versions). The Claimants' case is that Deloitte were misled by the linkage analysis (which was updated quarterly) into thinking that there was a direct causal link between individual hardware sales and individual sales of software, and that then they and Mr Hussain together (unwittingly in the one case and dishonestly in the other) misled the Audit Committee into thinking there was *"strong linkage"*. The Claimants described it as *"yet another exercise designed to disguise the true nature of what Autonomy was doing."*

1485. Apart from what the spreadsheets themselves showed, the Claimants' case was very largely based on the evidence of Mr Welham. Mr Welham's evidence in his witness statement was that Deloitte understood that the linkage analysis prepared by management:

> "*provided directional evidence of a causal link between the hardware sales and subsequent software or hosted revenues*".

1486. Mr Welham was not cross-examined on this either; but in his oral closing submissions, Mr Miles emphasised the words *"directional evidence"* in Mr Welham's statement and submitted that they made clear that Mr Welham cannot have been suggesting that the spreadsheets constituted an analysis of the causal link between particular sales of hardware and particular software sales.

1487. In the absence of cross-examination, it is not easy to determine quite what Mr Welham did mean. But I agree with Mr Miles that the two expressions Mr Welham used (*"directional evidence"* and *"causal link"*) cannot be taken

together to denote *"causal link"*. I think that the nearest synthesis is probably that the analysis suggested a correlation which might indicate, but did not establish, a causal link.

1488. In any event, if Mr Welham was seeking to suggest that Deloitte understood that the linkage analysis provided evidence of something like a causal link, that is not what it appears others in Deloitte thought. In his oral closing submissions, Mr Miles referred me to notes of an FRC interview with Mr Mercer on 4 September 2013 in which Mr Mercer made clear that he and Deloitte appreciated the limitations of the spreadsheets. He plainly regarded the sales of hardware as being in large part a marketing exercise and emphasised more than once both the truism that *"marketing is an art, not a science"* and the aphorism *"half of marketing works"*: *"You just don't know which half. So, so this is what they're doing and overall, we can see it is working."* When asked by the FRC representative *"...what was this analysis of the linkage that management did?"* Mr Mercer replied:

> *"It's analysis of sales that they made of hardware and losses historically…So, it is, "We have made these sales of hardware and losses to these customers. We have made sales to these selfsame customers of software of (blank). It's the same customers we are selling…that we are making this marketing effort and incurring this marketing cost by selling software at losses that we are selling highly profitable software to…" So it's not...you are absolutely right. You can't…show a hardware sale on 30 June 2010 and have an analysis that it's…since they started doing this in a significant way, they've tracked who they've sold this stuff to and them who they've made – how much of the software posted revenues they've made to the same people."*

1489. In other words, Mr Mercer and Deloitte did not treat the spreadsheets as intended to show a causative link, or even a clear correlation between a particular hardware sale and a subsequent software sale: they treated them as showing that, even if a direct nexus was not capable of being demonstrated in particular individual cases, in overall terms the loss-making hardware sales appeared to lead to more high-margin sales to the same group of customers: as in all marketing. Mr Mercer agreed *"absolutely"* that it was not more than *"sort of a reasonable correlation"* across the cohort of customers, adding:

> *"It's by no means perfect and you can't see one following the other but you can see that the vast majority of these companies that they are selling hardware to, they are now selling significant amounts of software to…"*

1490. That accords with Dr Lynch's understanding[220]:

> *"A. … it was like when you do advertising, you don't know exactly which sale comes from the advertising but you*

[220] Dr Lynch was aware that a spreadsheet was prepared each quarter that showed the software bought by customers who bought hardware. However, he did not see the spreadsheets at the time.

> *can do something like – you can look at the amount of advertising in a region and then see what sales you have in that region. It doesn't mean that there's a causality on a one-to-one deal basis.*
>
> *…*
>
> *I think they [i.e. Deloitte] considered there was a link but not on an individual basis, in the same way as there would be a link in advertising something in Northampton and then looking at the number of shoe sales in Northampton. That was my understanding."*

1491. More difficult to answer in those circumstances is the question why this broad correlation, as both Autonomy and Deloitte do seem to have perceived was what the linkage analysis was designed to show, came to be presented by Autonomy to Deloitte and by Deloitte to the Audit Committee as demonstrating a *"strong linkage"* and their resort to it as a significant factor in justifying the allocation of costs to Sales and Marketing expenses.

1492. In that regard, it may be recalled that Mr Hussain's Q2 2010 Note for the Audit Committee asserted that the "*lower margin sales have generated significant new software business for us*"; and Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee for Q2 2010 stated:

> *"These are further examples of a number of strategic hardware transactions [sic] completed by Autonomy to major international banks or other large blue chip companies completed in order to open up new market opportunities and to become the preferred supplier for all such clients' archiving requirements, including both software and hardware.*
>
> *… Management's rationale for entering into these loss making contracts is that Autonomy is seeking to develop a long term strategic relationship with the end-users in order to secure future profitable software sales.*
>
> *Management has prepared an analysis demonstrating the strong linkage between the loss making hardware sales and subsequent highly profitable software sales …"*

1493. In my judgment, it is clear from the contemporaneous documentation, taken as a whole, that both Autonomy and Deloitte understood the limitations of the linkage analysis, but nevertheless deployed it to support the depiction of the nexus between hardware and software sales urged by Autonomy's management. This was to the effect that there was a sufficient correlation between hardware sales and subsequent software sales to the same customers not only to justify taking a loss on the hardware sales, but also to justify an accounting treatment which would allocate a proportion of the costs to Sales and Marketing expenses.

1494. For example, in an internal Deloitte email dated 14 October 2010, Ms Antonia Anderson said of the linkage analysis that Mr Stephan had sent her earlier that day that "*[t]he important thing on this tab is their analysis of the software and hosted sales they generate with customers that they sell this hardware to*". Similarly, in his email to Mr Stephan on 20 January 2011, Mr Leo He of Deloitte requested a copy of the linkage analysis in order to "*justify the rationale that the purpose of Autonomy selling hardware at a loss is to generate significantly more software revenue from these customers, and therefore it is reasonable to classify the hardware loss to be S&M expenses*" . Mr Welham went further in his witness statement and said that when Deloitte accepted that the loss suffered by Autonomy on the hardware sales could be allocated to sales and marketing expenses, with the balance of the cost of the hardware being allocated to COGS, they did so:

> "*on the basis of the linkage analysis provided to us by Autonomy each quarter, which, based on the representations Autonomy management had made to us about the business strategy, appeared to supply adequate support for the allocation of the loss on the hardware sales to sales and marketing expenses*".

1495. I consider and find that there were two main reasons why Deloitte in fact treated the linkage analysis as offering more support than it was designed to show and on its face it did:

(1) First, I agree with the Claimants that it is important to remember that Deloitte did not receive the linkage analysis in isolation. Autonomy had stressed to Deloitte that its strategy of reselling hardware at a loss was in order to become "*the single source supplier for all of the major banks in relation to [their] data management activities*" and that the net loss represented "*an investment in the customer relationship*" which had "*<u>helped enormously in the procurement of significant software sales</u>*". (emphasis added). That was Deloitte's mindset; and, read in that light, the Linkage Analysis complemented and reinforced it.

(2) Secondly, the truth is, as it appears to me, that Mr Knights was very open to persuasion: my impression is, as I have previously indicated, that by now he had changed from sceptical assessor to become an active participant in finding a way to justify the allocation of costs to sales and marketing expenses which would satisfy the Deloitte Reviewers. I have in mind particularly an email dated 18 July 2010, from Mr Knights to Mr Hussain, Mr Mercer and Mr Welham (copied to Mr Chamberlain). In that email, he explained that he, Mr Mercer and the Reviewers had had to draw the line when Autonomy's management had tried once more to get approval for 50% to be allocated as such expenses (which he described as *"not something our compliance people will get comfortable with…we only got comfortable with this in Q1 on immateriality grounds"*). Whilst that might have appeared to show (and both Mr Knights and Mr Mercer have since insisted that their refusal to accept the 50% split did show) the audit function

properly working, he then immediately put forward what was in effect a "work-around" with the same objective. Under a heading in bold type which read *"But there is a solution that makes sense – particularly as in the Q1 call you already highlighted the $10m of hardware in inventory which you highlighted was to be sold in Q2"* he laid out the following plan:

"My solution would be:

- *Record the hardware sales at nil gross margin for IFRS reporting*
- *Take the "loss" as selling expense – (around $4-5m I think)*
- *The market already knows that you will be making Q2 hardware sales as you highlighted this at Q1 and had inventory on the b/s. So any IFRS gross margin one off drop is reasonable and can be explained as part of the strategy.*
- *In the* ***adjusted gross margin*** [original emphasis] *strip back out the hardware element to a "normalised" level and add an explanation –*

By the time you wrap up the $10m hardware b/f and the $4-5m that is in selling expense surely we are almost there??
Just to be totally clear all of us fully get the strategic element to this and the opportunity to open up new markets. The evidence of follow through sales is apparent."

(Mr Welham's again unchallenged evidence (which I accept) was that the last sentence was a reference to the linkage analysis that had been supplied to Deloitte by Autonomy management.)

1496. In summary, therefore, it was not so much the linkage analysis itself as its context and presentation, together with Mr Knights' readiness to accept Mr Hussain's depiction of it as in some way (unexplained) showing *"strong linkage between the loss making hardware sales and subsequent highly profitable software sales"* (to quote from Deloitte's Q2 2010 Quarterly Review), which persuaded Deloitte to regard the linkage as sufficient for them to approve Autonomy's allocation of a significant proportion of the costs of the hardware sales to sales and marketing. That was vital, as I have emphasised before: it was that which ensured that the hardware reselling did not appear to have a concerning adverse effect on gross margin such as would be likely to excite further enquiry, and thus at one and the same time both ensured full realization of the true purpose of the hardware reselling and so much helped to disguise and attenuate the likelihood of inquiry about its true extent.

Other examples showing the determination to avoid disclosure to the market

1497. Finally, in assessing the purpose of the hardware reselling strategy I turn to discuss three aspects of the Defendants' conduct especially relied on by the Claimants as showing that both Defendants were prepared to resort to lies about the true extent and nature of the hardware sales in order to avoid their disclosure or enquiry which would result in the market becoming aware of them and their improper purpose, and thereby Autonomy's dependence on hardware sales to maintain its image as an extraordinarily successful *"pure software"* company.

Q&A scripts

1498. First, I address the scripts prepared by Autonomy and management in advance of every earnings call. These included draft "Qs and As" worked on after 'brainstorming' sessions to 'spot' topics of likely interest or concern to those attending the calls. Many of the questions 'spotted' were never asked, nor therefore were the draft answers given. Obviously, a scripted answer never in fact uttered and never made available cannot be the basis of any claim under FSMA or in misrepresentation. However, the Claimants relied on them nevertheless as evidence of what would have been said if the questions had been asked, and thus of the Defendants' state of mind and intentions.

1499. More particularly, the Claimants relied on individual scripted answers as evidence of (a) a willingness on the part of both Defendants to mislead the market and (b) the fact that neither of the Defendants had any honest belief that the hardware sales were known to the market, or that their purpose was legitimate, or that there was any proper basis for not disclosing them fully.

1500. The Defendants contended, to the contrary, that the scripts could not safely be relied on as evidence of what would have been said if the questions were asked. According to the Defendants, the answers relied on by the Claimants in the scripts were drafts, which went through many iterations and which were prepared by a large number of people, including Autonomy's brokers and investor relations. Scripted answers might or might not reflect input from the operational part of the company to which they related; might or might not have been checked by the Defendants; and might or might not be used. On this view, they were little more than placeholders.

1501. Dr Lynch's elaboration of the process was as follows:

(1) The process involved some 20 people (some junior or only "interns") "brainstorming" with a view to identifying any questions, and generated a mass of them which accumulated over time, many of which might remain on the script unless and until focused on at a second stage of review: *"some of the questions…hang around for years"* and the scripted misleading answer may have been a hangover from previous versions of the Q&A script which had not been reviewed or had simply been insufficiently checked and verified.

(2) Some questions were *"too sensitive"* for the large group and so a smaller group of people, who were privy to *"inside information"* would undertake a *"final phase"* where the *"actual"* answers would be

developed, sometimes at a stage too late to be included in the printed version so that the final answers had to be inserted in handwriting. The scripted answer may in effect have been a placeholder (my word, not his), which would have been amended and changed, had it been focused on, and would not have been used in anything like that form if the question had been asked.

(3) Even after review of the drafts there was a further important stage:

> "*Then the last stage, which is the sensitive one, is those documents are taken and then the questions are amended for things that we know that the rest of the group don't know that are important. And that would be any inside information or anything that we think is competitively very sensitive. So that will not have been surfaced and taken out. The answers that will have been put in in the drafts would have been ones just to move on to the next question, because obviously you can't highlight this to the brokers and the other people that are sitting there. And then we come up with an actual set of answers that we would use. And that's why the answers in those documents are not the same as the answers you hear when the questions are asked sometimes on the call because there's actually a final version that's done.*"

1502. The last amendments would not be made in the printed version, but in manuscript. Thus, the Defendants submitted, the inclusion of a proposed response on a particular draft cannot be relied on as showing anyone speaking on the call intended to use the response in question: and, they concluded, the only responses that can be relied on – and the only information of any possible relevance to the claim before the Court – are those that were in fact given on the calls. Furthermore, in the case of each of the scripted answers on which the Claimants sought to rely, Dr Lynch's evidence was that the statement in question was not in fact, and would not have been, used.

1503. The Claimants submitted that Dr Lynch's repeated efforts to dismiss the scripts as containing draft answers which were later revised and which in any event would never have been (and in the event never were) used as an elaborate concoction which Dr Lynch knew to be patently untrue. They submitted further that Dr Lynch's resort to lying about both the process of developing the answers and the use to be made of them when cross-examined not only fortified their main argument as to the insight shown into the mindset of both Defendants, but also was fundamentally revealing of Dr Lynch's personal dishonesty and his propensity to lie to the court as well as the market.

1504. This aspect thus acquired more importance in a FSMA claim than might be expected of representations never in fact uttered. Indeed, the Claimants spent considerably more time on the Q&A scripts, which were not mentioned in the pleadings, than on what was actually said at the Earnings Calls. They cross-

examined Dr Lynch at length on the process by which they came to be finalised for use in each quarter in the Relevant Period, and on the content of the Q&A drafts (with particular emphasis on the scripts prepared for the Q3 2009 Earnings Call and the Q2 2011 Earnings Call, marking the beginning and end of the sequence in the Relevant Period).

1505. I do not think it is necessary to go through each script quarter by quarter. Instead, I examine first, the dispute as to the way the scripts were produced and my conclusion in that context, before discussing various illustrations of the questions and answers instanced by the Claimants as obviously false and misleading from the Q&A scripts prepared for Q3 2009, for Q1 2010 and for Q2 2011, and Dr Lynch's responses in respect of them. I then set out my conclusions as to the allegations made in respect of the Q&A scripts compositely.

1506. The documentary evidence seems to me to reveal that:

(1) The final printed version of the Q&A document typically went through a number of drafts: for example, that for Q3 2009 appears to have gone through at least 15 drafts;

(2) Autonomy's Investor Relations (headed by Mr Geall, working with Mr Goodman) would typically "own" the document, with suggestions and amendments channelled through them;

(3) Financial Dynamics (Autonomy's external financial PR advisers) would also be involved;

(4) The evidence of larger meetings of 20 or so is sparse. Although in Q3 2009 at least one meeting seems to have taken place, where individuals not in core management may have been present to throw around questions and answers, there is no clear evidence of any such meetings in later quarters, and it is not easy to see when they would have fitted into the chronology;

(5) Even if a group of 20 or so people did assist in "brainstorming" sessions to identify possible questions and answers at the inception of the process, it is plain from the little evidence that there is (confined to Q3 2009) that they took place very near the beginning of the process of developing the script;

(6) The process was soon in the hands of a small group and the drafts were worked up over email, as opposed to in much larger meetings;

(7) Further, in every quarter, the Defendants seem to have been engaged in the final drafts: and in Q1 2010, for example, the source of the questions and draft answers highlighted by the Claimants appears to have been them;

(8) Certainly in Q1 2010, the source of the objectionable/ noxious questions and answers seems to be Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain. As late as 8.03pm the day before the Earnings Call, Dr Lynch was editing the document containing those answers and not correcting them. It seems implausible that any meeting was going to take place after that time when any analysts or interns would see that document;

(9) There are no extant copies in evidence of Q&A scripts with manuscript amendments; and typically, the final printed version would have little room for the insertion of manuscript additions;

(10) There does not appear to be any evidence that Deloitte saw the scripts or the Q&A drafts (or final version) prior to the quarterly earnings calls.

1507. The following scripted questions and answers prepared for the Q3 2009 earnings call (numbered 27, 37 and 107 in the final printed draft) are examples particularly relied on by the Claimants as demonstrating that the Defendants intended to give seriously misleading answers to key questions on hardware sales which had been identified as likely to be asked:

27. How much h/w did you sell in the quarter?	We do sell a bit of H/W every quarter eg telephony cards as part of our call centre solution
37. You used to give licence organic growth in the past. What is it and why don't you give it now?	All we sell is IDOL so that is the organic growth number. The reason for the old categories was when we had legacy things like ultraseek. That is no longer relevant.
107. Do you include hardware revenues in Hosted?	There are some instances where we might sell an appliance solution. But this is rare and the quantum is low as a percentage of group revenues.

1508. The contemporaneous documents show that both Defendants were closely involved in the preparation of the final script. Dr Lynch had to accept that had the answers scripted been given, they would have been seriously misleading.

1509. In addition to his explanation as to the process (see above) and his ultimate defence that the scripted answers would never have been used, Dr Lynch suggested that the Q&A scripts also tended to accumulate historic answers which were (as he described them) *"hangovers"* from previous quarters which were no longer to be used. But he had to retract the suggestion when a further document was put to him later in his cross-examination.

1510. In respect of the Q&As prepared for the Q1 2010 earnings call, the Claimants relied particularly on what they submitted were a series of misleading or diversionary answers to be given to hardware-related questions that had been picked out as likely to be asked. These included:

(1) Q&A 15 was *"How much was the hardware related sales incurred in Q1?"* to which the scripted answer was *"[$5]m went into the solutions."*

(2) Q&A 16 was *"Hardware: Why?"* to which the scripted answer was *"Arcpliance. Up to customers strategic eca"*.[221]

(3) Q&A 19 was *"HW: What was it in the past?"* to which the scripted answer was *"No idea"*.

(4) Q&A 71 was "*You used to give licence organic growth in the past. What is it and why don't you give it now?*", to which the scripted response was "*All we sell is IDOL so that is the organic growth number.*"

(5) Q&A 85 was "*Why haven't you disclosed the hardware sales in the past?*", to which the scripted response was "*Not a material part, normally pure software, sometime software and services or software and hardware…new move to arcplaince.*"

(6) Q&A 108 was *"Inventory – have you done many hardware deals in the past*", to which the scripted answer was *"Not usually a significant amount."*

1511. Of these answers, all but (1) and (4) were exactly as drafted by Dr Lynch, except for the correction of typographical errors which were typical of his usually hurried emails. (1) and (4) also appear likely to have been largely drafted or suggested by him as they were inserted further to a final email on the Q&A script from him to Mr Hussain on the day before the Q1 2010 earnings call.

1512. Turning to the Q&A script prepared for the Q2 2011 earnings call, the Claimants relied particularly on the following:

(1) Q&A 24 was "*Hardware sold in the quarter*". The proposed response was as follows: "*Arcpliance sales were low well under their usual range of a couple of million. 1 would note that this is dissimilar of what they were a year ago*".

(2) Q&A 25 read "*Do you sell hardware other than arcpliance*", to which the scripted answer was: "*Yes occasionally for example we sell a tiny amount of memory cards for PCs that go into call centres*".

[221] Early Case Assessment.

(3) Q&A 66 posed the question "*Cost of sales – how much was hardware?*", to which the scripted response was "*Arcpliance sales 2.5 to 3 [SH to confirm]*".

1513. All of these Q&As were included in an attachment to an email from Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch, Mr Kanter, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Derek Brown (who was also in Autonomy's Investor Relations department) dated 26 July 2011.

1514. Dr Lynch, with some surprising equivocation that it might depend on the context, had to accept in cross-examination that if those answers had been given, they would have been misleading. Plainly they would have been so: in Q2 2011, revenues from hardware sales amounted to about $20.8 million, compared to total revenues of some $256 million.

1515. Dr Lynch sought to defuse this on the same basis as before: (a) the answers had not been used, and so could not have been misleading; and (b) the answers did not show what would have been said:

> *"You're asking me about an answer that may be generated by a 22 year old intern…This is a document which is produced and worked on by 20 people around a table, including in some cases even interns, 22 year olds, people throw in the questions, we write answers. In the answers we do not give inside information because it is – and it includes external people to the company as well. And then this is taken and the actual answers are done and the proof of that is very simple, which is the answers in this document are not the ones you see when questions are asked on a conference call. And that's true for the last, you know, whatever it is, 40 quarters."*

1516. The Claimants submitted that these efforts were confounded by the documents: far from the scripted answers having been "*produced and worked on by 20 people around a table*", they were contained in a draft which Mr Hussain described as "*my latest*" and which he sent to Dr Lynch, Mr Kanter, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Brown only. Furthermore, and as noted above, the fact that Autonomy was selling large quantities of pure hardware in order to report what would appear to be higher levels of software revenue was not "*inside information*". Dr Lynch's answer that the scripted answers were never used missed the point, which was that the question was never asked.

1517. When put to him that the position that was being taken in these responses was dishonest, Dr Lynch said as follows: "*If it had been dishonest, the answer would have been used. The answer was never used*". But, yet again, that misses the point: as it transpired, the question was never asked but the existence of the planned answer suggests, strongly to my mind, that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain were prepared dishonestly to mislead the market.

1518. Dr Lynch's broader point that the transcripts prove that questions which were asked were often answered differently than appeared on the prepared script is less easily dismissed and in fact was not addressed by the Claimants. Dr Lynch did tend to depart from the script: indeed, he almost invariably did so, providing much more detailed answers than had been suggested. For example, questions in Q2 2011 about the growth of Cloud business and developments in Promote were dealt with by Dr Lynch in a far more detailed way than the scripted answers (and indeed some of the questions were left blank in the script).

1519. I have concluded and find as follows:

(1) Even if there were meetings of 20 or so people including "interns" to "spot" questions and suggest possible answers, such meetings had very little influence on the shape and content of the finalised scripts, which had gone through a number of drafts and reflected the input of Autonomy's Investor Relations department, Financial Dynamics and ultimately, and most significantly, Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch. I cannot accept that the scripted answers were the work of interns: they were the work of the Defendants.

(2) There is nothing to support Dr Lynch's evidence that the scripts were or would have been amended in manuscript. The Defendants' revisions of the relevant scripts typically continued until the eve of the earnings call in question. There was no reason for such a process: and there was no space provided, nor any time for such an exercise.

(3) I do not accept either the suggestion that placeholder answers were necessary to protect confidentiality or reflected the fact that those compiling them had no access to confidential information. There was nothing confidential in the answers; and they were in many instances drafted by Dr Lynch himself.

(4) Dr Lynch appears to have paid particular attention to the answers to be given to questions 'spotted' relating to hardware. His contribution to the Q1 2010 scripts is especially clear. The answers he scripted in this context would have been misleading if given.

(5) All that said, however, I doubt that the scripted answers show anything more than that Dr Lynch did not intend to disclose the truth about the hardware sales. I doubt that the answers Dr Lynch would have given would have followed the script had the question(s) been asked. Even where he had drafted the scripted response, I am doubtful that he would have used it: that was not his habit or style. As his performance in the witness box also showed, Dr Lynch is articulate and skilled at presentation. I think at most the scripted answers were aide-memoires, and sometimes I suspect little more than placeholders.

(6) For example, the scripted answer to Q&A 27 in Q3 2009 was a clumsy lie and Dr Lynch is not clumsy; neither would either Defendant, or any

of those speaking on behalf of Autonomy, have fixed on that answer as likely to pass unnoticed by, or without comment from, Deloitte and Mr Welham (who listened into the earnings calls). Dr Lynch may well have hoped that the question would not be asked, did not want to commit to any focused answer in advance, and trusted himself to equivocate or distract attention if and when the question came, with the comfort of knowing that the practice was not to allow more than one follow-up question.

(7) Dr Lynch had taken the advice from Deloitte, as adopted by the Audit Committee, to be that *“the information did not have to be disclosed”* (as he stated when cross-examined): he would not simply have stated what the hardware sales were. Nor would Mr Hussain, who was very reluctant to say anything unscripted anyway: he would have referred the question to Dr Lynch, and said nothing more.

(8) The truth is that the Defendants were prepared to mislead to keep analysts and the market away from the nature and extent of the hardware sales.

(9) The Q&A scripts further undermined Dr Lynch’s reliability and credibility in my eyes. They support the conclusion urged by the Claimants as summarised in paragraph 1503 above.

Representations to disguise the hardware reselling strategy made in Earnings Calls

1520. That conclusion is also supported by various representations actually made by the Defendants in the course of Earnings Calls in the Relevant Period. The Claimants’ pleaded allegations in this regard related to the earnings calls for Q3 2009, Q1 2010 and Q2 2010: they did not advance allegations in their RRAPoC or in their opening in respect of the other Earnings Calls in the Relevant Period. Mr Rabinowitz did, however, cross-examine Dr Lynch on the other earnings calls in the Relevant Period in support of the general case of dishonesty against both Defendants.

1521. Whilst I have borne in mind the others, and have mentioned them in passing in the section on the chronology of Autonomy’s relationship with Dell and hardware reselling, it is for present purposes sufficient to focus in this context on Q3 2009, Q1 2010 and Q2 2010. Each one illustrates a different set of what the Claimants contended were misrepresentations to conceal hardware reselling and examples of serious dishonesty on behalf of the Defendants. I address at some length the Q3 2009 Earnings Call, which was principally related to the costs attributable to a new product of Autonomy’s called SPE. SPE was an issue of some importance in the Claimants’ case[222] (though it was one which the Defendants tended to shy away from and seek to marginalise). The Claimants contended that (a) it demonstrated the lengths to which the Defendants would go to conceal hardware reselling and costs and (b) it reveals

[222] About 100 pages were devoted to it in the Claimants’ written closing submissions. Dr Lynch dealt with it in about 30 pages.

"a willingness on the Defendants' part to tell lies to Autonomy's auditors, the market and to this Court."

Q3 2009 Earnings Call

1522. In its Quarterly Report for Q3 2009, Autonomy had capitalised $11.7 million in R&D expenses. This figure was much higher than the R&D costs capitalised for the equivalent quarter the previous year which amounted to only $3 million. The Q3 2009 R&D figure was stated in that report to be *"primarily due to the new IDOL SPE product reaching commercial exploitation phase."*

1523. The principal focus of the Q3 2009 Earnings Call was Dr Lynch's announcement of the launch of SPE. He described SPE during the call as *"a complex piece of technology",* a *"radical technology",* which could *"clip on to pretty much any relational database"* and was *"probably the second most important product in the Company's history".* He knew, he said, that it was *"geek stuff at the moment"* but it was soon, he hoped in 2010, *"going to open up markets in a very different way for us."* He talked of a *"very large addressable market"*, an *"$18 billion market".*

1524. On the Q3 2009 Earnings Call, Dr Lynch told the market that the sales and marketing expenditure incurred in Q3 2009 in relation to SPE was *"$18 million/$20 million, with about $4 million extra on the Quick Start program".* In explaining the significant increase in Sales and Marketing expenses, Dr Lynch talked of[223]:

(1) the time spent on a BETA programme model necessary for such a complex piece of technology;

(2) the work done on *"advertising in the trades"* and working very closely with the (computer) analysts;

(3) the *'Quick Start initiative'* for which he said there had been *"over demand"*;

(4) tax breaks negotiated by Mr Hussain which had given *"a little bit of leeway… to increase the Quick Start program considerably above where we expected it to be"*;

[223]In summary, on the Q3 2009 earnings call, combined with the accompanying presentation, Dr Lynch attributed the SPE marketing spend figures to five steps:

(1) Advertising in the trades;
(2) Discussions with analysts;
(3) A Quick Start initiative;
(4) A Beta programme-which was already underway and released to several hundred Beta customers, and
(5) Specialist Seminars.

(5) *"flying key customers from around the world to special selective seminars…small affairs…done for about 15 customers at a time….over two days…and that worked very well"*

1525. Mr Kanter added that the IDOL SPE launch had been *"acclaimed by industry analysts"*.

1526. Mr Hussain said in seeking to clarify (a) the reasons for the reduction in gross margin in the quarter to 86% compared to 92% in Q3 2009 (as stated in the Q3 2009 Quarterly Report), and (b) the decline in Autonomy's operating margin in Q3 2009 (which fell to 34%, compared to 42% in Q3 2008 and 47% in Q2 2009), as follows:

(1) *"Moving on to gross margins. At 86% this quarter, we saw the effect of a couple of percentage points of the over-demand on the Quick Start program for the new product release"*; and

(2) *"Operating margins were at 34.5%. This was affected by seasonality and the additional spend on the new product release. Now excluding the effects of the new product release, i.e. the additional marketing spend, the lower gross margin effect of the over-demand, and adding back the net effect of the capitalised R&D, then operating margins would have been 43%, around that number"*.

He also clarified, in answer to an analyst's question, that *"the spend on SPE in Q3 was a one-off in Q3 only."*

1527. The Claimants' case can simply be stated: the R&D capitalised costs of $11.7 million did not arise in respect of the development or launch of SPE or its related product 'Quick Start'[224]. They were a disguise to explain increases in marketing expenses and R&D costs, and decreases in gross margin, without any mention of the effect on these metrics of the rapidly developing and substantial, but loss-making, programme of hardware sales instigated further to the Loudham Hall meeting in July 2009.

1528. According to the Claimants, who relied principally on the evidence of Dr Blanchflower, behind all the fanfare, SPE was not a new standalone product at all. It did not involve writing any new code. It was simply a relatively straightforward repositioning of IDOL's existing meaning-based computing to structured data, and there were no additional statistical or probabilistic features in SPE which did not already exist in IDOL.

1529. The Claimants' case was that the real costs of SPE's development were small: Dr Blanchflower estimated them at around $50,000. Other costs might take the aggregate to $100,000; but no more. The Claimants' other main witness on the point, Mr Lucini, accepted a slightly higher total amount for development costs: $70,000, rather than $50,000, based on an industry charging rate.

[224] For accuracy: of the $11.7 million, $7.3 million was said to be referable to SPE.

1530. The Claimants contended that the documentary evidence revealed no significant SPE sales and marketing expenses in Q3 2009 and that it is impossible for anything approaching $18-20m to have been spent on sales and marketing for the launch of SPE and that the true figure was unlikely to exceed $100,000.

1531. They submitted that, with the exception of a small sum spent on advertising, there was no documentary support for there having been any expenditure on any of the specific categories mentioned by Dr Lynch in the Q3 2009 Earnings call. According to the documents, and the evidence of Dr Blanchflower and Mr Lucini:

(1) The total advertising spend was $78,342 and Dr Lynch personally limited such expenditure to no more than $80,000 in an email on 23 August 2009 to Ms Eagan.

(2) There were very few documented discussions with analysts. The Claimants accepted that there was a video conference held with Ms Sue Feldman of IDC on 14 September 2009 but submitted in their written closing that there is no evidence of any payment made in respect of this and that if there was it is likely to have been immaterial. The Claimants accepted that briefings were held with Mr Muncaster on 15 September 2009: but on the documents, that appeared to be that.

(3) There was no documentary evidence of any Beta program (being sample software testing) in existence in relation to SPE in Q3 2009, and the Claimants relied also on the evidence of Dr Blanchflower and Mr Lucini that there was none. They noted further that (a) when, following the press release on 16 September 2009, customers asked whether they could join the Beta program, they were told with Dr Lynch's knowledge and/or by his direction that the Beta program was closed due to over demand; and that Dr Lynch personally created the pretence of a Beta program when none existed; and (b) Dr Lynch, by email on 23 October 2009, had directed a response to be given to Mr Goodman of Fidelity who had registered to download the Beta version of SPE, which was to tell him it was closed due to overdemand. Lastly in relation to this point, they further relied on a prepared answer in a Q&A script prepared on 20 April 2010 for Autonomy's Q1 2010 earnings call stating the product had been sold so Beta was not relevant, which the Claimants submitted was a way of ducking the question because Dr Lynch knew the Beta program had not existed.

(4) Contrary to what Dr Lynch told the market, and though it was stated to account for some $4 million of the sales and marketing costs, there was no Quick Start initiative or programme in existence. The evidence of Dr Blanchflower and Mr Lucini was to the effect that they were unaware of the existence of any such program in circumstances where they would be reasonably expected to if such a program existed. There was no documentation to substantiate systems engineers ("SEs") coordinating with customers in order to install SPE such as when to

turn up, with what equipment, and identifying how SPE may be useful to such a customer, and a lack of witness evidence to the effect that SPE was installed at customer sites in Q3 2009.

1532. Apart from a single seminar held at Cliveden House from 09 September 2009 to 10 September 2009, there were no such selective seminars in Q3 2009 which involved flying key customers from around the world. There was none of the supporting documentation which might be expected: no guest lists, invitations, flight bookings, hotel bookings, schedule of events, nor any agenda for the seminars. The Claimants suggested that if such seminars had really occurred then they would have involved Mr Lucini; and he denied any involvement. Dr Lynch had not called a single witness who was claimed to have been a customer, though this had been a pleaded issue. Further, the Claimants relied on, as being obviously a concoction, Dr Lynch's suggested response to an email dated 14 September 2009 sent to Mr Hussain by an analyst called Mr Raimo Lenschow asking for an update on progress on the product:

> *"Premarketing well underway, ad starting to run, customer seminars with them being flown in from around the world already done and on going, demo appliances out, industry analyst briefed etc……..sadly we missed off financial analysts as they have no budget…!"*

1533. The Claimants added to this barrage asserting, in effect, that the Q3 2009 Earnings Call had amounted to a pack of lies, that a memorandum prepared by Ms Gustafsson (of Autonomy's finance department) ("the R&D Memo"), which had been produced to justify to Deloitte the R&D figures in the accounts, was based on figures which had no factual foundation and were untrue. The figures had been provided to Ms Gustafsson by the cabal, and in particular, Dr Menell and Mr Chamberlain. Ms Gustafsson made clear that she had very largely relied on the information that had been thus supplied to her.

1534. There were two primary elements in the calculation of R&D capitalisation in the R&D memo:

(1) $4.8 million was attributed to time spent by SEs and
(2) $2.5 million was attributed to time spent by the development engineers.

1535. The Claimants detailed at considerable length their reasons for dismissing the amount of time attributed to SEs, which involved an extended account of the usual work they undertook and the calculation of the monetary value to be attributed to their time. For present purposes, the following should suffice:

(1) The SEs were uncontroversially described in the R&D Memo as follows:

> "*Systems Engineers are a team of individuals traditionally associated with ensuring that software supplied by Autonomy meets the needs of the customers['] existing systems …*

Typically the work of an SE is the tailoring of Autonomy software, or providing 'proof of concept' to customers to demonstrate that the software meets their requirements".

(2) The basic approach was stated in the R&D memo as follows:

"From discussions with Pete Menell, a list was provided showing SEs who spent all of their technical time in Q3 09 developing SPE through trialling the software with real databases. 75% of Q3 SE costs have therefore been capitalised in line with the proportion measured and agreed with HMRC."[225]

(3) Dr Menell simply provided a list, later expanded by Mr Chamberlain without apparent justification, of all Autonomy SEs, and the figure in the R&D Memo represented 100% of all their 'technical time' (being 75% of total time).

1536. The Claimants submitted that it was plain and should be found that (i) none of the SEs in Mr Chamberlain's list spent all of their technical time in the first three quarters of 2009 developing SPE by trialling the software with real customer databases; on the contrary, there is no evidence that any of these SEs spent any of their time in the first three quarters of 2009 doing that, with one minor exception of one SE, who spent some time assisting Mr Lucini with the construction of the SPE demo in Q3 2009. They submitted further that that conclusion was further justified by the complete absence of any of the evidence that might be expected if the SEs had been trialling SPE with clients, such as feedback and customer comments.

1537. The Claimants also submitted a shorter answer to the analysis in the R&D Memo based on Dr Blanchflower's evidence to the effect that SPE did not come into existence until midway through Q3 2009 itself. They pointed out that it was a logical impossibility for the SEs, at any earlier stage during Q3 2009, let alone in Q1 or Q2 2009, to have been trialling with customers a product that had not yet come into existence.

1538. The amount ($2.5 million) allocated to development engineers (see paragraph 1534 above) for work described in the R&D Memo as having been a *"direct result of the new product, SPE"* was calculated from spreadsheets showing the time spent on R&D by each of the development teams within Autonomy. Each development engineer's salary as recorded for national insurance was extrapolated and then multiplied by the days recorded as having been spent by that engineer on R&D work. Ms Gustafsson told me in cross-examination that the attribution of $2.5 million to SPE, out of a total of $6.94 million capitalised

[225] 75% was permitted by HMRC as qualifying 'technical' work for tax relief purposes; but as Ms Gustafsson agreed the further implicit suggestion that 75% was an accurate estimate of the time spent on SPE was obviously wrong. The notion that all the SEs had spent all their technical time on SPE was absurd: it would have crippled the Autonomy group, as Mr Lucini pointed out.

for R&D work for development enquiries, was based on a *"sort of qualitative context around the development of SPE that you can't do in a spreadsheet."*

1539. On that somewhat opaque basis, the R&D Memo asserted, for example, that it was likely that *"over half"* of the $62,589 of R&D time incurred by the Cambridge team was attributable to SPE, and a round figure of $400,000 was taken as the value of the time spent by that team on SPE. Ms Gustafsson told me, when asked what was the source of the assertion of the proportion of R&D time spent on SPE by the Cambridge team, that she could not remember specifically but *"I would speculate that it would have been Pete"*. She confirmed that she had no recollection of having spoken to Dr Blanchflower, who was based in Cambridge and head of R&D, about how much time he and his team had actually spent. I accept Dr Blanchflower's evidence and find that she had not done so. His evidence was that the value of time spent by the Cambridge team was a maximum of £24,000.

1540. The Claimants made the further point that on Dr Lynch's own case SPE predominantly involved reconfiguration of IDOL. The R&D Memo asserted that a number of other Autonomy development teams – Discovery Mining, iManage and Web Content Management ("WCM") – in total incurred $2 million worth of time in the development of SPE. But IDOL was the responsibility of the Cambridge development team led by Dr Blanchflower . His evidence was that other teams did not have access to the IDOL source code, which was only available to the Cambridge development team, and they played no part in the development of IDOL. Accordingly, it is inherently unlikely that they would have played any part in the development of SPE. When it was put to Dr Blanchflower that he was not in a position to know what work was being done by the WCM team in 2009 he answered firmly but fairly:

> *"Was I aware of everything that the WCM team were doing? No. Were they working towards SPE? No. But I didn't know all of the details of what they were doing, correct."*

1541. The Defendants' response to this barrage sought to re-address the origin, substance and worth of SPE:

(1) SPE was a real product which predated the hardware sales: it was *"not some kind of a blind for the hardware costs"*.

(2) Long before the Loudham Hall meeting, Dr Lynch had stated at the January 2009 earnings call that:

> *"Now onto the really interesting one. Our probabilistic structured technology is new technology which we've been working on. We think that's going to be very powerful technology and that's going to lead to a large market. And so that's something that we will see revenue start to come in, in 2009."*

(3) Contrary to the impression given in some of his evidence at trial, Dr Blanchflower had regarded this as a potentially huge new product line with *"the potential to open an entire new market"*. That view was shared within Autonomy.

1542. With particular reference to the issue of R&D capitalisation:

(1) Much had been made by the Claimants about the capitalisation of R&D costs in respect of SPE but this was a *"peripheral area of the case",* with no relevance to any part of the Claimants' loss: the Claimants' criticism of lack of evidence and witnesses to speak to the matters was misplaced.

(2) The Claimants' approach to the capitalisation of SEs' time was flawed. In particular, the SEs were in many ways and over a long period *"contributing to the development effort"* with regard to structured functionality.

(3) Not only Ms Gustafsson and the finance department but also Deloitte were evidently satisfied as to the amount of SE time being capitalised, after careful testing.

(4) None of the Claimants' witnesses could speak to what the true costs which should be capitalised were. Dr Blanchflower *"did not have the expertise to comment on which costs should or should not be capitalised".* Mr Lucini could not comment on what was involved: *"He had a customer-facing role and was not usually involved in the development of products"* nor was he in any position *"to accurately quantify the exact time spent by SE's in relation to SPE."* Ms Gustafsson was the only person directly involved in the accounting.

1543. The Defendants[226] dismissed as unsupported by the evidence and unwarranted the suggestion that the statements about the derivation of marketing costs in the Q3 2009 Earnings Call were false.

1544. Dr Lynch pointed out that Mr Welham had listened to the call; Mr Welham confirmed that if he had heard anything misleading on that call, he would have raised it with his engagement partner, and that he did not have occasion to do that. Dr Lynch also maintained that none of the witnesses on whom the Claimants had relied had been in a position to give reliable evidence on how much was spent on marketing costs. Dr Blanchflower was not part of the marketing department, and nor was Mr Lucini. Mr Lucini told Morgan Lewis in an interview in December 2012 that it would be difficult to quantify the marketing costs for SPE.[227]

[226] Mr Hussain's submissions barely addressed this aspect of the matter; but I have taken him to support and adopt Dr Lynch's submissions.
[227] Mr Lucini was cross-examined in relation to this: he clarified that all he was seeking to say at that interview in 2012, and certainly as he saw the position now, was that he would not have known without finding out from Ms Harris.

1545. Dr Lynch sought to downplay the role of Dr Blanchflower, describing him in written closing submissions as merely a *"titular head of research and development…largely involved in IDOL development"* to whom *"not everyone in R&D reported"* and who himself had *"very little interaction with members of senior management other than Dr Menell."* He *"did not have the expertise to comment on which costs should or should not be capitalised"*; he could only speak to work on coding and not as to work streams more generally: it was stated that *"he did not know what the SEs were doing on structured data, or to what extent that could properly be included in the R&D capitalisation."* More generally, his evidence on this aspect of the matter should be discounted: he *"had a propensity to make firm statements as to matters that he was not involved in and could not recall"*.

1546. Mr Lucini, similarly, was said not to have *"handle[d] the area"*. In cross-examination he admitted being aware of a long list of people in Autonomy involved in marketing, with at least some working on SPE,[228] but acknowledged that he did not know precisely what they were doing:

> *"Q. You were not in the marketing department, so you would not have known in detail the breakdown of the marketing expenditure?*
>
> *A. That is correct.*
>
> …
>
> *Q. Or what all the people in the marketing department were doing?*
>
> *A. No.*
>
> *Q. You didn't have day-to-day responsibility for managing the marketing of SPE?*
>
> *A. I did not."*

1547. Further, Dr Lynch contended that the documents in fact showed a number of activities being undertaken during the launch period, including (it was said) a *"focused"* advertising and briefing campaign for analysts and journalists and advertisements placed in trade publications. In addition, Autonomy spent considerable time and money briefing trade journalists and analysts about the product, which was said to have generated immediate interest amongst industry analysts and writers. Mr Lucini explained that there were also roadshows to what he described as "*quite a lot of people*", specifically analysts, press and customers.

1548. Dr Lynch had been advised there was a soft launch of the product through the beta programme. Despite being subjected to a lengthy cross-examination

[228] The cross-examiner did not clarify in every instance whether the individual was working on SPE.

regarding the roll-out of this programme, Dr Lynch did not have a detailed understanding of its delivery, and made it clear that his understanding derived from documents he had seen subsequently. He told me he could only "*speculate*" about these things that went on *"far below his level"*.

1549. He emphasised that in any event, at the time (i.e. October 2009), he believed SPE to be in the beta phase, and submitted that was a reasonable belief on the basis of the documents. His view was that a beta programme would typically involve two aspects: a process of gathering up interest and testing of the product. Such programmes were normally run through the Customer Liaison Support Program,[229] who were the experts in this area. He contended that the evidence showed this happening in the case of the SPE beta programme: participants registered for the beta programme via Autonomy's website,[230] and the registrations were forwarded to telesales to take up with the customer.

1550. Though Dr Lynch said that this likewise was a process that took place "*way below*" his level as CEO, he told me he believed that the Quick Start programme was also ongoing as of October 2009 and referred to documents such as a request to approve the purchase of servers for the "*SPE Early Starter program*" in October 2009. He relied especially on Dr Blanchflower's acceptance that VMS participated in the Quick Start programme in early 2010. With his usual reverence for anything *"secret squirrel"* Dr Lynch told me that he believed that some of the first customers that received SPE through the beta/Quick Start programmes were likely to have been intelligence customers.

1551. Dr Lynch also maintained that, contrary to the Claimants' presentation, there was also expenditure on customer seminars, and customers had been flown to seminars, called "Customer Innovation Forums" or "CIFs", in (so he believed) Cliveden, Napa Valley and Mexico. There was some documentary material, not mentioned by the Claimants, demonstrating both that CIFs were taking place in Cliveden (for UK/EU customers) and Napa Valley (for North American customers) in October 2009, and that Autonomy was responsible for customers' air fares (though as I elaborate below, nothing in the document seemed to suggest that they were SPE-specific).

1552. Dr Lynch's written closing submissions also went into some detail about the marketing and use of SPE after its launch, instancing a number of case examples of it being presented (and more occasionally deployed by Autonomy in Interwoven products). Also instanced was an internal Autonomy email to (amongst others) Mr Lucini and Dr Blanchflower dated 3 February 2010 reporting that a demonstration of SPE to a VMS representative had gone very well: *"he was pleased with the results and sees great potential in SPE…[and] …took away from this both a very positive impression of SPE as well as a great concrete example of how it could solve problems for his own needs…"* .

1553. However, Dr Lynch's over-arching point was that he was not directly involved. He had understood that the finance department had determined properly R&D costs by reference to the proportion of SE and Development Engineers' time costs at the rate agreed by HMRC but he was not involved in

[229] Often referred to in the documents as "CLSP" or "CL+SP".
[230] The SPE page on Autonomy's website included a link for registration.

the R&D capitalisation, did not know any detail in relation to it, gave no instructions in relation to it, and was not involved in the production of the R&D Memo or speaking to Deloitte about it.

1554. Similarly, he maintained that he depended on what he was told as to marketing costs. He said he was not involved in the beta or Quick Start programmes: he had been informed of the plan for the soft launch of the product via a document and was entitled to rely on its accuracy. He acknowledged having approved an item of spend for SPE, but that was all: as CEO, he was not involved in approving everything spent.

1555. Likewise, he asserted that he was entitled to rely on the documents given to him as the basis for his statements on the Q3 2009 Earnings call, including the figures he gave.

Summary

1556. After this rather lengthy digression into the detailed evidential dispute about SPE, I turn to my assessment as to whether, as the Claimants submitted in their written closing, (a) both Defendants *"knew that the statements in the Q3 2009 Quarterly Report and on the Q3 2009 earnings call about Autonomy's R&D capitalisation being primarily attributable to SPE were false"* and (b) in the Q3 2009 Earnings Call, knowing already from (and as set out in) the Strategic Deals Memorandum that Autonomy was intending to treat \$19.5 million of hardware costs as sales and marketing expenses,

> *"Dr Lynch lied about the sales and marketing and COGS expenditure on SPE in Q3 2009…to enable Autonomy to cover up the very substantial costs it had incurred in the quarter on buying pure hardware and which it was treating as a sales and marketing expense."*

1557. It is reasonably clear, in my view, that the R&D Memo was to a considerable extent a concoction. The figures given for the time cost of SEs was greatly exaggerated (well beyond any acceptable margin). It was based on (a) a list of SEs initially provided by Dr Menell but then enlarged by Mr Chamberlain who (I accept and find) cannot have had any sufficient reason to suppose had done any work on SPE; (b) treating all those on this artificially enlarged list (as I find it to have been) as having spent 100% of their technical time on SPE, which was entirely unrealistic.

1558. My impression that the amount attributed to SE time costs, which was the most important element of the capitalisation costs, was contrived is fortified by: (a) the lack of any contemporaneous documentation showing any work done by the SEs in relation to SPE; (b) the lack of any witness evidence from SEs (including none from Mr Zanchini, all of whose technical time in Q1, Q2 and Q3 2009 was treated as having been spent on SPE, who works for Darktrace and must have been amenable to a witness summons); (c) Mr Chamberlain's response to an email from Deloitte sent also to Mr Hussain and dated 14 October 2009, in which he blamed Deloitte for not having raised the issue of timesheets for SEs until too late, assured them that *"the 75% is not a number picked out of the air"* (which deflected from the real issue as to what,

if any, time that was properly to be applied to) and under the guise of dealing with the issue *"in a practical and sensible way"* studiously ignored the actual request which was for an opportunity *"to talk to 5 systems engineers to understand their role in the development"*.

1559. Similarly, in my view the time cost attributed in the R&D Memo to development engineers was simply the say-so of Dr Menell and Mr Chamberlain with no feet in the facts. Had there been any intention to base the figures on fact, it seems to me inconceivable that Dr Blanchflower would have been entirely ignored in the process.

1560. The attribution of a capitalised sum of $2 million to the work of other Autonomy development teams in the development of SPE lacked any evidential support; and I agree that it is inherently unlikely that any of those teams played any such role in the development of SPE, given that they had no access to the IDOL source code.

1561. My view that the R&D memo was concocted disposes also of the notion that the Defendants (and more especially Dr Lynch) were entitled to rely on Deloitte's approval of the R&D capitalisation figures. It was Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence, and it seems to me to be obvious (and I find), that Deloitte would not have accepted the $7.3 million capitalisation if they had known that the R&D memo had no real footing in fact. I accept and find also that the Audit Committee, who were dependent on what Deloitte reported to them, were thereby also misled.

1562. Focusing next on Dr Lynch's justification of what he said at the Q3 2009 Earnings Call about marketing costs and launch spend in the sum of *"I think nearer $18/20 million, with about $4 million extra on the Quick Start program"*:

(1) Dr Lynch's suggestion, not pleaded and unstated in his witness statement and skeleton argument, was that his reference needed to be read in the context of what he said at the Q2 2009 earnings call and in a website entry: it was, he said, a reference to Autonomy's aggregate marketing and launch spend for a couple of new products and was *"more than just SPE"*. I do to think it is necessary for me not to say more than that (a) having reviewed what he said in Q2 2009 there was nothing in it to support this construction, and indeed it appeared to reinforce that he was talking about SPE only; (b) the website similarly did not assist him. That was further reinforced by evidence of the drafts provided by Dr Lynch to direct Mr Hussain's responses in email exchanges with an analyst at Citibank called Mr Hoi Chuen Lam. In short, Dr Lynch's suggestion of some different meaning to what he said at the Q3 2009 Earnings Call in this regard was a false expedient for which the only apparent explanation is that he knew he had given inflated figures: and I find he did know that accordingly.

(2) As to the five categories of SPE expenditure he referred to:

i. The Claimants always accepted that some $78,342 had been spent on trade advertising.

ii. There was no evidence of material expenditure in relation to analysts.

iii. I would accept that, contrary to the Claimants' case, there may have been some events or meetings which might be said to have been part of a *"soft launch"* but very little (if any) evidence of an established beta programme.

iv. Similarly, there was little or no support for the suggestion that material sums, let alone $4 million, were referable to the Quick Start initiative with strategic customers. As the Claimants observed, even Dr Lynch himself did not positively assert in his witness statement that the Quick Start initiative had taken place, and could not name a single site at which it was said to have taken place apart from vague reference to there being one *"within the UK intelligence community"*. None of his witnesses (including Ms Pereira, who did address SPE) provided any support either. No supporting evidence was provided. Dr Lynch relied on assertions by his Investor Relations team and in the draft *"Q&A script"* for which no more foundation was provided either.

v. The evidence that Autonomy had arranged and flown customers in for trade seminars seemed to me to illustrate how little support Dr Lynch had for his statements. None of it appeared to be SPE-specific; the seminars were concerned with Autonomy generally. It may be that SPE was to be mentioned at the seminar as one of the *"latest product developments"*: but the only material to which I was referred seemed focused principally on Autonomy's recent acquisition of Interwoven and *"Autonomy's iManage brand"*.

(3) Whilst the figure of only $100,000 suggested by the Claimants as all that had been demonstrated to be referable to marketing SPE may be too low, I am satisfied that what Dr Lynch said at the Q3 2009 Earnings Call about marketing costs and the Quick Start initiative had no foundation.

1563. The three questions which seem to me to remain are (a) what involvement Mr Hussain had; (b) Dr Lynch's overarching point that he himself relied on others to verify what he was to say, and he believed what he said to have been true; and (c) subject to that, whether the falsities were deliberately aimed at disguising the hardware sales and costs.

1564. As to (a) above, Mr Hussain was the CFO, in charge of the finance department. The question of capitalisation of R&D costs was a matter within his responsibilities. There are clear signs that he conceived the use of R&D

capitalisation to disguise hardware costs. I have taken the following from the Claimants' analysis, which I accept and adopt:

(1) On 1 October 2009, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Chamberlain and Dr Menell suggesting that the R&D for Q3 2009 should be $9.5 million, and asserting (without any possible basis) that this was all "*to do with the enormous work pete and the team have been doing on the structured probabilistic engine*".

(2) Mr Hussain was the sole recipient of Mr Chamberlain's email of 7 October 2009 identifying a $2 million shortfall in R&D.

(3) He was copied on the email exchanges on 8 October 2009 regarding the identification of SEs to include in the capitalisation, and was kept informed by Mr Chamberlain of the fact that Ms Gustafsson would be meeting Dr Menell to revise the R&D Memo.

(4) Mr Hussain was also copied on Mr Chamberlain's exchanges with Deloitte on 14 October 2009.

(5) In the context of justifying the R&D capitalisation, Mr Hussain also provided to Mr Chamberlain, for relaying to Deloitte, a forecast of the revenues that SPE was expected to bring in.

(6) Deloitte's working paper dated 15 October 2009 duly recorded these figures as Mr Hussain's estimate of the revenues that SPE would bring in.

1565. To my mind, this has all the hallmarks of the working of the cabal. There is no reason to suppose that Mr Chamberlain (Mr Hussain's trusted deputy) or Dr Menell would have constructed a dishonest fraudulent analysis to support the R&D capitalisation, without Mr Hussain's knowledge and approval. In my judgment, Mr Hussain knew that the R&D capitalisation was based on concocted figures. It seems more likely than not that he would also have known of the false 'marketing cost' figures.

1566. The Claimants speculated that this perhaps may explain why, on 18 October 2009, shortly before the Q3 2009 earnings call, Mr Hussain wrote to Dr Lynch saying:

> "*I am burnt out...given my "anal" nature i am spending all my time (awake and asleep) worrying about the 10 minutes on Tuesday where i have to answer the analyst questions and i'm not doing anything else, i need you to take the questions this time round unless they are really easy, i don't want to deal with the analysts anymore.*"

1567. As to (b) in paragraph 1563 and Dr Lynch's overarching point, far from being "*best placed*" to know as the Claimants asserted he was, Dr Lynch's case was that:

(1) He was not involved in the R&D capitalisation, and there is no evidence at all that he knew any detail of it or, as the Claimants suggested, gave any instructions in relation to it.

(2) He was not involved in the R&D Memo and there is no suggestion he spoke to Deloitte as part of the process.

(3) Nor was he involved in the detail of the sales and marketing work. He was not involved in either of the beta or Quick Start programmes, both of which went on far below his level as CEO. He was told there was to be a soft launch of the SPE product in September, and that customer seminars were ongoing. It was not put to him that anything in that document was inaccurate, or intended to mislead; on the contrary, it appeared to be accepted by the Claimants that this document accurately represented Autonomy's plan for the launch of SPE. Dr Lynch was, accordingly, entitled to rely on it.

(4) The statements made by Dr Lynch on the Q3 2009 earnings call were based on information he had been given and he had no reason to doubt its veracity. As Dr Lynch explained, he was given drafts of the presentations in order to prepare for the calls. The documents, which show the Investor Relations team sending Dr Lynch the PowerPoint presentation and Q&A, stated that the beta and Quick Start programmes were underway, that the feedback had been positive, that $20m had been spent on the new product launch, and that c. $3-4m had been incurred due to overdemand on the Quick Start programme. This information came from others in the organisation. If the information was inaccurate, Dr Lynch was unaware of that.

(5) The Claimants did not take issue with Dr Lynch's evidence that the figures conveyed to the market had been given to him and prepared by others: this was stated at §228 of his witness statement and was not challenged even when repeated in cross-examination.

(6) In fact, very few documents involving Dr Lynch were put to him at all on this area of the case. This underlined how little involvement Dr Lynch had in any of the SPE development or launch process. For example, the Claimants could only point to <u>one</u> instance of Dr Lynch approving a marketing expense in relation to SPE. That email dealt only with one aspect of the marketing campaign, namely advertisements in printed trade magazines. The Claimants had produced no evidence that Dr Lynch was personally involved in approving any other spend in relation to SPE (in relation to its development or marketing).

1568. I accept that the documents do not establish his personal involvement. However, in my judgment, Dr Lynch would have known (and for the avoidance of doubt I find that he did know) that:

    (1) There was no basis for the figures for marketing that he gave in the Q3 2009 Earnings call. No document has ever been identified in which anyone in Autonomy's finance department advised Dr Lynch that anything approaching $18 or $20 million had been spent on sales and marketing in relation to SPE in Q3 2009. Ms Gustafsson confirmed that she was not involved in collating or calculating any such figures and had no specific recollection that anyone else had done so either. Moreover, it is wholly implausible that Dr Lynch, whose written approval had to be sought for advertising spend of $144,830 (which he declined to give and reduced to $80,000) would, unblinking and without detailed backing, have accepted expenditure of $24 million.

    (2) The R&D capitalisation figures had been produced by the cabal and were similarly false. I cannot accept that all three would have kept from him that the figures for SE and Development Engineers time costs and the capitalisation amounts were a concoction. In my view, it is more than likely that he was kept informed, and I find that he was so.

1569. The last issue to consider in the context of the Q3 2009 Earnings Call is whether the purpose of the falsehoods was indeed to disguise the hardware sales and costs (see (c) in paragraph 1563 above). The principal argument Dr Lynch advanced against this (in addition, obviously, to his case that he had no knowledge of any falsehood, which I have not accepted) was that *"the Claimants' arguments would have involved time travel"* because (as briefly mentioned above):

> *"Autonomy had announced its development work on SPE by early 2009, before the strategic hardware sales had even commenced. SPE was plainly a real initiative, which predated the hardware sales by a considerable period. Further, Autonomy did not know until after the end of Q3 2009 that Deloitte would permit the allocation of any hardware costs to sales & marketing; it makes no sense to imagine that the development of SPE, and its launch in September 2009, was conceived as a ruse to hide the fact that Autonomy's sales and marketing expenses might include costs relating to hardware."*

1570. Of course, the question is not whether SPE and its development was a ruse. The question is whether what was said falsely about it was in order to justify the R&D capitalisation figures and the marketing and Quick Start costs which were presented.

1571. The answers provided by the Claimants, which I have done little to modify in my recitation of them below, seemed to me to expose the "time travel" argument as a bad point. The timing seems to me more to support the Claimants' case than undermine it. Thus:

(1) In fact, the figure of $10-15 million for sales and marketing expenses was announced, not in Q1 2009, but on the earnings call for Q2 2009.

(2) That earnings call was held on 16 July 2009, not "*back at the beginning of 2009*".

(3) By 16 July 2009, the meeting at Loudham Hall (on 8-10 July 2009), at which Dr Lynch accepts that a programme of reselling hardware was decided upon, had already taken place.

(4) Accordingly, the suggestion that Dr Lynch announced a figure for the sales and marketing expenses at a time when he could not have foreseen the hardware sales is simply wrong. The hardware reselling programme had already been decided upon.

(5) It is true that Dr Lynch would not necessarily have known, as at 16 July 2009, precisely how much of the hardware costs would end up being allocated to sales and marketing expenses. But that is a point against Dr Lynch, not in his favour, because the figure of $10-15 million that Dr Lynch announced on the Q2 2009 earnings call ended up being out by a significant margin. As explained above, on the Q3 2009 earnings call, Dr Lynch identified higher sales and marketing figures of $18-20 million and an additional $4 million on the Quick Start programme.

(6) The reason for the increase was that by the time of the Q3 2009 earnings call, the actual hardware costs were now known to be $47.34 million of which $28.37 million was allocated to sales and marketing.

(7) Accordingly, the Claimants' case does not depend on the proposition that Dr Lynch had perfect foresight of the quantum of future hardware costs, let alone that he had the power of time travel.

1572. I have concluded that both Defendants knew that the Q3 2009 Earnings Call so far as it related to SPE contained a series of falsehoods with the objective of concealing the hardware sales and costs.

Q1 2010 Earnings Call

1573. The Q1 2010 Earnings Call took place on 21 April 2010 during the Icelandic volcano eruption which spewed ash into the atmosphere and into flight paths and caused flights to be cancelled throughout the Northern Hemisphere. Dr Lynch's evidence (which I accept) was that he participated on a mobile phone from California, having been unable to return to the UK.[231]

1574. As it is clear from the Q&A scripts[232] prepared in advance to provide possible answers to questions that might be asked at the Q1 2010 Earnings Call, the Defendants anticipated that they would be asked about the large increase in

[231] The transcript of the Earnings Call refers to the poor line quality.
[232] I address the scripts in greater detail when considering the issue as to "guilty knowledge".

Autonomy's inventory to $10 million at the end of Q1 2010; and so it transpired.

1575. As they had planned, the Defendants answered these questions by saying that the inventory comprised $10 million of hardware purchased at the end of Q1 2010 to take *"advantage of discounted offers"* in anticipation of an increase in appliance sales in Q2 2010 and beyond. Mr Hussain was careful to explain that the margin for such sales of Autonomy's appliance product (Arcpliance) would still be *"dominated by the software element"*. Mr Daud Khan of JP Morgan took from this, reasonably in my view, that *"the value of the appliance product that Autonomy was selling was in the software, and that there would be no particular impact on gross margin when the application was sold."* That extrapolation from what Mr Hussain said was not challenged or contradicted.

1576. The increase in Inventory and the explanation given for it generated a number of questions from analysts on the call:

(1) Michael Briest at UBS asked the following:

"*Could you talk a bit more about the Arcpliance product because clearly the level of hardware purchase, and I guess maybe the level of sales there, would be more than we're used to?"*

(2) In response, Dr Lynch explained that Arcpliance was *"a hardware box which has all the software loaded on it"* . He went on to state that the *"main driver for a sudden pick-up in Arcpliance purchases we think is early case assessment"* and continued:

"It must be said that this is just one of the forms in which customers can consume our technology. They can of course buy ECA, add software, set up their own servers and put the software on it, or indeed it can be done as a hosted offering as well. So really our approach is just to make the technology available in whatever form that customers want. We don't know whether this sudden burst of Arcpliance-type sales is a one-off because of a response to things the regulator is doing at the moment or whether it is part of a trend. I suspect it's probably more likely to be a one-off, but we'll see how that unfolds."

(3) Mr Briest asked a supplemental question: *"Could you say what the Arcpliance or appliance sales and hardware sales would have been in a normal quarter? It seems a large number for Q1, going into Q2"* .

(4) In response, Dr Lynch said: *"Yes. It would be a fraction of that kind of number"*.

1577. Dr Lynch was cross-examined especially closely on his answers. His flat and apparently unflustered delivery, sometimes so modulated as to become monotonous, could not disguise the fact that he was at a loss to explain his

own answer. In his discomfort, he relied on external circumstances: his absence in California, the middle of the night, the poor line quality, his bad hearing, the possibility (which, as he went on, he promoted to a fact) that the transcript (one of two prepared each by different transcribers) was inaccurate (*"all rather questionable"*): but none was convincing, still less an answer. He was left asserting, without conviction, that in any event he was not sure, but he did not think, his statement on the call was misleading, and that in any case, *"I don't think the question as written makes a lot of sense to me in the context of the call."*

1578. The impression I formed that he was in this context left grasping at straws was consolidated by the further researches of the Claimants demonstrating that:

(1) The two transcripts, one by Bloomberg, the other by Thomson Reuters, were almost identical.

(2) Dr Lynch's suggestion that in that case both were wrong was not supported by the audio version which the Claimants uploaded onto Magnum (and which I have listened to at their request): the transcripts seem to me accurately to record Mr Briest's question and Dr Lynch's response.

1579. Further, although it is a subjective assessment, I do not consider that the audio version supports the suggestion that the line was very bad. There was some distortion, and some echo and hiss from time to time: but the quality was fairly good, and even making allowance for Dr Lynch's hearing difficulties, I could not detect in the way or tone in which he responded any sign of uncertainty as to what the questions were. In particular, Mr Briest's question was clear in the version I listened to, as was Dr Lynch's response.

1580. Later during the call, Mr Khan asked a follow-up question to that asked by Mr Briest:

> "*Just a follow-up question to Michael's question on the Arcpliance. If I understand it right, the $10m that has gone into inventory, I'm just wondering what the revenue would be for that amount of inventory and when we are likely to see that. Are we going to see that in Q2 or is that going to be spread across Q2 and Q3?"*

1581. Dr Lynch's response (which appears in almost identical terms in the Bloomberg transcript which demonstrates that both the transcripts were accurately transcribed) was as follows:

> *"So the first question was on the Arcpliance. I'm afraid we are not going to give you an exact number, because that's rather commercially sensitive. What I would say is that the software component of the revenue is far higher than the hardware component. So the software is still the bit that dominates in terms of the cost of an Arcpliance. It's not the hardware; it's the software. Rather like on the Cloud side you may remember it's rather different from, for example, a normal hosting situation.*

> *In terms of the sale, most of that inventory has already been sold in Q2. There might be a little bit that goes over the end, but at the moment it looks like it may well all happen in Q2."*

1582. Dr Lynch's answer was predicated on the fact that this hardware was to be used in connection with Arcpliance, in which the software element would dominate, and that most of the inventory had already been sold by that point in Q2 2010. The Claimants contended that the predicate and every part of his answer was false: the inventory related to pure hardware sales, the sales had occurred and the goods had been delivered in Q1 2010, but Autonomy had decided not to recognise the revenue in that quarter.

1583. Dr Lynch asserted, but provided no evidence to substantiate, his predicate that the inventory related to 'Arcpliance' or at least to a package sale of hardware and software from which the revenue related in substantially larger part to the software component. Even accepting for that purpose Dr Lynch's evidence that when referring to 'Arcpliance', he meant any *"regulatory appliance"* and that the term "appliance" could include not only hardware pre-packaged with software but also hardware supplied to be used with Autonomy/IDOL software to be supplied later (see his first witness statement), an analysis of the Q1 2010 transactions which had given rise to revenue which Autonomy had deferred on the ground that, though shipped, delivery of the goods had not completed (as explained by Mr Chamberlain in an email to Mr Stephan (copied to Mr Welham dated 20 April 2010)) (see paragraphs 991 above) does not appear to support the predicate.

1584. Dr Lynch was asked by another analyst, Mr David Toms at Numis, to *"just clarify the $10m or so of hardware revenue"*. His answer, which was almost identically recorded in the two transcripts and for which the transcripts seemed to me consistent with the audio file, was as follows :

> *"David, I think you may have misunderstood what that revenue is. It's not hardware revenue. What it is is the selling of an appliance. ... We have very little interest in just selling hardware, and consequently the revenue that that goes for is not related to the hardware cost. It's solely a component of that sale. So what we are not doing here is acting as a generic company that resells hardware, like a Morse or something like that. Obviously those people do that business and we have no interest in it."*

1585. The Claimants rejected this answer as a lie. They submitted that Dr Lynch had no credible explanation when Mr Rabinowitz put to him in cross-examination that the hardware in question was not related to an appliance; and that acting as a hardware reseller was exactly what Autonomy was doing.

1586. However, although Dr Lynch may have been a little uneasy with his analogy with Morse, he seemed to me to be much more comfortable and consistent, and thus more convincing, in essentially repeating to me Autonomy's justification for the hardware reselling strategy, to the effect that the programme was not an end in itself, or a separate business; that its purpose

was to protect and promote Autonomy's core software business; and that Autonomy was not acting as a hardware reseller because it had no interest in selling hardware except to promote its software business and what it did was all ancillary to that business, as demonstrated by the fact that it was doing so at a loss.

1587. The difficulty for Dr Lynch, as it seems to me, is not in the distinction; it is in the fact that it was not an explanation he uttered or even hinted at in the Q1 2010 Earnings Call (or in any of these Earnings Calls under review). Ultimately, what was not said at any of the Earnings Calls was the most important point of all.

1588. Unsurprisingly, therefore, Analyst reports published following the call stated that Autonomy's hardware inventory related to appliance sales. Thus, a KBC Peel Hunt report written by Mr Morland referred to what in truth was a balancing item for deferred revenue as the "*$10m Arcpliance stock*".

Q2 2010 Earnings Call

1589. The Q2 2010 Earnings Call took place on 22 July 2010. The only part of the call which the Claimants relied on in the context of their hardware claims related once more to the $10 million inventory entry that had been discussed on the previous call.

1590. As usual, Q&A scripts had been prepared. As in the case of the Q&A scripts for Q1 2010 I address the content of the scripts earlier. In summary, the scripts show that it was anticipated that questions would focus on what was the hardware content in Arcpliance, and what would be the effect of sales of the Inventory on organic growth. Again, that was the focus of some of the questions in fact asked at the Earnings Call. An analyst, Mr Rajeev Bahl of Piper Jaffray, who prefaced his explanation saying that he *"wanted to dig into the gross margin question a little"*, asked whether this "*spike in appliance sales*" had affected gross margin.

1591. In answer, Dr Lynch described the impact of appliance sales on gross margin as an "*exceptional*" situation, with "*the appliance model [accounting] for about 1%*". He remained altogether silent about the hardware reselling strategy: he said nothing about the loss-making hardware sales or their effect on gross margin. Dr Lynch maintained that he was entitled to say nothing, since the question did not ask about hardware sales generally: it was confined to the effect of appliance sales.

1592. The problem with that line, in my view, is that Dr Lynch never admitted to any hardware sales except "appliance" and Arcpliance sales. Indeed, although he initially confined "appliance sales" to sales of hardware *"in order for Autonomy software to be loaded on it"*, by now Dr Lynch increasingly deployed the term "appliance" and Arcpliance sales to cover and disguise hardware sales. In such circumstances, I do not consider Dr Lynch's response to be complete and truthful.

Conclusion on Hardware Sales Issue 1

1593. In my judgment, this exploration of the contemporaneous documentation plainly supports the Claimants' case that, whatever its purpose at inception, the hardware reselling strategy soon and, increasingly, became an addictive means of meeting market expectations of revenue maintenance and growth. What the Defendants asserted to be the purpose of the programme either initially was, or as soon as the size of the potential revenue source was apparent became, a pretext to justify accounting for the hardware revenue as part of the software business revenues without separate identification. Neither the fact that the pretext appeared rational nor that Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan accepted it, alters that conclusion: the justifications and pretexts offered by the Defendants in their relentless search for revenue were invariably rational and believable but, in my judgment, they were pretexts nonetheless.

1594. As I mentioned earlier, although the 'purpose' case and the 'disclosure' case have for the purpose of analysis, been separately examined, they are inseparable.

1595. The real objection to the hardware sales was not that they were to raise revenue and were loss-making; it is the fashioning of the pretence, principally for the consumption of Deloitte and the Audit Committee, that their purpose was 'marketing' or to bring more substance to that elastic term, to promote the software business by deepening relationships with hardware suppliers and leveraging discounted hardware sales to generate more high margin software sales. Their true driving purpose was never, and could never be disclosed: because that true purpose was to generate revenue in order covertly to make good shortfalls in software business revenues by including hardware revenue without differentiation or disclosure in Autonomy's accounts and reports as if it had been generated by Autonomy's 'pure software' business.

1596. Purpose, pretence and non-disclosure combine and support each other to expose and prove the impropriety. Had the true purpose of the hardware sales been 'marketing' (as that word is above elaborated) the Defendants would have wished to publicise it energetically. Had the pretence not been maintained, Deloitte and/or the Audit Committee would not have approved the accounting treatment. Both concealment of the sales, and in particular their cost in Autonomy's accounts and other published information, were necessary because revelation of Autonomy's use of hardware sales, and the erosion of gross margin would have nullified their true purpose and exposed that Autonomy's software business was not generating the accelerating revenue and profits which the market looked for and which sustained its share price.

1597. In my judgment:

(1) The hardware reselling programme was conceived, expanded and implemented in order to enable Autonomy to cover shortfalls in software revenue by selling hardware and including the revenue

without differentiation in revenue shown in the accounts as generated by Autonomy's software business.

(2) To succeed the hardware reselling had to be concealed from the market, but sufficiently revealed to Autonomy's auditors and audit committee to secure their apparently fully informed approval of the company's accounts.

(3) The imperative that the reselling should be concealed from the market required a number/variety of accounting devices which had to be presented in such a way as to secure the approval of Deloitte and the Audit Committee. In particular, their approval had to be secured to treat the costs of the hardware reselling programme not as COGS which would have eroded gross margin and encouraged both analyst and market inquiry and concern, but instead as ordinary sales and marketing expenses which had no such adverse effect on key investment parameters.

(4) The means by which this difficult balancing act was achieved are set out in my judgment. Suffice it to say that Deloitte and the Audit Committee were persuaded to regard the purpose of all hardware sales as being to generate revenue and new orders for the software business, and to account for hardware costs accordingly.

(5) The strategy also required that the contribution of hardware reselling revenues to overall revenues should be disguised or concealed, and that again the auditors and Audit Committee nevertheless being satisfied that such disclosure as was given was sufficient. That balancing act also was successfully achieved.

(6) The true purpose of the hardware reselling strategy/programme lacked any commercial justification and was dishonest. The true purpose had to be camouflaged in the way it was presented to Deloitte and the Audit Committee in order to obtain their approval for an accounting treatment which concealed it.

(7) The Defendants were well aware of this.

(8) Although I presently have doubts that this justifies the quantum of loss in the amount claimed in respect of it, since Autonomy was still a valuable company with an *"almost magical"* signature product, in terms of liability the Claimants' hardware case has clearly been established.

Issue 2: Was Autonomy's published information untrue or misleading by reason of the hardware sales, and did the Defendants appreciate this?

1598. Notwithstanding the fact that the Claimants spent the larger (or certainly the longest) part of their written submissions on the 'purpose' case (and I have followed suit), the Claimants did state that irrespective of the Defendants'

purpose in relation to the hardware reselling strategy, Autonomy's published information was untrue or misleading by reason of the hardware sales and since the Defendants appreciated this, that was enough to establish liability, even though if the purpose was as alleged by the Claimants the position was *a fortiori.* Indeed, in his oral submissions and especially in reply, Mr Rabinowitz described this as the primary way in which the Claimants put their claim.

1599. My conclusion that the Claimants should succeed on their *a fortiori* case, if correct, renders Issue 2 superfluous. However, in case I am found to have been wrong, and in deference to the fact that, sometimes at least, the Claimants presented this as their primary case, I address the rather different foundations of this way of putting their case below.

1600. Before doing so, however, I should make clear that, contrary to what I took Mr Rabinowitz to be suggesting (especially in his Reply), I do not regard this alternative way of putting the Claimants' case (whether primary or not) to offer a simpler solution for them. As I have sought to explain, in my view, purpose and intention, pretence and concealment are all ultimately inter-related. It seems to me unrealistic in dealing with the third (concealment), which is what, in effect, the Claimants argued the statements in question amounted to or achieved, to be indifferent as to purpose. Further, it is unclear whether, in assessing whether the statements in question were misleading, the exercise to be undertaken in the 'primary' case is to be so on the basis that the purpose was as the Defendants asserted it to be. That is bound to affect the issues of intention and honesty. This may all also help to explain why I have taken the 'purpose' case first.

The Claimants' alternative case

1601. There are four main strands to the Claimants' alternative case:

(1) whether Autonomy made statements in its published information that were untrue or misleading in light of the fact of the hardware sales and, if so, whether the Defendants knew those statements to be false or were reckless as to whether such statements were true or misleading;

(2) whether Autonomy's published information omitted matters relating to the hardware reselling strategy which were "required" to be stated, and, if so, whether the Defendants knew the omission to be (quoting s. 90A (3) of FSMA) *"dishonest concealment of a material fact".*

(3) whether the accounting treatment of the costs of the hardware reselling of itself caused the accounts and Autonomy's published information to be untrue or misleading, and, if so, whether the Defendants appreciated this; and

(4) whether Autonomy was in any event required to make clear in its published information what its accounting policy was with respect to hardware reselling and its costs, and if so, whether the Defendants

appreciated this or knew the omission to be (quoting s. 90A (3) of FSMA) *"dishonest concealment of a material fact"*.

Statements made in Autonomy's published information

1602. The Claimants described this first strand, relating to positive statements made in Autonomy's published information, as involving *"the simple exercise of comparing what Autonomy chose to say to the market with the true facts…"*. It did not depend on expert evidence: the experts agreed, and it might have gone without saying, that Autonomy was not free under any applicable accounting statements to make untrue or misleading statements. The arresting fact that provides the context for this strand of the Claimants' case is that Autonomy's published information did not, anywhere, make clear that it was selling material amounts of hardware otherwise than as part of a sale of Autonomy software (what the Claimants called *"pure hardware"*). Even Autonomy's corporate broker (UBS) was unaware of that.

1603. The Claimants relied on the following statements by Autonomy as having been untrue or misleading:

(1) The description of itself as a *"pure software company"*, combined with references to *"appliance"* sales as comprising only a *"small part"* of Autonomy's business;

(2) The description it chose to give in the narrative or 'front end' of each of its Quarterly Reports from Q3 2009 onwards and in its 2010 Annual Report of the categories comprising its revenue, particularly in *"Supplemental Metrics"* purporting to give a breakdown of its total reported revenues which made no mention of hardware sales and instead treated them as sales of "IDOL Product";

(3) The description in its 2009 Annual Report in the *"Revenue Recognition"* section within the *"Significant Accounting Policies"* of the nature of the transactions entered into by the Autonomy group during 2009 as *"the same as in 2008 in all respects"*, which disguised the fact that whereas in 2008 Autonomy had not carried out any material pure hardware sales in 2009 it sold $53.6 million of it;

(4) Its inclusion within the metric *"organic growth"* (connoting, so the Claimants contended, growth attributable to sales of IDOL software) revenues from loss-making hardware sales, which were not sales of IDOL software at all.

The relevance of what the Defendants intended the representations to mean

1604. It is important to have in mind at the outset the relevant legal tests to be applied in the context of determining whether (as the Claimants submitted) the positive statements they identified falsified Autonomy's published information

and give rise to liability on the part of the Defendants in respect of that published information under FSMA or in the tort of deceit.

1605. The Claimants pleaded and tended to present this as a matter of determining what the words used would have conveyed to a *"reasonable reader."* Thus, for example, their pleading as regards the statements, said by the Claimants to have been false and misleading and to have misled them, was (in relevant part) as follows:

> *"In describing itself as a "pure software" company, Autonomy was, in part, seeking to distinguish itself from companies which derived a significant portion of revenue from the provision of services. However, the description of Autonomy as a "pure software" company in Autonomy's published information, the express reference in that published information to appliance sales, and the provision (as pleaded in paragraph 61.5 below) in the published information of a breakdown of revenue categories which together added up to total reported revenue for the period in question and yet made no reference to hardware, would, individually or cumulatively, have conveyed to the reasonable reader:*
>
> *53A.1. that Autonomy was not engaging in any (or any material) sales of hardware apart from appliance sales or, at the very least, was not engaging in any (or any material) pure hardware sales; and/or*
>
> *53A.2 that any revenue from hardware sales (apart from appliance sales) and/or from pure hardware sales was lower than the revenue from appliance sales (which were stated to be a small part of Autonomy's business); and/or*
>
> *53A.3 that any revenue from hardware sales (apart from appliance sales) and/or from pure hardware sales was lower than the reported revenue from Services."*

1606. However, though what the *"reasonable reader"* would have understood is a necessary question to be answered, the answer is not sufficient where the gist of the claim is an allegation of dishonesty and deceit.

1607. As the Defendants contended and, as a matter of law, ultimately the question is not what the objectively ascertained 'best' interpretation of the statements is, but what the Defendants understood and intended the statements in question to convey. As Mr Miles observed, this is not a contractual dispute in which the search is for the meaning most likely to accord with the intention of the parties as objectively derived from the words they used and the context in which they used them, set in the context of the factual matrix. This is a claim of

dishonesty; and a man is not dishonest simply because he uses words which are misunderstood: he must be shown to have had an intention to mislead, or at the very least, to take advantage of a misunderstanding.

1608. I have analysed the case law as to the proper approach in the Introduction to this judgment at paragraph 460 *et seq* above. Put shortly, it seems to me to be well established that:

(1) The claimant must prove what his/her own understanding of the statement in question was.

(2) Where the words used are entirely unambiguous, plainly misleading and admit no other understanding of them, and the claimant's understanding accords with the only available meaning, it will be difficult, if not impossible, for the defendant to show that he/she intended some other meaning. The Claimants ultimately (in Mr Rabinowitz's oral reply) submitted that to be the position in this case.

(3) Where, however, two or more interpretations are possible, the search is not for the most likely objective meaning of the statement in question, but for the intention behind its use.

(4) It is then for the defendant to make clear that he/she intended the statement to have some meaning other than that understood by the claimant; and in practice it will be incumbent on him/her to assert clearly which of two or more available meanings he/she intended, and the basis of that assertion. That is a factual matter.

(5) Theoretically, a defendant could have had in mind a meaning which the court considers not to be available on the words of the statement: and that could theoretically suffice. But in such a case, the difficulty of demonstrating such an extravagant or unlikely meaning may be insuperable as a matter of evidence, especially given that there would then be a question of whether the defendant was aware of the obvious meaning, and thus reckless as to how it would be likely to be understood, even if he/she did not intend that meaning.

The representation that Autonomy was a 'pure software company'

1609. As already explained in the context of the first issue, focused on the purpose of the hardware reselling and its concealment, the Claimants submitted that the statements in Autonomy's Annual Reports that Autonomy was a *"pure software company"*, especially when combined with references to the fact that *"appliance"* sales represented but a *"small part"* of Autonomy's business, were untrue or misleading in view of the nature and extent of the 'pure' hardware sales actually being transacted. The Claimants' alternative case was that even if the purpose of the *"pure hardware"* sales was as asserted by the Defendants, the phrase was nevertheless intentionally misleading.

1610. It may be helpful to reiterate why that was said to be so. According to the Claimants, the phrase would have conveyed to the reasonable reader that:

    (1) Autonomy was not engaging in any (or any material) sales of hardware apart from appliance sales, or in the very least was not engaging in any (or any material) pure hardware sales, and/or

    (2) any revenue from hardware sales and/or pure hardware sales (apart from appliances) was lower than the revenue from appliance sales, and/or

    (3) any revenue from hardware sales (apart from appliance sales) was lower than revenue from Services.

1611. The Claimants submitted that a *"reasonable reader"* of these statements could not have understood that, although Autonomy did not depend on any significant income from the provision of services, its business model did, by contrast, depend on material income from what they described as "other non-pure software activities", such as conducting a significant hardware reselling business.

1612. In that regard, the Claimants submitted that by carefully identifying very limited occasions or cases when it sold appliance hardware, Autonomy further strengthened the impression given that those were the only exceptions to its *"pure software model"*.

1613. As to the comparison with the true facts, the Claimants contended, the total revenue generated by hardware sales over the Relevant Period amounted to approximately $200,000,000 and constituted approximately 11% of the total reported revenue from Q3 2009 to Q2 2011. These amounts dwarfed both appliance sales and the revenue from Services. Accordingly, the Claimants contended, each of the representations which they submitted were conveyed by the statement was false.

1614. Against this, however, the Defendants denied that any such representations were conveyed by the statements made. They submitted that the Claimants' case is based not on what was actually said, but on their interpretation of the phrase's broader message, which the Defendants did not accept.

1615. In any event, the Defendants objected that that was not the meaning the Defendants understood to be conveyed by the phrase, nor did they anticipate that it might be so construed.

1616. The Defendants did not accept the Claimants' contention that the statement was unambiguous. Mr Miles submitted that even if the statements in question could be read as connoting that Autonomy made no or no substantial hardware sales, the words certainly did not unambiguously convey that meaning. I agree with Mr Miles:

(1) In their pleading, the Claimants accepted that the description of Autonomy as a *"pure software company"* was intended to mean *"in part"* that it did not derive *"a significant portion of revenue from the provision of services"*. The possibility that the phrase could have meant only that appears to be countenanced even by the Claimants.

(2) The fact that the representations could be read and understood as simply distinguishing Autonomy from software companies which had a substantial servicing business is plain from the fact that they appear so to have been understood by Deloitte and the Audit Committee.

(3) Similarly, it seems to me an available meaning was that Autonomy carried on a one segment software business (in line with the segmental analysis) and no separate or self-standing hardware business.

(4) In other words, what the Defendants contended they meant was well within the range of possible meanings to be attributed to the phrase: it could mean that, or it could mean more.

1617. I also agree with Mr Miles that in such circumstances, what the Claimants had to prove was both they and that, contrary to their evidence, either the Defendants understood and intended the words to denote that Autonomy made no substantial hardware sales, or they were aware that the words were ambiguous and intentionally used the ambiguity for the purposes of deception.

1618. As to their own understanding, the Defendants maintained that what they thought the statement that Autonomy was a *"pure software model"* or a *"pure software company"* meant was that Autonomy did not have a substantial percentage of revenues deriving from professional services.

1619. That, Dr Lynch told me, was worth stating because it was rare amongst software companies at the time because generally software sellers in the enterprise sector had to do a lot of customisation work on the product for every implementation. By contrast, he said, standard IDOL required little customisation and Autonomy's business model was to contract out implementation work to be done by approved partners. This was an important point of difference marking out Autonomy's business modelling: and there was good reason to bring it out in its published information.

1620. The Defendants' case was that they thought that this was clear from the context in which the phrase appeared, and from the Reports in which the statements appeared read as a whole.

1621. Thus, the 2009 and 2010 Annual Reports stated that:

> "*Autonomy is one of the very rare examples of a pure software model. Many software companies have a large percentage of revenues that stems from professional services, because they have to do a lot of customisation work on the product for every single implementation. In contrast, Autonomy ships a standard product that requires little*

> *tailoring, with the necessary implementation work carried out by approved partners such as IBM Global Services, Accenture and others.*"

Read in context, they submitted that the phrase says nothing about whether Autonomy sold hardware, or how much it sold.

1622. The Defendants relied also on the explanation in its 2010 accounts, as follows:

> *"Many software companies have a large percentage of revenues that stem from professional services, because they have to do a lot of customisation work on the product for every single implementation. In contrast, Autonomy ships a standard product that requires little tailoring, with the necessary implementation work carried out by approved partners such as IBM Global Services, Accenture and others."*

1623. The point was repeated at page 18 of the document, where Autonomy set out the proportion of its revenues derived from services, as it had to under IAS 18:

> *"Services. Services revenues relate to third party and internal implementation consultants and training. Services revenues remained flat in 2010 at approximately 5% of revenues (or $10 million to $11 million per quarter) (2009: $9 million to $11 million per quarter). Autonomy operates a rare "pure software" model under which our goal is that most implementation work is carried out by approved partners. This optimises Autonomy's ability to address its horizontal technology to multiple vertical markets and regions in the most efficient way."*

1624. The Defendants added to their own insistence that the statements could not be taken to mean that Autonomy did not sell hardware[233] the contention that in point of fact that was not how the statements were understood either by Autonomy's auditors, or by the Claimants' own witnesses; nor indeed by HP and those acting for it, until later when the exigencies of formulating a claim made it expedient for them to contend otherwise.

1625. As to Deloitte, who had a detailed knowledge of the volume and nature of the hardware sales:

(1) Mr Welham stated in his evidence when cross-examined in the US criminal proceedings that he understood the reference to "*pure software model*" as distinguishing Autonomy from software companies that have a large percentage of revenues that stem from professional

[233] For comprehensiveness it may be noted, as Mr Holgate did note, that the Q1 2010 Annual Report did (fleetingly) refer to hardware (at p51) in "*Costs of revenues: Costs of license revenues includes the cost of royalties due to third party licenses, costs of product media, product duplication, hardware and manuals"*. But I do not think it is realistic to read that as a disclosure of volume hardware reselling.

work[234]: and that he did not understand the phrase to mean that Autonomy only sold software. He expressly confirmed that evidence when cross-examined in these proceedings. Further, he told me that he did not think that the reference to the "*pure software model*" in the 2010 Annual Report, *"in the context it was placed in"*, was in any way inconsistent with the fact that Autonomy had made hardware sales of around $100 million in 2010.

(2) Taylor Wessing made this point on behalf of Deloitte in their January 2015 letter to the Claimants' Solicitors[235] :

"Contrary to your letter of claim the hardware sales were not inconsistent with Autonomy's description of itself as a 'pure software' company. It is quite clear from the Business Overview sections of Autonomy's financial statements on which you rely that the company was not representing that it only sold software. The words on which you rely appear immediately after a paragraph addressing Autonomy's sales of appliances and states: "Autonomy is one of the very rare examples of a pure software model. Many software companies have a large percentage of revenues that stems from professional services, because they have to do a lot of customisation work on the product for every single implementation. In contrast Autonomy has a standard product that requires little tailoring ... ". It is clear that Autonomy uses the term 'pure software company' to distinguish itself from other software companies which derive significant revenues from selling services alongside software."

(3) Similarly, the Deloitte Defence in the FRC proceedings noted that:

"The words 'pure software model' were not inconsistent with any assertion in the financial statements. The audit team reasonably understood these words to draw a distinction between Autonomy's business model and those of rivals who derived a substantial proportion of their revenues and profits from professional services. ... There is no assertion in the financial statements that hardware was or was not sold and a statement that Autonomy followed a "pure software model" was entirely consistent with the assertions in the financial statements."

1626. In support of their submission that the Claimants and their witnesses themselves understood that the statements that Autonomy was a *'pure software company'* were simply differentiating Autonomy from the norm of a company deriving substantial revenue from services the Defendants contended that:

[234] Mr Apotheker gave the examples of TIBCO and Software AG when cross-examined in these proceedings.
[235] In reply to a pre-action letter of claim.

(1) Mr Apotheker had a similar understanding of the phrase:

"Q. ... Go back to page 15 {K15/369/15}. It's making it quite clear, isn't it, what it means by this? "Financial model": "[...] very rare examples of a pure software model. Many software companies have a large percentage of revenues that stem from professional services [...] In contrast, Autonomy ships a standard product that requires little tailoring [...]"

A. Yes.

Q. That's the point they're making, that they're not providing lots of services?

A. I agree.

Q. That's all they mean by this phrase "pure software model"; that's how you understood it?

A. Yes, I understood that this company was in the business of providing excellent software with as little services as possible.

Q. Right.

A. That's how I understood it."

(2) Similarly, Mr Khan and Mr Gersh both understood that the phrase was being used to distinguish Autonomy from a company that sells services.

(3) When cross-examined, Mr Holgate was constrained to accept that in context, the phrase was used to denote that Autonomy was not a service company. He agreed also that Autonomy was saying *"we're not like those other companies that sell lots of services"*. However, he qualified this by saying that he *"would not infer from that description that they sell hardware on an undisclosed basis…"* though I do not think that had been suggested by any party, and certainly not by the Defendants, the issue raised being whether a positive statement was made that Autonomy did <u>not</u> sell hardware.

1627. Nor, the Defendants submitted, could the Claimants get any assistance from the reference to appliance sales being a small part of Autonomy's business: the paragraphs dealing with appliance sales in the 2009 Annual Report said nothing about whether Autonomy sold any non-appliance hardware, either expressly or by implication. Further, and contrary to the Claimants' argument,

they cannot somehow be combined with the reference in a different part of the Annual Reports to the "*pure software model*" to convey the impression that Autonomy was not engaging in sales of non-appliance hardware.

1628. The Defendants also contended that:

> *"the market could not assume, nor is there evidence suggesting it did assume, that the term "pure software company" denoted that the company sold no hardware, given that, even on the Claimants' case, it was public knowledge that Autonomy sold some hardware appliances. Although Mr Gersh, when cross-examined, sought to depict a sale of an appliance as a sale of software, and the hardware on which such software was loaded, not as hardware but as "the form of the delivery of the software" or a "software solution", he eventually had to concede that it nonetheless constituted in part at least, a sale of hardware."*

1629. This was not a complete and accurate presentation of Mr Gersh's evidence, as I shall explain when addressing later the issue of HP's pre-acquisition knowledge (see paragraphs 1799 to 1813 below). But the Defendants maintained that in any event, this was not the only evidence suggesting that HP itself did not really understand the statement (*"pure software company"*) to connote that Autonomy sold no hardware (other than limited appliance sales, using that phrase in the limited sense the Claimants insisted upon), and that in truth HP knew before the acquisition that Autonomy engaged in hardware sales, from which it is to be inferred that it would not have interpreted the statement to connote otherwise.

1630. Accordingly, the Defendants rejected any suggestion that the reference to Autonomy being a *"pure software"* model or company was false or misleading in light of the hardware reselling. That was not in fact how it was understood or liable to be understood, as both Deloitte and the Audit Committee must also have been satisfied. In any event, the Defendants said that they did not intend that it be taken to mean that Autonomy made no hardware sales, nor did they calculate that it was likely (or, at least, liable) to be taken to mean that either.

1631. In my judgment:

(1) As I have previously concluded, the purpose of the statement was to convey a special selling point, the success and self-sufficiency of its software business without the need for other revenue streams.

(2) That is how it was understood by the Claimants. The Defendants' quotations from Mr Apotheker's evidence were too selective. What I understood him to be telling me (and I accept the truth of this evidence) was that he was pleased to note that Autonomy provided very little servicing because that made him *"believe that Autonomy provided brilliant software because it didn't need a lot of services"*, but he also thought that the statement meant that Autonomy regarded itself as

different from other companies that produced software because, as he put it, Autonomy was

> *"a software company that only does software, so it makes total sense that they are trying to do as little as possible services. But they basically do two things in this annual report: they sell software and they provide some services."*

(3) A determination of what the Defendants themselves intended to be conveyed by the phrase is inevitably informed by my conclusion that the real purpose of the hardware reselling strategy was to generate recognised revenue from hardware sales but (a) account for them without differentiation as if they had been generated by software sales and (b) attenuate and disguise the adverse effect of almost invariable losses on the hardware sales by accounting for them as sales and marketing expenses.

(4) Having reached that conclusion, it seems to me that it would be odd to conclude that nevertheless the Defendants did not mean to further the concealment by the use of an ambiguous phrase.

(5) In other words, in light of my other conclusions, I have further concluded that the phrase was intended by the Defendants to conceal hardware sales.

(6) But that is primarily because of my conclusion that the hardware strategy and its potentially adverse effect if properly accounted for, needed to be concealed to succeed. The question now posed is what the position would be had I concluded that the hardware reselling programme was genuinely in furtherance of its software business and there were good commercial reasons for not disclosing it or its effect such as to justify it not being disclosed.

(7) It is not easy to recast my approach, but it seems to me to follow that had that been my conclusion, I would also have concluded that the Defendants might well honestly have intended the phrase to convey in 2010 as it did at the beginning of 2008 (before the hardware reselling programme began) that unlike many other software companies, services were not a material part of its business or revenues. There are certainly examples of that being spelt out. For example, at the Q3 2010 Earnings Call, Mr Kanter (speaking with and at the invitation of Dr Lynch) stated:

> *"…there's a continuous debate on whether the Autonomy business model should be pure software or whether there should be a shift towards more professional services in the revenue mix. To date, the model has been maintained at the pure software end of the spectrum, i.e., little services revenue in the mix."*

1632. That brings the question back again to purpose, pretence and concealment. In my judgment, without proof of those three, the alternative way of putting the case might have failed.

That the disclosed revenue categories comprised all sources of Autonomy's revenue

–

1633. Secondly, the Claimants contended that the revenue stated in Autonomy's disclosed revenue categories in its Annual and Quarterly Reports was equal in aggregate amount (across the categories) to Autonomy's total reported revenue. This, they contended, gave the same false impression, and would have conveyed to the reasonable reader, that there were no other material sources of revenue, and thus that there was no (or no material) revenue from hardware sales or indeed any other sources. In addition, the inclusion of revenues from hardware sales within the IDOL Product category, without any disclosure or explanation that this was so, also falsely inflated the revenue falling within IDOL Product. They submitted that all of this must have been apparent to the Defendants.

1634. The Defendants did not accept this either. They countered the Claimants' argument that the non-IFRS *"supplemental metrics"* included in Autonomy's Quarterly Reports from Q3 2009 to Q2 2011, and in the 2010 Annual Report, which broke down Autonomy's revenues into IDOL Product, IDOL OEM, Services and Deferred Revenue Release, and at a later point IDOL Cloud, were defined in a way that could not properly include hardware and further, left no headroom for hardware revenue, as follows:

   (1) As the Quarterly Reports and 2010 Annual Report made clear, these were metrics "*provided for background information and may include qualitative estimates.*" The metrics were not precisely defined.

   (2) Deloitte scrutinised the calculation of the non-IFRS metrics each quarter. They were well aware that Autonomy's hardware sales were included in the category "IDOL Product". Each quarter, they prepared a working paper, the stated aim of which was "*To agree the metrics used in the quarterly press release to the supporting schedules and to test the validity of these schedules.*" Mr Welham confirmed that, as part of the audit or review process, Deloitte would have reviewed the underlying contracts for at least some of the transactions included in those schedules, all those that were over $1 million in value, and those that were part of the sampling process. He said that Deloitte knew that certain deals included within IDOL Product were hardware deals: indeed, that is clear from the face of the working paper, and from Deloitte's tickmarks in their working papers.

   (3) Deloitte were aware of how IDOL Product was described and what its category comprised in the Annual Reports, as demonstrated by the ticked off versions, where the number is ticked next to the description in question.[236] They knew that some of the hardware sales did not

[236] The description is as follows: "*IDOL Product is normally delivered as licensed software paid for up-front with an ongoing support and maintenance stream. This model is becoming less significant*

include an IDOL software component.[237] They did not consider that this rendered Autonomy's Quarterly or Annual Reports misleading, as Mr Welham (unsurprisingly) confirmed under cross-examination:

> *"Q. Then looking at what you did know, going back for example to IDOL Product, you knew that as part of the total amount that was being stated as IDOL Product, that included the hardware deals that we've looked at?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *...*
>
> *Q. ... So you knew those facts, you didn't think that the way that then Autonomy presented itself to the financial markets through its published information was misleading in any way, did you?*
>
> *A. We did not, no."*

1635. The Defendants also maintained that, contrary to an important premise of the Claimants' argument, the market was also aware that IDOL Product could include hardware revenue. Thus, for example, they cited Mr Morland's evidence in cross-examination as demonstrating this:

> *"MR SHIVJI: Mr Morland, you knew at the time at the time, this is 2009 to 2011, that Autonomy included some sales of hardware in its revenue figures?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And you must have realised that they would be included in its IDOL product category?*
>
> *A. Yes."*

1636. However, that citation of Mr Morland's evidence, which would on its own be highly material, was incomplete. A little later in his cross-examination, when Mr Shivji came back to the point, Mr Morland clarified what he had meant:

> *"Q. But you understood that within licences there was a hardware element?*
>
> *A. An immaterial element, yes."*

with the rise of cloud computing. In 2010, IDOL Product revenue totalled $251 million"; Deloitte has ticked off the number $251 million.

[237]See e.g. Deloitte's Report to the Audit Committee on the 2009 Audit: "*These hardware sales did not include any IDOL software component*".

1637. In any event, Dr Lynch emphasised that he had no involvement in the compilation of the *"supplemental metrics"*; and Mr Welham agreed that Deloitte dealt with the finance team and the Audit Committee in the course of the audit process and Dr Lynch really had no substantive involvement with Deloitte, or certainly none with him.

1638. If set in the context of the conclusions I have reached as to the true purpose and concealment of the hardware reselling strategy, none of the Defendants' arguments is attractive or indeed tenable. Set in that context, I would regard the *"supplemental metrics"* as having been intentionally calculated, as part of the imperative to conceal the hardware sales to present Autonomy's business as comprised only of the elements identified, and as not involving any other material activities. I would not regard reliance on Deloitte as a viable argument in circumstances where Deloitte had been unaware of the true purpose of the strategy and its concomitant, the imperative to conceal it. And I would not accept that Dr Lynch was not involved in this furtherance of the strategy by these additional means.

1639. However, if the building bricks of purpose and its concealment are removed, the position is much less clear. If accepted that the hardware sales were truly driven by the protection and promotion of the software sales, so as in effect to be a cost of it (as indeed Dr Lynch sought to depict the strategy) the *"supplemental metrics",* with the warning to which they were subject, would not appear to me necessarily to have been calculated to mislead. Nor would I accept subjective intention to mislead would have been demonstrated. I would not accept, even then, the defence that Dr Lynch was not involved; but that would not save the plea.

1640. Once again, in my judgment, without proof of purpose, pretence and concealment, the alternative way of putting the case might have failed.

The representation that transactions in 2009 were the same in nature as those in 2008

1641. Thirdly, the Claimants contended that the statement in the 2009 Annual Report under *"Revenue Recognition"* section within *"Significant Accounting Policies"* that *"The nature of the transactions that the group has entered into during 2009 is the same as in 2008 in all respects"* was untrue or misleading because Autonomy had not carried out any 'pure hardware' sales in 2008 and its resales of $56 million in 2009 constituted a clear change.

1642. The Defendants dismissed this as *"not a valid complaint"*. They submitted:

(1) This statement should be seen in context. It does not appear in a section describing Autonomy's business, but instead in a note dealing with significant policies. The paragraph in which it appears reads as follows:

> *"The group discloses revenue within two categories, namely sale of goods and rendering of services, as required by IAS 18. During 2009 there has been no change to the group's revenue recognition policies in*

> *any respect. The nature of the transactions that the group has entered into during 2009 is the same as in 2008 in all respects. To assist the reader in understanding the group's business the accounting policy set forth below has been reviewed and clarified, but does not represent any change in the group's accounting policy for the recognition or measurement of revenue."*

(2) Thus, the phrase is dealing with the nature of the transactions seen from the narrow perspective of revenue recognition. The reader would not expect to see the types of goods sold by Autonomy enumerated in that context, or any change in the types of goods identified.

(3) The Defendants did not accept that there was any relevant change. As stated previously, Autonomy had always sold some hardware.

(4) There was no suggestion in cross-examination that Dr Lynch was aware of, or responsible for, this alleged misstatement.

(5) Nor was there any evidence that HP had noticed or placed any reliance on the statement. It would be surprising if it was a point of any importance at the time of the acquisition over 18 months later.

1643. I would not accept the contextual point in paragraph 1642(1) in any event; and in my view, there plainly was a change. The sales of hardware were of a different order in 2009 when compared to 2008. Nor, again, would I accept that Dr Lynch was not relevantly involved, though I could see an argument that he may not have focused on the presentation, and though that would be careless and a breach of duty it might not be sufficient to establish dishonesty or recklessness for the purposes of a FSMA claim. However, I need not finally determine the point: because, in my judgment, once again without proof of purpose, pretence and concealment, the alternative way of putting the case, would have failed. Deloitte and the Audit Committee were satisfied, on what they understood of the hardware sales and assumed to be their genuine purpose, that they were not material.

Falsity of inclusion of hardware sales in "Organic Growth"

1644. Fourthly, the Claimants contended that the inclusion of revenue from *'pure'* hardware sales within the revenue figures given for *"organic IDOL growth"*, without any note or warning, was obviously and materially false and misleading.

1645. They highlighted especially the Financial Review section in the 2009 Annual Report, which stated that the increase in revenues in 2009 "*is a combination of strong organic growth and the successful integration of Interwoven*" (a company Autonomy had acquired in early 2009) .

1646. This was, according to the Claimants, untrue or misleading, since *'pure hardware'* sales were responsible for $53 million of Autonomy's revenue

growth in 2009. Similarly, the Financial Review section in the 2010 Annual Report ascribed Autonomy's reported revenue growth between 2009 and 2010 entirely to the deployment by customers of Autonomy software. Autonomy reported an increase in revenues of $130.7 million in 2010: $52 million of this growth (some 40%) arose from sales of *'pure hardware'*.

1647. The Claimants relied especially on the evidence of one of Dr Lynch's own witnesses, Mr Shelley (Co-Head of Corporate Broking first at UBS, one of Autonomy's corporate brokers, from 2004-2010, and then at Goldman Sachs, who joined UBS and Citi as a corporate broker for Autonomy, in around May/June 2011). This evidence was to the effect that he understood that *"organic IDOL growth"* was a measure of growth in Autonomy's core software business. Autonomy's 2010 Annual Report described *"organic IDOL growth"* as the *"most meaningful organic performance metric for understanding the momentum within the business."*

1648. One of the Claimants' witnesses, Mr Morland, concurred in that, and stated in his witness statement that as far as he was concerned,

> *"the key valuation metric is organic software growth because, in indicating underlying, repeatable growth, it provides the best measure of how successful and competitive a software company's products are in the market(s) in which it operates."*

1649. When it was put to him in cross-examination that Autonomy did not publish any figures for *"organic software growth",* Mr Morland explained that when Autonomy said *"organic growth"* that, to him, had the same meaning, even though he accepted that it included an *"immaterial"* hardware element.

1650. The Claimants prepared calculations by reference to figures given in Autonomy's Investor Relations Bulletin ("the Bulletin") to show that if the *'pure hardware'* revenue had been excluded from *"organic growth",* as they contended it should have been, such *"growth"* would have been negative:

(1) Whereas Q4 2010 growth was stated in the Bulletin as 12%, without pure hardware revenues, there would have been negative growth of 5%;

(2) Similarly, whereas FY 2010 growth was stated in the Bulletin to be 17%, without pure hardware revenues that would have reduced to 7%.

1651. Further, when cross-examined about a draft of the Q1 2011 Quarterly Report that Derek Brown had sent him on 20 April 2011, Mr Shelley (see paragraph 1647 above) stated:

> *"Q. In the last couple of lines [of {K17/356.2/2}] it says that reported IDOL Product revenue was 54.4 million up from 46.5 million for quarter 1 2010 and that's the 17% increase they've reported, yes?*
>
> *A. Yes.*

Q. Now, I'd like you to assume for a moment that the 46.5% figure for quarter 1 2010 included 6 million of revenues from pure hardware sales, yes?

A. Right.

Q. So that's 40.5 million if you take out the hardware?

A. Yes.

Q. And assume that the 54.4 million for quarter 1 2011 included 18 million of revenues from pure hardware sales, making it 36.4 million, yes?

A. Yes.

Q. And if those assumptions are right, what it would mean is that instead of going up by 17%, the software part of IDOL Product had actually declined by more than 10%, yes?

A. Mm-hm.

Q. Can we flick back to page 1, please {K17/356.2/1}. Do you see at the bottom of the page there's a section called "Chief Executive's Review"?

A. Yes.

Q. And this is a statement from Dr Lynch, yes?

A. Yes.

Q. He says at the beginning: "Q1 was a strong quarter for Autonomy in which we continued to execute well with good growth in revenue, profits and other key metrics." Do you see that?

A. Yes.

Q. In the fourth line he says: "In Q1 2011 IDOL Product, driven by licence growth, increased by 17%." Do you see that?

A. Yes.
Q. What he's saying there is that IDOL Product revenues are because the licence revenue was up, yes?

A. Yes.

> *Q. If what I just told you about the hardware revenues is correct, then the claim that growth in reported IDOL Product revenue was driven by licence growth would be completely wrong, wouldn't it?*
>
> *A. If what you've just told me is correct, then potentially, yes."*

1652. The Claimants pointed out that this apparently significant evidence was not addressed by the Defendants, neither of whom made any mention of Mr Shelley in any of their submissions.

1653. Again, the Defendants denied that Autonomy's published information contained any false representation in this regard.

1654. As to the Claimants' argument that Autonomy's statements about "*organic growth*" and "*organic IDOL growth*" were misleading in light of the hardware sales, the Defendants submitted that:

(1) Once it is accepted (as is common ground) that the hardware revenues were correctly included in total revenues, there can be no objection to the inclusion of hardware revenues in a calculation of organic growth. In ordinary parlance, organic growth means growth generated organically by a company rather than through acquisitions. This is how Autonomy used the term: as stated in the Financial Review in the 2010 Annual Report, organic growth "*excludes the contribution from acquisitions, foreign exchange impact, services revenue (not a goal of the business) and deferred revenue release (primarily maintenance income).*" There was no indication, or implication, that hardware revenue was being excluded. As Dr Lynch put it, to exclude hardware from the calculations would be to produce a different metric, "*organic growth ex hardware*".

(2) Deloitte were ultimately content to approve the inclusion of hardware sales within organic growth. It is true that they were initially doubtful, especially about Autonomy's inclusion of them under the heading *"IDOL organic growth"*: the hardware sales were obviously not sales of IDOL, and Deloitte wanted to understand and be persuaded why they were organic.

(3) Mr Knights expressed this concern directly in his email to Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain dated 16 October 2009 (which Mr Hussain forwarded to Dr Lynch):

> *"Can we have a detailed breakdown on how the figures are compiled. My biggest concern will be that the hardware sales were neither IDOL based nor organic!!"*

(4) In an email to Mr Chamberlain and Mr Knights (cc Mr Welham) two days later (18 October 2009) Mr Knight of Deloitte focused on the

"organic growth issue" as almost the sole issue of remaining concern, elaborating that:

> *"We currently still have an issue with organic growth, all we have seen to date is a summary calculation which has "assumed interwoven sales" and no account taken for the hardware sales. The reader will probably assume this is therefore all organic software growth."*

(5) Deloitte (through Mr Knights) ultimately concluded that it was appropriate to include the hardware sales on the basis that (as Mr Welham accepted in his witness statement):

> *"Ultimately we agreed that growth in hardware sales was organic, in that it did not derive from the acquisition by Autonomy of a pre-existing business"*.

(6) Deloitte signed off on Autonomy's organic growth figures in the non-IFRS metrics knowing that they incorporated hardware, so long as the entry was captioned *"organic growth"* (as Deloitte themselves suggested) and not as *"organic IDOL growth"* nor as *"organic software growth"*.

1655. The Defendants also contended that the criticisms made by the Claimants about the description of growth in the 2009 and 2010 Annual Reports could not withstand scrutiny.

(1) The statement in the 2009 Annual Report that the increase in revenues in 2009 "*is a combination of strong organic growth and the successful integration of Interwoven*" was, they said, correct. Although the growth in hardware revenues was one component of the increase, that was properly included in the organic growth figures. They submitted, therefore, that the Claimants were wrong to suggest that it was misleading.

(2) This statement could be of no further assistance to the Claimants than that relating to the inclusion of hardware revenue in the figures given as "*supplemental metrics"*: once the hardware revenue was included within those metrics, the difference between organic and non-organic growth did come down to the difference between revenues generated by the business without taking into account acquisitions and revenues generated by the business taking into account acquisitions.

(3) The Claimants' suggestion that in the 2010 Annual Report, "*the Financial Review section (page 15) ascribed Autonomy's reported revenue growth between 2009 and 2010 entirely to the deployment by customers of Autonomy software*" is incorrect: there is no such statement in the Financial Review.

(4) Their criticism as put to Dr Lynch in cross-examination that he must have spotted, and ought, in all honesty, to have corrected, an inaccurate

description by Mr Briest of UBS (one of Autonomy's corporate brokers) in his analyst's note in late 2009, referring to Autonomy's organic growth as organic <u>software</u> growth was unfair: the statement was buried towards the end of a 57-page document. Dr Lynch's evidence was that, although he had read earlier parts of the note, and corrected certain aspects of the description in it of IDOL technology which Dr Lynch considered Mr Briest *"had got very wrong"*, he would not have noticed the point in a different section tucked away at the end. In any case, the Defendants contended that this is miles away from being any representation by Dr Lynch, or any part of Autonomy's published information that can be relied on for the purposes of the claims before the Court.[238]

(5) Dr Lynch added that in any event, he was quite removed from the process. Mr Miles submitted in his oral closing:

> *"He is not involved in the production of the accounts, he's less involved in the review of the accounts even than other directors such as Mr Bloomer and Mr Webb, and he knows that these things are being carefully considered by Deloitte, who are considering them to ensure that nothing misleading is being said."*

(6) Finally on this point, the Defendants countered the Claimants' contention that *"if the pure hardware revenue had been excluded from organic growth, as it should have been, organic 'growth' would have been <u>negative</u>"* [their underlining] with comparative tables of their own demonstrating the reverse. According to the Defendants' calculations (which Mr Miles put to Dr Lynch in re-examination), if the hardware transactions were stripped out then both for Q2 2011 and H1 2011 organic revenue growth would have been significantly higher (in each case, compared against the equivalent period the previous year). Further, again according to the Defendants' calculations, the Core Business Organic Growth Rate Calculation in Autonomy's interim results up to 30 June 2011 gave growth rates of 15% (Q2 2011) and 17% (H1 2011). Adjusting these figures to remove the "pure hardware" sales listed by the Claimants in Schedule 1 of the RRAPoC, those figures would have increased to 28% (Q2 2011) and 21% (H1 2011). The Defendants submitted that these were the key periods for comparison since the key comparator at the time of the Autonomy acquisition would have been Q2 2011 v Q2 2010, as Mr Apotheker had confirmed when cross-examined: judged at that time, growth rates as at Q4 2010 were out of date, so the Claimants' figures based on Q4 2010 results *"addressed the wrong period"*.

1656. Once again, it would seem to me that the claim would be well founded in the context of my primary conclusions, as being a further manifestation of the

[238]Further, the Defendants submitted that Mr Briest's analysis is plainly not "published information" of Autonomy; and nor is it suggested that his report is a representation made by Dr Lynch.

disguised purpose and the imperative to conceal it. However, I must seek to assess the claim on the hypothesis previously explained.

1657. I have found the issue more finely balanced in relation to this representation, principally because Autonomy was expressly warned by Deloitte, in an email from Mr Knight to Mr Chamberlain dated 18 October 2009, which was plainly relayed to both Defendants (and which I have quoted more fully in paragraph 1654(4) above), that *"The reader will probably assume this is therefore all organic growth"*.

1658. Although Deloitte had eventually accepted Mr Chamberlain's counter-argument that all that *"organic growth"* connoted was that the growth was not from acquisitions, that does not diminish the propensity of the phrase to mislead, nor negate the fact that the Defendants were warned and aware of that propensity and its attendant risk that *"organic growth"* of a *"pure software company"* would be read as *"organic software growth",* as indeed it was (including by Autonomy's own broker, Mr Shelley, as described in paragraphs 1647 and 1651 above). It is a short step from knowledge that a statement may be liable to mislead to a conclusion of recklessness or dishonest intention to mislead if it is used.

1659. Even so, I have concluded that, on the premise which I have taken to be applicable, the mindset of those concerned at Autonomy, including the Defendants, would have been that sales as loss leaders for the software business generated revenues to be treated as all part of the single software enterprise in a single segment entity, and the inclusion of revenue from hardware sales within organic growth was a corollary.

Overall conclusion on the claims in respect of statements made in the accounts

1660. There can be no real doubt, and I do not understand it to have been disputed, that the Defendants wished to avoid disclosure of the nature and extent of the hardware sales. The Claimants' case was that it was part and parcel of the true objectives of the hardware reselling strategy and the imperative to conceal it. The Defendants rejected that but prayed in aid (in summary) commercial sensitivities. Although that is the backdrop, and is to be borne in mind in assessing intention, for the present, my focus is on what Autonomy chose to say, rather than on what they chose not to say. The question now is whether the Defendants not only sought to avoid disclosure, but also included in Autonomy's published information statements designed, or which the Defendants knew would or might be taken, to signify that no material part of its business comprised the sale or reselling of hardware to third-party customers.

1661. For the reasons I have given in respect of each of the positive statements relied on by the Claimants, on the hypothesis that (contrary to my primary conclusions) the purpose of the hardware reselling and the reasons for not separately disclosing it are taken to be as the Defendants asserted they were, I would have not been persuaded that the Claimants had established their claims that the statements made were untrue or misleading and that the Defendants appreciated this so as to render them liable under FSMA.

1662. I confirm that I have also considered the statements in the round as well as individually. Although in the context of my actual conclusions, the picture is then darker still, on the hypothesis I have been implicitly directed to take, my conclusion would be no different than in relation to the representations singly. I have concluded that even together the statements cannot be aggregated to produce a false and intentionally misleading positive representation that Autonomy was not reselling hardware.

1663. However, the overall presentation certainly did not disclose hardware reselling: and I turn to the second way in which the Claimants put their case on the hypothesis that the purpose of the hardware reselling was as asserted by the Defendants.

Did the Annual Reports/ Autonomy's published information omit information about hardware sales which was required to be disclosed?

1664. With the reservation that if their case on what Autonomy had positively stated in its published information succeeded, their case that there were also omissions might be unnecessary, the Claimants also contended that Autonomy's published information *"was defective because it did not disclose the fact, nature and extent of its hardware sales in its Annual Reports for 2009 and 2010."*[239]

1665. They submitted that:

> "*the relevant accounting standards and other rules required fair disclosure and explanation of the nature and extent of Autonomy's hardware sales, including sales of pure hardware and other hardware in the Annual Reports*."

1666. Their pleaded case in this regard as set out in the RRAPoC is summarised there as follows:

> *"In short, the absence of any disclosure in the Annual Reports…of the existence or extent of hardware sales (other than the unquantified reference to appliance sales being a small part of Autonomy's business) meant that the statements* [identified above] *were untrue and/or misleading , those reports gave a misleading impression of the revenue and revenue growth of Autonomy's software business and/or the Annual Reports omitted a material fact (namely that Autonomy was engaged in the business of selling significant amounts of pure hardware at a substantial loss) that was required to have been included in Autonomy's published information."*

[239] Originally, the Claimants contended that Autonomy also had a duty of disclosure in its Quarterly Reports; but in its written closing submissions it was clarified that, in light of Mr Holgate's evidence that *"the case for disclosure of hardware sales in quarterly reports is not as strong as in interim reports"*, they were no longer pursuing that contention, although Mr Holgate's view was that it would have been *"good practice"* for Autonomy to have disclosed its hardware sales in these reports.

1667. Leaving aside positive misstatements, only the omission of *"any matter required to be included"* can be relied on as the basis for liability under FSMA Schedule 10A. Further, an issuer is liable only if the PDMR (here, each Defendant) *"knew the omission to be a dishonest concealment of a material fact."*

1668. Thus, to establish liability for an omission, the onus is on the Claimants to demonstrate on the balance of probabilities that:

(1) Disclosure of the omitted matter was *"required to be included"* (that is, mandated by applicable legislation or accounting standards)[240] in the relevant published information;

(2) The relevant Defendant, being a PDMR, had actual knowledge, at the time of the omission of the published information in question, of (a) a material fact which (b) he also knew was required (in the sense explained above) to be disclosed but which instead (c) was being *"concealed"* (that is, deliberately being left out).

1669. The issues as to the materiality of a fact which had not been disclosed and as to whether disclosure was *"required"* turn on Accounting Standards and Practice, on which there was detailed opposing expert evidence. The issues of what might be termed *"guilty knowledge"* and dishonest concealment are issues of fact. I address first the accountancy issues and thereafter the factual issues.

Did Autonomy's published information omit a material fact required to be disclosed?

1670. In arguing that such disclosure was *"required"* the Claimants relied in particular on IAS 18, §35; IAS 1 §29; and IFRS 8, §32. Alternatively, even if disclosure was not required under specific IFRSs, they contended that additional disclosures were necessary under IAS 1, §17(c) in order to achieve a fair presentation in the Annual Reports.[241] I shall address those provisions in turn by reference to the expert evidence as to the application of these provisions and in the order that Mr Holgate dealt with them in his expert report.

1671. Before doing so, however, the confines of the issue seem to me best observed by recording that the following matters were and remain common ground:

(1) As previously noted, the revenues from hardware sales were properly included within the overall revenues of Autonomy in compliance with IFRS;

[240] which is not the same as commercially sensible or advisable.

[241] In the RRAPoC, the Claimants also relied on various provisions of the Companies Act 2006, the Combined Code on Corporate Governance and the Disclosure and Transparency Rules, but as explained below, it appears that these points are no longer pursued.

(2) There was no requirement on Autonomy to disclose hardware revenues in its quarterly or interim reports;

(3) None of the Companies Act 2006, the Combined Code or the Disclosure and Transparency Rules required disclosure;

(4) Autonomy properly reported that it had a single operating segment for the purposes of IFRS 8 and this was not gainsaid by the Claimants;

(5) The accounts were prepared or scrutinised by the finance department (made up of a number of experienced accountants), Deloitte and the Audit Committee, and all three groups considered and decided on the appropriate accounting treatment.

IAS 18.35

1672. Mr Holgate cited the requirement in IAS 18.35 to disclose:

> *"the amount of each significant category of revenue recognised during the period, including revenue arising from: (i) the sale of goods; (ii) the rendering of services …"*

1673. There is no dispute between the experts that IAS 18.35 was mandatory (*"An entity shall disclose…"*). The issue is whether the requirement to disclose *"each significant category of revenue"* extends to providing a further breakdown of the goods sold or services rendered within those categories.

1674. Mr Holgate's opinion, as given in his evidence, was that hardware sales (a) were very different in their nature and economic effect from the (disclosed) software sales, with radically different profit margins, so as to comprise a *"category of revenue"* and (b) the quantum of the hardware sales was such as to render them *"significant"*.

1675. When cross-examined, Mr Holgate elaborated on his view as follows:

> *"… in many circumstances which are straightforward, then this disclosure requirement [in IAS 18 §35] would be met by saying sale of goods X, rendering of services Y, interest separately and so on. But the circumstances here, as I've outlined, are very unusual in terms of the growth of hardware, the impact on growth percentages and the vastly different gross profit percentages involved. So we're not in a normal situation, I don't believe. So it is important to read the requirements which is the amount of each significant category of revenue recognised in the period and then including this and that. But, to me, the hardware revenue is a significant category of revenue because, if you don't know about it as a separate component, then you are easily misled about the growth, where the growth has come from, where the profitability has come from, the effect on gross margins and the overall picture of what is described as a pure software company, if there's hardware within there with very different characteristics, economic characteristics from the main software business. To not*

> *disclose that, I think has various problems including true and fair view and fair presentation and, more specifically here, it is in my view a significant category of revenue for the reasons I've given."*

1676. However, Mr Holgate accepted that there was no definition of what counted as a "category". There is nothing in the wording of the rule that requires a further breakdown into sub-categories. Nor was Mr Holgate able to point to any literature which suggested that a breakdown within the listed categories was required.

1677. Mr Holgate appeared at one point to argue that the interpretation of the rule should be conditioned by such matters as growth rates, margins, and the scale of the relevant sales; in other words that these things should affect the interpretation of the rule in some way. However, he did not explain how these factors could affect the interpretation of the mandatory rule.

1678. Mr Holgate also raised the spectre of an argument, echoing that of the Claimants, that the reference to Autonomy as a "*pure software company"* was somehow relevant to this rule. But he then accepted that, in context, that was used to point out the differences between Autonomy's business and that of a service provider. Again, he did not offer any real explanation as to how that could affect the interpretation of IAS 18.35 or cause it to be read as requiring a further breakdown below the level of "categories" of revenue.

1679. Mr MacGregor accepted that the hardware sales were indeed *"significant"* and that they were different in nature from sales of software. However, he took a different view about the application of IAS 18.35, focused on the words *"category of revenue"*.

1680. Mr MacGregor's view was that the categories of revenue described in this standard are general categories of sale of goods, rendering of services, royalties, *et cetera*. Mr MacGregor relied upon IAS 18.1, which sets out the scope of the standard and explains that it covers revenue in five categories. These are then replicated in IAS 18.35. He explained that the purpose of IAS 18.35 is to require the separate statement and disclosure of revenue in these categories, if it is significant. In his view, no further sub-categorisation or breakdown of the revenues within these categories is required.

1681. Accordingly, Mr MacGregor's evidence supported the approach in fact taken by Autonomy, which was audited by Deloitte. The accounts divide the revenues into the categories of (i) sales of goods and (ii) rendering of services but do not provide a further breakdown of those categories.

1682. Furthermore, and although sometimes rather didactic in his approach, Mr Holgate accepted that in relation to this specific issue the view taken by Deloitte, that no sub-categorisation was required by the rule, was not outside the range of a reasonable accountant's views.

1683. Mr Rabinowitz pressed Mr MacGregor in cross-examination on what meaning he thus gave to the words *"<u>including</u> revenue arising…"* [my emphasis] which might appear to suggest that the list which followed was not exhaustive; but

Mr MacGregor at least three times repeated his view that in its context the list was indeed intended to be exhaustive.

1684. Further, Mr MacGregor rejected Mr Holgate's suggestion that the rule may depend on variable metrics of performance of the kind he ventilated. He depicted that approach as importing a sort of segmental analysis: and he was adamant that *"This is not an attempt by the standard setters to come up with a segmental analysis"*.

1685. Mr MacGregor considered that Mr Holgate's approach would inject excessive uncertainty and subjectivity into what is stated as a simple and straightforward rule. Further, the Defendants argued that IAS 18.35 is only one of many applicable provisions: it is not the only means of bringing home the objective of IFRS. The suggestion that the Claimants' interpretation was necessary to safeguard the objectives of IFRS ignored this.

1686. To test his view, I suggested to Mr MacGregor in the course of his cross-examination an extreme example, of a company (I gave Siemens purely as an illustrative example) which made and sold both (say) mobile telephones and fridges, products with vastly different profit margins: I asked him whether he would nevertheless contend that they should be lumped together in one category as both being sales of goods. He said he would. Mr Rabinowitz took this up with him as follows:

> *"Q. And just to be clear, Mr MacGregor, ...you take the view that you don't have to disclose those separate categories, however different they may be, however important they may be to understanding how the company is working, you don't have to disclose them separately, however material they may be for the ability of the investor to understand the financial position of the company; is that your view?*
>
> *A. This is what the Standard requires...this is not the role of the Standard, to sort out segmental disclosures. If in Siemens, the mobile phone department is organised as a separate segment from the…white goods department, and…they're managed separately and they're reported on separately, then in the segmental information, which is required under IFRS 8, if that's the way Siemens organises itself, then that information would be disclosed there.*
>
> *On the other hand, if there was just one department dealing with all electrical goods, which includes mobile telephones and fridges, it wouldn't. It comes down to the way management has organized itself, certainly under IFRS 8.*
>
> *Q. So doesn't that in your view, however material it would be for investors to know about it, they wouldn't have to be disclosed under this Standard, the fact that the company was doing that?*
>
> *A. This is the disclosure requirement…*

> *…what was in the conceptual Standard doesn't mean you disclose whatever somebody out there might think is interesting, material or significant. The disclosure requirements are set out in the IFRSs…*
>
> …
>
> *You're trying to read into [IAS 18] something which seems to me to be along the lines of, because there is information someone out there might find reasonably useful, you need to disclose it. That is not the requirement."*

1687. In his oral reply, Mr Rabinowitz disparaged this interpretation of *"including"* and the application of IAS 18.35 as *"confused"* and *"plainly wrong"*. In the Claimants' written closing, it was submitted that the difficulty and flaw in Mr MacGregor's approach was that it:

> *"produces an outcome that is entirely inconsistent with the general objective of IFRS, namely to ensure a fair presentation of a company's financial position and its financial performance in a way that enables readers of its financial information to make economic decisions."*

1688. The Claimants also cited in support two letters written to Autonomy by the Financial Reporting Review Panel ("FRRP") on 9 September 2009 and 30 November 2009, in the latter of which the FRRP stated:

> *"The Panel further notes that it regards the categories listed in paragraph 35(b) of IAS 18 as a minimum disclosure only and would generally expect more disclosure from all but companies with relatively simple operations*".[242]

1689. As to the Defendants' interpretation, they submitted that whether the word "including" before a list is intended to be exemplary or exhaustive is a matter of interpretation having regard to the context. Further, the Defendants submitted, while there is room for debate about whether there could, in principle, be further categories of revenue, the question here is not whether the hardware sales should have been disclosed as another category. The Defendants' position was that the hardware revenues represent revenues from the sale of goods, which is one of the express categories contained in the rule. The issue is whether the rule required further breakdown within that category; not whether there might be some other category of revenue beyond those listed. Hence, they submitted, the contention whether the rule is non-exhaustive is nothing to the point.

[242] It should be noted that the FRRP's comments were in relation to a company's general disclosure requirements. They were not directed at the hardware issue, which was not on their radar at the dates of those letters.

1690. In such circumstances, it is necessary to consider the other provisions on which Mr Holgate relied: for it was the Claimants' case that it is not just IAS 18.35 that would have compelled disclosure. The starting point is IAS 1.

IAS 1

1691. IAS 1 is a general standard about the presentation of financial statements. It is not concerned specifically with revenue reporting, there being (as already apparent) specific standards prescribed in IAS 18 (revenue) and IFRS 8 (segmental reporting).

IAS 1.1

1692. IAS 1.1 explains that the standard prescribes the basis for presentation of general purpose financial statements to ensure comparability both with the entity's financial statements of previous periods and with the financial statements of other entities. It sets out overall requirements for the presentation of financial statements, guidelines for their structure, and minimum requirements for their content. For present purposes, the provisions specifically relied on (as well as IAS 1.1) are 1.15, 1.17, 1.29, and 1.30. Mr MacGregor also relied on IFRS 8.

IAS 1.15

1693. IAS 1.15 is concerned with the general requirement that financial statements "*shall present fairly the financial position, financial performance and cash flows of an entity.*" It makes clear that:

> *"Fair presentation requires the faithful representation of the effects of transactions, other events and conditions in accordance with the definitions and recognition criteria for assets, liabilities, income and expenses set out in the Framework."*

1694. The final sentence of IAS 1.15 states that *"the application of IFRSs, with additional disclosure when necessary, is presumed to result in financial statements that achieve a fair presentation."* It continues that "*<u>in virtually all circumstances</u>, an entity achieves a fair presentation by compliance with applicable IFRSs*" [my underlining] although the paragraph then states that there may be some circumstances where fair presentation requires further disclosures (see IAS 1.17(C)).

IAS 1.17

1695. IAS 1.17 similarly states that *"In virtually all circumstances, an entity achieves a fair presentation by compliance with applicable IFRSs".* But it too, in sub-paragraph (c) repeated that a *"fair presentation"* also requires an entity:

> *"to provide additional disclosures when compliance with the specific requirements in IFRSs is insufficient to enable users to understand the*

> *impact of particular transactions, other events and conditions on the entity's financial position and financial performance."*

1696. The real dispute between the experts was, in the end, as to when *"additional disclosures"* would become necessary, and whether they did so in the circumstances of the hardware sales in this case.

1697. Mr Holgate considered the *"fair presentation"* requirement in IAS 1 to be analogous to the *"true and fair view"* standard in the Companies Act. I would interpolate that this appears to me to be consistent with the approach of the FRC, and with the view expressed in an Opinion of Mr Martin Moore QC that the two are *"synonymous"* and *"simply different articulations of the same concept."* [243]

1698. In that regard, Mr MacGregor's opinion was that where all applicable IFRSs have been complied with, the threshold for further disclosure is a very high one and further disclosure will only be required rarely.

1699. Mr Holgate accepted that the question whether further disclosure is needed under that rule notwithstanding compliance with the detailed specific provisions of IFRS is a matter of accounting judgement.

IAS 1.29

1700. Mr Holgate placed special reliance on IAS 1.29, which provides as follows:

> *"An entity shall present separately each material class of similar items. An entity shall present separately items of a dissimilar nature or function unless they are immaterial."*

1701. In Mr Holgate's view, IAS 1.29 was a further standard that applied so as to require Autonomy separately to disclose its hardware sales because, both in relation to 2009 and 2010, those hardware sales were material and, further, those hardware sales were of a dissimilar nature to the other sales Autonomy was making (i.e. software sales). The test for materiality, in this context, is whether the information could influence the economic decisions that users make on the basis of the financial statements.

1702. The Claimants contended that there are any number of factors that would highlight the dissimilar nature of hardware and software sales by Autonomy, including the very different profit margins that each type of sale would attract; software involves the sale of a licence, whereas hardware is a tangible product; software was created by Autonomy, but hardware was bought and resold with no added value. They also suggested that it is clear that Autonomy itself regarded selling hardware as wholly dissimilar to selling software, and indeed that Mr MacGregor did not in fact dispute that the products and their sale were dissimilar.

[243] See Opinion of Martin Moore QC, *'The True and Fair Requirement Revisited'* dated 21 April 2008 and published by the FRC on its website.

1703. In terms of materiality, Mr Holgate in his report developed in some detail his reasons for concluding that hardware sales could not be considered immaterial. Thus:

(1) Mr Holgate identified, in this context, the volume of sales of hardware compared with total reported sales. His Table A was put forward as illustrating the fact that, for FY 2009, total hardware revenue constituted 7.3% of total reported revenue, and that, for FY 2010 total hardware revenue constituted 12.1% of total reported revenue. Mr MacGregor did not suggest that the revenue from hardware, for example in FY 2010 when it was over 12.1%, was immaterial in the context of the overall revenue reported by Autonomy for those periods.

(2) Mr Holgate further referred, in this context, to the effect of "*pure hardware sales*" on Autonomy's revenue growth from 2008 to 2009 and also from 2009 to 2010. His Table B was put forward to show that, if the contribution made to revenue by hardware in each of those years was stripped out, so as to identify what growth there had been in Autonomy's revenue from its software sales (across the board, including hosting):

i. rather than growth of 47% from 2008 to 2009, the figure would be 36.5% – a reduction in growth of some 22%;

ii. rather than growth of 17.7% from 2009 to 2010, the figure would be 11.5% – a reduction in growth of 35%.

1704. Mr Holgate was not challenged on this analysis in cross-examination. Nor was he challenged on his evidence that "*growth in revenue is a major performance indicator for listed companies and one that Autonomy frequently cited*" and that such a difference in these growth figures of software was *"highly significant"*. Mr MacGregor accepted that it was material, though he caveated that *"It's a smaller part than played by other parts of revenue"*.

1705. Mr Holgate further set out figures intended to illustrate both the very different gross margins that applied to sales of hardware and sales of software and the extent to which the gross margin applicable to sales of hardware affected the overall gross profit margin. Mr Holgate, in this context, also noted that it would have been important, in "*seeking to interpret an overall gross profit of 79%, ... to know that the majority of sales are at a 90% margin and that a minority of sales are at a gross loss*". Mr Holgate was not challenged on this in cross-examination.

1706. Again, Mr MacGregor did not express disagreement about this, nor did he deny that being able to identify what gross margin applies to what products that an entity is selling was information that could be important for investors. Rather, and as foreshadowed in paragraph 1698 above, Mr MacGregor's position was that on the basis of his understanding of Autonomy's business, IAS 1.29 (indeed the whole of IAS 1) could not add anything to any disclosure obligation on the part of Autonomy in relation to hardware.

1707. Mr MacGregor made the following principal points:

(1) First, in his view, disclosure of revenue was expressly covered by IAS 18.35 and no further disclosure obligation could, or perhaps should, be added by IAS 1 or IAS 1.29, which were more general in application, rather than being applicable specifically to revenue. Except in very unusual circumstances, compliance with the specific provision qualified as compliance with the general guidance as regards the specific accounting item.

(2) Secondly, Mr Holgate appeared to assume, but did not explain the basis for the assumption, that (in relation to the requirement of IAS 1.29 that *"An entity shall present separately items of a dissimilar nature or function unless they are immaterial"*) hardware sales were to be treated as a separate and material *"class"* of *"items"* from software sales. The Defendants added to this that Mr Holgate had accepted in cross-examination that there was no definition of what is meant by *"similar"* or *"dissimilar"*, nor of *"nature"* or *"function";* nor is there anything in the wording of the provision (at least nothing specific) that required a breakdown of revenue into sub-categories. Further, he had not suggested or provided any support in the literature for the view that the rule requires a breakdown of revenues into sub-categories and (the Defendants submitted) the wording of the rule does not support it.

(3) Thirdly, and as a further matter relevant to the interpretation of IAS 1.29 and (the Defendants submitted) supportive of Mr MacGregor's view, IAS 1.30 appears to show that the reference to "*items*" in a set of financial statements is a reference to a "*line item*". Hence revenue for sales of goods could be such a line item, revenue from services another line item, etc. Similarly, costs of goods sold are a different line item from administrative expenses. The rule says that each class of similar line items must be presented separately. It also says that if a line item (say sales and marketing expenses) is not material it need not be separately disclosed. These rules say nothing about the need to present a breakdown within a line item.

(4) Fourthly, and in any event, IAS 1, as a general presentation standard, had to be read together with IFRS 8.

1708. Mr MacGregor made clear, however, at least when cross-examined, that his approach was informed by his understanding (on the basis of his instructions) that (as he put it):

> *"Autonomy considered it was essentially selling one overall product, and everything connected with the sale of that product was considered to be [the same] revenue."*

1709. Mr MacGregor appeared to accept in cross-examination that if the sale of hardware had no connection with or relationship to the sale of software,

"nothing to do with the sale of software", then IAS 1.29 could apply and require disclosure:

> *"Q. So you accept that IAS 1.29 could apply? You're just saying you don't think it does if Autonomy – if Dr Lynch's version of the facts is right and hardware was simply sold as a way of selling software?*
>
> *A. That's correct. I mean, if the reason for selling the hardware was not to sell the software but was for another reason, for example to pump up revenues, then clearly that is something which is material to an understanding of the business. In those circumstances. But in the circumstances where it's incidental, connected with the sale of the software, then no. I appreciate there is a dispute over that.*
>
> *Q. So just to be clear, I think you're accepting that if the primary reason was actually to drive revenue rather than to drive software sales, there would have had to have been disclosure, including under IAS 1.29 –*
>
> *A. That's correct. Just to be clear, if what's being suggested is that they are implying that what was in fact the sale of IDOL was in fact the sale not of that at all but it was basically being used to pump up revenues, then I would agree, that is something which the accounts should have disclosed. Those are the two – that seems to me the boundary or the bounds of the dispute and the effect on the presentation."*

1710. That leads on to a further issue as to the application and effect of IFRS 8, and in particular IFRS 8.32.

IFRS 8

1711. IFRS 8 is generally concerned with segmental reporting. The standard applied to Autonomy for the first time in respect of the full year accounts for 2009. It was then a new standard, adopted as part of an attempt to converge IFRS and US GAAP, and (although Mr Holgate disagreed) Mr MacGregor considered that there were uncertainties about its application.

1712. Mr MacGregor gave as an example a debate as to the extent to which it replicated or overlapped with the requirements of IAS 18.35; and he also referred to a paper (*"Post-Implementation Review of IFRS 8 Operating Segments"* dated July 2013) which the International Accounting Standards Board (the "IASB") had issued to consider and report on various uncertainties

which had caused debate and difficulty. These difficulties and uncertainties included the issue as to the meaning of *"similar economic characteristics"* and when operating segments fell to be aggregated[244].

1713. As explained in Dr Lynch's closing submissions, and put broadly, whether an entity should be accounted for as having one or more *"Operating Segments"* so as to distinguish the performance of each depends on the way the entity is managed, on the information flows within the company, and on identifying the "chief operating decision maker". Speaking generally, where there is more than one line of business, it will be expected that there is more than one operating segment.

1714. In the case of Autonomy, the finance department and Deloitte concluded in both 2009 and 2010 that there was a single operating segment and (as already explained) that conclusion has not been questioned in these proceedings.

IFRS 8.1

1715. IFRS 8.1 identifies the "*core*" principle of IFRS 8 as follows:

> *"An entity shall disclose information to enable users of its financial statements to evaluate the nature and financial effects of the business activities in which it engages and the economic environments in which it operates."*

1716. One of the curiosities of IFRS 8 is that although at first blush it might be taken that it applies only to determine whether an entity should adopt segmental accounting, and if it does, to provide for its more detailed application, it is common ground that at least one of its provisions can also apply to an entity with a single Operating Segment, such as Autonomy. The particular provision in issue is IFRS 8.32.

IFRS 8.32

1717. IFRS 8.32 provides as follows:

> "*An entity shall report the revenues from external customers for each product and service, or each group of similar products and services, unless the necessary information is not available and the cost to develop it would be excessive, in which case that fact shall be disclosed. The amounts of revenues reported shall be based on the financial information used to produce the entity's financial statements."*

1718. It is not in dispute that IFRS 8.32 in effect obliges an entity to report the revenues for *"each product or service"* that it provides to customers – or each "*group of similar products or services*" – unless the information is not available and cannot be made available without excessive expense. It is not suggested that this information was not available within Autonomy.

[244] The IASB noted that *"the empirical evidence identified in the academic review shows that the number of reported segments has increased and the number of single-segment entities has decreased."*

1719. As already noted above, Mr Holgate saw no difficulty or uncertainty in the application of the standard in the case of Autonomy. He was of the view that the sale of hardware was indeed dissimilar to Autonomy's software sales: hardware and software had to be regarded as different products or different groups of products; and that, since the volume of hardware sales was material, IFRS 8.32 clearly obliged Autonomy to make separate disclosure of its hardware sales.

1720. Against that, and as in relation to the other potentially applicable standards, Mr MacGregor noted that the standard did not define "*similar products*", which was therefore something in relation to which judgement was required. He also noted that materiality was, again, a matter in relation to which judgement was required. In each case the judgement would be fact-sensitive and nuanced. In his opinion, the question turned on the nature of the business being carried on by Autonomy; and I took Mr MacGregor to justify this approach in part by reference to the need to give some different content to IAS 8.32, ascribing to IAS 8 overall the objective of requiring proper disclosure of substantially separate and independently run businesses. Mr MacGregor stressed also that in his opinion, *"judgment was (and is) the foundation when considering the application of IFRS 8.32"*; and he emphasised that when stating his overall view in respect of IAS 8.32:

> *"...judgement is required when determining whether an entity's sales of products and services require separate disclosure. On the basis that Autonomy's hardware sales were incidental to the sales of the core software product, I agree with the conclusions reached by Deloitte that separate disclosure was not required."*

1721. Mr MacGregor told me that this was consistent with the way that other accountants and other companies (including those which, like Autonomy, had a single operating segment for the purposes of IAS 8) had looked at the matter, as had Deloitte in this case after careful consideration of IAS 8.32 and review also by its National Accounting and Auditing Team ("NAA").

1722. Applying that approach, and as in relation to IAS 1.29, Mr MacGregor explained his view that Autonomy was not required to make separate disclosure under IFRS 8.32 of its hardware revenues, on the basis that Autonomy undertook no separate or segregated business of hardware selling: the hardware sales were 'incidental' to Autonomy's IDOL software sales.

1723. Mr MacGregor's view was that on the basis that Autonomy had only one overall product (IDOL) and the sales of such product were supported by the hardware sales no disclosure was necessary: on that basis, Autonomy was a seller of software and the other sales were, like everything else the company did, made in order to sell IDOL. As Mr MacGregor put it in cross-examination:

> *"...there is one overall product and that product is supported by essentially the hardware sales. That is the important thing. That is their business model.*

…

My understanding is that Autonomy isn't interested in hardware, it doesn't consider itself to be a seller of hardware per se. What it considers itself to be is a seller of certain types of software and everything else it does is designed to support those sales."[245]

1724. Mr MacGregor's general position was encapsulated as follows:

"Q. That [i.e growth figures] *is plainly information of the sort that could affect the decision of users of the financial accounts, correct?*

A. Well, it may do but if you're not required to disclose it, then you're not required to disclose it. I mean, Autonomy could have taken the view they would disclose it elsewhere but you're not required to disclose it in a set of financial statements…

…

Q. …you do not dispute, do you, Mr MacGregor, that being able to identify what gross margin applied to what products an entity was selling is indeed something that could influence the economic decisions of users of accounts?

A. But it's not – the breakdown of the gross margin is not something that is required by accounting standards. If you're going to do it, then it's done on a…voluntary basis.

Q. What's the answer to my question? Do you accept that it is something that could affect the economic decisions of users of the accounts?

A. It might do. It might do…it might do but there's all sorts of things that companies do that could affect the economic decisions of people out there who might invest or who might not. They're not required to disclose them in the annual financial statements if it's not required by the accounting standards.

Q. Just in terms of whether hardware and software sales were dissimilar in nature or indeed function to other items that Autonomy was selling, just standing back, there's a fairly obvious distinction between the nature of hardware and the nature of software?

[245] Mr MacGregor accepted that if the hardware sales were a separate sale of a different product to the sale of Autonomy's core IDOL product, then they would have to be disclosed unless hardware sales could reasonably be considered by management to be 'incidental' to the sales of the core product, with their principal purpose being to 'drive' or 'facilitate' software sales. Mr MacGregor appeared to accept, therefore, that if Dr Lynch's case that Autonomy entered into the hardware sales to drive software sales is not accepted, the hardware sales should have been disclosed.

> A. *Yes, there is. If you step back and look at those two things, but my understanding is within the context of the business that Autonomy considered it was essentially selling one overall product, and that everything connected with the sale of that product was considered to be the sale of revenue.*
>
> *The way I think about this when I think about one-segment companies of which there are some, you're allowed to have one-segment companies, IFRS 8 allows you to do that, is this: the principal thing you're selling, the other things which are sold you wouldn't sell but for the principal thing you are selling. That is the distinction which I make in terms of trying to understand why you have a one-segment company."*

1725. This was consistent with the approach in Deloitte's report in relation to IFRS 8.32 in 2009 (which was approved and signed off by the NAA, as was their report in 2010) which read as follows:

> *"All of the software solutions provided by Autonomy to its clients are underpinned by the single core IDOL technology. On that basis, management has provided the following analysis of the revenue balance for the group's single operating segment (Note 4):*
>
> (1) *Sale of goods*
>
> (2) *Rendering of services; and*
>
> (3) *Interest Receivable*
>
> *We note that sale of goods included all items of software and strategic hardware sold during the year. Rendering of services is the release of the support and maintenance revenue and the provision of professional services to clients.*
>
> *As outlined above, management tracks all licence and strategic hardware sales as a single body of sales, being the sale of goods. This is consistent with the financial information presented to Mike Lynch and it is the basis on which he makes his resource allocation decisions. Likewise, the deferred revenue release and the professional services rendered are also reported to Mike as a single line item.*
>
> *On that basis, we deem that management has appropriately disclosed a breakdown of revenue that is consistent with the information presented to the Chief Operating Decision Maker and is that used to produce the group's financial statements.*
>
> *It is worth noting that in their Q4 2010 press release, management did provide some representative revenue figures for the following virtual product categories:*

> *-IDOL Product;*
> *-IDOL Cloud;*
> *-IDOL OEM;*
> *-Deferred revenue release; and*
> *-Services.*
>
> *We note that whilst this information was able to be produced following some detailed analysis performed by management, these are not amounts extracted from the financial information that underpins the preparation of the financial statements. It was derived from a separate analysis purely* [performed] *for providing some information to analysts on the performance of each virtual product category. It does not represent the way that revenues are analysed out on a regular basis for presentation to Mike Lynch.*
>
> *We also note that this is just one of several virtual buckets that management use to badge their different product offering to analysts, another being the Protect, Promote and Power families. Again, no separate financial information is maintained on a regular basis to evidence the results for any of those virtual brands.*
>
> *On that basis we note that the disclosure provided by management is in line with the requirements of IFRS 8."*

1726. Mr Holgate considered that IAS 8 clearly required separate disclosure of revenues from hardware sales (assuming the information was available and material). He accepted that it was a new standard at the time and there had been *"some uncertainty as regards the disclosure of operating segments because it was based on a new idea of what was reported internally to the chief operating decision-maker"* but he disagreed that IAS 8.32 was a source of difficulty, and described it as *"quite straightforward."* He countered the suggestion put to him in cross-examination that the provision lacked a definition of *"the idea of products or groups of similar products and services"* by the response that *"they just have their natural meaning"*.

1727. He disagreed with Mr MacGregor's approach (and thus also with that of Deloitte and the NAA), and considered it (a) to rely on a gloss which was not justified by the words of IAS 8.32, (b) to be extreme and implausible in treating hardware and software as similar products, and (c) to be a view and approach which would not have been taken either by him and his firm or *"the vast majority of auditors and the ones I've come across and worked with"*.

1728. However, Mr Holgate was nevertheless reluctant, when cross-examined directly whether nevertheless a range of views might encompass the decision made by Autonomy and Deloitte, to say that he considered it to be *"completely outside the range of what a reasonable accountant could think."* As in the context of IAS 1, his response was that clearly that is not the way he would have accounted for hardware, and he thought that not only his own firm, but many other firms also, would have considered that disclosure was required; but he could not say that it was *"outside the range of what a*

reasonable accountant could think." That was the same answer as he had given in relation to IAS 1.

Materiality

1729. The two experts had different views as to the materiality test, which seem to me also to reflect their different approaches to the provisions discussed above. These differences can be summarised as being:

(1) In Mr MacGregor's view, *"if you're not required to disclose it, then you're not required to disclose it"*. Materiality is only a consideration in determining whether what would otherwise be a requirement of disclosure is material or not sufficiently material to warrant it. To sever materiality from the anchor of the specific disclosure requirements would lead to what Mr MacGregor called a "*free for all*": what is in fact required is to comply with the standards.

(2) In Mr Holgate's view, this was a surprising and extreme position, which could not be consistent with IAS 1, which is directed towards a fair presentation of the company's financial position, and could not be right. Material information as to the company's performance and financial position should be disclosed, if not under specific IFRS provisions then under IAS 1, to achieve fair presentation.

(3) The essential question is the relationship between the general requirement of IAS 1 (which expressly *"sets out overall requirements for the presentation of financial statements, guidelines for their structure and minimum requirements for their content*") and the specific provisions presumed in *"virtually all circumstances"* (quoting IAS 1.17) to implement those general requirements (albeit with the override that in what Mr MacGregor called *"the very, very rarest cases"* "*additional disclosure"* might remain necessary (despite the presumption) to *"result in financial statements that achieve a fair presentation.*")

(4) Mr Holgate considered that this is a *"rarest case".* Mr MacGregor did not, at least if (as he put it in cross-examination) *"all the sales…are being designed to do one thing which is to sell IDOL software."*

My assessment

1730. I agree that the essential dispute requires review of the relationship between the general requirement of IAS 1 and the specific provisions presumed in *"virtually all circumstances"* (quoting IAS 1.17) to implement those general requirements, and the application of the "override".

1731. I agree with Mr MacGregor that the starting point, and in ordinary circumstances, also the end-point, is what is specifically mandated by the Accounting Standards. Full compliance, mitigated by exception for immateriality, should ordinarily ensure fairness. I agree also with the Defendants that it does not follow from the fact that something might be considered *"reasonably useful"* that it must be disclosed. There are many

aspects of a company's financial position and financial performance which some investors might wish to know about but of which disclosure is not mandated. The Accounting Standards are intended to determine what is to be disclosed and how disclosure is to be effected: and the ordinary presumption will be that if the information is not required to be disclosed under specific Standards, then even if *"reasonably useful"* it need not be disclosed.

1732. On the other hand, I agree that there are rare circumstances where the materiality of the matter in question is such that disclosure is required notwithstanding that there are no specific Standards unequivocally mandating it. If the Standards do not appear to require disclosure of a matter which, measured by its likely effect on their assessment of the company if readers of the published information were to be made aware of it, is of plain and obvious materiality, the "override" may apply. In my judgment, information may just as much be *"required"* to be disclosed for the purposes of s. 90A(3)(b) and (when it came into force in October 2010) Schedule 10A paragraph 3(1) of FSMA to give, overall, a true and fair view of a company's position and performance as when specific accounting principles or statements of practice expressly require it.

1733. It is, in other words, ultimately a question of degree, to be answered taking into account (a) any judgement as to why specific requirements, which are themselves a useful litmus test of materiality, do not apply, (b) any reasons why disclosure is thought to be unnecessary or commercially unwise, and (c) whether having regard to (a) and (b), disclosure is nonetheless required in order to provide, in the round, a true and fair view.

1734. Sometimes, I would surmise often, there will be a nice balance; in those cases it would to my mind be surprising to conclude that nevertheless disclosure was *"required".* I agree with the Defendants' submission that where there is a range of permissible views on whether a matter is *"required to be included",* an issuer will not be held liable for the omission of that matter: and in any event, if there was doubt that would be fatal to a fraud case. In my view, that is especially so where the Standards do not appear specifically to be applicable and the question of any exceptional "override" is being considered.

1735. In the limited category of cases, where the real reason for non-disclosure is a dishonest intention to conceal, the two limbs of this analysis come together. Consciousness of a high degree of materiality in combination with a conscious determination to conceal the relevant facts and matters from published information precisely because of their materiality from the point of view of the reader will likely result in there being (a) a *"requirement"* by virtue of the "override" and (b) dishonest concealment such as to establish liability.

1736. As to the first hurdle for the Claimants of establishing a disclosure "requirement" under the Standards, Mr Holgate tended initially to give the impression of a rather black and white approach. In the end, however, notwithstanding his own unequivocal views as to the correct interpretation of the Standards, he accepted that neither in the context of IAS 8 nor in the context of IAS 1 was he willing to say that the judgement made was *"outside*

the range of what a reasonable accountant could think" (see paragraph 1728 above). I have considered whether this simply reflects polite unwillingness to express views entailing the conclusion that a respected firm had unanswerably been negligent. I have concluded that although that may have been part of it, his reluctance was primarily based on a realistic appreciation that the points made were arguable.

1737. The lesson suggested by the expert evidence is that there was a range of permissible views on the application of the specific provisions in the Accounting Standards; that would suffice for the Defendants since a statement is not to be regarded as false or misleading where it can be justified by reference to that range of views.

1738. In those circumstances, and in light of Mr Holgate's concession that the case that no disclosure was required by the Standards was arguable, I agree with the Defendants that this is not the occasion to determine which of the competing views on the application of the various Standards is best as if it were a binary matter and then conclusive; for it must always be borne in mind that this is a case based on the alleged dishonesty of the Defendants. No claim is made in these proceedings against Deloitte, and there is no suggestion that Deloitte were aware of, still less colluded in, any dishonesty. In such a context, even a conclusion that in each case the applicable Accounting Standards were not properly applied, and that correctly construed the separate disclosure of hardware sales was mandated, would not be enough for the Claimants. They still have to prove that (a) the Defendants knew that disclosure of the hardware sales was required and (b) the non-disclosure was the dishonest concealment of a material fact, notwithstanding that in every case Deloitte did approve the accounting treatment and did not advise that disclosure was required.

1739. In other words, the ultimate question in determining whether there has been a failure to disclose a matter required to be disclosed by the Standards is not the meaning of the specific provisions but whether the Defendants knew there was a requirement to include the relevant fact and determined to and did conceal it. If they honestly believed that the views taken and judgements made in relation to each relevant bit of published information was one within the range of acceptable views, having regard to the facts as known at the time, and that therefore disclosure was not required, that establishes a good defence so far as the "requirements" of the Standards are concerned. That is so even if the relevant but undisclosed fact was highly material, though the greater the materiality, the more likely it is that its non-disclosure was deliberate. However, that is not the end of the matter: the question remains whether the non-disclosure (or the form of any disclosure made) amounts to dishonest concealment because the directors knew that disclosure (or a different form of disclosure) was required in order, in the round, to present a true and fair view.

Did the Defendants determine dishonestly to conceal matters they knew to be material?

1740. I turn to address the issue whether, if the Claimants were able to prove one or more omissions of a *"matter required to be included"* in the published

information, the Defendants *"knew the omission to be dishonest concealment of a material fact"*. I do so on the premise (contrary to my finding) that the purpose given for the hardware reselling was as it was stated to have been by the Defendants. I am aware (and wary) of piling hypothesis on hypothesis.

1741. The Defendants relied in this context on Deloitte's advice to the effect that there was no *"requirement"* mandating disclosure, so that disclosure was a commercial judgement for the board of Autonomy, and contended that in such circumstances they honestly believed that there was no relevant concealment. It was stressed on their behalf that:

(1) As noted previously, only proof of actual 'guilty' knowledge at the time of a requirement to include the relevant fact would suffice: absent actual knowledge of such a requirement there can be no liability for dishonest concealment.

(2) Dishonesty is the gist of the claim against the Defendants and must be proved, and although in civil proceedings the standard of proof always is that of a balance of probabilities, the seriousness of the allegation means that in the ordinary course, cogent evidence is required in order to overcome the inherent unlikelihood of what is alleged and thus to prove it. Experience shows that in the ordinary course, a benign though curious explanation is often more reliable than a malign though initially plausible one; and furthermore, the seriousness of the consequences of a finding of dishonesty militates against the likelihood that the person implicated took the risk of it.[246]

(3) It is relevant to consider the advice given to the company and its directors: and where, on the basis of advice, a director is given to understand that it is not requisite to disclose a particular fact in the company's published information, the omission of that fact is unlikely to amount to a dishonest concealment of it, unless the giver of the advice was materially misled by or to the knowledge of the recipient of it or that recipient knows full well in some way that the advice is wrong.

(4) It is clear from the language of the Schedule that a PDMR must have the relevant guilty knowledge in respect of each false statement or omission alleged to give rise to liability. Paragraph 3(2) states that "*The issuer is liable <u>in respect of an untrue or misleading statement</u> only if a person discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer <u>knew the statement to be untrue</u> or misleading or was reckless as to whether it was untrue or misleading.*" Liability is only engaged in respect of statements known to be untrue.[247] If a company's annual report contains ten misstatements, each of them relied on by a person

[246] Against this, I have reason to recall that the Court of Appeal has stated recently that *"…in commercial cases, there will be a wide spectrum of probabilities as to the occurrence of reprehensible conduct",* and once a propensity for dishonesty in and around the same matter has been demonstrated *"it is faintly absurd to elevate the principle that it is inherently improbable that a party would do something dishonest into a relevant benchmark for the determination of the issues":* see *Bank St Petersburg PJSC & Anor v Arkhangelsky & Anor* [2020] EWCA Civ 408 at [47].

acquiring the company, but it can only be shown that a PDMR knew about one of those misstatements, the company will only be liable in respect of that one, not the other nine.

1742. The Claimants submitted that nevertheless:

(1) The Defendants' assertion of an honest belief based on Deloitte's advice as to the permissibility of not disclosing the hardware sales must also be tested against the background that the Defendants were prepared to tell deliberate lies to the market to ensure that the hardware sales were not detected.

(2) In that regard, the Defendants' Q&A scripts for the earnings calls contained numerous deceptive answers to questions about Autonomy's hardware revenues, many of which Dr Lynch now accepts were misleading (or were, at least, capable of being so).

(3) Further, what the Defendants actually said on the Q1 2010 and Q2 2010 earnings calls was flatly untrue: Dr Lynch's attempt to deny, and put the market off the scent of, Autonomy's pure hardware sales sits very uneasily with the contention that he genuinely believed on the basis of Deloitte's advice that it was permissible for Autonomy to remain silent about its hardware sales.

(4) In addition, the Defendants well knew that Deloitte by no means readily blessed the non-disclosure of the hardware sales, even on the false basis as to the purpose of those transactions presented to Deloitte. On the contrary, Deloitte repeatedly advised Autonomy to make such disclosure. That advice was ignored. Gathering this together:

i. On 14 October 2009, following receipt of the Strategic Deals Memorandum, Mr Knights wrote to the Defendants noting that there would be an issue at year-end as to whether the hardware sales needed to be disclosed and that, "*if disclosure did become necessary and in the absence of any previous indication through the year, it would be the first time that this information would be made available to your investor and analyst community. This might be worthy of some consideration at Q3?*"

ii. Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee for Q3 2009 dated 16 October 2009 noted that hardware sales represented 19% of the total revenues for the quarter and that the Autonomy board "*should consider how best to communicate this new opportunity to the shareholders as these revenues are not driven from the organic IDOL technology of the Group*". Deloitte added that, if hardware sales in the year were significant, there might be a requirement to disclose them in the year-end financial statements.

[247] The same argument applies in relation to omissions: Sch 10A §3(3).

iii. Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee at Q2 2010 advised that "*Given the increasing significance of hardware sales to the Group's revenues, and the resultant impact on the gross and operating margin in the quarter and half year results we would expect appropriate explanation to be given in the Q2 2010 press release*". None was given.

iv. Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee for Q3 2010 again advised that given the "*increasing significance of the hardware sales to the Group's revenues, and the resultant impact on the gross and operating margin in the quarter and half year results we would expect appropriate explanation to be given in the Q3 2010 press release*". Again, none was given.

v. Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee on the 2010 audit stated that "*Given that Autonomy has purchased and on-sold $110 million of hardware during 2010, management now considers that the level of sales being made is equivalent to that of a hardware reseller*". Deloitte expressed the view that, "*Given the increasing significance of hardware sales to the Group's revenues, and the resultant impact on the gross and operating margin in the quarter and full year results, we expect appropriate explanation to be given in the 2010 Annual Report*". None was given.

vi. The Claimants posed the rhetorical question: why were the Defendants so concerned that the market should be kept ignorant of these hardware sales, even if this meant ignoring the views of their own auditors, if there was nothing to hide?

1743. For these reasons, the Claimants contended that the Court should find that the Defendants lacked any honest belief that it was proper for Autonomy to withhold disclosure of the fact, nature and extent of its hardware sales.

Conclusion

1744. My starting and ending point is a strong caveat that my assessment of these opposing contentions is artificial, since I am proceeding on a premise which I have earlier rejected, and building hypothesis on hypothesis leads to a suspect structure.

1745. However, on the hypothetical premises, I would not have been persuaded that the Defendants knew that Deloitte were wrong in their interpretation of the Accounting Standards and their application. The Defendants would have been entitled to rely on Deloitte's interpretation of the particular provisions of those Standards, except in one regard: the exception in my judgment, relates to what I have called "the override".

1746. As to the exception, in my view, the "override", which reflects or echoes the long-established company law requirement that a company's accounts must present a *"true and fair view"*, can be taken to be engraved on the heart of every company director (and especially the CEO and CFO of a public listed

company). Though it may be informed by the views of accountants, the assessment whether a company's accounts, in the round, achieve this objective is a judgment for its board of directors by reference to overall fairness, which cannot exclusively be defined or confined by statements of accounting principle, and the assessment of which cannot be delegated. A question as to whether disclosure should be made, and in what form, is a paradigm example of one which cannot exclusively be determined by statements of accounting principle, or by a company's accountants and auditors: it is ultimately a matter for the judgment of the directors, acting in good faith with a view to providing the information necessary to provide a true and fair view of the company's position and performance.

1747. In my judgment, the nature and extent of the hardware reselling strategy was information of sufficient materiality that its non-disclosure resulted in Autonomy's published information in the round being false and misleading: and the Defendants knew that, and were dishonest therefore in concealing it.

1748. The question posed by one of the Reviewers (Mr Robertson) in Q3 2009 (see paragraph 1361(8)(ii) above) rings in the ears:

> *"What's the sensitivity about being more transparent on this score? If it's a strong strategic move for them, why wouldn't they want to explain this?"*

1749. No satisfactory answer was ever provided. As indicated in paragraphs 878 to 888 above, Dr Lynch's justification for it was stated in his first witness statement as follows:

> *"HP complains that Autonomy should have provided further disclosure about the nature and extent of its "pure hardware sales". Autonomy was under no obligation so far as I was aware at the time, to break down its revenue into hardware and software, let alone into different types of hardware. Given the defensive nature of the hardware strategy, we did not particularly want to volunteer this information to the market. We did not want competitors to know that we felt vulnerable by the move to appliances or that we perceived a risk of being removed from strategic supplier lists (and copy our strategy of selling increased volumes to these companies). In addition, we did not want our relationships with one hardware supplier to preclude us from working with another or news of favourable deal terms getting out and being demanded from everyone. The more details we disclosed about our hardware sales, the more we exposed these commercial sensitivities."*

1750. As with most, if not all, of Dr Lynch's explanations, this carried an initial semblance of reason and reliability: and no doubt non-disclosure did have the advantages identified, especially in Q3 2009. However:

(1) Dr Lynch's own evidence was that in Q3 2009, the market perceived appliances to be a likely preferred means in the immediate future of delivering software. That was no secret, and nor was it a secret, or otherwise than obvious to anyone interested, that Autonomy had no appliance offering. Why keeping quiet Autonomy's avowed efforts to develop an appliance jointly with the largest hardware suppliers in the world to remedy this apparent gap in its offering in those circumstances was necessary or appropriate is extremely difficult to explain.

(2) The Defendants could never quite make up their mind whether their case was that the market did know or that it did not know of the hardware sales. Mr Bloomer thought it did, and said that there was no attempt to keep from the market the fact that Autonomy sold hardware at a loss, and he himself discussed this with an institutional investor (Hermes): in which case the commercial sensitivity argument seems further eroded.

(3) The "shift" in the rationale for the hardware reselling strategy in Q1 2010 or Q2 2010, away from appliances or establishing Autonomy as a preferred supplier, and towards a *"customer-facing"* or *"one-stop shop"* justification, left much of Dr Lynch's justification outmoded.

(4) Furthermore, the relevant customers were, according to the Defendants' own case, existing volume customers of Autonomy in the financial field, further calling into question why there should have been sensitivity in revealing details lest customers use it against Autonomy. There is no evidence or sign to suggest that Autonomy would not have wished to offer the same terms to all valued software customers to incentivise software sales.

1751. Overall, and even (a) on the premise that the purpose of the hardware sales was to drive software sales and (b) accepting that the Court will be very hesitant in second-guessing genuine business judgments made in good faith by those entrusted to make them, the proportion of the revenues derived from hardware seems to me so to have cried out for disclosure as to outweigh any contrary commercial sensitivity in determining the issue of disclosure. It may be remembered that this is broadly what Mr Ariko thought: and he was only deflected by the series of falsities in Dr Lynch's response to his request for a review of disclosure (see paragraphs 879 to 881 and paragraphs 1395 to 1403 above), including that the market was already aware of hardware sales from what they had been told on earnings calls.

1752. I have taken into account, in deciding that the decision not to disclose was not within the generous ambit of discretion afforded by the court in matters of commercial judgement, the counter-indication that neither the Audit Committee nor Mr Webb considered that disclosure was required either, and there is no suggestion of lack of impropriety on their part in this regard. I have explained Mr Bloomer's outlook in paragraphs 859 to 862 above, and Mr Webb's in paragraph 863 above.

1753. In my view, the Audit Committee's curious indifference or at least passivity in this regard under the chairmanship of Mr Bloomer, and in particular his and their approach in considering the measure of materiality for these purposes to be in the region of 25% of total revenues, appears to me to reflect a mistaken approach. They treated materiality according to whether the programme was of such a size or nature as to upset the segmental analysis (see paragraph 1372 above). But though related that was a different issue. In four of the ten quarters in the Relevant Period more than 10% of revenue comprised loss-making hardware sales. In Q3 2009, 22.8% of revenue was so comprised, and though this dropped in Q4 2009 and Q1 2010 (to 4.1% and 6.1% respectively) after the cessation of Autonomy's relationship with EMC, it rose again to 14.1% in Q2 2010, 12.7% in Q3 2010 and 12.0% in Q4 2010, before dropping back again to 9.1% in Q1 2011 and 8.1% in Q2 2011. This was, in my judgment, clearly material, and whilst the Audit Committee and Mr Webb appear to have been disoriented by the segmental issue, there is nothing in the evidence to suggest that the Defendants were in the same way.

1754. In any event, even if Mr Bloomer and his colleagues, and it also seems Mr Webb, considered that the hardware reselling strategy was well known to the market, the Defendants knew that it was not. The Defendants' perspective was different.

1755. At this point the accumulation of hypotheses becomes almost impossible to accommodate. But on the footing that whilst I am to assume a proper purpose for the hardware sales, and no imperative to conceal the purpose, I am not required to accept the commercial reasons given by Dr Lynch, which seem to me to be contrived. No substantial or satisfactory answer to the pertinent question posed by Mr Robertson in Q3 2009 as to what could possibly be the sensitivity about transparency of a strong strategic move having been given, and in light of the Defendants' consistent and egregious efforts to find reasons or Delphic language to avoid it, I would have been inclined to the conclusion that the Defendants simply had no good reason not to disclose. That would leave a judgment based on a covert and dishonest objective as the only available explanation.

1756. Fortunately, however, I need not and do not base my decision on that ground. On my actual conclusions, the ultimate relevance of the exegesis and assessment is in its confirmation of my judgment that the Defendants lacked any honest belief that it was proper for Autonomy to withhold disclosure of the fact, nature and extent of its hardware sales.

Issue (3): Did Autonomy's treatment of the costs of the hardware render Autonomy's published information untrue or misleading and did the Defendants appreciate this?

1757. Obviously, if the true purpose of the hardware reselling strategy was to pump up revenue and the purpose put forward to Deloitte of driving software sales was a pretext, the allocation of part of the costs or losses of the programme to sales and marketing expenses, rather than as COGS, was both a further

indication and a further instance of impropriety. The experts were agreed on this also. But what if the purpose was as put forward by the Defendants?

1758. The Claimants contended that even then it is plain that the Defendants

> *"did not genuinely believe that it was proper to treat part of the costs of the hardware that was sold as a sales and marketing expense…that treatment was driven, not by any genuine attempt to apply the accounting standards correctly, but by reverse-engineering to get to a desired gross margin figure."*

1759. The Claimants' expert, Mr Holgate, accepted that there was no IFRS guidance on what a company should include in COGS or Sales and marketing but that was because it was so obvious that it does not require explanation. He considered and opined that it was obvious that it is:

> *"clearly contrary to IFRS and wrong in a wider sense to account for part of COGS as sales and marketing expense…*
>
> *…*
>
> *Making sales at low margins, or even at losses, has no impact on the simple principle that the costs of goods sold is shown as COGS and the costs of sales and marketing activities are shown as sales and marketing expenses. The effect of a reduction in sales price is exactly that: revenues are reduced."*

1760. Thus, according to the Claimants, it was plain and obvious that Autonomy was wrongly and misleadingly treating all the revenue from 'pure' hardware sales as revenue, but less than all of the costs of the product that it sold as a cost of that revenue. Autonomy's published information was untrue or misleading for the further reason that the allocation to sales and marketing of any part of the costs of the hardware reselling strategy resulted in the figures for COGS, gross profit, gross margin, and sales and marketing expenses in the Annual Reports and the Quarterly Reports from Q3 2009 to Q2 2011 all being false.

1761. The Defendants did not accept this. They contended that within the price paid for the hardware was an element of marketing expense; and there was nothing in the IFRS or otherwise to prevent that element being allocated in accordance with what they presented to be its true nature. Further, all of the various allocations of costs to sales and marketing were closely monitored by Deloitte (including review by the Reviewers), who signed off on them in every quarter in the Relevant Period as representing a reasonable allocation having regard to the marketing purpose.

1762. The Audit Committee likewise were content with the final figures agreed. Mr Bloomer explained in his witness statement:

> *"My view was that it was not unreasonable for losses on hardware sales to be categorised to sales and marketing when the benefit generated from having incurred these losses would arrive over time through further sales."*

1763. Mr MacGregor supported this line, elaborating when cross-examined that he could see nothing wrong with treating as a sales and marketing expense *"the loss which has been taken because it's an incentive to sell the overall software product…"*

1764. Given my previous conclusions, it is sufficient to state my views on this area of the dispute in more summary form:

   (1) Mr Holgate's approach tended to overlook the Defendants' basic argument that part of the amounts paid by Autonomy to the hardware supplier concerned were referable to, and properly treated as, a premium to fund marketing.

   (2) To the extent that the payment of such a premium could be shown on the facts, I am not persuaded (on the hypothesis that the hardware reselling was for the purposes asserted by the Defendants) that it would be wrong to account for it, or some part of it, as a marketing expense.

   (3) Whether that was sufficiently demonstrated by Autonomy in every or any case is a question of fact.

   (4) In point of fact, I have concluded previously (see paragraphs 1335 to 1340 above) that the *"residual method"* was adopted in respect of the amounts paid to EMC in Q3 2009 as an expedient proxy because EMC was not prepared to acknowledge that any part of the purchase price paid by Autonomy for the hardware it resold was referable to development or marketing costs. This was not an appropriate basis on which to allocate to Sales and marketing a sizeable proportion of the costs.

   (5) Similarly, and notwithstanding the provisions unilaterally inserted into the purchase orders by Autonomy to bolster an argument that part of the purchase price of hardware supplied by Dell was referable to marketing or development (see paragraphs 940 to 941 above), neither Dell nor, for that matter, Hitachi, ever agreed to part of the purchase price being committed in that way, and there was no sufficient basis in fact for allocating any substantial part of the costs to Sales and marketing. Indeed, that was the decision of Deloitte, subject to a concession in respect of losses (10%) and to Mr Knights' "solution" (see paragraph 1495(2) above).

   (6) I accept the Claimants' contention that the amount of costs which Autonomy proposed should be allocated to Sales and marketing was dictated by (a) management's need to reduce the impact of the loss making hardware reselling strategy on gross margins (and thereby, in effect, manipulate the figures) and (b) what Deloitte could be

persuaded to accept. Internal emails demonstrated this: the examples given by the Claimants being (a) an email from Mr Hussain to Mr Chamberlain dated 11 October 2009, asking Mr Chamberlain to *"see if you can allocate $4m from cogs to opex"* because *"need GM [i.e. gross margin] to be at the minimum 86%"* and (b) an email dated 18 April 2010 from Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch telling him *"need to relocate some costs from cogs to opex"*.

(7) After Deloitte had confined the sales and marketing expenses allocation to losses (and thus some 10% of costs) the amounts became relatively immaterial: certainly, that was the view taken by Mr Bloomer and his colleagues on the Audit Committee.

1765. With reference to (7) above, Mr Miles submitted in his oral closing submissions that even if in Q3 2009 the amount allocated was (a) not properly substantiated (b) disproportionate in any event and (c) calculated by the process of reverse engineering suggested by the Claimants, the Claimants did not make their decision by reference to Q3 2009, and by 2010 the impact on the accounts had been much reduced because Deloitte had insisted that only losses could be allocated, with the effect that 90% of the costs were allocated to COGS. The impact on gross margin of about 1% was immaterial. According to the argument, therefore, Autonomy's accounts in 2010 and 2011 were not rendered materially untrue or misleading even if the losses from hardware sales were wrongly allocated to sales and marketing: there was no material deficiency in disclosure.

1766. This argument, which was not in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions, was not specifically addressed by Mr Rabinowitz in his oral reply. Had it been decisive, I would have required additional assistance, since I have not found it an easy point. The difficulty, as I see it, revolves around the separate but associated issues of inducement and causation, and the difficulty of determining what the effect would have been on subsequent accounts if in the Q3 2009 and the 2009 Year-end accounts substantially all the costs of the hardware reselling strategy had been allocated to COGS as I have concluded they should have been. I am disposed to think that the presentation would have altered and that Mr Miles' argument would not be conclusive against the Claimants' case. That seems to me to be supported by the evidence of Mr Gersh in cross-examination to the effect that had HP appreciated prior to the acquisition that part of the costs of hardware or appliance sales had been allocated to sales and marketing expenses, it would have been in a better position to assess the volume of such sales. But I prefer not finally to determine the point.

1767. Lastly under this heading, and in case the matter were to become relevant in the future, I confirm my view that contrary to the Defendants' case, Dr Lynch was involved from the outset (Q3 2009) in the issue of cost allocation.

Issue (4): Should Autonomy, at the least, have made clear in its published information what its accounting policy was with respect to hardware costs?

1768. I can also be relatively brief in summarising my view in respect of the further issue about the extent to which (if any) it was necessary for Autonomy to make clear in its published information what its accounting policies were with respect to its hardware cost accounting.

1769. Mr Holgate pointed out in his first report that the only disclosure given by Autonomy in its 2009 and 2010 consolidated financial statements (note 2(h)) was:

> *"sales and marketing costs comprise the costs of the sales force, commissions and costs of promoting new products and entering into new markets."*

1770. He noted that this policy for sales and marketing costs did not refer to hardware or hardware reselling, though in 2010 (only) the policy for cost of revenue did refer to hardware in passing:

> *"Cost of revenues: Cost of licence revenues include the cost of royalties due to third party licenses, costs of product media, product duplication, hardware and manuals."*

1771. Mr Holgate suggested that this clearly gave the incorrect impression that all hardware costs were included in costs of revenue and none was included in sales and marketing expenses.

1772. He cited various IFRS requirements in relation to disclosure of accounting policies as follows:

(1) IAS 1's requirement that:

> *"An entity shall disclose in the summary of significant accounting policies: (a) the measurement basis (or bases) used in preparing the financial statements; and (b) the other accounting policies used that are relevant to an understanding of the financial statements"* [Mr Holgate's underlining]

(2) A further requirement in IAS 1 with specific reference to judgements made that:

> *"An entity shall disclose, in the summary of significant accounting policies or other notes, the judgements, apart from those involving estimations…that management has made in the process of applying the entity's accounting policies and that have the most significant effect on the amount recognised in the financial statements."* [Again, Mr Holgate's underlining]

1773. In Mr Holgate's opinion:

> *"These requirements clearly point to a need for Autonomy to have disclosed that part of COGS (i.e. the costs of the hardware) had been accounted for as sales and marketing expenses. It would have been 'relevant to an understanding of the financial statements' for a user to have known that gross profit had been increased by moving part of COGS to a heading (sales and marketing expenses) that was presented below gross profit. Likewise, 'disclosure would have assisted users in understanding' the accounting treatment and the underlying business undertaken and margins achieved. In addition, disclosure of the accounting policy would assist users in understanding the 'judgement' that 'management [had] made…Indeed, adding wording dealing with the inclusion of part of COGS in sales and marketing expenses would have been much more important than the disclosure that Autonomy actually gave. This is because the sales and marketing policy wording in the notes to the 2009 and 2010 annual financial statements…was both compliant and reasonably obvious (and therefore arguably unnecessary); whereas the inclusion of part of the hardware costs in sales and marketing expenses was both non-compliant and unexpected, and therefore disclosure was necessary."*

1774. Mr MacGregor did not agree with this, and explained that the requirement was to disclose the principal policies and that it was not necessary to present policies in the granular way implicit in Mr Holgate's approach. Just as the general presentation of information in financial statements requires the application of judgement and selection, so too does the statement of relevant accounting policies.

1775. I would agree with Mr MacGregor's general approach that it is not necessary to set out at great length every element of the revenues and costs of the company and its assets and liabilities that have been accounted for: some judgement is required. However, I would agree with Mr Holgate that in this case the allocation at least in 2009 was sufficiently significant in its effect that I would have expected it to have been explained.

1776. The question whether it was dishonest not to have done so is more difficult. Deloitte were content and so were the Audit Committee. That was necessary but not sufficient; but it seems to me that there would be real difficulty in establishing dishonesty if there was no improper purpose driving the decision.

Issue (5): Did Autonomy wrongly recognise revenue in Q2 2009 on a specific ($6 million) hardware transaction with Morgan Stanley?

1777. A discrete 'hardware' claim also advanced by the Claimants was that Autonomy wrongly recognised revenues of $6 million on a sale of hardware by Autonomy Inc to Morgan Stanley under an agreement entered into on 30 June 2009.

1778. The nub of the claim is that the hardware was recognised on the premise that it was sold to Morgan Stanley and dispatched by EMC in Q2 2009 whereas, according to the Claimants, it was in fact dispatched by Hitachi pursuant to Autonomy's one-time reseller agreement with HDS entered into with Autonomy on 27 June 2009 with delivery not occurring until inside Q3 2009.

1779. The Claimants' case is that this revenue was wrongly recognised in Q2 2009, *"to the knowledge of at least Mr Hussain"*, because to satisfy the requirements of IAS 18.14 for the recognition of revenue the hardware had to have been delivered by 30 June 2009 and was not, though Mr Hussain pretended to Deloitte that it had been, and Autonomy's management made a like (false) representation in a management representation letter dated 15 July 2009 signed by Mr Hussain.

1780. The formula *"to the knowledge of at least Mr Hussain"* was an opaque way of saying, as was the fact, that Dr Lynch was not alleged to have played any part and was not cross-examined on the matter. Mr Rabinowitz expressly confirmed in his oral closing submissions that no claim could be made against Dr Lynch accordingly.

1781. The Claimants acknowledged that *"this episode might be said to be a comparatively minor one in pure revenue terms"*, but submitted that *"it speaks volumes about the willingness of Autonomy management, and in particular Mr Hussain, to lie to Deloitte to achieve their ends."*

1782. They relied on the issue also in support of a contention that Mr MacGregor was less than objective in his support for the Defendants' analysis, and produced an *"exotic thesis…dependent on a number of hypothetical facts"* none of which the Defendants even attempted to prove at trial.

1783. The Defendants sought to dismiss this claim as a *'cul-de-sac'*, on the basis that it is not possible to see how the revenue recognition occurring a quarter earlier has any bearing on HP's acquisition of Autonomy.

1784. Further, Dr Lynch submitted (and Mr Hussain adopted this) that the recognition was correct on the basis that it was possible for title to pass without delivery under the contract for the reasons given by Mr MacGregor in his supplemental report.

1785. The full factual detail is complex and convoluted; but in summary, the underlying facts can be distilled as follows:

    (1) On 30 June 2009 Morgan Stanley agreed that it would purchase Hitachi hardware from Autonomy unless the parties agreed that Autonomy could supply hardware from a different manufacturer.

    (2) Pursuant to that agreement, Autonomy entered into a contract with Hitachi for the purchase of hardware for supply to Morgan Stanley.

    (3) Autonomy did indeed acquire $6 million of hardware from Hitachi which was, in fact, supplied to Morgan Stanley in or after August 2009,

i.e., in Q3 2009. Title to the hardware that Hitachi sold to Autonomy for onward sale to Morgan Stanley did not pass even to Autonomy (still less from Autonomy to Morgan Stanley) any earlier than August 2009, after the end of Q2 2009.

(4) Autonomy management told Deloitte that once it was clear that Hitachi could not deliver the hardware on or before 30 June 2009, Autonomy had entered into an agreement with EMC dated 29 June 2009 under which EMC was to provide and deliver $5 million worth of hardware for delivery to Morgan Stanley by 30 June 2009 and Autonomy itself agreed to supply $1 million worth of hardware from its own reserves of new hardware stock.

(5) Deloitte asked Autonomy management for evidence that the EMC hardware had indeed been delivered by 30 June 2009.

(6) On 13 July 2009, Mr Chamberlain, copying Mr Hussain, told Deloitte that Autonomy was trying to get the relevant invoices from EMC, which should show the delivery date. Later, Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain told Deloitte that EMC had been unable to supply any documentation. Deloitte then agreed to rely on a written representation from Autonomy management to the effect that the hardware had been physically despatched by 30 June 2009.

(7) That representation was contained in a management representation letter dated 15 July 2009 signed by Mr Hussain, for and on behalf of Autonomy, which stated as follows:

> "*We are satisfied that the acquisition of $9.0 million of hardware from EMC Corporation was an arms length commercial transaction. Additionally, we confirm that the despatch of hardware with a purchase price of $5.0 million was made from EMC Corporation on the 30 June 2009.*"

(8) There were EMC invoices dated 30 June 2009 for the hardware that EMC had sold Autonomy. However, they were headed "*PROFORMA INVOICE*" and stated "*Invoices will be revised once order is shipped*". Thus, those invoices made clear on their face that the hardware had not yet been shipped as at 30 June 2009, the last possible day for delivery within Q2 2009.

(9) On 13 July 2009, Mr Hussain pointed out to Mr Chamberlain and Mr Sullivan that the invoices were "*clearly proforma*" and asked them to "*work out what you need at a minimum for the auditors tonight*" .

(10) Mr Chamberlain responded the same day saying that he needed an email from EMC confirming that the hardware had been shipped to Autonomy on 30 June 2009. He asked whether this was "*something we can get*".

Mr Sullivan responded, "*No. Give me a call now please ...*" . Mr Sullivan explained in his testimony at Mr Hussain's criminal trial:

> *"… the reason I said "no" is because I knew that the – or I thought that the product had not shipped only because we signed the product – we signed the contract on, you know, the last hours of the quarter. So I don't believe EMC would have even had time to ship it."*

(11) On 13 July 2009, Mr Sullivan asked EMC to remove the language "*Invoices will be revised once order has shipped*" from the EMC invoices. EMC did so and, on 14 July 2009, Mr Sullivan provided Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain with the revised form of invoices. The revised invoices obscured the fact that the EMC hardware was not delivered by 30 June 2009, but they did not provide positive evidence that delivery had taken place by that date. It is unclear whether the revised invoices were provided to Deloitte. At all events, the absence of positive evidence of delivery by 30 June 2009 resulted in Deloitte requiring the management representation mentioned above.

(12) The truth is that, as Mr Hussain well knew, the EMC hardware was only despatched by EMC to Autonomy in July 2009, and so after the end of the quarter. The as-despatched invoices show, with one minor exception (an invoice for $414,578 plus tax), this to be the case. They also show that the EMC hardware was delivered to Zantaz locations, not Morgan Stanley.

(13) The fact that the EMC hardware was to be utilised by Zantaz, not Morgan Stanley, can also be seen from other contemporaneous documents.

(14) In his evidence to the US court, Mr Sullivan confirmed that he never intended the EMC hardware to be sold to Morgan Stanley and nor would it have made sense to do so; nor did he ever discuss with EMC the prospect of selling its hardware to Morgan Stanley, which could not have been done without EMC's permission; nor had he discussed with Mr Hussain the prospect of selling EMC hardware to Morgan Stanley.

(15) On 30 June 2009, Mr Mooney informed Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain that the "*final docs*" had been received from EMC for signature. Later that day, Dr Lynch approved the purchase order, Mr Hussain having already done so. The "*Purchase Order Request*" recorded that it related to "*EMC Storage Solution order for WW Hosted Introspect & Digital Safe platforms*" at a cost of $9 million.

(16) The hardware that was actually delivered to Morgan Stanley was not EMC hardware at all, but Hitachi hardware. This accorded with the Morgan Stanley purchase order dated 1 July 2009 which expressly specified delivery of Hitachi hardware.

(17) The Hitachi hardware was not delivered to Morgan Stanley until August/September 2009.

(18) On 24 September 2009, Hitachi confirmed to Autonomy that the Morgan Stanley hardware orders had been shipped and delivered.

1786. Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence was that if the hardware, which was Hitachi rather than EMC hardware, was despatched and delivered to Morgan Stanley after 30 June 2009, that is, in Q3 2009 rather than Q2 2009, then it is highly unlikely that Deloitte would have agreed with the recognition by Autonomy of $6 million of revenue in Q2 2009. He further explained that these facts, if discovered by Deloitte, would also have given rise to broader concerns regarding management's honesty and integrity.

1787. Mr Holgate's opinion was that, if the Hitachi hardware was despatched to Morgan Stanley in August/September 2009, then it is "*clear*" that revenue on the transaction should not have been recognised in Q2 2009.

1788. Mr MacGregor accepted that ordinarily the date of delivery of goods is, absent particular factors that point against it, a strong indication of the date on which revenue should be recognised. He made two caveats: (a) first, he emphasised that under *"International GAAP it's perfectly possible for the risks and rewards to pass without delivery taking place…and the key issue is whether title has passed"*; and (b) secondly, that this was only a general rule and was subject to unusual complications or features, and *"this did have some unusual features".*

1789. In this case, Mr MacGregor suggested, the first unusual feature was that, in his view, the Morgan Stanley sale may have qualified as a *'bill and hold'* sale under which it is presumed that delivery is delayed at the buyer's request but the buyer nevertheless accepts or takes title and accepts the billing, and risk and title passes even though the goods are not yet shipped. He drew attention (in his supplemental report) to IAS 18 Appendix, which gives various illustrative examples of risk and rewards of ownership passing at different times, depending on the circumstances; and he particularly highlighted the first example, being of a 'bill and hold' sale. IAS 18 Appendix 1E §1 notes as regards such a sale that revenue is to be recognised when the buyer takes title, provided:

(1) it is probable that delivery will be made;

(2) the item is on hand, identified and ready for delivery to the buyer at the time that the sale is recognised;

(3) the buyer specifically acknowledges the deferred delivery instructions; and

(4) the usual payment terms apply.

1790. Mr MacGregor then put forward a complex set of assumptions leading to the possibility that Morgan Stanley – by way of a possible 'bill and hold' arrangement or something analogous – effectively took title to the hardware that Autonomy purchased from EMC for its (Autonomy's) own use, even though (as he conceded) the EMC hardware was not physically delivered to Autonomy until Q3 2009 (and was never delivered to Morgan Stanley). These assumptions were principally that (i) notwithstanding that Morgan Stanley contracted with Autonomy to purchase Hitachi hardware, an agreement was reached that Autonomy would instead supply them with EMC hardware, and (ii) Morgan Stanley had agreed to take title to the EMC hardware in Q2 2009 so as to give rise to the 'bill and hold' arrangement which Mr MacGregor posited.

1791. As the Claimants pointed out, however, the Defendants did not even attempt to prove the factual assumptions made by Mr MacGregor; and I accept the Claimants' submission that the contemporaneous documents, and Mr Sullivan's testimony to the US court, did not support them.

1792. Without descending further into the convoluted detail, I accept that the documents show that Morgan Stanley agreed to make payment to Autonomy on 2 July 2009 in circumstances where they had been told by Autonomy's Cynthia Watkins (i) that Autonomy had *"received the PO",* which was Morgan Stanley's purchase order which expressly specified delivery of Hitachi hardware (see paragraph 1785 above), and (ii) that Morgan Stanley's *"order is assembled in our Pleasanton facility".* It was on these two bases that Ms Watkins said that *"payment can be issued as we have fulfilled the order"* and Morgan Stanley's Kathy Macedonio confirmed that *"The order has been received in so payment can be released".*

1793. It is thus plain that Morgan Stanley only agreed on 2 July 2009 (i.e. in Q3 2009) to make payment because they understood (wrongly, but through no fault of their own) that the hardware that they had ordered – i.e. Hitachi hardware – had been delivered to Autonomy's Pleasanton facility; not because they had agreed to take title to the EMC hardware by way of some 'bill and hold' arrangement.

1794. I also accept the Claimants' submission that IAS 18 Appendix IE §1 only relates to 'bill and hold' sales *"in which delivery is delayed at the buyer's request but the buyer takes title and accepts billing".* It is plain that Morgan Stanley did not request that delivery be delayed. Mr MacGregor seems to suggest that the same principles should apply "by analogy" where delivery is not delayed at the request of the buyer, but is instead prompted by the seller. That is not what happened in this case. But even were the principles in IAS 18 Appendix IE §1 to stretch that far – and I agree with the Claimants that it is illogical to imagine that a seller could still recognise revenue even though it was not in a position to effect delivery to the buyer – it would still need to be shown that Morgan Stanley (a) agreed to take and (b) did take title to the EMC hardware. Again, there is no factual basis to support such a conclusion.

1795. In any event, and as the Claimants also emphasised, Mr MacGregor's analysis is wholly removed from what Deloitte understood to be the position. It is plain that the view Deloitte took at the time was that, in order for revenue to be recognised in Q2 2009, they (Deloitte) needed to be satisfied that the hardware had actually been physically delivered to Morgan Stanley by 30 June 2009 – see (i) Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence (see paragraph 1786 above); (ii) Mr Welham's email dated 15 July 2009: "*I have talked to Steve [Chamberlain] re the EMC delivery point*"; and (iii) Deloitte's file note: "*We have also examined correspondence between Autonomy and Morgan Stanley over the completion of the order and Morgan Stanley's acceptance and beginning of the payment process as evidence of delivery of the hardware (and hence that shipment from EMC has taken place)*". As can be seen from Mr Chamberlain's email to Deloitte of 13 July 2009, Autonomy understood that Deloitte's focus was on delivery: "*we are trying to get invoices from EMC which should come in overnight. These should show delivery date*".

1796. In short: Mr MacGregor's analysis was ingenious but unsupported by the facts, and inconsistent with Deloitte's approach at the time. Regrettably it seems to me that his efforts went beyond what was appropriate and became in this context, unrealistic and partisan. I agree with the Claimants' conclusion that the simpler truth is that the revenue was wrongly recognised by Autonomy in Q2 2009.

1797. There was no dispute as to Mr Hussain's involvement: I find that he knew that there was no proper basis for recognising revenue from the transaction in Q2 2009.

1798. As to the position of Dr Lynch, having fairly recognised and accepted that the Claimants could not, in those circumstances, allege 'guilty knowledge' on his part, Mr Rabinowitz submitted only that the episode was a further example of Autonomy not being the *"bright, cleaner than clean company that did everything by the book"* that Dr Lynch had depicted. That is so.

Issue (6): Did HP know about the hardware sales pre-acquisition and continue them after it?

1799. The Claimants' case is that prior to the acquisition, the only hardware sales that HP knew about were appliance sales, and it did not know about the loss making "pure hardware" sales. HP's 20 November 2012 announcement of the write-down stated that the hardware sales were a recent discovery, allegedly identified after a whistle-blower came forward after the departure of Dr Lynch. That was also the position adopted by Ms Lesjak in her witness statement: she said that it was not until after Dr Lynch had left and Mr Scott had come forward with his allegations that she came to learn that Autonomy had been reselling third party hardware at a loss.

1800. The Defendants' case, which is of course primarily relevant to the issues of inducement (and, in the misrepresentation claim, reliance) and loss is that in truth, HP knew before the acquisition that Autonomy engaged in substantial hardware sales. Further, HP was certainly aware of the nature and amount of

the hardware sales from shortly after the acquisition, but expressed no surprise, and did nothing about it, suggesting (according to the Defendants) that at the time Autonomy's hardware sales were not a real concern for HP, contrary to the picture that is now being painted, and that it would have made no material difference to the acquisition or its terms if HP had had detailed knowledge of the hardware sales in advance.

1801. The Claimants rejected this. They contended that there was nothing in the Defendants' assertion that HP knew about Autonomy's hardware sales (apart from appliance sales) pre-acquisition, and nor did HP become aware of the sales prior to May 2012.

Pre-acquisition knowledge and due diligence

1802. The Defendants submitted that even before the acquisition was announced, HP must have known that Autonomy sold hardware; and that certainly "*it knew enough before the acquisition to make further inquiries and chose not to",* suggesting lack of concern. The Defendants' punchline, for this as for their case that HP were certainly aware of Autonomy's hardware reselling after the acquisition (see below), was that *"Nobody thought they were buying a different company."* The issue is of most relevance to reliance (and quantum).

1803. The Defendants supported these submissions principally on the basis of: (a) what they asserted was an industry understanding that most enterprise software companies do sell hardware ; (b) the fact that HP itself sold substantial quantities of hardware to Autonomy; (c) express references to *"hardware sales, including appliances"* in the course of due diligence and (d) emails sent by Mr Gersh of KPMG (acting for HP in the due diligence exercise) from which it was said by the Defendants to be clear that *"he was aware that Autonomy was selling self-standing hardware"* and yet *"KPMG never asked Autonomy how much hardware it was selling".*

1804. There was support for the suggestion that hardware sales by software companies were commonplace in the evidence of Mr Apotheker and also in the evidence of Mr Sullivan:

(1) Mr Apotheker, who had long experience in the industry, appreciated that hardware sales of 5 to 7% of a software company's business "*could be quite normal for somebody who doesn't do appliances*." (For one that produced appliances, the figure would be higher.) Thus, he recognised that software companies would usually sell some non-appliance hardware, that is, in the Claimants' terms, "pure hardware". Moreover, the implication is that for a software company which also sold appliances, hardware sales would be greater than 5 to 7%. He also recognised that hardware sales would often be loss making, and that this was the reason why software companies sought to avoid selling 'pure' hardware:

> *"If only because, for obvious reasons, hardware, in particular when you resell it, you will probably make a loss. At least you*

won't make a profit. Or the best situation, even if you make a profit, you will significantly dilute your margins".

(2) Mr Sullivan gave evidence at the US trial against Mr Hussain that hardware sales were common in the software industry, and that he had sold hardware to customers both at Zantaz, and also at Steelpoint, the software company at which he had previously worked. He also stated that Autonomy had made substantial sales of hardware at a profit, to Citigroup and Paribas.

1805. There was other evidence to like effect. Mr Philip Pearson ("Mr Pearson") "*assumed that as with any enterprise software business, [Autonomy's] business included additional revenue streams which typically consisted of support, services and hardware*" (emphasis added); and he believed that this was common knowledge. He explained that most enterprise software firms would take on some hardware, services and support work. He was not challenged on this evidence. Furthermore, HP sold not only to Autonomy but to a wide range of enterprise software companies.

1806. Obviously, I would accept that many enterprise software companies sell hardware; and that this would be generally expected within the limits broadly indicated by Mr Apotheker. But neither side explored, and certainly it was not clear to me, how other enterprise software companies accounted for these sales, nor what disclosure they made in their accounts; or whether they were single or multi-segmental businesses. If other hardware selling enterprise software companies generally accounted separately for such sales, or made disclosure of them, that might have rebounded on the Defendants. I do not make assumptions either way; but I do not extract much assistance from the point.

1807. The fact that HP sold substantial quantities of hardware to Autonomy and yet did not focus on it is, at first blush, surprising. But it seems to me to be more a forensic point than one of real substance. HP was an enormous organisation, which on the Defendants' own case was very disorganised, and divided into 'silos' with very poor communication between them. It should not be assumed that one department had the knowledge of another, or even ready access to it. I agree that in an £11 billion acquisition one might have expected the deal team to have made enquiries; and that this is particularly so where, as here, the buyer and the target were operating in closely related sectors, and the buyer was hoping to achieve synergies from operating as a combined business. But the question is whether those making the decision to proceed with the acquisition actually knew; and there is no evidence that they did so. The Defendants' written closing submissions noted that it was *"unclear what checks HP actually carried out in its initial records of sales to Autonomy."*

1808. In my judgment, the Defendants overplayed the facts said to support the submission that there was discussion of Autonomy's hardware sales in the course of due diligence and that the fact that neither HP nor KPMG displayed much interest or asked any questions in relation to them suggests that the sales were not of significance for HP in the deal. As to that:

(1) Mr Sarin recalled an exchange with Mr Hussain in relation to appliance sales; and the Defendants relied on the fact that he did not seek to find out how large those sales were, or even to apply his mind to that question: he said that he did not think about what the number for such sales might be. However, that does not reflect that Mr Sarin's evidence was that what he had been told, he *"would think"* by Mr Hussain, was that (a) *"sometimes customer wanted the software on an appliance or a box"* and that would be shipped by Autonomy to the customer and (b) although in that way *"appliances were sometimes sold to customers….it was a small part of their business"*. Further, when asked *"what level of appliance sales"* he thought Autonomy was making, his reply was *"a very small number"*. He was asked to quantify that in numerical terms; but reiterated that he was *"comfortable that it was a very small number"* and that the demand was from *"a small handful of customers"* adding when pressed again that he thought it *"very minimal"*. Whilst more generally I formed reservations about Mr Sarin's evidence, I found his answers credible on this point.

(2) The Defendants also placed reliance on a list of questions prepared by KPMG which Mr Sarin received on 8 August 2011. The Defendants submitted that the contracts referred to in the list *"included contracts in part for the sale of hardware, as the list of questions made clear."* However, all that was included was (a) a contract for *"hardware and software development"* (as regards which the question was how revenue was recognised, whether on completion or as and when delivered); (b) a contract which was stated to include *"implementation of networking, hardware and infrastructure procurements and deploying hardware set up and configuration"* (as regards which the question was how services, including professional services, were recorded). In my view, only (if at all) with hindsight does that appear to suggest separate sales of hardware.

(3) The Defendants suggested that Mr Gersh was very reluctant in cross-examination to accept that he had been aware that Autonomy sold any hardware, even in the context of appliance sales: they described as *"close to nit-picking"* his position that appliance sales did not amount to sales of hardware, but rather to sales of software, the method of delivery for which was hardware. They went on to suggest that he ultimately accepted that he had known that Autonomy was selling some hardware, though they accepted that he continued to insist this was only as a component of, or at least in conjunction with, a software sale. But my understanding is that Mr Gersh was explaining that as matter of accounting:

> *"…the appliance is a software sale. It's just the appliance refers to the method of delivery of the software and because it's a sale, the cost of the sale is the hardware, which we understood to be in the cost of sales line."*

(4) His later answers, when pressed again, seem to me to show how very different was KPMG's understanding than it is now suggested by the Defendants they had (and, indeed, to illustrate how effective was the disguise that Autonomy devised):

> *"The client is buying...the client is buying software…because it's buying the product which Autonomy makes, which is IDOL. It's not buying – or at the time when we were doing due diligence, Autonomy is presented as a software company and it sells software. And so what are customers buying from Autonomy? We understood they're buying software and in this case Autonomy is – in some cases it is selling its software already pre-loaded to a server, which they refer to as an "appliance"."*

(5) Mr Gersh added later that:

> *"the commentary around the appliance sales was that it was insignificant and didn't change the margin profile, which to us meant that there was an immaterial amount of hardware being sold as part of the appliance product. So it was more material items in the revenue that we discussed at length".*

(6) The Defendants then contended that in fact, Mr Gersh and his team must have known from their review of contracts that Autonomy sold hardware, and that this was not restricted to appliances as HP uses the term in these proceedings. Mr Gersh confirmed that he read all of the contracts in the data room. These included a contract providing that the customer would be "*entitled at any time during the term of this Schedule to order Hardware set out in the Hardware Annex*"; and another contract to which was annexed a purchase order for 48 storage cells together with maintenance and support. In each case, Mr Gersh claimed that he had assumed these were references to "*a solution involving Autonomy's product*" or to an appliance. He gave the following evidence:

> *"A. I saw contracts which had -- three contracts which described hardware which we assumed were appliances.*
>
> *Q. So you assumed that they were appliances, but they didn't say on the contracts that they were appliances? It was your assumption, correct?*
>
> *A. That's correct."*

(7) The Defendants claimed that there was no basis for such an assumption in the documents, and KPMG, as a firm carrying out due diligence, should not have contented itself with assumptions: its job was to probe and ask questions, and to consider critically the documents it reviewed. They contended further that it is likely that he did appreciate from these documents that Autonomy sold some non-appliance hardware, and likely also that he did not think it would be a matter that would have caused concerns for HP, since if he had regarded it as an important point, he would have asked further questions. However, that seems to me to overlook Mr Gersh's evidence in his witness statement (which was not challenged, and which I accept) about the subject-matter and nature of the (redacted) contracts which Mr Gersh saw in the Data Room:

> *"I recall that of the three redacted contracts referencing hardware that we saw in the Data Room, two seemed to me to meet Autonomy's description of an appliance. The third, which I surmised was a contract with UBS, contemplated a large package solution[248] providing software, services and hardware for storage, with the core element being Autonomy software. The commercial components of this contract were difficult to break down. Although it appeared that hardware might be delivered separately and at different times from the software, we presumed it had been purchased from a hardware distributor (or, less likely, a manufacturer) and "passed through" to the customer as part of an overall solution being provided to UBS."*

(8) Nevertheless, the Defendants then submitted that it is clear from an email sent by Mr Gersh on 8 August 2011 that he was aware that Autonomy was selling self-standing hardware. Commenting on analysis performed by one of his colleagues at KPMG on the contracts in the data room he said the work needed to be reviewed, amongst other things because "*as far as I can tell they have not captured free software or hardware pass-through.*" As apparent from the quotation in the preceding sub-paragraph, Mr Gersh told me that (on the contrary) "*hardware pass-through*" was a reference to appliance sales. The Defendants submitted that this cannot be right because of the way Mr Gersh used the phrase in another context. In his witness statement, he discussed the discovery in October 2011 of a $41m payable to Dell, which he considered too large to relate to just appliance sales. He said that "*I remember that what we collectively had heard from Mr. Chamberlain was that the payables to Dell related to pass-through hardware sales Autonomy had made and that the sales had been*

[248] These were direct sales by Autonomy to UBS (VT28 and VT34) after "dummy" VAR sales to Capax Discovery addressed in the chapter of this judgment on the impugned VAR transactions. Looking ahead, it will be seen that I have concluded that "VT28 and VT34 were exemplars of the pattern. The sale to the VARs were illusory and effected no change in control or transfer of risk; no revenue should have been recognised in respect of them."

recorded on a "gross" basis". (They referred me also to how one of Mr Gersh's colleagues used the term "*pass-through hardware*", submitting that it was plainly not a reference to appliances as the Claimants have used the term in these proceedings.) In my view, this exercise in semantic comparison was misplaced. It is plain that the phrase was used in different senses in different contexts; for example, the Claimants referred to its use by Mr Briest (an analyst) in a research note dated 23 July 2010 in a context which plainly was intended to signify appliance sales, and was understood in that sense by, for example, Mr Shelley. The question is whether Mr Gersh's evidence of what he meant by it in the particular context is to be rejected: and I do not consider it should be. It is entirely consistent with his explanations as described above.

1809. In summary, I have concluded, and find, that neither Mr Sarin nor Mr Gersh knew, or on the evidence before me, had reason to know or further enquire about the pure hardware sales.

1810. Dr Lynch's evidence was that after the acquisition had been announced, but before it had been completed, he discussed Autonomy's hardware sales with Mr Robison, and that they specifically considered together whether Autonomy should continue to sell Dell and EMC hardware in the run-up to the acquisition. Dr Lynch also said that it was that conversation that enabled him to give an affirmative answer when Mr Sullivan had asked him whether or not he should proceed with the Dell hardware sales after the acquisition. All this was, however, hotly disputed by the Claimants, who noted also that the alleged conversation went beyond Dr Lynch's pleaded case of a discussion about *"the synergies that might be achieved in respect of hardware"*. In his witness statement on behalf of the Claimants, Mr Robison denied any such discussion about hardware and emphasised that he was *"not aware of their possible existence until I heard that HP was making that contention in connection with its write-down, long after I retired from HP."* He added:

> *"Moreover, if Dr Lynch had informed me that Autonomy was reselling a substantial amount of third-party hardware and reported it as revenue, I absolutely would remember because that information would have immediately raised serious questions about Autonomy's reported margins…"*

1811. Unfortunately, Mr Robison had a medical condition resulting in it being agreed that he was unfit to attend for cross-examination. Dr Lynch was cross-examined and it was put to him that he had made up the conversation. In the course of that cross-examination, Dr Lynch was shown emails that suggested that Mr Sullivan had been given approval to continue the Dell hardware sales in August 2011 and not in late September 2011. Dr Lynch reacted to this by suggesting that perhaps he had had more than one discussion with Mr Robison, including also one on the very day of the acquisition (18 August 2011):

> *"I think, although I'm not sure, that actually what happened, Mr Sullivan's email*[249] *comes in while I'm standing next to Mr Robison. That's why I'm able to give him an answer. And then the subject of these things come up on more than one occasion between that point and the 21st.*
>
> *What we're doing is, as a courtesy, every time there's something that "We need to know what will happen if the deal closes", we're asking Shane [Robison] what he wants to do.*
>
> *And you can see in there there's communications and Shane sends some of them on to Leo [Apotheker] as well."*

1812. The Claimants emphasised that no conversation of that kind on the day of the announcement had ever been suggested and it was not corroborated by the documents or supported by any other evidence; they dismissed this as *"simply made up…in the witness box in the hope that he could salvage his position."*

1813. In the round, in my judgment, there is no sufficient evidence to demonstrate pre-acquisition knowledge on the part of HP of any material hardware sales (other than a small number of appliance sales); nor is there sufficient evidence that the due diligence team were put on inquiry in that regard.

Post-acquisition knowledge and discussion of hardware

1814. The Defendants contended that whatever HP had known before the acquisition, it is clear that HP's accountants and management had a detailed understanding of Autonomy's hardware sales from very shortly afterwards.

1815. They relied principally on HP's reaction to what it would depict as a "discovery": no complaint was made or surprise expressed, and the sales were permitted to continue, because, so the Defendants suggested, none of this came as a surprise because HP already knew.

1816. Although they became co-mingled in the Defendants' closing submissions, there were two strands to the Defendants' resulting case: the first strand related to the pre-acquisition period, and in summary was that the lack of surprise shown by persons such as Mr Sarin confirmed that the deal team was aware even before the deal was finalised that Autonomy was selling substantial amounts of hardware. That point goes to both reliance and loss. The second strand related to HP's conduct in announcing in November 2012 that it had found out about the hardware sales only after Dr Lynch's departure, which was false and showed that HP had misled the markets, casting doubt on their corporate integrity and confirming the trumped-up nature of all the claims.

1817. The Claimants disputed both the factual basis of this aspect of the Defence and its relevance. Ms Whitman stated in her witness statement that she did not know of any 'pure' hardware sales until Dr Lynch told her about them in 2012 and she instructed him to discontinue the practice (and was not cross-examined

[249] Dated 18 August 2011 asking whether he should proceed with the Dell hardware sales.

about that). Ms Lesjak and Mr David Duckworth ("Mr Duckworth", who had the title of HP's Mergers, Acquisitions, Divestitures and Outsourcing, Finance Integration Project Manager) all lined up to say (in effect) that the sale of hardware (or at least non-appliance hardware) did not become a point "in focus" for them until the *"whistle-blower"* (Mr Scott) *"came forward"* in May 2012. In any event, the Claimants added, Bidco's cause of action was complete at the time of the acquisition, and *"it is difficult to see what turns on when precisely after the acquisition HP learned of the earlier hardware sales."*

1818. Turning to the chronology, it is clear that KPMG (who were in the course of preparing a closing balance sheet report) discovered the volume of hardware sales after a question had been raised about a large amount payable to Dell, and that then KPMG and E&Y (who, as HP's auditors, were reviewing the report) each informed HP about the hardware sales in late October or early November 2011:

(1) On 24 October 2011, KPMG wrote a draft report addressed to Meeta Sunderwala in HP's finance department, dealing with Autonomy's closing balance sheet. It stated that:

> "*There is approximately $41 million owed to Dell as of Close ($22 million in payables and $19 million in accruals). We believe these payable* [sic] *are related to pass-through hardware sales to customers which Autonomy records on a gross basis*" [Emphasis supplied]

(2) Later in the report they added that:

> *"The remaining accounts payable balance mainly relate to data center server costs, or hardware Autonomy sells on a pass-through basis*".

(3) By early November 2011, E&Y had a detailed understanding of Autonomy's hardware sales. On 4 November 2011, Ms Rebecca Norris of E&Y sent an email to others on the E&Y team, stating that *"We have finished our review of Deloitte's workpapers for the 2010 audit of Autonomy"*; and the email noted that:

> *"The company had about $100 million in hardware revenue. This is not mentioned in the financial statements or KPMG reports. Long story short, they have VAR arrangements with some of the large hardware providers and th [sic] $100 million of hardware revenue is primarily just pass through revenue for laptops and servers. This hardware is normally sold at a loss to 4 or 5 large customers in advance of software sales. Some of these costs are allocated to sales and marketing. Their software is normally not on the hardware. We can further discuss commercial reasons and accounting on our call."*

(4) On 7 November 2011, Mr Kirk Parish of E&Y wrote to Rachel Scott, head of HP's revenue recognition team, stating that it:

> "*Looks like there may be as much as $100 million in hardware sales on an annual basis, but it was not mentioned in the due diligence report.*"

(5) On 9 November 2011, Brian Outland of E&Y raised the same point in an email to Ms Betsy Branch of HP, noting that some of the hardware was sold at a loss and the loss allocated to sales and marketing; and he said that he was going to discuss the point with Ms Sunderwala.[250]

1819. It is also clear that on 11 November 2011, Mr Welham and Mr Murray of Deloitte discussed the hardware sales and accounting at a meeting with E&Y. E&Y's note of the meeting shows that they were told the amount of the sales, the amount of the loss incurred, the commercial rationale and the accounting treatment:[251]

> ***"Hardware sales***
>
> *During FY1O we observed that Autonomy purchased hardware from third parties (e.g. Dell) of $115m and sold this to customers for $105m as part of its goal to become the end to end supplier of archiving services for its customers. The associated cost of this hardware was split between cost of sales ($94m) and sales & marketing ($21m) which results in an 11% margin recognised on the hardware sales. The recognition of a margin was considered appropriate by management. However, Deloitte recorded an audit adjustment in relation to this margin. In addition, we observed that Autonomy concluded that it was appropriate to account for these pass through sales on a gross basis. HP will be required to assess the appropriate accounting and policies for hardware sales under US GAAP and HP policy."*

When shown this document in cross-examination, Mr Yelland accepted that E&Y were fully aware of the hardware sales being carried out by Autonomy.

1820. The first strand of the Defendants' case was focused on the reaction of KPMG and Mr Gersh, and then of Mr Sarin. I consider first the reaction of KPMG.

1821. Mr Gersh and his team were (in Mr Gersh's words in his witness statement) *"shocked and concerned to see such large payables to a hardware manufacturer."* Mr Gersh added (in his witness statement):

[250] I should note that in HP's written closing submissions it was asserted that "*There is no evidence of the EY memorandum [of a review of Deloitte's working papers] ever having been sent to anyone at HP"*. That may be so: but the email referred to shows that the only "surprise" (hardware sales in the amount of $100 million pa) was reported to HP.
[251] Mr Welham did not recollect the detail of the discussion, but said it is likely that he did discuss these matters with E&Y.

> *"The existence of significant payables to a hardware manufacturer was inconsistent with what we understood to be Autonomy's business from the information we received during pre-acquisition due diligence. Margins (and profitability) on hardware sales are typically much lower than margins on software sales, which could mean that HP had overvalued Autonomy. Mr Boggs*[252] *and I immediately began asking Autonomy management about Dell payables."*

1822. Mr Gersh described in some detail in his witness statement the extent and results of those investigations of Autonomy's management, and in particular conversations and exchanges with Mr Chamberlain. It is not necessary to repeat this detail: the flavour of the exchanges and their result can I think be captured in the following examples of Mr Chamberlain's responses:

(1) After further enquiries over November and December had prompted no response from Mr Chamberlain, and his sudden cancellation of a meeting to discuss the matter, on 24 January 2012, Mr Chamberlain wrote in an email in purported answer to the details requested of the *"Dell payable"* as follows:

> *"…for certain strategic accounts we also procure hardware as well as software. This will all be sourced via HP in future but the process of setting up procurement via HP is painfully slow."*

(2) In response to an email dated 6 March 2012 from Ms Sunderwala[253] (after HP's EFR team had, through her, been told of the continuing inquiries) asking him *"What percentage of [Autonomy's] total annual revenues is related to hardware revenue (this can be historical revenues related to Dell purchases vs a go forward view)",* Mr Chamberlain sent an email two weeks later, on 21 March 2012, informing her that this was his last day at Autonomy and in relation to the hardware question:

> *"confirmed, less than 10%"*

1823. KPMG referred to the hardware sales in a draft report on Autonomy's closing balance sheet, dated 26 January 2012. The report stated that:

> "*The remaining accounts payable balance mainly relate to data center server costs, <u>or hardware Autonomy sells on a pass-through basis</u>. Management stated these hardware sales are recorded on a gross basis*." [Emphasis supplied]

1824. Mr Gersh explained in his witness statement that by March 2012 HP's October 2011 financial reporting deadline that KPMG's closing balance sheet

[252] Jamie Boggs, was described by Mr Gersh as his colleague and *"a director [of KPMG] who was heavily involved in both the pre- and post-acquisition engagements for HP related to the Autonomy acquisition".*

[253] Senior Director, Accounting Policies and M&A Reporting in HP's EFR team.

engagement had been intended to support had long since passed, and EFR in effect took over the outstanding inquiries. He completed his witness statement as follows:

> *"At the time KPMG's involvement ended, I was not aware of any satisfactory explanation for the Dell payables having been provided by Autonomy, and my team and I still did not understand what hardware Autonomy had been selling, in what arrangements, and with what associated revenue recognition."*

1825. I consider that Mr Gersh's reaction of surprise was genuine, confirming my previous assessment that he had not become consciously aware of the pure hardware sales in the course of due diligence.

1826. Turning next to Mr Sarin:

(1) On 15 November 2011, Ms Kathryn Harvey ("Ms Harvey") of HP's EFR M&A Policies and Reporting team wrote to Mr Sarin about Autonomy's hardware sales:

> *"There was one other item that we just learned which I wanted to ask about/bring to your attention. During discussions with Autonomy folks in conjunction with our valuations, we learned that they have had approx $100M/ year in revenue coming from the sale of Dell HW products. Was just curious if you were aware of this when you put the model together? It doesn't have any impact on our valuations, but it likely won't be part of Autonomy's future revenue stream and didn't know whether it was included in their revenue forecasts/targets."*

(2) Mr Sarin responded by email on the same day as follows:

> *"The Dell-based revenue you reference is from which Autonomy products? They are predominantly a software company with little or no services or hardware. I am guessing they are trying to grow their "appliance" business i.e. Autonomy software bundled on industry-standard Dell hardware. I suspect this is sell-through revenue where they are getting a margin as they sell Dell appliances. Again, I am just conjecturing and don't know for sure.*
>
> *I don't believe Autonomy breaks out this Dell-based revenue in their financials and we haven't either…"*

(3) But after that response, Mr Sarin did nothing to discuss the matter further or follow it up in any way.

1827. In cross-examination, Mr Sarin struck me as uncomfortable:

(1) He could not explain why he had never spoken to Ms Harvey about what, on the Claimants' case that nothing was known about hardware sales except for *de minimis* appliance sales, was a startling revelation.

(2) He told me that he *"suspected at this time or my guess at this time was that what she was telling me was probably not right"*, but he offered no explanation why he did not seek to find out how it could have occurred and correct it: he accepted that he had done nothing to follow up on the matter in any way.

(3) He resorted to suggesting that he thought it must be appliance sales: but that was hardly consistent with the notion of such sales being minimal in amount.

(4) He then resorted to seeking to pass off the matter as simply an issue for accounting; he told me:

"Again, she is just doing whatever she's doing in the accounting department. I don't have to go and correct everybody."

(5) Finally, he resorted to saying that he *"wasn't tasked with that assignment and…left HP a few months after this acquisition."*

1828. Mr Sarin's evidence was unimpressively given and offered no answers. The question why he had responded to Ms Harvey so impassively and then done nothing to follow up remained unanswered. I do not accept that he thought that Ms Harvey was simply mistaken; nor that the explanation for $100 million was that the sales were appliance sales. In retrospect, his conduct looks strange: and I suspect his discomfort in the witness box was because he could see that.

1829. But ultimately the question is whether Mr Sarin turned a blind eye because he knew all along what would be revealed; or whether there is some other explanation: perhaps that he was simply, by that stage unconcerned, especially since Ms Harvey had expressly stated that it did not impact the valuation; or perhaps because he put his head in the sand and hoped that something would turn up which did not demonstrate inadequacies in the due diligence exercise for which he might be blamed in circumstances where much blame was being thrown around. In my judgment, one of the latter two is the more likely, because I remain persuaded (and have so found) that he did not know of significant hardware sales. Furthermore, had he known, the obvious course, given he was told that it would not impact the valuations, was to explain it away, not leave it for others to answer.

1830. In my judgment, the evidence does not establish that HP knew of the substantial pure hardware sales prior to the acquisition: and I find that they did not.

1831. The second strand focused especially on the position of Ms Lesjak and when it was that she came to know of the hardware sales. I did not understand it to be suggested she had any such knowledge before the acquisition. It is most unlikely that she did: she was an opponent of the deal and it seems to me very likely that she would have deployed against it anything she knew about as showing there to be a problem.

1832. As to the investigations which revealed the sales, she repeatedly asserted in her oral evidence that none of these matters had been brought to her attention at the time. She asserted in her oral evidence that she did not know of the work being done *"several layers down in my organization"*. Further, she told me that she did not recall either Ms Sunderwala or Mr Murrin speaking to her about these matters at the time. She said she was:

> *"not informed about it until after the whistle-blower came forward, except for some documents that I'm sure we'll get to, that were presented to the audit committee and me later."*

1833. The Defendants made the point that if that were right it would suggest that they were not considered to be important news. But they submitted that in fact, it appears that the hardware sales must have been drawn to Ms Lesjak's attention at about that time.

1834. On 11 November 2011, Ms Lesjak had one of what she told me were her regular CFO update meetings with E&Y. A short slide deck was produced by E&Y as an agenda for the meeting (2 pages plus a cover sheet). One of the agenda points in relation to the Autonomy acquisition was a statement that "*Revenue includes $115M of hardware.*" The same day, Ms Lesjak approved an E&Y slide deck for HP's Audit Committee meeting the following week, saying "*Looks good.*" The slide dealing with Autonomy (one of the Q4 areas of audit focus) identified that 11% of Autonomy's revenue was from hardware.

1835. The Defendants submitted (and had put to Ms Lesjak) that it is highly likely the point was discussed with her, given that it was on the agenda, and given that E&Y had been flagging it in emails over the previous days sent to people in Ms Lesjak's department. She said that she did not recall a discussion on the point, but reluctantly accepted that it was possible there was. The Defendants submitted that the truth was that she did not remember either way, but was trying to avoid accepting that she had in fact known about the hardware sales long before HP says, and said to the world in November 2012, it had discovered them. If she did not raise it with anyone else at the time, the

Defendants contended that is because she did not think it remarkable that Autonomy had $115m of hardware revenues.

1836. This was obviously a point Ms Lesjak had anticipated being raised, and her evidence had plainly been mulled over in advance. Her position in cross-examination was, in summary, that she simply did not focus on what was set out. Unsurprisingly, since she plainly valued her reputation as a safe pair of hands and may well have felt she would be supposed to have dropped the ball, her evidence came across as rather defensive. She refused to accept that it was obvious that the point referencing hardware revenue would have been discussed; she resorted to the position that it was possible that it had been, but as she could not remember, she could not accept that it was probable. I accept the Defendants' submission that it is more likely than not that she would have read and understood the reference to revenue from hardware sales: and I find that she did so. It is less clear whether there was any discussion of the point: her evidence was that she *"did not recall ever seeing or focusing on or having a discussion about hardware."* On balance, I accept that; but the question remains why it did not register with her as a concern. In one of her many denials that she had understood the true position, and the fact that she did not react with surprise demonstrated that she had known about it long before then, she said this:

> *"...I don't actually know what happened. I've no recollection of a discussion around the hardware. In fact when, during an internal investigation after the whistle-blower, they showed me the decks, I was quite surprised because I did not recall ever seeing or focusing on or having a discussion about hardware."*

1837. She suggested that this may have been because she would have assumed that any such sales were (a) properly accounted for and (b) appliances: but she accepted this was hypothesis, rather than recollection. However, she went on to make a further point to explain why the point would not have concerned her, which was considerably relied on by the Claimants: she and her team were only focusing on the accounting. As a matter of pure accounting, there was nothing wrong with *"sell-through sales", "as long as it was accounted for correctly and disclosed..."* She told me in cross-examination:

> *"...I also think what's really important to understand is, even if I focused on it, the most that I could hypothesise is that I thought it was appliance, and that the deal team that put the business case together also understood that there was hardware and that was captured in the business case that they put together.*
>
> ...
>
> *My team, from top to bottom, did not know what was in the business case. So from their perspective, as long as this was accounted for correctly, and ultimately disclosed appropriately and the deal team knew about it and it was captured in the business case, there isn't an issue. The issue arises if the due diligence team never understood there*

> *was hardware, never understood in what product category that hardware is being reported and disclosed to them, and it's in that failure that the issue arises."*

1838. Mr Yelland was also aware of Autonomy's loss-making hardware sales, long before the investigation preceding the write-down. On 22 March 2012, he received an email from Mr Ganesh Vaidyanathan, Autonomy's Director of Accounting, asking him to approve a payment to Dell of $942,072.33. The email explained that "*This is for the hardware orders that we source from them and sell through to our customers at a loss of approximately 10%.*" Mr Yelland accepted that he read the email, although he had not by then taken up his post as CFO. Once in post, on 17 April 2012, he received and approved a similar request, this time for $478,734.43; again, this explained that it was "*sell through to our customers*" at a 10% loss. He said that he did not know the business rationale for the sales, but he raised no objection to the payment; and he accepted that he had access to all the financial information to tell him precisely the extent of the hardware sales. Indeed, he continued to approve payments to Dell as late as Q3 2012.

1839. Ms Harris's evidence was also that HP had detailed knowledge of the hardware sales from an early stage. She explained that Mr Duckworth was already aware of the hardware sales when she first met him in Pleasanton (in or around November 2011), and that he knew the details of all the accounting codings. Indeed, she said that it was "*entirely impossible that [HP] weren't aware of*" the hardware sales and hardware cost of sale*s* given the conversations she had had with Mr Duckworth. It was clear from her cross-examination that she was outraged when she first learned, via Mr Hussain, that HP was contending that it was unaware of the sales until a later date. If the matter had been a shock or surprise to HP, queries would have been raised, but Ms Harris never received any information requests from HP about hardware or hardware customers.

1840. Mr Duckworth himself expressly denied in cross-examination when it was put to him that he was aware of Autonomy's hardware revenues and hardware costs when he conducted what was referred to as "the mapping exercise". He explained:

> *"I was not. That was not my focus. There was lots of different accounts, lots of different cash accounts, lots of different, you know, accounts across the balance sheet. My structure – my focus area was not on the type of activity that Autonomy was doing. It was just to make sure that whatever they had in their general ledger had an appropriate mapping to the HP account. I actually did not remember this being in the chart of accounts mapping until after Lisa Harris had referenced me in the suit and said that we had this conversation, I actually had to go back into the chart of accounts to find on this account that there was indeed a mapping exercise, because I had no recollection of this. I also searched 3,000 emails that I had on Autonomy, and I saw no reference to any hardware revenue or hardware reference whatsoever."*

1841. Ms Harris also gave evidence that in early April 2012, Mr Yelland had asked her "*why aren't you selling HP hardware?*"; and she also said that she believed that he would have known the commercial rationale for the sales. She was not challenged on either of these points.

1842. Lastly, the Defendants relied also on the open (that is, not in any way covert or disguised) continuation of Autonomy's hardware transactions post-acquisition. After the acquisition, Autonomy sought hardware from HP to supply to its customers. In April 2012, in the wake of the supply chain problems caused by flooding in Thailand, Autonomy was having difficulty obtaining hard drives from HP, to be supplied to Citibank as part of an appliance deal (as Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination). Dr Lynch raised the issue directly with Ms Whitman, who would have been aware then that Autonomy was selling hardware, but expressed no surprise. She was not cross-examined about this. Further, in his evidence in the US trial, Mr Sullivan stated that hardware sales continued post acquisition, and no one suggested hardware should be hidden.

1843. Indeed, it was only in June 2012 that a decision was taken to stop hardware sales. An email dated 13 June 2012 from Mr Yelland to Mr Veghte records a number of decisions from a call the previous day. These included various "*Decision*[s] *regarding the business we do*", the first of which was as follows: "*We are no longer reselling hardware unless an appliance or key enable* [sic] *of software sale.*"

1844. The Defendants concluded on this aspect of the matter that:

> "*This history belies HP's claim that knowledge of the full details of the hardware sales would have been significant to it. It knew enough before the acquisition to make further inquiries and chose not to. It knew everything after the acquisition and was relaxed. Nobody thought they had bought a different company. The history also shows that HP misled the markets in November 2012 when it claimed that it*

had found out about the hardware sales only after Dr Lynch's departure."

My assessment

1845. There is no doubt (and I find) that by November 2011, relevant persons within HP and its investigating accountants (E&Y and KPMG) knew that Autonomy had been undertaking hardware sales to the value of in excess of $100 million per year through the Relevant Period.

1846. However, HP was a huge company with 325,000 employees, and organizationally both bureaucratic and fragmented. It is important to be careful to distinguish between (a) what was known prior to the acquisition by the 'deal team', (b) what was known prior to the acquisition by Ms Lesjak and the finance department, (c) who came to know of those sales after the acquisition, and (d) what the reaction of each group to the information provided by E&Y and KPMG was and what (if anything) it reveals about their then state of knowledge or understanding. It is convenient to approach the matter in reverse chronological sequence, starting in consequence with post-acquisition knowledge.

1847. There is no doubt (and I find) that Ms Sunderwala, and thus the accounting side of HP's EFR team, knew of the volume hardware sales as from late October 2011, both from KPMG and from E&Y. So too did Ms Betsy Branch who was also in the EFR team. However, I do not consider that they or the tone or content of the investigations made by KPMG and HP's EFR department through Ms Sunderwala suggest that they were already aware of the nature and extent of the hardware reselling strategy. On the contrary, they seem to me to suggest genuine surprise and concern.

1848. The position in relation to Ms Lesjak is curious. She had built her career on caution and carefulness, the "safe pair of hands in a crisis". Yet her response to the suggestion that in a two-page briefing note and slide stack she had been told expressly that *"Revenue includes $115 million of hardware",* now said to constitute serious dishonesty, is that she simply did not focus on any of it before approving the slide deck for submission to HP's Audit Committee saying *"Looks good".*

1849. The Defendants invited me to find that (a) the inference from Ms Lesjak's approval of the slide deck was that she had read it, (b) she had known long before HP now says, and said to the world in November 2012, it had discovered them but (c) the reason she did not take any action upon finding out was that it was neither a surprise nor a concern that Autonomy had this source of revenue from hardware sales.

1850. In my judgment, it is more likely than not, and accordingly I find, that Ms Lesjak did read the slide deck and covering note, and also that she attended a discussion about the hardware revenue (though I accept she did not recall it). The question then is what conclusions should follow from that.

1851. Contrary to the Defendants contentions as summarised in paragraph 1849 above, Mr Rabinowitz submitted (in his oral reply) that Ms Lesjak's lack of focus and concern was of no material significance: the reference to hardware sales would only have been of concern to Ms Lesjak had she thought it was something missed by the 'deal team' in constructing and presenting *"their business case"* (for the transaction); and she did not think that. Mr Rabinowitz referred me to her evidence in cross-examination to the effect that it did not register with her as of significance until after the whistle-blower had come forward and detailed the nature of the hardware sales, their use and how they were accounted for. In other words, although she did know from then on of the hardware sales, she did not focus on what they might signify was not something she grasped properly until later.

1852. It seems to me that the point that ultimately I have to determine is whether Ms Lesjak's defensiveness and/or her lack of surprise and concern, supports the Defendants' case that HP was well aware all along, and certainly before the Acquisition went unconditional, that Autonomy was generating revenues from third party hardware sales. In the end, I have concluded that her discomfort was because, having been told of the hardware sales, she felt that it might be thought that she had dropped the ball in neither appreciating their significance nor digging deeper at the time, and not because she was dissembling in this regard. I had no sense from her evidence, her defensiveness or her demeanour, and I do not consider, that she had any appreciation then, or until the whistle-blower caused her to investigate further, of the true use, purpose and vice of third-party hardware sales to disguise and provide a stop-gap for shortfalls in software revenues.

Conclusion as to when HP became aware of "pure hardware sales"

1853. As the Claimants noted in identifying the issues to be determined in relation to their Hardware case, the Defendants raised but did not fully explain the relevance of post-acquisition knowledge of the hardware sales; but pre-acquisition knowledge would be relevant to the question of reliance.

1854. I have concluded that neither Mr Sarin nor Mr Gersh, nor anyone else whose knowledge could be imputed to HP/Bidco, knew that Autonomy was routinely selling material amounts of third party hardware separately from any software sales, still less did they know that (as I have determined) their purpose was to cover shortfalls in software revenues and perpetuate the appearance of meeting revenue forecasts, and that to that end their true nature was being concealed and their effect on Autonomy's trading performance was being disguised.

THE CLAIMANTS' 'VAR CASE': THE 37 IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS

Overview of the parties' respective cases on Autonomy's VAR sales

The Claimants' case

1855. The Claimants' claims in respect of Autonomy's resort to the use of intermediaries known as Value Added Resellers ("VARs" or "resellers") vied with their claims in relation to Autonomy's sales of 'pure' hardware in the importance the Claimants attached to them.

1856. Although they accepted that Autonomy also entered into a large (but unspecified) number of unobjectionable VAR transactions in the Relevant Period[254], the Claimants identified and impugned 37 high-value VAR licence sales ("the impugned VAR sales") as being contrivances to which Autonomy resorted when an intended sale by Autonomy to an end-user of the same subject-matter as the impugned VAR sale was unexpectedly delayed (or in some cases aborted), leaving a revenue shortfall. Almost all of them were with one of a small cohort of 'friendly' VARs.

1857. According to the Claimants' case, the context of every one of the impugned VAR sales was Mr Hussain's urgent need, at the end of a given quarter, to find revenue which could be presented as satisfying accounting rules for the recognition of revenue, in order to enable Autonomy to meet revenue forecasts.

1858. The purpose of every impugned VAR sale, according to the Claimants, was simply to establish a contract with a VAR, in place of the proposed end-user, from which recognised revenue in the amount of the VAR sale would appear to be generated even though in reality, revenue would only ever be received when the contemplated (but delayed) sale to the proposed end-user actually took place. In some instances, no sale to an end-user ever eventuated. In such cases, the Claimants' case was that other contrived transactions (referred to as *'Reciprocal VAR Transactions'*) were entered into in order to enable Autonomy, in effect, to fund the VAR to enable it to appear to discharge its obligations. In a smaller group of cases, the VAR's obligations were, if no end-user sale eventuated, written off altogether; but that was not a solution favoured; it ran the risk of exposing the lack of substance in the VAR sales.

1859. This use of VAR sales took advantage of the fact that under IFRS, unlike under US GAAP, there is no requirement for there to be "sell-through" to an end-user before revenue is recognised. Under US GAAP, the use of VAR sales to generate recognised revenue where no end-user sale had yet been put in place would not have been feasible.

[254] Sales to VARs were described as *"Autonomy's primary revenue channel"* in its Annual Reports for both 2009 and 2010. It is of some note that the resellers listed in such Annual Reports were big name companies such as Accenture, IBM Global Services, Cap Gemini, Wipro and HP. MicroLink LLC ("MicroLink") was mentioned in the context of its purchase by Autonomy in the first half of 2010 but there was no other mention of any of the 'friendly' VARs with whom Autonomy conducted the impugned VAR sales.

1860. Three special characteristics of software also enabled this use of VARs in such a way at the last moment at the end of a quarter:

    (1) Software can be delivered electronically and more or less instantaneously at the last minute.

    (2) Acting as a VAR carries transactional risk in respect of its outlay; but that will eventuate only if no onward sale can be arranged; and whilst the commissions are generous, a VAR need carry no inventory and its overheads may be relatively small.

    (3) Typically, what the VAR acquires is a licence to software: the seller retains the rights, and the ability to sell the licence (an intangible asset that can be infinitely and cheaply reproduced) to an infinite number of other users. A producer/seller (such as Autonomy) is in a position to fulfil with ease a licence sale to the end-user, notwithstanding an earlier licence sale to the VAR, if that is what it chose to do.

1861. The acceleration of the recognition of revenue apparently generated by the impugned VAR sales (and in some cases the recognition of revenue which should never have been recognised at all) enabled Autonomy to cover a sudden or unexpected shortfall and meet quarterly and periodic revenue forecasts. The Claimants' case was that the objective was thus very similar to, and could be deployed to complement, the objective of Autonomy's 'pure' hardware sales, and both expedients were improper. Unlike the 'pure' hardware sales, however, the VAR sales were fully disclosed and their ostensible purpose was never in dispute.

1862. The Claimants contended that Autonomy's use of VAR transactions in this way started in earnest in Q4 2009, immediately after what they described as the Defendants' "*lever of choice"* in Q3 2009 and its favoured strategy of reselling pure hardware to plug any shortfalls in revenue came briefly unstuck in Q4 2009, when Autonomy's main hardware supplier, EMC, withdrew from any involvement in *"Autonomy's hardware reselling strategy."* On this analysis, the use of VARs was another lever or device to which Autonomy resorted, with the Defendants' knowledge and authorisation,

> *"to bridge the gap between [Autonomy's actual revenue for the quarter] – which was invariably far short of [analys'ts and market] consensus – and Autonomy's reported figure, which was generally in line with or ahead of consensus."*

1863. The Claimants depicted the VARs which Autonomy engaged for its VAR sales as friendly 'placeholders' which were willing to go along with a nominal role accepting nominal risk which involved no real effort or exposure in return for commissions in the form of "Marketing Assistance Fees" or "MAFs".

1864. The Claimants sought to demonstrate a tell-tale pattern of a VAR sale at the very last moment of a quarter. The VAR would nominally accept a payment obligation and thus risk, but would know that Autonomy would be entirely

responsible for negotiating an end-user sale, and would never call on the VAR to pay the amounts due under the sale transaction out of its own resources. The shared understanding, of which they were in every case assured by Mr Egan, was that Autonomy would wait until either payment eventuated from an onward sale to an end-user, or the VAR could be put in funds by some ancillary transaction orchestrated and funded by Autonomy.

1865. The Claimants accepted that the 37 impugned VAR sales had contractual effect, and nominally transferred to the VAR risk and reward, and managerial control, of the software licence sold. However, the Claimants contended that the impugned VAR sales, all in amounts very considerably greater than any of Autonomy's other transactions with VARs, were not in economic substance sales at all, but arrangements for Autonomy to recognise revenue in advance of the true sale to an end-user.

1866. The Claimants acknowledged that Deloitte had in every case approved the accounting treatment of the impugned VAR sales. Their position was that this, though much relied on by the Defendants, did not provide either a justification or a defence because Deloitte did not and could not know the full picture. In particular, Deloitte were invariably told, and saw in the contract, that there was an express prohibition against any side agreement which might undermine the main VAR contract; but they were never told of the shared understanding between the VARs and Autonomy that, one way or another, Autonomy would see to it that the VAR was insulated from the nominal legal risk.

1867. Normally, as indicated above that would be achieved either by Autonomy crediting the VAR (directly or indirectly) with the proceeds from an end-user sale or by Autonomy funding the VAR through a reciprocal transaction. But the Claimants relied also on what they presented as a 'clean up' operation engaged in by Autonomy personnel in what the Claimants referred to as *'the Dark Period'.* This was the period after the acquisition by HP of Autonomy but before its integration, and whilst Autonomy's pre-acquisition management was still in control of its affairs. The Claimants alleged that during the *'Dark Period'*, past VAR and 'reciprocal' transactions which had not been paid for or completed were in various ways reversed or expunged. They relied on this as further demonstrating both the impropriety of the entire programme of impugned VAR sales and the knowledge and recognition of their impropriety.

Overview of the Defendants' case

1868. The Defendants depicted the Claimants' case as based on assumptions which presumed impropriety where none existed, and on evidence in chief which was not reliable, and which, after cross-examination, was revealed not to be supportive of the Claimants' case.

1869. Although VAR is an acronym for "Value Added Reseller", and the paradigm would be a VAR providing additional value to a software company's products by providing services to the end-user, resellers commonly undertake different and very varied roles. The Defendants emphasised that there is nothing *per se* objectionable in the use of VARs as a channel through which software sales

are made, sometimes simply as a 'fulfilment partner' with no active role: indeed, it is common in the software business.

1870. According to the Defendants, the Claimants had sought to portray as suggestive of lack of substance and impropriety features which were commonplace in the market, and entirely *"neutral"*. They suggested that the impugned VAR sales were, except for their unusual value, not materially different from Autonomy's many other sales to VARs: as being part of the ordinary course of business of a software seller and entirely unobjectionable.

1871. Thus, they insisted that it was not unusual or improper to use resellers (as the Defendants preferred to refer to VARs) merely as sales channels, or simply as 'fulfilment partners' assisting the supplier with the paperwork required to fulfil a sale to the end-user through the VAR sales channel; or, as in most of the VAR sales in this case, simply to enable the supplier to secure a sale (to the VAR) from which the supplier (Autonomy in this case) could book and recognise revenue in a targeted quarter if a contemplated sale to an end-user was delayed.

1872. Accordingly, they presented the 37 impugned VAR sales as higher value examples of a commonplace sales strategy involving what in Dr Lynch's estimation were *"thousands"* of other unobjectionable VAR transactions with *"hundreds of resellers"* in the same period. They maintained that there was nothing improper, illusory or wrong about Autonomy's VAR sales, just as there was nothing wrong with selling hardware to boost software sales, in effect as a promotional gambit.

1873. Mr Welham confirmed in cross-examination that Deloitte, for example, understood and accepted as unobjectionable the use of VARs simply to "de-risk" a delayed transaction and book revenue from it (subject to compliance with specified criteria in IAS 18.14 as discussed below). The Defendants submitted that, in the sector, it was not unusual for the reseller to act (in effect) as a guarantor. The effect of smoothing revenue to minimise peaks and troughs was not objectionable; and nor was a VAR transaction with that in mind if it satisfied the legal criteria of IAS 18.14.

1874. The Defendants relied especially on the detailed contracts which in each case established the impugned VAR transactions. The terms of these contracts were clear. They provided for an unconditional sale, an unqualified payment obligation (regardless of whether or not an end-user sale eventuated), allowed the VAR to determine the price of any onward sale and included in every case an unqualified "entire agreement" clause. The Claimants, who (the Defendants repeatedly emphasised) expressly disavowed any suggestion of legal sham, accepted that they were valid and enforceable in accordance with those terms. In such circumstances, the Defendants contended that there was no basis for characterising the substance of the transactions as anything other than in law what the parties had defined them to be: the substance was the contract.

1875. Mr Egan for Autonomy and both Mr Baiocco and Mr Szukalski on behalf of 'friendly' VARs, confirmed that such a VAR sale was not unusual, and was a useful way of ensuring that a supplier such as Autonomy would not be

pressurised to sell to a procrastinating or opportunistic end-user at a discounted price at the end of a quarter (as he also confirmed was a common end-user tactic). Amongst other advantages in the use of the VAR sales channel claimed by the Defendants were that (a) in theory at any rate, it permitted the supplier to reduce the costs of its sales function (as Mr Apotheker agreed in cross-examination) and (b) using resellers potentially gave Autonomy access to more customers (as Mr Egan agreed).

1876. Mr Egan also confirmed that from the VAR's perspective, there was an incentive (in addition to any commission) for doing such a deal in that it would help the VAR's market presence and help build its own relationship with the end-user.

1877. For the Defendants, the underlying flaw in the Claimants' approach was that it lost sight of both the contract (which the Defendants suggested was also the best evidence of the parties' intentions) and the point that, for the purposes of IFRS accounting and IAS 18.14, the VAR was the customer, and the status and prospects of any future deal did not impact upon recognition of revenue from the sale to the VAR. The Defendants suggested that the latter mistake originated in a different approach taken in US GAAP with which, of course, HP and its management were more familiar.

1878. The Defendants relied also on the fact that the VAR transactions and their salient features were well-known to Deloitte, who gave each of the impugned VAR sales a clean bill of health. Thus, for example, Mr Welham confirmed that Deloitte were aware that Autonomy would regularly resort to a VAR sale, so that it could recognise revenue from that sale, at the very last moment before the end of a quarter, since it might only be then that it would become clear that the end-user sale would be delayed. He also confirmed in cross-examination that it would not be unusual for the VAR to have had no contact with the end-user, nor any familiarity with the software to be on-sold under licence.

1879. The Defendants rejected any suggestion of improper reversals or other impropriety in their treatment of uncompleted VAR transactions in the *"Dark Period"*. They insisted that everything that was done was typical of the usual reconciliation and clearing up process following an acquisition. They relied also on the evidence of Ms Harris in her second witness evidence in support of this[255].

[255] The Defendants have invited me to re-consider Ms Harris's evidence in this regard. She described what was done as an *"exercise, pre-acquisition, of trying to work out how HP would want to deal with provisions and bad debts under HP's own policies"* and insisted that there *"was nothing improper about any of this"*. She explained also that after the acquisition she and her team *"learned that HP was more conservative than we had predicted, so we had to make more provisions."* She emphasised that a note recording an interview she gave PwC in November 2012 (which she did not see until August/September 2019) had been *"spun"* and she sought to shrug off as *"muddled at this point"* a description in that note of her having said, as regards the pre- and post-acquisition write-offs, that she *"would have said something earlier if I had been allowed to talk about it or correct it, but Hussain prevented me"* and that she *"eventually presented little lists of these practices to come clean"*. Her evidence at trial on which the Defendants relied was that *"It was a housekeeping exercise. There was nothing to "come clean" about and I was not prevented from discussing what we had done with HP."* I shall return to assess this evidence later: see paragraphs [2153] *et seq.*

Number and value, and the two categories, of impugned VAR sales

1880. The 37 impugned VAR sales are listed and briefly described in Schedule 3 to the RRAPoC, which is headed *"Contrived VAR Transactions"*. Schedule 3 is 65 pages long and contains a brief summary of the Claimants' allegations in respect of each of the 37 transactions listed.

1881. Of the 37 allegedly *"Contrived VAR Transactions"* (which in the Claimants' written submissions were referred to as "the impugned VAR transactions"), 30 were transactions in respect of which the Claimants alleged there was a side agreement or understanding which negated their economic substance, which resulted in the VARs[256] being in every case no more than a 'placeholder' and precluded the recognition of revenue from them.

1882. 5 of the remaining 7 transactions (VT9, VT17, VT19, VT22 and VT29) were *'Collectability VARs'*. In those cases, no such side agreement or understanding was alleged. The basis of the Claimants' claim was the allegation that there was never any realistic prospect of the VAR in question actually meeting its payment obligation, and it was never in truth envisaged that any debt owing by the VAR would be called in. Although there was no side agreement asserted, both motive and effect were similar: to generate revenue from what was in effect a contrivance. I deal in more detail with the Collectability VARs in the Schedule of Impugned VAR Transactions that accompanies this judgment. The 2 remaining transactions (VT5 and VT14) are dealt with on their own particular facts in that same Schedule.

1883. The Claimants calculated that the impugned VAR sales accounted for 88% by value of Autonomy's VAR transactions above $1 million in the Relevant Period. As to their chronological spread, it is not disputed that:

(1) In Q4 2009, Autonomy made seven impugned VAR transactions each in excess of $1 million and which collectively accounted for $27.6 million in revenue;

(2) In Q1 2010, Autonomy made a total of five impugned VAR sales which collectively accounted for $28.4 million in revenue;

(3) After a lull in Q2 2010 when there was only one impugned VAR sale accounting for revenue of nearly $2 million, occasioned (the Claimants suggested) by Mr Hogenson's enquiries, Autonomy made four impugned VAR sales in Q3 2010 accounting for revenue of over $23 million (and two 'reciprocal' transactions yielding over $7 million);

(4) Seven impugned VAR transactions followed in Q4 2010 accounting for revenue of $25.4 million;

(5) In Q1 2011, Autonomy made seven impugned VAR sales accounting for revenue of $22.9 million; and

[256] All but two of the 30 were transactions with 'friendly' VARs. Only two (VT15 and VT26) were with other VARs (Realise Limited and Tikit respectively).

(6) In Q2 2011 (the last reported quarter before HP's acquisition of Autonomy was announced in August 2011), it made a further four such sales, which accounted for revenue of some $28.6 million.

1884. The amount of revenue recognised in respect of the impugned VAR sales in each quarter was alleged to be sufficient materially to distort Autonomy's quarterly report. That was so even though what is in issue, where (as in 19 out of 37 cases) an end-user sale eventuated, is a timing difference, because when the end-user sale was completed, revenue actually was received in most cases, albeit some time after it had been booked.

1885. It was not suggested that the 37 impugned VAR sales were indicative or exemplars of some wider misuse of VAR sales by Autonomy. In other words, the Claimants confined their claims to the 37 impugned VAR sales, and did not challenge Dr Lynch's estimation in his first witness statement that Autonomy entered into thousands of transactions with resellers in the Relevant Period. I infer that the other VAR sales which were not counted were unobjectionable.

1886. As previously indicated, the Defendants did not adduce evidence in respect of any such VAR sales to demonstrate similar but apparently unexceptional features. I did not therefore have the opportunity to assess whether the mass of VAR transactions which were not impugned shared features said by the Claimants to be objectionable in the context of the 37 impugned transactions, which might have confirmed the Defendants' case that the features relied on by the Claimants (such as the fact that VAR sales were entered into on the eve of quarter-end, and that VARs were excluded from any involvement in the end-user negotiations, as elaborated later) were unexceptional.

Reciprocal VARs

1887. Linked with both varieties of impugned VAR transactions were certain transactions, referred to by the Claimants as *"Reciprocal VAR transactions",* which (somewhat confusingly) the Claimants lumped together with what the Claimants termed *"Reciprocal Transactions"* (as listed in Schedule 5 to the RRAPoC).

1888. So-called Reciprocal VAR transactions were not really "reciprocal transactions" at all, since they did not involve any linked sale to and purchase from a counterparty. But what they were said to have in common was that they involved a purchase or purchases of a product (or services) which Autonomy allegedly did not *"need"* and were of *"no discernible value"*. In other words, both varieties were put in place because of, and achieved, the same purpose.

1889. In the case of *'Reciprocal VAR transactions'*, all of which were with 'friendly' VARs, the Claimants' case was that the purchase from the VAR was alleged to have been a device to put the VAR in funds to enable it to repay what it owed in respect of an earlier purchase by it of a product from Autonomy under an impugned VAR transaction. The Claimants relied on these transactions as evidence that the VAR was not in reality on risk in respect of earlier sales giving rise to the debts, thereby showing that the earlier sales lacked

substance. I deal with these *'Reciprocal VAR transactions'* later in this Chapter.

The Claimants' legal causes of action in respect of the impugned VAR transactions

1890. The Claimants' primary and largest claim in this context was that because they were wrongly treated as real sales generating revenue which could be recognised at the point of sale, the way the impugned VAR sales were accounted for was improper and resulted in a false picture in Autonomy's accounts and published information (on which they maintained they had relied). This is thus in the nature of a claim for false accounting and untrue or misleading published information brought under FSMA, the relevant accounting standard said to have been wrongly applied being IAS 18.

1891. The Claimants also made a claim for alleged "transaction-based losses"; the losses consisting of fees paid to VARs in the context of the impugned VAR transactions and what the Claimants described as *"foregone receipts on improper transactions."* These claims for compensation for the Defendants' breaches of duty seek recovery of amounts which are relatively small, with a value amounting to some US$8.8 million.

The two hurdles for the Claimants in their FSMA claims in respect of impugned VAR sales

1892. To succeed in their VAR claims under FSMA, the Claimants had to demonstrate (in addition to reliance and loss) both (a) that the recognition of revenue from the impugned VAR sales lacked economic substance and/or did not satisfy the criteria for recognition of revenue prescribed by applicable Accounting Standards, and that therefore Autonomy's published information showing it as recognised revenue was untrue or misleading, and (b) that the Defendants knew that (or were reckless in that regard).

1893. As to (a), the Claimants put their case on two complementary bases. One basis was that in substance the impugned VAR transactions were not sales at all, and thus could not give rise to recognised revenue. The second basis was that the impugned VAR transactions did not satisfy one or more of the criteria stipulated by IAS 18.14 for the recognition of revenue from a sale of goods.

1894. As the case progressed, the Claimants seemed to me increasingly to emphasise the first limb of their case in this regard (that the transactions were not in reality transactions of sale at all, and that this was conclusive without further need to consider the detailed application of the specific wording or interpretation of IAS 18.14). This had the advantage, from the Claimants' point of view, of reorienting the points in issue away from any dispute as to the proper interpretation and application of IAS 18 and towards a fact-based assessment, and also thereby minimising the role of Deloitte.

1895. Although this latterly adopted approach is in some ways the more straightforward, it seems to me that it is important to understand the detailed provisions of IAS 18, both because that is the way the case was originally put, and because that was the apparent approach both of Autonomy and Deloitte.

1896. In any event, both ways of putting the Claimants' case ultimately depend on a careful factual analysis of the actual conduct of the parties to the impugned VAR transactions. The Claimants maintained that this revealed a clear pattern consistent only with the conclusion that, though contractually enforceable, the VAR sales were not intended to have any real economic effect (save for the payment of commission to the benefit of the VAR as the price of its compliance in what the Claimants presented as (though not a sham in the legal sense)[257] a charade).

1897. In a nutshell, the Claimants' case is that this pattern, especially when repeated over a series of transactions with 'friendly' VARs, made clear that in every case, the VAR was and was always intended to be both insulated from risk and side-lined from any participation. That, the Claimants submitted, belied any true sale and demonstrated the VAR's purely nominal role.

1898. As to (b) and the second hurdle, S.90A and Sch 10A of FSMA require proof of what I have referred to as (see the Introduction to this judgment at paragraphs 467 to 477) "guilty knowledge". The Claimants thus had also to prove that the Defendants knew that the accounting treatment adopted by Autonomy, and sanctioned by Deloitte, in recognising revenue as arising from the impugned VAR transactions, was wrong and rendered Autonomy's financial statements untrue or misleading.[258]

1899. That essentially depended on (i) what, if anything, the Defendants knew about the assurances given by Mr Egan and/or the way the VAR transactions were routinely acted upon, (ii) what basis the Defendants were satisfied that the criteria of IAS 18.14 were fulfilled in each case, and (iii) what comfort they legitimately drew from the fact that Deloitte reviewed and approved the accounting treatment of every one of the impugned VAR transactions. The latter was much relied on by the Defendants, on the basis that even if Deloitte were in error, it is difficult to ascribe greater and guilty knowledge to the Defendants, unless they knew something (including their own intentions or the undisclosed intentions of the parties) that Deloitte did not, and/or misled Deloitte into giving their approval of the presentation and accounts on a factually incomplete or misleading basis.

Structure of more detailed analysis of the claims based on false accounting

1900. In light of the introductory preview above of a very detailed claim expounded by both the Claimants and the Defendants over the course of many hundreds of

[257] *Snook v London and West Riding Investments* [1967] 2 QB 786. A 'sham' in a legal sense is a contractual arrangement dressed up and misdescribed as having one legal effect and in reality having another legal effect; as Diplock LJ (as he then was) put it at p802C-E: *"…it is, I think, necessary to consider what, if any, legal concept is involved in the use of this popular and pejorative word. I apprehend that, if it has any meaning in law, it means acts done or documents executed by the parties to the "sham" which are intended by them to give to third parties or to the court the appearance of creating between the parties legal rights and obligations different from the actual legal rights and obligations (if any) which the parties intend to create….for acts or documents to be a "sham"…all the parties thereto must have a common intention that the acts or documents are not to create the legal rights and obligations which they give the appearance of creating."*

[258] Or were reckless as to whether the relevant presentation was untrue or misleading.

pages of submissions and many days of cross-examination of a variety of witnesses, I turn to address the following in more detail:

(1) the usual provisions of the contracts relating to the impugned VAR sales;

(2) the terms of and the proper approach to the interpretation of Accounting Standards, and in particular, IAS 18 para. 14 ("IAS 18.14"), which at the relevant time[259] governed the recognition of revenue from sales of goods (including software);

(3) how the expert evidence as to the application of IAS 18.14 affects the analysis;

(4) how the parties to the VAR sales actually conducted themselves, and in the light of that, whether in the case of the impugned VAR transactions the overall relationship between the contracting parties satisfied the criteria stipulated by IAS 18.14 for the recognition of revenue; and/or

(5) whether (as the Claimants submit) those transactions were enforceable but never really intended to be enforced or acted upon so as not in real economic terms to be sales of goods at all;

(6) what the Defendants knew and whether it amounted to "guilty knowledge".

(1) Usual provisions of VAR sales contracts

1901. Taking as an example the master agreement made between Autonomy Inc and Capax Discovery LLC dated 30 June 2009, it was provided that:

a) *"…Once the Autonomy products on a purchase order have been shipped by Autonomy[260], VAR may not cancel or amend the purchase order without the prior written consent of Autonomy."*

b) *"…VAR shall not be relieved of its obligations to pay fees owed to Autonomy hereunder by the non-payment of fees by an End-User."*

c) *"…VAR shall: (a) use commercially reasonable efforts to promote, market and sell Autonomy Products and Services to End-Users…(b) maintain a sufficient number of VAR's personnel…trained in the features and functions of the current version of the Autonomy Products to (i) solicit orders for the Autonomy Products from End-Users; (ii) properly inform and demonstrate to End-Users the features and capabilities of the Autonomy Products…"*

[259] As explained below, the difficulties in its application were recognised and IAS 18.14 has since been superseded by IFRS 15.

[260] Usually by FTP or on Autonomy's Automater system, which was the platform through which Autonomy made software available for download to customers who had licensed it.

d) *"Except as otherwise provided in this Agreement, VAR shall assume all responsibility and liability to End-*

e) *Users with respect to the Autonomy Products…"*

f) *"…VAR is free to determine its own prices and per copy fees to end-Users. Autonomy may from time to time publish suggested wholesale or retail prices and per copy fees, provided, however, that such prices and fees are suggestions only and VAR is and shall be free to determine the actual prices and per copy fees at which the Autonomy Product will be licensed to its End-Users"*

g) "***ENTIRE AGREEMENT: AMENDMENT***. *This Agreement sets forth the complete and exclusive agreement between the parties with respect to its subject matter and supersedes any and all other written or oral agreements previously existing between the parties with respect to such subject matter. No alterations, modifications or additions to this Agreement shall be valid unless made in writing and signed by a Director or Officer of each party. The terms of any purchase orders or the like submitted by the VAR which conflict with any terms in this Agreement whether or not countersigned as accepted by Autonomy shall not be binding on Autonomy, regardless of Autonomy's failure to object to such terms."*

1902. It is also of some interest, that in the definitions clause it was provided:

a) *"End-User shall mean third party entities to whom VAR provides Services in respect of Autonomy Products"*; and

b) *"Services shall mean services provided to an End-User by which VAR may include demonstration, pre-sales support, installation, customisation, training, maintenance and support services, and other consulting or integration of the Autonomy Products."*

1903. I set out the terms of Autonomy's VAR agreements with the other 'friendly' VARs (especially, MicroLink, MicroTech, and DiscoverTech)[261], when addressing impugned VAR transactions with each of them. The master agreements with MicroLink and MicroTech (each described as a *'Government reseller'*) were in similar form and materially the same as the agreement with Capax Discovery. The individual agreements with DiscoverTech were shorter but in each case they contained at least (a) a provision binding the reseller irrevocably to the purchase upon delivery and making clear the unconditional nature of the payment obligation and (b) a similar entire agreement clause.

[261] In the case of DiscoverTech, each reseller transaction was governed by an individual VAR agreement. In the case of the other 'friendly' VARs there was a master agreement governing all their respective reseller transactions.

1904. Under all of Autonomy's agreements with 'friendly' VARs, the reseller was also required to sign debtor confirmation letters in respect of the debt arising under the impugned deals. The debtor confirmations are identified further below by reference to the individual transactions. An example (which related to deals with Capax including Amgen) stated:

> *"The items listed above were properly charged to our account and were unpaid as of 30th September 2010 and there are no side letters or other agreements in respect of the subject matter of this request, except as noted below:*
>
> *[Nothing was noted.]*
>
> *We acknowledge that Autonomy Corporation plc retains no continuing managerial involvement in the delivery of this product or service, other than stipulated in the licence agreement."*

(2) Terms and interpretation of IAS 18

1905. There is no dispute that Autonomy was subject, throughout the Relevant Period, to the requirements of IAS 18, and in particular IAS 18.14, and that revenue could not properly be recognised on sales of software (or hardware) unless its requirements were met. It was common ground also that if those requirements were met, recognition of revenue was mandatory, not discretionary: in other words, if all the criteria were satisfied, the revenue not only could be, but was required to be, recognised.

Terms of IAS 18

1906. IAS 18 prescribed criteria intended to adumbrate the qualities of a true and unconditional sale of goods (including software and software licences) from which revenue arising must[262] properly be recognised. Their application is not always easy, especially in the software context, where the goods are intangible assets that can be infinitely reproduced. It is of some note that IAS 18.14 has been replaced to clarify revenue recognition rules, especially for more complex transactions: IFRS 15 (which was first issued in April 2016) superseded it with effect for accounting periods beginning on or after 1 January 2018.

1907. IAS 18.14 provided as follows:

> *"Revenue from the sale of goods shall be recognised when all the following conditions have been satisfied:*

[262] If the criteria are satisfied, recognition is mandatory.

> *(a) the entity has transferred to the buyer the significant risks and rewards of ownership of the goods;*
>
> *(b) the entity retains neither continuing managerial involvement to the degree usually associated with ownership nor effective control over the goods sold;*
>
> *(c) the amount of revenue can be measured reliably;*
>
> *(d) it is probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the entity; and*
>
> *(e) the costs incurred or to be incurred in respect of the transaction can be measured reliably."*

1908. IAS 18.15 elaborated on the test in IAS 18.14(a) as follows:

> *"The assessment of when an entity has transferred the significant risks and rewards of ownership to the buyer requires an examination of the circumstances of the transaction. In most cases, the transfer of the risks and rewards of ownership coincides with the transfer of the legal title or the passing of possession to the buyer. This is the case for most retail sales. In other cases, the transfer of risks and rewards of ownership occurs at a different time from the transfer of legal title or the passing of possession. …"*

1909. IAS 18.16 explained that the seller may retain *"a significant risk of ownership"* in a number of ways and provides examples of various well-recognised situations where that may be so, as follows:

    (1) *"when the entity retains an obligation for unsatisfactory performance not covered by normal warranty provisions";*

    (2) *"when the receipt of revenue is contingent on the derivation of revenue by the buyer from its sale of the goods";*

    (3) *"when the goods are shipped subject to installation, and the installation is a significant part of the contract which has not yet been completed by the entity";*

    (4) *"when the buyer has the right to rescind the purchase for a reason specified in the sales contract and the entity is uncertain about the probability of return."*

1910. IAS 18.17 contained a saving provision as follows:

> *"If an entity retains only an insignificant risk of ownership, the transaction is a sale and revenue is recognised. For example, a seller may retain the legal title to the goods solely to protect the collectability of the amount due. In such a case, if the entity has transferred the significant risks and rewards of ownership, the transaction is a sale and the revenue is recognised. Another example of an entity retaining only an insignificant risk of ownership may be a retail sale when a refund is offered if the customer is not satisfied. Revenue in such cases is recognised at the time of sale provided the seller can reliably estimate future returns and recognises a liability for returns based on previous experience and other factors."*

Dispute as to interpretation of the Accounting Standards

1911. These provisions resonate with, and indeed seem to me likely to have been informed by, legal tests for determining the transfer of risk, reward and managerial control in the ordinary context of a sale of goods. They identify legal characteristics of an unconditional sale. They provide examples to delineate when risk is assumed to pass (and when not) which appear to be borrowed from legal concepts and devices (such as warranties which in effect introduce conditionality, contingent payment provisions and terms enabling rescission which are usually referred to as *Romalpa* clauses). The way these matters are dealt with appears to encourage, especially in a lawyer, a legalistic approach and primary focus on any contract governing the transaction in determining the nature and extent of the bargain. My own initial tendency to adopt such an approach fuelled a dispute between the parties as to the extent to which the VAR contracts were properly treated as determinative of the true relationship between the parties to them (Autonomy and the relevant VAR).

1912. Mr Miles, supported by Mr Casey, embraced and encouraged an approach which put the contract at the centre of the enquiry as to the substance of the impugned VAR sales and focused on the legal relationship between the parties as defined there and in any legally enforceable arrangements ancillary to it. Although they accepted that *"revenue recognition, like other accounting requirements, involves consideration of substance over form",* Mr Miles submitted that *"the substance of the relationship is to be found in the entirety of the parties' obligations"*. He included in this *"the entire commercial package of rights"* (some of which might be collateral to the main contract) but not *"arrangements of some kind which are <u>not</u> of legal effect"*. He submitted that the *"guidance does not involve a quest for a nebulous "understanding" separate from the legal rights and obligations which, taken as a whole, comprise the parties' deal"*.

1913. In the present case, the Defendants submitted that where, as in every one of the impugned VAR transactions in this case, being contracts for the sale of goods and not in the nature of complicated contracts such as a finance lease, the contract expressly provided that the entire agreement of the parties was to be found within the four walls of the contract, and nowhere else, the substance of

the transaction was to be (in most cases at least) determined from the contract itself.[263] He submitted that:

> *"in practical terms, once you've accepted that the transactions are real and not shams, then you can see what the substance is. It's the same thing as their legal form".*

1914. He explained this further as follows:

> *"generally speaking, commercial contracts are very good evidence indeed of the intentions of the parties, indeed of the economic transaction between them, and suppose that an accountant were to want to understand what the transaction between two parties consists of, the contract generally provides the answer."*

1915. Mr Miles submitted accordingly that the Claimants' concession that the VAR agreements were in every case binding contracts *"carries with it an acceptance that the contracts embodied the true intentions of the parties."* He elaborated on this in his oral submissions in closing as follows:

> *"So what did those contracts do? Although there were some differences, there were also common features. The contracts were licences of goods for relicensing to an end-user. As I said earlier on, they contain unconditional obligations to pay, stating in terms that the reseller could not avoid payment by reason of a non-payment by the end-user. They governed the question of when title passed. It passed on delivery and that was by the software being made available electronically. It wasn't necessary for the reseller actually to download the goods. Title passes on it being made available.*
>
> *The contracts also said that the contract is the whole contract that supersedes all agreements with respect to it and that no changes would be valid unless signed in writing. That is very strong evidence, we suggest, of the substance of the transactions for accounting purposes, put at its lowest.*
>
> *Now, it is also worth noting that the Claimants accepted that nothing they could rely on would have amounted to a deferment of the debt in law or estoppel. They said that on day 84 at pages 136 to 137 [TS84/136-137]. Again, that is an important concession and not, we suggest, the way that the case was pleaded. Whether it was or not does not matter. It is an important point that, in law, the contract has the effect that it has."*

1916. Thus, Mr Miles concluded, it follows that the VAR agreements are to be interpreted as both binding in accordance with their terms and demonstrative

[263] In Dr Lynch's closings and in oral submissions this was less absolute: it was contended that the terms of the contract are highly important in determining the substance, contrasting a simple sale of goods contract from a lease finance where in substance the lessee owns that which is leased.

of the true intentions of the parties, including the intention that the obligations specified by their agreement should not be modified or re-characterised by reference to ancillary arrangements that they had agreed should not be made. There was a true sale established by an enforceable contract, and the VAR would have no defence in law to enforcement of its terms (including the payment obligation it contained). Even if assurances were given as to the likelihood that Autonomy would never look to its legal rights, and would do all that it could to see that the VAR was not left *"on the hook"*, the fact remained that the VAR was in every case on the legal hook, and the assurances provided no defence or answer. They amounted to no more than *"warm words"* intended to encourage the VAR to participate, but not intended to constitute any part of the substantive deal or (in particular) remove from the VAR the risk it had contractually assumed.

1917. Mr Miles also warned against the use of hindsight. He submitted that revenue recognition needed to be assessed at the date of the accounts, and hindsight should be avoided. Mr Welham accepted this when he was cross-examined as *"probably a fair statement to make"*, and both experts appeared to agree that it was not permissible. On that basis, Mr Miles submitted that post-transaction events, including (for example) a decision by the end-user to deal and contract directly with Autonomy and Autonomy's decision in those circumstances to forgive the VAR's debt, should not affect the analysis if the VAR was on risk at the time of the contract between itself and Autonomy. The Defendants pointed out that this was indeed Deloitte's approach.

1918. Mr Rabinowitz rejected that approach and cautioned me against what he was concerned might be the natural inclination of a lawyer to adopt it. His case was that the focus of IAS 18.14, and of the practice of accountants in applying it, is on the economic reality of the transaction in the round, and whether the arrangement is one from which the revenue intended to be recognised can actually be expected. The audience is not a court applying the law: it is the market, seeking to assess how the company is performing.

1919. The Claimants' position was that the standard requires consideration of whether the factual circumstances demonstrate any different economic reality than is revealed by legal analysis of the contractual relationship said to constitute an unconditional sale. As it seems to me, the essence of their position was that it is the economic substance which must determine the accounting treatment: economic reality trumps (as it were) any legal interpretation of the effect of the contractual arrangements agreed by the parties. Accounting for transactions by reference only to legally enforceable commitments will not provide a true and fair view if in fact the parties' shared intention is to ignore the contractual elements and proceed on the basis of a different understanding.

1920. Contrary to the Defendants' submission, the Claimants submitted that this is not inconsistent with their disavowal of any plea of sham. They accepted the validity of the contract, and that each of the transactions was valid and had legal effect and could be enforced by the parties against each other in accordance with their terms. Their point was that the shared understanding and intention of the parties was that neither party would ever seek to rely on or

enforce its legal rights against the other, and insofar as obligations such as the payment obligation had to be seen to be performed, such assistance as became necessary (for example, by providing funds via a reciprocal transaction) would be arranged.

1921. The Claimants' position was to the effect that the VAR transaction was, in economic reality, a side-show: the VAR was interposed as a placeholder for the end-user, and the economically significant sale in every case where a sale resulted was the sale to the end-user. It was that transaction on which in reality Autonomy was focused, and which it regarded as the real sale which would result in actual payment and in due course receipt of revenue. The accounting significance and revenue recognition accorded to the VAR transaction was contrived and misleading accordingly.

1922. This dispute as to the interpretation of IAS 18.14 and its application to the facts clearly raises issues about the interplay between legal concepts and the Accountancy Standards, including:

    (1) Whether the substance of a transaction is to be assessed according to its legally enforceable incidents: or put another way, whether the contract is definitive of the parties' intentions and relationship; and

    (2) More particularly, whether the criteria specified by IAS 18.14, for example as to the transfer of *"significant risk and rewards of ownership"*, or as to what constitutes *"continuing managerial involvement"*, or as to what is meant in IAS 18.16 by the receipt of revenue being *"contingent"* on the derivation of revenue by a reseller of revenue from an onward sale, are to be answered according to the terms of the contract between the parties, or are to be tested and applied according to any different economic reality that the circumstances and conduct of the parties may reveal.

1923. I have addressed the first of these issues in the Introduction to this judgment in paragraphs 592 to 606 above. As there explained, in my judgment:

    (1) The objectives of IAS/IFRS accounting, being to achieve by adherence to carefully developed accounting statements a true and fair presentation and account of the substantive economic performance of the company, and to inform appraisals and investment decisions likely to be made in reliance on that account, require that the substance of a transaction be assessed by reference to its intended economic effect. This cannot safely be determined only by reference to its legal aspects. I cannot therefore accept the Defendant's argument in its purest form to the effect that a contract which is accepted to be valid and enforceable in accordance with its terms, and which is expressed to be the parties' entire agreement, must be treated as definitive of their intended relationship in respect of the subject matter of the contract. Regard must always be had to the shared intentions of the parties and, in the light of that, the real intended effect of the transaction in question.

(2) As the Claimants contended, the attenuated or narrower form of the Defendants' argument, to the effect that in this case the contractual provisions of each VAR transaction, and especially the entire agreement clause, render it unlikely that the parties had any intention which differed from that set out in such agreements, and the Court should be slow to find that they supplemented the written document by any further agreement or understanding, implicitly accepts that the totality of the evidence must be considered. Even if there is a presumption that the parties intended to set out their intention in the contract they signed, the presumption must yield to the evidence as a whole.

(3) The inclusion in the contractual provisions of an entire agreement clause may preclude the parties asserting any other agreement or understanding in vindication of or answer to a legal claim; but it cannot negate the facts or preclude enquiry as to the underlying realities in order to reach an accounting treatment of the transaction which provides a true and fair view of its true economic substance and effect. Indeed, the inclusion of an entire agreement clause may be revealed to be simply part of an intention to deflect attention from arrangements parallel to the contract which changed its economic effect.

1924. As to the second issue, and with particular reference to IAS 18.14, in my judgment:

(1) The criteria for revenue recognition, though informed by legal precepts derived from the law on the Sale of Goods, are to be satisfied, not only in terms of the contractual effect, but also in economic reality: they require that the significant risks of ownership should actually, as well as nominally, be transferred, and that the seller should not in fact retain any continuing involvement to a degree usually associated with ownership, nor effective control of the goods sold;

(2) Thus, IAS 18.14 requires an assessment of the true intended effect of all the arrangements and understandings between the parties to the relevant VAR transaction; all the facts and circumstances which bear on that assessment must be taken into account in determining the real economic substance of the relevant transaction and in accounting for it so as to provide a true and fair view of it.

1925. I accept that facts which emerge after the transaction are not to be taken into account because hindsight is not to be used. But in my judgment, the preclusion of the use of hindsight relates to after-discovered facts and circumstances, rather than to the proof of facts and circumstances already present at the time of the transaction. The true intentions and understandings of the parties at the time of the transaction are known to them at that time; and the proof of them to establish the real substance of the transaction by recourse to what occurs later is not prohibited.

(1) Expert evidence as to accountancy practice in applying IAS 18

1926. In my view, the conclusions above expressed are consistent with accountancy practice as expounded by both experts (Mr Holgate for the Claimants, and Mr MacGregor for the Defendants), despite serious differences between them on various aspects of accountancy practice relating to IAS 18.

1927. The experts agreed that as regards Accounting Standards in general:

(1) IAS/IFRS is less prescriptive than US GAAP in respect of all the matters in issue;

(2) The application of Accounting Standards to a specific company is a matter of judgement, and where the application of principles calls for judgement, there may be a range of possible views that a reasonable accountant may reach;

(3) Accounting decisions depend on the substance of the transaction and not merely its form; where the parties have agreed contractual terms they are highly material to, and likely to be strong evidence (or what Mr MacGregor referred to as *"the driving force"*) of, the substance of the transaction, but they are not conclusive;

(4) Accounting judgements fall to be made on the basis of the facts and circumstances as they were at the accounting date and hindsight cannot legitimately be used.

1928. In the context of the impugned VAR transactions, and as indicated above, the experts agreed that:

(1) The relevant contract to examine for the purposes of revenue recognition was that between Autonomy and the VAR: under both IAS and IFRS, unlike under US GAAP, there is no requirement for there to be sell-through to an end-user before revenue is recognised;

(2) It is not permissible to assume that all VAR transactions can be treated generically; the individual commercial facts relating to a given transaction at the time that it was effected are highly relevant to its accounting treatment;

(3) The revenue recognition principles in IAS 18 could be difficult to apply other than in simple transactions: the notion of the transfer of risk and reward was regarded as especially problematic, and IFRS 15 (which superseded IAS 18.14) replaced it with the question whether it is the supplier or the purchaser who in fact controls the goods or services in question;

(4) All of the IAS 18.14 criteria need to be satisfied in order for revenue to be recognised: but that once the criteria are satisfied, recognition of the revenue is mandatory;

(5) As to the criterion in 18.14(a), as expressly stated in 18.15, *"in most cases the transfer of risks and rewards of ownership coincides with the*

transfer of legal title or the passing of possession to the buyer" and that will generally be determined by the contractual terms;

(6) The criterion in 18.14(a) does not require all the risks and rewards to have passed: the test is whether substantially all of them have, and IAS 18.16 sets out various well-recognised situations where, under the contractual arrangements, the seller may retain the significant risk and rewards of ownership;

(7) Generally (and though each situation should be considered individually), the criterion in 18.14(b) (relating to the need for transfer of managerial control) goes hand in hand with the risks and rewards of ownership, and it would be unusual for an entity to retain managerial involvement to the degree usually associated with ownership or effective control where risks and rewards of ownership have passed: it is hard not to satisfy (b) where (a) is satisfied;

(8) The third criterion (IAS 18.14(c)), which requires that the revenue can be measured reliably, is a matter of fact which is usually determined by the agreement, and in the case of a software sale is usually the sale price;

(9) The fourth criterion (IAS 18.14(d)), which is that it must be probable that the economic benefit associated with the transaction will flow to the entity, requires a judgement as to the probabilities of whether it is more likely than not;

(10) The fifth criterion (IAS 18.14(e)), which is that the costs incurred or to be incurred in respect of the transaction can be measured reliably, is a question of fact and is not disputed in this case.

1929. Inevitably perhaps, given the difficulties inherent in the application of IAS 18.14, especially in the context of software transactions, there were in other contexts fundamental differences both in the approach of the two experts and in their evidence as to accountancy practice.

Mr Holgates' approach on VARs in his reports

1930. Mr Holgate's views on the accountancy issues raised by the VAR claims were built around 13 Assumptions of fact that he was instructed to make in his report. These Assumptions reflected the Claimants' pleaded case, and it is worth reciting them since they demonstrate both his approach and analysis and also what the Claimants sought to prove. As set out in Mr Holgate's first report , they were as follows:

(1) *"Assumption 1: There had been no communication between Autonomy and the VAR relating to a transaction involving the identified end-user until immediately prior to the end of the relevant quarter;*

(2) *Assumption 2: There was no price negotiation between the VAR and Autonomy;*

(3) *Assumption 3: The VAR had made no prior efforts to sell such a licence to, and had no prior relationship or contact with, the identified end-user;*

(4) *Assumption 4: The VAR did not undertake or propose to provide any added value, or any service, to the end-user;*

(5) *Assumption 5: For VAR transactions involving the sale of a licence to use Digital Safe software (and software to be used with Digital Safe), the Digital Safe software could only be implemented and thereafter operated by Autonomy (and not by the VAR);*

(6) *Assumption 6: The VAR did not have the means to pay the Autonomy group company in the absence of an onward sale of the relevant licence to the identified end-user;*

(7) *Assumption 7: For sales to Capax Discovery as VAR: Capax Discovery was a newly incorporated company in March 2009 and therefore had no financial history at that time. Capax Discovery wrote to Autonomy in March 2009, providing financial information for Capax Global "on the express understanding that Capax Global is a separate and distinct entity from Capax Discovery. All contractual obligations will be between Capax Discovery and Autonomy only";*

(8) *Assumption 8: The VAR did not, after the agreement between Autonomy and the VAR had been entered into, make any effort to sell a licence for the relevant software to the end-user. Instead, the Autonomy group company continued its own efforts to achieve a sale of the licence directly with the end-user (and without consultation with the VAR);*

(9) *Assumption 9: The purchase orders or sales agreements for the transactions between Autonomy and the VAR specified that the software was for onward licensing to the particular end-user;*

(10) *Assumption 10: There was an agreement or understanding (whether or not legally enforceable) between the Autonomy group company and the VAR, which was not apparent on the face of the written contractual documentation between the Autonomy group company and the VAR, to the effect that the VAR would not be required to satisfy any liability to Autonomy from its own resources;*

(11) *Assumption 11: The VAR was relieved of its ostensible liability to pay the price for Autonomy software licence it had purchased by one or more of the following means: (a) the purported sales agreement between Autonomy and the VAR being cancelled, (b) a credit note being issued to the VAR discharging its ostensible liability to pay the price, or (c) the VAR's debt being written off."*

(12) *Assumption 12: Where the Autonomy group company subsequently achieved a direct sale to the end-user, the Autonomy group company arranged for the end-user to pay the VAR so that the VAR could then pay the relevant Autonomy group company;*

(13) *Assumption 13: An Autonomy group company was caused to make a payment to the VAR to purchase rights, goods or services that the Autonomy group company did not need (and which had no discernible value to it), but which had the purpose and effect of putting the VAR in funds which it then used to pay for the Autonomy software licence."*

1931. Mr Holgate accepted that none of the 37 transactions featured all 13 Assumptions. However, he considered it clear that:

(1) A VAR sale to which Assumptions 1 to 4 (relating to the substance of the transaction) and 9 (which he described as showing that *"...the sale to the VAR was not the end of the story as far as Autonomy was concerned; indeed it suggests that the sale to the VAR is not an important part of the story at all"*) were factually established to be applicable was *"not genuine and lacked substance";*

(2) If Assumption 8 was shown also to apply, the VAR transaction would have been demonstrated not to *"affect the role and responsibility of Autonomy"* and thus would *"fail to meet IAS 18 paragraphs 14(a) (risks and rewards) and 14(b) (managerial control)"*; he added that it would also show lack of substance; and

(3) If a side agreement (whether legally enforceable or not) making clear that in practice there would be no need for the VAR to pay Autonomy from its own resources so that Assumption 10 applied, that of itself would demonstrate that at best the sale was conditional, and in any event that the transaction lacked substance, so as to disqualify revenue recognition. He concluded that *"the 30 transactions that feature assumption 10…lacked substance and so revenue should not have been recognised in respect of them"* and that such transactions would also fail to satisfy each of paragraphs 14(a), (b) and (d) of IAS 18. Assumption 10 was thus the only one which was conclusive if it applied.

1932. In Mr Holgate's assessment, Assumption 10 applied to all 30 of the impugned VAR sales where there was some form of side agreement; and in 26 out of 30 Assumptions 1 to 4 and 8 and 9 applied also. He considered the conclusion that those impugned VAR sales lacked substance and failed to meet the criteria was further reinforced when account was taken to what happened after the 'sale', principally because:

(1) None proceeded to a sale by the VAR to the end-user;

(2) In none was the VAR required to pay from its own resources, the VAR being held harmless in each in various ways;

(3) 19 of the 30 impugned VAR sales were ultimately concluded between Autonomy directly with the end-user after negotiations between them in which the VAR played no part;

(4) 11 of the 30 impugned VAR sales never proceeded to any sale to an end-user, but the VAR was in these transactions also held harmless from loss in a variety of ways.

1933. Furthermore, as regards Assumptions 5, 6, 7 and 11 to 13, all of which related directly to the revenue recognition criteria in IAS 18, Mr Holgate's approach and assessment were in summary to the effect that:

(1) If, as he was instructed to assume by Assumption 5, Digital Safe software was of no value to the end-user absent Autonomy's implementation and operational services, any VAR transaction which involved the licence sale of Digital Safe software without such services failed the criteria in paragraphs 14(a) and (b) of IAS 18 because Autonomy necessarily had to and did retain both significant managerial involvement/control and the risks and rewards of ownership. The relevant transaction also thereby lacked any real substance.

(2) If, as he was instructed to assume by Assumption 6, the VAR did not have the means to pay in the absence of an onward sale, then in a situation where the VAR was not in reality ever intended or intending itself to sell to an end-user, it could not be said that payment by the VAR was "probable", so that the transaction failed to meet IAS paragraph 18.14(d). Mr Holgate's view was that this rendered revenue recognition improper in the case of 19 of the 36 impugned VAR sales.

(3) Likewise, if, as he was instructed to assume by Assumption 7, Capax Discovery was a newly incorporated company with no trading history, Mr Holgate considered that payment could not be said to be "probable" so that again, the criteria in IAS 18.14(d) was not satisfied.

(4) If, as he was instructed to assume by Assumption 11, the VAR was relieved of any liability to pay by dint of (a) cancellation of the sale or (b) the issue of a credit note or (c) the debt simply being written off in each case at the instance of Autonomy, Mr Holgate considered that this similarly resulted in failure to satisfy IAS 18.14(d), and also IAS 18.14(a). It would also reinforce the point about lack of substance.

(5) If, as he was instructed to assume by Assumption 12, where the Autonomy group company achieved a direct sale to the end-user, it would arrange for the end-user to pay the VAR so that the VAR could then pay the Autonomy group company, Mr Holgate considered that the VAR transaction would fail to meet the criteria in IAS 18.14(a), (b) and (d) and the test of substance.

(6) If, as he was instructed to assume by Assumption 13, the Autonomy group company was caused to make payments to the VAR to purchase goods or services that the Autonomy group company did not need and which had no discernible value, the payments would be in the nature of disguised gifts and, taking the two transactions together the Autonomy company would have made no net gain, and Mr Holgate considered that the transaction failed to meet IAS 18.14 (a) and (d).

(7) Assumptions 11, 12 and 13 could, in Mr Holgate's view as stated in his first expert report, be regarded as *"different ways of putting assumption 10 into effect"*: Mr Holgate considered that one or more of those three Assumptions applied to 36 (that is, all but one) of the impugned VAR sales. He accepted that all three related to events that occurred after the VAR sale date but considered that it was permissible and appropriate to take them into account as evidence of the understanding referred to in Assumption 10. In any event, after the first few such transactions the pattern would not any longer be hindsight: it would be plain to see before the sale date.

1934. Mr Holgate did not come through unscathed from cross-examination. Mr Holgate's evidence in cross-examination was notably more equivocal than his views as expressed in his first report; and it seemed to me that this was principally because, when cross-examined, he had to take into account nuances, and the actual documentation, for which the Assumptions allowed no room. Indeed, he accepted that *"in the real world, [the auditor] would find out additional information, of course"* and that the conclusions he had reached in relation to particular transactions were the product of his Assumptions:

> *"If I was working with actual facts and seeking to establish what they were, then I agree I would need to look at the master agreement and as many other pieces of information as I could find. But if I'm working with assumed facts as given to me, then that's the basis on which I've been asked to provide my opinion".*

1935. Thus, when asked to consider factual variations or practical nuances not comprehended in the Assumptions he frequently had to resort to the explanation that he had simply answered on the basis of the assumptions he had been instructed to make, taking each to have been established. He contrasted this with *"the real world",* and accepted that in reality, the scope for (a) questioning, resulting in further information giving a more complete picture and revealing nuances not catered for in the assumptions, (b) valid commercial justification of which he was not aware in a field of which he had no experience[264], and (c) the fairly broad margins within which a proper judgment might be made, all could well result in a different and perfectly proper answer.

1936. For example as regards Assumptions 1 to 9:

(1) Mr Holgate accepted that Assumptions 1 and 2 at most would have led to further enquiry, and even together did not undermine revenue recognition;

(2) He struggled to explain any rationale for thinking that Assumption 3 supported an unequivocal conclusion, and retreated into a weak and unconvincing assertion of gut feeling, which seemed contrary to the "sell in rather than sell through" approach of IAS 18, that:

[264] Mr Holgate accepted that he did not have any prior experience in relation to the reseller industry for information technology in the US.

> *"…the real customer is the end-user and not the VAR. The end-user is the party who needs the goods, who wants to buy them and use them…And that therefore feels like, to me, in terms of substance, feels like the real transaction rather than the sale to the intermediate party."*

(3) He sought to rely in the same context and more generally on the premise that the fact that the VAR may in certain cases have had no knowledge of and no relationship with the prospective end-user was *"a very unusual situation".* But when asked on what basis of comparison he felt able to say this, he had to accept that he had provided no evidence of whether this was unusual by reference to Autonomy or the market but instead inferred it to be unusual because:

> *"if all transactions were like these impugned transactions, such that Autonomy sells to the reseller but then the reseller doesn't sell in any case on to the end-user, that's no business – that's no foundation for a business."*

(4) Mr Holgate regarded Assumption 4 (that the VAR did not undertake or propose to provide any added value or service to the end-user) as signifying either *"irrational commercial behaviour"* or simply a means for Autonomy to buy revenue recognition at the cost of margin which otherwise it could have retained for its own benefit; but he was constrained to accept that taken together, Assumptions 1 to 4, if established on the facts, would not have caused Deloitte's decision to approve revenue recognition to have been such that no reasonable accountant could have reached it (even if he himself might not have taken the same view).

(5) Similarly, in his first report, Mr Holgate stated that Assumption 9 (that the VAR agreement specified that the software licence sold to the VAR was for onward licencing only to a particular end-user), though on its own not strongly indicative of a lack of substance, strengthened his conclusion that he had already reached on the first four Assumptions that the VAR sales lacked substance and were artificial. But under cross-examination he accepted that *"in the real world"* (which he added *"is different from an exercise based on assumptions given to me"*) this was simply another factor which would prompt the auditor to ask further questions, and he did not exclude the possibility that the outcome would substantiate the VAR transaction.

(6) Mr Holgate came to accept that Assumption 5 (concerning VAR transactions involving the sale of a licence to use Digital Safe software for operation by Autonomy and not the VAR, as to which see further below) would have no real significance for the purposes of revenue recognition.

(7) Even in respect of Assumption 6, relating to the VAR not having the means to pay in the absence of an end-user sale, Mr Holgate accepted that the issue was "fact-sensitive" and that it could be quite permissible

to take into account the contract receivable ultimately due from the end-user, though he sought to attenuate this response by suggesting (rather unconvincingly, to my mind) that if the VAR had very little to do with the end-user sale, the receivable might in some way (unexplained) be devalued. His evidence on this was as follows:

> *"Q. Would you agree that it would also, in making that assessment, be permissible to take into account the likelihood of the VAR deal closing with the end-user as a way of generating funds to pay Autonomy? I'm not saying it would necessarily be the only source but do you accept that that's something that could permissibly be taken into account in reaching an overall assessment?*
>
> *A. Yes, you can take that into account. Clearly if the VAR has pre-sold to the end-user, then that's very definitely helpful of course because it's a contractual receivable for them. If they – but if that's not the case, then the question is how certain is the sale by the VAR to the end-user and that's – well you find out as much as you can about that. But if, for example, Autonomy is pursuing the sale and the VAR isn't, then that will count against it, but if the VAR were very active in making the sale and pursuing the deal, then that would count towards it.*
>
> *Q. So again it's quite fact-sensitive, is that fair?*
>
> *A. Yes."*

(8) Similarly with Assumption 7, in relation to Capax Discovery's status as a newly formed entity with no financial history and which Mr Baiocco had expressly stressed was distinct and separate from Capax Global, Mr Holgate accepted that the extent to which Autonomy would properly be able to take comfort from the position of that company within the Capax Group was a matter of fact, prompting further enquiry and then a conclusion.

(9) As to Assumption 8, that the VAR did not, after its agreement with Autonomy, make any effort to sell on to the end-user and left that to Autonomy, Mr Holgate opined in his first report that it was:

> *"strong evidence that* [Autonomy] *had not transferred to the reseller the risks and rewards with respect to licences that the reseller purported to purchase"*

and also that:

> *"a vendor who continued the sales effort would clearly have retained managerial involvement in and control over the goods in question."*

Under cross-examination, however, Mr Holgate had to accept that the Assumption may well have introduced inadmissible hindsight and that

in any event, and albeit *"a strange thing to do"*, which would raise questions an accountant might wish to explore and take into account, it would not necessarily prevent revenue recognition, if, for example, it was explicable on the basis of Autonomy having the better relationship with the end-user, and thus the far stronger prospect of sealing the deal.

(10) Assumptions 11, 12 and 13 were similarly relied on by Mr Holgate in his first report as both reinforcing his conclusion as to lack of substance and also as demonstrating that the impugned VAR deals failed to meet IAS 18.14 (a) and (b) and probably also (c). However, under cross-examination, Mr Holgate accepted that all three Assumptions 11, 12 and 13 concerned later events and described an outcome which could not have been known to the accountants at the time and therefore could not have affected the accounting judgment. He sought to rationalise these as in effect supporting Assumption 10:

> *"I think all of those, to my mind, are methods of dealing with or implementing assumption 10, which we've discussed, is a point for the time of the transaction; 11, 12 and 13 are the playing out of that subsequently…*
>
> *…*
>
> *…all of them, as I say, are the playing out of assumption 10 which was a feature at the time."*

1937. Mr Holgate seemed ultimately to consider the force of the above Assumptions as being in their cumulative effect, and the picture it built up, even if (as eventually he accepted) none individually were conclusive. Further, his acceptance, under cross-examination, that Assumptions 1 to 4 and 9 did not, even taken together, necessarily cause the decision in this case to recognise revenue to be outside the ambit of what may constitute a reasonable judgement means that their proof cannot of itself avail the Claimants, though of course all must be weighed together in the balance. His concessions in cross-examination had the like consequence as regards Assumptions 6 to 8 and 11 to 13.

1938. Even in relation to Assumption 10, which he regarded as the most important and the only potentially conclusive one of the 13 Assumptions (if established on the evidence), he was eventually driven to accept that the clash between the contractual stipulation against any side agreement, buttressed by the confirmation letters promising that there was none (neither of which, either the contracts or the letters, he had read at the time of his first report, which was most surprising), resulted in what he called *"an ambiguous situation"* . In the course of his cross-examination, I asked him to clarify this for me:

> *"MR JUSTICE HILDYARD: If the salesman said, 'I don't think you'll have to pay for this if everything goes wrong but I want you to understand that whatever I say can never be enforced', you would be out on the whims of the law, what would the accountant, the auditor, say?*

A. My Lord, it's a tricky one. If the salesman is saying both sides of those things, 'I want you to understand you won't have to pay but that's not a legal…' then the understanding that the customer gets is – well, is less –

MR JUSTICE HILDYARD: The understanding he gets is he's on a wing and a prayer.

A. Yes

MR JUSTICE HILDYARD: But the wing and the prayer will do, will it, to undo the transaction?

A. I think in practice you would look at other transactions and see what happened in the past, see how these things have turned out, that's what you would do in practice. But, yes, it's an ambiguous situation…

MR MILES: But in those circumstances, on the scenario that the judge has just posed, then although you said it's tricky, actually the truth is that the revenue would be recognised, wouldn't it?

A. No.

Q. Do you accept that there's a range of possible views on that?

A. I accept that an accountant dealing with this in practice would do some digging to find out more surrounding facts, would look at past transactions to see if there had been similar circumstances to see what can be learned from that. Now, this might be a case where there is really quite a borderline difficult judgement and there may be different judgements reached reasonably by different accountants because I said earlier that, speaking in general terms about IFRS, there's a range of judgements that could be made and it's relatively narrow and not broad, it's not 'anything goes'. But what we're describing here I think is quite a narrow – it's quite a fine point. You could read it either way. It's quite difficult, it's somewhere in the middle. So in this case I would agree with you that you could view that either way and still be…a reasonable judgement."

1939. This was obviously a significant concession, which also demonstrated a weakness in Mr Holgate's approach in his reports resulting from the reliance he was instructed to place on summary Assumptions, and the fact that in consequence he had not considered the actual facts (or even, as mentioned previously, the contracts or Deloitte's working papers). The Assumptions he was instructed to make were inevitably in synoptic form, which could not provide an accurate proxy for the complex and nuanced actual circumstances which both experts had agreed had to be considered in respect of individual

transactions. Further problems include that such assumptions, especially when used to create a substitute or proxy universe, may box the expert in, or lead him or her, when asked to consider alternative factual hypotheses, to tend to struggle if they are in conflict with the assumptions given, and either retreat into them or seek to defend them as reasonable, which undermines their purpose. Also, for the same reason, or because they may also be couched in terms or even a particular sequence, they may encourage "confirmation bias" and tend to suggest the conclusions sought by the party calling the evidence, which again may undermine the value and reliability of the opinion given.

1940. In the end, although Mr Holgate had initially appeared to suggest that the criteria provided bright lines which could be applied to the Assumptions to provide a clear, almost scientific, judgement on whether revenue should have been recognised in respect of the impugned VAR sales, he accepted that he had not the information, and it was not really the function of an expert, to make such a binary assessment. Mr Holgate was led by the Assumptions into expressing conclusions of fact (which is not the province of an expert) by reference to contractual arrangements he had not studied and on information he accepted to be incomplete and insufficient.

1941. It took him ultimately to accept that the issue came down to a judgement call as to whether, applying the criteria to the actual facts but also standing back to consider its true intended economic effect, the transaction had any real substance separate from any ultimate sale to an end-user. That would depend principally on (a) who was *"the real customer"* in the sense of turning the goods sold to use or account; (b) whether there was ever any intention for the reseller to negotiate and contract a sale to the end-user; (c) whether the parties truly intended the VAR to pay Autonomy from its own resources if no end-user deal eventuated, or whether instead they intended the end-user sale to be the source of funds to enable payment, failing which some alternative arrangement to remove or satisfy the VAR's outstanding legal obligation would have to be made. Put shortly: was the VAR intended to be a real or a nominal purchaser?

1942. Despite the appearance of differences between them, it seemed to me that this chimed with Mr MacGregor's approach, to which I now turn.

Mr MacGregor's approach on VARs in his reports

1943. Mr MacGregor (who was instructed by the First Defendant) had more practical experience of actual auditing (though latterly his experience was not field work but forensic accounting) than Mr Holgate, but his evidence had less analytical coherence. Especially in his answers when cross-examined, he was not always consistent. He often found the varying assumptions he was asked to make somewhat confusing, especially (as is understandable) when complex and cumulative, and he tended to complain in general terms or express confusion, rather than gather his thoughts and ask for clarification. Mr Miles interceded when absolutely necessary; but there were nevertheless times when it was not altogether clear to me what the emerging evidence was. Both in his appreciation of the question asked, and in his answers, Mr MacGregor tended to lack precision. He also occasionally appeared to lose his footing, and gave

the impression of trying to remember what he had said in his report, rather than focusing on his answer to the question asked.

1944. Mr MacGregor had, however, the advantage of having read the VAR agreements, and Deloitte's working papers. His approach was thus much closer to replicating how Deloitte did in fact approach the matter: it was closer also to what Mr Holgate accepted was the *"real world"* (distinguishing that from the exercise he was instructed to undertake himself). He was careful to distinguish between, on the one hand, matters of accountancy practice and approach, and on the other hand, issues of fact or legal interpretation or effect, which he left to the court to decide.

1945. He considered that the effect of an entire agreement clause was a matter of law, and that *"such a clause suggests that there would be no validity to any agreement which was not contained in the contractual documentation itself"* . He appeared to accept that the law might altogether resolve the question, and he also acknowledged that in any event:

> *"while it is important to consider the substance of a transaction as well as its legal form, the contract terms can drive the accounting treatment and should not be ignored in determining the point at which revenue should be recognised and the measurement of revenue".*

1946. However, Mr MacGregor did not suggest that there was any settled approach to the issue as to the interplay between contract and informal assurances in accountancy practice; and subject to the law having preclusive and conclusive effect (which he left open), he appeared to consider that assurances given outside the contract could and should be taken into account in reaching a view as to the true substance of the transaction, at least as to whether there had been any true sale (which he regarded as the real question, the provisions of IAS 18.14 being the means of reaching an answer), and that this was the case even if such assurances would be unenforceable in law.

1947. Subject to his caveat as to whether in law the entire agreement clause was conclusive, Mr MacGregor appeared to accept that the recognition of revenue from the impugned VAR transactions was improper if, notwithstanding what the contract appeared to provide, there was no true sale in economic terms because neither party intended the fundamental aspects of a true sale (payment of the purchase price and transfer of management and control of the goods sold) actually to take place. In such circumstances, assuming that the true intent was that Autonomy should close a direct deal with the end-user and obtain actual payment from the end-user only at the point of that sale, Mr MacGregor regarded the only true sale in economic terms as being to the end-user, and revenue should only be recognised on completion of the sale to the end-user.

1948. Mr MacGregor regarded the specific criteria set out in IAS 18.14 as indicia of an unconditional sale: a purported sale which did not satisfy those criteria could not be treated as a sale from which revenue could be recognised. But for him the specified criteria were not the only means of determining the question:

if the economic reality was that the parties never intended the 'sale' to have any economic consequences and was simply a nominal arrangement put in place pending a true sale to an end-user which the parties intended to be (a) negotiated by the original seller (Autonomy) and (b) the true source of payment for the goods, there was no need to look further. This echoed Mr Holgate's point that a condition of recognising revenue was that the transaction said to generate it should have economic substance. But Mr MacGregor's test of substance was more obviously based on the intention of the parties: if the parties did not intend to fulfil the obligations of a real sale, no revenue recognition could be permitted.

1949. That focus on the real intentions of the parties was, as I understood his evidence, Mr MacGregor's central point. He did not regard this as conclusively determined by their contract, although what they had contractually agreed would be a very important factor in determining their overall intentions (for substantially the obvious reasons accepted by Mr Holgate). The following passage from Mr MacGregor's cross-examination seems to me to capture his approach (and a flavour of the way he explained it):

> *"Q. Well, let's take a situation, Mr Welham in his evidence has told my Lord that even if it isn't legally enforceable, if in fact there is an oral agreement which stands next to the contract, you take that into account and Mr Holgate has said the same thing. You don't disagree with that, do you?*
>
> *A. You would think about it and you would take it into account. Whether it has ultimately any relevance to the accounting is always going to be a matter – potentially a matter of judgement but potentially not a matter of judgement.*
>
> *Q. You would think about it and it may well form part of the substance, regardless of whether it is legally enforceable?*
>
> *A. If it's not legally enforceable, it is probably going to have – it's probably going to have limited use. I mean, as far as the oral side of it is concerned, I mean in the hierarchy that auditors, for example, use when trying to assess evidence, it's well known: information from the parties is more reliable. It's well known: information that is written rather than oral is much more reliable.*
>
> *Q. If in fact there is an understanding and an agreement, it may not be legally enforceable but it exists and both parties know it exists and both parties intend actually to give effect to it in any event, regardless of whether it's legally enforceable, you would not disregard that when you're looking at the substance of the transaction?*
>
> *A. Well, I think the keyword there is "intention" and if at the time a contract is entered into and there is an intention to do one or more things and that intention is carried out, such that it overrides the terms*

of the agreement, then I can well see that that would be the case. In fact, I do say that in my report. The intention at the time of the contract has to be thought of as relevant there.

Q. And that is so, regardless of whether that is legally binding, that is to say you can come to a court and enforce that?

A. If one has a debt that one doesn't intend to collect, doesn't intend to collect, forget "I'm going to give somebody time to pay", just doesn't intend to collect, then that fails the definition of an asset because there is no future economic benefit going to come as a result of that debt. So that fails - that would fail at the first hurdle."

1950. Likewise, as regards the effect of all negotiations for the end-user sale being undertaken by Autonomy, without any involvement on the part of the VAR nor any suggestion of agency, Mr MacGregor stated in an Appendix to his first report:

> *"...if at the time of the sale to the reseller, Autonomy intended to continue to attempt to sell direct to the end-user, and if it intended to cancel the sale to the reseller (or otherwise relieve the reseller of the debt) on a subsequent successful direct sale (or no sale) then no revenue should be recognised in the income statement until such time as, for example, a sale to the end-user made probable the flow of economic benefits to Autonomy."*

1951. He clarified in oral evidence that it was not sufficient for revenue recognition to be impermissible that ultimately Autonomy did deal and contract with the end-user: what did *"invalidate the original sale"* was *"the intention to deal with the end-user, come what may...".* In a later passage in answer to a question from me he elaborated:

> *"...if it's the intention at the time of the sale to the VAR takes place, the VAR is going to do nothing, the VAR is just going to sit there and Autonomy is going to do as it was always doing and go in there, you know, continue to negotiate the price and the amount of software and all those sorts of things, then there's no sale. That's not a sale that Autonomy would be entitled to recognise.*
>
> *However, if it's not the intention, if it's something less than that, then one would need to look at all the facts and that would be a consideration, possibly a material consideration...It's clear cut to me when there is a definite and clear intention; it becomes less clear when it's just an understanding."*

1952. The distinction which Mr MacGregor appeared to draw between a settled intent never to require payment (leading to the conclusion that in substance there was no sale) and some understanding about deferral, falling short of a

contingent contract, which Mr MacGregor considered to be consistent with a sale in substance and, therefore, to be *"fine"* , was also clear from a later passage of his cross-examination when Mr Rabinowitz pressed him as follows:

> *"Q. If the side agreement or understanding and intention at the time of the contract, again to ensure that the VAR would not have to make a payment out of its own resources, was simply that if the VAR could not achieve a sale to a specified end-user, Autonomy would find and facilitate a sale by the VAR to some alternative end-user enabling the VAR to use the money so obtained to pay Autonomy, again you would say that transaction, when arranged or understood or agreed, simply lacked economic substance, correct?*
>
> *A. No, I don't agree with that. I don't agree with that.*
>
> *Q. Why not? Because?*
>
> *A. For this simple reason. If I sell something to somebody and they don't currently have the means to pay but expect to have the means to pay in the future, I can recognise a sale. In this case, if I sell something to somebody with the intention that they sell on to the end-user and thereby will have the money to pay for the purchase, then that's fine. And if they fail to make that first purchase but Autonomy then arranges, manages to find a further, a second end-user they can sell to, I don't see what the problem is with that being a sale.*
>
> *Q. I think you may have misunderstood the assumption. The assumption is that the nature of the arrangement made is that Autonomy says to the VAR, "All right, here's software to sell to that end-user but don't worry about it if you can't sell to that end-user, you won't have to pay us until – we will find you another end-user with whom there is a contract to sell, sell to that other end-user and then you can use the money from that other sale to pay us for the first sale"?*
>
> *A. No, I did understand that one and I think that seems to me to be fine.*
>
> *Q. Fine?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. How is that not the same as a situation in which the parties have effectively understood and intended that the reseller would not have to satisfy any liability to Autonomy from its own resources?*
>
> *A. Because you didn't preface that example with the side arrangement that there is no intention to – on the seller to collect…"*

1953. What I took from all this was that neither forbearance after the event in pressing for payment, nor intervention to facilitate a sale to the end-user which was not premeditated, would undo the substance of the sale; but intention from the beginning to the same effect would. As it seemed to me, on Mr MacGregor's approach, two primary questions had to be raised and answered by reference to the detailed facts:

(1) which was, in reality, the transaction which at the time of the VAR 'sale' Autonomy intended should generate its actual receipt of revenue: was it the VAR sale or the sale to the end-user?

(2) who, at the time of the VAR sale, did Autonomy intend should in fact negotiate and conclude the end-user sale?

1954. If the answer to these questions was that Autonomy intended that any money it received would come from the end-user sale, rather than the VAR sale, and/or if Autonomy intended that it, rather than the VAR, would be the entity which would in fact negotiate and conclude the end-user sale, the conclusion would follow that the VAR sale lacked substance and the criteria in IAS 18.14 were not satisfied, so that no revenue could permissibly be recognised from the VAR sale.

1955. In my view, these tests are in substance the same as the tests which Mr Holgate considered should be adopted; and the experts, albeit in different language and with different emphases, and with Mr MacGregor preferring the test of intention to that of objective substance, reached the same conclusion that (a) there would be no true 'sale' and (b) the criteria in IAS 18.14 would not be fulfilled if those committing the parties to the transaction as a matter law intended at that time that:

(1) the VAR would not play any part in negotiations with the end-user;

(2) Autonomy was to negotiate and close a direct deal between itself and the end-user with a view to the VAR transaction being dissolved if that eventuated, subject to payment of a fee (a MAF) to the VAR for its trouble;

(3) the VAR would never be required actually to make any payment to Autonomy for the software 'sold' whatever the contract might say unless and until funded by the proceeds of a sale to the end-user or credited by Autonomy in the same amount, or somehow put in funds by Autonomy itself.

(4) Factual analysis

1956. As summarised earlier, the Claimants contended that the court should find that the arrangements between Autonomy and the VARs in all the impugned transactions followed a tell-tale 'pattern', which demonstrated the true intentions of the parties and the real economic substance and intended effect of the transactions.

1957. According to the Claimants, this 'pattern' involved one or more of the following features which (they submitted) caused the economic substance and intended effect of the transaction to be very different than appeared from the unconditional sale (and transfer to the VAR of risks, rewards and managerial control) legally provided for by contract:

(1) the VAR made no real attempt to sell the software license on to the end-user, such efforts being a matter exclusively for Autonomy;

(2) the VAR was never required or pressed to pay for the software license from the VAR's own resources.

1958. These two matters were presented by the Claimants as complementary. As it was put in their written closing submissions:

> *"…if the Court finds…that it was intended at the time of the VAR transaction that the VAR would do nothing, that fact is – in itself – a reason to infer that the VAR was also not intended to be required to pay Autonomy from its own resources.*
>
> *The reason is simple. If the VAR was genuinely expected to pay Autonomy from its own resources, the most obvious way for the VAR to put itself in funds would be by working hard to secure an end-user sale.*
>
> *Contrariwise, it would be most unnatural for a VAR – which knows that it is going to be compelled to make payment for a software licence imminently – to do absolutely nothing to sell that software licence on to the intended end-user and thereby obtain the funds with which to pay Autonomy…"*

1959. As to proof of the pattern and the intention of the parties thereby revealed, amongst the features characteristic of the impugned sales were the following:

(1) The sale to the VAR took place on the last day of a quarter.

(2) The VAR had had no previous contact with the contemplated end-user nor any information or knowledge about its intentions or its financial position and reliability from which it could gauge the prospect of an onward sale.

(3) The VAR never had any contact, still less undertook any process of negotiation, with the end-user.

(4) There was never any sale by the VAR to an end-user, and instead

(5) Either Autonomy eventually sold directly the same software (plus or minus extensions) to the end-user, or there was no end-user sale at all; and then (one way or another).

(6) Autonomy (whether expressly or implicitly) released the VAR from any further obligation or found some way of funding it to take the VAR off the legal hook.

(7) Although there was nothing in any of the written contracts entered into between Autonomy and the VAR which conferred any entitlement or expectation of a MAF (or any fee) Autonomy paid a MAF in every case in which an end-user deal eventuated, illustrating again that the parties paid only lip service (at most) to the provisions in the written agreement prohibiting side agreements and providing that the written contract should comprise the extent and entirety of their agreement.

1960. On the basis of my view of the expert evidence and the proper approach to the Accounting Standards, these features and the pattern they reveal, if proven and shown to demonstrate the true intentions of the parties to the impugned VAR sale in question, would disqualify from revenue recognition any impugned VAR sales to which they apply.

The Claimants' case that in reality the VARs were never at risk and Autonomy retained managerial control

1961. I turn then to analyse and assess, grouped by reference to particular resellers or VARs, in respect of each of the impugned VAR transactions, (i) the evidence of the persons who negotiated the impugned VAR transactions and thereafter (ii) how the Defendants depicted the individual transactions to Deloitte and thereafter to the FRRP and finally, (iii) the allegations that each of the Defendants had 'guilty knowledge' of the impropriety of recognising revenue from the impugned VAR transactions.

1962. Before addressing the factual evidence relied on by the Claimants in respect of each of the impugned 30 VAR sales (in respect of which the Claimants alleged there was a side agreement or understanding which negated their economic substance), it may assist to provide a brief overview and rough chronology of the arrangements concerned, the parties to them and the personalities involved.

The counterparties to the impugned VAR sales

1963. Autonomy's principal counterparties in those impugned VAR transactions were as follows:

(1) MicroLink, which had been a reseller for Autonomy for many years prior to the beginning of the "Relevant Period" in Q1 2009, and had entered into many VAR transactions with Autonomy prior to 2009, none of which are impugned. MicroLink had US Federal Government security clearance and by December 2008 had become Autonomy's primary reseller to the US Federal Government. MicroLink was the VAR in a series of reseller transactions in 2008 and 2009, of which the Claimants have impugned 11, with a variety of prospective end-users, including IBM-Ameriprise and the NSA (part of the US Federal Government). The Claimants referred to this series of transactions together as "VT1". MicroLink was acquired by Autonomy at the end of 2009. The Claimants alleged that Autonomy's purpose in making this acquisition was to enable MicroLink's indebtedness *"to be reclassified as inter-company debt and effectively washed away."* After that acquisition, Autonomy used MicroTech, which it had also used as a VAR since 2006, in its place: see paragraph 1963(3) below.

(2) Capax Discovery LLC, usually referred to as "Capax Discovery", which Autonomy used as a VAR for 10 of the impugned VAR sales (and also another transaction said to be an improper linked or "reciprocal" transaction, a category to which I return later). Capax Discovery LLC was established in early 2009, as a subsidiary of Capax

Global LLC when Mr Stephen Williams, who had joined Capax Discovery in 2008 from Autonomy's e-Discovery division, persuaded Capax Global's management to expand into e-Discovery or electronic data discovery ("EDD") business. Both companies were usually referred to simply as "Capax". Capax Discovery LLC was also party to the EDD transaction which was impugned by the Claimants to which I also return later. The Capax Group was, by 2009, the largest professional service provider to Autonomy, and one of the largest professional service providers to Microsoft. Its business had largely been built around Microsoft, but Autonomy was its second largest partner. The 10 impugned VAR transactions involving Capax Discovery in the Relevant Period (Q1 2009 to Q2 2011), each of which took place under a VAR agreement between Autonomy and Capax Discovery dated 30 June 2009, were:

i. VT2, in Q2 2009, in respect of which the prospective end-user was a Texan electricity supplier called TXU Energy Retail ("TXU"), and for which the software licence fee was $783,086 (plus $78,309 for one year's support) payable in three instalments. This was followed by a further transaction for a fee of $61,652 plus additional fees of $6,165 for support and maintenance and $395,023 for hardware.

ii. VT3, in Q3 2009, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Kraft (a well-known US grocery manufacturing and processing conglomerate, and by then a long-standing customer of Autonomy) and for which the VAR sale price was $4,000,000 and a further support and maintenance fee of $200,000.

iii. VT4, in Q4 2009, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Eli Lilly & Co (a large pharmaceutical company) and for which the VAR sale price was $5,986,827 and a further $299,342 support fee.

iv. VT10, in Q1 2010, in respect of which the prospective end-user was the UK Financial Services Authority ("the FSA") and for which the VAR sale price was $4,285,714 plus a support and maintenance fee of $214,286.

v. VT16, in Q3 2010, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Amgen Inc ("Amgen"), a pharmaceutical company and for which the VAR sale price was $9 million and a further one-year support fee of $450,000.

vi. VT20, in Q4 2010, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Defense Knowledge Online ("DKO") for the US Department of the Army, and for which the VAR sale price was $1,950,197, plus a support and maintenance fee of $292,530, payable in three equal instalments (in March, June and September 2011).

vii. VT21, in Q4 2010, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Merrill Lynch, by then a subsidiary of Bank of America and for which the VAR sale price was $1,830,600, including two years' support and maintenance, payable in two equal instalments of $915,300, one within 90 days and the other within 180 days.

viii. VT27, in Q1 2011, in respect of which the prospective end-user was McAfee, and for which the VAR sale price was $5,000,000 plus a support and maintenance fee of $250,000, payable in two equal instalments (in July and September 2011).

ix. VT28, in Q1 2011, in respect of which the prospective end-user was UBS, the well-known bank and for which the VAR sale price was $8,000,000, plus an annual support and maintenance fee of $400,000, payable in two equal instalments (in July and end of July 2011).

x. VT34, in Q2 2011 (though allegedly not signed until 1 July 2011, the first day of the next quarter) in respect of which the prospective end-user was again UBS, and for which the VAR sale price was $7,664,132, plus an annual support and maintenance fee of $383,207.

(3) <u>MicroTech</u>, which Autonomy used as a VAR in eight of the 30 impugned VAR sales (in respect of which the Claimants' alleged that there was a side agreement or understanding) and in one further impugned VAR transaction (VT5) where no side agreement or understanding is alleged, was (like MicroLink) used by Autonomy long before the Relevant Period. Also like MicroLink, MicroTech was a US Federal Government-approved "8A" reseller. The nine impugned MicroTech VAR transactions (including VT5 where no side agreement or understanding is alleged), all governed by a June 2006 MicroTech Master Agreement, were:

i. VT5, in Q4 2009, in respect of which the end-user was DiscoverTech, and for which the VAR sale price was $9,523,810 plus a first-year support fee of $476,190. However, it is to be noted that no side agreement or understanding was asserted, and the impropriety alleged turns on what the Claimants termed *"its own peculiar facts"* relating to (a) the connection between VAR and end-user since MicroTech and DiscoverTech (and MicroLink) were *"Truitt-related companies"* and (b) a suggestion that VT5 was simply a means of returning to Autonomy $10 million of the purchase price of MicroLink.

ii. VT6, in Q4 2009, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Honeywell Aerospace ("Honeywell") and the VAR sale price was $1,800,000 plus a first-year support fee of $90,000.

Ultimately Honeywell did not conclude any end-user sale with either MicroTech or Autonomy.

iii. VT7, also in Q4 2009, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Manufacturers Life Insurance company ("ManuLife") and the VAR sale price was $1,080,000 plus a first-year support fee of $104,000. Autonomy issued a credit note for those amounts and paid a MAF to MicroTech when, shortly afterwards (in March 2010), it entered into a larger, direct deal with ManuLife.

iv. VT8, also in Q4 2009, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Morgan Stanley and the VAR sale price was $4,888,800 ($4,656,000 plus a fee of $232,200 for support and maintenance). As in VT7, Autonomy issued a credit note to MicroTech and paid a MAF when subsequently (in March 2010) it entered into a direct agreement with Morgan Stanley for a higher amount.

v. VT13, in Q1 2010, in respect of which the prospective end-user was the Vatican Library and the (initial) VAR sale price was $11,000,000 plus a fee of $550,000 for support and maintenance. The end-user was planning to use IDOL to digitise the Vatican Library's manuscript collection of over 80,000 manuscripts and over 40 million pages of documents, and this was a very prestigious and enormous project, which would (to quote Dr Lynch) *"certainly have been a contender for"* the biggest single deal ever done by Autonomy.

vi. VT25, in Q4 2010, in respect of which the prospective end-user was the US Department of Interior ("DoI") and the VAR sale price was $4,000,000 plus $200,000 for support and maintenance. No end-user deal was ultimately achieved, nor did MicroTech make any payment either.

vii. VT32, in Q1 2011, in respect of which the end-user was Bank of Montreal and the VAR sale price was $2,880,000 plus $144,000 for annual maintenance and $50,000 for annual premium support. In June 2011, Autonomy closed a direct deal with Bank of Montreal for a licence fee of $2,800,000 and in August 2011 it issued a credit note to MicroTech for the amounts it owed under the VAR transaction.

viii. VT33, also in Q1 2011, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Xerox, and the VAR sale price was $1,170,000 plus $58,500 for support and maintenance. Ultimately, on 29 July 2011, an Autonomy group company called Verity Inc entered into a direct deal with Xerox for an amount of $1,300,000 including support and maintenance and a further fee of $14,175

for an additional Spanish module. The end-user direct deal with Xerox provided for payment to MicroTech as Autonomy's designated payee and MicroTech then paid on to Autonomy but having deducted $85,675 as a fee.

ix. VT37, in Q2 2011, in respect of which the prospective end-user was HP (which hoped to provide the technology services to the United States Postal Service "USPS") and the VAR sale price was $7,000,000 plus $350,000 for one year's maintenance. In the event, no end-user deal was closed. MicroTech paid the full amount due under the VAR transaction in August 2011.

(4) DiscoverTech, which Autonomy used as a VAR in eight of the impugned VAR transactions, was newly formed by Mr David Truitt (Mr Steve Truitt's brother) in 2009 as a vehicle to carry on the software business comprising an advanced information discovery and social networking product which was spun out of MicroLink just before Autonomy acquired MicroLink. (That acquisition and the prior spin-off are both also matters impugned by the Claimants and dealt with elsewhere in this judgment: my present focus is on DiscoverTech's two subsequent VAR transactions with Autonomy which are also impugned.) The eight impugned VAR transactions between it and Autonomy were each governed by an individual reseller agreement, but the agreements were in materially the same terms with, in every instance, wide 'entire agreement' clauses. The transactions were:

i. VT11, in Q1 2010, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Citigroup ("Citi", which was one of Autonomy's large, long-standing clients), and the VAR sale price was $5,500,000, plus a first-year support fee of $275,000. The VAR sale comprised software only, DiscoverTech paid Autonomy 20% (over $2,000,000) upfront. It was intended that DiscoverTech should on-sell to Citi; but there were difficulties and delays in getting on to Citi's approved vendor list. Ultimately, a tri-partite agreement was made, under which Autonomy was deemed to be receiving payment in respect of the software from Citi as agent for DiscoverTech (to which Autonomy also paid a MAF). However, a further wrinkle was that the direct sale was in fact of storage cells (Zantaz Digital Safe Smart Cells with uploaded IDOL software) rather than software alone: I address this in greater detail later.[265]

ii. VT12, in Q1 2010, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Philip Morris International ("PMI"), the tobacco company, and the VAR sale price was $4,185,000, plus a first-year support fee of $209,250. Initially, PMI wanted to use its partner SHI for the deal and Discover Tech expected a purchase order from SHI. But PMI then changed their mind; and

[265] Mr Goodfellow's evidence was that Autonomy delivered the storage cells directly to Citi and, furthermore, delivered a number of them in advance of the direct agreement being signed.

ultimately, a direct deal was made between Autonomy and PMI, following which Autonomy issued a credit note to DiscoverTech and paid it a MAF reflecting the margin DiscoverTech would have got had the end-user signed with them.

iii. VT23, in Q4 2010, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Bank of America ("BofA"), and for which the licence fee was $3,500,000 plus a support and maintenance of $175,000. The deal ran in parallel with VT24 (see paragraph 1963(4)(iv) below). Both were part of a larger overall deal for end-users BofA/Amgen/Merrill Lynch (the last two being BofA group companies), with a total licence value of $21,330,600 which was parcelled out to various resellers (MicroTech, Capax Discovery and DiscoverTech) in impugned transactions VT16, 21, 23 and 24). Ultimately, Autonomy made a direct deal with the end-user for a total licence fee of $19,500,000 in respect of all four transactions, with MicroTech as designated payee, and arrangements for MicroTech to account to Discover Tech and Capax Discovery for their relevant parts.

iv. VT24, in Q4 2010, in respect of which the prospective end-user was also BofA, and for which the license fee was $7,000,000, plus a support and maintenance fee of $350,000 (which was part of the larger overall deals referred to at paragraph 1963(4)(iii) above).

v. VT30, in Q1 2011, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Prisa, a Spanish and Portuguese language media group and an existing Autonomy customer before the VAR transaction. The VAR transaction was for a licence fee of $3,600,000 plus a first-year support fee of $200,000. Ultimately, no end-user deal was concluded with Prisa, either by DiscoverTech or Autonomy. The Claimants accepted that DiscoverTech satisfied its obligations but allege that this was only because it was enabled to do so by a purchase from DiscoverTech by Autonomy of a product called DiscoverEngine. This product was, amongst other things, a connector to Microsoft's SharePoint product (which is a content management system in wide usage in enterprise environments) and had been developed to support and enhance Autonomy's IDOL software for IDOL customers who were also SharePoint users. The Claimants make no claim that the transaction was reciprocal or linked, and no FSMA breach or misrepresentation is asserted, nor is it suggested that the transaction resulted in losses. However, the Claimants suggested that Autonomy had another similar product already and that it had no use for DiscoverEngine: the Defendants rejected that.

vi. VT31, in Q1 2011, in respect of which the prospective end-user was ThinkTech Inc. ("ThinkTech"), an associate of the

brokerage firm TD Ameritrade, and the VAR licence fee (for an amendment to ThinkTech's existing Digital Safe hosting arrangement) was $1,800,000 plus a first-year support fee of $180,000. No end-user sale eventuated, as the Claimants maintained was inevitable since TD Ameritrade had even before the VAR transaction indicated that it had no intention of proceeding; and the way in which the VAR deal was (to quote the Claimants) *"unravelled"* is also contentious.

vii. VT35, in Q2 2011, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Abbott Laboratories ("Abbott"), a healthcare company, and the VAR licence fee was $8,611,011.07, plus $388,988.93 in respect of hosting and a first-year support and maintenance fee. A small direct deal was concluded between Autonomy and Abbott in July 2011 for a fee of $600,000; but the large end-user deal never eventuated. The Claimants alleged that Abbott's General Counsel had vetoed the transaction and that there was never any real prospect of an end-user sale.

viii. VT36, in Q2 2011, in respect of which the prospective end-user was Hyatt and the licence fee was $5,333,914 plus a first-year support fee of $266,696. Under the deal, DiscoverTech was to sub-licence to Dell, which in turn would sub-licence to Hyatt. Again, no end-user deal was concluded; again, the Claimants claimed that this was all but inevitable, since before the VAR transaction Dell/Hyatt had *"said no",* VT 36 was also one of the deals which the Claimants claimed was *"unravelled"* and the debt written off to protect DiscoverTech and honour the alleged side agreement or understanding.

(5) FileTek, which specialized in the archiving of structured data, was the developer of the StorHouse and Trusted Edge software. It entered into a single VAR transaction with Autonomy (VT18). The VAR licence fee was $10,000,000, plus a first-year support fee of $500,000, and the prospective end-user was the United States Department of Veterans Administration Authority ("USDVA"). USDVA were a repeat customer of Autonomy's and had been working with Autonomy on an email archiving system. In the event, no end-user deal was concluded with USDVA by either FileTek or Autonomy. FileTek paid Autonomy in tranches, including $500,000 on the same date that the VAR transaction was concluded, with further payments of $1.5m in March 2011, $1m in April 2011 $1.5m, in June 2011 and the remaining $6m in August 2011. However, the Claimants alleged that these payments were funded out of the funds paid by Autonomy to acquire StorHouse, which they further alleged was a 'reciprocal' transaction for which Autonomy had no need, as I elaborate later.

1964. The Claimants provided a useful summary of the quarterly distribution of the impugned VAR transactions in the "Relevant Period" (Q1 2009 to Q2 2011) and the licence revenue attributed to those transactions in aggregate in each quarter: I append that as Appendix 3.

Summary of the Claimants' overall approach in presenting the factual evidence

1965. There were six principal elements in the Claimants presentation of the factual evidence:

(1) Witness evidence (what the Claimants called *"direct evidence"*) on the key points as to (a) the alleged understanding or intention that the VAR should not be involved in any way in the end-user sale envisaged by the VAR transaction and (b) the alleged understanding that the VAR should not be required to pay from its own resources;

(2) Circumstantial evidence of a characteristic 'pattern' in the case of the impugned VAR transactions (other than the *'Collectability VARs'*), alleged to be commercially and rationally explicable only by reference to a shared understanding or intention that (a) only the seller (Autonomy) and not the VAR was to be involved in any way in the end-user sale envisaged by the VAR transaction and (b) the VAR should not be required to pay from its own resources, and only pay if and when paid by the end-user;

(3) Evidence as to the payment of MAFs in circumstances where (a) the VAR had had no involvement in marketing and (b) the VAR agreements made no contractual provision for the payment of MAFs;

(4) Evidence of efforts to suppress the truth as to the 'pattern', what the VARs had been given to understand, and the basis for the payment of MAFs, including alleged efforts to mislead both (a) Deloitte and (b) the the FRRP/FRC;

(5) Alleged inconsistencies in Dr Lynch's attempts to resist such inferences; and

(6) Evidence of the involvement and true objectives of both Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch and their *'guilty knowledge'*.

1966. I turn to discuss in turn each of these elements, and the Defendants' case in relation to them, in general terms.

"Direct evidence" of the alleged side agreements or understandings

1967. As to (1) in paragraph 1965 above, the Claimants relied on "direct" or witness evidence in relation to the central allegation that there were consensual side agreements in respect of each of the impugned VAR transactions (except the *'pure collectability VARs'*) which were such as to undermine *"the legal obligation to cough up"* (to adopt Mr Miles' phrase in his opening) and to reserve to Autonomy the exclusive role in negotiating and closing an end-user deal which would in fact be its real source of revenue.

"Direct evidence": the relevant witnesses

1968. The Claimants relied primarily on what they depicted in the case of each of the impugned VAR transactions (other than the *'pure Collectability VARs',* (VT9,

VT17, VT19, VT22 and VT29 where the issue is only as to the credit-worthiness of the VAR) as:

> *"a wealth of direct evidence to the effect that, at the time the VAR transaction was entered into, no-one – Autonomy included – intended that the VAR should be involved in any attempt to on-sell the software licence to the end-user."*

1969. The Claimants submitted that much of the witness evidence (and particularly that of Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco) to the effect that the VAR was often, indeed usually, told that it was not expected and not encouraged to participate in, or have anything at all to do with, Autonomy's sales efforts was unchallenged.

1970. The Claimants sought to rely on this also, as well as direct oral evidence, to support what they presented as the second limb of their case, which was that it was orally agreed or understood, and in any event undoubtedly intended between Autonomy and the VAR, that Autonomy would not require the VAR to pay the licence fee from its own resources if no end-user deal eventuated.

1971. The order of these points is noteworthy. Both experts regarded the primary question in relation to revenue recognition under IAS 18.14 as being whether the seller (Autonomy) had transferred to the buyer (the relevant VAR) *"the significant risks and rewards of ownership of the goods"* (IAS 18.14(a)). They regarded the further criterion in IAS 18.14(b), that the seller should have retained *"neither continuing managerial involvement to the degree usually associated with ownership nor effective control over the goods sold",* as being a subsidiary matter which was almost invariably determined by the answer to the first question. However, the Claimants reversed that sequence in their presentation of the evidence. The Claimants also submitted that a finding that it was never intended that the VAR, but only Autonomy, should make any attempt to on-sell the goods to the end-user, would *"by itself be sufficient to make good the Claimants' case that no revenue should have been recognised at the point of sale to the VAR."*

1972. The Claimants described the further finding that they sought, that it was orally agreed between Autonomy and the VAR that Autonomy would not require the VAR to pay the licence fee from its own resources, as *"more controversial as between the parties"*. But they submitted that the direct evidence was in this context also *"compelling"*.

Overview of the witness evidence put forward by the Claimants

1973. The witnesses who gave oral evidence in relation to one or more of the impugned VAR sales were:

    (1) As the person said to have reached on behalf of Autonomy the side agreements or understandings with the VARs: Mr Egan (Autonomy), who gave evidence by witness statement, on which he was cross-examined by video-link;

(2) On behalf of various VARs: Mr Baiocco (Capax Discovery) and Mr Szukalski (FileTek), both of whom were cross-examined at the hearing on their respective witness statements; and

(3) As regards the information provided to and the understanding of Deloitte: Mr Welham of Deloitte (no one else from Deloitte gave evidence at this trial).

1974. In addition, the Claimants relied on:

(1) The evidence of Mr Loomis of FileTek in the US criminal trial, introduced by the Claimants under a hearsay notice;

(2) The evidence of Mr Steve Truitt of MicroTech in the US criminal trial and in civil proceedings brought by MicroTech against Autonomy in the US (the "MicroTech litigation") introduced by the Claimants under a hearsay notice;

(3) The evidence of Mr Tomas Esterrich (MicroTech's CFO) in the MicroTech litigation in the US, also introduced by the Claimants by hearsay notice; and

(4) The evidence of Mr David Truitt of DiscoverTech and MicroLink in the US criminal trial, and in the MicroTech litigation, likewise introduced by the Claimants by hearsay notice in the same way.

1975. Both the Claimants and the Defendants in their written closings submissions provided first, a general overview of the witness evidence (both oral and hearsay), before thereafter describing in more detail the series of impugned VAR transactions and the evidence of the actors in relation to them. I adopt the same approach below.

Overview of Mr Egan's evidence as to what he told the VARs in every impugned VAR transaction

1976. Mr Egan was presented as the Claimants' main witness on this aspect of their case and his evidence covered most of the impugned VAR transactions.

1977. I have made an assessment above (see paragraph 426(5) to 426(7) above) of Mr Egan's reliability as a witness, and explained why I consider that he was in a difficult predicament: having entered into a Deferred Prosecution Agreement ("DPA") with the US DoJ) which committed him to prescribed evidence, honed after numerous interviews with the US DoJ, HP's lawyers and his own, his freedom depended on adherence to it; he was now being cross-examined in these proceedings, contrary to his expectation, but on video-link since he refused to attend in person; and he could not be required to attend in person, being "beyond the seas". No doubt his oath weighed with him; but whilst it was at least unlikely that he could be subjected to proceedings here for perjury, departure from his script brought the real prospect of losing his freedom in the USA.

1978. In his closing argument, Mr Miles remarked of his evidence:

> *"... The impression one gets – because he was reasonably candid a good deal of the time in cross examination –... is that this statement has been lawyered up and put in front of him and he was prepared to sign it because he was under the impression that he would not have to give evidence."*

1979. I broadly agree with this assessment. Thus, for example, although Mr Egan gave the impression in his witness statement made in September 2018 that he could remember quite clearly what had happened in the reseller deals in which he was principally involved, a rather different picture emerged from his oral testimony given by video link. Under cross-examination it emerged that he could remember very little about the details of individual deals. Similarly, in the case of the MicroTech deals and the ATIC deal, it became clear that his witness statement was comprised of an orderly recollection of events carefully crafted by his lawyers which he could not in reality support from his own recollection.

1980. Further, whereas in his witness statement the impression given was of frequent contact both with Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain at Autonomy and Messrs Steve and Dave Truitt, when cross-examined he had to accept that at least as regards Dr Lynch and Mr Steve Truitt his contacts were minimal:

(1) Mr Egan specifically corroborated Mr Steve Truitt's testimony to the effect that they had had only very occasional contact. He thought that one of the possible occasions was in the course of the Vatican deal, but even then Mr Egan did not feel *"comfortable saying that absolutely"*.

(2) He also confirmed that he mostly spoke to Mr David Truitt. However, Mr David Truitt was not the decision-maker: he was passing on information to Mr Steve Truitt and Mr Jimenez.

(3) As regards Dr Lynch, the impression he gave in his witness statement was of a line of direct report, with the natural inference that he had told Dr Lynch the various things that he knew; in cross examination he withdrew the very serious allegations he had made against Dr Lynch in that context and, for example, was unable to offer any real recollection or evidence at all against him in relation to the repeated allegations of "pre-textual emails". (Mr Miles made the inevitable submission in this connection that all this raised *"a real question mark over what on earth they were doing in his witness statement in the first place. It looks, I'm afraid to say this, very much like something that was inserted by lawyers."*)

1981. Nevertheless, in cross-examination, and as Mr Miles acknowledged, Mr Egan appeared to me to do his best to tell the truth, even if warily in respect of matters referred to in the statement he had agreed with the DoJ on which depended his freedom; and his depiction of the way he conducted Autonomy's VAR business in general terms struck me as reliable.

1982. In that regard, Mr Egan confirmed that he had said substantially the same thing to the relevant VAR in each transaction, in accordance with instructions given to him by Mr Hussain, whom he described as *"a very detail-oriented, hands-on manager"* who *"often tracked deals in great detail [and]… kept in touch with members of the sales force, directing which deals to pursue and what prices to negotiate"*. Thus, he repeatedly cross-referred to what he described as *"the guidance that Mr Hussain gave me as described in paragraphs 28 and 29 above"* (of his witness statement) as a shorthand for describing what he had said.

1983. In his witness statement, Mr Egan summarised in the following terms what he said Mr Hussain, as the person he identified as the architect of the impugned VAR transactions from whom he took his instructions (which was not challenged) , had told him he (Mr Egan) should tell the VARs:

> *"Mr Hussain defined the parameters of the practice; I implemented it. Mr Hussain ultimately determined which deals, and in what amounts, would be taken to a VAR, and which VAR to approach. In view of the significant financial cost of these deals (i.e. the fees paid to the VAR for taking them on), no one else (apart from Dr Lynch) had the authority to make that decision. Mr Hussain described the VAR deals to me as "acceleration deals"…*
>
> *Mr Hussain gave me specific instructions to follow so that these deals would be accepted by Autonomy's auditors (Deloitte)…*
>
> *Mr Hussain provided guidance to me regarding what was, and was not, acceptable to communicate in my conversations with VARs. He laid out explicit rules about what could be offered as incentive to the VARs, what was required of the VARs, and what could not be part of any deal. He instructed me to tell the VAR that in order for Autonomy to be able to recognise revenue, the VAR would have to sign a document that stated a binding obligation to pay for the software, that Autonomy would deliver the software to the VAR before the end of the quarter, and that there had to be sufficient evidence that the VAR could pay for the software regardless of whether a sale was made to the end-user. He also emphasized that it was vital that the VAR confirm to Deloitte that the VAR owed the money to Autonomy and intended to pay. I was also instructed by Mr Hussain to say, and did say, to the VAR orally that Autonomy would continue its efforts to sell to the end-user; often that the VAR was not expected to participate in those sale efforts; and, importantly, that Autonomy would do everything in its power to help ensure that the VAR would not be left "holding the bag". On some occasions, Autonomy completed the sale to the end-user and caused the end-user to pay the VAR, which, in turn, allowed the VAR to pay Autonomy. On other occasions, if the end-user paid Autonomy directly, the VAR was relieved of its payment obligation.*
>
> …

> *At Mr Hussain's direction, I assured the VARs that if Autonomy was ultimately unable to close a deal with an end-user, there were various options that Autonomy had to "fix" the situation for the VAR so that it would not end up having to pay for the software from its own resources. Over time, this happened and Mr Hussain came up with a number of different ways of handling this, including buying products that Autonomy did not need from the VARs to offset losses from deals that we did not manage to sell through to the end-users. Mr Hussain made it clear that our assurances about the VAR not being left holding the bag could not be put in writing. We realized, of course, that if we left the VAR "holding the bag," we would be unable to do future transactions with that VAR as it would probably ruin the relationship."*

1984. However, Mr Egan gave little or no detail of any actual occasion, or exchange with the VARs, at which he allegedly communicated the assurances referred to above in accordance with Mr Hussain's instructions. He simply asserted that these were the assurances always given; and in the case of each transaction, he referred back to the general description as his evidence of the side agreement relied on.

1985. As to the nature, rationale and perceived disruption of these arrangements, Mr Egan's evidence in his witness statement was as follows:

> *"The incentive for the VAR to take the license [sic] in order to help Autonomy reach its revenue goal for the quarter was that the VAR would be paid a "margin" or fee on the deal, which, typically, was 10% of the deal price. For its part the VAR had to sign a purchase order relating to individual deals and, if asked, to confirm to Deloitte that the VAR remained responsible to Autonomy to pay for the deal, and that there were no side letters or other agreements in place between Autonomy and the VAR. Therefore, although referred to as "at risk" deals (because no deal had yet been concluded with the end-user), the VAR was not truly at risk of incurring any loss on the transaction given our pledge that Autonomy would do everything in its power to help ensure that the VAR would not be left holding the bag. I felt very personally obligated to make sure that the VAR would be made whole on the purchase. Any concern the VAR might have had at the outset about the possibility of Autonomy reneging on its pledge would have been dispelled over time by our actual practice of never in fact allowing a VAR to suffer a loss.*
>
> *On several occasions, no sale was able to be made to the prospective end-user. I believe that each time this occurred, we found a "fix" for the deal so that the VAR did not have to pay for the software with its own funds…*
>
> *The deals with the VARs were almost always entered into right at the end of each quarter, after Mr Hussain had determined that a sale to a particular end-user could not be completed in that quarter and when he was able to determine the size of the gap between that quarter's*

revenue target and the sales that had been made, or would be made to non-VAR customers before the end of the quarter. In my opinion, the practical effect of VAR deals of this type was to accelerate into the current quarter revenue that would otherwise have been recognised in a later quarter, assuming that a sale to the end-user could be made in a later quarter. This helped Autonomy to meet its revenue target for the current quarter. However, the problem this created for me was that, in the following quarter, I had to spend time and effort attempting to close the end-user transaction so that the VAR would be protected. I also had to make all of the sales in the following quarter that we otherwise needed in order to meet the following quarter's sales goal. In concept, we were borrowing revenue from a future quarter to achieve the revenue goal in the current quarter. However, in the following quarter, we had to close end-user deals just to enable the VAR to "pay back" the "debt" incurred in the prior quarter.

This practice started on a relatively small scale involving a small number of end-user deals that were very likely to close in the near future. Over time, the number and size of the deals increased, and, in certain cases, the probability that the end-user deal would be completed decreased. The hole in which we started each new quarter – the implied obligation to find a way to complete the old end-user deals (or find some other solution) – grew larger and larger. At the same time, the revenue targets that had to be satisfied with new deals continued to increase. The ever-increasing revenue targets, in turn, created the need for yet more transactions of the type that I have just described and other revenue-generating tactics that I will describe…In my view, this pattern ultimately became unsustainable."

1986. Mr Rabinowitz submitted that important parts of Mr Egan's witness statement were not challenged in cross-examination. He instanced especially Mr Egan's evidence that, at Mr Hussain's direction, he often told the VAR that the VAR was not expected to participate in Autonomy's sales efforts. He also referred to and relied on Mr Egan's elaboration of his evidence in relation to particular VAR deals with favoured VARs following the prescribed 'pattern', including especially:

(1) Mr Egan's reference to a series of impugned VAR transactions with MicroLink which Mr Egan described as in each case being a "paper transaction", in which MicroLink was simply required to submit a purchase order and only Autonomy was to be involved in pursuing and closing a sale to the end-user, whom Mr Egan described as Autonomy's "true customer";

(2) Mr Egan's evidence that in a VAR deal with Capax Discovery in anticipation of an end-user deal with Kraft (VT3), again all Capax Discovery had to do in return for a MAF of 10% was to issue a purchase order, sit back whilst Autonomy continued its efforts to close a deal with Kraft, and then charge a 10% fee;

(3) Mr Egan's evidence that at the end of Q4 2009 he entered into a number of supposedly "at risk" deals with MicroTech (VT5, VT6, VT7 and VT8) *"to get the revenue associated with the corresponding prospective end-user deals into the fourth quarter of 2009"* in which MicroTech would be paid a fee for playing no active part in any negotiations with the end-user;

(4) Mr Egan's evidence that the like 'pattern' was followed in the deal on 31 December 2010 with DiscoverTech in respect of a proposed end-user deal with BofA (VT23/24), in which again DiscoverTech was simply required, for its fee, to sit back whilst Autonomy sought to close the deal directly.

1987. The basis for Mr Rabinowitz's submission that much of Mr Egan's evidence was not challenged is that he was not separately cross-examined on each of these transactions. However, Mr Egan confirmed in cross-examination that he said the same kind of thing to each of the VARs with whom he negotiated deals, though of course there would be different amounts of money, differences in software and license or other user terms, and different information as to the state of play with the prospective end-user, according to the particular facts.

1988. I was therefore invited by Mr Miles to treat his explanation as applicable to all the impugned VAR deals (with appropriate variation according to the circumstances) and his references to specific VAR transactions as exemplars. On that basis, Mr Miles submitted that his cross-examination of Mr Egan was therefore appropriately confined to testing the assertion in respect of one transaction and treating that as a challenge to all other transactions where the same basic allegation was made that the impugned VAR transaction in question was (a) a paper exercise in which the VAR would (b) subscribe to an agreement for the sake of form but (c) take no part in the negotiation or closing of any end-user transaction and would (d) notionally, but not actually, take on risk. I accept that: Mr Egan had confirmed that he had given like assurances in every case, and a challenge to one was a challenge to all.

1989. The focus of that cross-examination was on whether any of the assurances, if given, were intended to affect the legal obligation and indebtedness of the VAR. As to that, as Mr Miles emphasised in his closing submissions, Mr Egan considered that in every case the VAR in question was fully on risk, and nothing he said to individual VARs affected this. But this was addressing the legal position, which the Claimants did not dispute. It did not address what the parties intended would actually be their economic relationship, which was the focus of the Claimants' case.

1990. In that context, Mr Egan's evidence was to the effect that he did indeed give assurances to the VAR that Autonomy would do its best to rescue them if the anticipated end-user deal failed, and indicated that Autonomy would forbear from enforcing the payment obligation in the meantime. In making clear that their legal risk remained, and that there was no binding commitment on Autonomy's part except as set out in the contract, the impression of the sub-text was unmistakeably that whilst the legal position had to be emphasised, of

course, and lip-service must be seen to be paid, the reality was that Autonomy needed the deal and the VAR wanted the immediate business and the prospect of more. As the saying goes, 'a nod's as good as a wink to a blind horse'. It seems to me to be clear that all those concerned understood, and the VARs proceeded on the basis, that the economic realities would have little to do with the definition of their nominal legal relationship, and Autonomy would not leave the VAR to shoulder any uncovered liability for acting in its nominal role.

1991. Thus, when cross-examined, Mr Egan elaborated on what he meant with particular reference to the FileTek/USDVA transaction (VT18) in Q3 2010 , as follows:

> *"Q. Is this the position: that you made clear to FileTek that they would be on risk but that Autonomy would do what it could to make sure that in the end they would get paid?*
>
> *A. They would be fully at risk but that we would use every effort to backfill that deal if for some reason that deal did not happen and not leave them holding the bag effectively.*
>
> *Q. That idea of not leaving them holding the bag, that didn't affect, as you understood it from your discussion, the legal obligation on FileTek to pay even if the end-user deal was not done?*
>
> *A. No, 100% not. You know, there's more detail to that in that I would let them know that they were signing up to buy this software, that they were buying it non-refundably, no recourse to not pay, and Autonomy was not bound to do what it would intend to do if it went poorly, but that it would be our intent and that we would use every effort to backfill. Nobody wants to just burn a partner and leave them in the dust. The point of this was to create channels of revenue that were forward-looking, that they would be incentivised and go out and sell the software other times.*
>
> *Q. And they always understood that although you were giving that statement of intention, that wasn't in any way legally binding?*
>
> *A. I made it clear that it was intent but that if, you know, Mike or Sushovan decided that they didn't want to do that, they would absolutely be nothing I could do about it and I was telling them that if we were acquired or if there was any other change, I describe the fact that it was our intent if they think the relationship will work that way then that's something that they'd consider.*
>
> *Q. The whole idea behind this was that risk had to pass in order to get revenue recognition, wasn't it?*
>
> *A. I actually didn't understand that, that that was required for revenue recognition, but I understood that it was an absolute requirement of Sushovan's that I impart the risk and that it be absolute."*

1992. I understood that this was intended as an exemplar and an explanation of the position across the impugned VAR transactions as Mr Egan perceived it: and I consider the challenge to the exemplar to have been a challenge to all. So I do not consider that the challenge failed for want of being put in respect of every transaction; it failed because Mr Egan's answers made clear the formulaic nature of the emphasis on the legal position.

1993. Mr Miles also relied especially on two passages of evidence given in the course of Mr Egan's re-examination by Mr Rabinowitz as being *"really crucial evidence"*:

(1) The first was this:

> *"Q. Mr Egan, can I ask you to explain further what you meant by "backfilling" and ensuring that the VAR was "not left holding the bag"?*
>
> A. *When I used the term "backfilling" what I was referring to was if the deal that the reseller had taken at risk somehow were not to be able to be closed, and Autonomy needed to make sure that the reseller wasn't – not receiving any revenue and making those payments to Autonomy, I was going to take other deals from Autonomy's forward-looking pipeline and then give them to that reseller to backfill that amount, in other words basically substitute another deal for it."*

(2) The second was this: when asked whether Mr Egan had discussed with the VAR whether, if the specified end-user dealer failed to eventuate, the VAR would be expected to make payment to Autonomy during the period before Autonomy had found a way to backfill the deal, Mr Egan answered:

> "*Effectively, yes, they had to make their payments in line with payment terms they'd committed to, independent of the time it took to decide whether to backfill, the time it took to partially backfill, independently".*

1994. Mr Miles relied on this evidence for two points. First, he submitted that what Mr Egan had said amounted simply to an assurance that he would see what Autonomy could do to find another end-user in the event that the first end-user dropped out. Secondly, and a point which Mr Miles submitted was critical, Mr Egan made clear that in the meantime the VAR would still be *"on the hook"* to pay, or in another expression Mr Egan often used, left *"holding the bag"* pending identification and substitution of a 'backfill" deal. Mr Miles submitted that this evidence:

> *"undermines their contention that there was any arrangement that the resellers would not have to pay or would not have to pay until they were paid. On the contrary, this is Egan saying that it was expressly*

> *discussed that they would have to pay even while they were looking for another end-user"*.

1995. Mr Miles also made the more general point that although this passage referred to the VAR deal between Autonomy and FileTek, Mr Egan had earlier confirmed that both the assurances he gave and his perception of their intent and consequences were the same in each of the other deals also. As Mr Miles summarised it (after a forensic swipe that *"the Claimants themselves are guilty here of ignoring the substance"*) this evidence was that:

> *"what Mr Egan was emphasising to them was that the reseller was indebted to Autonomy whatever happened with the end-user."*

1996. Mr Miles went on to suggest that this not merely challenged, but disposed of, any notion of some unilateral intention on the part of Autonomy that neither risk nor managerial control should effectively pass, since Mr Egan was the only person supposed to have generated that intention.

1997. The Claimants sought to reply to these points by presenting Mr Egan's answers as simply reiterating the distinction, on which they relied, between the legal position (in respect of which the Claimants accept legal enforceability) and the practical reality, which they alleged to be what they described as his:

> *"unchallenged evidence that he assured the VARs that Autonomy's intention was not to leave the VAR holding the bag."*

1998. I am entirely persuaded that Mr Egan gave these assurances, and that he did so with the sanction, and indeed on the instructions, of Mr Hussain. I cannot accept Mr Miles' submission that Mr Egan's oral evidence critically affected his presentation of this in his witness statement. In my view, nothing that Mr Egan said in cross-examination or re-examination substantially qualified or undid the evidence in his witness statement that I have quoted at some length in paragraphs 1983 to 1985 above. Taken in the round, the gist of his oral evidence was to reiterate that the relationship with the VAR operated at two levels: what the contract provided and how the parties in fact intended to and did in fact conduct their relationship. For as much as Mr Egan stressed to the VAR that it was on the legal hook, as Mr Hussain had insisted he should, he also made clear that Autonomy would do *"everything in its power to help ensure that the VAR would not be left holding the bag."* Nothing that Mr Egan said contradicted the reality that neither party expected the VAR to have any role, or to carry any real risk, or to gain any reward from any resale (except a MAF which the contract made no provision for).

Overview of Mr David Truitt's evidence as to MicroLink's role in impugned VAR deals

1999. As explained in paragraph 1963(1) above, none of the many VAR deals between Autonomy and MicroLink entered into prior to the Relevant Period has been impugned in these proceedings. At one time (in October 2018), the Claimants confirmed that they were abandoning their allegation that there was a side-agreement in relation to the MicroLink transactions in the Relevant Period. That concession was then withdrawn a month later; yet Mr Welham's witness statement records that he was asked to assume that in only one of the six MicroLink VAR deals with Autonomy in Q2 2009 was there a side-agreement; and of the three impugned MicroLink deals in Q3 2009, Mr Welham was again asked to assume a side-agreement in relation to only one of them. That is the basis of the Defendants' submission that the Claimants' case in relation to MicroLink has been in flux as regards the basis on which they seek to impugn the MicroLink VAR transactions.

2000. Mr David Truitt, a practiced prosecution witness who gave evidence at the US criminal trial, as well as in the MicroTech litigation, accepted in his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings that Autonomy's objective in its VAR sales to MicroLink was to *"take on these end-of-quarter deals so that Autonomy could recognize revenue on those deals in whatever was the then current quarter, the quarter that was about to end."* However, he consistently made clear in both sets of proceedings that MicroLink acquired full ownership and full control of the software under the VAR transactions and was unequivocally *"at risk"*. He denied that there was any side-agreement or understanding such as to undermine revenue recognition.

2001. Though cautioning as to his reliability, the Defendants cited the following three passages in support of their contention that Mr David Truitt's evidence in earlier US proceedings undermined rather than supported the Claimants' case:

(1) In his examination-in-chief in the US criminal proceedings, Mr David Truitt confirmed that MicroLink's relationship with Autonomy was an *"at risk scenario"* such that he wanted to make sure that the deal with the end-user would close quickly:

> *"Q. What did you mean by "end-of-quarter scenarios"?*
>
> *A. "End of quarter" for me would mean deals that Autonomy had been working on their own, that they would -- they'd be similar, you know, to the one I just described in the sense that they were supposed to be far down the line in the sales process, and they would ask whether we would be interested in issuing orders for those -- for those scenarios.*
>
> *So they would present a -- you know, a particular opportunity, they would talk to us about what it was, where it was in the sales cycle, and then we would decide whether to issue an order or not.*

Q. The $200,000 order that you described that started this end-of-quarter scenario, why did you call the customer about that?

A. I wanted to make sure that it was going to indeed close quickly and that, you know, the agreement with Autonomy on those deals was -- you know, once you issue the order, it's your order. So there was, you know, an at-risk scenario. So, you know, I didn't know Mr. Cronin very long at that point and wanted to make sure that what he was telling me was correct. I didn't want to be out 200,000."

(2) Mr David Truitt gave similar evidence in relation to MicroLink in the US MicroTech litigation. This was marked up as hearsay by the Claimants and (as the Defendants pointed out) must be taken to represent their evidence:

"Q. And were there occasions when you did not collect from the customer?

A. Yes.

Q. Okay. What happened on those occasions?

A. On the occasions where the customer did not buy the software, we would try to take that software and sell it to another customer, and sometimes we were effective at doing that. You know, we had -- we had to figure out a way effectively to cover -- we would call these transactions at-risk transactions, which meant to us that we took them and we had to figure out if it went badly, you know, what to do."

(3) In another passage from his evidence in the US criminal proceedings, this time taken from his cross-examination, Mr David Truitt gave similar evidence against Mr Hussain, explaining what he meant by an "at risk" transaction (albeit in relation to DiscoverTech). He confirmed that DiscoverTech was at risk if the end-user deal did not close.

2002. The difficulty with this evidence is that (a) according to Mr Egan, whose evidence on this point was not challenged, it was Autonomy, and not MicroLink, which in the transactions in the Relevant Period to which it was a

party invariably and exclusively dealt with the end-user to seek to conclude the indicated end-user transaction; (b) no instance was provided of MicroLink seeking to sell on the software it had acquired under license; and (c) no evidence was provided of MicroLink ever suffering a loss on any of these deals: on the contrary, the evidence adduced showed that its indebtedness (which it had no substantial resources to enable it to meet) was always resolved by some form of transaction with Autonomy[266], and ultimately by Autonomy acquiring MicroLink itself and its debts being 'forgiven' (with the result that MicroLink's principal relevance is in the context of the Claimants' claims in respect of the alleged 'reciprocal' VAR transactions)[267].

2003. Mr David Truitt did not give evidence before me. I have only the transcripts of his evidence in the US in this regard. However, Mr David Truitt's depiction of MicroLink being substantially at risk in respect of its legal indebtedness, and of taking control and active steps in respect of the licensed software it had acquired, does not fit with the evidence before me. He spoke of MicroLink's risk and managerial control: but there is no evidence that he thought of this as defining the parties' understanding of their true commercial relationship.

2004. Furthermore, Mr Matt Stephan testified at the US criminal trial that, following Autonomy's acquisition of MicroLink, he was asked to look at MicroLink's financial records and found that the VAR transactions between Autonomy and MicroLink were not recorded in MicroLink's own books: they were "*just not in the books at all*":

> *"Q. When you looked at the financial records at MicroLink, was there anything that caused you concern?*
>
> *A. Yeah. They did not have on their books an equal and opposite amount of accounts payable due to Autonomy that Autonomy had in their books as owed to them, if that makes sense.*
>
> *Q. All right. Can you describe that for us? I mean, what were you seeing and what were your concerns?*
>
> *A. I think —— I can't recall the figures, but Autonomy was owed over $10 million by MicroLink at that point and MicroLink had a much, much smaller balance on their books as owing to Autonomy.*
>
> *Q. Was that because they were listing smaller figures for the deals?*

[266] The Claimants' case being that *"the only money ever paid by MicroLink in respect of the 11 [impugned VAR] transactions was money that Autonomy had channelled to MicroLink for that purpose."* These alleged 'reciprocal' VAR transactions included the purchase by Autonomy of MicroLink's 'Search Analysis Tool' ("SAT") and AIS software for the sum of $9.3 million, for which the Claimants alleged Autonomy had no need.

[267] The Defendants have referred me to evidence that, prior to being acquired by Autonomy (on 4 January 2010), (a) MicroLink was a large reseller of Autonomy products and indeed was its "Global Partner of the Year" in 2007; (b) MicroLink's Q3 2009 purchase (VT1) was an addendum to an earlier software licence agreement it had entered into with Autonomy in March 2007; and (c) MicroLink's extensive work with both Autonomy and Microsoft products and customers made it well placed to develop its own software tools to enhance Microsoft's Sharepoint customers' use of Autonomy products using its AIS (Autonomy Integration Suite for SharePoint) product. That seems to me, however, to make more remarkable the fact that in the impugned VAR transactions MicroLink played a 'placeholder' role.

A. No. The deals —— the deals were just not on the books.

Q. So debts ——

A. A number of the deals — sorry. A number of the big deals that we'd signed in recent quarters were just not in the books at all.

Q. So debts to Autonomy by MicroLink were not reflected in MicroLink's books?

A. That's correct.

Q. So why did this cause you concern?

A. It indicated to me that despite signing audit confirmation letters and different things about not having any side agreements in place, it suggested that from MicroLink's perspective, they were never going to have to pay that money if they didn't get paid or if they didn't close the deal with the end-user."

Overview of Mr Baiocco's evidence as to Capax Discovery's role in impugned VAR deals

2005. Mr Egan's opposite number in the 10 impugned VAR transactions between Autonomy and Capax Discovery (see paragraph 1963(2) above) was Mr Baiocco. Mr Baiocco was managing partner of both Capax Global and Capax Discovery and the central figure in the impugned VAR transactions in which the latter was a party.

2006. I have made an assessment above (see paragraphs 426(7) and footnote 55 above) of Mr Baiocco's reliability. He was another practised witness, having met with HP's lawyers three or four times in 2013 and with US prosecutors six or so times before the Grand Jury proceedings prior to the US criminal trial. He also gave evidence to the Grand Jury and in the US criminal trial. He has had throughout the benefit of his own lawyer, paid for by HP. Parts of his evidence relating to the impugned VAR transactions struck me as the product of careful forensic lawyering: when cross-examined, some parts of his witness statement appeared unfamiliar to him; and his voice in cross-examination was a contrast with the words on the pages of his witness statement.

2007. Like Mr Egan's evidence, the format of Mr Baiocco's witness statement was to set out matters of general application and then deal more particularly with the various transactions individually. I address general matters at this stage.

2008. The Claimants portrayed Mr Baiocco's evidence as being to similar effect as, and thus complementary to, Mr Egan's, but looked at from the other side of the bargain between Autonomy and the VAR.

2009. Again, like Mr Egan, Mr Baiocco paid lip service to the legal content of the VAR agreements made with Autonomy on behalf of Capax Discovery, and accepted that the VAR agreements were legally enforceable. But he sought to portray the risk of actual enforcement as attenuated, if not extinguished, by

assurances he stated he had received from Mr Egan, and the 'pattern' which Mr Baiocco expected or came to expect the transactions to follow. Mr Baiocco sought to capture this outlook in stating that the real risk, as he thought of it, was that *"Autonomy might not follow through on my handshake agreement with Mr Egan."*

2010. There was a marked contrast between the honed fluency and consistency of Mr Baiocco's witness statement and the contradictory and sometimes evasive evidence he gave when cross-examined.

2011. The gist and (to my mind) manufactured message and contrived tone of Mr Baiocco's witness statement is apparent from the following passages in it, which the Claimants, somewhat unrealistically, submitted were unchallenged:

> *"29. In around May or June 2009, Mr Egan asked me whether Capax would become a reseller for Autonomy. A value-added reseller, as that term is usually used, is a company that purchases a product from a manufacturer or supplier to which it adds features or services and then resells the package (usually to an end-user)as an integrated or completed solution. However, that was not the nature of the relationship we had with Autonomy. Instead, Mr Egan told me that Autonomy often faced the situation where it was very close to completing a sale to an end-user, which it was not able to conclude by the end of the quarter. Rather than Autonomy lowering the price to get the end-user to sign a contract for quarter end, Autonomy wished instead (a) to enter into an agreement with us at quarter end supposedly for on sale by us of the software in question to the end-user, and then (b) to continue to negotiate with the end-user and to close the deal with the end-user in the following quarter. Capax Discovery would receive a 10% fee.*
>
> *30. There were a number of significant features to these transactions:*
>
> *(a) First, I was usually approached by Autonomy (almost always Mr Egan) to enter into these VAR transactions right at the end of a quarter. As I understood it, Autonomy's primary objective was to close its deal with the end-user before the end of the quarter, thereby avoiding the 10% profit commission that it would pay us if we were involved. Thus, it appears that our participation was only requested where Autonomy failed to conclude a deal with the end-user. As a result, we were often approached by Autonomy at the very end of the quarter and the paperwork had to be rushed through before quarter end. All of the transactions that I describe in this statement, without exception, were entered into on the very last day of a quarter. I would only agree to enter into the transaction if I was assured that Autonomy was very close to concluding the deal with the end-user, as reflected in my email dated June 24, 2009 to Mr Sass, which made it plain that we would only consider taking transactions which Autonomy was "fairly confident" would close.*

(b) Second, although on paper Capax Discovery licensed the software from Autonomy, we did not pay for it upfront. The agreement with Mr Egan - again by way of a "handshake"- was that Capax Discovery would not be required to pay Autonomy until Autonomy closed the deal with the end-user and the end-user (i) paid Capax Discovery or (ii) Autonomy (in which case our debt under the VAR agreement would be forgiven), or (iii) Autonomy had otherwise put Capax Discovery in funds to make the payment. In actuality, in most cases, Autonomy either caused the end-user to pay Capax Discovery and we in turn then paid Autonomy, or if Autonomy failed to conclude a deal with the end-user or the end-user made its payment to Autonomy directly, Autonomy forgave Capax Discovery's payment obligations. As with the EDD arrangement, there was always a risk that Autonomy might not follow through on my handshake agreement with Mr Egan. Again, our use of Capax Discovery as the vehicle for these VAR transactions was designed to protect the rest of the Capax group from this risk.

(c) Third, there was never any price negotiation between Capax Discovery and Autonomy: instead, in each case, Autonomy prepared a purchase order for submission by Capax Discovery in a specified amount, for specific software that was, on paper, to be resold by Capax Discovery to an identified end-user. We then executed the purchase order as requested and returned it to Autonomy.

(d) Fourth, while Autonomy provided us with a key which could be used to access the licensed software from an Autonomy website, as far as I am aware we never actually retrieved the software because we had no need for it. We never were asked to deliver the software to the end-user.

(e) Fifth, the end-users were presented to us by Autonomy and we played no part in selecting or identifying them. The negotiation of the sale to the end-user (before we submitted our purchase order and after we submitted our purchase order) was handled exclusively by Autonomy, without any assistance or participation by us. In fact, Autonomy did not allow Capax Discovery to get involved in the discussions with the end-user. When an agreement was ultimately reached between Autonomy and the end-user, Capax Discovery played no part in bringing it about, or in negotiating or approving its terms. In most (but not all) cases, payment was made directly by the end-user to Autonomy rather than to Capax Discovery. Capax Discovery did not actually "resell" the product to the end-user."

2012. Like Mr Egan's, his witness statement presented an overall picture of the VAR agreements to which Capax Discovery was a party as being a paper record to show Autonomy's auditors *"which did not reflect our actual relationship with Autonomy",* which was in reality defined by a *"handshake"* and characterised as a matter of substance by the *"significant features"* identified.

2013. It was unclear from Mr Baiocco's witness statement how many of these *"significant features"* it was being suggested Mr Baiocco and Mr Egan had

agreed by such a *"handshake"* in advance. The impression sought to be created, I think, was that the features identified did reflect what had been agreed between them; or at least, that the substance of what the parties had in mind was reflected in the pattern of the transactions concerned. However, the carefully assembled *"significant features"* seemed to me to be far too precisely engineered and detailed to be comprehended in an informal exchange; and I am in little doubt that they reflected lawyers' analysis, honed over many years, after the event and after many interviews and two substantial trials, and not Mr Baiocco's recollection of anything agreed at the time. Indeed, in cross-examination Mr Baiocco accepted that the scope of any handshake agreement or assurances was far more limited, as I elaborate later.

2014. Another carefully constructed passage in Mr Baiocco's witness statement addressed the fact that Mr Baiocco signed a series of audit confirmation letters which (he confirmed) he knew were sent to Deloitte. Both in his witness statement and under cross-examination, Mr Baiocco sought to portray these, at least in his understanding, as simply confirming *"Capax Discovery's existing payment obligations to Autonomy."* He said that he had been told by Mr Egan that Capax Discovery had to sign them to *"let the auditors know that we owed them, that the bill – the receivables on there were proper"* (as he elaborated when cross-examined). This was an obvious effort to confine the effect of the signed confirmation letters to an acknowledgement of legal indebtedness under the VAR agreements, which Mr Baiocco always accepted. However, the audit confirmation letters were not so confined. In addition, as previously noted, each such letter formally represented that there were *"no side letters or other agreements in respect of the subject matter of this request"* and later versions included a further representation that Autonomy *"retains no continuing managerial involvement in the delivery of this product or service, other than stipulated in the licence agreement."* As I also elaborate later, even Mr Baiocco, who was not a man to appear abashed, looked uncomfortable in resorting to saying that he had not spotted or understood this at the time.

2015. Mr Baiocco did not mention in his witness statement the *"entire agreement"* provisions which were contained in every version of the Capax Discovery VAR agreements. When cross examined, he initially accepted both that such a provision was included in the VAR agreements and, more generally, that such a provision was standard in software agreements. Indeed, he was taken to Capax Discovery's own standard terms in its own contracts which contained a similar provision, which did not surprise him. However, when later in his cross-examination, Mr Baiocco was asked whether he accepted that the reason for such terms was that there was *"always a risk that a salesman might try to say something to get a deal",* he said that he could not really answer that because he did not *"understand this language enough to speak anything to it"*.

2016. His evidence under cross-examination when shown the numerous audit confirmation letters he had signed and pressed on their apparent inconsistency with the side agreements he asserted is exemplified by the following passage:

> *"Q. What you were doing was confirming that these amounts were due and owing, that there were no side agreements and that Autonomy*

retains no continued managerial involvement in the delivery of the product?

A. What I was confirming when I signed those was that I owed the money, because they told me that these were about owing the money, so I signed that knowing I owed the money. I never looked or saw the side letter agreement and as far as the continuing managerial involvement, that was not on the first couple of them, I believe that was something that was added down the road. So I did not knowingly sign those knowing that there was a –

Q. How do you know those words were added down the road?

A. Pardon?

Q. How do you know those words were added down the road?

A. Nine years of lawyers.

Q. Right, sitting with too many lawyers?

A. Yes.

Q. So they pointed it out to you.

You were signing this, it's on the very page that you were signing and it said that there were no side letters or other agreements in respect of the subject matter, and that was true as you understood it, wasn't it?

A. It was true to me that we owed the money. I did not recognise that sentence when I signed these.

Q. Right. Did you think there were side letters or other agreements?

A. I mean, it depends how you define "side agreement", but –

Q. All right, how do you – I'm just asking you your understanding –

A. I personally do not

Q. You do not and you did not at the time?

A. I did not at the time but it's irrelevant because I did not see that at the time.

Q. Well, that's your evidence. It's on the same page, I suggest you did see it, but that's what you say.

A. You don't know that.

Q. But I'm asking you now about what you believed at the time. You didn't think there were any side agreements or other agreements that affected the debt, did you?

A. If you consider they were going to swap out the deals, a side agreement, then there was a side agreement, I didn't sign that with that in mind because I didn't see it.

Q. When you say, if you consider they were going to swap out the deals, that's going back to what you said before, that Mr Egan said to you, "We'll do what we can to try and get you another deal"?

A. Correct.

Q. Nothing more than that? That's all he said?

A. If it fell through, we'll get another deal, yes, we'll swap out the deal, correct?

Q. But you never thought that what he was saying was legally binding, did you? You never thought that what he was saying about swapping out the deal was legally binding?

A. Correct.

I mean, I guess unless oral promises are legally binding. I'm not a lawyer.

Q. Well, let me ask you about that. Did you or did you not think that whatever he said about swapping out the deal was legally binding?

A. I can't really answer that with knowledge. I don't know if –

Q, What did you believe?

A. *I believed probably not."*

2017. The contrast between this evidence under cross-examination and the bald assertion in his witness statement, crafted after *"nine years of lawyers"*, that the *"confirmations were false"* is stark. Mr Rabinowitz interceded in the course of cross-examination to suggest that the assertion as to the confirmations' falsity related only to the part relating to management involvement in the delivery of the goods; but had quickly to withdraw the suggestion and accept that the reference was to both aspects of the confirmations provided.

2018. As to Capax Discovery's obligation to pay, Mr Baiocco's evidence as I understood him was that:

(1) The deals were usually made right at the end of a quarter; this was not unusual in the sector but amongst its consequences was that there was

never any price negotiation between Capax Discovery and Autonomy: the price was that which Autonomy had established for the sale to its proposed end-user;

(2) Capax Discovery was, in terms of the law, 'on the hook' to make payment in full; but neither party ever intended or expected payment by Capax Discovery unless and until the end-user deal was closed, whereupon the amounts paid would be applied in discharge of the VAR.

(3) If no end-user deal eventuated Autonomy would devise some way of extracting Capax Discovery from the 'hook': at one and the same time as emphasising Capax Discovery's legal obligation, Mr Egan always assured Mr Baiocco that Autonomy would do everything it could to ensure that Capax Discovery was not left exposed.

(4) A particular way of negating this exposure was specifically discussed: this was that Autonomy would do its best to *"swap out"* any deal which failed to result in an end-user transaction which would provide the funds to satisfy the obligation. But Mr Baiocco's evidence left me in no doubt that the assurance was general and the intention clear.

2019. As to the other legal and economic effects of the VAR transactions as between Autonomy and Capax Discovery, and in particular, as to how it was intended the parties to the VAR sales should conduct themselves after the date of sale, Mr Baiocco's evidence was:

(1) He believed that delivery of the software licensed was always made electronically on execution of the VAR sale: this was effective delivery;

(2) However, he was never involved in that process, and (so far as he was aware) no-one at Capax Discovery ever actually retrieved the software, *"because we had no need for it. We never were asked to deliver the software to the end-user."*

(3) Although the contract did not reserve to Autonomy any contractual right to do so, in practice the parties intended that Autonomy should be in actual and exclusive control of the onward sales process. The following passage from Mr Baiocco's cross-examination demonstrates this:

> *"Q. Then the next point is about the identification of the end-users. Now, you say that Autonomy didn't allow Capax to get involved in discussions with the end-user. Who do you say said that? Mr Egan?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. Now, can we just consider that for a minute. He didn't actually say you couldn't, did he? He wasn't telling you, you couldn't?*

A. I think on occasions I asked -- because we may have had some people we knew at the end-user clients, maybe not in this specific area, and they were like, basically, "No, stay out of it".

Q. Okay, so that's Mr Egan saying that?

A. Yes."

(4) If the end-user sale proceeded, Autonomy would pay Capax Discovery a 10% fee (a MAF). Mr Egan regarded this as a fee for taking on risk, analogous to a guarantee fee. The letters relating to the MAFs stated that the products would be sold to Capax Discovery at a 10% discount and that Capax Discovery would get its 'fee' from the full price on onward sale. But in fact Capax Discovery never did actually "resell" to the end-user. Autonomy simply paid Capax Discovery the 10%. Mr Baiocco was not interested in and never read the letters relating to the MAFs: he was only interested in getting the fee.

(5) Capax Discovery never had dealings with the end-user prior to the sale. Part of the commercial rationale from its point of view was that it would have the opportunity to offer the end-user professional services thereafter: but this happened in only two sales (the TXU and FSA deals).

The Goldberg Segalla letter

2020. In addressing Mr Baiocco's evidence, and in seeking to contradict the Claimants' contention that it demonstrated that in economic substance, Capax Discovery took on neither any real risk nor any managerial responsibility as regards the software it had contractually acquired, Mr Miles drew repeatedly from a letter dated 1st November 2013 ("the Goldberg Segalla letter"). This letter was written on behalf of Capax Discovery's holding company, Capax Global LLC by its lawyers, Goldberg Segalla LLP to the US Department of the Air Force ("USDAF").

2021. The Goldberg Segalla letter was signed by Mr Baiocco's present lawyer, Mr Christopher Belter ("Mr Belter"), who was paid by HP and accompanied him at the hearing. The letter was stated to be *"in response to the show cause letter dated September 6, 2013 inviting Capax Global LLC ("Capax") to respond to allegations concerning accounting improprieties involving Autonomy"* in respect (in particular) of a *"government end-user business opportunity…brought to Capax in late December 2010".*

2022. The avowed purpose of the Goldberg Segalla letter was stated to be *"to show that at all relevant times Capax and its subsidiaries have been responsible contractors and should not be proposed for debarment from Government contracting."* To that end, the letter described first *"the nature of Capax's business and the relationship between it and Autonomy, including the current relationship with [HP]"* and then set out reasons why Capax Discovery should be regarded as a *"responsible contractor with particular emphasis on its ethics, integrity, compliance with laws, and ability to perform adequately."*

2023. Mr Baiocco told me that he had read and approved the Goldberg Segalla letter at the time, and had also had an opportunity to look at the letter recently. He confirmed his belief that the statements made in the letter were true: he told me he believed it to be *"an honest letter"*, and he acknowledged that he was well aware at the time that there were serious potential consequences (including criminal consequences) of not giving an accurate and comprehensive account in reply to the USDAF. Of course, it was not realistic to expect him to say or suggest otherwise.

2024. Dr Lynch attached very considerable importance to the Goldberg Segalla letter. Key points in it relied on and emphasised by the Defendants as contemporaneous support for its description of the nature and effect of the VAR sales were as follows:

(1) Capax Global and Capax Discovery were treated as one company ("Capax"), and Capax was presented as a sizeable entity which had been in operation since 1999 and as an

> *"information technology company that provided technology services, and solutions concerning cloud hosting, software application and development, systems integration and technical support."*

(2) The letter explained Capax Discovery's position in the market, the breadth and depth of its customer base (including 250 Fortune 500 companies) and its role as a professional services provider and reseller for Autonomy's products and especially its core software product, IDOL, from May 2009. That presentation (which reflected the position of Capax Global but not its subsidiary Capax Discovery, which was not established until early 2009) went on to state (again in a passage which did not apply to Capax Discovery) that:

> *"A mainstay of Capax's solution offering is the deployment and configuration of Enterprise Search and the incorporation of Enterprise Search into a customer's applications to achieve business value."*

(3) The letter addressed two impugned VAR sales, one (referred to in the letter as *"The Government End-User Transaction"*) in Q4 2010 (VT20) for which the VAR was Capax Discovery and the end-user was Defence Knowledge Online ("DKO", part of the US military) and the other (referred to in the letter as *"The Entity B Transaction"*) in Q1 and Q2 2011 was a two-stage impugned VAR sale (VT28 and VT34) for which the VAR was Capax Discovery and the end-user was UBS.

(4) The letter gave an explanation of the way the reseller and supplier relationship worked in the market, explaining *inter alia* how reseller risk included revenue loss caused by the inability to collect payables.

(5) The letter also explained the role of a VAR in general and Capax Discovery's specific role as a VAR for Autonomy:

> *"In the computer industry, a VAR may add value to a product by customizing or implementing software and/or being a guarantor. As a VAR for Autonomy, Capax was a guarantor <u>as well as a provider of services and support that allowed Autonomy's software to function effectively in its clients' environments.</u>"* [Emphasis supplied]

(6) It stated that Capax Discovery viewed being a reseller for Autonomy as a way to *"potentially create direct and valuable relationships with new clients in order to sell them additional products and services"*.

(7) It emphasised that Capax Discovery took substantial risk in every reseller transaction with Autonomy. It stated unequivocally that:

> *"At no time did Capax ever think that it was not at substantial risk. Indeed, in all VAR transactions with Autonomy, if the deal with the end-user did not materialise, Capax would ultimately still be responsible to Autonomy for the payment of the software licences.*
>
> *Although Autonomy would possibly assist Capax in finding a new client in a joint selling arrangement or Capax would itself be able to sell the licences to another client, there was no guarantee that Capax would ultimately find a different end-user. Ultimately, weighing the risks and reward potential, Capax decided to proceed with these VAR deals. Capax had additional confidence with respect to the risks involved in these deals because Capax was, and remains, a major service and support provider to Autonomy's clients. Over the years, Capax has provided, and continues to supply, substantial and effective services and/or support for over 1,000 Autonomy clients."*

(8) It stated that Mr Baiocco and Capax Discovery considered that they had no reason to believe that any Autonomy revenue was being improperly recognised.

(9) It confirmed that Capax Discovery had reviewed the audit confirmation letters which confirmed that Capax Discovery was on risk and that there were no side-agreements and believed them to be accurate; and in cross-examination, Mr Baiocco told me that when he signed the audit confirmation letters he "*absolutely believed what I was saying was true*".

(10) Capax Discovery also confirmed that it was on risk in relation to the specific reseller deals addressed in the letter.

2025. The Defendants placed considerable reliance on the Goldberg Segalla letter: for Dr Lynch it was submitted that:

"the Claimants' case on the Capax transactions is unsustainable in the light of this letter and Mr Baiocco's confirmation of its accuracy".

2026. In essence, the Defendants' case was that the Goldberg Segalla letter represented a reliable and more contemporaneous record of Capax Discovery's role and acceptance of risk in the impugned VAR transactions which was consistent with Mr Baiocco's statement that he never believed at the time that there was any side-agreement; and that the description given in the letter of the VAR arrangements should be preferred to the evidence in his witness statement in these proceedings. The letter was presented as reflecting the true relationship between the parties; his witness statement, and in particular his evidence about "side agreements", as reflecting Mr Baiocco's business imperative to remain on good terms with HP[268], his many meetings with HP's lawyers and prosecution lawyers in the US, and lawyers' input: it was the result of *"what had been suggested to him repeatedly over the years."*

2027. However, the Goldberg Segalla letter must be set in context, and read with an appreciation of its objectives. It is true that the letter made no mention of any side-agreement, and focused only on legal commitments and their presented rationale. But the Goldberg Segalla letter was quite obviously heavily lawyered and carefully crafted to seek to maintain Capax Discovery's valuable status as a Government Reseller, and I do not think it realistic to treat the letter as an authentic and complete depiction of the relationship between Capax Discovery and Autonomy. Indeed, the Goldberg Segalla letter has unsettling features, and in particular:

(1) The misleading elision of the two Capax Discovery companies to give the impression of far greater financial solidity and a much wider customer base than could be said of the VAR in each case, which was Capax Discovery, not Capax Global;

(2) The rolled-up presentation of the usual activities or contribution of a VAR in general, and "Capax Discovery's" contribution in particular, which gave an impression that "Capax Discovery" did far more to "add value" than was the truth;

(3) The exaggeration of the risk borne by Capax Discovery, given that there was no real doubt that Mr Egan had given assurances of assistance with a view to doing all that was possible to ensure that Capax Discovery would not be left exposed, the real issue and dispute being not whether any assurances had been given, but whether they amounted to a proscribed "side-agreement";

(4) Clear examples of half-truths in the depiction of the nature of the risk and Capax Discovery's role in its VAR deals. The risk depicted was the legal risk: but not the reality; and as to Capax Discovery's role, the suggestion, for example, that Capax Discovery *"viewed being a VAR as a way to potentially create direct and valuable relationships with new clients in order to sell them additional products and services"* may

[268] By 2013 Capax Discovery was making some $15 million per year in revenue from contracts with HP and it wanted to be (and at about that time in fact became) a preferred HP partner.

not have been untrue at one level: but in the context of Capax Discovery's impugned VAR transactions with Autonomy it is, at another level, either inapposite or misleading, given that in none did Capax Discovery deal directly with the end-user (Autonomy having itself (alone) negotiated directly).

2028. In short, whilst I would accept that Mr Baiocco's evidence was influenced by the input and (I suspect) insistence of HP's lawyers and the prosecuting authorities that he should (as it were) label the assurances he was given as, and confess to, a 'side-agreement', that was really a matter of legal labelling: the Goldberg Segalla letter does not disprove or even tell against Mr Baiocco's consistent and, to my mind, entirely credible position that Mr Egan gave the assurances that both he and Mr Egan described. The truth is that in both the letter and Mr Baiocco's witness statements, his own voice is for the most part barely audible: his lawyers' voice is what prevailed in both contexts and too often it followed what they perceived to be, or was made clear to them to be, the required legal line.

2029. In summary, I agree with the Claimants that the picture revealed by Mr Baiocco on the other side of the impugned VAR sales is in substance the same as that painted by Mr Egan; and (in my own words) that:

(1) Mr Egan emphasised to him, and Mr Baiocco understood, that Capax Discovery was legally obliged to pay Autonomy in accordance with the terms of the VAR sales contract. There was no doubt as to the VAR's legal indebtedness as a matter of law.

(2) Mr Baiocco understood the letters of confirmation simply to confirm that legal indebtedness, principally for the benefit of Autonomy's auditors. He did not understand those letters to have anything to do with his handshake deals with Mr Egan, which he did not understand to be legally enforceable, but which he did consider to be reliable as a matter of reality, both parties' interests being aligned.

(3) The residual risk was that contrary to the intentions and expectations of both parties, and notwithstanding the best efforts of Autonomy to hold Capax Discovery harmless or release it from liability, something would happen which caused Autonomy to resort to its legal right to enforce payment: absent some change or control in Autonomy, or some cataclysmic collapse in its fortunes of the marketability of IDOL, this was most unlikely; and Mr Baiocco considered that this risk (which in point of fact never eventuated) was covered by the upside to Capax Discovery of enabling it to sell services to the end-user (as Mr Baiocco told me in cross-examination did happen) and in payment to it of a MAF, which Mr Baiocco accepted was payment for the nominal or residual risk assumed (which Mr Baiocco described as acting as a 'guarantor').

(4) Neither party to the VAR transactions between Autonomy and Capax Discovery ever expected Capax Discovery to play any material role in negotiating the end-user sale of which the VAR sale was in

contemplation: Autonomy carried on such negotiations after the 'sale' in every case as if nothing had happened: even offers of assistance volunteered on the part of Capax Discovery were roundly rebuffed by Autonomy.

(5) The much-emphasised benefit to Capax Discovery, used to justify the nominal risk, of an introduction to end-users was greatly exaggerated. Any contact with end-users was after the conclusion of the end-user contract, and was not in consequence of any involvement in or risk taken as a VAR, but in consequence of an end-user's need for service support which Autonomy usually outsourced anyway and for which Capax (usually Capax Global) was a preferred provider.

Evidence in relation to FileTek's single impugned VAR transaction

2030. FileTek's single VAR transaction with Autonomy in September 2010 (VT18, for end-user USDVA) was in a sense an outlier. FileTek was not in business as a VAR and had no real wish to be so. Its President and Chief Marketing Officer from 2009 to 2013, Mr Szukalski, did not wish to do the deal and was not involved in any direct negotiations with Mr Egan.

2031. However, he reported to Mr Loomis, FileTek's CEO and CFO during the Relevant Period. Mr Loomis confirmed that he had never done a VAR deal with Autonomy before: it was *"something new"* for FileTek; it was Mr Loomis who directly dealt on behalf of FileTek with Mr Egan in respect of VT18, and who also reported directly on the deal to FileTek's ultimate owner (Mr Bill Thompson).

2032. The "direct" evidence relating to FileTek's perception of its role comprised the oral testimony of Mr Szukalski (in person) and of Mr Loomis (given in the US criminal trial and admitted under a hearsay notice into these proceedings). Mr Szukalski previously worked for Verity Inc ("Verity"), another software company which was acquired by Autonomy in 2005.[269]

2033. Their evidence was also directed to two transactions with FileTek which the Claimants alleged were, and sought to impugn as, "reciprocal" transactions in Q4 2009 and again in Q1 2010 (under which Autonomy purchased StorHouse software from FileTek), and to a further succession of three purchases of StorHouse licences by Autonomy from FileTek in March, June and August 2011. I deal with the two "reciprocals" in detail in the section of this judgment in which I address the Claimants' claims relating to *"Reciprocals"* and other purchases by Autonomy from its own customers. As the 2011 transactions were alleged to have been contrived to put FileTek in funds to pay down its debt under FileTek's single VAR deal with Autonomy, I address them when dealing with this VAR transaction (VT18) (end-user USDVA).

[269] Mr Szukalski now works for Darktrace, and reports to Ms Nicole Eagan, who had previously (and whilst Mr Szukalski was there) headed Autonomy's marketing department: he started there at the end of August or early September 2014.

2034. There was no mention in the evidence of Mr Loomis in the US criminal proceedings that there was any side agreement or understanding qualifying the terms of the VAR transaction. Indeed, as was pointed out in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions, the prosecution did not suggest there was any prior agreement, but instead focused on an allegation that, while FileTek's debt was real and substantive, the later StorHouse purchases in 2011 were made primarily to assist FileTek meet its obligations, rather than because Autonomy had any need for further StorHouse licences.

2035. I address the effect of the evidence given by Mr Szukalski and Mr Loomis in respect of VT18 at greater length when addressing that transaction later in this judgment. For present purposes a broad summary should suffice. In my view, the evidence of Mr Loomis and Mr Szukalski is again largely consistent with Mr Egan's account to the effect (in brief summary) that the legal risk was clear, but FileTek, like Capax Discovery, well knew that there was no real economic risk of the legal obligation being enforced, since some means would be found by Autonomy to avoid that. However, neither Mr Loomis' nor Mr Szukalski's evidence provides any support for the suggestion made by Mr Egan that pending the end-user sale the VAR might be made to pay: Mr Loomis made quite clear that this was never on the cards, and in the event, he felt no difficulty in withholding any payment accordingly.

Overview of Mr Steve Truitt's evidence on the impugned MicroTech VAR transactions

2036. MicroTech was a fast-growing, and by 2011, already substantial reseller. By then, it had some 350 employees, having had no more than 12 or 13 in 2006. It acted as a VAR for a number of large US companies. As well as being a reseller for Autonomy, MicroTech was a Cisco Gold Partner, an HP Elite Partner, a Symantec Managed Services Partner and an Oracle Silver Partner, all corporations of very substantial size. Its COO was Mr Steve Truitt. Its CEO was a Mr Jimenez, who had decision-making power, and whose approval Mr Steve Truitt needed for each deal.

2037. The Claimants sought to impugn nine VAR transactions between Autonomy and MicroTech on the basis that in consequence of side agreements or understandings risk did not pass to the VAR, and nor did managerial control of the goods (save for VT5, which turns on its own peculiar facts). The Claimants submitted that the transactions were designed simply to enable Autonomy to recognise revenue at the point of the VAR agreement, but in substance none constituted any real economic sale.

2038. The relevant impugned VAR transactions with MicroTech, which took place between Q4 2009 and Q2 2011, are VT5 (end-user DiscoverTech), VT6 (end-user Honeywell), VT7 (end-user ManuLife), VT8 (end-user Morgan Stanley), VT13 (end-user Vatican Library), VT25 (end-user US Department of the Interior) ("DoI"), VT32 (end-user Bank of Montreal), VT33 (end-user Xerox), and VT37 (end-user HP).

2039. Although Mr Steve Truitt's evidence was that the deals with Autonomy were originally introduced by his brother, Mr David Truitt, and a Mr John Cronin (a Consultant to MicroTech, who appears to have been paid a commission by MicroTech for each such deal) the VAR deals with Autonomy were operationally controlled by Mr Steve Truitt. On the Claimants' case, therefore, any discussion giving rise to a side agreement or understanding would have had to be between Mr Steve Truitt and Mr Egan.

2040. In respect of their claims that the nine impugned VAR transactions between Autonomy and MicroTech had involved no real economic sale the Claimants relied principally on Mr Steve Truitt's evidence given in a deposition dated 7 September 2018, which was made in the course of proceedings in the US between MicroTech and Autonomy and admitted into these proceedings under a hearsay notice.

2041. The Claimants placed particular reliance on the following passage:

> *"Q. Did you – was it your understanding that on these deals that Autonomy had the relationship with the customer and Autonomy could continue the sales effort with respect to the ultimate – the true customer?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. Okay.*
>
> *A. As it says here, these – these are deals that were ostensibly very close to closing. It certainly wouldn't make sense to – to hand over, you know, to bring in the second team offense when you're on the 5-yard line.*
>
> *Q. Okay.*
>
> *A. They're supposed to score the touchdown and we get the extra point.*
>
> *Q. Okay. So – so the – and was there – withdrawn. Who – who controlled the negotiation of the price with the end customer?*
>
> *A. I don't know.*
>
> *Q. Not MicroTech, though?*
>
> *A. Not MicroTech.*
>
> *Q. Okay. Somebody at Autonomy?*
>
> *A. Somebody at Autonomy.*
>
> *Q. Okay. And so was the concept at the beginning that you would take the deal, Autonomy would continue to sell to the end-user and – and, hopefully, there would be a sale to the end-user?*
>
> *A. Well, I would – I would say that's correct, except that at this point in time, it was more than hopefully. I was – what I was looking at was*

the – was an attempt to duplicate the experience that my brother [David Truitt], who's my brother, said that he had had.

Q. Okay.

A. So it was more than hopefully.

Q. Okay. And – and it's correct, is it not, that you understood that Autonomy would be not only attempting to sell to the customer, but negotiating the price with the customer?

A. Yes."

2042. Mr Steve Truitt gave similar evidence when asked about specific purchase orders. For example, as regards the purchase order that MicroTech submitted in Q4 2009 for end-user Morgan Stanley (VT8), Mr Steve Truitt testified in the same deposition as follows:

> *"Q. Who did you understand would be dealing with Morgan Stanley about the purchase of a license to use the software identified on page 3 of Exhibit 37?*
>
> *A. A salesperson who worked for Autonomy."*

2043. Another example relied on by the Claimants was the Vatican Library purchase order (VT13). When asked about this, Mr Steve Truitt testified in his oral evidence in chief in the US criminal trial (also admitted into these proceedings under a hearsay notice):

> *"Q. In terms of the Vatican, was MicroTech making any effort to sell to the Vatican?*
>
> *A. No.*
>
> *Q. Who was going to sell the software to the Vatican?*
>
> *A. Autonomy."*

2044. However, in a passage in his cross-examination in the US criminal proceedings marked by the Claimants as evidence on which they intended to rely, Mr Steve Truitt explained the rationale, from MicroTech's perspective, for entering into the reseller deals, and also confirmed that he understood that MicroTech were fully on risk:

> *"Q. And these -- these deals you saw as a way to get the company to grow; right?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. Meet new customers, you've talked about?*
>
> *A. Right.*

Q. And you knew that your brother had been very successful in doing similar kind of work when he'd been at MicroLink?

A. That's right.

Q. And you wanted to try to repeat that for MicroTech?

A. Yes.

Q. You had, as I understand it, three objectives for MicroTech being a reseller. The first one was -- and the primary reason was to get service business from the people that would buy the Autonomy software?

A. Yes. That's correct.

Q. And then another reason was to meet people -- meet customers and grow your business, hire more technical people?

A. Yes. Particularly commercial customers.

Q. And then a third reason was to get this -- you buy the software at a discount so you would get a 10 percent premium; right?

A. Right.

Q. But you wouldn't have done these deals just for the 10 percent premium. It was these other reasons that predominated, didn't it?

A. Yes. Those were the reasons that mattered to me.

Q. And the deals that you did, you knew that MicroTech was at risk when it agreed to buy Autonomy software, didn't you?

A. The first set of deals in particular as I testified earlier, yes, I considered us to be at risk.

Q. You considered -- and I think you used the words that MicroTech was on the hook for the debt?

A. Yes."

2045. In his deposition evidence in the MicroTech US litigation, Mr Steve Truitt was at pains to emphasise that, contrary to what was suggested to him, he regarded the indebtedness to Autonomy as *"100 percent real": "we owed it not just on paper. We owed it for real"*; and that when the end-user deal did not close in a *"timely fashion"* he was *"a hundred percent freaked out"*. He added, however, that there came a time (which he could not specify) when he felt less concerned

> *"because Autonomy was going to work with us to make arrangements to pay these debts with money that we didn't have to go make elsewhere."*

2046. His evidence suggested that this was in part something which he came to appreciate from experience: but he also stated (in his deposition evidence in the MicroTech litigation) that his approach was informed by his brother Mr David Truitt's earlier experience at MicroLink in 2009 (see paragraph 2041 above); and Mr David Truitt was clear in his own deposition evidence in those proceedings that it was understood that MicroTech would not pay Autonomy for the VAR deals unless it had first received the money from someone with which to make such a payment.

2047. Pulling these strands together, it seems to me that, though with perhaps a little more equivocation, Mr Steve Truitt's evidence also substantially endorsed Mr Egan's presentation and that in summary:

(1) Even if he was more concerned initially, it was not long before he well understood that the legal risk would be most unlikely to eventuate, that Autonomy had no intention of relying on its legal rights and on the contrary, that it fully intended to ensure that MicroTech was not left "on the hook".

(2) He did not regard this as a side-letter or side deal at the time because, as he put it, there was *"never a literal side letter"*. But he was clear that, whether or not labelled a side deal (as he said in his deposition evidence he was only later persuaded by HP's lawyers and the US prosecution counsel to call it), it was made plain to him by Autonomy that they would see to it that they would, if necessary, arrange *"to do business… separate from those deals so that we could somehow get the money to pay those debts off"*. As to the label he was later persuaded to put on it, he said (to quote again from his deposition evidence):

> *"…look, I didn't think of it this way at the time. There was never a written side deal, but if you want to call that a side deal, call it a side deal. I will acknowledge that this situation existed."*

(3) At no stage was MicroTech involved in any negotiations for or the closing of end-user deals; and it should be noted that the customer contact which Mr Steve Truitt anticipated and placed value on was not to eventuate until after the end-user sale, for the simple reason that only Autonomy would be involved in the negotiations for it; and if none eventuated, that benefit would evaporate. As he explained in his direct evidence in the US criminal proceedings:

> *"…the way it was going to work was that when the [end-user] deal closed, we would be introduced to the key people and the customer and the technical contacts, and we would then go actually install and configure the software and start building relationships with the customer. And as they started learning what the software could and couldn't do, we would – we would extend and modify and reconfigure the software, sell them additional packages to complement what they already bought. I mean, we would put a relationship in place."*

(4) He accepted that in such circumstances, Autonomy retained managerial involvement. When asked directly in the MicroTech litigation whether the additional sentence in the audit confirmation letters confirming on behalf of MicroTech that Autonomy retained *"no continuing managerial involvement in the delivery of this product or service, other than stipulated in the license agreement"* was true, he accepted that it was not true. He offered only that *"to my discredit, I didn't* even *notice that language…".*

(5) A point of detail not mentioned above remained unexplained but nevertheless supportive of the point that MicroTech did not regard the notional debt as an economic reality: MicroTech's accounts did not reflect its exposure to Autonomy at anything like its face amount[270]. Thus:

i. As at 31 December 2009, MicroTech owed more than $18 million to Autonomy on VAR transactions: $10 million on the DiscoverTech purchase order (VT5), almost $1.9 million on the Honeywell purchase order (VT6), about $1.1 million on the ManuLife purchase order (VT7) and over $4.8 million on the Morgan Stanley purchase order (VT8).

ii. However, MicroTech's own audited financial statements showed current liabilities of only $17.2 million as at 31 December 2009, of which $3.5 million related to a bank line of credit. Plainly, therefore, MicroTech's accounts cannot have accounted for the full amount of the $18 million debt owed to Autonomy.

iii. MicroTech's 2009 financial statements also contained no indication that Autonomy software was being held on its balance sheet as inventory, as at 31 December 2009.

iv. Steve Truitt offered no explanation of these discrepancies during his deposition:

> *"Q. Is it correct that you do not see either the debt owed to Autonomy or the associated asset owned by MicroTech at year end on this balance sheet?*
>
> *MR RINGER: Objection.*
>
> *THE WITNESS: I think that's a reasonable statement, looking at these numbers.*
>
> *BY MR FRANK: Q. Okay.*

[270] MicroLink provided a similar, in fact more stark, example of a VAR not recording its 'indebtedness' in its accounts as a liability; according to evidence in the US criminal trial, its larger deals with Autonomy were *"just not in the books at all".*

A. But it doesn't mean that some – some part of it isn't here. I don't know exactly what these numbers do represent."

(6) The position a year later was no different. MicroTech's audited financial statements for 2010 do not appear to show, on the balance sheet as at 31 December 2010, the debt of over $10.7 million which MicroTech owed Autonomy at that time. Again, Steve Truitt was asked about this in his deposition:

"Q. Do you see on the balance sheet anything that you believe corresponds to that more than $10 million debt?

MR RINGER: Objection.

THE WITNESS: It's difficult to say exactly what these liabilities are, but there aren't enough of them to correspond to this amount.

BY MR FRANK: Q. Okay. Do you know why that debt does not appear on MicroTech's audited financial statements?

MR RINGER: Objection.

THE WITNESS: No, I don't."

2048. It is not difficult to see why he did not wish to hazard an explanation; but it seems to me to be a fair inference that there was no debt recognised because in commercial terms it was perceived that it would unbalance the accounts: the debt was to be covered by the understanding with Autonomy that any debt would be funded by another (contrived) deal if necessary (see above).

Mr David Truitt's evidence on the impugned DiscoverTech VAR transactions

2049. As mentioned in paragraph 1963(4) above, DiscoverTech was a newly incorporated entity in 2009. It was formed by Mr David Truitt, who was DiscoverTech's CEO from its inception, and in effect was MicroLink's successor as a favoured VAR after MicroLink was acquired by Autonomy (in circumstances and for purposes which the Claimants also seek to impugn, as I explain later).

2050. Mr David Truitt, who continued as CEO of MicroLink after its acquisition by Autonomy, accepted in the US criminal trial that DiscoverTech's financial position as a start-up was not such that it could fund VAR purchases out of its own resources, at least without *"recapitalising the company"*. Even though theoretically it could, of course, take into account receivables from any onward sale to an end-user it is of some note, therefore, that DiscoverTech took on so many high-value VAR transactions (BofA was a *"big deal"* as Dr Lynch put it, even for Autonomy), especially since it cannot have been confident of receipts from an end-user sale in which it was not to be involved.

2051. Mr David Truitt also confirmed in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings that DiscoverTech never made any effort to resell the software it had acquired from Autonomy under licence. Like Messrs Egan, Baiocco and Szukalski, and like his brother Mr Steve Truitt, he accepted that in none of the impugned VAR sales was the VAR involved in any way after the VAR transaction, and that in reality Autonomy controlled what to sell, to whom to sell and at what price.

2052. A corollary was that in none of the impugned VAR transactions to which DiscoverTech was a party was an end-user sale by it ever effected. DiscoverTech was reliant on Autonomy either procuring payment to it out of the proceeds of a direct deal, or cancelling the initial VAR transaction (which, in the same testimony, was something that he had never had to do in any MicroLink or other VAR deals prior to the impugned VAR deals in question).

2053. Even so, the Defendants much relied on Mr David Truitt's evidence (in the US criminal trial and/or the MicroTech litigation) asserting that DiscoverTech was *"at risk"* and could be *"stuck with it"* even if the end-user deal failed to materialise and further asserting that DiscoverTech *"had control of the software and [was] fully the owner"*. In the latter context, they also relied on his evidence in the US criminal trial on the issue of managerial control:

> *"Q. And then some questions about -- you keep asking about control, who controlled what. And your answers were, "The documents we signed were the terms of the agreement. The terms are stated in the agreement." Do you remember that testimony?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And is what you meant is that once you made the agreement, you, be it DiscoverTech, MicroTech, whoever made the agreement, owned the software? It was your software?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And was -- if it didn't close, it's still your software and you owed money; right?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. If you sold it to the end-user, the terms were already set. It was there in the agreement; right?*
>
> *A. Correct.*
>
> *Q. So you had control of the software, you owed the money, and you were fully the owner; right?*
>
> *A. Yes."*

2054. This evidence mirrored his evidence in respect of MicroLink VAR sales in the MicroTech litigation (see paragraph 2001 above). The Defendants made the point that such evidence had been adduced by the Claimants themselves

(pursuant to hearsay notices). Once again, however, it seems to me that the only way that this evidence can be treated as consistent with his other evidence (as relied on by the Claimants) and with what in fact transpired is to treat it as reciting (somewhat ritualistically) the legal position only.

2055. Whatever the legal position, I take it and find that Mr David Truitt accepted that in reality, and like MicroLink before it, DiscoverTech never had the means to pay Autonomy out of its own resources, never did so, and never participated in any negotiations with end-users after the VAR sale to it: and that was entirely as both he and Mr Egan expected and intended.

Dispute as to the effect of any assurances given

2056. Both Defendants submitted that the oral testimony of Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco, and the hearsay evidence from Messrs Steve Truitt, David Truitt and Loomis in the US criminal trial and in the MicroTech litigation, suffered from its genesis in numerous meetings with the US authorities playing on the self-interest of the actors. They submitted that the evidence had *"been contaminated by the forensic process"*, was unreliable and inconsistent, and could not provide any secure basis for a plea of fraud. Nevertheless, they added that, read as a whole, and contrary to its purpose, such evidence served on balance to support their case, rather than the Claimants, since it demonstrated that all the witnesses well understood that nothing that Mr Egan said could or would dissolve their legal obligations.

2057. The Defendants' position was thus that whatever assurances were given, none could reasonably have been or were taken by the VAR to release, qualify or modify the VAR's right to the software which (it was common ground) was in each case electronically transferred to the VAR when the VAR agreement completed and was then available for use, nor the VAR's obligation to pay within the stipulated time. The Defendants emphasised the unanimity amongst the witnesses that they were acting legitimately in VAR transactions, which were not out of the usual, that they had confirmed their belief in the accuracy of the audit confirmation letters when they signed them, and their understanding throughout that the VAR they represented remained in substance and in law fully at risk to pay Autonomy on demand.

2058. In his oral closing submissions, Mr Miles summarised the Defendants' position as follows:

> "*Now, the next point is to turn to the witness evidence and make some observations on that. There are several factual witnesses. There were three live witnesses, Mr Egan, Mr Baiocco and Mr Szukalski, and then the worthier hearsay statements. Now, as regards both Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco, we do suggest that you have got to be quite careful about the evidential status of certainly much of their witness statements. But even if you do… exercise caution, as we suggest you should, what we suggest the evidence as a whole shows is that, even taking the position most favourable to the Claimants there's nothing in the discussions*

that Mr Egan had with the resellers which would impact on revenue recognition.

The evidence of Mr Egan and indeed the others was that the resellers understood that they were fully on risk. When they explained in their evidence that they thought they were on risk, what they meant, we suggest, is that they would have to pay from their own resources.

If you were to think the evidence came to anything at all… It was just that Mr Egan would do what he could to find another end-user or possibly that he would try and do what he could to help. But the evidence was that the resellers knew that any assurance or words of comfort he gave them was just that, non-binding words of comfort. But more than that, even if you accept their evidence, the resellers knew that their relationship was governed by the contract, that they were bound to pay in accordance with the contract, that if things did not go right Mr Egan would try and help them out, that they also knew that was just a hope and not something that was binding on Autonomy in any way."

2059. This summary correctly, in my view, identified the nub of the factual issue revealed by the direct evidence: whether the assurances given were "warm words" or "soft soap", or whether they were intended to be and were acted on as the basis of the parties' relationship.

2060. Mr Rabinowitz, rejecting the suggestion that the assurances given were simply "warm words" or "soft soap", summarised the Claimants' position in his oral reply as follows:

"…the expression… also has pejorative connotations of the kind of thing an unscrupulous salesman might say to get the deal done. But here no one is suggesting that the expressions of intent communicated by Mr Egan were anything other than his honest intention backed by the express authority of Mr Hussain and, we say, in turn backed by Dr Lynch. Mr Egan was not duping the VAR into thinking that Autonomy would avoid leaving the VAR "holding the bag". That actually was the intention.

My lord, the best evidence of that is what actually happened. Your lordship will recall that I described the pattern where Autonomy never did require the VAR to pay in full from its own resources, leaving aside a few modest part payments. That is evidence of Autonomy's intention at the outset. I would note that Mr Miles did not seek to answer my patterns point.

… The proof of the seriousness with which the VARs treated these assurances, despite their non-binding character, lies in the VAR's willingness to assume the enormous risk that would arise if they nevertheless ended up being held to their contractual obligations. From Autonomy's point of view, as Mr Egan explained, any failure to honour the assurances would have made it harder to get a VAR to take on a deal in the future. For your Lordship's note, that is what he said

> *at Egan 1, paragraph 29, last sentence {C/5/9}. From a repeat VAR's point of view, the fact that the intention was always honoured would have added more weight to the assurances as time went by."*

Assessment of the effect of the direct/witness evidence

2061. Supported by the details of the way each VAR sale was implemented which I describe in the next section, it is to my mind clear, and I find, that in every one of the impugned VAR sales except the five Collectability VARs and the two VAR transactions (VT5 and VT14) which turned on their own facts, Mr Egan both (a) emphasised, as he had been instructed by Mr Hussain he must emphasise, that legally the VAR was unconditionally obliged to pay and became upon delivery the owner of and responsible for the licensed software with a view to its resale, but at the same time also (b) assured the VAR that it would not be expected to be involved in negotiating and closing an end-user sale, and that if no end-user sale eventuated, Autonomy would not leave it *"on the hook"* or require payment in the meantime, and would one way or another ensure, whether by *"backfilling"* or some arrangement which realised funds sufficient to discharge the legal indebtedness, that it would not be left *"holding the bag"*.

2062. I think it clear also, and I find, that even if Mr Egan did not make any formal representation that he was able to bind Autonomy[271], he made it clear, as was the fact, that he was acting in conformity with the wishes and suggestions, and probably on the actual instructions, of Mr Hussain, both in emphasising the legal position and in giving the assurances as to the real intentions of Autonomy.

2063. Reading between the lines of their incantations (with varying degrees of insistence) about their legal exposure, the direct evidence of all the VAR witnesses confirmed, and I find, that but for these assurances, and the shared intention (on the part of Autonomy) and expectation and belief (on behalf of the VARs) that they would be fulfilled, none of the VARs could rationally have agreed to take on the role in the circumstances in which it was almost invariably obtained; these being that (a) the VAR deal would be put forward at the end of a quarter, sometimes on the very last day, (b) for completion before the end of the quarter, with (c) little if anything being known by the VAR of the state of Autonomy's negotiations, nor of the real prospect of a deal eventuating, with the prospective end-user; and (d) the VAR would usually not be able to cover the legal obligation out of its own resources, and in any event the risk/reward balance being plainly and obviously commercially unacceptable.

2064. In my view, it is also clear, and I find, that in every one of these cases the VARs expected, and were content, that Autonomy would carry on negotiations with the end-user as being the best or most likely way of concluding a sale to

[271] There is no evidence of any express representation of authority, perhaps because such a representation would not have fitted with the essentially non-binding nature of the assurances as a matter of law, and his repeated emphasis that nothing he said would or could modify the contractual terms set out in the relevant VAR agreement.

the end-user, and that the VAR would play no part. Some might have expected an introduction to the end-user after conclusion of an end-user sale, and commercial advantage after that from it; but the most reliable source of reward would be payment to them of a MAF, of which they were assured by Mr Egan, although the VAR sales agreements made no legal provision in that regard.

2065. The question then is as to how IFRS accounting principles are to be applied in circumstances where the parties accept that the contract is binding, and provides (amongst other things) for their agreement to be entirely expressed within it and that there are no side agreements (or the like) to qualify their bargain, but their evidence casts an entirely different light as to their real intentions and expectations and the real substance of their relationship. In short, whilst it will depend on the circumstances it is almost invariably the case the real substance must prevail.

2066. Before considering the application of IFRS accounting principles and answering that conundrum, I turn to consider in more detail the Claimants' case that the impugned VAR sales and the way they were implemented followed a "pattern", which the Claimants relied on as the best proof of the parties' intentions and the true substance of their arrangements.

(5) The alleged "pattern" and the Defendants' response that it reveals "neutral features"

2067. In parallel with their case based on the direct evidence of the VARs as to their understanding of the real substance of their engagement with Autonomy, Mr Rabinowitz described as *"striking beyond belief"* the *'pattern'* evident in every one of the impugned VAR sales indicating behaviour and its inconsistency with the ostensible contractual arrangements. He submitted that this *'pattern'* could only be explained by reference to shared understandings between the parties as to the true economic substance and nature of the arrangements which were very different from those expressed in or apparent from their contract.

2068. In this way of putting their case, the Claimants sought to focus on what the parties actually did (and did not do) as the litmus test of the true economic substance of the transactions and the existence of the shared intentions which in truth explained their true nature. This was a facet or development of Mr Holgate's description of economic substance as "*the commercial effect in practice and things like that"* and *"a common sense point of view [of] what is really happening in a transaction".* In their written closing, the Claimants described this as *"a further string to their bow"*; but in his oral reply Mr Rabinowitz appeared to give primacy to this aspect of the Claimants' case on VARs.

2069. As in the context of the witness evidence, the Claimants submitted that the conclusion should be that the impugned VAR transactions, though effective in law on the terms of the VAR agreements made in respect of them, did not reveal their true substance because they did not reflect how in fact the parties proposed to act. Once the way in which the parties acted was examined, it was contended that it was quite clear that nothing really changed after the VAR

transaction: Autonomy continued its negotiations with the end-user, and the VAR did nothing to signify either a change of ownership, nor make any payment. This demonstrated that (a) it was Autonomy, and not the VAR, which in fact had 'managerial control' of the goods in question; and (b) the VAR had neither any role nor any real interest in an end-user sale, because in reality it was just a *"placeholder"* and would never be required to pay since Autonomy's true source of payment was always intended to be the end-user.

2070. The Claimants suggested that a further advantage of this way of putting their case, in addition to the fact that, although complementary to, it does not depend on the evidence of witnesses who may be considered self-interested or *parti pris*, is that (so they submitted) if the facts do indeed show that the parties' actual intentions and conduct differed from the ostensible effect of the written sale contract, then neither the entire agreement clause in each of the VAR agreements, nor the auditor confirmation letters, could *"insulate the transactions from an accounting treatment which reflects the true facts."*

2071. The Claimants contended that the plain inference from the 'pattern' revealed was that:

(1) in none of the impugned VAR sales did or was the VAR ever intended or even permitted to negotiate or close a direct deal with an end-user; and

(2) in none of the impugned VAR sales was the VAR ever intended and / or ever expected to pay out of its own resources.

Was there demonstrated to be a pattern showing that VARs did not, and were not intended to, negotiate or effect an end-user sale?

2072. The circumstantial facts the Claimants relied on as establishing a *'pattern'* demonstrating that at the time the VAR transaction was entered into, no-one intended that the VAR should be involved in any attempt to on-sell the software licensed to the end-user, and that the true intention was that Autonomy should contract directly with the end-user, can be summarised as follows.

2073. First, in all of the impugned transactions it was Autonomy, rather than the VAR, which was negotiating with the end-user at the time of the VAR transaction; and it was Autonomy, and not the VAR, which had the relationship with the end-user, often one of long-standing and involving repeat business. The Claimants' submission was that it is inherently unlikely that Autonomy would have wanted to cede the conduct of that commercial relationship to the VAR. Further, they suggested that it was equally unlikely that the end-user would want to deal with an unknown (and in some cases, newly incorporated) VAR in those circumstances either. Both considerations pointed to the conclusion that the VAR was not expected to do anything beyond acting as a "placeholder", the true arrangement both existing and prospective was between Autonomy and the end-user, and the VAR agreement in each case lacked any real substance as a sale.

2074. Secondly, and as already noted from the unchallenged witness evidence, in none of the impugned VAR sales was there any sign of any effort being made to give the VAR the introduction and information necessary to enable the VAR to intervene and take over the pre-existing negotiations. That again supports the conclusion that no such involvement was ever in reality intended of the VAR.

2075. Thirdly, there is no evidence of Autonomy ever asking the VAR why it had failed to make any effort to on-sell to the end-user. The Claimants suggested in this context that if Autonomy had really expected the VAR to attempt to sell the deal to the end-user, it would surely have expressed its disappointment at the VAR's lack of effort and regarded the VAR as the author of its own misfortune in missing out on an onward sale.

2076. Fourthly, there is no evidence that in any of the impugned transactions did the VAR actually make any effort, after the VAR transaction, to achieve an onward sale of the Autonomy software license to the end-user; which once more supported the same conclusion that the VAR was intended to be entirely passive.

2077. Fifthly, and perhaps most strikingly, Mr Rabinowitz emphasised especially that in none of the impugned VAR transactions (except perhaps VT20, see footnote 273 below) did Autonomy's negotiations ever actually bring about a contract between the VAR and the end-user. The end-user contract, if one eventuated at all, was invariably on terms (including as to price) negotiated and determined, not by the VAR, but by Autonomy, and in every case where a contract eventuated, Autonomy and not the VAR was the party to it.[272]

2078. The Claimants submitted that such direct deals shed light on the true intention at the date of the VAR transaction: they gave rise to the inference that the reason why the VAR never ended up concluding a deal with the end-user was because the VAR was never expected to do that, and/or that Autonomy in reality retained managerial control throughout, with the VAR being a purely passive placeholder and any purported purchase and sale to it being illusory. As Mr Rabinowitz put it in his oral reply:

> *"we say that that pattern makes it very unrealistic to suppose that Autonomy's intention was solely to negotiate a contract between the VAR and the end-user. At times Autonomy tried to achieve that, but always failed. At other times it did not even try. It simply negotiated a direct deal between Autonomy and the end-user."*

[272] The only apparent exceptions in evidence were, on analysis, not exceptions at all. There were one or two sales to which Autonomy was not party; but that was only because Autonomy, having negotiated the sale, directed that a VAR (but not the VAR to which it had initially sold the software) be inserted. Thus, in VT20 Capax Discovery/DKO the direct sale was negotiated between Autonomy and DKO, without any involvement by Capax Discovery; at the last minute, Autonomy arranged for MicroTech (not Capax Discovery) to step in so that the agreement took the form of a sale from MicroTech (rather than Autonomy) to DKO. VT1 may provide a similar example: RRAPoC Schedule 3 VT1 states that in Q4 2009 MicroLink sold the software it had acquired for the intended end-user US Federal Government to a second VAR called Computer Security Solutions. But that too seems to have followed negotiations exclusively by Autonomy with the end-user US Federal Government and to have been at the direction of Autonomy. I have found no other 'exceptions' in the evidence.

2079. The Claimants submitted in conclusion on this aspect that this *'pattern'* demonstrated that Autonomy must from the outset have been intended to have, and did in every case in fact have, exclusive control of negotiations with the end-user, and that the VAR had no say or involvement in the process; and that this in turn demonstrated, to use the wording of IAS 18.14(b), the retention by Autonomy of *"managerial involvement to the degree usually associated with ownership"* and *"effective control"* in each case *"over the goods sold."*

2080. As to the second aspect of the 'pattern', which the Claimants alleged also gave rise to the inference that there was no true 'sale', was that the facts demonstrated that the VAR was also not intended to be required to pay Autonomy from its own resources if no end-user sale eventuated, and that in reality Autonomy's true source of revenue was never intended to be the VAR but the end-user. Failing an end-user sale, Autonomy would have to take some step, whether by way of "round-trip"/reciprocal transaction, debt forgiveness or some other expedient to protect the VAR whilst preserving the fiction of revenue generation. The Claimants relied on the following.

2081. First, the Claimants submitted that if it is found that it was intended at the time of the VAR transaction that the VAR would do nothing, that fact, of itself, was also a reason to infer that the VAR was also not intended to be required to pay Autonomy from its own resources. The rationale was this: if the VAR was genuinely expected to pay Autonomy from its own resources, it would be vitally interested in the end-user sale: the most obvious way for the VAR to put itself in funds would be by working hard to secure an end-user sale. To step back altogether, and leave further negotiation and completion of the end-user sale entirely to the seller, would be most unnatural, to the point of being commercially inexplicable, if the VAR was really on the hook.

2082. Secondly, the Claimants relied on the fact that the VAR was first approached by Autonomy regarding a transaction involving an identified end-user at the very end of the quarter, and usually concluded the VAR transaction within a matter of hours thereafter, with no chance being given to the VAR to scope and assess the end-user deal. The Claimants rejected Dr Lynch's suggestion (which I examine further below) that this was entirely usual, on the basis that it was exceptional for such deals to be struck at the very end of the quarter without the VAR negotiating any of its terms. Further, having had no prior contact with the end-user, the VAR had no insight of its own as to the prospects of an end-user deal being concluded, whether at all or within a reasonable time, beyond whatever Autonomy may have told it. The Claimants referred in this regard to the evidence of Mr Welham when asked about this in re-examination:

> *"Q. In your experience as an auditor of software companies, would you consider it usual or unusual for a VAR to be first approached about doing a deal right at the end of or on the last day of the quarter?*
>
> *A. Probably unusual."*

2083. The Claimants suggested further that if it was genuinely intended that the VAR would pay from its own resources, the VAR would have had, and been

keen, to carry out elementary due diligence: it was not realistic and not to be assumed that astute businessmen would ever act so recklessly.

2084. Thirdly, the absence of any effort at all, given that in every case the impugned VAR sale was right at the end of the quarter, to even make time for price negotiation with Autonomy before executing the VAR transaction, made no commercial sense if it was intended that the VAR would have to pay Autonomy from its own resources; and all the more so given that the amounts involved would have presented an existential threat to the VAR in many instances had it truly been at risk.

2085. In short, the continuing responsibility of Autonomy and the abdication of responsibility by the VAR demonstrated that Autonomy regarded its source of recourse and reward as being from the end-user, and the VAR, relying on Mr Egan's assurances, did not regard itself as being at substantive risk in the meantime.

2086. Fourthly, the Claimants maintained that in many cases the VAR did not appear to have the means to pay Autonomy, in the absence of payment further to an end-user sale. They submitted that the fact that Autonomy must have understood at the time of the VAR transaction that the VAR could not pay supports an inference that it was not intended to do so, at least unless and until the end-user sale had been completed.

2087. Fifthly, the Claimants relied on the fact that, leaving aside any modest deposit, Autonomy never did require any 'friendly' VAR, in any of the impugned transactions, to pay Autonomy out of its own resources prior to receipt of funds from the end-user or (in effect) from Autonomy itself in a 'reciprocal transaction.' Instead, and as I describe and discuss at greater length later, Autonomy either caused the end-user to pay the VAR, so that the VAR in turn could pay Autonomy, or Autonomy found another means to excuse the VAR, whether by issuing a credit note, and cancelling the VAR's legal obligation; or by buying something from the VAR in order to put the VAR in funds; or by simply writing off the VAR's debt.

The Defendants' position as regards the alleged 'pattern'

2088. The Defendants resisted all of this, and both limbs of the Claimants' case as to the VAR agreements' lack of economic substance, primarily on the basis that the Claimants' reasoning was flawed because it was based on false *a priori* assumptions. They contended that the Claimants placed undue reliance on features of some of the impugned transactions on the assumption that they revealed impropriety, whereas in reality they were entirely usual features of VAR transactions in the software field and were "neutral" in terms of the criteria for revenue recognition.

2089. In Dr Lynch's written closing submissions, the Defendants identified and sought to justify as entirely "neutral" the following features of the impugned VAR transactions on which the Claimants had placed undue reliance:

(1) Deals being reached at the quarter end;

(2) Bringing in a reseller to enable revenue recognition in that quarter when an end-user deal could not be closed at a quarter-end;

(3) The status or prospects of the deal between the reseller and the end-user;

(4) The extent of price negotiations between Autonomy and the reseller;

(5) No "added value" by the reseller;

(6) Autonomy continuing to be involved with the end-user after the VAR sale;

(7) Sales to VARs of hosted products;

(8) Closing a sale directly between Autonomy and the end-user;

(9) Arrangements for the VAR to be paid by the end-user notwithstanding a direct contract between the end-user and Autonomy (which Dr Lynch referred to as "Designated payee situations");

(10) Cancellations of a VAR's obligations after a direct deal had been closed between the end-user and Autonomy;

(11) Occasional write-offs of debts owed to Autonomy by resellers;

(12) Absence of any occasions on which Autonomy demanded payment from the VAR and sued when none was received;

(13) A VAR's unwillingness to pay; and

(14) The payment of MAFs notwithstanding that the VAR had added no value nor taken any part in the negotiations for and conclusion of the end-user sale.

2090. Put broadly, the Defendants' case was that there is nothing unusual, let alone improper, in a VAR taking software on its books and committing in law to pay the purchase price, with a view to assisting Autonomy (for a fee and other commercial advantages) both (a) to recognise revenue on the immediate sale to the VAR and (b) to achieve a subsequent sale of that software to an end-user. In other words, a VAR may be, and in ordinary commercial dealings often is, nothing more than a guarantor (as, for example, Capax Discovery described itself in the Goldberg Segalla letter), or in other cases, a "fulfilment partner"; and a sale to a VAR for that purpose is nonetheless a sale in economic substance as well as law.

2091. The "neutral features" as they were identified and described in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions are differently organised and differently expressed ways of putting the converse to the Claimants' case that the 'pattern' reveals lack of substance and impropriety. The easiest, and for the present the most convenient, course is to explain how Dr Lynch elaborated his case in this

regard, and then to assess together the two opposing perspectives in reaching my determination on this aspect of the case.

Quarter-end timing

2092. First, the Defendants sought to dispel the suspicion that the Claimants tried to create with respect to the timing of the VAR deals. They contended that, contrary to the Claimants' case, quarter-end deals with VARs were and are common-place in the software industry. Their timing is not of itself indicative of impropriety; and that is so even if, as a corollary, there may well have been no discussions with the reseller previously, nor any time for the reseller to assess the prospects of an end-user deal, or the reliability of the end-user if the deal was done.

Recourse to a VAR simply to recognise revenue if the end-user deal was delayed

2093. Secondly, the Defendants submitted that there was nothing improper or indicative of impropriety in Autonomy bringing in a reseller at a quarter end simply because a deal with an end-user could not be closed in time to enable recognition of the income to be derived from a sale of that software in the preferred quarter. Deloitte knew that Autonomy closed deals with resellers in these circumstances and there was no suggestion that this affected revenue recognition. Dr Lynch under cross-examination described this as "de-risking": Autonomy was getting the commitment to pay from the VAR, constituting a "bird in the hand". As Mr Miles put it in his oral closing:

> "*it meant that Autonomy could actually get a commitment to the revenue on the deal without further delay or pressure on prices."*

2094. Mr Welham confirmed in his oral evidence that Deloitte had no problem with Autonomy selling to a reseller for the purposes of recognising revenue. He accepted that the fact that Autonomy was unable to close the deal for the quarter might be a good reason for selling to the reseller.

No assessment of status or prospects of end-user deal by VAR

2095. Thirdly, the Defendants submitted that the Claimants' focus on the status and prospects of an end-user deal was misplaced. Dr Lynch relied on the following passage from Taylor Wessing's letter of January 2015 on behalf of Deloitte in order to rebut HP's letter before action under the Professional Negligence Pre-Action Protocol:

> *"The relevant agreement for revenue recognition purposes is that between Autonomy and the VAR. It is not relevant for the purposes of revenue recognition whether the party with whom Autonomy has contracted is a VAR or an end-user. It is not necessary to identify an end-user (other than for licence control purposes."*

2096. The Defendants pointed out that Mr Welham had agreed also that it was not necessary for revenue recognition purposes for Autonomy even to identify the end-user, still less for the VAR to have considered the prospect or commercial

terms and rationale of any onward sale by the reseller to the end-user. The Defendants surmised that the Claimants, in suggesting otherwise, may have been influenced, and indeed misled, by the more familiar (at least to them, as for the most part, US entities) but different, rules of US GAAP which (putting the point broadly) preclude revenue recognition until the end-user sale. The Defendants repeated once more that under IFRS accounting, the test is a "sell in" test: provided the IAS 18.14 criteria are met in the case of the immediate sale to the VAR, revenue is required to be recognised. Under US GAAP, the test is a "sell through" test: revenue may only be recognised once the end-user sale is closed. Influenced by the US approach, the Claimants tended not to recognise or accept the reality and the consequence of the fact that even though the reseller would not be expected to do anything, it was for the purposes of both the law and the IAS (unlike US GAAP) Autonomy's customer.

No price negotiation for VAR sale

2097. The Defendants argued that a lack of negotiation on price between Autonomy and the reseller may be a neutral factor, and is so on the particular facts of this case.

2098. The Defendants submitted that it is clear on the evidence that, as a matter of law at least, all the resellers were genuinely on risk in respect of their purchases, and took the risk in anticipation of advantage to themselves. Autonomy was coming to them with a purchase opportunity which they were happy to accept on the terms that were offered, as Mr Baiocco made clear in his evidence.

VAR sale but no added value

2099. Dr Lynch's fifth point was that although the appellation "Value Added Reseller" may encourage the contrary supposition, a VAR sale is not improper or lacking in substance so as not to merit recognition of its revenue just because the reseller was not to add value to the sale in the sense of enhancing the goods sold or providing services to the end-user.

2100. According to Dr Lynch a VAR transaction would nonetheless qualify as a proper sale even if it was not intended that the VAR should fulfil any role at all beyond purchasing the goods on the terms of the VAR agreement, going on risk for that purchase by accepting thereby the unqualified commitment to pay, and thereafter fulfilling the end-user's purchase order.

2101. Deloitte accepted that it would be a legitimate and normal reseller transaction if the only role of the VAR was to purchase from Autonomy, going on risk in the process and thereafter to sell to the end-user. Thus, for example, Deloitte's Defence in the FRC proceedings states as follows:

> *"Contrary to the impression given in the Formal Complaint, this is not to say that a VAR has to perform additional services or "add value" in every sale insofar as that is intended to mean "provide additional services"; it can and often does simply re-sell software licences to customers, acting as a reseller."*

2102. In his evidence under cross-examination, Mr Welham accepted that this was Deloitte's actual perception at the time:

> *"Q. …The VAR could simply act as a reseller, it didn't have to provide any additional services?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And Deloitte understood that at the time, that was part of your understanding at the time of the audit?*
>
> *A. That could happen, yes."*

2103. Thus, the Defendants submitted that although the Claimants spent some time in argument and cross-examination questioning what services or added value a VAR would be likely to bring to the relevant transaction, that was based on a false premise: it is neither unusual nor improper in the business for a VAR to be what Mr Szukalski called a "fulfilment partner" with its role being simply to enter the contract for the purchase of the goods, go on risk for the purchase, leave Autonomy alone to negotiate with the end-user and thereafter fulfil the end-user's purchase order. In effect, only the "paperwork" would go through the VAR.

2104. In the same context, the Defendants also relied on Mr Szukalski's evidence that all this was *"very common practice"*. However, as I elaborate later, FileTek's only deal with Autonomy was not really a true VAR deal; FileTek was not really a VAR in any usual sense; and Mr Szukalski did not really operate in that business at all.

Autonomy's involvement with the end-user after the VAR sale

2105. Dr Lynch's sixth point was his contention that it did not undermine revenue recognition for Autonomy to continue to negotiate or be involved with the end-user after the reseller sale.

2106. Issues with regard to managerial control could potentially arise if Autonomy had been contractually obliged to exercise managerial duties with respect to the goods, since that obligation would connote that managerial responsibility and effective control of the goods had not been transferred under the contractual terms; but this was not in fact ever the case, and would have been inconsistent with the provisions of the contract, which made it clear the risk passed in all respects to the purchaser, and did not impose any relevant continuing obligations on Autonomy.

2107. Further, in circumstances where the VAR was simply fulfilling that role, it is not surprising or undermining of the VAR's purchase that, with the VAR's consent, and without obligation on the part of Autonomy, Autonomy should be conducting the subsequent discussions with the end-user.

2108. Dr Lynch, supported by Mr Hussain, presented this as the unobjectionable provision of voluntary assistance by Autonomy, with a plain and obvious and entirely proper commercial rationale; as he put it in his first witness statement:

> *"Many of the end-users were repeat customers with whom Autonomy had other business, customers often buying the same product over and over again. It would make no commercial sense for Autonomy not to continue discussions with the end-user. If a customer bought millions of dollars' worth of products from the company every year, the company would not stop talking to them because a particular sale for a couple of hundred thousand dollars had been made to the reseller who was going to on-sell it to that customer. The reseller was on risk and owned the relevant product. In order for the sale to be recognised, Autonomy was not required to step out of the picture altogether. In fact, Autonomy's continued involvement in the deal could increase the collectability of the debt from the reseller, I understand, based on my discussions with Autonomy's Finance Department, and the auditors at the time, that there was no issue from an accounting perspective with Autonomy voluntarily providing assistance to the reseller in closing an end-user deal, or leaving the reseller to complete the sale alone. That made perfect sense to me."*

2109. However, in all this the impression given by the Defendants was that the objective and expectation was that the ultimate sale to the end-user would still be expected to be made by the reseller fulfilling the purchase order from the end-user, and that Autonomy's involvement was to facilitate that result. The Claimants' point, to which I shall return, was that (apart from the two 'exceptions' identified and discussed above which, on analysis, were not really exceptions at all) in not a single case was that the result: any end-user deal which eventuated was not only entirely negotiated by Autonomy but also a direct deal with Autonomy.

Sales to VARs of hosted products

2110. Dr Lynch contended that the fact that some of the impugned VAR sales (such as the deal with Capax Discovery for end-user Kraft, "VT3") involved sales of licences of products likely to be (and arguably only capable of being) used in the hosted environment, and in particular, Digital Safe, indicated no difficulty either: the licence remained a valuable asset and its sale was substantive and legitimate, so that revenue could be recognised from it accordingly whether or not it could be brought on site by the end-user.

2111. Further, Deloitte were aware that some of the reseller deals were of licences in connection with hosting arrangements and do not appear to have objected to the recognition of revenue in respect of them.

Transactions going direct

2112. The Defendants submitted that the Claimants had no basis for calling into question, or seeking to draw adverse inferences from, the recognition of

revenue at the point of the VAR sale in certain cases where thereafter a direct deal was made between Autonomy and the end-user, and the revenue received on the end-user sale would either be remitted to the VAR or the VAR would be treated as released. They presented this as an occasional occurrence, and never Autonomy's objective in continuing to be involved with the end-user (see above). According to the Defendants, only

> *"very few transactions became direct deals; based on a historical average of 2009/2010, fewer than one transaction per quarter".*

2113. The Defendants also made the point that the occasional replacement or reversal deal of that sort was not objectionable, either generally or in the view of Deloitte. That is illustrated by Deloitte's approval of the introduction into certain VAR purchase orders in Q4 2010 of a clause expressly contemplating, permitting and providing for direct end-user sales.

2114. Dr Lynch additionally drew attention to Deloitte's own Defence document in the proceedings against it brought by the FRC, where as regards the new clause, it was stated as follows:

> *"The clause therefore envisaged that on occasion Autonomy might enter into a transaction with a VAR, but subsequently deal directly with the end-user. In those circumstances, once Autonomy had received payment from the end-user, it would pay a fee to the VAR.*
>
> *The audit team concluded that this new clause did not affect revenue recognition. Upon the VAR entering into the agreement, it had accepted the risks and rewards of ownership. It had possession of the licence, and the ability to sell it to the end-user without requiring the involvement of Autonomy. It was legally required to pay Autonomy. The existence of the new clause did not change the analysis in respect of IAS 18 paragraphs 14(a) and (b) as the risk remained with the VAR, unless a direct deal was concluded with the end-user, a risk the VAR could not control."*

2115. However, the Defendants acknowledged that, by reference to two VAR deals with MicroTech in Q4 2009 where there was a direct sale to end-user (ManuLife and Morgan Stanley), Deloitte highlighted a concern about "revenue reversals" in its Audit Committee reports for Q1 2010 and Q2 2010. Deloitte had warned that *"significant evidence of such further revenue reversals may jeopardise management's ability to recognise revenue at the point of sale to the reseller*".

2116. As again I return to later, the problem for the Defendants is that the truth is that direct deals and revenue reversal were or became characteristics of end of quarter deals transacted for revenue purposes, rather than occasional unexpected expedients. Their contention that *"very few transactions became*

direct deals; based on a historical average of 2009/2010, fewer than one transaction per quarter" (which was based not, of course, on an analysis of impugned VAR transactions but on a comparison with the entire corpus of VAR deals) did not really address the point that 19 out of 30 of the relevant deals went direct, and in the rest, no end-user deal eventuated at all: see paragraph 2152 below.[273]

VARs as 'designated payees' in respect of direct deal between Autonomy and end-user

2117. Another post-transaction event referred to by the Claimants with suspicion, but which the Defendants contended was unobjectionable and certainly not such as to upset earlier revenue recognition, is where there was a "designated payee". That is to say, transactions where the end-user was either asked *ad hoc* for, or (from 2010 onwards) a contractual term in the end-user sale between it and Autonomy required, payment of the purchase price to the reseller as Autonomy's designated payee.

2118. A variant was in the VAR transaction with DiscoverTech for end-user Citigroup, in the context of which the end-user wished to deal directly with Autonomy and Deloitte noted:

> *"Autonomy resolved the issue with the VAR by entering into a tri-party agreement, whereby Citigroup paid Autonomy in full and Autonomy then paid the VAR their margin based in the amounts due [i]n the original PO".*

2119. I have considered whether Deloitte's approval of that sort of mechanism suggests acceptance by them, or apparent acceptance by them so as to falsely reassure the Defendants, of a more common-place practice of 'direct deals', so as to invalidate or neutralise the professed concern about direct deals which became an issue in 2010. I have concluded that it does not.

2120. It appears to me that Deloitte always regarded a direct deal as the exception and the designated payee provision as designed to cater for the exceptional case where notwithstanding negotiation and conclusion of an end-user deal by the VAR, the end-user nevertheless insisted on completing with the software producer/supplier (namely, Autonomy). That was never so in any of the direct deals following impugned VAR sales.

2121. Autonomy occasionally cancelled a reseller's obligations by providing a credit note. Again this was a post-transaction event, which the Defendants maintained could not have affected the original recognition of revenue. In circumstances where the end-user had chosen to deal directly with Autonomy so that Autonomy received payment for the software from the end-user it was a sensible business decision to cancel the reseller deal. The alternative would

[273] The Defendants made the point that the impugned VAR deals were selected by the Claimants as showing this characteristic and were not a representative sample of the universe of VAR deals entered into by Autonomy. That is so: but that does not address the point that the selection included the large end of quarter transactions entered into to generate revenue to make good shortfalls from other sources.

have been to leave the reseller on the hook despite Autonomy having taken the customer opportunity. This would have been damaging to the relationship.

2122. Of course, where an end-user contracted with Autonomy, the revenue was not recognised twice. Revenue was not recognised again on the end-user sale: Deloitte understood this and was satisfied. The Defendants adopted substantially the same approach and argument in the limited number of cases where the end-user was told to make payment to the reseller to permit the reseller to make payment to Autonomy.

2123. Dr Lynch summarised the position as he saw it in his first witness statement:

> *"From my vantage point, Autonomy's reseller relationships operated without any major difficulties. I had a general understanding that, on occasion, reseller deals departed from the conventional pattern of "Autonomy sells to reseller/reseller sells to end-user", for example, where an end-user decided to purchase from Autonomy directly. HP has cherry picked 37 transactions to try to identify deals of this nature. In those circumstances, Autonomy had a couple of options. We could say to the end-user that we would not supply them and direct them to the reseller, but we would avoid doing this if it was likely to cause problems in our relationship with the end-user, particularly if the end-user was a repeat customer. I had a general awareness that Autonomy could take the commercial decision to supply to the end-user and unwind the reseller deal or designate the reseller as Autonomy's payee, although I would not have been the person at Autonomy to make that decision. In those circumstances, Autonomy would generally pay the reseller a MAF for their lost margin on the end-user deal. I now know that this happened in a handful of cases, a very small percentage of the overall total of sales to resellers. Autonomy could also have held the reseller's feet to the fire and demanded payment from the reseller, even though Autonomy had sold directly to the end-user and received payment from the end-user. The consequence would be that Autonomy would have double the cash and double the revenue on the sale of the same software, which would seem inappropriate. That rarely made commercial sense. Either way, it was a commercial decision for Autonomy at its discretion. Despite these complications, it was my understanding, then and now, that Autonomy's products were almost always sold to and used by the end-users, and that cash was received against the revenue recognised (whether from the reseller or the end-user)."*

2124. In the Taylor Wessing/Deloitte letter of January 2015 it was stated:

> *"Deloitte did in fact carefully consider and review each of the situations in which a contract with a VAR was cancelled and the deal was completed directly with the end-user, in order to*

> *understand the reasons for the cancellation and entry into a direct contract with the end-user. This included ensuring that the sale had not been double counted. With the exception of the Capax / Kraft transaction, which had no impact on the 2009 year end results, and which was the first time Deloitte had seen such a cancellation, these transactions were also all raised with the Audit Committee.*
>
> *The fact that the earlier transaction with the VAR was ultimately cancelled does not however change the fact that in each case it had been appropriate to recognise revenue on the original contract between Autonomy and the VAR. In each case, as <u>at the time of considering the original transaction with the VAR</u>, there was a binding and non-cancellable agreement in place between Autonomy and the respective VAR, and under that contract the risks and rewards had passed to the VAR.*
>
> *It is not appropriate in such circumstances to reverse the earlier recognition of revenue. The revenue was properly recognised. Circumstances then changed. As Deloitte was ultimately satisfied with the circumstances of the cancellation of the original contract with the VAR, there was no need to consider the need for Autonomy to adjust and re-issue the previous quarter results."*
>
> [Underlining was in the original]

2125. The Defendants also relied on Mr Welham's confirmation in cross-examination that the fact that Autonomy cancelled a deal with a reseller did not impact on the original revenue recognition, because at the time of the reseller deal there was a binding and non-cancellable obligation on the reseller to pay. It is of some note, however, (and I shall return to this) that Mr Welham added the following caveat, which though a reference to it was provided in a footnote, was given less prominence in Dr Lynch's closing submissions, and sought to be minimised by a statement which I do not accept (and see paragraph 2153 below) that *"in the event the instances of direct deals were rare"*:

> *"…it is important to highlight though what we did highlight to the audit committee at the time, which is that clearly if you have a continuing trend of that, then you build up a bank of evidence that would suggest that you wouldn't recognise revenue on the full 100%…."*

Write-offs

2126. The Defendants eleventh example of a *"neutral feature"* which did not call into question revenue recognition was what they described as the occasional need to write off debts owed by resellers. They ascribed this need to the occasional vicissitudes of business (*"Bad debts arise in business"*), and such an event long after the VAR deal in question could not sensibly affect the accounting analysis.

2127. This is another matter to which I shall have to return, not least because (a) Mr Welham made clear that credit notes and write offs would sound a warning note if they were other than occasional; (b) most of the write-offs were not "occasional" but done in the *"Dark Period";* and (c) bad debt write-offs and credit notes resulted in $107.9 million of sums accounted for as owed to Autonomy and counted as recognised revenue being removed from its balance sheet.

Not suing debtors

2128. The Claimants alleged that the reseller was not "pursued" for outstanding debts. The Defendants maintained that the documentary record in fact shows that resellers were chased up frequently; and that in any event, it is not commercially surprising if Autonomy did not race to court when there was an outstanding debt from its partners. Deloitte monitored debtors and recognised that resellers' repayments were being delayed in circumstances where the end-user deal had not closed, or amounts had not been received (see below).

Reseller unwillingness to pay

2129. Nor, the Defendants submitted, was there anything in the Claimants' complaint that there were instances when Autonomy did not pursue the VAR for the outstanding debts in the meantime (and there were cases, which the Defendants depicted as occasional, in which it had made clear that it would not pursue the debt).

2130. Whereas the Claimants relied on this as referable, not to unexpected commercial exigencies, but to the understanding between Mr Egan and the relevant VAR that there was no intention or expectation of the VAR ever being required to pay out of its own resources, the Defendants characterised this as ordinary commercial positioning and behaviour, which did not signify that the VARs were not on risk. They also relied on the fact that Deloitte monitored debtors and aged debt: and did not make any objection on that score.

2131. Almost as a throw-away additional point, the Defendants suggested that *"in point of fact the documentary record show that VARS were chased up frequently"*: but although there were a few examples showing this, chasing letters were sent by members of the Finance Department who were unaware of the arrangement in place, and who were told to desist by those in the know (and see paragraph 2153(4) below).

MAFs

2132. I have referred above to the payment of MAFs but it is convenient to bring together the strands of the Claimants' case in this regard before addressing the Defendants' case that they were a yet further example of *"neutral features"* distorted and incorrectly criticised by the Claimants.

2133. The Claimants' case on the payment of MAFs was not that they were intrinsically abnormal or inherently objectionable, but that none of the VARs did anything substantial to merit their payment. The Claimants focused especially on the following aspects:

(1) The absence of any contractual provision for, and yet the expectation on the part of VARs of, payment of a MAF, which the Claimants submitted illustrated how such arrangements between Autonomy and its VARs were established informally, outside the "four walls of the contract", and despite express contractual provisions precluding side arrangements. This, they submitted, demonstrated a readiness on the part of both Autonomy and the VARs to keep important parts of their agreement out of the written contract. They also made the more general submission that the fact that this important element of the overall arrangements was not expressed in the VAR agreements demonstrated that it would be wrong to assume that there is anything improbable about the notion that the parties might have agreed upon important matters that were not recorded in the written contract.

(2) Secondly, the Claimants also criticised some of the payments of MAFs to resellers when in the event a direct deal was done and the VAR deal was, in effect, replaced. They contended that in such circumstances, the VAR had in reality done nothing to warrant reward (still less provided any marketing assistance), had been released from any risk or obligation, and deserved no reward. They submitted that this was a concrete illustration of *"Autonomy…buying revenue again"*.

(3) Thirdly, the Claimants relied on instances where (as was for example the case in the Capax Discovery/Eli Lilly transaction) the VAR's entitlement to a MAF was recorded in writing in terms which (they submitted) did not fairly and honestly represent the true reason for the payment, thus further demonstrating Autonomy's propensity dishonestly to misrepresent the true nature of its payments and inducements. The Claimants provided as an example a letter drafted by Mr Kanter in the course of the Capax Discovery/Eli Lilly transaction which they contended was typical and stated as follows:

> *"To formalize our prior discussion, Autonomy Systems Limited ("Autonomy") and Capax LLC ("Referral Partner") agree to the terms and conditions of this letter agreement ("Agreement") as follows:*
>
> *Referral Partner will: (1) introduce Autonomy into the deals with Eli Lily ("End-user"); (2) obtain quotes from Autonomy on behalf of the End-user; and (3) work with the End-user to assist in executing purchase orders and contracts with Autonomy.*

> *Autonomy will: (1) pay Referral Partner commissions in the amount of US$629,000, as a result of Referral Partner's direct and proximate participation in the account; (2) deliver products directly to End-user; and (3) use reasonable efforts to provide mutually agreed upon sales assistance. …"*

2134. The Claimants submitted that the letter was plainly designed to give the impression that it was formalising prior discussions as to what role the VAR would perform – and that, in return for the performance of that role, Autonomy would pay the commission; and that was so although by the date of the MAF letter quoted above (30 September 2010), it was perfectly clear that Capax Discovery had not done any of the things the letter said it had agreed to do. The Claimants gave another example of an email from Mr Kanter approving a MAF on the Capax Discovery/FSA transaction, in which Mr Kanter stated that he had been impressed by Capax's contribution whilst in fact knowing there had been none.

2135. The latter point posed two rhetorical questions, one bearing on impropriety and the second bearing on the Defendants' knowledge of it:

(1) First, why, if Autonomy had nothing to hide in relation to the reasons for this payment, Mr Kanter chose to resort to relying on a fictitious basis for the payment and the documents under which they were made. In connection with the payment of MAFs the Claimants also contended that the indications of what they characterised as pre-textual emails seeking to describe why a MAF was being paid indicated the substantive impropriety of the payment.

(2) Secondly, whether it is likely that they were intending to mislead Dr Lynch, or whether it is more likely that there was a discussion in which Dr Lynch knew and understood the real reason why the VARs were being paid and that it was better dressed up.

2136. The Defendants submitted that the Claimants' premise, and the assumptions they had made and required their experts to make, was that (a) any impugned VAR transaction was improper and thus (b) any MAF that was paid, being (on that assumption) a fee paid in return for some improper revenue recognition, was another facet or demonstration of impropriety; but there was no basis for these assumptions, and nor was the inference justified.

2137. The Defendants submitted that, contrary to the Claimants *"circular"* approach, the starting point should be, and the evidence was, that the VAR did take on risk, for which it expected reward; and that in those circumstances, the payment of a MAF was a sensible and appropriate course where for one reason or another the reseller which had gone on risk could not otherwise make its margin (for example, where Autonomy and the reseller eventually made a direct deal, and the VAR lost its customer).

2138. It was not disputed that MAFs were common in the software industry, usually in the range of 10% to as much as 30% of the deal price and something HP

itself employed. The Defendants reminded me especially that Deloitte were aware that Autonomy paid MAFs, including in situations (such as the Kraft deal addressed in more detail below) where the deal went direct and the reseller was being compensated for lost margin.

2139. Mr Welham confirmed that he did not think that the fact that fees were paid to VARs for their agreeing to become fully on risk for VAR deals was improper ; and he confirmed in his evidence that if a deal had gone direct and Autonomy thereafter agreed to pay the reseller a commission or payment fee notwithstanding that the risk they had undertaken would no longer eventuate since they had been released, this was essentially a commercial decision for Autonomy and did not affect revenue recognition.

2140. The Defendants also drew my attention particularly to the following passage from the Deloitte memo on changes to Autonomy's VAR agreements:

> *"In 2009, four deals with Morgan Stanley ($4.6m), Eli Lilly for ($6.1m), Kraft ($4.3m) and Manufacturers Life Insurance ($1.1m) that were initially sold through VARs Microtech (Morgan Stanley and MLI) and Capax (Kraft and Eli Lilly) were eventually done through Autonomy, Kraft was signed with Autonomy in Q4 2009 and the remainder were signed in 2010. In 2010 two deals initially sold through Discover Technologies (Phillip Morris International $2.9m, Citigroup $5.5m) were eventually done direct with Autonomy.*
>
> *In a normal deal, the VAR signs with Autonomy, then signs a (slightly higher value) deal with the end-user, making a margin on the way. However, when the end-user decides to sign direct with Autonomy, then there is a contract between the VAR and Autonomy, a contract between the end-user and Autonomy, but no contract between the VAR and the end-user. In this situation, per the explicit terms of the VAR agreement, the VAR would owe Autonomy for the deal signed; without having a customer.*
>
> *The issues were resolved in a way that ensured the VAR retained the margin they would have got, had the end-user actually signed with them. In the example of Citigroup, Autonomy resolved the issue with the VAR by entering into a tri-party agreement, whereby Citigroup paid Autonomy in full and Autonomy then paid the VAR their margin based on the amounts due on the original PO.*
>
> *These events highlighted the issue of risk for the VAR's – relying only on the goodwill of Autonomy towards its resellers*

> *rather than formal legal recourse was deemed to be too high, and hence the clause was agreed."*

2141. Mr Egan's evidence was that MAFs were justified in either context, and that he saw nothing wrong with paying them. In cross-examination he said this:

> *"Q. Now, from time to time Autonomy paid what was called a marketing assistance fee to a VAR, do you remember that?*
>
> *A. I do*
>
> *Q. And that was a way of compensating the VAR for its agreement to take on the liability to pay?*
>
> *A. Correct."*

2142. From Mr Baiocco's and other VARs stated perspective, there was nothing untoward, unusual, or still less improper, in being paid for taking on the risk which the VAR agreements unequivocally imposed on the VAR. Mr Baiocco saw it as a fee for the risk undertaken, sometimes in effect as a guarantor (as it was put in the Goldberg Segalla letter) (and see paragraph 2024 above). If he was released because a direct deal was substituted that position was historic, but nonetheless real; and the VAR should properly be compensated for lost margin. He never read or cared about the various letters that referred to MAFs.

2143. The Defendants' answer to the second point in paragraph 2133(2) above was thus that the MAF was in each case in effect a fee for standing as guarantor, and thereby enabling Autonomy to recognise revenue at a time that was commercially advantageous to it; and that there was nothing wrong with that. But the converse of the Claimants' argument against a MAF was circular insofar as it depended on establishing impropriety but likewise the Defendants' argument was premised on the VAR actually being at real as distinct from nominal risk (which, of course, the Claimants submitted was never the case).

2144. The Defendants did not substantively address the Claimants' first point (see paragraph 2133(1) above) as to the absence of any contractual provision for payment of a MAF and what that demonstrated as to the parties' real attitude to the "entire agreement" clause and the prohibition of any side agreement or understanding. I recognise that neither such a clause nor such a prohibition precludes uncovenanted payment; but the convention of payment of a MAF does resonate with the alleged convention that the VAR would never be called on to fulfil its obligations.

2145. As to the two questions raised in paragraph 2135 above, the Defendants sought to dismiss as *"an overblown forensic point"* the Claimants' criticism of the various 'MAF letters' and the suggestion that, by referring to the VAR as a *"Referral Partner"* and stating that the payments were for *"direct and proximate participation in the account",* they were apt and designed to mislead. Dr Lynch contended that the letters were in standard form for a MAF

and not bespoke; each contained language which was properly usable, even if not entirely suited to the particular case, and also contained language imposing a restriction on competition from the reseller, which was of value to Autonomy, supporting their substance.

2146. In other words, the Defendants' answer was that there was no intent to disguise: the explanation (use of a standard form) was more prosaic. But that does not answer the email referred to in paragraph 2134 above; nor to my mind, what happened in various of the transactions, including the impugned VAR sale for end-user FSA. Thus:

(1) In his email (sent to Mr Hussain and Mr Egan, dated 6 October 2010 subject *"Capax"*) Mr Kanter stated:

> *"Having been impressed with Capax's contribution to the FSA transaction, I am comfortable that they have earned a marketing assistance fee in line with our standard terms. I have prepared the attached to document properly the transaction. Please can I have your views."*

Mr Egan responded *"Agreed"* and Mr Hussain responded *"ok"*.

(2) The impression given was of a specially produced draft recording the particular transaction and of a payment in exchange for a contribution to the end-user transaction with the FSA.

(3) Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that although he was not involved in the transaction, he did know that Capax Discovery *"were doing a lot of the work to actually show the technology and use it for FSA and that would be a very helpful contribution"*. However, there is no record in the evidence of Capax Discovery having done such work in 2010 and Dr Lynch accepted that if there was none, his assertion would fall.

(4) The letter sent to Mr Baiocco by Mr Kanter dated 6 October 2010 which was in similar terms to one sent in respect of the Eli Lilly sale (see paragraph 2133(3)), described Capax Discovery as Autonomy's *"Referral Partner"* and recorded that Capax Discovery was to introduce Autonomy into deals with the FSA; obtain quotes from Autonomy on behalf of the FSA and assist in executing purchase orders and contracts.

(5) Mr Baiocco's evidence (which was not challenged, and which I accept) was that Capax Discovery *"did none of these things; and I never discussed any of this with Autonomy"*. In further unchallenged evidence, which I also accept, he stated:

> *"In actual fact, we did not make any attempt to license Autonomy software to the FSA or participate in setting the terms of the license that I understand Autonomy sold to the FSA"*.

2147. The Claimants made the further point that in opening they had especially sign-posted that they wished to cross-examine Mr Kanter about the MAF letters (amongst other things), and were deprived of the opportunity to do so because Dr Lynch then decided not to call him. They invited the inference that Mr Kanter was not called because (a) he could give no honest explanation of the misleading way in which the MAF letter agreements were drafted and (b) he would have implicated Dr Lynch. As to (a), I prefer to approach the matter on the simple basis that I have been left to determine the matter on the basis of the balance of probabilities without the benefit of any contrary evidence from Mr Kanter, or any verification of an innocent explanation. On the evidence available, and in all the circumstances, I consider that it is more likely than not that the letter was in crafted (and not template) terms, and was intentionally misleading. I return to (b) later.

2148. As will appear from my assessment of individual impugned VAR transactions later in this judgment, the FSA example was typical of the payments of MAFs made to "friendly" VARs, with variations as to the manner of payment according to whether or not any end-user eventuated. As will be seen, their payment was a pattern; the justification set out in the letters sent to VARs to document their payment was invariably included as a pretence to the reasons for their payment; and that pretence was kept up to both the Audit Committee and Deloitte.

Summary of Defendants' position

2149. In the round, the Defendants sought to present a position that even if in many instances of impugned VAR sales Autonomy was involved in negotiations with the prospective end-user, Autonomy's objective was always voluntarily to assist the VAR to obtain and close a contract between the VAR and that end-user; and that even though there were occasions on which the culmination of the negotiations was that the end-user preferred to contract directly with Autonomy, none of this revealed anything such as to indicate that for the purposes of IAS 18.14, *"the risks and rewards of ownership of the goods"* had not transferred to the VAR, nor signified that Autonomy retained *"managerial involvement or effective control over the goods sold"* to *"the degree usually associated with ownership."*

2150. They ascribed the various ways in which VARs were released from liability as part of the ordinary course of commercial dealings necessitated by unexpected commercial exigencies.

2151. Dr Lynch also noted that for the vast majority of the impugned VAR transactions Autonomy did receive the cash. As stated in his written closing submissions, of the $176,400,000 of revenue which the Claimants allege in Schedule 3 of their Statement of Case was reported by Autonomy on those deals, Autonomy received approximately three-quarters in cash. The dispute, of course, was as to how such payments had been funded, though the Defendants rejected the Claimants' allegation that in no case had the VAR provided funds which did not originate from some transaction with Autonomy such as a 'reciprocal' or 'circular' transaction.

2152. As part of this presentation, the Defendants also sought to depict the direct contracts between Autonomy and an end-user, and the *"neutral features"* identified above, as occasional, and not part of any invariable or even standard 'pattern'. The Defendants did not really offer an answer if those features presented in a 'pattern', as was the Claimants' case that they did; and they offered nothing except assertion to the contrary, and reference without any evidence to it being atypical of an unidentified mass of VAR transactions which were not impugned, to contradict the evidence which emerged that in not a single one of the impugned VAR sales was the VAR actively involved in negotiating with the end-user, and in not a single one did a contract between the VAR and the end-user result. In every instance, any end-user contract was between Autonomy and the end-user, and in 11 out of 30 no contract eventuated at all.[274]

2153. Thus, and as in some instances already observed in the course of examining what the Defendants averred to be *"neutral features"*,

(1) Although the Defendants submitted that it would not prevent revenue recognition if materially all the interaction post-sale was between the end-user and Autonomy, they steered away from the reality that time and again, Autonomy was not assisting the VAR: it was excluding the VAR, and dealing exclusively with the end-user as if no VAR transaction had occurred.

(2) Linked to that, whilst the Defendants submitted, and Mr Welham agreed, that the prospect (or in the case of deals subject to the revised contract wording, express contemplation) that there might be a direct deal between the end-user and Autonomy did not prevent the risk being transferred to the reseller at the time of the deal, and nor did the occasional decision to deal directly at the insistence of the end-user, Deloitte warned the Audit Committee, and the Defendants appear to have appreciated, that the opposite conclusion would follow if in truth a direct deal was the intention and a routine or repeated result.

(3) The Defendants' assertion that the fact that in most cases a transaction between Autonomy and the end-user resulted made clear their awareness of the importance of the result in terms of the propriety of revenue recognition: the actual position, which was that no such transaction ever eventuated in the case of any impugned VAR transaction tells its own story against them.

(4) Dr Lynch's suggestion that *"in point of fact the documentary record shows that VARS were chased up frequently"* was obviously directed to buttressing the notion that Autonomy's behaviour did not depart from an ordinary commercial norm, with Autonomy doing what might be expected in the case of a reluctant payer. However, in the limited number of cases in which Autonomy did chase payment, the efforts were unsuccessful and not pursued; and, for example, when, in respect of the Eli Lilly transaction (VT4), Mr Baiocco complained on behalf of

[274] Though the Defendants made the same point as I have recorded in footnote 274 to paragraph 2116 above.

Capax Discovery that, contrary to his understanding of the basis of the VAR transaction, he was being pressed for payment before receiving any payment from Eli Lilly, Mr Egan interceded and the calls pursuing payment were stopped.[275]

(5) Whilst the Defendants submitted that the occasional cancellation of a VAR deal, and the issue of a credit-note and payment of a MAF to a VAR, did not necessarily impact on the original revenue recognition, Deloitte warned, and the Defendants appeared to accept, that if that became the norm or routine, again the assessment could well change. Their attempt to depict the issue of credit notes and very substantial write-offs on the basis that *"bad debts arise in business"* and to pass off the write-off and credit notes issued in the short *"Dark Period"* as a *"normal housekeeping exercise"*, reveals an acute consciousness of this; and the like applies to the cancellations.

(6) With particular reference to the write-offs made and the credit notes issued in the *"Dark Period"*, debts written off (as shown in Autonomy's main general ledger ("*DDS*") (included $2.3 million owed by MicroTech (VT13) and some $2 million owed by Realise (VT15) as well as £1.6 million owed by Sales Consulting (VT9) and £1.8 million owed by Red Ventures (VT19)) – the first two being transactions impugned by reference to a side agreement, and the latter two being "Collectability VARs). Ms Harris originally tried to claim that all of these debts had already been fully provisioned, so that the write-offs made "*no difference to profit and loss, it's just a balance sheet tidy-up exercise.*" However, when she was shown an analysis that made clear there had been no provision for Red Ventures or MicroTech, and only a partial provision for Sales Consulting, she had to accept that these were substantive write-offs, and no mere "*tidy-up*".[276] Other impugned VAR transactions that led to write-offs in the Dark Period, as shown in the same analysis included VT14 (£2.7 million net write off shown), VT17 ($1.7 million net write off shown), and VT22 ($1.1 million net write off shown). The list of credit notes included several credits to VARs, including Capax Discovery (through its parent company Capax Global), DiscoverTech and MicroTech, including (for example) $4 million in respect of VT25.[277]

My conclusion as to whether a pattern emerges and what is revealed

[275] See also my discussion of VT4 in the Schedule of Impugned VAR transactions attached to this judgment.

[276] As noted by the Claimants in their written closing submissions, she fell back on saying that the provisions in issue had been made in Q3 2011, and included in the $45.6 million of bad debt expenses recorded for the quarter. As she admitted, where provision is made in the quarter that does result in a charge to the P&L.

[277] The exact quantification of the amounts written off or the subject of credit notes in relation to VAR transactions was disputed. The Claimants gave a figure of $130 million for the total amount of the revenue *"clean up"* but accepted that only a proportion related to impugned VAR transactions. The Defendants appeared to accept that write-offs relating to impugned VAR transactions exceeded $15 million, and credit notes issued in respect of VARs impugned by reference to a 'side agreement' exceeded $18 million (in addition to credit notes of some $23.2 million in respect of transactions where Autonomy had cut out the VAR, dealt directly with the end user and was compensating the VAR).

2154. The Defendants accepted that the transactions did, for the most part, consistently evince the features identified by the Claimants. The real dispute was whether those features were *"neutral"*.

2155. Perhaps unsurprisingly, the Defendants could point to features which were not, in themselves, unusual. I accept that it is not unusual or objectionable, of itself:

(1) For a software seller to effect a genuine sale to a VAR at the very end of a quarter in order, for example, to avoid being squeezed on price by a prospective end-user hopeful of exploiting (entirely legitimately) quarter, half or year-end pressures on the software seller to get a better deal;

(2) For a software seller to effect a genuine sale to a VAR after failing to conclude a transaction with the end-user before the end of the relevant accounting period (as the Claimants conceded in their Reply and Mr Welham accepted);

(3) For the VAR, in the context of such a deal late in the quarter, to have no time to assess the status or prospects of an end-user sale, or even the identity of the end-user, otherwise;

(4) For there to be no negotiation on the VAR sale price where there was no real issue as to the prospective onward sale price (typically because of a standard price or price range for the software sold);

(5) For the VAR in certain instances to act merely as a fulfilment partner (usually when acting, as FileTek did, as an approved intermediary for end-sales to US government institutions such as USDVA) and not to add any real value beyond processing the paperwork;

(6) For the software seller to be involved with the VAR in negotiating an end-user sale (for example in the case of an established customer of the software supplier);

(7) For there to be occasions, though they would be rare, where the end-user decided it would only deal directly with the software supplier and some arrangement would have to be made with the VAR to ensure that it was not out of pocket and that Autonomy was not paid twice;

(8) For there to be occasions (again rare) where the end-user might be instructed by Autonomy to pay the VAR instead of Autonomy again to avoid double exposure or double recovery;

(9) For the VAR to be issued a credit note for similar reasons (though again this would be rare);

(10) For the VAR to be paid a MAF either as reward for its assistance or compensation (if a deal went direct) for lost margin.

2156. However, it is unusual, and both revealing and potentially objectionable:

(1) For the VAR to have no expectation at any time of any involvement at all in any discussions or dealings with the prospective end-user or any other potential end-user;

(2) For the VAR in fact to be entirely passive and cede entirely to the software seller all negotiations with the prospective or other end-user and to take no part in them;

(3) For the VAR not to expect to be consulted about the terms or even told of them (until after the event), or be party to any contract concluded by Autonomy with an end-user, or be involved in the delivery of software to such end-user;

(4) For the VAR routinely to agree to payment instalment dates for which it routinely made no apparent provision and failed to pay in time, as if they were never intended to have any actual effect[278];

(5) For the VAR not to be pressed or even reminded by the software seller about failures to pay on instalment payment dates;

(6) For the VAR to take on legal risk in an amount well beyond its ability as a practical matter to pay on the instalment dates;

(7) For the VAR to be dependent on the software seller to remit to it or credit it with the proceeds of the end-user sale, and, if no end-user sale eventuated, simply to await some other form of rescue by Autonomy;

(8) For a combination of the above to be typical of its largest VAR purchases from the software seller time and time again.

2157. Further, the Defendants efforts to validate the impugned transactions require careful scrutiny. In many instances, those submissions were premised on fact patterns which at first blush appeared similar to what in fact occurred but which were on analysis subtly but materially different. In other instances, the factual matters relied on by the Defendants were not established, or they were revealed to be either incorrect or confined to special situations.

2158. For example, it was submitted in Dr Lynch's written closing that the Claimants were mistaken in repeatedly questioning what services or value a reseller was likely to bring to the transaction, and that *"it would not matter if the reseller was not going to fulfil any role at all, other than purchasing the goods, going on risk for that purchase, and thereafter fulfilling the end-user's purchase order."* They placed reliance on the FileTek 'fulfilment only' transaction in Q3 2010 (VT18) as an exemplar of a standard form of VAR relationship in the industry. In this regard, the Defendants relied especially on Mr Szukalski's evidence in cross-examination to this effect, and his assertion that an agreement under which the VAR was required to do nothing at all after the VAR sale to it except 'fulfil' any end-user sale negotiated and contracted for by Autonomy was *"very common practice"*. But this carried no weight: Mr

[278] Mr Rabinowitz made the point in his reply that in only three of the 37 impugned VAR transactions did the VAR pay the licence fee by the due date, and in each of those three cases (VT5, VT23 and VT37) Autonomy had put the VAR in funds.

Szukalski was in no position to make such an assertion. FileTek carried on no business as a VAR[279], and (though he had worked for several software companies) Mr Szukalski had no evidenced experience of practices in reselling such as to give any credence to his view.

2159. Further, even in the FileTek transaction in Q3 2010 (VT18), which the Defendants promoted as the VAR deal which took the Claimants furthest,[280] there was no evidence that FileTek was intended to fulfil the end-user's purchase order except possibly in a nominal or mechanical sense and at Autonomy's direction. Mr Szukalski confirmed that FileTek's role was simply *"holding the paperwork for those 45 days* (i.e. pending closure of the USDVA end-user deal) *and in exchange we'd earn a certain margin on the deal…So that's what we were asked to do."*

2160. Neither in the FileTek transaction nor in any other of the impugned VAR transactions was the VAR to play an active role or do anything on its own behalf at all. Even the residual task suggested of fulfilling the end-user's purchase order was of no substance. If, in any instances, the VAR was left or required to 'fulfil' the purchase order (presumably by making available its access code) that would simply be at Autonomy's direction in fulfilment of Autonomy's contract and not its own, and all that was required to 'fulfil' the purchase order was delivery of the software; and that could be, and I would assume was, achieved electronically on Automater.

2161. Similarly, the Defendants again sought to illustrate their case by promoting the FileTek transaction as showing that even in this transaction the VAR always undertook real risk. They conceded that email exchanges between Mr Szukalski and Mr Loomis made clear that Mr Szukalski was given to understand by Mr Egan that there would be no real risk for FileTek. But they sought to make a virtue of the concession by also contending that even in that context, Mr Egan had made clear that any indication of his did not bind Autonomy and that FileTek's legal risk was unaffected. Further, they depicted what Mr Egan had said as soft-soap: all that Mr Egan had said was that (as Mr Egan put it in cross-examination) *"If, for some reason, the [USDVA] deal was not completed, Autonomy would use all efforts to find another end-user for the same software or some other way to make sure that FileTek would get paid and could then pay Autonomy."* This was referred to as "backfilling" and the Defendants sought to present it merely as in the nature of an assurance of co-operation to substitute a new end-user. "Backfilling" was simply a euphemism for Autonomy trying to establish a direct deal with another party; the question is whether Autonomy would have pursued FileTek (or any other VAR in the impugned VAR transactions) for the purchase price it had agreed to pay, and the answer is, in my judgment, plainly 'no'.

[279] Mr Szukalski told me in cross-examination that he had never wanted to do the deal because reselling was not part of FileTek's business at all, and he confirmed that FileTek had never resold Autonomy software. He had wanted Autonomy to use another company owned by the same person as FileTek called Centennial; but Autonomy had insisted on FileTek.

[280] Dr Lynch's written closing submissions stated that the evidence in respect of the FileTek transaction for end-user USDVA *"of all the reseller transactions...in fact takes the Claimants' case the furthest"*. That was a fairly transparent 'Aunt Sally'.

2162. What shone through the evidence, in my judgment, was that FileTek was given assurances which satisfied Mr Szukalski and Mr Loomis that FileTek would never in fact be called for the purchase price. That was, as it were, the "bottom line". Mr Szukalski admitted in cross-examination that but for those assurances, FileTek could not have proceeded: the amount of the deal was far above its ability to pay, and any real risk would have posed an existential threat.

2163. Thus, in important respects the impugned VAR transactions did not satisfy even the Defendants' formulation in paragraph 2155 above. On the contrary, the analysis that the argument necessarily occasioned demonstrated that the VARs did not expect to be nor were further involved with either the end-user or any onward sale, or indeed to do anything at all except co-operate with any arrangements that Autonomy might make to ensure that the VARs were not left *"on the hook",* and receive payment of a MAF which in most cases was the only real reason that the VARs were prepared to accept the legal risk.

2164. In my judgment, (a) the impugned VAR transactions manifest both aspects of the pattern which the Claimants have alleged and (b) the pattern provides further confirmation that in reality (i) the VAR sale did not impose any obligation on a VAR of any intended economic consequence (ii) the only real sale was where one eventuated pursuant to Autonomy's negotiations with an end-user, and (iii) the only source from which Autonomy ever expected any actual payment (otherwise than out of its own funds) would be an end-user sale.

Relevance of Deloitte's approval of revenue recognition

2165. In this context, as in all others, the Defendants relied on the approval given by Deloitte and the Audit Committee as showing that the transactions were within the margins of propriety and that, even if they were not, the Defendants were entitled to assume that they were.

2166. The Defendants instanced paragraphs 82 to 84 of a letter from Taylor Wessing LLP on behalf of Deloitte to Travers Smith LLP, written in response to a letter of claim setting out the basis for a claim in negligence by Autonomy (now controlled by HP) against Deloitte, where it was stated as follows:

> "*Deloitte did in fact carefully consider and review each of the situations in which a contract with a VAR was cancelled and the deal was completed directly with the end-user, in order to understand the reasons for the cancellation and entry into a direct contract with the end-user. This included ensuring that the sale had not been double counted. With the exception of the Capax / Kraft transaction, which had no impact on the 2009 year-end results, and which was the first time Deloitte had seen such a cancellation, these transactions were also all raised with the Audit Committee.*

> *The fact that the earlier transaction with the VAR was ultimately cancelled does not however change the fact that in each case it had been appropriate to recognise revenue on the original contract between Autonomy and the VAR.*
>
> *In each case, as* <u>*at the time of considering the original transaction with the VAR*</u>*, there was a binding and non-cancellable agreement in place between Autonomy and the respective VAR, and under that contract the risks and rewards had passed to the VAR.*
>
> *It is not appropriate in such circumstances to reverse the earlier recognition of revenue. The revenue was properly recognised. Circumstances then changed. As Deloitte was ultimately satisfied with the circumstances of the cancellation of the original contract with the VAR, there was no need to consider the need for Autonomy to adjust and re-issue the previous quarter results."*
>
> [Underlining as in the original]

2167. As foreshadowed above, however, what the Defendants' submissions did not grapple with was what was missing from the information available to Deloitte, and what they were not told, even when they raised concerns. This included, most importantly:

(1) Deloitte were never told or aware that it was never intended by either Autonomy or the VAR that the VAR would have any role or say in the negotiations with the end-user;

(2) Deloitte were never told or aware that in the negotiations between Autonomy and the end-user after each impugned VAR sale Autonomy was at best indifferent as to whether any sale to the end-user should be by the VAR or by Autonomy. Deloitte were left with the impression that 'direct' deals were exceptional rather than the planned norm, and were unaware, since Autonomy did not mention the VAR sale and appeared to be acting as principal, that the end-user would always be most likely to contract (if at all) with Autonomy as the person it had always dealt with and the supplier of the software;

(3) Thus, for example in the Kraft deal (see paragraphs 106 to 121 of the Schedule of Impugned VAR Transactions), Deloitte were never told or aware that the VAR had never been involved in any negotiations and a direct deal had always been envisaged; on the contrary, the purchase order which was the source of the information given to Deloitte stated in terms that (a) the end-user and VAR were anticipating entering into a license transaction with one another and that (b) any direct deal, though possible, was an *"unlikely event"*.

(4) Autonomy's response to Deloitte's expression of concern (in its Q1 and Q2 2010 reports to the Audit Committee) about a possible pattern of direct deals, and their warning that this might jeopardise Autonomy's ability to recognise revenue at the point of sale to the VAR, was to

represent in Q3 2010 (as was in Deloitte's Q3 2010 report) that there had been no further such direct deals; whereas in fact Autonomy had entered into a direct deal that very quarter (Q3 2010) with the FSA (VT10) which it concealed from Deloitte until much later.

(5) Deloitte were repeatedly misled by Autonomy as to the ability of 'friendly' VARs to meet out of their own resources the legal obligations they assumed, and they were unaware that such VARs were reliant upon the assurances given by Mr Egan that Autonomy would never require such payment and would engineer another means of funding the obligation.

(6) Finally, and in summary, Deloitte were never told, and certainly were not given any full or proper understanding, of the assurances given to the relevant VARs by Mr Egan, nor therefore of the shared understandings between the parties which rendered every impugned VAR sale artificial and/or merely a device to give the appearance of a transaction which would give rise to revenue whereas in reality it would never do so.

(6) The Defendants' knowledge of improper accounting

2168. That brings me to the issue of the Defendants' knowledge: in other words, whether the Defendants knew that the VAR transactions lacked substance, that the only real sale would be if and when one eventuated between Autonomy and an end-user, and that the recognition of revenue at the amount and time of the VAR sale was improper.

2169. Obviously, Mr Hussain was more directly and routinely involved than was Dr Lynch; and it is appropriate to deal with them each in turn.

Mr Hussain's knowledge

2170. The Claimants summarised in six points their case that Mr Hussain was well aware of the true nature of the impugned VAR transactions and their improper accounting treatment and presentation.

2171. First, Mr Egan's evidence was that it was Mr Hussain who was the architect and *"defined the parameters"* of the practice of using VARs for *"at risk deals"* or (as Mr Hussain called them) *"acceleration deals"* to accelerate revenue recognition[281]; and it was Mr Hussain who selected which deals, and in what amounts would be taken to a VAR, and which VAR to approach and who directed Mr Egan to give the assurances to the VARs that they would not be left *"on the hook"* or *"holding the bag"*.

[281] *"At risk deals"* were (in Mr Egan's terminology) sales to the VAR where the VAR had not yet agreed a sale with the end-user. Mr Egan explained in his witness statement that prior to 2008/9 Autonomy had frequently sold its software through resellers, but none was an *"at risk deal"*: Autonomy had always required the VAR *"to first obtain a purchase commitment from its customer, the end-user. Then, and only then, would we accept an order from the VAR for the relevant software."* The Defendants' case was that Mr Egan had confused the chronology and that Autonomy had routinely undertaken *"at risk deals"* once it had changed from US GAAP to IFRS accounting which permitted revenue recognition before "sell-through".

2172. Mr Egan added that Mr Hussain:

(1) gave him *"specific instructions to follow so that these deals would be accepted by Autonomy's auditors (Deloitte)"*;

(2) *"provided guidance to [him] regarding what was, and was not, acceptable to communicate in my conversations with VARs"*,

(3) *"laid out explicit rules about what could be offered as incentives to the VARs, what was required of the VARs, and what could not be part of any deal",*

(4) instructed him to say that it would be Autonomy which *"would continue its efforts to sell to the end-user"* and that "*the VAR was not expected to participate in these sales efforts",* and

(5) directed him to assure the VARs that, though nothing could be put in writing, *"if Autonomy was ultimately unable to close a deal with an end-user, there were various options that Autonomy had to "fix" the situation for the VAR so that it would not end up having to pay for the software from its own resources".*

2173. According to Mr Egan's evidence, Mr Hussain was thus well aware of the assurances given. Mr Egan accepted in cross-examination that, as far as he was aware, Mr Hussain was not involved in negotiations or discussions with VARs prior to any impugned VAR sales. However, when it was suggested to Mr Egan (by reference to one of the Capax Discovery sales) that it was *"just an arrangement between you and Mr Baiocco and it wasn't something that Mr Hussain knew about"* he was very clear and adamant in his insistence that he knew *"first-hand that Mr Hussain knew about it".* Furthermore, he told me that Mr Hussain:

> *"had much more interaction with the VAR after a deal, particularly if a deal required some form of unconventional conclusion; like if a deal ultimately had to be cancelled and dealt with in a different way, in those circumstances Mr Hussain was often more involved."*

2174. As indicated in the Introduction, Mr Egan's witness statement appeared to me to be over-lawyered; and he was, as also noted previously (see paragraph 1977 above), restricted in what he could say without peril, having agreed with the DoJ not to offer any contradictory evidence or arguments on pain of immediate prosecution without defence for breach. But when he gave his oral evidence (over a video-link, which was adequate) he struck me as substantially reliable in what he said about the institution and development of the *"at risk"* VAR selling programme and Mr Hussain's part in it.

2175. His cross-examination elicited answers supportive of the defence based on the notion that the arrangements with the VARs did not affect their legal liability to pay, and the transactions fell to be accounted for in accordance with their contractual definition. He agreed repeatedly and with enthusiasm that (a) his understanding was that what happened was legal because the assurances given to and understandings established with the VARs were not legally enforceable, did not in any way affect the VAR's legal obligation to pay and thus were not, as he understood it, "side agreements" in a legal sense, and (b) he saw nothing wrong in paying the MAFs as compensation for the VAR's agreement to take on the legal liability to pay. But his cross-examination did not, in my judgment, unsettle materially his account of the derivation, development and implementation of the post-2008 VAR *"at risk"* sales strategy.

2176. Secondly, it was the unchallenged evidence of Mr Welham that Deloitte was never told of the existence of any side agreements. As an accountant, Mr Hussain well knew that information about any side agreements or understandings needed to be provided to Deloitte. Indeed, Mr Hussain signed management representation letters to Deloitte confirming the absence of any side agreements. Given Mr Hussain's actual knowledge of Mr Egan's assurances to the VARs, it follows that Mr Hussain deliberately misled Deloitte.

2177. Thirdly, Mr Hussain knew, from his own close involvement in the transactions, that Autonomy did not intend the VAR to do anything to achieve an onward sale or to make payment from its own resources. Mr Hussain knew that Autonomy would continue to try to achieve a direct end-user deal, as though the VAR transaction had not happened.

2178. Fourthly, Mr Hussain was intimately involved in the steps taken to unwind the VAR transactions in accordance with the fundamental understanding that the VAR would never be left *"on the hook"* or *"holding the bag"*, as was his deputy, Mr Chamberlain.

2179. Fifthly, Mr Hussain was a qualified accountant. He can be taken to have understood that the effect of the oral agreements or understandings between Autonomy and the VARs and the parties' intentions in respect of the same was that which has been explained by Mr Welham, Mr Holgate and Mr MacGregor. There was no evidence from Mr Hussain to suggest that he made an innocent mistake about this.

2180. Sixthly, Mr Hussain's knowledge of the improper accounting for the VAR transactions is reinforced by his involvement in misleading Deloitte about the relevant facts. An example emphasised especially by the Claimants was his conduct after Deloitte had warned Autonomy management and the Audit Committee in its Audit Committee reports for Q1 2010 and Q2 2010 that a pattern of VAR agreements being replaced by direct sales to end-users might jeopardise Autonomy's ability to recognise revenue at the point of sale to the VAR.[282] Mr Hussain assured Deloitte, and Deloitte's Audit Committee report for Q3 2010 noted that there had been no further reversals of VAR transactions in the form of direct deals between Autonomy and end-users, thus supporting Autonomy management's policy of continuing to recognise revenue at the point of sale to the VAR. Yet Mr Hussain knew, but concealed from Deloitte and the Audit Committee, that in that very quarter (Q3 2010), another VAR transaction (namely VT10, Capax Discovery/FSA) had in fact been replaced by a direct agreement between Autonomy and the end-user. Mr Hussain plainly did this in order to avoid the consequences of which Deloitte had previously warned, namely that Autonomy's ability to recognise revenue at the point of sale to the VAR would be imperiled. This same phenomenon recurred in later quarters, right up until Autonomy's acquisition by HP, but Mr Hussain continued to conceal this from Deloitte.

2181. Further, Mr Hussain's knowledge of the falsity of the accounting treatment can be inferred from the numerous other respects and occasions in which Mr Hussain misled Deloitte about relevant facts, including as to the rationale for the reciprocal purchases that were made to put the VARs in funds to pay down their debt to Autonomy.

2182. I accept these points, which are in my judgment, amply illustrated and supported by a review of the individual impugned VAR transactions to which I turn below. In my judgment, Mr Hussain had 'guilty knowledge' of the artificiality of the impugned VAR transactions and their improper accounting treatment and presentation.

Dr Lynch's knowledge

2183. Mr Egan said Dr Lynch was not involved in dealings with VARs. He told me that he was not suggesting that he could give evidence about what Dr Lynch thought or knew. There was not the transaction-specific or direct evidence against Dr Lynch that there was against Mr Hussain.

2184. Nevertheless, the Claimants' case is that the body of evidence as a whole establishes Dr Lynch's knowledge of the artificiality and improper accounting of the impugned VAR transactions.

[282] Deloitte came to learn in the first half of 2010 of a small number of transactions that had been concluded between Autonomy and three VARs, which were later replaced by a direct deal between Autonomy and the end-users. The transactions where Deloitte knew that this had occurred were VT3 (Capax Discovery/Kraft), VT7 (MicroTech/Manulife), VT8 (MicroTech/Morgan Stanley), VT4 (Capax Discovery/Eli Lilly) and VT12 (DiscoverTech/PMI).

2185. First, they submitted that it is clear on the evidence that Dr Lynch had personal knowledge of many of the end-user negotiations and was well aware from the inception that, where no end-user deal had been executed by quarter-end, Autonomy used a VAR to recognise the revenue instead.

2186. Thus, for example, in relation to one of the very first impugned VAR transactions, Capax Discovery/Kraft (VT3), Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch on 25 September 2009, just before quarter-end, saying "*I have an idea on kraft*". Dr Lynch's omission to address this email, which was expressly pleaded, in his witness statement was characteristic of a notable evasiveness on all questions on the issue of his knowledge. His oral evidence in cross-examination was as follows:

> *"Q. Mr Hussain would have spoken to you to tell you what the idea was, yes?*
>
> *A. Well, there would have been some communication I assume, yes.*
>
> *Q. That idea, I suggest, which was the second line there, that idea, his idea on Kraft, was to use a value added reseller to take over the Kraft deal and so enable revenue to be recognised in Q3 2009, correct?*
>
> *A. I suspect so, yes."*

2187. He at first sought to deny any specific knowledge and asserted that he was *"generally not involved".* He then accepted that he would usually come to know, but that he would only *"find out what had happened once the dust had settled*". The following passage from his cross-examination captures this:

> *"Q. So you would have known, I think you're saying, at the latest very shortly after quarter end that there had been a deal with a reseller?*
>
> *A. Yes, I would probably have known -- again I don't know but I would probably have known shortly after quarter end. That's the most likely."*

2188. My impression was, however, that Dr Lynch was seeking, by this formulation by reference to a time by which he would have known of the transactions, to avoid accepting that he knew of their progress well before they were executed as VAR sales. I note also, for example, that on occasion, such as in Q1 2010, it was Dr Lynch who added the VAR's name to the revenue route-map for that quarter. I have concluded that Dr Lynch kept a careful eye on the transactions and was well aware of their progress, even if he may not always have recalled more than the headline amount involved. The principal factors that have led to my conclusion are summarised below.

2189. Email evidence confirms that Dr Lynch had a keen interest in the typically large VAR deals which became necessary to fill the gaps, and I do not accept that he only came to know of such matters after the end of the quarter. A comparison between revenue achieved and revenue forecasted was supplied regularly by Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch in schedule form; and the need for

recognised revenue would not have been lost on him. I do not accept his evidence that the situation was so frantic and *"dynamic"* that he had no time to keep track.

2190. The size of the deals, and their importance in the achievement of revenue forecasts, also would have been likely to capture his attention. It is highly unlikely that Mr Hussain would not have kept Dr Lynch carefully and continuously informed. In this regard:

2191. Many of the impugned VAR transactions were amongst the largest, by revenue, in a given quarter.

(1) As illustrated in the relevant slide, in each of Q4 2009, Q1 2010, Q3 2010, Q4 2010, Q1 2011 and Q2 2011, the disputed VAR transactions accounted, in aggregate, for over $20 million of reported revenue in that quarter, and they were key to Autonomy meeting its revenue and earnings per share targets.

(2) The pattern as regards the principal 'friendly' VARs in the Relevant Period is also striking and would surely have measured with Dr Lynch:

i. Capax Discovery entered into 10 impugned VAR transactions generating licence revenue of over $48 million. It did not enter into any other VAR transactions with Autonomy above $1 million.

ii. MicroTech entered into 9 impugned VAR transactions generating licence revenue of over $43 million. MicroTech entered into only one VAR transaction with Autonomy above $1 million (in an amount of $1.1 million), which is not impugned.

iii. DiscoverTech entered into 8 impugned VAR transactions generating licence revenue of over $39.5 million. It did not enter into any other VAR transactions with Autonomy above $1 million.

iv. FileTek's sole VAR transaction was for $10 million.

(3) The impugned VAR transactions accounted for 88% by value of Autonomy's VAR transactions above $1 million in the Relevant Period generally.

2192. Secondly, the Claimants submitted that though he professed to be unaware of the detail, Dr Lynch knew that it was not intended that the VAR would participate in the end-user negotiations.

2193. Again, Dr Lynch's evidence in cross-examination on this aspect struck me as contrived. Ultimately, he appeared to be taking a legalistic position that because the VAR had purchased the goods, and thereby acquired control of them, Autonomy could do nothing to stop it being involved in negotiations with an end-user for onward sale, and that it followed that anything done by Autonomy was at the behest of and in conjunction with the VAR and not

unilateral or exclusive of the VAR. But all this was theory and not reality, as I think Dr Lynch well knew.

2194. The reality, I have concluded, is that Dr Lynch would never have expected or tolerated a VAR taking over control of negotiations commenced by Autonomy with one of Autonomy's customers, and would have operated on the (correct) understanding that none of the VARs had the slightest intention or inclination to do so (being content to receive a large MAF for saying and doing nothing).

2195. I agree with the Claimants' contention that it would have been quite contrary to Dr Lynch's controlling nature to suppose that he expected a VAR to be involved in negotiations, which hitherto had been conducted by Autonomy alone and which in truth Autonomy expected to result in a direct deal (or no deal). That is supported by, for example, an internal email from Dr Lynch dated 7 August 2010 in the context of the USDVA end-user deal, which illustrates his own conception of the negotiations being entirely a matter for Autonomy and of vital interest to it. He reminded all concerned that this was *"the biggest deal in the quarter"*, that *"ALL of you own this"* and the responsibility was theirs to bring the end-user transaction to a successful conclusion. He required to be told about any problem in securing an end-user deal "*IN A F***ING MILLISECOND*" . I agree with the Claimants' point that the idea that Dr Lynch expected FileTek – a small company which had never previously acted as a VAR (whether for Autonomy software or otherwise), never spoken to the USDVA before, and knew nothing about the negotiations hitherto – to take over or participate in those negotiations is simply not credible.[283]

2196. Thirdly, the Claimants submitted that once it is concluded that Mr Hussain knew of, and indeed authorised, the giving of assurances to the VARs by Mr Egan, the natural inference is that Mr Hussain shared what he knew with Dr Lynch. Dr Lynch did not contend that Mr Hussain concealed material facts from him. I agree, and the inference is further supported by a more general consideration of the way Autonomy was controlled and directed, as I have described in the introduction.

2197. In my judgment, it is likely that Dr Lynch would have worked out for himself, if he was not the architect of the strategy, the basis on which the VARs were contracting with Autonomy, taking on apparently unconditional liabilities for millions of dollars on or around the last day of the quarter, with no insight into the end-user's requirements, and with no intention of themselves seeking any onward sale to the end-user. The balance of probabilities is, in any event, firmly in favour of Mr Hussain having told Dr Lynch of the reality that the VARs had proceeded only on the basis that they would never be left *"holding the bag"*.

2198. I consider and find that Dr Lynch was aware that it was not intended or expected that the VAR would ever be called upon to pay out of its own

[283] It is fair to point out, as the Defendants have reminded me was the case, that as at 7 August 2010 there was no VAR yet involved in this deal: and see my discussion of VT18 in the Schedule of Impugned VAR transactions. The point, however, is that made in the last sentence of paragraph [2195].

resources, and that instead, the understanding was that if and when no end-user sale eventuated, Autonomy would either arrange some form of funding or credit note, or failing that, simply write off the apparent debt. That is what happened: and I would expect Dr Lynch to have been aware of that, either as part of his general supervision or because it would have been reported to him by Mr Hussain or another in the cabal.

2199. I accept in that regard the Claimants' submission that it is improbable (the Claimants said *"inconceivable"*) that Autonomy released its legal entitlement to be paid millions of dollars by the VAR without first obtaining Dr Lynch's authorisation, or, at the least, being entirely confident of his approval, if not on a transaction-specific basis, then at least on the basis of Dr Lynch's approval of a general policy. In this context, the Claimants pointed to the fact that neither of the individuals whom Dr Lynch supposed were involved in the decision, namely Mr Hussain or Mr Kanter, had been called to give evidence, and nor was Mr Chamberlain (who became increasingly closely involved); they invited the court to infer that they could not have given truthful evidence to support Dr Lynch's case.

2200. The Claimants also submitted that Dr Lynch was personally involved in many of the steps taken to ensure that no VAR would be left "holding the bag", and, for example, that he:

(1) Personally gave approval for Autonomy to make purchases from the VARs in order to put them in funds to pay down their debt to Autonomy, such as the purchase of the ATIC licence and the Federal Cloud Platform from MicroTech, the DiscoverEngine purchases from DiscoverTech and the further StorHouse purchases from FileTek; and

(2) Knew of and authorised the further steps taken by Mr Hussain in Q3 2011 to make the VARs whole prior to HP's takeover of Autonomy by means of very considerable write-offs and credit notes to forgive or set off their indebtedness.

2201. I deal in more detail with Dr Lynch's personal involvement in the impugned VAR and reciprocal transactions which I address in the next main section of this judgment.

2202. As to (2), in cross-examination, Dr Lynch sought to distance himself from these steps by asserting that they were a frolic on the part of Mr Joel Scott[284], without authorisation from the UK team. He was adamant when cross-examined that he:

[284] The "whistleblower" who had been Autonomy Inc's Chief Operating Officer and *"came forward"* in May 2012.

> *"…was not involved at all in any programme to make VARs whole, and [he] was not involved in any of the write-down or reversal decisions…[and] in fact…didn't know about them at the time."*

2203. Dr Lynch contended that Mr Scott's contrary evidence in the US criminal proceedings, which was in evidence before me under a hearsay notice, should be given no weight. He made the point that Mr Scott had been granted immunity by the US authorities (for which he implied suitably supportive evidence for the prosecution was the price) and had not provided a witness statement or attended to be cross-examined in these proceedings. Further, he suggested that contemporaneous emails did not support Mr Scott's position that he had been directed to do what he had done by Mr Hussain, directly or through Mr Chamberlain.

2204. I have not felt able to accept Dr Lynch' argument. The documents make clear that the exercise of writing off debts was overseen from England by Mr Chamberlain, Mr Hussain's deputy, and a member of the small group or cabal of managers with and through whom Dr Lynch managed and directed the Autonomy group (see paragraphs 1093 to 1094 above). Ms Harris agreed that she would have expected Mr Chamberlain to have discussed write-offs with Mr Hussain. I consider it much more likely than not that Mr Hussain was involved; and I agree with the Claimants that Dr Lynch would have been kept informed, and such large write-offs probably needed his approval.

2205. Fourthly, as to Dr Lynch's knowledge that the accounting treatment of the VAR transactions was incorrect and improper, the Claimants submitted that Dr Lynch had approved payment of MAFs on the terms of MAF letters which sought to justify the payments by reference to the purported performance by the VAR of services which Dr Lynch must have known the VAR was never intended to or never did provide. The Claimants cited as typical the MAF letter (dated 30 September 2010) for the Capax Discovery/Eli Lilly transaction, which included the following:

> *"To formalize our prior discussion, Autonomy Systems Limited ("Autonomy") and Capax LLC ("Referral Partner") agree to the terms and conditions of this letter agreement ("Agreement") as follows:*
>
> *Referral Partner will: (1) introduce Autonomy into the deals with Eli Lily ("End-User"); (2) obtain quotes from Autonomy on behalf of the End-User; and (3) work with the End-User to assist in executing purchase orders and contracts with Autonomy.*
>
> *Autonomy will: (1) pay Referral Partner commissions in the amount of US$629,000, as a result of Referral Partner's direct and proximate participation in the account; (2) deliver products directly to End-User; and (3) use reasonable efforts to provide mutually agreed upon sales assistance. …"*

2206. The Claimants invited me to read this and other similar MAF letters as plainly designed to give the impression that it was formalising prior discussions as to what role the VAR would perform, and that, in return for the performance of that role, Autonomy would pay the commission. They described this as simply a false paper trail.

2207. Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that he did not know whether he approved this letter; but to address the obvious difficulty that it was a characteristic of Autonomy's true relationship with the VARs in the impugned VAR transactions that they certainly were not intended to and never did have any *"direct and proximate participation in the account"*, it was contended in his written closing that this was *"standard form language and was capable of being used"* and also that the *"agreement also had forward-looking obligations including a restriction on competition from the reseller."* His closing submissions dismissed the Claimants' point as *"a forensic rather than real one."*

2208. The Claimants also relied on the fact that the MAF letter agreements were drafted and signed by Mr Kanter, a member of Dr Lynch's inner circle. During the oral opening, the Claimants signaled that this would be a matter for Mr Kanter's cross-examination: "*We will have to ask Mr Kanter when he comes to give evidence on whose instructions he does this.*" In the event, Mr Kanter did not give evidence. The Claimants were thereby deprived of the opportunity to cross-examine Mr Kanter. The Claimants submitted that it should be inferred that Mr Kanter was not called because (i) he could give no honest explanation for the misleading way in which the MAF agreements were drafted and (ii) he would have implicated Dr Lynch.

2209. Plainly it would have been interesting to hear any explanation from Mr Kanter. However, it seems to me likely that he would simply have reiterated Dr Lynch's explanations of the MAF letters and their content. As explained in paragraph 2147 above, I prefer to determine the issue without relying on the inferences contended for by the Claimants and simply on the basis of the balance of probabilities revealed by the evidence available to me.

2210. I consider it plain that the MAF letters did not reflect the reality: the reality was that the VARs were not expected to do anything, and the MAFs were the reward for their co-operation and assumption of a risk which, though in my view not intended to be enforced, was nevertheless legally enforceable.

2211. I accept and find that the MAF letters were contrived in order to give the paper impression, especially to Deloitte, that the payments were not for the VARs' co-operation in accepting legal risk and in signing confirmation letters that this legal risk was not subject to any side agreement, but for their contribution to the onward sales.

2212. The Claimants' sixth point was in two parts: (a) that Dr Lynch worked closely with Mr Hussain, a qualified accountant, and must have understood from him that Autonomy's accounting was wrong, which is why Dr Lynch *"supported the steps taken by Autonomy's management to mislead Deloitte and the Audit Committee about the true facts";* and (b) that Dr Lynch himself had a sufficient grasp of accounting and the accounting standards to know that recognising revenue on the impugned VAR transactions was wrong. Both parts relate to and invite a determination of the question whether in the case of the impugned VAR transactions Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch did know that, on the true facts, revenue recognition was improper.

2213. I address that question by reference to the individual impugned VAR transactions in the Schedule of Impugned VAR Transactions that accompanies this judgment. However, it is convenient to mention now four points advanced by the Claimants in support of their case as to Dr Lynch's own understanding of the accounting standards which are not fact-specific and are of general application, and which raise an important question as to what really was Dr Lynch's subjective understanding by which of course he must be judged:

(1) The first is that Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he knew that the correct question to ask was whether Autonomy had transferred to the buyer the significant risks and rewards of ownership of the goods.

(2) The second is that Dr Lynch accepted that, if the reseller/VAR only had to pay for the product if the end-user bought the product, the transaction did not qualify for revenue recognition, and that *"the way [he] would interpret it"* the reason was that in that scenario the reseller had not taken on the unconditional risk of having to pay for the goods it had bought.

(3) Although Dr Lynch asserted in his oral evidence that he understood that any assurance had to be legally enforceable in order to affect revenue recognition, that assertion should be rejected. Dr Lynch accepted that Deloitte never told him that everything turned on what the written contract said. Dr Lynch also accepted that he was familiar with the concept of substance over form.

(4) Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he knew that there was *"some sort of managerial control test to do with having control of the goods"* and *"that the customer had to have control of the goods"*.

2214. In my view, it is fair to add that in giving those answers Dr Lynch had made clear that he was not an expert and could only speak to his *"limited understanding"*. It is also fair to add that in his answers Dr Lynch never stated expressly (as the Claimants stated he had) that his understanding was that *"any assurance had to be legally enforceable in order to affect revenue recognition"*. It was the Claimants who (both in their questioning and in their written closing submissions) repeatedly added the word "legally" before the word "enforceable" in restating Dr Lynch's answers. Dr Lynch in his answers seemed to me to shy away from expressly asserting that only legal enforceability sufficed. He preferred to instance examples of what would not suffice to constitute an impermissible side agreement or assurance. The following answer exemplifies how he sought to explain his approach:

> *"A. …if someone gives someone general industry patter about, you know, "We look after our partners", but that is not enforceable, then I don't think that's a problem.*
>
> *Q. What if it goes beyond that and it's an assurance that that will not happen, in other words you will not be left –*
>
> *A. That's my point. If it's enforceable then I would be in agreement with you, if it's not enforceable then I'm not."*

2215. It is of fundamental importance to distinguish, as sometimes to my mind the Claimants failed to distinguish, between on the one hand, Dr Lynch's own genuine but subjective understanding of the applicable accounting principles and standards and, on the other hand, an objective determination of their meaning (though the latter is also necessary). It is therefore necessary to establish what he meant on this important point.

2216. In my judgment, Dr Lynch was aware that something less than a legally enforceable agreement would ordinarily suffice. His point was that he thought that the provisions of every one of the VAR agreements expressly stating that no side agreement would be legally enforceable did effectively negate any purported side agreement or assurance. The following exchange later in his cross-examination, focusing on the difference between substance and form, seems to me to illustrate this:

> *"Q. Are you familiar with the concept of substance over form?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And so if the substance of the transaction reflects the fact that there is an arrangement, regardless of what form is, regardless of what the legal term says, if the substance is there is an arrangement under which the VAR is not at risk, you would have known that revenue couldn't be recognised?*
> *…*
> *A. If obviously the whole thing was a sham, then I agree, but if it's a real situation, surely one has to look to the contract to see what it actually is.*

Q. I think you're accepting you don't just look at the contract, you look at substance over form. The contract may suggest the form, but if in commercial substance there is a wider arrangement, then that's what you look at, correct?

A. Again, I feel like we – you know, I'm in a room full of lawyers, you're asking me what legal terms are, and then there's a roomful of accountants. I agree with you that if you had a contract but the reality was the whole thing was cooked up and was a complete sham, then obviously. But in any practical situation, when there's a real contract and it's clear, then surely that is the commercial reality.

Q. I'm asking you for your understanding at the time?

A. I think that's my understanding at the time that I'm giving you.

Q. You say if you had a contract but the reality was the whole thing was cooked up and it was a complete sham. That's not what I'm suggesting. I'm suggesting you had a contract and a side arrangement attached to that contract which makes it clear that the VA R is not on risk, so that the substance –

A. Yes, but then you have to look at the legal agreement and if it says that whatever you're calling a side agreement is worthless and therefore not enforceable, then the legal term is showing that you have a real deal."

2217. That was the nearest that Dr Lynch came to asserting that only a legally enforceable side agreement would alter the substance of the transaction in accounting terms. It is of obvious importance to the VAR case more generally to determine whether that was truly his understanding and belief (as is his case) or whether in truth he appreciated that the substance of the arrangements had to be viewed as a whole, had to be determined according to the real intentions and expectations of the parties, and that determination would, in turn, be determinative of its proper (and mandatory) accounting treatment. That is to my mind, indeed, the single most important question to be answered on this part of the case.

2218. It seems to me that Dr Lynch persuaded himself that the contractual wording gave sufficient protection for what he and Mr Hussain had decided needed to be done in order to preserve Autonomy's reputation as a company which set and met growing revenue forecasts, but did appreciate that words on the page of a contract could not change reality. He knew that a transaction had to be accounted for on the basis of its substance rather than its form, and that substance had to be measured according to the true intentions and expectations of the parties. If, as I find, he knew that the VARs were proceeding on the basis that whilst the contract would be enforceable it would never in reality be enforced, he must have appreciated, as a highly intelligent and experienced CEO, that the substance of the transaction was different from its legal form.

2219. In short, in my judgment, Dr Lynch knew that the contractual wording did not define the contracting parties' relationship but rather obscured the substantive reality that the VARs were placeholders taking on a commercially illusory legal liability in expectation (though there was no contractual provision for one)[285] of a substantial fee.

2220. The seventh and last of the points relied on as establishing the fact and extent of Dr Lynch's knowledge was again in two parts: (a) that Mr Hogenson had specifically raised concerns with Dr Lynch about Autonomy's accounting for VAR transactions, which Dr Lynch had purported to have fully investigated but in fact had succeeded in smothering; and (b) Dr Lynch contributed to and approved Autonomy's letters to the FRRP, following and prompted by the Hogenson episode, which were highly misleading, as he must have known.

2221. In relation to (a) in the preceding paragraph 2220 it is the Claimants' case [addressed further in paragraphs 2232 to 2289 below] that rather than investigate dispassionately the concerns expressed by Mr Hogenson, Dr Lynch's reaction was to push them into the long grass, and then find a reason to eject him from the company at the earliest possible opportunity. The Claimants contended that this is not how an honest CEO would have reacted, and that his conduct betrayed his appreciation that Mr Hogenson's concerns, if not smothered early, would reveal the truth. I address Mr Hogenson's concerns and how they were dealt with in greater detail later.

2222. It is sufficient for present purposes to note that those concerns were, for the most part, well-founded; that the way they were dealt with was contrived to ensure their dismissal without proper investigation; that Dr Lynch was closely involved in that process; and that the "Hogenson episode" further demonstrated that the accounting treatment of the VAR deals might not survive scrutiny of what Mr Hogenson set out.

2223. Similarly, the Claimants contended that Dr Lynch approved Autonomy's response (dated 3 March 2011) to the FRRP's letter dated 2 February 2011 seeking information about a number of the VAR transactions, particularly Capax Discovery/Kraft (VT3) and Capax Discovery / Eli Lilly (VT4), and that the response was materially misleading in a number of respects. They submitted that Dr Lynch can only have sought to mislead the FRRP if he appreciated that stating the truth would have caused them concern and/or undermined the presentation and accounting treatment of the transactions under review.

2224. As to (b) in paragraph 2220 above, Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he appreciated that Autonomy's response to the FRRP needed to be accurate and complete. It was apparent from Mr Kanter's email of 2 March 2011 attaching a draft that he had looked at Autonomy's draft response and was content with it in final form, as he ultimately accepted in cross-

[285] Further undermining any argument that the relationship between the contracting parties was exclusively defined by the contract.

examination. It is, as I find later in this judgment, equally clear that the responses given to the FRRP were fundamentally misleading.

2225. I address in more detail the FRRP's requests and Autonomy's answers at paragraphs 2290 to 2336 below. It is sufficient for present purposes to note that a central theme of Autonomy's responses was that it was unusual (indeed *"almost unique"*) for Autonomy, having sold a licence to a VAR for ostensible on-sale to an end-user, to enter into a direct agreement with the end-user. As the Claimants contended that was highly misleading, as Dr Lynch (as well as Mr Hussain who was also involved) must have known.

2226. As at 3 March 2011, this had happened 13 times. Far from being *"almost unique"* it was an invariable characteristic of every one of the impugned VAR transactions which resulted in any end-user deal at all. Deloitte, believing there had been only isolated incidents, and in ignorance of the extent of the practice or pattern, had warned in their Q2 2010 Report to the Audit Committee that *"significant evidence of such further revenue reversals may jeopardise management's ability to recognise revenue at the point of sale to the reseller."* The Defendants knew full well that the practice was incompatible with revenue recognition.

2227. For the reasons elaborated later, I accept the Claimants' case that if Dr Lynch (and indeed Mr Hussain) had honestly believed that Autonomy's accounting treatment of the impugned VAR transactions was proper, they would have had no reason to withhold the true facts from the FRRP, let alone actively mislead the FRRP through false statements and implications. That the Defendants were prepared to draft and approve letters to the FRRP (part of the FRC, and in effect its Regulator) in these terms reinforces the conclusion that they appreciated that Autonomy's accounting treatment of the impugned VAR transactions was improper.

Summary of my conclusions on the VAR case

2228. It may be helpful to summarise now the overall conclusions I have reached on the Claimants' VAR case. I confirm that these conclusions, though stated now to assist digestion of my analysis of the individual VAR transactions that follows in the Schedule of Impugned VAR Transactions that accompanies this judgment, have been reached after my assessment of each of the 37 impugned VAR transactions.

2229. In summary, in my judgment:

(1) The impugned VAR transactions follow a pattern, of which the characteristics were that (a) they were all undertaken right at the end of a quarter (b) they were all directed and/or encouraged by Mr Hussain with the objective of making good shortfalls (compared with quarterly forecasts) on the recognised revenue from other activities; (c) their value of course varied, but all were of considerable size; (d) almost all were negotiated by Mr Egan; (e) in every case, an enforceable VAR

sale contract was made or treated as made before the end of the quarter so that the revenue from it could be recognised in the accounts for that quarter; (f) in every case, the reseller confirmed that there was no side agreement or understanding such as to qualify their contract; and (g) in every case the relevant software was delivered electronically on Automater; but equally, (h) in every case and however transmitted between the reseller and Mr Egan (or whoever was arranging the VAR sale on behalf of Autonomy) the shared intention and expectation of the contracting parties was that the contractual terms, though they had to be seen to be agreed and confirmed, would not ever be enforced, so that the reseller would not seek to use, or negotiate with the prospective end-user to sell, the software (unless and until so directed by Autonomy) nor would Autonomy require payment of outstanding payment obligations until the VAR could pay either out of the proceeds of an end-user sale negotiated by Autonomy or funds from a transaction arranged to generate funds for the reseller to use to pay it and that instead and in the meantime, (i) the VAR's role would be to accept a nominal legal risk (sometimes called *"holding the papers"*) but otherwise do nothing further (save if and as required by Autonomy), in return for which (j) the reseller would be paid a MAF, purportedly for its services as a reseller but in fact as a *quid pro quo* for its passive role. No reseller was to be left *"on the hook"* or *"holding the bag"* (as the understanding and intention that all should be insulated against their legal liability was variously described).

(2) Deloitte did not see the pattern; alternatively Deloitte preferred to accept reassurances that ostensibly negated its true purpose. In any event, neither the approval of Deloitte nor that of the Audit Committee was fully and properly informed, and the fact of it does not avail the Defendants, who knew that.

(3) The strategy which the pattern was designed to implement was to ensure that Autonomy continued to appear to be a company which met its forecasts out of the sales of IDOL and related software, and thus maintain Autonomy's market following and share price even in difficult trading conditions after the financial crisis in late 2008 and early 2009. The VAR strategy became of additional importance (and increased in volume) after the supplier of hardware originally relied on by Autonomy, EMC drew back from its association with Autonomy. VAR sales, like hardware sales, were increased or decreased according to the revenue shortfall at the end of each quarter. There is a correlation between the throttling back of revenue from hardware sales and the acceleration of revenue from VAR sales in and after Q3 2009 (and most markedly in Q4 2009 and Q1 2010) which speaks to the objectives of both.

(4) I see no reason to doubt Mr Egan's evidence that the strategy was first conceived by Mr Hussain; and it also seems clear from that evidence and other documentary evidence that it was directed by Mr Hussain and

encouraged and presided over by Dr Lynch, both of whom knew that the transactions were not being accounted for according to their true substance, and both of whom knew that the recognition of revenue on the sale to the VAR was improper, and that the accounts were thus false.

(5) Both Defendants thus had "guilty knowledge" of untrue or misleading statements in Autonomy's published information for the purpose of FSMA and are liable accordingly. The Claimants' VAR case succeeds.

2230. That conclusion, and the strategy informing and the pattern revealing the impropriety of the impugned VAR transactions, is supported and illustrated in the Schedule of Impugned VAR Transactions that accompanies this judgment in which I address each of the 37 impugned VAR transactions in turn. (I have incorporated these in a Schedule to try to make this judgment a little more manageable. But I should stress that the findings there should be taken to have the same intended status as if in the main judgment itself.)

2231. The variations illustrate the adaptability and incremental development of the pattern. The growing number of impugned VAR transactions which were never followed by any end-user sale at all, and where Autonomy had, in effect, to make good the money it had paid to the VAR whilst leaving the VAR with the benefit of the MAF, provided the most lurid illustrations of the use of the strategy to generate recognised revenue at very considerable ultimate cost.

The 'Hogenson episode'

2232. I have mentioned the *'Hogenson episode'* briefly in various places above. It follows incidentally from my conclusion on the VAR case and the individual impugned transactions (including all those which caused Mr Hogenson concern and prompted his inquiries) that Mr Hogenson's questions and concerns about the way Autonomy accounted for VAR transactions were justified.

2233. Before addressing each of the impugned VAR transactions to illustrate further the pattern identified by the Claimants and which I have accepted, I turn to consider in more detail the 'Hogenson episode'. Partly this is in deference to the detailed submissions made by the parties. Partly it is because an understanding of the way Mr Hogenson's concerns were dealt with assists an understanding of the questions raised by the regulators after the episode. And partly it is because the way Dr Lynch dealt with the concerns (which, as will appear, included the sacking of Mr Hogenson) seems to me to fortify my conclusions on the issue of Dr Lynch's knowledge.

2234. Although the Hogenson episode gave rise to no claim, it was treated by the Claimants as the most telling demonstration of the fundamental dishonesty of the Defendants and their knowing participation in the improper transactions and accounting which had led to the Claimants' losses. They concluded the separate chapter they devoted to the episode in their written closing submissions as follows:

> *"The Court should find that the explanation for the Defendants' conduct is that they knew that Mr Hogenson was on the scent of fraud and were determined to get rid of him, come what may."*

2235. An earlier passage identifies who was involved:

> *"Dr Lynch's reaction, in concert with Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain, was to take all steps necessary to undermine, discredit, retaliate against and ultimately eject Mr Hogenson from the company. This is compelling evidence that Dr Lynch felt threatened by Hogenson's allegations, because he knew them to be well-founded."*

2236. The Claimants also and more generally relied on the spotlight shed on them by the Hogenson episode as having provoked Autonomy suddenly to shift away from VAR transactions and the impugned 'reciprocal transactions' and to resort to other different (but so the Claimants contended, equally objectionable and surreptitious) means of enabling it to appear to generate recognised revenue and cover shortfalls in actual software sales.

2237. In particular, the Claimants pointed to a sudden decline in VAR transactions after Mr Hogenson had raised his concerns, accompanied by a sudden increase in *"pure hardware"* sales (from $11.8 million in Q1 2010 to US $31.1 million in Q2 2010), together also with an acceleration of hosting revenues through the sale of licences (which rose to $32.5m in Q2 2010).

2238. Mr Hogenson had been well regarded in Autonomy. He had been Vice-President, Finance at Interwoven Inc before its acquisition by Autonomy in 2009 and had made rapid progress in Autonomy. Although Dr Lynch said his title of 'CFO in the Americas' was overblown and that he was really an operational manager, he was described by Mr Anthony Bettencourt (as he was then) (in June 2009) as *"spot on in the details, digs into the revenue and takes this all very seriously"* and by Mr Hussain as *"Definitely worth keeping, trustworthy and revenue driven"*.

2239. In Q2 2010, Mr Hogenson emailed Dr Lynch (dated 23 June 2010 but in fact sent on 22 June according to West Coast/Pacific time) stating that he had become concerned that Autonomy might have engaged in a number of VAR transactions, and at least one of what the Claimants label reciprocal transactions, which had been wrongly accounted for, leading to a material misstatement of revenue in Autonomy's published information.

2240. The introduction to the email carefully set the context: explaining that the concerns it expressed followed on from a review of financial accounts and account reconciliations across all business units in the Americas which Mr Hogenson had instructed the newly consolidated Autonomy Americas finance team to undertake in Q2 2010.

2241. Mr Hogenson expressed these concerns as follows:

> *"During this review I became concerned that Autonomy may have engaged in multiple material transactions with resellers of our software where the available information suggests that we may have materially misstated revenue and income within our reported financial statements in 2008, 2009 and Q1 2010. The evidence that I have gathered suggests that members of your senior management team and other employees may have been engaging in seven and eight figure transactions with resellers where 1) there was no end-user and the reseller does not have the ability to make the payments under the agreement; 2) there appear to be resellers with related party relationships on revenue transactions; and 3) there appear to be barter transactions where the economic benefit on both sides of the transaction appears to be materially overstated."*
>
> [Underlining, for emphasis, supplied by me]

2242. Mr Hogenson went on to say that he considered this to be *"a qualifying disclosure made in good faith based upon the evidence currently available to me"* (which was no doubt important to him because that categorisation of the disclosures insulated him under California law from adverse employment repercussions). He requested:

> *"a meeting with the audit committee prior to the release of Autonomy's Q2 2010 financial statements to review these matters and ensure that material misstatements, if any, are corrected prior to releasing future financial statements"*.

2243. That initial email gave no particulars or examples: it mentioned no specific deals, counterparties, dates or transactions. However, Dr Lynch might be expected to have appreciated the seriousness of a concern about potential wrongdoing by senior management, especially when expressed by a senior employee with finance management responsibilities. It was also clear that Mr Hogenson wanted a meeting with the Audit Committee.

2244. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he understood that Mr Hogenson was expressing concern about potential wrongdoing by management and (from the request to meet with the Audit Committee) that Mr Hogenson wanted to escalate those matters above Dr Lynch's head. He accepted also that this was *"a very serious allegation."*

2245. Dr Lynch's first answer to the concerns raised, however, was that, far from being a genuine whistleblower, raising concerns in good faith to ensure that Autonomy's financial statements did not include inaccuracies capable of misleading the market, Mr Hogenson's letter *"out of the blue"* was prompted by another objective: to deflect attention away from serious process problems with Autonomy's payroll systems, which had resulted in a substantial fraud, in his own department, which he feared could put his future at Autonomy in jeopardy.

2246. The Defendants based this suggestion principally on the fact, revealed by email exchanges shortly before Mr Hogenson's email to Dr Lynch late on 22 June 2010, that an issue had arisen, which should have been caught during the reconciliation process which Mr Hogenson had directed upon becoming CFO in the Americas, about certain discrepancies in relation to Autonomy's US payroll systems (which it was part of Mr Hogenson's job to oversee). The Defendants contended that what Mr Vaidyanathan described in an email to Mr Hogenson and Mr Chamberlain dated 22 June 2010 as *"more payroll stuff crawling out of the woodwork!"* (which Mr Vaidyanathan reported he was going to investigate in detail in San Francisco the next day) was the catalyst for Mr Hogenson's sudden late email to Dr Lynch.

2247. I do not accept this. By 22 June 2010, the problem was identified and needed review; but contrary to the Defendants' case no serious process problem had yet been revealed. Furthermore, Mr Hogenson's concerns as expressed in his 22 June email to Dr Lynch were of longer standing, and I was not persuaded that they were not honestly held. I am satisfied that when he raised them with Dr Lynch, he did so in good faith and not for any collateral purpose. I am satisfied also that, whether or not there had been a payroll fraud in Mr Hogenson's department (in which it was not suggested Mr Hogenson was at all involved), that was not a basis for not treating his concerns properly.

2248. I am satisfied, however, that Dr Lynch instead determined to do his best to push Mr Hogenson and his concerns into "the long grass"; and instead of seeking to facilitate access to Autonomy's Audit Committee he sought to put obstacles in the way.

2249. A considerable amount of evidence was put forward to show a very detailed sequence of events, and factual intricacies on which the Claimants made repeated submissions that Dr Lynch was lying about the substance of the matter and lying about matters of fact in the process he adopted after receipt of the letter. There were curiosities and instances when I cannot accept Dr Lynch's account.

2250. For example, Dr Lynch said that after receipt of Mr Hogenson's initial email, he contacted Mr Kanter and subsequently tried to get in contact with Mr McMonigall, then the senior member of the Audit Committee, before finally having a phone call with Mr Hogenson himself. Dr Lynch said that, during this conversation with Mr Hogenson, "*I asked him which members of management he was referring to and he told me Mr Hussain and Mr Egan*". He had not mentioned this in his witness statements and I doubt that this is accurate. In fact, the documentary evidence suggests that Dr Lynch consistently warned Mr Hogenson against identifying specific wrongdoers. It would be inconsistent with Dr Lynch's own email dated 24 June 2010 to Mr John McMonigall, in which Dr Lynch had reported that Mr Hogenson "*refuses to name*" the wrongdoers. Dr Lynch's subsequent suggestion, to seek to explain the email, to the effect that he had relayed the two names to Mr McMonigall in advance of sending this email, and that he had refrained from stating the names in the email itself for fear of leaks, was not persuasive. It might, I suppose, have been given credence if Mr McMonigall had confirmed it; but Mr McMonigall could

not attend for undisclosed medical reasons; and no witness statement was provided under hearsay notice.

2251. However, since it is not necessary or possible to delve deeper, I shall assume that either there were factual details which resolved the explanation or that this was a failure of recollection. Even in a judgment of this length, it would be disproportionate to rehearse all the details of this and other instances put forward by the Claimants; and it is not necessary, since even on the assumption that the inconsistency was apparent but not real for whatever reason, the conclusion I have reached on the substantive issue is that the Hogenson episode as a whole further demonstrates that the Defendants did know that the VAR transactions impugned in these proceedings were concocted means of revenue acceleration. I can summarise the salient events and features as follows.

2252. It is apparent that Dr Lynch forwarded Mr Hogenson's email of 22/23 June 2010 to Mr Kanter soon after its receipt, without any explanatory message (which may suggest an earlier telephonic explanation), but attaching a draft response, replete with spelling mistakes characteristic of Dr Lynch.

2253. It seems that Dr Lynch also tried to get hold of the senior member of the Audit Committee, Mr McMonigall, initially without success because Mr McMonigall was offshore sailing. Dr Lynch could not recall exactly when he had first managed to speak to Mr McMonigall; but it seems that he had done so by 24 June 2010 (and see paragraph [2269] below). Dr Lynch's evidence was that he also spoke to Mr Knights at Deloitte; and an email dated 28 June 2010[286] from Mr Knights to Mr Hogenson, Mr Knight and Mr Mercer, promising to respond to Mr Hogenson's concerns *"directly to the Audit committee…when we have finalized our review"*, supported that.

2254. At 5pm on 23 June 2010, and after some small amendments to the draft he had attached in his email of that morning to Mr Kanter (presumably reflecting their conversations after that), Dr Lynch sent an email, with the finalised draft letter attached, to Mr Hogenson, copying in Mr Kanter.

2255. The letter expressed surprise about the concerns Mr Hogenson had generally identified, and asked that *"as a first step"* more information, identifying particular transactions of concern, should be provided. Whilst confirming that *"it is clear that in any case you are acting in good faith and I appreciate your efforts"* (thus affording Mr Hogenson the "whistleblower" protection under California law that he had wanted), Dr Lynch also raised an issue as to whether the concerns might be based on a misunderstanding of differences between US GAAP and IFRS, or partial information, stating:

> *"In order to provide an accurate statement of the questions as any part of any review, it is important to quickly ascertain whether your concerns have arise [sic] due to:*

[286] (which was not referred to in any closing submissions but which was drawn to my attention by the Defendants in commenting on an earlier draft of this judgment).

> *a) Misunderstanding of IFRS tests versus US GAAP tests;*
>
> *b) The fact that (as you correctly state) you have access to only half of the jigsaw puzzle and whether other pieces have already been given to the auditors and Audit Committee (which, as you state, you have not been a part of) and they have taken them into account and already made suitable decisions;*
>
> *c) An accounting policy weakness;*
>
> *d) False information being provided to Autonomy or you have information Autonomy does not have which changes its current view; or*
>
> *e) The fact that matters you raise have already been identified and considered as a failing by the Audit Committee and have been addressed."*

2256. Dr Lynch also identified particular areas which he suggested required further elaboration and evidence, and in particular Mr Hogenson's apparent concerns (as stated in Mr Hogenson's initial email) about (a) there being *"no evidence of sell-through by a reseller"*; (b) the use of VARs with *"an inability to pay";* (c) what Mr Hogenson had called *"Related Party Transactions"*; and (d) *"Overstated barter deals."* Of course, on the conclusions I have reached, Dr Lynch knew the answers already, as did Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain.

2257. However, Dr Lynch warned against:

> *"involving Sushovan and the rest of the finance team to preserve the integrity of the review. Thus please do not discuss this matter with them."*

2258. He also emphasised the need for speed and invited a response by close of play, stating:

> "*in order to quickly get a prima facie analysis of the situation I suggest we start with Q1 2010 as the large transactions in that quarter are fresh in the minds of those involved. Please by return can you list the deals you have concerns with along with the reasons and Andy and I as a first step will investigate what information was known and considered already but [sic] the auditors and share this with you"…*

2259. Lastly, Dr Lynch sought to reassure Mr Hogenson that he was *"maintaining an open mind"* and that *"[i]f once we have compared the missing pieces we still have issues we will rapidly take this to the next level"*; but he also sounded a warning:

> *"I would ask that until we have performed the next step that the language you use is a little more moderate as until we confirm your*

> *concerns are valid and not just an artefact of partial information I would not want to inadvertently run the risk of accusing the innocent as emails have been known to escape. I would suggest you use the usual encryption."*

2260. It is now clear that within minutes of sending the email attaching that letter, Dr Lynch also telephoned Mr Hogenson from his mobile telephone. Dr Lynch had not mentioned the call in his witness statements, and there was no evidence of it in the trial bundles. When he was first cross-examined about that telephone call, the Claimants questioned him with evident scepticism as to whether it had taken place at all. However, Dr Lynch's recollection of there being a recording of it in disclosure proved to be correct: a recording was found showing that the call had commenced at 17:06.

2261. In summary, Dr Lynch:

(1) Reiterated the point made in his letter that the concerns might reflect a misunderstanding of the important differences between US GAAP and IFRS;

(2) Warned against the danger of making an accusation of dishonesty against anyone without very careful checking, especially under English law, to which Mr Hogenson responded that he had worded his email very carefully *"not to accuse anybody, just suggest that the evidence provides information around"*;

(3) Suggested that the most important thing was to *"make sure that we've understood all the things and dealt with all the possibilities"*, and asked Mr Hogenson to provide a few examples *"to start with"* and to determine whether they showed any real problem;

(4) Asked Mr Hogenson whether he was *"happy with this as an approach"* to which Mr Hogenson replied that he thought *"it's a fair approach, absolutely."*

2262. With hindsight it seems to me to be clear that in fact the approach was not intended to be "fair": it was intended to promote Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter's strategy of keeping control of the process and what the Audit Committee was told.

2263. Late in the evening on 23 June 2010, and in compliance with Dr Lynch's rather peremptory request, Mr Hogenson sent a letter responding to Dr Lynch's email earlier that day and giving more factual detail about, and examples to illustrate, his concerns in each of the areas identified by Dr Lynch. He sought to tie these examples in to the provisions of IAS 18.14. He also reiterated at the commencement of his letter his *"desire to speak directly with the Audit Committee prior to the release of the Q2 2010 financial statements."*

2264. Mr Hogenson identified the following concerns, each of which I have found to be justified in this judgment:

(1) The Capax Discovery / Eli Lilly deal ($6.3 million), on the basis that there was apparently no end-user and the reseller not having the ability to make the payments under the agreement;

(2) The MicroLink acquisition, as being between related parties without a proper valuation; and

(3) Purchases from FileTek, on the basis that they appeared to be barter transactions where the economic benefit on both sides of the transaction appeared to be materially overstated.

2265. There followed a telephone conversation in which Dr Lynch probed for more details and emphasised that *"sell through"* (that is an end-user deal) was not required under IFRS accounting (unlike US GAAP with which Dr Lynch supposed Mr Hogenson was more familiar). Dr Lynch also promised to provide more detail on the FileTek fair value point. The call concluded with Dr Lynch saying:

> *"Alright, well look, I really appreciate the effort. I hope you've found this useful. We'll send you the document now if you need any more let us know. And, you know, I think once you've done the work you know, I'm very happy to set up a meeting with you, for the audit committee and let me know what you want to do. Obviously, if you've only got one barter and one related party given that those are very easy because we can look up the audit committee notes to see whether the tests were done we can knock those ones out very quickly. Alright, and Brent, I know this a lot of work and I really appreciate the work you've put in."*[287]

2266. A sourer note was struck by Mr Kanter when emailing Mr Hogenson after that telephone call under the subject heading *"Follow up"* and attaching documents going over the matters discussed: in explaining the attachments, he added this:

> *"One thought that did occur to me. We know of a couple of rather dishonest characters who are fronting hedge funds, and by coincidence a couple of phrases you used were reminiscent of them. Please can I ask that if you are getting outside IFRS advice please be very mindful of the need for discretion and please be careful who you consult with. We are happy to arrange any independent training courses you may wish to take on IFRS.*
>
> *Please note that all of this information, especially the board minute and audit pack extracts, are highly confidential and must not be shown to a third party without our written permission, but I hope you will find them useful.*
>
> *I look forward to speaking again soon. Please call me any time with any questions…"*

[287] The transcript repeatedly includes the word "umm" in the above passage. This has been deleted in the quotation because it hinders the plain meaning of what was said.

2267. The call was followed by a joint letter to Mr Hogenson from Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter, sent as an attachment to an email dated 24 June 2010, setting out again Autonomy's position on VAR transactions. The letter, signed by *"Mike and Andy",* described Mr Hogenson's original email in its second paragraph as having *"made some potentially serious accusations against members of the senior management team"* and in one of its closing paragraphs as containing *"some very strong accusations against members of the management team"*. It gave the impression, however, that nevertheless his concerns would be dealt with in a measured and detailed way, with a view (it stated) to enable him to understand more fully matters *"to which you have not been privy, regarding revenue recognition and audit decisions."* The basic message was that (a) it was understandable that Mr Hogenson might have *"jumped to some of the concerns you have expressed"* but (b) there was so far no new evidence or insight to undermine or change the decisions made by the auditors and the Audit Committee at the time. The letter added:

> *"Obviously whilst I hope you agree that these particular points, although we may learn good policy lessons from them, once all the information is available do not seem to fit with the original accusations. I am course open to continue investigating any other issues you may have as an open, ongoing process. Consequently as we have now been through this exercise on Q 1 and you can now see the effect of the missing information I think it would be fruitful for you to look at 2008. If you could please classify any issues under your concern headings (bulleted below), I will be happy to continue with this exercise in collaboration with you."*

2268. The letter concluded stating that if Mr Hogenson should find wrongdoing by members of the management team this should be referred to the Audit Committee; but warned that *"as under such circumstances it would be required for you to name those at fault"* it would be *"negligent for us to have not considered all the information rather than just half of it before presenting it, especially under UK law."* Its last paragraph plainly emphasised the real message which was that Mr Hogenson should assemble and share whatever information he had, not with the Audit Committee but with Mr Kanter:

> *"Lastly, we have contacted the senior member of the audit committee who has suggested that we continue the process of merging each others information to see what we find. He has asked to be keep updated on progress, which will be done by Andy, as part of the standard process."*

2269. On the evening of 24 June at 8.46pm, Dr Lynch emailed Mr McMonigall with what he described as a *"quick update on the current status"*. As previously explained, it seems to me that Dr Lynch had already had a brief discussion

with Mr McMonigall, having tracked him to Nice; but this was the first occasion on which Dr Lynch went into any detail.

2270. The Claimants emphasised various questionable features of what Dr Lynch told Mr McMonigall in that email[288], a draft of which Dr Lynch accepted in cross examination he had "*run past*" Mr Kanter (to whom the email was also copied), and in particular:

(1) The description of Mr Hogenson as *"a US financial employee of Interwoven…who had access to the US PO books but is lacking the other rev rec information"*: which undoubtedly minimised his status and although not inaccurate did not reflect fairly that he was CFO of Autonomy in the Americas as well as President of Interwoven, and the highest ranking finance person in Autonomy based in the US (Autonomy's largest market by far);

(2) The assertion that Mr Hogenson was refusing to name the senior members of Autonomy's management team he thought might be responsible for accounting impropriety: which was inconsistent with (a) Dr Lynch's oft-repeated assertion that Mr Hogenson had named Mr Hussain and Mr Egan, (b) Dr Lynch's recollection of having told Mr McMonigall their identities also, and (c) Dr Lynch's strict admonition to Mr Hogenson not to name them formally or in writing unless and until his concerns were fully researched, and furthermore, was calculated to give the impression that Mr Hogenson had not the conviction to name names;

(3) The conclusory tone and substance of the report, including the dismissive and patronising conclusion *"At this stage nothing seems amiss and the guy is learning a lot but somewhat confused"*; which may have reflected Dr Lynch's own assessment but was also calculated to trivialise the issues raised and condition Mr McMonigall's mind on his first learning of the nature of the concerns.

(4) The final assessment that *"He appears to be somewhat backing off his original statement but we shall see…"*: which the Defendants breezily dismissed as *"a fair comment in light of the conversation which Mr Kanter and Dr Lynch had had earlier that day with Mr Hogenson"* but which was far from a complete and accurate depiction of the way the matter was left with Mr Hogenson (and was certainly not borne out by immediately subsequent events).

2271. On 25 June 2010 at 9.43am, Mr Hogenson responded to Dr Lynch's and Mr Kanter's letter of the previous day. The letter said that he was "*confused by a few of your statements in the return mail*" and that this was probably due to the fact that they were "*not both accountants speaking with a history of dealing with phrases such as Fixed and Determinable*". The letter continued:

[288] Which started with a pun *"hope Nice is nice".*

> "*As the CFO of Americas, with responsibility for a large portion of the consolidated financial statements as Americas makes up approximately 70% of total revenue, it may make sense that I have a direct conversation with Richard Knights our D&T Audit Partner*"

2272. Dr Lynch forwarded that letter to Mr Kanter and in the early hours they worked on a response, which went through at least two drafts, the first of which was exchanged at 01.34am on 26 June, with further exchanges of minor details early in the morning before 9am. Dr Lynch sent the final response to Mr Hogenson at 08.39am on Saturday 26 June 2010, copying in Mr Kanter.

2273. The response stated that Dr Lynch had contacted the senior member of the Audit Committee running the process and that the mandate from him was clear:

> "*He wants you and I to work together to look at these specific examples that have given you concern and add the half of the information that you are missing. We then need to understand from you whether (on the basis of this full information) you are still concerned, and whether these concerns support your original statement about certain individuals, and once we have done this to then look at the overall materiality of these potential issues of concern over the periods you cite. I must stress the issue at hand is to investigate your original statement. I am also interested where you believe you have more information than was given to the company's auditors at the time of them considering these transactions*".

2274. The letter continued, "*To provide the senior director the information he needs there are a series of actions*". Dr Lynch then set out a series of action points including:

> *"1: Please can you send any evidence you have of information that the auditors should have seen during the periods covered by their past audit operations that they did not see, i.e. matters arising pre-April 20, 2010.*
>
> *2: Please can you provide this direct language from the master IFRS definition that requires the examination of the end-user contract between the reseller and its customer.*
>
> *3: From what I understand, Interwoven, which you have managed the finances of for years, has always done a lot of its business through resellers, for example via the ishop purchasing process. In these cases I believe that no end-user contract is viewed or obtained from these resellers yet the revenue is recognised. Can you help me to understand why is this case a different one to the above?*

> *4: Please send the other examples you said you have from 2008."*

2275. The letter concluded:

> "*Brent, I really appreciate your effort in this process, and although we must remain focused on your original assertion, as a separate process the two of us seem to be learning useful things that we should keep note of for future improvements in policy. I think it is important that whilst there may be many options open to the senior member of the audit committee for different things to do, at this stage I obviously must follow the mandate and our official policy for dealing with these matters. I look forward to continuing this discussion*".

2276. Although the letter referred to Dr Lynch having *"touched base with the senior member of the Audit Committee",* and the request for information is couched in terms of being what that person has specified to be required, there is no evidence of any conversation between Dr Lynch and Mr McMonigall between 24 June and 26 June 2020. It may be that they had a conversation after Mr McMonigall's receipt of Dr Lynch's 24 June email; or it may be that the reference was simply to the first conversation where Mr McMonigall asked Dr Lynch to gather information.

2277. Either way, I consider it more likely than not that the reality of the matter was that Dr Lynch (with Mr Kanter) were in truth operating with little, and most probably no, specific directions from Mr McMonigall, and the presentation to Mr Hogenson of the requests for information being driven by the senior member of the Audit Committee was not correct. It may be that this impression might have been corrected if Mr McMonigall had given evidence, but he was not called. The Claimants invited me to infer that Mr McMonigall could not have given truthful evidence to support Dr Lynch; I need not go further than to note that the impression I formed was in the circumstances not corrected.

2278. Whether Mr Hogenson sensed any of this, or had other motivations, is a matter to which I return later. In any event, Mr Hogenson did not respond to Dr Lynch's letter, which was the last substantive communication between them on the accounting issues. In the evening of 26 June 2010 (at 19.36 BST) Mr Hogenson sent an email to Deloitte headed *"IMPORTANT AUDIT RELATED QUESTIONS"* detailing his concerns to Deloitte and also noting that he had identified questions to Dr Lynch and had further conversations with him and Mr Kanter over the past week beginning 22 June 2010, but that despite his requests he had not been able to have any direct contact with the Audit Committee.

2279. Mr Hogenson's decision to write directly to Deloitte put paid to any idea that he was becoming persuaded of Dr Lynch's explanations and preparing to back down. Dr Lynch's response was not satisfactory.

2280. Again, much detailed evidence was submitted by both sides which it would be disproportionate to recite at length. Suffice it to say, that having carefully considered it, I am satisfied on a balance of probabilities that the objective of Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter after Mr Hogenson had sent his email to Deloitte (which obviously brought an end to the efforts to kick his concerns into the long grass) became (a) to ensure that they were the persons in contact with Deloitte and that the Audit Committee were largely kept out of the loop; (b) to present to Deloitte the attitude of the Audit Committee (which had in reality not been involved substantively at all) as being that whilst of course an investigation would be needed, it should be confined to what was necessary to answer Mr Hogenson's questions from an accountancy point of view, (c) to keep Deloitte well clear of any investigation of the other aspects of Mr Hogenson's concerns, which in a nutshell were that the transactions might involve conscious impropriety on the part of some of those involved in the VAR sales in the USA (such as Mr Egan) and (d) thereby to procure that any investigation became an exercise for Deloitte of double-checking their previous auditing approach, and duly repeating it.

2281. Thus, for example, Dr Lynch continued to be the person dealing with Deloitte on the part of Autonomy, and continued to relay the message that the Audit Committee considered the issue to be a dry issue of accounting; in the evening of 27 June 2010, Dr Lynch wrote to Mr Knights, copying Mr Kanter and Mr McMonigall:

> *"I spoke to John [McMonigall] who is sailing.*
>
> *Due to his difficulty in communication he asked me to pass the following request to you. I understand when possible he will be intouch [sic] directly.*
>
> *He would like D&T to consider the questions sent by Brent and rapidly revert back to him. He would only like to focus on material matters."*

2282. The Defendants were assisted in this by the fact that Mr Hogenson did not include in his correspondence with Deloitte the references he had initially made to concerns about potential wrongdoing, and he framed his email in terms of questions rather than concerns: his correspondence was in terms that plainly reflected the warnings Dr Lynch had issued. In the event, Deloitte treated the letter as raising issues of accountancy judgement; they did not treat it as raising issues of potential wrongdoing, and did not regard Mr Hogenson as a "whistleblower" in that sense.

2283. Deloitte's own perception of its role and approach was summarised in the Deloitte Defence in the FRC proceedings (which was endorsed by Mr Welham in his evidence):

> *"307. The audit team (reasonably) did not regard Mr Hogenson's questions to be "whistleblowing" properly so-called (that is, implicitly confidential allegations as to management wrongdoing or fraud made by*

> *an anonymous whistleblower) or as raising any allegation of wrongdoing on the part of the audit team. On that basis Mr Hogenson's questions did not require an independent corporate investigation as might be required into a fraud and there was no need for ethical walls to be erected between the investigating team and the 2009 audit team.*
>
> *308. It is averred that Mr Hogenson's questions (which were addressed to Mr Knights and Mr Knight) could quite properly have been investigated by them alone as no allegation was made of wrongdoing on the part of the audit team.*
>
> *309. That said, it was apparent that Mr Hogenson had raised potentially important questions as to, for instance, Autonomy's approach to revenue recognition and he had done so outside the usual internal Autonomy channels. Given that the audit team had accepted those judgements, there was an obvious benefit in involving personnel in the investigation who were not a party to those audit judgements. It was therefore decided in consultation with Deloitte's Head of Audit Risk, Simon Letts, that the judgements on the conclusions of the investigation would be made by senior members of the firm who had not been involved in the relevant audits. These were the new audit engagement partner, IRP and PSR director.*
>
> *310. In consequence the Deloitte team which investigated Mr Hogenson's questions was different from the historical audit team. The historical audit team (that is, the team which conducted the 2009 year-end audit) comprised Mr Knights (engagement partner), Mr Henderson (EQAR), Mr Robertson (IRP) and Ms Bennett (PSR). Other team members included Mr Welham (Senior Manager), Ms Anderson (Manager) and Mr Murray (Assistant Manager).*
>
> *311. The Deloitte team which investigated Mr Hogenson's questions comprised Mr Mercer (engagement partner) who led the investigation, Mr Brough (IRP), Mr Robertson (EQAR) and Mr Lumb (PSR director). Other team members who investigated or assisted included Mr Knights, Mr Knight (Director), Mr Welham (Senior Manager), Mr Milburn-Smith (Senior Manager), Ms Anderson (Manager) and Mr Murray (Assistant Manager)."*

2284. I discuss later the Regulator's subsequent concerns in this regard. It is clear, however, that Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter had succeeded to a large extent in their objectives.

2285. Two important disputed factual matters also deserve brief mention. Once more I shall not recite the factual detail of the extended dispute but I am satisfied that (a) as Mr Welham stated in his witness statement, Deloitte were not provided at the time with Mr Hogenson's initial emails to Dr Lynch mentioning potential management wrongdoing and (b) nor was Mr

McMonigall or the Audit Committee: or if they were, no one appears to have focused on them (see below).[289]

2286. As regards the latter point, the email which Dr Lynch had earlier sent to the Audit Committee (cc Mr Kanter) forwarding Mr Hogenson's email to Deloitte, which also was belittling of Mr Hogenson's standing and dismissive of his concerns, seems to me to confirm that the Audit Committee had been told next to nothing and had either not been shown or had not focused on Mr Hogenson's initial email:

> *"John*
> *FYI*
> *There is some background on this which we can discuss when you ring. The guy (US finance person from Interwoven) has played no role in the audit process and is missing a lot of the information he would need to understand all this. He seems to confuse USGAAP and IFRS.*
>
> *Our current analysis: We just received this but a quick read's conclusions:*
> *Sushovan has seen the questions and believes there are no issues here. A few of the facts are just wrong or have perfectly good commercial explanations which were considered already by the AC, his understanding of IFRS differs from Deloitte's (we believe Deloitte is correct) and all of the things he asks if Deloitte (and in most cases the audit committee) have considered and seen were indeed considered. We do not believe there is any new information here relating to any of the past auditing decisions".*

2287. I acknowledge that, subsequently, Mr McMonigall stated in an email dated 8 July 2010 to Mr Hogenson (in fact Mr McMonigall's first direct contact with him) that he had *"seen all of your correspondence on this matter, going back to the first email to Dr Lynch, Autonomy's CEO."* Naturally the Defendants much emphasised this. But Mr McMonigall was in reality detached from the process. The email was drafted for him by Mr Kanter and sent out without apparent review.

2288. The subsequent review by Deloitte, the issues arising as to its independence and the inquiries on the part of the FRRP/FRC that followed are separate matters which I need not discuss here. Apart from mentioning that the result of all this from the point of view of Mr Hogenson was that he was sacked, purportedly by reference to the payroll fraud and *"other irregularities",* made a settlement to forestall claims against Autonomy for alleged breach of

[289] It appears from an email dated 22 July 2010 from Mr Kanter to Mr Webb QC's PA (Ms Sandra Daley), which had not been referred to at trial but to which the Defendants referred me as part of their comments on an earlier draft of this judgment, that what was described as the *"Brent correspondence.piz"* was sent to Ms Daley at the request of Mr Webb in two *"zipped files of all correspondence"* apparently attached to the email. The attached zipped files were not in evidence and it is unclear what they comprised. Mr Kanter might have been able to tell me: but he declined to appear and his witness statement was withdrawn. Mr Webb's evidence in his witness statement was that he *"did not deal substantively with the issues raised by Mr Hogenson nor the response to these issues by the Audit Committee and auditors."*

statutory whistle-blower protections, and in exchange for $750,000 provided an affidavit calculated to give the impression that he had recanted and ensured that the matter could not be aired publicly, I need go no further.

2289. The point in summary is that, in my judgment, the 'Hogenson Episode' provides further support for the conclusion I have reached that both Defendants knew that the VAR sales were illusory and improper, and were determined to avoid investigation that would reveal this.

The FSA and FRRP correspondence

2290. I have been fortified further in my conclusions by the lack of candour, and in some instances dishonesty, of the way the VAR sales were presented to the FSA and the FRRP (to which I shall refer as "the FRRP", since only the FRRP had jurisdiction) in response to their letters seeking clarification of their nature and purpose after Mr Hogenson and others (including Mr Tejada) had raised serious concerns about their impropriety (and see paragraphs 2232 to 2289 above as to the *"Hogenson episode"*).

2291. I have concluded that these responses were misleading in circumstances where candour and truth would have exposed the impropriety of their accounting treatment.

2292. Although my focus in this section is intended to be on the falsity of what the FRRP were told, and whether the Defendants had knowledge of such falsity, it is necessary first to explain the genesis and content of the exchanges in question.

Mr Hogenson's concerns about Autonomy's accounting treatment of VAR sales

2293. On 26 July 2010 Mr Hogenson had emailed the FSA to alert them to various questions and concerns he had raised with Autonomy about certain of its VAR sales and, in particular, their accounting treatment and what he thought might be associated *"barter sales"*. Mr Hogenson had presented his purpose as being:

> *"to provide assistance in ensuring that the Autonomy financial statements provided to investors are materially correct and are not misleading current or potential investors."*

2294. Mr Hogenson had justified his direct approach to the FSA on the basis of the *"nature and lack of response"* to his questions when raised with the Audit Committee and with Mr Kanter (as its COO) and the appearance to him that his

> *"questions were closed by Autonomy without a serious review or even discussion with me."*[290]

[290] This email was the first time that Mr Hogenson had taken his concerns outside the four walls of the company and its advisers.

2295. Mr Hogenson had copied his email to Mr Robert Webb QC, who had become Autonomy's (non-Executive) Chairman in mid-2009. Receipt of the email appears to have prompted Autonomy to *"reach out"* to the FSA by letter dated 30 July 2010 *"in the interests of open communication"* (as Mr Kanter explained it in an email to the Audit Committee[291] dated 2 August 2010)[292]. The Claimants took a different view of its purpose: in effect (though the words are mine), being to spike Mr Hogenson's guns and introduce doubt as to his reliability.

2296. Autonomy's 30 July 2010 letter, which was signed by Mr Kanter on behalf of Autonomy (and given its nature, and the unlikelihood that Mr Kanter would have signed such a letter without their approval, must in my judgment be taken to have been approved by both Defendants) was presented as providing *"background which may assist you in the matter"* and included the following passages:

> *"In summary, Mr Hogenson raised a series of questions to Autonomy's governance bodies. The questions were thoroughly and independently investigated, and the matter concluded. It appears to us that Mr Hogenson is not accepting the conclusions on these matters, and is thus asking the same questions despite the answers being independently confirmed.*
>
> *Investigation*
>
> *Mr Hogenson served as Autonomy's CFO of the Americas for the last year or so. In late June Mr Hogenson raised unspecified accounting questions. The Autonomy directors took the questions raised by Mr Hogenson extremely seriously, and significant time and cost was expended to reach a satisfactory conclusion that the accounts are accurate. The matter was passed to Autonomy's Audit Committee and independent auditors for their review. In working with him via Autonomy's Audit Committee, the deal issues were defined and he was provided group-level information he would not have had access to in a regional role. Mr Hogenson was given the opportunity to deliver any additional information but declined.*
>
> *Autonomy's independent auditors Deloitte, after an investigation of the points using an independent Deloitte team, reported to the Audit Committee there was no new information in Mr Hogenson's queries, and there are no areas that require change or would have been material in relation to prior periods. Because there was no new information provided by Mr Hogenson, ultimately the questions involved different levels of*

[291] Then comprised of Messrs McMonigall, Perle and Ariko (of whom none was an accountant). Mr Bloomer had not yet become its chairman.

[292] That email also explained that the FSA only regulated financial services firms and so this was a matter outside the FSA's jurisdiction, but that *"in the interests of open communication we will proactively work with them should this be of interest"*.

> *understanding of IFRS by Deloitte and Mr Hogenson (Mr Hogenson is experienced in US GAAP, not IFRS).*
>
> …
>
> Conclusions
>
> *In short, a full and proper procedure has been followed to investigate Mr Hogenson's concerns, which involved an independent investigation by a team separate to our normal audit team at Deloitte. The investigation found no issues relating to the points raised and confirmed that Mr Hogenson provided Deloitte with no new information they did not already have in making their original decisions. Despite the questions being thoroughly independently reviewed Mr Hogenson continues to seek to keep the matter alive."*

2297. The 30 July 2010 letter also contained a section entitled *"Other Issues"*. This, with elaborate but contrived moderation and obvious intent, made reference to a *"payroll fraud"* and other *"unauthorised third party payments"* which *"coincidentally, at virtually the same time…began to be uncovered in Mr Hogenson's department."* It left hanging whether Mr Hogenson was implicated personally (which he was not, though a question was raised whether he should have spotted earlier shortcomings in controls which enabled the unauthorized payments to be made).[293] It did not mention that Mr Hogenson had already been dismissed, purportedly for gross misconduct. A little later, on 2 August 2010, Mr Kanter sent the Audit Committee an update, asserting that an independent investigation had confirmed over half a million dollars of unauthorised payments by Mr Hogenson "*and other irregularities*", as a result of which Mr Hogenson had been "*let go*".

2298. After some equivocation, and only after being shown email exchanges confirming it, Dr Lynch had to accept in cross-examination that he had received and commented upon drafts of the 30 July 2010 letter.

2299. Although its involvement in the process of investigation of Mr Hogenson's questions and concerns was an important element, Deloitte was not shown the letter before it was sent. According to Mr Welham, they did not see it until many months later.[294]

2300. It was the Claimants' case that this omission was inexplicable, except on the basis that Mr Kanter and those who approved the letter knew that the presentation of the Deloitte investigation as having been by *"an independent Deloitte team"* and that it was an "*independent investigation by a team separate to our normal audit team at Deloitte*" were deliberately misleading. The Claimants contended that if Deloitte had been asked to approve the letter, Deloitte would have pointed out that it was untrue to say that, given the central

[293] Mr Welham's evidence in his witness statement was *"The impression conveyed to us by Autonomy's management was that Mr Hogenson had raised the accounting question in order to distract attention from his own responsibility for the payroll fraud."*

[294] By email dated 14 February 2011, Mr Welham asked Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Kanter, "*Can we see the letter from 30 July 2010*". On 16 February 2011, Mr Welham emailed Mr Kanter again asking for "*a copy of the letter sent to the FSA in July 2010*".

involvement of Mr Knights, along with Mr Knight and Mr Welham. Their concern in that regard and generally would have also considerably been increased had they seen the letter dated 24 June 2010 from Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter to Mr Hogenson which I have referred to above and of which, according to Mr Welham's evidence neither he nor his Deloitte colleagues were aware.

2301. That is, of course, relevant to (a) the honesty of all those involved in the letter and (b) the integrity of the process to investigate Mr Hogenson's concerns. In the present context, however, and as previously explained, my focus is on the specific misrepresentations made to the regulators after receipt of this letter and Mr Hogenson's email with reference to the VAR sales.

2302. To revert, therefore, to the correspondence with the Regulator, the matter was not pursued by the FSA, given the jurisdictional issue which Mr Kanter had identified, but it was referred to the FRRP[295].

2303. On 2 February 2011, the FRRP sent a letter ("the February 2011 FRRP letter") addressed to Mr Webb, and copied to Mr Hussain, asking for a further explanation of the issues raised in order to help it determine whether to open a formal enquiry. In the February 2011 FRRP letter, the FRRP posed (amongst others) the following questions regarding the Capax Discovery/Kraft transaction:

> *"Kraft*
>
> *9. It has been alleged to the Panel that, in the quarter ended 30 September 2009, Capax gave an order to Autonomy worth some $4m in respect of the supply of licences to Kraft, an end-user, which was recorded in the revenue of one of the company's US subsidiaries for that quarter. Subsequently, in December 2009, Kraft executed a licence agreement directly with Autonomy for a similar amount. It is understood that, in December 2009, the group relieved Capax of its obligations under the order given to the company and itself paid Capax a fee of some $400,000. The Panel would be grateful for the company's comments on the truth or otherwise of this account.*
>
> *10. To the extent that the above sequence of events has been confirmed by the company, the Panel would then be grateful for information enabling it to understand why the company appears to have contracted with both Capax and Kraft for the same licences.*
>
> *11. The Panel would also like to know when the revenues concerned were recorded in the group's consolidated accounts. If the revenues were recorded in the consolidated accounts for the quarter ended 30 September 2009, the Panel would then like to know how the group determined that it was in a position to recognise revenue relating to*

[295] The Financial Reporting Review Panel had responsibility for oversight of public and large private company accounts and directors' reports, and periodic reports by issuers of listed securities.

> *the sale of licences to Kraft in that quarter if the agreement concerned was not executed until December 2009.*
>
> *12. Finally, the Panel would be grateful for information enabling it to understand why the group paid Capax a fee in respect of these transactions."*

2304. Autonomy's response dated 3 March 2011 ("the 3 March 2011 letter") stated the following:

> *"In an almost unique series of events, Kraft sought to enter into a different agreement directly with Autonomy in a subsequent quarter. The latter agreement provided for direct payment to Autonomy, so even though the VAR was already paying Autonomy for its order the original transaction was cancelled …*
>
> *… For the original order Capax would earn a normal software resale margin of approximately 30% under the terms of its VAR agreement, and in fact could have blocked the cancellation of the binding original order. Given Capax's involvement in the original transaction, Capax was entitled under written agreements to a Marketing Assistance Fee of approximately 10%. Capax earned less from this revised arrangement than the original transaction."*

2305. These statements to the FRRP in the 3 March 2011 letter were materially misleading in a number of respects:

(1) Far from being "*almost unique*", by the time of this letter in March 2011, the pattern of Autonomy contracting directly with the end-user was well-established and highly recurrent. As stated in paragraph 2226 above, by 3 March 2011, this had happened 13 times.[296] The falsity of the representation was especially arresting given that at the time of the June letter to the FRRP, Autonomy had just entered into another sizeable direct deal (further to the Tikit/KPMG transaction, VT26).

(2) The attempt to justify the $400,000 payment on the theory that Capax Discovery could have blocked a direct sale by Autonomy to Kraft was false also. In fact, Capax Discovery was a complete stranger so far as Kraft was concerned. It had provided no "*marketing assistance*," and it had no contractual or other right to block the direct sale.

(3) Moreover, Capax Discovery had not missed out on any "*resale margin*". Capax Discovery never even tried to sell anything to Kraft. Capax Discovery's VAR agreement did not provide for a "*normal software resale margin of approximately 30%*".

[296] In Microlink/Ameriprise (VT1), Capax Discovery/TXU (VT2), Capax Discovery/Kraft (VT3), Capax Discovery/Eli Lilly (VT4), MicroTech/ManuLife (VT7), MicroTech/Morgan Stanley (VT8), Capax Discovery/FSA (VT10), DiscoverTech/Citi (VT11), DiscoverTech/PMI (VT12), Capax Discovery/Amgen (VT16), Capax Discovery/Merrill Lynch (VT21), DiscoverTech /BofA (VT23) and DiscoverTech/BofA (VT24).

(4) In any event, this transaction could never have involved any actual resale margin. Capax Discovery "*bought*" its licence for the same price that Autonomy was trying to sell a licence to Kraft.

(5) There was no written agreement, at the time of the Capax Discovery purchase order, which entitled Capax Discovery to a Marketing Assistance Fee of "*approximately 10%*" or to any fee.

2306. The falsity of this answer was later compounded in a further letter from Autonomy dated 8 June 2011 to the FRRP responding to a request from the FRRP (in a letter dated 5 April 2011) for clarification as to what was meant by "*an almost unique series of events*" in the explanation they had been given as to why the Kraft transaction had culminated in a direct deal between Autonomy and Kraft. Autonomy gave the following explanation:

> *"This is a series of events that virtually never happens; in fact management struggles to recall any prior time that this happened, but hesitates out of prudence to give an absolute answer one way or the other. Thus the events were described as "almost unique …"*

2307. This response was even more misleading as at 8 June 2011, the Tikit/KPMG transaction had also been followed by a direct end-user deal (VT26). Autonomy had also, in the meantime, entered into three further VAR transactions (Capax Discovery/UBS (VT28), MicroTech/Bank of Montreal (VT32) and MicroTech/Xerox (VT33)) which would in due course end up being followed by direct deals between Autonomy and the end-user in a subsequent quarter.

2308. Dr Lynch tried to justify the statement in Autonomy's 8 June letter by suggesting that the words "*any prior time*" in the second line of the paragraph may have meant "*before Kraft*" rather than "*before the date of the letter*". As the Claimants observed, if that really was the basis on which Autonomy gave this answer to the FRRP, it was pure sophistry.

2309. Dr Lynch's alternative explanation was an assertion that there were "*10,000 reseller deals*" and the transactions at hand were "*still a very rare event out of 10,000*". No evidential support beyond this somewhat airy statement was ever provided. I would accept that there was a considerable number of VAR deals: but that must include many of trivial value. Further, Dr Lynch's submission in his written closing that the *"Kraft situation, described as almost unique, was a rare one"* was simply wrong: it was not the exception but the rule.

2310. In any event, I do not accept the explanation offered. It was, to my mind, obviously misleading to present as *"almost unique"* a sequence of events characteristic of so many of the deals of the same value and type as those to which the request for clarification related, and which taken together made up at least 88% by value of all VAR transactions above $1 million entered into by Autonomy during the Relevant Period.

2311. Similarly, and also to my mind confirmatory of my approach, the easy and correct answer to another question from the FRRP about whether there were other contracts as at 30 December 2009 in respect of which revenue had been recognised on a VAR transaction, where the VAR had yet to conclude a transaction with an end-user, was not given. There were seven such contracts. But Autonomy's response did not say this. Instead, Autonomy's answer was an exercise in obfuscation and gave a false impression:

> *"All agreements between Autonomy and its resellers represent binding contracts whereby the reseller's obligation to pay Autonomy is independent of whether or not the reseller gets paid by its customers. Moreover the software sold to the VAR is only licensed for a named end-user and thus can not be used for stock. Ultimately provided the reseller is creditworthy and all other revenue recognition criteria are met (e.g delivery, fixed price, etc.) then revenue is recognised upon receipt of the binding contract.*
>
> *We do not require the reseller to provide us with confirmation that they have contracted with their end-users, as is normal in the software industry for standard product; rather resellers are required to identify the end-user for licensing purposes. It would be impractical in reality for us to confirm each contract with the final end-user. Under this approach Microsoft, for example, would have to visit offices to prove Word was sold-through by its OEMs and resellers. As end-users require ongoing support and maintenance it is not possible for a reseller to supply licensed software to another party without that transaction becoming known. Thus, whilst we may not have the details of when arrangements are signed between a reseller and their customer, the process works smoothly. This is the normal practice in the software industry for standard product."*

The implication of this response was that the VAR would attempt to contract with the end-user but that, for reasons of practicality, Autonomy did not seek confirmation of this fact. This was highly misleading: Autonomy did not intend that the VAR should make any attempt to contract with the end-user.

2312. To add to this litany is Autonomy's response to a further enquiry by the FRRP about the Kraft deal, the enquiry being the following:

> *"The Panel would also be grateful for confirmation or otherwise as to whether the "binding original order" between Capax and Kraft referred to in your letter had been signed by the two parties as at 30 September 2009."*

2313. It seems from this that the FRRP had assumed that Kraft had placed a binding order with Capax Discovery but later decided to contract directly with Autonomy instead. Autonomy management, including the Defendants, knew that this was a misapprehension and that Kraft had never placed any order, or had any prior dealings, with Capax Discovery.

2314. Autonomy nevertheless responded to the FRRP's query as follows :

> *"The binding original order between Capax and Autonomy was signed by both parties as at 30 September 2009. For the reasons set out above we would not necessarily be aware of when Capax and Kraft signed their agreement."*

2315. This failed to correct the FRRP's misapprehension. On the contrary, it strongly implied that Autonomy management believed that Capax Discovery and Kraft had indeed "*signed their agreement*", but that the date of that agreement was not known to Autonomy. In reality, Autonomy management knew that no such agreement would ever have existed.

2316. Furthermore, in its letter of 5 April 2011, the FRRP had also raised the following:

> *"On page 19 of the Deloitte report, the management response refers to management's consideration of the ability of Capax to stand by its obligation to Autonomy, irrespective of its ability to onward sell the Autonomy product supplied. The Panel would be grateful for information enabling it to understand what factors the company took into account in its consideration of the ability of Capax to stand by the obligation concerned. The Panel would also be grateful for copies of any financial information available to the company at that time concerning Capax. A recent set of accounts would be particularly helpful if available."*

2317. In its 8 June letter, Autonomy responded to that as follows:

> *"Autonomy started to do business with Capax in early 2009. At that time we obtained financial statements from Capax (Attachment 1). These financial statements showed the company at that time to be profitable and able to support the payment stream required by purchase for Eli Lilly, part of the company's revenue recognition criteria.*
>
> *Capax have had an excellent payment record since that date. As a result there has not been a need to obtain more recent financial statements since their history of cash collection has shown no concerns regarding recoverability. These judgements were considered by our auditors at that time."*

2318. The financial statements at Attachment 1 to Autonomy's 8 June 2011 letter were those of Capax Global. Autonomy's letter referred throughout to "*Capax*". It did not explain that Capax Global was not, in fact, the relevant contracting party. Nor did Autonomy tell the FRRP of Mr Baiocco's letter disclaiming Capax Global's responsibility for Capax Discovery's debts.

2319. The assertions in Autonomy's letter about Capax's *"excellent payment record*" were also misleading. The FRRP was not told that this payment record was the result of monies channelled by Autonomy to Capax Discovery for non-existent services.

Defendants' knowledge but alleged reliance on Deloitte

2320. Mr Hussain signed both the 3 March 2011 letter and the 8 June 2011 letter. But Mr Casey said nothing at all about the FRRP letters or Autonomy's responses in his written closing submissions on Mr Hussain's behalf, nor in his oral submissions on Day 92 of the trial. On this issue as to the misrepresentations in the letters to the FRRP there was a tension or conflict between Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain. Mr Hussain was also of course operating within the finance department, which Dr Lynch portrayed as having had carriage of the correspondence.

2321. Dr Lynch maintained that he himself had no material involvement in the drafting process. According to Dr Lynch, the drafting was done by Autonomy's finance department and Mr Kanter working with Deloitte. When cross-examined in relation to the March 2011 letter:

> *"Q. You were involved in the drafting of this; that's obviously what's going –*
>
> *A. I wasn't involved in the drafting of it. Mr Kanter and Deloitte were involved in the drafting of it and then I look at it when it's finished and I say "Looks fine"."*

2322. There was a similar dispute as to whether Dr Lynch approved the June 2011 letter. He initially denied having done so, although this was not really plausible: there were emails from Mr Kanter sending earlier drafts and referring to *"Mike…having a look",* and on 25 May 2011, Mr Kanter had sent Dr Lynch a further draft and asked him to "*Ring me when you have a moment*". It seemed to me unlikely that having engaged him in the process, and apparently awaited his replies on each occasion, Mr Kanter would have gone ahead without Dr Lynch's approval.

2323. Dr Lynch eventually refined his position a little, and told me in cross-examination that he did not know if he had seen the final version, but did not think he had; and if he had, he had not checked or verified it, citing pressures on his time, the necessity to delegate and the reasonableness of relying on the finance department and Deloitte:

> *"…if we just come back to reality here…I'm running a company, I'm doing all the things that have to be done. This is a matter for the legal, accounting and Deloitte departments to deal with. If I saw the letter, I may well have read it, but I would certainly let them get on with answering it and that's what happened and legal, finance and Deloitte all worked together in a large amount of back and forth and came up with what they think is the correct answer."*

2324. Ultimately, the main plank of his defence was to the effect that Deloitte had done it. This was the point emphasised in the closing submissions on his behalf. The point was made that Deloitte had undoubtedly been closely

involved and had had many chances to comment on the drafting and made points both on the structure and style as well as on points of detail.

2325. Thus, for instance, in relation to the 3 March 2011 letter, Mr Welham had emailed Mr Kanter on 17 February 2011, saying:

> *"From talking through your draft response with our internal specialist in this area, our overall thinking is that you should transform the letter somewhat from its current state, to a format which is much shorter and concentrates on the specific facts required by the letter from the FRRP.*
>
> …
> *We suggest that you keep your responses concise and concentrate on answering the questions asked and do not give additional information or include emotive language. Where it is appropriate, you should simply cross refer to the Appendix to our Audit Committee report, which helpfully includes detailed management responses from you, to avoid repeating information included in this report. This will assist in making your response to the FRRP shorter."*

2326. The letter then went through various internal reviews at Deloitte with further comments provided before it was finalised. Deloitte were content with the final version, a copy of which was sent to them. Mr Welham confirmed that Deloitte did not consider that there was anything misleading in the letter.

2327. A similar process appears from exchanges of drafts by email to have been undertaken by the relevant departments at Autonomy and by Deloitte for the June 2011 letter. Indeed it appears that Mr Welham referred both the FRRP's letter and Autonomy's proposed response to Ms Isobel Sharp, one of the Deloitte review team described by Mr Welham as *"our internal specialist in this area"*, who also (according to the email from Mr Welham requesting her input) had assisted on the previous response as well.[297]

2328. The Claimants presented a short three-part answer to this line of defence: Deloitte did not know about Mr Baiocco's letter, Deloitte did not know that Autonomy was paying for non-existent services and Deloitte did not know that Capax Discovery had had no dealings with Kraft.

2329. As to the last of the three points, there was considerable dispute as to what Mr Welham and/or Deloitte did actually know. Dr Lynch emphasised that Deloitte reviewed the Kraft transaction, and were well aware of its context and that (a) Capax Discovery was only introduced because the end-user deal could not formally be completed in Q3 2009 (b) Autonomy undertook the negotiations with the end-user (Kraft) before and after the VAR agreement with Capax Discovery and (c) ultimately, Kraft (as end-user) insisted on contracting

[297] There were two cautionary notes in Ms Sharp's response: (a) *"not all of the Panel's questions have been answered"* and (b) *"there are a few dangerous points"*; and she added *"We need to close down the enquiry now before it gets more serious"*. But she was not a witness; and the parties did not make anything of these.

directly with and paying Autonomy (with Autonomy thereafter crediting Capax Discovery to avoid double recovery, and paying a MAF).

2330. Dr Lynch's closing submissions also sought to draw support from a summary of the position in Deloitte's Defence in the FRC proceedings, which Mr Welham confirmed was accurate, which read as follows:

> *"…it is admitted that Deloitte and Mr Knights were aware (a) that Capax's principal role was to allow Autonomy to complete a sale and for revenue to be recognised in the quarter in which the Kraft deal was negotiated because it could not be formally completed with Kraft in that quarter, and (b) that Autonomy were negotiating directly with Kraft."*

2331. In his cross-examination of Mr Welham on this point, Mr Miles sought to elicit from Mr Welham confirmation that the relevant issue in determining revenue recognition was not whether Autonomy, having sold the software to the VAR, was or was not negotiating with the end-user notwithstanding the VAR sale, nor even whether or not the seller (here, Autonomy) was the principal or even only person negotiating with the end-user after the sale to the VAR; it was whether the seller/Autonomy was under an effective obligation (which did not have to be a legally enforceable obligation) to negotiate with the end-user. Only in the latter case (of the seller being under some form of obligation), Mr Miles suggested (and eventually submitted to me), did the fact of it negotiating impact on revenue recognition, because only then would the fact of the seller negotiating suggest that it/they retained control or risk in the goods. He submitted that the explanation accords with Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee on the 2010 interim review :

> *"We note that management has responded to the concerns raised in Q1 2010 where for the first time we noted instances where deals had been credited and re-sold directly to end-users. If Autonomy is required to maintain ongoing managerial duties in respect of reseller deals or if the reseller cannot demonstrate its ability to pay for goods received then it would not be appropriate to recognise revenue on delivery of the product."* [My emphasis, reflective of the Defendants]

2332. Mr Welham would not be drawn that far. He agreed that if there was such a requirement or an obligation on the seller then that would be a clear and different case; in other cases, where the seller as a matter of its own choice, was simply *"assisting the sales process and the close process"* the decision was more nuanced, and would be a matter of judgement as to the extent of the *"assisting"*. However, he also made clear that if what the seller did went beyond assistance, and its involvement was *"extensive"* or (*a fortiori*) exclusive that would be *"problematic."* Indeed, my understanding of his evidence was that had Deloitte known that Autonomy had *"more than an assisting role"* and been in reality *"the primary business closing the deal"* it would not have approved revenue recognition. Another way of putting this, as it seems to me, is whether Autonomy had *de facto* control of the negotiations. In every one of the impugned VAR transactions, it did.

2333. Accordingly, although perhaps a little glibly stated, the third part of the Claimants' rebuttal of the Defendants' reliance on Deloitte's approval was also, in my judgment, sustained. As I have already determined previously that the first two parts of the rebuttal were proven, in my judgment Dr Lynch's reliance on Deloitte, which (apart from his plea that he was not involved, which I confirm I have rejected) was his only resort in seeking to neutralise the fact that Autonomy's letters to the FRRP were fundamentally misleading, could not be sustained because Deloitte themselves had been misled.

2334. The admission in Deloitte's Defence in the FRC proceedings, which Mr Welham had confirmed was accurate and on which Dr Lynch had relied, does not assist the Defendants either on that analysis (if ever it could have been much help anyway). The admission that *"Autonomy were negotiating directly with Kraft"* does not touch on the point whether Capax Discovery were involved with them, or (put another way to reflect Mr Welham's evidence) whether Autonomy was in an *"assisting role"* or by itself and in exclusive control.

Summary in respect of the letters to the FRRP

2335. In summary, in my judgment, Autonomy's letters to the FRRP did contain fundamental misrepresentations for which the Defendants were responsible. They are not absolved by the involvement of Deloitte, since Deloitte did not know the full facts and had indeed also been misled. The misrepresentations were intentional: they were necessary to prevent the VAR strategy being exposed and revenue recognition being disapproved. The position is the more telling in light of the fact that Deloitte, knowing only half the story, had expressly warned in its Audit Committee Reports for Q1 2010 and Q2 2010 that (as its warning was refined in the Q2 2010 Report):

> *"In Q1 2020…two deals sold to MicroTech in Q4 2009 were credited and resold directly to the two end-users. In our Q1 2020 report we highlighted that significant evidence of such further revenue reversals may jeopardise management's ability to recognise revenue at the point of sale to the reseller. Only one deal has been signed with the reseller MicroTech during Q2 2010 for $270k and the overall level of software deals done this quarter through resellers is significantly reduced.*
>
> *During Q2 2010, a $6m licence deal originally with the reseller Capax Global from Q4 2009 was signed directly with the end-user, Eli Lilly and a Q1 2010 $4.2 million deal with Discover Technologies LLC was signed directly with the end-user Philip Morris….*
>
> *We note that management has responded to the concerns raised in Q1 2010 where for the first time we noted instances where deals had been credited and re-sold directly to end-users. If Autonomy is required to maintain ongoing managerial duties in respect of reseller deals or if the reseller cannot demonstrate its ability to pay for goods received then it would not be appropriate to recognise revenue on delivery of the product. Management acknowledges this position and further highlights that there have been no significant software sales to resellers in Q2 2010…"*

2336. Of course, these matters do not give rise to a claim; but, with the Hogenson episode, they have confirmed me in my assessment of the impugned VAR transactions and the "guilty knowledge" of the Defendants, as summarised in paragraph 2229 above.

PART B

PART B CONTENTS	
Headings	*Paragraphs*
RECIPROCAL TRANSACTIONS	
Summary of the Claimants' claims re 'reciprocal' transactions	2337-2344
Summary of the Defendants' case re 'reciprocal' transactions	2345-2348
Defendants' knowledge and participation	2349-2351
The Schedule 5 and Schedule 12B transactions	2352-2353
General points on accounting issues	2354
The accounting framework	2355-2363
The parties' approaches to the nature of the linkage required and its identification	2364-2398
Factual evidence as to real rationale: Claimants' case	2399-2408
Factual evidence as to the real rationale: Defendants' case	2409-2421
My assessment of the witness evidence on 'reciprocals' in general terms	2422-2428
The Expert Evidence relating to the impugned reciprocal transactions	2429-2443A
RT 1: Capax Discovery/EDD (Sch 5/1 and Sch 12B)	2444-2458
The first Capax Discovery/EDD sale in Q1 2009	2459-2467
The Claimants' evidence of a handshake deal and the Defendants' criticisms of it	2468-2488
Evidence of an agreement after the London Hotel meeting but before 31 March?	2489-2502
Further defences if there was a pre-contract understanding	2503-2506
Autonomy's purchase orders and payments to Capax Discovery Q2 2009 to Q4 2009	2507-2514
No documentary support for purported outsourcing of eDiscovery services	2515-2523
Deloitte's consideration of the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale	2524-2530
Conclusion on first Capax Discovery/EDD sale	2531
The second Capax Discovery/EDD sale (Q4 2009)	2532-2544
Deloitte's consideration of the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale	2545-2549
Conclusion on second Capax Discovery/EDD sale	2550
The third Capax Discovery/EDD sale (Q1 2011)	2551-2564
Deloitte's consideration of the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale	2565-2571
Did the Defendants have guilty knowledge of false accounting in respect of RT 1?	2572
Mr Hussain's knowledge	2573-2574
Dr Lynch's knowledge	2575-2588
RT 2: the VMS transactions	2589-2594
The first VMS transaction (Q2 2009)	2595
Background	2596-2602
Negotiations for sale and purchase	2603-2615
VMS and Autonomy reach agreement in principle (29 June 2009)	2616-2621

Justification of the transactions	2622-2627
“Project Shockwave” business plan	2628-2632
The revenue recognition memorandum	2633-2650
Deloitte’s consideration of the first VMS transaction	2651-2661
Autonomy’s use of the VMS data feed Q3 2009 to Q3 2010	2662-2670
Conclusion on first VMS transaction	2671-2672
The accounting treatment of the VMS reciprocal transactions	2673-2674
Defendants’ knowledge	2675-2679
The second VMS transaction - Q4 2010 (RT 2)	2680-2714
Deloitte’s consideration of the second VMS transaction	2715-2721
Payments made in respect of the second VMS transaction and VMS’s bankruptcy	2722-2729
Conclusions on second VMS transaction	2730-2731
Knowledge of the Defendants	
Mr Hussain’s knowledge	2732
Dr Lynch’s knowledge	2733-2734
RT 3: purchases of StorHouse from FileTek (Q4 2009/Q2 2010)	2735-2738
FileTek’s business	2739-2749
Genesis of the proposal for the allegedly reciprocal transactions	2750-2762
Negotiation of the price to be paid for StorHouse	2763-2790
Had Autonomy (coincidentally) any identified need for StorHouse?	2791-2805
Price Autonomy agreed to pay FileTek for purchase of StorHouse	2806-2815
Price FileTek agreed to pay Autonomy for Autonomy software	2816-2819
Autonomy’s technical analyses of StorHouse	2820-2825
Execution of the two agreements	2826-2829
How the first StorHouse purchase was presented to Deloitte	2830-2840
Mutual payments in respect of the first FileTek transaction	2841-2844
Defendants’ knowledge	2845
The second of the FileTek transactions comprised in RT 3: Q1 to Q2 2010	2846-2860
My conclusion in relation to the second set of RT 3 transactions	2861-2862
Deloitte’s approval was given on a false basis	2863-2869
The FRRP were also misled	2870-2872
Defendants’ knowledge	2873
Mr Hussain	2874-2875
Dr Lynch	2876
Overall conclusion in respect of RT 3	2877
RT 4: Vidient Systems Inc (Q4 2009/Q3 2010)	2878-2884
The first Vidient transaction Q4 2009/Q1 2010	2885-2903
Separation of the OEM agreements by quarter	2904-2913
Deloitte’s consideration of the first Vidient transaction	2914-2920

Conclusions on first Vidient transaction	2921-2923
The second Vidient transaction – Q3 2010/Q4 2010	2924-2926
Accounting treatment of the Vidient transactions	2927-2928
The Defendants' knowledge of improper accounting of the Vidient transactions	2929-2935
RT 5: EMC Corporation - Q3 2010	2936-2939
My assessment	2940-2944
The Defendants' knowledge of improper accounting of the EMC reciprocal transaction	
Mr Hussain's knowledge	2945-2948
Dr Lynch's knowledge	2949-2952
Purchase and sale transactions with MicroTech comprising RT 6 in Q1 2011	2953-2966
Defendants' knowledge	2967
Mr Hussain	2968-2969
Dr Lynch	2970-2972A
Overall Conclusion on Reciprocal transactions	2972B
IDOL OEM	
Summary of the Claimants' claims in relation to OEM	2973-2986
Summary of the Defendants' defence in relation to OEM	2987-3001
The Claimants' various causes of action in respect of OEM business	
Summary of FSMA claim in relation to statements made about the OEM business	3002-3005
Summary of the Claimants' misrepresentation claims in relation to OEM	3006-3008
Two points of clarification with respect to the ambit of the dispute in respect of OEM claim	3009-3029
FSMA claim in more detail	3030
The legal ingredients of the FSMA Claim in relation to OEM	3031
The statements on which the Claimants claim to have been entitled to rely in this context	3032-3035
Determining whether a statement is (a) untrue or misleading and (b) known to be so	3036-3051
What was stated in Autonomy's published information about the OEM metric?	3052-3058
The Defendants' response on the scope of IDOL OEM conveyed by the published information	3059-3081
My assessment of what was conveyed by the published information itself	3082-3090
Should regard be had to evidence that various Analysts considered the market understood OEM Metric to be broad in scope?	3091-3097
Analyst/other evidence and market understanding	3098-3100
Mr Khan	3101-3110
Mr Morland	3111-3114
Mr Pearson	3115-3121
Mr Shelley	3122-3127
Assessment of that evidence and comparison with analysts notes relied on by the Claimants	3128-3137
(e) Was the published information false and misleading?	3138-3145

The Defendants' response	3146-3153
Did the Defendants know of the inclusion within the OEM metric of revenue outside what investors were likely to understand to be within its scope?	3154-3165
Deloitte and OEM revenues	3166
Nature and extent of Deloitte's involvement	3167-3178
What reliance can the Defendants place on Deloitte in this context?	3179-3188
A further issue as to upfront prepaid licensing deals or "buy-outs"	3189-3194
The Lone Pine episode	3195-3207
Allegation of concealment of transactions in published information	3208-3219
Alleged pre-announcement concealment: Top 10 List	3220-3235
The "Joe Bloggs" correspondence and post-announcement concealment	3235A-3235C
The issue of reasonable reliance: did Bidco acquire Autonomy in reasonable reliance on the information given about Autonomy's OEM business in the published information?	3236-3247
Misrepresentation Claims relating to OEM business	3248-3252
Conclusion on OEM	3253
HOSTING	
General overview of the Claimants' hosting case	3254-3258
Autonomy's hosting business and the introduction of the Hybrid Model in more detail	3259-3267
PART A: FSMA Claims	3268-3275
(1)Brief description of Digital Safe	3276-3289
(2)Brief description of Autonomy's e-Discovery offering	3290-3292
(3)A detailed analysis of the Digital Safe claim	3293-3301
Outline of the dispute as to the purpose and effect of the restructurings	3302-3314
Applicable accounting principles	3315-3323
The differences between the experts in their approach to applying these Standards	3324-3355
The practicalities of (a) installation and (b) monitoring	3356-3357
The manner in which hybrid deals were sold	3358-3363
Defendants' reliance on Deloitte and Audit Committee	3364-3380
The Defendants' knowledge in relation to Digital Safe	3381-3388
Conclusion as to accountancy treatment of hybrid hosting licence as separable	3389-3395
IAS 18.14 (a) and (b)	3396-3399
(4)A detailed analysis of the e-Discovery claim	3400-3409
Accounting principles	3410-3422
Did the EDD licences have or lack substance?	3423-3429
My assessment and conclusion	3430-3448
(5) Defendants' knowledge	3449
Mr Hussain's knowledge of true purpose of the licences and accounting impropriety	3450-3455

Dr Lynch's knowledge of Autonomy's improper accounting	3456-3475
(6) IDOL Cloud metric	3476-3481
PART B : THE SCHEDULE 12D TRANSACTIONS	
The nature of the claims and how they differ from the Schedule 6 claims	3482-3485
Overview of the Schedule 12D transaction and claims	3486-3493
Problems of standing and loss outlined	3494-3499
The Defences in outline	3500-3507
Structure of this Chapter	3508-3511
Did Dr Lynch owe any duties to ASL?	3512-3526
The extent of Dr Lynch's duties acting as a de facto or shadow director of ASL	3527-3542
The individual Schedule 12D Transactions	
General observations on the factual circumstances of the Schedule 12D Transactions	3543-3547
The Q4 2009 Morgan Stanley Schedule 12D transaction	3548-3562
The dispute whether the inclusion of SPE was a contrivance	3563-3577
My assessment of the commerciality of the transaction and Deloitte's apparent approval	3578-3595
The second Morgan Stanley Schedule 12D transaction: Q1 2011	
Outline of the Claimants' case	3596-3603
Instigation of the transaction	3604-3631
Were Deloitte misled?	3632-3634
Conclusions	3635
Deutsche Bank Q1 2011 re-restructuring	3636-3646
The Second DB Amendment Agreement: the restructuring negotiations	3647-3651
Claimants' case	3652-3659
Defendants' answers to Claimants' case	3660-3669
My assessment	3670-3683
The Claimants' allegations that Deloitte and the Audit Committee were misled	3684-3687
Metropolitan Life	3688-3702
Claimants' case	3703-3715
Relevance of Deloitte's review and approval?	3716-3719
Defendants' knowledge of impropriety	3720-3721
Overall conclusion	3722-3723
OTHER TRANSACTIONS	3724-3739
Tottenham Hotspur: the two sets of transactions	
First set: Q2 2010	3740-3744
The second transaction	3745-3754
Were Deloitte misled?	3755-3758
My assessment whether Tottenham 2010 Sale should have been accounted for as a 'solution'	3759-3761

The second Tottenham Hotspur transaction	3762-3762A
Prisa (Q4 2010)	3763-3768
Appropriate accounting treatment	3769-3776
Were Deloitte misled?	3777-3778
My assessment whether the Prisa Sale should have been accounted for as a 'solution'	3779-3785
Amgen (Q4 2010)	3786-3794
How Hosting Addendum (a) was and (b) should have been accounted for on pleaded case	3795-3798
Were Deloitte misled?	3799-3802
My assessment	3803-3805
Iron Mountain (Q2 2011)	3806-3815
My assessment	3816-3818
Overall conclusion on the "Other Transactions"	3819-3820
DECEIT AND MISREPRESENTATION CLAIMS	
The pre-acquisition misrepresentations alleged	3821-3824
Summary of the representations and the claims made in respect of them	3825-3830
The January and February Slides	3831-3841
Substance of representations in the January and February Slides and their alleged falsity	3842-3845
Did HP rely on the January and February Slides? What effect had the Disclaimer?	3846-3851
Summary of my assessment re the alleged falsity January and February Slides	3852-3855
The March Slides	3856-3862
Representations in the March Slides	3863-3864
Summary of my assessment re alleged falsity of the March Slides	3865
The Defendants' involvement in and responsibility for the representations in the March Slides	3866-3867
Did the Claimants rely on the March Slides?	3868-3872
29 June 2011 meeting: the fourth set of alleged misrepresentations	3873-3889
29 July 2011 meeting and its background: the fifth set of alleged misrepresentations	3890-3920
Alleged misrepresentations in the course of due diligence 1 August 2011 to 18 August 2011	
Overview	3921-3923
1 August 2011 due diligence call: the sixth set of alleged misrepresentations	3924-3937
2 August 2011 due diligence call	3938-3955
4 August 2011 due diligence call	3956-3966
Dr Lynch's involvement in the due diligence process	3967-3978
Whether HP relied on the Defendants' misrepresentations	3979-3986
My overall assessment of the due diligence process and its relevance	3987-3988
The Non-Disclosure Agreement	3989-3992
Conclusion on the claims in deceit and misrepresentation	3993

RELIANCE AND LOSS REVISITED	
Ambit of this Chapter	3994-3998
Summary of Claimants' case on reasonable reliance	3999-4002
Summary of the Defendants' contrary case	4003-4005
The issues requiring analysis	4006
(1)What were the principal factors and metrics by reference to which HP/Bidco pitched its bid price and eventually concluded the Acquisition?	4007
Mr Apotheker	4008-4019
Mr Robison	4020-4021
Mr Sarin	4022-4027
Mr Johnson	4028-4032
(2)The Deal Model and its bases	4033-4036
(3)How ultimately did HP's Board make its decision?	4037-4043
(4)What is the relevance of HP/Bidco's reliance on other sources of information and advice?	4044-4048
(5)Was HP/Bidco actually aware of any matters falsifying the published information?	4049-4050
Conclusion on reliance (FSMA Claims)	4051-4055
Introduction to issues of quantum	4056-4065
Issues relating to the Deceit/Misrepresentation Claims	4066-4076
DIRECT LOSSES	4077-4087
Hardware	4088-4092
MAF Payments to VARs	4093-4098
Reciprocal Transactions	4099-4105
COUNTERCLAIM	4106-4115
CONCLUSION	4116-4135
POSTSCRIPT	4136
The position of Mr Chamberlain	4137-4152
Differences between the Summary of Conclusions and this judgment	4153-4155

RECIPROCAL TRANSACTIONS

Summary of the Claimants' claims re 'reciprocal' transactions

2337. The Claimants alleged that another way in which Autonomy created the appearance of increased revenue in its published information was through a number of what they labelled variously as *"Reciprocals", "barter", "quid pro quo", "round-trip" or "circular"* deals.

2338. The Claimants advanced two types of challenge:

(1) The first type of challenge concerned purchase transactions listed in RRAPoC Schedule 5 ("Schedule 5 transactions") which were said to be purchases of products which (a) Autonomy allegedly did not "need", (b) were of "no discernible value", and (c) were "linked" to sale transactions in an accounting sense.

(2) The second type of challenge concerned purchase transactions which were not said to be "reciprocal" with sale transactions, but which were alleged to have put VARs in funds so to enable them to repay their debts on earlier sales identified at RRAPoC Schedule 3. These purchases were also said to have been of products which Autonomy did not "need" and which were of no value to Autonomy. The Claimants relied on these types of transactions detailed in Schedule 3 of the RRAPoC as evidence that the VAR was not on risk in respect of earlier sales giving rise to the debts (the revenue for which sales the Claimants have stripped out for the purpose of their FSMA and misrepresentation claims).

2339. I have already addressed, in the section of this judgment dealing with the impugned VAR transactions, purchase transactions which are said to have put those counterparties in funds to enable them to repay their debts under VAR purchase orders. I shall return later to these 'type 2 reciprocals'. For the present, my focus is on the first type, the Schedule 5 transactions.

2340. The Claimants challenged the Schedule 5 transactions as typically involving:

(1) Autonomy <u>selling</u> a software licence and/or hardware to the relevant counterparty and, at the same time, or shortly thereafter, Autonomy <u>purchasing</u> products or services from that counterparty the sale and the purchase having been negotiated at the same time and concluded in circumstances where (allegedly) the sale would not have happened, either at all, or on the terms it did, but for the purchase; and then

(2) Autonomy preparing and implementing separate contractual documentation for the sale and purchase, and presenting and accounting for the sale and the purchase as if they were independent, arm's length transactions;

(3) Autonomy recognising revenue from the <u>sale</u> immediately, and capitalising and amortising the costs of the <u>purchase</u> over the purported useful life of the product or service in question, thereby deferring the related costs.

2341. The Claimants further alleged that, to ensure that this accounting treatment passed muster with Deloitte, Autonomy devised a false commercial rationale to explain Autonomy's purchase of the counterparty's product or service. The Claimants alleged that, with one exception (a purchase of hardware, software and services ("RT 5") from EMC Corporation ("EMC") which was impugned only on the basis that the purchase was in excess of fair value), the only real purpose of Autonomy's purchase from the counterparty was to incentivise the counterparty's reciprocal purchase of a software licence or hardware from Autonomy from which Autonomy could recognise revenue and, in most cases, to provide the counterparty with the necessary funds for the counterparty's purchase.

2342. The Claimants' case was that this is apparent from, amongst many other things: (i) the absence of evidence that Autonomy's decision to purchase the product or service was made on the basis of a genuine commercial rationale, as opposed to a desire to generate revenue from a reciprocal sale, (ii) the evidence that Autonomy would <u>not</u> have made the purchase had the counterparty not entered into the sale, and (iii) the evidence that the counterparty would not and, in many cases, could not, have purchased the software licence and/or hardware from Autonomy on the terms it did but for Autonomy's purchase.

2343. The Claimants' punchline was that in the case of Schedule 5 transactions Autonomy should not have recognised any revenue from its sale to the counterparty, and should have accounted for the sale and the purchase on a net basis, recording the net amount that Autonomy paid to the counterparty as an expense. The Claimants contended that the total adjustments required in respect of improper recognition of revenue from the reciprocal transactions in the Relevant Period total some $65.2 million. The Claimants' main claim in respect of the Schedule 5 transactions is brought under FSMA and/or for misrepresentation to recover loss in respect of the resulting falsity of statements made in Autonomy's published information.

2344. In addition, with the exception of the EMC transaction (RT 5) and the MicroTech transaction ("RT 6") at Schedule 5/5 and 5/6 respectively, these transactions are also said to have resulted in transactional losses claimed by the relevant Autonomy counterparty (ASL and Zantaz) against each of Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch on the basis of an alleged breach of duty. The Schedule 5 transactions in respect of which transactional losses are claimed were set out in RRAPoC Schedule 12B ("Schedule 12B"). In each case, the Claimants quantified their loss as the excess of the total cash paid by Autonomy group companies for the purchase side of the transaction over the total cash received by Autonomy group companies from the sale side.

Summary of the Defendants' case re 'reciprocal' transactions

2345. The Defendants rejected this characterisation of the Schedule 5 transactions. They submitted that the Claimants' case in relation to the Schedule 5 'reciprocal' transactions was without any foundation: the sets of transactions identified in Schedule 5 were all accounted for properly, and since each transaction was independent, had its own commercial rationale, and was to be regarded and accounted for separately, it was wrong to lump it in with another or other transactions to conjure a 'loss'. The Defendants preferred to refer to the transactions in question as *"purchases from customers"*.

2346. The Defendants emphasised, in particular, that in all the impugned transactions the "reciprocal" transactions concerned sales of dissimilar goods (which, as will be seen is important in the context of IAS 18.12). They submitted that the existence of a commercial rationale for various purchases was confirmed extensively by the Claimants' own witnesses.

2347. More generally, (though the Claimants dismissed these points as *"straw men"*) the Defendants stressed that (a) there is nothing wrong with purchasing something from a customer, (b) there is nothing improper *per se* about linked transactions, (c) there is no requirement to show that Autonomy 'needed' the products or services, and (d) there is no basis for substituting Autonomy's stated rationale for the purchases with another rationale after the event.

2348. The Defendants also noted that for many of the impugned purchase transactions, the Claimants did not even challenge the fair value assessment during the trial. In any event, fair value was assessed at the time, often with objective third party evidence, and Deloitte, who were well aware of the factual connections between the transactions, were satisfied and concluded that revenue on Autonomy's sales transactions should be recognised gross.

Defendants' knowledge and participation

2349. As to the issue of the Defendants' knowledge of improper accounting, the Claimants' case was that:

(1) Mr Hussain's knowledge was *"beyond argument"*: he was

> *"front and centre of the reciprocal transactions. He often came up with the idea for the transactions and he was either directly involved in their negotiation or he oversaw and directed their negotiation by others within Autonomy."*

(2) Dr Lynch was aware of each of the relevant sales by Autonomy and he approved most of Autonomy's related purchases. Even where there is no documentary record of him approving a purchase he must, at the very least, have been aware of it: it is inconceivable that Mr Hussain, who knew of both transactions, would only have told Dr Lynch about the Autonomy sale and not the related multi-million-dollar Autonomy purchase.

2350. In his closing submissions, Mr Hussain attacked the evidence of Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco to the effect that he had planned and directed the sales and purchases with Capax Discovery ("RT 1"), on which the Claimants based their claims, as contrived, co-ordinated and untrue. He contended, as to both this and the other impugned transactions, that there was no reliable evidence suggesting that he conceived the arrangements to be in any way improper. Mr Hussain otherwise adopted the submissions on behalf of Dr Lynch.

2351. Dr Lynch maintained that each of the impugned transactions appeared to him to have a commercial rationale and to be at fair value. He did not think that any of them was improper. His closing submissions noted that for many of the transactions the

Claimants did not even challenge him as to his understanding at the time in relation to one or both of the commercial rationale and fair value issues.

The Schedule 5 and Schedule 12B transactions

2352. The impugned 'reciprocals' which were not connected with VAR transactions (see paragraph 2338 above) were described in Schedule 5 of the RRAPoC in groups referred to as "RT 1" through "RT 6". In the Claimants' written closing submissions, the groups were addressed according to the counterparty. "RT 1" (with Capax Discovery), "RT 3" (with FileTek), and "RT 6" (with MicroTech) were transactions with favoured or 'friendly' VARs. The others, "RT 2", "RT 4" and "RT 5", were described as "Miscellaneous Reciprocal Transactions" and were with various software companies: RT 2 was with VMS Inc ("VMS"), RT 4 with Vidient Systems Inc ("Vidient") and RT 5 with EMC. In this judgment, I shall revert to the sequence as set out in Schedule 5 of the RRAPoC, which is chronological by reference to the first transaction in the set.[286]

2353. In addition to their claims under FSMA and/or misrepresentation, the Claimants also claimed transactional losses in respect of some, but not all, of the Schedule 5 transactions impugned as 'reciprocal'. Those transactions in respect of which the Claimants made claims for transactional losses were listed in Schedule 12B of the RRAPoC: the transactions comprised in RT 1, RT 2, RT 3 and RT 4 were all also "Schedule 12B transactions" in respect of which claims for transactional losses were made. No claims for transactional losses were made in respect of RT 5 and RT 6.

General points on accounting issues

2354. The accounting question and the Claimants' allegations must be decided in respect of each of the impugned transactions individually and on its own particular facts. However, it is convenient to consider first the overarching accounting questions raised by the Claimants and the accounting framework by reference to which they arise, and also certain points suggested in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions to be of general application.

The accounting framework

2355. Although the Claimants sometimes described the sets of transactions which they sought to impugn as *"barter"* transactions, those transactions were not suggested to involve an *"exchange"* or swap of goods such as to bring the transaction within IAS 18.12[287]: they were transactions for monetary consideration. However, the Claimants'

---

[286] It should be noted, however, that I have already dealt with transactions connected with VAR transactions (and which were the subject of the second type of challenge identified in paragraph 2338(2) above and set out in Schedule 3 of the RRAPoC) in the Schedule of Impugned VAR Transactions. Accordingly, I have addressed the 2011 FileTek/StorHouse transactions, which were, as Schedule 3 transactions, examples of the second type of challenge referred to in paragraph 2338(2) above, together with the impugned VAR transaction to which they relate (VT18).

[287] IAS 18.12 provides in relevant part as follows:

"When goods are sold or services are rendered in exchange for dissimilar goods or services, the exchange is regarded as a transaction which generates revenue. The revenue is measured at the fair value of the goods or services received, adjusted by the amount of any cash or cash equivalents transferred. When the fair value of

case was that they were so inextricably 'linked' that their only fair presentation in the accounts would have been to account for them together.

2356. The Claimants accepted that simultaneous transactions of sale and purchase between the same counterparties are common, and that usually, they are accounted for as separate transactions. The Claimants' point was that in certain circumstances that may not reflect their true substance: although in form separate, their true substance may only be revealed and reflected by treating and accounting for them together. The Claimants contended that this was the position in the case of each of the sets of impugned 'reciprocal' transactions they identified in Schedule 5.

2357. Thus, the Claimants presented the principal accounting question underlying their case on the Schedule 5 transactions as being whether Autonomy should have accounted for the relevant sale and purchase impugned:

(1) as separate transactions, in accordance with the accounting principles applicable to each; or (as the Claimants submitted was correct)

(2) on a net basis, that is, recognising any net payment by Autonomy as an expense and any net receipt by Autonomy as other income.

2358. The Claimants adopted two approaches in support of their submission that (2) (the net basis) was the correct accounting treatment.

2359. The first, and what they presented as the simplest, approach involved a reiteration and application of their fundamental point in the context of the impugned VAR transactions, which is that transactions are to be accounted for in accordance with their substance and not merely their legal form. The Claimants' case is that in each case the overall reciprocal arrangement lacked substance because it lacked any commercial rationale other than to put the counterparty in funds for some other purchase, or to satisfy some other obligation, and that it was wrong to recognise revenue from it accordingly. The Claimants' first approach was not dependent on IAS 18.13, and indeed made it unnecessary to look at that rule. Furthermore, the experts were agreed with that approach: if the transactions lacked independent rationale and substance, that sufficed to disqualify revenue recognition without further regard to the more specific and detailed journey through IAS 18.13.

2360. The Claimants' alternative approach was based on IAS 18.13 itself. IAS 18.13, which is headed *'Identification of the transaction'*, prescribes the test and accounting treatment of 'linked' transactions. In the course of his oral closing submissions, however, Mr Rabinowitz clarified that although the routes offered were different they would always lead to the same conclusion: there would never be a case where one route was satisfied and the other not: as he put it *"you get to exactly the same point"*.

2361. IAS 18.13 confirms that transactions are *"usually"* accounted for separately. However, and in addition to a case where transactions are by way of barter or exchange (for which the test and accounting treatment is prescribed in IAS 18.12) there is a possible exception where two or more transactions, though they may take the form of separate agreements, they:

---

the goods or services received cannot be measured reliably, the revenue is measured at the fair value of the goods or services given up, adjusted by the amount of any cash or cash equivalents transferred."

> *"are linked in such a way that the commercial effect cannot be understood without reference to the series of transactions as a whole."*

2362. IAS 18.13 also stipulates how, in such a case, revenue recognition criteria are to be applied to:

> *"separately identifiable components of a single transaction in order to reflect the substance of the transaction."*

2363. As the Defendants emphasised, and the Claimants accepted, the test under IAS 18.13 is not factual linkage *per se:* it is not sufficient for there to be a factual connection, or even for there to be a situation where one transaction would not have occurred without the other. Mere reciprocity does not lead to net accounting. Moreover, and as was common ground between the accounting experts and the parties, the fact that transactions may be linked does not prevent recognition of the sale transaction at gross fair value. The joint statement of Mr MacGregor and Mr Holgate stated under their "Agreed view":

> *"Even if the alleged reciprocal transactions are determined to be linked, this does not necessarily preclude separate recognition of each limb of any such transaction i.e. the recognition of the gross fair value of the sale and purchase."*

The parties' approaches to the nature of the linkage required and its identification

2364. The Claimants put forward the following approach:

(1) The initial step is to identify the transactions that might be linked in such a way that their commercial effect cannot be understood without reference to the series of transactions as a whole. This may be established by what the Claimants described as a *"prima facie linkage"*. The Claimants stressed that such a *"prima facie linkage"* would not of itself mean that the transactions must be accounted for together, and that it would only mean (as Mr Holgate explained it) that the transactions:

> *"should be considered together but that then may lead to accounting for them separately or on some net basis. That's not the end of the story, in other words".*

(2) The next step, according to the Claimants' approach, is to consider whether it is possible to understand the commercial effect of each of the transactions without regard to the other. That is a fact-specific enquiry. Relevant considerations would include (a) whether each transaction has a genuine commercial rationale, (b) whether there is any contractual interdependence between the transactions, and (c) whether the transactions are at fair value.

(3) The Claimants stressed, however, that these considerations are (i) not exhaustive, and they instanced a further potentially relevant matter as being whether one transaction would have happened without the other; (ii) not mutually exclusive, and they instanced the payment significantly in excess of fair value such as might call into question the commercial rationale for the

purchase; and (iii) not necessarily deserving of equal weight, and they quoted Mr Holgate's view in particular that if there is a lack of commercial rationale for one part of a linked transaction *"you're three-quarters of the way there."*

2365. The Defendants, on the other hand, advocated the three-stage approach in fact adopted by Deloitte:

    (1) First, it is necessary to examine the contracts to determine whether there is a contractual linkage between the purchase and any sale transaction which impacted on the revenue recognition for the sale. The Defendants submitted that there was no such linkage for any of the transactions which are impugned in this case.

    (2) Secondly, it is necessary to ensure that there was a commercial rationale for the purchase.

    (3) Thirdly, it is necessary to determine whether the transactions were at fair value.

2366. In his closing submissions on behalf of Dr Lynch, Mr Hill addressed the Claimants' suggestion that it was relevant to consider whether one transaction would have occurred without the other. Noting that Mr Holgate had accepted in cross-examination that this was not conclusive, Mr Hill submitted that it was no more than *"part of the factual picture"* since it did not answer the question he posed as being at the heart of the matter:

    "…can I understand the commercial effect of these transactions separately?"

2367. Mr Hill suggested that, in the case of each of the Schedule 5 transactions, if there was a commercial rationale other than solely to generate, by means of a purchase, revenue for a sale, that commercial rationale provided the requisite understanding. He stressed that the Claimants' case for impugning the transactions had been pleaded and argued on the basis of <u>the sole</u> purpose of Autonomy's purchase being to incentivise and fund the counterparty to enable Autonomy's sale. It would not suffice if that was only <u>part</u> of the purpose. In this connection, Dr Lynch's written closing submissions quoted Mr Welham's agreement that, having ascertained that the goods were dissimilar items, the essential questions were whether there was a commercial rationale, and whether there was fair value; and provided that was the case then revenue would be recognised gross:

    "Q. … So one of the questions is whether the goods in question are similar, correct?

    A. It is, yes.

    Q. Once that's out of the way, then essentially the two elements are commercial rationale for the deal and fair value?

    A. Yes."

2368. It was common ground that in each set of Schedule 5 transactions the goods, the subject of Autonomy's purchase transaction and the goods, the subject of Autonomy's sale transaction were not "similar".

2369. The principal focus of the parties' submissions was therefore on the commercial rationale, and in particular, the issue as to whether what the Defendants asserted was the rationale for the Schedule 5 transactions was genuine, or whether it was a pretext to cover what the Claimants submitted was the real purpose, being to incentivise and fund Autonomy's counterparty to purchase software from Autonomy so that Autonomy could recognise revenue on its sale transaction. There were a number of disputed issues in this connection, some of which melted away as being largely semantic or what the Claimants described as *"strawmen"*.

2370. In that context, the issues can be summarised as:

(1) The relationship between the commercial rationale of the transactions and their commercial effect;

(2) Whether the Claimants had to demonstrate that the only rationale for the transactions was for Autonomy to fund by the purchase transaction the revenue-generating sale transaction and thus in effect purchase its own revenue;

(3) The relevance of whether or not Autonomy needed and used the goods it purchased;

(4) The relevance of the pre-purchase assessment of the goods the subject of Autonomy's purchase transactions;

(5) The relevance of Deloitte's assessment and approval of each of the transactions;

(6) The import of the factual evidence given by those involved in the transactions;

(7) The import and reliability of the expert evidence.

2371. As to (1) in the preceding paragraph 2370, the Claimants sought to apply IAS 18.13 according to whether or not one transaction in a series had any commercial rationale without the other(s). They contended that where one of the transactions in a set of two makes, on its own, no commercial sense, and has no substantial business rationale or commercial purpose at the time of the transaction except to fund the other transaction, then the one is obviously dependent on, and cannot sensibly be understood without regard to the other; and that in such circumstances both must be accounted for according to their net effect together. Mr Rabinowitz summarised this in his oral closing submissions as *"...the inability to understand a commercial rationale for one without having regard to the other as well."*

2372. The Defendants, though they too addressed the issue of the commercial rationale of each transaction, pointed out, correctly, that the test prescribed by IAS 18.13 for applying the recognition criteria for two or more transactions together is not expressed in terms of the *"commercial rationale"* of one transaction in a set of two (or perhaps more) transactions, but rather in terms of whether an understanding of the *"commercial effect"* of the relevant set or series of transactions may only be had by *"reference to the series of transactions as a whole"*.

2373. The paradigm is where the series of transactions all concern the same goods going round in a circle or *"round-trip"*. Hence the example given in IAS 18.13 of a transaction of sale of goods on one date and a transaction for the repurchase of the

same goods at a later date: a proper understanding of each transaction is only to be found by reference to their composite result, and it is right that the revenue recognition criteria should be applied, not to the components, but to the composite, as in the case of an exchange or swap of the same goods (see IAS 18.12).

2374. Where, on the other hand, the various transactions in a sequence relate to dissimilar goods, and the analogy with an exchange or swap is lacking, the fact that the transactions are performed in a sequence does not ordinarily deprive each transaction of commercial effect: neither the sale nor the acquisition of the goods is substantially negated or in commercial terms reversed, and the application of the revenue recognition criteria to each transaction in the sequence is appropriate and indeed required. Perhaps another way of looking at this is that where the effect of one transaction is fundamentally altered by the effect of another the question is whether each can be understood on its own terms without reference to the other, or whether in reality the two (or more) can only properly and rationally be understood by reference to their combined effect.

2375. In each of the allegedly reciprocal transactions impugned in this case, the transactions related to dissimilar goods: they were not (contrary to the terminology sometimes deployed by the Claimants and even by Mr Holgate) exchange, barter or "round-trip" transactions; and where the goods the subject of each of the two transactions are dissimilar, *prima facie* at least each transaction would appear to be independent and the subject-matter of the contracts suggests no reason to depart from the "usual" approach of separate accounting of each.

2376. The question is whether, nevertheless, any of the transactions in an identified sequence was in reality simply a way of funnelling money to the counterparty to fund another transaction in that sequence, having no real substance or independent rationale at all. Mr MacGregor put the point this way in his oral evidence:

> *"…So to make this real, in these situations, I think the suggestion is that Autonomy was buying software which it didn't -- had no point – there was no purpose in it buying it, it was done solely as a way of funnelling money back to the counterparty. So it's that leg of purchase which on its own doesn't make any sense.*
>
> *…if the overall substance of the transaction is solely as a way of Autonomy paying money to – for no other reason, paying money to a counterparty so that it can buy its software, then that commercial – the overall transaction has no commercial substance. And one would deal with the accounting for that on a net basis, i.e. whatever the net payment is…would be simply treated as an expense with no recognition of revenue."*

2377. On that approach, the relevance of assessing the commercial rationale of a transaction in such a sequence is to determine whether that transaction has any independent substance, or whether it is in reality only understandable by reference to the commercial effect of all the transactions in that sequence. In particular, where a purchase transaction has no rationale except to fund a sale transaction, so that the purchase cannot really be understood except by having regard to the sale, it may well be that the two transactions need to be taken as one, and only any surplus of the sale proceeds over the purchase proceeds accounted for and recognised as revenue.

2378. This analysis seems to me to bear on a point I raised with Mr Rabinowitz in the course of his oral closing submissions, intended to be reflected in the question identified in (2) in paragraph 2370 above. This was whether it suffices to justify treating transactions in a sequence compositely when applying revenue recognition criteria that (to take the example as above of a purchase transaction and a sale transaction) the predominant purpose for the purchase was to fund the sale, and the one would not (or probably not) have taken place without the other, but it was not the sole purpose.

2379. Mr Rabinowitz initially submitted that *"predominant reason suffices"*. I do not accept that this is the correct approach. It would, at least potentially, require the court to weigh an entity's competing proper purposes, which (outside possibly the context of unfair prejudice issues) is very rarely appropriate when the judgment has lawfully been left to that entity's management.

2380. Similarly, a related test Mr Rabinowitz proposed, which was to ask whether the one would have taken place but for the other, does not seem to me to be what IAS 18.13 has in mind: thus, the rationale of a purchase by Autonomy may include the fact that thereby the counterparty will have funds which it intends to use to purchase dissimilar goods from Autonomy, and yet also have its own commercial rationale and substance viewed as an independent transaction so that its commercial effect can readily be understood.

2381. Mr Rabinowitz's last iteration of the argument was to pose the question: *"why was this being done?"*. He elaborated this (modifying it a little to suit the particular context of related transactions) as follows: accepting factual linkage is a necessary but not a sufficient characteristic, having identified it:

> *"…you ask yourself a question: can I actually understand this, properly understand the one, genuinely understand the one without having regard to the other? If you can't you have to account for them together. It's only in that way that you get a genuine commercial rationale being reflected in your accounts."*

2382. Although that may seem to restate the issue, it does seem to me to point the way. The question in my view is whether the rationale of the one is only in reality supplied by the other. The answer may not depend exclusively on whether one or the other lacks substance: it may be apparent from other considerations that the real reason for one is the other. If in the case of factually linked transactions, one transaction appears to be so lacking in commercial rationale that it begs the question what the real reason can be, and the reason is apparent from the other, the two must be accounted for together for the purposes of applying the revenue recognition criteria. Here, if it is established that the one cannot realistically be explained except as a funding mechanism for the other, that would, in my view, suffice. The test also seems to me to be close to what Mr MacGregor may have had in mind, though that must be qualified by the gloss that the commercial rationale of a transaction is to be distinguished from its incidental side effects and from pretended objectives which at the time plainly carried no real weight in the decision to undertake it.

2383. The next question is how the fact or lack of any genuine commercial rationale for and substance of the (in this case) purchase transaction is to be determined. The Claimants relied especially on two tests, reflected in (3) in paragraph 2370 above: whether Autonomy had in fact any need for the goods and whether it in fact made any use of

the goods when purchased. In this regard, the Claimants had pleaded in each case that Autonomy had *"no independent need"* for the goods purchased; and they contended that this could be demonstrated by evidence as to the use made, or the lack of any use being made, of the goods after the purchase.

2384. This led to the Defendants contending that (a) a test of necessity was too strict and misplaced, and that any genuine commercial rationale should suffice, and (b) to assess the commercial rationale by reference to the subsequent use of the goods purchased was flawed in principle since it relied on hindsight, did not address the commercial rationale at the time of purchase and was a particularly unsuitable evaluative approach for a fast- moving company in a fast-developing sector, where technologies change and priorities shift with great speed and it is not unusual for products to be unsuccessful or to be moved aside.

2385. I agree with the Claimants that this dispute was largely semantic (a dispute about "need"); and indeed, the Claimants accepted in their oral closing that the test is *"genuine commercial rationale at the time of the purchase"*. A demonstrated lack of any real intention at the time of the purchase to use the goods purchased is obviously relevant. Conversely, evidence of subsequent use might be relevant in testing whether the rationale was genuine or (as Mr Rabinowitz put it) *"one drummed up after the event."* I accept the Claimants' submission that adventitious use after the event is unlikely to provide any commercial rationale, and indeed may suggest that the need for the product has been confected and the rationale contrived.

2386. That said, I accept the Defendants' submission that the Claimants adopted too confined an approach to the assessment of commercial rationale. I agree that:

(1) There could be a number of types of commercial rationale. Immediate need is not a valid test of commercial rationale. Autonomy could have a potential use for the product, or could want it in its inventory, or could be accumulating useful stock (in the case of hardware servers, for example).

(2) Nor, related to that, is the subsequent use of the product purchased a reliable test either; and although it may have some relevance to the intention at the date of the purchase (as acknowledged above) the Claimants' approach of assessing commercial rationale according to the lack of any subsequent use runs the risk of impermissible and misleading hindsight. A product considered worth acquiring may be overtaken, or have been proved unreliable. As head of R&D, Dr Blanchflower was well placed to comment on this industry reality:

> *"Q. It's also right, isn't it, that tech companies quite often work on projects that end up not being successful, yes?*
>
> *A. Correct.*
>
> *Q. It's an industry where one hit can make up for a number of misses, isn't it?*
>
> *A. Yes.*

> *Q. And when a project starts, it can be pushed aside by something more important sometimes, yes?*
>
> *A. Yes, yes.*
>
> *Q. Or a better opportunity might come along which is more worth spending the development management time?*
>
> *A. Yes, I agree.*
>
> *Q. Or perhaps sometimes a competitor's product might come along which makes the project no longer so viable or interesting to take forward?*
>
> *A. Yes, yes.*
>
> *Q. And it's not that rare, is it, for a company to invest in a project and for it then to get delayed, or sometimes not even get to market?*
>
> *A. That happens, yes.*
>
> *Q. And Autonomy had projects like that just like any other tech company, didn't it?*
>
> *A. I would like to think we had a greater hit rate than most, but that is still the case, yes."*

(3) Conversely, however, I accept the Defendants' submission that whilst evidence of non-use may or may not be significant, proven actual use may have what Mr Hill termed *"asymmetrical significance"* as a good indicator of commercial rationale.

2387. As to (4) in paragraph 2370 above, the Claimants placed considerable emphasis on what they depicted as the lack or paucity of evidence of any proper pre-purchase process of assessment by Autonomy of the goods it was to purchase. This is obviously, in my view, potentially a relevant factor to consider in respect of each of the impugned reciprocal transactions in assessing whether Autonomy really wanted to purchase the goods, or whether its driving purpose was to get money into the hands of its counterparty to enable the counterparty to purchase Autonomy products. However, I agree with the Defendants that it is necessary to consider whether Autonomy's approach was uncharacteristic compared to its ordinary process of decision-making, or whether the Claimants' criticisms are in part a manifestation of a different and more bureaucratic management style of a company such as HP. It is also necessary to take into account whether management were already familiar with the product, such that

extended assessment and a written record may have been considered pointless or unnecessary.

2388. As will be seen when considering the various impugned reciprocal transactions in turn, the Defendants contended that the Claimants had taken an unrealistic approach to the process that one would expect to see for Autonomy to decide on a purchase which overlooked Autonomy's characteristic entrepreneurial approach to decision-making, and that their criticisms of the written material justifying or recommending the purchase were exaggerated. The Defendants contended that members of management were well abreast of other products in their market and often already had prior knowledge of a product, and knew they were interested in buying it. It was not unusual or sinister for the written document to have no more than a confirmatory role.

2389. As to (5) in paragraph 2370 above, the Defendants contended that the Claimants had ignored or understated the role of Deloitte. The Defendants placed considerable reliance on Deloitte's review and approval of each of the impugned reciprocal transactions, in the course of which Deloitte had full access and spoke to Autonomy personnel, including Dr Menell and others on the technical side (such as Mr Lucini). Deloitte also consulted their own technical specialist, Mr Johnstone, who reviewed the products.

2390. Deloitte's approach was summarised in a summary prepared by Mr Knights, in which Deloitte considered the first VMS purchase and sale, having also discussed the matter with Mr Barden, from Deloitte's NAA department:

> *"I have talked through the "VMS" matter with Phil Barden.*
>
> ***Background Summary***
>
> - *Autonomy have sold $9m of software to 3rd party VMS*
> - *VMS have separately sold to Autonomy $13m of services/license for a 3 year provision of their services to Autonomy*
> - *We have reviewed the commercial substance of both deals*
> - *We are satisfied that these are not similar items of exchange*
> - *We have reviewed the contractual terms of both transactions*
> - *It is clearly demonstratable that what Autonomy has bought from VMS is entirely different from what it has sold to VMS.*
> - *We are satisfied that there are no related party matters.*
>
> ***Accounting principles***
>
> *Phil has agreed that the accounting principles are around revenue recognition and are directly tied into the audit judgements around:*
>
> - *Establishment of fair value of both transactions.*[288]

[288] In the case of the sale transaction, there was no reason to measure the fair value as distinct from the sale revenue. In the case of a purchase, where the measurement is highly fact-specific, the Defendants' case is that the finance department and Deloitte considered the evidence of fair value of the goods purchased in each case and were satisfied that the amount paid was the fair value. The Claimants contended, however, that Deloitte were misled. The issues as to the measurement of fair value, Deloitte's assessment and the Claimants' case that Deloitte approached the matter on the basis of a number of misunderstandings fed by Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain, are elaborated below.

- *The determination that these transactions are or are not for similar items*
- *The judgement for business rationale for these transactions - to underline the separate nature of both transactions.*

On the basis that the audit team can conclude satisfactorily on these areas of judgement then revenue recognition and the separate recording of revenues and costs is appropriate.
Revenue and costs would be recognised at fair value."

2391. Deloitte's view that a preliminary matter to be addressed was whether the two transactions within the set (one for Autonomy to purchase goods and the other for Autonomy to sell goods to the same counterparty) concerned similar goods was explained in an email dated 6 July 2009 from Mr Barden of Deloitte's national accounting and auditing team when considering the VMS deal (see below) to Mr Knights, Mr Knight and Mr Welham (and others in Deloitte), where he stated in response to an email from Mr Knights setting out his report as follows:

> *"Even in a barter transaction, revenue will be recognised at fair value unless the items exchanged are 'similar'. If we are happy that each sale could have taken place without the other, and that the items exchanged are not 'similar', then I would expect revenue to be recognised at fair value."*

2392. Mr Welham agreed and explained that having ascertained that the goods were dissimilar items, the essential questions were whether there was a commercial rationale, and whether there was fair value. Provided that was the case then revenue would be recognised gross:

> *"Q. ... So one of the questions is whether the goods in question are similar, correct?*
>
> *A. It is, yes.*
>
> *Q. Once that's out of the way, then essentially the two elements are commercial rationale for the deal and fair value?*
>
> *A. Yes."*

2393. Deloitte also reviewed and approved the assessment of fair value in the case of each of the impugned reciprocal transactions. Mr Welham confirmed that Deloitte in every case scrutinised the evidence available at the time the audit judgement was made, which included evidence which came into existence after the accounts stage but before the audit judgement.

2394. The Defendants suggested that the Claimants paid hardly any attention to the assessments of fair value which were carried out at the time, and that the cross-examination of Dr Lynch was striking for the absence, in general, of any challenge in

relation to this material and the fair value assessment that was made. They went on to submit that if (as they suggested the Claimants' own witnesses had confirmed) Autonomy was purchasing a product that was or would be useful, and which was purchased at fair value, the Claimants attempts to impugn the transaction and the accounting cannot get off the ground.

2395. It is to be noted, however, that in the case, for example, of the Vidient transaction (RT4) addressed in greater detail below (see paragraphs 2878ff), where the purchase and sale transactions by Vidient were put into different quarters (see paragraphs 2904 to 2913), Mr Welham's evidence (which is supported by the documentary evidence and which I accept) was that Deloitte did not become aware of the Vidient sale transaction until too late to consider the two together (and see paragraph 2914 below). Similarly in the case of the purchase and sale transactions with MicroTech comprising RT6 in Q1 2011, which were also put into different quarters, Deloitte were unaware of the second transaction when they reviewed the first (see paragraph 2964(1) below). Mr Welham also confirmed that Deloitte knew that there was factual linkage in the sense that they were transactions between the same parties at about the same time. The question is whether they could each have taken place without the other, not whether they would each have taken place without the other.

2396. As to (6) in paragraph 2370 above, the parties drew rather different conclusions from the "direct" evidence as to the rationale for Autonomy's purchases. The Claimants relied especially on Mr Egan's evidence as to the real rationale for some of Autonomy's purchases in his witness statement (in paragraphs 36 to 38) as follows (the underlining is mine):

> *"36. …One of the ways in which Autonomy met the larger goals was to do round trip transactions with customers who had a product Autonomy could buy. Mr Hussain directed me to find "quid pro quo" deals – deals in which Autonomy could buy goods or services from another company, and in turn, that company would use the funds from the sale to purchase software from Autonomy. The point of these deals was effectively to find revenue for Autonomy that was easier to get than a conventional sale because the buyer was getting something good for its own business in return.*
>
> *37. In the deals that I understand from the Claimants' lawyers are challenged in this case, Mr Hussain or I identified another company's product or service that Autonomy could purchase, even though Autonomy otherwise had no intent or plan to purchase that product or service, which was unwanted, unused or overpriced. I would then approach the other company and propose what I called a "quid pro quo" or "round trip" deal. Autonomy would offer to purchase the other company's product or service if, in return, that company would agree to license identified software from Autonomy. In most cases, the money that Autonomy paid to the other company to buy its product or service gave the other company the funds with which to purchase the license from Autonomy. An incentive for the other company was that Autonomy would pay more for the other company's product or service than the other company was asked to pay Autonomy for the license to use Autonomy's software…*
>
> *38. Mr Hussain principally set the price to be charged for the Autonomy software and directed the negotiation of the spread. Again, he instructed me as to how to ensure that those deals were to be structured so as to be*

acceptable to Deloitte. To make the case that the revenue from the sale element of these deals could be recognized, I wrote emails explaining how Autonomy would get value from the products that it purchased. But, in reality, I knew that Autonomy would not have purchased the products without the related purchase by the third party."

2397. When cross-examined Mr Egan confirmed that his evidence in these paragraphs should be read as relating only to the reciprocal transactions with Capax Discovery (RT1) and FileTek (RT3). However, the Claimants submitted that many of the other reciprocal transactions had strikingly similar features to the FileTek and Capax Discovery round-trip deals; that this was unlikely to have been a coincidence, particularly in circumstances where Mr Hussain was involved in all of them; and that the Court should therefore infer that Mr Egan's general comments in his witness statement about the rationale behind the reciprocal transactions apply across the board.

2398. The Claimants submitted that it is clear from Mr Egan's evidence that:

(1) The reciprocal transactions were conceived of by Mr Hussain or Mr Egan, neither of whom had technical expertise.

(2) The transactions were conceived of as a means of generating revenue to meet market expectations.

(3) The transactions were an expensive means of generating revenue because Autonomy had to purchase a product in order to induce the revenue-generating sale.

(4) Autonomy would not have purchased the products without the related purchase by the counterparty.

Factual evidence as to the real rationale: Claimants' case

2399. The Claimants went on to submit that this evidence and the inferences they invited the court to make were supported by what they described as a *"wealth of material"* from which they submitted it is to be inferred that this was the real rationale for Autonomy's purchases. They described this material in five headline points.

2400. First, they submitted that the purchases were difficult to square with Autonomy's general approach of <u>not</u> purchasing third party software and using Autonomy's own software or open source software where at all possible. That general approach was Autonomy's publicly stated position at the time, and was confirmed by a number of witnesses, including Dr Blanchflower, Mr Lucini, Mr Humphrey, Mr Wang, Mr Kalbag, Mr Greenwood, and Dr Lynch's witness, Mr Avila. Their evidence, in short, was that Autonomy did not generally purchase third party software. There were, of course, exceptions, but this was usually where the software in question was highly specialised and Autonomy had no equivalent offering. A review of Autonomy's financial statements for the years ended 31 December 2009 and 31 December 2010 reveals that over 99% of Autonomy's capitalised software purchases during those years related to transactions that are impugned in these proceedings, which the Claimants relied on as belying any suggestion by the Defendants that it was commonplace for Autonomy to purchase third party software.

2401. Secondly, the Claimants contended that Autonomy did not conduct the sort of due diligence which would be expected from a company purchasing a product for many millions of dollars with the genuine intention of using it in its business. Autonomy's approach was more consistent with what might be expected from a company that did not care what it was purchasing and whether it could use what it purchased but was searching for something to say to justify it. Thus, the Claimants contended that prior to purchasing the products in question:

(1) Autonomy did not obtain any test licence or prepare any proof of concept.

(2) Nor did Autonomy perform a detailed technical evaluation to determine: (i) whether Autonomy could build an equivalent product for less, i.e. a buy versus build analysis, and (ii) whether the product was capable of being used alongside or integrated with Autonomy's software.

(3) Nor did Autonomy conduct any detailed commercial or cost benefit analysis to determine the likely value of the product to Autonomy in terms of future sales or saved expense.

(4) Nor, contrary to Dr Lynch's assertion, did Autonomy obtain alternative quotes from third-party suppliers "*in most cases*". Autonomy obtained competing quotes in just two instances – RT2(1) and RT3(1) (the first reciprocal transaction with VMS and the first reciprocal transaction with FileTek, respectively) – and even then only after the purchase in question had taken place, suggesting that the quotes did not, therefore, form any part of Autonomy's decision-making process, and instead, were obtained in an attempt to justify to Deloitte the fair value of a purchase that had already happened.

2402. The Claimants rejected the arguments (outlined above) deployed by the Defendants to the effect that Autonomy did not need to conduct any detailed technical analysis because it was already familiar with the product or the product was well known in the industry, and as an agile company in a fast-moving industry that made decisions quickly did not habitually produce long reports on why it did things. The Claimants contended that these points do not withstand scrutiny, because:

(1) There was no evidence that Autonomy had any first-hand experience of the relevant products prior to purchasing them. The material that Autonomy did obtain was marketing information or information obtained from cursory internet searches and was often obtained after Autonomy had already made the decision to purchase the product.

(2) Autonomy did produce reports, certainly for the larger purchases, but these were often misleading and produced after the event, not for the purpose of determining whether Autonomy should purchase the product, but, rather, to generate a paper trail which Autonomy could use to justify the purchase to its auditors.

2403. The Claimants submitted that the only credible explanation for Autonomy's approach is not that Autonomy was acting normally; but rather that the purpose of Autonomy's purchase was not to obtain the benefit of the products or services, but to generate a related revenue-generating sale.

2404. Thirdly, the Claimants submitted that there is clear evidence that the purchases were an exercise not just in generating, but in maximising, Autonomy's revenue, and that this was achieved by Autonomy channelling funds to the counterparties under the guise of the purchases to enable them to enter into sales that would otherwise have been beyond their financial means. In addition to the direct evidence from Mr Egan in re-examination on the FileTek reciprocal transactions (RT3) that Mr Hussain's objectives included making the deal as large as possible, the Claimants pointed to accounting evidence that Autonomy's purchases were out of all proportion to the sales made by the counterparty of the same products in their ordinary course of business. They submitted that this strongly supports the inference that the purpose of Autonomy's purchase was simply to induce the counterparty's purchase at a price that would assist Autonomy in reaching its revenue goals and to channel the necessary funds to the counterparty. For example:

(1) For RT1, the counterparty, Capax Discovery, was, in 2009, a newly-formed entity with no business to speak of. Nevertheless, Autonomy paid in excess of $14 million for services which Capax Discovery was not even in a position to provide and never in fact provided.

(2) For RT2, the counterparty, VMS, had total annual revenues of $50 to $75 million, and yet Autonomy purchased VMS's products for $13 million and $8.4 million.

(3) For RT3, the price that Autonomy paid for its first purchase of FileTek's StorHouse software represented more than 20 times FileTek's total licence revenues for StorHouse in all of 2008, and more than 10 times its total licence revenues for StorHouse in the first three quarters of 2009.

(4) For RT4, the price that Autonomy paid for its first purchase of Vidient's 'SmartCatch' software represented more than 13 times Vidient's total licensing revenue from sales of SmartCatch in 2009 and was the largest transaction in the company's history.

2405. The Claimants also sought to rely on evidence from the counterparties that, without Autonomy's purchase, they would not – and, in many cases, could not – have made their reciprocal purchase from Autonomy on the terms they did. This is addressed in more detail in the transaction-specific parts of this section below.

2406. Fourthly, the Claimants placed reliance on the following common features of the reciprocal transactions:

(1) Autonomy paid the amounts due in respect of Autonomy's purchase before the counterparty paid the amounts due in respect of Autonomy's sale, with the exception of RT4, where the counterparty made a small advance payment to Autonomy in response to concerns expressed by Deloitte as to the counterparty's financial standing, and RT5, where the relevant debts were netted off against each other; and

(2) Autonomy paid significantly more to the counterparty than the counterparty paid to Autonomy, with the exception of RT6, where this would have happened but, in the event, the outstanding balance was cancelled after HP's acquisition of Autonomy was announced and there was no net payment.

2407. The Claimants submitted that these features are consistent with the purpose of Autonomy's purchase being: (i) to incentivise the counterparty to enter into the reciprocal sale, which Autonomy achieved by agreeing to make a net payment to the counterparty, and (ii) in most cases, to fund the reciprocal sale, which Autonomy achieved by paying the counterparty before it was required to make any payments to Autonomy. The Claimants put this as high as being:

> "*not just the inexorable inference to be drawn from these common features of the reciprocal transactions, it is also borne out by the transaction-specific evidence of the negotiations of the reciprocal transactions, many of which involved negotiation of the "spread", i.e. the net amount that Autonomy would pay to the counterparty and/or the timing of Autonomy's payments to the counterparty so that they preceded any payment by the counterparty.*"

2408. Fifth, the Claimants submitted that an examination of whether Autonomy actually received and used the services and products that it purchased from the counterparties reveals that:

(1) For RT1 (Capax Discovery) and RT6 (MicroTech), Autonomy never received any of the services it purportedly purchased for in excess of $17 million and $4.5 million, respectively.

(2) For RT2 (VMS), Autonomy made no material use or sales of the VMS data feed for which it paid a total of $17 million.

(3) For RT3 (FileTek), Autonomy did not achieve any code integration of the 'StorHouse' software on which it spent more than $21 million, nor was the software actually used by or for a single Autonomy customer.

(4) For RT4 (Vidient), there is no evidence that Autonomy ever tried to combine Vidient's 'SmartCatch' with any Autonomy product or otherwise used or sold the 'SmartCatch' software which it purchased from Vidient for more than $5 million.

(5) For RT5 (EMC), EMC did not use the software licensed to it by Autonomy and Autonomy knowingly overpaid for the EMC hardware it purchased.

(6) Four of the reciprocal transactions involved multiple purchases by Autonomy of rights to the same products or services from the same counterparty over a period of time (RT1, RT2, RT3 and RT4). As Mr Holgate put it in re-examination:

> "*Well, it would certainly, as the phrase goes, put one on enquiry because if the first licence to use software hasn't been used, then why is one paying further money to acquire further rights to the same thing? That doesn't make commercial sense. So at the very least one would need to find further facts and circumstances to understand why such a thing had been done*".

Factual evidence as to the real rationale: Defendants' case

2409. The Defendants rejected the Claimants' analysis and contended that much of it was based on unreliable witness statements, and that the principal person on whom they had relied, Mr Egan, had in effect recanted when (as they postulated came as a surprise to him) he was cross-examined. Further, whilst in fact Autonomy had made every one of its purchases because of its perceived utility at the time, they submitted that (i) what happened after the reciprocal transactions is irrelevant to their accounting treatment, (ii) the "*vast majority*" of Autonomy's purchases were used, albeit not always immediately, and (iii) Autonomy sometimes got it wrong or abandoned projects.

2410. The Defendants submitted that insofar as the Claimants' witnesses had first-hand evidence to give in relation to the purchase transactions, when they came to be cross-examined, they generally confirmed that there was indeed a commercial rationale for the purchase.

2411. In their written closing submissions, the Defendants gave two examples from Mr Egan's witness statement:

(1) Mr Egan's witness statement included the general statement that he had identified products for Autonomy to purchase which were unwanted, unused or overpriced. Mr Egan accepted that he only had any real recollection of three deals, VMS, StorHouse and EDD, and agreed that these were the only deals he was really able to give any evidence about. As explained below, Mr Egan was taken to the StorHouse and VMS purchases, and his evidence under cross-examination was very different from his witness statement. He confirmed that, as far as he was concerned, there was a good commercial rationale for each of the purchases, and that though it was not his judgement, he understood them to have been at fair value.

(2) Mr Egan suggested that Dr Lynch was involved in generating pretextual emails about Autonomy's purchases. Although he believed he would have had a better recollection at the date that he made his witness statement, he acknowledged that he retained no memory of any emails from Dr Lynch that were pretextual, and he acknowledged that he had not suggested any such thing in his evidence to the US Grand Jury given some time before his witness statement. He could point to no evidence to support the assertion as regards Dr Lynch; and in the end he accepted that from his own memory he was not able to give any evidence of Dr Lynch's involvement in generating emails to create the appearance that Autonomy had a genuine need for a product or service.

2412. In short, the Defendants depicted the "direct" evidence (and especially Mr Egan's evidence) as undermining rather than supportive of the Claimants' case when tested and then clarified in cross-examination.

2413. The Defendants contended that it was also a recurring feature of the Claimants' witness statements (in particular from the technical witnesses) that they included commentary on various purchase decisions made by Autonomy and the merits of those decisions. The Defendants dismissed this evidence as *"not useful"*:

(1) It became clear from cross-examination that so far as the technical witnesses were concerned, the witnesses in question were not involved in those business decisions and did not have any evidence as to the actual commercial motivation of management at the time. Moreover, those witnesses were

generally not involved in <u>any</u> of Autonomy's decision making as to whether and when to make purchases, and on what terms. Nor were they involved in the sales side, in ascertaining the market demand for particular products, or in considering Autonomy's market positioning, and the product portfolio that Autonomy wanted to present. These all involved commercial questions which were not dealt with at the time by these technical staff, and which were handled by other (often more senior) people in management and/or on the commercial side.[289]

(2) Even on the technical aspects, the technical witnesses were frequently asked to comment in their witness statements on products that they had not been involved in at the time, and on the basis of a recent review of limited documentation, rather than the product itself. Unsurprisingly, it emerged that the witnesses had little understanding of the product or its functionalities.

(3) Non-technical witnesses also volunteered comments on technical areas which were not their expertise, and on which they would at the time have deferred to Dr Menell and his technical team.[290]

2414. The Defendants similarly sought to undermine the other evidential material relied on by the Claimants.

2415. As to the first point relied on by the Claimants in support for the proposition that Autonomy could not have had genuine commercial reasons for the various impugned purchase transactions (see paragraph 2400 above), the Defendants noted that a number of the statements of the Claimants' technical witnesses included a section regarding Autonomy's propensity (or otherwise) to buy third party software, which the Defendants described as amounting to a refrain that it was against Autonomy's philosophy to purchase third party software, and it did not do so.

2416. However, according to the Defendants, the Claimants and their witness statements painted an extreme picture, the true position being more nuanced; fully understood, it did not yield any support for the Claimants' case: the reality was that while, all things being equal, Autonomy did have a philosophy of developing its own software and it did use and purchase third party products where this made business sense. Whether, in any particular situation, it was preferable to "buy" or to "build" was, of course, a multi-faceted commercial decision; Autonomy did both.

2417. Despite the terms of some of the witness statements, the Defendants relied on the following examples from cross-examination in support of their point that this was broadly accepted by the Claimants' witnesses:

(1) Dr Blanchflower's evidence, including the following passage:

> *"Q. And the management would need to take a number of factors into account in the buy or build decision, including the opportunity cost of devoting a number of their*

[289] The Defendants instanced Mr Lucini's comments on the StorHouse purchase. Mr Lucini was not involved in strategic discussions generally, and not involved in any of the strategic discussions with regard to Autonomy's development in the structured market. Mr Wang agreed in cross-examination that essentially, the pricing decisions, commercial decision, and the ultimate decision-making was made by people on the commercial side, not on the technical side (as he was, and to a large extent, so also Mr Lucini).

[290] The Defendants cited Mr Egan as an example.

engineering staff, yes?

A. *Yes.*

Q. *As well as the time it would take, if you were building rather than buying, to get the product to market, yes?*

A. *Yes.*

Q. *And, depending on the situation, it can be better to buy a product that's already been tested rather than have to go through elaborate testing processes?*

A. *There were certainly situations where that was not the case.*

Q. *But it all depends, doesn't it?*

A. *Yes."*

(2) Mr Lucini gave evidence to similar effect.

(3) Mr Martin explained in his witness statement that Autonomy did purchase software from third parties.[291] He explained about the documents (which showed examples of such purchases) being:

> "*consistent with my understanding of Autonomy's philosophy of wanting to develop its own products where feasible and commercially reasonable, but making a business judgment to purchase software where it made more sense to acquire it from third parties*".

He was not challenged on that evidence.[292]

2418. The Defendants sought to rebut the Claimants' contention that Autonomy did not conduct the sort of due diligence one would have expected from a company purchasing a product for many millions of dollars with the genuine intention of using it in its business (see paragraph 2401 above) on the basis that (already mentioned previously) having regard to its nature as a nimble and bureaucracy-free entrepreneurial company, speedy management decisions based on personal prior knowledge and experience with little written material recording an assessment were not egregious, and did not suggest anything sinister or any improper purpose.

---

[291] A witness called by Dr Lynch.

[292] It was put to Mr Avila in cross-examination that as a general rule or philosophy Autonomy did not purchase third party software. Mr Avila agreed but acknowledged that *"it wasn't entirely the case"* and that there were several exceptions. Mr Avila's evidence was that there were a number of reasons that made it not only possible but likely that Autonomy or any other software company would consider third party software. He also explained that he had a lot of experience with customers which required Autonomy in some cases to go out and explore whether "*we could build them in-house or find the best of breed from outside of Autonomy*".

2419. The Defendants relied also on the wide variety of commercial reasons that might justify a purchase, the fact that the Claimants' technical witnesses had little or no first-hand involvement in the decision-making process nor any knowledge of or insight into the actual commercial motivation of management or of perceived market demand, Autonomy's market positioning, or management's plans for the development of Autonomy's product portfolio. They sought to sweep away witness evidence, particularly from witnesses with technical rather than commercial roles purporting to address the commercial merits of a purchase, as just *"not useful"*.

2420. As to the Claimants' contention that Autonomy in effect tried to maximise the size of its purchases simply as a means of funnelling more funds to its counterparty to enable the counterparty to make purchases well beyond its means, (see paragraphs 2376 and 2404 above), the Defendants relied on the fact that in every case Deloitte had confirmed that fair value was paid, and there was nothing inherently wrong with a purchase from a counterparty, nor in the use by the counterparty of the proceeds to purchase from Autonomy. It is normal practice for software companies to buy and sell each other's products: the ultimate question is whether there was a commercial rationale and fair value for the product on each side.

2421. As regards the Claimants' reliance on seemingly suspicious *"common features"* of the transactions (see paragraph 2406 above) the Defendants depicted the Claimants' submissions as placing excessive weight on the instances where Autonomy paid a customer for a purchase immediately before the customer paid Autonomy for the sale, and/or situations where Autonomy made prompt or early payment to the customer. They contended that there is no significance in this:

(1) If Autonomy was paying its customer it was unsurprising (and good business practice) that it expected its customer to meet its obligations to Autonomy. It was generally in Autonomy's interests to pay its customers promptly and receive prompt payment from the customer, as this would reduce Autonomy's "days sales outstanding" ("DSO"). Autonomy published its DSO figures. Thus, for example:

> *"In Q1 2011 DSOs were 102 days [...] above the top end of the company's target 80-90 day range."*

(2) As Dr Lynch explained, the lower the DSO, the better:

> *"A. They told the reader how quickly our customers were paying us and it would be -- if customers were taking a long, long time to pay, then people might interpret that as meaning there was an issue with the product or that the economic environment was deteriorating, so it was a number that people looked at to try and make inferences."*

My assessment of the witness evidence on 'reciprocals' in general terms

2422. I shall return to address particular aspects of this evidence in addressing each of the impugned reciprocal transactions specifically. However, my overall assessment as to whether, as the Defendants submitted, cross-examination exposed and undermined the Claimants' evidence to the extent of showing the Claimants' characterisation of the

purchases from customers as improper 'reciprocal', '*quid pro quo'* or *'round-trip'* transactions to be without remaining foundation can be summarised as follows.

2423. The centre-piece of the Defendants' case that the purchases were properly rationalised transactions for sound commercial purposes at fair value was their assault on Mr Egan's evidence. It did seem to me that Mr Egan's witness statement, which was shown to be narrowly focused on StorHouse and EDD, gave a much more comprehensive and assertive condemnation of the purchases (*"unwanted, unused or overpriced"*) than his much more understated and carefully confined evidence when cross-examined. This was one of the many contexts in which I felt that even if Mr Egan had carefully considered the evidence as he assured me he had, he had subscribed to lawyerly drafting that had more impact and assertiveness than when confronted specifically he was content to defend or convey.

2424. Nevertheless, whilst the message was modified, it seems to me that it was to the same ultimate effect summarised in (1) to (4) of paragraph 2398 above: even if by happenstance some use could be found for what was purchased and the price was not shown to be above fair value, the conception, purpose and effect of the three sets of purchases by Autonomy on which he could give direct evidence was to induce and fund a reciprocal purchase from Autonomy of a software licence so that Autonomy could recognise revenue from the latter.

2425. Thus, for example, after his cross-examination, from a question to Mr Egan (in fact by reference to the second FileTek deal) to explain further an answer he had given in re-examination as to the principal driver of the deals the following exchange developed:

> "*MR JUSTICE HILDYARD: ...Another question arising out of your re-examination today and this time referable to the second quid pro quo deal with FileTek where Mr Rabinowitz asked you what the primary driver for the deal was, was it revenue, and I think your answer was that you did regard the primary driver as being revenue. Was that a matter of concern to you then as to the propriety of what was being proposed?*
>
> *A. No.*
>
> *MR JUSTICE HILDYARD: Why not? Can you answer reasonably shortly?*
>
> *A. Yes, I viewed it that if Sushovan wanted to take out what was very expensive revenue, then that was fine because he was going to take the expense as well as the revenue.*
>
> *MR RABINOWITZ: Can I just ask you, Mr Egan, in answering my Lord's question, you said that if Sushovan wanted to do a deal for expensive revenue, then you were happy to do a deal for expensive revenue. Can you just explain what you meant by "expensive revenue"?*
>
> *A. Meaning that there was a large cost to Autonomy. Autonomy was buying something else, so it was not therefore the same as if I went and sold a similar software deal to a company where there was no expense side of the equation.*
>
> *MR RABINOWITZ: Thank you very much.*

> *MR JUSTICE HILDYARD: Yes. Was the expense side, the fact that it was expensive in financial terms to Autonomy, made up in your mind by some other advantage and, if not, how could the transaction in your perception then be a proper one?*
>
> *A. Value -- software revenue was always the priority and it was very highly valued. It was just implicit to me that that had high value."*

2426. Perhaps inevitably, given the constraints under which he had to give his evidence, it was not always clear quite what the overall effect was of Mr Egan's answers. The Defendants sought to take from this evidence that Mr Egan considered the transactions to raise no concern as to their propriety. But I took from it a different message that Mr Egan accepted that the real purpose of the purchase by Autonomy from the counterparty was to fund a purchase by the same counterparty from Autonomy from which Autonomy could recognise revenue. It was revenue which came at a cost; the outlay was justified only by the value to Autonomy of securing such a software sale. No value other than revenue recognition was suggested. That, of course, chimes with the Claimants' case that the reciprocal transaction was in the nature of a 'round-trip". Further, as will be seen, any other explanation or 'spin' on what Mr Egan meant cannot stand with the contemporaneous documentation explored below.

2427. Further, and in addition to the disputed issue as to whether its purchases were ever really of any utility to Autonomy, which is more conveniently elaborated later in discussing the specific impugned transactions, the point summarised in paragraph 2408(6) above that four of the reciprocal transactions involved multiple purchases by Autonomy of rights to the same products or services from the same counterparty over a period of time (RT1, RT2, RT3 and RT4) was never satisfactorily rebutted.

2428. My last general comment relates to Mr Egan's evidence on the issue of pre-textual documents. The Defendants presented this as in effect amounting to a retreat from the evidence he had given. I did not take that to be the effect of what Mr Egan was saying. I took it that Mr Egan candidly accepted that this was no longer a matter that he could remember; but he believed that at the time of his witness statement what he had stated was something he could recall and truthfully state. He rejected the suggestion put to him that he had included it *"because that's the evidence that HP wanted"* and he had never thought he would be cross-examined on it. He told me that he had taken a *"very careful approach"* to his statement, had edited it significantly and *"removed names very frequently"*. As I have explained previously, I have been wary of Mr Egan's evidence in his witness statement, parts of which seem to me plainly to have been formulated for him by US lawyers with a certain view of the facts, and which he reconciled himself to saying at the time. But his own evidence in cross-examination tended to be more reliable; and I was persuaded in this context by what he told me.

The Expert Evidence relating to the impugned reciprocal transactions

2429. The last of the general issues identified in paragraph 2370 above is the import and reliability of the expert evidence relating to the impugned reciprocal transactions (see paragraph 2370(7)).

2430. Ultimately, there was little substantive dispute between the experts as to the meaning and effect of the relevant provisions of IAS 18; and they were agreed that in the

application of the revenue recognition criteria in particular it was necessary to identify clearly (a) the transaction to which the criteria were to be applied (be it a separate transaction or a linked one) and (b) its substance and commercial effect, and not merely its legal form.

2431. Both experts also agreed that a transaction having no real and understandable commercial effect except by reference to another linked transaction should not be accorded accounting recognition. That is so either because the overall reciprocal arrangement lacked substance or because, in terms of IAS 18.13 and/or IAS 18.14 the revenue recognition criteria should be applied to the transactions so linked together and the separate purported effect of each individual but linked transaction should be ignored.

2432. Moreover, the experts did not differ materially on a number of matters relating to the otherwise contentious issue as to the degree and nature of the linkage required to mandate the application of revenue recognition criteria to the linked transactions as a whole. Thus:

(1) Although certain parts of Mr Holgate's evidence at first blush appeared to suggest otherwise, he did not disagree with Mr MacGregor that mere reciprocity does not lead to net accounting, and nor does factual linkage, such as negotiation at the same time, without more.

(2) Mr Holgate accepted that the fact that one transaction would not have occurred without the other is not conclusive: it is a part of the factual picture.

(3) Mr MacGregor stressed, and Mr Holgate also accepted, that part of the analysis in determining whether two or more transactions should be accounted for separately or together under IAS 18.13 is to look at the relevant contracts and see if there is any linkage provided for or implicit.

(4) Both experts agreed that questions of commercial rationale depended very much on the facts; that a company like Autonomy might have a number of reasons for purchasing goods and services; that it was not the accountant's job to substitute his own views on commercial matters for those of the entity; and that the accountant would discuss things with management.

2433. Where the experts materially differed was in (a) the approach each took to his task and (b) the application of the agreed principles to the facts or assumed facts.

2434. As in his assessment of the impugned VAR transactions, Mr Holgate assessed the accounting treatment of the reciprocal transactions on the basis of the assumptions he had been instructed to adopt. Again as in the case of the impugned VAR transactions, he had not considered the actual facts; and since he had not even been provided with the relevant contracts, he had not considered the contractual documentation governing the legal relationship between the parties in the various transactions concerned.

2435. These matters were heavily criticised by the Defendants, especially since both experts were in agreement that (a) the analysis of transactions thought to be linked, their commercial rationale, and the determination of their proper accounting treatment depended on the particular (often nuanced) facts and (b) in the real world an accountant would always have regard to the terms of the contracts in determining whether the sets of transactions identified fell to be accounted for separately.

2436. Further, according to the Defendants, the assumptions Mr Holgate was given were truncated and extreme, lacking in nuance and presented in a vacuum, and couched in such a way as to suggest the answer to the ultimate question. Although slightly different assumptions were given for each impugned transaction, so that it is necessary for me to rehearse those applicable when discussing the particular impugned transaction, the following examples common across the impugned transactions were instanced by the Defendants to illustrate their point:

(1) In each case, Mr Holgate was instructed to assume that the Autonomy group company directly contracting *"had no independent need"* for the goods and/or services that it purchased from the counterparty, connoting (as the Claimants themselves put it) that there was no *"commercial rationale for buying it"*.

(2) Likewise, the assumptions described the impugned transaction as a *"nominal purchase"*, connoting (as Mr Holgate accepted) contrivance or artificiality (though any suggestion of sham was disavowed by the Claimants).

2437. Mr Holgate also accepted that another potential problem in proceeding on the basis of assumptions was the danger that in an *"assumed facts case"* some assumptions could implicitly rely in whole or in part on matters not yet known at the date of the accounting judgement called for in *"a real case"*. He confirmed in the course of his cross-examination, albeit in the context of the accounting treatment of the impugned VAR transactions, that it is not legitimate to take into account events after the date of drawing up the accounts.

2438. I would add that my understanding of the agreed view of the expert accounting evidence and of IAS 8 is that information coming to light between the reporting date and the signing date (after audit approval and signature) cannot be taken into account except (and the exception is an important one) insofar as it sheds light on circumstances prevailing at the reporting date; and information coming to light in that period must be disregarded insofar as it describes or reveals transactions and other events that arise after the reporting date. Information that comes to light after the signing date can be taken into account only at the next reporting date.

2439. Mr Holgate protested that even if (as he did accept) the assumptions were framed in a way that rather determined the answer, he was *"not going to be led by the nose so easily…"*. However, the Defendants made the point that confirmation bias is by its nature difficult to recognise and thus avoid, and submitted that there were signs that Mr Holgate was (as Dr Lynch put it) *"channelled"* by his assumptions and this resulted in him (a) failing properly to consider the possibility of nuanced variations or qualifications and the differences introduced by hindsight and (b) failing to ask for obviously relevant material (most strikingly, the contractual documentation). I was surprised by the last point; but I have not been persuaded that in the end it skewed his approach.

2440. Mr MacGregor regarded his approach as being *"somewhat different to Mr Holgate's"*. He was not asked to make assumptions, save as to the basic facts. He described his approach as follows:

> *"I have looked at each of the transactions and identified the accounting treatment based on the available evidence including identifying elements of disputed factual evidence which, if so determined (i.e. if the Claimants'*

allegations are confirmed) would mean the transactions did not have substance."

2441. Mr MacGregor emphasised that in his opinion:

> *"a key point in considering the alleged reciprocal transactions is that, even if they are considered 'linked' by reference to IAS 18.3, this does not necessarily invalidate the revenue recognised by Autonomy."*

2442. As to the first five of the six impugned transactions, he stated that:

> *"…in my opinion, it appears that the sales and transactions in each case may have been "linked", but not necessarily in such a way that they could not be understood without reference to the series of transactions as a whole. I say this because, based on the evidence I have seen, there appears to be a commercial rationale for both the sales and the purchases, and each can be understood on its own terms. It appears that the linkage could have been, in substance, the exchange of dissimilar goods or services that should be accounted for by reference to IAS 18.12, which requires that the revenue is measured at the fair value of the goods or services received, adjusted by the amount of any cash or cash equivalent transferred."*

2443. With the obvious but important caveat as to the need in every case for detailed consideration of the facts and contractual documents, I think the overall gist of his evidence in relation to IAS 18.13 is captured by the following exchange in the course of his cross-examination:

> *"Q. …If the facts are that Autonomy was purchasing something for which it had no need and which had no discernible value to Autonomy, and it was entering into that transaction simply as a means to channel funds to the potential purchase of its own software, then because the one transaction at least lacked a commercial rationale, you would look at the transactions together and you wouldn't account for any revenue from that transaction, correct?*
>
> *A. The way it works is if the overall commercial – if the overall substance of the transaction is solely as a way of Autonomy paying money to – for no other reason, paying money to a counterparty so that it can buy its software, then it has no commercial – the overall transaction has no commercial substance. And one would deal with the accounting for that on a net basis, i.e. whatever the net payment is, in this case it's Autonomy paying the counterparty, would be simply treated as an expense with no recognition of revenue."*

2443A. I turn from these general matters to consider the impugned reciprocal transactions individually to assess whether the Claimants' case that each was a means of Autonomy buying recognised and reportable revenue at substantial cost has been established and whether, as they submitted, the linked sale and purchase in each case lacked substance. If so, I agree that each pair of purchase and sale should have been

accounted for on a net basis, and no revenue should have been recognised from the sale.

RT 1: Capax Discovery/EDD (Sch 5/1 and Sch 12B)

2444. The Claimants contended that revenue on three sales to Capax Discovery of Electronic Data Discovery ("EDD" or "e-Discovery") software was recognised incorrectly, on the basis that the payments in respect of the sales were "reciprocal" with payments from Autonomy for EDD services that Autonomy did not need and which in any event Capax Discovery could not and did not provide.

2445. These three transactions were referred to compendiously as RT 1 and comprised individually:

(1) A March 2009 sale of a licence for $7.5m and 2 years support and maintenance for $750,000. This is referred to below individually as "the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale".

(2) A December 2009 agreement licensing additional software and extending the term from 5 to 6 years, for a licence fee of $4 million and $200k support and maintenance. This is referred to below individually as "the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale."

(3) A further agreement dated March 2011 providing Capax Discovery with the right to install the software at its UK Data Centre, for a licence fee of $1.6m and $80k support and maintenance. This is referred to below individually as the "third Capax Discovery/EDD sale".

2446. The Claimants' pleaded case in relation to RT 1 in RRAPoC Schedule 5/1 is that Capax Discovery agreed to purchase the EDD licences initially on the understanding that the Autonomy group companies would direct EDD support service business to it; and that when that support business was not provided, Autonomy made payments to Capax Discovery and Capax Global which were intended to be and were, used to fund the instalment payments due under the EDD software licences. These payments were made ostensibly for *"specialized EDD processing"*, *"additional EDD processing"* and *"Supplemental EAS support"*: but in fact, Capax Discovery and Capax Global were never required to provide such services or support (or what was provided was of no discernible value to the Autonomy group).

2447. As was noted in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions, the version of events pleaded in RRAPoC Schedule 5/1 refers only to a promise of future business rather than funding, and does not *ipso facto* call into question revenue recognition. However, the Claimants' factual presentation went further. Mr Baiocco asserted in his witness statement that even before that first sale, Mr Egan had agreed that Autonomy would provide funds to Capax Discovery to meet its instalment payments and indeed make a profit. That sat uneasily with the pleading that initially the only promise was that Autonomy would direct lucrative business to Capax Discovery. However, the cross-examination focused on the alleged side-agreement and tested the proposition that it was made before the first sale; and I consider that notwithstanding the departure from the pleading I must resolve the factual case as presented and cross-examined, not least since undoubtedly the Claimants have always sought to impugn all three of the sales comprising RT 1, and it is important in any event to determine when (if ever) there

was an agreement to the effect that Autonomy would funnel funds (as distinct from business) to Capax Discovery to enable it to make the instalment payments as they became due.

2448. Thus, the Claimants' primary case is or became that the recognition of revenue from each of the sales comprising RT 1 was improper because the sales were only achieved by the preceding promise that Autonomy would somehow channel funds to Capax Discovery to put Capax Discovery in funds to pay the instalments due and to enable it also to show a profit. In that way, Autonomy funded and incentivised Capax Discovery to purchase Autonomy software so that Autonomy could recognise revenue from the sales.

2449. Whilst the Defendants contended that any arrangements made for Autonomy to purchase services were reached after the initial purchase and were not pre-agreed, the Claimants contended that it is clear from the evidence, and that it is a matter of obvious and necessary inference, that the arrangement was reached <u>before</u> the relevant licence sales were entered into, and that it is simply not credible for the Defendants to suggest that this was a "*private arrangement*" between Mr Baiocco and Mr Egan, not least in circumstances where Autonomy paid $17 million pursuant to the arrangement over a period of more than two years, a substantial proportion of which was approved by the Defendants. On that basis, the Claimants submitted, the overall arrangement with Capax Discovery lacked economic substance, there was no net revenue realised and no revenue should have been recognised on the sales.

2450. The Claimants submitted that the Defendants both knew this. They contended further that Deloitte were misled by the form in ignorance of the substance, and did not appreciate that in substance and reality, Autonomy was buying revenue through a reciprocal transaction of illusory substance.

2451. Further, and more generally, the Claimants submitted that the means Autonomy adopted of funding Capax Discovery, by the issue of a series of purchase orders followed by payments for e-Discovery services which Capax Discovery could not and did not provide and for supplemental EAS support which Capax Global was never required to provide, plainly demonstrate fraud.

2452. The amounts involved were considerable. The revenue recognised by Autonomy in the Relevant Period in respect of the three transactions comprising RT 1 amounted to some $14,130,000. The Claimants' case is that Autonomy should not have recognised any of that as revenue but should instead have recorded the difference between the cost of the purchases and the amounts that it invoiced in respect of those sales, amounting to $1,507,281, as an expense. Under Schedule 12B of the RRAPoC, the Claimants also sought recovery of transaction losses in respect of RT 1 in the net amount of $3,215,000.

2453. As to the Defendants' position, Dr Lynch himself came to have concerns about RT 1. At the outset of his cross-examination, Mr Rabinowitz asked Dr Lynch whether, having listened to the evidence given in the case for the Claimants, it was really his position that not a single example of wrongdoing at Autonomy had been shown. Dr Lynch said that this was not his position; and he identified the evidence of Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco in respect of the transactions comprising RT 1 as having convinced him that Autonomy had been paying for EDD services that Capax Discovery was not in a position to provide, and that Mr Egan knew this and yet was reporting that the

services were being provided. Later in the course of his cross-examination, Dr Lynch confirmed his acceptance that:

> *"What I know of the matter is that Capax was not able to deliver the services it said it was able to deliver."*

2454. When then asked whether in such circumstances it was inappropriate for Autonomy to have recognised revenue from the sale of software to Capax Discovery, Dr Lynch was more guarded; but he did accept that revenue recognition would indeed have been inappropriate *"if that arrangement was made at the time of the sale of software to Capax."*

2455. In other words, Dr Lynch distinguished between (a) the general impropriety inherent in paying for non-existent or fictional services (which he accepted) and (b) the different question whether that affected revenue recognition in respect of the transaction preceding the payments (which he contended depended on whether any arrangement for payment for such services was made before or after the transaction). As to the latter, the Defendants' case was that if there was any agreement to pay for non-existent or fictional services, it was put in place after and not before the transaction, and only to make up for the failure to funnel business Capax Discovery's way. That, after all, was consistent with the Claimants' pleading. Thus, notwithstanding Dr Lynch's acceptance, on the basis of the evidence given by Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco, of the apparent impropriety of the arrangements as between them, the Defendants did not accept that the recognition of revenue from the sale of the three licences was improper.

2456. The Claimants sought to dismiss the timing issue as a *"red herring"*. They argued that had Deloitte been told at any point that payments had been made on fictitious invoices and then used to pay instalments under the original sales transactions, Deloitte's whole approach would have been unsettled and it would have revisited very sceptically indeed all related revenue recognition; and management's credibility would be shot. However, it seems to me that though relevant to any reliance sought to be placed by the Defendants on the approval of Deloitte, and also of course to my overall assessment of the Defendants' intentions, knowledge and honest belief, for present purposes the point cannot be dismissed as a red herring, even if in the event sums were paid for fictional services. From the point of view of the accountancy rules, the relevant time for assessment is the date of the transaction from which revenue is said to have been derived. A dishonest expedient adopted afterwards as the means of funding it would not necessarily affect revenue recognition of a precedent transaction at the transaction date[293]. Accordingly, Dr Lynch's caveat as to the timing of whatever arrangement was made must be assessed.

2457. Further, both of the Defendants maintained that they were not aware of any improper arrangement at the time, and were certainly not aware that there was anything wrong

---

[293] Mr Welham was asked whether he considered this would have affected the original revenue recognition. His response was a little under-stated:
"A. I think when you use the word "fictitious" auditors' ears start to prick up. So anything where we're assuming there is something fictitious going on, I feel slightly uncomfortable to be honest. So I can't comment on that because I think you're saying if something happened to do with fictitious invoices after the event, would that impact revenue recognition? And I just can't speculate at all because we're in the world of fictitious invoices which as I say, would trouble me."

in recognising revenue from Autonomy's EDD licence sales. Dr Lynch's position was that he had very little involvement in any of the three transactions; and generally, that he was not involved in any software sales. He signed off some of the purchases for services, but he did so on the basis of the proper approvals of others, without any reason to think that the purchases were not genuine. For his part, in his written closing submissions, Mr Hussain described the attempt to implicate him in whatever arrangements that may have been agreed between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco as *"ex post facto reconstructions which bear no relation to reality"*.

2458. Accordingly, and as the Claimants had themselves highlighted, the principal factual issues for determination in respect of RT 1 are:

(1) Whether there was an understanding between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco and/or in the case of the March 2011 agreement between Mr Hussain and Mr Baiocco prior to the sales from which revenue was recognised that Autonomy would ensure that Capax Discovery would be provided by Autonomy with the means of paying instalments due under the sales agreement, and if so what was its nature and timing?

(2) Whether, having regard to its nature and timing, the effect of any such arrangement and what was known of it rendered Autonomy's decision to recognise revenue on its software sales improper; and if so

(3) Whether the Defendants knew that the recognition of revenue from Autonomy's sales of EDD licences was improper.

The first Capax Discovery/EDD sale in Q1 2009

2459. The software licensed to Capax Discovery by Autonomy under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale (dated 31 March 2009) included Autonomy's e-Discovery software, called "Introspect" and a product called Enterprise Archive Solution ("EAS"):

(1) E-Discovery or EDD is, in summary, the process through which electronic data is ingested and maintained, searched and analysed, typically in the context of litigation or investigations. The provision of e-Discovery/EDD business requires a platform of e-Discovery software and appropriately trained personnel. Autonomy's e-Discovery/EDD software was called 'Introspect'.

(2) EAS was a digital archiving product that had been developed and sold by Zantaz to a significant number of smaller customers. After Autonomy acquired Zantaz in 2007, Autonomy made the decision not to continue to develop EAS; but it still had to provide support services for customers to whom the product had been sold. In this respect, EAS differed significantly from e-Discovery/EDD, the software for which Autonomy continued to develop and sell, together with related e-Discovery services.

2460. It is common ground that EDD was a lucrative line of business which Mr Baiocco (and, in particular, Mr Stephen Williams who had been recruited by Capax Global in late 2008 and who had been an Autonomy e-Discovery consultant at his previous employers) was particularly keen to develop. Mr Baiocco explained that his goal was to offer a hosted e-Discovery solution to customers: that is to say, that eventually

Capax Discovery[294] would host the relevant e-Discovery software and the customer's data in its own data centres. For that purpose, Capax Discovery would eventually need to acquire a data centre and the necessary hardware, and suitably trained personnel; but it needed also a licence to the relevant e-Discovery software.

2461. The license granted to Capax Discovery by Autonomy by the first Capax Discovery/EDD license agreement was to (a) use this software for the benefit of customers, either in connection with Capax Discovery's distribution of services provided by Autonomy, or in connection with Capax Discovery's own provision of services, and (b) install, operate and host the software, solely for the purposes of making the software available to customers as a Software as a Service ("SaaS") subscription-based offering, provided such hosted offering was housed on, managed by, and offered through access to servers owned and/or leased and controlled solely by Capax Discovery. The agreement also granted Capax Discovery a licence to market, sell and distribute Autonomy's services to customers. No source code license was granted.

2462. The amounts payable under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale were to be paid in instalments over 2 years in accordance with the Schedule to the licence, with the first instalment of $500,000 falling due on 30 April 2009. There were then eight instalments of $968,750 which were due at three-monthly intervals thereafter, until 31 March 2011. Autonomy was entitled to a royalty of 20% on all "Net Revenues" (as defined) over a threshold of $25 million.

2463. Capax Discovery assumed unequivocal obligations to pay the fees under the agreement (see Article 6). At Article 13, the agreement contained an entire agreement clause, which Mr Egan agreed was completely standard in software licences at that time, and which provided, amongst other things:

> *"This Agreement together with all Order Forms, contains the full and complete understanding of the parties as to the subject matter hereof and may not be altered or modified, except by written amendment which expressly refers to this Agreement and which is executed by both Autonomy and Capax. The parties expressly agree that this Agreement supersedes all prior or contemporaneous proposals and all other oral or written understandings, representations, conditions, and other communications between the parties relating to such subject matter, as well as the terms of all contemporaneous or future purchase orders. Unless the parties expressly agree otherwise in writing, in the event of a conflict or ambiguity between or among the provisions of this Agreement and an Order Form, the following shall be the order of precedence: first this Agreement: second, the Order Form. Any terms and conditions contained in any purchase order or other ancillary purchase documents issued by Capax and/or Customer shall be of no force or effect."*

2464. Autonomy recognised the $7,500,000 license fee as revenue in Q1 2009. The Claimants have stressed that the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale was important to

[294] Capax Discovery was not incorporated until mid-March 2009, after the meeting at the London Hotel discussed below (see paragraph [2468(2)]). References to 'Capax Discovery' for the purpose of this section denote the Capax entity to carry on e-Discovery business.

Autonomy in enabling it to hit its quarterly revenue targets. On the day it was struck, Mr Sass sent an email to Mr Hussain and Mr Egan (among others) marked 'high importance' and announcing in capital letters: *"CAPAX IS IN (SIGNED COPY IN HAND)"*. A few hours later, Mr Hussain replied, copying Dr Lynch, saying *"Very well done both of you – I like $7.5m deals"*. There is no dispute that Dr Lynch was also thus aware of the sale.

2465. More contentious, however, is the detail of what was said in the lead-up to the agreement. The Claimants' case was that a *"handshake"* agreement was made, and deliberately not reduced to writing, which in substance obliged Autonomy to provide funds to Capax Discovery in order to enable it to fund its obligations under the Capax Discovery/EDD agreement. The Claimants supported their case on the basis that Capax Discovery was newly incorporated and such funding was absolutely necessary: and in any event Capax Discovery was not in a position itself to provide EDD services until much later, and was reliant on Autonomy to fund it.

2466. The Defendants, on the other hand, contended that even if an arrangement was at some time made between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco for Autonomy to assist Capax Discovery by paying it for services before it could actually provide them, it was after and not before the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale agreement. Further, if and when made, the agreement was informal and personal to Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco, and did not bind Autonomy or alter or remove the unconditional obligations entered into by Capax Discovery under that agreement. They dismissed the version of events put forward by the Claimants as not credible, nor realistically supported by the evidence.

2467. Dr Lynch relied in his closing submissions on four key points in addressing the alleged understanding between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco. He submitted:

(1) First, the version of events put forward by the Claimants through their witness statements was manifestly incorrect.

(2) Secondly, the timing of any arrangement (whether by handshake or otherwise) was not as suggested, and post-dated the Capax Discovery/EDD agreement.

(3) Thirdly, the only party to any such discussions or understanding from the Autonomy side was Mr Egan, and any agreement he made with Mr Baiocco in defiance of standing instructions and the terms of the first Capax Discovery/EDD license agreement was personal to them and not binding upon Autonomy as a legal entity.

(4) Fourthly, any understanding or arrangement reached was informal, did not amount to an enforceable arrangement, did not alter the fact that Capax Discovery was on risk, and did not affect revenue recognition under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale agreement.

The Claimants' evidence of a handshake deal and the Defendants' criticisms of it

2468. The Claimants' evidence was directed towards establishing not only the content of the alleged *"handshake"* agreement (see paragraph 2465 above) but also its timing, it being crucial to their case (as it had developed) on revenue recognition in respect of the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale agreement that it should be shown to have preceded 31 March 2009. There were three strands:

(1) The background to the alleged agreement, which the Claimants depicted as demonstrating that the initiative came from Autonomy (or at least, Mr Egan) which was desperate to make up a revenue shortfall, that Capax Discovery (or at least, Mr Baiocco) was equivocal, and that Capax Discovery's agreement had in effect to be bought;

(2) The events relating to the only actual meeting firmly identified as having taken place in the relevant time period between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco, at a hotel in New York, on 11 March 2009;

(3) The exchanges after that meeting, which were predominantly between Mr Baiocco and Mr Sass, but which the Claimants maintained were directed by Mr Egan.

2469. Each of these strands was disputed by the Defendants. They maintained that:

(1) The initiative was welcomed by Autonomy but initially came from Mr Baiocco, who had identified e-Discovery as a lucrative area and incorporated Capax Discovery to pursue it, but who needed not only an EDD licence but (in effect) some sort of collaboration with Autonomy to build this new area of business.

(2) At the meeting between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco at the London Hotel in New York on 11 March 2009, the discussion was general and involved nothing which could have been described or thought to amount to a handshake agreement.

(3) No such agreement was reached in the period after that meeting: the exchanges and finalisation of the details which culminated in the first Capax Discovery/EDD sales agreement were dealt with by Mr Sass without substantial involvement on the part of Mr Egan.

2470. As to (1) in these opposing positions, an important detail of the Claimants' evidence is that Mr Baiocco stated in his witness statement that in early 2009, after Capax Discovery had decided to explore licencing EDD from Autonomy with a view to then offering e-Discovery services to its own clients, Capax Discovery requested quotes from Autonomy, but *"the amount Autonomy was asking for ($4 - $4.5 million) was more than we were willing to pay"* and Capax Discovery told Autonomy that it *"would not be able to proceed at a price in that range"*. Mr Baiocco had given the same evidence when examined in chief in the US criminal trial. The point is important because it was deployed by the Claimants as part of their overall case that Mr Baiocco's agreement to a very considerably higher quote a month or two later can only realistically be explained on the basis of Autonomy having agreed some sweetener or other.

2471. Another detail not mentioned in the witness evidence, but which is important for the same reason, is an email dated 13 March 2009 from an Autonomy salesperson called Jeff Cornelius ("Mr Cornelius") which he sent after hearing that Capax Discovery had *"reached out"* to Autonomy, advising Mr Egan and Mr Sass that he had already made a proposal to licence EDD software to Capax Global for as little as $1.6 million. Although Mr Sass quickly replied to the effect that the offer was nonsense *("This is*

bs. Must tell you guys") the discrepancy is arresting, and was cited by the Claimants in closing as reinforcing the Claimants' position that later discussions:

> *"were driven by Autonomy's desire to recognise as much revenue as possible in Q1 2009, and were not constrained by the value of the software or what Capax was willing to pay, because Autonomy was itself going to fund the licence purchase in full."*

2472. Thus, the Claimants relied on the antecedent history as an important indication that Autonomy engineered the transaction to plug a gap in its software revenues, and then in effect talked Mr Baiocco into a larger deal than otherwise Capax Discovery could have reasonably been expected to undertake by the promise of funding.

2473. In my view, the documentary evidence points to the original enquiry having come from Mr Baiocco, and that it met with an enthusiastic response. That was my impression of the email exchanges and the oral evidence did not cause me to alter it. Thus:

(1) An email from Mr TJ Lepore (an Autonomy sales person covering the New York area) to Mr Robert Sass (Vice-President of US Sales) dated 4 March 2009 records (as an update on "new opportunities") that *"Capax Global wants to build an eDiscovery practice – EDD, Review, maybe ECA. John can talk to you whenever"*, and Mr Sass's reply (within 10 minutes) encouraged immediate discussion, asking also *"do you have a feel for dollars – what do you think we can get this q?"*

(2) After Mr Lepore had spoken with Mr Baiocco that day to discuss Mr Baiocco's plans for this new venture, and what assistance Autonomy could provide, a later email from Mr Lepore to Mr Sass also dated 4 March 2009 recorded the fact of the discussion and the following:

> *"I did speak with John @4.30 as planned.*
> *I told him…that this is in the 7-figures range, depending on how much of a platform he wants to build. He didn't flinch; he's just looking for help on the best deal possible.*
> *Actually, in addition to ECA etc., they'd want to be able to show up to Company X with a portable system and collect from specific repositories. So they want to do the on-site ingestion/collection ala EnCase.*
> *With regard to timing, he has to sell it to his partners but he recognises this is huge business, the direction they want to go, AND he has all the idle servers released by Voxant. He wishes he had a deal to tie this to, but I explained that eDiscovery hosting is "here's the data – I need it processed and ready in two days" kinda thing, and if you've made the law firm happy it's more of an annuity than a huge up-front deal. He's hearing that from his new guy Steve Williams as well (Steve is from the eDiscovery space)."*

2474. In my view, the emails above attest also to the preliminary nature of the enquiry: it is a prospective project rather than a present proposal, and at that stage, Mr Baiocco had no

settled or certain idea quite what he wanted in terms of software in order to achieve its new objective. But the impetus came from him.

2475. Turning to (2) in paragraphs 2468 and 2469 above and the dispute as to what transpired at the only documented meeting between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco on the matter, on 6 March 2009 Mr Sass emailed Mr Baiocco, saying that Mr Egan and Mr Mooney were keen to put something together that worked for all parties. He *"reiterated the fact that we can be creative to ensure flexibility"* but emphasised that March was a key driver for Autonomy. Mr Baiocco was very enthusiastic about doing the e-Discovery project,[295] but at this stage it was still up in the air, and Capax Discovery had not even sorted out what the software might be. Mr Sass's email encouraged further discussion *"to get more clarity on what is needed"* and suggested a further meeting thereafter with Mr Egan who was in New York at the time (his email of 6 March 2009 proposed that they *"see if we can get together when Stouffer is in town to kick around ideas."*)

2476. It is common ground that a breakfast meeting was then arranged to be held at The London Hotel in New York City ("the London Hotel"). This was to be attended inter alios by Mr Egan, Mr Sass and Mr Baiocco on 11 March 2009. The evidence of that meeting, and who in the event attended it, is disputed and equivocal and the Claimants' case was modified over time. No consistent version was provided by the witnesses.

2477. In his evidence in the US criminal proceedings, Mr Baiocco had (in examination in chief) given a detailed account of proposals put forward by Mr Egan at the London Hotel meeting. He described this in answer to Mr Frentzen (US prosecuting counsel, with whom Mr Baiocco had had many previous meetings) as follows:

> *"Q. What did Mr Egan propose to you?*
>
> *A. He proposed that they would give us the software and – well, give us the software for a price and that then they would make sure on the back end that we got taken care of to pay it until we were up and running and able to do the actual work ourselves.*
>
> *Q. So what was the price that you were – that Capax was supposed to pay?*
>
> *A. Seven and a half million plus support and maintenance.*
>
> *Q. So it was more than the original quote?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. All right. And so in what way was it that Mr Egan was proposing that you could now do this deal for more money than you were – that you had already not been able to do?*
>
> *A. Well, he was proposing it because we weren't going to have to write a check for it. They were going to actually, you know, give us the EDD sort of processing money to give us the ability to make the payments to them for the software.*

[295] Mr Baiocco: "*We really want to do this. Just need to make sure we have everything in order.*"

Q. So was the proposed deal that Autonomy would give you the money to pay to them for the licencing of the software?

A. Yes.

Q. What were you going to do with the software once you received it at Capax?

A. Well, we were going to set it up and build the business that we wanted to build around it.

Q. Was there an understanding of – or was there an agreement about it if you were able to do the eDiscovery work, how that would proceed in terms of the relationship between Capax and Autonomy?

A. Yeah. Well, once we were going to be up and running, they were going to feed us overflow and then there was like a royalty on the back end…after we hit a certain threshold, that they would collect X amount of any eDiscovery that we would do going forward for the term of that license.

Q. Was part of this discussion or did part of this discussion involve the potential that Capax would actually get EDD work sent their way by Autonomy?

A. Yes. When we were ready.

Q. And that was my question. At this time in early 2009, was Capax prepared to do any EDD work?

A. No. We couldn't have been until we had the software. We didn't even own the software prior to that, so, no.

…

Q. What was it that gave you reassurances that you could enter into this agreement even if you couldn't make that payment schedule?

A. I had a handshake agreement from Stouffer that they were going to make sure that we got the money to us to be able to make the payments to them.

Q. To be clear, the money for these payments was going to come from who?

A. From Autonomy.

Q. With that understanding, did you agree to this?

A. Yes."

2478. This evidence was largely repeated, but with less detail, in Mr Baiocco's witness statement in the present proceedings. Mr Baiocco gave an account of the meeting, and of a deal, which Mr Egan stipulated must be made and signed by the quarter end (31 March 2009), for Capax Discovery to licence an EDD software package from Autonomy for an initial fee of $7.5 million. The assertion that a specific fee was mentioned acquired some importance and was disputed. It became clear in evidence

that a fee of $7.5 million had not in fact been mentioned: the most initially floated was a fee of $5 million. However, even at that lower level, such a fee was, according to Mr Baiocco, significantly higher than a fee quoted previously by Autonomy (in January or early February) of some $4 to 4.5 million which he had rejected; but this time, Mr Baiocco said, the proposal was for *"a more robust EDD software package"* and came with a collateral assurance that Autonomy would:

> *"get money to [Capax] so that we could make the licence fee payments as they became due and in return Autonomy would receive the royalty on EDD fees earned by Capax. In addition, Mr Egan said that Autonomy would make sure that Capax would make a profit on the relationship".*

2479. In addition, Mr Baiocco stated:

> *"…once we acquired a data center and all of the necessary hardware, installed the EDD software on it, and trained the necessary EDD personnel, we would provide EDD services to our own customers and Autonomy would send any overflow EDD business from its customers to us. We would pay a 20% royalty to Autonomy on EDD fees earned in excess of $25 million."*

2480. According to Mr Baiocco, he was only willing to contemplate an even higher fee (of $7.5 million) and:

> *"willing to go forward with these terms because the software would effectively cost Capax nothing, we would be able to build an e-Discovery business, and we were promised a profit."*

2481. It was this rather detailed and specific set of arrangements that Mr Baiocco described as a *"'handshake' agreement with Mr Egan on behalf of Autonomy."* His description of its terms varied; and Mr Baiocco accepted that his recollection was imperfect. However, the gist of what Mr Baiocco said Mr Egan proposed remained the same: Autonomy would take care of Capax Discovery, or as Mr Baiocco put it:

> *"the concept was clearly on the table that they [Autonomy] were going to somehow give me the money to pay the thing".*

2482. Whereas, initially at least[296], Mr Baiocco placed all this as having been agreed at the London Hotel meeting, Mr Egan's witness statement did not expressly mention the London Hotel, nor did he specify when else the proposal was made. However, he gave a similar account in his witness statement of the proposals some time exchanged, emphasising the nature of the arrangements made as a *quid pro quo*. He stated their content in a conspicuously legalistic way, with a confessional flavour, as follows:

> *"I proposed that Capax license EDD software for a term of five years for $7.5 million (plus $750,000 for two years of support and maintenance). In return,*

[296] In cross-examination, he acknowledged that he did not in fact remember the meeting at the London Hotel at all though he could recall Mr Egan being there, and on the basis of an email referring to Mr Sass having been there, probably Mr Sass also

and with Mr Hussain's approval, I told Mr Baiocco that Autonomy would agree to underwrite Capax's purchase by paying Capax a monthly fee that would fund its license purchase in full. I told Mr Baiocco that the license to use EDD software and Capax's corresponding payment obligations would be recorded in a contract that would state that Capax would be obligated to pay the full amount. I described the payments from Autonomy as monthly and at will, but said that it was Autonomy's intention to pay them until the license was fully underwritten or Capax was generating sufficient revenue from use of the licenses to pay the license off early. This was an oral side agreement. At Mr Hussain's direction, this oral agreement was not to be documented. I also told Mr Baiocco that Autonomy would do everything in its power to help Capax ultimately earn a profit on the transaction. Mr Baiocco agreed to proceed on that basis."

2483. One of the difficulties with over-lawyered evidence, as was this passage (and others) in Mr Egan's witness statement, is that the impression is given of focus on details of legal significance and the orderly exchange of information and mutual promises, whereas any conversation or series of conversations (particularly perhaps one in the lobby area of a busy hotel apparently taken over at that time by a trade show[297]) is likely to have been more amorphous, fragmented and (often) legally incomplete. Mr Egan's detailed and orderly presentation of the alleged agreement in his witness statement did not survive cross-examination; and the time and place of the agreement became increasingly vague and unclear from the answers given by Mr Baiocco and Mr Egan when required to depart from their carefully polished scripts.

2484. Another difficulty of using witness statements as a vehicle for a statement of events crafted to achieve a legal result is that even if not untrue, the words placed in the mouth of the witness may reflect matters thought to complete the legal depiction of which he or she has or retains no direct knowledge. In this case, it seemed clear to me that neither Mr Baiocco nor Mr Egan could any longer accurately distinguish between what they actually could remember and what had become their perceived recollection, though to be fair to both, when cross-examined and left to their own devices, they did each do their best in that regard.

2485. Varnish stripped away by the process of cross-examination, the uncertainty even as to who was there revealed the frailty of the recollection of the principal witnesses, Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco. Mr Baiocco expressed himself *"1,000%"* confident that he had walked with Mr Lepore to the London Hotel and was originally insistent that Mr Lepore was at the meeting. However, this is not supported by the email evidence put to Mr Baiocco; Mr Lepore was not on the email convening the meeting and is not named as a "required attendee". There is no reason to suppose that Mr Lepore is likely to have attended the meeting; and eventually Mr Baiocco accepted that his recollection may have been faulty[298]. Mr Egan thought Mr Lepore was there too; but by his own admission his memory was hazy. The unreliability of their recollection is emphasised by the fact that Mr Baiocco could not remember Mr Sass being there, and nor could Mr Egan; but the email evidence clearly suggests that he was. I accept and find that the meeting at the London Hotel was attended by Mr Baiocco, Mr Egan and Mr Sass, but not Mr Lepore.

[297] According to Mr Egan in his cross-examination.

[298] Mr Baiocco suggested that Mr Lepore might not have been at the meeting, but that he had met him before the meeting for coffee. But in his earlier evidence, he had been unequivocal that Mr Lepore was at the meeting with Mr Egan. Mr Baiocco plainly had no real recollection; his evidence was entirely reconstructed.

2486. Mr Baiocco accepted when cross-examined that he had no real recollection of the details of the discussion at the breakfast meeting in the London Hotel. Under cross-examination, he portrayed it instead as a discussion about *"e-discovery software in general"*, possibly with some discussion of Autonomy investing a little in Capax Discovery as an EDD partner, but with no specific discussion about "a dollar value on the deal" or any side agreement. He no longer could support his previous stance of the London Hotel meeting having been the occasion of the alleged *"handshake"* agreement. He could no longer remember *"exactly when the money piece came in…"* He added:

> *"I remember Stouffer talking about having 8 or $9 million of free money somewhere above or below – I'm not an accountant – the line they could use to invest in a partner, that's what I remember but not specifically talking about a dollar value on the deal at that meeting, I don't recall that."*

2487. Mr Egan, having first told me in the course of his cross-examination that he could remember a meeting with Mr Baiocco at the London Hotel at which he *"started talking to him about his interest in buying EDD software"* but little else of detail, and certainly no specific discussion about the *"7.5 million"*, then clarified that actually he had no recollection of discussing EDD at that meeting at all, and that what he had said about having had such a meeting at the London Hotel where they had discussed EDD was *"wrong"*; he added:

> *"I've corrected it, I do not recall that we discussed EDD."*

2488. In light of the answers given under cross-examination, I consider it clear that whatever discussions there were at the London Hotel on 11th March 2009 they were more general and informal than the impression created in the witness statements. However, I think it likely (and this is borne out by later correspondence referred to in paragraph 2492 below) that, recognising the delay likely before it could be ready and able to do serving work, the possibility of Capax Discovery licencing e-Discovery software with the assistance of funding from Autonomy was floated, reflecting in this context the same general pattern which came to be established in the impugned VAR deals.

Evidence of an agreement after the London Hotel meeting but before 31 March?

2489. Mr Baiocco's evidence was that the meeting at the London Hotel was the only occasion on which he met Mr Egan prior to the deal; and though in re-examination Mr Egan was prompted by various emails (referred to at greater length in paragraph 2492 below) to state his belief that he *"did have discussions with Mr Baiocco after the London Hotel"* he had earlier stated when cross-examined that he had no reason to disagree with Mr Baiocco's evidence that the London Hotel meeting was their only meeting.

2490. In this curious position, of an alleged agreement on which the representatives of both of those said to have been parties to it insisted but neither of whom was ever able to date or place, the Claimants' case to the effect that the surrounding documentary and circumstantial evidence is such that it must have taken place ranged over a long time period and many events, as did (inevitably) the Defendants' response. The Claimants'

written submissions well exceeded 100 pages in seeking to establish the inference, and the Defendants were almost as detailed in their rebuttal.

2491. I propose to consider the matters and events relied on by the Claimants as follows:

(1) the email exchanges immediately after the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale agreement;

(2) whether those involved were aware that Capax Discovery could not itself provide EDD servicing;

(3) other evidence of arrangements after 31 March 2009 suggesting prior agreement;

(4) any documentary evidence of arrangements thereafter made for Autonomy to support Capax Discovery;

(5) payments actually made by Autonomy to Capax Discovery under purchase orders issued by Capax Discovery for EDD services.

2492. The email exchanges following the London Hotel meeting seem to me to support my conclusion that the discussions there were preliminary, and did not focus on price or any settled *quid pro quo,* but did float the idea of a deal for Capax Discovery to purchase the EDD licence with money to pay for it being provided by Autonomy in some form:

(1) Mr Egan must have reported back to Mr Hussain after the breakfast meeting because on 12 March 2009 (the day following) Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch with the subject *"Capex [sic] deal"* and informing him that Mr Egan *"had a bite at a $5m deal"*. The day following that, in the context of updating Mr Hussain on a number of prospective deals, Mr Egan confirmed to Mr Hussain that *"John [Baiocco] called Rob [Sass] and said he was very interested in the pitch we presented at breakfast. Time to start to let him know it could be possible"*. Mr Hussain forwarded the email to Dr Lynch and Dr Menell.

(2) On the same day, Mr Lepore reported on a meeting with Mr Williams of Capax Discovery. Capax Discovery was evidently still exploring what kind of EDD project it wanted to do, and decided it would be necessary to produce a demo for Mr Jerry Hawk (Mr Baiocco's partner in Capax Discovery). Mr Lepore noted excitement on the part of Capax Discovery; and also that they had *"ideas about also not only developing eDiscovery software for those we sell to, but running it for them as well. I bet Wilmer would have interest in that kind of arrangement"*.

(3) Later on 13 March 2009 Mr Sass reported to Mr Egan on a call with Mr Baiocco. He wanted to move forward for a deal in Q1. He was proposing a meeting in Parsippany, New Jersey on 23 March 2009, and was still considering a broad range of possible deals (described as *"flavors on a proposal"*) of $5m, $10m, or possibly a lower entry point.

(4) On 18 March 2009, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch one of his many spreadsheets: on it was listed a $5 million deal with Capax Global, with a comment by the entry *"Indicated would like to do"*.

(5) No deal fee had been settled on even by 24 March 2009, as is evident from the documents below.

(6) The negotiations appear from the email evidence to have been carried on between Mr Baiocco and Mr Sass, though (contrary to what the Defendants suggested) with substantial background involvement on the part of Mr Egan.

(7) The parties' revenue expectations could be seen from the spreadsheet sent from Mr Sass to Mr Williams on 24 March 2009, in the revenue generation models. At that stage, a straight \$5m fee was being proposed by Autonomy (see the "E-discovery proposal" tab).

(8) On 26 March 2009 Mr Sass sent a deal model with two options, one being a \$7.5m option and the other a \$5m option. This was the first evidence of a \$7.5m option being suggested. There was evidence that a deal at that higher amount was promoted by Mr Egan to cover a gap in expected revenue for the quarter opened up by the collapse of a deal with Morgan Stanley which had been expected to close in the quarter. Mr Hussain's instant reaction as recorded in an email to Mr Egan responding to the news of the collapse of the Morgan Stanley deal was *"s**t – another piece of revenue gone. You definitely need \$7.5m from capax."*

(9) The *quid pro quo* offered for the larger commitment of \$7.5m on the part of Capax Discovery was a lower rate of royalty payable to Autonomy, suggesting (according to a 5-year model) a greater long-term return to Capax Discovery under the \$7.5m option. Mr Baiocco had set his sights on revenues of the order of a net \$44m over 5 years, and naturally considered it an exciting prospect.[299] However, despite this, Mr Baiocco seems to have remained cautious, and it should be remembered that this was before the first of the VAR deals when the understanding that Capax Discovery would not be left exposed became part of the pattern.

(10) By 27 March 2009 no deal had yet been completed; and it is clear from email evidence that Mr Egan remained concerned that Mr Baiocco had or would develop *"cold feet again"*. Mr Sass confirmed by email in response that:

> *"…he is looking for some sweetners [Sic]. he mentioned meeting with the partners and wanting to lay it all out. essentially he sent tom[300]on a mission and tom came back empty handed. He sounded a bit concerned, so I want to nip asap. You may want to call him or reply all to my emails and assuage concerns."*

2493. No specific occasion when the idea floated at the London Hotel meeting was discussed is identifiable in that chronology, and it is a fair point against the Claimants and the credibility of Mr Baiocco's evidence that he never did pinpoint any place or time when that idea became an understanding on which he was prepared to rely. Mr Hussain's closing submissions sought to quash any notion that "Tom's mission" had anything to do with any handshake agreement, on the grounds that (a) on the Claimants' case any

[299] As he confirmed in cross-examination.

[300] Mr Tom Leonard, who (according to Mr Hussain's closing submissions) acted as Capax Discovery's head of sales.

agreement had already been made some time earlier and (b) as head of sales Mr Leonard ("Tom") would not have been engaged in that sort of thing, but in *"sweetners [sic]"* which got the EDD operations up and running and securing new business. There is something in the latter point, reinforced by the likelihood that Mr Baiocco would have wanted to seek any confirmation of a handshake agreement himself, rather than through a messenger.

2494. Mr Baiocco's inconsistencies, and his failure to identify when the understanding eventually crystallised, were understandably much relied on by the Defendants in support of their case that (a) no settled formulation had ever been provided of what the alleged understanding was, even to the point that the Claimants' pleaded case varied from the case eventually put at trial; and (b) if there was any workable understanding reached between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco in respect of the EDD transaction it was, at most, an *ad hoc*, reactive arrangement reached after the event in light of unexpected difficulties, and not such as in any event to affect revenue recognition at the (relevant) point of sale.

2495. As to (a) in the preceding paragraph 2494, I have had especially in mind that initially Mr Baiocco described the arrangement as being that Mr Egan would provide Capax Discovery with business that would provide it with the means to make its instalment payments (and see paragraphs 2446 to 2448 above). However, and although the Defendants dismissed Mr Baiocco's attempt to explain this as *"incoherent"*, I consider that the explanation he gave is understandable. His central point was that by 'business' he meant and understood 'provision of funds'; and I consider that the explanation probably lies in the fact that even at an early stage the mechanism for funds being passed by Autonomy to Capax Discovery involved the placing of purchase orders for 'business'. That is how I understood the following exchange in Mr Baiocco's cross-examination, when he was asked to confirm whether his account that the handshake agreement was that *"Autonomy would provide enough EDD business to Capax to cover Capax's quarterly payments on the purchase of software…"* was true:

> *" Q. Is that what you told your lawyers at the time? I mean, it's a very different story from the one you're now giving to this court.*
>
> *A. It's one word difference. There's no chance they could have given me business in the beginning because we weren't set up or able to do the business.*[301]
>
> *Q. This is a completely different story. What this is talking about is the level of business that Autonomy would provide to give you enough to cover the payments plus a profit. That is a completely different story from the one you're now telling this court, isn't it?*
>
> *A. No, then the word "business" is wrong in there*
>
> *Q. Well did you-*

[301] I considered at one point that the explanation might be that at the time, Mr Baiocco was not distinguishing between Capax Global (which was already undertaking profitable business) and Capax Discovery (which was not), and that his main point that the word "business" was misplaced because Capax Discovery was incapable of undertaking any was an afterthought. But the fact that the understanding was for the provision of EDD business disposed of that to my mind.

> A. *I don't know if I said "business"*
>
> Q. *Were you misleading the lawyers when you told them this?*
>
> A. *No, I was not trying to mislead anybody, I was there of my own volition so, no, I was not trying to mislead anybody. Ever."*

2496. In support of their alternative argument as to the timing of any understanding, and in addition to there being no identified time or place for when it was crystallised, the Defendants placed much reliance on what they depicted as a sudden dawning on Mr Baiocco that his enthusiasm had overlooked the extent of the task that confronted Capax Discovery in building an EDD business, followed by a rather desperate lunge for some support from Autonomy. This was presented as inconsistent with there having been, prior to then, any settled understanding. Dr Lynch highlighted the following in particular:

(1) A few days after the agreement, Capax Discovery received a proposal for a lucrative proposed deal with a company called Iovate Health Sciences Inc ("Iovate") for the provision of litigation search facilities in pending Canadian litigation with an estimated data corpus of 2.5TB and a contract price of around $400,000 to $450,000. That would have covered the first instalment due under the agreement with Autonomy. Preliminary assessment of the viability of the possibility of Capax Discovery becoming involved, perhaps using Autonomy's facilities, revealed quite how far Capax Discovery really was from being able to assist, and brought home to Mr Baiocco quite how long it would take to get his new project up and running.

(2) Dr Lynch suggested that it was this dawning which drove Mr Baiocco to enlist, <u>after</u> the deal, Autonomy's financial help via a rather frantic email from Mr Baiocco to Mr Sass very early (03:14 hours) in the morning of 6 April 2009 in the following terms:

> *"I really need to speak to you in the morning. As I said from the beginning of this deal, there are things we didn't know we didn't know. We rushed the process to get this done for you in Q1. We are feeling the pain of all that now. My understanding of the Keys to the kingdom was that we would have everything we needed to do e discovery etal. Steven [Williams] is saying that the contract is missing key elements. Can we please talk in the AM as early as possible? I pushed this thru against all the partners wishes to push it into q2 so we didn't make mistakes. I need help. Sorry to sound so dire, however my reputation is on the line here."*

(3) Dr Lynch pointed out that Mr Baiocco's email of 6 April does not mention or even hint at any prior agreement that Autonomy would be passing money to Capax Discovery in some way. Mr Baiocco sought to explain the omission on the basis that this had nothing to do with financial support and that what he was pressing for was software which had not been provided; but this did not carry conviction.

(4) Furthermore, when Autonomy responded, its answer came, (by email also dated 6 April 2009) not from Mr Sass (though he and Mr Sullivan were copied) but from Mr Egan, and it made no mention whatever of software but simply stated:

> *"Sushovan, Mike Sullivan and I identified $250k of business we would like Capax to handle for us last week. That would be a first job. Mike Sullivan should be in touch tomorrow."*

(5) Also consistent with the 6 April email having been intended by Mr Baiocco, and understood by Mr Egan, to be a cry for financial help rather than for software or a software fix is the activity which the email prompted. The focus is not on the provision of fixes for software, but on what was ostensibly a "first job" which was intended in reality as the promise of initial funding.

2497. Nevertheless, despite my scepticism and concerns about the lawyer-varnished witness evidence, the inconsistencies in Mr Baiocco's evidence (exacerbated no doubt by the push and pull of multiple meetings with lawyers) and the Claimants' inability to pin-point any particular occasion when any agreement was made, I am satisfied that at some point prior to the end of Q1 2009 and the signing of the deal, the parties became *ad idem.*

2498. In particular, I have concluded and find:

(1) Mr Baiocco and Mr Egan agreed to proceed on the basis that Autonomy would find a way or ways of getting money to Capax Discovery to enable it to pay instalments under the licence proposed and earn a profit as well and (as Mr Baiocco put it in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings) *"make sure on the back end that we got taken care of to pay it until we were up and running and able to do the work ourselves"*.

(2) That understanding crystallised at some time prior to the agreement on 31 March 2009. I do not accept the argument that the risk belatedly dawned on Mr Baiocco. I do not accept the Defendants' argument that Mr Baiocco was simply carried away by enthusiasm, and may also have underestimated the length of time required to get an EDD platform up and running. Mr Baiocco was undoubtedly exuberantly entrepreneurial; but in the particular context he was markedly more hesitant and deliberate, and needed to carry his partners with him; and he is not a fool. I reject the defence that if there was any such understanding, it post-dated the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale and (as Dr Lynch's closing submissions put it) *"amounted to no more than an ad hoc solution with a salesman to assist Capax with its instalment payments, by putting business Capax's way, as a stop-gap, until Capax were up and running."*

2499. In the end, it is a point that comes down to whether or not to believe Mr Baiocco. For all the doubts I had and have retained about his witness statement, his rejection in the course of cross-examination of the suggestion that he left it until after he had signed a $7.5 million deal to make arrangements to cover his exposure was authentic and convincing:

> *"Q. Can I suggest that if you reached any kind of arrangement with Mr Egan, it was after the licence agreement and all that he was doing was saying, "look, I'll find a way of getting you the money until you get set up and running"?*
>
> *A. Let me just be clear. Are you suggesting that I signed the $7.5 million deal and then made a deal to get paid on the backside of that after I signed the 7.5 million, is that what you're saying?*
>
> *Q. Well, I'll ask the question again. What I suggest is that, if you reached any kind of arrangement with Egan, it was after the licence agreement had been entered into?*
>
> *A. That would be false. I knew flat out when I signed it that we were going to get the money on the handshake deal."* [Emphasis intended to reflect inflection in Mr Baiocco's answers]

2500. I accept that evidence. It had the ring of truth and logic. It seems to me to be also consistent with the circumstantial evidence, and in particular the following:

(1) Mr Baiocco's consistent evidence was that there was no prospect of Capax Discovery being ready to do e-Discovery business for, at the very least, 6 months; and I consider it unlikely that Mr Baiocco and his partners would have committed to paying instalments in June without some reassurance such as is alleged. As Mr Baiocco himself put it in an email dated 4 March 2010 (see paragraph 2544(6) above), without some such assurance, *"we were nowhere near ready to do a deal like this."*

(2) Autonomy needed the deal; and for that it needed to provide a *"sweetener"* and reassurance. I have been persuaded that something, beyond optimism and greed, must have encouraged Mr Baiocco at this early stage in the Autonomy/Capax Discovery collaboration to go, at Autonomy's request, for the considerably larger deal.

(3) At some point in the last week of March, the decision was made and implemented by Mr Baiocco and his partners to form the new LLC, Capax Discovery. Whilst of course Mr Baiocco's ultimate purpose was for Capax Discovery to be the vehicle for what was a new venture distinct from Capax Global's business, he made it quite clear that it also was *"a way to mitigate risk. It was a way to say: if you don't pay, then we're going to mitigate how we may have to pay if you don't live up to your bargain."* What has struck me is not so much the suggestion that Capax Discovery's formation was a means of holding Autonomy to an understanding already established, but that Autonomy accepted both the introduction of this new, untested vehicle with no trade or financial history, and the blaring message it sent. Dr Lynch accepted that even if he did not personally know, it was well known within Autonomy that Capax Discovery was a new entity set up for the purpose, as contemporaneous emails made clear.

2501. Autonomy's pressing need to overcome Mr Baiocco's hesitancy about so large a commitment in order to fulfil its revenue forecast for Q1 2009, and its acceptance of

the last-minute introduction of a newly formed entity without any financial ability to meet its obligations under the deal, seem to me to add considerable support to the Claimants' case. Mr Baiocco could not proceed without support; Autonomy could not achieve forecast if his reluctance was not overcome; Mr Egan could not legally bind Autonomy, but the agreed introduction of Capax Discovery meant that as a matter of fact Autonomy would have to abide by the understanding to preserve the credibility of the arrangement. These realities must have been recognised and accepted by both parties: in a sense, the assurances and the incentive to abide by them were inherent.

2502. I am also satisfied that but for these assurances, and the additional comfort provided that they would be honoured because Autonomy agreed to contract with the newly-formed Capax Discovery without right or legitimate expectation of recourse to Capax Global, Mr Baiocco would not have proceeded. On 31 March 2009 (the last day of Q1 2009), Autonomy Inc entered into a licence and distribution agreement with the newly-formed Capax Discovery, signed by Mr Egan on behalf of Autonomy Inc and Mr Baiocco on behalf of Capax Discovery.

Further defences if there was a pre-contract understanding

2503. In case of such a conclusion, the Defendants contended that, even if there was a collateral understanding between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco, it was personal to them and did not bind Autonomy or implicate the Defendants.

2504. Dr Lynch maintained that he had very little involvement in any of these transactions and that he certainly had no knowledge of any such understanding. Mr Baiocco only met Dr Lynch briefly once at a conference and did not discuss with him any of the transactions referred to in his witness statement. Mr Egan did not suggest that he had any discussions with Dr Lynch in relation to the EDD arrangements and he accepted in cross-examination that there was no interaction with Dr Lynch of which he could give evidence.

2505. He did not accept that other members of Autonomy's management knew of it either:

(1) He pointed out that neither Mr Baiocco nor Mr Egan had suggested that any other Autonomy staff member was party to the relevant conversations.

(2) He contended that individuals far closer to the underlying business than he was did not know; and he relied especially on the evidence of Mr Sullivan, who was the Claimants' witness, the CEO of Zantaz (which was the umbrella company for e-Discovery business) and the person subsequently involved in giving and requesting approval on a number of purchase orders for services from Capax Discovery (which became the vehicle for payments to Capax Discovery used to fund instalments, as explained below) that he was not aware of it. He stressed that the Claimants had expressly disavowed any allegation that Mr Sullivan was implicated in any wrongdoing.

(3) As to Mr Egan's evidence that Mr Hussain did know and approved the arrangements, Dr Lynch drew my attention to the fact that this was a story told in the statement of facts attached to Mr Egan's deferred prosecution agreement with the US prosecuting authorities, and his own liberty depended on sticking to that script. Dr Lynch submitted that the evidence as a whole is far more consistent with Mr Hussain not being aware of the arrangements.

(4) He submitted that there was no basis for thinking that Mr Scott, Mr Smolek, or Ms Watkins knew of the arrangements at the time, or that any of them appreciated that no e-Discovery work was, or was capable of being, done by Capax Discovery.

2506. This defence gives rise to a number of questions, not least how the reality that Capax Discovery was incapable of providing EDD servicing can possibly have been kept so secret for so long, from so many who were undoubtedly involved in the process of Autonomy placing orders for it and paying accordingly. I shall return to the question of the Defendants' personal knowledge later. For the present I focus on three aspects of the issue as to the state of awareness within Autonomy of (a) the purchase orders for EDD servicing and the pattern of payments by Autonomy to Capax Discovery in the period Q2 2009 to Q4 2009; (b) the capacity of Capax Discovery to undertake EDD servicing and other work; and (c) the omission of Mr Kanter from Dr Lynch's roll-call.

Autonomy's purchase orders and payments to Capax Discovery Q2 2009 to Q4 2009

2507. In the months that followed the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale, Capax Discovery's largest, perhaps exclusive, source of funds was payments made to it by Autonomy under purchase orders for *"outsourced specialised EDD services"* which I am satisfied and find Capax Discovery was not able to provide. The process was elaborated by Mr Egan as follows:

> *"Autonomy submitted a series of purchase orders to Capax Discovery for EDD services to be rendered; Capax then billed, and Autonomy paid, for services that were not actually performed and that, for a substantial period of time, Capax Discovery was not capable of performing…Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch approved these payments…*
>
> …
>
> *I generated emails that created the appearance that Capax was actually providing overflow EDD services for Autonomy. In those emails I referenced Autonomy's true bandwidth constraints with respect to its EDD processing and used those constraints as a stated reason for paying Capax for EDD services that were not performed…I knew that Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain had made similar pre-textual statements. Mr Kanter confirmed: "I'm OK with the subcontracting on the EDD side as we have volume issues" and Mr Hussain stated: "We have been subcontracting EDD services to Capax". In fact, the payments to Capax Discovery were designed to allow Capax Discovery to pay for the license that we sold to it so that Autonomy could recognise $7.5 million of revenue in Q1 2009."*

2508. This needs a little unbundling. The first point to explain is my finding that Capax Discovery was simply unable to and never did provide the services for which it was paid by Autonomy pursuant to the series of purchase orders.

2509. In making that finding, I have considered Dr Lynch's evidence, which was not challenged, that *"Capax could have performed the service work anywhere it could access Introspect software, whether at its own facilities, at the customer's facility if*

the customer had Introspect or at Autonomy's Boston office where Introspect was run." I also note that from the time that the deal was signed Capax Discovery was sending employees to Autonomy's Boston EDD centre for training and by July 2009 Capax Discovery was being held out in promotional material as providing EDD services and hosted archive services, which may have influenced some Autonomy personnel (see below). The Defendants also sought to contend, both (in the case of Mr Hussain) in the US criminal proceedings and in these proceedings, that although it was some time before it could establish its own data centre, Capax Discovery did almost immediately develop an EDD service capability which it did make available to Autonomy and for which it was properly paid.

2510. However, it is important to note the limit of Dr Lynch's evidence on the point. Dr Lynch did not say that Capax Discovery actually did provide such services; just as it never did provide the services referred to in the promotional material. Nor was Mr Baiocco's evidence challenged that Capax Discovery was unable itself to provide e-Discovery services to customers until 2011, and probably did not actually start doing so until December 2011. In particular, the evidence was, and I find, that Capax Discovery could not and did not provide the services ordered from it by Autonomy in a sequence of purchase orders over the course of two years which nevertheless Autonomy paid in full. The pattern which emerges is clear: Autonomy was repeatedly paying for non-existent services. Not only does that support the Claimants' case that there was an understanding, and the conclusion I have reached, since it is difficult to posit such a pattern unless there was some such understanding[302], it also invites the question how it can be that only Mr Egan knew about this extraordinary state of affairs, notwithstanding the involvement of a number of Autonomy personnel in the implementation and approval of the purchase orders.

2511. The Claimants relied on the following train of events:

(1) The pretence commenced, almost immediately after the first Capax Discovery/EDD deal was signed, with Mr Egan's email of 6 April 2009 which I have already cited in paragraph 2496(4) above, in which Mr Egan, in response to a cry for help from Mr Baiocco, wrote that Mr Hussain, Mr Sullivan and he had:

> *"…identified $250k of business we would like Capax to handle for us last week. That would be a first job. Mike Sullivan should be in touch tomorrow."*

(2) It is apparent from email exchanges that the request came from Mr Hussain and that Mr Smolek consulted Mr Scott (COO and General Counsel of Autonomy Inc) and Ms Cynthia Watkins (Autonomy's Corporate Controller) about Mr Hussain's "*request in correctly quantifying the $250k PO requests service for Capax & MicroLink LLC with Joel [Scott] & Cynthia [Watkins]*". Mr Smolek then reported to Mr Hussain that Mr Scott had:

> "*resolved that Stouffer [Egan] would be best to establish that mechanism, as he determined that it wouldn't fall under existing contract terms*".

[302] Its timing is a different matter, I accept.

(3) In his response the same day (16 April), Mr Hussain expressed impatience with the fact that a purchase order had not yet been given to Capax Discovery, saying that he had:

> "*…no idea why this is so complex Create a PO for outsourcing edd processing as we did last year. Send details of PO (gb [gigabytes], price) to stouff Egan], pete [Menell], Sullivan and me. We'll approve*".

(4) Later that day, Mr Smolek sought authorisation from Mr Hussain and Dr Menell to issue a purchase order to Capax Global for "*Outsourced Services"* described as *"Specialized EDD Services*" in the amount of $250,000. Mr Hussain provided his approval. Dr Menell indicated that Mr Sullivan should be *"second approval for these".* In Mr Sullivan's witness statement he said he was *"puzzled by this since I was not aware that Capax was doing any EDD processing work for Autonomy".* He said that he raised the matter with both Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter who referred him to Mr Egan. His recollection was that Mr Egan's explanation had *"a certain vagueness"* but the gist was that:

> *"there was a commercial arrangement between Autonomy and Capax for Capax to undertake e-Discovery projects for which it would be paid by Autonomy. Mr Egan assured me that the work was being performed and I should therefore sign-off on the purchase order."*

(5) Mr Sullivan then emailed simply *"ok"* that afternoon. Autonomy sent the purchase order to Mr Baiocco the next day (17 April). Initially, the purchase order was incorrectly issued to Capax Global, and it was reissued by Autonomy on 22 April 2009 to Capax Discovery. The following day, 23 April 2009, Capax Discovery invoiced Autonomy in the amount of $250,000 for "*Specialized EDD Processing*", corresponding to the purchase order.

(6) In the meantime, Mr Baiocco was pressing for more help in view of the impending payment instalment date at the end of the month, when Capax Discovery would owe $500,000. Mr Baiocco emailed Mr Sass on 21 April 2009 asking if there was "*Any movement*".

(7) When Mr Sass replied that Mr Egan was tied up in a meeting, Mr Baiocco replied immediately:

> "*Im running out of time for today. I have a MS thing I need to be at from 4pm on. Can you talk to him? The deal is that Autonomy will stay ahead of us (champagne smacking)! We have 500k due in ten days and a PO for 250k. we also talked about front loading the PO's. We have no ability to help ourselves yet. We should be getting enough po [purchase order] monies to get us ahead by the end of April. I am sure I didn't misunderstand the deal? Correct? Don't mean to sound like a whiner, but I guess I am at this point.*
>
> *PLEASE HELP !"*

(8) The message appears to have reached Mr Egan because, on 23 April 2009, Mr Sullivan emailed Mr Smolek saying that Mr Egan had "*asked that we issue another PO to Capax. $270k is the amount. Could you get this in process?*". Together with the earlier purchase order for $250,000, this would bring the total amount that Autonomy was proposing to pay to Capax Discovery for non-existent "*Outsourced Specialized EDD services*" to $520,000.

(9) Mr Smolek sought authorisation from Mr Hussain and Mr Sullivan to issue this second purchase order on 24 April 2009, and Mr Egan asked Mr Sass to let Mr Baiocco know to expect another purchase order within 24 hours. As before, the purchase order was for "*Outsourced Services*" described as "*Specialized EDD Processing*". Mr Sullivan and Mr Hussain gave their approvals. The next day, 28 April 2009, Capax Discovery invoiced Autonomy for $270,000.

(10) Notwithstanding that the purchase orders had been approved by Mr Hussain and Mr Sullivan, by May 2009, Autonomy had not paid anything to Capax Discovery. Capax Discovery had also not paid Autonomy, which the Claimants suggested was consistent with the arrangement that Autonomy would put Capax Discovery in funds before it paid Autonomy.

(11) In the meantime, on 15 April 2009, and again on 11 May 2009, Mr Baiocco sent Mr Egan a list of the hardware that he needed to set up Capax Discovery's e-Discovery platform. Mr Egan then forwarded the list to Dr Menell and Mr Hussain, saying "*This is the HW [hardware] that Capax is looking at for starting their EDD processing facility. Can you have someone comment on whether the specs look right?*". From Mr Egan's email, it was clear that Capax Discovery did not yet have a facility for e-Discovery processing. This did not apparently prompt any questions from Mr Hussain or Dr Menell as to why Autonomy had issued purchase orders in purportedly outsourcing e-Discovery processing services. The Claimants submitted that this is consistent with Mr Egan's evidence that Mr Hussain and Dr Menell were aware that this was the case: by analogy with the Sherlock Holmes story, they were the dogs that did not bark.

(12) The delay in receiving funds from Autonomy and assistance with the hardware order led to Mr Baiocco emailing Mr Sass again for help. His first email of 11 May 2009 simply said "*HELP !!!!!!!*". Mr Sass asked Mr Baiocco to send an email as he was travelling. In response, Mr Baiocco wrote:

> *"Getting nowhere with a bunch of promises that were made. I just need to have a schedule of what's going to happen when. Don't want to come off as a complainer, but things are [not] happening in the timeframes that were promised.*
>
> *I.E*
>
> *Champagne smacking profit (edd invoicing) FRONT LOADED*
>
> *Hardware order (crippled without it)*
>
> *Buyout datacenter hardware (promised EASY to do)*
>
> *EU business*

Please don't share this email. I know how this might sound outside of you and I, but there wasn't a second that anyone wasn't available when they needed me to sign the deal. Now I need to stalk to get the bare minimum.

I want this to be perfect for a million reasons, first and foremost, so we can do this AGAIN when you really need it!

Let me know your thoughts."

(13) Mr Sass asked Mr Baiocco to leave it with him for 48 hours and noted that Mr Egan was "*getting you some stuff as I write this (meaning he is paying attention)*".

(14) At the end of May 2009, Mr Chamberlain emailed Ms Watkins, copying Mr Hussain, in relation to the e-Discovery purchase orders. Mr Chamberlain noted that they should have been approved by both Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch given the amounts involved.

(15) The following week, on 8 June 2009, Mr Smolek sought Dr Lynch's approval:

"Hi Mike,

Steve Chamberlain has directed that we obtain (ex post) your authorization to the following four PO Requests (in addition to the below listed standard authorizations previously granted per Corp Policy). If similar such requests arise in the future, per Steve C., we will seek to obtain your authorization within the standard process framework, by obtaining an AND [sic] authorization for both yourself & Sushovan at the highest listed level policy prior to issuing a PO (vs. the OR currently dictated per policy under which these were processed).]

Please at your earliest convenience - review & reply with your authorization to the following below listed four purchase requests.

All below listed individual approvals are also attached.

#1 [Tracking #04072009-7] PO Request

REQUESTOR: Stouffer Egan

VENDOR: Capax Discovery LLC

PO LINE DESCRIPTION: Outsourced Specialized EDD Services [1,250 GB @ $200.00/GB] TOTAL COST: $250,000.00

APPROVED BY: Sushovan Hussain Apr 17, 2009; Mike sullivan Apr 17, 2009

…

#3 [Tracking #04242009-1] PO Request

REQUESTOR: Stouffer Egan

VENDOR: Capax Discovery LLC

PO LINE DESCRIPTION: Outsourced Specialized EDD Services [1,350 GB@ $200.00/GB]

TOTAL COST: $270,000.00

APPROVED BY: Sushovan Hussain Apr 27, 2009; Mike sullivan Apr 27, 2009"

Dr Lynch wrote: *"ok"*. He did not ask any questions.

(16) On 8 June 2009 Ms Watkins asked Mr Sullivan (by email) to sign off and inform her that work had been completed on EDD invoices from Capax Discovery in order that Autonomy could process them. Mr Sullivan signed off: "*Yes – work has been completed."* Again, Mr Sullivan's conduct is not impugned and Mr Egan does not suggest that he was aware of any arrangement. Mr Sullivan must have been given that impression by Mr Egan, whose evidence was that he "*wrote emails that gave the impression that work was being done*".

(17) On 22 June 2009, a few weeks after Dr Lynch's approval of the purchase orders, Autonomy paid Capax Discovery $520,000.

(18) The following day, 23 June 2009, Capax Discovery paid Autonomy $500,000 in respect of the first instalment under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale. This was almost two months after the instalment had fallen due. Mr Baiocco's unchallenged evidence was that Capax Discovery had not paid earlier because it had not been given the funds by Autonomy to do so.

(19) At around this time, Mr Egan had agreed to purchase hardware to the value of approximately $800,000 for Capax Discovery to use with its EDD system, half of which was sent to Dr Lynch for approval by Mr Smolek in July 2009 and half of which was sent to Dr Lynch for approval in October 2009. Capax Discovery had first asked for this in April 2009, and repeated the request in May 2009. There was no criticism by the Claimants of the hardware purchase as such; but the Claimants cited an email from Mr Egan to Dr Menell and Mr Hussain (dated 11 May 2009) describing the hardware order as what *"Capax is looking at for starting their EDD processing facility"* as making clear that by that time Capax Discovery did not yet have a facility of its own for e-Discovery processing. The hardware request sent by Mr Smolek to Dr Lynch on 8 June 2009 identified Mr Egan as the requestor and confirmed Mr Sullivan and Mr Hussain as having already given their approval. Mr Sullivan was first approver. Dr Lynch wrote simply, *"ok"*.

2512. The next instalment under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale was $968,750 and was due on 31 July 2009. That brought forward once more the urgent need to find funds to enable Capax Discovery to pay.

(1) On 7 July 2009, when Mr Smolek contacted Mr Egan saying that he had sent the hardware purchase order to Dr Menell for approval, he also explained that

he had spoken with Mr Baiocco, who was expecting "*multiple more POs to be issued in the very near term*" and wanted early commitments on dates/amounts so he did not need to "*keep hounding Autonomy to meet his expectations*". Mr Egan responded:

> "*We have a large volume of EDD processing at the moment and will be sub-ing quite a bit to them. I am with Mike Sullivan and Pete [Menell] this evening and we will get you details quickly*".

Mr Egan told me in cross-examination that this email too was pretextual, and was intended to provide a record consistent with what he and Mr Hussain had agreed would be the stated reason for the payments to Capax Discovery. When it was put to him by Mr Miles that *"this was something cooked up with Mr Baiocco"* Mr Egan responded that this was not so; rather, he and Mr Hussain had "*cooked it up*" together and then *"proposed it to Mr Baiocco"*. In light of the antecedent history described above, I accept that evidence.

(2) On 9 July 2009, Mr Sullivan asked Mr Smolek to prepare another $250,000 purchase order for eDiscovery work for Mr Sullivan's approval. Mr Sullivan approved the purchase order on the same day (9 July 2009), following which Mr Smolek sought Mr Hussain's approval. Mr Hussain provided his "*ok*" the same day. Mr Hussain also approved the first part of the hardware purchase he had asked Mr Egan to split in two a few weeks earlier, as did Dr Menell.

(3) Next in the approval chain was Dr Lynch. Mr Smolek emailed him on 10 July 2009, saying:

> *"Hi Mike,*
>
> *Please at your earliest convenience - review & reply with your authorization to the below listed two purchase requests (requiring CEO authorization per Steve Chamberlain).*
>
> *All below listed individual approvals are attached.*
>
> *#1 [Tracking# 07092009-1] PO Req*
>
> *REQUESTOR: Stouffer Egan*
>
> *VENDOR: Capax Discovery LLC*
>
> *WHAT: Outsourced Specialized EDD Services 1,250 GB@ $200.00/GB*
>
> *COST: $250,000.00*
>
> *APPROVED BY: Mike Sullivan July 9, 2009, Sushovan Hussain July 10, 2009 [attached]*
>
> *#2 [Tracking # 07092009-2] PO Req*
>
> *REQUESTOR: Stouffer Egan*
>
> *VENDOR: Capax Discovery LLC*

> *WHAT: Reimbursement of Hardware & Software (procured from vendor Dell) needed to drive partnership acceleration efforts. Full Dell quote support attached approval on partial listing as detailed here: Sub-Total Cost Part# Description*
>
> *$30,562.32 493005440 Software Licensing*
>
> *$682.75 493007331 VMWare Workstation*
>
> *$25,197.89 493024437 (VMWare Server Vl3) Latest Version vSphere 4 Enterprise*
>
> *$179,290.97 493052754 CX4 Storage*
>
> *$75,240.77 493053552 Brocade Switches*
>
> *$105,396.17 483285873 M1 OOOe/Biade M600 Chassis 1*
>
> *COST: $416,370.87*
>
> *APPROVED BY: Pete Menell & Sushovan Hussain July 9, 2009 [attached]"*

(4) Dr Lynch provided his usual "*ok*" later that day. Dr Lynch's evidence when cross examined, was that the payment was in respect of "*capacity which could be called on at short notice in order to deal with peak processing*". Dr Lynch told me that his understanding that *"that's what I thought we were buying"* came from information *"that would have come up, presumably ultimately, from Mr Egan… since he was the person that told that into the system"*, but that he had not spoken specifically to anyone within the management team. He added:

> *"What I didn't know was whether it was being used or not, but I would have expected the person requesting the POs to have made sure that there was a reasonable level of usage."*

(5) A few weeks later, on the morning of 31 July 2009, Mr Baiocco emailed Mr Egan, noting "*Today's the 31st. can you please update me on the PO's*". That morning, Mr Baiocco also called Mr Sass. Mr Sass relayed this:

> "*I received a call from John Biaocco [sic]. He indicated that he is waiting for 4 po's [purchase orders] at 250k each and asked that I reach out for status as he has an invoice due. Please advise*".

It is clear that Mr Baiocco was expecting purchase orders totalling $1 million from Autonomy because Capax Discovery's second instalment (in the amount of $968,750) fell due that day. Mr Sass made no attempt to disguise that fact in his email. Mr Sass forwarded his email to a wider group, including Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain, saying that he was re-sending it because Mr Smolek and Mr Hussain had limited access to email.

(6) Later on 31 July 2009, Mr Egan forwarded this exchange to Mr Kanter, Mr Sass and Mr Smolek, copying Mr Sullivan, saying:

> *"Andy,*
>
> *I think we discussed in UK. Can your group pick this up? Mike Sullivan can provide the what, but it needs you to then get the approvals done and manage the pos out on time."*

(7) Mr Egan and Mr Kanter appear to have had a discussion in the UK about the e-Discovery purchase orders. Shortly after Mr Egan sent this email, he replied to Mr Baiocco's email earlier that day, apologising for the delay and saying "*Sushovan is on vacation so we've routed through Andy Kanter our COO. Should be forthcoming*". Mr Kanter eventually took over the purchase order process, which the Claimants relied on as further undermining the suggestion that the arrangement between Autonomy and Capax Discovery was a secret confined to Mr Baiocco and Mr Egan.

(8) Mr Smolek prepared a purchase order for $1,000,000 for "*Outsourced Specialized EDD Services*", which was approved by Mr Sullivan on 3 August 2009 and by Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain on 6 August 2009. Dr Lynch told me that he did not feel the need to question anyone about it, and did not do so, in light of the prior approval of it by numerous people and the fact that it was a repeat purchase.

(9) The Claimants noted that by this point, Dr Lynch had approved payments to Capax Discovery totalling $1.77 million ($520,000 + $250,000 + $1,000,000) without questioning anyone specifically about the payments. They submitted that either Dr Lynch questioned the outsourcing arrangement and was informed of the true position, it being no part of Dr Lynch's pleaded case that he was misled by, for example, Mr Hussain and Dr Menell – who, in addition to Mr Egan, knew the true position – or he did not ask any questions because he was already aware of the arrangement.

(10) Although the purchase orders had been approved, it took Autonomy until 30 September 2009 to pay Capax Discovery. During this time, Capax Discovery made no payment to Autonomy, even though payment was nominally due at the end of July 2009. However, Capax Discovery then paid the second instalment due under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale the very same day that it received $1 million from Autonomy.

2513. In my judgment, the sequence of these events, the correlation between the imminence of Capax Discovery's need to meet payment obligations under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale agreement with purchase orders in amounts sufficient to enable that, and the apparent automaticity of the approval process for each of the purchase orders raised, all support the case that there was some sort of arrangement for Autonomy to subsidise Capax Discovery irrespective of whether at the date of payment Capax Discovery had any capability of providing the services purchased, and indeed notwithstanding that it did not.

2514. In addition to the points already noted, of particular significance to my mind are:

(1) Mr Egan's email to Mr Baiocco dated 6 April 2009, which I have concluded was pre-textual, was circulated to both Mr Sass and Mr Sullivan: neither contradicted its account that it was Mr Hussain, Mr Sullivan and Mr Egan who had identified "$250k of business" which none of them had any grounds to suppose Capax Discovery could handle as the basis for a purchase order.

(2) It is clear that Mr Hussain was at the centre of the purchase order process, and the procurement and payment for services which he had no reason to think could be provided so shortly after the first deal and Capax Discovery's formation. Further, Mr Hussain knew that Capax Discovery was a fledgling company, that it had no business of its own and that Mr Baiocco had made plain that it could not rely for help from Capax Global.

(3) The subsequent emails referred to in (2), (3) and (4) in paragraph 2511 above confirm that Mr Smolek, Mr Scott, and Ms Watkins were involved as well as Mr Hussain.

(4) Mr Baiocco did not confine to Mr Egan his references to the arrangement between them. He was open about Capax Discovery's inability, initially at the least, to pay out of its own resources; his email stating *"We have no ability to help ourselves yet"* and its obvious further reference to a funding plus profit arrangement to get Capax Discovery *"ahead"* by the time the first instalment became due at the end of April was, it will have been seen, written to Mr Sass when Mr Egan was not available; see (7) in paragraph 2511 above.

(5) Mr Kanter was also involved from the outset: see (4) in paragraph 2511 above.

(6) Mr Sullivan appears to have known at the time, or at least suspected, that Capax Discovery was not yet capable of doing processing work (see (4) in paragraph 2511 above).

(7) It would have been obvious to them all that Mr Baiocco's pressure on Autonomy was tied to impending instalment dates, and payments by Autonomy depended upon and correlated with payments by Capax Discovery.

(8) Autonomy's and Capax Discovery's need and appetite for mutual assistance is apparent: for example, and as the Claimants submitted, the references to Autonomy's need to sign the deal and to doing this *"AGAIN when you really need it"* (see (12) of paragraph 2511 above) reinforce their case that the arrangement was driven by Autonomy's revenue recognition requirement, which might well recur.

(9) Mr Kanter became central to the operation, and the fact that he took over the e-Discovery purchase orders seems to me to confirm the direction of the process by the core management.

(10) The automatic unenquiring approvals sought from and provided by both Dr Lynch and Dr Menell are difficult to explain unless they too were complicit.

No documentary support for purported outsourcing of eDiscovery services

2515. The Claimants' case was that the notion that e-Discovery services were being provided to Autonomy by Capax Discovery was a pretence. I do not think that is entirely justified:

   (1) There is evidence, for example, that by August 2009, Capax Discovery employees, who had been sent to Autonomy's Boston data centre for training, were also providing *ad hoc* consultancy services. An email from Mr Scott to Mr Smolek dated 3 August 2009 noted this and recorded also that Mr Sullivan was expecting *"that they would be billing us for their services and wanted to be sure that we track any amounts we are paying them for those services and include them in tally of payments made out to Capax."* Mr Smolek's reply stated *"Yes – makes sense. Accordingly, going forward I will amend PO Requests to reflect tally of payments made to Capax."*

   (2) Further, by October 2009, Capax Discovery was apparently confident that it had trained human resources for EDD processing. Thus, for example, on 20 October 2009, Mr Cox of Capax Discovery emailed Mr Loughran of Autonomy asking whether they might be deployed:

   > *"Have resources on the bench for I6,* [a reference to Introspect EDD projects] *and would very much like to get them on a I6 project. Do you have anything in the works that we could jump on?"*

2516. That said, however, there is nothing to suggest that there was any basis at all for the initial pre-August purchase orders. Further, there is nothing to quantify the work done in August and later, or the charge for it; nor is there any evidence to suggest that in the event any charges were included in any EDD purchase orders, which were invariably in round figure amounts, and certainly did not give any appearance of incorporating labour charges.[303] There is a conspicuous lack of any documentation of the kind which would be expected in such a context. There was no statement of work, no order form, no procurement or ordering document, no agreement to evidence the outsourcing except the purchase order and nothing to record the place, time and value of the outsourcing said to be taking place. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he would have expected there to be *"more paperwork than that"*.

2517. This contrasted starkly with the position relating to the EAS support services that (it is common ground) were actually being provided by Capax Global. In that context, the documentary record was substantially complete, undermining also any suggestion of some systemic aberration or neglect.

2518. A similar contrast was provided by a comparison between the approval process for EAS support services properly provided by Capax Global and the EDD purchase orders which were simply the machinery for payments for non-existent services. Thus, for example, in an email dated 12 November 2009 from Mr Hussain to Mr Egan and Mr Smolek (copying Dr Menell and Mr Kanter) Mr Hussain carefully adumbrated six questions to be answered before approval of *"the EAS part"* (including as to whether Capax Global had enough capacity to provide support) whereas all Mr Hussain noted in relation to the second part was: *"Regarding the EDD – I would like Andy to*

[303] Conceivably, such charges may have been swept up into what was described as a *"catch-all"* category described in paragraph 2541 below.

approve." In an email later in the same thread, Mr Crumbacher noted that he had *"NO INSIGHT into the EDD."*

2519. That, and a request from Mr Scott asking for a table showing the amount of revenue Autonomy received from Capax (both entities) and the amount Autonomy paid to Capax Discovery in respect of the e-Discovery and EAS then prompted Mr Crumbacher to ask Mr Smolek for some *"help with the EDD numbers…"*. When Mr Crumbacher reported back to Mr Scott (the same day) he stated:

> *"I talked to Phil [Smolek] about the EDD subcontracting "process". Long story short, there really isn't one. Sullivan and Stouffer approve sending EDD processing work to Capax at a processing rate of $200/GB. There is no statement of work, order form, contract, or other ordering document or agreement to evidence the outsourcing of these services, other than a PO. Further, there is no specific outsourcing agreement under which we would outsource the EDD processing work in this manner; the EDD License Agreement contemplates them paying us for EDD processing work, not the other way around.*
>
> *So far, we've paid $1,770,000 for these outsourced EDD services. An additional PO is open (not finally approved/issued) for an additional $250,000.00, making the grand total of our EDD processing services $2,020,000.00 to date. Going forward, Andy Kanter is to be involved in approving the EDD outsourcing POs…"*

2520. Moreover, in his witness statement in these proceedings, Mr Sullivan (whose honesty was not impugned) stated that, though as CEO of Zantaz he *"had detailed oversight of its EDD business"*, he did *"not believe that Autonomy needed standby EDD support services"*. He added that he:

> *"knew of no instance of EDD work being outsourced to Capax or any other third party. When capacity constraints did arise, as in the case of our extremely large EDD contract with BP, Autonomy scaled up its operations by adding hardware and hiring additional staff to handle the extra workload."*

2521. Whilst I have harboured some reservations about this evidence (which, of course, could not be tested by cross examination), and its consistency with the evidence Mr Sullivan had given in the US criminal proceedings (which was so tested) in this regard its central point chimes with what Mr Crumbacher and Mr Smolek had observed: that there was no support beyond the purchase order and their approval for what by December 2009 amounted to payments by Autonomy to Capax Discovery of a total of $2,520,000 (all of which was used by Capax Discovery to pay instalments due under the first Capax Discovery/EDD agreement by that time totalling $2,437,500).

2522. I have concluded and find that, in addition to Mr Hussain, Dr Menell and Mr Kanter knew that:

(1) Capax Discovery had not the means to undertake substantial (if any) e-Discovery processing work as envisaged by the series of purchase orders.

(2) The purchase orders had been devised principally by Mr Egan and Mr Hussain, as a means of getting funds to Capax Discovery to enable it to pay

instalments due under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale, as was necessary to maintain the presentation of the sale to auditors and in the accounts as one from which revenue should be recognised.

(3) The way the purchase orders were (a) commandeered by Mr Hussain and/or in anticipation of instalment dates under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale then (b) processed on demand for the round figure required to pay such instalments without demur, further consideration or request for background supporting documentation, and lastly, (c) followed by invoices which were automatically approved without enquiry or any actual evidence, and simply on the basis that another person in the rung of approvers had given their approval,[304] seems to me consistent only with them being the pretence asserted by the Claimants. They were in reality payment orders made out to Capax Discovery.

(4) The various emails suggesting that Autonomy actually needed and expected the work to be done by Capax Discovery because of excess demand for which it required overflow capacity were contrived.

(5) None of this could, of course, be revealed to Deloitte.

2523. I need make no finding about what Mr Sass and/or Mr Sullivan knew. I shall return to Dr Lynch's involvement and knowledge in paragraphs 2575 to 2588 below. I turn to considering the reliance placed by the Defendants on Deloitte's approval of revenue recognition.

Deloitte's consideration of the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale

2524. The Defendants placed reliance on Deloitte's review and approval of the revenue recognition on the sale agreement. It seems to me to be clear that this purported reliance was unjustified. It is worth exploring briefly the principal reasons why that is so, because as well as showing that if they had known the true position, Deloitte would never have approved revenue recognition, it provides a broader insight into how Autonomy dealt with Deloitte to secure its revenue aims.

2525. First, Deloitte was not told about a letter from Mr Baiocco dated 31 March 2009 stating in terms that Capax Global LLC was *"a separate and distinct entity from Capax Discovery LLC. All contractual obligations will be between Capax Discovery LLC and Autonomy only"*. Secondly, Deloitte were never informed that there was a *"handshake"* agreement between Mr Egan, acting on behalf of Autonomy and with Mr Hussain's authority, and Mr Baiocco, acting on behalf of Capax Discovery, pursuant to which Autonomy had agreed to fund Capax Discovery's payments to Autonomy by channelling funds to Capax Discovery for fictitious services. Both provided clear grounds for refusing revenue recognition.

2526. Mr Baiocco's letter was no doubt intended to negate any expectation that Capax Global would stand behind its fledgling subsidiary, and drove home the point that a

[304] The exchange of emails between Mr Sullivan and Ms Watkins on 8 June and 10 June 2009 illustrates this. Ms Watkins stated: *"I spoke with Stouffer on Thursday last week in regards to the EDD invoices from Microlink and CAPAX and he believes that you will be able to sign off and confirm work has been completed in order for us to process. Please review the attached invoices and provided [sic] your approval and confirmation…"* All Mr Sullivan was prepared to state in response was: *"Yes – approved as I understand MRL has already approved as well."*

reason (the Claimants suggested the principal reason) for forming the new entity and making it the sole contracting party with Autonomy was to insulate Capax Global. As it happened it also left Autonomy in effect committed to funding Capax Discovery's commitments until it developed the EDD business (since otherwise artificiality would be revealed anyway). Mr Sass forwarded Mr Baiocco's letter to Mr Egan, Ms Watkins and Mr Crumbacher. It seems to me to be most unlikely that Mr Hussain was not told about it: and I infer that he was. Yet Deloitte were not told. At the very least the letter would have raised serious, probably unanswerable, questions about collectability, which I infer was the reason that it was not shown.

2527. As it was, Deloitte's working papers make clear that Deloitte approved revenue recognition on the assumption that parent would stand behind subsidiary, and Capax Global had proved reliable and was financially strong. Both experts were agreed that if recourse was only against Capax Discovery it would not have been appropriate to recognise revenue; and that, as it seems to me, was the significance of Mr Baiocco's letter, which plainly should have been disclosed to Deloitte.

2528. Secondly, even on the Defendants' case that any agreement or understanding post-dated the first Capax Discovery/EDD deal, it was in place before Deloitte approved the quarterly statements. Mr Egan's evidence was that Mr Hussain knew and approved of the handshake agreement and yet Mr Hussain did not disclose its existence to Deloitte. The Claimants invited me to find that this was because Mr Hussain knew that it would have precluded Autonomy from recognising revenue from the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale. Mr Welham explained in his witness statement at Welham 1 §120:

> *"If Autonomy had indeed agreed to make payments to Capax Discovery for fictitious EDD services in order to fund the EDD licence fee instalment payments due to Autonomy, I do not believe that we would have concluded that the revenue on the 31 March 2009 sale could be recognised. A side agreement of this kind would have been inconsistent with our understanding that the risks of ownership had truly passed to Capax Discovery or that economic benefits would flow to Autonomy from the transaction, and would have been contrary to the audit confirmation received from Capax Discovery."*

2529. The obvious problem with that passage of evidence is that it appears to be premised on Deloitte being told that the payments were for fictitious EDD services and does not in terms address the position if there had simply been (before or after the deal) a side agreement for Autonomy to fund Capax Discovery's instalment obligations in whatever way was available. It should go without saying that an auditor would not approve revenue from a contract for purported services known to be a fiction. However, it seems to me that Deloitte could not reasonably have approved revenue recognition had they known that Autonomy was somehow to fund Capax Discovery's instalment payments either, for the reason given by Mr Welham: it would have been inconsistent with risks of ownership truly passing to Capax Discovery, and the economic benefits associated with the transaction would have been funded by the purported recipient (Autonomy).

2530. In any event, it is clear that Deloitte's approval of revenue recognition was on the basis of an incomplete, and in fact fundamentally erroneous, understanding. Had Deloitte been properly informed, revenue recognition would not have been approved. I infer that that was the reason why Deloitte was kept in the dark.

Conclusion on first Capax Discovery/EDD sale

2531. In short, in my judgment, the reason for the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale was that it was needed in order to generate recognised revenue to cover an unexpected shortfall; Capax Discovery had no ability to pay the first year's instalments, and Autonomy agreed to fund them. Autonomy was paying for its own revenue. No revenue should have been recognised.

The second Capax Discovery/EDD sale (Q4 2009)

2532. By the end of 2009, and even though its advertising material in July had (prematurely) held out its capability of undertaking EDD business, Mr Baiocco was still trying to get Capax Discovery's e-Discovery platform up and running.

2533. At the end of December 2009, Autonomy and Capax Discovery entered into the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale which extended the term of the first Capax Discovery EDD sale by one year, and also enlarged the licence to include additional software, including ControlPoint, additional EDD software and IDOL SPE.

2534. The licence fee of $4,000,000, plus an annual support fee equal to 5% of the licence fee, was payable in four equal instalments of $1,050,000, with the first instalment due on 31 March 2010, and the remaining instalments at three-month intervals. Autonomy recognised the $4,000,000 licence fee in full as revenue in Q4 2009.

2535. The evidence of both Mr Baiocco and Mr Egan was that Mr Egan had promised, again on a handshake basis, that the fee instalments due from Capax Discovery would be covered one way or another by Autonomy, as under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale. That meant that, in addition to ensuring that Capax Discovery was able to meet its quarterly payments of $968,750 under the first Capax Discovery/ EDD sale, Autonomy now had to ensure that Capax Discovery was able to pay the additional quarterly payments of $1,050,000 due under the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale.

2536. It is plain that Mr Egan both appreciated this and understood that something more had to be done to help Capax Discovery. In January 2010, Mr Egan emailed Mr Kanter, copying Mr Hussain, saying:

> *"Sushovan [Hussain] has approved Capax Jan support, can you be sure it has gone out? Capax has not received.*
>
> *Also, can you update on the process of outsourcing more EDD and the greater sum on support per month given higher client load than we had accounted for originally? If you could raise that paperwork for approvals it would be great."* [Emphasis supplied]

2537. The Claimants contended that Mr Egan's requests in the second paragraph of his email were designed to implement the handshake agreement that Autonomy would fund the instalments due under the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale by increasing the

monthly amounts Autonomy was paying to Capax Discovery. This was partly achieved by an increase of $225,000 per month in the payments to Capax Discovery purportedly for e-Discovery services, from $250,000 to $475,000. This increase was attributed to so-called "*Additional EDD Processing*". As explained above, Capax Discovery simply was not yet in a position to provide such services, and the invoicing process was a fiction.

2538. However, even this substantial increase fell short of the quarterly payments that were due from Capax Discovery at this stage, which totalled $2,018,750 ($968,750 + $1,050,000). As Mr Egan suggested in his email to Mr Kanter, on top of the increase in payments for supposed e-Discovery services, Autonomy was going to increase the sum paid to Capax Discovery in respect of EAS support, making additional monthly payments of $125,000 under the guise of *"Supplemental EAS Support"*.

2539. Although the Claimants accepted that Capax Global was providing EAS support to Autonomy's customers, they did not accept that the payments in respect of *"Supplemental EAS Support"* were for any genuine services. On the contrary, they contended that, as reflected in Mr Egan's email above, the *"Supplemental EAS Support"* payments were simply another means of getting funds to Capax Discovery to enable Capax Discovery to pay for the first and second Capax Discovery/EDD sales.

2540. The Defendants sought to counter this by presenting *"Supplemental EAS Support"* as part of the provision of EAS support services which was *"work that Autonomy did not want to do and Capax was happy to do it"* (as Mr Baiocco confirmed in cross-examination). However, this was not accurate: although the Defendants deployed the description "Capax", it was not Capax Discovery which did EAS work: it was Capax Global.

2541. It was suggested to Mr Baiocco in cross-examination that these supplemental EAS payments were supposed to compensate Capax Global for professional services it had provided but was unable to bill for. It was put to him that according to the notes of an interview he had with Morgan Lewis in February 2013, his version of events then was that *"truth be told"* the description *"Supplemental EAS Services"* was used as a *"catch-all"*, and payments made under or by reference to the Capax EAS agreement included an element of uplift to compensate Capax Global[305] for *"thousands of unbillable hours and write-offs related to the product implementation services Capax performed for Autonomy"*. Mr Baiocco had not mentioned this in his witness statement; and in his answers in cross-examination he seemed to me to be trying to marginalise what he had said to Morgan Lewis, though accepting that it was *"partially true"*.

2542. My impression was, and I find, that what Mr Baiocco really meant by the category being a "catch-all" was that it was a useful and sufficiently amorphous description to cover payments which were not referable to any documented or identified service, and which could be and was used as the vehicle for the additional payments that became necessary to enable Capax Discovery to cover its increased commitments. That was both the catalyst for and the principal purpose of the payments made by reference to the category, as the close relationship between payments made in and payments made out by Capax Discovery illustrates. It may well be that Capax Global had a justified

[305] Although in the note "Capax" was the definition used for Capax Discovery, it is clear from the context that it was used to describe both Capax companies. It struck me that the unbilled hours were more likely to be referable to work done by employees of Capax Global than of Capax Discovery.

claim to be compensated for unbilled hours; but that was not the purpose of the payments.

2543. Put shortly, it seems to me clear that the increased payments to Capax Discovery and Capax Global, whether described as for *"Additional EDD Processing"* or as *"Supplemental EAS Support"*, were driven by the need to find more money for Capax Discovery in light of the increased instalment payments due under the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale and continuing obligations under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale and were made for that reason.

2544. I have been fortified in that conclusion by the following evidential matters:

(1) Apart from those directly involved in the Purchase Order process, no-one within Autonomy appears to have had any experience of Capax Discovery ever providing any services: if any question arose it was invariably referred on to "Cambridge", connoting the finance department.

(2) There was never any documentary evidence provided to support the suggestion that Capax Discovery did any EDD processing or EAS work: unsurprisingly, since it was incapable of doing the first, and EAS work was usually done by Capax Global.

(3) It is clear that in early 2010 Mr Kanter took over supervision and control of all the purchase order process in relation to Capax and Autonomy's purported EDD and EAS activities, confirming its direction from "Cambridge" without regard to what, if anything, was happening where Capax Discovery was based and operated, and without any evidence of work done or required. As the Claimants submitted, Mr Hussain's decision (and his decision it was) to put Mr Kanter in charge of the e-Discovery and supplemental EAS purchase orders only made sense if they both knew that this was simply a financial exercise that involved getting sufficient funds to Mr Baiocco.

(4) The pattern of the issue of a purchase order by Autonomy to cover instalments due from Capax Discovery is to my mind further confirmed, and the correlation between payments made by Autonomy pursuant to purchase orders purportedly for e-Discovery processing or Supplemental EAS support is, as before, revealingly exact. Purchase orders were churned out according to funding need, and enhanced immediately when additional amounts became due in consequence of the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale.

(5) In this regard, the Claimants cited various spreadsheets prepared at the time by Mr Baiocco which clearly show him attributing payments received from Autonomy in respect of purported e-Discovery services and supplemental EAS support to instalments due under the first and second Capax Discovery/EDD sales, and only paying those instalments once he had received sufficient funds from Autonomy to do so. Notably, no deductions were made for the costs of providing the purported services: for none were being provided. Any excess of the monies paid to Capax Discovery over the amounts paid out represented the agreed profit. Although in cross-examination Dr Lynch suggested that each spreadsheet was *"more like a standard balance of trade journal which you see quite regularly where people keep track of the cash and the trade between two parties"* the spreadsheets did not allow for any of the usual deductions or variations that would be expected in a record of

a trading relationship; and the correlation mentioned above was a clear sign also of the purchase orders simply being the mechanism for payment of funds as and when required for payment of instalments.

(6) Further, after sending the first of these spreadsheets to Mr Kanter in March 2010, Mr Baiocco sent Mr Kanter a follow-up email which, as well as confirming Mr Kanter's direct involvement, makes even plainer that the payments manifest, not a trading relationship, but the subsidy arrangements provided for in the handshake agreement:

> *"...sorry to hit you again here. Just wanted to reiterate. That we were promised more than a dollar for this. We were promised a profit as well. Trying not to sound ungrateful in any way, just that we were nowhere near ready to do a deal like this."*

(7) Another illustration is provided by an e-mail exchange between Mr Baiocco and Mr Kanter on 6 December 2010. In the first Mr Baiocco asked: "*anything today?*" Mr Kanter asked what the number was on "*DD1*", i.e. direct deal 1. This was a reference to the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale. Mr Baiocco later responded that the number was "*750 k for dd1 in turn. I pay 968,500 asap for oct 31 due that will get me thru dec for heat*". Mr Kanter must have been aware of the arrangement with Capax Discovery. Even Dr Lynch accepted that Mr Baiocco was saying that he needed another $750,000 from Autonomy in order to pay the instalment under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale which had fallen due on 31 October 2010. (Dr Lynch subsequently approved this payment without making any enquiry; and see paragraph 2578 below in my discussion of the Defendants' knowledge).

Deloitte's consideration of the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale

2545. Deloitte's working paper setting out its consideration of the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale included the following:

> *"…The Capax Discovery arm of the group specialises in eDiscovery solutions for businesses and in order to do that they need the Autonomy software listed above…*
>
> *…given the success Capax has had with its previous Autonomy purchases, we conclude that there is clear commercial rationale for this purchase...*
>
> *In considering the ability of Capax Discovery LLC to meet their contractual commitments to Autonomy, we have reviewed their payments made in Q4 2009 and their overall payment history…*
>
> *Given that Capax are up to date with their significant payment obligations (i.e. more than $1.0m paid in each of the last two quarters) and given the information obtained with regards to their status with Microsoft, we conclude that this deal is recoverable…"*

2546. As is apparent from this working paper, and from Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence, Deloitte was not aware that the only reason Capax Discovery was up to date with its payment obligations under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale was because, pursuant to the handshake agreement, Autonomy had funnelled money to Capax Discovery for non-existent e-Discovery services. Mr Welham's evidence was that, if Deloitte had known that Autonomy needed to put Capax Discovery in funds to pay for the Autonomy e-Discovery software by making payments for services that Autonomy knew to be fictitious, Deloitte would not have regarded Capax Discovery's payment history as supporting the recognition of revenue on this or other Capax Discovery deals, which was not challenged and is obvious if its premise is correct. There can, therefore, be no dispute that the information which was withheld from Deloitte was highly relevant to Deloitte's conclusion on revenue recognition.

2547. Equally obvious and *a fortiori* would be the position if Deloitte had also been aware that what lay behind Mr Baiocco's call for and expectation of help, and Autonomy's urgent reaction to assist, was the same understanding as had underpinned the first transaction (and indeed all of the impugned transactions with Capax). As before, Mr Egan's evidence was that Mr Hussain knew and approved of the understanding and the expectation which was its corollary. As before, Mr Hussain did not disclose its existence to Deloitte because he knew that it would have precluded Autonomy from recognising revenue from the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale.

2548. Deloitte was not aware either that Capax Discovery had in fact had no success with its previous Autonomy purchases, i.e. with the software licensed pursuant to the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale, because (as explained above) Capax Discovery was not even in a position to provide e-Discovery services to customers by 31 December 2009.

2549. I find that Deloitte were misled; their approval cannot avail the Defendants, and the Defendants' purported reliance on it tends further to endorse the dishonest nature of their (the Defendants') approach and of the transactions concerned.

Conclusion on second Capax Discovery/EDD sale

2550. For similar reasons as in the case of the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale I have concluded that no revenue should have been recognised from the second Capax Discovery/EDD sale.

The third Capax Discovery/EDD sale (Q1 2011)

2551. By the end of March 2011, Capax Discovery was ready and looking to undertake e-Discovery processing work in the UK. To that end, it had rented premises in London and set up a data centre at a considerable cost. The team at Capax Discovery was working closely with individuals from Autonomy, including Mr Lucini and Dr Menell, to ensure that everything was in place to provide actual services, and, in particular, a prospective part in providing services in the context of BP Deepwater Horizon oil-spill litigation then at the disclosure stage.

2552. As part of the process, and also to discuss with Autonomy a structured service contract which a Capax Discovery-related entity called Autonomix had won from the US government and in which it hoped to enlist Autonomy, Capax Discovery's Mr Baiocco, Mr Steve Williams and a Mr Allen Gurney, travelled to the UK for a meeting

in Cambridge, which in the event was followed by two short meetings between Mr Baiocco and Mr Hussain.

2553. The Claimants presented the meetings between Mr Baiocco and Mr Hussain (the first occasions on which they had met in person) as curious affairs, at which:

(1) First, Mr Hussain seemed principally concerned initially to try to persuade Mr Baiocco to take in another VAR deal which he explained Mr Egan had forgotten to mention, and of which Mr Baiocco had been given no notice at all. That was odd in itself; but more remarkable still was that according to Mr Baiocco's evidence, Mr Hussain wanted the new VAR deal booked as a Q1 2011 deal, even though by this point it was late in the first week of Q2 2011.

(2) When Mr Baiocco declined, not (it appears) so much because of the backdating proposed, but because he had just entered into a VAR transaction for end-user UBS and did not want so soon to take another one, Mr Hussain almost immediately followed this up by telling Mr Baiocco that Capax Discovery's existing licence did not enable use in Europe and that in order to provide e-Discovery services from its London data centre it would have to extend its licence for a fee.

(3) There was a dispute as to whether this came as a surprise to Mr Baiocco, as he had claimed in his witness statement. There was contrary evidence relied on by the Defendants that the possibility of this had earlier been raised internally within Capax Discovery by Mr Williams. Even so, the impression I got from Mr Baiocco was that he was taken aback: both because Autonomy itself had not previously raised it despite exchanges of emails as to the setting up of and prospective work for the London office, and because of the apparent correlation between his refusal of the VAR deal and what was effectively a demand for a further licence fee. The correlation is added colour by the fact that the VAR deal and the fee sought by Autonomy were almost the same: $1.6 million, payable in two equal instalments on 30 May and 29 June 2011.

(4) According to Mr Baiocco, who had made clear in emails that he had over-spent on the London office to prepare for licensing work he had understood to be imminent, the feeling of being, in effect, confronted with little option was compounded by the fact that within hours after his first meeting with Mr Hussain at which this had been mentioned, and before any further discussion of the terms, he was sent documentation for a licence extension. This was already complete with the relevant terms of licence extension, first in draft and then almost immediately after that, in execution form with the date entered in as 31 March 2011 (nearly a week earlier than the draft, echoing the VAR proposal which Mr Hussain had initially proposed).

(5) At the second meeting (on 7 April 2011) between Mr Hussain and Mr Baiocco there was discussion about the Autonomix proposal, and a very short exchange, so short as barely to amount to a discussion, also about the licence extension (what became the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale). There was no substantial dispute about the words comprising the exchange; but much debate as to its true content and significance. Mr Baiocco's evidence was that he asked Mr Hussain *"straight up, 'We're good on this no matter what?' and he*

[Mr Hussain] said 'Yes'". Mr Baiocco read a lot into this, however; in cross-examination he said that this was:

> "*the gist of it. I don't know if there were more words but the answer was I needed assurance that, if I was buying this, even if --- we were assuming we were going to get the BP data which would make anything else moot, but if for some reason they didn't give us the BP data that I wasn't going to be left holding the bag for $1.6 million*".

2554. Mr Baiocco accepted in cross-examination that he had never discussed the so-called *"handshake arrangement"* with Mr Hussain ever before. Mr Hussain's closing submissions described the idea that this exchange of some five words in about two seconds amounted to a confirmation of a supposed handshake deal made years before as *"unreal"*. Viewed in a vacuum that is plainly right. But the discussion did not stand alone. In particular:

    (1) Mr Baiocco set the short exchange in the context of *"all the payments that came my way over the course of time leading up to that"* and his *"assumption that [Mr Hussain] was fully aware of the handshake deal at that point"*.

    (2) Before the meeting Mr Baiocco had repeatedly sought assurances from Mr Lucini that substantial work would be provided by Autonomy to Capax Discovery, and emphasised that Mr Baiocco had scaled up in London on that basis. Mr Lucini had been variable in his responses and it was natural for Mr Baiocco to seek reassurance. He supposed that Mr Hussain would be aware of that.

    (3) Both Mr Baiocco and Mr Hussain must also have known full well that the licence extension was backdated. That did not benefit Mr Baiocco but it did benefit Autonomy, which on the basis of the false date recognised revenue from the sale in Q1 2011. That backdating was not explained or denied. In complicity there was mutual need and understanding.

2555. I have reached the conclusion that, notwithstanding how short and apparently perfunctory the exchange, each man knew what the other was meant to understand. I accept and find that Mr Hussain was well aware of and had approved the previous agreements with Mr Egan. The exchanges signified that nothing would change: the same understandings as before remained in place. If for some reason Autonomy did not give Capax Discovery the BP Deepwater Horizon work, then it would be provided with funds in another way and *"no matter what"* it would not be left *"holding the bag"*.

2556. That this is what was intended by the two of them is reinforced by subsequent events. When Autonomy did not pass on to Capax Discovery any of the processing work related to the BP Deepwater Horizon case and instead up-scaled its own operations by adding hardware and hiring additional staff, Capax Discovery was not left holding the bag. Autonomy subsequently made additional payments, purportedly for EDD processing services which Mr Baiocco said in his witness statement Capax Discovery *"did not actually provide"* but which enabled Capax Discovery to discharge its indebtedness under the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale, as well as the payments previously promised in respect of the two earlier EDD agreements.

2557. Reflecting the previous arrangements:

(1) Mr Baiocco's main point of contact continued to be Mr Kanter, whom he continued to email regarding payment of the purchase orders.

(2) Towards the middle of June 2011, Mr Kanter suggested that he, Mr Baiocco and Mr Hussain should speak, and he proposed a call on 14 June 2011. Ahead of the call the following day, Mr Baiocco replied to Mr Kanter, "*Hey, if you get me the July 475k for edd today, I will pay off the entire 968,750 today as well, I already wired half to Helen Ku. That way we have that off the table for tomorrow?*".

(3) Mr Kanter could not have understood anything other than that Mr Baiocco intended to use the payment of $475,000, purportedly in respect of e-Discovery services, to pay the final part of the instalment due under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale.

(4) By the end of June 2011, Capax Discovery – entirely with money provided to it by Autonomy – had paid Autonomy the instalments under the first and second Capax Discovery/EDD sales. All that remained were the instalments due under the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale. Although these had fallen due in May and June 2011, respectively, they remained unpaid when HP's bid for Autonomy was announced on 18 August 2011 because Capax Discovery had not yet been put in funds by Autonomy.

(5) On 20 September 2011, Mr Richard Eads emailed Mr Chamberlain with the subject "*Capax*", noting that there had been a "*Tremendous amount of clean up recently. We have 2 invoices remaining as shown below. These appear to be for internal Capax systems since no end-user is specified…I'm going to start calling on these unless instructed otherwise*". Mr Eads must have been instructed otherwise, because the two invoices for the instalments due under the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale were not paid until more than two months later, in December 2011.

(6) The last purchase order in respect of supplemental EAS support was issued on 13 September 2011, and the last e-Discovery purchase order was issued on 3 October 2011, the day that HP's acquisition of Autonomy completed. Since Mr Hussain was the person who discussed the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale with Mr Baiocco, the funds required to pay the instalments under this deal could not plausibly have made their way to Capax Discovery unless, as Mr Baiocco said, Mr Hussain was aware of the handshake agreement and agreed that a similar arrangement would apply to the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale – as in fact it did. [306]

[306] The table in RRAPoC Schedule 5, Transaction 1 showed: (i) the payments by Autonomy group companies to Capax Discovery and Capax Global which the Claimants contend were made in respect of non-existent eDiscovery services and supplemental EAS support in the period June 2009 to December 2011, and (ii) the payments received by Autonomy Inc from Capax Discovery in the same period, which the Claimants contend were made using the payments in sub-paragraph (i). To support this further, the Claimants compared the table in RRAPoC Schedule 5, Transaction 1 with the last known version of Mr Baiocco's Capax Aging Report. As shown in Annex B of the Claimants' Closing Submissions, the payments and receipts in the RRAPoC table tallied with Mr Baiocco's Capax Aging Report, save in the minor respects outlined in Annex B.

2558. Mr Baiocco's evidence was that these payments were made using funds Capax Discovery received from Autonomy in respect of eDiscovery and/or supplemental EAS support services that Capax Discovery never actually provided. His position was that Capax Discovery was simply unable to do the work for which purchase orders were drawn and honoured. This is inconsistent with its promotional material asserting the contrary, which he first explained at the US trial on the brusque basis that this material *"wasn't true"*, *"selling ahead of capability, so – we do it all the time"*, but softened by elaborating to say, in answer to a question from his cross-examiner querying whether he did routinely tell people that they had capability that they did not have:

> *"No. But it takes sometimes six months to a year to close a deal like that, so we felt like we were close enough that we could advertise and get a deal, and we always have the back up of Autonomy doing the work for us if we weren't ready."*

2559. Mr Baiocco's evidence was supported by Mr Sullivan, whose evidence in his witness statement was that he *"knew of no instance of EDD work being outsourced to Capax or any other party"* and that he did not believe that Autonomy needed standby EDD support services, explaining that *"when capacity constraints did arise, as in the case of our extremely large EDD contract with BP, Autonomy scaled up its operations by adding hardware and hiring additional staff to handle the extra workload."*

2560. Mr Sullivan sought to explain the fact that he had approved a sequence of purchase orders without demur, and in at least one he not only approved but certified that *"Yes – work has been completed"* on the basis that though he had been *"puzzled"* initially (in April 2009), he had thereafter relied on Mr Egan's assurance and the apparent assent of Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch that the work was being performed.

2561. I have mentioned previously my wariness of relying on witness statements clearly honed by US lawyers, and though Mr Baiocco and Mr Sullivan both also testified in the US proceedings and relevant parts of the transcript were in the evidence in these proceedings, of course Dr Lynch had no opportunity to cross-examine them (nor, of course, did I have any opportunity to see that done).

2562. Dr Lynch, who (the Claimants did not dispute) had no involvement in any of the above discussions or events, and who denied any knowledge of them (see further below), did not accept either Mr Baiocco's or Mr Sullivan's evidence as above summarised. By this time, he suggested, Capax Discovery was on any view performing EDD work for Autonomy. They had personnel who had been trained for eDiscovery work and were operating in Boston on Autonomy's platform: and those staff could also have performed EDD services at the customer centre, or on Capax Discovery's platform to the extent it was up and running. As he had stated in his witness statement, his understanding was that Capax Discovery could perform the work wherever it could access Introspect software, whether at its own facilities, at the customer's facility, or at Autonomy's Boston office.

2563. This is one of many contexts in which it would have been helpful to hear from Mr Sullivan; and for that matter to have more reason to have confidence in the witness statements as evidence. However, there was no evidence either that Capax Discovery was in fact called on to provide or in fact providing any EDD outsourced services of any materiality, nor that Autonomy ever in fact had need of them. Furthermore, the

circumstantial evidence is against Dr Lynch's efforts to sanitise this transaction. Its timing (in response to Mr Baiocco's need for help); its genesis; its amount; its backdating demonstrating clearly that revenue recognition was the imperative that drove it; and the simple fact that the amounts remitted by Autonomy were needed and (albeit after some unusual delay) used to pay Autonomy: all support generally the evidence given that Capax Discovery had no capacity and that the invoices from Autonomy were fictitious: and that is my finding.

2564. Dr Lynch repeated his case that this was not how it appeared at the time. Sitting in the UK and busy as a CEO with his many and various functions, and with evidence by this time of Capax Discovery's EDD capabilities, he had no reason to suppose that Capax Discovery was not doing anything for the payments it received. For reasons given later in discussing the issue of knowledge, I cannot accept this.

Deloitte's consideration of the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale

2565. When Deloitte reviewed the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale, it did so as part of its Q1 2011 review, given that it had been backdated to 31 March 2011. The rationale for the deal was explained to Deloitte by Mr Chamberlain as allowing Capax Discovery's UK data centre to connect to the software licensed under the previous sales. Deloitte concluded that "*it represents additional rights to Capex [sic] and therefore can be recognised as revenue*".

2566. As before, Deloitte was unaware that Autonomy was channelling funds to Capax Discovery under the guise of purchase orders for e-Discovery processing and supplemental EAS support which Capax Discovery was not providing.

2567. Although Dr Lynch suggested that Deloitte was *"sampling the payments, they were able to look at them, nothing was hidden from them"*, it is clear that Deloitte was in the dark about the scale and nature of the payments being made in respect of e-Discovery processing. Mr Murray of Deloitte emailed Mr Welham on 18 April 2011 with the subject *"Capax – payments going back to them for services performed"*, saying:

> *"Pete is still waiting on information about the level of Capax purchases during Q1 2011, but I note that in our post Q-end unrecorded liabilities work we have picked up on $1.5 million of invoices alone paid to Capax.*
>
> *Going to be too late to comment on in the audit committee but we should consider putting further 'context' around the relationship with this reseller for Q2. Might not look so rosy if revenue from Capax to date is (for example) $50 million, cash received is $30 million, balance outstanding is $20 million, services purchased from Capax by Autonomy are $60 million..."*

2568. Mr Welham initially put the amounts paid to Capax Discovery down to Capax Discovery doing *"all of the legacy eas [Enterprise Archive Solution] maintenance"*. He suggested that Deloitte should find out what the figure was for the previous year, noting that he would expect it to fall given EAS was no longer a product being sold by Autonomy. But, as Mr Murray pointed out in his response, *"The one invoice details I have seen to date is for EDD processing – that doesn't sound like maintenance – sounds more like data analysis/input type services"*.

2569. This was less than a year after Mr Hogenson and Mr Tejeda had raised concerns about the payments to Capax Discovery in respect of e-Discovery processing and supplemental EAS support. Had Deloitte conducted a full investigation into these payments at the time of the Hogenson episode, or otherwise been informed of them on a regular basis, as Dr Lynch wrongly suggested was the case, this is not the sort of exchange one would expect to see between Mr Murray and Mr Welham. The exchange makes plain that Deloitte had little idea of the scale of these payments or what these payments were supposedly for. Still less did Deloitte appreciate that no e-Discovery processing had actually been outsourced to or performed by Capax Discovery or that Capax Discovery was just using the funds it received from Autonomy to pay the instalments under the first, second and third Capax Discovery/EDD sales in a circular flow of funds, and keeping the excess as profit. Dr Lynch accepted that these were matters Deloitte would have needed to know about in order to assess whether it was appropriate to recognise revenue on the three Capax Discovery sales. Deloitte was not aware of them.

2570. Deloitte was similarly unaware that the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale had been backdated. Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence was that, had Deloitte known of the backdating, it would not have approved recognition of the revenue in Q1 2011 and, had it known of the arrangement between Capax Discovery and Autonomy, it would not have approved of any revenue recognition.

2571. Again, given Mr Hussain's involvement in the third Capax Discovery/EDD sale, and his awareness of the true nature of the arrangement with Capax Discovery, the withholding of this highly relevant information from Deloitte cannot have happened without his knowledge.

Did the Defendants have guilty knowledge of false accounting in respect of RT 1?

2572. Dr Lynch accepted in his oral evidence that if the nature of the arrangements in relation to the first, second and third Capax Discovery/EDD sales was as the Claimants contended, and Autonomy was in effect channelling money to Capax Discovery for fictitious services, then *"absolutely"* it would have been improper for Autonomy to recognise revenue on the sales. As the Claimants put it, the position is *a fortiori* as regards Mr Hussain's knowledge and position. That leaves as the only question whether the Defendants were aware of the fictitious nature of the arrangement.

Mr Hussain's knowledge

2573. I have already made and reconfirm my central finding that Mr Hussain was well aware of and approved the assurances and intentions which underpinned all Capax Discovery's VAR and reciprocal dealings with Autonomy. I have found more particularly that Mr Hussain understood what Mr Baiocco was signalling in the short exchange at their second meeting discussed above, and conveyed the confirmatory signal that the same arrangements would continue as before.

2574. I find that Mr Hussain also knew that (a) Capax Discovery did not have any capability to undertake e-Discovery processing until 2011 and (b) payments made by Autonomy for EDD services and supplemental EAS support were fictitious.

Dr Lynch's knowledge

2575. As I have noted to the same effect previously, Dr Lynch was not the sort of person, and Autonomy was not the sort of company, where the CFO acted autonomously. Mr Hussain reported to Dr Lynch routinely and regularly, and there would have been no question, and there was as far as I am aware no example, of Mr Hussain acting otherwise than in implementation of a course discussed with, and ultimately determined by, Dr Lynch. In idiomatic language, Dr Lynch was a control freak, and he regarded Autonomy very much as both his creation and his creature.

2576. I have already concluded that Mr Hussain was well aware of, and had indeed fashioned, the use of purchase orders for services which he knew that Capax Discovery would not and could not yet provide as a covert means of funding Capax Discovery to enable it to pay instalments under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale in accordance with an arrangement with Mr Baiocco of which he was also well aware. It would have been entirely out of character, and contrary to Dr Lynch's expectations of those he regarded as serving him, for Mr Hussain to have kept this from Dr Lynch. That is particularly so given that this was a new venture with a new company. Furthermore, there is no dispute that the recognition of the revenue concerned had become a focus of both Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch as Q1 2009 drew to a close.

2577. At the operational level, it is clear that:

(1) An email dated 12 March 2009 from Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch and headed *"capex deal" [sic]* evidenced that Mr Hussain told him of Capax Discovery's possible interest in what was then a $5 million deal the day after the London Hotel meeting, albeit in brief terms (*"Stouff's had a bite at a $5m deal"*).

(2) Also, (and illustrating how Mr Hussain kept Dr Lynch in almost constant touch) Mr Hussain forwarded to Dr Lynch an email from Mr Egan dated 13 March 2009 noting (amongst other deals) that *"John called Rob and said he was very interested in the pitch we presented at breakfast. Time to let him know it could be possible"* (see paragraph 2492(1) above).

(3) Five days later, on 18 March 2009, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch, Dr Menell and Mr Kanter identifying *"capexglobal"* as one of the *"Big deals"* prospective but outstanding.

(4) The fact of this prospective deal was listed in the very regular update spreadsheets schedules provided by Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch in this as in every quarter.

(5) Dr Lynch knew about the formation of Capax Discovery and its introduction as a counterparty. There is no documentary record that he was shown Mr Baiocco's letters stressing that it was *"brand new"* and separate legally and contractually from Capax Global; but I think it more likely than not that Mr Hussain would have told him.

(6) On the last day of the quarter, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Sass and Mr Egan, copying Dr Lynch and Dr Menell, noting from their earlier email to him that (as summarised in the subject line) *"capax is in (signed copy in hand)"* and to send congratulations: *"Very well done to the both of you – I like $7.5m deals!"*

(7) Thereafter, Dr Lynch was asked to and did approve a first purchase order of $250,000 for *"outsourced specialised ED services"* which on 8 June 2009 Dr Lynch approved unquestioningly *"ok"*. This was the pattern of future purchase orders likewise.

2578. In the round, it seems clear that Dr Lynch knew of the first transaction in broad terms, knew its value and knew that it had become a vital constituent element of Mr Hussain's plans for the quarter in terms of revenue recognition. I have explained that I think it likely that Mr Hussain discussed and agreed with him the use of the purchase order mechanism I have described to fund the fledgling Capax Discovery in accordance with the understandings that had enabled Mr Baiocco to commit it to the transaction. That knowledge informed his understanding of the second and third transactions also.

2579. In the end, Dr Lynch relied on the vital gap in his knowledge as having been that he did not appreciate, and had no reason to suppose, that Autonomy was paying something for nothing. There were three strings to his argument:

(1) First, *"Since Mr Hussain was not aware of anything improper, there is no basis for suggesting that Dr Lynch would be"*. Dr Lynch maintained the position that Mr Hussain had never suggested to him, and (contrary to Mr Egan's evidence) he did not think Mr Hussain or Dr Menell knew at that time, that in fact no services were being or could be provided. Dr Lynch added to this that he was in a more distant position than was Mr Sullivan, who as CEO of Zantaz was in a position to know; and he was entitled to and did rely on the fact that Mr Sullivan had given his approval.

(2) Secondly, Dr Lynch appeared to suggest that his own understanding, even at that time, was that (a) though it had not yet got facilities or requisite hardware to do its own processing, Capax Discovery had the services of Mr Williams and what he described as *"experienced EDD people"* well able to assist using someone like Autonomy's own systems, and it was doing e-Discovery work at Autonomy's premises, and (b) any payments presumably related to this work.

(3) Third, his understanding at the time, according to his first witness statement, was that what Autonomy was paying did not depend upon the actual provision of services, but on the guarantee of their availability. He explained this in his first witness statement as *"akin to an insurance policy"* to ensure availability of overflow services to meet exceptional demand, and elaborated on this as follows:

> *"Whilst I was not involved in the specific case with Capax, the general rationale behind partnering with an EDD service provider…was that [it] would be able to provide back-up services, that could be used when Autonomy alone was unable to meet customers' EDD needs. Essentially, Autonomy purchased overflow capacity from Capax on a monthly basis, akin to an insurance policy.*
>
> …
>
> *If I had known at the time that an EDD provider did not perform any overflow work in a particular month, I still would have been happy paying the provider for EDD overflow capacity because the nature of*

> *an insurance policy is that you are not going to call upon it every month…*
>
> …
>
> *My understanding was that [Capax] was capable of processing that content and was on standby to do so…"*

2580. This three-string defence was repeated by him in respect not only of this, but also the second and third Capax Discovery/EDD sales addressed below.

2581. As to the first string, and as will already be apparent, I do not accept the lynchpin of Dr Lynch's argument that Mr Hussain did not know that no services were being or could be provided. I have held that Mr Hussain not only knew but had orchestrated a chorus of pretextual emails to give colour to the pretence (see above). Mr Kanter also was well aware, and his positioning to be in charge of the purchase order process is significant: an insider in the core management team needed to be in charge, even if this was not ordinarily part of his role. Of course, Mr Kanter might have persuaded me otherwise had he given live evidence: but he did not. It seems to me very unlikely that either of them would have kept this from Dr Lynch. Dr Lynch's retort that they did so because they knew they had no alternative but to keep quiet since he would have sacked them is circular.

2582. In relation to the second string, as I have indicated in paragraph 2515 above, there is some evidence that in the later part of 2009, Capax Discovery was building the expertise and employee base to offer EDD service capability. Dr Lynch was quick to seize on this in cross-examination as giving some substance to his alleged belief that work was being done by Capax Discovery under the various purchase orders. For example, when it was put to him that *"it would have been obvious to anyone within the company that Capax was not actually providing Autonomy with these services",* Dr Lynch enveloped his responses with a recourse to what had become a stock reference to *"Capax staff working on EDD"*, telling me that:

> *"…there's a big complication in all this, which is there are significant numbers of Capax staff working on EDD on projects for Autonomy, but they're doing it on Autonomy's own system, not on the Capax system, and although it's very difficult to unpick the jigsaw puzzle at this stage, the question is how were those people paid for?"*

2583. I do not accept that this was any part of Dr Lynch's thinking at the time. This struck me as an opportunistic recourse to matters that, as I read his evidence, he did not suggest he was aware of, and which for reasons I have previously explained are unlikely to have been the basis of the purchase orders in any event.

2584. What really stands out is the lack of any supporting evidence such as Dr Lynch himself accepted he would have expected (see paragraph 2516 above) but which he never called for. What also stands out is that in his witness statement, he was quite clear what he considered the purchase orders to relate to, and it does not suggest that any part of the justification was occasional services by Capax Discovery employees training at Autonomy's Boston data-centre:

> *"The process of purchasing EDD overflow capacity was handled primarily by Mr Egan and Mr Scott in Autonomy's US subsidiary. They would request a purchase order for a certain amount of data overflow capacity, priced by volume on a monthly basis, and would seek approval before issuing the purchase order. The payments to Capax for the EDD overflow capacity were approved at times by Messrs Sullivan, Kanter, Hussain and others. I also approved some of these payments. I did so on the basis that the US management team considered that the overflow capacity was a necessary insurance policy. I was also informed that Capax were performing the work. It did not seem unreasonable at the time."* [My underlining for emphasis]

2585. That brings me to the third part of Dr Lynch's argument – that even if no actual work could be demonstrated, the purchase orders were akin to payments for insurance cover. I have reached the conclusion that Dr Lynch was simply casting about for some justification to cover the reality that he knew that no EDD processing work was being done. In my judgment, he knew also that Capax Discovery was a new company, new into the field, which (to quote Dr Lynch himself) *"wanted to break into the EDD business"*; he knew it was lacking infrastructure, and that it was experiencing software problems and further delays; he knew the product and the business and he knew accordingly that it was entirely unrealistic to suppose that Capax Discovery was immediately ready to provide the cover he suggested was needed. He cannot really have believed that Capax Discovery was in a position to provide, still less had actually provided, e-Discovery services with an invoiced value of $520,000 by June 2009 when he approved the purchase orders in June 2009.

2586. In my judgment, none of these lines of defence is persuasive. I have concluded that the most likely rational explanation is that Dr Lynch and his core management knew that the purchase orders and following invoices were indeed a funding mechanism, in accordance with the need to enable Capax Discovery to pay the instalments in accordance with the handshake agreement and to maintain the appearance of a real sale.

2587. In short: even if he was not involved in and did not know the details of individual transactions, I consider it more likely than not, and I also find, that Dr Lynch was aware from Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter and Mr Egan of (a) the handshake agreement and (b) the purchase order scheme.

2588. In my judgment, Dr Lynch, like Mr Hussain, had *"guilty knowledge"* of the false accounting of each of the transactions comprised in RT 1.

RT 2: the VMS transactions

2589. I next address two sets of transactions between Autonomy and Video Monitoring Services of America, Inc ("VMS") in Q2 2009 and Q4 2010. VMS provided a data service, together with analytics of the data. The data included television, radio and podcast content, internet content for the top 200 print publications and video commercials. VMS was a longstanding Autonomy customer and used Autonomy software extensively in their products. Its CIO, Mr Gerry Louw, had built a close working relationship with Mr Egan.

2590. The transactions comprised (a) the purchase by Autonomy of rights (under licence) to use and display VMS's data feed and (b) the sale by Autonomy of software licences and hardware to VMS.

2591. It is the Claimants' case that there was no genuine commercial rationale for either of Autonomy's purchases of the VMS data feed, that neither was an independent arm's length transaction and that both were linked to, and in truth the reason for them was to incentivise and fund, the sales by Autonomy to VMS of Autonomy software on terms VMS would not otherwise have agreed so that Autonomy could recognise additional revenue in Q2 2009 and Q4 2010. Mr Egan negotiated both the sale and the purchase elements of both transactions.

2592. The Claimants contended, with the support of expert evidence from Mr Holgate, that Autonomy's purchases, and the linked sales to VMS, therefore lacked economic substance and further, that IAS 18.14(d) was not satisfied because in substance no economic benefits flowed to Autonomy.

2593. Accordingly, the Claimants submitted that Autonomy should not have recorded revenue on the sales to VMS. Autonomy should instead have: (i) recorded the net cost in relation to the first VMS sale and purchase, totalling $4,000,000, as an expense in Q2 2009, and (ii) recorded the net cost in relation to the second VMS purchase and the VMS hardware and software sale, totalling $261,633, as an expense in Q4 2010.

2594. The Defendants rejected these allegations as having no merit. In Mr Hussain's closing submissions, they were described as *"utterly misconceived"*. The Defendants contended that:

(1) The purchases were for fair value, and the Claimants had not challenged the fair value assessment during this trial. The purchases involved valuable data rights which could be, and were, compared to offerings of other third party providers at the time.

(2) There was a commercial rationale for the purchase. VMS provided data that Autonomy could and did offer to its customers and embed in its products.

(3) Mr Egan considered that both the sale and purchase transactions were well-rationalised, sensible, logical and proper transactions, with a good commercial rationale.

(4) Dr Lynch approved the purchases but had limited involvement in them: so far as he was aware, they had an acceptable commercial rationale, were at fair value, and had been or would be scrutinized by Deloitte.

(5) The accounting of the purchase transactions and the sales to VMS was handled by the finance department, was scrutinised by Deloitte and was correct. Such factual "linkage" as there was did not undermine the revenue recognition for the sales.

(6) Dr Lynch was not involved at all in the accounting, he was entitled to rely on the finance team and Deloitte, and there was no basis on which he should have concluded that the accounting was incorrect, let alone fraudulent.

The first VMS transaction (Q2 2009)

2595. In deciding between these two opposing positions it is convenient to address the following issues:

(1) The background to the transactions and the genesis of the sale by Autonomy to VMS;

(2) The genesis and suggested commercial purpose of Autonomy's purchase by Autonomy of the VMS data feed licence;

(3) Whether there was any analysis of the utility to Autonomy of the VMS data feed;

(4) The terms of (a) the purchase by Autonomy and (b) the sale by Autonomy;

(5) What use was made by Autonomy of the VMS data feed;

(6) Whether the price paid by VMS for Autonomy software was fair;

(7) On what basis Deloitte and the Audit Committee considered the sales and purchases.

Background

2596. The first mention of any deal with VMS in Q2 2009 was in Mr Hussain's email to Mr Egan on 10 June 2009, in which Mr Hussain asked "*how about VMS for extra revenue? They are private.*" Mr Hussain's email did not suggest that there was any reason for approaching VMS, apart from generating extra revenue. The email did not identify what Autonomy was looking to sell to VMS; it simply identified VMS as a potential source of additional revenue. Nor is it clear what the relevance of VMS being private was, though the Claimants surmised that it would likely be subject to less scrutiny than a public company. Dr Lynch accepted that the idea of a sale came from Mr Hussain, not Mr Egan.

2597. Mr Hussain emailed Mr Egan again on 15 June 2009, saying *"call to vms for a deal?"*. Again, there was no mention of any particular reason for approaching VMS.

2598. A few days later, on 19 June 2009, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch, telling him that *"US commercial call was poor…I believe we need emc and vms…"*. This suggests that Dr Lynch was already aware of a potential deal with VMS. Dr Lynch accepted that Mr Hussain might have mentioned it to him before this email. He was, however, reluctant to accept that Mr Hussain was saying that Autonomy needed revenue from EMC and VMS to make up for the poor commercial deals in the US, suggesting that *"there was always stuff on the left and right"* and that deals *"come and go within a quarter"*. But this was, in Dr Lynch's words, *"very late in the quarter"*, and Mr Hussain was not sending Dr Lynch a spreadsheet with deals on the left and deals on the right; he was sending him an email specifically about needing deals with VMS and EMC, for no apparent reason other than because the *"US commercial call was poor"*. The Claimants suggested that Dr Lynch could not have been in any doubt that Autonomy needed extra revenue from deals with VMS and EMC in order to hit Autonomy's Q2 2009 revenue target.

2599. That was also the message Mr Hussain was communicating to Mr Egan. On 22 June 2009, he told Mr Egan *"we need big VMS – more commercial just disappeared"*. So

urgent did Mr Hussain apparently regard the possible deal that he even offered to fly to New York to meet VMS's CEO, Mr Peter Wengryn, in order to close out a deal that was *"favourable to both parties"*.

2600. At around the same time, also on 22 June 2009, an unconnected event occurred[307]. Up until then, a company called Moreover Technologies, Inc ("Moreover"), a news and social media aggregator, had supplied Autonomy a data feed of news articles, free of charge. Out of the blue, Mr Ian Black, Autonomy's Head of Global Operations, informed Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Dr Menell by email that he had just learned that Moreover had switched off the data feed. Apparently, its new owners had decided to use a rival provider's software, rather than Autonomy's. This was the first time that anyone at Autonomy, including Dr Lynch, learned that the feed had been switched off. Mr Black informed the recipients of his email that he had persuaded Moreover to switch the feed on pending discussions after the end of Q2 2009, and that he would seek a replacement in the event he was unable to keep the feed free of charge.

2601. Dr Lynch's witness statement sought to present the approach to and purchase of a data feed from VMS as prompted and made necessary by the requirement for Autonomy to replace Moreover's services. Although Autonomy sought in the meantime to "work-around" the resulting loss of data feed by *"spidering"* a small selection of news sites to continue demonstrating Autonomy's software to customers, Dr Lynch said this was a necessarily temporary, inadequate and expensive expedient.

2602. The Claimants, however, insisted that the rationale and impetus for the deal with VMS <u>cannot</u>, have been the temporary cessation of the Moreover data feed. Nor can it have been the fact that Moreover subsequently indicated that it wanted to charge Autonomy £50,000 per annum to continue using the data feed in its demonstrations, because this offer was not made until <u>after</u> Autonomy had entered into the deal with VMS. They submitted that Dr Lynch's witness statement was misleading in suggesting that either of these factors formed part of the background to the VMS deal, and that it is clear from the terms and the timing of Mr Hussain's emails that the rationale for the deal with VMS on Autonomy's side was the need to generate extra revenue in Q2 2009.

Negotiations for sale and purchase

2603. In late June 2009, Autonomy entered into negotiations with VMS to buy their data feed, in parallel with the negotiations for the sale to VMS of Autonomy software. These continued in tandem between 23 June 2009 (when Mr Egan sent VMS a draft set of terms for both sale and purchase) and 29 June 2009, when Mr Egan forwarded the terms to Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain on 25 June 2009, asking them how they wanted to structure the deals. Mr Chamberlain's response noted:

> *"The tricky bit on this from a rev rec perspective will be demonstrating fair value.*
>
> *e.g. this is currently priced as us paying them $9m and them paying us $7m for the licence – i.e. net flow $2m. We need to prove that this is fair value and*

[307] By this point, Mr Hussain had <u>already</u> emailed Dr Lynch and Mr Egan about a deal with VMS and offered to fly to New York to close out a deal that was favourable to both parties. Dr Lynch accepted that none of Mr Hussain's emails had anything to do with the Moreover data feed being switched off.

> *that the net $2m is not appropriate at $3m to licence to them and $1m to us. All the support we can get on that will be helpful."*

2604. Mr Chamberlain's focus on revenue recognition is notable. His further commentary also implicitly recognised the importance to Autonomy of the headline figures, as distinct from the net position. Autonomy needed the headline sale price to be high to maximise recognised revenue, even though of course that would entail greater outlay.

2605. The Claimants also called my attention to the timing of the email setting out proposed terms, which was just hours after Autonomy found out about the Moreover data feed having been switched off, suggesting that the proposal to purchase VMS data feed was independent, and not prompted by the position with Moreover. The Defendants, on the other hand, tended to depict the need for replacement as the catalyst. I return to this later.

2606. However, it is apparent from the draft terms, and from Mr Chamberlain's response, that <u>both</u> sides of the round-trip arrangement were already in play by this point: a $9 million purchase by Autonomy and a $7 million purchase by VMS. Mr Egan sent these proposed terms to VMS on the morning of 23 June 2009, a matter of hours <u>after</u> Autonomy first found out that the Moreover data feed had been switched off. That suggests that what appeared then to be the temporary interruption to the Moreover data feed formed no part of Autonomy's decision to purchase the VMS data feed.

2607. In the meantime, the need for the VMS transaction to make up a revenue shortfall became even more definite and so did the quantum of the amount needed for that purpose. The day after Mr Egan sent the draft terms to VMS for the sale and purchase transactions, Mr Hussain informed Dr Lynch that VMS was *"in process at between 7-9m"*. Later that day, Mr Hussain told Mr Egan *"Hitachi – unlikely and JPMC $1m lower so I am $2m short – therefore need VMS at $8m or $9m"*.

2608. This suggests that Mr Hussain was dictating the size of Autonomy's sale to VMS by reference to Autonomy's revenue needs for the quarter. Dr Lynch initially resisted this suggestion, referring to a *"whole series of variables: what can be offered, what discounts can be offered, how much you throw in for a particular amount"*, but none of those considerations was even hinted at in Mr Hussain's email. Dr Lynch was willing to accept, however, that Mr Hussain "*would certainly like to have a VMS deal of 8-9 million, so I guess what he's telling Mr Egan is to try and aim for that, whatever package is put together"*.[308] He also had to accept that he may well have been aware that Autonomy was planning to purchase something from VMS for $9 million.

2609. This is most likely to have been the case. He would not have been able to provide any meaningful input or make any informed decision if he only knew of the proposed sale to VMS. Furthermore, that sum made this a large deal: around 10% of VMS's entire projected revenues for 2007. Yet there was no evidence of VMS's ability to afford such a commitment, which in itself seems to me to suggest that Autonomy never intended that the purchase price of what VMS was to get from Autonomy would be self-funded.

---

[308] At that amount, the size of the purchase contemplated by Mr Hussain was around 10% of VMS's entire projected revenues for 2007, as shown in an Information Memorandum which Autonomy had received when Dr Lynch was considering acquiring VMS in that year.

2610. Mr Egan emailed Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain on 25 June 2009 with updates on a number of deals, asking for *"a decision/input from you first thing in my AM (6AM-ish)"*. The last deal in Mr Egan's email was VMS, in relation to which he said:

> *"We [Autonomy and VMS] meet at 9.30 am to go over products etc. Then I meet Peter [Wengryn] on Friday at 11:00 AM to finalize numbers. He has cancelled 2 of 3 customer meetings on Friday to do this with me. He also confirmed that he can do the deal if it is a good one for VMS without additional board input."*

2611. According to Dr Lynch, whether it was a good deal for VMS depended on what VMS was getting from Autonomy and what it was having to give to Autonomy. Mr Hussain was involved in deciding this too. When Mr Egan sent him a copy of the draft agreement licensing certain Autonomy software to VMS on 28 June 2009, he suggested reducing the software licenced to Autonomy, Virage and Softsound and to *"give future pricing for the rest"*.

2612. The same day, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch, copying Mr Egan, Dr Menell and Mr Kanter, with the subject *"VMS sale",* saying:

> *"Mike*
>
> *As you know VMS have bought IDOL multiple times and are an excellent reference for us. Gerry Louwe and Pete Wengryn of VMS have often expressed a desire to extend the relationship and we have come close in the past in selling more software to them.*
>
> *We have been in discussions to extend the relationship and it appears there is significant interest in our rich media software and the Interwoven products. Stouffer has the detail but it looks like we could have a large sale of $5m to $9m based on the amount of software they want to buy. I have talked to Pete Wengryn over the weekend and he is v interested in buying this quarter.*
>
> *Following the Iwov acquisition we also been considering integrating the VMS services (news and ads) as part of our wcm [web content management] offering. I believe this could be a significant advantage in future sales. We will draft up a business plan for the wcm offering featuring vms for your approval."*

2613. As the Claimants noted, Mr Hussain's email read as though it was the first contact he had made with Dr Lynch about a potential deal with VMS in Q2 2009 even though, by this point, Mr Hussain had already informed Dr Lynch of a potential deal with VMS on two separate occasions (explaining that it was *"in process at between 7-9m"*), and Mr Egan had asked for Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain's decision/input on a number of deals, including VMS. Dr Lynch suggested that the email was laying out *"the fact that we're going to be doing a purchase, which I may or may not have heard of before this point"*. But I agree with the Claimants that it is improbable that Dr Lynch had been told that Autonomy was attempting to make a large sale to VMS but not that Autonomy was also proposing to make a $9 million purchase from VMS.

2614. That said, the focus of Mr Hussain's email was on Autonomy's sale to VMS. Mr Hussain said *"it looks like we could have a large sale of $5m to $9m based on the*

amount of software to buy…Pete Wengryn…is v interested in buying this quarter”. This, the Claimants suggested, was a considerable understatement of the size of the deal, and an odd turn of phrase for Mr Hussain to use in circumstances where, four days earlier, he had told Dr Lynch that a deal was in process between $7 and $9 million, and where he had seen Mr Egan tell Dr Lynch that Mr Wengryn was willing to do the deal that quarter if it was a good one for VMS.

2615. The Claimants submitted that Mr Hussain’s email only makes sense as a pre-textual document setting out the party line on the VMS deal to Autonomy’s senior management. Likewise, Dr Lynch’s response that this made “*sense especially given the moreover issues*” depicted the purchase side (Autonomy’s purchase of data feed) as a response to the Moreover issue, which the Claimants submitted was likewise pre-textual. That is of course a serious allegation. However, given the clear evidence that Mr Hussain had been keeping Dr Lynch informed of the intention to use revenue from the VMS deal to cover shortfalls (see above), my assessment that it is likely that Dr Lynch knew of the direct link between the purchase and sale transactions, and the likelihood (as I find it to be) that Dr Lynch was well aware of the two transactions and their inter-dependence I have concluded that it is more likely than not that both emails were indeed pre-textual.

VMS and Autonomy reach agreement in principle (29 June 2009)

2616. Over the next few days, Mr Hussain and Mr Egan finalised the terms of the sale to VMS. On 29 June 2009, Mr Hussain told Mr Egan to take out certain software (Introspect EDD, ECA and Digital Safe) from the proposed list of software to be licensed to VMS *“since these are hosted and would be subject to a hosting fee”*. The same day, Mr Egan instructed the Autonomy lawyer who had put the agreement together to make the changes Mr Hussain had directed and to increase the licence fee from $7 million to $9 million. Mr Hussain was also copied to this email.

2617. Thus, Mr Hussain was instructing software to be removed from the draft agreement and yet the price was going up from $7 million to $9 million, the range that Mr Hussain had previously given to Dr Lynch on 24 June 2009. It is hard to see why Mr Hussain had told Dr Lynch the day before that Autonomy’s sale to VMS would be between $5 and $9 million depending on the amount of software VMS bought when that was clearly not the case.

2618. Meanwhile, Mr Scott and Mr Crumbacher were tasked with reviewing Autonomy’s proposed purchase of VMS’s data feed. Mr Crumbacher asked Mr Scott on 29 June 2009: “*What do we intend to do with this data? Not being flippant…more for ensuring scope of license*”. Mr Scott responded: “*Push it through our software to show end-users how the software works and/or to make available as a value added service. Need to confirm though as have not been given any detail*”.

2619. By the end of the day on 29 June 2009, Autonomy and VMS had reached agreement on the terms of the deal. Mr Hussain emailed Mr Egan and Mr Wengryn, copying Mr Scott, saying:[309]

> *“Stouffer and peter*
>
> *My understanding of where we have ended up:*

[309] Emphasis added.

- *<u>$9m software purchase</u>*
- *$0 maintenance in year 1*
- *5% maintenance in year 2 onwards*
- *Existing maintenance (assumed at around $400k but tbc) superceded [sic] by the new deal*
- *<u>$13m valuation on the VMS services – 3 year term</u>*

I'll leave it to you to finalise the documentation."

2620. Both agreements were executed on 30 June 2009, the last day of Q2 2009:

(1) Autonomy's purchase took the form of a data licensing agreement, pursuant to which VMS granted Autonomy Inc a licence to use and display the licensed data and agreed to provide Autonomy with access to the data so that its end-users could access and view the data in connection with their use of Autonomy's software products (the "first VMS purchase"). Autonomy was not entitled to sell or transfer the licensed data in any manner to any other party. The term of the licence was three years commencing on 30 June 2009, to renew automatically unless terminated by either party. The licensed data included broadcast content, i.e. television, radio and podcast content, internet content of approximately 30,000 websites, web print content and advertising content, i.e. all the video commercials and associated metadata captured by VMS. The fee for the provision of the licensed data during the term of the agreement was $4,333,333.33 per year, payable in one lump sum of $13 million within 30 days of the effective date of the agreement.

(2) VMS's purchase from Autonomy took the form of a fifth product schedule to a software licence agreement that Autonomy and VMS had entered into in December 2002 (the "first VMS sale"). Subject to the terms and conditions of that prior agreement, Autonomy Inc granted VMS a licence to use an extensive suite of Autonomy software for the purpose of indexing audio and video content from various news feeds and other audio/video sources. The licence fee of $9 million, which included a support and maintenance fee of $428,571 for the first year, was to be invoiced immediately and was payable within 30 days from the date of invoice.

2621. Mr Egan emailed Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch at the close of Q2 2009, telling them that the "*Big ones* are *done*", including VMS. Autonomy recognised $8,571,429 as revenue in Q2 2009 and recognised the support and maintenance fee of $428,571 as revenue over the following year.

Justification of the transactions

2622. Autonomy had not conducted any technical analysis of VMS's data feed before agreeing to purchase rights to it for $13 million. When cross-examined about this, Dr Lynch said that he did not see why there was any need for a technical analysis of a data feed, and did not know *"quite what that would be for a data feed"*.

2623. Similarly, it was suggested to Mr Lucini that he would not have expected Autonomy to carry out a technical analysis because Autonomy was purchasing information rather than technology. Mr Lucini explained that he would have expected a different type of analysis in those circumstances, aimed at whether the content of the information met the requisite specification: *"...what is this data? Is it what we want it to be or is it purported to be --- so there would be some checking"*.

2624. The lack of any effort, before spending $13 million on a data feed, to assess its suitability, quality and content, and overall utility in terms of whether it could be integrated or used with Autonomy's products, is certainly noteworthy. So is the lack of any sign that any consideration was given to whether Autonomy could produce its own data feed for itself, particularly in light of Autonomy's general philosophy not to license third party products.

2625. No assessment of the commercial utility of the licence to Autonomy had been undertaken either. In his contrived email dated 28 June 2009 (already very late in the day) Mr Hussain had told Dr Lynch that a business plan setting out the rationale for purchasing the VMS data feed would be drafted for his approval; but none had been prior to the purchase.

2626. Dr Lynch sought in cross-examination to wave this away, telling me (I felt somewhat glibly) that the commercial analysis *"would be down to, after everyone else has approved it, whether it makes sense to me and it did"*, and adding simply that he was "*very happy with the commercial terms because of what we were getting for that money"*. When pressed whether any comparative evaluation had been undertaken to see what other suppliers could provide in terms of a data feed and on what price, he told me that *"...we did have good knowledge of that and…then we got competitive quotes from multiple players that all came in at the same level"*; but these were obtained after the event and cannot have formed part of the decision-making process.

2627. It was only on 1 July 2009, after the transaction had been agreed, that a business plan and other supporting documentation, including a revenue recognition memorandum, was hastily commissioned by Mr Hussain. The Claimants characterised this suite of documents as a paper trail contrived to give the false impression of careful assessment of the VMS transaction after a survey of alternative solutions prior to the VMS transaction.

"Project Shockwave" business plan

2628. The business plan which emerged, which was produced initially by Mr Egan and Dr Menell, but then substantially amended by Mr Hussain, was entitled *"Project Shockwave: Autonomy Integration of VMS Data Q1 – Q2 2009"*. It was plainly intended to present this as a proposal which had been under consideration for some time and for which a business case appeared clear; and in its final form as handed to Deloitte the document was drafted as if the VMS transaction were a prospective opportunity, rather than already executed. In its conclusion it stated *"We are asking for approval to engage in negotiations with VMS to buy a 3 year exclusive unlimited access to its data set for a price of up to $13m…."*

2629. The Claimants pointed out, however, that the document (which was passed on to Deloitte), though clearly dated 21 March 2009 on its front page is shown by its metadata to have been created on 3 July 2009. I was told that the earliest version

which the Claimants' researches unearthed was created on 30 June 2009.[310] By the time the document was first circulated by Mr Hussain, Autonomy had already entered into the first VMS purchase transaction with VMS. Dr Lynch suggested that there *"may have been an earlier version"* but accepted that *"…if you're telling me that this is edited in July, then no, this is after the purchase was done"*.

2630. I accept the Claimants' case that the business plan was misleading in other ways too:

(1) It stated that Autonomy had approached both VMS and another company in the same business called Newsedge (renamed Acquire Media) for quotes and described the differences (including that the Newsedge proposal though cheaper was for news and text only). It referred in addition to other indications of interest (including from a company called PRN Newswire). It stated that it had *"considered all indications of interest and…decide to recommend VMS…"*. But Autonomy had not obtained quotes from other potential suppliers; it had entered into the VMS transaction at Mr Hussain's direction without any such process and it was only on 3 July 2009 that the first approaches were made by Mr Hussain and Mr Black. Any competitive quotes were elicited only after the transaction had been agreed, and Mr Hussain was still somewhat haphazardly updating the draft with indications of interest later received on 3 July 2009.

(2) The document represented that compared to continuing use of the Moreover data feed, a cost saving of approximately $1 million over three years could be expected if the VMS data feed were used instead. But Moreover had previously provided the data feed for free; and they had not yet had any discussions with Moreover about whether that would continue and, if not, what charge it would make. As noted previously, in his evidence Dr Lynch had suggested a likely cost of about £50,000 pa and told me that this was his expectation because *"a news feed costs that sort of money"*.

(3) Dr Lynch had no explanation for the suggestion (in the business plan) that Moreover would charge in the region of $300,000 pa saying only in cross-examination that he assumed that Mr Black had given the estimate and that there were *"many emails that you're not showing us around this whole process."* None was identified in re-examination or at all.

2631. The version of the business plan that was sent to Deloitte was materially identical to the version sent by Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch on 3 July 2009 and contained all these misleading passages.

2632. However, as elaborated later, Deloitte was aware that one of the competitive quotes referred to (that from Newsedge) post-dated the transaction, but in its own memorandum accepted it anyway as *"still persuasive evidence that the purchase price from VMS of $13 million is not unreasonable"*. Further, the Defendants contended, the

[310] The Defendants contended, however, that the dating of the document was automated, and *"was clearly a hangover of some kind resulting from the inclusion of material from various sources in the document. The content of the document referred clearly to the cancellation of the feed in June…It was obvious to the reader that the document post-dated the cancellation of the Moreover feed and was not a March 2009 document"*. I should record that the Claimants, having previously pleaded the document was backdated, then deleted that allegation, and I have proceeded on the basis that the document was wrongly dated, but not intentionally back-dated.

description of the transactions as prospective had not misled Deloitte: it was obvious to Deloitte that the transactions had already been entered into when the document was provided to them.

The revenue recognition memorandum

2633. As well as the business plan, Autonomy's finance department also produced a revenue recognition memorandum dealing with various accounting issues, including collectability and fair value in relation to the purchase by Autonomy. Mr Chamberlain had noted in his notebook that the $9 million VMS sale by Autonomy was *one* of the key revenue items for Q2 2009 and a memo was needed *"to support fair value"* for the transactions. The same notes stressed the importance of a number of other considerations, including the need to show that (though he described them as *"swap transactions"* in his notes and as *"circular"* in discussions with Dr Lynch) there was (a) *"clear water between the two…payment of $13 m & timing"* and (b) *"evidence of negotiation - $13m"*.

2634. Mr Chamberlain prepared and sent to Mr Hussain what he described as a *"very draft… skeleton for me to work with tomorrow"* of the revenue recognition memorandum on 29 June 2009.

2635. On 3 July 2009, Mr Hussain sent a substantially revised draft of the memorandum to Mr Chamberlain and Dr Lynch. Dr Lynch understood that this document was going to be provided to Deloitte, and he accepted that it is likely that he read it.

2636. The Claimants' criticism that the revenue recognition memo, like the 'Project Shockwave' business plan, was written as if the VMS transactions were in contemplation rather than already entered into seemed to me, of itself, overblown: but the Claimants' more substantial point, which I accept, was that the impression that was conveyed was that Autonomy had satisfied itself as to 'fair value' and had proceeded with a purchase from VMS only after having (a) considered and obtained quotes from other news aggregators and (b) conducted *"detailed market research",* neither of which was true. There had been no detailed market research, and Mr Hussain and Mr Black had sought quotes from a handful of other news aggregators after Autonomy entered into the first VMS purchase.

2637. In relation to the first VMS purchase, Mr Hussain's amended revenue recognition memo carefully portrayed the acquisition of the data feed by Autonomy as complementary to the purchase of Interwoven in March 2009. This was on the basis that since Interwoven products *"manage the data repositories for publishing to websites and allow companies to automatically tune their marketing campaigns"* the addition of the data feed would give a further competitive advantage.

2638. The purchase price payable by Autonomy of $13 million was said to be justified not only by *"detailed market research",* but also by reference to an offer which (Mr Hussain's memo recorded) VMS had received from a company called Neilson in 2006, for the purchase of lesser rights for $7.5 million for three years, with an option to extend for three further years for $12 million. The memo stated also that:

> *"Value in use calculations based on a combination of the revenue opportunities and the costs savings that will result from the acquisition of the licence show a value of $23m. This represents a margin of 43% which is consistent with the margins within the Autonomy business."*

2639. The memo did not bring out the exceptionality of the sale from VMS's point of view. A schedule of VMS representative sales prepared by VMS's CFO, Ms Sayad, showed that VMS had not entered into any sales in excess of $1 million.

2640. As regards the first VMS sale the memo acknowledged that HP had acquired from Autonomy a similar internal use licence in 2006 for the considerably smaller sum of $3.7 million, but stated that the VMS licence *"includes much more technology due to the inclusion of the Interwoven product suite."* Further, it was said that VMS anticipated it would save some $2.7 million annually by substituting the technology in place of manual functions, and at the same time get better and more accurate content *"as well as getting new customers attracted to the superior offering."* The memo acknowledged also that VMS's *"Annual capex spend in 2006 was some $4.5m so this purchase is higher than normal but represents a significant business opportunity for VMS…"*. Like the sale side, the deal was exceptional from VMS's point of view.

2641. As to affordability and collectability, it was stated in the memo that collectability was not an issue:

> *"<u>Collectability</u>*
>
> *We need to consider the collectability of the $9m licence fee due to Autonomy independently of the purchase of Autonomy software.*
>
> *Autonomy considered acquiring VMS in early 2007. The information gathered at that time showed that <u>VMS was generating revenues of $75m</u> and producing EBITDA margins of 20% and above. Whilst we have not been able to obtain more recent information from management they have confirmed that the company has shown over 5% growth per annum since then.*
>
> *The company has annual revenues in excess of $75m and over 900 employees. Annual capex spend in 2006 was some $4.5m so this purchase of $9.0m is higher than normal but represents a significant business opportunity for <u>VMS and they have represented that they could finance this transaction without the need for external finance even if Autonomy paid nil for the VMS licence.</u>"*
>
> [My emphasis]

2642. However, the actual hard detail about VMS's financial position was sparse. VMS was a private company and produced only short-form accounts, and its CFO, Ms Sayad, explained in an email of 2 July 2009 that:

> *"VMS is a private company therefore we do not disclose any such information. I can share with you that our revenue falls within the $50M to $75M range."*

2643. The Claimants submitted that having regard to the available financial information:

> *"it is hard to see how VMS could have purchased Autonomy software for $9 million, still less why it would have wanted to do so. Taking the figures at their highest, a transaction of this size was more than 10% of VMS's entire annual revenues and it was not something that VMS could finance from its available cash reserves. The only explanation for why VMS was able and*

> *willing to pay $9 million was because Autonomy had agreed to pay more for the VMS data feed."*

2644. Albeit some time later, VMS's CEO Mr Wengryn later acknowledged (in an article in the *Wall Street Journal* in 2012) that VMS could not have contemplated a purchase of that magnitude but for the sale.

2645. Further, this was clear at the time to all concerned at Autonomy. In an email exchange on 6 July 2009 between Mr Hussain, Dr Lynch, Dr Menell and Mr Scott it was decided (at Mr Hussain's suggestion, but with the immediate approval of Dr Lynch) to pay VMS's sales invoice early *"to ensure their goodwill"*.

2646. It is difficult to see how goodwill would have been ensured from payment a day early, as in effect was proposed. Autonomy already had the right to use the VMS data feed; and, as Dr Lynch accepted, if the transactions between VMS and Autonomy were looked at together Autonomy was making a net payment of a 'delta' of some $4 million. As Dr Lynch also accepted, VMS had already had quite a lot of "goodwill". Dr Lynch eventually said he did not know what Mr Hussain had meant.

2647. It was suggested, however, that it would have been obvious to him what the reason for the rush to early payment was: it was to assist VMS by providing the funds it needed to meet the first instalment (which was due imminently) of the purchase price for the software licence it had purchased from Autonomy.

2648. Dr Lynch resisted this suggestion when put to him in cross-examination on the basis that Mr Hussain could simply have netted the debts and paid the difference. But it is of some note that this was not the approach that Autonomy took. As Dr Lynch himself explained, *"for cash transparency reasons to make our accounting more straightforward"*, Autonomy preferred not to net the payments. To avoid doing so in this case, Autonomy needed to put VMS in funds, which is what it did. Autonomy paid VMS $13 million on 29 July 2009, a day before the payment was due. The next day, VMS paid the $9 million due to Autonomy under the first VMS sale.

2649. That Dr Lynch was well aware of the nature of the transaction, seems to me to be supported by the fact that he asked for no details; and I infer that is because he already knew of the transactions. I agree with the Claimants that that is the most obvious explanation for why Dr Lynch would approve making an early payment on the basis of an email that he professed not to understand.

2650. Dr Lynch contented himself with:

> *"ok and lets put moreover on the to be destroyed list"*

Deloitte's consideration of the first VMS transaction

2651. Autonomy provided Deloitte with the business plan and the revenue recognition memorandum as part of its review of the first VMS sale and purchase at the beginning of July 2009.

2652. Additionally:

    (a) Ms Sayad of VMS signed an auditor debtor confirmation letter confirming that the first VMS sale was a "*separate transaction completed on an arms-length basis*"; and

(b) Mr Hussain and Mr Egan spoke with Deloitte about "*the commercials*".

2653. On 6 July 2009, Mr Hussain briefed Mr Egan in advance of a planned evening call with Mr Knights (of Deloitte) as follows:

> *"Last piece of the jigsaw, they want to talk what were the commercials*
>
> *YOU Should only talk about the sale of autonomy software as I ran the purchase side*
>
> *VMS have sent us a written confrmation about the independence of the 2 transactions so that's fine".*

2654. Dr Lynch disagreed when it was put to him that the reason why Mr Hussain was telling Mr Egan only to talk about the sale is because he wanted it to appear to Deloitte that the sale and purchase were negotiated separately. He suggested that the reason was that Mr Hussain *"would understand the strategic rationale for the purchase. Mr Egan is just a sales guy."*

2655. However, the Claimants submitted that Mr Hussain plainly ran both the sale and the purchase. They put to Dr Lynch that Mr Hussain had told Mr Egan to reach out to VMS for a deal to generate extra revenue which he needed for the purpose of achieving forecast; he had told Mr Egan what size the sale needed to be to satisfy Autonomy's revenue targets; he had told Mr Egan how to structure the deal; and he had told Mr Egan what software to sell to VMS. Dr Lynch sought to deny each element, and queried what each proposition put meant; but beyond repeating his point that Mr Egan would have little knowledge of the purchase side and was simply involved in sales, and emphasising that *"if you were trying to create a distance, you wouldn't be putting a document to them that mentions that we've done both together at the same time"*, he eventually resorted to saying that he *"wasn't involved in this deal, so I don't know the ins and outs of who did what, when and detail"*.

2656. The working paper that Mr Welham produced, dated 6 July 2009, provides an indication of what Deloitte had been given to understand about these transactions by Autonomy. I accept the Claimants' submission that the paper reveals a number of misunderstandings on Deloitte's part:

(1) Deloitte's understanding was that the purchase by Autonomy was prompted in March 2009 as part of Autonomy management's programme of developing the Interwoven content management products following its acquisition of Interwoven.[311] The paper recorded that:

> *"it became clear that the revised IWOV web content management products could be used to provide other services to the customer through the use of software supplied by VMS, who have been a customer of Autonomy since 2002."*

[311] Dr Lynch told me the same when he was cross-examined: *"The reason that it was investing in this way was that it had just spent three-quarters of a billion dollars on Interwoven which is a company where half of its business is aimed at marketers and what it wanted to do was give them products that would be able to combine the power of real time news analysis."*

In fact, though Deloitte were unaware of this, the first mention of any deal with VMS in Q2 2009 was Mr Hussain's email to Mr Egan on 10 June 2009 (see also paragraph 2596 above) in which Mr Hussain asked *"how about VMS for extra revenue? They are private"*.

(2) Secondly, and relatedly, Deloitte understood from Mr Hussain that there "*has been ongoing negotiations since the development of the Project Shockwave plan in March 2009*". This was untrue for reasons set out above. It was suggested to Mr Welham in cross-examination that the date was an obvious error and that Mr Welham understood that at the time. But it is clear from Mr Welham's working paper that this was not the case. Further, Mr Welham confirmed in re-examination that, per this document, his understanding was that the Project Shockwave plan had been developed in March 2009.

(3) Thirdly, and again relatedly, Deloitte was led to believe from discussions with Mr Egan that the negotiations on the price of the first VMS sale had been ongoing for "*several months*". Dr Lynch tried to defend this statement in cross-examination by vague references to Autonomy having had dealings with VMS since 2002 and there being ongoing interactions between the parties. That is not what the working paper recorded Mr Egan as having told Deloitte. Dr Lynch was eventually forced to accept that "*the deal only became a firm option in June*".

(4) Deloitte were not aware that (a) Moreover was prepared to continue its data feed for a relatively modest annual fee (£50,000 per annum) nor that (b) Autonomy's Dr Blanchflower had started work on improvements to its own data feed immediately after the interruption to the Moreover feed in June 2009 and was expecting to 'go live' by the end of July 2009 (see paragraph 2665(6) below); so that (c) Autonomy's need for the VMS data feed was very uncertain.

(5) Deloitte were not aware either that Autonomy had not conducted any technical analysis or assessment of VMS's data feed before agreeing to purchase rights to it.

2657. Autonomy provided Deloitte with further documentation intended to support its accounting treatment of the transactions with VMS, including: (i) a management representation letter, dated 15 July 2009 and signed by Mr Hussain, stating that the first VMS purchase was an arm's length commercial transaction and that the cost should be amortised over the useful economic life of the data feed, which was estimated to be three years, and (ii) the financial information on VMS that Mr Chamberlain had collated. Mr Hussain instructed Mr Chamberlain to send this financial information to Deloitte together with some further points Mr Hussain had drafted in an attempt to support recoverability of revenue from VMS. Mr Chamberlain did so, emailing Mr Murray of Deloitte on 7 July 2009 as follows:

> *"Tom – this is the latest financial information I have and was generated when we were looking at acquiring VMS.*

Couple of additional points:

- *Old company, been around for 25 years, run like a partnership with cash taken out by the shareholders. They run a revolver with the bank which we assume they will use. They are a conservatively run company who have always paid us on time - $1m licence plus $250k maintenance*

- *$85m retained earnings so a good strong company, but like a partnership like deloitte they take money out of the business and run an overdraft. They also have an $11m revolver. So I am comfortable that for such a strategic deal as the purchase of Autn software they will use the revolver to allocate the cash."*

2658. The Claimants dismissed the suggestion that VMS was going to use more than 80% of its revolver to pay for the Autonomy software as just a ruse to satisfy Deloitte that collectability was probable. In particular, they provided evidence that Mr Hussain had already suggested paying VMS the $13 million in respect of the first VMS purchase before it was contractually due. The funds to pay for the Autonomy software were therefore going to come from Autonomy, and not from any revolver.

2659. As it was, and despite the fact that as Mr Murray of Deloitte noted in an email to Mr Welham the "*financial info for the year ended March 2007 is mildly useful but nowhere near enough to support our audit work…*", Deloitte ultimately appears to have received sufficient comfort on collectability to concur with Autonomy's accounting treatment.

2660. Deloitte's Q2 2009 Report to the Audit Committee simply stated that:

> *"This is a $9 million deal to supply VMS with a perpetual licence for a suite of Autonomy software products including TeamSite, LiveSite, Qfiniti and IDOL. Also in the quarter, Autonomy has separately purchased $13 million of software and associated services from VMS. Given that there is clear commercial rationale for the separate transactions, separate contractual arrangements and evidence that both transactions have been made at fair value, management has confirmed and concluded that there are no links between the contracts that would impact the accounting. Licence revenue of $8.5 million has been recognised with $0.5 million being deferred as fair value on support and maintenance. The cost of the software purchased by Autonomy has been capitalised on the balance sheet as an intangible asset and is to be amortised to the income statement over its useful economic life of 3 years."*

2661. What Deloitte did not know, and what the Audit Committee were thus not told, was that the transactions had been conceived by Mr Hussain as a means of generating extra revenue in Q2 2009, had been negotiated together, and would not have happened independently of the other.

Autonomy's use of the VMS data feed Q3 2009 to Q3 2010

2662. The Claimants relied finally in this context on evidence that (a) Autonomy did not use the VMS data feed for some 8 months after its acquisition and (b) Autonomy

developed its own enhanced data feed which left little room for or appetite to adopt the VMS version. The Claimants prayed this in aid first, on the ground that lack of subsequent use was relevant in assessing what was the real rationale in purchasing the product in the first place, and secondly, in assessing the substance of a subsequent purchase by Autonomy of further rights in respect of the VMS data feed. (I elaborate on the second of these points in the context of the second VMS transaction, see paragraphs 2680 to 2714 below).

2663. The Defendants responded to this that (i) contrary to the Claimants' case, Autonomy did use the VMS feed for demonstration purposes and furthermore (ii) in any event, the Claimants had misunderstood and overlooked Autonomy's use and sale of the VMS feed as an integrated element in its product portfolio (and especially Autonomy's "Explore" offering) which they submitted was the central purpose for which it was purchased. The Defendants also submitted that the crucial question which the line of argument tended to obscure was not whether the data feed was in fact used but was whether there was a commercial rationale at the time of the sale.

2664. The dispute engendered a detailed exegesis in the parties' respective written closing submissions. I consider that the most salient points can be summarised under three headings as follows:

(a) Autonomy's immediate response to the cessation of the Moreover feed;

(b) Autonomy's efforts to find a use for the VMS data feed after it was provided with sample data from it 6 months later;

(c) Autonomy's attempt to integrate the VMS data feed and sell it as part of Autonomy's software product.

2665. As to (a) in the preceding paragraph:

(1) In the Business Plan produced by Mr Hussain it was stated that as Moreover had cancelled its feed and restored it only temporarily, *"a replacement news feed is required urgently"*.

(2) Nevertheless, although the Defendants sought to present the purchase of the VMS feed as the solution adopted in light of this urgent need, contemporaneous documents make clear, and it did not seem to be disputed, that after the purchase of the relevant rights to that feed its evaluation was not a priority for Autonomy, and still less was its deployment. The contemporaneous documentation barely referred to it, the focus being almost exclusively on assisting VMS in relation to its purchase and adoption of Autonomy software.

(3) Instead, when on 20 July 2009 Mr Hussain asked Dr Menell *"what to do"* when Mr Black advised that Moreover would be switching off its feed on 31 July 2009 Dr Menell suggested that Autonomy should create its own feed:

> *"Moreover is a good clean and reliable feed. However, like the rest of the world (remember Bloomberg) technology wise its built on our stuff*

> *and other simple 3rd party bit and pieces that we have our own and frankly superior version off…So renewing Moreover would be something we would do if a) we were lazy and have been lazy and b) we ever listened to humans calling themselves "product managers". Thus time to bite that bullet and package our own that given our technology will utterly obliterate the likes of Moreover…"*

(4) Then, on 20 July 2009, Dr Menell instructed Dr Blanchflower, Mr Goodfellow and Mr Lucini to create an alternative news feed by 31 July 2009, when the Moreover feed was due to be switched off:

> *"You know what to do – it is time to eat our own dog food. We have until 31st and I want something we can use AND sell to our customer as a clean pre classified plug and play tagged feed package. Fern [Lucini] lead the charge."*

(5) There was no mention in any of these emails of the VMS data feed that Autonomy had licensed a few weeks earlier for $13 million.

(6) As it happened, Dr Blanchflower had been working on an alternative feed since the interruption to the Moreover feed in June 2009. Dr Blanchflower told Dr Menell, Mr Lucini and Mr Goodfellow that there was an "*rss fetch on 200 news sites*" and that it would be ready to go live before 31 July 2009. Dr Blanchflower's unchallenged evidence was that it was a relatively straightforward task: it took him a morning to find as many news sites as possible, an afternoon to connect them using a rich site summary (RSS) connector, and a further two weeks for the feed to fill up with news items. Similarly unchallenged was Dr Blanchflower's evidence that the news feed was able to pick up breaking news stories quickly and effectively, and worked well in Autonomy's demonstration environment.

(7) The only challenge to Dr Blanchflower's evidence on this issue was the suggestion that he could not have gone out and replicated the content of the VMS data feed, at least not without negotiating and paying for rights to access and sublicense content. As Dr Blanchflower explained, he had, to some extent, replicated the VMS data feed, because "*we had a demonstration on the sales environment and products that we shipped to customers that were able to obtain the transcriptions of broadcast news feed and social media posts and obviously web content as well*". To the extent that further rights were required, he considered that they could be obtained without great expense, either by the customer or by Autonomy.

(8) Dr Lynch sought to discredit the data feed that Dr Blanchflower created on two fronts: technical and legal.

    (a) Dr Lynch suggested that the feed was a "*temporary workaround*", which was expensive, slow, required a large amount of bandwidth and was often blocked by websites. But the Autonomy news feed used a RSS connector to extract news from as many websites as possible. RSS is a format specifically used for delivering regularly changing web content, such as news headlines. The RSS connector

only extracted the text from news articles, which required very little bandwidth, and it did so quickly and inexpensively. Dr Blanchflower, who created the news feed, did not recall any issue with the speed at which it operated. Nor, since RSS is how news sites expect their articles to be consumed, did he recall any websites blocking Autonomy's news feed. This evidence was not challenged.

(b) Dr Lynch also suggested at various points in his oral evidence that Autonomy would not be able to create its own data feed without infringing copyright. However he accepted that though a *"grey area"* this should not affect use for demonstration.

(9) The news feed that Dr Blanchflower created is <u>still</u> used to this day by MicroFocus in the same form as it was in 2009, which appears be contrary to any suggestion that it contravened copyright laws or had any deficiencies of note.

The 'Blanchflower' data feed must also have been used within Autonomy because, as explained below, Autonomy was not even using the VMS data feed some six months after purchasing it.

2666. As to (b) in paragraph 2664 above:

(1) It seems clear, though Dr Lynch did not accept this, that it was not until the beginning of December 2009, some 6 months after the first VMS purchase, that VMS provided Autonomy with some sample data from the VMS data feed. Mr Avila had no knowledge of any sample data having been provided prior to this point. There is no other evidence of VMS delivering the data feed to Autonomy, save to enable VMS to recognise revenue from the first VMS purchase.

(2) Perhaps both because it had not been scoped before purchase, nor its details and sample data provided until so long after it, Autonomy still seems to have been unclear what use they could make of the data feed. On 3 December 2009, Mr Avila sent a link to the sample of the VMS data to Mr Lucini, Mr Gallagher and Dr Blanchflower, noting that Autonomy needed to "*provide some specification/requirements document for the data feed. Beyond putting this into our demos, if we intend to pair it with our WCM [Web Content Management]/Optimost stack we need some doc that outlines what we want*".

(3) That *"doc that outlines what we want"* was necessary in order to provide VMS with some information to enable it to determine what application programming interfaces ("APIs") Autonomy needed to enable the VMS data feed to communicate and interact with Autonomy's software, as Mr Avila accepted.

(4) VMS had been asking for this specification since July 2009, but, as at December 2009, none had been provided by Autonomy's technical team. Mr Avila could not remember when work on the technical specification had started, nor even whether it had done so prior to his email of 3 December 2009. There is no evidence, and it is not likely in those circumstances, that any

use could have been made of the data feed in the meantime. This is difficult to reconcile with the claims made in the Project Shockwave business plan.

(5) When the sample of data was provided, Mr Avila asked his colleagues to look at it or let him know who to work with. The email exchanges that ensued show that there was still no clear idea as to whether and, if so, how, the VMS data feed was going to be used by Autonomy. The email exchanges suggested also that some of the content was unsuitable for use in Autonomy's demonstration environment, and that there was a considerable degree of overlap between the VMS data feed and the Moreover data feed that Autonomy could have licensed for demonstration purposes for £50,000 per annum.

(6) The response of Mr Gallagher, Head of Development at Autonomy, appears to confirm that the provision of the data sample was Autonomy's first practical engagement with the application of the VMS feed. In an email dated 7 December 2009 he asked: "*What is this feed? What sort of content does it contain? Why did we licence it?*". As far as Mr Avila was aware, and as is plain from the terms of Mr Gallagher's email, Mr Gallagher was not familiar with the VMS data feed before Mr Avila's email. In response:

(a) Mr Avila replied with a summary of the VMS data feed and explained that "*It was part of the last deal we did with them as far as I know, we can integrate this "feed" within our demos or products and upsell customers into full VMS features…*".

(b) Mr Gallagher appears to have reviewed the data feed and then asked Mr Avila: "*Have you looked at the demo data?...From what I've seen the quality and content is pretty poor…not at all sure how it could be used in our demo network*". Mr Gallagher copied and pasted an example from the data feed in his email to Mr Avila.

(c) Mr Avila responded that he had "*not looked at it closely*" but "*for most of them the quality seemed ok*".

(d) But, for Dr Blanchflower at least,

> "*the "okay" was never what we were aiming for. The demo system was our showcase and designed to be as high quality as we could obtain. If there was anything that wasn't okay, we would remove it and try to do better. This was to replace our own iteration of the Moreover feed and unless it was tangibly better, there would be no reason to*".

(7) In further exchanges, Mr Avila went on to say: "*We don't have to use all of it, or any of it. If we do want to use it somehow we need to give them a spec [specification] of what we want though*". Mr Avila confirmed in his oral evidence that (a) if a specification was to be provided he needed someone to work with him to determine how to filter the data, which he accepted Autonomy needed to produce and provide to VMS if it wanted to use the data; but (b) he could not remember what he knew about it at the time, but he

accepted that Autonomy probably did not need the data feed, because the data feed Dr Blanchflower had devised was satisfactory.

(8) Sometime later, Mr Lucini participated in the discussion, expressing uncertainty as to whether Autonomy got much value from "*a raw feed of unprocessed info*". Mr Lucini thought "*it would be funny if we end up getting moreover again but coming from vms! but this is a numbers game. Eloy, how much data do they process? How much would come our way? If it's meaningful we can put it through maindemo beta [sic] and see if it plays well…*". Mr Lucini was essentially saying that, if Autonomy took the print and internet content, then it would be getting the Moreover data feed, but via VMS.[312] His suggestion that the VMS data feed be run in the main demo environment to see how it played out, indicates that the feed had not been tested in this environment, still less used. Mr Avila told Mr Lucini that he would get the numbers. Noting that Autonomy had *"seemingly paid for this*", he expressed hope that Autonomy could "*use it somehow, even if just moreover*". But $13 million was a lot to pay to continue to receive Moreover's data feed via VMS and other unprocessed, low quality news feeds that Autonomy did not want to use for its product demonstrations.

(9) Mr Gallagher's further investigations were not positive. As regards the only additional content that VMS offered over and above Moreover, namely, the broadcast content, Mr Gallagher advised Mr Avila that he should "*take a look*", because Mr Gallagher's random sampling of the files that VMS had transferred showed them "*all to be crappy local news broadcasts…we don't want these in the demo*". The Defendants took issue with this, on the basis that Mr Lucini, for one, appeared to consider the local data feeds *"a good thing"*. Mr Avila considered that *"for most of them the quality seemed ok"* and thought that Mr Gallagher, in comparing the feed to Moreover and viewing it solely in terms of its use in demonstrations had rather missed the point that the use of the VMS feed was not so confined. Indeed, the Defendants pointed out that Mr Avila had stressed that the ability to use VMS data for demonstrations was simply an ancillary benefit; its main purpose was to permit Autonomy to embed the feed into its WCM (Web Content Management) product line and Mr Avila had asked for thoughts about use in any other products also.

(10) That point had its dangers for the Defendants: Mr Avila's requests in finding and defining for VMS a use specification other than demonstration strengthened the impression that some use had had to be identified because none had been the reason for the purchase. As the Claimants noted, had the reason for the purchase been to integrate with Autonomy's product sets (as Autonomy represented to Deloitte in the Project Shockwave business plan) that exercise would have been unnecessary: Autonomy's engineers would have been told to start work on integrating it.

2667. As to (c) in paragraph 2664 above:

[312] This was also the view of Mr Andrew Joiner, CEO of Autonomy eTalk, who told his colleagues in May 2010: "*VMS doesn't care about the feed. It's basically forked to us without being cleansed. They get it through a subscription to Moreover etc. What they want is for us to sell their data*".

(1) Even by January 2010, Autonomy had still not provided VMS with the specification for the data feed without which VMS could not tailor it to Autonomy's requirements. It was not provided until 11 February 2010.

(2) Towards the end of March 2010, some nine months after Autonomy had acquired the VMS data feed, Autonomy incorporated it into its media aggregation service ("MAS") which in turn fed into a product known as Autonomy Explore. As Dr Blanchflower explained, and Mr Avila agreed, Autonomy Explore was an interface that formed part of Autonomy's Promote business unit, which included the Web Content Management suite of products. At a high level, Autonomy Explore indexed documents of use to people interested in media and marketing and performed analytics on that data.

(3) On 23 March 2010, Mr Joiner notified Dr Lynch and Dr Menell of the integration, saying:

> *"Good news is that we are receiving and ingesting the daily feeds from VMS into explore.*
>
> *Eloy [Avila] and Nathan [Anderson] have spearheaded the effort and produced a sizing. The issue is that we fill up the current demo idol server in a few days*
>
> *Would you be okay with adding a few servers per their recommendation? It is key element of deals and demos."*

(4) Dr Lynch recalled seeing this integration at the time, and acknowledged that it took place nine months after the first VMS purchase. Attempts were made during the cross-examination of the Claimants' witnesses to establish that the VMS data feed was incorporated into Autonomy Explore and sold to customers. Mr Goodfellow was unable to comment on whether Autonomy Explore incorporating VMS was sold to customers. Mr Lucini recalled that Autonomy tried to use the VMS data feed in Autonomy Explore, but that it did not work and was stopped. He also recalled a number of proofs of concept and demonstrations, but he did not recall any sales. Nor was he taken to any signed sales contracts in his cross-examination.

(5) Mr Avila referred in his witness statement to a number of documents shown to him by Dr Lynch's legal team and suggested that the VMS feed was "*incorporated into many of our Promote products, such as Optimost and Autonomy Explore, and sold to various key customers*". Mr Avila amended this paragraph before giving evidence so that it read "*VMS's feed was incorporated into and made compatible with many of our Promote products, such as Optimost and Autonomy Explore, which were sold or proposed to various key customers*" (emphasis added). The examples given were explored in detail in cross-examination. It emerged that Mr Avila had no personal involvement in four of the five examples he referred to in his witness statement. None of the documents he referred to were a signed sales contract showing the sale of the VMS data feed to a customer. Nor did any of the documents involve a sale or a proposed sale of Optimost incorporating the VMS feed. The most that Mr Avila was able to point to was an email chain

relating to a customer called Herbalife, which started with Mr Anderson noting that Autonomy had sold a media aggregation service to Herbalife which it had not yet built. Mr Avila was not taken to any others in re-examination, nor was Dr Lynch.[313]

(6) In November 2010, Mr Avila asked Mr Joiner: "*how we are packaging the VMS data feed into Explore nowadays and if we are selling it?*". Mr Avila also asked whether it would make sense for VMS to host the data and provide access to Autonomy. Mr Joiner responded that this was not really practical and that:

> *"…For a variety of reasons, it doesn't make much sense for VMS to host the data. Firstly, we have already paid for the data and we are better with IDOL. Secondly, they don't add much value. They aren't collecting data themselves just forwarding the feeds. If they were to index the data, they don't have an automated way to extract and export data like we do with Automation Server. I could go on and on obviously (we would be totally dependent on them for support, they would know our customers etc etc). Happy to discuss further."*

(7) Mr Avila confirmed in cross-examination that this reflected his understanding at the time and explained that he handed over evolution of the data specification to Mr Anderson, who worked closely with Mr Andrew Joiner and Mr David Joiner, heads of the business unit for Autonomy Explore and Optimost.

(8) Mr Avila then asked Mr Joiner, who was involved with the VMS data feed and its potential use within Autonomy's Explore and Optimost products, about the possibility of upselling or reselling the VMS data feed, suggesting that part of a new offering to VMS "*may be a more collaborative reseller agreement of their feed/service*". Mr Joiner's response was again negative, ending:

> *"…there just isn't a ton of value in their feed, especially if there are royalties. It's a commodity market — though putting it into IDOL isn't…".*

2668. As at Q4 2010, therefore, Autonomy had not done what it represented to Deloitte it would do with the feed in its Project Shockwave business plan. There is no evidence that the feed had been integrated with Autonomy's Interwoven or Optimost product sets, still less sold to customers as part of these products.[314] As elaborated in the context of the second VMS transaction, it appears that Autonomy had not even acquired the rights to use the VMS data feed as part of its Optimost products, despite

[313] After the close of evidence, the Defendants uploaded a number of additional documents to the trial bundle on this issue. Many of the documents post-date the second VMS reciprocal transaction and most of them are to the same effect as the documents exhibited to Mr Avila's witness statement, i.e. proofs of concept, statements of work, draft agreements, emails and the like, as opposed to evidence of material sales of Autonomy Explore / MAS incorporating the VMS data feed.

[314] After the close of evidence, the Defendants uploaded two documents on this issue. These do not advance their case. The first in time shows that the Managing Director of Optimost, Mark Wachen, asked in August 2009 whether the terms of the first VMS purchase entitled Autonomy to use the data feed in new Optimost products. As will be seen, it did not. The second in time shows that, by Q1 2011, there had not been any VMS-Optimost integration.

representing to Deloitte that this was part of the rationale for acquiring the data feed in Q2 2009.

2669. Mr Hill sought in his oral closing to maintain the line that the VMS data feed *"was used and was used for the purposes for which it was bought."* He submitted that it was successfully incorporated into the 'Explore' product, which was part of the WCM product line, which in turn was part of the 'Promote' part of Autonomy's business. He added that even if this was not the Optimost product mentioned in the Project Shockwave Business plan, it was another Interwoven product and thus *"very much in line with the commercial rationale that was explained to Deloitte"* so that *"the product was used and was used for the purpose for which it was bought"*.

2670. However, Mr Rabinowitz countered in his oral reply that this overlooked how long it had taken even for Autonomy to start work on the specification for the data feed, having as a matter of some urgency paid $13 million for it; it overlooked the fact that what Deloitte had been told to justify the purchase was that it would be integrated for demonstration use immediately, and into TeamSite, LiveSite and Optimost in Q3 2009, none of which was done; and that even overlooking the fact that it was the Optimost product, and not the Explore product, which Autonomy had identified, there was (as stated above) no evidence of actual integration with Interwoven or Optimost products, and the evidence of any sales was *"very thin indeed"*. There were in evidence no signed sales documents nor any documents of the kind that would be expected if there had been material sales. Mr Rabinowitz also reminded me that attempts were made during the cross-examination of the Claimants' witnesses to establish that the VMS data feed was both incorporated and sold to customers: but all these attempts failed. I accept the Claimants' case and find that any sales were negligible.

Conclusions on the first VMS transaction

2671. In summary, in my judgment:

(1) Mr Hussain proposed a sale of software by Autonomy to VMS as the means of generating extra revenue in a quarter when the *"US commercial call was poor"* and Autonomy needed some $9 million in extra revenue in order to hit Autonomy's Q2 2009 revenue target. It was Autonomy which approached VMS and prompted and promoted the sale.

(2) VMS was undoubtedly interested and became keen to purchase software which it considered offered it a potential for positive change: but a purchase of that magnitude was disproportionately large having regard to its available resources and was not one it could have contemplated but for Autonomy's offer to purchase from it a licence to its data feed.

(3) Autonomy's purchase of a licence to VMS's data feed was thus the means of enabling VMS to effect its proposed large ($9 million) purchase of Autonomy software.

(4) Mr Hussain was in direct control of both Autonomy's sale and its purchase. He dictated the price and the amount of software sold, as well as the price to

be paid by Autonomy to VMS for the data feed licence. The presentation of the transactions to Deloitte and the Audit Committee as separate was false.

(5) Autonomy did not conduct any technical analysis of VMS's data feed before agreeing to purchase rights to it for $13 million. The commercial assessment presented to Deloitte was prepared after the deal had been agreed and did not in reality guide or indicate the reasons for the decision either to sell or to purchase.

(6) The further memorandum on revenue recognition prepared to persuade Deloitte of the desired revenue recognition was also contrived and misleading.

(7) Autonomy did not need the data feed licence it acquired and did not seek to assess, still less deploy, it for many months after its purchase of it on the last day of Q2 2009. Instead, Autonomy pursued two alternative options of either (a) striking a deal for its previous data feed provider, Moreover, to continue providing such a data feed at a cost negotiated at £50,000 per year or (b) developing its own data feed.

(8) Given its past disappointment with Moreover, the fact that its data feed was limited to demonstration and did not permit sale, and Autonomy's corporate preference to develop its own software, Autonomy favoured and adopted the course of developing its own data feed.

(9) Although there were or might have been copyright problems for Autonomy in developing its own data feed for sale, those problems did not, or were not thought to, affect the development and deployment of its own data feed for demonstration purposes. Dr Blanchflower, Mr Lucini and their teams quickly developed such a data feed which is still in use by MicroFocus in substantially the same form as it was in 2009.

2672. I have concluded in these circumstances that the reason for Autonomy's purchase of the VMS feed was to fund a purchase from it by VMS in order to generate recognised revenue in order to seek to cover a shortfall on quarterly revenue targets; and that, since that was the reason for both transactions, they should have been accounted for together, and no revenue should have been recognised in respect of the sale to VMS.

The accounting treatment of the VMS reciprocal transactions

2673. It is convenient to set out the accounting consequences in respect of both the first and the second VMS transactions. There is no real dispute as to the application of the accounting principles on the basis of my conclusions that in each set of transactions the reason for the purchases by Autonomy was to fund the purchases from it in order for Autonomy to generate recognised revenue and in each set the purchase by Autonomy and the purchase by VMS from Autonomy must be taken together:

(1) There is no dispute that Autonomy's purchases of the VMS data feed were linked to Autonomy's software and hardware sales to VMS. The linked sale and purchase transactions ought, therefore, to have been considered

together in order to determine their substance and appropriate accounting treatment.

(2) From the matters set out above, it is clear that, in each case, the linked sale and purchase were not independent, arm's length transactions, and it was not possible to understand the substance and commercial effect of one agreement without regard to the other. That is because there was no genuine commercial rationale for either of Autonomy's purchases of the VMS data feed. Rather, the real purpose of Autonomy's purchases was to incentivise VMS and to fund VMS to purchase Autonomy software on terms VMS would not otherwise have agreed so that Autonomy could recognise additional revenue in Q2 2009 and Q4 2010. Autonomy's purchases, and the linked sales to VMS, therefore lacked economic substance.

(3) Further, IAS 18 §14(d) was not satisfied because no economic benefits flowed to Autonomy.

2674. It follows that Autonomy should not have recorded revenue on the sales to VMS. Autonomy should instead have: (i) recorded the net cost in relation to the first VMS sale and purchase, totalling $4,000,000, as an expense in Q2 2009, and (ii) recorded the net cost in relation to the second VMS purchase and the VMS hardware and software sale, totalling $261,633, as an expense in Q4 2010.

Defendants' knowledge

2675. There is no doubt about Mr Hussain's involvement and knowledge. I accept the Claimants' submissions that:

(1) Mr Hussain conceived of the first VMS reciprocal transaction as a means of generating extra revenue in Q4 2009 and he dictated the size of the deal to Mr Egan by reference to Autonomy's revenue needs.

(2) Based on the financial information he had relating to VMS and the size of VMS's business, he must have appreciated that VMS would not have entered into the first VMS sale on the terms it did unless Autonomy had incentivised it and funded it to do so through the first VMS purchase.

(3) He contributed to the misleading Project Shockwave business plan and was content for the equally misleading revenue recognition memorandum to be provided to Deloitte. He can only have understood that it was necessary to mislead Deloitte because there was no genuine commercial rationale for the first VMS purchase and that Deloitte would not have concurred with Autonomy's accounting treatment of the first VMS sale had it known that was the case.

2676. As ever, the position against Dr Lynch is less clear. His general position, as he asserted in his witness statement, and resorted to in cross-examination occasionally (see above) was that he had little involvement in the VMS reciprocal transactions.

2677. However:

(1) Dr Lynch was aware (as he had been informed by Mr Hussain by email of 19 June 2009) that the context in which Mr Hussain was pursuing a deal with VMS was that the *"US commercial call was poor"* and he needed extra revenue (naming VMS in that regard): see paragraph 2598 above. The inference from the way the email was drafted was that Dr Lynch was already aware of the proposed deal by then.

(2) Dr Lynch was kept updated of the progress of the transaction, including the proposed sale price *"at between 7-9m"* (see paragraphs 2607 and 2615 above), and accepted that he may well have been aware of the proposal for Autonomy to purchase something from VMS for a like price. He was also party to what I have determined were pre-textual exchanges setting out the line to be adopted on the purchase side.

(3) He was provided with a copy of the Project Shockwave Business Plan and the Revenue Recognition memo. He suggested that he might not have read the Business Plan: but I would doubt that. I think it more likely than not that he would have read it, even if only rapidly.

(4) He discussed the twin transactions with Mr Chamberlain, including a discussion about the first VMS reciprocal transaction being one of a number of "*circular transactions*".

(5) He eventually had to accept in cross-examination that the proposed deal only became a firm option in June 2009, and I infer that he was aware accordingly that the statements made to Deloitte that the purchase proposals had been commenced in March 2009 were false.

(6) He was kept informed of Mr Chamberlain's concerns about persuading Deloitte about the values paid.

(7) He was aware at the time that the purchase by VMS and the sale by VMS were being discussed at the same time.

(8) Mr Hussain sought his approval to pay VMS early. Dr Lynch asked no questions and I infer he knew, as did Mr Hussain, that this was needed to enable VMS to fund the instalment for its own purchase the next day.

(9) Dr Lynch was aware of the efforts to find some use for the VMS feed, and of the work being done to create Autonomy's own data feed. He was aware that the VMS data feed was not incorporated with any Autonomy product until the end of Q1 2010, almost a year after Autonomy had bought it for $13 million.

(10) Over the course of his cross-examination, I formed the impression that Dr Lynch did know that the pressing and preponderant reason for the purchase by Autonomy from VMS was to fund a corresponding purchase by VMS of software. I agree with the Claimants, and find that Dr Lynch cannot have believed that it was appropriate to recognise revenue from the sale to VMS in those circumstances.

2678. That is consistent with my overall view that Mr Hussain always kept Dr Lynch informed of the purpose and progress of the various transactions to bolster revenue to reach target.

2679. In my judgment, in all the circumstances, Mr Hussain plainly had 'guilty knowledge' of the improper recognition of revenue from the sale side. I have concluded on a balance of probabilities that so also did Dr Lynch.

The second VMS transaction - Q4 2010 (RT 2)

2680. As in Q2 2009, in Q4 2010 Mr Hussain was looking for ways to generate revenue to achieve revenue targets. As was his habit for every quarter, Mr Hussain had prepared a revenue forecast spreadsheet divided into closed deals, large deals and *"deals on the right"*. In Dr Lynch's words, there was a sort of route map, with *"his deals on the left, and then as things come out of the left, you put things in from the right"*. In other words, the deals on the right were brought in to cover any revenue shortfall in the event that any of the deals on the left fell away.

2681. At the beginning of November 2010, Mr Hussain circulated to Mr Egan, Ms Eagan and Dr Lynch, among others a table setting out the status of various large deals. The table included a $5 million deal with VMS 'on the right'. Mr Hussain, who had by then taken up Mr Egan's suggestion of the possibility of striking new arrangements with VMS through its new CEO (Mr David Stephens), told Ms Eagan in his covering email that the VMS ideas needed to be put into a proposal as soon as possible.

2682. A few days later, on 14 November 2010, Mr Hussain updated Dr Lynch on various deals that quarter and told him to *"Add VMS at say $5m – Nicole running, meeting wed"*. Each of Mr Hussain's updates to Dr Lynch over the following week identified VMS as key to the quarter. Over the course of the next few weeks, Mr Hussain, Ms Eagan and Mr Egan's focus was on what Autonomy could buy from VMS and sell to it, and how Autonomy could maximise revenue from the deal.

2683. It is clear that Dr Lynch was aware of a possible deal with VMS and that Mr Hussain was counting on it in his revenue forecasts. Dr Lynch was also kept informed of the progress of the discussions with VMS. Mr Hussain forwarded him Ms Eagan's summary of a meeting with VMS, in which Ms Eagan said that it *was "looking very good but still not sure on the new CEO's spend level. Beth Ladd has lunch with Gerry [Louw] today and I'll ask her to try to get a feel for how large we can go"*. Obviously, and as Dr Lynch accepted, the larger the deal, the more revenue for Autonomy.

2684. As is also clear from Ms Eagan's email, this was not a case of Autonomy having identified further rights from VMS that it needed or wanted and then entering into negotiations with VMS to acquire those further rights, as one would expect to see if there was a genuine commercial rationale for the purchase.

2685. Mr Hussain's primary concern, unsurprisingly, was how much revenue Autonomy could generate from a deal with VMS.

2686. At the beginning of December 2010, Mr Hussain told Dr Lynch that VMS needed some connectors and that a deal could be done, but probably for no more than $1 million. Mr Hussain suggested to Dr Lynch that a meeting needed to take place with the CEO of VMS, Mr Stephens. Mr Hussain later offered to Ms Eagan to meet with Mr Stephens when he was in New York.

2687. The first exercise was conducted primarily by Ms Eagan, not by reference to any apparent need or want on the part of Autonomy for further rights to VMS's products, but simply by reference to what was outside the scope of the first VMS reciprocal transaction:

(a) Ms Eagan asked Mr Scott and Mr Egan on 15 November 2010 for the terms of the first VMS reciprocal transaction, that is, what Autonomy licensed to VMS and what VMS licensed from Autonomy, saying that she needed them "*in order to think through the new deals structure*". Having considered the agreements, she then emailed Mr Scott and Mr Egan with some queries.

(b) On 19 November 2010, Mr Scott set out his answers underneath Ms Eagan's queries (his answers being identified in bold):

> *"Products such as Explore, Social Media Governance, Concept Stream (a new News Monitoring function) as well as the Twitter hash tag analysis we are just developing now did not exist. I assume these would therefore not be covered under the agreement as they did not exist at the time of the agreement. Is that correct?*
>
> ***Anything new that was not in existence at the time would not be covered.***
>
> *What were the limitations on our license of VMS data? Apparently, Andrew Joiner said we are using the feeds but not the other information. We need Gerry@ VMS to wrap it in a web API. I'm trying to find out more about that aspect but may need to know if that would be covered under the agreement. VMS new CEO would also like us to display the VMS brand in our demonstration with VMS data. Was that contemplated in the original agreement?*
>
> ***We are authorized to use and display the Data to End-Users by embedding an API designed to access the Data into Autonomy software. We have no right to sell or distribute the Data, itself, in any manner or via any method to end-users. Autonomy is restricted from providing functionality to the End-User to download or reproduce Data for its own use, for sale or distribution. I did not see anything that authorizes, requires or prohibits us from displaying their logo in our demos.***
>
> *Were there any resell/upsell terms? For example, does our salesforce have the right to resell or upsell VMS services to our clients? If so, what are the terms? Or are we to refer clients to VMS sales organization?*
>
> ***I don't see a right to sell/upsell VMS products (presumable the data in question) to customers. In fact, the contract states "All sales of Data or media to Autonomy End-Users, whether in tape, DVD, or other digital format, shall be made by VMS at prices to be established by VMS. VMS shall bill each End-User directly for such sales. VMS shall pay Autonomy a commission of 10% of all such sales exclusive of taxes, shipping, and handling charges, and/or royalty charges, if any." Commissions are paid quarterly in arrears."***

2688. Dr Lynch asserted that Ms Eagan's email was the "*sales part of an interaction with VMS, not the purchase part*", and that Ms Eagan was trying to find out what VMS already owned so that she could "*work out what she can go and pitch to sell them*". The Claimants contended, and I accept, that that was not the case. Only the first paragraph of Ms Eagan's email related to the software that Autonomy had already licensed to VMS and what further software Autonomy might be able to pitch. The remainder of Ms Eagan's email related to the scope of the first VMS purchase.

2689. On 19 November 2010, Ms Eagan sent Mr Hussain a proposal, which envisaged VMS licensing Autonomy software outside the scope of the first VMS sale and Autonomy reselling / upselling the VMS data feed.

2690. Initially, it seemed unlikely that a deal in excess of about $1 million was realistic. By 7 December 2010, Mr Stephens had had several meetings with Ms Eagan. He summarised the outcome of those meetings in an email to Ms Eagan and Mr Egan, noting that:

> *"VMS is not yet fully utilizing the software it already has under license – I guess like Autonomy is not yet fully utilizing the content it has licensed from VMS"*

2691. The following week, Ms Eagan met with Mr Hussain to discuss the deal structure. The goal, by this point, was *"$2m revenue VMS pays Autonomy"*. Mr Hussain told Mr Egan, Ms Eagan, Dr Menell and Mr Scott on 14 December 2010 that he had spoken with Dr Lynch and *"he was fine"*. Mr Hussain summarised the deal structure as follows:

> *"We sell $2m of software (connectors that Pete [Menell] has to deliver please)*
>
> *We buy: $0.5m services provided, $0.5m for the VMS service plus for non cash (but valuable to VMS) – we put their logo on our AVRO product and also we give them PR via our PR of the product"*

2692. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that it was obvious the two deals with Autonomy buying and selling software were being discussed at the same time, and that he had had a discussion with Mr Hussain about the proposed deal reflecting the terms of Mr Hussain's email.

2693. The next day, 15 December 2010, Mr Hussain told Dr Lynch and Dr Menell that the CEO of VMS wanted to do a deal, that the terms were yet to be agreed and that he and Mr Egan would negotiate the deal. Mr Hussain later told Dr Lynch that the VMS deal was *"a replacement for kpmg"*, another potential Q4 2010 deal, which Mr Hussain had flagged earlier as being at risk. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that Mr Hussain meant a replacement from a revenue point of view; in other words, the revenue from the VMS deal was going to replace the revenue that Autonomy was looking to earn from a deal with KPMG.

2694. Mr Hussain then attempted to identify ways of increasing the size of the deal and hence the revenue that Autonomy could recognise. The same day, he emailed Mr Egan and Ms Eagan with the subject *"about buying vms",* saying:

> "*Thought I'd throw that in to make it bigger*
>
> *We could take shares as part consideration to help them*
>
> *The problem is of course time but at these levels we could do it without much dd."*

2695. Dr Lynch acknowledged that Mr Hussain was trying to make the deal bigger in order to increase the revenue Autonomy could recognise, and that he was suggesting Autonomy consider taking shares in VMS as payment to facilitate that.

2696. Mr Hussain sent Mr Egan and Ms Eagan further ideas for increasing the size of the deal later that day:

> *"Ideas: We sell hardware for $5m. We provide financing – say 1 year to pay. This has value*
>
> *We sell the connectors, extensions etc for $5m inc 5% maintenance*
>
> *We prebuy their servies [sic] at list etc for $4m*
>
> *There has to be a strong branding of vms and cross selling opportunities".*

2697. *[Paragraph intentionally left blank]*

2698. Dr Lynch suggested that Mr Hussain was simply trying to sell more to VMS, and that there was nothing wrong with that; but Mr Hussain was plainly aware that VMS was not in a position to finance a larger deal from its own resources and was trying to find ways of overcoming this by providing financing or accepting alternative consideration so as to increase the revenue that Autonomy could look to recognise.

2699. Mr Hussain's idea of adding a sale of hardware enabled a considerable increase in the size of the proposed transaction. After negotiations between Mr Egan and Ms Eagan with VMS on 16 December 2010 Mr Egan reported that "*There is a $10M deal here"*, assuming that Autonomy could supply *"approx. $5 to $6M in HW through bonded warehouse"* and software to a value of between $2m to $4m, and would purchase from VMS *"enhanced and increased rights for current period"* and also an extension of aggregate rights for a term of 5 years, which Mr Egan wrote in his email reporting on the meeting was *"vital for Nicole [Eagan]"* Mr Egan noted further that VMS *"also requested longer than 2 year payment on the HW".*

2700. The following day, 17 December 2010, Mr Hussain updated Dr Lynch and Dr Menell on Autonomy's progress towards its revenue targets, saying *"Currently tracking between 250 and 258 depending on kpmg"*. That figure included *"Vms agreed at 9.5m".*

2701. By 22 December 2010, the discussions between VMS and Autonomy had come down to the delta, that is, the net cash VMS was going to receive from the deal. The Claimants contended that this reflected the reality that the deal for Autonomy was about how much it had to pay to VMS to secure the revenue it needed for the quarter.

2702. This reality, and the fact that all concerned in Autonomy understood that the sale values for which Autonomy would seek to achieve would depend on revenue needs, was further emphasised in the email exchanges in evidence. Thus on 22 December 2010, Mr Egan received an email from Mr Stephens with the subject "*best effort*", which Mr Egan forwarded to Mr Hussain.[315] Rather than having protracted negotiations, Mr Stephens indicated he wanted to "*cut to the chase and put a deal on the table that works for all*".

2703. Mr Stephens summarised the deal as follows:

> *"…Please see attached. It achieves*
>
> - *A $13m sale for AU in 2010*
> - *The net payment is in the range you discussed*
> - *VMS gets the HW and SW it needs*
> - *AU has access to data to help build your business*
> - *I believe I can get our shareholders to agree in time*
> - *Most importantly it builds an even stronger relationship between our 2 companies*
> - *We have discussions underway for further relationship enhancement in 2011"*

2704. A spreadsheet which (though at one time this was queried) appears to have been attached to Mr Stephen's email set out in tabular form a series of linked transactions between Autonomy and VMS, comprising a sale by VMS of further rights to the VMS data feed for $8.1 million, and sales by Autonomy of (a) hardware (acquired by Autonomy from a third party supplier) for $8 million and (b) further Autonomy software for $5 million.

2705. On 23 December 2010, Mr Egan sought Mr Hussain's advice on how to proceed, suggesting that they "*counter slightly more softly at like 3.25 delta or at least put language in that opens the door for David to be in touch with you today to discuss/make a case etc.*". Mr Egan summarised the position for Mr Hussain in more detail later that day in response to an earlier email from Mr Hussain:

> *"Not sure when you are getting out of your meeting. I'm not sure I follow this. Our offer to them was:*

[315] The suggestion was made that Mr Stephens' email might not be the email referred to, but it is clear that the attachments to the email were sent to Mr Hussain by Mr Egan.

They buy approx 8-10M in HW, amount doesn't matter really as it nets out of analysis. (however, it does actually matter a bit as I'm sure we will source it for at least 10% less than we sell it for.)

They pay $5M for the SW

We buy $7.5 M in VMS Information Services

That would leave a real delta of $2.5M. One way to think about it is that $1M of that is against the AU staffing services obligation both past and future. The remaining 1.5 is either: a pure delta or recovered in HW sourcing prowess.

With that said. They countered moving that $2.5 to $4.6. and penciling 8M in HW so it would be 13M in rev to AU.

A few thoughts:

- *I think we can counter again*
- *I don't think they have the ability to do too much better than that. (they aren't actually going to buy the HW in the absence of help like this , they just have to go on and run their business and hope they can self fund those aspirations over 4 years. So it's not like we are relieving them of planned expense.*
- *What we do next depends heavily on what you need. It would be best to know more on BofA.*
- *We could just work to optimize and keep the option to do this deal. If we break out of the range of economics they can even consider we will not be able to reconvene them if we regret it upon collapse of other stuff.*
- *Thoughts???"*

2706. The Claimants highlighted a number of points of note in Mr Egan's email:

(1) The hardware purchase netted out of the calculation of the delta because, as Dr Lynch put it, it was a zero-margin transaction. The relevant delta was therefore between the proposed sale by Autonomy of software and the proposed purchase by Autonomy of further rights to the VMS data feed. In other words, the delta was the cost to Autonomy of selling its software.

(2) Autonomy's response to the terms proposed by Mr Stephens expressly depended on what Mr Hussain said he *"needed"*; and given the subsequent reference to the status of the proposed deal with BofA, that can only have meant what Mr Hussain needed from a revenue perspective.

(3) Mr Egan regarded the deal as otherwise optional: he appeared to think that in reality, Autonomy only needed to make the purchase to generate the sale.

2707. In the result, the parties compromised on what Mr Stephens described as *"the $3.3m net cash payment"*. Only after that was attention turned to ironing out exactly what would be the software rights to be sold by Autonomy to VMS and the data feed licence rights it was to purchase from VMS, as well as to providing a recorded justification for Autonomy's purchase of such rights for $8.4 million.

2708. In the latter context, no effort was made by either Mr Hussain or Dr Lynch, both of whom ultimately approved the transactions, to establish whether the first VMS purchase had been a success, financially or otherwise, before investing further substantial sums (including a very handsome 'delta') in another VMS data feed licence. Mr Crumbacher simply prepared a table setting out the main features of Autonomy's further purchase from VMS and asked Ms Eagan and Mr Egan to add the reasoning behind the purchase and the amount allocated to each component of it. Mr Hussain put in an additional request that Ms Eagan and Mr Egan *"add colour"* and Mr Chamberlain *"work on valuations"*. Mr Hussain indicated that he was *"ok"* with the purchase *"given the commercial success of the previous acquisition of data"*, any such success being negligible, if measurable at all.

2709. The three components of the second VMS reciprocal transaction were executed on 31 December 2010:

(1) Autonomy's purchase from VMS took the form of an amendment to the first VMS purchase (the "second VMS purchase"). The second VMS purchase extended the term of the first VMS purchase from three years to five years and expanded the scope of the data licensed under the first VMS purchase so as to include social media content and vertical market content. The agreement also licensed additional rights to Autonomy, including: (i) the right to sublicense and distribute the licensed VMS data to Autonomy customers, end-users, prospects, resellers and partners, and (ii) the right to use, manipulate, access, review, compile and automatically act on the VMS data solely through operation of and in conjunction with Autonomy's hosted, web-based, online marketing optimisation and analytics product currently marketed under the trademark "Optimost" for itself and for the benefit of customers and users of the Optimost service. The fee payable by Autonomy under the second VMS purchase was $8.4 million, which was due in five (unequal) instalments. The first three instalments were for $2 million each and were due in February, April and July 2011.

(2) Autonomy's sale of further software licences to VMS took the form of a further product schedule to the existing software licence agreement (the "VMS software sale"). Under the VMS software sale, Autonomy licensed certain software to VMS for the uses authorised therein. The agreement provided for a licence fee of $5 million, which included a fee in respect of the first year of support services in the amount of $250,000. The licence fee and the support fee were payable in three instalments. The first two instalments were for $1,500,000 and were due within 90 and 120 days of invoice, respectively.

(3) Autonomy also sold hardware and other equipment to VMS pursuant to a second amendment to an earlier software licence agreement between the parties (the "VMS hardware sale"). Under the VMS hardware sale, VMS

agreed to purchase from Autonomy the hardware and equipment specified in the schedule to the agreement for a purchase price of $6,004,066.90. This amount was payable in four instalments of $1,501,016 or thereabouts. The first instalment was not payable for almost an entire year, and the final instalment was not due until almost two years after the effective date of the agreement. Dr Lynch acknowledged that these were unusually generous payment terms.

2710. Autonomy recognised the licence fee from the VMS software sale and the amount payable under the VMS hardware sale, totalling $10,754,067, in Q4 2010, and the support fee as revenue over the following year.

2711. Three further points were stressed by the Claimants:

(1) First, much was made by the Defendants in the cross-examination of the Claimants' witnesses and in Mr Avila's witness statement of the second VMS purchase giving Autonomy the right to resell the VMS data feed; indeed, Mr Avila's witness statement rehearsed that Dr Lynch's legal team had told him that this right was a "*fundamental factor*" in Autonomy entering into that agreement. The basis for those instructions is entirely unclear. As noted above, when Mr Avila asked Mr Andrew Joiner in November 2010 about the possibility of reselling or upselling the VMS data feed, Mr Joiner was less than enthused and said that there "*isn't a ton of value*" in the feed.

(2) Secondly, as outlined above, the second VMS purchase granted Autonomy the right to use the VMS data feed in Autonomy's Optimost product set. Yet Autonomy had represented in the Project Shockwave business plan that part of the reason for the <u>first</u> VMS purchase was to incorporate the VMS data feed with its Optimost suite of products. The fact that Autonomy had to license <u>additional</u> rights in order to be able to use the VMS data feed in this way indicates that: (i) this cannot have been part of the rationale for the first VMS purchase, contrary to what was stated in the Project Shockwave business plan, and (ii) Autonomy cannot, at least lawfully, have incorporated the VMS data into its Optimost product set by Q4 2010. This would explain why there is no evidence of Autonomy having done so prior to the second VMS purchase.[316]

(3) Thirdly, the payment terms were structured so that: (i) VMS did not have to pay anything in respect of the hardware for almost a year after the sale, an unusually long period of time, and (ii) with one exception which, as will be seen, VMS regarded as an oversight, VMS did not have to pay anything to Autonomy under the VMS software sale until Autonomy had provided VMS with the funds by making payments under the second VMS purchase. These payment terms reinforce the suggestion that the second VMS purchase was simply a means of channelling funds to VMS.

2712. As in the case of the first VMS purchase, the Claimants' case is that the purpose of the second VMS purchase was to incentivise and fund VMS to make a reciprocal purchase from Autonomy from which Autonomy could recognise revenue in Q4 2010, not

[316] As noted above (footnote 314), from a document uploaded to the trial bundle by the Defendants after the close of evidence, it is clear that there had not been any VMS-Optimost integration by Q1 2011.

because Autonomy had any genuine need or want for further rights to the VMS data feed.

2713. Dr Lynch's written closing submissions complained that much of the material put to him was comprised of documents to which he was not a party. It was noted, however, that none suggested that the purchase from Autonomy was not going to be at fair value or that it would not involve purchasing rights that Autonomy genuinely wanted.

2714. However, the VMS data feed was no more useful than it had been previously; and the reason for the linked transactions was, as before, revenue recognition with the transactions fixed at a price to ensure the achievement of the revenue required by Mr Hussain to meet the quarterly target.

Deloitte's consideration of the second VMS transaction

2715. On 18 January 2011, a few weeks after Autonomy entered into the second VMS reciprocal transaction, Mr Chamberlain asked Ms Eagan to "*pull together a memo that shows what we have purchased and why. This memo should give some consideration to why we have paid $8.4m for it. May be linked to price lists, quotes etc or may be cheaper than costs for us to replicate etc etc*". No such consideration had taken place within Autonomy prior to it entering into the second VMS purchase, as one would expect if the purchase had a genuine commercial rationale.

2716. Mr Chamberlain repeated his request the following day, saying he was *"going to need something over the next few days on this to provide to the auditors"*. He said that the summary Ms Eagan had produced a few days earlier was very useful and *"should be repeated in the paper with a little bit more meat on the bones highlighting why we would pay $8.4m for this i.e. some evidence of possible future sales/markets that this will help us get into"*. Ms Eagan responded, noting that she was *"not at all involved with pricing"*. As set out above, that is because the pricing was negotiated by Mr Egan and Mr Hussain by reference to the delta between the second VMS purchase and the VMS software sale.

2717. No paper appears to have been produced because, the same day, 19 January 2011, Mr Chamberlain forwarded an inconclusive earlier summary by Ms Eagan of the second VMS purchase to Mr Welham. Mr Chamberlain subsequently emailed Mr Welham on 25 January 2011 asking what he needed, saying that he had *"provided the commercial rationale from Nicole"* and that the pricing was *"consistent with the previous deal we did with them at which time we obtained many third party quotes etc."*. Subject to the next paragraph, these emails appear to have been the only documented rationale put forward to Deloitte to justify the second VMS purchase.

2718. From Deloitte's working paper, it appears that Deloitte was given to understand that the second VMS purchase provided Autonomy with access to VMS's main data feed and permitted Autonomy to include the VMS analysis tools in its own products. Deloitte also appears to have spoken with Dr Menell about the supposed rationale for the deal, and been provided with a short demonstration to prove that *"the VMS feed [Autonomy] claimed [it] had was real"*. Presumably because the information was insufficient, Deloitte had to consult its own in house IT specialist. Deloitte's working paper records that:

> *"Per our conversation with…our in house IT specialist, the value gained from this purchase is considerable and has a defined market opportunity. As a result, the amount to be paid of approximately $8.4 million is deemed to be reasonable and at fair value for the purposes of our assessment of the two transactions made with VMS during the quarter."*

2719. As regards the VMS software and hardware sales, Deloitte was provided with: (i) an auditor debtor confirmation letter signed by the CFO of VMS confirming that the instalments under the VMS software and hardware sales were proper and unpaid as of 31 December 2010, (ii) confirmation that the hardware supposedly being supplied from Autonomy's existing stock was bonded, and (iii) documents indicating that the hardware Autonomy purchased from the hardware reseller, Insight, had been approved by Dr Lynch and was bonded and ready for shipment.

2720. None of the material provided to Deloitte by Autonomy disclosed that:

(1) Moreover had offered to continue to provide its data feed to Autonomy for use in its demonstration environment for £50,000 per annum in mid-July 2009;

(2) Autonomy had created its own data feed, which it started to build in June 2009, and which it used for demonstration purposes in place of Moreover;

(3) Autonomy had not achieved any real commercial success from the VMS data feed it purchased for $13 million under the first VMS purchase and did not have any real reason for purchasing additional data streams and rights in Q4 2010;

(4) The second VMS purchase and the VMS software sale were linked and their negotiation was conducted by reference to the 'delta' payable to VMS; and

(5) Contrary to what Deloitte were told, Autonomy had to buy in hardware for resale and did not deliver $4 million of hardware from its own stock under the VMS hardware sale.

2721. Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence was that, had Deloitte been aware of these matters, this would have prevented revenue recognition in respect of the sum relating to the hardware supposed to be supplied from Autonomy stock, and would have caused Deloitte to give further consideration to whether it was appropriate to recognise any revenue from the VMS software sale.

Payments made in respect of the second VMS transaction and VMS's bankruptcy

2722. The payments made in respect of the second VMS transaction were as follows:

(1) Autonomy paid VMS $2 million on 17 February 2011 for the first instalment under the second VMS purchase.

(2) A few weeks later, on 31 March 2011, VMS paid Autonomy the first instalment of $1.5 million under the VMS software sale.

(3) The next day, 1 April 2011, Autonomy paid VMS a further $2 million under the second VMS purchase.

(4) On 29 April 2011, Autonomy received $1.5 million from VMS in respect of the VMS software sale.

2723. At the beginning of June 2011, Mr Stephens asked Mr Egan for help regarding the next payments. As Mr Stephens explained, "*we have $2m to go in either direction 2 days apart. Our intent in the December deal was to have dates that were exactly synchronous. In the rush to get revisions done the gap arose. We want & need to avoid sending you $2m to only get it back 2 days later…Unless I hear otherwise I will assume you are ok for the amounts to net out on 6/30*". Mr Chamberlain raised Mr Stephens' request with Mr Hussain. Although Mr Hussain asked Mr Chamberlain to try to get the cash in, in the event, Autonomy agreed to net off the final instalment payable by VMS under the VMS software sale against the $2 million instalment payable by Autonomy under the second VMS purchase, leaving Autonomy owing $2.4 million in respect of the second VMS purchase.

2724. At around this time, June 2011, Mr Louw of VMS contacted Mr Goodfellow to see if Autonomy would consider buying back some of the hardware that VMS had purchased under the VMS hardware sale. Mr Louw told Mr Goodfellow that VMS had a *"very nice overhang of servers that I need to get rid of quickly to fund another immediate opportunity here at VMS. We are estimating that we can reduce the HP DL360 count by 40, and the HP ML150 count by 600. The above has not been shipped yet / received yet, so guaranteed brand new and in box"*. Mr Louw offered to sell this hardware to Autonomy or one of its clients at a lower price than VMS had paid for it.

2725. This proposal appears to have been discussed within Autonomy. Before Autonomy had made a decision, VMS filed for bankruptcy at the end of August 2011. The imminence of VMS's bankruptcy must have been apparent to Mr Hussain because an instruction was given in mid-August 2011, two weeks before VMS filed for bankruptcy, to put a payment hold on so that no payments were made to VMS without Mr Hussain's approval.

2726. Autonomy did not pay the final instalments under the second VMS purchase, which were not due until October 2011 and July 2012.

2727. Nor did Autonomy receive any cash in respect of the VMS hardware sale. The full amount was ultimately written off in September 2012. Mr Goodfellow's unchallenged evidence was that no repurposed Autonomy hardware was ever delivered to VMS. It is unclear if Autonomy ever sought to recover the HP hardware that had been supplied to VMS for which it was never paid.

2728. As a result of VMS's bankruptcy, Autonomy had to find another source for ingesting social media content into its media aggregation service.

2729. The reactions within Autonomy varied from suggesting that Autonomy should consider acquiring the material assets of VMS to suggesting that VMS's bankruptcy was not a surprise and that Autonomy had better alternatives. Dr Lynch seemed to think that the reference to Autonomy acquiring VMS's assets showed that the VMS data feed was valuable to Autonomy, in fact, it showed the opposite. Had the data feed

been as significant as the Defendants had sought to make it out to be, one would have expected Autonomy to have explored that option. But it did not do so. That supports the inference that it did not do so because Autonomy purchased the data feed not for its intrinsic value to Autonomy but to fund reciprocal purchases by VMS of Autonomy software, from which Autonomy could recognise revenue.

Conclusions on second VMS transaction

2730. In summary, I have concluded in respect of the second VMS transaction, as in the case of the first VMS transaction, that:

(1) Mr Hussain proposed a further sale of software by Autonomy to VMS because he needed additional recognised revenue to make up for deals *"on the left"* which had not materialised (and in particular a proposed deal with KPMG).

(2) His need was such that a sale of software alone was insufficient. A sale of hardware was added to bring up the total apparent recognised revenue.

(3) VMS wanted both the software and the hardware (though later it offered some of the latter for sale back to Autonomy because its financial position became so weak). But to fund its purchases it needed Autonomy to make further purchases to cover the outlay.

(4) Mr Hussain was in direct control of both Autonomy's sale and its purchase. He dictated the price and the amount of software sold, as well as the price to be paid by Autonomy to VMS for the data feed licence. The presentation of the transactions to Deloitte and the Audit Committee as separate was false.

(5) Autonomy did not conduct any technical analysis of the commercial and more general success of the VMS data feed which it had purchased in the first VMS transaction before committing to purchase extended rights for $8.4 million.

(6) No memorandum to explain the justification for the further purchase was ever drafted: one could not even be put together. The information provided to Deloitte and reflected in their working paper was misleading. The commercial assessment presented to Deloitte was prepared after the deal had been agreed and did not in reality guide or indicate the reasons for the decision either to sell or to purchase.

(7) Autonomy purchased the data feed <u>not</u> for its intrinsic value to Autonomy but to fund reciprocal purchases by VMS of Autonomy software, from which Autonomy could recognise revenue.

(8) Even so, Autonomy had to pay a considerable 'delta' to VMS for its participation.

(9) When VMS went into liquidation, as the final demonstration of its financial precariousness, Autonomy made no effort to acquire any further rights. They were not of any real utility or commercial value to it.

2731. As in the first VMS transaction, it follows that Autonomy should not have recorded revenue on the sales to VMS. Autonomy should instead have: (i) recorded the net cost in relation to the first VMS sale and purchase, totalling $4,000,000, as an expense in Q2 2009, and (ii) recorded the net cost in relation to the second VMS purchase and the VMS hardware and software sale, totalling $261,633, as an expense in Q4 2010.

Knowledge of the Defendants

Mr Hussain's knowledge

2732. Mr Hussain orchestrated both sides of the second VMS transaction. His knowledge is clear. I accept the Claimants' submission that as an experienced CFO it is more likely than not that he did not honestly believe that the requirements for revenue recognition were satisfied.

Dr Lynch's knowledge

2733. I accept the Claimants' contentions and find that:

(1) It is more likely than not that Dr Lynch was aware that the VMS data feed was not incorporated into any Autonomy product until the end of Q1 2010, almost a year after Autonomy had bought a licence to it in the first VMS transaction for $13 million.

(2) He cannot genuinely have believed that Autonomy had made sufficient commercial use of the data feed to warrant spending another $8.4 million on it in Q4 2010 without any further assessment.

(3) The most likely explanation why he proceeded without any assessment was that he appreciated that the real rationale for the second VMS purchase was to fund another purchase by VMS of Autonomy software and in addition hardware from which Autonomy could, at a price, recognise revenue. It is of note, and confirmatory of this explanation, that when subsequently he was told that VMS looked at the deal as a financial transaction, only he expressed no surprise.

2734. For similar reasons as in the context of the first VMS transaction, I have concluded that Dr Lynch, like Mr Hussain, had 'guilty knowledge'.

RT 3: purchases of StorHouse from FileTek (Q4 2009/Q2 2010)

2735. Two further sets of transactions between Autonomy and FileTek were alleged by the Claimants to be (in each case) a means of enabling Autonomy to obtain recognisable revenue from FileTek by making purchases from FileTek to put it in funds to purchase Autonomy software. The allegedly reciprocal transactions occurred in Q4 2009 and again in Q1 2010/Q2 2010.[317] The Claimants' case is that no revenue should have

[317] See also footnote 286 above as to the reciprocal VAR transaction with FileTek: FileTek was used by Autonomy as a VAR for a large ($10.5 million) one-off transaction in respect of the end-user US Department of Veterans Affairs ("USDVA") (VT18). Subsequently, in March, June and August 2011, Autonomy entered into a succession of further purchases of StorHouse licences from FileTek. The Claimants' case is that these were

been recognised on Autonomy's sales of IDOL licences to FileTek, since these transactions lacked any genuine commercial rationale and thus lacked economic substance, and that the Defendants knew this.

2736. The Claimants contended that the central facts in relation to the FileTek reciprocal and VAR transactions were largely established by the unchallenged evidence of Mr Egan and concessions made in cross-examination by Mr Szukalski.

2737. The Defendants, on the other hand, maintained that the purchases by Autonomy in each case had a commercial rationale, on the basis that the 'StorHouse' software acquired offered valuable functionality of utility to Autonomy and its customers and was at fair value.

2738. I address first the principal dispute, which was as to whether the commercial rationale for the 'StorHouse' purchases which was asserted at the time, and presented to Deloitte and the Audit Committee, was genuine (as asserted by the Defendants) or contrived (as alleged by the Claimants). This requires an assessment of:

(a) FileTek's business in broad overview;

(b) the genesis of the first pair of transactions, and in particular how the decision to buy the StorHouse product came to be made;

(c) the extent of the technical analysis conducted by Autonomy prior to the purchase;

(d) the coincidence in timing between each of the StorHouse purchases and FileTek's need for funds;

(e) FileTek's own internal accounting analysis regarding the true value of the software being bought and sold.

FileTek's business

2739. FileTek had two main products:

(1) Trusted Edge was a classification and e-Discovery tool that dealt with unstructured data and was aimed at the e-Discovery market. Mr Szukalski described it in cross-examination as a product that:

> *"was able to classify and index content that was at the edge, the trusted edge, of companies' networks, so it would go on to laptops and desktops and see what was on those desktops and laptops, to be able to index them, categorise them, classify those so that if there was a legal hold or anything, the company would be sure that they got all the*

---

intended to, and did, put FileTek in funds to pay down its debt on the USDVA VAR transaction. The last and by far the largest of the purchases took place the day before the announcement of HP's acquisition of Autonomy and was alleged to be part of an attempt by Autonomy management to clean up the books before the new owners took over. The Claimants' case is that no revenue should have been recognised on the VAR transaction and that the Defendants knew this.

materials in terms of being able to identify those materials underneath."

(2) StorHouse was, as Mr Szukalski accepted, a different product altogether. It was not at all directed at the e-Discovery market. Rather, it was directed at the IT industry and at data storage vendors. At its simplest, StorHouse was a database archiving product that allowed customers to archive databases and conduct searches across them. It had two main components: (i) StorHouse Relational File System ("RFS"), which was essentially a file system that was hosted in the cloud; and (ii) StorHouse Relational Manager ("RM"), which was a means by which a customer could offload its database to the cloud and conduct searches across the database.

2740. Filetek's CEO and CFO during the Relevant Period was Mr William ("Bill") Loomis. He testified at Mr Hussain's criminal trial that, in 2008, FileTek had revenues of about $15 million. This is reflected in FileTek's profit and loss statement for 2008. Mr Loomis further testified that part of the company was then spun out, as a result of which revenues fell to between $7 to 8 million per annum. FileTek's profit and loss account for 2008 attributes about $6.6 million of revenue to a segment of the business known as Healthcare Information Systems. Mr Szukalski confirmed that he believed that this was the segment of the business that had been spun out before he re-joined FileTek in January 2009.

2741. As at the end of 2008, FileTek's sales were not flourishing. FileTek made licence sales of StorHouse of only $331,000 in 2008. Mr Szukalski agreed that, at the time he re-joined FileTek "*there was very little sales going on*". Instead of making new sales of StorHouse licences, FileTek was "*living off the maintenance revenues*" of sales of StorHouse that had been made in the mid-to-late-1990s.

2742. Similarly, as regards Trusted Edge, FileTek made licence sales of only $81,000 in 2008. Mr Szukalski explained that Trusted Edge was "*the start-up component of FileTek*" and was "*just pretty much being launched as a new product*" at the time he re-joined FileTek (on 1 January 2009). Mr Szukalski readily agreed that sales of Trusted Edge were "*low*" and that Trusted Edge was a "*small player in the e-discovery market at best*".

2743. Overall, therefore, FileTek was incurring a loss on its operations.

2744. As at the end of 2008, FileTek had cash and cash equivalents of just under $5 million. There was no significant improvement in FileTek's business during the first half of 2009. On the contrary, sales of StorHouse declined year-on-year from $283,000 in the first six months of 2008 to $162,000 in the first six months of 2009. As regards Trusted Edge, during the same six month period there was a slight increase in licence sales from $27,000 to $93,000. But Mr Szukalski accepted that Trusted Edge remained a "*very small*" player nonetheless. FileTek incurred a loss on its operations of slightly over $1 million in the first half of 2009.

2745. Realistically, therefore, Mr Szukalski accepted that FileTek was very much a business in need of a turn-around. Although Mr Szukalski pointed to the company's history in the late 1990s and early 2000s as a basis for thinking that the company's turn-around

could succeed, he accepted that the technology industry was one where things could change very quickly.

2746. FileTek had an OEM agreement with Autonomy in respect of its Trusted Edge product. By an agreement dated 21 February 2008, FileTek had taken a licence of certain "*Development Software*" and "*Run-Time Software*" from Autonomy in relation to FileTek's Trusted Edge product (defined as the "*Application*"). This had not proved a success either: as at the third quarter of 2009, it appears that FileTek had yet to incorporate IDOL Server into Trusted Edge so as to make use of the Run-Time licence.

2747. Mr Szukalski's evidence was that there had been no sales of Trusted Edge that incorporated the IDOL Server software as at 30 October 2009. In an email dated 17 November 2009, Mr Loomis estimated that FileTek was likely to make only 15 sales of Trusted Edge, incorporating IDOL Server, between then and 30 June 2010. Mr Szukalski accepted that this was Mr Loomis' best estimate of the likely sales.

2748. Under its OEM arrangements with Autonomy, FileTek had negotiated that most of its payments should be as commission on sales. But it also was required to make a prepayment of $150,000. Not long before the disputed transactions, FileTek had determined that it would have to write down the value of FileTek's $150,000 prepayment. Mr Loomis had calculated that the value to FileTek of its prepayment was only $37,500[318], resulting in an impairment of $112,500. This amount was written down in FileTek's accounts.

2749. In short, by the third quarter of 2009, FileTek was in some considerable financial difficulty.

Genesis of the proposal for the allegedly reciprocal transactions

2750. Mr Egan's evidence was that it was he who conceived of what the Claimants presented as a round trip transaction: the purchase by Autonomy of StorHouse software in order to fund the purchase by FileTek of Autonomy software. This was not challenged in cross-examination.

2751. Mr Egan's evidence, which was in effect what the Claimants principally relied on, was as follows in respect of the first FileTek reciprocal transaction:

> *"In late December 2009, I conceived of, and Mr. Hussain approved, a round trip deal that would generate immediate and substantial ($8 million) recognizable revenue. The entire transaction was arranged over the course of two or three days. FileTek's Chief Operating Officer was Gary Szukalski, a former Autonomy employee. I knew from prior conversations with Mr. Szukalski that FileTek was interested in licensing IDOL but did not have the means to pay for a substantial license. My idea was that, in return for FileTek agreeing to pay a large sum to license IDOL, Autonomy would agree to license FileTek's StorHouse software for integration with Autonomy's Digital Safe software. Digital Safe software is primarily used to store and manage unstructured data -- for example, emails. My idea was that it might be*

318 $2,500 multiplied by 15.

> *possible for StorHouse to be used with Digital Safe to enhance Autonomy's structured data capabilities.*
>
> *85. Autonomy's technical staff had not, to my knowledge, previously evaluated FileTek's StorHouse software or determined whether it was practical to combine it with our existing Digital Safe software. However, I now had a reason for a purchase from FileTek that would give FileTek both the money to purchase a license from Autonomy and, as I explain below, the incentive to license software from Autonomy. I presented my idea to Mr. Hussain. He approved it, but he made it clear that, if the deal were made, the documentation for each deal had to be entirely independent of each other."*

2752. Mr Egan's evidence regarding Mr Hussain's approval was not challenged. Dr Lynch confirmed in cross-examination that he had no basis for disputing the fact of Mr Hussain's approval. When Counsel for Mr Hussain cross-examined Mr Egan, he invited Mr Egan to agree with the narrow point that Mr Hussain "*did not meet anyone from FileTek*" but did not challenge Mr Egan's evidence about Mr Hussain's approval of the transaction.

2753. On Monday, 28 December 2009, Mr Egan emailed Mr Szukalski, subject "*Hello and idea*", asking Mr Szukalski to ring because "*I have an idea I want to run by you*". When Mr Szukalski received the email, he did not know what Mr Egan wanted to speak about, as he confirmed in cross-examination and as also appears from his message in an email under which, on the same day, he forwarded the email to Mr Mark Seamans, FileTek's CTO, asking "*Hmmm ... what do you think this is all about?*". Mr Seamans speculated that Mr Egan might seek to "*pitch you on an extension*", that is, an extension to FileTek's existing OEM agreement which was due to expire on 30 June 2010.

2754. It is now common ground that the telephone call took place at 10.30am on the morning of Tuesday, 29 December 2009. Mr Egan's evidence about the telephone call in his witness statement, which Mr Szukalski considered to be accurate, was:

> *"I proposed a deal to FileTek. I said that Autonomy had money in its budget to make a purchase from FileTek and suggested that Autonomy would buy a license to use FileTek's StorHouse software if FileTek were willing to buy a license to use Autonomy's IDOL software. I told Mr. Szukalski that my proposal would do two things for FileTek: it would give FileTek the money it needed to license IDOL and the deal would be profitable for FileTek because Autonomy would pay FileTek more than FileTek would have to pay Autonomy. FileTek would keep the difference. Mr Szukalski expressed interest and agreed to talk to his colleagues at FileTek. I told him that any deal had to be completed in the next two days, i.e. by December 31."*

2755. In cross-examination, Mr Szukalski volunteered that Mr Egan asked "*more questions about what StorHouse was and what it did and could it benefit Autonomy in some way*". This reinforced the conclusion that, when Mr Egan spoke to Mr Szukalski, Mr Egan was unaware of any technical analysis within Autonomy as to how StorHouse might be said to benefit Autonomy.

2756. Mr Szukalski also explained that, during his initial call with Mr Egan, Mr Szukalski had questions for Mr Egan about Autonomy's storage requirements for StorHouse, such as "*how many clients, how many instances, what the storage requirement was*". Mr Egan did not have answers to what Autonomy actually needed, but Mr Szukalski thought he recalled that Mr Egan had said that he would go and speak to the technical people at Autonomy, find out what those requirements were, and revert to Mr Szukalski.

2757. Mr Egan did revert to Mr Szukalski by email later that day, setting out what Autonomy's *"needs would look like".* The email asked also whether that was enough to enable Mr Szukalski to *"get…going on a price and fair value support?"* signifying (as Mr Szukalski confirmed) that there had been some prior discussion about price:

> *"Q. Now, so far as the price is concerned, that had already been discussed on the call that you had had with him in the morning, hadn't it?*
>
> *A. He had discussed a range, that is correct. Without knowing any details he had discussed a range. So I was kind of reverse engineering, if you will, leveraging our existing price book, how to get to those numbers that he was suggesting.*
>
> *Q. So he'd given you the range for the price, both for the Autonomy sale and the FileTek purchase?*
>
> *A. In ranges, yes.*
>
> *Q. And he'd indicated the range of the delta between those two?*
>
> *A. That is correct.*
>
> *Q. And now he was giving you the technical information so that you could reverse engineer justifying a price for StorHouse within that range?*
>
> *A. Yes, correct."*

2758. Quite what Mr Szukalski meant by *"kind of reverse engineering"* was much disputed. I elaborate on that later. But to return to the sequence of events, Mr Egan's proposal was "*exciting*" for Mr Szukalski and his colleagues. Mr Szukalski described it as a "*no brainer*". Mr Egan's witness statement continued:

> *"Mr. Szukalski responded promptly. He said that FileTek was prepared to discuss my proposal further. We talked numbers. After some back and forth, I proposed that Autonomy would license StorHouse software and support for $10,367,280 and that FileTek would license IDOL for $8,480,000 (of which $480,000 was for one year of support and maintenance). The difference, $1,887,280, would be FileTek's profit on the deal. I told Mr. Szukalski that the documentation of the two deals would have to be separate. I said that the documentation would say that each company was to pay for its licence 30 days after signing, but that Autonomy would pay a few days early."*

2759. Again, Mr Szukalski in cross-examination endorsed this account, subject to two qualifications. First, he said that the discussion concerned a spread of around $2 million, Mr Szukalski having initially proposed a spread of $2.5 million, which eventually came down to $1.89 million "*which again we were very happy with*". Secondly, he did not *"necessarily recall"* Mr Egan saying that the documentation for the two deals would have to be separate.

2760. Mr Szukalski was reluctant to accept that the two transactions – the sale to FileTek and the purchase from FileTek – were linked. He presented the main driver as *"the ticking time bomb of renegotiating the Trusted Edge KeyView/IDOL software that we had to renegotiate".* He told me in cross-examination that the proposed transaction, and the delta it offered, was *"the one way we could figure it out pretty quickly".* However, he accepted that the numbers agreed for the two transactions were linked, because the price for one was dictated by the spread over the price for the other.

2761. The timing indicated by Mr Egan meant that there were only two calendar days for the deal to be done. Mr Szukalski, a former Autonomy employee, assumed (and thought it obvious) that the urgency and the year-end deadline imposed by Mr Egan meant that it was driven by Autonomy's need to recognise revenue within the quarter, though he also stated that *"Most software companies are always looking for opportunities to find new transactions if they can at the last end of the quarter…".*

2762. As regards the final sentence of the passage from Mr Egan's evidence quoted in paragraph 2758 above, (that Autonomy would pay early), Mr Szukalski said that Mr Egan's offer was a "*great offer because part of the negotiation was they paid us early, we had the cash to pay them on time*". Mr Szukalski agreed that the written contracts would not say anything about Mr Egan's agreement to pay early, and said that to that extent FileTek was taking a risk. However, Mr Szukalski went on to say:

> *"Q. But when Mr Egan told you that Autonomy would pay early, you relied on what he said as being true?*
>
> *A. Yes, absolutely we did. We said we'll trust you on that for sure.*
>
> *Q. So although it wasn't going to be put down in writing, you proceeded on the basis that Mr Egan would be as good as his word?*
>
> *A. Trust, yes.*
>
> *Q. And that Autonomy would perform in accordance with what he had said?*
>
> *A. That is correct."*

Negotiation of the price to be paid for StorHouse

2763. Mr Egan's evidence was that he and Mr Szukalski reached agreement in principle on either Tuesday 29 December 2009 or Wednesday 30 December 2009. Mr Szukalski accepted this in cross-examination.

2764. Also on 29 December 2009 (and thus on the same day as the initial call between Mr Egan and Mr Szukalski) Mr Egan informed Mr Szukalski that "*Steve Chamberlain our comptroller will call Bill [Loomis] shortly*".

2765. Mr Chamberlain's subsequent email identified two things he needed for revenue recognition purposes:

    (1) On pricing of the StorHouse software to be purchased by Autonomy from FileTek, Mr Chamberlain needed *"a copy of your price list together with confirmation that discounting on this deal is consistent with your other discount levels for your larger transactions".* Mr Szukalski understood that this was relevant to justifying the price Autonomy paid FileTek as being at fair value.

    (2) On the price to be paid by FileTek for its purchase of software from Autonomy, Mr Chamberlain's immediate concern was collectability: Mr Chamberlain needed to *"demonstrate that FileTek have the ability to pay Autonomy in the absence of the cash receipt from Autonomy from the sale of your software."* Mr Szukalski understood that Autonomy's auditors would need to see evidence that FileTek could pay Autonomy even if FileTek was not paid by Autonomy.

2766. Thus, although (on the Claimants' case) Autonomy's objective was to maximise recognised revenue and to that end, extract as high a price as possible for the purchase by FileTek of Autonomy software without exceeding 'fair value', the purchase price of the Autonomy software to be purchased by FileTek could not exceed what could be presented, even then at a 'stretch', as being collectable from FileTek. Equally, what Autonomy could pay for StorHouse to provide the actual cash for FileTek's purchase had not to exceed what could be presented as the fair value of the StorHouse software.

2767. On the afternoon of 29 December 2009, Mr Chamberlain wrote to Mr Hussain, copying Mr Egan, saying that he (Mr Chamberlain) had spoken to Mr Loomis. Mr Loomis told Mr Chamberlain that FileTek was waiting on information from Mr Egan to be able to price and show how this was consistent with FileTek's pricing. Mr Chamberlain noted that "*Current models are based on volumes for licence and our volumes and multiple customers should enable us to construct an argument*".

2768. On collectability, Mr Chamberlain referred to FileTek as having $5.3 million of cash and a $1.1 million net receivable loan which could be converted. He suggested that "*$6.5m is ok, $8m is a stretch*".

2769. Dr Lynch initially told me in cross-examination that he did not think that he knew at this time about Mr Chamberlain's view that $8 million was a stretch in relation to collectability. However, having been shown an email which Mr Hussain had sent to him, subject "*End of day*", which stated, "*FileTek – collectability will be issue for $8m but getting more info*", he had to accept that the collectability issue in relation to FileTek plainly was brought to his attention.

2770. The same day (29 December 2009) Mr Egan sent an email, to Mr Szukalski and Mr Loomis, in which Mr Egan said, "*Our needs would look like the following*" and set out

the technical parameters for StorHouse that had been given by Dr Menell. Mr Egan asked Mr Szukalski, "*Gary can that get you going on a price and fair value support?*"

2771. Dr Lynch accepted that Mr Egan's list of the technical parameters would *"ultimately"* have come from Dr Menell or someone in Autonomy's technical department. There were, however, no documents or other evidence to suggest that Autonomy's technical department had given a moment's thought to the technical parameters for a StorHouse licence prior to the evening of 29 December 2009.

2772. Although Mr Egan's email requested that FileTek provide a price based on the technical requirements that had been provided, Mr Szukalski candidly accepted in cross-examination that a price range had already been discussed on the initial Szukalski/Egan call that morning, without knowing any of the technical details. Mr Szukalski confirmed in cross-examination that he understood that Autonomy wanted him to demonstrate that the price Autonomy was paying for StorHouse was consistent with FileTek's general pricing.

2773. On Wednesday 30 December 2009, Mr Crumbacher sent FileTek draft documentation for the transaction. In an internal FileTek email later that day, Mr Loomis set out a number of comments on the draft documentation, including the following:

> *"1. Deal is for $8.8M (vs. $8M). As I understand the initial conversation Gary had with Stouffer, the spread was to be $2M. Therefore, the STHS [StorHouse] deal s/b [should be] $10.8m?*
>
> *2. Payment terms are 50% net 30 + 50% net 90. We'll need their cash to pay any portion, and I understand that our payment terms for the STHS s/w is net 30. ... Perhaps it should be net 20? Also, an item for the final exec call."*

2774. The Claimants made the following points in this context:

(1) As regards item 1, they submitted that Mr Loomis' comment meant that, in order to derive the price that Autonomy would pay FileTek for a StorHouse licence, it was necessary to add the spread of $2 million to the licence fee that FileTek would pay Autonomy. They submitted that this demonstrated that the purchase price was reverse engineered, as Mr Szukalski had acknowledged. Dr Lynch, though emphasising his position that he had not seen this at the time, attempted to sever the apparent link and suggested that it was *"the other way round"* and that the purchase price had already been fixed and all this signified was that *"Stouffer is trying to drum up an 8.8 million sale"*. I do not accept Dr Lynch's suggested gloss; in any event, Mr Szukalski (the recipient of the email) agreed that the Claimants had correctly identified what Mr Loomis had meant.

(2) As regards item 2, Mr Szukalski confirmed that his understanding was that FileTek needed Autonomy's payment for the StorHouse licence, in order for FileTek to pay any portion of the price on FileTek's licence of IDOL Server. That was the reality, as further demonstrated when, later that day, Mr Loomis sent Mr Chamberlain FileTek's financial statements as at Q3 2009. Licence sales of StorHouse for the first three quarters of 2009 were $546,000 and of

Trusted Edge were $105,000. Mr Szukalski accepted that FileTek was still "*burning cash*" and making an operating loss.

(3) As regards Mr Loomis' suggestion that the payment terms for the StorHouse licence should be "*net 20*", Mr Szukalski confirmed that Mr Loomis was suggesting that the written contract should reflect what Mr Egan had already said Autonomy would do, namely pay FileTek before FileTek had to pay Autonomy.

2775. Further, as at the end of Q3 2009, FileTek had yet to make any sales of Trusted Edge that incorporated within it the IDOL Server software. Accordingly, the low sales of Trusted Edge did not, at that stage, have anything to do with the Sublicense Fee payable under FileTek's 2008 OEM agreement with Autonomy, as Mr Szukalski rightly accepted.

2776. In the early hours of 30 December 2009, Mr Szukalski sent Messrs Egan and Scott a proposed price for StorHouse. The proposed licence fee of $7,405,200 and maintenance fee of $2,962,080 came to a total payment in the first year of $10,367,280. Mr Szukalski confirmed in cross-examination that, in arriving at this figure, he made sure that it achieved the agreed spread of about $2 million over the price that FileTek was to pay Autonomy for the IDOL Server licence.

2777. As already noted, the scale of the price to be paid by Autonomy for StorHouse is striking. It represented more than 20 times the total licence revenues for StorHouse in the whole of 2008. It also represented more than 10 times the total licence revenues for StorHouse in the first three quarters of 2009. Mr Szukalski accepted both these points. He claimed that he and Mr Loomis had not felt *"uncomfortable with this dollar figure because we had…done transactions of this size previously…in the late 1990s…"* This was not persuasive: whatever may have been the position in the 1990s, the disproportionality of the transaction relative to FileTek's sales in 2009 was obvious. The explanation lay in the assurances given and the prospect of the delta offered.

2778. The price that Autonomy was willing to pay for StorHouse is all the more remarkable given Mr Szukalski's evidence that, having regard to the flagging nature of FileTek's business at the time he re-joined FileTek, "*it was all about just find customers, transact, kind of turn the crank back up by not giving software away by any stretch of the imagination, but being a little more, you know, conducive to the needs of the budgets of the customers that we're selling to*". As Mr Szukalski acknowledged in cross-examination, there was therefore the potential for deep discounts to be offered against the list price, all the more so for a very large transaction.

2779. On the morning of 31 December 2009, Mr Howard Patrick, FileTek's General Counsel, wrote to Mr Szukalski, stating, "*You were going to forward revised pricing to Autonomy and copy me?*". Mr Patrick then wrote to all recipients stating, "*I have just been told by Gary, that there are to be no changes to FileTek's pricing*".

2780. Mr Szukalski did not have a good recollection of these exchanges; but he accepted the possibility that Autonomy simply did not want FileTek to offer a lower price. If FileTek offered a lower price, the price to be paid by FileTek for the IDOL licence would also need to come down, if the agreed spread was to be maintained; Autonomy did not, however, want the price for the IDOL licence to come down, because that would reduce the revenue that Autonomy would recognise in Q4 2009.

2781. Still on 31 December 2009, Mr Szukalski emailed Mr Egan FileTek's proposal. Although the proposal was dated 29 December 2009, Mr Szukalski explained that he produced it on 31 December 2009, having had to type it at the reception for his father-in-law's funeral. Mr Szukalski accepted that it was a "*rushed*" piece of work and that some of it would have come from boilerplate marketing materials. The reason why it had to be rushed was because to satisfy Autonomy's objectives, it needed to be provided to, and accepted by, Autonomy by the end of the day, being the last day of the quarter.

2782. That afternoon a call took place between Mr Egan, Mr Loomis and Mr Szukalski. In advance of the call, Mr Loomis circulated internally within FileTek a checklist of points to cover on the call, including:

> "*2. Timing of payments*
>
> *3. Confirm that there's no way of being burned. No contemplated change in control or management prior to transfer of money.*"

2783. Mr Szukalski confirmed in cross-examination that item 2 was a reference to the fact that FileTek was going to get paid by Autonomy, before FileTek had to pay Autonomy. He agreed that this was a point that was important to FileTek. It was important because FileTek would not have bought IDOL at the price that it did, but for the fact that Autonomy was going to buy StorHouse and thereby channel funds to FileTek to pay for IDOL.

2784. Mr Szukalski explained that item 3 was a reference to a concern that, were there to be a change of management or an acquisition of Autonomy, after the execution of the deal but prior to the transfer of money from Autonomy to FileTek, any new management of Autonomy might fail to honour the assurances that Mr Egan had given. Mr Loomis was going to seek confirmation that there was no way of FileTek being burned in that way and thus, as Mr Szukalski put it, "*establish trust*".

2785. Mr Loomis' testimony in the US criminal proceedings was to similar effect:

> "*Q. Are you familiar with this email, Mr. Loomis? Do you remember it?*
>
> *A. Yes, generally.*
>
> *Q. Okay. Point No. 3 here says, "Confirm there's no way of being burned." Do you see that?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. What did you mean by that?*
>
> *A. Well, my concern, given this was a barter transaction, I was viewing it as a barter transaction, that we would not have a situation where we were obligated to pay 8 or $9 million and all of a sudden there was a cancellation of the StorHouse side of the barter transaction.*
>
> *Q. Okay. How dependent were you on the StorHouse side of the transaction to go forward with the purchase of the Autonomy software?*
>
> *A. We were dependent on it.*"

2786. Following the call, Mr Loomis sent an email to himself and Mr Szukalski entitled "*Autonomy Memo to File*" summarising the key outcomes from the call. Mr Szukalski confirmed that he regarded the email as an accurate record of the discussion. It included the following items:

> *"1. We should be paid 4-5 days before net 30 due date.*
>
> *2. …*
>
> *3. No change in control or change in leadership is contemplated prior to exchange of money.*
>
> *4. No one to be burned on this deal."*

2787. I accept that these points were a reflection of the assurance that had been provided, and which was the basis of the deal, that (a) Autonomy would pay FileTek 4-5 days before the date when Autonomy was contractually required to pay (namely 30 days after invoice) (item 1); (b) that FileTek was not going to be left having to pay for the IDOL licence without getting paid by Autonomy for the StorHouse licence (Item 4); and (c) that no change of control of Autonomy was in the offing which might result in new management not observing these extra-contractual assurances (item 3).

2788. Also on 31 December 2009, Mr Loomis wrote to FileTek's Chairman, Bill Thompson, regarding "*a year end transaction*". Mr Loomis said (item 1), that "*Driven by Autonomy's need to make certain numbers …*[319] *they approached Gary*". Mr Loomis went on to summarise the key terms of the transaction, including the net profit to FileTek of around $1.88 million (item 4). Mr Szukalski confirmed in cross-examination that this figure reflected the spread that he had agreed with Mr Egan. Mr Loomis also noted (item 5), "*Must be signed today*".

2789. That assessment – that the deal was driven by Autonomy's *"need to make up the numbers"* seems to me to have been correct. The conclusion is further supported by the fact that although it was put to Mr Egan that Dr Menell or other members of Autonomy's technical team may have known about the technical properties of StorHouse, Mr Egan was not challenged on his evidence that <u>he himself</u> was unaware of any such evaluation.

2790. The Claimants submitted, and I accept and find, that it follows that (i) the idea of selling an IDOL licence to FileTek originated with Mr Egan, (ii) so too did the idea of purchasing StorHouse, (iii) Mr Egan's reason for suggesting a purchase of StorHouse was to bring about the sale of the IDOL licence by providing FileTek with the wherewithal, (iv) Mr Hussain knew and approved of this proposal, and (v) Mr Egan conceived of this idea in circumstances where he did not know of any technical evaluation by Autonomy of StorHouse or the practicality of combining it with Digital Safe, and as a means of generating recognisable revenue from the sale of Autonomy software to FileTek. Mr Hussain knew that.

Had Autonomy (coincidentally) any identified need for StorHouse?

---

[319] Points of ellipsis appear in the original.

2791. There were two strands to the Defendants' argument that even if revenue generation was a desirable product of the purchase by FileTek of Autonomy software, and even if that purchase was facilitated by Autonomy's purchase of StorHouse from FileTek, the primary purpose of Autonomy's purchase was that it considered StorHouse to be (a) a useful adjunct for incorporation into its (Autonomy's) product offering and (b) part of what Dr Lynch stated in his witness statement to be a *"strategy to move aggressively into the structured data market…".* The Defendants also contended that both the purchase from FileTek of StorHouse and the purchase by FileTek of Autonomy software were at fair value.

2792. The Claimants accepted that Mr Egan did not have the final say on whether Autonomy should buy StorHouse; approvals from his superiors, including Dr Lynch, would be needed. But they submitted that it would be a remarkable coincidence if, Mr Egan having come up with the idea of the purchase for one reason (a reason known to Mr Hussain), others within Autonomy's senior management nevertheless ended up approving the purchase for an entirely different reason.

2793. Dr Lynch, in his witness statement, presented the decision to make "*an investment in StorHouse, in the tens of millions of dollars range*" as part of a "*strategy to move aggressively into the structured data market ...*". He claimed that Autonomy *"had familiarity with the product by virtue of our experience in the market, File Tek's OEM and our negotiations with Informatica."* He maintained that:

> *"Autonomy decided to buy StorHouse rather than try to develop the software itself to save time, money and engineering resources. The software needed to be tested with live customer databases, which was a tedious and very time intensive process that had a tendency to irritate the customers whose databases were being used. Autonomy had prospects lined up that needed the software and had been asked to provide a solution for a highly classified intelligence application, which involved handling structured data. For these reasons, it was necessary to acquire the software reasonably quickly. Purchasing StorHouse had the added advantage of signalling to Informatica that Autonomy was not desperate to acquire their company and had other options, which might encourage Informatica to accept Autonomy's prior offer. For Autonomy, buying StorHouse was the equivalent of parking a tank on Informatica's lawn."*

2794. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch also stated that, in the context of the potential acquisition of Informatica, Dr Menell had compared Informatica's technology to third-party offerings on the market, including FileTek's, and so Autonomy was familiar with the StorHouse product and had assessed its technology.

2795. However, when pressed to identify any documentation to support his depiction of the strategy, and the assessment of StorHouse which he claimed in cross-examination had been undertaken by Dr Menell (which was not mentioned in his witness statement), Dr Lynch initially told me that he did not know whether there was documentation or not, but revised this later to justify its apparent absence on the basis that Autonomy was *"a very different company to a Hewlett-Packard. We move very fast. We understand our products, we understand the market and we make decisions and we don't spend a lot of time producing long reports."* He thought there might have been a short 5 or 6 page document recording *"basic technical checks"* but qualified that by saying that *"to be*

blunt, the decision had been made before that document was done usually." He could offer no explanation why the strategy alleged had not been explained to Deloitte: he said he did not deal with Deloitte and did not know what they had been told.

2796. Dr Lynch also suggested in cross-examination that Mr Egan was aware, when approaching Mr Szukalski, of the Informatica strategy. This had not been put to Mr Egan, whose evidence was not consistent with the suggestion. But, more importantly, the suggestion was also inconsistent with Dr Lynch's own earlier evidence in his second witness statement that "*Mr Egan was wholly unaware*" of the potential Informatica transaction.

2797. In the circumstances, I cannot accept Dr Lynch's depiction of the genesis and rationale of the purchase of StorHouse from FileTek as being part of some overall strategy for Autonomy's entry into the structured data market and persuading Informatica to accept its overtures. Dr Menell did not give evidence; there was no documentary support for Dr Lynch's presentation; and the suggestion that Mr Egan was aware of such a strategy seemed to me implausible and contradicted by Dr Lynch's own evidence, as well as Mr Egan's unchallenged evidence to the contrary.

2798. Nor can I accept the second strand of the Defendants' response, to the effect that Autonomy had undertaken a technical analysis of StorHouse prior to late December 2009 which had prompted its interest. It seems to me clear from the pattern of events described above, and from the unchallenged evidence of both Mr Egan and Mr Szukalski in that regard, that when Mr Egan approached Mr Szukalski, he had next to no knowledge of StorHouse as a product. I am satisfied and hold that identified need for the product did not prompt Mr Egan's approach or inform the negotiations which followed.

2799. I am fortified in that conclusion by the efforts subsequently made, including by Mr Egan, to develop a technical justification for the acquisition after the event.

2800. On 29 December 2009, and after his initial call with Mr Szukalski, Mr Egan wrote to Dr Menell as follows:

> *"Pete,*
>
> *In response to all your investigations into tech to support the right way to deliver on the Kraft style RDBS archiving demand a company called Filetek has come forward with a pitch about their Storhouse product as well as a module called "Relational Manager".*
>
> *It sounds like they may have a very good solution to the things you have been looking at build/buy on.*
>
> *I may recall that you had already shortlisted them but their president called me this AM to pitch as they are quite keen and he knows Autonomy …"*

2801. Mr Egan's email was a contrivance:

(1) There is no evidence that, as at 29 December 2009, Dr Menell had been conducting the "*investigations*" mentioned in Mr Egan's email. Certainly, as

already noted, Mr Szukalski's evidence was that neither Dr Menell nor anyone else in Autonomy's technical department had previously contacted him about the potential use of StorHouse by Autonomy.

(2) Mr Egan's own evidence in cross-examination was that his email was pretextual and misleading because it did not accurately express the fact "*that this was my idea to pitch this quid pro quo relationship*" and he (Mr Egan) was not aware of Dr Menell looking to "*build/buy*" as stated in the email.

(3) It was not true that FileTek had "*come forward with a pitch*" or that Mr Szukalski "*called me this AM to pitch*". As the documents make clear, and Mr Szukalski and Mr Egan readily confirmed in cross-examination, it was the other way round: Mr Egan had contacted Mr Szukalski.

2802. Dr Lynch had to accept in cross-examination that it did appear that Mr Egan's email was pretextual in giving the impression that FileTek had come forward with a pitch.

2803. Mr Egan was asked whether he was "*trying to mislead Dr Menell*" by this email, to which he answered "*No*". But that was because Dr Menell already knew that the email was pretextual.

2804. Dr Menell responded to Mr Egan 30 minutes later stating, "*Come across this lot before. Very strong on lifecycle and trans[p]arent back off to teirsh [sic] storage. Will have sean et al pull more of the White papers to validate the assumptions*". As the Claimants noted, this email exchange is hardly indicative of Dr Menell having come up with the decision to invest tens of millions of dollars into StorHouse.

2805. On 30 December 2009, Mr Chamberlain asked Mr Egan and Dr Menell, in an email copied to Mr Hussain, for a "*technical paper explaining why both bits of technology are needed*":

> *"1) why does Autonomy need the Filetek solution and what benefits will that bring. Need to try and justify the $10m cost and show that benefits of at least that amount will be generated. E.g cost savings of $2m per annum for 7 years discounted to give a NPV of greater than $10m*
>
> *2) why does FileTek need Autonomy and how will the technology be used?"*

Price Autonomy agreed to pay FileTek for purchase of StorHouse

2806. As to 1) in the preceding paragraph and the purchase by Autonomy of *"the Filetek solution"* (StorHouse), the Defendants sought to counter the notion that the price was "reverse-engineered" according to the price that Autonomy was wishing to achieve from its sale to FileTek of software on the basis that in fact the price was "fair value" and in fact represented a 45% discount on FileTek's list price. They relied also on (a) Mr Szukalski's assertion in his witness statement that *"The contract pricing was not inflated; it was set at a level that FileTek considered to be appropriate"* and (b) Mr Egan's somewhat reluctant evidence in cross-examination, after stating that he *"didn't care too much about that"* that *"it was at fair value effectively".*

2807. The issue relating to the quantum of the purchase price which Autonomy agreed to pay FileTek was much disputed and the evidence in respect of it was confusing. In particular, the evidence given in the US criminal proceedings by Mr Loomis of the way FileTek internally analysed and accounted for the value of the software it sold contradicted its depiction as representing a fair price, and, in accounting terms, "fair value".

2808. Mr Loomis' accounting memorandum, which addressed the question whether it was proper for FileTek to recognise revenue in respect of its receipt is a telling document. Amongst its observations in explaining the conclusions that under US GAAP, and in particular, its requirement for VSOE[320], immediate revenue recognition of the sales revenue from the purchase of FileTek software to Autonomy would not be proper were the following:

(1) *"This transaction was completely unique to [sic: for] FileTek and was an outlier transaction for our normal business strategy and projections and there were no very similar transactions that would provide a good faith comparison for the pricing and fair values.*"

(2) *"This was our first customer who had plans to use our software in a hosted environment with large hosted customers, so it doesn't fit into our Reseller model or the End-User model for pricing."*

(3) *"The 5-year term for the StorHouse maintenance with prepaid maintenance collected is also highly unusual for our customer base and therefore assigning appropriate fair value to maintenance for a 5-year duration would be very subjective."*

(4) *"without any similar transactions in past (nor any expected in near future) there is no context in which to determine the VSOE of Fair value of the maintenance contract."*

(5) *"Due to the unusual nature of the two contracts being executed at close duration and the fact that FileTek might not have entered into the contract to purchase the Autonomy licences without the StorHouse licence being executed, the contract prices are clearly not fair value and therefore, accounting treatment "a"... without any fair value adjustments would be inconsistent with GAAP."*

2809. Mr Szukalski, when cross-examined, was not asked to comment on the GAAP accounting issues but he was invited to and did confirm that:

(1) It is unlikely that FileTek would have contracted to purchase Autonomy software *"at that price point"* without the StorHouse sale contract.

(2) The StorHouse contract was highly unusual, as in particular was its provision for pre-payment of 5-years maintenance.

[320] Vendor-Specific Objective Evidence is required under US GAAP: this requires evidence of the fair value of a contract's components if any part of the value of and revenue from individual items is to be recognized before the last element in the contract is delivered

(3) If the StorHouse sale contract had been self-standing (that is, but for the contract for FileTek's purchase of Autonomy software at the same time) the price that Mr Szukalski and Mr Loomis would have expected to get in an arm's length transaction for the sale of the StorHouse software was much closer to $2 million than $10 million. A figure of $2 million for a transaction of this size, had it been the only thing under negotiation, and *"where there wasn't a barter deal",* would have been, according to Mr Szukalski's evidence, a:

> *"Good deal. We would have taken that deal for sure, yes."*

(4) In stating, in his witness statement, that the *"contract pricing was not inflated: it was set at a level that FileTek considered to be appropriate"* he had intended to convey no more than that the sale was at a discount on the list price in the *"standard price book".*

(5) He told me that he *"reverse-engineered to get in Mr Egan's range of the differential [the range that Mr Egan had given in their first call] but I still used the standard price list to come up with the pricing how it was. So I didn't pull it out of thin air. I came up with the pricing based on something that had already been around for a while."*

(6) He could not opine on *"fair value",* which he regarded as an accounting concept and *"a Bill Loomis issue."*

2810. Furthermore, Mr Szukalski's evidence was that in the absence of the IDOL licence, he would have been prepared to offer Autonomy a discount as high as 74% on its StorHouse licence, if that meant transacting the business. Mr Szukalski, who was responsible for sales of StorHouse, said he would still have regarded a much lower price of only $2 million for a StorHouse licence of this size as a "*Good deal. We would have taken that deal for sure.*"

2811. Further, Mr Egan's evidence in cross-examination was more equivocal than its description in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions. When it was put to Mr Egan that the price paid to FileTek by Autonomy was a "*fair and proper price*". Mr Egan answered as follows:

> *"I didn't care too much about that, I was more going through what Sushovan's objectives were for the financials of the deal. It could have been significantly smaller, it could have been significantly larger; it was the three factors I mentioned."*

2812. The "*three factors*" were identified by Mr Egan in a previous answer as, "*the absolute dollar amounts, fair value, and that the volumes going in each direction were acceptable and relevant to each party*".

2813. Mr Egan expanded in re-examination on what he meant by "*Sushovan's objectives*":

> *"Pretty much exactly what I was just referring to, in other words he had a set of objectives and a bit of a puzzle to solve. He had to consider wanting the deal to be as large as it could be properly rationalised to be on fair value; it*

> *had to have enough delta to incentivise FileTek for doing this very rushed transaction; it had to involve software that both parties valued and got in the volumes that were meaningful."*

2814. The Claimants contended that Mr Egan's reference to the price being "*rationalised to be on fair value*" echoed Mr Szukalski's evidence about "*reverse-engineering*", i.e. starting with the price for StorHouse that he and Mr Egan had discussed and then creating a proposal that would be said to justify that price. Mr Egan also explained that his understanding was that:

> *"Fair value provides for a very large range. It was my understanding at the time that both prices from each company to the other met fair value criteria."*

2815. In my view, what both Mr Egan and Mr Szukalski were trying to do was explain that they had not consciously broken any rules or adopted a pricing structure which, having regard to both transactions in the round, they felt could not be rationalised by reference to some objective criteria; but the objective was for both FileTek and Autonomy to achieve as high a price as could plausibly be presented as being within the "very large range" of fair value and not wholly disconnected in terms of percentage variation from FileTek's list price.

Price FileTek agreed to pay Autonomy for Autonomy software

2816. Turning to 2) in paragraph 2805 above, Mr Chamberlain's question *"why does FileTek need Autonomy and how will the technology be used?"* reflected his concern about the dramatic increase in the price to be paid by FileTek for its IDOL licence, which he would have anticipated would have to be explained to Deloitte. The figures were startling: in 2008, FileTek was required to make a $150,000 license prepayment and had paid nothing else since then. Now it was going to pay a licence fee of $8 million. On 30 December 2009, Mr Chamberlain followed up his initial query with a further email to Mr Egan and Dr Menell, again copying Mr Hussain (who recognised the issue as *"vv important"*):

> *"The technical paper should also address the different economics of their previous deal compared to this one. In Q1 2008 they signed an OEM agreement with term until 30 June 2010. They got similar software for the Trusted Edge Application. The cost was $150,000 plus 10% S&M, giving a total of $165,000. This agreement adds SPE but otherwise looks same from software perspective and allows them to also use on their Storhouse application. Now the fee is $8,000,000.*
>
> *Pete- need a compelling technical argument to support the pricing differential.*
>
> *Stouff- need to add a compelling commercial argument as to why pricing is like this. Needs significant additional revenues to justify their expense."*

2817. Again, I prefer the insight provided by Mr Loomis's accounting memorandum to the self-justifying and ultimately circular evidence provided by Mr Egan and Mr

Szukalski. The memorandum explained what truly was the proposed use of the Autonomy software envisaged by FileTek and what its anticipated value to FileTek would be. It attributed a fair value to FileTek of the Autonomy IDOL licence of $455,000. That was about 5% of the price actually agreed to be paid. The reason for that very low value to FileTek in comparison to the price being paid was that FileTek only had plans to sell the software with Trusted Edge licences and Trusted Edge's sales projections were very low (40 sales a year).

2818. In this context:

(1) Although an amendment to the agreement for the purchase of Autonomy software gave FileTek the right to incorporate IDOL into StorHouse (whereas the 2008 OEM agreement was limited to Trusted Edge), the truth was that FileTek's intention at the time, as Mr Szukalski confirmed, was to bundle IDOL only with Trusted Edge software licences.

(2) The accounting memorandum recorded that FileTek "*does not have on its development road map to incorporate Autonomy licences into StorHouse software*", a fact which Mr Szukalski confirmed was correct.

(3) The estimate of 40 Trusted Edge sales incorporating IDOL yearly was Mr Loomis's estimate taking into account that (as the memorandum recorded) FileTek had a "*poor track record*" of hitting its projected figures for sales of Trusted Edge, as Mr Szukalski confirmed. Mr Loomis therefore did not feel comfortable relying on FileTek's sales projections for Trusted Edge when calculating the value to FileTek of the extension of its IDOL licence. The assumption which Mr Loomis regarded as reasonable was a sale of an average of 40 units of Trusted Edge per year over 5 years. Mr Szukalski did not regard the estimate of just 40 unit sales per year as an unrealistic estimate at the time. Indeed, even that estimate turned out to be optimistic, since in the event "*Trusted Edge failed as a business*".

2819. In the circumstances it is clear that the price for one transaction was dictated by the other, and it was calculated not by reference to the value of what was being sold but by reference to the generation of as much recognised revenue for Autonomy as it was thought possible to present to Deloitte, with a large reward for FileTek for its assistance. I accept the Claimants' submission and find that the reason why FileTek was willing to pay such a vastly higher price for IDOL was because Autonomy was going to give FileTek the funds to pay for it.

Autonomy's technical analyses of StorHouse

2820. Mr Chamberlain's email of 30 December 2009 referred to in paragraph 2805 above had also asked for some assessment of *"why…Autonomy need[ed] the Filetek solution and what benefits will that bring."* When it was put to Dr Lynch that this looked as if Dr Menell was being asked by Mr Chamberlain to come up with an *ex post facto* technical argument to support a price that Mr Egan had already agreed, he acknowledged this, and queried also how a technical argument would support the price agreed. But, as the Claimants submitted and I accept, Mr Chamberlain would have understood, as I consider Dr Lynch did also, that Autonomy needed something to give

credence to the case for there being a genuine commercial rationale for acquiring StorHouse.

2821. The requests from Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain prompted a cursory and superficial technical assessment by Autonomy of the StorHouse software. Mr Egan acknowledged in his witness statement that, as the chronology also demonstrates, the purpose of this technical analysis was not to decide whether Autonomy should purchase the software or what it should pay, but *"to justify the value of the deal to Deloitte"*.

2822. Dr Blanchflower's unchallenged evidence was that, on 30 December 2009, Dr Menell, without explaining the reason for his request, asked Dr Blanchflower and Mr Gallagher (neither of whom were part of the Digital Safe team) to provide a description of FileTek's software, along with examples of how it could be used in conjunction with Autonomy's products. Dr Blanchflower gave the following unchallenged evidence:

> "*To the best of my recollection, the only thing we had to go on when conducting our analysis was the name "FileTek". Our starting point, therefore, was to conduct an internet search to find information on the company and its software. We looked at FileTek's own website, and may also have run additional Google searches to look for relevant news stories or other information about FileTek and its technology. We did not have a copy of FileTek's software or any detailed installation guides or user manuals. Our report took us no more than a few hours to produce."*

2823. Based on those internet searches, Dr Blanchflower and Mr Gallagher prepared an email which Mr Gallagher sent to Dr Menell later on 30 December 2009. The first half of the email, which was drafted by Dr Blanchflower, set out "*Initial thoughts*" on how FileTek's software might overlap with or complement Autonomy's software. At a high level, Dr Blanchflower could see that FileTek's software could be valuable to Autonomy, but he said that he had to "*fish for possible uses*" and included anything that was potentially plausible: he made clear that he was "*stretching some of the use cases, but I was asked to think of as many as I could*". The second half of the email, which was drafted by Mr Gallagher, was evidently based on a review of FileTek's own website, as the links to the website made clear.

2824. It was the unchallenged evidence of Dr Blanchflower that Dr Menell did not follow up with Dr Blanchflower and Mr Gallagher in relation to the email. All that Dr Menell did was to send a hyperbolic summary in praise of StorHouse stating that its capabilities "*represent a game changing play when combined with Autonomy's SPE powered DigitalSafe*". This was untrue and there was no basis for it: no prior work had been done to explore the possible integration of StorHouse with SPE, nor had any work been done to determine the feasibility of combining StorHouse with Digital Safe.

2825. I accept the Claimants' submission, supported also by the evidence of Mr Wang and Mr Goodfellow, that this is hardly the sort of technical evaluation one would expect Autonomy to conduct if it was seriously considering licensing StorHouse for in excess of $10 million in order to integrate it with Autonomy's products[321]; and that the

[321] Mr Wang's evidence was that a proper product evaluation would have involved speaking to the technical team (including himself) and having engineers run a proof of concept to ensure there were no significant

technical analysis was just an *ex post facto* justification in order to provide a paper trail for Deloitte.

Execution of the two agreements

2826. Less than half an hour after receiving Dr Menell's paper, Dr Lynch replied "*ok*", signifying his approval for the StorHouse purchase. Shortly thereafter, Mr Hussain also replied, "*This is good – I am fine*".

2827. On the evening of 31 December 2009, Mr Loomis wrote to Mr Thompson, subject "*autonomy agreements have been mutually signed*". Mr Szukalski accepted that, on that day, FileTek would not have signed the IDOL licence, unless Autonomy had mutually signed the agreement for a StorHouse licence. Mr Loomis' email again recorded that "*CEO [Mr Egan] said that we should be paid 4-5 days early via wire*", a reference to Mr Egan's assurance on the call earlier that afternoon. Also that evening, Mr Szukalski sent a note to his FileTek colleagues expressing appreciation for their help and hard work. He said, "*I would have never guessed one week ago that we would be closing a financial transaction of this size to close out 2009. It has been quite a challenging and remarkable 48+ hours …*". Mr Szukalski accepted that his email reflects the fact that the transaction only came onto the horizon at all when Mr Szukalski heard from Mr Egan on 28 December 2009. Mr Seamans' one-word reply to Mr Szukalski's email, "*Unbelievable*", was a fair reflection of Mr Szukalski's own reaction to getting the deal done within only three days and to the scale of the deal.

2828. The two agreements mutually executed on 31 December 2009 were:

(1) A software licensing and maintenance services agreement under which FileTek granted Autonomy Inc a licence to install, implement, access, use and copy StorHouse for a period of five years for its internal business purposes and/or for the benefit of its hosted customers. The total fee for the software licence and maintenance support was $10,367,280, based on 60 users and specific data limits (including 1 petabyte of primary relational data, i.e. <u>structured</u> data), which was payable by Autonomy Inc within 30 days from receipt of invoice.

(2) An amendment of the 2008 OEM agreement under which Autonomy Inc licensed certain software, including Autonomy IDOL with SPE Basic, to FileTek for use with FileTek's StorHouse application. The agreement provided for the payment by FileTek of a licence fee of $8,000,000 and a fee of $480,000 for the first year of support. The licence fee and support fee were to be invoiced immediately and payable in two equal instalments of $4,240,000 within 30 and 90 days, respectively, from the date of invoice.

2829. Autonomy recognised the $8,000,000 licence fee under the first FileTek sale as revenue as at 31 December 2009 and the support fee as revenue over the following year.

---

integration issues, which in this case would have involved trying to integrate StorHouse with Digital Safe. This never happened. Indeed, on the evidence, no attempt was made to check, for example, whether StorHouse was capable of searching structured data on the scale required by large customers, such as banks. Mr Wang's evidence was that repeated stress tests using large volumes of structured data should have been run, and that this would have taken weeks.

How the first StorHouse purchase was presented to Deloitte

2830. The Defendants placed reliance in this context also, as in almost all others, on Deloitte's approval of the transactions. They emphasised that Deloitte's review involved a demonstration of the StorHouse product attended by Deloitte's technical expert Mr Johnstone. Mr Gallagher presented the demonstration and Mr Goodfellow had worked on it. Deloitte were seeking to *"ensure from an audit perspective that the two transactions are appropriately valued and can be separated and that they make commercial sense."*

2831. Deloitte focused on the two key questions of whether there was a commercial rationale, and whether the transactions were at fair value. With regard to the technical evaluation Mr Welham confirmed in cross-examination that Mr Johnstone was able to ask all the questions he wanted about the software. Mr Johnstone produced his own technical evaluation.

2832. Then, on 11 January 2010, Deloitte produced their working paper with a view to assessing whether the two deals could be recognised separately. This involved ascertaining whether there was a linkage such as to impact the accounting treatment. Deloitte's view was that these were dissimilar goods, and the transactions could be recognised independently. Deloitte concluded that:

(1) There was a clear commercial rationale behind the purchase; and

(2) The purchase was at fair value. In this context Deloitte took into account that competitive quotations had been obtained by management from a number of companies with regard to potential software applications for use with SPE for structured data analysis, including HP, Informatica and CommVault. Mr Welham confirmed that Deloitte had no problem with a quotation being obtained after the year end.

2833. Mr Welham agreed that reaching these conclusions involved the process previously described of confirming the transactions did not relate to similar goods, and then identifying both commercial rationale and fair value for the transactions:

> *"Q. So you decide they're not similar, then you ask yourself the question, is there a commercial rationale for both limbs?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. Then you ask yourself, has fair value of the two transactions been established?*
>
> *A. Yes, correct."*

2834. In addition to the demonstration and a management paper provided to them by Autonomy on 12 January 2010, Deloitte was also provided with: (i) a management representation letter dated 22 February 2010, signed by Mr Hussain, confirming that Autonomy's purchase of StorHouse was on an arm's length basis, (ii) a confirmation letter signed by Mr Loomis in respect of the first FileTek sale confirming the outstanding debt owed to Autonomy and that there were no side agreements, (iii) evidence of Dr Lynch's approval of the first FileTek purchase and internal

correspondence between Autonomy management outlining the supposed commercial rationale for the purchase, and (iv) a copy of an email from Mr Szukalski to Mr Egan on 21 January 2010, in which Mr Szukalski purported to set out FileTek's commercial rationale for licensing additional Autonomy software as follows:

> *"…the FileTek Trusted Edge platform utilizes the Autonomy Keyview filters and IDOL platform. Our current contract with Autonomy was set to expire in June 2010…we projected that a royalty arrangement with the same terms would have cost us an annual average of approximately $3-5 million in royalties due to Autonomy and possibly even more. Further, the prior royalty formula caused less than optimal pricing structures for FileTek in order to minimize the per copy royalty. These conditions drove the commercial desire to negotiate a license with a fixed up front cost (and no royalties.) Otherwise, we would have been forced to find alternatives to the Autonomy products. This new arrangement not only allows us to renew our commitment to Autonomy but allows us to further expand our use of Keyview and IDOL within Trusted Edge and allows us to integrate the Autonomy IDOL SPE software in support of our STH storage virtualization platform offering."*

2835. Deloitte concluded, on the basis of this material, that the first FileTek sale and purchase were separate transactions conducted at arm's length. This process appeared to be careful and comprehensive and reliable accordingly.

2836. However, the Claimants' case was that Deloitte was misled. The Claimants relied particularly on the evidence of Mr Welham. According to his evidence in his witness statement, Deloitte were unaware that:

(1) Autonomy had not undertaken any detailed technical analysis or due diligence in relation to the StorHouse software but, the day before the first FileTek purchase, had only briefly reviewed FileTek's website and the information about its software on the internet.

(2) FileTek would not have bought the IDOL licence at the price it did had it not been for Autonomy's purchase of StorHouse, and FileTek was dependent on receipt of funds from Autonomy under the StorHouse purchase to make payments under the IDOL licence.

(3) The negotiations had been conducted by reference to the "*spread*", i.e. the delta or net payment that would fall to be made after setting the two payments off against each other.

(4) FileTek had been assured by Autonomy that it would not be "*burned*" on the transaction.

(5) Had Deloitte been aware of these matters, they would have been of "*concern*" as they would have called into question whether the transactions were independent, arm's length and commercially reasonable transactions, all of which were essential planks of Deloitte's analysis of the appropriate accounting treatment.

2837. According to the Claimants, the true position was also withheld from the Audit Committee. On 28 January 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter the final version of his management note for the Audit Committee. Mr Hussain's covering email noted that he had included "*More on filetek*" and requested "*Any final comments before we send?*". Dr Lynch accepted that he had at least reviewed the draft "*at the level of the non-financial stuff*". The version of the note sent to the Audit Committee, which included what was described in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions as having *"added positioning",* was seriously misleading:

(1) The note described the purchase of the StorHouse licence as a "*completely separate transaction*" from the IDOL sale to FileTek. This was an untenable description in light of the chronology set out above. In fact, as already noted, the two transactions had been conceived by Mr Egan, and approved by Mr Hussain, as a package, and negotiated with FileTek by reference to the spread between the two prices.

(2) The note also misrepresented the commercial rationale and background to the purchase of StorHouse:

> *"We carried out a detailed evaluation process over several months to identify technology that would allow us to do this "out-of-the box" and evaluated products from HP, Informatica and CommVault. The evaluation process was carried out independently by our CTO and technical team. We eventually selected the Filetek product because the technology was judged to be the most appropriate and best of breed …"*

(3) But there had been no "*detailed evaluation process over several months*" nor is the adverb "*eventually*" apt to describe the decision to buy StorHouse; and there was no evaluation at any time of HP's or CommVault's products as an alternative to purchasing StorHouse. As explained previously, Autonomy's technical department spent a few hours browsing material about FileTek on the internet, only a couple of days before the StorHouse licence was purchased.

(4) The suggestion that the evaluation of StorHouse was carried out "*independently*" by Dr Menell, was also false: Dr Menell was only asked to consider the StorHouse purchase <u>after</u> Mr Egan had already approached Mr Szukalski about a round-trip transaction.

2838. The note also went on, as part of supporting the existence of a genuine commercial rationale, to assert that StorHouse had been "*fully integrated and is available for commercial sale*". Dr Lynch asserted in cross-examination that this was "*a perfectly reasonable statement*" on the basis that because FileTek "*was an NAS,*[322] *once it was set up in a network environment, then it was integrated and available for sale*". Dr Lynch's position therefore appeared to be that the statement was true if StorHouse had merely been installed in a network environment. However:

(1) Although there was a dispute about what *"fully integrated"* meant, the Claimants submitted, and I accept, that the phrase *"fully integrated"* of itself

322 This appears to stand for Network Attached Storage.

was intended to convey more than the installation of the software on the network. That is reinforced by the claim that it was *"available for commercial sale*".

(2) The Claimants also submitted that in any event, there was no evidence that StorHouse had even been installed in a network environment within Autonomy as at late January 2010. Against this, the Defendants relied on (a) exchanges with Mr Gallagher which appeared to demonstrate that the StorHouse software had been downloaded in January 2010 and (b) the fact that there had been a demonstration in January to explain to Deloitte the purpose of the StorHouse software and a use case for combining it with IDOL, which suggested that the StorHouse software would have been installed for that purpose and to show off its functionalities. However, when cross-examined about this, Mr Goodfellow explained that the demonstration material had been compiled by him and two others in his team, and he was adamant that they had not installed StorHouse by then or for that purpose. There was nothing to contradict this.

2839. Despite Mr Goodfellow's adamant insistence, I remained puzzled by why or how a use case would have been sought to be presented without installation of the software concerned. Nevertheless, even if a prototype was installed by then (12 January 2010) I consider and find that the note, especially with the additions made by Dr Lynch, was materially misleading: I accept that the depiction of a fully integrated "oven-ready" product was greatly exaggerated with a view to justifying to Deloitte (and, in turn, the Audit Committee) the purchase of StorHouse as a self-standing transaction which was justified on its own merits notwithstanding its very considerable purchase price.

2840. In short, I am satisfied that the way the transaction was presented to Deloitte was distorted to the point of falsity. In my judgment, Deloitte's conclusion that the first FileTek sale and purchase were separate transactions conducted at arm's length was based on a false presentation to them.

Mutual payments in respect of the first FileTek transaction

2841. The inter-dependence of the transactions, and the side arrangements to ensure that FileTek would be put in funds before ever being required to pay was again illustrated by the payment process:

(1) On 26 January 2010, a number of days before Autonomy's payment for the StorHouse licence fell due, Mr Egan wrote to Mr Scott asking him to "*raise the payment*" to FileTek that day. Mr Egan explained that, "*Sushovan is aware and is expecting a request for approval as early as this evening or at latest tomorrow AM. He will then approve and can you be sure we either wire or send check overnight?*"

(2) The same day, Cynthia Watkins, in Autonomy's finance department, sought Mr Hussain's approval for the payment, noting that payment was due on 30 January 2010. In the early hours of 27 January 2010, Mr Hussain gave his "*ok*", and so did Dr Lynch.

(3) Autonomy paid FileTek $10.367 million on 27 January 2010, in advance of the contractual due date for payment, in accordance with the assurance given by Mr Egan to Mr Szukalski.

(4) Two days later, on 29 January 2010, FileTek paid the first instalment of $4.24 million to Autonomy. Mr Szukalski confirmed that FileTek used the cash it had received from Autonomy to pay Autonomy.

2842. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch did not seek to argue that the timing of these payments was a mere coincidence; but he sought to explain and justify the sequence on the basis that, before the payment was made by Autonomy, he would have expected someone to have had a phone call with FileTek saying, "*If I send you what I owe you, you'd better send it back straightaway*". Dr Lynch said that getting prompt cash payment from FileTek was helpful for Autonomy's Days Sales Outstanding ("DSO") metrics, which he explained in re-examination was a measure of how quickly debts owed to Autonomy were paid. This did not, however, address the real issue: as the Claimants put it,

> *"the issue here is not one of the timing of cash flow: the Claimants' case does not involve a complaint that Autonomy made a legitimate purchase but paid for it sooner than it could have done; the Claimants' case is that Autonomy's reason for purchasing the StorHouse licence and paying in advance of the due date was to put FileTek in funds first to enable it to purchase Autonomy software at a high price and then to pay down its debt to Autonomy."*

2843. On 31 March 2010, FileTek paid the remaining instalment of $4.24 million to Autonomy. Again, Mr Szukalski's evidence was that FileTek used the money it had received from Autonomy to pay Autonomy.

2844. I accept the Claimants' case in relation to the first of the transactions comprising RT 3.

Defendants' knowledge

2845. The knowledge of both Defendants of the reciprocal nature of the first of the RT 3 transactions, and the consequent impropriety of accounting for them as if they were independent, seems to me to be apparent from the description above. I give further reasons for this conclusion after my consideration of the second of the RT 3 transactions which follows.

The second of the FileTek transactions comprised in RT 3: Q1 to Q2 2010

2846. Whereas the Claimants described the second FileTek purchase transaction as once again driven by Autonomy's need for more recognised revenue, the Defendants described it as being for proper commercial purposes and to meet a genuine desire on Autonomy's part to extend the data limits of the first purchase (including a 1 PB limit for relational data) so as to enhance its capacity to deploy StorHouse and enable it to meet identified customer demand. Both sides relied on the evidence of Mr Egan in this context; and there was a dispute as to whether a number of emails were genuine or pre-textual.

2847. The Claimants relied on the following description in Mr Egan's witness statement of what promoted the transaction, and its salient features:

> *"In Q1 2010 Mr Hussain told me that we were short on revenue again. I therefore looked to do another quid pro quo deal. Mr Hussain and I agreed that I would present a second round trip deal to FileTek. The rationale for the deal, which I laid out in an email to Mr Hussain dated March 30, 2010, was that Autonomy expected an increase in its data hosting business because of its recent (separate) agreement to host Merrill Lynch data, and that as a result, Autonomy could license additional rights relating to the volume of data that could be hosted by Autonomy using FileTek's StorHouse software. The rationale was a pretext, as both Mr Hussain and I knew. Autonomy did not "need" the right to use StorHouse.*
>
> *On March 29, 2010, I spoke with FileTek's Mr Szukalski, with whom I had made the quid pro quo deal at the end of 2009. I proposed that FileTek licence additional Autonomy software before March 31. In return, I said that Autonomy would purchase additional rights to use FileTek's StorHouse software in the following quarter for a purchase price that would substantially exceed the amount of FileTek's purchase from Autonomy. The separation in time was a requirement established by Mr Hussain. Its purpose was to introduce two separate time periods as another fact establishing the deals as independent transactions. Most of my discussion with Mr Szukalski and FileTek's CEO, Bill Loomis, was about the spread - the dollar amount by which Autonomy's purchase from FileTek would exceed the amount of FileTek's purchase from Autonomy. The spread was a principal incentive to FileTek to do this quid pro quo deal.*
>
> *I agreed with Mr Szukalski and Mr Loomis that FileTek would license software from Autonomy in Q1 2010 for $8.5 million, plus one year of maintenance for $510,000, a total obligation of $9,010,000. In return, I agreed that Autonomy would purchase additional rights to use FileTek's StorHouse software and related support for about $11.5 million in Q2 2010. We agreed that the spread would be approximately $2.5 million. Mr Hussain established the amount of the licence fee for the Autonomy software and directed the negotiation of the amount of the spread; I conducted that negotiation. Both halves of the agreement were reached orally at the end of March 2010. FileTek's purchase from Autonomy was documented on March 31, 2010. Autonomy's agreement to purchase additional rights to use StorHouse remained entirely oral at that point. Mr Hussain told me that it should not be in writing."*

2848. The Claimants relied also on internal Autonomy email exchanges with Dr Lynch which appeared to support the presentation of the transaction as a device to raise recognised revenue to cover shortfalls, and thereby also Dr Lynch's involvement and knowledge;

(1) On 29 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent an email to Mr Hussain and Mr Egan, attaching a revenue route map which included $12 million of revenue

referable to "*gary/clutch/bluearc/safenet/cronin*". Dr Lynch accepted that "*gary*" might have been a reference to Gary Szukalski.

(2) The next day, 30 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent Mr Hussain an update, which now included $10 million of revenue referable to "*gary*". Again, Dr Lynch accepted it was possible that this was a reference to Mr Szukalski. No alternative explanation has been advanced.

(3) Later on 30 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent an email to Mr Hussain, attaching what Dr Lynch called "*my list*". The list again included $10 million of revenue in relation to "*Gary*", which Dr Lynch accepted might, at the very least, be a reference to a deal with Mr Szukalski.

(4) On 31 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent Mr Hussain a further revenue routemap, which now included $8 million of revenue for "FILETEK". Dr Lynch confirmed in cross-examination that it was he who had added the reference to FileTek. This strongly supports the conclusion that the references to "*Gary*" in Dr Lynch's earlier route maps had also been to FileTek.

2849. The Claimants contended that it is perfectly clear, therefore, that late in Q1 2010, Dr Lynch knew that a revenue transaction with FileTek was part of Autonomy's plan to achieve its revenue target for Q1 2010; and further, that it is very unlikely that whoever told Dr Lynch about this (either Mr Hussain or, since Dr Lynch was on the west coast of the United States at the time, Mr Egan) failed to tell Dr Lynch about the intended quid-pro-quo purchase of StorHouse.

2850. On 30 March 2010, Mr Egan sent Mr Hussain an email, subject "*filetek*", in which he said, "*BofA has granted us the Merrill business. We will have to buy more FileTek to satisfy that contract at lower HW costs. We may wish to pitch a deal at FileTek on last day of Q to get best pricing*". Mr Hussain responded enthusiastically, copying Mr Kanter and Dr Menell.

2851. Mr Egan's evidence was that both he (Mr Egan) and Mr Hussain knew that the commercial rationale set out in this email was a pretext. Although it was suggested to Mr Egan in cross-examination that his email was an "*honest email*", Mr Egan maintained that it was:

> "*a bit misleading because I wanted to buy more FileTek to enable another quid pro quo deal. It also happened to be that we had great increases in volume and therefore had perfect rationale and business case for buying more.*"

2852. The Claimants contended also that the pretextual nature of the rationale is apparent from the fact that, as at 30 March 2010, Autonomy had <u>not yet installed</u>, let alone <u>used</u> StorHouse and, therefore, had not used any of the data capacity made available under the first StorHouse licence. They added that until an email from Mr Chamberlain to Mr Hussain dated 30 March 2010 referred in a single phrase to a limit on what Autonomy had acquired under the first transaction there was no document in which anyone in Autonomy's senior management had ever referred to the capacity limitation in the first transaction, or to any need to revise it.

2853. The Defendants, on the other hand, relied on Mr Egan's evidence to support their case that the need for extra capacity was not contrived but real, and that the rationale for the purchase was genuine. They instanced especially the following:

(1) On 30 April 2010 Mr Egan emailed Mr Goodfellow and Dr Menell stating:

"This is FileTek's first proposal for the additional volume we asked about as a result of our winning the Merrill Lynch, Met Life and Newedge deals. They don't know about Lily volume, BNPP, The new larger JPMC volumes and the rate at which volumes are growing."

(2) Mr Egan confirmed that the rationale for this purchase was genuine:[323]

"Q. Right. The business about needing extra capacity, that was true, wasn't it, as you saw it at the time?

A. I believe so, yes.

...

Q. But in relation to the rationale for this further deal, what you say there represents what you honestly believed at the time?

A. Yes, I believed that the additional -- I knew that we had one capacity and that we had growing volumes and additional customers that rationalised making additional purchases."

2854. They relied also on Mr Szukalski's evidence in cross-examination that there was a genuine negotiation for something that Autonomy genuinely wanted in the course of which he wanted to "fence" the deal to limit the amount of software that Autonomy received for the $10 million that Autonomy had proposed, but that Dr Menell had negotiated *"very cleverly"* by introducing the idea that Autonomy would require in return that the StorHouse licence should be extended to grant unlimited capacity. This was Mr Szukalski's answer also to the fact that it was Mr Egan's evidence in his witness statement that the price had in fact been agreed in March 2010 at $11.5 million (see above), and indeed to his own evidence that Mr Egan had "coached" FileTek to put forward a price that could be beaten down by procurement. The following exchange in the course of Mr Szukalski's cross-examination illustrates the point:

"Q. So this negotiation was a bit of a show really, wasn't it?

A. No, continue on, there should be more negotiation that happens –

Q. Yes. There are a number of further emails between you

[323] In this passage of his cross-examination Mr Egan did say that he had more of a "symbiotic agreement" with Mr Szukalski than the email reflected. Although the Defendants submitted that this went only to the negotiation process and did not affect the substance, which was that Autonomy did want the extra capacity (and paid fair value for it), I consider that Mr Egan was making the broader point about his business relationship and understandings with Mr Szukalski

and Mr Scott. Those are emails you've seen recently, are they?

A. No, not at all. But there's further, I think, negotiation as well relative to the capacity licences of the software that we sold.

Q. Insofar as the price is concerned, where you land up is that the figure precisely of $11.5 million that you had agreed with Mr Egan at the end of March?

A. Correct, but the value that we provide to Autonomy becomes significantly higher based on a negotiation of the software that we're licensing to them which changes dramatically during this negotiation phase."

2855. Mr Szukalski presented the licence for unlimited capacity as a *"big deal"*:

"Q. And Autonomy didn't seek to negotiate you to a lower price than that?

A. No, but higher value.

Q. Removing the constraints on capacity?

A. Big deal. It's a big deal in terms of what we're offering here in terms of unlimited capacity. The technology was completely based on per terabyte pricing. When you remove that, you've removed all limitations. So in essence what we were offering to Autonomy was -- a Zantaz Digital Safe was a complete enterprise licence for the technology. It's a big deal. It's high value."

2856. Mr Szukalski expanded on this in the course of his re-examination as follows:

"Q. ... again, can you just expand a little on that answer when you talk about the negotiation of the software that you were licencing to him, what are you talking about there?

A. Again, there is two components here. There is the price negotiation and then the software negotiation. In this case it was very interesting. So the price negotiation ended up about $11.5 million which was kind of the target value that we, in terms of price or budget that Autonomy was willing to spend. But what Autonomy negotiated very cleverly, and this is the involvement of Dr Pete Menell, the CTO of Autonomy at the time, was, you know,

> *the original proposal included our standard structure of so many terabytes of licensed storage for storing this and Dr Pete came back and basically said, "We'd like to negotiate a little harder and get an unlimited capacity for Digital Safe" which was pretty clever and that's the improved value that Autonomy got as a result of that negotiation. They got an unlimited capacity."*

2857. However, although it does seem likely that there was growing demand for archiving and searching database records, and in that context there was a theoretical or potential use case for StorHouse which (in Mr Wang's words) Autonomy *"definitely tried to push and offer"*, the fact which was never contradicted was that at the time of the second StorHouse purchase, (a) Autonomy had not yet started using StorHouse for any customers (b) in the case of neither BofA/Merill Lynch nor Kraft, nor any other Autonomy customer was StorHouse ever actually used, as Mr Wang confirmed in his re-examination. There was no evidence to support the Defendants' line of argument that Autonomy needed to extend the first StorHouse licence because it had exceeded its 1 PB limit.

2858. So far as concerns FileTek's purchase from Autonomy, Mr Szukalski told me (again in re-examination) that FileTek came to the negotiation with its own "wants list" of software that it wanted to acquire in the purchase – a list a Mr Seamans of FileTek was said to have compiled as a *"running list"* before Mr Egan made an approach to FileTek. However, as the Claimants emphasised, Mr Szukalski had earlier accepted in cross-examination that FileTek had not approached Autonomy about wanting to licence any new IDOL functionality before Mr Egan's approach to him.

2859. Further, Mr Loomis' evidence in the US criminal trial was that FileTek would not have paid anywhere close to $9,010,000 if Autonomy had not agreed to license additional StorHouse software for the same amount or more:

> *"Q. ...Now, would you, on behalf of FileTek, have bought the $8.5 million license from Autonomy in March 2010 if Autonomy had not agreed to a barter transaction in which it bought even more StorHouse from FileTek, you know, eventually in the period that was discussed -- would you have bought that license from Autonomy if there had not been the other side of the equation?*
>
> *A. We would have bought the license, but not at that dollar amount. We needed the extra capability. And we would have bought the license if the StorHouse sale was the same exact dollar amount [as FileTek's purchase from Autonomy] also. We didn't need that extra dollar amount to do it, but it was, of course, attractive.*
>
> *...*
>
> *Q. What amount of money do you think you would have been comfortable with if there had been no reciprocal barter transaction? How much are we talking about?*
>
> *A. I don't know. It would be significantly less.*
>
> *Q. How much significantly less?*

A. Well, it would be less than a million, put it that way, and could be substantially less than that. I don't -- I would have to review all my sales forecasts back in those days."

2860. That was, of course, less than one-tenth of the price FileTek in fact agreed to pay. For his part, Mr Szukalski sought to quibble about what FileTek would have agreed to pay; but he said he "*absolutely*" agreed that, if Autonomy had not been offering to buy more StorHouse licences, FileTek would not have been prepared to pay anything like $8 or $9 million for this further IDOL licence. He later confirmed that he had no reason to disagree with Mr Loomis' testimony about what FileTek might have been prepared to pay, as set out above.

My conclusion in relation to the second set of RT 3 transactions

2861. In my judgment, the second FileTek purchase and sale transactions comprised in RT 3, like the first, were plainly "reciprocal" or "barter" transactions; they should have been accounted for accordingly. That is so whether or not Autonomy found some use for the StorHouse software and customer demand for the structured data analyses it facilitated.

2862. In particular:

(1) The evidence that Mr Egan's overture to Mr Szukalski was driven by a need to generate recognised revenue was clear; and the suggestion that the impetus really came from a need for greater capacity was very thin and undermined by the fact that even if later demand increased, at the time Autonomy had done little to use up the initial capacity it had purchased under the first agreement.

(2) Mr Szukalski's evidence of a real negotiation was unpersuasive; and the notion of Dr Menell having *"very cleverly"* pulled off an unexpectedly *"big deal"* of *"high value"* was not in the least bit credible. Even Dr Lynch had to accept that the whole negotiation appeared to be, as it was, a charade.

(3) The division of the two transactions across two quarters was artificial, as confirmed by Mr Egan's evidence that Mr Hussain directed that Autonomy's commitment in March 2010 to purchase additional rights to use StorHouse in the following quarter *"should not be in writing"*, which was not challenged.

(4) The purchase price for Autonomy's software was out of all proportion to its real value to Filetek.

Deloitte's approval was given on a false basis

2863. As usual, the Defendants sought to rely on the fact that Deloitte approved the accounting treatment of both sides of the second RT 3 transaction, after a review of the purchase transaction to ascertain whether it had any impact on the revenue recognition for the licence deal in the previous quarter. Mr Welham confirmed that essentially the same tests were applied as if both transactions had taken place in the same quarter.

2864. It appears that Deloitte discussed the commercial rationale for the transaction with Mr Gallagher and Dr Menell. There was a further demonstration attended by Mr Johnstone, Mr Welham and Mr Murray and Deloitte were able to test the rationale and make any enquiries they wanted to. Deloitte's conclusion was:

> *"Given the above demonstration (and the input from Ben Johnstone) and the discussion with Pete Menell, there appears to be a clear commercial rationale behind this purchase."*

2865. Deloitte also concluded that the transaction was at fair value. Their memorandum on the "Purchase of additional StorHouse tech from FileTek Q2" (prepared by Mr Murray) dated 18 July 2010 noted that the:

> *"extension to make this an unlimited licence would add significant value. Note that Mike Lynch talks about the potential for a £35m licence deal alone that could come out of this purchase…*
>
> *Per Pete Menell we note that management considers this to be a worthwhile purchase and the fact that it was approved by the CEO, CTO and CFO adds weight behind it being an arms length transaction made at fair value."*

2866. It is apparent that Deloitte were unaware that the 'use case' for StorHouse within DigitalSafe was purely theoretical, and that the talk about potential deals was simply that: talk.

2867. It is also clear that Dr Menell provided Deloitte with information designed to justify the licence extension which was misleading. Thus:

(1) Dr Menell told Deloitte that the second StorHouse purchase was necessary because the 1 PB limit for structured data under the existing StorHouse licence "*was reached by Kraft alone*". This was false. In fact, as at the time of the second StorHouse purchase, Autonomy's technical team had not even attempted to use StorHouse for Kraft, still less used up the 1 PB limit. Indeed, it was the unchallenged evidence of Mr Wang that the total volume of data (structured and unstructured) held by Kraft in its Digital Safe as late as September, October, November and December 2010 was considerably less than 1 PB. The position was no different in July 2010, when Deloitte came to review the second StorHouse purchase. Dr Lynch suggested in his cross-examination that Dr Menell had meant that "*Kraft had the legal right to turn on that tap and to do that we had to have capacity of 1 petabyte in order to take whatever they sent us and that had to be up and running there and then*". But, as the Claimants pointed out, this is not what Dr Menell told Deloitte, and it was not suggested to Mr Welham in cross-examination that it was what Deloitte understood. In any event, I accept the Claimants' submission that, even if there were any basis for Dr Lynch's attempt to rationalise what Dr Menell told Deloitte, it fails to meet the point that StorHouse was not in fact being used for Kraft as at the time of the second StorHouse purchase and, indeed, was never used for Kraft.

(2) Dr Menell told Deloitte that the capacity constraint in the first StorHouse licence required Autonomy to monitor the volumes of data being archived and that "*customers had expressed concern over that fact*". This was also misleading: Autonomy had not yet started using StorHouse for any customers. No contemporaneous documentation supports the suggestion that customers had expressed concern over monitoring of their data volumes.

(3) Dr Menell told Deloitte that "*any sale of SPE contains an element of this FileTek software*". This was untrue. As Dr Blanchflower explained, SPE never contained any element of StorHouse software. Dr Menell, as CTO, must have known this.

2868. In the round, I am satisfied, and find, that Deloitte were not aware of the true nature of the transaction. Mr Welham confirmed in his witness statement that he and his team were not aware, in particular, that Autonomy had orally agreed with FileTek at the time of the sale of Autonomy software in Q1 2010 that in the subsequent quarter (and after the Q1 2010 earnings announcement had been made), Autonomy would make a further purchase of FileTek's StorHouse software product in order to put FileTek in funds to pay the amount due to Autonomy in respect of the Q1 2010 sale. Nor were they aware of the disparity in the values paid on each side of the transaction compared to the price that would, but for the reciprocal transactions, have been a realistically achievable price. Whether more sceptical review might have led to a line of inquiry which would have put the transaction into a more realistic perspective is not in issue in these proceedings.

2869. In my judgment, Deloitte approved the transaction on a false basis, and so did the Audit Committee.

The FRRP were also misled

2870. As discussed in the course of my assessment more generally of Mr Hogenson's concerns and the questions which followed from the FRRP (see paragraph *2232ff* above) Mr Hogenson had questioned the purchases from FileTek, on the basis that they appeared to be barter transactions where the economic benefit on both sides of the transaction appeared to be materially overstated, and the FRRP in due course also queried the transactions.

2871. The responses provided by Autonomy in a letter to the FRRP dated 3 March 2011 included misleading statements about the transactions now under consideration:

(1) Autonomy presented the purchase/sales in the two sets of transactions as unconnected, which plainly they were not.

(2) Autonomy told the FRRP that *"FileTek was selected by Autonomy following receipt of multiple quotations as part of Autonomy's due diligence process"*: but quotations from competing suppliers were sought and obtained only after the purchase of the first StorHouse licence.

(3) The letter went on to claim that "*FileTek products are incorporated into Autonomy software, for which sales have been strong*". This was not correct: as already explained, StorHouse was not incorporated into any Autonomy

software. Sales of Autonomy software incorporating StorHouse were not "*strong*"; they were non-existent.

2872. Autonomy's perceived need to mislead has further confirmed me in my conclusion that the transactions were not properly accounted for.

Defendants' knowledge

2873. I am satisfied that both Defendants knew and conceived the real driving purpose of the transactions comprising RT 3 to be the generation of recognised revenue by funding FileTek to make a purchase of Autonomy software that otherwise it would not have made, and that their accounting treatment was not proper having regard to their true nature as reciprocal transactions.

Mr Hussain

2874. Furthermore, Mr Egan's evidence in his witness statement was that it was Mr Hussain who:

(1) authorised both sets of *quid pro quo* transactions.

(2) devised the idea adopted in the second set of FileTek transactions of the purchase from Autonomy and the sale by FileTek being artificially split to take place in sequential quarters and directed Mr Egan that the sales and purchases should never be linked in any paperwork;

(3) encouraged Dr Menell and the technical departments to come up with bogus technical reasons to justify them; and

(4) acquiesced in, and may have sanctioned, the provision by Dr Menell of false information to Deloitte; and contributed to the drafting of the misleading memoranda to Deloitte.

2875. I accept that evidence: Mr Hussain had guilty knowledge of the true nature of the RT 3 transactions and that they were improperly accounted for accordingly.

Dr Lynch

2876. Dr Lynch had such 'guilty knowledge' also. I consider and find that:

(1) It is unlikely that Dr Lynch was asked to approve the transactions without an explanation of their true nature. That was not how Mr Hussain and the cabal operated.

(2) That is further supported by the fact that in an email dated 29 December 2009 Mr Hussain undoubtedly did raise collectability as an issue in the context of the first RT 3 transaction, and (as the Claimants submitted) it is inherently likely that Mr Hussain would have explained to Dr Lynch how the issue was resolved through the StorHouse purchase as a means of funding FileTek.

(3) The technical evaluation was an exercise in trying to find *ex post facto* justification for the purchase and some use case. Especially given that it

involved the acquisition of third party software, contrary to Dr Lynch's preference and policy, for Autonomy to develop its own solutions, it is inherently unlikely that Dr Menell, Mr Hussain and the cabal would have kept back from Dr Lynch the bogus nature of the exercise.

(4) Dr Lynch was personally involved in adding *"positioning"* to the memorandum for Deloitte and also to the letter to the FRRP which was misleading, as he must have known.

(5) Dr Lynch's depiction of the StorHouse transactions being part of a broader strategy to acquire Informatica (putting *"tanks on Informatica's lawn")* lacked any supporting documentation and any real credibility, and the creation of a false story is further evidence of his knowledge of the truth.

Overall conclusion in respect of RT 3

2877. In my judgment, both sets of transactions comprising RT 3 are plainly illustrative and confirmatory of Autonomy's use of reciprocal transactions as a further means of making good shortfalls in quarterly revenue; and both Defendants knew that, and that the objective required false accounting. The linked sales and purchases were not independent, arm's length transactions, and it was not possible to understand the substance and commercial effect of one agreement without regard to the other: they should have been considered together in order to determine their substance and appropriate accounting treatment. I agree with the Claimants that Autonomy should not, therefore, have recorded revenue from the FileTek sales, but instead should have recorded the net cost, totalling $4,395,494, as an expense.

RT 4: Vidient Systems Inc (Q4 2009/Q3 2010)

2878. The Claimants impugned as "reciprocal" and improperly accounted for two transactions with Vidient Systems Inc ("Vidient"). Each involved a purchase by Autonomy from Vidient of a product for which it was alleged Autonomy had no need in order to fund a purchase by Vidient of Autonomy software which enabled Autonomy purportedly to recognise revenue from its sale.

2879. Autonomy's <u>purchases from Vidient</u> were:

(1) A purchase in Q1 2010 of a 3-year software licence for video analytics software manufactured by Vidient and called *"SmartCatch"* for $3 million plus $150k in respect of support and maintenance for one year.

(2) A purchase in Q4 2010 of further rights under a distribution and system integration agreement in respect of SmartCatch software for a total consideration of $2.31 million.

2880. Autonomy's <u>sales to Vidient</u> were of:

(1) A licence to certain Autonomy software for use as an embedded component of SmartCatch under an OEM agreement in Q4 2009 for which the consideration was $2.5 million plus $125,000 for one year of second-line support. Payment

was due 15 days after payment was due from Autonomy under its agreement to purchase a licence for SmartCatch.

(2) An extension in Q3 2010 of the term of the Autonomy OEM agreement of Q4 2009 by one year, and the licensing of additional software and IDOL functionalities for a fee of $2 million, plus $100,000 for one year of second-line support.

2884. I address each in turn. However, I do not think it necessary to do so in the same detail as my discussion of the VMS transactions, since it seems to me that the pattern is similar, and the use of 'reciprocals' as another lever to generate revenue when needed to cover shortfalls on forecast revenue was already established both by the VMS transactions and by the FileTek transactions. Instead, I highlight the points emerging which seem to me to be of greatest significance in confirming that the Vidient transactions fell into the same pattern.

The first Vidient transaction Q4 2009/Q1 2010

2885. Autonomy's first transaction with Vidient was pursued by Autonomy at the same time as the FileTek transaction. The sale side (the sale by Autonomy of a licence to embed Autonomy software under an OEM agreement) was entered into at the end of Q4 2009, the purchase side (the purchase by Autonomy of the SmartCatch licence) was entered into in Q1 2010.

2886. SmartCatch was Vidient's only substantial product. Put in simple terms, SmartCatch monitored video feeds from closed circuit television systems ("CCTV") and identified suspicious activity, such as a person loitering in a particular area or walking the wrong way at an airport. SmartCatch was predominantly marketed and sold to transportation entities in the US, such as railways, airports and metros.

2887. Vidient was a heavily loss-making business. During the first nine months of 2009, it incurred a loss of $2.7 million. Vidient's total revenues in the same period were just $456,902, of which $228,569 was from sales of SmartCatch. As at 30 September 2009, it had cash and cash equivalents of just over $3 million. Mr Frank Pao ("Mr Pao"), who had worked at Autonomy for four years before then (including as COO) was Vidient's fourth CEO in a 12-month period, described 2009 as a "*horrible*" year and acknowledged that the numbers for the first three quarters were "*ridiculously low*". Vidient's status as a struggling restart is worth underlining, if only to set in context the statements by Dr Lynch and Mr Frank Pao (who gave evidence on behalf of Dr Lynch) regarding the supposed success of, and market demand for, SmartCatch, and to put into context the scale of the transactions, from Vidient's perspective, that Vidient entered into with Autonomy.

2888. Mr Pao agreed when cross-examined that prior to his discussions with Mr Egan, he had no firm intention to purchase Autonomy software in Q4 2009. In view of Vidient's financial position and the rapid rate of spend, he had no money to license Autonomy software on a large scale.

2889. Although Mr Pao kept in touch with a number of his colleagues after leaving Autonomy, he most commonly contacted Mr Kanter, with whom he had worked

closely at Autonomy. Mr Pao therefore had no reason to approach Mr Egan at the end of Q4 2009. Mr Egan, however, was looking for ways to generate more immediately recognisable revenue for Autonomy in Q4 2009. This is plain from the first FileTek reciprocal transaction which Mr Egan was pursuing at the same time. It was thus Mr Egan who approached Mr Pao.

2890. Mr Pao undoubtedly welcomed the opportunity to sell a licence to Autonomy for Autonomy to embed SmartCatch in its own products for sale, and for Vidient to embed Autonomy in its products likewise. On the Vidient sale side, the upside was obvious and substantial from Vidient's point of view. First, the sale price was full, and profitable for Vidient as a major sale on its own. The price being paid by Autonomy was more than 13 times the total licensing revenue that Vidient had received from sales of SmartCatch in 2009 to that point, and it was the largest transaction in Vidient's history. Secondly, Vidient's own sales had been badly affected by the 2008/2009 market crash: and it had little market penetration, having for example only two salespeople in the USA. Partnership through an OEM agreement with a large company with a successful product and a large customer base was plainly an enticing prospect to Vidient. As Mr Pao put it:

> *"This is for a partner to embed our software within their product and then to sell that product out to hopefully hundreds of customers because Autonomy had a tonne of customers."*

Mr Pao told me in cross-examination that he was expecting to make *"maybe $30 million out of this deal"* by way of royalty payments on Autonomy's sales.

2891. Furthermore, the sale by Vidient was to be coupled with a purchase by it of Autonomy software for Vidient to 'OEM' it (embed it in its own product) which was to be funded by the purchase price payable by Autonomy. The net effect of both transactions together would leave Vidient with a profit or 'delta' of some $525,000. The purchase by Vidient was in effect to be funded by the sale to Autonomy. Although Mr Pao equivocated (to the point of confused bluster) when asked whether Vidient could have afforded to make the purchase out of its own resources, and settled on the formulation that he *"would have found ways to still buy the software but at a much cheaper price that's in line with my cash reserves and what I'm expecting to get in Q4"*, this was either mere puff or (which seems to me more likely) demonstrative that the price to be paid to Autonomy was considerably higher than what Mr Pao would ordinarily have been expected to pay for it. It was plain that with cash reserves of $3.1 million which were being eroded by difficult trading conditions a purchase of anything like the magnitude discussed was otherwise out of the question. Mr Pao was more candid in accepting that he:

> *"fully expected to be paid by Autonomy on one transaction first and then I would pay them this amount."*

2892. Furthermore, after further circumlocution, Mr Pao eventually had to admit in cross-examination that in fact Vidient never did 'OEM' Autonomy software into SmartCatch. He told me that he:

> *"ended up having deals that did not necessarily require Autonomy technology, so there was no need for me to dedicate engineering resources to*

> *do that over dedicating engineering resources to sell my own product which had much higher margins."*

2893. This too was difficult to accept given Vidient's lamentable trading history[324] and the opportunities Mr Pao had earlier told me about; but I think it reveals the truth: that from Vidient's point of view the real benefit of the deal, in addition to the benefit of association with Autonomy in general terms, was the cash 'delta'.

2894. Looking then at the matter from the point of view of Autonomy, Autonomy's management cannot realistically have expected much from the sale of Autonomy software to Vidient, except, of course, the revenue it generated, which could be and was booked in its quarterly accounts. The prospect of large OEM sales through Vidient was small. What then of Autonomy's purchase of SmartCatch?

2895. The Defendants maintained that Autonomy wished to partner with Vidient because SmartCatch had (to quote Mr Hussain's written closing submissions) *"a good reputation and market penetration in the critical US markets"*[325] whereas Autonomy's own similar product in the video analytics segment of the market, Virage, *"had failed to penetrate US markets, and its products had been poorly received".* They also cited positive industry press support to the effect that the deal made sense since (in the words of one commentator) *"while there's no doubt, Autonomy is a global leader in the broader search market, their approach never translated to meaningful success in the video surveillance market"* whereas *"Vidient can provide them a solid solution"*. The Defendants' case was thus that SmartCatch was a superior product to Virage, recognised to be so in the market, and Vidient had thereby achieved success in the US market despite its small size which would be of considerable benefit to Autonomy if in an OEM partnership with it.

2896. The Claimants disputed this, and emphasised especially that:

    (1) As in respect of VMS, Autonomy undertook no analysis of SmartCatch, technical or otherwise, prior to 30 December 2009, the point when the deal was agreed.

    (2) Dr Blanchflower and Mr Gallagher (then Autonomy's Head of Development) were asked by Dr Menell to analyse the SmartCatch software on 30 December 2009 only after the deal had been struck, and their analysis was constricted by the fact that Autonomy did not have a licence to test SmartCatch and they simply had to review Vidient's website. That of itself is noteworthy: as Mr David Humphrey ("Mr Humphrey", who was Chief Technology Officer ("CTO") of Micro Focus International plc at the time of his witness statement, but at the time CTO of Virage, Inc ("Virage", the Autonomy group company that developed and sold Autonomy's video analytics products) stated in his witness statement on behalf of the Claimants:

[324] Though in fairness I should note that Mr Pao told me that it improved considerably in 2010 and thereafter

[325] In particular, Vidient had won a $500,000 contract from the US Department of Homeland Security for San Francisco Airport and had a number of high profile users in the transport sector, including Montreal Metro.

> *"…it does not make any sense to me to purchase a licence to a third party product based only on the information available on the company's website"*.

(3) Dr Blanchflower provided his thoughts and comments to Mr Gallagher, who then wrote an email to Dr Menell the same day. Mr Gallagher's email noted that Vidient's website was "*very low on technical detail, so no detail at all on how they do it*" and that Vidient seemed to have "*one product called SmartCatch which has 2 main applications: Security and Surveillance or (Video Intrusion Detection) as they call it [and] Business Intelligence*".

(4) With regard to Video Intrusion Detection, Mr Gallagher told Dr Menell that there was "*Lots of overlap with existing Virage products lines here*",[326] but that SmartCatch had two additional features which "*Virage has never claimed much in that they do*", namely, "*…Remote control of surveillance cameras – auto control and zoom – automatic following of suspect*". Mr Gallagher's email is the only written record of any analysis of SmartCatch by Autonomy in, or prior to, December 2009.

(5) Dr Blanchflower confirmed in cross-examination that the exercise with which he and Mr Gallagher were tasked: (i) did not involve any assessment of the relative performance of SmartCatch and Autonomy's existing offerings, because that would have required access to the SmartCatch software, which they did not have, (ii) did not involve any consideration of the respective market penetration of the products, (iii) did not involve any consideration of which product was better perceived in the market, and (iv) did not involve any assessment of the value to Autonomy of purchasing a product with better market penetration and/or perception.

2897. There remained considerable disagreement as to the relative advantages of the two systems. However, I do not think it necessary to say more than that it seemed to me that the balance of the evidence, which was limited as to its substantive content as distinct from the disagreement it encouraged, was that SmartCatch probably was a superior and more complete system, and it had a more positive reputation in the relevant market segment and some track record of exploiting it, though Vidient itself was struggling to convert this into durable success.

2898. But such an exercise in comparing the two products, to my mind, misses the point. What did not come out of the evidence, in my judgment, was that this perception was the real reason that Autonomy entered into the twin arrangements. Neither the results of the limited *ex post facto* assessment undertaken, nor the way Autonomy approached the decision whether or not to enter into the arrangements, suggests that the advantages of the product were the reason for Autonomy's purchase.

2899. Moreover, not only did Vidient not deploy the Autonomy software it had licensed (see above) but there is no evidence that Autonomy made any effort to pursue a 'strategic partnership' with Vidient after it executed the OEM agreements, or that it integrated SmartCatch into its Command and Control application (a security infrastructure

[326] Virage was an Autonomy group company that, amongst other things, developed and sold Autonomy's video analytics products.

platform which assisted with the retrieval of relevant intelligence in real time), despite paying $3.15 million for the right to do so.

2900. Mr Pao confirmed in cross-examination that he could not recollect ever being told of any sales by Autonomy of Vidient's software; and that he never received any royalties from sales, still less the $30 million he had hoped for.

2901. Indeed, Mr Humphrey and his security and surveillance division did not even download SmartCatch until some 18 months after the Vidient OEM agreement was executed and then only because Dr Menell asked Mr Humphrey to take a look at the software. This evidence was not challenged. Rather, it was put to Mr Humphrey that he was not open to the supposed commercial opportunity presented by the partnership with Vidient and took no steps to develop it. As Mr Humphrey pointed out in his oral evidence, he "*had no clue what was going on [with Vidient] other than what was in the press release, which didn't make sense*" to him. Mr Humphrey's evidence was consistent with his reaction at the time. The Claimants relied on the following in particular:

(1) The Vidient press release referred to by Mr Humprey announced a 'strategic partnership' between Autonomy and Vidient and was issued in January 2010. The day after it was issued, Marc Geall (then Head of Corporate Strategy and Investor Relations at Autonomy) asked Mr Humphrey "…*what is the story with the vidient announcement?*". Mr Humphrey responded: "*Thought you could tell me!*". Mr Humphrey was clearly confused by the announcement and, as he made clear in cross-examination, "*didn't know what was going on at this point*". As Mr Humphrey explained in his first witness statement, he only became aware of the OEM agreements after they had been entered into.

(2) On 2 February 2010, Mr Humphrey emailed Mr Egan, copying Mr Murray (the CEO of Virage), asking Mr Egan to:

> *"…explain…our positioning with regards to Vidient and that press release last week? I fully understand them wanting IDOL, having spoken a few times to Frank [Pao] about this at shows…What I do not understand is the statement referring to redistributing their product. They have a very similar product set to Virage S&S so there is a direct conflict of interest. Also even if there are potential areas of collaboration, policy has always been to remove third party product. We have therefore placed confusion in the market with regards to our product capabilities and also generated conflict against our statement that we own all our own technology?"*

(3) A few days later, on 4 February 2010, Mr Humphrey emailed Mr Egan and Ms Eagan, again copying Mr Murray, setting out the quote attributed to Mr Egan in the press release and adding:

> "*Another colleague has sent links to their website ask [sic] what is going on. As I said below the following quote really makes it difficult, what should I be saying?*".

(4) Having received no reply from Mr Egan or Ms Eagan, Mr Humphrey asked Mr Murray to "*try and chase this*". Mr Murray said "*Absolutely – nothing from either party suggest [they are] not proud of this deal*".

(5) Mr Humphrey never received a response from Mr Egan or Ms Eagan. The inference suggested is that there was no coherent story to tell.

2902. Put shortly, in all the circumstances, I have concluded and find that the real reason for Autonomy's purchase of SmartCatch was to incentivise and fund Vidient's purchase of Autonomy software and enable Autonomy to recognise the revenue thus (apparently) generated.

2903. This conclusion is fortified by the fact that no coherent explanation was ever provided to me for why Autonomy suddenly needed to acquire OEM rights to SmartCatch in the dying days and hours of Q4 2009. The best that Dr Lynch could offer, apart from emphasising that he did not really know the reason since he was not involved in the negotiation at the time, was to suggest that the hypothesis that it was all done in a rush to ensure recognition of revenue was fundamentally flawed because if that had been the aim it would have been far more straightforward to sell to a VAR. A discount would be necessary, but (on his view of IFRS) the sale to the VAR would trigger the revenue recognition and

> *"that would be perfectly fine. And then you would have that revenue, they would then sell the stock later, you'd have taken a discount hit to get them to do it, but there would be nothing improper about that. You don't need to go to these elaborate levels of buying things unless you actually want the thing."*

In my judgment, however, that does not reveal a flaw, but simply another lever; and as I have found in the context of the impugned VAR transactions a flawed lever likewise.

Separation of the OEM agreements by quarter

2904. The focus on the requirement to generate recognised revenue within Q4 2009 to meet Autonomy's revenue target was the context of, and I have concluded the reason for, a particular feature of the first Vidient transaction. This feature is that, although both agreements were negotiated and then signed together on the evening of 31 December 2009, and were in similar terms, it was agreed between the parties to treat the sale by Autonomy (from which revenue was needed in Q4 2009) as completed on that day, but the effective date of Vidient's sale of a licence was (on 31 December 2009) moved into the next quarter (Q1 2010).

2905. After Mr Hussain had asked him, by email dated 30 December 2009, to spend time with him on the paperwork, the next day (31 December 2009) Mr Chamberlain emailed Mr Mooney, Mr Guiao, Mr Scott, Mr Egan, Mr Kanter, Dr Menell and Mr Hussain expressing his concerns about the agreements that were to be signed later that day with Vidient:

> *"…General – don't like the fact that we have prepared both of these. They are two separate transactions and they should look and feel like that. Need to*

> *work with Frank [Pao] to get the license of their software on their paper. Also, the licensed software needs to reflect the quote we have received (attached)."*

2906. Mr Scott replied at 6.46am PT time (2.46pm UTC time):

> *"We've already received comments back on both docs (attached). We can look to move to a different [sic] for Vidient's license to Autonomy but my concern is that this will extend the process with limited time left. Is it truly necessary?*
>
> *Separately they have asked us to commit to issuance of a press release issued through "standard" channels and would like the draft attached to both contracts. I received from MDM [Mr Mooney] a copy of UK-approved press release yesterday. OK to agree to commitment below with UK-approved press release attached?"*

2907. The second sentence of Mr Scott's email appears to have been missing a word. It is likely that it was intended to read "*We can look to move to a different [quarter] for Vidient's license to Autonomy*" or similar because: (i) that is, in fact, what happened, (ii) that would be consistent with Mr Chamberlain's prior email referencing a need for the transactions to appear to be separate, and (iii) that would make sense in the context of Mr Scott's own email, in which he expressed concern about the shortness of time before the end of the quarter.

2908. Mr Chamberlain then responded at 4.38pm UTC time, saying:

> "*...Priority 1 – make deal recognizable [i.e. for revenue purposes] ...Priority 2 – get deal in.... To help one [i.e. Priority 1] the more different these look the better. Just spoke to Livius [Guiao] on this point*".

2909. At 11.46am PT (7.46pm UTC time), Mr Pao sent Mr Guiao an email, copied to Mr Scott, attaching a revised draft of the Vidient OEM agreement. Mr Pao's covering email said:

> *"Here are David's changes, plus two that I discussed separately with you [Mr Guiao] and Joel [Scott] today, specifically for the agreement where we sell to you: (a) the date changed to 1/1/10; and (b) change internal fee waiver to inclusion as part of second-line support fee…"*

2910. From this email, it is clear that Mr Pao spoke with Mr Guiao and Mr Scott that day and agreed to change the effective date of the Vidient OEM agreement to Autonomy from 28 December 2009 to 1 January 2010 and to make a change in relation to the second-line support fee.

2911. When cross-examined on the point, Mr Pao said he could not recall who had proposed the change to the effective date, and whether it was his suggestion or whether it had

been suggested by Mr Scott and Mr Guiao. He said that it was possible, *"maybe even likely"* that the change came from him, because the other change "*almost certainly*" came from his accountant, Katerina Jeanneau. Mr Pao suggested that he might have wanted to roll the deal into 2010 because 2009 had been *"a horrible year for the company"* and, as he was *"not going to hit my number so I don't want to waste any revenue that I can recognise…I would rather take it in 2010 and make 2010 look fantastic"*. But he acknowledged that this was *"kind of my guess at what happened here"*. In re-examination, when he was again asked about the point, he told me that *"…Again I don't have a specific recollection but that's probably the case, that I would have asked for it*". I was not persuaded that Mr Pao could remember the sequence, and his evidence smacked to me of him looking back and recreating what would, as he thought, be the canny thing to have done. Given the sequence I have described, I think it unlikely that the idea came from Vidient, even though I would accept that his rationalisation may explain why he was prepared to go along with it. Mr Pao struck me as commercially obliging even when he might have been unsure of the reasons for what he was being asked to do.

2912. For his part, Dr Lynch (who was not copied on Mr Chamberlain's email of 31 December 2009 which I consider was the catalyst of the change) attempted to explain the change as being down to Autonomy wanting to maximise its various financial metrics for that quarter. He disagreed with the suggestion that the OEM agreements were put into different quarters by Autonomy in an attempt to make them look like separate transactions, thereby facilitating revenue recognition on the Autonomy OEM agreement. He suggested that:

> *"…in terms of the reality of the situation, one day is not going to make any difference in terms of what the process was. So I suspect it's to do with that we wanted the cost of this to come into this quarter rather than the previous quarter."*

2913. But that ignores the context, and in particular the fact that Mr Chamberlain had in effect spelt out why the change was necessary. I accept the Claimants' submission that I should find (as I do) that the sequence and substance of the exchanges was as follows:

(1) Mr Chamberlain expressed concern that the agreements should look like separate transactions.

(2) Mr Scott suggested that they could move the Vidient OEM agreement to a different quarter but was worried that this might delay the process.

(3) Mr Chamberlain advised that making the transactions look more different would help make revenue from the deal recognisable, and spoke with Mr Guiao about this point.

(4) Mr Scott and Mr Guiao then spoke with Mr Pao and suggested changing the effective date of the Vidient OEM agreement to 1 January 2010.

(5) Mr Pao obliged and circulated a revised draft of the Vidient OEM agreement which changed the effective date of the agreement to 1 January 2010 and showed the other changes that they had discussed on their call.

Deloitte's consideration of the first Vidient transaction

2914. There was another important facet or consequence of the artificial separation of the two sides of the first Vidient transaction. This is that, despite Dr Lynch's suggestion that it would in reality make no difference (see above), Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence was that, because the Vidient OEM agreement was in a subsequent quarter, it was <u>not</u> considered as part of Deloitte's analysis of Autonomy's sale of its licence to Vidient. Deloitte therefore reviewed Autonomy's accounting treatment of the Autonomy (sale) OEM agreement without regard to the Vidient (sale) OEM agreement. They did not review the Vidient OEM Agreement until April 2010, as part of their Q1 2010 review.

2915. The Claimants described the Vidient OEM agreement as having been withheld from Deloitte and submitted that this cannot have been inadvertent. In support of this the Claimants submitted that it is inconceivable that it would have escaped Autonomy's finance department, and Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain in particular, to bring to Deloitte's attention an agreement that was executed by the same party on the same day. They also relied on the fact that when Deloitte reviewed the Autonomy OEM agreement in January 2010, they immediately identified an issue with Vidient's financial condition, causing Mr Murray of Deloitte to email Mr Chamberlain on 12 January 2010 to say that Deloitte needed evidence to support recoverability in the context of various revenue deals. Amongst the list of revenue deals was the transaction with Vidient, in relation to which Mr Murray noted:

> *"...although we have been provided with a balance sheet – they are a loss-making company, albeit with $3m of cash at 30 September 2009, with a net asset position that is only supported by that cash balance. Based on their cash burn I am not sure they would have enough to pay this deal as at 31/12/09. Certainly not without using all cash reserves, which I would expect they would be reluctant to do. Unless they obtain further funding I cannot see how they can pay within the 45 days. Can you please provide the rationale for the recoverability of this deal."*

2916. Mr Pao agreed that Deloitte's summary was fair. As noted previously, he also agreed that the answer to Deloitte's question regarding how Vidient was going to pay within the 45 days was that Vidient was going to use the funds it received from Autonomy under the Vidient OEM agreement and from any other sales it made (although he did not identify any such 'other sales'). Yet even then Autonomy said nothing, and the Autonomy OEM agreement was included in Deloitte's schedule of proposed misstatements, pending evidence that the revenue from Vidient was recoverable.

2917. Mr Welham informed Mr Chamberlain that Deloitte would "*need some cash on Vidient given heavily loss making business which we have evidence is burning cash quickly in order to remove this from misstatements schedule*". By 26 January 2010, someone from Autonomy had spoken with Mr Pao about making an early payment in respect of the Autonomy software. Mr Pao could not recall with whom he spoke, but

he accepted that he agreed to make an early payment as a favour to Autonomy so as to strengthen the business relationship. Mr Chamberlain relayed the message to the Deloitte team, telling them that Vidient would pay "*all or a large proportion over the next day or so,*" without mentioning that Autonomy was to pay Vidient a far larger sum within days.

2918. The Claimants contended that had Autonomy considered that the OEM agreements were genuine arms' length transactions, the finance department would surely have disclosed the Vidient OEM agreement as an answer to Deloitte's concerns about collectability, and ensured that the transaction was removed from what was called *"the misstatement list"*. Dr Lynch could provide no answer, stressing that he thought it unlikely that he knew of the misstatement list, still less Vidient's appearance on it. Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter, Mr Chamberlain and/or Dr Menell might have dispelled the suggestion: but not one of them gave evidence before me.

2919. Mr Rabinowitz submitted in his oral reply the obvious inference is that Autonomy withheld the information deliberately. With some hesitation, since disclosure was inevitable sooner or later (and was indeed made for the Q1 2010 review, as has been mentioned) I have concluded that that is the only explanation. The alternative that there was a complete failure within the finance department to grapple with Deloitte's enquiry seems to me to be too unlikely.

2920. Thus, I agree with the Claimants that, far from providing comfort and endorsement from the Defendants' point of view, the evidence relating to Deloitte's consideration of the first Vidient transaction further supports the Claimants' case.

Conclusions on first Vidient transaction

2921. In my judgment, the first Vidient transaction reinforces, and indeed highlights, the pattern of the reciprocal transactions by now set, with the refinement of splitting the two agreements over two quarters. In particular:

(1) The sale and purchase were reciprocal transactions for which the principal driver was revenue recognition to cover a shortfall in revenue compared to forecast.

(2) They were orchestrated by Autonomy, and in particular by Mr Hussain and Mr Egan.

(3) No assessment of SmartCatch was made before Autonomy agreed to purchase rights under the Vidient OEM Agreement. The only assessment made was after the event and was equivocal. In reality, Autonomy had no pressing need to acquire SmartCatch on the last day of Q4 2009.

(4) There was no evidence that Autonomy ever did integrate SmartCatch into its Command and Control application, despite paying $3.15 million for the right to do so. The Defendants disparaged the evidence of Mr Humphrey that he would have expected to have been aware of any sales of the SmartCatch software and was not so. They stated that *"this was an exaggeration of his role"* and (as he acknowledged) *"although he was part of the Virage business in Cambridge, there were other parts of the business in the US in which he*

was not involved." But it seems to me more likely than not that had there been sales, he would, at (in effect) headquarters have come to hear at least something about it; and he did not.[327]

(5) Nor was there any evidence that Vidient ever deployed the Autonomy software it licensed under the Autonomy OEM agreement. The reality was that what was in the transaction for Vidient was the $525,000 'delta', and what was in it for Autonomy on its sale was revenue recognition.

(6) The separation of the two agreements constituting the first Vidient transaction was at the suggestion of Autonomy, and its purpose was to give the appearance of separate transactions to protect revenue recognition and Deloitte's approval.

(7) The decision not to tell Deloitte about the Vidient OEM agreement during Deloitte's review of Q4 2009 was in order to safeguard revenue recognition, even at the cost of the transaction appearing on the *"misstatements list"*. The evidence relating to the involvement of Deloitte in this regard further undermines the Defendants' case.

2922. The accounting treatment of the first Vidient transaction was improper. As in the case of the first and second VMS transactions, it follows, in my judgment, that Autonomy should not have recorded revenue on the sales to Vidient. Autonomy should instead have: recorded the net cost in relation to the first Vidient sale and purchase, totalling $525,000, as an expense in Q1 2010.

2923. I deal with the issue as to the Defendants' knowledge of both Vidient transactions after briefly addressing the second Vidient transaction.

The second Vidient transaction – Q3 2010/Q4 2010

2924. The second Vidient transaction took place in Q3 2010/Q4 2010 and was, similarly to the first, comprised of:

(1) a sale by Autonomy to Vidient of additional Autonomy software and IDOL functionalities, and also a one-year extension of the term of the existing Autonomy OEM agreement, for which the licence fee was $2 million plus $100,000 for one year of second-line support; and

(2) the purchase by Autonomy from Vidient of further rights in respect of SmartCatch under a software distributor agreement, for which Autonomy agreed to pay a non-refundable prepayment of $2.31 million.

2925. Thus, again much as in the first Vidient transaction, Vidient was to be paid by Autonomy more than it was to pay Autonomy, the 'delta' this time being $210,000; and, again as in the first Vidient transaction, Autonomy's payment to Vidient was due before Vidient's payment to Autonomy was due.

[327] Mr Humphrey was obviously proud of Virage's own product, and his evidence was that SmartCatch offered no more and was no better than Virage's existing product, though in cross-examination Dr Lynch branded the latter *"useless"*. Dr Blanchflower agreed that SmartCatch was better. I have taken into account Mr Humphrey's antagonism to the purchase and to being undermined but nevertheless regard his evidence as reliable confirmation, in the absence of contrary evidence, that in the event no sales were effected.

2926. I need not spend as long on this second Vidient agreement. Suffice it to say that I am satisfied that:

(1) The sale by Autonomy was driven by Autonomy's imperative to generate further revenue for Q3 2010 to meet targets. On the last day of the quarter, Mr Hussain directed Mr Egan and Mr Mooney to:

> "*...pull out all the stops on vidient and the other 2 deals we talked about. If you can hit $5m it would be great but $4m is fine*".

(2) Mr Pao was not planning to purchase further software from Autonomy until he was approached by Mr Mooney of Autonomy close to the end of Q3 2010, and as far as Mr Pao could recall, no one from Autonomy had contacted him about purchasing further rights to SmartCatch.

(3) As of mid-2010, Vidient was still a loss-making business and its cash reserves had dwindled to a little over $1 million. Mr Pao explained in re-examination that he knew he would eventually run out of money and had to try to line up potential buyers of Vidient.

(4) The fees of $2.1 million payable under the OEM amendment were twice Vidient's available cash as at June 2010. Mr Pao admitted in cross-examination that he "*really needed their [Autonomy's] money to be able to finance this*" and that he would not have entered into the amendment if he did not know that Autonomy was going to purchase further rights to SmartCatch. It goes beyond that, in my view, because such an agreement would not have been proportionate or realistic otherwise, as well as it being inconceivable that Mr Pao would have entered into an agreement to pay more than twice Vidient's available cash reserves without a sufficient assurance – whether (in Mr Pao's words) in the nature of "*a handshake and a discussion with Mike (Mooney)*" or otherwise – that Autonomy was going to put it in funds in time to pay the instalments. Mr Pao repeatedly asserted that Autonomy did not know he was dependent on Autonomy purchasing further rights to SmartCatch to enter into the OEM amendment. I do not accept this. It is plain that the reason Mr Mooney and Mr Pao did not agree equal payment terms, as recorded in the exchanges of 30 September 2010, was to ensure that Vidient was paid first.

(5) The two sales agreements were reciprocal. As in the case of the first Vidient agreement, the coupled agreements were deliberately put into different quarters by Autonomy to give the appearance that they were independent, arm's length transactions in order to assist with revenue recognition.

(6) Save for Autonomy's desire to generate further revenue in Q3 2010, neither party therefore had any apparent reason to enter into a further deal.

(7) The second Vidient transaction was improperly accounted for. Deloitte's approval was on a false basis and in ignorance of the true reciprocal nature of the agreements and Vidient's inability to fund its purchase without the sale proceeds from Autonomy.

Accounting treatment of the Vidient transactions

2927. I agree with the Claimants that:

(1) The linked sale and purchase transactions ought to have been considered together in order to determine their substance and appropriate accounting treatment.

(2) From the matters set out above, it is clear that, in each case, the linked sale and purchase were not independent, arm's length transactions, and it was not possible to understand the substance and commercial effect of one agreement without regard to the other.

(3) Further, IAS 18 §14(d) was not satisfied because no economic benefits flowed to Autonomy.

2928. It follows that Autonomy should not have recognised any revenue on its sales to Vidient and should instead have recorded the net cost in relation to the second Vidient sale and purchase, a total of $237,909, as an expense in Q4 2010.

The Defendants' knowledge of improper accounting of the Vidient transactions

2929. In the circumstances described above, I am satisfied that Mr Hussain had "guilty knowledge" in respect of both Vidient transactions. The position in respect of Dr Lynch requires more analysis. Dr Lynch maintained that his involvement in both Vidient transactions was peripheral, and that he was not involved in negotiating or accounting for the purchase or sales. He drew particular support from an email dated 22 October 2010 which he sent to Mr Ganesh Vaidyanathan of Autonomy in response to a request for his approval of payments to Vidient, in which he had stated:

> *"I know nothing about this and so can't comment let me find out from the relevant people. I'm sure it's fine I have just been out of the loop."*

2930. He was adamant, however, that there was nothing wrong with the transactions. His evidence in his witness statement was:

> *"To my knowledge, the purchase made good commercial sense.*
>
> *...*
>
> *At the time, I would have expected Deloitte to review the purchases and sales as part of their quarterly audit review, and to agree an appropriate accounting treatment with the Finance Department. I had no reason to suspect that there were any material issues with the accounting. I now know that Deloitte were satisfied with the accounting treatment for both purchases and sales."*

2931. Further, Mr Hill submitted in his oral closing submissions on behalf of Dr Lynch that the Claimants had not challenged Dr Lynch's evidence that this was his understanding

at the time and had instead focused on what the relevance to the decision making process of his commercial understanding can have been if he had not been involved at all in that process. This point was developed into the submission on his behalf that having cross-examined Dr Lynch on the premise that since he had not been involved his commercial view was irrelevant, they could not now turn back and rest their case on an allegation that in fact he was involved. It was submitted for him that it was *"impossible to understand"* how in such circumstances a fraud case could be pursued against him in respect of these transactions.

2932. This was bold but, in my judgment, not accurate. Although sometimes perhaps too apt to ask Dr Lynch about his views on emails to which he was not party, Mr Rabinowitz did cross-examine Dr Lynch on his involvement, and the fact that he also asked questions on the alternative hypothesis that he was not involved does not detract from that.

2933. Amongst the points that emerged from that cross-examination were that:

(1) The email of 22 October 2010 referred to in paragraph 2929 above can only have referred to the second Vidient transaction, and not the first.

(2) Dr Lynch accepted that he may have been aware from one of Mr Hussain's *"prospect lists"* that Autonomy was looking to recognise revenue from a sale to Vidient at the end of Q4 2009, and probably also from an email and schedule sent to him by Mr Hussain on 29 December 2009 stating *"Frank Pao's [company] said yes $1.5m"*.

(3) On 29 December 2009 Mr Pao requested assistance from Mr Mooney and Mr Egan (in the absence of the *"PR person"*) on a press release to be issued concurrently with the OEM agreement, and Mr Mooney sent a *"first stab"* to Dr Lynch, who responded with some changes (pruning the draft considerably) on 31 December 2009 stating:

> *"something like this would be acceptable…pls do not forward directly from me"*.

(4) Dr Lynch explained that the reason he did not want to have drafts forwarded directly from him was simply because he did not want Mr Pao to know that he was *"the one that's nobbling his press release"*.

(5) When it was put to him that he was thus aware of the simultaneous negotiation and agreement of the sale of Autonomy software and the purchase of SmartCatch, and that he had been able to and did review the press release (twice) in the light of that and his knowledge of their basic content, he resorted to repetition that, except for the press release, he had *"very little to do with the deal"*. I formed the impression that he baulked at a denial because what was put to him was true.

(6) Dr Lynch said he would not *"explicitly"* have known that Autonomy was paying Vidient a 'delta', but it may be that he could have worked it out from email exchanges he saw. Again, I formed the impression that he was aware of

the broad structure, including the payment of some form of 'delta', even if not of the precise details.

(7) He felt able to tell me categorically that *"the contracts were not dependent on each other…they were independently executed contracts".* He was also content, after the usual introduction that he *"wasn't particularly involved at this level"*, that the reason for the purchase was that *"we wanted to have some technology that the market respected that worked".* He also told me that he was able to judge this because he *"had significant knowledge of this market and the technology",* having himself written the original video analytics code for the system. I accept that; but his certainty as to the reasons for the separation was based on his reading of the contracts, and his conclusion that as *"there was no clause that says, "I'm buying this because you're buying that", they were independently executed contracts"* was neither within his expertise nor correct; and the evidence was plainly self-serving.

(8) When pressed to accept that he must have known, at least when he made his first witness statement, that Deloitte had not been provided with and did not consider the Autonomy purchase agreement as part of their Q4 2009 review, Dr Lynch told me that his understanding was (it was not clear when this was formed) *"that they reviewed it – anything that was within two quarters",* and that non-disclosure would have been *"a futile approach".* But he had to accept that there was nothing to suggest that they had done.

(9) He told me that it was *"highly unlikely"* that he knew that Deloitte had put the first Vidient transaction on the list of potential misstatements, and doubted he even knew what such a list was at the time; but when shown that Mr Hussain had sent an email on 28 January 2010 (attaching the Q4 2009 Audit Committee pack) to Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter expressly alerting them to the fact that Vidient was in a list of *"judgemental errors"* and that *"we can get it down to $1m or so from the current $4m – Vidient cash plus the Italian deal is being worked on to remove"* his response was to the effect that all he had been asked about was a list of misstatements not judgemental errors and that he was not very familiar with these things. (This lacked conviction and credibility. Mr Hussain would not have been emailing Dr Lynch in these terms unless Dr Lynch was familiar with, and involved in, these sorts of matters.)

(10) A few days later, Dr Lynch approved the payment of $3.15 million to Vidient; he must have understood that the payment was going to fund Vidient's multi-million-dollar linked purchase of Autonomy software.

(11) When it was put to him that there was no evidence that Autonomy had either used or sold SmartCatch by September 2010 he said his understanding, based on Dr Menell having (apparently) told him was that it had been used *"in some covert surveillance applications",*[328] was that it had been.

2934. My strong impression overall was that, although he was not involved in the day to day details, Dr Lynch was well aware of the salient aspects of and true reason for both sets of Vidient transactions. Knowledge on his part of the fact and purpose of the

[328] Dr Lynch referred in his first witness statement to a sale *"as part of a classified solution for use in Afghanistan".*

transactions was taken as read by Mr Hussain. He knew they were proposed as part of the route to meeting revenue forecasts; that they had been negotiated and concluded together; that they had then been presented to Deloitte as separate transactions; that their presentation as separate transactions was fundamental to revenue recognition; that Deloitte had expressed concern in that regard; that the proposed solution was to ensure payment by Vidient; that Vidient was a small company and that Deloitte considered collectability an issue; that the payments by Autonomy to Vidient he approved was the means of funding repayment; that insofar as there was any evidence at all of sale or use before the second Vidient transaction it was limited to a reference by Dr Menell about a single classified sale. He had no explanation why none of this was set out in his witness statements, except to suggest that the Claimants had been critical of the length of his witness statement as it was.

2935. The question then is whether, with that knowledge, he also knew that revenue recognition was not justified. In my judgment, he did, despite his insistence in cross-examination that if the contract did not contain express language of direct linkage they were not so in accounting terms. He knew the transactions were linked in the sense that they were not independent but inter-dependent; and that this was fatal to revenue recognition. In my judgment, he had 'guilty knowledge.'

RT 5: EMC Corporation - Q3 2010

2936. Towards the middle of August 2010, Mr Hussain provided Dr Lynch with a revenue update indicating that, in order to reach its revenue targets for Q3 2010, Autonomy needed to close another large deal "*plus one at $5m and we should be ok*".

2937. The Claimants contended that Autonomy entered into reciprocal transactions with EMC to generate the required recognised revenue. In bare outline:

(1) In Q3 2010, Autonomy purchased computer software and hardware from EMC under an order letter dated 29 September 2010 which provided for the shipment of hardware and software to Las Vegas, Sacramento, Boston and London. The London order was subsequently cancelled, and the claim relates only to the US hardware purchase which totalled $8,947,386 plus sales tax ($9,627,894 in total). Payment was due on 30 October 2010.

(2) At the same time (on 30 September 2010) there were two sales by Autonomy of software to EMC. One such sale was pursuant to a fifth amendment of an agreement dated 26 February 2004 between an Autonomy group company, Verity Inc ("Verity") and a subsidiary of EMC called RSA Security LLC. This was referred to as the RSA amendment. The RSA amendment was not impugned. The impugned transaction comprised a sale of OEM rights made by Autonomy's subsidiary, Verity, to EMC. The agreement was comprised in a Sixth Amendment to a Verity OEM agreement entered into on 14 February 2002[329], and was referred to as "the Sixth Amendment". The effect of the Sixth Amendment was to extend licences EMC had acquired from Autonomy from

[329] The Verity OEM agreement granted EMC rights to use certain Verity software for the development of EMC's software application programmes and to distribute the software as an embedded component of those programmes. As implicit, the OEM agreement had been subject to a number of successive amendments.

June 2012 to June 2015. The fee was $5,007,000 plus a support fee of $250,350.

(3) The net effect of the US hardware purchase and the Sixth Amendment was that Autonomy was to pay EMC $8,947,386 (before tax) and EMC was to pay Autonomy $5,257,350. Autonomy netted off the amounts due to Verity Inc (in respect of the Sixth Amendment and the separate RSA amendment) against the amounts due to Autonomy Inc for the US hardware purchase. Autonomy paid EMC the difference of $3,627,954 in November 2010.

2938. The Claimants' case is that:

(1) As regards the sale to EMC: the only reason EMC agreed to purchase more software and extend the term of its licence at that time was because Autonomy agreed to overpay for its purchase of hardware (and related software and services) from EMC. No extension of the term of its licence was yet necessary in circumstances where (a) under the Fifth Amendment to the OEM Agreement (in June 2009) its existing licence still had two years of the term remaining and in any event, (b) in June 2010 Mr Di Silvestro of EMC had told Autonomy that EMC had *"not used or distributed the software covered under"* the Fifth Amendment. This was confirmed in summer 2011 when Autonomy's maintenance renewal department asked EMC to renew the support services under the Sixth Amendment. Mr Di Silvestro of EMC responded by email dated 9 August 2011 that EMC had no plans to do so because the Sixth Amendment *"was a component of the swap transaction last year, and we do not use the software."* The sale pursuant to the Sixth Amendment lacked a genuine commercial rationale and therefore lacked economic substance.

(2) As regards the purchase from EMC: although RT5 differed from the other impugned reciprocal transactions in that the Claimants did not contend that Autonomy's purchase from EMC was of goods that Autonomy did not need and accepted that the hardware and related software was for use in its data centre, that purchase was at significantly more than fair value. The Claimants submitted that this is obvious from the contemporaneous material:

(a) Mr Sullivan expressed concern about the price EMC was proposing to charge Autonomy in an email to Mr Hussain on 28 September 2010. He told Mr Hussain that EMC was "*trying to charge a very heavy premium to our normal prices. Still the overall price is 20% below list but much higher than what we would normally pay. Will fill you in in the AM*".

(b) Dr Lynch suggested that this was just part of a negotiation, but the price of $10 million that Mr Hussain had mentioned on 24 September 2010 to EMC's Mr Harry You was more or less the price set out in Mr Sullivan's email to Dr Menell and Mr Hussain seeking their approval to place the order.

(c) Dr Lynch then suggested that Autonomy had still managed a "*good reduction on the list price*". That was clearly not the case in

circumstances where, as Mr Sullivan noted in his email, the price was <u>much</u> higher than Autonomy would normally pay. There is no obvious explanation for why Autonomy would pay so much more than normal, other than to incentivise a reciprocal purchase by EMC.

(3) Further, in view of the fact that Autonomy received no cash (on a net basis) from the round-trip transaction with EMC, no economic benefits flowed to Autonomy, thus precluding the satisfaction of the revenue recognition criteria under IAS 18 §14(d).

(4) It follows that Autonomy should not have recognised the revenue on the Sixth Amendment.

2939. The Defendants' case is that there was a commercial rationale for both EMC's purchase from Autonomy and its sale to Autonomy, they were genuine sales at fair value, and they were not 'reciprocal' at all:

(1) As regards the sale to EMC: EMC was a sophisticated and reputable purchaser. The Claimants did not suggest any impropriety on EMC's part. The Claimants had provided no reason or evidence at all why EMC would have been prepared to be involved in doubtful and uncommercial dealings, as was the unstated but inevitable implication of the Claimants' case. As Dr Lynch put it in the course of his cross-examination:

> *"Let's just work this through. So your theory – so remember hardware isn't profitable at the same level as software. So in order – so the margin that EMC would have made on the hardware would have been perhaps $1 million of profit, so it's not – it doesn't make any sense. They would have sold us the hardware but only made $1 million, and then they'd have to send 5 million on software. So, again, when you actually think about it, putting aside the fact that EMC is a large, perfectly respectable company, it just doesn't make any sense."*

(2) A demonstration that the purchase was genuine was provided by the fact that on 31 July 2012 EMC opted to renew the licence for a further 6 years until 30 September 2018. There are no proper grounds for impugning the sale of software licences by Autonomy to EMC.

(3) As regards Autonomy's purchase from EMC: the computer equipment purchased by Autonomy was for equipment it needed for use in its own data centres (and indeed the Claimants did not suggest otherwise, see below) and the price Autonomy negotiated to pay was at a 22% discount to list price, and thus (*per* Dr Lynch) at *"better than fair value because it's at a discount to the list price"*.

My assessment

2940. I accept that the Claimants' case implicitly implicates EMC. No one who had worked for EMC gave evidence. I do not think it appropriate, and it is not necessary, to make final findings in such circumstances.

2941. Nevertheless:

(1) It is by no means easy to understand what reason EMC had to purchase an extension of a licence which it did not need for software it twice confirmed it did not use.

(2) It does seem clear that the price paid by Autonomy for hardware, even though at a discount to list price, was much higher than Autonomy, as a valued repeat customer, would normally have expected to pay.

2942. Further, it seems clear that the impetus for the transactions at the time they were made was Mr Hussain's need at the end of Q3 2010 for recognised revenue to achieve forecast, and that was the reason for the twin transactions. In that regard:

(1) On 26 September 2010, Mr Hussain circulated a revenue summary to Dr Lynch, Mr Kanter and a number of others. The spreadsheet included a tab entitled "*forecast mrl*", which was a revenue forecast spreadsheet that Mr Hussain had prepared for Dr Lynch. The spreadsheet was divided into closed deals, large deals and deals on the right. Dr Lynch explained that Mr Hussain put together a "*sort of route which is his deals on the left, and then as things come out of the left, you put things in from the right*"; in other words, the deals on the right were brought in to cover any revenue shortfall in the event that any of the deals on the left fell away. Mr Hussain had included in the list of deals on the right a $10 million deal with EMC.

(2) The next day, 27 September 2010, Mr Hussain told Mr Egan that he "*really need[ed] db, bofa, va and one other (emc)!!*". Mr Hussain then asked Mr Sullivan and Mr Mooney if they had "*sent the sales contracts to emc*", to which Mr Sullivan replied "*Already discussed with Joel [Scott] and Mike [Mooney] separately. Contracts are being prepared but depend on what we sell etc…*".

(3) As is clear from these emails: (i) Autonomy needed a deal with EMC, among others, in order to meet its Q3 2010 revenue target, and (ii) as late as 27 September 2010, Autonomy had no clear understanding of what it was going to sell to EMC.

(4) Dr Lynch seemed reluctant to accept this in his oral evidence. He suggested that Mr Hussain was just 'overshooting' with Mr Egan and probably did not need all the deals he had listed. But Mr Hussain's email was only 4 days from the end of the quarter. By that point, it is likely that Mr Hussain would have known how much revenue was needed in order to meet Autonomy's targets; in any event, Mr Hussain reiterated to Mr Sullivan the next day, 28 September 2010, that he "*need[ed] EMC please And probably $2m more low margin*".

(5) Also on 28 September 2010, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Mooney, Mr Sullivan and Mr Scott setting out five different purchases that EMC was apparently looking at. There was no mention in the list of what became the Sixth

Amendment. Mr Hussain asked Mr Mooney and Mr Scott to send Mr Sullivan the purchase orders that they had already sent to EMC and said "*...MS [Mike Sullivan] – as agreed Billy's [Bill Scannell of EMC] team picks those that make up $6m but I want to identify deals that I can take to Harry [You]. Need that information tonight please*" (emphasis added). From Mr Hussain's email, it appears that an agreement had been reached whereby EMC would pick deals totalling $6 million, and that Mr Hussain was looking to pitch further deals to Mr You. That, at least, is what happened.

(6) The email from Mr Di Silvestro in the summer of 2011 stating that the Sixth Amendment was a component of the swap transaction and that EMC did not use the software is not easy to explain away and appears to confirm the Claimants' case.

(7) The Claimants' contention that it is further confirmed by last-minute efforts made by Mr Hussain to expand the deal that had already been agreed by adding three further purchases from EMC in return for EMC purchasing something from Autonomy, and Mr You of EMC's initial response that *"At this late stage, I think the only thing we can do is expand both sides of the current, basic deal"*[330] also seemed to me at least to invite serious questions of Mr You, and probably Mr Di Silvestro.

2943. As I say, these are not questions on which I consider it is necessary, appropriate or fair to provide a final answer on less than complete evidence and in the absence of a non-party from which no evidence has been provided. However, it does seem to me, on the evidence before me, that:

(1) The EMC transaction had attributes echoing, and followed the pattern which emerged from, the other reciprocal transactions I have addressed above.

(2) At the least, the high price paid by Autonomy, well in excess of what it would ordinarily have expected to pay, seems likely to have been what EMC required as an incentive to effect a transaction in such a rush simply to assist Autonomy to book revenue from it in Q3 2010 so as to meet its forecast. That, rather than any proper commercial rationale, is what appears to have driven the transaction.

(3) On the view expressed by Mr Di Silvestre that the Sixth Amendment was a component of a *"swap transaction"*, the Sixth Amendment and the US hardware purchase were linked and should have been assessed together to determine their substance and proper accounting treatment, with the result that no revenue would have been recognised.

2944. I do not think the fact that Deloitte approved the revenue recognition assists the Defendants. As the Claimants submitted, Autonomy did not inform Deloitte that the Sixth Amendment was a component of a reciprocal transaction and that EMC did not

---

[330] Though it is to be noted that later that day Mr Harry You appears to have had misgivings, saying *"I think we are fine with the current deal"* after Mr Hussain spelt out what he had in mind (*"Harry – I was thinking that I can find need for hardware for data centres at list price (expand the current purchase) if you were to find the need for the web content management software for your websites"*)

use the software to which it related. Nor did Autonomy tell Deloitte that the US hardware purchase was significantly overpriced in comparison to the price it would ordinarily expect to pay. Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence was that these matters would have been highly relevant to Deloitte's assessment of revenue recognition criteria in relation to the Sixth Amendment. Dr Lynch had no explanation for why "*highly relevant*" matters were withheld from Deloitte. The inference is that Mr Hussain's finance department deliberately withheld these matters because Mr Hussain appreciated that, if they were disclosed, Deloitte would not have concurred with Autonomy's accounting treatment of the Sixth Amendment.

The Defendants' knowledge of improper accounting of the EMC reciprocal transaction

Mr Hussain's knowledge

2945. Mr Hussain was at the centre of the EMC reciprocal transaction. He closely monitored Autonomy's revenues in Q3 2010. He identified the need for another revenue-generating transaction at $5 million in the middle of August 2010 and, as the end of the quarter approached, he stressed the need for the deal with EMC in order to meet Autonomy's revenue targets.

2946. He knew that the price Autonomy was paying for the EMC hardware (and related software and services) was a *"very heavy premium to our normal prices…much higher than we would normally pay"* (see paragraph 2938(2)(a) above). He nevertheless approved the US Purchases as described in an email to him and Dr Menell of 29 September 2010. It appears from an email from Mr Chamberlain to Mr Stephan circulated to both Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch that they gave their approval orally with 13 minutes to spare before the deadline.

2947. Mr Hussain then led a further effort to encourage EMC to enter into deals to buy <u>further</u> software from Autonomy in exchange for Autonomy making an <u>additional</u> purchase of hardware that Autonomy did not then need at a price that he knew to be significantly higher than the price Autonomy ordinarily paid EMC for comparable hardware.

2948. Mr Hussain must have appreciated in those circumstances that EMC entered into the Sixth Amendment, not because it had any genuine reason for extending the Fifth Amendment, but because Autonomy had agreed to pay over the odds for the US hardware purchase, and that the Sixth Amendment could not, therefore, give rise to any recognisable revenue because it lacked economic substance. I find that he did have 'guilty knowledge'.

Dr Lynch's knowledge

2949. Dr Lynch veered in his evidence between his desire to put forward observations which would rehabilitate the transaction and its approval by Deloitte and his main defence that he was not involved and any comment was conjecture or the product of analysis long after the event. Also, and this is a point of more general application, the diligence of his review of the documentation and his ability to recollect its content made it even more than usually difficult to determine what he had come to know and believe from what he knew and believed at the time. Not infrequently, his observations offered a glimpse of more contemporaneous knowledge than he was prepared to admit he had.

2950. As was often, indeed almost invariably, the case in my experience, Dr Lynch delivered his evidence in a calm, unruffled and articulate way which was impressive, and when set apart from the documentary evidence, convincingly delivered. For example, in this context, he was able to dismiss the suggestion that the fact that the transaction was done at the very end of the quarter was not in the least unusual: he assured me that nearly all Autonomy purchases were at the end of the quarter, because, so he told me, *"it's a negotiating point"* and further, *"the only time you know how much fire power you've got in the quarter is when you see whether the quarter is coming in…so…you'll have your spare capacity to buy things….".* But that was an attempt to extrapolate from a normal transaction and its timing as justification for a very different sort of transaction. It does not, in my view, explain the coincidence of the need for revenue and the urgency of the two transactions. I do not accept Dr Lynch' s suggested explanation.

2951. My overall assessment is:

(1) I would accept that Dr Lynch was not involved in the transaction day to day.

(2) He seemed to me reasonably clearly to be underplaying the extent of his involvement. For instance, he seemed reluctant to accept that he was aware of Autonomy's purchase from EMC, notwithstanding that Mr Hussain had forwarded him an email referring to an offer by EMC "*to sell $10m of hardware for our data centres for q3*", and that he approved the purchase by telephone on the last day of the quarter. He also questioned whether an email from Mr Hussain saying "*Need to talk to you about q3 emc deal and db*" referred to the deal with EMC in Q3 2010, suggesting that it might have been about Project Dynamo, even though Dr Lynch knew the parties were aiming for a Q4 close for Project Dynamo because that is what he had discussed with the CEO of EMC and told Mr Hussain.

(3) The contemporaneous documents show that Dr Lynch was aware of <u>both</u> sides of the reciprocal arrangement with EMC and that he was aware Mr Hussain was trying to find ways of incentivising EMC to enter into deals from which Autonomy could recognise revenue in Q3 2010.

(4) Moreover, it is improbable that Mr Hussain kept Dr Lynch informed of the Q3 2010 deal with EMC and his efforts to expand both sides of the existing deal, but concealed from Dr Lynch the fact that the Sixth Amendment – which formed part of the existing deal – had only come about because Mr Hussain had agreed to make overpriced purchases from EMC that Dr Lynch was going to be asked to approve, and did approve.

(5) Overall, I had the impression that Dr Lynch knew the general shape and purpose of the transactions at the time, and when giving his approval: and that he appreciated that the reason for both and their linkage was in reality the urgent need to show revenue.

2952. According to Dr Lynch's own evidence about the sorts of transactions he would have considered problematic, he cannot have regarded such an arrangement as in any way proper. Nor, as an intelligent CEO with more than a basic grasp of accounting, can he genuinely have believed that it was appropriate for Autonomy to recognise in full

revenue on a sale of Autonomy software which was induced by, and would not otherwise have taken place but for, an overpriced purchase by Autonomy.

Purchase and sale transactions with MicroTech comprising RT 6 in Q1 2011

2953. Another set of transactions which the Claimants alleged to have been reciprocal and driven by the need, late in the quarter, for recognised revenue to cover a shortfall on market forecast, took place some time later, in Q1 2011. Autonomy's counterparty was MicroTech, which Autonomy had by then used as a 'friendly VAR' in a number of impugned VAR transactions.

2954. The allegedly reciprocal transactions with MicroTech involved:

(1) Autonomy granting MicroTech the right to collect 98% of Autonomy's maintenance and support fees from Autonomy's end-user customer, Bank of America, in return for MicroTech purportedly providing 'backline' maintenance and support services[331] directly to, or for the benefit of, Bank of America (the "MicroTech Services Agreement"); and

(2) Autonomy selling MicroTech a licence to use the Autonomy software that ostensibly would allow MicroTech to provide these services (the "Autonomy Software Licence Agreement").

2955. The Claimants contended that there was no genuine intention on Autonomy's part to outsource the 'backline' maintenance and support services for Bank of America to MicroTech, and that this was a reciprocal transaction conceived by Mr Hussain, and implemented with the knowledge and approval of Dr Lynch, as a means of improperly generating revenue to ensure that Autonomy met its Q1 2011 revenue targets.

2956. As it was, Autonomy recognised the licence fee of $3,860,468 as revenue in Q1 2011. MicroTech was rewarded with a 'delta' of $450,389, representing the difference between what MicroTech was to receive under the MicroTech Services Agreement ($4,503,880) and what, in aggregate, MicroTech was to pay for the licence under the Autonomy Software Licence Agreement ($4,053,491, comprising the licence fee of $3,860,468 and an annual support fee of $193,023).

2957. The Claimants identified and relied on the following features in support of their claim:

(1) the absence of any contemporaneous documents demonstrating a bona fide reason for, or plan by, Autonomy to outsource 'backline' maintenance and support services to MicroTech;

(2) the absence of any explanation as to why, if Autonomy genuinely intended to outsource these services to MicroTech, the relevant paperwork was only produced and sent to MicroTech within the last 24 hours of Q1 2011;

---

[331] 'Backline support services' were defined in the *"Maintenance & Support Services Agreement"* between Autonomy Inc and MicroTech as including *"troubleshooting in conjunction with Bank of America in order to assist Bank of America with its support requests, coordinating with Autonomy to respond thereto, and timely responding to Bank of America's requests for telephone, email, or web-based support Services."*

(3) the fact that Autonomy never asked MicroTech to provide, and MicroTech never provided, any 'backline' maintenance and support services for Bank of America; and

(4) the fact that the reciprocal transaction was unwound shortly after the announcement of HP's acquisition of Autonomy.

2958. Dr Lynch claimed to have had *"no material involvement in this transaction."* His written closing submissions noted that the Claimants' pleadings and Further Information did not include any specific allegation of knowledge or involvement on the part of Dr Lynch; and that no basis for the allegation of knowledge was identified in his cross-examination either.

2959. However, Dr Lynch also asserted that he could see nothing in the arrangements on their face which would have alerted him to any impropriety: he would have considered it to be a straightforward commercial transaction in line with Autonomy's practice of delegating services work to its partners. In his view, the sale to MicroTech of the licence was to enable it to perform the support services; and there was nothing wrong in assigning to MicroTech the right to invoice customers directly for such services. He relied also on the evidence of Mr Steve Truitt adduced as hearsay evidence by the Claimants themselves as confirming that both the assignment agreement and the purchase of software from Autonomy were genuine commercial transactions.

2960. Dr Lynch dismissed the pattern of events after the transaction as simply showing that *"the arrangements did not operate as they were intended. Dr Lynch was not involved in this aspect."* Likewise, he depicted the arrangements made in September 2011, under which Autonomy and MicroTech executed agreements effectively cancelling the parties' obligations to each other, as *"not surprising where the arrangements had not worked out as originally intended, and BoA were continuing to pay Autonomy directly."* He noted that the Claimants made no claim for any transactional loss in respect of the transaction: it is relevant only to the FSMA and misrepresentation claims.

2961. Mr Hussain adopted Dr Lynch's position, noting in addition only that *"RT 6 is a peripheral claim, being modest in amount and it was unwound with no material impact on [Autonomy's] financial position."*

2962. In the circumstances, I consider it is sufficient for me to state my conclusions on the first limb (the allegedly reciprocal nature of the transactions) in summary form.

2963. As to the genesis and main driver of the transactions:

(1) I am satisfied that the sequence of schedules provided by Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch from 26 March 2011 demonstrated that (a) the revenue-generating side of the overall transaction was first referenced in a spreadsheet dated 25 March 2011 sent to Dr Lynch on 26 March 2011; (b) the deal was initially posted on the right of the schedule, signifying it was held in reserve and was not immediately envisaged for completion if deals on the left hand-side of the schedule proceeded as hoped; (c) the deal was only moved to the left of the schedule when deals on the left failed to eventuate; (d) only when moved to the left of the spreadsheet did the deal move (quoting the Claimants) *"from*

being a contingency plan to a necessity for Autonomy to satisfy its Q1 2011 revenue goals”; (e) the deal was conceived a few days before the end of the quarter.

(2) On 30 March 2011, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Scott, copying Mr Chamberlain, with the subject “*bofa*” saying “*MT [MicroTech] assignment. Let’s chat when you’re up, need to get the MT obligation to support sorted*”.

(3) Mr Scott testified at Mr Hussain’s criminal trial that either Mr Hussain or Mr Chamberlain had asked him to prepare two agreements with MicroTech: (i) an agreement appointing MicroTech to provide ‘backline’ maintenance and support services for the benefit of Bank of America (the MicroTech Services Agreement), and (ii) an agreement licensing to MicroTech the software that was ostensibly needed to provide those services (the Autonomy Software Licence Agreement).[332] Although I have reservations about Mr Scott’s evidence generally, I see no reason not to accept this part of it.

(4) Not until 30 March 2011 did Autonomy propose the arrangements to MicroTech: it seems that Mr Scott talked to Mr Steve Truitt sometime on the same day before sending him a draft of the proposed MicroTech Services Agreement as an attachment to an email timed at 20:44 on 30 March 2011. Even allowing for timing differences (it was some 8 hours earlier in California, which is where I take it that Mr Steve Truitt received the email) that gave MicroTech only hours to consider the agreement and the proposed purchase of the licence.

(5) The circumstances in which and the haste with which the agreement was concluded casts real doubt on its substance. Further, the MicroTech Services Agreement obliged MicroTech to have sufficient personnel trained in the features and functions of the relevant Autonomy software and to have procured office space and facilities for such personnel, ostensibly to allow MicroTech to be in a position to provide ‘backline’ maintenance and support services from the moment it entered into the agreement. I agree with the Claimants that it is difficult to see how MicroTech could have been in such a position in circumstances where it received the agreement stating these obligations a matter of hours before the agreement was due to be signed and MicroTech’s supposed service obligation was theoretically to be fully functioning. MicroTech did not even have access to the relevant Autonomy software until 31 March 2011.

2964. I also agree with the Claimants that the conclusion that the real rationale for the transactions was not for Autonomy to outsource ‘backline’ maintenance and support services, but to enable an apparent purchase by MicroTech of Autonomy software in respect of which Autonomy could (as it did) recognise revenue on Q1 2011, is reinforced by events after the agreements were concluded. In particular:

(1) Autonomy did not disclose the MicroTech Services Agreement to Deloitte. Mr Welham’s unchallenged evidence, which I accept, was that Deloitte were not

[332] From Mr Hussain’s email to Mr Scott on 30 March 2011, copied to Mr Chamberlain, in which Mr Hussain asked to speak with Mr Scott, the Claimants submitted, and I accept and find, that it is more likely that the direction came from Mr Hussain.

aware of the MicroTech Services Agreement when they reviewed Autonomy's revenue recognition of the Autonomy Software Licence Agreement.

(2) MicroTech never provided any 'backline' maintenance and support services for the benefit of, or directly to, Bank of America. There is also no evidence that Autonomy ever asked MicroTech to provide such services; and no evidence that MicroTech even set up the infrastructure needed to provide those services. Even so, Autonomy paid MicroTech $714,082 on 10 June 2011, notwithstanding that MicroTech had provided <u>no</u> 'backline' maintenance and support services to that point, and never provided such services thereafter.

(3) Shortly after HP's acquisition of Autonomy was announced on 18 August 2011, Autonomy and MicroTech unwound the reciprocal transaction. Thus:

(a) On 1 September 2011, MicroTech paid Autonomy, not the amount due under the Autonomy Software Licence Agreement ($642,674.59), the amount it had received from Autonomy in June 2011 ($714,082) in a circular flow of funds.

(b) Then, on 7 September 2011, Mr Scott sent letter agreements to Mr Steve Truitt terminating the entire arrangement and relieving MicroTech of any obligation to pay the outstanding fees under the Autonomy Software Licence Agreement. MicroTech was also relieved of any obligation to provide 'backline' maintenance and support services under the MicroTech Services Agreement and its right thereunder to invoice and/or collect fees was revoked.

(c) Autonomy then raised credit notes to MicroTech totalling $3,339,410, the amount of the fees MicroTech was due to collect from Bank of America pursuant to the MicroTech Services Agreement ($4,053,492) less the amount paid by MicroTech in September 2011 ($714,082).

2965. I have concluded that the MicroTech Services Agreement was the means of funding the Autonomy Software Licence Agreement: the two transactions comprising RT 6 were reciprocal and the objective of both was in the last hours of Q1 2011 to enable Autonomy to recognise revenue to cover a shortfall on forecast revenues that had become apparent at the end of 25 March 2011.

2966. It follows that Autonomy should not have recognised any revenue from the Autonomy Software Licence Agreement.

Defendants' knowledge

2967. As to the second limb, and the knowledge of the Defendants:

Mr Hussain

2968. Mr Hussain maintained the revenue spreadsheets I have referred to above. I am satisfied that he conceived and managed the process by which the MicroTech reciprocal transaction was put in place and directed Mr Scott to draft the two agreements.

2969. I accept the Claimants' submission that as an accountant, Mr Hussain cannot have been in any doubt that these agreements should have been considered together to understand their substance and to determine their appropriate accounting treatment. The fact that nevertheless, he signed a representation letter to Deloitte confirming Autonomy's accounting treatment of the Autonomy Software Licence Agreement without making any mention of the MicroTech Services Agreement supports my conclusion that he knew the two, if properly considered together, would be revealed to be linked in such a way as to cause Deloitte to characterise them as reciprocal. That would have undermined their real purpose.

Dr Lynch

2970. Dr Lynch, for his part, attempted to distance himself from the MicroTech reciprocal transaction in his witness statement and his oral evidence. However:

(1) Although initially during cross-examination he appeared reluctant to acknowledge that he was aware of a possible deal in Q1 2011 with MicroTech involving Bank of America, Dr Lynch eventually accepted that he was "*aware that something with Bank of America was happening with MicroTech*" and that Autonomy was proposing to sell something to MicroTech for around $3 million and to recognise revenue on that sale.

(2) It must have been obvious to Dr Lynch from the sequence of spreadsheets he received from Mr Hussain as briefly described above that the transactions were conceived and came to be relied on by Mr Hussain as the means of making good a shortfall on revenue forecasts.

(3) The Autonomy Software Licence Agreement and the MicroTech Services Agreement were, in Dr Lynch's words, "*obviously linked*" even if (as he maintained) *"not in the accounting sense"*. Dr Lynch offered no credible explanation for why Mr Hussain would have informed him about only one side of the arrangement with MicroTech and concealed the other.

(4) I accept the Claimants' submission that it is also unlikely that Mr Hussain would have agreed to Autonomy relinquishing some $4.5 million in fees from Bank of America without alerting Dr Lynch. Dr Lynch cannot maintain he was unaware of the MicroTech Services Agreement without insinuating that he was misled by Mr Hussain, but it is no part of Dr Lynch's case that Mr Hussain actually did mislead him.

2971. I have concluded on a balance of probabilities that Dr Lynch would have been informed by Mr Hussain or by Mr Chamberlain of the linked agreement with MicroTech, and its objective of funding MicroTech so that it could pay for the Autonomy software and earn a profit.

2972. I am satisfied that Dr Lynch would have appreciated that it was improper to recognise revenue on such an artificial reciprocal arrangement.

2972A. Accordingly, I have concluded that Dr Lynch, like Mr Hussain, had "guilty knowledge" of the improper accounting treatment of RT 6.

Overall Conclusion on Reciprocal transactions

2972B. My overall conclusion is that the Claimants have established their claims in respect of each of the impugned Reciprocal Transactions.

IDOL OEM

Summary of the Claimants' claims in relation to OEM

2973. The Claimants have brought claims against both Defendants under FSMA, under the Misrepresentation Act 1967 and in deceit, in relation to allegedly untrue or misleading statements in Autonomy's published information and representations made to HP in respect of a line of Autonomy's business called its *"Original Equipment Manufacturer"* or *"OEM"* business. Revenues from that business were variously described in Autonomy's published information, and it is the meaning perceived by the market and intended by Autonomy to be conveyed by the various descriptions which is at the nub of this aspect of the dispute.

2974. The classic characteristics of this line of business were that Autonomy sold licenses to Original Equipment Manufacturers or "OEMs", who then on-sold their products with Autonomy software embedded to third-party customers. Under the licences sold, OEMs were obliged to make payments to Autonomy in the nature of commission or royalty payments on each sale of equipment embedded with licensed Autonomy software. This generated a growing, reliable and recurrent revenue stream, which was in addition an especially high margin business because after the sale of the licence it required no further input from Autonomy.

2975. During the Relevant Period, Autonomy reported revenue arising from its OEM business using various terms: "*IDOL OEM*", "*OEM derived revenues*" and "*IDOL OEM derived revenues*" (collectively "IDOL OEM revenue"). In total, reported IDOL OEM revenue in this period amounted to $316.5 million.

2976. In cross-examination, Mr Apotheker told me that he:

> *"really liked this notion of the OEMs because much more than the resellers themselves, this was a highly scalable model. In particular, the way it was explained to me and the way I think it worked was that it was a multi-year, layered effort where you could generate more and more income from a given OEM over time with hardly any additional cost of sale. So I thought it was a very, very important part of the business model and a very smart one."*

2977. The Claimants submitted that:

(1) A reasonable reader of Autonomy's published information would have understood an OEM to be a software company, which then embedded IDOL into its own software products, and licensed those combined products to the OEMs' third party customers. A reader would not have supposed that a hardware supplier would be considered to be an OEM.

(2) Autonomy's presentation of OEM derived revenue in its published information gave the impression that it comprised (a) upfront development fees paid by OEMs for the right to embed Autonomy's IDOL technology into their own software products for subsequent licensing of those combined products to third parties or (b) ongoing royalty or other recurring payments from OEM partners to Autonomy in respect of the OEM's sales of their own software products, with IDOL embedded under licence, to their own customers[333].

(3) Accordingly, the understanding conveyed by the OEM metric was of (a) a (normally) recurring and predictable high-margin revenue stream which would grow over time as other software companies licensed their own software containing IDOL; and (b) broad acceptance of IDOL across the software industry.

(4) Dr Lynch's own comments about IDOL OEM revenue in Autonomy's published information reinforced the impression that IDOL OEM sales were sales of IDOL to be embedded in other software companies' products.

2978. According to the Claimants, the truth was very different, in that:

(1) a large proportion of revenues represented as OEM revenues arose from sales to *"companies which could not embed Autonomy software in their own software products"* and were thus generated from sales to persons not properly characterised as OEMs[334].

(2) The constituents of what was reported within what I shall refer to as "the OEM Metric" comprising IDOL OEM revenue as variously described[335] comprised, in addition to royalties (i) revenue from one-off sales of Autonomy software licences to customers that did not sell software and were not OEMs, (ii) revenue from one-off license sales for the purchaser's internal use only; and/or (iii) revenue from VAR sales, none of which therefore had any of the classic characteristics of OEM business.

(3) Such sales did not generate royalties or produce a reliable and recurring revenue stream, and they did not signify broad acceptance of IDOL across the software industry.

(4) Of the total of $316.5 million included within the OEM metric over the Relevant Period, around 80% of it (over $250 million) did not conform to Autonomy's description of it as OEM business because it lacked an essential quality of that business. The revenue was not generated by commission or royalty payment and thus lacked its reliable recurring nature, generated

[333] The usual royalty rate was presented as amounting to about 3% of the revenue from OEM partners' sales of their own product with embedded IDOL.

[334] The Claimants pleaded that *"In theory, OEMs were software companies (i.e. companies that licence software to third parties) that embedded Autonomy's IDOL software in their own software products"* and thus sales to "non-software companies" could not fall within the OEM metric

[335] As explained above, I use this expression to cover the various expressions used over time to denote the same revenue stream (*"OEM derived revenues", "IDOL OEM derived revenues"* and later simply (and revealingly) *"IDOL OEM"*).

without any further effort required of Autonomy, which made it especially attractive to investors in assessing Autonomy's business. Furthermore, the amount of revenues truly of that nature and properly classifiable as *"OEM"* business were in decline.

2979. The Claimants accepted, and it is common ground, that neither *"OEM"* nor *"OEM derived revenues"* (or cognate expressions) is a term of art; each is an expression that, in isolation, is capable of bearing different meanings. It was also common ground that Autonomy's reporting of the OEM metric was not covered by IFRS. However, the Claimants contended that by the same token, the market's understanding of the precise nature and scope of a given company's "OEM" business and revenue derived from it must be gained, not from a dictionary or financial lexicon, but from the way that the company chose to describe this aspect of its business in its published information.

2980. The Claimants relied in this regard on various express statements in Autonomy's published information which, contrary to the Defendants' case now, appeared invariably to describe OEMs as software companies. Thus, in its 2010 Annual Report, and Quarterly Reports for Q4 2010, Q1 2011 and Q2 2011 Autonomy described IDOL OEM as follows:

> *"IDOL OEM. IDOL OEM is where Autonomy's IDOL is embedded inside other software companies' products. IDOL is now embedded in most major software companies' products addressing most software vertical markets. This is a particularly important revenue stream as it generates ongoing business across the broadest product set possible, in addition to up-front development licences."*

2981. In Schedule 8 to the RRAPoC, the Claimants provided details relating to 68 transactions which they contended generated revenues wrongly included within the OEM metric. They did not ultimately pursue their case in respect of one of these[336]; and in an Appendix (Appendix 3) to their written closing submissions they provided short summaries of the 67 such transactions in respect of which they maintained their claims. They had provided a broadly similar appendix as part of their written opening submissions.

2982. They identified three broad categories or aspects of revenue which did not conform to the understanding (as described above) of the OEM metric which the Claimants contended was conveyed by Autonomy's published information, and which accounted for some $250 million out of total revenues of some $316.5 million described as "*IDOL OEM", "OEM derived revenues"* or "*IDOL OEM derived revenues"*:

    (1) Sales to non-software companies, including (a) a sale to Tottenham Hotspur of a solution to provide own-use functionality, and in particular *"functions at the level found in a Premiership football club's ordinary operations: CRM, ticketing, player analysis, retail, internet and web design"* and (b) government agencies who *"by definition"* would *"not sell anything to anyone"*;

---

[336] A transaction in Q2 2011 with Bloomberg.

(2) Sales that limited the purchaser's right to use Autonomy's software to internal use by the purchaser only, so that the purchaser would have neither the apparent intention nor the capability of embedding IDOL software for resale in their own products;

(3) Sales which could not properly be classified as giving rise to IDOL OEM revenue, because (a) the licence sale was associated with hosting transactions; or constituted (b) VAR sales where neither the VAR nor the end-user was a software company intending and licensed to embed IDOL technology into its own for onward sale, or (c) reciprocal transactions (for the same reasons) or (d) hardware sales, in each case being instances where (on the Claimants' case) the purchaser was not a software company with the ability and intention of embedding IDOL technology into its own technology for onward licensing to third parties.

2983. The Claimants contended that the Defendants were well aware of what the Claimants described as the *"striking mismatch between Autonomy's presentation and the truth"*. They contended that it must have been obvious to them both that the inclusion in the *"OEM metric"* of revenue which did not conform to the description, and did not have the valuable characteristics of 'true' OEM revenue, resulted in the metric being untrue and misleading and made this aspect of Autonomy's business (and since it was a significant business line, Autonomy as a whole) seem more valuable than it was.

2984. Further, although their FSMA claim in this context was based on untrue or misleading statements, rather than omissions and deliberate concealment, the Claimants relied on what they presented as Autonomy's repeated concealment from HP of details relating to the largest transactions allocated to the OEM business as confirming the Defendants' guilty knowledge of the misleading or untrue presentation of IDOL OEM revenue.

2985. According to the Claimants, Autonomy's Quarterly Reports throughout the Relevant Period would cite only transactions with software companies as giving rise to OEM derived revenues, and (conversely) did not identify any transactions as giving rise to such revenue which did not conform to the Claimants' narrow definitions of the disputed expressions, even where such transactions were of substantially greater value or prestige than the transactions that Autonomy did choose to highlight.[337] The Claimants provided the following illustrative examples:[338]

(1) In Q1 2009, Autonomy allocated to IDOL OEM revenue $3,251,000 from a deal with the Ministry of Defence (OEM2). This was a much larger deal than two of the three named deals: Symantec (no revenue allocated to IDOL OEM revenue) and Proof Point ($230,000).

(2) In Q1 2010, Autonomy allocated to IDOL OEM revenue $8,915,000 from a deal with Bank of America (OEM21). This was a far larger deal than all of the named deals combined: Adobe ($750,000), McAfee ($500,000 and $248,000) and Siemens ($72,000).

[337] The Claimants also contended that the Defendants were involved directly in the choices: and see as to their involvement and knowledge paragraphs 3208 to 3219 below.
[338] Revenue figures are taken from Mr Hussain's spreadsheets. The size of the transactions was not reported in the Quarterly Reports – just the customer names.

(3) In Q1 2011, Autonomy allocated to IDOL OEM revenue $6,448,000 from a deal with Tottenham Hotspur Football Club (OEM48). This deal was almost four times larger than one of the named deals: Symantec[339] ($1,400,000).

2986. The Claimants acknowledged that Deloitte had reviewed these passages and indeed the constitution of the OEM metric in every quarter (though, as elaborated in paragraphs 3168 to 3170 below, the Claimants did not accept that Deloitte's advice on the classification of that revenue as IDOL OEM revenue was sought or given). However, they were keen to stress that in both their FSMA and their misrepresentations claims the *"fraud that has been alleged is not at its heart an accounting fraud"*. They presented each as a claim *"where the fraud involved was straightforward"*, and not one which involved the assessment of accounting standards or matters of accounting judgement. The Claimants submitted that the Defendants could not, therefore, *"hide behind anything said or done by Deloitte."*

Summary of the Defendants' defence in relation to OEM

2987. The Defendants disputed the Claimants' claims root and branch. They submitted that there was no basis for the Claimants' *"artificially narrow definition"* of what constituted an OEM, nor for their *"unsustainably restrictive"* limitation of the scope of revenues which could properly be included within the description in Autonomy's published information of the *"OEM Metric"*.

2988. In particular their position was that:

(1) The Claimants had adopted an unduly restrictive approach to what constituted an *"OEM"*. According to the Defendants, there was no basis for confining the expression *'OEM'* to a company whose business included licensing software to third parties and which has the intention and capability of embedding IDOL software into its own software products for licensing to those third parties, as the Claimants have sought to do.

(2) Nor was there any basis for restricting the revenues properly included within the OEM metric to upfront fees and royalties paid to Autonomy by the OEM itself, as the Claimants have also sought to do.

2989. According to the Defendants, such restrictions were not justified by anything said in published information by Autonomy, and the market to which such published information was addressed would not have perceived the OEM metric to be so restricted. In particular:

(1) Dr Lynch's view was that any organisation that develops a software solution for its industry and then sells it on to others in the industry could reasonably be considered an OEM, and the Claimants' attempts to restrict OEMs to software companies was *"an artificial exercise"*. Dr Lynch accepted that *"obviously the vast majority of software in the world is done by software*

[339] This is an impugned OEM transaction (OEM55). The Claimants contended that its mention in the relevant Quarterly Report, along with the mentions of the Q2 2009 deal with VMS (OEM4) and the Q2 2011 deals with Rand (OEM60), McAfee (OEM58) and OpenText (OEM59) in the relevant Quarterly Reports, would not have given rise to suspicion in the same way as mention of the concealed transactions mentioned in the main text above as the relevant named customers were very obviously software companies.

companies", and agreed that OEMs in the sector of interest to Autonomy would predominantly be software companies: but the Defendants' position[340] was thus that the category was not exclusive. The essential quality as he presented it, was the "*right to reprint*": the OEM is being given the right to produce or sell multiple copies of the software it acquires from Autonomy. In the context of Autonomy's business, Dr Lynch described an OEM as being:

> "*one that takes Autonomy's technology and builds it into something that it sells or gives to its customers, as opposed to a one-off sale*".

(2) As to the requisite quality required for revenues to be included within the OEM metric, Dr Lynch contended that commission/royalty payments from an OEM, albeit the paradigm, were not the only qualifying revenues: revenues from direct sales[341] to customers of Autonomy's OEMs for which the opportunity arose in consequence of the initial licence sales to the OEMs concerned (or to put it another way, for which the original OEM transaction was the springboard) were also properly classified as indirectly derived from the OEM relationship and could be and was properly described as *"OEM derived"* revenue within the 'OEM metric'.

2990. Dr Lynch, whose submissions were (as ever) adopted by Mr Hussain, did not shy away from the consequence that (as he put it in his first witness statement):

> *"Working out whether a sale was OEM-derived or not involved a qualitative judgment."*

2991. Further, the Defendants stressed that just as the meaning accorded to "OEM" was not unnatural and indeed fell within the ordinary usage of the term[342], so too the more extensive scope of their interpretation of *"OEM derived revenues"* was not contrary to any accountancy rule, and gave content and their ordinary meaning to the words used: and there was no basis for restricting the meaning of *"OEM derived revenue"* so as, in effect, to give no meaningful content to the word *"derived"*.

2992. They contended that the very purpose of the introduction of the word was to ensure inclusion of revenue *"derived"* from OEM business (including sales to a third-party customer of an OEM) as well as revenue from a direct sale to an OEM: the inclusion of the word "derived", which remained in the published information until Q3 2010, and (according to the Defendants) continued to inform market understanding after that date, necessarily connoted a wider category of revenues than merely those received

---

[340] In his closing submissions, Mr Hussain fully endorsed Dr Lynch's position and did not address the matter further, save for summarising his overall case in consequence as being that: *"'OEM' is not an accounting term and the approach taken by AU to categorising revenue as 'OEM' revenue was reasonable. Deloitte vetted the revenue that AU categorised as OEM to ensure that it was not presented misleadingly, and there is no basis for alleging fraud against Mr Hussain."*

[341] Especially *"upsells"* and *"PODS"* as to which see footnote 343 below.

[342] The OED defines OEM as an *"organisation that makes devices from component parts bought from other organisations"*. By contrast, Investopedia states that an OEM is *"traditionally defined as a company whose goods are used as* components *in the products of another company which then sells the finished item to users"*. In their Re-Amended Reply, the Claimants accepted the OED definition to be the usual one; but then also conceded that *"as a matter of general usage, the expression "OEM" is capable of referring to a transaction where a company makes a component or part-system that is used in another's product"*.

from the OEM itself as an upfront licence payment or ongoing royalty stream and captured further sales made possible (*"driven"*) by the initial OEM sale. Dr Lynch explained this in cross-examination as follows:

> "*The metric that we give as a management metric which is OEM-derived includes that revenue but also includes revenue which has been made possible by our OEM programme, but that may – well, it does include sales where the purchaser is not an OEM. So, for example, an upsell*."[343]

2993. The Defendants also drew attention to the fact that types of OEM described by Dr Lynch were similar to the types of OEM included in HP's own OEM business, and suggested that this reflected the ordinary usage of the expression. Thus HP's "*OEM Partnership*" brochure from March 2014 identified:

> *"…three types of OEM branding options to align with your go-to-market (GTM) requirements:*
> • ***Embedded*** *– Encapsulate HP-branded hardware components within your own branded product.*
> • ***Integrated*** *– Use HP hardware systems as the platform for an appliance or a vertically integrated solution loaded with your intellectual property, and you can brand the turnkey solution with your brand or ours.*
> • ***Private label*** *– Simply rebrand and sell an HP component "as-is" to your own customers."*

2994. Thus, in the Defendants' terminology at trial (though it is to be noted it was not deployed in the published information itself) *"Core"* or *"straight"* OEM business involved sales to an OEM with the "*right to reprint*": the OEM is being given the right to produce or sell multiple copies of the software it acquires from Autonomy. *"Derived"* OEM business extended to sales of Autonomy software generated or which were judged to have been made possible by that original OEM sale. The latter, so the Defendants contended, included both *"upsells"* and *"PODS"*. These comprised most of the so-called *"derived"* business.

2995. In Dr Lynch's Re-Amended Defence (at paragraph 160.3) it was pleaded that:

> *"Autonomy provided information as to its OEM derived revenues in its quarterly accounts. The relevant revenues included both transactions directly with OEMs, sales of additional functionality to the end- user ("upsell") either directly or through the OEM as a reseller, and (in particular where BEA, IBM or SAP[344] were the relevant OEM) sales of drop in solutions ("PODS") which end-users would buy to function with the Autonomy /OEM product."*

[343] In this context, an *"upsell"* is a sale of additional functionality or capacity, either to the OEM itself to sell on to its customers or a direct sale of additional functionality or capacity to the OEM's customers (an "end-user" in the Claimants' terminology, which I shall adopt). Another type of sale direct to the OEM's customers were *"PODS"* (short for product oriented drop-in solutions): these were sales of additional software direct to an OEM's customer.

[344] BEA Systems, SAP and IBM were/are all large software companies.

2996. In practical and numerical terms, the dispute between the parties in respect of all the various claims brought by the Claimants in respect of the presentation of Autonomy's OEM business focused on whether those categories could or could not properly be classified as falling within the OEM metric as generating OEM derived revenues; and then on whether the Defendants believed in the accuracy of the published information about the OEM revenues.

2997. As to the latter point, Dr Lynch emphasised that, in any event, he had not personally been involved in the classification or calculation of OEM revenues and had relied on the finance department and Deloitte. His avowed understanding was that the OEM metrics were fair and accurate and the revenues included within them were understood by the market; and he was reassured in that belief and in his approach by Deloitte's careful review, and the fact that at no time had they ever suggested that the descriptions or figures were wrong or misleading. Dr Lynch submitted that Deloitte's close involvement and their approval of the categorisation of the transactions confirmed him in his belief that the OEM metric and the figures given in Autonomy's published information were not misleading in any way.

2998. Further as to this:

(1) Deloitte were familiar with the transactions themselves, having tested all of Autonomy's large revenue deals as part of their quarterly audit review. This involved testing all transactions over $1m, and a sample of smaller ones. According to the Claimants, most of the impugned OEM transactions (51 out of 67) fell into the $1m plus category; thus, the vast majority were tested by Deloitte.[345]

(2) Deloitte reviewed and approved each quarterly press release and Annual Report. Similarly, Mr Welham explained that somebody from Deloitte (usually Mr Welham himself) listened in to each of the earnings calls in the Relevant Period. Thus, Deloitte was aware of all of the material from which the Claimants contended their restrictive definition of OEM derived revenues had been taken.

(3) There was a quarterly testing process to agree the metrics used in the earnings release. Deloitte took the spreadsheets classifying revenue prepared by Autonomy's finance department, and incorporated them into one of its own working papers.[346] Illustrating Deloitte's approval of the classifications, in one such paper, a Deloitte tick-mark appears against the heading for the column "OEM upsell", directing the reader to a note drafted by Deloitte stating that:

> "*The OEM Upsell category includes hosted license deals that are hosted on OEM customer data-centers. This is considered reasonable for including as OEM driven revenues.*"

---

[345] An example of a working paper testing one of the impugned OEM transactions, with Tottenham Hotspur Plc, though it does not address the classification as OEM (that was the subject of a separate exercise), was relied on to demonstrate Deloitte's awareness of the terms of the relevant transaction.

[346] Mr Welham confirmed that the whole of the document was a Deloitte working paper.

(4) Deloitte understood that the IDOL OEM category published by Autonomy included upsells and PODS, as Mr Welham confirmed. Mr Welham gave the following evidence on this point:

> *"Q. ... So someone within Deloitte has specifically considered this particular category, the "OEM upsell" category in relation to hosted licence deals, hosted on OEM customer data centres and concluded that this is considered reasonable, correct?*
>
> *A. Well, the preparer of this spreadsheet has, yes."*

He went on to explain that the preparer of the spreadsheet, including the tickmarks, was Deloitte.

(5) On a related note, Mr Welham said that if he had heard anything he thought was misleading on an earnings call, he would have raised the matter, in the first instance with the audit partner. Mr Welham did not raise any such issue for any of the calls he listened to; nor, as far as he was aware, did anyone else at Deloitte.

2999. In any event, the Defendants concluded, the Claimants' case *"has the whiff of hindsight"*. Although now keen to stress the importance of the OEM metric, the Claimants had not attached such importance at the time:

(1) It was not an IFRS figure, and did not form part of the financial statements. As Autonomy's published information made clear, it was a voluntary supplemental metric provided for background information, to assist in understanding the company's business. Autonomy explicitly stated that the categorisation involved qualitative estimates.

(2) The effect of any misclassification, if established, would be hard to gauge, since any reduction in the OEM metric would be offset by an increase in some other metric that might be equally attractive for investors. As Dr Lynch put it,

> "*there's no dispute that these are actual sales. So if you take them out of OEM revenues and you put them into cloud, then investors would get excited that cloud was growing even faster*."

(3) It was attractive to HP to know that Autonomy's technology had been adopted in some large OEMs, but Mr Apotheker agreed that "*the absolute number wasn't of big interest.*"

3000. In further support of their position that the Claimants' approach was manufactured, the Defendants also pointed out that the transactions the Claimants now complain were misdescribed as "OEM" include contracts that were in the data room during due diligence. They contended that HP's advisers analysed these contracts, knew that they were categorised as OEM, but raised no complaint about misclassification. Further, this gave rise to the question whether the Claimants could show that they had

reasonably relied on the OEM business having a narrow scope such as to exclude from it transactions of the sort that were actually made available to them as being within it.

3001. The Defendants dismissed the misrepresentation claims as similarly contrived, and in answer to the Claimants' central claim stressed especially that Autonomy's OEM derived revenues were indeed *"highly likely"* to be recurring and no false depiction had been given at any stage.

The Claimants' various causes of action in respect of OEM business

Summary of FSMA claim in relation to statements made about the OEM business

3002. The Claimants' FSMA claim is based necessarily on statements made in Autonomy's published information. In its published information, Autonomy described revenues from this line of business initially as *"OEM derived revenues"*[347]*,* later as *"IDOL OEM derived revenues"*[348] and lastly as *"IDOL OEM"*. (I shall refer to them uniformly as *"OEM derived revenues"*).

3003. The Claimants' FSMA case in this regard is that HP (and through it, Bidco) (a) reasonably relied on the presentation of OEM derived revenues in its published information when purchasing Autonomy[349] (b) was thereby misled and (c) has suffered loss as a result.

3004. Mr Rabinowitz summarised the essential elements of the OEM claim under FSMA in his oral closing submissions as follows:

> *"So what matters is to identify what it was that Autonomy told the market about its IDOL OEM revenue, to consider whether that reflected the reality about what was being included by Autonomy in that category and to consider also, if this is the case, whether the Defendants knew that what was being said by Autonomy in its published information did not reflect the reality of what Autonomy was in fact including in this category."*

3005. I address these FSMA claims in respect of Autonomy's presentation of its OEM business in more detail in paragraphs 3030 to 3247 below.

Summary of the Claimants' direct misrepresentation claims in relation to OEM

3006. In addition to their FSMA claim, the Claimants also brought claims in deceit and/or under s. 2(1) of the Misrepresentation Act 1967. However, the Claimants only claimed losses under these claims in respect of the shares and share options which each of the Defendants sold to Bidco. In connection with Autonomy's OEM business, the Claimants alleged that direct misrepresentations about the OEM derived revenue category had been made by Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain to HP in the run up to the acquisition, on which HP and through it, Bidco, had also relied.

[347] In four Quarterly Reports from Q3 2009 to Q2 2010.
[348] In the Q3 2010 Quarterly Report.
[349] This claim has, as in the case of all the FSMA claims, a dog-leg nature: to establish liability the Claimants must first show that Autonomy was liable to Bidco and was right to accept liability in full, and then secondly, that the Defendants are liable to Autonomy for their respective breaches of duty in thus exposing Autonomy. See also paragraphs 17 to 18 and 432 to 434 above.

3007. The Claimants grouped eight sets of misrepresentations they alleged in respect of Autonomy's OEM business and divided them chronologically according to certain presentations made during the course of the acquisition process:

    (1) The initial approach to HP by Qatalyst and introductory meetings in January to March 2011, at which HP was shown two slide decks ("the January and February Slides") depicting Autonomy's *"Attractive Revenue Mix"* of which some 15% was shown in a pie-chart to be comprised of *"OEM Ongoing"* (some 13%) and *"OEM Dev"* (some 2%), and later, in March 2011 some further slides ("the March Slides") to the same effect;

    (2) The more detailed discussions in London in June and July 2011, in the course of which (according to the Claimants) Dr Lynch (in addition to describing Autonomy as a *"pure software"* company) stated that (i) the costs of Autonomy's IDOL OEM revenues were very low, being royalty based, with gross margins approaching 100% and (ii) the sales channel to OEMs gave rise to a *"network effect"*; and

    (3) The due diligence process in August 2011, in the course of which HP asked specific questions of Autonomy and also asked for Autonomy's *"Top 10 OEM customers by revenue for FY 2010"*, and received (allegedly) misleading responses.

3008. I address these claims in deceit and/or misrepresentation claims, which are direct claims by HP against the Defendants, in paragraphs 3248 to 3252 below.

Two points of clarification with respect to the ambit of the dispute in respect of OEM claim

3009. Before addressing the issues in respect of the OEM claim at greater length, it is convenient to address two points which serve to define and confine the ambit of the dispute.

3010. The first, raised by the Defendants, has two facets. One is as to the sufficiency and status of the details provided by the Claimants in respect of the 67 transactions they relied on as generating revenue which could not properly have been classified as "OEM derived revenue".

3011. The other is as to the consequences of the fact that the Claimants sought to advance their OEM case on the general basis that none fell within what the Defendants described as the Claimants' own *"self-chosen, inaccurate definition"*, and apparently on that basis did not go through the details of the transactions referred to in Schedule 8 of their RRAPoC with Dr Lynch or any other witness or ask about their classification as giving rise to OEM revenues.

3012. Dr Lynch contended that the Claimants' approach, and especially their suggested conclusion that the three categories they had identified (see paragraph 2982 above) comprised some 80% of the OEM derived category, was so insufficient and unsatisfactory that the claim should simply be regarded as not open to them to pursue as against him. Mr Hussain could not complain that the case had not been put to him; but he could and did complain that the case was inadequately supported by the evidence that the Claimants had chosen to put forward.

3013. The Defendants relied especially on the following:

(1) The Claimants did not go through the 67 transactions (otherwise than in submissions) even on a sample basis; they did not ask Dr Lynch (or any other witness) about any specific positive features which on their case had apparently justified a judgement that revenue from it qualified for inclusion within the OEM metric. Instead, the case on misclassification was put to Dr Lynch "*at a very high level of generality*". Dr Lynch was simply asked about the Claimants' general theory, and then confronted with certain conclusions based on that theory with which he inevitably disagreed.

(2) The cross-examination of him thus proceeded on the basis of the Claimants' narrow definition, which he considered wrong, but did not condescend to the detail of why each impugned OEM transaction was, on the basis of that narrow definition, said to be lacking qualifying characteristics. The complaint was that he was never given the chance to explain how, by reference to the characteristics of each transaction, the broader definition he advanced would have justified the classification of revenue within the OEM metric in each particular case or why the characterisation suggested by the Claimants was wrong in the context of each specific transaction.

(3) Having not been given the opportunity to justify the classification of each individual transaction by reference to his own understanding of the scope of the metric, Dr Lynch was also not given the opportunity to explain the (avowedly very limited) extent of his knowledge in respect of each of them, nor what part (if any) he played in assigning them to the OEM metric as being OEM-derived.

(4) Further, the summary descriptions of the nature of the transactions provided by the Claimants were (according to the Defendants) not adequate for the purpose of testing the Claimants' complaints as to classification. In a number of cases, the Claimants' reasons for saying that transactions were wrongly classified as OEM was that the same transactions were challenged in some other part of the Claimants' case, whether as alleged 'reciprocal transactions', or impugned VAR or Hosting transactions[350]. The Defendants' more general point was that this was not a proper or sufficient basis on which to challenge the classification: a separate analysis was needed to sustain a case that the revenues were wrongly categorised as OEM.

(5) In particular, the Defendants submitted that the 80% figure asserted by the Claimants to represent the proportion of revenue included in the OEM metric which (according to their 'narrow' definition) did not match Autonomy's own description of OEM derived revenue was *"not anchored to anything, not even kinds of deals, never mind actual deals"*.

3014. Mr Rabinowitz submitted in his oral closing that, having set out in his pleading and in his written opening what characteristics of the 67 impugned transactions the Claimants relied on as disqualifying them from inclusion within the OEM metric, (a) it would have been disproportionate and would have *"got very short shrift"* from me had Dr

[350] The examples given by Dr Lynch were OEM13, 15, 16, 23, 34 and 35.

Lynch been cross-examined on such features in each or even a sample of those transactions; (b) Dr Lynch had had every opportunity to raise, and should have raised, any points he had if he disagreed; and (c) the suggestion that the impugned transactions were properly included within the OEM metric because the market understood a broader category to be indicated by the introduction of the prefix "derived" in Q1, Q2 and Q3 2010 was the case relied on by the Defendants and for them to demonstrate.[351]

3015. The Claimants' decision is forensically understandable, especially given constraints of time, but raises a difficult issue. As to whether a trawl through the 67 impugned OEM transactions with Dr Lynch (who denied any detailed involvement but was the only person giving evidence for the Defendants who was suggested to have been involved) might have got short shrift from me, there was no need for such reticence, even if mercifully meant. But I agree that it is unlikely that I would have been persuaded that a trawl in cross-examination through 67 listed transactions, with a witness who professed not to know anything about the details of them and could only, if anything, offer a commentary which he might have provided more efficiently in submissions would have been necessary or proportionate. Some process of illustration by example might have been fashioned, but none was suggested.

3016. In any event, the question is whether having made the choice and taken that course, it was sufficient for the Claimants to base their OEM case on their general theory, and an explanation in submissions (but not evidence) why none of the features of the 67 transactions identified (but not proved) conformed with it.

3017. It is obviously important to consider what the Defendants pleaded. Neither of them admitted the contents of Schedule 8. However, the point that each made was that they were not knowingly improperly accounted for because they were considered to be "OEM-derived revenues". Dr Lynch also pleaded that if their inclusion as such was in error it was not an error of which he was aware of or involved in. I set out Dr Lynch's pleading in this regard below:

> *"It is further denied that the transactions identified in Schedule 8 were incorrectly characterised. The characterization of those transactions involved a qualitative assessment by members of the Finance Department (and not by Dr Lynch), which was reviewed and concurred in by Deloitte and was fair. If, which is denied, any of those transactions could not fairly have been characterised as OEM-derived revenues, this was not an error that Dr Lynch was aware of or involved in."*

3018. In that latter context, and as recorded in his written closing submissions, Dr Lynch's evidence on the general point was that he knew and regarded it as entirely appropriate, and consistent with the broad scope of OEM revenues that he understood was conveyed (especially by the use of the prefix *"derived"*), that during the Relevant Period, the revenues classified as *OEM-derived* revenues were not limited to those

[351] As Mr Rabinowitz put it: *"It's the defendants who say – it's not us who say this – it's the defendants who say the expression "*OEM *derived"…everyone knew….meant something wider than development fee and ongoing royalty…They're relying on OEM derived as producing some wider category but that's their case, not our case."*

generated by sales to customers who purchased the right to embed IDOL software into their own software for onward licensing to third parties; and that he knew that Autonomy was including within the OEM metric other revenues, including one-off upsells and PODS directly to service providers which had purchased the IDOL software content from an OEM, and sales to a VAR merely for resale. The justification he avowed for the inclusion of revenue from the 67 impugned transactions in the "OEM metric" was that OEM business was not limited to sales to an OEM and sales such as upsells and PODS to service providers to update and upgrade Autonomy software on equipment supplied to them by an OEM was "OEM derived".

3019. At times during the dispute it seemed to me that the issues were being obscured, and their determination made more difficult, by treating the disagreement as being whether the semantic description "OEM derived" offered a safe haven (as Dr Lynch insisted it did). As it seems to me, the issue cannot be determined by labels.

3020. The issue is whether the Defendants genuinely thought that transactions with the characteristics of the 67 transactions impugned (and described as OEM derived) would have been considered in the market to be such as to justify regarding them as having special value by reference to the nature of the revenue they generated such as to justify their special description.

3021. I am not persuaded that anything more was needed than to determine (a) why special value was generally accorded in the market to OEM business (b) what were the salient characteristics of the 67 transactions relied on by the Defendants as justifying their implicit invitation to the market (by their special description in Autonomy's published information) to treat them as having special value; and (c) whether the Defendants had any honest belief in that justification or were simply deploying the special description as a false excuse for according special treatment and value to a cohort of transactions having in fact (and to their knowledge) no special qualities or characteristics.

3022. The Claimants' case was set out clearly in their Opening Submissions, identifying the characteristics of the 67 impugned OEM transactions which they submitted were not such as would be perceived to have the especially valuable characteristics associated with OEM business. If Dr Lynch wanted to argue that they contained other characteristics or that the characteristics had been misdescribed he had the opportunity to do so. I am not persuaded that this required him to be cross-examined to elicit his comments in that respect.

3023. As to the honesty of his belief in the characteristics it seems to me that enough was put forward and Dr Lynch was, in all the circumstances, sufficiently cross-examined.

3024. I return later to consider the Claimants' submissions on the *"general theory"* and the basis on which they submitted it excluded each of the 67 impugned OEM transactions.

3025. A second point of detail concerns whether the Claimants' "general theory" dictates that only a recurring revenue stream was properly included within the OEM metric: if so, that would have excluded single licence or upfront payments and revenue from the sale of PODS.

3026. There was some confusion in this regard, introduced by the contention in Dr Lynch's Re-Amended Defence that the Claimants' clarification (in paragraph 185.1 of their

Reply) that they were not contending that revenue was "*precluded from being classified as IDOL OEM revenue merely on the ground that it did not, in a given case, result in an ongoing revenue stream*" carried with it acceptance that such single licence or upfront payments were not improperly included within the metric.

3027. I do not think that the Claimants' clarification went further than to accept that it was not a necessary quality of all revenue allocated to the OEM metric that it should be recurring in nature provided it was generated by further sales to the OEM made almost inevitable by the original sale to that OEM. The Claimants maintained their position that revenue from a sale to an end-user and PODS would not be perceived as either sufficiently certain or as having the other qualities associated with OEM business.

3028. The upshot is that it remained the Claimants' case that (a) it was misleading of Autonomy to have included within the OEM metric in its published information sales to an end-user simply on the basis that the end-user had originally acquired the IDOL software to which it wished to add functionality from an OEM; and (b) it was misleading to include in the OEM metric revenue a type of revenue that might be expected to be but was not a sale to an OEM and was not an incidental but almost inevitable product of and within the original OEM relationship. I consider later whether the admitted extension to incremental sales nevertheless introduces an element of subjective judgement in any event.

3029. I turn to identify and then address the issues to which the disputes concerning Autonomy's OEM business give rise by reference to the Claimants' pleaded causes of action.

FSMA claim in more detail

3030. The following issues arise in the context of the FSMA claim in respect of the OEM metric:

(1) What did the Claimants have to prove to establish their FSMA claim in relation to the OEM metric?

(2) What was the "published information" on which the Claimants claim to have been entitled to rely in this context? Are they right that it included transcripts of earnings calls at least from Q4 2010 onwards?

(3) What were the statements made of OEM derived revenue in that published information, and what, in the round, was the depiction of the scope of IDOL OEM revenue in that published information?

(4) Should the depiction of the scope of IDOL OEM revenues in the published information be taken as exhaustive and exclusive? Or is that depiction to be read subject to an established market understanding that revenues described as IDOL OEM would include also revenues which did not arise directly from, but could be said to have been made possible by, sales to OEMs?

(5) Did revenue streams in fact included in the OEM metric fall outside a reader's likely understanding of the OEM metric so as to make the published information false and misleading?

(6) What involvement did the Defendants each have in the presentation of that published information? If the statements were false and misleading, did they know that?

(7) How did HP/Bidco understand the published information? What is the test of reliance in a FSMA claim and can HP demonstrate such reliance?

The legal ingredients of the FSMA Claim in relation to OEM

3031. In the Introduction to this judgment, I have sought to explain the requisite conditions of liability applicable in any FSMA claim, whether under s. 90A or its replacement, Schedule 10A (as and from 1 October 2010): see paragraphs 432 to 544 above. Certain particular legal issues arise in the context of the OEM claim which require further elaboration. These relate to:

(1) Whether the statements made in earnings calls and transcripts of earnings calls after 1 October 2010, on which the Claimants placed reliance, fell within the scope of the definition of *"published information"* in Schedule 10A, paragraph 2(1) FSMA (which came into force on 1 October 2010);

(2) The test for determining whether a statement is *"untrue or misleading"*; and

(3) The test of whether a PDMR within the Issuer knew it to be so, or was *"reckless whether it was untrue or misleading"* (what I have termed "guilty knowledge" in paragraph 448 above).

The statements on which the Claimants claim to have been entitled to rely in this context

3032. In the context of the OEM claim, the Claimants referred to and contended they relied on Autonomy's Annual and Quarterly Reports for the Relevant Period (that is to say, the Quarterly Reports for Q1 2009 to Q2 2011 and the Annual Reports for FY 2009 and 2010). It is common ground that these constituted *"publications"* or *"published information"* within the meaning of those expressions in s. 90A and its replacement (with effect from 1 October 2010) in Schedule 10A of FSMA respectively.

3033. However, the Claimants also referred extensively to calls and transcriptions of earnings calls in the same period, including the Q4 2010 earnings call, the Q1 2011 earnings call and the Q2 2011 earnings call, and appeared to rely on statements made in that context as also constituting *"published information"* to which Schedule 10A FSMA applied.

3034. I have explained, in the Introduction, my reasons for concluding that the calls and the transcripts of them did not constitute published information. It follows that, in my judgment, statements made in the earnings calls cannot found a claim under Schedule 10A of FSMA. However, as also noted in the Introduction, that does not mean that they are inadmissible or irrelevant: they may well be relevant to other conditions of liability, such as the state of mind of relevant PDMRs in making the statements now impugned, and the actual state of market knowledge.

3035. In the context of the OEM claim in particular, they may be of direct relevance to the fundamental questions of (a) whether the scope of OEM-derived revenues was explained to the market so as to become, in effect, market knowledge and (b) the Defendants' own understanding of the meaning of IDOL OEM and their perception of what the market would take the category to comprise and understand from the metrics given. Some may also be relevant to the question of what analysts and the investment community actually knew, or were told, though of course individual conversations should not be taken to import knowledge across a broader constituency.

Determining whether a statement is (a) untrue or misleading and (b) known to be so

3036. Obviously, whether a statement is knowingly false or recklessly made depends upon what its maker understood it to state about the matters to which it refers, and whether according to that understanding, what was stated was in fact true. In a case based on alleged deceit, the test is whether the statement was untrue, tested according to what the defendant considered to be, or envisaged would be understood to be, its meaning, though it will suffice also if the defendant was reckless in the sense of knowing that a statement might well be understood in a way which would render it (on that understanding of it) untrue or misleading.

3037. In many cases, there is no dispute as to the meaning of a given statement, and the questions then are whether it was untrue or misleading in its description of the matters to which it refers, and if so, whether the PDMR deemed responsible for the published information in which it appears knew it to be untrue or misleading, or was reckless as to whether it was or not.

3038. In such a case, the clear objective meaning of the statement, though not determinative, may itself be a relevant factor in determining whether the maker had any real belief in the meaning he now asserts. Thus:

(1) If the objective meaning of a statement is clear, and by reference to that meaning would be false, a defendant's claim to having thought and intended it to have some other meaning may be difficult to sustain. In such circumstances, the defendant will be forced to resort to some personal definition, or some eccentric meaning, which may strain credulity. As the Privy Council said in *Akerhielm v de Mare* [1959] AC 789:

> *"For instance, the meaning placed by the defendant on the representation made may be so far removed from the sense in which it would be understood by any reasonable person as to make it impossible to hold that the defendant honestly understood the representation to bear the meaning claimed by him and honestly believed it in that sense to be true."*

(2) By contrast, as Males J (as he then was) noted in *Leni Gas & Oil Investments Limited and another v Malta Oil Pty and another* [2014] EHC 893 (Comm) at [7] to [9]:

> *"if a reasonable person in the claimant's position would not have understood that the statement in question was being made, that may make it unlikely that the defendant intended his words to be understood as making such a statement. As Mr Kitchener*

> *acknowledged, if the court is of the view that no reasonable representee could have inferred the representation contended for, it is highly unlikely that it will find either that this is what Dr Higgs intended or that this is what Mr Ritson in fact understood."*

3039. In other cases, however, what a reasonable person would have taken the statement to mean is not clear, and is disputed. The potential for such dispute is obviously far greater in a case such as the present, in the context of statements which (a) have no standardised or defined meaning, (b) have been given none by the maker, (c) have been the subject of a variety of explanations to different audiences at different times, and (d) in the case of the voluntarily provided OEM metrics, were expressly stated to be subject to *"qualitative"* assessment. Any search for what the posited reasonable person would have understood the statement to mean is further complicated in a case such as this (and possibly in any case where information is published generally), where the audience is disparate and comprised of persons in very different circumstances, with varying degrees of background knowledge and expertise, a few of whom may also be aware of other published information issued by the same issuer at about the same time though most others may not.

3040. The search for a single objective meaning in such circumstances is in reality something of a conceit; and it may be unnecessary and even unwise. Unnecessary, because, as Mr Miles submitted, the search in the context of a deceit claim is not for the single 'best' objective interpretation, as it would be in the context of disputed contractual interpretation: for the PDMR cannot be guilty of deceit simply because the court considers that on its interpretation of it, the statement was untrue: his knowledge of its falsity is ultimately the only test of dishonesty. Unwise, because the selected preferred meaning may skew the assessment of subjectively intended meaning, at least unless it is kept firmly in mind that at most it is relevant as a test of the credibility of the defendant's own interpretation or of the likelihood that the defendant fell upon the phrase precisely because of its ambiguity (and see paragraph 3047 below).

3041. Mr Miles went on to submit that if the court is persuaded that a statement alleged to be false or misleading is genuinely open to various meanings, and that asserted by the defendant is one of them (even if not the most likely or obvious one), the determination of the matter is, in effect, removed to the second stage of enquiry, and to an assessment of the defendant's actual state of mind. As Mr Miles put it:

> *"If there is a range of possible meanings, then in order to say someone has acted fraudulently, it is necessary to show that they either understood the term in the narrow sense contended for by the claimants or deliberately used the ambiguity for the purpose of deception."*

3042. That accords with the following extract from *Clerk & Lindsell on Torts* (22nd ed) at 18-25:

> *"Where a statement is capable of being understood in more than one sense, it is essential to liability in deceit that the party making the statement should have intended it to be understood in its untrue sense, or at the very least that he should have deliberately used the ambiguity for the purpose of deceiving the claimant."*

3043. Thus, for example, in the *Akerhielm* case itself, a buyer of shares who had relied on an ambiguous statement in a company prospectus (that shares had been "subscribed", begging a question whether the shares were paid up in cash or in some other way, or unpaid) failed in his action in deceit once it was shown that the defendants had honestly believed the statement to be true in the sense in which they had intended it to be read.

3044. Mr Miles submitted that there was just such ambiguity in the present case. The meaning the Defendants maintain they had intended was an available one, and (so they said) shared by many in the market, so that at worst the statements were unintentionally ambiguous: and according to that intended meaning, or one of two or more legitimate meanings resulting in ambiguity, the statement was neither untrue nor misleading.

3045. However, that submission, and Mr Miles's invitation to move straight to limb two, is premised on an initial conclusion that true ambiguity has been revealed by the dispute. The Claimants did not accept that. They contended that on proper analysis, the meaning conveyed by the OEM metric and the disputed expressions (OEM and OEM derived revenues) was clear, and as conveyed, was untrue. Although the expressions might, shorn of context, be open to different interpretations, the description of the OEM metric and the meaning attributed to the disputed expressions in the published information, resolved any ambiguity otherwise inherent in the expressions 'OEM' and 'OEM derived revenue' and left no room for any alternative interpretation. The Defendants had, in effect, supplied their own definition of the expressions in the published information.

3046. On this view, the Defendants were seeking to rely, not on ambiguity in the statements made, but on a private dictionary which the Defendants claimed to have built up in the market, in which the impugned expressions had or had acquired, on the basis of a special dictionary thus created, a broader meaning than the meaning apparently ascribed to them in the document taken as a whole. In other words, any ambiguity was introduced by some special meaning vouchsafed to the market, or more likely, a section of the market, which was not apparent from a process of interpreting the published information itself.

3047. It followed, on the Claimants' argument, that Mr Miles's approach of going straight to the question of what the Defendant intended assumed ambiguity where in fact there was none, and could result in an important factor being left out of consideration. Resort to an eccentric 'private dictionary' meaning would be difficult to sustain and itself cast dispositive doubt on the defendant's honesty in making statements in a form which relied on it; and indeed the question of guilty knowledge might also be determined by plain inconsistency between an arguable interpretation asserted by the defendant, and the other words the defendant has used in the presentation taken as a whole.

3048. I have concluded that, in this case, I am required to adopt the two-stage approach by the Claimants' assertion that any ambiguity in the meaning of the expressions used has been resolved by definitive language in the published information taken as a whole. In

any event, I have concluded that the ambiguity is not so evident that I can safely take the shortcut to the question of the Defendants' subjective intention.

3049. In the circumstances it seems to me that there is no available shortcut such as Mr Miles in effect suggested; and to determine the OEM claim, I must assess:

(1) whether the market would have understood the expression *"OEM Derived"* materially to extend the nature of the business included in the OEM metric.

(2) What, at that time, the Defendants honestly intended readers of Autonomy's published information to understand to be conveyed by the OEM metrics they provided, the expressions *OEM* and *OEM derived revenue* they deployed, and the statements they made as to the scope and nature of Autonomy's OEM business;

(3) Whether, in the light of the answers to (1) and (2) above, the statements made and the metrics provided were true or untrue, or misleading, to the knowledge of the Defendants.[352]

3050. Incidental to these principal questions are the following further sub-issues:

(a) What, if any, account should be taken of the evidence of Analysts relied on by the Defendants in support of their position that there was an established market understanding that Autonomy's OEM business was broader in scope than the Claimants have depicted it to be and extended, for example, to upsells and PODS;

(b) Whether the Defendants were aware that those expressions would be likely to be interpreted by many as the Claimants maintain they did interpret them and deployed them (i) knowing that, so interpreted, they were untrue or misleading, or (ii) lacking any honest belief in their truth (so as to be reckless according to the meaning of recklessness laid down in *Derry v Peek* (1889) 14 App. Cas 337)) if so interpreted; and/or (iii) because they knew the expressions were ambiguous and consciously deployed the ambiguity to deceive the Claimants.

3051. I turn first to the way the OEM metric was put forward in Autonomy's published information.

What was stated in Autonomy's published information about the OEM metric?

3052. What was said about the OEM metric and OEM derived revenues in Autonomy's Quarterly Reports and Annual Reports can be summarised as follows:

(1) Initially, in the Q1 2009 and Q2 2009 Quarterly Reports, little more was conveyed about this category of business than that Autonomy was developing an *"OEM Program"* which involved sales of Autonomy software to key

[352] It would suffice for the Claimants if, although the Defendants did not actually know the statements to be untrue or misleading, they were reckless as to whether they were untrue or misleading.

companies which would each *"OEM Autonomy technology",* that is to say, embed Autonomy software in their own products for onward sale.

The OEM Program was said to be growing, but little more information was provided, and nothing was said about the content or form of the OEM agreements.

(2) The Q3 2009 Quarterly Report was the first to provide *"Supplemental Metrics"* which referred to and measured *"OEM derived revenues"*. It cautioned that these metrics were *"provided for background information"* and *"may include qualitative estimates"*.

It was stated that *"More than 400 companies OEM Autonomy technology, including Symantec, Citrix, HP, Novell, Oracle, Sybase and TIBCO";* but no definition was provided of OEM derived business, nor was the form or content of the deals described.

(3) The 2009 Annual Report described OEM relationships (as well as cloud computing) as one of *"the new models of the software industry"* and as the vehicle to enable Autonomy's technology (especially in unstructured data analysis) to be applied to every area of IT, even areas in which Autonomy did not itself compete.

There was no discrete definition of OEM business; and the rubric *"OEM derived"* was not used.

However, it was stated that Autonomy had over 400 *"OEM relationships with other major software vendors that build our technology into their products*"; and that Autonomy was relied on by OEMs *"from virtually every major software sector"* to *"address the problem of unstructured information, provide unique next-generation functionality and deliver unparalleled performance"* by *"[embedding] Autonomy's award-winning technology into their software solutions"*.

It was stated also that:

"Autonomy's OEM customers bring Autonomy technology to vertical markets by embedding it in their own solutions. Autonomy benefits from the expertise of a community of systems integrators and consultants who engage with customers to expand and sustain use of Autonomy products in a wide variety of industries".

For the first time, there was mention of the fee structure, which was said *"typically"* to provide for royalty fees based on the amount of sales by the OEM: it was stated that *"OEM and reseller arrangements…typically provide for fees payable to the group based on licensing of the group's software to third party customers"*. These royalties or royalty-type payments were said to be around three percent of the value of product sales.

Supplemental Metrics were provided, with a warning about qualitative estimates; but though these gave figures for key parameters, and in particular organic growth and cash conversion rates, they did not identify or distinguish OEM or any other business lines.

(4) The Q1 2010 Quarterly Report referred to and quantified *"OEM derived revenues"* and introduced more detailed *"supplemental metrics"* which separated out two constituent parts of OEM derived revenue, *"OEM Dev"* and *"OEM Ongoing"* and portrayed the OEM Program as growing strongly.

Still there was no overall definition of the types of revenue comprising OEM derived business nor any description of the form or content of OEM deals. The Supplemental Metrics were given as before, with the same warning about qualitative estimates.

(5) The Q2 2010 Quarterly Report expressly stated the OEM business to be Autonomy's *"fastest growing revenue stream"*, with a quote from Dr Lynch referring to *"a powerful networking effect underway as IDOL further penetrates the entire spectrum of enterprise software applications"*.

Supplemental Metrics were provided in a form which distinguished various business lines, including *"OEM derived revenues"* (which was sub-divided into *"OEM Dev"* and *"OEM Ongoing"*). There was no further definition of OEM derived business or the form or content of OEM deals. Again a warning was given about the supplemental metrics only being provided *"for background information and may include qualitative estimates."*

(6) The Q3 2010 Quarterly Report described strong (30% year on year) growth in "IDOL OEM revenues" as *"both a further endorsement of the unique capabilities of IDOL and reflects a growing network effect as more software companies choose to design their products with Autonomy inside."*

Supplemental Metrics were again provided, substantially in the same (revised) format, but prefacing the word "*IDOL"* before *"OEM derived revenues"* and quantifying each of the sub-components identified (*"IDOL OEM Dev"* and *"IDOL OEM Ongoing"*). As before, there was no definition of IDOL OEM or IDOL OEM derived, and no description of the form or content of OEM deals. The same warning about qualitative estimates was given.

(7) The Q4 2010 Quarterly Report described IDOL OEM as *"where Autonomy's IDOL is embedded inside other software companies' products…addressing most software vertical markets."* It added that:

"This is a particularly important revenue stream as it generates ongoing business across the broadest product set possible, in addition to up-front development licences."

Autonomy continued to depict IDOL OEM, with IDOL Cloud, as fast growing, high margin, highly attractive *"as they turn one-off sales into multi-*

year committed annuity streams", replacing *"one off sales"*, and one of the *"key drivers of our business".*

The Report drew attention to there being a short-term effect of this as appearing to depress growth, since one-off sales were recognised in full and immediately, but emphasised the advantage over the longer term of *"more valuable annuity streams".* The impression conveyed was of the OEM business promoting the wide use and acceptance of Autonomy's software within the software industry.

Supplemental Metrics were provided in a slightly altered and truncated format but to the same effect: these indicated that in Q4 2010 IDOL OEM revenues totalled some 14% of all revenues. The previously invariable warning of "qualitative estimates" was no longer expressly stated.

(8) The 2010 Annual Report elaborated on the presentation in the Q4 2010 Quarterly Report, adopting the same description of IDOL OEM. Again, OEMs were described as software companies wishing to embed IDOL, and a warning was included in Dr Lynch's report as CEO of *"some seasonality in IDOL OEM sales as they are predicated on the rest of the software industry sales, and the period over which those vendors report their sales to us".*

IDOL OEM growth was stated to have been 32%, and broadly similar statements as in the immediately preceding Quarterly Reports were deployed to expand on the value of turning *"one-off sales into multi-year committed annuity streams"*, and to emphasise that *"numerous world-leading software companies embed Autonomy's award-winning technology into their software solutions".*

The fee structure was described as generating royalties, giving rise to higher margins than IDOL Cloud business. However, no breakdown between *"OEM Dev"* and *"OEM Ongoing"* was provided, and no mention was made of *"OEM derived"*: those terms appear to have dropped out of the description of the metric.

(9) The Q1 2011 Quarterly Report conveyed basically the same message, emphasising again IDOL OEM's importance as a revenue stream *"as it generates ongoing business across the broadest product set possible, in addition to up-front development licences".*

However, this report did not include the information provided in the Q4 2010 Quarterly Report and the 2010 Annual Report which expressly depicted the IDOL OEM category as comprising, in addition to up-front licence payments (which were mentioned), ongoing royalty payments paid by software companies which had chosen to embed IDOL in their own software for onward sale.
No split between *"Dev"* and *"Ongoing"* was provided.

(10) The Q2 2011 Quarterly Report was in similar form to the Q1 2011 Quarterly Report, again emphasising the importance of IDOL OEM as a driver of Autonomy's business, providing strong growth and (like Cloud) a recurring and particularly important revenue stream *"as it generates ongoing business across the broadest product set possible"*.

The description of IDOL OEM as being *"where Autonomy's IDOL is embedded inside other software companies' products"* was repeated.

Again, no split between "*Dev"* and *"Ongoing"* was provided: again, those sub-categories were not mentioned, though reference was made to revenue from sales by OEM *"in addition to up-front development licences"*. OEM business was (like Cloud business) presented as a *"recurring model"*, deriving *"recurring revenues with long-term contracts."*

3053. In none of these Reports was there any express mention of either *"upsell"* or *"PODS"* revenue. Nor was there any other express reference to sales of functionality to end-users (as distinct from to the OEMs). The Defendants' contention was, as it had to be, that the reference to *"ongoing business across the broadest product set possible in addition to up-front development licences"* was easily broad enough to extend to such sales, and certainly did not exclude them.

3054. The Claimants relied strongly on breakdowns of OEM derived revenue provided in certain quarters (Q1 2010, Q2 2010 and Q3 2010). These divided *"OEM derived revenues"* into two sub-categories (*"OEM Dev"* and *"OEM Ongoing"*). The Claimants pointed out that according to those breakdowns, the lion's share of IDOL OEM revenue consisted of ongoing royalty revenue (see paragraph 3056(4) to (5) below). Thus, in each of the three quarters (Q1 2010, Q2 2010 and Q3 2010) in which this breakdown was provided, the sum of *"OEM Dev"* and *"OEM Ongoing"* was equal to total reported *"OEM derived revenues"*, with the vast majority (at least 90%) being attributed to *"OEM Ongoing"* revenue.

3055. The Claimants' latter point was simple but important: in addition to emphasising the preponderance of royalty revenues, the two stated categories left no arithmetical or other room for any other sources of OEM revenue. Thus, if, as the Defendants contended, the expression "*OEM derived revenues*" communicated the inclusion of upsell and PODS revenue within IDOL OEM revenue, this could only be because upsell and PODS revenue could properly be regarded as coming within one or both of the sub-categories: "*OEM Dev*" and "*OEM Ongoing*".

3056. The Claimants' case is, as I would summarise it, that taken together, a reasonable reader of all these various Reports would have understood them to be demonstrating the rapid growth of what in early 2009 was a relatively new line of business and as representing that:

(1) Autonomy's OEM business was based on sales to (or at least predominantly to) some 400 of the largest software companies, each with a very large customer base and considerable market presence and penetration: this was a means of introducing IDOL software to a very broad market.

(2) Those software companies (a) produced their own software (b) embedded IDOL software into their own software products under a licence purchased from Autonomy and (c) licenced or sold their products with IDOL embedded on to their own customers.

(3) Sales of software embedded with IDOL through the OEM channel (a) endorsed the unique capabilities of IDOL and reflected its penetration of the software market, and its wide acceptance and use in the software industry, and (b) promoted wider acceptance and use of Autonomy's software in the software industry, furthering the objective of IDOL OEM becoming the software of choice for anyone with unstructured data analysis needs.

(4) Revenue from IDOL OEM business (whether described as *"IDOL OEM"*, *"IDOL OEM derived revenues"* or *"OEM derived revenue")* came from two sources, that is (a) upfront fees for the purchase of a development licence (sub-categorised in the Reports for Q1 2010, Q2 2010 and Q3 2010 as *"OEM Dev")* giving the right to embed the software into an OEM's own products and (b) royalties which normally became payable on the licensing by the OEM's own customer of the combined product (sub-categorised by way of further information in the Reports for Q1 2010, Q2 2010 and Q3 2010 as "*OEM Ongoing"* and referred to as *"OEM royalties"* in Q4 2010, the 2010 Annual Report and as *"ongoing business"* in Q1 2010 and Q2 2010).

(5) The predominant component of OEM derived revenue in every quarter was the ongoing element. Breakdowns of these revenues, provided in Q1 2010, Q2 2010 and Q3 2010, allocating total OEM Derived revenues between each of those two categories, appeared to show that (a) some 90% or more of the total revenue came from *"OEM Ongoing"* payments and (b) the two categories accounted for all revenues, and there was no room for any other source of revenue.

(6) *"OEM Ongoing"* revenues were presented (in Q1, Q2 and Q3 2010) as derived from payments by OEMs to Autonomy calculated as a percentage (usually about 3%) of revenues received by the OEM from the sale of its own products with embedded IDOL, and as likely to expand over time as OEM partners embedded more IDOL software functionality in product releases.

(7) Such payments represented a rapidly growing, committed (by contractual obligation imposed on the OEM) and multi-year, recurring revenue stream of greater value than one-off payments, notwithstanding some adverse impact on short-term growth because revenues classified as "royalties" for accounting purposes could only be recognised in the accounts over time.

(8) Another hallmark of the ongoing revenue stream was that it was generated without any ongoing effort by and at no additional cost to Autonomy, resulting in nearly 100% gross margin.

(9) The strong organic growth of IDOL OEM revenue had by 2010 (when such growth was stated to be 32%) become a driving force, with IDOL Cloud, of

Autonomy's business and could be regarded as an important measure both of Autonomy's current success and its future prospects.

3057. HP did not read all the published information. Mr Sarin read the most: but he considered only the 2010 Annual Report and the quarterly reports for Q1 2011 and Q2 2011. The Defendants pointed out that most of the OEM transactions sought to be impugned were from Q3 2010 or earlier. I accept the Defendants' point that it was not until Q4 2010 that anything was given resembling a definitive description of IDOL OEM in terms of being *"where Autonomy's IDOL is embedded inside other software companies' products…addressing most software vertical markets"*. However, it being common ground that the scope of IDOL OEM was intended to be constant over the entire Relevant Period, it seems to me that the Claimants were entitled to rely on the description as applicable across the Relevant Period; and, in any event, HP was entitled to rely on the way IDOL OEM was described in Autonomy's published information in the Annual Report for 2010.

3058. In summary, the Claimants' case was that the reasonable reader of Autonomy's published information (including the reasonable reader who had only read the annual report for 2010 and the quarterly reports for Q1 2011 and Q2 2011) would have expected and the market would have understood:

(1) Most, if not all, of Autonomy's OEM business to be generated through transactions with large software companies.

(2) The revenues of that OEM business to come exclusively from development licences sold to such OEM partners and recurring payments due from those OEM partners to Autonomy by way of royalties in respect of their onward sales to third parties of software products with IDOL embedded under licence.

They would not have expected any material part of the revenue included in the OEM metric to be derived from sales to third parties, and would not have regarded the prospect of multiple sales to third parties involving sales effort and cost on the part of Autonomy as being the same as recurring revenue from an OEM partnership at no further cost to Autonomy and thus near 100% margin.

The Defendants' response on the scope of IDOL OEM conveyed by the published information

3059. As indicated in my summary of their case, the Defendants contended that (a) in standard parlance and in the market, it was not only companies in the business of developing their own software which could properly be regarded as OEMs: the category was not generally understood to be so limited and hardware companies could be OEMs as well; (b) the Claimants' approach rendered redundant the word "derived" and had given no or no sufficient content to the description of the OEM metric as expressly including all revenue derived from the OEM relationships, as well as revenues generated from an OEM directly.

3060. As to (a), the Defendants drew support from the evidence of Mr Daud Khan ("Mr Khan"): when cross-examined, he accepted that OEMs are not limited to software companies. They contended that there was no reason why OEM relationships with customers in hardware or other sectors would have been less attractive than software OEMs, and that the same rationale which commended OEM partnerships with other

software companies would also apply to a partnership with large hardware companies. They reasoned that the important issue was the market penetration and low costs upsells that an initial sale of a licence to an OEM could achieve; and it mattered not in terms of that objective whether the OEM developed its own software, or was a manufacturer of hardware which embedded IDOL onto its hardware.

3061. Dr Lynch suggested that market penetration across a broad range of industries is in itself desirable. Dr Lynch said that he would be keen to publicise an OEM where "*someone was OEM-ing our software on to a piece of hardware*", or an OEM in the healthcare sector, since it would be a very positive thing to show Autonomy's involvement in broader sectors.

3062. The breadth of the expression "OEM" contended for by Dr Lynch is well illustrated by the example of the transaction with Tottenham Hotspur Football Club in March 2011 (OEM48). Tottenham Hotspur is obviously neither a software nor a hardware company. In cross-examination, it was put to Dr Lynch (in effect) that a football club could surely not reasonably be considered to be an OEM, with an expectation of embedding the Autonomy software it acquired and then onward licencing the product to its own customers. Dr Lynch responded that, on the contrary, Tottenham Hotspur might well decide to sell its website solution on to another football club and it would thereby be an OEM, and the revenues would be OEM derived revenue (see below).

3063. As to (b), the Defendants maintained that they had themselves coined the description of the revenues from the OEM business as *"OEM derived"* to make clear that the category was not confined to a transaction with an OEM yielding revenue from the OEM itself by way of upfront licence fee or royalty payments. This was a lynch-pin of their case. Accepting (as the Defendants did accept) that none of the phrases in contention was or is a term of art or has any established accountancy definition, in ordinary English usage the word *"derived"* connotes something received or obtained from a source or origin and it was apt to cover a wider category of revenues than merely those received from the OEM itself as an upfront payment or royalty: it could include revenue arising from sales of IDOL transactions made possible by, or for which the need arose in consequence of, the embedding and licensing of IDOL software further to the original OEM sale.

3064. According to the Defendants, that would obviously include sales of enhanced functionality (an *"upsell"*) to the OEM itself (which the Claimants accepted to be the case only if the OEM would embed that additional functionality into its software product for on-sale to its own customers); but it would include also the sale of enhanced functionality to an end-user which had come to use IDOL software and need or want that functionality as a result of purchasing from an OEM software with IDOL embedded in it (which the Claimants did not accept).

3065. Both the Defendants positively asserted this. Mr Hussain's pleaded case was to that effect. Dr Lynch's Re-Amended Defence and Counterclaim pleaded as follows in this regard:

> *"160.1. Given the nature of Autonomy's core IDOL software, third party OEMs frequently sought to embed Autonomy's technology in their own products through a variety of contractual arrangements. OEM customers would typically license a small subset of the many functions*

in IDOL – perhaps four or five of the 500 available – which could be further restricted by the permissible amount of data that could be used with the software.

160.2. Following these sales, Autonomy would have the opportunity to "up-sell" additional functionality or capacity either to the original OEM purchaser or directly to an entity that had purchased the product from an Autonomy OEM customer. Autonomy considered and accounted for any follow-on license-sale – whether to the original OEM customer or to an OEM customer's customer – as OEM-derived revenue, because the follow-on sale occurred as a consequence of the initial OEM sale.

…

161.4 When referring to transaction types falling within OEM-derived revenues, Autonomy's published information also made it clear that contracts and situations varied and did not purport to describe all transactions as holding identical characteristics. The OEM model and its characteristic of having derived revenues from follow-on licence sales or upsell transactions had been discussed extensively in analysts' reports since the earliest days of the OEM business and it was clear that the market knew and understood Autonomy's OEM model."

3066. Dr Lynch himself described it in cross-examination as follows:

"*The metric that we give as a management metric which is OEM-derived includes that revenue but also includes revenue which has been made possible by our OEM programme, but that may – well, it does include sales where the purchaser is not an OEM. So, for example, an upsell*."

3067. Thus, sales to OEMs with a view to IDOL software being embedded into and re-sold by that OEM as part of its own software of that type could, he suggested, conveniently be described as *"core"* OEM transactions, and the revenue derived from them as *"core OEM revenue"* to distinguish it from the wider category of OEM derived revenues discussed above. The wider category would extend to sales of further functionality to persons which had acquired the original IDOL software embedded in a bundle of software sold by an OEM: though not "core" sales generating core revenue in that sense, these were nevertheless sales parasitic on, made possible and in that sense "derived" from, the original core sale, and generated OEM-derived revenue accordingly.

3068. To my mind the clearest explanation of the distinction between OEM and OEM-derived, and what the Defendants said they intended to be the considerably wider scope of the latter, was provided by Dr Lynch in the course of his cross-examination about a list of the ten largest OEMs which Autonomy provided to HP at Mr Sarin's request in the late stages of HP's due diligence exercise in August 2011. I must return later to the dispute about the *Top 10 list*, but I quote now and at some length from that cross-examination for the illumination it offers of Dr Lynch's case on OEM and OEM derived:

"Q. We've been through this before. Mr Sarin asked you for total – the ten largest OEM.

A. OEMs, yes.

Q. No, I think what he asked you for was the top ten OEM customers by revenue?

A. That's right. So an OEM-derived contributor might not be an OEM customer.

Q. Well, with respect, it's still an OEM customer –

A. No, it's not. An OEM customer is someone who takes our software and builds it into their product, and there is – and then they sell that to other people, and that is an OEM. Okay? And our OEM business is about those OEMs. The metric that we give as a management metric which is OEM-derived includes that revenue but also includes revenue which has been made possible by our OEM programme, but that may – well, it does include sales where the purchaser is not an OEM. So, for example, an upsell. So, just to go through this, for the sake of argument, Oracle sells something to Ford, we'll get revenue from Oracle because they are an OEM, and then, if Ford buys something to clip on to that piece of Oracle which uses…the connection to Oracle [*quaere* Autonomy]*, then that is a sale that has been enabled and driven by that network effect that we were talking about and that is an OEM-derived sale. But the sale to Oracle is a core OEM deal, the sale to Ford contributed to derived, but Ford is not an OEM.*
…
I don't think there's any dispute between us that, if you sell an upsell to Ford, then Ford is not an OEM, yet that still goes into OEM-derived."

3069. The Defendants contended that there was nothing in the published information sufficient to displace the broader meaning which they said was intended by the word *"derived"*. They submitted that the Claimants had based their narrow definition of the term from a selective reading of certain parts of the published information, whereas in fact no such definition could fairly be spelt out of the metric as described in the published information.

3070. They added that the express warning that the figures were provided as background information and might include *"qualitative estimates"* reflected the fact and connoted that the category was descriptive and not definitive, and that the inclusion of particular amounts within the category was a matter of judgment and estimation, rather than a rigid rule. Thus, for example, a judgement might be required and made as to whether the link between source and sale was sufficient to warrant the sale being categorised as derived from (and made possible or driven by) the original sale to an OEM.

3071. The Defendants relied especially on the following:

(1) Throughout the Relevant Period up to and including Q3 2010, there was nothing in Autonomy's published information that stated in terms either (a) that Autonomy's OEMs were all software companies or (b) that the revenues within the OEM metric were restricted to payments direct from the OEM.

(2) The Business Review section in the 2009 Annual Report stated that "*As part of our comprehensive OEM Program, numerous world-leading software companies embed Autonomy's award-winning technology into their software solutions*" (emphasis added). It did not purport to give an exclusive definition and nor did it say that the programme was restricted to such arrangements: on the contrary, it indicated that was only a part of the programme.

(3) The Claimants' suggestion that a comment in the Q2 2010 press release that "*IDOL further penetrates the entire spectrum of enterprise software applications*", and in the Q3 2010 press release that the growth in IDOL OEM revenues "*reflects a growing network effect as more software companies choose to design their products with Autonomy inside*" demonstrated that it was made clear that the idea that all the OEMs were software companies was an incorrect gloss. While these comments (correctly) highlighted the success of the OEM programme in the software sector, there was no suggestion that the only OEMs were software companies.

(4) The 2010 Annual Report retained the statement from the 2009 Annual Report that "*As part of our comprehensive OEM Program, numerous world-leading software companies embed Autonomy's award-winning technology into their software solutions*." It also contained the following words, on which the Claimants placed particular reliance:

> *"IDOL OEM. IDOL OEM is where Autonomy's IDOL is embedded inside other software companies' products. IDOL is now embedded in most major software companies' products addressing most software vertical markets. This is a particularly important revenue stream as it generates ongoing business across the broadest product set possible, in addition to up-front development licences. In 2010 IDOL OEM revenue totalled $132 million, up 32% from 2009. 42 new agreements were signed during 2010 with 10 new agreements signed during Q4 2010, including deals with Nuance, HP and Vericept."*

(5) But there was no suggestion in that extract that OEM revenues were limited to revenues received directly from the OEM. On the contrary, this passage stressed the breadth of the business generated by the OEM programme: "*it generates ongoing business across the broadest product set possible*". Nor did it purport to give a comprehensive definition of what is categorised as IDOL OEM revenue; at most, it is a general description, qualified by the words appearing above the passage quoted, that "*the trends are provided for background information and may include qualitative estimates*." In any event, these words should not be read in isolation: given what was said five pages

earlier ("*As part of our comprehensive OEM program…*"), the reader would understand that the embedding of IDOL in software companies' products did not represent the totality of Autonomy's OEM business.

(6) The Q1 and Q2 2011 press releases contained the passage saying that "*IDOL OEM is where Autonomy's IDOL is embedded inside other software companies' products*", but without the indication given in the Annual Reports that this was only a part of Autonomy's OEM business. However, readers interested in Autonomy would not have read the quarterly press releases alone: they would read them together with the fuller account in the Annual Reports. In this case, HP read the 2010 Annual Report, and it would not have been led by the Q1 and Q2 2011 press releases into thinking that IDOL OEM revenues were more narrowly drawn than in the Annual Report.

3072. The Defendants contended also that the warnings about *"qualitative estimates"* would not have been necessary if the category was confined to "straight" OEM transactions: whereas there was obviously some measure of qualitative assessment or estimate in determining whether to include a later transaction as derived from the original transaction.

3073. The Defendants brought their points on the scope of OEM derived revenues and OEM Ongoing together in the submission that once it is understood that OEM derived revenues included sales direct to customers of OEMs, it is unsurprising that they included revenues from companies other than software companies: even if the OEM itself was in the software sector, its customers could well be operating in different fields.

3074. The Defendants relied on the same point in relation to sales where there was a restriction requiring the customer to use Autonomy software for internal purposes only: where a sale is made direct to an OEM's customer, that customer would be using the software for its own purposes, rather than acting as an OEM itself, so an "internal use" restriction would cause no problems.

3075. As to the Claimants' point that (a) the further breakdown of *OEM derived revenues* into the two sub-categories of *"OEM dev"* and *"OEM Ongoing"* which Autonomy provided in Q1 2010, Q2 2010 and Q3 2010 appeared to allow no room for the inclusion of revenue from any other source (see paragraphs 3054 to 3055 above) and (b) Mr Hussain had adopted the same sub-categories as representing all such revenues, the Defendants' answer was to the effect that this depended on rigidly confining the description *"OEM Ongoing"* to royalties, and (for example) altogether excluding upsells and PODS, for which there was no warrant. Again in the context of questions related to the *Top 10 List*, Dr Lynch put the Defendants' position forcefully and clearly in cross-examination (the underlining is mine):

> *"…what we did with our OEM business was we <u>created a definition which was well communicated to the market over a very long period</u>, at least ten years, on multiple occasions, and our numbers were done on that basis. Yes, there are some judgements in those numbers, and it was made clear that situations varied and that there were qualitative estimates. That was actually the wording in the annual report.*

> *You [the Claimants] have come up with a different definition of these terms and you've recalculated things on your own basis which bears no relation to our terms, and also, I would venture, bears no relation to the commercial reality of what was going on."*

3076. The Defendants also submitted that the words *"OEM Ongoing"*, according to their definition, included not only royalties, but also revenues (a) made possible by the original OEM sale and (b) which could be expected to be ongoing from reliable repeat business. Their rationale was that OEM customers, having embedded Autonomy's software in their own products, were in practical terms tied in: they would be almost bound to renew their contracts and purchase updates and add-ons from Autonomy on a regular basis. Phrases such as *"multi-year committed annuity streams"* (as used in Autonomy's published information, see paragraph 3052(7) above) and Mr Hussain's references to *"ongoing royalties"* should be interpreted similarly, as extending to what Dr Lynch described in his first witness statement as *"follow-on sales…made possible by the initial OEM sale"*. Dr Lynch explained in cross-examination that even if not legally committed to renew, an OEM would in practical terms have to do so if its product had succeeded, because:

> "*people don't make and launch software products that are going to be sold for a year. They're generally the lifetime of a software product, probably 10/15 years. So once an OEM puts our technology in, remember you have to re-engineer the thing to take technology out usually, so it's a big job. So once you're in, you're in a situation that you're going to make money out of that situation for multiple years.*"

3077. Dr Lynch went on:

> *"Autonomy's OEM business generated substantial ongoing revenue. Once the technology was incorporated in a product, the product was likely to continue being shipped and a renewal was likely to be generated at the end of the original licence. It was not uncommon for an OEM customer to enter into six renewal contracts with Autonomy. For example, EMC entered into a sixth amendment to its OEM Agreement with Autonomy in 2010."*

3078. The Defendants concluding in their written closing submissions that:

> *"Far from limiting the scope of the revenues derived from the OEM set, this phrase emphasised the breadth of those revenues. The OEM business model was a way of generating on-going revenues as it tied in OEMs and required them to continue doing business with Autonomy. Ongoing business need not necessarily be recurrent royalties. As well as royalties, periodic renewals and ad hoc upsells derived from the original OEM relationship provide a revenue stream from ongoing business."*

3079. In summary, the Defendants' case was that:

(1) There was nothing in the wording of the published information denoting that Autonomy's OEM business and its OEM partnerships were exclusively with software companies.

(2) Nor was there anything in that wording sufficient to displace the meaning of "OEM derived": on the contrary, the introduction of the prefix "derived" was intended to denote the inclusion of any revenue judged to have been made possible by an initial OEM sale: they had cultivated that meaning in the market, and by Q4 2010 it had become notorious that OEM business included "OEM derived".

(3) The rationale of OEM derived revenue applied whether the OEM was a software or a hardware company.

(4) Repeat sales to third parties who had been sold a product embedded with IDOL and thus became not only aware of Autonomy and its software offering but often dependent on Autonomy for any enhancements or functionality needs were both referable to the original sale of a licence to the OEM in question and likely to lead to repeat or recurring sales;

(5) The revenue stream from upsells and PODS to end-users could be expected to endure and increase, as could repeat purchases by OEMs who, having embedded IDOL would almost inevitably require upgrades, add-ons and renewal or extension of licences; and prospective revenue from all that business was properly regarded as offering similar added commercial value as repeat revenue even if it was not automatically recurring like a royalty.

3080. Dr Lynch had to accept, however, that in not a single one of the Quarterly Reports, Annual Reports or even Earnings Calls in the Relevant Period was there anything expressed which either (a) distinguished between "straight" or "core" OEM (or just OEM) and "OEM-derived" sales or (b) referred to the word *"upsell"* or the expression *"PODS"*. Although Dr Lynch insisted nevertheless that by that time the extended scope of the transactions and revenues categorised as OEM sales and revenues had become common knowledge in the investment community and the market, he had to resort to the evidence from analysts reports and explanations said to have been given to a section of the market[353] which I have determined do not establish any market understanding to be taken into account in determining the meaning which reasonable readers would have attributed to the published information.

3081. I turn to my assessment of the competing arguments as to that meaning.

My assessment of what was conveyed by the published information itself

3082. I have already noted that the Claimants acknowledged (and I think this was accepted by the Defendants) that neither *"OEM"* nor *"OEM derived revenue"* were expressions with any settled or standard meaning: both were capable of different meanings, and the

[353] *"Upsells and PODS were discussed frequently between 2002 and 2009, multiple times, and not only was it done on earnings calls, but it was in analysts reports, communications with fund managers and analysts and their writings as well."*

latter was, of course, self-coined. Subject to the issue as to some cultivated general understanding in the market (which I address further later), an understanding as to the scope of Autonomy's OEM business and the nature of the revenues it generated had to be formed from what Autonomy said about them in its published information.

3083. The Defendants' contention that the introduction of the prefix *"derived"* clearly signalled a widening of the scope of business allocated to the OEM metric beyond the ordinary scope of OEM business, and that transactions and revenues which might not have constituted "core" OEM business and revenue nevertheless were counted as being part of that OEM metric, supposed that the market would have recognised some extension from a usual meaning: but there was no usual meaning, and readers were left to cull the meaning from Autonomy's published information read carefully in context. Put another way, the notion of an "expanded" meaning going beyond the ordinary assumes an established ordinary meaning; here there was none and a reader would not have been alerted to a broader than usual scope of business, because there was no "usual" scope of business.

3084. I consider that what must be assessed at this first stage is what impression was given in the published information of the nature and scope of Autonomy's OEM business and revenues in the relevant statements, taking into account that the statements usually included warnings about qualitative estimates. It is in a sense in the nature of a jury question rather than one of legal definition.[354]

3085. In my view, the reasonable reader would have read the published information starting from the premise (expressly stated in the annual and each quarterly report in 2010 and in Q1 and Q2 2011) that OEM business generated *"a particularly important revenue stream"* and had special characteristics which materially distinguished it from other lines of Autonomy's business. In identifying those special characteristics, the careful reader would have particularly noted:

(1) The references to the OEMs as *"other major software vendors"* or as being within *"the software sector",* the emphasis placed on the number and standing of the 400 software companies with whom Autonomy had established software partnerships, and the references to OEM partners *"leveraging Autonomy's award-winning technology into their software solutions"* and to IDOL being embedded in *"other software companies' products"*;

(2) Dr Lynch's own special commendation of the OEM business in his review in the 2010 Annual Report as being based on partnerships with *"numerous world-leading software companies [which] embed Autonomy's award-winning technology into their software solutions"* which were *"highly attractive to us as they turn one-off sales into multi-year committed annuity streams"*;

(3) There was no mention of revenue from OEM business other than from development licence fees and royalty payments, no room allowed in the

[354] However, it would be permissible to answer that the impression given is equivocal, or to use the more familiar word, ambiguous: so that if the statement were true by reference to any of the meanings, that would conclude the matter against the Claimants, unless in fact the Defendants intended a meaning which would make the statement untrue.

Supplemental metrics for any different source of revenue, and no mention either of what the Defendants now present as having been a major source of revenue, namely upsells and PODS.

3086. I cannot accept the Defendants' submissions that the published information, without reference to what they insisted was general market understanding, depicted OEM business in terms which allowed for a broader category of revenues than from development licence fees and royalty payments by OEMs to Autonomy. I do not accept that what the Defendants referred to as *"the narrow categories"* put forward by the Claimants were simply pulled together from *"various snippets from the Annual Reports and the quarterly press releases and earnings calls to come up with an unsustainably restrictive definition"* (as the Defendants suggested they were).

3087. I do not accept the Defendants' alternative submission that the presentation was ambiguous. The attraction offered was clearly depicted: a growing line of business generating, at little or no expense to Autonomy and thus a near 100% margin, recurring royalties from large 'captive' partners using their size, reputation and market presence to sell products with IDOL embedded under licence, as the Claimants submitted.

3088. In any event, I cannot accept that a reasonable reader would have understood from Autonomy's published information that a substantial proportion of revenue categorised as OEM derived revenue included (a) revenues from one-off licences sales for the purchaser's internal use only or (b) revenue from VAR sales.

3089. In my judgment, taking the published information as a whole, but without regard to anything said at Earnings Calls or any views expressed by Analysts, the impression conveyed by Autonomy's published information was that:

(1) Substantially all Autonomy's OEM relationships were with software companies, and in value terms most were with the 400 or so software companies expressly referred to.

(2) Substantially all revenue was derived from OEMs in the form of (a) development licence sales proceeds and (b) royalties paid by the OEM to Autonomy.

3090. Further, in my judgment, the same impression would have been given to a reader who read only the 2010 quarterly reports and the 2010 annual report and the quarterly reports for Q1 2011 and Q2 2011.

Should regard be had to evidence that various Analysts considered the market understood OEM Metric to be broad in scope?

3091. In further or alternative support of their submission that the expression was known to have extended the scope of OEM business, however, the Defendants contended that the OEM metric and the disputed expressions ("*OEM"* and *"OEM derived revenues"*) were (as the Defendants submitted) to be understood by reference to what the Defendants described as *"the understandings that had built up in the market over time as a result of explanations given by Autonomy"*. They sought to rely in this regard on

evidence of the views of various Analysts who covered Autonomy and wrote advisory notes on its business and prospects for the benefit of their clients.

3092. This evidence was disputed, both as to its relevance and as to its message. The principal focus was on (a) the evidence of two analysts, Mr Khan (two of whose analyst notes, one in 2002 and the other in 2004 were relied on also), and Mr Morland; (b) the evidence of one of Autonomy's corporate brokers, Mr Shelley, and the evidence of the manager of a hedge fund that invested in Autonomy, Mr Pearson; and on (c) what the Defendants sought to dismiss as *"a small selection of analyst notes"* especially identified by the Claimants.

3093. The Claimants also objected to Dr Lynch's attempt to rely upon what he argued was the market understanding concerning IDOL OEM on the broader basis that (a) it resembled expert evidence of some general market approach and understanding; but it was not adduced and could not be relied on as such; (b) such evidence could in any event lead nowhere, since *"the possibility that an analyst or investor might have been privy to additional information, not found in the published information, is neither here nor there"*. On that basis, the Claimants dismissed Dr Lynch's recourse to what he argued was the market understanding as a *"red herring"*.

3094. I accept the Claimants' broader objection in substantial part. I would add by way of both explanation and gloss that in my view:

(1) As emphasised previously, the question in this case is not one of contractual interpretation: nevertheless, at this first stage of identifying what the disputed statements would have been taken to mean by the reasonable reader, the principles established in the context of contractual interpretation provide a guide more generally in any context of linguistic analysis. The fact that the statement is unilateral does not alter that: see *Kyle Bay Limited t/a Astons Nightclub v Underwriters subscribing under Policy No. [019057/08/01]* [2007] EWCA Civ 57 at [31] citing *Mannai Investment Co Ltd v Eagle Star Assurance Ltd* [1997] AC 749 as putting to rest any doubt in that regard.

(2) It is well established that (even in the absence of apparent ambiguity) words must always be read in context to ascertain their intended meaning, and their context includes (in the oft-quoted words of Lord Hoffmann in *Investors Compensation Scheme v West Bromwich Building Society* [1998] 1 WLR 896):

> *"absolutely anything which would have affected the way in which the language of the document would have been understood by a reasonable man"*

However, this is subject to the requirement that it should have been *"reasonably available to the parties"* and to the exclusion for the purpose of establishing objective intention of evidence of negotiations and declarations or other evidence of subjective intentions.

(3) That said, the concept of what is *"reasonably available to the parties"* must be kept within sensible limits, especially where the words spoken are addressed not as between the parties, but are published generally to a mixed audience, as in the context of published information. In such a context, if

words are to be given a special "private dictionary" meaning the special private dictionary must be shown to have been available to all those to whom the words were addressed.

(4) In the context of words published generally, as by (inexact) analogy with words in a standard form contract, resort to background information or knowledge should be sparing, and probably only used where it is clearly established that it was shared generally within the market or audience to which it was addressed. At this first stage, the search is for a meaning that would have been generally ascribed to the disputed statement(s), if one can be identified.

(5) Proof of a generally accepted market dictionary or understanding is difficult. It will ordinarily require expert evidence. Such proof is not supplied by evidence that the Defendants vouchsafed to particular persons a key to understanding not provided to the market as a whole: for example, in Earnings Calls which I have determined do not constitute published information.

(6) Similarly, evidence (such as was relied on by the Defendants in this case, as elaborated later) from particular analysts of what they themselves understood, or considered to be understood in the market more generally, will only carry weight if it is accepted as a reliable proxy for the market as a whole. I agree with the Claimants that the evidence of what analysts thought is not expert evidence and was not adduced as such. Unless I were to accept the evidence of what the analysts told me as a reliable proxy for the views of the market, I do not think it would rise above evidence of a particular point of view, possibly informed by essentially non-public information. Analysts' notes and views may inform, but they do not demonstrate or represent, a general investor outlook.

(7) Proof that a significant body of analysts or others in the market or audience held a different view of the meaning of the statements made will obviously tell against any assertion of general market understanding; and especially strongly so where (as arguably again in this case) market understanding is being used to establish a private dictionary meaning inconsistent with what the words otherwise appear to connote.

3095. I do not accept that the evidence of the views of various analysts relied on by the Defendants provides a reliable proxy, not least because of the contrary evidence (analyst notes) which the Claimants also sought to rely on. I am not persuaded that there was reliable evidence on which the Defendants could rely to establish an understanding shared by those to whom the published information was addressed of a different or modified meaning of the disputed expressions in that published information relating to the OEM metric.

3096. It follows from this conclusion that, in my view, I should assess what the published information conveyed to its audience about the OEM business and the OEM metric without regard, at the first 'objective' stage, to evidence of the market understanding alleged by the Defendants (though that does not exclude the possibility of a mixed or ambiguous message and does not mean that the evidence of market analysts is

irrelevant, since it may be relevant at the second stage of assessing what, subjectively, the Defendants themselves intended to convey).

3097. However, lest I am wrong in my conclusion that there was no reliable evidence of a general accepted market understanding, I turn to address in more detail the Analyst evidence and any further evidence in relation to the Defendants' case that (a) the Claimants had adopted an excessively restricted and self-serving approach and had failed to take into account that (b) Autonomy had cultivated over the course of time an appreciation and understanding in the market of the phrase "OEM derived" (and cognate expressions) and that (c) it had become accepted and notorious that the OEM metric extended to business generated by reference to an original OEM sale.

Analyst/other evidence and market understanding

3098. The Defendants' case that the Claimants' restrictive definition of IDOL OEM revenues (limiting them to revenues from sales of software to companies (i) whose businesses included licensing that software to third parties and (ii) who had the intention and capability of embedding IDOL software into their own software products for onward licensing to those third parties) was inconsistent with the evidence of two of the Claimants' own witnesses, Mr Daud Khan ("Mr Khan") and Mr Paul Morland ("Mr Morland"), who had covered the company on-and-off for many years, and with *"the understanding that had built up in the market over time as a result of explanations given by Autonomy."* The Defendants relied also on the evidence of their own witnesses, Mr Pearson and Mr Shelley.

3099. The Claimants' submissions engaged at some length with the content of analyst reports, including in a detailed Appendix devoted to "*Evidence concerning market understanding",* in support of their case that, if relevant, what in fact the analyst notes showed was a widespread understanding that the analyst community in general understood the OEMs involved to be software companies embedding IDOL technology in their own software products and IDOL OEM revenues to consist entirely of development fees and ongoing royalties.

3100. To determine this aspect of the dispute I address the evidence of Messrs Khan, Morland, Pearson and Shelley in turn, before turning to the evidence of other analysts relied on by the Claimants.

Mr Khan

3101. Mr Khan said that he understood the term "OEM" as used by Autonomy in its published information by reference to:

> *"the standard use of the word and the commentary they provided around their use of the word."*

3102. Mr Khan had covered Autonomy intermittently since 2001 (first for Merrill Lynch and then, after 2006, for Cazenove) and had become a "negative analyst" in the sense that (a) as he accepted, from January 2008 onwards, he consistently recommended selling Autonomy stock and (b) many, if not most, of his clients had short positions in Autonomy stock.

3103. In his witness statement, he stated that it was not his *"understanding of the substance of IDOL OEM revenue"* that it included revenues derived from direct sales to customers of OEM customers. However, he accepted that he recollected having been told:

> *"by someone from Autonomy management mentioning, I believe off-line, after an earnings call, that OEM revenues included direct sales to customers that had purchased software from an Autonomy customer"* and
>
> *"assumed that such a sale would be related to the original OEM purchase, allowing the customer to increase the functionality of the embedded software."*

3104. He reconciled what otherwise might appear to be inconsistent positions by explaining that:

> (a) *"given the focus of the published disclosure on sales to software companies, a royalty model and recurring revenue, making no mention of the inclusion of sales to the customers of OEM customers, I assumed that this was a minor part of Autonomy's overall revenues"*; and further that he
>
> (b) *"did not believe that the inclusion of such revenues was common knowledge amongst analysts. It was not a standard interpretation of OEM"*; and he added that
>
> (c) *"If such sales had been material, this would have been significant from a valuation perspective as they would have involved costs that would not arise in a royalty model, and hence would not command as high a valuation in the same way as OEM revenue…"*[355]

3105. When cross-examined, he largely reiterated this evidence but introduced the refinement that he thought there were *"probably two definitions of upsell"*, one an upsell to the OEM customer and the other an upsell directly from Autonomy to the OEM customer's customer to add functionality to IDOL acquired as part of software purchased from an OEM. He explained that the latter was the species of upsell he had not understood before the "off-line" conversation and had considered not to be a material part of the OEM business. The former was the sense he may have had in mind when describing upsell fees as one of three types of revenue from OEMs in a note dated 26 April 2002 which he had written on Autonomy when at Merrill Lynch (though he did not mention it in his witness statement).

3106. It was not clear whether he had this in mind also in a second analyst note he had written for Clear Capital Markets[356] in January 2004, which he had not mentioned in his witness statement either, and which included the following passage suggestive that whatever upsells were:

> *"What we have seen is that up-sell OEM revenues have started to be a significant contributor albeit as volatile as royalties or up-front payments."*

---

[355] Mr Khan and Mr Morland agreed that IDOL OEM revenue commanded a higher market valuation than other revenue streams by virtue of its predominantly recurring nature. Mr Shelley and Mr Pearson concurred.

[356] A UK based stockbroker and wealth manager

3107. This was, again, a little at odds with his witness statement, in which he stated that he had:

> *"… assumed that this was a minor part of Autonomy's overall OEM revenues…If such sales had been material, this would have been significant from a valuation perspective as they would have involved costs which would not arise in a royalty model, and hence would not command as high a valuation in the same way as OEM revenue…"*

3108. He also stated that he did not believe that *"the inclusion of such revenues was common knowledge amongst analysts. It was not a standard interpretation of OEM."* Mr Khan agreed, however, that deciding whether or not a particular contract should be categorised as upsell would be a matter of judgment.

3109. When cross-examined, Mr Khan sought to explain inconsistencies between what he had written in his notes for Merrill Lynch and Clear Capital (and also a note for Cazenove) and his evidence in his witness statement as lapses in memory; but in a passage of his cross-examination which seemed to me to cast some doubt on the status of his evidence in his witness statement, and some concern as to the way it had been assembled, he also accepted that:

> *"My witness statement was drafted by the claimants' lawyers using my testimony from the US and then we had dialogue around the various paragraphs which I then authored and asked for changes."*

3110. Mr Khan could not recall whether he knew that PODS were also included in OEM revenue ("*I honestly can't remember. Maybe they were*"). He was referred to an earnings call in Q4 2002 in the course of which, in response to a question about the contribution of the *"PODS technology"* to sales, Dr Lynch had estimated that it was then running at around $2 million a quarter, noting also that it was a *"different route to market"* and a useful way of getting IDOL into the relevant organisation, and Mr Hussain had added that *"…in terms of the POD sales in Q4, it's included within the $1.5m of up sells for the OEMs"*. These references did not trigger any recollection: and Mr Khan made the point that this was more than 17 years ago.

Mr Morland

3111. Mr Morland's evidence in cross-examination was that the market understood that both PODS and upsells were included in Autonomy's OEM revenues:

> "Q. *Let's quickly deal with OEM. Autonomy reported its OEM revenues using a number of different terms over the years: OEM, OEM-derived, IDOL OEM-derived, IDOL OEM. You understood them to mean the same thing, didn't you?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And the market understood that OEM-derived included pods and upsells didn't it?*

A. Yes."

3112. However, in re-examination, Mr Morland qualified this by saying that:

> *"at the time I was unfamiliar with the term 'pod' but I understood it was to do with connectors and so I understood an upsell to be a sale of an additional connector to the OEM partner at the time. I never really understood it…I wasn't familiar with the term 'pod' at the time."*

3113. The Claimants pointed out that the difficulty with the question to Mr Morland in cross-examination was that the expression "upsell" is ambiguous: some take it to include only sales of additional licence or functionality to an OEM, some take it to extend to sales to an end-user. I agree with the Claimants that Mr Morland appears to have assumed the limited meaning; and he was simply unclear what PODS were.

3114. More generally, Mr Morland's evidence was rather unclear. The impression I formed overall was that he regarded the OEM metric in much the same way as Mr Khan, and would have expected it to be substantially comprised of revenue derived from sales to OEMs for embedding and onward sale.

Mr Pearson

3115. Mr Pearson was one of the witnesses called by Dr Lynch. His evidence was that the category was understood differently by different investors. In his witness statement he stated that:

> *"To my knowledge, there was no 'standard interpretation' of OEM-derived revenue at the time…The definition varied company to company. Therefore, I knew that a company's OEM-derived revenue figure could have a range of revenue streams included in it, such as licences, royalties, and upsells. Quite clearly, Autonomy's OEM revenue included both recurring and non-recurring revenue streams, as was stated by Autonomy in multiple conference calls from 2002 – 2004…"*

3116. The results presentation for Q1 2008 similarly noted that *"OEM breakdown includes some licence and is almost all IDOL".* The Defendants appeared to latch on to this as denoting that the scope and nature of OEM derived revenues was as they had suggested, and thus included non-recurring revenue; and they emphasised Mr Pearson's evidence in cross-examination that this was a point that had been well understood in the market for some time. But this was, to my mind, a misunderstanding or mistaken assertion: all that the presentation seems to me to have signified was that OEM business generated revenue from the sale of development licences to OEMs (*"OEM Dev"*) as well as recurring payments from OEMs for onward sales of products with IDOL embedded (*"OEM Ongoing"*). That was of course well known and plainly stated to the market: but that is of no assistance in the present context of considering how *"OEM Ongoing"* and thus *"OEM derived"* were constituted.

3117. Mr Pearson's own assertion that he *"knew"* from the fact that the term was not defined and had different meanings *"company to company"* that therefore the *"OEM-derived revenue figure"* could include upsells was either a *non-sequitur,* or simply a general

statement as to the potential, but not necessarily the actual, meaning of the term. Either way, it was of little assistance; and Mr Pearson also had difficulty in pointing to any support for including upsells in any published information or recorded commentary after 2004.

3118. The only post-2004 analyst research note which Mr Pearson was able to pray in aid (when drawn to his attention in re-examination) was one dated 6 January 2010 and written by Mr Briest at UBS. That note did, in a table highlighting that implied growth in *"royalty/upsell sales" "might be more like 50-60%"* and a chart tracking the acceleration in sign-up rates against an acceleration in what were described as *"OEM upsell/royalties",* thus contain a reference to *"upsell"* in the context of IDOL OEM revenue. The same Note, in its analysis of *"The OEM opportunity"*, also spoke of *"a high pedigree of software relationships within its OEM list"* and identified the significance and value of OEM relationships as being *"perhaps the best visible evidence of IDOL's differentiation and competitive advantage"* and the high operating margin on all such sales "*given the related R&D costs are absorbed in the core business and the costs of sales will be relatively modest for incremental royalty streams."*

3119. However, nothing in the Note, as I read it, demonstrated an understanding that upsells to customers of the OEM partner were also included and I agree with the Claimants that the references to upsells were to sales of additional software or functionality to the OEM partner itself: the presentation being of upsell revenues having a similar nature and the same source as royalties. On that reading, Mr Briest's Note does not take the matter further for the Defendants, and tended rather to support the Claimants' case both as to OEMs typically, perhaps invariably, being software companies and as to there not being included in OEM derived revenues revenue from dealings with a third-party customer.

3120. The Claimants also noted that the 6 January Note was the last report written by Mr Briest that mentioned upsells. In subsequent notes, Mr Briest only mentioned development fees and ongoing royalties.

3121. In any event, I accept the Claimants' contention that the value of Mr Pearson's evidence was diminished by (a) his claim, which he had to draw back from in cross-examination, that by 2009 the OEM category had become relatively less valuable because IDOL was by then so well known to and well regarded in the market that the market penetration offered by OEM sales was no longer of the value it had previously had; (b) his difficulty in pointing to any specific examples of explanations by Autonomy, after 2004, that justified the conclusion that the category included revenue from direct sales to end-users; as well as (c) his continuing close connection with Mr Hussain and his continuing investment in Dr Lynch's business interests, which may explain a somewhat partisan approach considered that the market also understood that OEM included some licence revenues.

Mr Shelley

3122. Mr Shelley (who, like Mr Pearson, was called as a witness by Dr Lynch, but who is not relied on or even referred to at all in the Defendants' closing submissions, as the Claimants noted with some glee) gave evidence in his witness statement that he did:

> *"not recall there being a discussion between Autonomy and the analyst community regarding the composition of reported OEM sales. If this had been an area of interest for analysts and investors, I would have raised the issue with Autonomy."*

3123. This was difficult to square with his own requests, of which he was reminded in cross-examination, for a breakdown of the composition of reported IDOL OEM, and in particular, what the split was between new deals and royalties from previous deals. Autonomy's response further indicated a perception that it was understood that those were indeed (substantially at least) the constituent revenue sources. Mr Kanter responded to Mr Shelley as follows:

> *"A very small proportion of OEM revenue relates to upfront development fees for new transactions, typically $200k per transaction. Royalties for OEM contracts vary, depending on what IDOL functionality is being used by the OEM. Four percent is an example of a typical OEM, and are reported on gross sales of the OEM's product. Royalties are normally paid quarterly in arrears."*

3124. The same emerged from further exploration with Mr Shelley in the course of his cross-examination, of various documents, including a variety of analysts' notes with a view to showing that in fact analysts were clear as to the substantial composition of OEM revenue, and there was no sign in any of them of it being contemplated that it might include a substantial proportion of non-royalty one-off sales to end-users.

3125. He was taken to a draft of the Q4 2010 Quarterly Report containing his comments as well as those of a colleague of his at Goldman Sachs (just after Mr Shelley had moved there in late 2010). The draft Report noted that IDOL OEM revenues:

> *"comprise two elements: up-front development licences as third party software vendors develop new products built on IDOL; royalty payments earned from sales of those products when they come to market…".*

3126. He was then also taken to a note published by Credit Suisse on 18 March 2010 entitled *"The Autonomy OEM Opportunity"*. In addition to describing the OEM partnerships as being with *"software vendors"*, the Credit Suisse Note explained OEM derived revenues as being comprised of development licence fees and *"royalties paid to Autonomy for ongoing sales made by OEMs once they are up and running"* as Mr Shelley had to accept (and see further as to this note, paragraph 3129(1) below).

3127. The following exchange during Mr Shelley's cross-examination seemed to me to confirm his acceptance that, more generally, the high margins attributed to OEM revenues, were characteristic of, and only really explained if OEM ongoing was largely, even if not exclusively, comprised of, royalty payments rather than one-off direct sales:

> *"Q. So when Credit Suisse is talking about gross margins of over 95% and operating margins of around 75%, they're talking about margins on royalty payments, not direct sales by Autonomy, aren't they?*
>
> *A. It would appear so, yes.*

Q. So the understanding that Autonomy's reported ongoing OEM payments are royalty payments, which we've seen is an understanding they had, rather than revenues on direct sales, that is critical to Credit Suisse's valuation of the OEM business in this note isn't it?

A. It would appear so, yes.

…

Q. The exercise here is based on the understanding that the OEM ongoing revenues are royalty revenues, isn't it?

A. Yes, that's right."

Assessment of that evidence and comparison with analysts notes relied on by the Claimants

3128. Looked at in the round, I consider that this evidence suggests that it was recognised by some analysts that Autonomy might have some leeway in terms of including revenue generated by sales to an end-user even if (as would be usual) they were one-off sales for which the opportunity was provided by the embedding of IDOL in software licensed to that end-user by an OEM: but it does not signify any appreciation in the market that revenue of that sort would represent any material part of the total IDOL OEM revenue. Nor, to my mind, does it establish any general market understanding that the prefix 'derived' materially increased the scope of the OEM classification.

3129. The impression that the market continued to regard the OEM metric as substantially confined to licence and royalty-type payments is confirmed by evidence of the understanding of other analysts relied on by the Claimants. The Claimants relied on the following:

(1) A detailed 17-page note about Autonomy's OEM business issued by Credit Suisse on 18 March 2010, entitled "*The Autonomy OEM Opportunity*", and authored by Mr Frederick Grieb ("Mr Grieb")[357]. The note recorded Mr Grieb's understanding of the meaning of "*OEM Dev*" and "*OEM Ongoing*":

> ***"OEM Development***: *OEM Development fees are the upfront fees of $200k that are paid to Autonomy, upfront, upon the signing of an OEM agreement.*
>
> ***OEM Ongoing***: *These are the royalties paid to Autonomy for ongoing sales made by OEMs once they are up and running."*

There was no mention of upsell or PODS sales anywhere in this note. The entirety of Autonomy's "*OEM derived revenues*" appears to have been understood by Credit Suisse, a sophisticated evaluator of Autonomy's published information, to be made up of development fees and ongoing

[357] As well as Chandramouli Sriraman.

royalties from licence sales by an OEM of products in which Autonomy software was embedded under licence from Autonomy.[358]

(2) A Morgan Stanley analyst note dated 30 June 2008 describing Autonomy's OEM business as essentially comprising *"an upfront fee and then a 3% royalty on its product sales that embed IDOL on a going forward basis"*;

(3) A Nataxis analyst note dated 11 March 2011 describing OEM revenues as comprised of (a) a non-refundable upfront fee and (b) royalties on the sale of the software;

(4) A Nomura analyst note dated 22 April 2010 (by an analyst also regarded by Autonomy as "sound" according to the assessment referred to in paragraph 3130(1) below) breaking down all reported IDOL OEM revenue into *"OEM Dev"* and *"OEM Ongoing"* and describing the latter as *"royalties"*;

(5) An initiating note[359] by Standard & Poor's ("S&P") dated 27 August 2010 to the same effect;

(6) A Societe Generale ("Soc Gen") initiating note dated 23 March 2010 (by an analyst described by Autonomy as a "drifter") stating that *"OEM sales are extremely profitable as they carry a 100% gross margin"* which Mr Shelley accepted suggests that Soc Gen shared Credit Suisse's understanding since such high gross margins are consistent with royalty payments, and not direct sales by Autonomy.

3130. In short, these analyst notes suggest that a number of influential market analysts understood from what they were being told that Autonomy's OEM business was confined to what Dr Lynch described later as "Core" OEM. Dr Lynch was notably discomfited by the Credit Suisse note[360], and offered uncharacteristic bluster when confronted with it:

(1) It was first suggested to Dr Lynch that Credit Suisse did not understand that upsells were included in reported OEM revenue, and he responded that he would be "*very surprised*" if Credit Suisse had got this wrong. Having then been shown that Credit Suisse's understanding did not support his case, Dr Lynch then said that he did not know who Mr Grieb was: "*obviously Credit Suisse didn't understand it, whoever this person is*" and queried whether he (Mr Grieb) had actually been *"present in the calls where this was all explained"*. Yet Mr Grieb was an analyst who was both known to, and well regarded by, Autonomy's executive management and investor relations team.

---

[358] Indeed, when analysing why IDOL OEM revenues were a "*high-growth, high margin opportunity*", Credit Suisse referred only to the "*initial $200,000 fee to begin work with Autonomy*", and the "*~3% of OEM license revenues as a royalty payment on average*". Credit Suisse's analysis of Autonomy's historic IDOL OEM revenues, and its projection of Autonomy's future OEM revenues, was broken down entirely into these "*OEM Development*" and "*OEM Ongoing*" categories.

[359] That is to say, that firm's first note on Autonomy.

[360] In which it may be noted that Mr Grieb described OEM business as being where *"Autonomy allows software vendors to use the company's IDOL technology via OEM agreements"*

Indeed, Mr Grieb was an analyst considered by Autonomy or its advisers to be "*Sound*" (as opposed to "*Corrupt*", or "*Feeble-minded*" or a "*Drifter*").[361]

(2) Dr Lynch then sought to paint Credit Suisse as an exception in not knowing about the inclusion of upsell and PODS revenue. He went so far as to tell me that *"everyone knew, with the possible exception of the one analyst"* (Mr Grieb).

3131. The Defendants broadened this to submit that this evidence of other views suggested only that the primary focus of a *"a small number of analysts"* was on core OEM revenue: it did not establish that those analysts perceived the OEM metric to include no other revenues at all; and if they did, and if they took to be excluded from the OEM metric any revenue which was not recurring, and all upsells (even of additional functionality to an OEM customer) it was altogether more restrictive than even the Claimants had put forward. As mentioned above, even the Claimants came to accept that "upsells" did at least include sales of:

> *"additional functionality to the original OEM purchaser…provided the revenues arose from licences that permitted the licensee to embed additional IDOL software in the OEM's own software product for onward licensing to the OEM's customers."*

3132. However, I do not think it ultimately assists the Defendants on this aspect of the case. What these notes suggest to me is that the focus of a not insignificant number of analysts from well-regarded firms, and (I take it) of their readership and addressees as a whole, was on the particular value to be ascribed to (a) the typically recurring nature of IDOL OEM revenues (b) the especially low cost and high margins of sales effected through an OEM and (c) the prospect of ever greater penetration into the unstructured data market, bringing the potential for IDOL increasingly to become the solution of choice embedded within a broader software package sold by large OEMs with a corresponding presence and reputation in the market. Revenue which did not have any of those characteristics or qualities, and could only be distinguished from IDOL Product revenue by reference to some antecedent sale to an OEM, would not have been anticipated to form any substantial part of the revenues included in the OEM metric.

3133. It seems to me to be clear from the analyst notes collated by the Claimants that many analysts, and it is to be inferred, many addressees, would not have expected revenues from one-off sales, or sales direct to an end-user rather than an OEM, which generated no ongoing and recurring revenue stream, to represent any material proportion of the revenue comprised in the OEM metric. If they expected any such revenues at all, they would not have expected the amounts to be such as to upset the description of the OEM metric as predominantly, even if not exclusively, made up of a recurring royalty revenue stream derived from OEMs producing software themselves which embedded IDOL in that software and licensed the combined product to end-users.

[361] This was the view expressed in the slide-deck sent by Mr Brown to Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain on 3 December 2010. Furthermore, the Claimants contended that contrary to the impression given by Dr Lynch in cross-examination, Dr Lynch knew *"perfectly well"* who Mr Grieb was, having met him in September 2010 at a meeting in Autonomy's Piccadilly offices.

3134. Indeed, on that basis, I am not persuaded that there was such a division of understanding between the analysts relied on by the Defendants and those relied on by the Claimants.

3135. In any event, I consider that it is possible to identify revenue which, having none of the qualities associated with OEM revenue, addressees of Autonomy's published information and market analysts would not have expected to form any material part of the amounts included in the OEM metric. As to that:

(1) It seems to me that the touchstone for analysts and investors was that the revenue included in the (straight or core) OEM metric was derived from either development licences sold to an OEM (whether or not a software company) for the OEM to embed IDOL into its products for sale to an end-user, in which case they fell within the description *"OEM Dev"* or from royalty payments on revenues earned by the OEM on onward sale to an end-user, in which case they fell within the description *"OEM Ongoing"*.

(2) Revenue from sales which, but for an antecedent transaction between the purchaser and an OEM, was not in any other sense "OEM-derived", and which had none of the characteristics that made OEM revenues particularly valuable (their recurring nature, especially low costs and high margins and the market penetration amongst (to use a phrase which will place this judgment in its historical context in the time of Covid-19) "super-spreaders" of the software (as were the large OEMs)), would not have been considered by addressees to be any material part of the OEM/OEM-derived metric.

(3) In my view, these included upsells and PODS directly to end-users which cannot comfortably be described as "upsells" because (a) they were not sales to the same person as had originally purchased the goods for which additional functionality was required; (b) they were not sales of OEM products; (c) they did not give the purchaser any right to embed IDOL into products for onward sale; (d) they did not enhance the royalty rate or generate any new multi-year royalty stream (or in some cases an upfront payment in lieu of it); and (e) the costs of the sales were not absorbed by an OEM, so that the marginal profit was unlikely to be either recurring or different from ordinary IDOL Product sales.

(4) Likewise, revenue from sales of IDOL to OEMs which were not calculated to result in IDOL being embedded because the OEM was not a software company and/or because the license granted was restricted to the internal use of the IDOL software, and sales which were not structured and/or intended to generate a recurring royalty revenue stream (or in some cases, a lump sum in advance in lieu if it), also fell outside what I have found Autonomy presented in its published information and addressees of that information understood the scope of the OEM metric to be.

(5) Sales of hardware, and other sales which were not of IDOL software, would not have been understood to be included in the IDOL OEM metric either: the fact that the purchaser had in some anterior transaction acquired an Autonomy product from an OEM, or was purchasing non-IDOL goods to supplement or

add to the functionality of a previous purchase of IDOL software embedded in an OEM product, would not, in my view, have been understood to fall within that metric.

(6) Another debated category was revenue from repeat renewals of development licenses. Dr Lynch insisted (quoting from his second witness statement) that *"Even OEMs that did not include ongoing royalties provided ongoing revenue streams, as it was extremely common for OEMs to be renewed."* He gave as an example that EMC renewed its OEM six times prior to HP's acquisition, and again even thereafter. I accept the commercial sense of this, which Dr Lynch explained clearly when cross-examined as follows:

> *"... people don't make and launch software products that are going to be sold for a year. They're generally the lifetime of a software product, probably 10/15 years. So once an OEM puts our technology in, remember you have to re-engineer the thing to take technology out usually, so it's a big job. So once you're in, you're in a situation that you're going to make money out of that situation for multiple years."*

(7) But whilst I accept the commercial logic, I am not persuaded that it is of much assistance to Dr Lynch. The renewal posited is with an OEM for continued embedding of Autonomy software yielding a royalty-like payment (or sometimes a payment in advance to cover the term, which Dr Lynch explained would be called an *"upfront royalty").* In that event, the revenue upon renewal would either be recurrent or its equivalent upfront; but whilst any renewal might be likely it could not be said to be recurrent. Dr Lynch sought to rely in this context on the evidence of Mr Collet when it was put to him that the renewal would *"lead to recurrent revenues",* to which Mr Collet replied *"It might lead to renewal upon the end of the agreement. If that is what you call recurring revenues."* But I did not understand Mr Collet to be indicating that that is what <u>he</u> would have called recurrent revenues; and I have concluded that there is nothing to support the suggestion that either analysts or the market more generally would have considered revenue from repeat business to be like or analogous to a *"multi-year committed annuity stream"* (as Dr Lynch described the characteristic which made the OEM business so *"highly attractive to us"* in his statement in the 2010 Annual Report).

3136. In the result, I have concluded (and see paragraphs 3086 to 3089 above) that the narrow "objective" view of the meaning of the metrics provided was that which probably prevailed amongst both the analysts and in the market, with some leeway for the occasional borderline case permitted by the warnings Autonomy expressly stated (to the effect that the metric was for background information and that the decision to include revenues within it would involve some *"qualitative estimates"*) which I consider would have been taken to connote some flexibility and room for subjective judgement.[362]

---

[362] Even though that express warning was not included in the reports for Q1 2011 and Q2 2011 (where the figures appeared in the *"Financial Review"* section which was described as representing a *"a commentary on key trends in the quarter"*) I am prepared to assume that a reader of the run of financial statements would have had the warning in mind.

3137. In any event, I consider that a more detailed review of the views expressed by analysts at the time confirms me in my view that there is not any sufficient evidence of there having been any general market understanding that the OEM metric extended to business judged by Autonomy to have been made possible (IDOL OEM *"derived"*) by some earlier sale to an OEM as well as the OEM sale itself.

(e) Was the published information false and misleading?

3138. In the RRAPoC, the Claimants identified a total number of (initially) 68 (but subsequently amended to 67) transactions of over $1 million in the period Q1 2009 to Q2 2011 which they alleged were incorrectly characterised as giving rise to IDOL OEM revenue during the Relevant Period. Their total value was $254,964,000. This compared to a total value of all such deals worth $1million or more during the Relevant Period of $293,500,000.

3139. Thus, the Claimants pleaded that approximately 87% by value of the OEM transactions they had analysed had characteristics which did not match the description of IDOL OEM revenue in the published information so as to render the statements in it false.[363]

3140. As previously explained, the Claimants did not at trial pursue a case in relation to a transaction with Bloomberg in Q2 2011 (the last one listed in the above Schedule 8), so that the Claimants ultimately identified and relied on 67 OEM transactions not having characteristics which were necessary for revenue from the transaction to be allocated to the IDOL OEM metric. The Claimants calculated that these transactions in total accounted for some 80% of the revenue included in the OEM metric, though the Defendants disputed this figure and did not accept that there was any demonstrated basis for it.

3141. The Claimants divided the revenues (allegedly comprising about 80% of the whole) which they submitted were wrongly included in the metric into three principal (but sometimes overlapping) categories:

(1) Revenues from sales of IDOL to non-software companies, which did not license software to their own customers, and so had neither the intention nor the capability to embed Autonomy's software into their own software products. In most, if not all, cases of this type, the reality was that the purchaser simply intended to deploy the software acquired from Autonomy for its own internal use. The principal examples given by the Claimants were:

(a) various sales to government agencies[364], which by definition are not in the business of selling anything to anyone, let alone their own software products with embedded IDOL software;

[363] See the Notes at Schedule 8 to the RRAPoC, which explained that *"The analysed transactions represent approximately $293.5 million (93%) of the $315.9 million of revenue categorised as IDOL OEM in the Relevant Period. Of the transactions analysed, approximately 87% were found not to be IDOL OEM ($255.0 million of $293.5 million)…If all of the non-analysed transactions are assumed to have been properly characterized as IDOL OEM, approximately 81% of the value categorised as IDOL OEM…(or 86% in the period from Q3 2009 to Q2 2011) did not arise from IDOL OEM transactions."*

[364] As end-user, whether through a direct purchase or purchase from a VAR.

(b) a sale to Tottenham Hotspur football club of a solution *"intended to enable a system to provide the following functions at the level found in a Premiership football club's ordinary operations: CRM, ticketing, player analysis, retail, internet and web design"*.

This category included sales to companies which plainly intended to deploy the software on hardware supplied to them for internal use: these companies included Bloomberg (OEM10), MetLife (OEM27), JP Morgan (OEM28), as well as revenue from non-software companies who could not embed the software in their own product;

(2) Revenues from sales of software licences that expressly limited the purchaser's right to use the Autonomy software, and prevented the purchaser from embedding the software into its own products for onward sale or licensing to third parties.

(3) Revenues from transactions that by virtue of the nature of the contract, or because the revenue was not properly recognisable under IAS, could not properly be classified as a sale giving rise to IDOL OEM revenue. These included:[365]

(a) Licence sales associated with hosting contracts which enabled those customers to archive digital information in an environment hosted by Autonomy but were not sales to software companies which embedded IDOL technology into their own software products for onward licensing to third parties, and where in any event restrictions on the use of the licenced software for such purposes was prohibited (including six impugned hosting transactions, worth a total of $31.1 million, where the Claimants alleged that the data continued to be hosted by Autonomy on Autonomy's facilities using Autonomy software and (according to the Claimants) the revenue should not have been recognised at all);

(b) Hardware sales, including (i) a transaction under which Autonomy agreed to sell to Bloomberg *"hardware, software and services"* for a total sum (all classified as OEM revenue) of $7,129,000 of which the hardware element was $5,718,010 and (ii) a transaction with Rand covering hardware which involved a sale of Arcpliance and a licence to use DS Mail (but not IDOL software), under a contract which limited use of the licensed software, prohibited the making of any copies, sublicensing and distribution, and made clear that its use was to be to provide a hosted email archiving service to end-users;

[365] It may be noted that the Claimants contended that *"Where an impugned OEM transaction…is also impugned elsewhere in the case, such that the revenue should not have been recognised at all, the fact that this revenue was classified as IDOL OEM revenue served to exacerbate the misleading nature of reported IDOL OEM revenue. That follows from the fact that IDOL OEM revenue, a particularly valuable revenue stream, was also fraudulently inflated. Further, VAR, hosting or hardware transactions are, by definition, incompatible with Autonomy's description or definition of IDOL OEM revenue."*

(c) Ten impugned VAR transactions, totalling $59.9 million of revenue, under which neither the VAR nor the end-user was permitted or intended to embed IDOL into its own products, and where the revenue should not have been recognised, and seven of which (involving $40.1 million of revenue) were not followed by any sale to an end-user during the Relevant Period;

(d) Ten components of impugned reciprocal transactions involving $55.9 million of revenue; and

(e) Five transactions totalling $11.6 million of revenue from the sale of consultancy services by MicroLink, a subsidiary of Autonomy.

3142. The Claimants' analysis was that from Q3 2009 to Q2 2011 inclusive, that estimate of 80% of the revenue included in the OEM metric had one or more characteristics of (a)-(e) below:[366]

(a) Revenue from licences sold by Autonomy where the terms of the licence restricted the licensee to internal use of the software only;

(b) Revenue derived from hardware;

(c) Revenue derived from contrived VAR, reciprocal or hosting transactions;

(d) Revenue derived from transactions generating only a single up-front payment and no royalties (the Claimants' case being that none of the 67 in fact gave rise to royalties, even if provision was made in the contract for them)[367];

(e) Revenue derived from sales which were not IDOL sales by Autonomy.

3143. The Claimants submitted that in none of the 67 transactions above described, which they estimated to represent 80% of the revenues classified as OEM derived, were any of the revenues derived from royalty or other payments of a recurring nature.

3144. Furthermore, the Claimants contended that even in relation to the remaining 20% or so of revenues allocated to the IDOL OEM metric which they accepted was such as to generate high margin royalty income from OEMs, most were restructured in favour of accelerated upfront one-off payments, which (because discounted for early payment) yielded in aggregate less in total revenue over the course of the transaction. Many OEMs accepted this since the lump sum was smaller and relatively good value for

[366] The OEMs are numbered according to their position in the table provided at Schedule 8 to the RRAPoC. The same name and value are ascribed to them as in Mr Hussain's quarterly revenue spreadsheets that were provided to Deloitte, with footnotes provided in the Claimants' further tables in their written submissions suggesting explanations of any discrepancies.

[367] In respect of some there was a royalty clause [OEM1,6,11,15,18,31,34,35,44,52,60] but either none resulted (sometimes because of a commutation to a single up-front payment) or none should have been recognised because it was a reciprocal or other impugned transaction [OEM1,11,13,15,18,23,31,34,35,44,52] or there is no sufficient evidence to warrant treating revenue as royalty [OEM20,29,30,39,47,57,67]

them (the only advantage to Autonomy being immediate receipt of revenue which could immediately be recognised in its accounts).

3145. The effect of the one-off prepayments, according to the Claimants, was to reduce still further the amount of revenue in the IDOL OEM metric which consisted of ongoing royalties, and still more to reduce the amount representing royalty payments at a level of 3%, thus aggravating the untrue and misleading nature of the statements made by Autonomy in its published information.

The Defendants' response

3146. The Defendants' response on this aspect of the dispute concerning these analyses and numbers had four primary limbs:

(1) The Defendants rejected as being artificially and incorrectly restrictive the basis on which the Claimants alleged the 67 OEM transactions in question to have been wrongly classified. They denied that the characterisation of the impugned transactions was untrue or misleading. In accordance with the Defendants' more flexible and broader interpretation, their case was that revenues classified as IDOL OEM reflected a qualitative estimate of all IDOL business in the period in question generated through the OEM channel/network which Autonomy would not otherwise have been able to generate. In his Defence, Dr Lynch had pleaded, for example, that a non-software company could be an OEM and revenue from sales to an OEM would be classed as OEM derived[368], as also should sales to end-users of added functionality or PODs. According to the Defendants, these transactions had not been shown to be incorrectly classified.

(2) The numbers had been compiled by Autonomy's Finance Department in close consultation with Deloitte and listed on spreadsheets provided to and carefully ticked-off by Deloitte: Deloitte had thereby reviewed and verified Autonomy's classification of transactions as OEM transactions for the purpose of testing the OEM revenue figures.

(3) The summary reasons given in the Claimants' written closing were not adequate for the purpose of testing the Claimants' complaints as to classification, and these had not been put to Dr Lynch.

(4) The Claimants' assertion that 80% of the revenue characterised as IDOL OEM was misallocated was just that, an assertion, and it had not been supported by evidence.

(5) Further, in a number of cases, the Claimants' reasons for saying that revenues were wrongly classified within OEM was that the transaction from which the revenue was generated was challenged in some other part of the case, as an alleged reciprocal transaction, or impugned VAR transaction or (in at least one case) a hardware transaction, and that was not a proper basis of challenge

[368] In his Defence, and in his witness statement, the example given was that *"a delivery company may develop a smartphone application for tracking parcels which they sell to other parcel delivery companies. If, in developing that app, they use Autonomy and then they sell the app to others, they will be acting as an OEM."*

without a separate analysis as to why they were not properly characterised as OEM-derived.

3147. As to (1) in the preceding paragraph, it follows that on the Defendants' own case, considerable amounts of revenue were allocated as OEM-derived which did not have what I have concluded would have been taken by addressees of the published information to be the special characteristics of that metric. It further follows from that conclusion that whilst I consider that such addressees would have expected there to be scope for *"qualitative estimate"* or subjective judgement as to whether in particular instances the link between the transaction to which revenue was referable and a prior OEM transaction was sufficient to warrant differentiating it from, for example, income referable to IDOL Product transactions, they would not have expected the inclusion of substantial amounts of revenue from categories of transaction which had not the special characteristics associated with the metric to be within that scope. Both Defendants knew that, on the contrary, there were substantial amounts included in the OEM metric which were neither licence fees paid by an OEM nor ongoing payments payable by an OEM in respect of onward sales under licence of products embedded with IDOL. (That does not necessarily mean that the Defendants were dishonest: it is a matter for consideration at the next stage of the analysis whether at the time (a) they honestly intended the broader meaning they now assert and (b) whether they honestly considered the revenue to have been entirely properly allocated in accordance with their own understanding of the metric; but it does mean (if the amounts of revenue in question were substantial) that the published information was misleading.)

3148. Similarly as to (2) in paragraph 3146 above, although the involvement of Deloitte is a matter to which I must return (see paragraphs 3166 to 3185 below), the fact (if shown) that Deloitte did accept Autonomy's finance department's categorisation of revenue as IDOL OEM which had not the characteristics which I have concluded an addressee of the published information would have associated with the metric, can only go ultimately to the issue whether the Defendants were acting dishonestly. Any comfort or confirmation they may have obtained from Deloitte's approval would not alter the fact that the published information was, on the basis of my conclusions, misleading.

3149. The question raised by (3) in paragraph 3146 above relates back to the first of the two issues that I addressed in the introduction to this chapter as to whether what the Claimants had done was sufficient for the purpose of identifying the characteristics of the 67 impugned transactions without further evidence of their own or cross-examination of Dr Lynch. My judgment is that it was: see paragraphs 3010 to 3023 above.

3150. More specifically as to (4) above, in his oral reply, Mr Rabinowitz relied on (i) the *"underlying contracts"* alleged to have generated revenues which could not properly be classified as OEM derived revenue (which were in the trial bundles and were identified in the Schedules provided as part of the Claimants' Opening Submissions, and, as slightly modified, as part of the Claimants' Closing Submissions also) , and (ii) Mr Bezant's Fourth Report, which Mr Rabinowitz submitted verified the content of Schedules 8 and 9 of the RRAPoC and the 80% figure as having been *"correctly quantified from Mr Hussain's revenue spreadsheets."* Mr Bezant (who was not, of course, a witness of fact but an expert) only checked and confirmed the consistency between the Schedules and what was stated in Mr Hussain's spreadsheets: he expressly

stated that he was not instructed to consider *"the Claimants' assessment of whether transactions were or were not IDOL OEM…"* But he could calculate the sum assuming that none of the transactions went beyond the scope of the market view of OEM business.

3151. I have taken into account in that context, and with regard to (5) in paragraph 3146 above, the Defendants' argument that some of the 67 transactions revenues were alleged to have been wrongly classified as OEM derived on the ground that the transactions in question were impugned on some other basis (VARs and reciprocal arrangements in particular), and that this did not suffice to establish a case that the revenues had been wrongly categorised as OEM derived. Of course, I accept that there could arise an obvious element of double-counting; and, for example, the mere fact that revenues have been recognised too early would not of itself entail that they had been wrongly categorised as OEM derived.

3152. However, in the case of almost every one of the VAR transactions and Reciprocal transactions, there was at least one further material basis alleged for the Claimants' case that the revenues generated were not properly classified as OEM, rather than (as in fact they were classified by Autonomy) 'OEM-derived'. Thus:

(1) Of the 10 VAR transactions identified as giving rise to revenue which was not properly categorised:

(a) OEM7 (with a VAR for end-user IBM/Ameriprise) involved the licencing of software for use of 20,000 Mailboxes only with Ameriprise and was part of a hosting services arrangement, so that no OEM was involved and no ongoing royalty arrangement could or did result;

(b) OEM12 (with MicroTech for end-user DiscoverTech) did not involve an OEM embedding IDOL into its own software and no ongoing royalty payment could or did result;

(c) OEM16 (with MicroLink for end-user DiscoverTech) did not involve an OEM embedding IDOL into its own software and no ongoing royalty payment could or did result;

(d) OEM36 (with Capax Discovery for end-user Amgen) was a licence sale for internal use (hosting), and that use was restricted accordingly;

(e) OEM45 (with DiscoverTech as VAR for end-user BofA) was a licence sale for use only for internal purposes, and no ongoing royalty payment could or did result;

(f) OEM50 (with Capax Discovery for end-user McAfee Inc) was a licence sale for McAfee's sole internal use, no OEM which wished to embed IDOL software in its own products was involved, and no ongoing royalty payment could or did result;

(g) OEM53 (with DiscoverTech for end-user Prisa) was a licence sale for use only for internal purposes, no OEM which wished to embed IDOL software in its own products was involved, and no ongoing royalty payment could or did result;

(h) OEM62 (with DiscoverTech on-licensing to Dell for end-user Hyatt) was a licence solely for the purpose of a sub-licence to Hyatt for its internal use, and no ongoing royalty payment could or did result;

(i) OEM64 (for JP Morgan) was a licence for its internal use only, no OEM was involved and no ongoing royalty payment could or did result;

(j) OEM65 (with Capax Discovery for end-user UBS) was a licence for UBS's internal use only, no OEM was involved and no ongoing royalty payment could or did result.

(2) Of the 10 reciprocal transactions identified as giving rise to revenue which was not properly categorised:

(a) OEM1 (with Capax Discovery) was a licence which did not permit Capax Discovery (which was not an OEM) to embed Autonomy software in its own software for onward licensing to third parties and even though the contract contained a royalty clause this related only to the provision of services;

(b) OEM4 (with VMS) was a sale of a licence which prohibited VMS embedding Autonomy software into its own, and resulted in no ongoing royalties;

(c) OEM11 (with Capax Discovery for Eli Lilly) gave rise to no royalty payments or obligations;

(d) OEM13 (with FileTek) gave rise to no royalty payments or obligations;

(e) OEM15 (with Vidient) was one of three exceptions in that the contract did contain a royalty clause and Vidient might be classified as an OEM;

(f) OEM23 (with Filetek) gave rise to no royalty payments or obligations;

(g) OEM34 (with Vidient) was another of three exceptions in that the contract did contain a royalty clause and Vidient might be classified as an OEM;

(h) OEM35 (EMC) was the third such exception;

(i) OEM46 (with VMS) the transaction was not with an OEM nor did it give rise to any royalty payments;

(j) OEM52 (with Capax Discovery) was a licence for restricted internal use and though the contract contained a royalty clause it was never triggered.

3153. As to the substance of those complaints, I find that (with the possible exception of OEM15, 34 and 35, where the Claimants specified no reason other than that the transactions were "impugned reciprocal transactions" and which involved an aggregate of some $9,507,000) revenues from the 67 transactions identified were misclassified, amounting to nearly 80% of the revenues in the OEM metric. This misclassification of what I accept was regarded in the market as an important metric rendered untrue or misleading (i) Autonomy's definition or description of IDOL OEM/OEM derived revenue in its published information, (ii) each amount of IDOL OEM/OEM derived revenue stated during the Relevant Period, and thereby (iii) Autonomy's published information, including its Quarterly, Half-Yearly and Yearly Reports in 2010 and 2011.

Did the Defendants know of the inclusion within the OEM metric of revenue outside what investors were likely to understand to be within its scope?

3154. Nevertheless, and as the Claimants appreciated, it is not enough for them to establish (as in my judgment they have established) that Autonomy included within the OEM metric revenues that reasonable readers would not have expected to be categorised as such (in the sense that readers would not have expected the OEM metric to comprise such revenues). They must also prove that the Defendants (to quote the test in FSMA, but interpolating my own words to make clear its application in the present case) each *"knew the statement* [of OEM and OEM-derived revenues] *to be untrue or misleading or was reckless as to whether it was untrue or misleading"*.

3155. Put another way it is not sufficient to show that the Defendants knew that the metric included revenue which falls outside what I have determined, looking after the event at the language in the published information, its context and evidence of the way it was in fact understood in the market, readers would have expected to be included within the metric. What they had to show was that the Defendants knew at the time that revenue was being misclassified, and thus of a mismatch between reality and expectation, so as to displace the Defendants' case that they knew no such thing.

3156. It is the Defendants' subjective understandings and intentions which are in issue at this second stage, and which are not revealed as fraudulent simply because of a mismatch between what they thought at the time was proper to include and what, years later, the court has determined the readership expected to be included.

3157. As earlier foreshadowed, Dr Lynch submitted that (a) so far as he was aware, all revenues allocated to the OEM metric fell within its scope as he understood and intended the scope of the OEM metric to be; and (b) he was not involved in the process of characterisation of revenues nor in the allocation of revenues to the OEM metric, and he relied on the finance department and Deloitte in that regard. The first

point (that is, (a) above) was available to and adopted by Mr Hussain as applicable to him also, *mutatis mutandis*. The second point was not available to him.

3158. Before turning to the facts especially relevant to this second stage, however, I must return (see also paragraph 3013 above) to Mr Miles's objection on behalf of Dr Lynch that this part of the Claimants' case was never properly put to him (despite indications that it would be in his long cross-examination), nor was he ever challenged on material parts of his witness statement in this regard. Mr Miles submitted that Dr Lynch was "*not given the opportunity either to justify the classification of the individual transactions, or to explain the extent of his knowledge in respect of each of them"* and that in combination the result should be to preclude the Claimants from pursuing the allegation of fraudulent knowledge against Dr Lynch. (Of course, although in all other respects Mr Hussain adopted all that Dr Lynch said, no such objection was open to or pursued by Mr Hussain.)

3159. I cannot accept this submission. In my judgment, Dr Lynch made clear his understanding at the time that Autonomy was including revenues within the OEM metric on the basis of an alleged market understanding that its scope extended not only to revenue from the OEM transaction but to revenue generated from transactions with end-users *"made possible by the initial OEM sale"* (as he put it in his first witness statement). He knew that included within the OEM metric was licence revenue from sales to service providers who were using IDOL to provide services; licence revenue from sales to a reseller for resale; sales to non-software companies; direct sales to customers of OEM partners; sales involving licences limited to internal use; and revenues from upsells and PODS. It was his case that he believed that the scope was understood to be so extended[369]; the Claimants challenged him on that case and put their opposing and primary contention that it was not, and he did not have any honest belief that it was. If Dr Lynch considered that any of the 67 impugned transactions individually fell within the narrower scope, he could and should have said so. In short, I consider that the Claimants did sufficiently challenge Dr Lynch on the salient points in his evidence, and in particular on his fundamental point that it was made plain to the market, and should have been obvious from the use in 2010 of the phrase "OEM-derived", that the IDOL OEM/OEM derived metric extended to all sales of IDOL software generated or facilitated by what he called the *"OEM route to market"* (including direct sales to the end-user).

3160. I cannot accept either that any different understanding would have resulted from a more detailed exegesis of the contracts nor that any material unfairness was caused to Dr Lynch by the course adopted by the Claimants of challenging Dr Lynch on his understanding of the phrase, its use in the relevant published material, and how he understood it would be interpreted by the market, rather than on the details of the 67 individual transactions impugned as falling outside the metric.

3161. In summary, what was necessary was for the Claimants to challenge and undermine Dr Lynch's evidence as to his own understanding and put to him their case that he was aware of and involved in the mischaracterisation of revenue which resulted in a mismatch between the description of OEM-derived revenue and what in fact was

[369] For example, he told me in cross-examination that although not involved in the transactional detail, *"... everyone understood that the definition of "OEM-derived" included business that was being generated by our OEM programme even if it was not revenue directly from the OEMs."*

included under that category or metric. In my judgment, they did put to Dr Lynch their case, and the basis on which they sought to challenge his.

3162. The Claimants focused especially in this context on what Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch had said at the time, especially in the course of Earnings Calls and in the Q3 2010 Investor Bulletin. Although I have determined that the transcripts of these Earnings Calls did not constitute "published information" within the FSMA test, and (as the Defendants emphasised) there is no evidence that anyone at HP looked at or listened to any of them at the time, they are nevertheless relevant at this second stage to an assessment of the Defendants' true understanding and intentions.

3163. The Claimants relied, for example, on the fact that:

(1) On the Q3 2009 earnings call, when asked to comment on the *"slight deceleration"* that had occurred in that quarter in the *"OEM situation"*, Dr Lynch had replied that *"The simple reason is that we get the returns from what 400 of the world's software companies have sold, and there's very little ability to work out exactly where that number's going"*. The Claimants contended that this suggested that OEM derived revenue was, in the main at least, revenue *"from what…software companies have sold"* and that this equated to royalty revenue.

(2) On the Q1 2010 earnings call, Dr Lynch explicitly stated :

> *"On the OEM side of the business, <u>we sell to virtually all of the major names in the software industry through a royalty based model</u>. As we've mentioned before, that business acts like a tracker fund of the software industry. So as wider software sales increase and the number of products coming to market increase, so you would expect OEM revenues to increase."* [Emphasis supplied]

(3) In the course of the earnings call for Q1 2010,[370] Mr Hussain explained the breakdown of that quarter's reported $29 million of "*OEM derived revenues*" in terms which characterised "*OEM derived revenues*" as being comprised entirely of development licence fees, and ongoing royalties received in that quarter, leaving no scope for the inclusion of upsell or PODS revenue. He said this:

> *"OEM development licenses of $3m give us some visibility about future royalty streams into the OEM business. OEM ongoing royalties in the quarter amounted to some $26m."*

3164. When, in cross-examination, Dr Lynch was confronted with this apparently exclusive characterisation of "*OEM Ongoing*" as "OEM *ongoing royalties*" both in statements he himself made, and in statements made by Mr Hussain, he offered the following explanations, which the Claimants answered, and which I assess, as summarised below:

[370] The first of the three quarters in which this breakdown was reported.

(1) First, as to his own statements, Dr Lynch contended that the phrase *"royalty based model"* does not necessarily mean, and he did not intend it to mean, that the only OEM business conducted by Autonomy was done on such a model, nor that each relevant transaction had an ongoing royalty stream. He gave as an example a buyout deal or bulk royalty deal that could fairly be described as *"royalty based"* where the amount the customer was required to pay was calculated by reference to a notional royalty rate. Mr Pearson (who, it will be remembered, was called by the Defendants) also sought to emphasise in re-examination that *"there were generalisations about description…generalisations were commonly used by analysts and investors throughout this period to describe the general trend of what's going on"* by which I took him to mean that words would often be deployed in a generic but not exclusive sense to signify a broad general category but not to denote an exclusive meaning. However, even Mr Pearson volunteered (in the same passage of his re-examination) that *"People understood that in general they were royalty driven in some form or another…"*

This did not carry the Defendants very far. The typical characteristic of OEM revenue (after payment of the original licence fee) was a payment by the OEM to Autonomy calculated by reference to the value of its onward sales of product including Autonomy software: in other words, a royalty-type basis of calculation.

(2) Secondly, Dr Lynch told the Court that Mr Hussain simply made a mistake in his choice of words – "*there's an occasion when talking in realtime on a call, he has used a word he shouldn't*".

However, Mr Hussain was reading from a script. He said exactly what he was scripted to say:

- *"<u>OEM development licenses</u> of $3m give us some visibility about future royalty streams from the OEM business.*
- *<u>OEM ongoing royalties</u> in the quarter amounted to some $26m."*

Further, the script: (i) contained edits by Dr Lynch to the management presentation part of the script; and (ii) contained no edits to the 'question and answer' section. While Dr Lynch made changes to other parts of the management scripts, he made no changes to Mr Hussain's description of "*OEM Ongoing*" as "*OEM ongoing royalties*".

In any event, even if Dr Lynch's review had been limited to the questions as he suggested it was, the same representation of the contents of IDOL OEM revenue was contained in the 'question and answer' section. Question 59 was "*New revenues classification*" and the answer, so far as it concerned IDOL OEM revenue, said "*OEM Dev 3.0*" and "*OEM Royalty 26*" – entirely in accordance with Mr Hussain's representation that $26 million of OEM Ongoing comprised only royalty revenue. Dr Lynch could not identify any steps taken by anyone at Autonomy, including Dr Lynch himself, to correct

Mr Hussain's characterisation of "*OEM Ongoing*" as "*OEM ongoing royalties*", whether on this call or at all.

(3) Thirdly, Dr Lynch asserted during cross-examination that an explanation of the sub-categories "*OEM Dev*" and "*OEM Ongoing*" had been given to the market two quarters before the Q1 2010 earnings call, in the context of the Q3 2009 results, and that the actual definition of these metrics would be found there.

However, there appeared to be nothing to support this, either in the transcript of the Q3 2009 Earnings Call, or in the Results presentation for that quarter: on the contrary, both appeared to convey that Autonomy's IDOL OEM revenue comprised (i) a development fee and, (ii) payments when OEMs' products are sold i.e. ongoing royalties, and there was no mention of upsells or PODS in the Q3 2009 earnings call materials, let alone a description or explanation of such revenue sources.

Indeed, the way Dr Lynch explained to the market what OEM business Autonomy was doing is perhaps the most striking demonstration that he (and Mr Hussain) knew what the market perceived OEM business to comprise. Thus, for example:

(a) On Autonomy's Q1 2008 earnings call Dr Lynch said:

> "*we license our technology to other software players who then use the technology to enable their own products to understand structured information … They do this on a model where they will sign up a deal with us. There may be an upfront payment which would typically be around $200,000, and then they … write … their product … The back period is now, on average, two years between for them to write whatever their product is … Then that product ships and we would receive a royalty stream … What we see in Q1 is 12 OEM deals signed, so we would expect to see revenue from them on average in two years' time.*"

(b) Autonomy's 2009 Annual Report stated:

> "*An OEM pays an upfront non-refundable fee and then writes its new product which can take up to two years depending on its product roadmap and release cycle. Once the product is launched they make license payments of around three percent of product sales to Autonomy*".

(c) Autonomy's 2010 Annual Report stated:

> *"Contracts and situations vary, but by way of example an OEM could pay an upfront non-refundable fee and then take*

two years to launch its product. Once that product is launched they may make license payments of around three percent of product sales to Autonomy."

(d) An "Introduction to Autonomy" prepared for investors in 2010 read:

"*An OEM pays an upfront development fee and then writes its new product which can take up to two years depending on its product roadmap and release cycle. Once the product is launched OEMs pay a royalty stream of around 3 per cent of product sales to Autonomy."*

(4) Fourthly, Dr Lynch referred to what he presented as being the universal understanding in the market (except for an errant Credit Suisse or *"unless they had arrived from another planet"*). But as explained previously, (see paragraphs 3098 to 3137 above) I do not accept that that was so; and certainly no general market understanding such as the Defendants asserted was proven: the evidence showed that many analysts had the same or a similar understanding as Mr Grieb and Credit Suisse.

(5) Fifthly, Dr Lynch also relied on his understanding that both Deloitte and Autonomy's Audit Committee, as well as its finance department, were closely involved, had reviewed Autonomy's policies for disclosure of and accounting for the OEM revenues, and had satisfied themselves that they were appropriate. He assumed that Deloitte understood the nature of the transactions and the identity of the counterparty in each case. He knew that Deloitte checked Autonomy's earnings releases and ensured that the figures reported were accurate. As Mr Miles put it in his oral closing argument, *"they understood more about the detail than Dr Lynch"* and appeared content with both *"the numbers and the way the language was used"*. Dr Lynch's case was that he felt entitled to and did assume that if Deloitte had had any concerns that the information provided about OEMs was misleading, they would have made that clear: but nothing of that kind ever happened.

3165. The last of these points, and the dispute which resulted as to the significance of the fact that Deloitte never objected to either the enumeration and presentation of the OEM metric, was a principal focus of the defence and needs elaboration.

Deloitte and OEM revenues

3166. I turn to consider, therefore, (1) the nature and extent of Deloitte's involvement and of its responsibilities in respect of the OEM metrics, and (2) what relevance Deloitte's involvement has to the assessment of whether the Defendants believed the OEM metric to be properly described and constituted (or whether, instead, they knew it be untrue or misleading, or took a reckless risk of it being misunderstood).

Nature and extent of Deloitte's involvement

3167. The Defendants' case was that although the initial preparation and presentation was for the finance department of Autonomy, Deloitte (a) reviewed the way in which the OEM metric was presented in the Quarterly and Annual Reports and in what was termed *"the front end of the accounts",* (b) checked the constituent elements of the deals going into the OEM metric, and (c) "*ticked off"* the numbers. Deloitte was thus closely involved in considering the categorisation of the transactions and the amount of revenue which could be included in the metric as OEM derived revenue. Dr Lynch had no role in the process.

3168. The Claimants, on the other hand, submitted that *"the misclassification of transactions within the IDOL OEM revenue was not an accounting matter"* and Deloitte's involvement was *"of very limited relevance indeed"* to the determination of the OEM issue. Deloitte's advice, they stated, *"was neither sought nor given"*. They added that *"in circumstances where the Defendants knew that the definition or description of IDOL OEM revenue in the published information was misleading, it is simply irrelevant that Deloitte failed to detect the Defendants' wrongdoing."* They submitted that the Defendants could not *"hide behind Deloitte in relation to their fraud."*

3169. The Claimants accepted that, as appeared from their working papers, Deloitte had undertaken a process of going through the final draft of the relevant Reports and had ticked off every number, next to the relevant label or description of the metric. However, they contended that it was no part of Deloitte's remit to check the composition and presentation of the IDOL OEM metrics and figures in the "front-end" or narrative part of the reports, which the Defendants themselves accepted were not IFRS figures subject to audit and were provided voluntarily by Autonomy. The Claimants cited in this regard Accounting Standard *ISA 720A (2004)*, which states that *"…the auditor has no specific responsibility for determining whether or not other information is properly stated"*, and "*ISA 720B (2009)"*, which requires the auditor only to *"read the other information to identify material inconsistencies with the audited financial statements"*.

3170. As to the actual process in this case, they relied on Mr Welham's evidence as confirming that this ticking off process simply involved checking the totals presented in the *"front end"* against the audited figures in the *"back end"* (as put to Dr Lynch) and that Deloitte never had to consider, and did not consider, the reasonableness of the categorisation of revenue within IDOL OEM revenue. It was, as it were, a merely mechanical process of ensuring consistency of numerical quantification between the two parts of the Reports.

3171. They relied particularly on the following passage of Mr Welham's evidence when he was cross-examined by Mr Miles on a spreadsheet which Deloitte had marked up with tickmarks, the objective of which was stated to be *"To agree the metrics used in the quarterly press release to supporting schedules and to test the validity of these schedules"*:

> *"So the tickmarks will just be what the person who prepares the spreadsheet writes. So just to clarify what we're doing here, because this relates to what we call front end information, then we have no - - our responsibilities around that are to read it and ensure consistency with the financial statements... So when the team have gone through this, they're essentially looking at what's included to make sure we can tie back - - so that the totals tie back to the*

financial statements and what makes up those totals ties back to what we have audited or reviewed. So while someone may have written "Appears reasonable", we're not really considering the reasonableness of where things are categorised because that's not within our remit.[371]*"*

3172. In addition, and although not stressed by the Claimants, the following further passage seemed to me to illuminate that evidence:

> *"So we're not opining on the categorisation here, we're essentially making sure that revenue deals included here are ones that we've tested and therefore that essentially there aren't incorrect deals or bogus deals included in these metrics which are not part of the reviewed revenue or the audited revenue."*

3173. However, that is difficult to reconcile with what the evidence demonstrates as to what Deloitte actually did, as revealed by extracts from one of Deloitte's working papers showing their comments on spreadsheets provided by Autonomy's finance department classifying revenue. The example relied on by the Defendants was a spreadsheet with various schedules, of which the stated objective was *"To agree the metrics used in the quarterly press release to supporting schedules and to test the validity of these schedules"*. Its conclusion was *"Satisfactory."*

3174. It does seem from the paper itself that as part of the audit testing process, Deloitte would have reviewed at least some of the underlying contracts, if their value was over $1 million, as part of the sampling process. Mr Welham was taken to the Q2 2011 tab within the document. It was clear that he could not remember much about it. His answers were really simply acknowledgements of what was stated: thus, he agreed that columns AB to AE were headed "OEM Royalty", "OEM upsell", "OEM POD", and "OEM Prepay", and that it looked as if the "IDOL OEM" category which was published by Autonomy had included upsells and PODS.

3175. He was then taken to columns S and Y headed "Deloitte Added Columns" with column S containing deals over 1 million which had a reference to a testing sheet and on to column AC row 4, which contained a reference to "tick mark e", and then on again to the "Tickmarks tab" where a note stated:

> *"The OEM upsell category includes hosted licence deals that are hosted on OEM customer data-centres. This is considered reasonable for including as OEM driven revenues."*

3176. It was put to Mr Welham that someone within Deloitte had specifically considered the OEM upsell category in respect of hosted licence deals hosted on OEM customer data centres and concluded it was reasonable: he agreed that the preparer of the spreadsheet had, and confirmed that this was someone in Deloitte.

3177. Further, in cross-examination, Mr Welham was taken to guidance issued by the Auditing Practices Board (the predecessor in this context of the FRC) as to an auditor's responsibility in respect of *"Other information in documents containing*

---

[371] Mr Welham made a similar point in relation to IDOL Cloud revenue, which, like IDOL OEM revenue, was not an IFRS metric.

audited financial statements" (which essentially covered the 'front-end' or narrative part of the Annual Report). That guidance provided, for example, that:

> *"The auditor should read the other information to identify material inconsistencies with the audited financial statements. If as a result of reading the other information, the auditor becomes aware of any apparent misstatements therein, or identifies any material inconsistencies with the audited financial statements, the auditor should seek to resolve them."*

3178. Mr Welham acknowledged[372] that, in the light of this guidance, Deloitte did check for material inconsistencies and misleading statements in the 'front-end', as the Schedule exemplified, and they had identified none.

What reliance can the Defendants place on Deloitte in this context?

3179. In his written closing submissions, Dr Lynch placed considerable emphasis and reliance on Deloitte's review and apparent acceptance of the accuracy of the schedule in this context, as in effect, endorsing and even justifying both his avowed belief in the accuracy of the published information about the OEM derived revenues and the reasonableness of that belief. Mr Miles added in his oral closing that:

> *"Deloitte read the description…in the front end of the accounts and they read the descriptions in the quarterly reports, did the same thing every quarter and never identified anything misleading. As I say, they had a fuller and closer understanding than Dr Lynch did of the deals that actually went into the numbers given for the metric. We say that's very important because, if they didn't think there was a problem, it makes it very improbable to suggest that Dr Lynch should have done."*

3180. The Claimants, on the other hand, dismissed any reliance on Deloitte's checks as unfounded: even if Deloitte's remit extended to opining on the reasonableness and consistency of the information provided in the front-end of the various Reports (whether as a matter of obligation or simply as a matter of what in fact they chose to do), which the Claimants did not accept, they submitted that:

> *"In circumstances where <u>the Defendants knew</u> that the definition or description of IDOL OEM revenue in the published information was misleading, it is simply irrelevant that Deloitte failed to detect the Defendants' wrongdoing."* [Claimants' emphasis]

3181. That submission is premised on knowledge (or at least recklessness) on the part of the Defendants. Ultimately, as will be seen, I agree with its conclusion, but there is a prior question, as it seems to me, whether the Defendants' case that they relied on Deloitte as support for treating OEM business as being broad enough in scope to cover the scheduled transactions. That requires brief analysis of what Deloitte's role was and what their approval signified.

[372] As he had also agreed in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings.

3182. As to that, in my view, all that really Deloitte's process of checking and approval signified was that they were satisfied that the transactions were accurately described and that transactions as so described fell within what the Defendants told Deloitte was a broader category of OEM business. In other words, Deloitte saw no basis to contradict what they were given to understand by Autonomy was the scope of the OEM metric as extending to any revenue which, according to a subjective judgment, could be said to have been driven or made possible by an original licence sale to an OEM. They read the metric and interpreted the disputed phrases using the criteria that the Defendants supplied them. Deloitte did no more than check that the transactions conformed to the description of the metric that Autonomy had supplied.

3183. Deloitte might have probed further; but they were not required, as regards this narrative description voluntarily provided, to assess separately or second-guess the directors whether a transaction fell fairly within the scope of what the market understood to be OEM business. They had to do little more than satisfy themselves that the approach and figures were consistent. Having, for whatever reason, accepted management's interpretation, approval followed, but that provides little or no validation of the Defendants' avowed belief. Autonomy and its management were in a far better position to assess what the market considered to be comprised in OEM business.

3184. I have concluded that the fact that Deloitte accepted, or at least did not raise any objection to, the inclusion of the 67 impugned transactions within the OEM metric is of little, if indeed any, relevance or assistance in determining whether the Defendants knew that the inclusion of revenues from *"follow-on sales"* gave an untrue or misleading depiction of the extent and success of the OEM line of business. I do not accept that Deloitte were or can be regarded as a litmus test either of market perception of the scope of the OEM metric or of the Defendants' honesty.

3185. In my judgment, Deloitte did not know what the Defendants, in my judgment, did know, or at least knew to be a real risk: that the category they had devised extended to transactions which the market would not have regarded as having the characteristics associated with OEM business.

3186. As to the Defendants' individual positions, I do not accept that Dr Lynch was ignorant of this. As previously noted, Dr Lynch emphasised that he personally had no involvement in or knowledge of individual OEM transactions, and was not involved in determining how deals should be classified. He could not recall ever reviewing the spreadsheets in any detail, if he saw them at all. But he did know, as he has acknowledged, that there were many transactions that did not constitute "core" OEM transactions: and I have concluded that the metric was misleading, and he knew it. Mr Hussain was in no better position. He offered nothing to absolve himself except the "definitional issue".

3187. On the basis of the matters referred to above, (and I should acknowledge, fortified also by my findings summarised in paragraphs 3207 and 3235 below),[373] it is reasonably clear, and I find, that:

(1) Both Defendants knew or recklessly took the risk that readers in the market of Autonomy's published information were not aware that such a preponderance of the revenues included in the OEM metric were not "core" OEM revenues;

(2) Both Defendants well understood the enhanced value attributed to OEM business and wanted to take advantage of it, including (if necessary) by 'pumping up' the OEM metric and including within it revenues which had only a vestigial subjective basis (if any) for classifying as especially valuable.

(3) The fact that Deloitte undertook the checking exercise described above does not affect the conclusion.

3188. The evidence has satisfied me, and I find, that a substantial (likely to be almost 80%, though I shall confirm the figure in my judgment on quantum) of the revenues allocated to the OEM metric was outside what the market perceived to be its scope, as the Defendants knew or understood to be a real risk.

A further issue as to upfront prepaid licensing deals or "buy-outs"

3189. A further aspect of the dispute concerns the evidence of Mr Harald Collet ("Mr Collet")[374], Autonomy's head of OEM sales in North America from Q3 2008 to Q1 2010 and as such the *"real head of OEM"*, to the effect that even in the case of "core" OEM transactions which might have generated ongoing royalty revenue, in the *"great majority"* Autonomy had agreed instead to smaller, accelerated, upfront non-royalty payments. This, the Claimants submitted, made matters even worse.

3190. Mr Collet's evidence made two principal points:

(1) the upfront prepaid licensing deals or "buy outs" were presented as giving rise to recurring revenue in the form of royalty, and that was untrue or misleading;

(2) the discount for prepayment or buyout reduced the likely aggregate payment obligation: contrary to the impression given by Autonomy's published information, Autonomy was sacrificing ongoing royalty income in order to accelerate future revenue into current reporting periods to be recognised immediately.

3191. The Claimants invited me to find that:

> *"…even as regards OEM deals with OEM partners that were legitimately included within IDOL OEM revenue and might otherwise have generated royalty payments…this in the main did not happen"*, and that this

[373] Relating to my findings in respect of the *"Lone Pine episode"* and the *"Top 10 List"* provided to HP in the course of the due diligence process

[374] Mr Collet also co-authored the "Joe Bloggs" communications: see paragraphs 312 to 313 in the Introduction and 3235A and 3235C below.

> *"…further reinforces the untrue and misleading nature of the statements made by Autonomy in its published information to the effect that IDOL OEM revenue consisted mainly of ongoing royalties, still less that royalty payments at a level of 3% of the OEM's sales to end-users were typical. Few, if any, IDOL OEM transactions generated, or could reasonably be expected to generate, a recurring royalty stream of around 3% of license sales."*

3192. Dr Lynch accepted in the course of his cross-examination that *"there would be a significant number of upfront royalties on that sort of structure, yes"*, and that he knew at the time that this was happening.

3193. I have not been persuaded that this materially would have affected the market, or that it was wrongful, even if it was (as the Claimants contended) with a view to accelerating recognition of revenue, and despite a loss thereby to Autonomy in terms of total ultimate revenue. It seems to me that a prepaid royalty is a capitalised payment in lieu of a recurring royalty. I decline to make the finding sought.

3194. However, Mr Collet's evidence also referred to an incident in relation to upfront royalties which I should mention since it was relied on as revealing Dr Lynch's *"willingness to lie to the Court, in order to cover up lies he had told to investors during the Relevant Period",* and in this case to maintain the depiction of the OEM business he wished to present. This was referred to at trial as *"The Lone Pine episode".*

The Lone Pine episode

3195. Lone Pine Capital (HK) Limited ("Lone Pine") was a hedge fund (based in Hong Kong) at which a Ms Leonie Foong ("Ms Foong") worked. According to Dr Lynch's evidence in cross-examination, Lone Pine, through Ms Foong, had been probing for material in support of a negative story in the market that Autonomy had a balance of pre-paid royalties that had been improperly recognised up-front, although the royalties would need to be paid back if the sales on which they were based did not occur. When Ms Foong approached Autonomy with regard to the story, Dr Lynch sent an email dated 21 July 2009 referring her to Mr Collet whom he described to her as *"the real head of OEM for Autonomy".*

3196. A call was set up with Mr Collet on 21 July 2009. Mr Collet was not trained in investor relations, and was not permitted, save in limited circumstances, to speak to analysts or investors, but Autonomy was happy for him to have a one-off, general conversation about the market. In an email Dr Lynch encouraged him to keep the call short.

3197. Mr Collet claimed that in advance of the call, "*Dr Lynch emailed me a script setting out what I should say to Lone Pine*." He said that the script contained a number of assertions that he was uncomfortable with, because (he said) they mischaracterised Autonomy's OEM business *"as principally involving deals for ongoing royalty revenue streams when, in my experience… the great majority of my team's OEM sales were being structured as up-front, pre-paid licensing deals"*; however, because of the "*culture of fear*" at Autonomy, he followed the script as best he could.

3198. The Defendants objected that none of this was true, and the Court should find that the notion of a script – and the instruction to say anything misleading – was an invention by Mr Collet. Dr Lynch was adamant that there had been no script. His written closing submissions elaborated on this as follows:

(1) The script was, according to Mr Collet, sent by email (as it must have been since Mr Collet was located in the US and Dr Lynch in the UK). No trace or copy of any such script has been found, despite extensive searches.

(2) When this was pointed out to him in cross-examination, he said – for the first time – that he had deleted it, claiming that he did so as "*it felt like it was best for [him] not to have a copy of that*", because he "*was concerned that [he] got direct instructions on how to speak to the investor and what to say to the investor and it was emailed direct from Mike Lynch to [him]*." This was inconsistent with his witness statement, which simply stated that he did not have a copy of the script and that he understood from the Claimants' lawyers that they had been unable to locate it on Autonomy's systems. In any event, the Defendants contended that a copy would have existed in Dr Lynch's email account and no such email exists.

(3) Mr Collet maintained that the script was a narrative document, setting out in some detail what he was meant to say. However, the call took 45 minutes, and he remembered the "script" to be only half a page long.

(4) Mr Collet said that he was uncomfortable with what he had to say on the call, but he did not raise that either with his boss, Mr Mooney, or with Dr Lynch.

(5) The suggestion that there was a script was inconsistent with the other emails that were sent at around the time of the conversation, for the reasons explored in cross-examination with Mr Collet.

3199. Following the call, on 23 July 2009 Ms Foong sent some follow up questions to Mr Collet, focussing on prepaid royalty fees, and Mr Collet passed them on to Dr Lynch. Dr Lynch replied with a proposed response for him, copying Mr Mooney and Mr Bettencourt. Dr Lynch then provided Mr Collet with a Word document containing the text of proposed responses to each of Ms Foong's questions, which focused especially on whether there was any *"hosted component to some OEM deals which requires either pre-payment of licences or ongoing licence fees"*. Dr Lynch instructed Mr Collet (who it will be remembered was head of OEM in North America) to *"Pls take attached doc, read it and CUT AND PASTE JUST the text into a text email reply to them."* In cross-examination, Dr Lynch sought to explain this peremptory instruction on the basis that (a) Mr Collet was not trained in investor relations and (b) *"under the DTR regulations*[375]*, only certain people…are allowed…to have correspondence in anything other than general terms with investment managers."* In any event, Mr Collet followed the instruction to the letter.

3200. Lone Pine's questions and Dr Lynch's answers were as follows:

[375] The FCA's *"Disclosure Guidance and Transparency Rules sourcebook"* issued in compliance with the FCA's obligations under the *Market Abuse Regulation.*

(1) *"Is there any "hosted" component to some OEM deals which requires either pre-payment of licences or ongoing licence fees?*

No this would not be normal (can't think of one), there may be deals like this in the EDD and hosted archiving group but not the OEM business…..but I guess we would consider it if it arose.

(2) *What are pre-paid royalty fees if such a thing exists?*

The 200k upfront payment that customers make covers the first quarter of royalties when they start shipping (typically 2 years later). It is not normal for customers to pay upfront royalties. I believe Verity did this kind of thing before the acquisition by Autonomy but it is not our model. (I think insistence on this old verity model was one of the reasons Chad was let go) <u>We aim to maximize the royalty stream not the upfront.</u> [My emphasis]

(3) *Using an example, could a customer choose to prepay upfront a portion of his future expected royalty payments, and subsequently pay less royalty payments in the future (when his products get shipped). You mentioned some royalty rates go as high as 30%; I'm wondering whether there is any structuring a customer might do to lower that royalty rate, but pre pay a portion upfront*

Prepaying would not reduce the royalty rate even if we did it, although I guess we are always open to considering any deal (not my call that would be the CEO) this is not how we work, as I said our goal is maximum ongoing royalty not upfront.

There is one area that might cause confusion. An OEM customer enters a deal with us for specific of the 500 functions we sell (typically 4 or 5 of them) ships them inside each time their software is sold and pays the royalty on each one sold. Sometimes although their product has these 4 or 5 functions one specific of their end customers might need another function not in the OEM agreement in which case for this one end-user the OEM can resell the extra function as a one off licence solely for that end-user (i.e. for this one sale the OEM is acting as a reseller as well as an OEM). There can also be deals where the OEM is only licensed to a certain amount of data/speed per end-user and in the event of them selling to an end-user with bigger needs they can pay a one off royalty kicker for that end-user.

Remember a company like Sybase may be an:

1 OEM paying a royalty to us on their shipping product;

2 may also be a reseller of licences for other functions to augment the OEM product in specific end customers;

3 resell Autonomy non OEM licences, and

4 may also be doing systems integration work using Autonomy software.

The OEM group would only see the first 2 cases, the rest is non OEM but to the same company."

3201. There is a dispute between the parties both as to what question Ms Foong was really asking in question 2, and whether the answers proposed by Dr Lynch were accurate and reasonable:

(1) Dr Lynch maintained in cross-examination that the question was "*about whether we have a balance of pre-paid royalties that have to be given back if the sales don't occur, which was the hedge fund story at the time*". He submitted that his answer on that basis was correct: particularly in the context of the questions regarding returnable up-front royalties that Lone Pine had been asking, and bearing in mind the need to avoid making improper selective disclosures to a hedge fund. Autonomy did not engage in transactions involving the pre-payment of royalties which were returnable, and which could only properly be recognised on sell-through.

(2) The Claimants dismissed this as a tactical gloss on a straightforward question about what prepaid royalties were, and whether Autonomy used them, and that Dr Lynch had to gloss the question because he knew that, if the question bore its obvious meaning, then his draft answer to that question was a lie.

3202. There was also a dispute in relation to Dr Lynch's scripted response to Ms Foong's third question. The Claimants submitted it to be obvious that the statement that *"Prepaying would not reduce the royalty rate, even if we did it"* was intended to reinforce the answer to question 2, and to reiterate the false assertion that Autonomy had not received (or bargained to receive) pre-paid royalties, that being no part of its model. Dr Lynch suggested in cross-examination that all the response meant was that the royalty rate would not be lowered, and that this was true: *"We did take pre-paid royalties, yes, but we didn't reduce the royalty rate."*

3203. On the basis of their interpretation of the questions and answers, the Claimants submitted that:

(1) Dr Lynch's *"lies to Lone Pine were glaring".* He had instructed Mr Collet to tell Lone Pine that prepaying royalties did not take place, when he knew it was entirely ordinary for Autonomy to receive prepaid royalty payments from OEM partners.

(2) To cover these lies *"Dr Lynch gave blatantly dishonest evidence to the Court."* The Claimants elaborated this as follows:

> "*His tactics included: (i) attributing a false meaning to what Lone Pine had asked and the answers he drafted; (ii) inventing a justification – the risk of inside information- that was irreconcilable with is written evidence about the market's understanding; and (iii) providing evasive answers when faced with these difficulties"*.

3204. Against this, the Defendants insisted that:

(1) Mr Collet was an unreliable witness who had concocted a story about a script which never existed to cover up his own misdescription of the OEM business to Ms Foong at their first meeting which led to the further questions.

(2) Restrictions under the DTR regulations made it imperative for Dr Lynch to dictate the response to Ms Foong to avoid inadvertent release of inside information by Mr Collet who had no relevant training in investor relations, and especially so since Ms Foong had (according to Dr Lynch) been fishing before, and he was concerned that Lone Pine was attempting to solicit inside information. His concerns are apparent from an email he felt he had to write to Ms Foong on 23 July 2009 (after her discussion with Mr Collet) warning her off such soliciting.

(3) Both the questions and the prescribed responses had to be interpreted in the context of earlier questions regarding returnable up-front royalties that Lone Pine had been asking, and bearing in mind the need to avoid making improper selective disclosures to a hedge fund. The questions were properly regarded as attempts to establish whether market gossip that Autonomy was engaged in transactions for prepaid royalties which would be recognised as revenue immediately but then returned was true: and the answers were intended to provide a firm refutation of that, and make clear (as was the fact) that Autonomy did not engage in transactions involving the pre-payment of royalties which were returnable, and which could only properly be recognised on sell-through.

(4) Thus, the interactions with Lone Pine give no grounds to criticise Dr Lynch, and provide no support for the allegation that he was involved in or knew of any false reporting of OEM revenues. Mr Collet's evidence should be rejected as unreliable.

3205. Although in a sense something of a side-show, the Lone Pine episode does cast light on a central issue of Dr Lynch's reliability and in particular his true intentions in relation to the depiction to the market of Autonomy's OEM business.

3206. In my judgment:

(1) Mr Collet's antipathy to the Defendants was obvious. His reliability was also shaken by:

(a) The discrepancies between his witness evidence and his evidence when cross-examined, especially those arising from his sudden mention in cross-examination of matters entirely absent from his written evidence (for example, that he had destroyed the script he said Dr Lynch had sent him);

(b) The lack of any documentary support for certain of his factual assertions (in addition to the obvious example of the lack of any trace of the script he said had been provided by Dr Lynch);

(c) His apparent willingness to fling accusations without a shred of support (so that the Claimants had to withdraw a paragraph of his witness statement containing a serious accusation that the Defendants had manipulated the number of OEM deals reported)[376];

(d) His acceptance in cross-examination, contrary to the impression given in his written evidence, that (i) he had never been specifically directed to do a buy-out (ii) there was no policy on the part of the Defendants that buy-outs should be preferred[377] and (iii) the point of the exercise was to try to do the best deal possible for Autonomy;

(e) The overall impression I had was that he was no longer able to distinguish between the case theory and his actual recollection.

(2) However, Dr Lynch's evidence on the Lone Pine episode did not appear to me to be reliable either. In particular:

(a) His effort to recharacterize the questions put by Ms Foong in order to explain his answers was ingenious but unconvincing;

(b) His answer to the second of Lone Pine's questions (quoted in paragraph 3200(2) above) was almost the reverse of the truth and was in any event misleading; and

(c) His evidence in relation to his answer to Lone Pine's third question was not convincing either. Dr Lynch is prone to careless spelling but seldom to careless language. I find that in stating *"Prepaying would not reduce the royalty rate, even if we did it"* (and see paragraph 3202 above) he was stating and intended to confirm that Autonomy did not "do" prepayment deals.

3207. Overall, the Lone Pine episode does seem to me to provide an example, and confirm my more general impression, of Dr Lynch using language by which he intended to convey or support the depiction of a business line generating a reliable recurring revenue stream (or, to use a phrase from Dr Lynch's statement in the 2010 Annual Report, *"multi-year committed annuity streams"*), knowing that the depiction given was at best inaccurate.

Allegation of concealment of transactions in published information

3208. The Claimants submitted that further support for the conclusion that the Defendants were aware that an untrue or misleading presentation was being given of IDOL OEM revenues was also to be derived from what they described in their written closing submissions as *"the manner in which Autonomy repeatedly concealed the identities of the counterparties to the largest transactions that had been allocated to IDOL OEM revenue."*

---

[376] Mr Collet himself sought to persist with this allegation even after accepting he could not substantiate it

[377] Though Autonomy's sales commission system did provide salesmen (including Mr Collet) with a financial incentive to strike deals with a larger 'headline' figure, as Mr Collet himself explained in his first witness statement.

3209. In particular, they submitted that it cannot have been a coincidence, especially given the prolonged period over which the contrast is apparent, that:

   (1) Throughout the Relevant Period, Autonomy's Quarterly Reports would cite only a handful of deals giving rise to IDOL OEM revenue, all with counterparties who were software companies fulfilling the restrictive view of a standard OEM; whereas

   (2) By contrast, Autonomy never identified counterparties to transactions included within the OEM metric which were not software companies even where (as they put it) *"such transactions were of substantially greater value or prestige than the transactions that Autonomy did choose to highlight."*

3210. The Claimants offered the following suggested examples:

   (1) In Q1 2009, Autonomy allocated to IDOL OEM revenue $3,251,000 from a deal with the UK Ministry of Defence ("the MoD") (OEM2). This deal (which was not mentioned in the Q1 2009 Quarterly Report) was a much larger deal than two of the three named deals: Symantec (a software company) which raised no allocated OEM revenue, and ProofPoint (another software company) from which the revenues were just $230,000.

   (2) In Q1 2010, Autonomy allocated to IDOL OEM revenue $8,915,000 from a deal with BofA (OEM21). This was a far larger deal than all of the named deals combined: Adobe ($750,000), McAfee ($500,000 and $248,000) and Siemens ($72,000).

   (3) In Q1 2011, Autonomy allocated to IDOL OEM revenue $6,448,000 from a deal with Tottenham Hotspur Football Club (OEM48), which was almost four times larger than one of the named deals (with Symantec, from which the revenues were $1,400,000).

3211. The Claimants' point was if the Defendants honestly believed that there was nothing wrong with the inclusion in IDOL OEM revenue of revenue from large-value deals with such well-known counterparties as, for example, the Ministry of Defence, Bank of America, and Tottenham Hotspur, then it is difficult to understand why they were omitted from the published information. The Claimants suggested that the reason was that had such counterparties been mentioned, this would have invited questions as to how some of the counterparties could possibly have been embedding IDOL into their software products for on-sale to end-users.

3212. They went on to submit that had Mr Hussain attended for cross-examination he would have been asked about his involvement in the process and what led to some transactions being selected for inclusion in the published information when other much larger transactions with high profile counterparties were omitted. He would not, answering truthfully, have disputed that he and Dr Lynch were both involved in the selection process and, further, that it was no coincidence that transactions which would have alerted the market to an inconsistency between what Autonomy's published information represented as IDOL OEM revenue and what was in fact included were deliberately omitted.

3213. In the same context, Dr Lynch was taken in cross-examination to the passage in his first witness statement where he had stated that Autonomy "*commonly reported selected new OEM relationships to the market*" (emphasis added). The Claimants portrayed that as an acknowledgement that a deliberate choice was made as to which deals were references in Autonomy's published information. Dr Lynch did not dispute this, but he said that he, personally, "*would not have been involved in that level*".

3214. Against this, the Defendants contended that it is wrong to say that the transactions that were highlighted systematically referred only to customers operating in the software sector. Dr Lynch made four principal points in this regard:

(1) First, that the whole argument was predicated upon an artificially narrow view of what could properly be categorised as an OEM and OEM revenue. On the broader interpretation which the Defendants say they intended there was no reason to select only software companies: the choice of which deals to mention was not informed or influenced by the narrow view at all.

(2) Secondly, unless perhaps it was something *"strategically important"*, the selection would have been done by the Investor Relations or Marketing department, and Dr Lynch would only be minimally and exceptionally involved.

(3) Thirdly, there was no suggestion in Autonomy's quarterly reports that it was the largest examples that were chosen. He explained that the selection was not based on size, and the selected deals were not described as the largest OEM-related transactions. He stated in his witness statement that:

> *"Autonomy highlighted those transactions that were innovative, to show the calibre and breadth of OEMs, to reference up-and-coming companies or those whose reputation would enhance Autonomy's reputation."*

(4) Fourthly, it is wrong to say that the transactions that were highlighted systematically referred only to customers operating in the software sector. He also specifically disagreed that there was any intention to present only software companies. Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that he had *"gone through the press releases of Autonomy"* and in fact, Autonomy's published information in the Relevant Period included companies that would fairly be regarded as operating both outside and inside the software sector; he named companies such as GE, Siemens, Xerox and HP. He added that the boundary between a software company and a non-software company is a vague one. Dr Lynch explained in cross-examination that *"every so often companies whose primary business is something else still do something with software."*

Although he accepted that since Autonomy dealt most with software companies those highlighted would *"obviously…more likely…be software companies"* he did not understand that they were selected for that reason. He added that, on the contrary:

> *"If we'd had the chance to announce that someone was OEM-ing our software onto a piece of hardware, we would have been extremely keen to publicise that. You know, being able to show, for example, that Autonomy is being used in health care was a very positive thing, given that we didn't do a lot of health care business ourselves…"*

3215. The first of the points raises in a modified form the question at the heart of this aspect of the case as to the meaning of the disputed phrases in fact intended by the Defendants. My determination that the Defendants knew that they were allocating to the OEM Metric transactions which would not have fallen within the market perception of OEM business (with permissible but small exceptions as I have explained above) largely disposes of the point, though of course my determination would further be supported if the Claimants establish that the selection of OEM deals was for the reasons they suggested.

3216. As to the second point, Dr Lynch's position as regards his knowledge of the process of selection was somewhat inconsistent. As the Claimants pointed out, in his first witness statement, Dr Lynch gave detailed evidence explaining the thought process behind the selection of which OEM deals to highlight and the basis on which Autonomy *"commonly reported selected new OEM relationships to the market."* There was no suggestion or acknowledgment in that witness statement that this was not a matter within Dr Lynch's direct knowledge. The Claimants submitted that if it were true that Dr Lynch had no involvement in, or direct knowledge of, the selection process, one might have expected him to have said precisely that, not least because Autonomy's reporting of selected OEM partners to the market is specifically pleaded by the Claimants as a basis for inferring Dr Lynch's knowledge of Autonomy's wrongdoing. No such statement appears in either of Dr Lynch's witness statements either. I consider that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain would have been involved: I hold that they were so.

3217. As to the third point, I accept that the selection was not by reference to the size of the transaction, though I should have thought it might also have some bearing. But that is not, as I see it, a point entirely in Dr Lynch's favour. For example, if selection was made (as Dr Lynch contended) to enhance Autonomy's reputation, I accept that it is striking that no mention was made of the Ministry of Defence or the SFO or Tottenham Hotspur.

3218. As to the fourth point, the fact is that the selections made were of entities unlikely to cause surprise or excite enquiry as to the basis of their inclusion does support the Claimants' position. Again, the 'dual' status of some companies as both hardware and software companies is a point which is in some ways against Dr Lynch: the choice of such an ambivalent entity is consistent with the Claimants' position.

3219. In light of my earlier conclusions effectively accepting the Claimants' case that Autonomy's published information contained untrue or misleading statements in respect of its OEM line of business, I do not think I need make a determination whether in addition the selection of OEM counterparties in the published information actually concealed the identities of the counterparties to the largest transactions that had been allocated to the OEM metric. I make no finding of deliberate concealment, which in any event would only be a basis of claim under FSMA if the concealment resulted in *"the omission from…published information of any matter required to be*

included in it" within the meaning of FSMA. However, I consider that the selection of OEM transactions for presentation in the Quarterly Reports is consistent with and supportive of the findings I have earlier made.

Alleged pre-announcement concealment: Top 10 List

3220. I am further fortified in my conclusions by the efforts made in the course of HP's pre-acquisition due diligence to avoid disclosing the existence of transactions included within the IDOL OEM category when providing a list of 'top 10' OEM customers by revenue which Mr Sarin requested. The Claimants relied on this in the context of the FSMA claim as providing a further demonstration of what they presented as the Defendants' willingness to mislead HP regarding the true nature of its IDOL OEM revenue and business. In brief, the facts relating to the *Top 10 List* were as follows.

3221. On 9 August 2011, Mr Sarin sent Mr Kanter a list of information requests, which sought amongst other things "*Top 10 OEM customers by revenue for FY10 (and IBM, Oracle, EMC, [Computer Associates] and [Symantec] if not in top 10 list)*". A list was provided by Mr Kanter in an email on 10 August 2011. The email described what was being provided: "*The top ten <u>core OEM licence customers</u> in FY 2010 break down as follows*". Mr Kanter then proceeded to list three companies *"[b]etween $3m and $12m"* and seven companies *"[b]etween $1m and $3m"*.

3222. Mr Kanter thus did not describe what was being provided as a list of the top contributors to Autonomy's OEM metric: it simply listed the largest "core" OEMs. The Defendants contended, in essence, that Mr Sarin got what they understood him to have asked for, and that Mr Kanter had made clear what they were providing by describing the list as being of the top 10 *"core customers"*. Dr Lynch's Defence clearly summarised their position:

> *"The customers listed were Autonomy's top 10 customers who were OEMs, which corresponded to HP's request for the top 10 OEM customers. HP's request also made it clear from the reference to IBM, Oracle, EMC, CA and SYMC that HP were looking for information as to actual OEMs, rather than transaction counterparties to other OEM derived revenue…"*

3223. Mr Sarin stated in his witness statement, however, that he *"understood this to mean that the 10 customers listed were the 10 largest sources of IDOL OEM revenue in the year ended 31 December 2010."* Dr Lynch, who was involved with Mr Hussain in the process of compiling the list, and had been consulted by Mr Hussain in drawing up the list sent by Mr Kanter, explained the difference:[378]

> *"A.… the simple fact is you can go through our contracts, you can find the top OEM customers and that will give you a list, but that's not the same as the top contributors to OEM-derived, because those are not OEMs and we're being asked for OEMs."*

---

[378] It was also Dr Lynch who had suggested that it was better to give bands of values, rather than the exact revenue from each OEM.

3224. Dr Lynch's evidence in his witness statement was that at no stage did he believe that HP was being provided with anything different from what Mr Sarin had requested; he was adamant when cross-examined that what he took Mr Sarin to be asking for was a list of the largest OEMs, and not the largest OEM-derived customers. His rationale was explained in an exchange in cross-examination which I have already quoted at length in paragraph 3068 above. I would refer again to that passage and add the following further extract:

> *"Q. What I suggest has happened, Dr Lynch, is you get a request from Mr Sarin for top ten customers. You and Mr Hussain work through a list of OEM customers that…Mr Hussain has put together on a schedule, and what you send him includes only those customers, only the OEM customers or transactions which fall within a narrow ambit of the definition of OEM, rather than you identifying –*
>
> *A. Because they're OEMs*
>
> *Q. Well –*
>
> *A. The others aren't OEMs. I don't think there's any dispute between us that, if you sell an upsell to Ford, then Ford is not an OEM, yet that still goes to OEM-derived.*
>
> *Q. I suggest that what you did was to exclude transactions from the list that you knew didn't accord with Autonomy's description to the market of OEM revenue?*
>
> *A. I completely disagree. What they're wanting is to see the contracts – it's not even a list they want, it's the contracts – relating to OEM customers so they can see the terms of those contracts…"*

3225. In the result, the list that Mr Kanter provided omitted many of the entities that were the counterparties to the 10 largest transactions by revenue that had been included in IDOL OEM revenue in FY 2010. For example, there was no reference to the deals with JP Morgan (worth \$8,700,000 (OEM28)), MetLife (worth \$7,025,000 (OEM27)), Bank of America (worth \$8,915,000, \$2,726,000 and \$7,000,000 - OEM21, OEM37 and OEM45[379] respectively) or Amgen (worth \$4,467,000 and \$9,000,000 - OEM24 and OEM36[380] respectively). Each of these transactions was included within the \$132 million of IDOL OEM revenue stated in Autonomy's published information for FY 2010. Taken together, they accounted for 36.2% of reported IDOL OEM revenue in that year.

3226. The Claimants contended that it is no coincidence that none of the excluded entities is a software company; and that, furthermore, the spreadsheet prepared by Mr Hussain which formed the basis of the list ultimately provided to Mr Sarin did not identify customers to HP where the relevant contract (a) was restricted to the purchaser's internal use; (b) constituted an upsell transaction or (c) was a hosting transaction. The

[379] As end-user in an impugned VAR transaction.

[380] As end-user in an impugned VAR transaction.

Claimants submitted that it was plain that, before sending the list to Mr Sarin, the Defendants had carefully selected only those customer names where they believed that the related transactions accorded by nature with the narrower interpretation of the OEM metric, inviting or supporting the inference that the Defendants knew that the market would perceive the metric to have that narrower scope.

3227. They added that Dr Lynch's responses in cross-examination were *"not at all to his credit. He made a series of assertions that lacked any credibility."* They instanced his suggestion, quoted in paragraph 3224 above, that Mr Sarin was really asking for the relevant contracts not the names of customers, which was plainly not the case. More generally, they dismissed Dr Lynch's main point that there was a distinction between *"core"* and *"derived"* as a *"tactic"*, and his claim to the effect that this distinction had previously been explained to HP as *"completely untrue"*. They added that the explanation of the distinction to HP was not mentioned in his Defence, nor in his written evidence (including in his response in his second witness statement to Mr Sarin's witness statement): nor was it to be found in any quarterly report, earnings call or annual report during the Relevant Period. They stated that *"There was no such mention because Dr Lynch's live evidence was simply made up."*

3228. Dr Lynch sought to rely on a Power Point display at a meeting in which (he said) the distinction was made and asserted that in any event it was also *"well understood in the market and covered in many analysts reports and market conference calls before that period"*. There was little or no evidence for either.

3229. However, the Defendants referred me to a document which was provided to Mr Sarin by Autonomy a little later in the due diligence process. This was a further list of top OEM customers, headed *"OEM analysis. Top customers by name and revenue category 2006-2010"*, which Mr Sarin accepted when cross-examined, that he had probably seen. Immediately below that description there appeared a note in the following form:

> *"Note: Excludes…upsells, maintenance, pros serve etc, and excludes companies which were formerly OEMs but subsequently acquired by Arsenal (eg IWOV, Meridio, etc). Estimates of contributions below."*

3230. The further list then set out the customers in question under two categories (Over \$10m and Under \$10m) as follows:

> *"<u>Over \$10m category</u>*
> - *EMC*
> - *HP*
> - *IBM*
> - *Iron Mountain*
> - *Video Monitoring Services*
>
> *<u>Under \$10m category</u>*
> - *Adobe*
> - *Bloomberg*
> - *Computer Associates*
> - *Dassault Systems*

- *Deloitte*
- *Energy Solutions*
- *Huron*
- *Hyland*
- *KPMG*
- *Rand*
- *Opentext*
- *Oracle*
- *Symantec*
- *Verdasys*
- *Xerox"*

3231. The Defendants submitted that this list made clear to HP both that Autonomy's OEM business included upsells, and also that upsell revenue was being excluded in drawing up the list. If still uncertain, for example about the scope of the expression "upsells" (which when cross-examined he told me he had understood to be restricted to *"selling more functionality to the OEM itself"*) Mr Sarin had the opportunity to ask further questions, but had chosen not to do so.

3232. Further, on 10 August 2011, various OEM contracts were uploaded to the data room. Mr Gersh confirmed that he read all of them. Those contracts include contracts which HP now impugn, saying that they cannot properly be classified as OEM. But the Defendants contended that HP would have known that Autonomy was treating those contracts as OEM contracts from their inclusion amongst the OEM contracts in the data room; and as explained below, those reviewing the contracts for HP during the due diligence process identified the very clauses about which the Claimants now complain in a document headed "*Project Tesla OEM Contract Reviews*" prepared on 11 August 2011. However, that is a matter going, as I see it, to inducement and reliance rather than the intentions behind the provision of the *Top 10 List.*

3233. Despite some equivocation on the part of Dr Lynch when he was cross-examined on the matter, there was no real dispute about the Defendants' involvement in the preparation of the *Top 10 List.* Dr Lynch accepted that he had been consulted by Mr Hussain in drawing up the list sent by Mr Kanter, and had, for example, suggested that it was better to give bands of value rather than the exact revenue from each OEM. He accepted also (and there are emails demonstrating) that he had thereafter been kept up-to-date by Messrs Hussain and Kanter as the response to Mr Sarin was finalised. Mr Hussain was aware and involved likewise.

3234. The question whether the *Top 10 List* was contrived to perpetuate a false impression is a facet of the more general question as to whether the IDOL metric was intentionally misleading. My conclusion that it was accordingly not only informs but to some extent dictates my assessment.

3235. I have concluded on a balance of probabilities that:

(1) Although it may well be that, over time, Dr Lynch has convinced himself, such that he now does believe, that the distinction between OEM and OEM

derived on which his position is based was current in the market's understanding at the time, it was not.

(2) At the time, the Defendants did wish and intend to ensure that the fact that they had included in the OEM metric a very substantial amount of revenue from sources other than what the market understood to be comprised in it was not exposed.

(3) The Defendants (and Mr Kanter) well appreciated that Mr Sarin's request for a list of *"Top 10 OEM customers"* required an answer which did not expose that fact.

(4) Like the self-coined expression "OEM derived", the notion of "core" OEM customers was the means they devised of providing a list which was apparently responsive, but which confined the listed customers to software companies engaged in business which plainly did properly fall within the metric, and did not expose the "derived" element which by now comprised by far the greater part.

(5) There was no evidence that the expression "core OEM" had been used before, or that the Defendants had some substantial basis for thinking that it would be understood by Mr Sarin as differentiating "derived" business. I have seen no evidence that either he or the market understood, or had even been introduced to, the notion of "core" OEM as denoting a small sub-set of business included in the OEM metric.

(6) The notable absence of any attempt at an explanation, and the deletion of words in an early draft list which did at least explain that upsells and maintenance had been excluded, further support the impression I have formed that the *Top 10 List* was carefully contrived to continue the pretence that the OEM metric was substantially comprised of revenue from (a) development licences and (b) royalty-type payments by the OEM concerned on its onward sales of product embedded with Autonomy software.

(7) In this, as in general, the due diligence undertaken was feeble: its aim in reality was to find support for Mr Apotheker's project and the sale price, rather than to ferret out inconsistencies: but that is matter going to the issue of inducement and reliance, to which I turn in paragraph 3236 below, after brief consideration of one further episode which the Claimants submitted, and I agree, reinforces the conclusion that Dr Lynch was at the time intent on concealing from HP the true variety of revenues included in what Autonomy presented as its OEM business. The episode in question relates to the *"Joe Bloggs"* correspondence, which I mentioned in paragraphs 312 to 313 of the Introduction to this judgment.

The "Joe Bloggs" correspondence and post-announcement concealment

3235A.It may be recalled that in late August 2011, and some 14 months after he had left Autonomy, Mr Collet co-authored (with a former Autonomy colleague of his called Mr Marshall) an anonymous communication (of which there were several iterations) to industry and financial analysts suggesting a number of questions that HP should be asking about Autonomy's OEM business. The Defendants portrayed this (in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions) as *"[r]ather than being a disinterested attempt by him to pass on his concerns, this was a sustained campaign to generate negative market sentiment, apparently for the benefit of investors holding short positions in Autonomy stock…"* More pertinent in this context than Mr Collet's motives, however, is the insight that Dr Lynch's responses provides into how he intended HP to understand Autonomy's OEM business.

3235B. Of particular relevance in that context is a document dated 13 September 2011 entitled *"Autonomy – examining the intentional misinformation"* sent by Dr Lynch to Mr Robison under cover of an email of the same date, and described by Dr Lynch as *"a simple rebuttal to the 4 main attacks from the short hedgies over the years"* which had been prepared by *"Our IR people"*. One of the four areas addressed was *"IDOL OEM, how it works and the revenue profile"*. What stands out from the description given of the *"IDOL OEM"* business is that no inkling was given of any revenue source other than development fees and (predominantly) recurring royalty revenue: thus there was no mention or suggestion at all of other sources of revenue, such as upsells and PODS revenue, and no mention of some subset of *"OEM- derived revenue"* though the totals given in the document were the same in the document as in Autonomy's published information.

3235C. Dr Lynch sought, especially in his second witness statement, to distance himself from the preparation of the 13 September 2011 document. But it is clear from background documentation, and I find, that he was personally involved in its preparation and aware of its contents before it was sent to HP. He must have been aware, and I find that he intended, to perpetuate the impression given in the published information of the *"IDOL OEM"* business being entirely comprised of upfront development fees and (predominantly) recurring royalty revenues because of the special value given in the market to revenues of that sort. I would not base my conclusion as to what the category was intended to convey on this document: but it does seem to me to be supportive of the conclusion that I have reached.

The issue of reasonable reliance: did Bidco acquire Autonomy in reasonable reliance on the information given about Autonomy's OEM business in the published information?

3236. The Claimants' case that HP's understanding of the IDOL OEM revenue stream as particularly valuable was based on Autonomy's published information (and in the context of its deceit and Misrepresentation Act claims, on the pre-acquisition representations made to it) and their case that HP reasonably relied on what was said in that published information accordingly was based on the evidence of Mr Sarin and Mr Apotheker, little of which was challenged on the point, and also of Mr Robison and Mr Gersh (whose description of OEM revenues as comprising *"an upfront licensing fee, PCS [post contract support] and royalties that are paid on a quarterly basis…"* in KPMG's due diligence report was plainly based on that information).

3237. Mr Sarin's evidence was that:

(1) He reviewed the 2010 Annual Report, and "*relied on the accuracy of the 2010 Annual Report when forming a view as to whether Autonomy could be a good acquisition target for HP*".

(2) He also reviewed Autonomy's Q1 2011 Quarterly Report, which "*indicated that all of [Autonomy's] product lines were achieving double digit growth*", and that "*Autonomy's OEM business was said to be growing at 28% annually*".

(3) He read Autonomy's Q2 2011 Quarterly Report "*and was impressed by Autonomy's apparent performance*", which included 27% growth in the IDOL OEM business.

(4) When building the Deal Model, HP used the five categories of reported revenue identified in Autonomy's published information. One of these was IDOL OEM, which Mr Sarin understood to be "*licensing Autonomy software to other software companies who embedded it in their own products*".

(5) In the Deal Model, a high gross margin (98%) was projected for OEM:

> *"because we understood OEM revenue to consist of royalties paid to Autonomy by other software companies, with very little attendant cost to Autonomy, and it seemed that Autonomy had few competitors in the space*".

(6) At the time of the Q2 2011 results, the published information appeared to convey, and HP understood it to convey, that:

> *"Cloud and OEM now represented more than half of Autonomy's core software business was significant from HP's perspective. We <u>considered the Cloud and OEM revenue streams to be particularly valuable because of their (apparent) recurring nature... once an OEM customer embedded Autonomy software in its own software product, that product would usually (we understood) be sold for a period of years. We viewed the OEM business as very valuable</u> because we believed the revenues were recurring in nature, increasing rapidly, and highly profitable to Autonomy because all selling was done by the third party software companies*".[381]

(7) The following excerpt, from a document headed "*Autonomy – calculating organic growth*" sent to Mr Sarin by Derek Brown (Autonomy Investor Relations), copied to Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain[382], on 23 August 2011, shortly after the offer was announced, accorded with Mr Sarin's understanding of the attractiveness of Autonomy's IDOL OEM business:[383]

[381] Emphasis added.
[382] The Defendants saw the document in draft form before it was sent to Mr Sarin.
[383] Emphasis in the original.

> *"Autonomy has consistently signed 10 to 15 OEM agreements per quarter for many years. These lead to royalty revenues which begin to flow around 2 years later as 3rd party products with IDOL embedded come to market. Thus there is a **layering effect** as more and more products begin paying royalties each quarter.*
>
> *Another key driver for OEM is the **royalty rate**, which averages around 4% but is ticking up as more functionality is licensed. IDOL OEM revenues grew by 27% in Q2'11 which is pure organic expansion. IDOL OEM is currently 26% of core IDOL sales."*

3238. The Claimants also relied on the following unchallenged parts of Mr Apotheker's evidence:

(1) His statement in his witness statement that he reviewed the 2010 Annual Report "*very carefully*" in May 2011. (He confirmed this when cross-examined.)

(2) His understanding that the manner in which IDOL OEM revenue was described or defined in that report:

> "*indicated that Autonomy's IDOL software had been widely accepted by other software companies and was becoming the industry standard for managing and analyzing unstructured data. <u>This aspect of Autonomy's business also appeared to be very profitable because other software companies were selling Autonomy's software in the course of selling their own software (at no cost to Autonomy). OEM revenues were attractive for the further reason that they are typically recurring in nature</u>. Once software is embedded in another software company's product, sales of that company's product tend to be made over a period of several years*". [384]

(3) Dr Lynch's remark in the 2010 Annual Report that the "*IDOL OEM and IDOL Cloud routes*" were "*highly attractive*" as they "*turn one-off sales into multi-year committed annuity streams*" was consistent with Mr Apotheker's understanding of the value of the IDOL OEM revenue stream.

(4) Mr Apotheker stated that:

> *"Similarly, if Autonomy had fully disclosed that its IDOL OEM revenues were far lower than had been shown in the Annual Report I reviewed... it would have made a significant difference to my thinking about the company. Lower IDOL OEM growth would have meant that Autonomy's software was not as successful in the marketplace as I had otherwise thought...lower IDOL OEM revenues and slower growth would have made Autonomy, as a whole, less attractive to HP, because Autonomy would not have as readily helped HP to achieve its strategic goals of becoming a higher margin, higher growth company."*

---

[384] Emphasis added.

3239. When cross-examined, Mr Apotheker told me that he:

> *"really liked this notion of OEMs because much more than the resellers themselves this was a highly scalable model. In particular, the way it was explained to me and the way I think it worked was that it was a multi-year, layered effort where you would generate more and more income from a given OEM over time with hardly any additional cost of sales. So I thought that was a very, very important part of the business model and a very smart one."*

3240. He confirmed that it was this which made the OEM line such an attractive part of Autonomy's business model: *"the absolute number wasn't of big interest"*.

3241. Mr Robison, who did not attend to give evidence (citing medical reasons) also stated in his witness statement that his understanding was that:

> *"Strong IDOL OEM revenues and revenue growth were important to HP. The stated growth of Autonomy's IDOL OEM sales was an indicator that other companies valued Autonomy's technology. We therefore considered IDOL OEM to be a highly profitable, growing revenue stream that was recurring in nature and an indicator of the quality of the business."*

3242. I agree with the Claimants' summary in their closing submissions that:

(a) HP based its understanding of Autonomy's IDOL OEM business, in substantial part, on the 2010 Annual Report, and the Q1 and Q2 2011 Quarterly Reports.[385]

(b) HP's understanding of IDOL OEM revenue accorded with Autonomy's description or definition of this revenue as arising where Autonomy licensed its software to other software companies who embedded it in their own products.

(c) HP understood the business to be fast-growing.

(d) HP forecast future IDOL OEM revenue by reference to the size and growth of the IDOL OEM revenue amounts reported by Autonomy.

(e) HP understood this business to be particularly valuable, because it consisted of a stream of recurring, high-margin, royalty income, paid by OEM partners over many years.

3243. Further to my analysis of the instances given by the Defendants where reliance might not be reasonable (see the Introduction to this judgment at paragraph 521) I have considered the following in the particular context of the question whether HP's reliance on the above was reasonable:

---

[385] As noted above, its understanding was also formed by the misrepresentations made to HP directly, upon which HP also relied. These misrepresentations are addressed more fully below.

(1) Whether the fact that there was a general warning in the 2010 Annual Report that *"delivery of Autonomy's core technology is via a number of methods, depending on the demands of the customers, trends within these delivery methods are not segments and are provided for background information and may include qualitative estimates"* was a sufficient warning to make any reliance without further investigation and verification unreasonable;

(2) Whether the fact that Mr Apotheker accepted when cross-examined that he did not read any more up to date quarterly reports and the 2010 Annual Report which he did read was by then some seven months' out of date (though he told me he was told by others within HP that the quarterly reports *"were in line with expectations more or less"*) made any reliance unreasonable in the context of such a large transaction;

(3) Whether in the course of due diligence HP reviewed documents which made plain the true position, and if so whether (as was submitted in Dr Lynch's written closing) the Claimants *"cannot say that they were misled about the content of Autonomy's OEM business, when these things were clear from documents provided to them and reviewed at the time."*

3244. Suffice it to say that none of the matters in (1) and (2) above persuaded me that reliance was not reasonable.

3245. As to (3), the Defendants relied on the following as demonstrating that the Claimants' claim is artificial and *"founded on matters that they (or their advisers) knew about at the time, and were not concerned about"*:

(1) that a number of the OEM contracts that the Claimants sought to complain about were included in the data room during due diligence and HP's advisers (Freshfields), working with an HP in-house lawyer (Ms Walton) had analysed these contracts, and collated a document headed "*OEM Contracts Reviews*";

(2) the "*OEM Contracts Reviews"* document identified key features of contracts in the data room inconsistent with what the Claimants have alleged to be their understanding of the scope of the metric; yet

(3) neither HP nor its advisers raised any complaint or suggested that any contracts had been improperly categorised as OEM;

(4) one example given by the Defendants was the transaction OEM 61 in the list of OEM transactions impugned by the Claimants. This covered two contracts with Iron Mountain, both of which were uploaded to the data room on 10 August 2011. Although the documents were redacted, the redactions did not cover the text which the Claimants relied on as showing these contracts could not properly be classified as OEM. The basis which the Claimants give for the complaint that the agreements were wrongly classified is that "*The transaction related to a reseller agreement and a second agreement restricted to internal use*". Dealing with the two contracts in turn:

(a) The contract the Claimants challenged as a reseller agreement was the very first contract described in the "*OEM Contract Reviews*" document.[386] In the "*Type of Document/Contract*" box the reviewer wrote "*Value added reseller agreement*"; so there was no secret about that. The Claimants' written opening quotes one clause to allege that the contract was wrongly classified. The same clause is quoted in the "*OEM Contract Reviews*" document.[387]

(b) The Claimants alleged that the second contract described in "*OEM Contract Reviews*" contained an internal use restriction such that its categorisation as OEM was improper. But the Defendants suggested that the reviewers must have read it, since it is the first clause on the first page, and they have quoted from other parts of the contract.

(5) It was also clear from those contracts in the data room that Autonomy's OEM business covered some VAR agreements: the example of OEM 61 (relating to two contracts with Iron Mountain) appears above; and OEM 55 covered a contract with Symantec also relied on by the Claimants as wrongly classified on two bases clear from the wording of the contract itself, both noted in the *OEM Contract Reviews."*.

(6) The contracts in the data room also included contracts which would not generate royalties (such as an agreement with Verity for lump sum payments and no royalty, OEM54).

3246. However, although the Defendants contended in their closing submissions (both written and oral) that the Claimants *"cannot say that they were misled about the content of Autonomy's OEM business, when these things were clear from documents provided to them and reviewed at the time"*, I do not accept this apparent assertion of actual knowledge and understanding. It may be that the Claimants should have appreciated that the OEM business was broader in scope, and/or their advisers should have so advised them; but I am far from convinced that they did so. As discussed previously, it was not open to the Defendants to contend that HP should somehow have worked out the truth for itself. Further, none of this was put to Mr Sarin or Mr Apotheker (or Mr Gersh); it was not suggested to any of them that HP had in fact ascertained the true composition of IDOL OEM revenue from its due diligence exercise.

3247. In short, I consider that HP (and thus Bidco) reasonably relied on and was induced by what was stated in the published information as to the particularly valuable nature of the OEM revenue stream.

The misrepresentation of Autonomy's OEM business in other materials

---

[386] The Defendants identified the document being discussed as "*Iron Mountain - IM partnership (redacted)*", a redacted version of the VAR Agreement dated May 2011.

[387] In the box headed "*Product*": "*Tesla, Inc. grants Iron Mountain, during the term of this agreement, a limited non-exclusive, non-transferable right and license to distribute copies of the Products to Iron Mountain's customers, and to resell the Service Products and Support to End-users.*"

3248. I address in a separate chapter of this judgment the various claims made by the Claimants in respect of pre-acquisition representations, which the Claimants allege they relied on as having induced them to purchase the Defendants' own shares in Autonomy at the price they agreed to pay: see the chapter headed Deceit and Misrepresentation Claims. Although I also address various representations made about Autonomy's OEM business in that chapter, it is convenient to deal here with a sub-set of those representations now, because in my view they cast further light on the dispute as to what the Defendants intended to convey about that business, and in my view reinforce my conclusion as to what the Defendants intended the published information to convey about Autonomy's OEM business.

3249. The material I have in mind, all of which I return to later, can for present purposes be summarised as follows:

(1) In initial meetings in January and February 2011, Mr Quattrone of Qatalyst took HP through two slide decks. There is an issue whether he did so as agent of Autonomy, but for the present that is not of importance since the focus presently is on what HP were told. The Slides included representations concerning (i) the level of IDOL OEM revenue; (ii) the growth of IDOL OEM revenue; and (iii) the nature of the business as "*Royalty-based ~3%*".

(2) On 4 March 2011, a further slide deck ("the March Slides") was used which included what the Claimants alleged were misrepresentations as to (i) the level of IDOL OEM revenue; (ii) the growth of IDOL OEM revenue; (iii) the royalty-based nature of IDOL OEM revenue; (iv) that IDOL OEM revenue was revenue from transactions with software companies; and (v) that reported IDOL OEM revenue related to deals signed two years ago.

(3) The Defendants contended that the slides shown in March should not be considered in isolation; and Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that although not mentioned in the Slides themselves, the inclusion of revenues from upsells and PODs was expressly mentioned; but there was no other evidence of this, and Dr Lynch made no mention of any such broader discussion in his witness statements, nor in his pleadings.

(4) On 29 June 2011, Dr Lynch made misrepresentations at a meeting held between HP and Autonomy representatives in London. These included that Autonomy's OEM business was fast-growing and involved many other software companies incorporating IDOL into their own software products.

(5) Further representations about IDOL OEM revenue were made to HP on due diligence calls in August 2011, including on calls held on 1, 2 and 4 August 2011. These reinforced the depiction of Autonomy's OEM business as being rapidly and exponentially growing, very high margin and generating recurring revenue, as in Autonomy's published information.

3250. The Defendants addressed the statements made in the March slides in relation to OEM as follows:

(1) First, they said that the Claimants' argument that the Slides represented that IDOL OEM revenue constituted 15% of Autonomy's reported revenue in 2010, when the true figure was only 3.2%, was founded on the Claimants' narrow and erroneous definition of the relevant revenues. The Defendants' case was that Autonomy's IDOL OEM revenues for 2010 were not, and were never represented to be, confined to core OEM revenue received directly from OEMs, rather than the broader OEM derived revenues described above.

(2) Secondly, they rejected the Claimants' allegation that by selection of companies whose logos were shown on slide 19, Dr Lynch represented that Autonomy's OEM revenue "*was exclusively derived from transactions with companies operating in the software industry or with a large software business*." They contended that no such representation was made: the relevant slide, which appeared in a section describing Autonomy's business models rather than defining the scope of its different revenue categories, merely identified a selection of Autonomy's core OEM customers.[388] The Defendants contended, therefore, that the selection was not misleading: as already discussed, Autonomy's core OEM customers are primarily software companies, even if its OEM derived revenues come from a wider range of counterparties.

(3) Thirdly, as to Dr Lynch's alleged representation through the Slides that the business operated mainly or typically on a royalty model, with annual royalties of 3 or 4%, the Defendants' case was that no such representation was made, and that, at most, an example was given with an indication of a 4% royalty, which HP would have known from reading Autonomy's 2010 Annual Report was only an example, and that "*contracts and situations vary.*"[389] Further, they submitted that HP was aware from its own OEM arrangements with Autonomy that some of Autonomy's contracts provided for prepaid fees.

(4) Fourthly, the Defendants insisted that they had not given a false impression of OEM revenues in respect of recurrent revenues and that there was no misrepresentation, since Autonomy's core OEM revenues were highly likely to recur since, even where the OEM paid a bulk or prepaid royalty, there was a strong incentive to renew at the expiry of the contracts with Autonomy. In any event, the Defendants contended that many of Autonomy's OEM contracts were royalty bearing and that the Claimants had not established otherwise.

(5) Finally, they maintained that the Claimants' argument that the growth rate for Autonomy's OEM revenues were misstated, showing that the business was growing at the rate of 35% from 2009 to 2010, rather than (as the Claimants argued) shrinking at 28.5%, was again predicated on the Claimants' misconception about the true scope of the OEM metric: see above.

3251. Given that I have found in favour of the Claimants on their case that a significant proportion of the revenues included in the OEM metric were not structured to generate recurring revenue and on their case that only revenue from development licences and

[388] Not all of the companies whose logos were shown were "software companies", though Dr Lynch accepted that they had software businesses.

[389] See paragraph 3164(3)(c) above.

royalty revenues should have been included in the OEM metric. I accept the Claimants' case that the March Slides were misleading in relation to Autonomy's OEM business.

3252. I consider the extent of the Defendants' involvement in and responsibility for them in paragraphs 3866 to 3867 below in a separate chapter in which I address the Claimants' deceit and misrepresentation claims. Suffice it to say for the present that I think both must accept responsibility for the representations made from March 2011 onwards.

Conclusion on OEM

3253. In my judgment:

(1) the Defendants gave a false and misleading picture of Autonomy's OEM business.

(2) They knew they were doing so. They did so because they also knew that it would be, and had been, regarded as generating a particularly valuable revenue stream.

(3) HP relied on that picture, and it was reasonable for it to have done so.

(4) The direct representations made to HP confirmed the depiction given in Autonomy's published information.

(5) HP was the controlling mind of Bidco; and its reliance is to be attributed to Bidco.

(6) The Claimants' case in respect of the OEM business has been established.

HOSTING

General overview of the Claimants' hosting case

3254. An important part of the Autonomy group's business was the provision of data hosting services to customers which enabled them to archive and preserve, access and navigate their data and digital information in an environment that was hosted and managed by the Autonomy group at its own data centres using Autonomy software.

3255. Hosting business customers tended to be 'sticky' in the sense that once having settled on a provider, they rarely switched to another, because of the effort and substantial expense of doing so. Further, since the standard model was that customers would pay a subscription for the services provided, hosting businesses tended to generate recurring and predictable revenue. This made its hosting business (sometimes called *"IDOL Cloud"*), which Autonomy primarily carried on through Zantaz, a part of the group's business which analysts and other investors valued especially highly. Dr Lynch was well aware of this: he noted in the Q2 2011 earnings call that:

> *"Obviously we'd be very happy if everything went to the Cloud because it's a much nicer model in terms of valuation."*

3256. The particular importance ascribed by analysts and investors to Autonomy's hosting business as an important source of reliable and growing revenue seems to have encouraged Autonomy to provide metrics to show its success. From 2010 onwards, Autonomy's published information referred to the hosting business as *"IDOL Cloud"* and included an IDOL Cloud metric in the "front-end" of its quarterly and annual accounts. Revenue included within that IDOL Cloud metric was an indicator of the growth and success of the hosting business. It was an especially valued revenue stream.

3257. The Claimants' case in relation to Autonomy's hosting business ("the hosting case") is, in a nutshell, that Autonomy resorted to stratagems intended artificially to accelerate the rate at which Autonomy recognised revenue from hosting customers to boost the appearance of substantial growth of this revenue stream whilst at the same time failing to disclose the true nature of the arrangements and the fact that this inevitably reduced future recurring revenues.

3258. The alleged stratagem was Autonomy's introduction of what was called a "hybrid model" for its two main hosted offerings in the Relevant Period, which were Digital Safe and e-Discovery. The Claimants' complaints relate both to the model and to its presentation.

Autonomy's hosting business and the introduction of the Hybrid Model in more detail

3259. Both these products (Digital Safe and e-Discovery) had originally been developed by Zantaz, a specialist in cloud archiving. Zantaz also had another archiving solution called Enterprise Archive Solution ("EAS"), which was typically the solution sold to smaller customers who wanted to manage their own archive on-premises (that is to say in their own office or site).[390]

[390] After acquiring Zantaz, Autonomy made the decision not to continue to develop EAS, though it still had to provide support services for EAS customers which Autonomy largely outsourced to Capax Global.

3260. Autonomy had acquired Zantaz in July 2007, and Zantaz continued to be the operating company for Autonomy's hosting business thereafter[391]. Both before and after the acquisition the CEO of Zantaz was Mr Sullivan. He remained as CEO of Zantaz throughout the Relevant Period.

3261. Prior to its acquisition, Zantaz had generally charged its customers fees for hosting services (priced as an agreed sum per megabyte of storage) usually on a pay-as-you-go basis. This was an industry standard way of charging and was known as "Software-as-a-Service" ("the SaaS model"). In its own financial statements prior to its acquisition, Zantaz recognised revenue from its SaaS business over the course of the hosting contract as and when the services were provided. That was the accounting treatment prescribed by US GAAP.

3262. Following its acquisition, and at Autonomy's instigation, Zantaz began to promote, both to new and existing customers, an alternative contract model, known as the *"hybrid model"* or *"hybrid structure"*. This involved structuring or restructuring its hosting arrangements so that customers paid (i) a significant upfront sum for a licence to use Autonomy's software, (ii) fees for standard maintenance and support services of the kind typically provided with software licences, and (iii) considerably reduced fees for hosting and related ongoing services. Typically, around one-third of the overall revenue from a hybrid deal was recognised upfront[392]. References in this part of this judgment to "licence fee" or "licence fee element" are to that proportion of the revenue from a hybrid deal which was recognised upfront.

3263. In cases where the hybrid model was agreed, Autonomy treated the sale of such a licence like the sale of goods and would recognise the sizeable licence fee element as revenue immediately upon delivery of the software. The remaining revenue was recognised over the period of the arrangement.

3264. The Claimants' overall "Hosting case" is that the licence issued in the hybrid model had no real substance and was not in any real sense a separate and severable component of the overall transaction for the provision of hosting, monitoring and maintenance services, so that it was wrong to account for it as if its sale was analogous to the sale of goods. The rights apparently conferred on a grantee under the licence had no practical utility and were of no material benefit to the grantee except as the means of obtaining discounted hosting fees. It was a device used to justify accounting for part of the hosting fees as realised revenue at the point of the licence sale, whereas in reality the issue of a licence did not alter the fact that all that was to be provided was hosting and related services[393]. Further, the Claimants argued that such were the

Autonomy/Zantaz focused development efforts on e-Discovery and Digital Safe.

[391] However, and in line with my general impression that little heed was taken to separate corporate identity within the Autonomy group and all group business was in reality directed by Autonomy's management, Dr Lynch, when asked in cross-examination to confirm that hosting business was *"mostly carried on by or through Zantaz",* said *"We didn't really operate as companies in that way…so, for example, the employees in Zantaz would have been Autonomy employees…"*.

[392] As Dr Lynch explained, in the hybrid model, there was a licence element or component, for which a fee was charged, as well as hosting and service elements. The licence fee element would typically comprise about one-third of the whole. After carving out somewhere between 5% and 15% for the invariable maintenance part of the licence fee the remaining part of the licence fee would be recognised 'upfront' (i.e. immediately), provided that the auditors (Deloitte) were satisfied that the split between licence fee and maintenance fee was at *"fair value"*.

[393] For Digital Safe, this comprised (a) hosting the software and the data on Autonomy's own hardware or the Autonomy cloud, and (b) monitoring and managing the performance of the system. For e-Discovery, this

discounts offered in return for payment of the upfront licence fee that the hybrid model resulted in Autonomy receiving a considerably diminished overall return.

3265. In the particular context of eDiscovery, the Claimants also advanced an alternative case, that it was not possible to ascribe a "fair value" to the licence component of the hybrid deal and therefore recognise the licence revenue upfront.

3266. The Claimants' hosting case had five strands:

(1) Their principal claim was a FSMA Claim which related to 51 of the hosting transactions identified in Schedule 6 of the RRAPoC each involving the sale by Autonomy of a licence to use Digital Safe and/or related software as part of a hosted Digital Safe arrangement which in many cases could only be used with Digital Safe ("Related Software"). These Digital Safe transactions were referred to as "Schedule 6DS (D(igital) S(afe)) transactions". The Claimants' complaint in relation to the Schedule 6DS transactions is that Autonomy ought to have recognised the licence fee as revenue over the term of the contract and not upfront, and that the recognition in its accounts of all revenue from the licence fee at the time of the sale caused Autonomy's published information to be misleading.

(2) The Claimants also claimed under FSMA in respect of seven more of the transactions listed in Schedule 6, which related to Hybrid Model e-Discovery arrangements ("the Schedule 6 e-Discovery transactions"). As with the Schedule 6DS transactions, the Claimants contended that Autonomy ought to have recognised the revenue rateably over the term of the contracts, rather than upfront, and the recognition in its accounts of all revenue from the licence fee at the time of the sale caused Autonomy's published information to be misleading.

(3) A further complaint raised by the Claimants related to the inclusion of the licence fee revenue within the IDOL Cloud metric in Autonomy's published information[394]. The principal issue is whether Autonomy's descriptions of the IDOL Cloud category of revenue were untrue and/or misleading to the knowledge of the Defendants. According to the Claimants, Autonomy represented the IDOL Cloud metric as comprising revenue which was recurring in nature, and the allocation of licence fee revenue (which was a one-off fee and thus not recurring) was never disclosed, and (the Claimants noted) the Defendants did not contend that they were ignorant of the allocation of licence fees to IDOL Cloud. The Claimants contended that the purpose and effect of this was to give the market the false impression that Autonomy's recurring revenue from its hosting business was higher and of a different quality than actually it was. However, Mr Rabinowitz clarified that the Claimants did not assert any free-standing claim in this regard, but relied on it

---

comprised the same plus related e-Discovery services, and the use of the term 'hosting' or 'storage' in a context where it applies to e-Discovery should be understood to include both.

[394] From 2010 onwards, Autonomy's accounts (at their "front-end") and published information referred to the hosting business as *"IDOL Cloud"* and all or nearly all hosted transactions and the revenue arising were allocated to IDOL Cloud. IDOL Cloud revenues grew considerably during the Relevant Period, increasing from $45 million in Q1 2010 to $64.3 million in Q2 2011. The Schedule 6 transactions comprised some 10% in Q1 2010, 44.4% in Q2 2010, 10% in Q3 2010, 13% in Q4 2010, 29.2% in Q1 2011 and 24.7% in Q2 2011.

as evidence of (a) general dishonesty on the part of both Defendants and (b) their willingness to present Autonomy's hosting business to the market (and HP) in a misleading manner.

(4) The fourth strand of the Claimants' hosting case was a direct personal claim for breach of duty against both Defendants to recover transactional losses in relation to a numerically small, but in money terms substantial, subgroup of the 51 Schedule 6DS transactions. Originally, the Claimants sought to claim damages against the Defendants in respect of all the Schedule 6DS transactions. However, by the time of trial (and further to amendments at a contested hearing in 2017 and at the PTR in February 2019) the Claimants confined their claim for damages against the Defendants to just four of the 51 DS transactions ("Schedule 12D transactions"). Though residually maintaining that all 51 identified DS transactions were improperly accounted for, the Claimants adduced no evidence relating to any specific hosting transactions other than in respect of those four Schedule 12D transactions. The four Schedule 12D transactions all involved what were claimed to have been contrived re-structuring (and in one case, re-re-structuring) of hosting contracts which had already been restructured, which were of no benefit to either of the parties to them, except in enabling Autonomy to claim further revenue recognition and the customer to achieve cost savings. The four Schedule 12D transactions accounted collectively for almost 25% of the total licence fees from the Schedule 6DS transactions. They were made between Zantaz and Morgan Stanley (two transactions, one in Q4 2009 and the other in Q1 2011), Zantaz and Deutsche Bank (in Q1 2011), and Autonomy Inc (though Zantaz continued to be the entity recording revenue)[395] and MetLife (in Q2 2011). The issue is whether the Schedule 12D transactions were entered into for the improper purpose of artificially accelerating revenue, without regard for and contrary to the commercial interests of Zantaz and/or ASL.

(5) The fifth strand of the Claimants' case was defensive: they refuted any suggestion that HP was aware that the upfront recognition of licence revenue from Autonomy's hybrid hosting deals contravened the applicable accounting principles, or that the hybrid model was implemented in such a way as to result in the reduction of overall hosting revenues and profits, or that licence revenue was included in IDOL Cloud, or (more generally) any suggestion that HP was not deceived.

3267. Part A of this chapter of this judgment addresses both limbs of the FSMA/Schedule 6 claims and also the Claimants' contentions in respect of the IDOL Cloud metric. Part B addresses the Schedule 12D personal claims for transactional losses.

PART A: FSMA Claims

3268. The crux of the Claimants' Hosting claim under FSMA is a dispute whether it was proper for Autonomy to recognise revenue from the sale of the licence as at the date of that sale as if the licence was separate from the hosting services element for which customers continued to be obliged to pay, or whether the licence fee was properly to

[395] According to Schedule 12D.

be treated as a prepayment of the hosting services to be provided by Autonomy and thus recognised over the period during which those services were provided.

3269. The characterisation of the sale of the licence as a separate component of a composite sale giving rise immediately to recognised revenue depended on the licence being treated and regarded as conferring a real and realisable right in respect of the software to which it related and thus as having a real and independent value to the grantee separate from the services also to be provided.

3270. At heart, the issue is as to the application of accounting principles; but the dispute as to the substance of the licence engendered a detailed analysis of what in practice the grant of a licence meant in terms of the use the grantee could in practice make of the licenced software. The Claimants argued that in all of the Schedule 6 hosting transactions the licence lacked any practical utility. The Defendants argued that, on the contrary, its utility was to enable the customer to use the software separately from any hosting services, and in its own premises if it so wished; and that whilst not all customers who subscribed into the restructured package would use the right, the right was nonetheless in the nature of a separate asset available for use and good against its issuer.

3271. In that regard, the analysis of utility was slightly different according to whether the licence related to the 51 Schedule 6DS transactions or to the seven e-Discovery transactions. In both cases the Claimants contended that (a) the customer continued to receive substantially the same service regardless of whether it had acquired a licence (that is, the same service as a customer who contracted on a SaaS basis) and (b) only the legal/payment structure changed, which did not justify the accounting treatment accorded. However, whereas the e-Discovery software was capable of being used independently of an Autonomy hosted arrangement, the Claimants contended that Digital Safe was too big and too complex for it to be used by the customer independently from the hosting and related service components of a Digital Safe arrangement.

3272. In the context of the e-Discovery claims, the Claimants argued that even though a customer could take e-Discovery in-house and operate it itself, it would not have been practicable for customers to do so. The argument was primarily based on the difficulty and expense of seeking to use e-Discovery “on-premises”.

3273. Subject to those differences, however, it can be seen that the broader issues as to the practical effect of the purchase and grant of a licence, and as to viability and utility of the options said to be available to the licenced customer, were common to both.[396]

3274. Although the competing cases can thus fairly shortly be summarised, their elaboration by the parties both in submission and in the evidence was considerable. The Claimants’ written submissions devoted over 320 pages and some 650 footnotes to their Hosting Case, after days of evidence. The Defendants also dealt with the matter at length though they managed to confine themselves to less than 200 pages in their written closing submissions, with only 400 footnotes.

[396] Mr Holgate put the essential point differently as being whether the services (of capturing, indexing and archiving) were, as he was asked to assume they were, unaffected by the sale of a licence to the customer, and *“the sale of a licence to Digital Safe had no commercial effect in practice and therefore no substance”*.

3275. I turn to address the following matters:

(1) Brief description of Digital Safe;
(2) Brief description of Autonomy's e-Discovery offering;
(3) A detailed analysis of the Digital Safe claim;
(4) A detailed analysis of the e-Discovery claim;
(5) Defendants' knowledge; and
(6) IDOL Cloud metric.

(1) Brief description of Digital Safe

3276. Digital Safe was Autonomy's leading archiving product. It performed a "capture and index" function, which enabled customers to store, search and retrieve their data. The software, together with the hardware (servers) onto which it was loaded, formed the Digital Safe system or (as a combined software and hardware offering was often referred to in the parlance of the sector) "solution".

3277. Mr Samuel Yan ("Mr Yan") who had been Systems Architect and Director of Development for Digital Safe at Zantaz, and continued in a similar role at Autonomy after its acquisition of Zantaz[397] described its *"most recognisable attribute"* as being *"its ability to scale"* which (in broad terms) meant that it could keep accommodating increasing demand for data for archiving with the addition of more storage cells.[398]

3278. Digital Safe was originally developed by Zantaz, which Autonomy acquired in July 2007. Zantaz had a number of archiving and related offerings, increasingly cloud-based, which it had either developed itself internally or acquired from other entities. These included, as well as Digital Safe and e-Discovery, Enterprise Archive Solution ("EAS") which was typically sold to customers who wanted to manage their own archive at their own customer site ("on-premise"), and Digital Supervisor, a surveillance product.

3279. Reflecting its Zantaz history and its acquisition by Autonomy, there were two types of Digital Safe: the original type was a Lucene-powered Digital Safe (sometimes referred to as a "Lucene Safe") developed by Zantaz and an IDOL-powered Digital Safe (sometimes referred to as an "IDOL Safe").

3280. Broadly speaking, the IDOL Safe consumed more storage and memory than a Lucene Safe, but it had other compensating advantages. Autonomy's drive was to get IDOL, its proprietary product, into everything. Nevertheless, whilst new Digital Safe customers would be provided with IDOL safes, large legacy customers of Zantaz generally remained on Lucene Safes because, though possible, there were difficulties in moving between the variants.

3281. To bridge the gap, in a few cases an additional, smaller IDOL index, known as *"IDOL Cache"*, was added to a Lucene Safe, which enabled new IDOL-based applications (such as DS Mail, which is like Gmail for DS users, and Supervisor S6) to be used on

[397] On its acquisition of Zantaz, Autonomy appointed Mr Yan Chief Architect in the Product Development team for Digital Safe. After the spin-off of Hewlett Packard Enterprise's software business, he became a senior member of the Digital Safe Product Development team at MicroFocus, the buyer.
[398] Digital Safe operated by having identical storage cells. Additional storage could be obtained with additional identical cells.

a Lucene safe. (It may be noted that even IDOL Safes needed an IDOL Cache to use DS Mail.)

3282. As Mr Sullivan explained in his witness statement, in the case of both variants, multiple services were wrapped around a Digital Safe ("DS") archive, including data migration into the archive, data returns and destruction, monitoring, technical support, systems administration and security. The solution could store, search and retrieve from multiple petabytes of data to accommodate the vast exponential growth in data in recent history. In a hosted environment it was often used in conjunction with other pieces of related Autonomy software, including Supervisor S6 and DS Mail.

3283. Of particular utility, Digital Safe offered regulated entities (such as banks) the ability to store their data in accordance with Rule 17a-4 issued by the US Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") regarding electronic data storage, which has specific requirements relating to length, format, quality, accessibility etc. of record retention. As mentioned before, a particular characteristic and strength was its scalability.

3284. Digital Safe was, however, a complex and sophisticated product, with what Mr Sullivan described as *"a huge footprint."* The indexing and archiving functions were performed automatically by the software, but the complexity of the solution was such that it needed close monitoring, and problems frequently arose, which (especially given the nature of the customer base and their reliance on the solution) had to be fixed very quickly.

3285. Autonomy needed teams of specialized technicians (who, according to Mr Yan, typically received around 6 months of intensive training to even understand its operation) to monitor its hosted customers' DS archives on a 24/7 basis. Mr Sullivan's evidence was that at any one time, there would be at least five network and software operations people on duty simply monitoring the software.

3286. Digital Safe was thus not designed for use by an unassisted customer: it was designed to be (primarily at least) a hosted solution to be run at scale by Autonomy from its own or third-party data centres. Its designers did not expect it to be used "on-premises" except perhaps by very large entities with their own data centres and trained personnel.

3287. Accordingly, the vast majority of Digital Safe customers (Mr Yan estimated 90%) were hosted by Autonomy, storing their data in a Digital Safe at an Autonomy data centre. Mr Yan said (and he was not contradicted) that only a handful of customers had an on-premises Digital Safe solution. Even the small number of "on-premises" customers almost invariably needed a remote management system so that their Digital Safe and data could be monitored and managed by personnel with the requisite Autonomy expertise.

3288. Mr Yan could remember only two attempts by companies (CDC and Rand) to use Digital Safe and make its capabilities available to their own customers without Autonomy's assistance; and in those two situations, CDC was supplied with a more self-sufficient variant which did enable it to carry on, but Rand was forced to stop.

3289. Mr Sullivan's evidence in his witness statement was that even with a good remote management link, on-premises Digital Safe was more burdensome for Autonomy than hosted Digital Safe since it was dependent on the customer for a number of things in

an on-premise context. It was better and easier for Autonomy to have the control of everything in its own data centres. Because of this, Mr Sullivan said, Autonomy *"always tried to sell DS on the hosted basis…"*.

(2) Brief description of Autonomy's e-Discovery offering

3290. Often as part of its hosted business Autonomy also offered e-Discovery services to assist customers with the review and disclosure of material in litigation. The software at the heart of this process was called 'Introspect' and 'Early Case Assessment' ("ECA").

3291. Like Digital Safe, Introspect had been developed by Zantaz before its acquisition by Autonomy. ECA was developed by Autonomy before that acquisition. Introspect was used in connection with the processing of data; ECA was effectively a data-culling tool, allowing customers to reduce the population of material to be loaded into Introspect for review by identifying a subset of data falling within specified parameters.

3292. As indicated earlier, e-Discovery software could form part of a hosted arrangement or an on-premises solution. In a hosted arrangement, the software was used in connection with the ingestion, processing, storage, analysis and production of data by Autonomy in Autonomy-run data centres. In an on-premises arrangement, the software was sold on a standalone basis to the customer to be used in-house (or at a third-party centre), where the required services would be performed by the customer (or a third party).

(3) A detailed analysis of the Digital Safe claim

3293. Under the SaaS model, Zantaz/Autonomy stored the customer's data on the Digital Safe system as a service to the customer. The Digital Safe system and the customer data loaded onto it were hosted and managed by Zantaz in data centres controlled by Zantaz or, in some cases, by third parties such as IBM.[399] The hardware and software that made up the Digital Safe system were owned by Zantaz/Autonomy and maintained by its employees, according to the unchallenged evidence of Mr Egan and Mr Yan, and the evidence of Mr Sullivan.

3294. Before its acquisition and the introduction by Autonomy of the hybrid model, Zantaz usually provided its data hosting service under a multi-year contract, with customers paying for the service on a per megabyte basis and uploading data to the Digital Safe system over the duration of the contract. Zantaz was paid by customers either in

[399] Some of the so-called "on-premise" Digital Safe customers used a third party's data centre. The distinction between these customers and the hosted customers who nevertheless used an IBM data centre was as follows. In the hosted scenario, the customer would contract with a third party, for example IBM, for the provision of a hosted archiving solution. The third party would then subcontract Zantaz to provide the solution; there would be no contractual relationship between Zantaz and the customer, and the customer was fundamentally purchasing a hosted service provided through an intermediary. It would not own the hardware or the software on which it was installed. By contrast, in the on-premise scenario, the customer would purchase Digital Safe in the form of an appliance from Zantaz, and then Zantaz would be engaged to run and monitor the appliance, which would be located at the third party's data centre. In this scenario, there was a contractual relationship between Zantaz and the customer, and the customer was fundamentally purchasing an appliance, such that it would own the hardware and the software installed on it.

advance[400] or, increasingly from 2008, on a 'pay-as-you-go' basis. In both cases, Zantaz recognised revenue in the quarter in which the service was provided.

3295. Regardless of whether the customer was on a pre-paid or a pay-as-you-go contract, neither the Defendants nor Mr MacGregor, Dr Lynch's accounting expert, dispute that the substance of the SaaS arrangements was a data hosting service, or that Zantaz appropriately accounted for those arrangements by recognising the revenue derived from them over the term of the arrangements as the service was provided.

3296. Under the hybrid Digital Safe arrangements, Autonomy provided the same data hosting service, but the customer also purchased a licence to use either Digital Safe software or Related Software.

3297. The way that Autonomy structured the hybrid arrangement involved the customer paying: (i) a substantial fee in respect of the software licence, which was usually paid upfront; (ii) a fee in respect of software maintenance and support services; and (iii) significantly reduced hosting / storage fees on a per megabyte basis. The key differences between these arrangements and the SaaS arrangements were thus: (i) the change in payment structure, and (ii) the introduction of a software licence.

3298. The Claimants emphasised, however, that the payment structure does not determine the pattern, or timing, of revenue recognition. IAS 18 §24 provides that "*[p]rogress payments and advances received from customers often do not reflect the services performed*". The fact that the customer pays in full upfront, in full in arrears, or in instalments on a monthly basis, does not alter the fact that if or to the extent that the contract is, in substance, for the provision of services, then, whatever the cash position the revenue should, in accordance with IAS 18 §20, be recognised over the period as the services are provided.

3299. For so long as the hosting arrangement continued, the introduction into the structure of a licence enabling the customer to move on-premises did not materially alter the nature of the services provided by Autonomy, which continued to provide the same data hosting service under the hybrid arrangement as it would have done or, in the case of existing customers, did under a SaaS arrangement. In particular, regardless of the fact that the customer had purchased a software licence:

(1) Autonomy still hosted the customer's data and the Digital Safe system – including the Digital Safe software licensed to the customer – on hardware owned by Autonomy and located in Autonomy's data centres.

(2) Autonomy still used the Digital Safe software to perform the capture and index processes mentioned above on the customer's data, which the customer provided to Autonomy over the duration of the arrangement and which Autonomy uploaded to the system.

(3) Autonomy still monitored the customer's Digital Safe system round the clock, detecting and fixing problems as they arose.

3300. From the customer's perspective, the position was also the same. In particular, the customer was contracting for a hosted Digital Safe arrangement; it intended for

400 Dr Lynch disputed the extent to which this took place.

Autonomy to host its data, it paid Autonomy to host its data, and that is what Autonomy did. The customer received substantially the same service as it would have received had it contracted, or re-contracted, on a SaaS basis with Autonomy.

3301. The Claimants emphasised that Autonomy repeatedly assured customers – particularly those who found the concept of a licence in a hosted arrangement confusing – that everything would remain exactly the same and that the licence was just a formality. Thus, for example, in an email dated 23 December 2009 to Mr Christian Lucas of Morgan Stanley (which had apparently thought the new structure *"problematic"* and queried *"what would be the upfront payment that you're looking for before y/end in order for the savings programme to kick in?"*) Mr Hussain wrote:

> *"Hi Christian – to clarify, we require no payment at all. The savings start the moment MS signs an amendment to the existing agreement that simply puts lower rates into effect coupled with a software licence fee. In this sense it is not even an offer that requires a legal review as it is purely financial and causes savings. It's quite simply "sign and save"…"* [My emphasis]

Outline of the dispute as to the purpose and effect of the restructurings

3302. In those circumstances, according to the Claimants, it is clear that the reason, and the vice, of Autonomy's introduction of a hybrid model for hosted business, and the sale of a licence to the hosted software in exchange for an upfront payment, was to enable Autonomy successfully to avoid the usual revenue recognition treatment of a prepayment for services and to accelerate the recognition of revenue in respect of the licence element improperly, and to present a false impression of its business. They described it as little more than a *"naked attempt to find a way to produce an accounting effect…namely the acceleration of recognised revenue*".

3303. The Claimants' case was that the net effect of the introduction and adoption of the hybrid model was substantially to reduce the total contract value to Autonomy and to accelerate the rate at which Autonomy recognised revenue from hosting customers at the expense of recurring revenue. They claimed that over $125m of revenue was "accelerated" in this manner.

3304. The Claimants depicted the adoption of the 'hybrid' model as part of Autonomy's relentless search for ways of giving the impression of meeting ambitious revenue targets and market expectations. According to this depiction, though in the case of the impugned hardware, VAR and reciprocal transactions Autonomy in effect purchased its own revenue, whereas hybrid hosting deals involved Autonomy foregoing some part of its future revenue stream in favour of an upfront payment which they treated as immediately recognisable revenue, the same objective of meeting and beating market revenue forecasts was common to all.

3305. The Defendants, on the other hand, insisted there was nothing intrinsically wrong, let alone improper, about the hybrid hosting model, or the issue of licences in order to secure for Autonomy immediate revenue and tie in its customer at a time of sharply declining storage rates and considerable customer volatility. That being the case, accounting for the sale of a licence was a matter of fine judgement, and the decision to treat the sale of the bundle of legal rights which a licence comprised as analogous to

sale of goods revenue stream was well within the ambit of propriety. Enquiry about what use of the rights was made thereafter by individual licensees was (since it was the application of hindsight) illegitimate on ordinary accounting principles.

3306. The Defendants pointed out that after the Acquisition, HP itself had accepted the propriety, and explored how it could continue the practice, of the hybrid hosting model and the sale of licences linked to lower storage and service charges even though the requirement under US GAAP to undertake a VSOE assessment[401] was expensive. They suggested that HP had only abandoned the model because of a strong market movement back towards the SaaS model and a concern that establishing VSOE under US GAAP would constrain Autonomy's ability to be flexible with pricing. Those were matters of business judgement, not indicative of any doubt as to propriety.

3307. In that regard, the Defendants contended that the 'hybrid' model was beneficial both to Autonomy (in ensuring longer term customer commitment) and the customer (which acquired a legal right to software it could deploy outside the hosted environment and a beneficial aggregate subscription rate). They defended it as a commercially driven business decision well within the range of the proper exercise of directors' business discretion. They stressed especially that hosting was a profitable and valuable business line but highly competitive. The commercial effect of selling a licence deal was to lock in the customer which had made an upfront investment that it would not wish to lose.

3308. Ultimately, the Claimants did not go as far as to suggest that the restructurings had no commercial benefits for Autonomy. Zantaz's CEO, Mr Sullivan, who was in charge of its hosting business, and who gave evidence for the Claimants both in the US and in these proceedings, did subscribe to the Claimants' line that the *"main commercial reason for the restructurings, from Autonomy's perspective, was to generate large upfront licence fee revenues"*. But he did not suggest that he considered the sales or restructurings to have been improper. In his witness statement, he explained the advantages as follows:

> *"There were, however, other incidental commercial benefits flowing from the license model, principally enhanced customer lock-in and upsell opportunities.*
>
> *…*
>
> *30. Customers did, though, sometimes threaten to switch to a new provider for new data, often by issuing RFPs in an effort to get lower prices from Zantaz/Autonomy. Although we occasionally lost customers, these customers were generally smaller customers. We could afford to lose smaller customers because they did not significantly affect our revenues. We had to be careful with larger customers and, where data center costs had fallen, we passed some of our cost savings to them to make sure we did not lose them. The relationship was sticky, but retention was not guaranteed and concessions on rates were often offered.*

[401] Vendor-specific objective evidence, a requirement under US GAAP for the recognition of revenue.

> *31. One effect of restructuring to a license model was to remove this tension dynamic from the relationship with customers. They paid a great deal upfront and, in exchange, secured very low ongoing storage rates. This meant that there were, for the term of the service arrangement, no discussions around reductions in storage rates (save where instigated by Autonomy) or threats from customers to go elsewhere. Customer retention was virtually guaranteed.*
>
> *32. The license model also had the theoretical benefit for the customer that it now owned a license to the DS software. A few customers did express some interest in having the ability to bring their DS archives in-house in the future, if, for example, Autonomy were to go bankrupt – and may have believed that the purchase of a license gave them that ability."*

3309. Mr Sullivan also made clear that Autonomy had to remain competitive in light of the falling rates in the market. Customers did threaten to leave. Autonomy did have to pass on some of the costs savings of falling storage costs to customers, to ensure they did not lose them. Customer retention was not guaranteed. (This was said by the Defendants to undermine the Claimants' counterfactual assumption that in the absence of the restructured deals Autonomy could have continued to store the same amount of data at higher historical rates.[402])

3310. Mr Egan also thought there was nothing wrong with the restructuring of the hosted deals. He considered that the hybrid arrangements incentivised customers both to stay and to store additional amounts of data:

> *"My view was that it gave them incentive to stay longer and it gave them incentive to give us more of their overall volumes and change their policies to retain and collect more."*

3311. Other witnesses called by the Claimants, including Mr Goodfellow, also confirmed the business common sense in the hybrid deals when they were cross-examined about them, especially at a time (which it was not disputed it was) of precipitously falling storage prices.

3312. It should also be noted that the practice of selling the hybrid model continued after the acquisition, until at least the end of May 2012. HP had a project to establish VSOE under US GAAP for the hybrid deals. In May 2012 the model was abandoned for

[402]In a nutshell: the Defendants submitted that the Claimants' arguments as to the financial implications of the hybrid model were unrealistic. They assumed that, absent a restructuring, customers would have continued to pay historic rates for the duration of the restructured contract, when in reality customers would have responded to the changing commercial environment by demanding competitive rates. The Claimants also ignore the fact that, by offering competitive storage rates, Autonomy was encouraging customers to store more data. The Defendants contended that the assumption that, in a counterfactual world, the same amount of data would have been stored under uncompetitive rates as was stored under lower, competitive rates, is a false one. However, that might be a reason for offering a discount for the "bird in the hand"; but not for artificial devices to enable accounting for it as recognised revenue.

business reasons (including the fact that the market was moving away from a licence model to a SaaS model).

3313. However, the Defendants' answers on the issue as to the commercial rationale of a licence and the financial advantages it offered (which I shall come on to assess later) must be distinguished from the accountancy issue to be addressed in respect of the 51 Schedule 6DS transactions in the context of the FSMA claims. This is whether the accounting treatment of the sale of a licence separately from the provision of services for an upfront fee was justified (in the sense of being a not unreasonable application of the relevant accounting standards).[403]

3314. That question, which is the principal focus of this section of this judgment, is whether or not the sale of a licence to an Autonomy customer, as part of a hybrid contract under which it was also entitled to receive and bound to pay for hosting and related services, could properly be treated and accounted for as a separate component of the hybrid transaction, and the licence fee booked as recognised revenue at the point of sale.

Applicable accounting principles

3315. There is no dispute that in accruals accounting, unlike cash accounting, a prepayment for goods or services falls to be recognised over the period in which the goods and services are provided, and not upfront.

3316. The dispute, in a nutshell, is whether the licence fee was merely a disguise for, and in substance no different from, the prepayment for hosting services; or whether the licence conferred rights of substance and real practical utility to the customer in respect of the use of Digital Safe, such as to justify the licence and the fee for it being treated as a separate component of the hybrid contract analogous to an immediate payment on the sale of goods.

3317. As foreshadowed above, the Claimants, though not alleging that the licence was a sham, nor disputing that it comprised and conferred a bundle of legal rights, contended that it had no real utility to the customer or effect on the hosting services and its substance and value were illusory: the hybrid model (as they put their case to Dr Lynch) *"made no difference to the substance of the arrangement and the service the customer received"* and was *"simply a pretext devised by Autonomy to accelerate revenue"*. In other words, the Claimants sought to depict the licence simply as a construct, the only value of which was that it provided a passport to discounted service costs, at the expense to Autonomy of a reduced aggregate revenue stream.

3318. The Defendants submitted that it was sufficient that the licence granted under the hybrid model conferred enforceable legal rights which gave the customer the option to continue using Autonomy's hosting services, or to use the hosting services of a third-party for the licensed Autonomy software, or to operate the software themselves by moving Digital Safe and their data on premise.

---

[403] The Claimants confirmed, with emphasis, in their closing submissions that their complaints in their Hosting case were ranged exclusively at Autonomy's sales of a licence to Digital Safe and/or related software in a hosted Digital Safe arrangement and not an on-premise arrangement so that none of their Schedule 6DS transactions involved an on-premise Digital Safe.

3319. They contended also that the Claimants' case that the rights were illusory was false, and that it was entirely possible to deploy Digital Safe on premise and quite practicable to move from a hosted solution to an on-premise solution, lifting and shifting Digital Safe and the Customer's data from Autonomy's data centre to its own (or another) data centre. According to the Defendants, that was a real and separate right of practical utility, justifying treating the sale of the licence as analogous to a sale of goods and to be accounted for accordingly.

3320. Except as noted below, the two experts (Mr Holgate for the Claimants, and Mr MacGregor for the Defendants[404]) agreed on the relevant accounting principles, which can be summarised as follows:

(1) The IASB[405] *'Conceptual Framework for Financial Reporting'* makes clear that a transaction must be accounted for in accordance with its substance and economic reality and not merely its legal form.

(2) The revenue recognition criteria in IAS 18 are usually applied to each transaction as a whole. However, as IAS 18 §13 provides, where a single transaction consists of multiple components, consideration should be given as to whether they are separately identifiable components to which it is necessary to apply the revenue recognition criteria separately in order to reflect the substance of the transaction, or, alternatively, whether the revenue recognition criteria should be applied to the transaction as a whole in accordance with its overall substance.

(3) Where the substance of the transaction, or a separately identifiable component thereof, is the rendering of services, the criteria governing both if and when revenue can be recognised are set out in IAS 18 §§20 and 25. These provide, inter alia, that:

> *"When the outcome of a transaction involving the rendering of services can be estimated reliably, revenue associated with the transaction shall be recognised by reference to the stage of completion of the transaction at the end of the reporting period… [IAS 18 §20]*[406]
>
> *For practical purposes, when services are performed by an indeterminate number of acts over a specified period of time, revenue is recognised on a straight-line basis over the specified period unless there is evidence that some other method better represents the stage of completion…" [IAS 18 §25]*

(4) Where the substance of the transaction, or a separately identifiable component thereof, is the sale of a good, the relevant revenue recognition criteria are

[404] Mr MacGregor was instructed by Dr Lynch; but Mr Hussain "*fully endorsed*" Dr Lynch's position and adopted that evidence.

[405] The International Accounting Standards Board.

[406] The rest of IAS 18 §20 provides that the outcome of a transaction can be estimated reliably when all the following conditions are satisfied: (a) the amount of revenue can be measured reliably; (b) it is probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the entity; (c) the stage of completion of the transaction at the end of the reporting period can be measured reliably; and (d) the costs incurred for the transaction and the costs to complete the transaction can be measured reliably.

those set out in IAS 18 §14. These criteria include that the amount of revenue can be measured reliably.

(5) Mr Holgate accepted that it was *"entirely possible"* for there to be a hybrid contract with a licence element and then a service element *"if the facts point to that"* and in particular, if on the facts the licence was *"validly a separate good or service"* separable from the service provision as a whole; and that a software licence is in general treated as a sale of goods.

(6) However, Mr Holgate did not consider this was or could be answered by reference to what legal rights the licence conferred; he considered that in order to establish the correct accounting treatment for the hybrid transaction, it is necessary to identify the genuine economic substance of the transaction and to consider whether the components of the transaction should be accounted for separately, so as to reflect the substance of the transaction.

3321. In cross-examination Mr Holgate put the test as follows:

> *"…we have to ask if the licence is indeed validly a separate good or service… If it is separate from the provision of subsequent services, then fine, you recognise the licence upfront on day one as revenue and the services gradually over the period.*
>
> *On the other hand, if it's not separable from the service provision as a whole, then the whole thing falls to be accounted for as service provision over a period."*

3322. I did not understand Mr MacGregor to dispute the test. As he expressed his position in this regard in his and Mr Holgate's Joint Statement:

> *"If there were separately identifiable components, providing the criteria of IAS 18.14 and/or IAS 18.20 were applicable, Autonomy was entitled to recognise the IAS 18.14 revenue generated on the licence component of the hosting arrangements at the date of the sale agreement, and the separate IAS 18.20 storage services revenue over the term of the agreement (by reference further to IAS 18.25)."*

3323. The differences in approach between him and Mr Holgate were as to (a) the relevance of the definition of the attributes of the licence in the contract defining it and (b) if the contract was not conclusive, whether in fact the licence did confer rights of substance and utility.

The differences between the experts in their approach to applying these Standards

3324. The differences between the experts as to their ultimate conclusions were in consequence of:

(1) Mr Holgate's more expansive view of the principle that accountants look to the substance and not the form (which Mr MacGregor readily accepted as a principle but considered was not to be stretched as far as Mr Holgate suggested); and

(2) Eight assumptions which the Claimants instructed Mr Holgate to make. One of these assumptions foreclosed the issue, in that Mr Holgate was instructed to assume that the licence had *"no independent value"*. Others were conclusory and it was suggested that they "*dragooned*" the answer. Subject to that, which was objected to and on any view objectionable, the assumptions were factual matters, which were in every case disputed.

3325. As to (1) in the preceding paragraph, Mr Holgate gave the accountancy principle (which I have discussed earlier when addressing the VAR transactions) that a transaction must be accounted for in accordance with its substance rather than in accordance with its form such pre-eminence that he did not see or call for the licence agreements themselves and consequently did not consider the terms of the licences.

3326. When cross-examined on the legal differences between a SaaS contract and a hybrid contract, and challenged as to whether he was *"unduly dismissive of the legal differences between a SaaS contract and a hybrid one",* Mr Holgate (who had not read any of the underlying contracts) answered:

> *"No. My Lord, it's inevitable that accountants and lawyers see this issue of substance over form differently. Substance over form is very much an accounting principle that essentially overrides contractual and legal form of arrangements. It's not surprising that lawyers have difficulty with that…"*

3327. Consistently with this approach, Mr Holgate seemed to consider that he was entitled to ignore the fact that the licence agreements conferred legal rights, which would (by way of illustration) be enforceable in bankruptcy; and then, having dismissed their form, to assess their substance according to whether there was any difference between the services a customer received (a) before and (b) after the sale and purchase of the licence.

3328. His conclusion, without regard to any of the licence agreements, that because the service provided was essentially the same, the rights provided to the customer had no practical substance (or, as he put it, were *"trumped by the fact that the service continues as before"*), was the main plank of his case that recognition of revenue was wrong.

3329. Mr MacGregor agreed, of course, that the accounting principles require accountants to identify and assess the commercial, or *"genuine economic"* substance of the transaction over the form. However, he ascribed importance to the contractual option and rights conferred by the licence to *"take the storage system in-house to archive data itself at any time during the licence term."*

3330. Like Mr Holgate, Mr MacGregor wished to be satisfied, in light of the Claimants' claims to the contrary, that the legal option and rights conferred were not illusory. In that context, he recognised the need to be satisfied that the rights were capable of being exercised by the customer, and that from the customer's perspective, there was an independent value to owning a Digital Safe licence separate to the value of the data storage service provide by Autonomy: or, in other words, that the licence agreement was not all form and no substance. Mr MacGregor appeared to accept that if a

customer had in fact no intention of moving Digital Safe on premise or otherwise away from Autonomy then in that particular case the licence could not be considered to have separate value; but he appeared to suggest that then revenue recognition would be denied by reference to the individual case, and he became convoluted and indeed confused when pressed on whether that provided the basis of extrapolating any more generic test, sometimes suggesting that each individual case had to be assessed but then at other times suggesting that the matter had to be looked at generically. I think the following exchange is illustrative:

> *"Q. …You say in a number of places in your report that, when considering whether the licence to Digital Safe or eDiscovery software should be treated separately from the service and indeed whether it has value, what is most important to consider is the view of the customer, correct?*
>
> *A. Well, one looks at it from the perspective of the customer, ie what is the customer getting?*
>
> *Q. So what is most important is to consider it from the point of view of the customer, yes?*
>
> *A. In this respect, yes.*
>
> *Q. And it would follow…in relation to customers that did not consider the licence to be important or of value, indeed customers who didn't even want to download the licence, that you would not consider any revenue from those licences could be recognised…?*
>
> *A. Well, I think where – I don't think that's correct. Because if you have a whole series of licences being sold, you're looking at the position of customers generically in terms of what it is they're getting.*
>
> *Q. What if more customers take the view that they don't really want the software and they're only doing this for reducing the costs, in other words you say you're looking at it generically, what if the bulk of customers do not consider the licence to be important or of value? Do you extrapolate from that and say I shouldn't therefore recognise it for anyone?*
>
> *A. I suppose it depends on the negotiations and what the customers think they're getting when they're going through the negotiations and what their future intentions are…*
>
> *…*
>
> *If the situation is – and we clearly have the situation where some customers are taking this stuff on premise, other customers are having it at the Autonomy data centre, if there is a position between those customers and some of those customers are in the position I just said and others are not like that, then you probably do two different things.*
>
> *Q. Two different things, what in relation to customers who are like that you don't recognise the revenue?*

> A. *Possibly but I think you've got to – you know, looking at the generic, what is it that the customer is getting? Well, it's getting a licence and then it's getting some services afterwards. If when you actually drill down to that you're going to a particular customer who says, well, no, I was never interested in any of that, what I wanted was just – I was offered something cheaper, then that would be a different situation…*
>
> *…*
>
> *You've got to look at these things on a detailed [contract] by contract basis…"*

3331. Ultimately, it seemed to me that Mr MacGregor built in an implicit assumption that the bulk of customers did genuinely want to have at least the possibility of moving on premise, but accepted that a different accounting treatment might be necessary in the case of what he took to be, or persuaded himself was, the exception. He assumed, in other words, that the exemplar was a customer which had in mind the possibility of making use of the legal right.

3332. On that basis, and unlike Mr Holgate, Mr MacGregor's view that "*the Digital Safe licences were capable of being separated from the hosting services provided by Autonomy"* was based on his review of the evidence as to the nature of the legal rights and obligations conferred and imposed, and the use that was or could be made of the licence by exemplar customers, and on Deloitte's working papers. Mr MacGregor especially stressed that (a) the licence conferred ownership of the software; (b) even if none of the hosted customers had brought Digital Safe and their data on premise, their entitlement to do so was valuable and sufficient, and not illusory since it appeared that there was a number of customers which had started off and run Digital Safe on premise (albeit with the assistance of Autonomy).

3333. Neither expert provided me with what I regard as a settled and satisfactory test:

    (1) In my judgment, Mr Holgate went too far in suggesting that the "*accounting principle essentially overrides contractual and legal form of arrangements."* The accounting principle reflects that what must be determined is what in substance is the effect of the transaction; but that will be informed by its legal form. A valid legal contract confers enforceable legal rights and imposes enforceable obligations. As Mr MacGregor pointed out, Mr Holgate's arguments missed the point that under the licencing agreement part of the hybrid arrangements, the customer became (for the term of the licence) the owner of the software, which it could 'mine' using another hosting provider or at home, and had an option as to its use enforceable against Autonomy, including in the event of its bankruptcy.

    (2) But whilst I agree with Mr MacGregor that those contractual rights and obligations cannot be ignored, or said to be "*trumped*", the assessment of them for accounting purposes required is of their intended commercial effect on the relationship between the parties. The rights and obligations may be commercially illusory (as I have held them to have been in the impugned VAR transactions); or the rights and obligations, even if given full effect, do not conform with their overall description: the classic example is a lease dressed

as a licence. Here, if in reality the customer either had no intention or no practical prospect or capability of utilising and enjoying any benefit from the licence and the reality was that it entered the arrangement to secure the discount, that may determine what the true commercial effect was to be. The problem of the question of revenue recognition being so fact-specific and requiring individual assessment of the intentions and capabilities of the specific customer is a difficult one to deal with, and is liable to pose immense problems for any auditor.

3334. As to the factual assessment, and as regards (2) in paragraph 3324 above, Mr Holgate was required by his instructions to make eight far-reaching Assumptions of fact. His conclusions were necessarily entirely and exclusively by reference to the constructed universe to which he was confined by his instructions.

3335. The eight Assumptions which thus defined and confined Mr Holgate's task require more detailed assessment. They were stated as follows:

(1) Once a customer had purchased a licence to Digital Safe software, it received substantively the same service that it would have done had it contracted on a SaaS basis. The Digital Safe system (comprising the Digital Safe software-which performed the capture and index function-and the hardware) was at all times installed only at Autonomy's data centres.

(2) A Digital Safe licence was of no independent value to a hosted customer because a hosted customer could not customise, configure or implement the Digital Safe system (including the software) for use in its own premises as it could only be performed by Autonomy using Autonomy's proprietary knowledge and resources. The implementation process for use on a customer's own premises was complex and took several weeks minimum to complete. Unless and until that process was undertaken, it was incapable of operation. Provision of the necessary Autonomy customisation, configuration and implementation services for Digital Safe on a customer's premises did not generally form part of the contracts with hosted customers.[407]

(3) Digital Safe required ongoing managed services without which it would malfunction and ultimately stop working. In practice, only Autonomy could provide such services and the provision of them for use of Digital Safe on a customer's premises did not form part of the contracts with hosted customers.

(4) There were no user-manuals regarding either the implementation or ongoing support and management of Digital Safe, and no third parties (let alone customers) who could provide such services.

(5) Where hosted Digital Safe involved the sale of software other than Digital Safe software then such software could only be used, or was sold for use, with Digital Safe.

[407] RRAPoC §110.1 additional support did not form part of the licensing or hosting arrangements that Autonomy provided to the customer.

(6) Negotiations between Autonomy and existing hosted customers were largely instigated by Autonomy and not the customer. For both new and existing customers the hybrid model was proposed by Autonomy and negotiations largely centred on the customer's savings over the lifetime of the contract. Autonomy's primary purpose in hybrid deals was so as to generate upfront recognition of revenue through the licence.

(7) The intention and understanding of both Autonomy and the customer was that after the sale of the licence, the Digital Safe system and the customers' data would remain hosted, and all associated services would be performed by Autonomy at its data centres.

(8) None of the hosted customers brought the Digital Safe system (comprising the Digital Safe software and accompanying hardware) in house.

3336. Mr Holgate opined that these eight factors relating to the hybrid Digital Safe contracts compelled the conclusion that (to quote his report) *"the substance of the arrangement was…the services of capturing, indexing and archiving data"* and that the *"sale of a licence to Digital Safe had no commercial effect in practice and therefore no substance"*.

3337. In other words, Mr Holgate considered that, taking the assumptions together, there was, in substance, no sale of a good since on the basis of the assumptions collectively, the licence had no independent value separate from the data storage services: the sale was of services and had to be accounted for as such. On that basis, the approach taken of recognising revenue from the licence sale immediately at the point of sale was improper.

3338. On Mr Holgate's approach, there was no room for the application of the criteria prescribed by IAS18.14: that had no application to, what on that approach, was simply in what he termed *"overall substance"* a structured sale of services over time for which the relevant IAS 18 paragraphs are IAS18.20 (and 18.25 in the case of storage or other services).

3339. Furthermore, Mr Holgate did not look at the work Deloitte undertook concerning the hybrid licences. All he knew about the licences was what was said about them in the Assumptions he was given, all of which (in accordance with his instructions) he took to be the basis on which he was required to report.

3340. Mr Holgate had not been invited, and had not attempted, to try to assess what the effect of stripping out one or more of the assumptions might be: indeed, perhaps a little too easily, he accepted when cross-examined that it was *"all or nothing."* Nor did he assess other possibilities which might ensure the value to the customer of the licence (such as the possibility of purchasing implementation and monitoring services, or the possibility of the customer favouring a hybrid structure because it might enable it to allocate the cost against its capital budget, or obtain some tax advantage). He accepted that this was an important point; when asked to explain why, then, it was not mentioned in his reports he explained that this was because he had proceeded *"on the basis of the assumptions in front of us."*

3341. In his first report, Mr Holgate placed special reliance on Assumptions (2), (3) and (4) as numbered in paragraph 3335 above. All these related to the implementation and management of Digital Safe on premise, which he assumed, and the Claimants insisted, could not be achieved successfully without Autonomy's assistance on premise.

3342. He agreed when cross-examined in that connection that the fact (as it was put to him to be) that customers could buy implementation and monitoring services from Autonomy for a separate fee was important. He was a little evasive as to the effect of that in terms of Assumptions (2), (3) and (4). Instead, he moved swiftly on to say that even more important was the first part of the first Assumption (see paragraph 3335(1) above), that a hybrid customer received substantially the same service that it would have done had it continued to contract on a SaaS basis. He confirmed that he considered that point, and its elaboration in Assumptions (6), (7) and (8), to be the most important: in effect, a trump card (and see paragraph 3328 above). In his first report he explained why:

> *"The substance of the arrangements was (for new customers) and continued to be (for existing customers) the service of capturing, indexing and archiving data throughout the contract period. These services were unaffected by the sale of a licence to the customer. The licence fee, when properly considered, was therefore payment towards these services."*

3343. Consistently with that, Mr Holgate confirmed that the Claimants:

> *"do not take issue for the purpose of these proceedings with the accounting treatment for 'on premise' deals, i.e. where Digital Safe was implemented at the customer's own site."*

3344. Mr MacGregor rehearsed these assumptions in his supplemental report. In his conclusions, Mr MacGregor summarised in his own words in more compressed form his understanding of the assumptions that Mr Holgate had been instructed to make as being that (a) a Digital Safe licence was of no independent value to a customer (b) the software could not work on a customer's premises without Autonomy (and no one else's) ongoing support, (c) there were no user manuals, (d) the intention and understanding was that the customer data would be hosted by Autonomy and (e) all associated services would be performed by Autonomy at Autonomy's own data centres. He dealt, however, with all eight.

3345. Mr MacGregor accepted that the eight assumptions taken collectively, including the conclusory introductory sentence to the (second) "assumption" that the licence had *"no independent value to a hosted customer"*, led inexorably to the accounting treatment outcome or conclusion reached by Mr Holgate. However, noting that all the assumptions were matters of fact disputed by the Defendants, he made clear that, as regards Digital Safe, only the *"no independent value"* assumption was of itself conclusive.[408] "

[408] As regards e-Discovery he went further, stating in his Supplemental Report that *"if for example, it was possible for customers to perform the services themselves, contrary to just the single assumption that it was not practicable for a customer to perform the service itself, then [he] would not agree in the same way."*

3346. In Mr MacGregor's opinion, unless it was factually impossible (as distinct from expensive or difficult) to use the rights whether at that time or in the future, the licence would be a thing having some value independently and separately from the supply of services. He suggested that, at least, it would offer *"a protection element…which you get when you purchase something which isn't there when you're just renting something"*. He considered also that the eighth assumption impermissibly introduced hindsight to an accounting assessment.

3347. When questioned further whether he would accept that on the basis of the first, sixth, seventh and eighth assumptions (which in effect elaborated on the "trump" point Mr Holgate had described as of particular importance in reaching his conclusion) it would follow that the licence had no substance, he declined:

    (1) As to the first assumption (same service with or without and before or after sale and purchase of a licence) he opined that what was missed out, not even mentioned, was the fact that the licence conferred a proprietary right of significance;

    (2) He did not consider the sixth assumption (as to the licence purchase being instigated by Autonomy) *"matters one bit"*;

    (3) In his opinion, the seventh assumption (the intention and understanding that after the sale the hosting would continue) did not *"deal with the optionality that the customer has"*;

    (4) He considered the eighth assumption (none of the customers brought Digital Safe in house) to be both a *"hindsight point"* and one which missed the point that a number of customers had started with and retained Digital Safe on premise without undue difficulty.

3348. After that, Mr Rabinowitz returned to cross-examine Mr MacGregor further on the second, third and fourth assumptions, on which Mr Holgate had relied particularly in reaching the conclusion that the licence could not be used by a customer *"independently from the hosting and related service components of a Digital Safe arrangement"* nor was it *"feasible, from a commercial or technical perspective, for the licence to be sold as a separable good"*.

3349. Again, Mr MacGregor's opinion was that none of the factual assumptions compelled or even justified the conclusion that the licence had no independent value; and the conclusory first sentence in assumption (2) (which he considered, correctly) to be in reality a self-standing judgment, not a matter of fact, of itself took the matter no further for that very reason: all it signified was that *"if that's the assumption, then that's the conclusion you reach"*.

3350. In my judgment, Mr MacGregor was correct to this limited extent: the assumptions took no account of the basic legal fact that the licence gave contractual rights to the customer and imposed contractual obligations on Autonomy which introduced, potentially, a new and separate facet of the relationship between them beyond the provision of services.

3351. But none of this answered the real question in the case, on which Mr MacGregor floundered: how it was that those contractual rights could be said to have any real substance if (a) in most or many cases those rights were commercially illusory and/or never likely to be useful or used, and/or (b) the real intention of a hybrid customer was to continue using hosted services, without regard or recourse to the licence rights, with the sole real benefit of the licence being as a passport to lower data storage rates.

3352. Again and again, the only answer provided by Mr MacGregor and the Defendants was (to quote from a passage in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions which seems to me eloquently and neatly to summarise the nub of his argument and of Mr MacGregor's response to Mr Holgate) that Mr Holgate's and the Claimants' approach gave:

> *"negligible, if any, weight to the contractual rights and obligations of the parties. It sets at nought the option given to the customer, in law, to take the software in-house (at which point it would be in the same position as the on-site licensee) and discounts the fact that the buyer owns an asset which would, for example, be effective in any bankruptcy of Autonomy. There may also be other good commercial reasons why the buyer would wish to have those rights, such as an ability to allocate them against a capital budget in its own business.*
> …
>
> *As Mr MacGregor pointed out, Mr Holgate's emphasis on the practical position of the customer misses the point that under the hybrid agreement, it owns the software and that the customer has an option."*
>
> [Emphasis as in original]

3353. Dr Lynch also submitted that Mr Holgate's approach entirely ignored the fact that the licence conferred a bundle of legal rights; and it led to the proposition, which Dr Lynch labelled *"bizarre"* in his closing submissions, that when selling the licence to one customer (the on-site customer), Autonomy could recognise the revenue, but when selling the same asset to another customer (the hosted customer) Autonomy could not.

3354. Pausing there, in a sense the Defendants' position was, by implication at least, that if the hybrid hosting agreements were valid in accordance with their terms (which was not disputed), and the rights were capable of having some economic value for example in the event of the bankruptcy of Autonomy, or in the licensee's accounts, or (as Dr Lynch also posited, simply as an option which the licensees could flourish when the time came for renegotiation of hosting terms) that was definitive. Before considering whether (or to what extent) a factual exegesis is necessary or whether there is, as it were, such an overall or generic answer, I would summarise my view as to the relevant test or tests as follows:

(1) As already indicated, I consider the fact that the licence comprised legally enforceable contractual rights to be highly important but, in the application of accounting principles, far from definitive in the determination of the substance of the transaction.

(2) I agree also with the observation in the written closing submissions on behalf of Dr Lynch that Mr Holgate tended to talk about the use of the software, rather than the acquisition of it (or a right to it) by the customer, and that this led to the flawed assumption that if *"in practice"* the customer remained on Autonomy's hosting system it necessarily followed that the licence had no separate value.

(3) I do not think it is realistic to require of the company and its auditors to enquire of and determine the motives of an individual customer in purchasing a licence[409], or whether that customer actually intends and/or has or is likely to have the capability to utilise the rights it confers.

(4) However, I do not think it unrealistic, and I do think it necessary (as indeed must follow from my conclusion at (1) above) that an overall or generic assessment be made as to (a) whether across the cohort of customers there was ever any practical likelihood that the contractual rights would be utilised, (b) whether in reality the use of the licence ever played any substantial part in the promotion and negotiation of a hybrid deal or a further re-restructuring of its terms, and (c) whether there was ever any real expectation on the part of Autonomy or intention on the part of the customer, in any but the most exceptional case, to move the customer's software and data away from Autonomy's data centres onto its own premises (or even a third party provider's) during the currency of its hybrid hosting arrangement.

(5) If that assessment reveals no such practical likelihood; or no such usual intention; or that the difficulties and expense of moving and/or running Digital Safe on premise would in all but an exceptional case or cases be prohibitive or at least disproportionate to the likely benefit and/or that the process of promotion and negotiation of a licence or a restructuring placed no real focus on the benefit of moving on premise (as distinct from the financial benefit of reduced ongoing data storage charges or, a less obvious but potentially equally important financial advantage such as amortisation of the costs over the licence term) then the licence should be accounted for as in effect a prepayment, rather than a sale of goods.

3355. I turn therefore to that factual question whether the licence for which the licence fee was charged had any real substance and utility (whether actual or prospective) to the customer separate and apart from the hosting services which the customer also contracted to have and pay for as part of the 'hybrid' transaction looked at as a whole, and which in fact all customers continued with after acquiring a hybrid hosting licence.

The practicalities of (a) installation and (b) monitoring

3356. The evidence in this regard was very detailed. In my judgment, it established that:

[409] Which Ms Gustafsson emphasised she did not in any event regard as relevant. In cross-examination she told me: *"…their motivation for undertaking that transaction is irrelevant to me as an accountant when looking at that deal…Their motivation was not part of an accounting standard that would have changed the accounting treatment".*

(1) Digital Safe was designed to be primarily a hosted solution, and the majority of Autonomy's Digital Safe customers were hosted (as Mr Yan put it, *"located at an Autonomy data center and managed by Autonomy personnel")*.

(2) On-premise installation and implementation was not impossible. Digital Safe was available and actively offered as an on-premise solution. However, it involved considerable infrastructure costs. There were *"not many"* (to quote Mr Yan) existing hosted customers who moved Digital Safe on-premise. The Claimants acknowledged that some 17 customers were said to have had Digital Safe on-premise.

(3) Most Digital Safe customers were banks and large financial institutions with considerable resources, often running (and having employees with suitable training and experience to run) complex IT systems. Smaller entities would be unlikely to want or need to run the full Digital Safe solution; Arcpliance, a simpler product with a more limited capacity known among Autonomy's software developers as "Safe in a Box", could possibly provide a more suitable solution as it was simpler and much more easily installed, implemented and managed, though for smaller customers other simpler alternatives were available such as CAMM.

(4) Installation, configuration and customisation or implementation of Digital Safe on-premise were complex tasks, almost inevitably requiring Autonomy's assistance. The evidence (which I accept) was that no customer ever carried out this process by itself successfully (or at all).

(5) The complexity and duration of the implementation process for an on premise Digital Safe established from inception (and thus not involving the further complexities of data segregation and "lift and shift" involved in a move from an existing hosted service) depended on the size and resources of the customer, its data requirements and its particular needs. A minimum of at least three weeks would have been required: and Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that in many cases it would have taken *"at least months."*

(6) Autonomy never encouraged on-premise deployment of Digital Safe without Autonomy managed services. The Defendants' reliance on the fact that Autonomy produced instruction manuals as signifying encouragement to move on-premise was mistaken: and I accept that such manuals as were produced were far from being sufficiently detailed to enable a customer to do without managed services.

(7) Some customers that moved Digital Safe on-premise initially did not want ongoing services (which were usually provided by remote access through a VPN link) because they did not want anyone to have access to or visibility of their data (Apple, Axa and BNP Paribas were examples). Not all customers initially opted for full management services. However, after initial difficulties all Digital Safe customers who were sold a system without managed services (except Apple which never completed implementation) resorted to Autonomy to provide management services, or moved into another less complex solution (such as Arcpliance, and latterly, a new umbrella product called Autonomy

Consolidated Archive or ACA, as in the case of Rand and a company called Air Liquide). Autonomy encouraged this. Dr Lynch's suggestion that Digital Safe could be managed without assistance was not borne out by their experience; it was (as described by Mr Young in an email to Dr Lynch dated 16 April 2010) *"a complicated beast with a lot of delicate moving parts"*.

(8) In some cases, customers chose to instal Digital Safe from inception in a third party data centre. For example, ManuLife had its Digital Safe on-premise in an IBM or IBM-controlled data centre in Canada because Canadian law required data to be hosted within its jurisdiction and Autonomy had no data centre there at the time.

(9) A customer with a licence also had the option to keep its existing data in a data centre hosted by Autonomy, whilst using that licence to have any new data on-site or at a third-party data centre: and that was a feasible and practicable alternative to full migration (which, for example, was adopted by Morgan Stanley which used hosted services for most of its Digital Safe data but had an on-premise Digital Safe in Switzerland for Swiss secrecy law reasons).

(10) Migration of hosted data on premise was not completely impossible, at least if the migration was to another Digital Safe (or as Mr Yan put it more technically, *"if the solution source and the solution destination were Digital Safe"*). However, the process was, as described by Mr Yan, *"laborious"*, time-consuming and expensive. The only example in the evidence of a company which initially had its data stored under a hosting contract with Autonomy but which, after purchasing a licence, successfully migrated its data and *"lifted and shifted"* its hardware from Autonomy's data centres on to its own premises was Citibank.[410] (In fact, there is no evidence that Citibank ever purchased a hybrid deal: it appears that Citibank's transition was agreed in December 2007, pre-dating the adoption of the hybrid model in mid-2008). That was, it seems, the exception that proved the rule. Citigroup's move on-premise was very complex (involving over 2 petabytes), and took about a year, even with Autonomy's help. The actual costs of the migration of data and any *"lift and shift"* were not explored in detail. It seems likely they were a very considerable disincentive for others contemplating the same thing. Mr Yan was cross-examined as to the practical difficulties of data migration. He told me that some 30 people were involved and that though he did not have the exact figures, it was:

> *"safe to say that it would have costed them a lot of money, a lot of materials and lot of staff and certainly a lot more time…"*

(11) During the period of a transition from hosted to on-premise a customer would still need to adhere to any applicable regulations on data storage: this was put forward by the Claimants as another reason why a move was impractical. But Dr Lynch explained, and I accept, that during the transition period the obvious

[410] Mr Yan explained that *"lift and shift"* involved powering down the hosted Safe, loading it up onto trucks for transportation, reassembling it at the customer site, and re-powering it up. As Digital Safe was compatible with most hardware, installing new hardware and programming Digital Safe onto it was likely to be the easier option.

solution would have been (at least in theory) for the customer to carry on its hosted service arrangements until its on-premise Digital Safe was built.

(12) Schedule 6DS licence contracts did not include any provision for Autonomy to provide managed services if a customer decided to move its archive on premise. The Claimants initially suggested that the requirement for Autonomy's assistance rendered the process unviable in the absence of any contractual provision for such assistance in the licence. That was an exaggeration. There was no impediment to Autonomy pricing and charging separately for its assistance and managed services, and that is indeed how customers (such as Merck) which did not initially contract for managed service but did subsequently require it, were charged. Autonomy's charges for such services, whether as part of the original purchase price or as a separate and subsequent addition, were modest. Thus, for example, BNP Paribas paid $80,000 per annum for remote monitoring and administration services (though this was in addition to $160,000 per annum for support and maintenance); Manulife paid $123,500 for implementation at its third-party on-premise centre and $14,583.33 per month for the entire suite of managed services; and AXA paid $60,000 for implementation.

(13) There was nothing to suggest that the same options would not have been available where Digital Safe had been moved on-premise from a hosted environment. However, Mr Goodfellow felt sure, when cross-examined, that *"Autonomy would have been willing to sell them those services as an additional service from Autonomy"*. Citibank's purchase of maintenance and monitoring services when it bought a licence demonstrates, as I find, that they were available. It appears from the lack of any evidence to the contrary, Mr Yan's evidence in cross-examination, and the inherent likelihood, that such services would have been provided by Autonomy at fair value and without differentiation according to whether the customer had always had Digital Safe on-premise or had moved on-premise. In all cases, according to Mr Goodfellow, monitoring and management charges, like implementation charges, were historically comparatively small.

(14) In all cases, however, the customer was dependent on Autonomy. No VAR or third party provider was in a position, either legally (since only Autonomy had the requisite proprietary rights) or practically (since none was trained or had experience on Digital Safe) to provide the assistance that any on-site Digital Safe customer would inevitably and routinely require.

3357. As it seems to me this evidence also confirms, and I find, that:

(1) Although (as was not disputed) Digital Safe was capable of being and was operated on premise, it realistically only ever was so by large institutions, multinational companies or large organisations with quasi-governmental roles such as the SFO and VA Vaco with commensurate resources.[411]

---

[411] Thus, only one of the 17 on-premise Digital Safe users identified by the Defendants was not either a financial institution (BNP Paribas, AXA, Manufacturers Life, Morgan Stanley, UBS) or a large multinational

(2) Even the largest institutions with considerable resources either never attempted, or having attempted, found it impossible[412], to instal and/or manage Digital Safe without Autonomy's assistance and for example, all on-premise customers found they needed to establish VPN access for Autonomy to monitor and manage the system and provide the near constant support required for Digital Safe.

(3) In short, it was not a practical proposition to implement or keep Digital Safe going without considerable and consistent support from Autonomy. I accept the Claimants' submission and find that a customer who had bought a licence had no real chance of implementing and thereafter using the Digital Safe on a standalone basis, because of its intrinsic complexity, the lack of customer-facing manuals, and the lack of third parties in a position to assist them.

The manner in which hybrid deals were sold

3358. The Claimants also relied on the pattern of Autonomy's approaches to existing hosted customers and the subsequent negotiations if and when they ensued as demonstrating that (a) Autonomy presented the hybrid model licence simply as a means to obtain the data storage savings it offered, and never expected any hybrid customer actually to exercise its contractual rights or "option" and (b) very rarely, if ever, did any customer manifest any intention of using the licence independently of its hosting arrangements with Autonomy.

3359. The Claimants took as an exemplar Autonomy's approach (through Mr Krakoski, a Digital Safe sales executive at Zantaz)[413] to Charles Schwab Corporation (a US multinational financial services company, "Charles Schwab"), and the latter's reaction and the ensuing course of negotiations. They illustrated these matters by reference to contemporaneous emails as follows:

(1) On 19 October 2009, Mr Krakoski emailed Mr Andy Uffelman (of Charles Schwab) encouraging a restructure:

> *"Great thing about the license structure for Schwab is long term it reduces storage [i.e. storage rates] dramatically… It will absolutely be imperative that we are both on the same page for making this happen in the quarter. Autonomy exec's are hyper-focused on quarterly results…"*

(2) The focus of Mr Krakoski's sales pitch was thus on the potential savings that Charles Schwab stood to make, not on the licence.

(3) Although at one point, Charles Schwab's legal group expressed "*…concerns with the licensing language*", the subsequent exchanges make clear that the real focus was not on the extent of the licence rights (in which there was no

[412] For example, Air Liquide (a large French multinational corporation) had to be moved to EAS/CAMM which were designed for on premise use because it was as a practical matter impossible to run Digital Safe unmanaged or by "self-service".

[413] Mr Krakoski had been slated as a witness for the Claimants, but he was withdrawn

apparent interest) but on the balance of the real underlying deal as between (a) what Charles Schwab would be prepared to pay for the licence and (b) what level of reduction or discount Autonomy would be prepared to accept in return on (i) storage rates (ii) maintenance and service charges.

(4) The true focus of the negotiation and Charles Schwab's lack of interest in the licence is plain from the contemporaneous documents. For example:

(1) On 18 November 2009 Mr Krakoski proposed revised terms for a licence fee of $3.8 million, in return for a very low management and services charge of *"M/S: 5% annually!"* with *"all services currently being provided"* and in addition a licence of both ControlPoint and a Digital Safe Connector, as well as an option to increase ControlPoint capacity *"in the form of a perpetual licence"*. Mr Krakoski calculated this resulted in 26% savings over the current method of charging, $2.8 million in savings over the term, reduced maintenance and services fees, as well as allowing Charles Schwab *"to leverage ControlPoint",* which he summarised as *"Overall increases savings and allows for more upside archival"*.

(2) On 7 December 2009, Mr Uffelman emailed Mr Krakoski saying that (a) Charles Schwab had *"no appetite"* for so large a licence fee; (b) but they would be prepared to pay $2.25 million; provided that (c) since they *"did not intend to take the software",* Autonomy agreed to the 5% maintenance fee and the same reduced storage rates continued as part of the arrangement.

(3) After the deal closed on 28 December 2009, Autonomy sent Charles Schwab a software delivery email letting it know that the licensed software was ready for download.

(4) When Charles Schwab received this email, Mr Uffelman contacted Mr Krakoski saying:

> "*Jim, let's talk about what this means. <u>We don't want to download the software</u>, nor do we want the risk of any of our technical partners doing so in error. What controls can we have in place to ensure this doesn't happen?*" [414]

(5) Eventually, Charles Schwab agreed to restructure its arrangement and to contract on the hybrid model. But, as the Claimants contended, it appears clear from the email exchanges that the reason Charles Schwab agreed to the new model was simply because it made considerable savings; it had no interest at all in owning the licence or moving on-premise.[415]

---

[414] Emphasis added.

[415] In his first witness statement, Dr Lynch suggested that Charles Schwab ran Digital Safe on premise. This was not so: Charles Schwab was always a hosted Digital Safe customer, as Mr Avila confirmed in cross-examination, and as also appeared from an internal Autonomy email from Mr Rizwan Khan of 15 September 2011

3360. More generally, it does not appear that any of the hybrid Digital Safe customers were expected by Autonomy or themselves intended even to download the licensed software. The Claimants relied in support of this on the evidence of Mr Avila who had noted in an email to Autonomy's Mr Mohit Mutreja in relation to a hybrid e-Discovery deal (subject headed *"Papering JPMC"*):

> *"since we are selling a license, we will have to deliver [it to the customer] – even if we host it. Similar in concept to deals where we sell the DS software but host it in any case. The customer is never expected to install it themselves.*"

3361. When Mr Avila was shown this document in cross-examination, he initially tried to pass it off as an "*exaggeration*", but ultimately he accepted that it was fundamentally correct:

> *"Q. ... That was true, in cases where Autonomy sold Digital Safe licences to customers, it was true that the customer was never expected to install the software themselves, yes?*
>
> *A. That was perhaps an exaggeration on my part, but I think we all assumed that in any hosted deal where there was a licence component, it was unlikely that the customer would go off and try to install it themselves while they had the service being hosted for them.*
>
> *Q. You didn't expect them to do that?*
>
> *A. Right.*
>
> *Q. And so far as you know, no customer did go and install Digital Safe software themselves?*
>
> *A. Or any hosted licence software as far as I know."*

3362. The Claimants gave other examples from which this appears to have been a widespread understanding amongst Autonomy staff at the time. Thus:

(1) In the context of a Schedule 6 transaction in Q2 2009 during which Morgan Stanley purchased a licence to Digital Safe Universal Access, Mr Goodfellow sent an email to Mr Wang and Mr Loren Wheale (an Autonomy technician) asking them to "*build ... a package we can put on Automater for delivery to MS*". Mr Wheale asked Mr Wang what the point of the exercise was, with Mr Wang explaining in reply: "*Revenue recognition, we need to ship something to Morgan. We shipped them Digital Safe software before even though they probably won't do anything with it*".[416] The Claimants noted that Mr Wang was not challenged on this evidence.

(2) In the context of another Schedule 6 transaction with Energy Solutions LLC in Q1 2010, Ms Cynthia Watkins noted that the deal was "*hosted but we still need to ship the software in order to recognize the license*". The Claimants'

[416] As Mr Wang explained, he was referring to a Schedule 6 transaction with Morgan Stanley in Q2 2008.

point was that this suggested that shipment was irrelevant to the customer, and only needed for Autonomy's own purpose of revenue recognition.

3363. Of course, these are simply examples; but the fact that, in the Relevant Period, not one hosted customer successfully used the hybrid licence to move on premise strongly supports the suggestion that the licence element was simply regarded on both sides of the transaction as something that would never be used by the licensee, except as the required fee to access the lowest data storage charges.

Defendants' reliance on Deloitte and Audit Committee

3364. A principal plank of the Defendants' defence, in this context as similarly (as has been seen) in others was that, whatever may now be the case, years later and with the potentially insidious overlay of hindsight, at the time they drew comfort from the approval of the accounting treatment of the hybrid hosting transactions throughout the Relevant Period by a well-trained and experienced finance department, and by respected auditors Deloitte, and also the Audit Committee headed (from 2010) by Mr Bloomer, himself a respected Chartered Accountant with a wealth of financial and commercial experience.

3365. The Defendants pointed out that Deloitte had access to a wide group of personnel at Autonomy and Zantaz to assist in their understanding of Digital Safe, and hosting and hybrid deals.[417] Deloitte also had access to their own technical expert, Mr Johnstone. The Audit Committee had its own fund of expertise.

3366. In summary, the Defendants' case was (in respect of both Digital Safe and also e-Discovery which I shall deal with later) that:

(1) Deloitte audited and the Audit Committee approved a considerable number of these deals over the course of the Relevant Period. They carefully scrutinised the hybrid model and its accounting treatment proposed by the finance department; and they considered it sound and approved it. In every audit, Deloitte concluded that the licence revenue was correctly recognised.

(2) More specifically, Deloitte understood the salient features of the hybrid deals and approved Autonomy's approach in:

(1) treating the sale of the software licence and the provision of hosting and related services as separately identifiable components of a single transaction;

[417] Both Zantaz and Autonomy made available a number of people, including from its technical staff, to assist Deloitte in its process of review and auditing. They included Mr Lucini, Mr Goodfellow and Mr Smolek (who were not suggested to have been in any way dishonest), as well as Ms Gustafsson (whom the Claimants depicted as having *"personal interests…closely aligned with the Defendants"* and as occasionally unreliable or implausible in her evidence but not dishonest) and Dr Menell and Mr Chamberlain (both of whom the Claimants did allege were implicated).

(2) accounting for the licence revenue upon sale to the customer and recognising revenue on that date and thus upfront; whilst

(3) accounting for hosting, support and maintenance and other services rateably over the period in which they were provided;

(4) following a "residual method" of valuing other services in order to determine the appropriate amount of revenue for the licence (which Mr Holgate also accepted was reasonable and normal).

(3) Deloitte reviewed the accounting to ensure it complied with the provisions of IAS 18. Mr Welham confirmed in his oral evidence that on the basis of the information provided to them Deloitte considered that the sale of a licence was a sale of goods, that IAS 18.14 fell therefore to be applied to that element, and that its criteria were satisfied.

3367. The Defendants submitted that they were entitled to and did rely on this as corroboration of the appropriateness of their approach; and Mr Rabinowitz accepted that if Deloitte understood the factual position and were not misled then:

> *"…it's very hard to say that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain should not have thought it was okay."*

3368. The question on that basis is whether the finance department were compromised, or Deloitte and the Audit Committee were misled, as to their assessment of the true nature of the hybrid arrangements and the expectations of the parties in respect of them. In particular, it is necessary to consider what they knew or were told as to the viability of installing and running Digital Safe and its software on premise without specialist assistance from Autonomy; and as to the practicality of a hosted customer moving on premise its data and software to which it was entitled under the terms of the licence.

3369. The Claimants' case was that the finance department was headed by, and ultimately its assessments reflected the views and requirements of, Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain; and that Deloitte, and in consequence the Audit Committee, were fundamentally misled. According to Mr Welham's witness statement, they were given to understand by Autonomy's core management that:

(1) There was no reason why hybrid model customers should not exercise their contractual right under the licence, just as Citigroup had done, to bring the Digital Safe system, including the software, onto their own premises, that this was a developing market trend[418], and that, at least in some cases, customers intended to do so in short order.

[418] According to Mr Welham, Deloitte was told in 2008 that there was a *"current trend in the market place"* of customers "*bringing services in house*". There was no relevant evidence of such a trend: whilst Deutsche Bank and Morgan Stanley did express an interest in (and Morgan Stanley did implement in Switzerland) on premise solutions in jurisdictions that imposed restrictions on data exports (such as Switzerland and Japan) that was a specific response to a specific difficulty and was exceptional. The real trend was towards the cloud, and in particular cloud-based hosting, which was a particular Autonomy strength and which made hosting cheaper and even more attractive.

(2) There was no reason why customers could not (a) instal the Digital Safe system, their data and the software, onto their own servers, either themselves or with the assistance of third party service providers and then (b) implement and use the Digital Safe system and software themselves or with the support of third parties, without the need for material input from Autonomy.

3370. According to Mr Welham's witness statement, Deloitte were not told, and did not understand, that customers were motivated by the substantial savings offered by Autonomy, rather than by a desire to own a licence to the Digital Safe software. Nor, according to Mr Welham, did Deloitte understand that the hybrid model was generally proposed by Autonomy to the customer, and that the negotiations with hybrid customers were mainly about price.

3371. In an echo of the assumptions which Mr Holgate was instructed to make, the Claimants also asked Mr Welham to make six assumptions of fact, which he confirmed were directly contrary to Deloitte's understanding at the time. This served to (a) emphasise how different Deloitte's understanding was from what was said by the Claimants to be the reality and (b) to enable Mr Welham to state his view as to Deloitte's likely approach had they been aware of that reality. Those six assumptions were in substance[419]:

(1) Hybrid customers received substantially the same service as SaaS customers, the only substantive difference being the payment structure.

(2) A Digital Safe system could only be customised, configured and implemented for use on premises by Autonomy as part of a complex and lengthy process using Autonomy's proprietary knowledge and resources unavailable to third parties: a Digital Safe licence was thus of no independent value to a hosted customer.

(3) The Digital Safe system required continuously available managed services, which only Autonomy (and no third party) could provide, to keep it going.

(4) Negotiations to restructure a hosting contract were largely instigated by Autonomy, and not the customer, and such negotiations largely centred on price and the amount that the customer would save over the lifetime of the contract.

(5) The intention and understanding of both Autonomy and the customers was that, after the licence sale, the customer's data would be hosted, and all associated services would be performed, by Autonomy at its data centres.

(6) None of the hosted customers referred to in Schedule 6 to the RRAPoC ever did bring a Digital Safe system (including the software) on premise.

3372. Mr Welham's expressed view was that:

(1) Each of these assumptions was contrary to Deloitte's understanding at the time, and would have been relevant to Deloitte's overall consideration of the

---

419 I have slightly altered their expression, but not materially so.

issue whether the licence was analogous to a product sale or should be treated as a prepayment, which was the nub of the decision about revenue recognition.

(2) The matters he was asked to assume suggested that there was no standalone value in the Digital Safe licence.

(3) The likely conclusion would have been against revenue recognition; further, Deloitte (and presumably also the Audit Committee whose understandings were based on Deloitte's reports to them) would have drawn serious adverse conclusions from management's provision of what, on that basis, would have been false or misleading information.

3373. Neither this forensic approach nor the responses it elicited was accepted by the Defendants. They depicted the Claimants as having *"used hindsight to construct an argument against revenue recognition which is contentious and highly technical (and indeed wrong)",* and stressed that *"the people who were operating diligently and in good faith at the time thought that the licences could be recognised as separate components and that the accounting was correct."* The Defendants sought to challenge the six assumptions and Mr Welham's evidence as to how Deloitte would have accounted for the hybrid deals on the basis of them.

3374. The Defendants were adamant that Deloitte had not been misled, and that the Claimants had overlooked the fact that Deloitte were involved in a detailed consideration of the hosting arrangements such that they cannot have approached the matter in such a simplistic way. They were supported in this by the following aspects of Mr Welham's evidence in cross-examination:

(1) Mr Welham accepted when cross-examined that Deloitte were aware that the expectation for many customers who had purchased a licence as part of a hybrid deal was that they *"might well"* not migrate but continue to remain with Autonomy and continue to enjoy essentially the same services as any hosted customer.

(2) Mr Welham also accepted that what mattered for accounting purposes was that the customer <u>could</u> take their licence elsewhere and not whether they <u>did</u> take their licence elsewhere (which did not quite address whether they ever <u>would</u> do so).

(3) Although the Claimants presented his evidence as having been that Deloitte were misled into thinking that there was a customer trend towards an on-premise solution, Mr Welham was more circumspect in his witness statement, claiming no more than he had *"derived"* an understanding from Autonomy management that *"consistent with the then current trend in the market, customers wanted to be able to archive their data in-house and to reduce the cost of storage"*. He also clarified when cross-examined that their understanding was that there was a move amongst customers to *"cloud services or hosted services in-house"* (which was not inaccurate).

(4) Mr Welham accepted that Deloitte had understood that running a data centre on the customer's own premises *"required specialist expertise"*, though he

reiterated that he did not think they had understood it would require *"very specialist implementation"*. He also accepted that a customer would always be able to buy separate implementation and support services from Autonomy: but he emphasised that Deloitte had understood that these might be purchased also from "*another provider"*.

(5) Further, he accepted that Deloitte knew that when Citi had taken Digital Safe in-house the *"lift and shift"* of its servers from Autonomy's data centres to its own had proved a serious undertaking, but had been achieved; and they took from this also that other customers would have the ability to do the same if they chose.

(6) Mr Welham confirmed also that if it was assumed that customers could migrate their data to their own data centre or a third-party data centre with specialist assistance separately charged, that could impact on the question whether the licence had standalone value and possibly lead to a conclusion *"the other way"* (that is, that it did have standalone value).

(7) Similarly, Mr Welham confirmed that Deloitte understood that Digital Safe would be likely to need monitoring and management by specialists, and as long as the services were provided to the customer at fair value that would not tell against revenue recognition and indeed would tend to support the licence having separate value.

(8) He accepted that it really did not matter whether it was Autonomy which approached the customer to initiate negotiations about restructuring, or *vice-versa.* What mattered was the final contract which they agreed. However, Mr Welham suggested that he considered the issue as to who had initiated the contract had influenced Deloitte's *"slightly different"* understanding as to whether there was *"a move to move cloud services or hosted services in-house"* though he again confirmed that in isolation the point did not impact revenue recognition.

(9) When asked about the fifth assumption he had been told to make (which mirrored Mr Holgate's seventh assumption), that the intention of both Autonomy and the customers was in fact that notwithstanding their acquisition of a licence entitling them to *"lift and shift"* they would stay put as hosted customers, he agreed that this was really a repeat of the first assumption; and it was likewise answered by the point, which Mr Welham had accepted (albeit with a barely audible but potentially important reservation *"to an extent, yes"*), that what mattered for accountancy revenue recognition purposes was the rights and obligations of the parties, and not whether they were in fact exercised (unless practically incapable of being so): he made clear, however, that what he meant by this was that what mattered was having *"the ability to do it."*

(10) Similarly, when asked whether, if it were assumed that a customer which chose to move Digital Safe on-premise could only obtain the maintenance and other services required in order to run the system from Autonomy, but also that Autonomy would have been willing to provide such

services at fair value, he intimated that then that too *"might well"* militate in favour of the accounting treatment adopted.[420]

3375. Mr Welham correctly cautioned, however, that he was not, in giving this evidence, intending either to verify or disprove these assumptions: they were prescribed assumptions, not verified assertions. Before turning to assess whether Deloitte were misled it is necessary to address the underlying questions of fact as to the viability of on premise Digital Safe and as to what truly were the objectives of the contracting parties in respectively agreeing to sell and purchase hybrid licences.

3376. As detailed in paragraph 3356 above, with one notable outlier, the witness evidence broadly confirmed that:

(1) Digital Safe was a highly sophisticated product (it may be remembered that Mr Young had described it in an email to Dr Lynch dated 16 April 2010 as *"a complicated beast with a lot of delicate moving parts"*), and it could not be moved on premise or managed and kept in working order there without continuous expert assistance. All efforts to make do without such assistance, and without a VPN connection, failed. That was so even in such cases as Merck (one the world's largest pharmaceutical companies), Citibank and AXA (both amongst the world's largest financial institutions): as the Claimants noted in their written closing submissions if those three companies did not have the technical expertise and resources to operate Digital Safe without Autonomy's managed services, it is difficult to imagine that any could. According to Mr Yan's unchallenged evidence, Autonomy even had to second an employee to Citibank's New Jersey offices to supervise the system.

(2) Mr Wang, Mr Yan and Mr Goodfellow all confirmed in their witness statement evidence that Digital Safe required near constant support, for which a VPN link on a dedicated network line was essential. Mr Avila was constrained to accept that he could not disagree.

(3) That was no criticism of the product: it was simply not designed or suitable for on premise deployment without such assistance. Mr Sullivan, as the CEO of Zantaz which had devised it, described it (see also paragraph 3284 above) as *"a massive product with a huge footprint"*, and the systems required to run it as being *"complex and proprietary"*. His evidence was that it *"was not designed to operate at a customers' premises, or without the Autonomy services necessary, first to implement it and thereafter to maintain it."* There was a raft of contemporaneous documentation to that effect, in which Dr Lynch's witness, Mr Avila, repeatedly expressed his agreement. Mr Young agreed entirely with Mr Robert Desroches[421] that it should not be put onsite at all except perhaps in *"extraordinary circumstances",* and then only with full monitoring and maintenance. Indeed, Mr Desroches considered it should not

[420] Mr Welham was notably reluctant to concede this, and prevaricated what effect this would have before ultimately all but conceding that it would support and not undermine the accounting treatment which Autonomy had adopted and Deloitte had approved.
[421] Who, according to Mr Yan, was in charge of Digital Safe operations at the time.

be offered at all: EAS or CAMM[422], or sometimes perhaps Arcpliance, should be offered instead.

(4) The option offered by a hybrid licence to move and run Digital Safe on premise was more theoretical than real: the logistical support required, even if put in place, was a clear disincentive against any move from a hosted solution.

(5) Further, assistance was only available from Autonomy. Mr Sullivan's evidence was that the relevant information to enable assistance was not provided to non-Autonomy personnel, and he was not aware of any VAR that could or did implement or maintain Digital Safe in the Relevant Period. Even Mr Martin, a witness for Dr Lynch who tended to be an enthusiastic advocate for him (though, to my mind, too enthusiastic to be a reliable one), appeared to accept that Autonomy had not trained partners like Capax Discovery and MicroTech to assist, and no other third party providers, who would not in any event be given the requisite proprietary evidence, were in a position to provide assistance either.

3377. The notable outlier was Dr Lynch. He was to some extent committed to confirming its viability because he accepted that he was involved in the decision to offer the hybrid hosting model and thought it a *"sensible business decision",* thought he emphasised he was *"not…involved in the execution of this strategy"*. If anything, he went further in seeking to support its viability and deny impracticability when cross-examined (after the evidence of Mr Wang and Mr Yan to the contrary). He told me:

(1) When asked to agree that Digital Safe was designed to be a hosted system, not an on-premise system, he replied *"not at all"*. He sought to recharacterize Mr Yan's evidence to the contrary as limited to the case of a *"very large Digital Safe"* with thousands of cells. That was more difficult but would only be likely to be required by large institutions with the resource to handle the most complex IT systems.

(2) In that context, he asserted that in fact *"Digital Safe was not particularly advanced"*. It was written in industry-standard language and protocol. There was *"no problem using Digital Safe unhosted."* He reasoned that it shared a code with Arcpliance and, he said, *"they both ran on premise"*.

(3) He accepted that there were no specific manuals to assist migration or management of Digital Safe. He did not agree this posed any problem; again he referred to Arcpliance as if it were much the same thing: *"Arcpliance is Digital Safe in a box and that had its manuals."*

(4) He contradicted the evidence of Mr Yan and Mr Goodfellow that only the most skilled staff at Autonomy dealt with Digital Safe pre-configuration and other similarly complex tasks: he told me that they *"just dealt with their little area"* and *"actually the Digital Safe group were actually not particularly highly skilled"*.

[422] Enterprise Archive Solution and CA Message Manager ("CAMM") were software solutions which could *readily* be installed onto a computer and easily managed.

(5) He sought also to contradict the evidence of his own witness, Mr Martin, that Autonomy did not train partners to assist with Digital Safe; he told me that Capax Discovery and MicroTech *"did for ACA*[423] *and may have done for Arcpliance as well"* and that since *"ACA is Digital Safe but under a different brand"* he *"would totally have believed Capax was capable of implementing Digital Safe for a customer."*

3378. Dr Lynch's expertise in the software field is undoubted; for a man who had devised IDOL, its adaptation for and incorporation into Digital Safe (which was a Zantaz product) no doubt appeared relatively simple. But the balance of the contemporaneous evidence seems to me to be very firmly against his rear guard attempt, alone, to depict Digital Safe as a common or garden variety bit of software which could be implemented and managed with ease. His efforts to confuse and equate Digital Safe with other products which could more easily be deployed on premise were fairly obvious, and discreditable. His suggestion that Digital Safe could be managed without assistance was not borne out by the experience of anyone involved. I have no real hesitation in rejecting his evidence in this regard.

3379. Furthermore, the regrettable inference which I make is that Dr Lynch devised this line to try to bolster both (a) the semblance of the licence offering a viable option and (b) Deloitte's approach and acceptance of that. That obviously is of relevance more generally, and more specifically see also paragraphs 3383 and 3384 below as to what he supposed Deloitte to understand. I next deal with my assessment whether Deloitte were misled.

3380. In my judgment:

(1) As his cross-examination confirmed, Mr Welham's witness statement over-egged the extent of Deloitte's misunderstanding;

(2) I do not accept that Deloitte understood Digital Safe to be *"standard software that customers were capable of installing onto their own servers themselves or with the assistance of third party service providers";* nor that Deloitte ever had any basis for an understanding that Digital Safe could be supported *"without the need for material input from Autonomy"* (as Mr Welham had rather extraordinarily claimed in his witness statement, from which he had to retreat in cross-examination).

(3) Similarly, I do not accept either that Deloitte, which also audited Citibank, did not appreciate that the process of bringing Digital Safe and related software and its data on premise had been complex and expensive for Citibank. By the same token, Deloitte knew that a move on premise, though expensive and difficult, was an option and could be achieved: and that therefore the licence did appear to grant some optionality.

(4) Deloitte also understood that notwithstanding that optionality, many customers might not exercise their rights under the licence, and would continue with Autonomy so as to benefit from the cheap hosting services for which they had also contracted.

[423] Autonomy Consolidated Archive.

(5) Nevertheless, cross-examination also confirmed that there were fundamental gaps in Deloitte's understanding. They were not provided with and did not have anything like a full understanding of what a move in-house would involve. Perhaps the most important was that they do not appear to have understood quite how much continuing and constant support was needed for Digital Safe, or quite how highly specialist was the support required, or that an on premise customer would in consequence be wholly dependent on Autonomy. In that regard, Mr Welham emphasised that Deloitte understood, and indeed Mr Miles in questioning him confirmed that he should assume, that implementation and support services could be provided by *"another provider"* (see also paragraph 3374(4) above). But the evidence was that no third party provider could assist: it was a proprietary product as well as being hugely complex and only Autonomy could assist. The fact that the evidence also was that Autonomy charged fair value did not undo the point that Deloitte had not understood that the optionality depended on continued and extensive co-operation from Autonomy.

(6) Further, and in consequence, Deloitte had not understood the degree of even the most sophisticated on-site customer's likely dependence on Autonomy, and the almost inevitable disincentive to any move on premise that this presented.

(7) In addition to the gaps in their understanding of the product and its viability in practical and commercial terms of its on premise use, Deloitte did not have a full or accurate understanding of the market. Mr Welham repeated (see paragraph 3374(8) above) that Deloitte had what he described as a *"slightly different"* understanding as to whether there was *"a move to move cloud services or hosted services in-house"*: Deloitte do seem to have been under the impression that the optionality which the licence was said to provide was a response to a perceived market desire for flexibility, rather than simply a restructuring of pricing. This clouded their view as to the true objectives of the contracting parties and whether any had any real expectation (on the part of Autonomy) or intention (on the part of the customer) that the optionality apparently granted should ever be exercised. That in turn encouraged a flawed perspective as to the separate utility and purpose of the licence.

(8) It was a noticeable feature of the cross-examination that, despite its thoroughness otherwise, Mr Welham was never asked whether Deloitte had any, and if so what, understanding of the negotiations leading to the transactions and/or of the objectives of the customers concerned. Although Mr Welham was cross-examined about whether the assumption he was asked to make that Autonomy had instigated the negotiations was significant (see above) he was not asked about the evidence linked to it which Mr Welham had given in his witness statement: he was not questioned about the linked assumption that the ensuing negotiations *"largely centred on price."* I infer that this was not explored because, as the Claimants illustrated by reference to the transaction with Charles Schwab described in paragraph 3359 above, that was indeed (often, perhaps usually) the only focus of negotiations.

(9) In short, Deloitte did not have a proper understanding of the product, or the viability of on premise deployment of Digital Safe, or the true objectives of the contracting parties, or, therefore, of the real purpose of the licence.

(10) With a fuller understanding, it is more likely than not that Deloitte would not have been persuaded that the licence had substantive stand-alone value, and would not have approved revenue recognition; and neither would the Audit Committee.

The Defendants' knowledge in relation to Digital Safe

3381. The question then is whether Autonomy's management, and more particularly, the Defendants, actively misled Deloitte, or alternatively knew that there were those fundamental gaps in Deloitte's understanding so that their audit opinion could not properly be relied on.

3382. Dr Lynch emphasised that the task of accounting for the hybrid deals was in the province of the finance department and Deloitte and he had not been involved in the audit process; but he insisted he had no reason to believe that they had been misled or had misunderstood the circumstances to which their accounting judgments were to be applied. He made clear that his understanding was that *"this is all seen completely transparently by Deloitte who go through it in great detail";* and that he had assumed that they had the information they required, that they were doing their job properly and that he could rely on their view and approval, and that of the Audit Committee.

3383. However, I take it from his own evidence that the understanding he asserted he had, and must be taken to have assumed that Deloitte would form or share, was that Digital Safe was easily implemented, managed and maintained. He would have assumed that that was the basis on which Deloitte provided their audit opinion; and on which the Audit Committee gave their approval. However, I have found that he knew that this presentation of Digital Safe as a straightforward, easily managed product was contrived: in fact, he knew it to be false. In such circumstances, he knew likewise that Deloitte were proceeding on a false basis; and in any event, he cannot have relied on their approval.

3384. Furthermore, he would have known, as an experienced CEO that the judgement as to the viability of the optionality said to be conferred by the hybrid licence depended on matters unlikely to be, and in fact not, in their experience or knowledge. The judgement was ultimately dependent on facts, not fine assessment of audit principles. It may be that Deloitte were naive; or led by the nose; it is unnecessary and inappropriate for me to say more than that Dr Lynch cannot legitimately maintain that he relied on their approval.

3385. Mr Hussain, a trained accountant, CFO and head of the finance department, had direct involvement in a number of the deals, including in reviewing the savings models[424]. Quite how many is uncertain. In her witness statement, Ms Gustafsson suggested that she could *"only remember [Mr Hussain] looking at the models once or twice."* In cross-examination she was taken to four such examples, and referred to three more;

[424] These were detailed spreadsheets produced by Autonomy's sales representatives/Finance team which were designed to illustrate to the customer the savings that could be achieved if they chose to contract on a hybrid, rather than a SaaS, basis.

and she revised her evidence to say that he would only have seen a *"single digit [percentage]"* of the *"hundreds of models"* she produced. But it was not the numbers that mattered: he saw quite enough for him to know what the purpose was and that the licences were sold simply on the basis of the savings they would yield to the customer and the revenue they would realise for Autonomy.

3386. This is clear also from one of his own contemporaneous emails (dated 23 December 2009) recording that he himself sold the hybrid model by reference to the savings that it would yield for customers, noting in relation to a deal with Morgan Stanley that the deal was "*purely financial and causes savings. It's quite simply sign and save*".

3387. Both his involvement and the objective was confirmed by other email exchanges urging Autonomy staff to complete hybrid deals and emphasising how important they were. The extent to which he expected to be involved is apparent from an email he sent when it emerged, in relation to a restructuring of a Digital Safe hosting deal with Pioneer Investments in Q3 2010 that there would be a lower licence fee than he had been expecting or been told about:

> *"on Pioneer we gave away licence value without my knowledge or approval. I was expecting $1.2m but now it's a lot lot less. Do not let that happen again*"[425]

In point of fact, this seems to have been rather unfair on the part of Mr Hussain, betraying perhaps a desperation for revenue in the quarter. Again illustrating Mr Hussain's close involvement, Mr Stephan and Mr Sullivan had kept him well informed and warned him of the particular difficulties in the transaction which Mr Stephan described to Mr Sullivan made *"recognising licence revenue upfront very problematic."*

3388. There can be no real doubt, in my judgment, that Mr Hussain was well aware that a Digital Safe hybrid hosting licence was a device to provide a basis for recognising revenue at the point of sale. In my judgment, he cannot legitimately assert that he relied on Deloitte in this respect either.

Conclusion as to accountancy treatment of hybrid hosting licence as separable

3389. In my judgment, the accounting treatment of revenue from the sale of hybrid hosting licences was improper.

3390. Customers agreed to purchase such licences and pay the considerable fee in exchange for deep discounted storage rates and service charges, and without any or any real intention of downloading software, moving their data, or otherwise exercising the rights conferred by such licences.

3391. Autonomy expected and customers who purchased such a licence (in every instance save one (Citi, whose transaction pre-dated the hybrid model) intended to continue as hosted customers. The economic and factual reality was that the licence fee was not paid as the purchase price for the acquisition of valuable rights but as the negotiated

425 Emphasis added.

prepayment for future services to be provided at discounted rates. It was not analogous to a sale of goods.

3392. The suggestion of its utility in giving customers an option to move their data and software was a pretence. The option was legally defined and no doubt enforceable: but what it enabled was, in all but theory or in such an exceptional case as to be unrepresentative, in practical terms unusable. The licence was a device to obtain accelerated recognition of revenue, for which the customer paid a fee but for which it was Autonomy which ultimately paid the price by so heavily discounting future revenue streams.

3393. Both Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain were aware that the licence was an accounting contrivance: both were aware of its purpose.

3394. The finance department were not independent; and Deloitte and the Audit Committee were misled.

3395. The Claimants have established their case.

IAS 18.14 (a) and (b)

3396. In light of that conclusion, and for two further reasons, I do not think it is necessary or appropriate for me to consider in this context the Claimants' argument, put forward in their written closing submissions (as they had in their written opening) that in relation to software licences sold as part of hybrid contracts, the condition of neither IAS 18.14(a) nor IAS 18.14(b) were met.

3397. One of the further reasons is that the Defendants correctly pointed out that this had not been pleaded: in the context of their case in respect of the Digital Safe licences (Schedule 6DS) the Claimants' pleaded case in the RRAPoC relied only on IAS 18.13 as the basis for their claim that recognition of revenue was improper. Especially in a case alleging fraud, it is imperative that the case sought to be advanced should properly be pleaded. In the context of the Digital Safe hybrid hosting arrangements, the Claimants should not be permitted to rely on IAS18.14 to upset revenue recognition.

3398. The second reason is that in the context of e-Discovery the Claimants did plead reliance on IAS 18.14 as a further basis for their contention that revenue recognition was improper in the context of the e-Discovery hosting arrangements. It is pleaded there as an alternative case. It seems to me that it only arises in that context, as in this, if it is necessary to deal with the alternative case. I return to that when addressing the e-Discovery position.

3399. It is to the e-Discovery aspect of the Claimants' hosting claim that I next turn.

(4) A detailed analysis of the e-Discovery claim

3400. Autonomy's e-Discovery offering provided customers with the software, and usually the services, necessary to collate, review and disclose material in the context of litigation.

3401. Autonomy's e-Discovery software included: (i) Introspect, which was used in connection with the processing and hosting of data, and enabled data to be searched and reviewed before being disclosed, and (ii) ECA[426], which allowed customers to limit the material to be uploaded to the review platform by identifying data falling within specific parameters.

3402. This e-Discovery software usually formed part of a hosted arrangement, where Autonomy used the software in its data centres in connection with its performance of ongoing e-Discovery services. These services were multiple and varied, ranging far beyond simply storing customer data to, amongst other things, ingestion, processing (and resolving data processing issues), data culling, analysis and producing reports, performing quality control checks, and production of documents in disclosure.[427]

3403. According to the unchallenged evidence of Mr Kalbag, Autonomy personnel were heavily involved in providing these services, which were not automatically performed by the software, but required action or intervention at each stage of the e-Discovery process. The combination and extent of these services was difficult to predict in advance, and differed from customer to customer.

3404. As with the hosted Digital Safe arrangements, prior to its acquisition by Autonomy Zantaz sold e-Discovery to hosted customers on a SaaS basis. Zantaz offered customers a menu of different services, including data ingestion, processing, storage and production, and charged customers a unit price for each of the various services provided. Zantaz accounted for these hosted arrangements as a service, recognising the revenue as the service was provided.

3405. Following Autonomy's acquisition of Zantaz, Autonomy structured and, occasionally, restructured, hosted e-Discovery arrangements so that customers purchased a licence to use the e-Discovery software as well as storage and other e-Discovery services. These hybrid arrangements were offered as an alternative to a SaaS basis, and offered the customer lower overall cost: the upfront fee for the licence being less than the saving achieved by reduced ongoing charges for related e-Discovery services.

3406. As in relation to the Schedule 6 Digital Safe transactions, the Claimants' overall case in relation to the seven Schedule 6 e-Discovery transactions was that the only real benefit from the customer's point of view was the heavy discount on storage and service charges thus obtained, and the only real purpose of the e-Discovery licences from Autonomy's point of view was the acceleration of revenue recognition to assist or enable it to meet revenue targets. The Claimants cited an email dated 20 June 2011 from Mr Mark Daoust (VP e-Discovery) to Mr David Wilner (who had just joined after the Iron Mountain acquisition) explaining the purpose of the licence:

> *"I would be sure to look at existing revenue for existing clients. If we are getting great rates, then I wouldn't try to convert to licence. I would only use on net new clients or new cases with existing clients.*

---

[426] Early Case Assessment: see paragraph 3290 above.

[427] In the *context* of e-Discovery, the term "hosting" should be understood to include not just storage services, but also related e-Discovery services.

> *For instance, we had a J&J case that was going approaching contract expiration so we converted them to license. However, if they had a long time before contract expiration we would have left them as is.*
>
> *Of course, if we need revenue for the quarter we may chose [sic] to sacrifice some recurring revenue for a license deal to hit our numbers."*

3407. The Claimants pointed out also that the conclusion that Autonomy was motivated by a desire to accelerate revenue recognition is reinforced by a consideration of the targets and generous commissions that Autonomy set for its sales representatives for concluding hybrid deals. Whereas SaaS deals attracted commission of around 2% to 6% of the revenue recognised during the first 12 months of the arrangement, hybrid deals, at least to begin with, attracted commission ranging from 5% to as much as 18% of the upfront licence fee. Unsurprisingly, this had a substantial effect on the behaviour of Autonomy's sales representatives. As Mr Bock explained in an email to Mr Hussain in March 2009 (which in point of fact related to a DS transaction, to which the same applied), he had "*negotiated with [Deutsche Bank] for months to structure [a] deal in a way that allowed us to front-load the revenue*", and therefore expected to be paid commission on the licence immediately, at the higher rate applicable to licence fee revenue.

3408. The seven e-Discovery transactions impugned by the Claimants were entered into with five customers and can briefly be summarised as follows:

(1) two of the transactions were with Johnson & Johnson (one in Q2 2009 granting for a fee of $1,446,104 a two-year licence for Introspect software, with user limitations, and (for a further $695,000) storage and eDiscovery services or a term of two years, the other in Q1 2011 granting for a single fee of $2,659,176 a two-year licence, again with user limitations, for Introspect software and storage and other eDiscovery services, together with support and maintenance);

(2) two were with BP (one in Q2 2010 granting for a fee of $13,534,000 a perpetual licence, with user limitations, to Introspect and ECA software together with a three-year application services term with a separate charge , the other in Q2 2010 granting for a fee of $1,350,000 a perpetual licence, limited to 200 named users and 10TB of customer data, for Introspect software including EDD (but with only limited functionality) together with separately charged application and support and maintenance services for a three-year service term);

(3) one was with Philip Morris International AG ("PMI") in Q4 2010 granting for a fee of $964,176 a three-year licence , with use and user limitations,for Introspect EDD, I6 and ECA software, together with separately charged hosting and support and maintenance services);

(4) one was with United States Postal Service ("USPS") in Q2 2011 granting for an upfront fee of $5,531,553 a two-year licence, with use and user limitations, for Introspect and ECA software and for a further spread fee, storage (hosted) eDiscovery services and support and maintenance;

(5) one was with JPMC in Q2 2011 granting for a fee of $3,237,600 a two and a half-year licence, with use and user limitations, for SLD software and (for a further deferred and spread fee) hosting services and support and maintenance.

3409. The Claimants' case on the Schedule 6 e-Discovery deals has two aspects:

(1) First, as with Digital Safe, they complained that the transactions in question were hosted deals structured as hybrid arrangements comprising (a) the sale of a licence to use the e-Discovery software and (b) the sale of storage and other e-Discovery services simply so that Autonomy could present the licence sale as a sale of goods justifying the application of IAS 18.14 and the recognition of revenue at the time of that sale, whilst recognising revenue from the sale of services rateably over the term of the arrangement. The purpose of this, according to the Claimants was to accelerate revenue recognition improperly. The claim was that the licence was not a separately identifiable component of the impugned transactions, and that it should have been treated as a prepayment for services, with the revenue being deferred and recognised rateably over the terms of the arrangements as in the case of other payments for services.

(2) Secondly, the Claimants claimed that no reliable fair value could be attributed to the e-Discovery software licence, and thus even if IAS 18.14 applied to the licence element separately, its criteria for revenue recognition (and sub-paragraphs 14(a) to (c) in particular) could not be satisfied. The Claimants contended that in approving Autonomy's determination that fair value could be attributed to the software licence, Deloitte were misled about and/or failed to understand certain facts about the provision of e-Discovery services.

Accounting principles

3410. As to (1) in the preceding paragraph, the relevant accounting principles were agreed to be broadly the same as applied in the context of the Digital Safe claim. In both contexts, the question is whether the value attributed to the licence should have been recognised upfront as revenue generated by the sale of goods, or whether it should have been treated as a prepayment for services and spread rateably over the term of the relevant contract.

3411. In determining the propriety of their accounting treatment, the most important difference between Digital Safe and e-Discovery transactions is that in the case of e-Discovery, it was not in dispute, and indeed one of six bespoke Assumptions[428] numbered (4) which Mr Holgate was instructed to make in relation to the substance of e-Discovery licences was, that the software was capable of operating independently of Autonomy.

[428] The Claimants instructed him to make 12 Assumptions in all in respect of the Claimants' case on eDiscovery. The first six (referred to above) related to the issue as to the substance of the licence and whether it was a separately identifiable component of the hosting arrangement (which they contended it was not); the other six (see later) related to the Claimants' argument that even if it was, the licence fee should still not have been recognised upfront, because none of IAS 18.14(a), (b) or (c) was satisfied.

3412. However, the Claimants maintained, and Mr Holgate was (as part of the same Assumption (4) referred to in the preceding sentence) instructed that:

> *"Generally, it would not have been practicable for the hosted customers to take the software and the data in-house to perform the services themselves."*

3413. The other Assumptions Mr Holgate was instructed to make in respect of the question whether the e-Discovery licences had any real substance mirrored those in respect of the same question in respect of the Digital Safe transactions. Adopting the same numbering as in Mr Holgate's report, they were as follows:

(1) *"Autonomy performed a variety of services as part of its hosted e-Discovery offering, many of which (e.g. performing quality control checks, resolution of data imaging/ processing issues, e.g. from password protected, encrypted or corrupted documents, data culling, batching, report production, format conversion and load file creation) were not performed automatically by the software, but rather required action or intervention by Autonomy personnel. This process was akin to a production line requiring a significant level of involvement from Autonomy staff at each stage of the e-Discovery process."*

(2) *"With the exception of the deals with BP, the term of each of the hosted e-Discovery licences was relatively short (two to three years) and Autonomy was contracted to provide services for the duration of the term. BP had a perpetual licence with a limited capacity and Autonomy was contracted to provide services for an initial term of three years. During the initial three year period BP was to pay a monthly Application Service Fee of $4/ GB/ month, following which the Application Service Fee increased to $10/ GB/ month."*

(3) *"Each hosted e-Discovery customer received substantially the same service regardless of whether it had acquired a licence, i.e. the same service as a customer who contracted on a SaaS basis; only the legal/payment structure varied. Existing hosted customers who had originally contracted on a SaaS basis received substantially the same service as they had previously."*

(4) As summarised or quoted in paragraphs 3411 and 3412 above, but also adding:

> *"Unlike the Digital Safe software, the e-Discovery software was capable of being used independently of an Autonomy hosted arrangement, but was either sold as standalone software (which the customer would use itself, without Autonomy providing e-Discovery services) or as part of a hosted arrangement. If a hosted customer decided to take the e-Discovery software on premise during the term of the licence, Autonomy would not have provided the services that the customer expected to receive and for which it had effectively prepaid through payment of the upfront licence fee."*

(5) *"The intention and understanding of both Autonomy and the customers was that the software and data would be hosted and maintained by Autonomy in*

its data centres, and the associated e-Discovery services would be performed by Autonomy, for at least the contractually agreed period. This is what happened in practice."

(6) *"The negotiations between Autonomy and the customers were focused on price. Autonomy typically introduced the option of an upfront licence fee and highlighted the significant discounts it offered the customer as compared to the price on a SaaS basis. From the perspective of the customers, the transactions involved the purchase of hosted e-Discovery services with an upfront prepayment in the form of a licence fee. Autonomy's primary purpose in structuring the deals to include a licence was the upfront recognition of revenue."*

3414. On the basis of this set of six Assumptions, Mr Holgate considered that (a) *"it was not generally practicable for customers to take the software and their data in-house to perform the e-Discovery services themselves"*; (b) in any event*, "it did not happen in practice in the transactions under consideration"*; and so (c)*"there was no substance to the grant of the licence".*

3415. He concluded that:

> *"the revenue recognition criteria should therefore be applied to the transaction as a whole in order to reflect the combined substance of the two elements of the transaction taken together, which was….the provision of eDiscovery services over a period of time.*"

3416. Mr Holgate considered Assumptions (3) and (5) as set out in paragraph 3413 above to be the most important in reaching his conclusion that the e-Discovery hybrid hosting licences had no real substance.

3417. As to the second aspect of the Claimants e-Discovery case (see (2) in paragraph 3409 above), Mr Holgate considered that even if he was wrong about the e-Discovery licences lacking substance, on the basis of the same Assumptions, none of the first three criteria in IAS 18.14 was met.

3418. This was because (a) it was impracticable for hosted customers to take the software and data in-house and so in substance they never had transferred to them the risks and rewards of ownership, (b) for the same reason, Autonomy and not the customers retained managerial involvement and control usually associated with ownership, and (c) the prices charged for the e-Discovery software and related services were so variable, and there was such a lack of what he called *"sufficiently disaggregated and relevant management information relating to costs",* that it was not possible to measure reliably the revenue attributable to the software licence, whether by the "residual method" (explained later) or at all.

3419. Mr MacGregor considered, as to the first aspect of the Claimants' e-Discovery case (see (1) in paragraph 3409 above), that on the basis of the specific Assumptions dictated to Mr Holgate, the conclusions he reached dictated the result (as had his

assumptions in respect of the Claimants' Digital Safe case). He stated: *"there is again not another credible way to analyse the Schedule 6 transactions for the sale of e-Discovery licences."* In other words, as with the Digital Safe case, Mr MacGregor accepted that if all the Assumptions which Mr Holgate was instructed to make were established on the evidence as matters of fact, the e-Discovery licences lacked substance and the accounting treatment adopted was incorrect and improper.

3420. However, he did not accept that it sufficed for the Claimants to establish in fact the Assumptions that Mr Holgate identified as appearing to him to be the most important. He declined to accept Mr Holgate's view that Assumptions (3) and (5) were the most important to the analysis and might of themselves invalidate the accounting treatment adopted by Autonomy. He maintained that in his view *"all of them together are part of his overall picture"* and that they all stood or fell together; he said that if even just one of the Assumptions was incorrect (he instanced Assumption (4) in particular: if it was practicable for a customer to perform the service itself, contrary to Assumption (4)) then he *"would not agree in the same way."* When cross-examined he clarified that by this he meant that *"I think if you just vary that one, then you will be taking into account revenue at the point of sale."*

3421. Overall, his refrain was that the licence did have separate substance because:

> *"…there is a right there, you own the software, it's your data on it and that of itself has value."*

3422. As to the second aspect of this part of the case (see (2) in paragraph 3409 above), Mr MacGregor's view, contrary to that of Mr Holgate, was that the rights conferred by the licence were plainly transferred to, and enjoyed, managed and controlled by the customer (so that (a) and (b) of IAS 18.14 were satisfied); and that as to IAS 18.14(c), it appeared to be confirmed by Deloitte's review that it had been possible and practicable to capture the costs of the hosting portion of the transaction (often using standard rates for data storage) and on that basis there was no reason for not establishing the fair value of the licence calculated based on the residual value of the complete contract. Mr MacGregor also emphasised that *"the assessment of fair value does not require precision and IFRS confirms this"*. He found it:

> *"difficult to believe that the range of possible costs for these services was so wide that a reasonable estimate of the cost, and therefore of the value (on a cost plus margin basis), could not be determined or that Autonomy had no idea of the costs associated with the various parts of the business."*

Did the EDD licences have or lack substance?

3423. Although the experts appeared at first blush to be divided by this battery of assumptions, there was no real dispute as to the factual position as regards Assumptions (1), (2), (3) and (5). It seems to me that Mr MacGregor's focus on Assumption (4) reflected this; and that the real question to be decided in relation to the Claimants' e-Discovery claim is whether the Claimants showed, on the evidence, and as a matter of fact, that even accepting that, unlike the Digital Safe software, the e-Discovery software was capable of being used independently of an Autonomy hosted arrangement, that was not something any hosted e-Discovery customer would ever in fact have intended to do. The Claimants maintained that this was so because once a

customer had elected for a hosted solution, if subsequently during the term of the licence a hosted customer decided to take the e-Discovery software on premise, Autonomy would not have provided the services that the customer expected to receive and for which it had effectively prepaid through payment of the upfront licence fee.

3424. The Claimants insisted that in such circumstances, the admitted right given to a hybrid e-Discovery customer to move on premise during the currency of a hosted e-Discovery arrangement was no more than theoretical and it was highly unlikely that any customer would ever actually exercise it. In reality, they contended, the licences simply offered financial advantages to both parties to the arrangement but otherwise were never expected or intended to alter in any way the hosting arrangements between the parties to such licences, or the use made of them. The Claimants especially noted in that regard that the term of the licence was usually coterminous with the term of the services, and/or the relevant agreement provided for Autonomy to host the licence, supporting their case that the customer had no desire to host the e-Discovery software and its data, or to perform the e-Discovery itself, and intended to rely on hosted services throughout the term.

3425. Furthermore, the Claimants contended that in each of those transactions:

(1) The hybrid e-Discovery deal was sold on the basis of the savings that the customer would make, and not on the basis of the rights a licence would confer. This was perhaps most clearly illustrated in Autonomy's detailed licence proposal for JPMC stating:

> *"Licence Deal: JPMC gets significant discount in exchange for revenue commitment and immediate payment"*

The discounts proposed were between 20% and 30% depending on the projected volumes of data, and were set out in a table of *"Proposed Discounts in exchange for License Commitments"*.

(2) What each of the customers was interested in purchasing and retaining was a hosted arrangement; and some of them demonstrated confusion (and in one case concern) as to why a software licence was being introduced into the arrangements. Thus, for example, PMI could not really understand, and therefore queried, the purpose of a licence when all it wanted was *"pure hosting"*; and USPS's comments on a draft hybrid e-Discovery arrangement circulated to it included that *"it is strongly suggested that [USPS] removes/deletes any license for which it has no interests/needs"*.

3426. As proof of the real expectations and intentions of the contracting parties, the Claimants relied also on the fact that in the case of the seven impugned e-Discovery transactions, none of the five hybrid e-Discovery customers involved did in fact operate the software independently of Autonomy.

3427. The Defendants, on the other hand, rejected the Claimants' suggestion that the licence was merely a mechanism for Autonomy to offer savings, and contended that the Claimants' case is flawed as a matter of accounting principle and baseless in fact. Autonomy marketed its e-Discovery offering on the basis that it was able to "*seamlessly provide both hosted/licensed products*" and this set it apart from its

competitors. It was accepted by Mr Kalbag that Autonomy faced competition from other e-Discovery offerings, some of which offered licences that permitted a customer to use the software on-site. Not only was on premise deployment of e-Discovery entirely possible: but offering the option of it was a commercially motivated response to other products in the market, attract new customers and keep existing hosted customers happy.

3428. The Defendants emphasised both the advertised and actual commercial practicability of on premise deployment, and of a move from a hosted to an on premise environment:

(1) Autonomy made e-Discovery software available to licensees because they legally owned the software, and it did so by putting it on Automater, as Mr Lucini accepted. It was available for customers to download it if they wished to bring it on site. Customers who did not own the licence did not have access to the software.

(2) Downloading of the material was straightforward and no different than for other licenced software products. The software was made available on Automater to customers in the usual way.

(3) The evidence also was that the cost of transitioning to on-premise was close to being, by comparison to the other costs, insignificant: for example, Mr Kalbag accepted that in the case of USPS the estimate was $30,000.

3429. The Defendants also contended that, contrary to the Claimants' case, the evidence demonstrated that customers were interested in having the option of bringing the software on-site:

(1) The example the Defendants most relied on was BP which (as Dr Lynch correctly recalled) had been especially concerned about owning a licence, one of Autonomy's in-house lawyers (Ms Dolan) having noted following a meeting with BP, that:

> *"One commercial issue came up on Friday regarding their longer term plans. They will use the hosted software for their immediate need but they want to bring it in house. They do not want any limitations on the software. They want an unlimited BP license key and then they wanted to true up (number of instances, users, data amount, etc) after an agreed period."*

(2) Another client, USPS, far from indicating a wish not to have a licence, confirmed that they too were interested in the option of bringing e-Discovery on-site (which was not their immediate intention but which gave them flexibility to do so in due course). Thus, USPS requested pricing for four different e-Discovery options as part of its RFP[429] in September 2010, three of which involved USPS taking the software in-house. Two of the four options involved USPS starting out as a hosted customer, and then bringing the software in-house at a later date; and the option of bringing the software in-house continued to feature in discussions with USPS throughout much of the

429 Request for Proposal.

negotiations. Mr Kalbag confirmed that the option of taking the software in-house was never "*taken off the table*".

My assessment and conclusion

3430. It does seem clear, and I accept, that e-Discovery could be deployed on premise with considerably greater ease and far less expense than could Digital Safe, though (as I have found) it was not impossible to run Digital Safe on premise either. Although the evidence as to the particular point was sparse, it did not appear that e-Discovery needed the constant availability of Autonomy back-up and expertise that I have accepted Digital Safe did. Furthermore, it was not suggested by the Claimants that there were no third party providers with the ability to assist a customer to use and maintain e-Discovery in-house. Dr Lynch was adamant that use of e-Discovery in-house was common place (he told me in cross-examination that his *"understanding was that there were more on-premise e-Discovery implementations than those that were hosted"*).

3431. The real issue is whether a customer which had selected and entered into a hosted e-Discovery arrangement with Autonomy would ever have seriously wanted the option of moving on premise.

3432. Dr Lynch also maintained, though with less conviction, that moving e-Discovery software and data from a hosted Autonomy data centre on premise/in-house was not at all difficult or expensive:

> *"Q. …I suggest to you not a lot of the customers who were using eDiscovery hosted services could or wanted to take on the burden of performing the eDiscovery services themselves?*
>
> *A. I disagree. I don't know about people moving but, you know, without looking it up, my understand was there were more on-premise eDiscovery implementations than there were those that were hosted.*
>
> *Q. But the point I'm trying to make to you, Dr Lynch, is that where you have a hosted customer, they are unlikely to want to move to do themselves?*
>
> *A. I disagree. Unlike Digital Safe, where you could have very large amounts of data to be moved, it was relatively, then all these things are relative – relatively easy to set up an eDiscovery system, and so if a customer wanted to move, it actually wasn't very difficult at all. In fact you even had – it was even easier than you might think because you often had hybrid situations, and I don't mean that in terms of the deal, but the customer is processing their own eDiscovery system, and then they have overflow and they send it to a hosted eDiscovery system or vice-versa, so there really wasn't very much - it's a very different situation to Digital Safe.*
>
> *Q. The reality is that customers were interested in relation to eDiscovery as well in the savings offered on the hybrid deals, not on moving on premise, correct?*

> *A. No, I disagree with that completely. EDiscovery was a slightly different business model in that it was generally to deal with litigations. So if someone is getting sued and processed, so what would happen, for example, if they had a high volume of processing, so I think Morgan Stanley used to do this, so if they're in the middle of a big case, then they would like hosted stuff, but for the general run of the mill , they would be happy to have it run on premise, so it was basically about load balancing."*

3433. As I have outlined above, Dr Lynch offered two examples of customers who did want that flexibility and the legal rights conferred by the licence which secured it for them: BP and USPS. However, the evidence is far less clear than the Defendants suggested.

3434. As to USPS, although the Defendants relied on Mr Kalbag's evidence, it does not seem to me that it supported the proposition that USPS wanted to have and for that reason contracted for flexibility to move on premise during the currency of their hosting contract. Mr Kalbag, though tenaciously cross-examined, doggedly maintained the general thrust of his evidence that in the case of USPS (at least) their real requirement was for hosted services: although they had started off by exploring all options including on-premise software deployment (as was clear from the RFP), by the end they regarded the licence as something that Autonomy wanted more than they did, and they regarded the licence in reality simply as a sort of *"insurance policy"* affording them some *"price protections."*

3435. Mr Kalbag, who enhanced his credibility by acknowledging that his objective was to get as much commission as soon as possible[430] summarised his position as continuing to be, notwithstanding 40 pages of cross-examination on the point, that all USPS really wanted was to continue the hosting arrangements with some protection against price increases but never intended to move on premise. The protections could have been (and it seems in fact were) obtained by provisions within the hosting arrangement; and as Mr Kalbag continued to insist notwithstanding 40 pages of cross-examination on the point:

> *"…Yes, I think I've said this several times: … The licence was a mechanism to protect them from cost overruns and predictability of price. Once we gave them options that didn't require it, it was clear that bringing it in-house was not their preference or what they desired, it was just their way of protecting themselves from cost overruns. And if you look at the final licence that they signed, we inserted the licensing not because that was the best way to give them the licences [sic, but must have meant to say protections], it was because it would allow us to recognise the revenue upfront. So it was definitely an insertion from our part, it wasn't something they specifically said, that "Hey, while you're hosting it, give me licences at the same time.""*

3436. BP was an exceptional case at least in one particular and important respect: BP was the only one of the five customers identified above which negotiated for and agreed a

[430] Due to the terms of their compensation plans, sales representatives could make significantly more in commission by structuring new or restructuring existing hosting arrangements to include an upfront licence fee than they could from SaaS deals.

perpetual licence[431], suggesting that it did want to reserve some ability and right to move on premise after the end of the hosting services term. But as in the case of USPS there is nothing to suggest that BP ever intended to move on premise during the currency of the agreed hosting term. Mr Sullivan recorded in a contemporaneous email (dated 16 May 2010) to Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch (and others) that, in looking for a platform for the vast documentation in the well-known Horizon well oil-spill litigation, BP explained that they would "*not even think about trying to do this themselves*". It is clear from the context, in my view, that this signified that for the term of the hosting deal (three years) they wanted a hosted and not an on premise arrangement, and the issue for them at the time was to choose a suitable hosting provider (being concerned about their then provider's *"weaknesses including throughput rates, and ability to reuse content in multi matter cases"*).

3437. More generally, Dr Lynch's own witness, Mr Avila, confirmed that Autonomy did not expect customers to install the e-Discovery software whilst it was being hosted for them. As he had explained in an email to Mr Mutreja in June 2011 in response to a query whether in hosted e-Discovery contracts the software had to be uploaded on Automater:

> "*since we are selling a license, we will have to deliver [it to the customer] – even if we host it. Similar in concept to deals where we sell the DS software but host it in any case. The customer is never expected to install it themselves.*"

3438. None of the five e-Discovery customers in Schedule 6 did in fact ever bring the e-Discovery solution in-house during the term of the hosting transaction (or at all, so far as disclosed in the evidence before me).

3439. In my judgment:

(1) It is clear from the evidence that in the context of e-Discovery the licence was perceived by customers as something that Autonomy were keen, indeed anxious, to persuade them to agree, and which put them in a good position to negotiate sharply reduced storage and service rates.

(2) Some may have perceived the licence as also conferring protection against price rises; but there is no evidence that any placed any real value or practical utility on the option conferred under the licence to move on premise, at least during the hosting term which in all cases except BP was coterminous with the licence granted.

(3) Hybrid hosting was devised and deployed by Autonomy as the means of introducing a thing (technically, and in legal terminology, a chose in action) which could be sold apparently as something separate and apart from the storage and services which the customer really wanted and intended to use.

(4) The reality of the matter was that in most cases the licence had no real commercial purpose otherwise.

[431] The others negotiated licences coterminous with their hosting arrangements, usually 2 or 3 years.

(5) Certainly in those cases, the licence was thus not a separable part of the hosted arrangements. The sale of a licence was not analogous to a sale of goods. It should have been accounted for as a prepayment for services.

(6) I must admit to more uncertainty in the case of the perpetual licence granted to BP. When Deloitte themselves expressed some concern about the licence being in the nature of a prepayment, the fact of the licence being perpetual was certainly emphasised by Mr Hussain to Deloitte, as recorded in Deloitte's working paper. But even in that case, Mr Hussain was clear, in contemporaneous emails not apparently shown to Deloitte, that BP had no intention of moving on premise: when a question from Mr Tim Young of Autonomy asking whether that might be BP's aim was forwarded to him, he responded unequivocally *"Nope – this is all hosted"*. Further, it seems clear from that contemporaneous record that BP's objective was the usual one of securing the price reductions Autonomy was offering for licensed customers.

3440. In reaching my overall assessment I have been mindful, of course, that Deloitte took a different view: they accepted that the licence component was separate, and approved the way Autonomy did account for licence sales. I accept that Deloitte considered the arrangements in considerable detail and in doing so had access to Autonomy's finance department and its own internal technical expertise.

3441. However, it is clear to me that, whether because they were misled or because they overlooked the realities, Deloitte swallowed the line they were given that the *"key feature"* in every transaction was that the customer wanted to own, and by the licence acquired ownership, of the licence. I have concluded that, save possibly in the case of BP, the evidence simply does not bear out that this was any real part of the customer's objective; and even in the case of BP, it seems that Deloitte's doubts were assuaged by Mr Hussain telling them (as recorded in Deloitte's working papers) that:

> *"if BP thought that the licence fee was in any way paying for future services to be performed by Autonomy, then they would have requested deferred payment terms over the life of the agreement. Instead, they have paid the full amount upfront within several days of signing the agreement."*

3442. That disguised the point that what the payment obtained was the deeply discounted storage and service rates. It is not for me to determine whether Deloitte should have seen through this: the fact appears to be that they did not.

3443. In any event, I do not accept that Deloitte's approval was in fact relied on by the Defendants. For reasons that I elaborate later in addressing the issue of the Defendants' 'guilty knowledge' (see paragraphs 3449 and 3475 below) I have concluded that both the Defendants knew that the licence was a contrivance and that it was not properly accounted for, negating their pleas of reliance on Deloitte.

3444. I consider briefly later their approach to the more detailed tests prescribed by IAS 18 in assessing the e-Discovery hybrid hosting transactions and the question whether, even if the licence could be regarded as a separate component or element, it was

possible to ascribe that component *"fair value"* (which was another precondition for revenue recognition).

3445. As foreshadowed in the context of my discussion of the Digital Safe hybrid transactions in paragraphs 3396 to 3398 above, the Claimants submitted that even if the Schedule 6 e-Discovery transactions were in substance transactions with separable components, such that it was *prima facie* necessary to recognise the revenue from the licence fee upfront, the criteria in IAS 18.14 also needed to be satisfied before Autonomy could do so: and that IAS 18.14(a) to (c) were not met. As I have accepted their primary argument, this alternative is (on the view I have formed) redundant in this context as I found it to be in the context of the Digital Safe transactions.

3446. In paragraph 3398 above I indicated that in this context, in which it was expressly pleaded (it was not in the context of Digital Safe), I would consider further the basis for the Claimants' alternative reliance on IAS 18.14 as an alternative if it was appropriate.

3447. In the event, having concluded in both contexts that, in line with the principle that a transaction must be accounted for in accordance with its true substance, a conclusion that in commercial reality the licence had none except as a ticket to cheaper storage rates appears to mandate its treatment in that same way for the purpose of the specific accountancy standards. In that event it would be very odd if some different conclusion were reached by applying the specific provisions of IAS 18.14.

3448. On the other hand, if the hypothesis to be adopted is that the licence was genuinely a valuable thing apart and conferred real rights the problem remains, albeit in a slightly different form: the problem being how the tests prescribed by IAS 18.14 are to be applied where the rights, even if real, cannot as a practical matter be exercised and there is in truth no wish or intention to exercise them. In short, I have concluded that ultimately this leads to a *cul de sac* because whatever the analysis, the question always has to be asked what the substance of the "real rights" was: and in substantive terms there was none. Accordingly I do not think it useful to consider further the alternative case.

(5) Defendants' knowledge

3449. Lastly in this section, I return to the case on accountancy impropriety, and the second limb of the case, as to whether the Defendants had "guilty knowledge". I do so in relation to both the Digital Safe and the e-Discovery Schedule 6 claims.

Mr Hussain's knowledge of true purpose of the licences and accounting impropriety

3450. In my judgment, the evidence confirmed, as was inherently probable, that Mr Hussain, Autonomy's CFO and a chartered accountant, was involved in a number of hybrid hosting arrangements (both Digital Safe and e-Discovery) and aware of the true purpose and objective of the licence as a device to enable the acceleration of revenue and its improper early recognition.

3451. With Dr Lynch (as to whose involvement and knowledge see below), he was responsible for developing and overseeing the implementation of the strategy of selling software licences as part of hosted arrangements, knowing that the licence was a pretext for accelerating revenue recognition. (That is particularly clear from their

involvement in the Schedule 12D re-restructuring transactions as to which see further below.)

3452. The evidence showed that Mr Hussain was often the most senior direct point of contact between Autonomy and Deloitte during the process of explaining to Deloitte the nature of the individual hosting transactions. There was never any question that he had direct engagement in and knowledge of the basis of the hybrid hosting programme.

3453. I have concluded that Mr Hussain was aware of:

(1) Autonomy's true motivations for selling hybrid deals;

(2) The nature of the negotiations with hybrid customers;

(3) The fact that there was no change in the substance of the services provided to customers before and after the relevant transactions;

(4) The fact that Digital Safe was as a practical matter incapable of being used on-premise without Autonomy's assistance in implementation and the ongoing operation of the system;

(5) The fact that (save the transactions with BP) each of the Schedule 6 e-Discovery transactions involved the sale of a licence that was coterminous with the provision of e-Discovery services, and that there was no real likelihood of a customer which had elected to acquire a hosting licence and paid a large sum in advance for the benefit of obtaining reduced hosting rates and services moving on premise within the term.

3454. The Claimants drew my attention to a particular example of Mr Hussain's direct involvement in misrepresenting the true nature of the hybrid hosting transactions. In relation to one of the two BP e-Discovery transactions, he stated in an email dated 14 July 2010 to Mr Welham (copied to Mr Mercer of Deloitte and also Mr Chamberlain) that he would prefer that (a) they should *"clear"* with him *"the technical person you speak to since otherwise you will get incomplete information"* and (b) in the particular BP transaction at least that the *"future obligation is covered by the fee per gb per month."* As Mr Hussain knew, that presentation of the (future) hosting data storage fees and services as wholly separate and funded by the charges was materially misleading: the licence fee secured the reduced rates and was in reality a prepayment.

3455. In my judgment, Mr Hussain had "guilty knowledge" that the accountancy treatment of the hybrid hosting transactions was (as to the immediate recognition of revenue from licence sales) improper and Autonomy's published information contained untrue and misleading statements in this respect accordingly.

Dr Lynch's knowledge of Autonomy's improper accounting

3456. As regards Dr Lynch, it is inherently improbable, given the nature of the relationship between him and Mr Hussain, that Mr Hussain would have been aware of the impropriety of Autonomy's accounting, but not Dr Lynch. It is difficult to see what motivation Mr Hussain would have had to keep these matters from Dr Lynch, given that relationship. Notably, it was no part of Dr Lynch's case that he was misled by Mr Hussain.

3457. In any event, Dr Lynch acknowledged that he was *"involved with Autonomy management about developing creative solutions to offer our hosted customers, including the hybrid hosting model."* He implicitly acknowledged also that, as CEO, he was required to assess the commercial sense of the hybrid hosting arrangements, his evidence in that context being that they *"provided numerous benefits to Autonomy".* He identified the following in particular:

    (1) allowing Autonomy to remain competitive in the hosting market and to avoid a feared *"exodus of clients"*;

    (2) committing the customer "*to longer terms for hosting services and greater data volumes than they had under prior agreements"* because customers *"were incurring a large "sunk cost" upfront in the form of the licence payment, with much lower costs occurring over the term of the licence"*;

    (3) increasing the prospect of upsells of a *"whole host of IDOL-compatible products, which generated new business"* to customers (who would then own hosting software integrated with IDOL and (he said) thus be "*far more likely to buy other licences from Autonomy, rather than competitors, to perform related tasks"* than would SaaS customers);

    (4) providing cash immediately, which was in itself beneficial to Autonomy and lastly;

    (5) encouraging customers to move to newer versions of the hosting software, enabling Autonomy *"to free up space and power in its data centre, which saved on internal costs".*

3458. I return to his commercial assessment later when discussing the Claimants' claims to recover transactional losses in respect of Schedule 12D transactions (see paragraphs 3482 to 3723 below). It is relevant for present purposes in (a) demonstrating that, even if not at the implementation level, Dr Lynch was closely involved in the development, assessment and justification of the model; and in (b) revealing inconsistencies which in my view support the conclusion that Dr Lynch was quite aware that the licence rights were never intended or expected to be exercised.

3459. As to (b) above, it seems to me that the premise of Dr Lynch's assessment was not that customers would be likely to exercise their apparent legal right to move on premise, but that they would be tied closer to remaining as hosted customers and using more data storage, because of low hosting rates in consequence of, and as a reward for, upfront subscription and because, in his own words, of the large upfront "sunk cost" in the form of the licence payment. In my judgment, it is obvious from the basic premise that he assumed that the licence rights were never in fact to be exercised: and the commerciality of the model from the point of view of both Autonomy and the customer was premised on them not being exercised. That, in my view, undermined, to the point of substantially disposing of, his central theme that the licence was valuable in itself. He was well aware that it was not.

3460. Dr Lynch submitted that the Claimants' cross-examination on the issue of IAS 18.13 and e-Discovery "*fell far short of what was necessary to maintain an allegation of fraud against him"*. He emphasised that very few documents relating to e-Discovery

were put to him, none directly involving him, and that his cross-examination was limited to two main points:

(1) First, a suggestion that customers were told by Autonomy they would get the "*same thing*", whether it was a licence or SaaS. Dr Lynch stated this was based on a single document, which, as Dr Lynch explained it, was making the point that customers who bought a licence but still paid for hosting services received the same service from Autonomy as a SaaS customer. Dr Lynch accepted that this is what it stated; but he submitted that this did not upset his case: the fact that customers also paid for and received hosted services simply reflected the nature of the hybrid model and did not alter the fact that they paid for and received an asset – a valuable software licence.

(2) Secondly, a suggestion that customers were "*unlikely*" to want to move from a hosted service to on-premise. He rejected this and maintained that the suggestion was undermined by documents which he maintained demonstrated that customers were interested in the option of bringing the software on site.

3461. He added to this that the Claimants accepted that there were on-premise customers and that it followed (he maintained) that however "*complex*" the process of implementation, the licence in those cases had independent value; there is no justification for why a different approach should be adopted for hosted customers.

3462. However, as it seems to me, the cross-examination focused sufficiently and put to Dr Lynch the fundamental points in issue; and it also seems to me that it demonstrated that he had no satisfactory answer on either. His resort to the twin assertion that the legal rights conferred by the software licence were valuable was (I agree with the Claimants) trite; and his claim that customers were interested in the options it conferred was undone by the premise described above, and by the fact that it was implicit in his approach that he knew that:

(1) a customer with a hosted arrangement had no need for a software licence, particularly where: (i) the customer had no intention of using the licence on-premise independently of Autonomy's hosting services, (ii) the term of the licence was coterminous with the term of the hosting services, as was almost invariably the case in the Schedule 6 e-Discovery transactions, or (iii) the licence was to software that did not exist or was not asked for nor needed by the customer, as was often the case in the Schedule 12D transactions, or could not be used without Autonomy's assistance, as was the case for all the Schedule 6 Digital Safe transactions; and that

(2) there was no material difference between the SaaS offering and the hybrid offering; both were, in essence, service offerings under which customers received substantially the same services, regardless of whether they owned a licence to the software or not.

3463. I have concluded, and find, that Dr Lynch can only have understood and intended that the purpose of introducing a licence sale in a hosted arrangement was to provide a pretext for the improper acceleration of revenue, and that there was, in truth, no justification for adopting a wholly different revenue recognition approach to the hybrid deals than the approach that had been adopted in relation to the SaaS arrangements.

3464. My conclusion is also reinforced by Dr Lynch's explanation of the hybrid model in exchanges with analysts. Two examples of such exchanges were explored with Dr Lynch in cross-examination.

3465. At the end of May 2009, Ed Meier of Schroder Investment Management emailed Mr Hussain saying "*It's come to my attention from a couple of your customers recently that there may have been some change to contract structures (both in Zantaz). We have been told that on some occasions rather than pro-rating a 5-year contract equally over quarters as used to be done, a large proportion of it has been paid up front with the remainder (maybe 20-25%) pro-rated*". Mr Meier asked if this was prevalent in more than a few contracts. Mr Hussain forwarded Mr Meier's email to Dr Lynch. Dr Lynch responded to Mr Hussain with a draft email (replete with typographical errors) to be sent to Mr Meier saying:[432]

> *"the number amount and sources exploded so this model no longer worked, so it was necessary to terminate the old approaches and move to the new hybrid model with software on site to do the gathering and apply meaning based policies for what to then send tot he [sic] digital safe…*
>
> *…on once [sic] sense what you write is true, ratably recognized solutions for 3 suppliers were rolled into one with a 1/3 upfront. However the points to bear in mind is that the new contracts were much larger (~10 times) and for different functionality that subsumed the need for the old ones. Only a 1/3 of the new larger contracts moved up front. <u>So in fact the effect of the change was still a massive increase eint he [sic] ongoing…ie the argument Autonomy some how swapped up front licence for ratably when the whole thing is viewed is the opposite of the total outcome</u>…<u>THe [sic] outcome is actually much more longeterm [sic] revenue, not a short term boost at the expense of the future</u> (unless you only consider a small fraction of the roll up rather than the total size)."*

3466. The Claimants branded Dr Lynch's response as a complete fiction: and I must agree, for the reason they gave, which was simply that the position he was attempting to disavow was precisely what had happened and what the Defendants had intended from restructuring the hosted arrangements. I agree also with the Claimants that Dr Lynch's defence of this email in cross-examination was unimpressive. He stood by his suggestion that hybrid customers would pay "*a lot, lot more*" as a result of the restructuring, a suggestion that was patently incorrect, as explained in more detail in the context of the Schedule 12D transactions below. For present purposes, it suffices to note that the evidence of Mr Sullivan, Zantaz's CEO, is that the hybrid model led "*to reductions in longer term revenue and, thus, to a reduction in the total revenue which would be earned on those customers' accounts over the lifetime of the relationship*".

3467. Moreover, the Claimants observed (again to my mind, correctly) that having accepted that he was intending thereby to give Mr Meier the impression that the licensed software was used by the customer onsite to ingest and index the data that needed to be archived, Dr Lynch steadfastly refused to accept that this was false, maintaining that "*the licence is also used on site for part of the system as well*", even when it was pointed out to him that Mr Yan had given contrary evidence. The Claimants' witnesses, Mr Goodfellow and Mr Yan, gave unchallenged evidence that, when Digital

432 Emphasis added.

Safe was hosted, regardless of whether the customer had a licence or not, the entirety of the Digital Safe system resided on Autonomy's systems, and not the customer's. None of Dr Lynch's witnesses gave evidence to the contrary. Dr Lynch sought to defend the accuracy of his statements to Mr Meier in May 2009 by suggesting that Autonomy did not start selling licences to the Digital Safe software itself until the end of 2009. But that was belied by the documentary record, as set out in Annex C of the Claimants' written closing submissions and Schedule 6 of the Particulars of Claim, that Autonomy had entered five hybrid deals before May 2009 that involved the sale of a Digital Safe licence (numbered in Annex C as 1, 2, 3, 4, 9).[433]

3468. The second example put to Dr Lynch related to similar suggestions in an email that he sent to Mr Goodman on 20 September 2009 for passing on to Mr Michael Briest, an analyst at UBS. The email appears to have been intended as a response to a note written by Mr Morland.[434] Dr Lynch wrote:

> *"2/ [Mr Morland's] statement that: Autonomy has changed the revenue recognition policy at Zantaz and now recognizes a third of hosted deals up front ... The statement that Autonomy recognizes a 1/3 of hosted deals up front is completely untrue, all hosted operations are recognized ratably as the service is delivered. A typical mega deal is made up of 2 parts, a set of software that is bought by the banks and installed inside it and on this hardware to sort data by policy (ie it is not hosted), this is in the example case given as a third of the total size. This is recognized as a normal software licence sale. 2/3 is the service of hosting a different set of software on our servers, eg archiving and discovery. [This] is recognized ratably as the service is delivered. ON NO account is a third of hosted sales recognized up front. This has been covered in earnings calls ... This error is key to the note as it is the central tenant of the hypothesis by which revenues were aggressively recognized ..... [it's] just not correct and arises solely from forgetting that mega deals are only part hosted and part licence software the customer runs un hosted by us..."*[435]

3469. When it was suggested to Dr Lynch that he was proposing to tell Mr Briest that the software licensed in hybrid deals was not hosted and was run on the customer's system, he echoed his remarks regarding his draft email to Mr Meier: "*Again, we're early in this process, in September 20 2009. More of the licences -- the licences tend to move -- become hosted by us more for the larger deals later*". The Claimants submitted, and again I agree, that when it was pointed out to Dr Lynch that there were sales of Digital Safe in 2008, he was unable to offer any meaningful explanation of his remarks:

> *"Q. Wasn't Morgan Stanley first licensed Digital Safe in 2008?*
>
> *A. Yes.*

[433] There were many more Schedule 6 transactions in this period, which either concerned Related Software or eDiscovery.
[434] Two days earlier, Mr Morland had published a note in which he wrote: "*Autonomy has changed the revenue recognition policy at Zantaz which used to recognise its hosted revenues evenly over the period of the contract. Autonomy has changed this such that one third of hosted revenues are now taken up front (as if they were a license) with the rest spread as before*". This statement was addressed by Dr Lynch in the quoted text above.
[435] Emphasis added.

> *Q. Well, I suggest to you from the very beginning, the way in which your hybrid system worked, was intended to work, was that Autonomy continued to host both the software and the customer's data and that what you were saying here was false?*
>
> *A. No, I think this is a reasonable explanation of what is going on. <u>And by the way, it has to be taken in the context of everything else that's been said at the time</u>.*
>
> *Q. You say everything else that's being said at the time, Dr Lynch, but if what you were saying here was untrue, then it was untrue?*
>
> *A. It's not untrue. It's absolutely correct, what it's saying."*

It was not clear what the relevant "*context*" to which Dr Lynch referred was. The point was not explored in re-examination.

3470. Dr Lynch then sought to rely on the fact that customers were occasionally licensed some software that ran onsite in hybrid deals:

> *"A. Just on the last point, just to be clear, there's a series of things that can be licensed that are part of this cloud system which run on premise as well as the licence itself being hosted off premise. Just so we've got that clear. My apologies for interrupting you.*
>
> *Q. Well, let's just be very clear. I understand there are a series of things that can be licensed and hosted, and there's no dispute, for example, that a connector could have been put in the customer's premises, but what we're talking about here is that for which you're being paid one-third of the fee, which is the whole Digital Safe licence –*
>
> *A. No, the one-third would include those licence elements because those are going in -- all of that is going into the cloud part of the business.*
>
> *…*
>
> *Q. … that's the scenario you paint: that the customer is using the software that you've licensed, let's say Digital Safe on premise.*
>
> *A. It is using some of the software it's licensed on premise –*
>
> *Q. Some of the software?*
>
> *A. -- and some of the software, <u>its licence is hosted by us at their discretion rather than being on premise or somewhere else</u>."*

3471. But Dr Lynch's draft email to Mr Briest did not make this clear at all. In stating that a hybrid deal was "*part hosted and part licence software the customer runs un hosted by us*", it suggested that <u>all</u> the software that was sold by way of a licence would be run by the customer onsite. It did not suggest that Autonomy was licensing software that was <u>not</u> installed on the customer's systems and was instead hosted by Autonomy; but this is precisely what Autonomy did when it licensed Digital Safe and e-Discovery

software (and indeed much of the Related Software that was sold as part of Schedule 6DS transactions).

3472. When later pressed on this, Dr Lynch returned to the suggestion that hybrid customers ran Digital Safe on-premise:

> *"Q. What parts of the software do you say that they were hosting themselves?*
>
> *A. Things like parts of the Supervisor software, parts of the ControlPoint-type software, parts of the gathering software so things that were actually getting the data, sucking it up. IDOL caches would be run on site, so where there were IDOL caches being run, those would be run on site. There would quite often be quite a small satellite Digital Safe system on site depending on what the bank needed as well, where that was a short-term archive. So under the regulatory requirements, some data had to be kept for seven years, some data had to be kept for three years, but some of it had to be kept for seven days, and that was better done on site."*

3473. This gave the misleading impression of some usage of licence rights by hosted customers; and it was inconsistent with the unchallenged evidence of Mr Yan that in a hosted Digital Safe arrangement, the Supervisor software would sit with the Digital Safe software in Autonomy's data centres. The Claimants submitted and I agree that it is also difficult to square Dr Lynch's comments about a "*small satellite Digital Safe system on site*" for short-term archiving with the fact that there was no evidence to suggest that any of the hybrid Digital Safe customers with existing hosting agreements ever ran Digital Safe on-premise (save for Morgan Stanley which ran an on-premise Digital Safe in Switzerland, which appears to have been for regulatory reasons and not for short-term archiving)[436].

3474. The Claimants concluded that the obvious inference from Dr Lynch's recourse to misleading statements, or at best partial truths, as to the nature and use of the hybrid hosting model is that he was aware that, if the market realised the true nature of these transactions, Autonomy's improper revenue acceleration scheme would be discovered. I accept that.

3475. I have concluded that Dr Lynch was well aware that:

(1) The hybrid hosting structure was a response, not to customer interest, but to his and Mr Hussain's obsession with ensuring that Autonomy achieved, or came as close as possible to meeting, revenue forecast;

(2) The licence was a device calculated to justify revenue recognition which conferred legal rights which neither side intended or expected would ever be deployed and which in the context of Digital Safe were in reality of no practical utility, and in the context of e-Discovery would have nullified the original choice made by the customer in favour of hosting and caused the upfront payment to be wasted;

---

[436] See Annex D of the Claimants' written closing submissions for further detail.

(3) The introduction of a formal legal right of no intended commercial consequence would not in any material way alter the hosting arrangements between the contracting parties, which both parties intended and expected to carry on as before.

(6) IDOL Cloud metric

3476. I should mention, but not dwell long, on the Claimants' contentions in respect of the use of the IDOL Cloud metric in Autonomy's published quarterly and annual accounts from 2010 onwards.

3477. The gist of these complaints was that in what were described as *"supplemental metrics"* provided in the narrative or *"front end"* of Autonomy's accounts from 2010 onwards a false impression was given by the inclusion of revenue from the sale of licences that Autonomy's recurring revenue from its hosting business was higher than it was. In particular, it was said, the market was given to understand that the metric was comprised (or at least largely comprised) of recurring revenues and thus a reliable and valuable revenue stream whereas in fact it included a substantial proportion (of around 20%) of revenue from one-off licence sales which was not recurring in nature (and see paragraph 3266(3) above).

3478. The Claimants made clear in their closing submissions that these allegedly misleading presentations did not give rise to any standalone claim. The Claimants relied on them as constituting *"powerful evidence"* of the Defendants' (i) *"general dishonesty"* and (ii) *"willingness to present Autonomy's hosting business to the market (and HP) in a misleading manner."* In his oral submissions, Mr Rabinowitz confirmed that the Claimants' complaint in relation to the IDOL Cloud metric was *"not part of the reason why we say the published information was wrong"* and did not *"feed into the loss claim".* After I had queried this, Mr Rabinowitz explained that this was because *"of the way the model works, the DCF model worked here".*

3479. The length of the Claimants' submissions on this issue of credit suggests to me that at one point this was intended as a substantive plea but was never in the event advanced. The Defendants objected to the deployment of such matters at such length on an issue of credit. In objecting to its elaboration, Dr Lynch summarised this objection as follows in his written closing submissions:

> *"In summary, the complaint appeared to have morphed from one in the pleading where it was said that it was false accounting to allocate cloud licence revenue to IDOL Cloud to one where it was said to have been a fraudulent misrepresentation on the market to include any licences in IDOL Cloud because the latter was a category of "recurring revenue". The morphed complaint is contingent on an unstated (and unpleaded) but implied assumption that IDOL Cloud was exclusively a category of "recurring revenue".*

3480. I consider that the matter was pleaded. In their RRAPoC, the Claimants had alleged that an untrue and/or misleading impression had been given that:

> *"IDOL Cloud revenue was increasing rapidly and was a source of recurring revenue at the level suggested by the then-current reported IDOL*

> *Cloud revenue when, in fact, a significant component of IDOL Cloud revenue was attributable to purported licence fees which were non-recurring in nature. The aforementioned practice meant that the revenues were not representative of the actual performance of IDOL Cloud or its future prospects."*

3481. But it was not pursued as a claim. I do not propose to delve further into it; and I have not taken account of it in my assessment of the Defendants accordingly.

PART B

The Schedule 12D Transactions

The nature of the claims and how they differ from the Schedule 6 claims

3482. In addition to their claims pursuant to FSMA that the transactions listed in Schedule 6 of the RRAPoC were falsely accounted for, the Claimants identified a sub-set of those transactions as commercially entirely unjustifiable, and as having been entered into only for the improper purpose of accelerating revenue, at considerable cost, and thereby loss, to the Autonomy group company concerned[437].

3483. The Claimants referred to this sub-set of Schedule 6 transactions as Schedule 12D transactions, the latter being the Schedule to the RRAPoC where the relevant transactions were listed. The Schedule 12D claims made were direct claims against the Defendants for breach of duty.

3484. Although both sets of claims related to Autonomy's hybrid hosting business, it is important to distinguish the different ingredients of the two types of claim:

(1) As previously explained, but as I repeat to accentuate the differences, the Schedule 6 claims pursuant to FSMA required proof that it was wrong to treat the licence sold in a hybrid hosting transaction as a separate component of real substance justifying an accounting treatment analogous to a sale of goods, and that the Defendants knew it was wrong and that Autonomy's published information was false accordingly.

(2) The Schedule 12D claims were not dependent on proof of accounting impropriety; nor was proof required of knowledge of the impropriety of the recognition of revenue. The proof required was that, viewed as a whole, the impugned transaction lacked any commercial rationale, and that no reasonable director could have approved and/or directed it, so as to be in breach of duty as a director and/or employee or by virtue of exercise of fiduciary discretion and power.

3485. Accordingly, the Claimants' position was that their Schedule 12D claims could be made good even if their larger Schedule 6 accounting claims failed. Conversely, and as was implicit in the limitation of their direct claims to only a small sub-set of the Schedule 6 transactions, the Claimants appeared to accept that to make good their Schedule 12D claims it was not sufficient to establish their case that the accounting for these transactions was improper; they had also to establish that the transactions themselves were not commercially justifiable. I have some doubt about that implicit concession. The basis of their Schedule 6 claims was the contrived nature of the licence; and it is difficult to justify the sale of a contrivance, and the impropriety of the objective and intended accounting treatment may infect the whole and outweigh any other claimed commercial benefit. I return to that below.

Overview of the Schedule 12D transactions and claims

[437] As I elaborate below, the Schedule 12D claims also give rise to difficult, but (in the case of the claims against Dr Lynch) potentially dispositive, issues as to which Autonomy entity was the legal person to which the duty alleged was broken and which such entity had suffered the alleged loss and damage.

3486. Originally, the Claimants had asserted that all the hosting transactions which are the subject of the false accounting claims (that is all the Schedule 6 transactions) were improper and caused transactional losses which they sought to recover as damages in personal claims against each of the Defendants.

3487. However, by amendments made in early 2017, the Claimants confined their claims to losses resulting to ASL and Zantaz from only four such transactions. Those four transactions (all of which are also the subject of Schedule 6 claims) were entered into with three leading financial institutions, namely, Morgan Stanley, Deutsche Bank and MetLife by Zantaz (in the case of the Morgan Stanley and Deutsche Bank transactions) and Autonomy Inc (in the case of the MetLife transaction).

3488. The distinguishing feature of these transactions ("the Schedule 12D transactions"), and the basis of their selection, was that they were restructurings of hosting contracts which had already been restructured from the SaaS model into hybrid contracts with a licence fee; except that in the case of Morgan Stanley, the impugned transaction was a re-re-restructuring which included a further licence fee (by then the third such payment).

3489. The Claimants contended that, therefore, if there were any benefits to be gained from bringing a customer onto the hybrid model, they had already been realised.

3490. Further, the Claimants contended that the customers concerned were offered substantial reductions to their ongoing data storage rates in circumstances where they had not approached Autonomy seeking any price reductions, and where there was no discernible risk of them leaving Autonomy in favour of another archiving provider.

3491. The Claimants also maintained that in each case, Autonomy licensed software that did not exist, was of no use to the customer, had been added into the description of software to be licenced under the agreement at the last minute without any request for it by the customer and/or had already previously been promised to the customer separately from the re-restructuring. The Claimants contended that the addition in the description of the software to be licensed was contrived to give the impression (especially to Deloitte who would be scrutinising the transactions) of some further commercial basis for the transaction which was in truth illusory.

3492. The Claimants' case in such circumstances was that it was not only the accounting for these transactions which was improper: the transactions themselves were not commercially justifiable and they resulted in overall loss. Their purpose was to establish a further licence sale from which Autonomy could immediately recognise all the revenue except for the fair value of the maintenance element. Their price was the discount which had to be offered to customers, and the resulting loss was the reduction in the overall fees paid over the course of the relevant transaction.

3493. The total losses allegedly sustained were stated in the Claimants' written closing submissions to amount to $24,835,156. The entity which actually booked the reduced revenue was Zantaz. Of this the Claimants claimed $6,912,011 had been suffered by Zantaz and the remainder, $17,923,145 was loss claimed by ASL as transferee of losses under intra-group transfer pricing arrangements (see further below)[438].

[438] The Claimants advanced an alternative case, reflecting the position before the transfer pricing arrangements, under which all loss is allocated to Zantaz as the entity that recorded the revenues.

Problems of standing and loss outlined

3494. The cause of action indicated would be a claim by the corporate entity alleged to have suffered loss against the directors responsible for that alleged loss for breach of a duty owed to that company in causing it to enter the loss-making transaction(s) and/or compensation for the abuse of their powers. I make that statement of what may seem obvious because it gives rise to two fundamental difficulties for the Claimants. Both difficulties emanate from the fact that the only Autonomy entities which were parties to the four impugned transactions were Zantaz and Autonomy Inc, and Zantaz was the only entity which booked revenue from those transactions.

3495. The first difficulty is that though Zantaz was the party which booked the allegedly reduced revenue within the Autonomy group[439] and is thus the entity which the Claimants contend "*forewent revenue as a result of the improper restructuring of four hosting arrangements*", the claim is primarily advanced by ASL. ASL claims losses of some $17,923,145 compared to a claim advanced by Zantaz of $6,912,011 (the total losses claimed in respect of the Schedule 12D transactions being just under $25 million[440]).

3496. The Claimants have put forward this as their primary case on the basis that most of Zantaz's profits and losses were, transferred to ASL under transfer pricing agreements between (inter alios) ASL and Zantaz which provided for the allocation of profits and losses from group companies to ASL.[441] However, in recognition of the potential difficulty in relying on the transfer pricing agreements as the basis of loss claims and also given the complex calculations necessary in that context, the Claimants put forward an alternative case which they presented as reflecting the position before the transfer pricing arrangements are taken into account. On that alternative case the entirety of the alleged loss is claimed by Zantaz.

3497. That, however, accentuates the second difficulty. Dr Lynch was never *de jure* a director of Zantaz. Nor was he a *de jure* director of ASL, though Mr Hussain was a *de jure* director of both.

3498. The Claimants sought to overcome this impediment by establishing that though not *de jure*, Dr Lynch was a *de facto* or (by virtue of being President of Autonomy Inc and/or what the Claimants described in their RRAPoC as *"the chief decision-maker within the Autonomy group"*) a shadow director of ASL, and that ASL was entitled to recover from him by way of damages or equitable compensation losses passed to it in consequence of the transfer pricing arrangements referred to in paragraph 3496 above.

3499. These are, as against Dr Lynch at least, convoluted claims. For the present, suffice it to say that:

---

[439] More precisely, the entity which contracted with the customer, raised the invoice and originally recorded the licence revenue in its general ledger, except in the case of the MetLife transaction where the contracting and invoicing party was Autonomy Inc but the revenue was recorded in Zantaz's books.

[440] More exactly (as calculated by Mr Bezant) $24,835,156.

[441] The transfer pricing arrangements and the transfer pricing calculations carried out for the year ended 31 December 2010, and which in summary amongst other things involved amounts equal to 96.5% of revenues recorded in Autonomy Inc and Zantaz, with arrangements for a percentage to be paid back to Zantaz in respect of profit-sharing arrangements between Zantaz and ASL, were of some complexity. However, Mr Bezant checked the allocation of the Schedule 12 losses by reference to these arrangements and calculations and did not identify any inaccuracies. Mr Bezant was not challenged on this in cross-examination.

(1) The Claimants abandoned their original allegation that Dr Lynch was a *de facto* director of Zantaz when it became clear that since Zantaz was incorporated in California the question whether he would be treated as a *de facto* director of it would be governed by the laws of California;

(2) The Claimants have ultimately not pursued any claims on behalf of Zantaz against Dr Lynch and thus, Zantaz's claims are now brought only against Mr Hussain;

(3) It follows that, on the basis of the Claimants' alternative case, reflecting a mathematical model of the position before the transfer pricing arrangements, no monetary claim is left against Dr Lynch;

(4) The Claimants' claims against Dr Lynch on behalf of ASL depend on establishing either (a) that Dr Lynch was a *de facto* or alternatively a shadow director of ASL or (b) that the transfer pricing arrangements somehow gave rise (now quoting from the RRAPoC) *"to a relationship of trust and confidence such that Lynch assumed the obligations of a fiduciary towards ASL…"* and that (c) he acted in breach of duty to ASL even though the impugned transactions were entered into, not by ASL, but by Zantaz and Autonomy Inc; and

(5) There is also an issue as to whether ASL suffered any loss, given that it was not the party that entered into the allegedly loss-making transactions, and that any losses were allocated to it pursuant to the transfer pricing arrangements.

I shall return to deal at greater length later with (4) and (5) above: they are, of course, fundamental to the Hosting 'improper transactions' claims against Dr Lynch, as they are to the other claims for transactional losses.

The Defences in outline

3500. In addition to these 'gateway' issues, the Defendants also accused the Claimants of having in effect presented a new case in closing which (as Mr Hill who dealt with this aspect of the case on behalf of the Defendants submitted) was *"not visible in their pleading"*. Put shortly, the Defendants' point was that in opening the Claimants had presented the claim as based on alleged false accounting and its adverse effects, whereas in closing they impugned the Schedule 12D claims as commercially improper irrespective of the accounting because a re-restructuring (and *a fortiori*) a re-re-restructuring, could not be proper because the customer was already locked in: the bird was already in the hand.

3501. Dr Lynch, in particular, submitted that this change of tack, albeit relating to a more restricted cohort of transactions, went back on a concession made by the Claimants in opening as to the scope of the improper transactions claim, was not pleaded, and was unfair. Mr Hill submitted that the Defendants would have wanted to know, and were entitled to know, that the Claimants were seeking to run this new case before cross-examination; and that had they known, they might well have *"wanted to put more focus in our cross-examination specifically on the issue of whether, from a commercial perspective, a re-restructuring was distinct from a restructuring and whether a re-restructuring was considered to be commercially sound."* He submitted that the

Claimants should be held to the position they set out in opening and be restricted to the accounting issues they had raised.

3502. I accept that the Claimants did refine and recast their case, as is obvious from the whittling down of the Schedule 12D transactions to re-restructuring transactions; but I do not accept that they ever made the concession asserted that they would restrict their complaints to the accountancy issues, nor do I accept that the Defendants were truly taken by surprise or caught unprepared. Seeking to strait-jacket the Claimants' claims in this way was always part of the Defendants' strategy; and I agree with Mr Rabinowitz's observation in his oral reply that this was a forensic point on their part. I do not consider that the Defendants' cross-examination of the Claimants' witnesses was unfairly affected or would have been substantially different. In my judgment, the Claimants were entitled to pursue the claim, and there is no unfairness to the Defendants thereby.

3503. Turning to the Defendants' substantive positions, in addition to those 'gateway' matters, their case was that the transactions impugned all had a sound business rationale. They promoted customer loyalty. They encouraged increased use of hosting facilities. They locked in new revenue streams which were otherwise uncertain in a falling market. They also secured an immediate payment of cash. Mr Hill referred to this in his oral closing submissions as *"the bird in the hand approach"*. The greater customer retention they secured increased the prospect of upsales, and by demonstrating customer loyalty, enhanced Autonomy's profile and credibility in the market-place.

3504. Furthermore, the Defendants presented the transactions as profitable and not loss-making. According to the Defendants, the rates payable under the re-restructured deals remained competitive without excessively squeezing margin. There was no basis on which any of this fell outside the proper exercise by the directors of their business judgement or constituted any improper exercise of their powers.

3505. The Defendants also relied on the fact that a number of people at Autonomy were involved in selling hybrid deals, including restructured hybrid deals, and none had apparently thought any of the transactions to involve impropriety: these included Mr Sullivan, Mr Collet, Mr Yan, Mr Wang and Mr Goodfellow (none of whom is suspected of dishonesty) as well as Mr Egan.

3506. The Defendants rejected the suggestion that in the case of each of the Schedule 12D transactions, Autonomy inserted into the description of the software licensed items which did not exist, which the customer had not asked for and did not need in order to mislead Deloitte into treating the newly licensed software package as different and more extensive than that previously licenced. They insisted that additional software was included in every case; and in every case it existed, was capable of being used, and was of practical use and value to the customer.

3507. The Defendants made the further point that it was not disputed that the software was put onto the delivery mechanism by Autonomy's technical team, none of whom was implicated in any wrongdoing, and none of whom considered that he/she was doing anything improper. They dismissed as unsubstantiated, unsupported and implausible the Claimants' case that (as Mr Hussain portrayed it) "*AU's technical team decided to upload fake software*".

Structure of this Part

3508. Once again, these allegations and their rebuttal led to considerable cross-examination and occupied the parties in a very substantial exegesis: in their respective written closing submissions, the Claimants devoted some 110 pages, the First Defendant, just over 100 pages and the Second Defendant added a further 50 pages, all with copious footnotes with references to passages in the transcript.[442]

3509. Although my treatment must be more condensed, bearing in mind that the losses claimed are, in the circumstances of this case relatively small (totalling a maximum of some $25 million spread in each case over several years), it is nevertheless necessary to travel into some of the details of each of the four transactions to do justice to the parties' rival contentions. That is especially so since the Claimants relied on the details as further illustration of their case that all the Schedule 6 transactions were accounted for improperly.

3510. I address first the question whether, and if so on what basis and to what extent, Dr Lynch owed duties to ASL in respect of the Schedule 12D claims.

3511. I then turn to consider each of the four transactions in turn, and especially in each case

(1) Whether the Schedule 12D transactions had any proper commercial rationale;

(2) Whether Autonomy included as part of the transactions (and purported to supply) software which did not in fact exist but which gave (false) support to Autonomy's justification of the transactions to Deloitte.

Did Dr Lynch owe any duties to ASL?

3512. The primary basis on which the Claimants sought to establish that, though not *de jure* a director of ASL, Dr Lynch owed fiduciary and statutory duties to ASL, was their contention that he was a *de facto*, alternatively a shadow, director of ASL.

3513. The Claimants relied in this context on the recent decision of Morgan J in *Instant Access Properties Ltd v Rosser & others* [2018] BCC 751, especially at paragraphs 213 to 228. Morgan J explained in that case that:

(1) "…the question whether a person is a de facto director or a shadow director depends upon the specific facts of each case" (see para. 217)

(2) "There does not appear to be a clear legal test to help one decide whether a person is or is not a de facto or shadow director. For the purpose of deciding that question, it is necessary to focus on what the person actually did in relation to the company." (ibid.)

3514. Morgan J also drew on and quoted extensively from the decision of the Supreme Court in *Revenue and Customs Comrs v Holland* [2010] 1 WLR 2793, where the earlier authorities were reviewed and by a majority (3-2) it was decided (dismissing the appeal) that the director of a corporate director of a company was not a *de facto* director of that company, even though he was the guiding mind behind the sole corporate director and was the natural person who decided that the underlying

[442] Some 261 footnotes in the case of the Claimants in this part alone.

company should pay the dividends which were impugned. That was because (according to the majority) he never assumed the duties of a director, and all that he did was *"in the course of directing the corporate director, not by acting or purporting to act as a director of the [underlying company]"*.

3515. As confirmed by Lord Hope JSC in *Holland* (at [26]):

> *"if it is unclear whether the acts of the person in question are referable to an assumed directorship or to some other capacity such as shareholder or, as here, consultant, the person in question must be entitled to the benefit of the doubt".*

3516. Further, as Lord Collins (also, with Lord Hope and Lord Saville, one of the majority) made clear:

(1) It is not sufficient, if it is sought to establish that a person was a *de facto* director for the purpose of making that person liable for some act or omission of the company, to show that that person was *"the guiding mind"* in making that company's decision.

(2) In such a context, it must be shown that the person assumed the responsibility for a directorial decision; and that decision must be one reserved under the company's governance structure (that is, the system by which companies are directed and controlled) to a director or board of directors, and not one capable of being performed by a manager or other employee, or actually being performed by the person in question by virtue of some other role or authority.

(3) Thus, the question is whether the person in question (a) was as a fact *"part of the governing structure"* [93] and (b) had been demonstrated to have *"assumed a role in the company sufficient to impose on him a fiduciary duty to the company and to make him responsible for the misuse of its assets"*.

(4) Now that the concept of a *de facto* director has been extended to cover not only (as originally) a person whose appointment was defective or who without lawful authority claimed to hold office, there can be no hard and fast distinction between the concept of a *de facto* director and that of a shadow director (see [91]) though, as noted by Morgan J in *Instant Access* [at 216]:

> *"If they were de facto directors, they owed the same duties to the company as would a de jure director. If they were shadow directors, there is a separate question as to whether they owed fiduciary duties to the company, and, if so, which duties."*

3517. Morgan J also referred to cases on *de facto* directors after the *Holland* case, and especially *Smithton Ltd v Naggar* [2015] 1 WLR 189 in the Court of Appeal, where Arden LJ said that *"The question is whether he has assumed responsibility to act as a director"* and added (*inter alia*) that:

(1) That *"is to be determined objectively and irrespective of the defendant's motivation or belief";*

(2) *"The court is required to look at what the [defendant] actually did and not any job title actually given to him";*

(3) *"The court must look at the cumulative effect of the activities relied on"* and all the circumstances in the round; but

(4) *"It is also important to look at the acts in their context. A single act might lead to liability in an exceptional case"*;

(5) *"Relevant factors include*: (*i) whether the company considered him to be a director and held him out as such; (ii) whether third parties considered that he was a director"*;

(6) *"The fact that a person is consulted about directorial decisions or his approval does not in general make him a director because he is not making the decision*."

3518. Lastly in his analysis of the law in *Instant Access*, on the question of what makes a person a shadow director Morgan J referred to *Secretary of State for Trade v Deverell* [2001] Ch 340 and *Ultraframe (UK) Ltd v Fielding* [2005] EWHC 1638 (Ch) where it was clarified that:

(1) *per* Morritt LJ (as he then was) in *Deverell*, *"Whether any particular communication from the alleged shadow director, whether by words or conduct, is to be classified as a direction or instruction must be objectively ascertained by the court in the light of all the evidence"*;

(2) again *per* Morritt LJ in *Deverell, "such directions or instructions do not have to extend over all or most of the corporate activities of the company; nor is it necessary to demonstrate a degree of compulsion in excess of that implicit in the fact that the board are accustomed to act in accordance with them",* and nor furthermore is it *"necessary to the recognition of a shadow director that he should lurk in the shadows";*

(3) *per* Lewison J in *Ultraframe, " a position of influence (even a position of strong influence) is not necessarily a fiduciary position"*: the test is effective control since *"the policy underlying the definition is that a person who effectively controls the activities of a company is to be subject to the same statutory liabilities and disabilities as a person who is a de jure director"*; and

(4) also *per* Lewison J in *Ultraframe*, and by the same logic, it is not necessary that the person in question should be able to influence every member of a board: *"a person at whose direction a governing majority of the board is accustomed to act is capable of being a shadow director".*

3519. In the present case, the Claimants relied on the following facts as demonstrating that Dr Lynch was a *de facto* director of ASL (ASL being a company incorporated in England, the *de jure* directors of which were Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter):

(1) The Claimants' general case about Dr Lynch's role in relation to the Autonomy group companies, including (a) Deloitte's conclusion in its memo of January 2011 that Dr Lynch exercised *"a very unusual level of control for a FTSE 100 CEO"*; (b) the evidence of corporate decisions in all operating companies being made by a "core management team" comprising Dr Lynch

(at its head), Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Kanter, and also (though less consistently) Dr Menell and Ms Eagan; (c) Deloitte's further conclusion that all *"purchases over $30,000 must be approved by the CEO"* such that *"very few transactions are processed within the group without direct authorisation from Mike Lynch being required";*

(2) The lack of any evidence that ASL acted on the basis of resolutions passed by its board of directors, and the appearance that instead, important decisions regarding its affairs were taken by executives at the Autonomy group level, including Dr Lynch. The Claimants gave as an example ASL's $9.6 million purchase of a three-year licence of the ATIC in Q4 2010 in connection with the MicroTech/Vatican VAR transaction (VT13) which Dr Lynch approved, as he accepted. The invoice was initially issued to Autonomy Inc, following which it had to be re-issued to ASL. Nevertheless, Dr Lynch refused to accept in cross-examination that he had given his approval on behalf of ASL. He said that he was "*able to do the approval as part of my role, but I don't know how that relates to the legal entities*". The Claimants contended that it is obvious that, in point of fact, Dr Lynch was acting as though he were a director of ASL. Dr Lynch had no knowledge of an ASL board resolution approving the purchase, and there is no evidence that one exists.

(3) Dr Lynch's approval was required for purchases made by ASL. Thus, for example, in the allegedly reciprocal transaction with Vidient Systems in Q3 2010 (being the second Vidient transaction in RT4), which included ASL making purchases from Vidient totalling $2.31 million, Mr Chamberlain sought Dr Lynch's approval for this "*given size of amount*". In cross-examination, Dr Lynch accepted he gave the required approvals. When it was put to Dr Lynch that these approvals were given on behalf of ASL, Dr Lynch said "*I wouldn't necessarily have known who it was getting contracted through*". This reflected Dr Lynch's earlier evidence that: "*I wouldn't know which contracting company was being used, unless I went and looked at the paperwork, which I didn't usually*".[443] The practice was clearly for Dr Lynch to provide purchase approvals where ASL was the Autonomy company that entered into substantial transactions.

(4) Dr Lynch also approved MAF payments on behalf of ASL. He accepted that he approved the payment of a $1.1 million MAF by ASL to DiscoverTech in Q1 2011.

3520. Alternatively, the Claimants asserted that Dr Lynch was a shadow director of ASL, on the alleged basis that Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter, ASL's directors, were accustomed to act in relation to the transactions entered into by ASL in accordance with Dr Lynch's instructions. Very little additional evidence in support was provided by the Claimants, save as relevant to their contention that he was a *de facto* director. I think the reality is that if they fail to establish that he was a *de facto* director, they cannot succeed in the alternative plea that he was a shadow director.

3521. In the further alternative, the Claimants contended that Dr Lynch owed a fiduciary duty of loyalty to ASL on the basis that he undertook to act for it or on its behalf in

[443] In the context of his cross-examination concerning RT3, where the relevant Autonomy subsidiary was Autonomy Inc.

relation to the transactions which had a financial impact on it by virtue of the transfer pricing arrangements discussed above. The Claimants relied on *Bristol and West Building Society v Mothew* [1998] Ch 1, 18 and submitted that that undertaking is implicit in the fact that:

> *"all significant transactions and decisions, including those affecting ASL, took place at his direction or with his knowledge, consent and/or involvement. These circumstances gave rise to a legitimate expectation on the part of ASL, which equity will recognise, that Dr Lynch would not utilise his position in a manner adverse to the interests of ASL and, accordingly, gave rise to the relationship of trust and confidence between him and ASL."*

3522. On the issue whether he was a *de facto* or shadow director of ASL, Dr Lynch raised little dispute on the law, not least because (as explained above) the law is clear that ultimately the issue in every case is one of fact. The facts, however, were much disputed.

3523. Dr Lynch's position on the facts was:

(1) He was adamant in his oral evidence that he was never a *de facto* director of ASL;

(2) The Claimants did not identify any instance of him being held out as a director of ASL;

(3) The main focus of his cross-examination in relation to this issue was on the fact that it was thought necessary for transactions by ASL to be approved by him, and he did, on various occasions, approve transactions that were, in the event, entered into by ASL. However, although he did not deny the fact that he was asked for and gave approval, Dr Lynch contended that (a) he would not *"have known which subsidiary the purchase was going through at the time"* and (b) his approval of transactions undertaken by subsidiaries of Autonomy Corporation Plc does not mean that he was acting on behalf of, let alone acting as a director of, those subsidiaries: he was acting as CEO of Autonomy, or as "Group CEO" (as he was described, for example, in Autonomy's Trading Update for Q1 2011).

3524. Dr Lynch contended that the Claimants' further alternative contention that if he was not a *de facto* or shadow director of ASL, then he owed a fiduciary duty to ASL because he implicitly undertook, under or by virtue of the transfer pricing arrangements, that he would consider its interests and not utilise any power or position (whether as CEO or otherwise) in a manner adverse to ASL (in accordance with the *Mothew* case cited above), failed on the facts. Dr Lynch contended that the fundamental premise of this basis of claim was that he knew that ASL would end up bearing the consequences of the transactions he approved because of the transfer pricing arrangements: but there was no evidence, and he denied, that he knew of those arrangements and that losses would be transferred to ASL.

3525. In my judgment, Dr Lynch plainly did act as a *de facto* or shadow director of ASL and owed duties in acting as such:

(1) His own denials in that regard are not legally dispositive: the question is to be *"determined objectively and irrespective of the defendant's motivation or belief"*: see paragraph 3517(1) above;

(2) The governance structure of the Autonomy Group as a whole was such that (a) decisions at subsidiary level were taken without the perceived need for formal board consideration by the senior management group comprised of Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and/or Mr Kanter, (b) Dr Lynch was in a position to and did influence the others to the extent that his was the decisive decision on all material matters referred to him. As explained in paragraph 3518(2) above,

> *"such directions or instructions do not have to extend over all or most of the corporate activities of the company; nor is it necessary to demonstrate a degree of compulsion in excess of that implicit in the fact that the board are accustomed to act in accordance with them".*

(3) Dr Lynch's answer in the course of his cross-examination that *"I wouldn't know which contracting company was being used, unless I went and looked at the paperwork which I didn't normally"* illustrates how subsidiaries within the Autonomy Group were "used" as contracting parties without regard to their separate interests and at the direction of senior management with Dr Lynch at its apex.

(4) Although the mere fact that his approval was sought for large transactions by subsidiary companies would not of itself support the conclusion that he was a *de facto* or shadow director of the transacting subsidiary, the reality was that (a) the absence of any evidence that any of the subsidiaries had a functioning board of directors which actually made any decision confirms that the power of management in fact resided elsewhere than the board; (b) Dr Lynch was at least on a par with the *de jure* directors, and (c) the need for his final approval connoted that Dr Lynch had the ultimate decision-making power and was in fact first among them.

3526. That makes it unnecessary to consider the alternative case based on *Mothew*, though I should say that I was not convinced by it, and would accept the arguments against its application which Dr Lynch put forward.

The extent of Dr Lynch's duties acting as a de facto or shadow director of ASL

3527. However, establishing that Dr Lynch acted as a *de facto* director of ASL does not entail that he owed a duty to take steps in other capacities to protect it from harm: and in this case, the sources of alleged harm to ASL were (a) transactions entered into, not by ASL but by Zantaz/Autonomy Inc and (b) the transfer pricing arrangements.

3528. Dr Lynch submitted that even if he was a *de facto* director of ASL (as I have found he was) and if he did owe such a duty, there was no basis in law for any claim for its breach in the context of the four Schedule 12D transactions, because:

(1) ASL was not a party to any of them and nothing Dr Lynch did in relation to them was done on its behalf;

(2) If ASL suffered any loss, that loss was caused, not by the transactions or their effect, but by the transfer pricing arrangements: Dr Lynch was not aware of or involved in those arrangements and had not exercised *de facto* or shadow directorial power in respect of them; and in any event

(3) The Claimants have not alleged that the decision by ASL to enter into those arrangements involved any breach of duty.

3529. The Claimants accepted that if only Zantaz (as the contracting party, or in the case of the MetLife transaction, the entity which recorded the revenues) was the proper claimant in respect of all the relevant losses, then only Mr Hussain could be liable, and not Dr Lynch. The basis on which the Claimants asserted that Dr Lynch as a *de facto* or shadow director of ASL could be liable for transactions entered into not by ASL was never made clear or even broadly explained:

(1) In the RRAPoC, the Claimants pleaded the duties that Dr Lynch owed to ASL, but there was no satisfactory explanation as to how those duties were engaged or breached in the case of a transaction entered into by another entity. The pleaded duties were alleged to include *"to act for and on behalf of ASL in relation to transactions which had a financial impact on ASL pursuant to the transfer pricing and profit sharing arrangements…"*. But the basis of this broad (and, in my view, novel) duty was not explained.

(2) In their written closing submissions, the Claimants variously asserted that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain owed duties either as a director of ASL or in equity *"not to utilise his position in a manner adverse to the interests of ASL"* and were in breach of duty:

(a) *"in procuring Zantaz's entry into them [the Schedule 12D transactions]"*

(b) *"in causing the relevant subsidiary to act to its detriment…"*

in circumstances where (the Claimant submitted) *"all significant transactions and decisions, including those affecting ASL, took place at his direction or with his knowledge, consent and/or involvement."* But again there was no explanation of the basis of these broad formulations which cut across ordinary principles of separate corporate personality.

3530. In Dr Lynch's closing submissions the Defendants took it to be the Claimants' case in this regard that Dr Lynch owed a duty to ASL in respect of transactions carried out by other companies likely to cause it loss and was in breach of that duty by causing Zantaz/Autonomy Inc to enter into the Schedule 12D transactions knowing that they would cause loss which ASL would eventually bear because of the transfer pricing arrangements. It was not for Dr Lynch to postulate the basis of such a duty and he did not do so; but he submitted that even if such a duty was assumed for the sake of argument, the claim failed on the facts anyway, since Dr Lynch had not known the details of the transfer pricing arrangements and he was not aware losses would be transferred from Zantaz to ASL.

3531. Addressing first the legal basis of the claims, in my judgment:

(1) The Schedule 12D transactions involved no decision by ASL at the time they were made: they were entered into by Zantaz (or, in the case of the MetLife transaction, by Autonomy Inc), not by ASL: no duties were owed to ASL in respect of transactions undertaken (as they were) by different entities, namely, Autonomy Inc and Zantaz;

(2) The decision of ASL which has allegedly been causative of ASL's own loss (the decision to enter into the transfer pricing arrangements) has not been impugned and cannot be the basis of loss;

(3) No basis of claim against Dr Lynch for ASL's loss has been explained, still less established;

(4) If as public filings suggested but Dr Lynch denied, he was President of Autonomy Inc, he might have been liable for loss in respect of the MetLife transaction to which Autonomy Inc was a party: but the Claimants' case is that *"Autonomy Inc…typically transferred 100% of the costs it incurred and 96.5% of the revenues, to ASL",* leaving Autonomy Inc no worse off for having entered into the transactions and thus having sustained no loss.

3532. My findings set out in the previous paragraph address the primary case advanced by the Claimants, as I understand it (and there were convolutions in it), in respect of the four hosting contracts.

3533. As my fourth finding indicates I consider that whilst any claim for breach of duty arising from transfer pricing arrangements must fail for the reasons given, it does not follow that the company suffering the original loss which it might have sustained from a breach of duty cannot bring a claim. Thus, the claim which Zantaz has brought against Mr Hussain (brought in the name of the 4th claimant to whom it has been validly assigned) can be validly brought because it involves a breach of duty by him owed to Zantaz. Whether it succeeds depends on the facts which I discuss below.

3534. No question arises in respect of Zantaz of the losses having been transferred to ASL. But in principle I do not consider that the transfer pricing arrangements with ASL affect the potential claims which a subsidiary which in fact has suffered the original loss could make. Those transfer pricing arrangements, as explained in the Claimants' submissions, do not purport to assign the claims.

3535. In my view, the fact that the subsidiary has chosen to transfer its loss to another company in the group does not mean that subsidiary has not suffered the loss. It does not put the Defendants at risk of double recovery because there has been no assignment and therefore no claim can be brought by ASL (unless as is the case in other direct claims under different heads (in particular, in respect of (a) reciprocal transactions (both VAR and non-VAR) on which it incurred losses as set out in Schedule 12B and (b) MAF and similar payments or foregone receipts on improper transactions identified in Schedule 12C) ASL has suffered the original loss). The company which suffered the loss can enter into an arrangement to transfer the loss to someone else. As long as it does not assign the claim it does not lose the right to sue, and the fact it has by an inter-company arrangement agreed the loss shall sit on another subsidiary's books does not mean it has suffered no loss. The Claimants have put their claim in the alternative on the basis of claims by the subsidiaries (or their assignee) for

the loss they sustained as a result of a relevant breach of duty. Those are the companies which appear to me to have the claim.

3536. However, in my view, what has to be established is that the company which has the claim for the breach of duty has in fact suffered a loss as a result of that breach of duty. The original hosting arrangements of the Schedule 12D customers, prior to any restructurings, were with Zantaz. Further, Zantaz was the contracting party in three out of four of the amending contracts which reduced the amount of payments it received in the future. Autonomy Inc was the party to the fourth amending contract (the MetLife contract) which reduced the amounts to be received by Zantaz.

3537. Autonomy Inc suffered no loss as a result of this fourth contract, because it was never going to receive the income stream which has now been reduced. It was Zantaz which suffered the loss, and Dr Lynch, for the reasons advanced, owed Zantaz no duty. It follows, in my judgment, that, not because of the transfer pricing arrangements but because it has suffered no loss, Autonomy Inc has no claim.

3538. Thus, though there is nothing sufficient to displace the public filings showing him to have been President of Autonomy Inc, and I find that he was, for the reason given above Autonomy Inc suffered no loss. No claim lies by Autonomy Inc, the 4th claimant, against Dr Lynch in respect of the MetLife contract.

3539. As to what Dr Lynch knew of the transfer pricing arrangements and their effect, when the Claimants put to him in cross-examination that he was aware of the transfer pricing arrangements, his initial answer was *"Not really. I wouldn't be surprised to hear there were…but, no, I wouldn't have had any detailed* knowledge *of it"*. Later he clarified that he *"understood they existed"* but he did not *"know the details"*. However, I do not understand the transfer pricing arrangements themselves to have been impugned. Accordingly, I am not persuaded that Dr Lynch's knowledge or the lack of it affects the position in respect of the Schedule 12D hosting direct claims, or in respect of the other Schedule 12 direct claims (in respect of hardware, VAR, and reciprocal transactions).

3540. In my judgment, as to the Schedule 12D hosting contracts:

(1) Notwithstanding his overall strategic control of the Autonomy group and the broad remit of his role and activities in that respect, as a matter of law Dr Lynch, though a *de facto* director of ASL, did not breach any duty to ASL.

(2) The only claim there might be for breach of duty owed to ASL would be if ASL suffered the original loss in respect of the breach of duty arising out of making the four impugned hosting contracts; and that is not alleged. No claim, therefore, lies by ASL against Dr Lynch for breach of duty in respect of these four hosting contracts.

3541. In relation to direct claims made in Schedule 12 by ASL in respect of the payment of commission to friendly VARs and entering into unfavourable reciprocal arrangements to boost revenue, a claim does lie by ASL against Dr Lynch because ASL was the original contracting or paying party who sustained some of those losses claimed, not because of the transfer pricing arrangements. I deal with this in the section of my judgment dealing with the other direct loss claims.

3542. However, I must turn to consider the substance of the Schedule 12D transactions, both in case I am wrong, and also because in any event, although he did not admit this in his pleading, it is clear from public filings and I find that Mr Hussain was a director of all three implicated companies (Zantaz, ASL and Autonomy Inc) and thus claims do theoretically lie against him in respect of the Schedule 12D transactions.

General observations on the factual circumstances of the Schedule 12D Transactions

3543. Turning to the facts relating to the Schedule 12D transactions, the following points of general application were stressed, particularly by Mr Hussain, and do seem to me to be either common ground or to have been established:

(1) According to Dr Lynch's undisputed evidence, the cost to the hosting industry of storing data fell from $1 million for 1 GB in the 1980s to around $10 in the early 2000s and to $0.10 by 2010; the amount that a hosting provider could charge per unit of data consequentially dropped substantially over the Relevant Period, inevitably prompting customers to expect and often demand savings.

(2) Zantaz SaaS contracts were typically terminable at short notice and prescribed no commitment by the customer to store a minimum level of data.

(3) The hybrid model gave Autonomy an immediate injection of cash.

(4) From the customer's perspective, the hybrid model delivered a more competitive rate, greater certainty as to future rates, and any benefits of owning the software licence (albeit the Claimants disputed there were any at all).

3544. Both Defendants also stressed that none of the number of people at Autonomy who was involved in selling hybrid deals, including the restructured deals in Schedule 12D, thought there was any impropriety involved in them. The Claimants' own witnesses such as Mr Sullivan, Mr Goodfellow and Mr Egan considered that there was a commercial rationale for them, in particular in enhanced customer retention and upsell opportunities.

3545. In addition, and as Mr Hussain again stressed, the hybrid model was known to the market, and known to HP from the diligence process. Further, HP studied the hybrid model in detail as part of the "re-basing" project to restate Autonomy's accounting applying US GAAP. There is nothing in the evidence to suggest that HP's decision to discontinue the model was anything other than a business and/or US GAAP accounting judgement, nor that the internal HP accountants involved in the project considered the model or its accounting treatment was inappropriate.

3546. The problem with these general points is that although they do appear to provide commercial justification for hybrid deals sold to existing SaaS customers, that justification is much more thin and tenuous in the context of the Schedule 12D transactions themselves which involved a re-restructuring or in one case, re-re-restructuring of existing hybrid arrangements.

3547. That focuses attention on the commercial justification of the individual Schedule 12D transactions, to which I now turn in chronological sequence.

The Q4 2009 Morgan Stanley Schedule 12D transaction

3548. Morgan Stanley had originally contracted with Zantaz on a SaaS basis pursuant to an agreement dated 21 June 2001 ("the Original MS Agreement"). Zantaz first sold a hybrid deal (using the Claimants' terminology, "the First MS Amendment Agreement") to Morgan Stanley in Q2 2008. The First MS Amendment Agreement moved Morgan Stanley off the SaaS model and secured substantial savings for Morgan Stanley. The Claimants' complaints relate to two subsequent re-restructurings of that hybrid deal in Q4 2009 (in the Claimants' terminology "the Second MS Amendment Agreement" but which I shall call "the Q4 2009 MS Agreement") and then again in Q1 2011 ("the Q1 2011 MS Agreement").

3549. To understand the purpose and effect of the Q4 2009 MS Agreement, which the Claimants preferred to regard as a re-restructuring, it is necessary to set it in the context of the First MS Amendment Agreement in Q2 2008.

3550. Under the First MS Amendment Agreement in Q2 2008:

(1) Morgan Stanley agreed to pay a fee of US$18.5 million for a licence of a package of software including Digital Safe version 7.1 (a Lucene version) and Digital Safe version 8 (an IDOL version);[444]

(2) The agreement was for a term of two years from 1 July 2008 subject to Morgan Stanley having an option to extend for up to six consecutive one-year term;

(3) The storage rate for year one was $0.00798 per MB, reducing to $0.00312 per MB for year five.

3551. The Claimants contended that the First MS Amendment Agreement was an example of the use of the hybrid hosting model improperly to accelerate revenue recognition, at a substantial cost in terms of the deep discount that had to be provided to the customer to persuade it to pay an upfront licence fee.

3552. The Q4 2009 MS Agreement followed less than two years later. By the time it was concluded on 31 December 2009, there were still at least[445] six months left to run before the initial term of the First MS Amendment Agreement expired.

3553. The revisions introduced by the Q4 2009 MS Agreement included the following:

---

[444] In an argument which presaged a more substantial dispute as to the existence of IDOL Digital Safe version 9 when purportedly supplied as part of the Q1 2011 MS Agreement (see paragraph 3618 below), Mr Yan and others of the Claimants' witnesses suggested that Digital Safe version 8 did not exist at the time it was sold to Morgan Stanley. It was asserted in the RRAPoC that it was not released until December 2010. Mr Yan also suggested that version 8 could not have been used by Morgan Stanley, which had a Lucene safe and not an IDOL safe. However, it became clear that there was confusion about the appellation/designation "version 8": it sometimes being referred to internally as *"DS Onsite"*. I did not understand the Claimants to have sought ultimately to pursue the point. In any event, I was persuaded that it was not well-founded. I was persuaded, and find, that Autonomy was in a position to sell IDOL Digital Safe version 8 to Morgan Stanley as at the date of the First MS Amendment Agreement.

[445] Although the term commenced on 1 July 2008 (*"the SOW Effective Date"*) the initial term was to continue for 24 months from the *"Livestream Activation Date"* which appears to be uncertain but to have occurred at some point between 1 July 2008 and 3 March 2009.

(1) Morgan Stanley agreed to pay a fee of $12 million to licence the same software (albeit with updates), but with the addition of a product called *"SPE Basic"*;

(2) The storage rate was amended so that Morgan Stanley would pay $0.00312 per MB from year two rather than year five, with a view to projected savings for Morgan Stanley of some $13 million over seven years.

3554. The Defendants presented the immediate commercial context of the Q4 2009 MS Agreement as follows:

(1) Morgan Stanley had pointedly made clear to Dr Lynch, at a meeting between him and the bank's head of enterprise infrastructure in November 2009 and in a presentation the bank thereafter provided to Dr Lynch that the bank was looking to cut costs across the board.

(2) The same presentation stated another of Morgan Stanley's objectives to be to manage its costs by working with strategic suppliers: Autonomy/Zantaz had ambitions to fulfil that role, and Morgan Stanley seemed eager to explore possibilities to broaden its use of Autonomy/Zantaz products.

(3) Thus, whereas until 2009 Morgan Stanley had very largely used its Digital Safe simply to store emails, in an email to Mr Lepore of Autonomy dated 16 October 2009, Mr David Bhola of Morgan Stanley stated that the bank was interested in both SharePoint and a document-tracking dashboard proposal, and, more generally, *"would be interested in hearing from Autonomy what is going on in the search space, new product offerings, new functionality etc. Areas of interest include rich media, spe, new functionality to be introduced into the IDOL product set."*

(4) Another, separate, deal concluded in November 2009, under which Zantaz was to supply, and Morgan Stanley's Digital Safe system would be accepting, data from MS Office, SharePoint and Documentum, seemed to offer the prospect of likely increased demand on the part of Morgan Stanley for additional data archiving in Digital Safe from 2010 onwards.

(5) Autonomy had in the circumstances seen encouraging signs of there being a substantial opportunity to increase Morgan Stanley's data needs and usage, but with the implicit costs that Morgan Stanley would be looking for lower data storage costs.

(6) Further, Autonomy/Zantaz was promoting the use of newly developed "*Ironman cells"* which allowed more data to be stored per cell than traditional IDOL cells. This new development was also thought likely to facilitate the conversion of a Lucene Digital Safe to an IDOL Digital Safe. This was a further factor suggesting enhanced prospects of Morgan Stanley increasing its data storage requirement. As Mr Egan stated in a briefing note to Mr Hussain dated 23 December 2009 if Morgan Stanley could be persuaded to upgrade to Ironman cells *"Autonomy gets a showcase account on the latest safe cells and that is good for Autonomy"*. Moreover, as Mr Egan also noted:

> *"The economics work out better for Morgan Stanley over time and in the case where MS wishes to send any additional volumes to the safe.*

The last point is important in that Autonomy wishes to constantly provide MS with incentive to store more volume in the safe. By capping software expense and lowering the rates MS is incentivized to migrate other types of data to the safe. An example would be the legacy migration project that is going on right now. Or for instance, Autonomy can take retired application data into the safe etc.

Overall, this license proposition and rate reduction commercially underpins constant innovation to lower costs to Morgan Stanley on a per unit basis so that the Autonomy Digital Safe becomes an increasingly attractive and cost efficient archive platform for greater volumes and breadth of data."

(7) Mr Egan added to this, when cross-examined about the reference to *"retired application data"*, that this would be likely to include data from financial applications, which would in turn include relational structured data which would be a use case for SPE.

(8) In the meantime, Autonomy's costs of storage had fallen since the First MS Amendment Agreement, and Autonomy could afford to offer a reduced hosting rate whilst still making the same margin.

(9) Thus, Autonomy saw its opportunity to obtain more data and data storage fees from Morgan Stanley, as well as a potential shopfront for both Ironman cells and SPE, and at the same time to lock the bank in for a new upfront commitment. In return, it was offering a package which it could present as attractive to Morgan Stanley whilst not eroding its previous margins.

(10) When it was suggested to Mr Goodfellow in cross-examination that the end of 2009 was a good time to lock Morgan Stanley in with a new upfront commitment, the gist of Mr Goodfellow's answer was:

(a) first, that it was <u>always</u> a good idea to try to renegotiate and secure a further upfront commitment and revenue; any time was a good time to improve lock-in with customers; and

(b) secondly, that all customers would be seeking to get the best deal they could. This was true also in the case of Morgan Stanley.

3555. Against that commercial background, the Defendants submitted that the Q4 2009 MS Agreement achieved a number of objectives for both parties, made obvious business sense, and was a good commercial deal. Not least, as the Defendants emphasised, it locked in $12 million of licence revenue, which, whether or not relied on to meet quarterly targets was a valuable accretion to funds.

3556. The Claimants presented the position very differently. Their case is that the deal entirely lacked *"any legitimate rationale…"* and was driven (with the active involvement and encouragement, it was contended, of both Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch) by the need on Autonomy's side for any deal that provided apparently recognisable revenue in a large amount.

3557. The Claimants contended that this was demonstrated by the negotiations leading up to the deal. According to the Claimants:

(1) Autonomy's opening pitch for this restructure was made by reference to the savings that Morgan Stanley stood to gain from it; only later was anyone concerned to identify what software might be licensed to Morgan Stanley to give the transaction some semblance of a rationale. Had the purpose of this transaction been to license Morgan Stanley new software that it genuinely wanted or needed, one would have expected the discussions about the software to precede negotiations over price. That was not the case.

(2) According to Mr Egan's unchallenged evidence, the deal was a point of "*focus of Dr Lynch and Mr. Hussain's attention*". In cross-examination, Dr Lynch appeared to accept it was an important deal for the quarter. Mr Egan informed both of them on 21 December 2009 that the numbers supported "*doing a large deal*", and Mr Hussain responded saying *"good luck! Need it!"*.

(3) When on 22 December 2009, Mr Egan opened the negotiations over the deal, he sent Mr Frank Cooke and Mr Troy Huber of Morgan Stanley a spreadsheet demonstrating the potential savings, noting:

> *"-Proposed lowering of overall cost structure for Digital Safe to Morgan Stanley to create savings of $6.3M over next 5 years or $13m over 7 years…*
>
> *-This deal can be accomplished with no changes to contracts other than to amend existing agreements with new software table and new rate table…*
>
> *Mike [Lynch] and Sushovan [Hussain] asked that I keep the offer very simple and show Morgan Stanley a pure savings option based upon a restructure that yields license revenue for savings. I know they described this in broad strokes to people like Christian in the UK which you and I discussed."*[446]

(4) That encapsulated the deal in the eyes of Mr Egan: it was to make a further licence sale to serve as a pretext for upfront revenue recognition, in return for which Morgan Stanley would receive further substantial savings. Mr Egan forwarded this email to Mr Hussain, saying "*FYI in case you talk to [Christian Lucas of Morgan Stanley] in am*".

(a) When Mr Hussain chased Mr Lucas again the next day, 23 December 2009, Mr Lucas replied, asking:

> "*what would be the upfront payment that you're looking for before y/end in order for the savings programme to kick in?*".

(b) In response Mr Hussain clarified that:

[446] Emphasis added.

> *"The savings start the moment MS signs an amendment to the existing agreement that simply puts lower rates into effect coupled with a software licence fee. In this sense it is not even an offer that requires a legal review as it is purely financial and causes savings. It's quite simply "sign and save"."*

3558. The Claimants contended that whilst it is clear that the purpose of the deal from Morgan Stanley's perspective was to achieve savings, it is equally clear that the real driver for Autonomy was revenue that it could (albeit improperly) recognise immediately. They referred in this regard both (a) to Mr Hussain's determined efforts to get a deal before the end of the quarter, and (b) also to his re-jigging of the transaction to maximise recognised revenue return.

3559. As to (a) in paragraph 3558 above:

(1) Mr Hussain pushed for the deal to be completed before the end of the quarter, emailing Morgan Stanley on 23 December 2009 to say: "*Realize this is a big ask but anything you can do would be highly appreciated*".

(2) Likewise, Dr Lynch was keen to ensure that the Morgan Stanley deal closed in Q4 2009 given its importance to Autonomy's revenue targets. On 26 December 2009, he told Mr Hussain and Mr Egan, among others, that:

> *"Given the criticality to the quarter and the short amount of time left should: [Mr Egan] and [Mr Joel Scott] be in NY for 9am Monday for MS? what do we think?"*

(3) To push the matter forward, Mr Hussain approached an employee of Morgan Stanley called Mr Lucas (an investment banker who advised Autonomy from time to time but who was not part of Morgan Stanley's IT procurement function) in an attempt, as Dr Lynch acknowledged, (in his words) *"to leverage the relationship with the investment bank"*. Mr Hussain suggested to Mr Lucas in an email dated 22 December 2009 that, *"if we have a deal with MS that gets us there on the q[uarter]"* it was *"very likely"* that he would be minded to pursue a convertible bond issue with Morgan Stanley acting as Autonomy's advisors.[447]

3560. As to (b) (in paragraph 3558 above):

(1) The problem arose because the rates Autonomy had offered and contracted for with Morgan Stanley in the First MS Amendment Agreement were already so low that under VSOE rules[448] if any lower rates were offered Autonomy

[447] This is apparent from: Mr Hussain's earlier requests for advice about the effect of a convertible bond issue; his later reference to organising a call with "*John and Mark… re converts*"; a later email from Mr Lucas referring to a "*convertible financing*"; and the fact that Autonomy issued convertible bonds worth around £497 million in early 2010, with Morgan Stanley acting as "*Global Coordinator and Sole Bookrunner*".

[448] VSOE is technically a US GAAP concept, but the term was also used by Autonomy during the Relevant Period to refer to its IFRS estimates of fair value for software and services. In essence, VSOE refers to the evidence required in order to attribute a reliable fair value to individual components of a transaction.

would have had to carve out an amount from the licence fee and attribute it to storage, so as not to undervalue the storage component of the transaction.

(2) The consequence of carving out an amount from the licence fee would, of course, have been a reduction in the immediately recognised licence fee revenue.

(3) To avoid this, Mr Hussain was content to reduce Autonomy's fair value for Digital Safe storage to the new, lower rate proposed in the further amendment, as recorded in Mr Philip Smolek's email of 23 December 2009:

> *"I did discuss w/ Stouffer [i.e. Mr Egan] – this Morgan restructure if successful will likely [mean] we'd need to establish a new VSOE rate on storage in order to not require a carve on this license… Stouffer indicated to me that Sushovan is 100% in support of this deal & assured him that he'd handle any Accounting/VSOE adjustment that need to happen to make this Q4 license deal stick. Quick background (in case your minds are getting old like mine)… We re-pegged Dig Safe Storage VSOE to $0.00672/MB/yr (equiv) in Q2'09 [which equated to Morgan Stanley's then current second contract year contracted rate] (the lowest client rates in existence). Stouffer's proposal today proposes to peg Morgan's new storage rate effective with this deal to become $0.00312/MB/yr (equiv)…"*

3561. The Claimants rejected any suggestion that Autonomy's motive for entering the deal related to any real concerns about customer retention. As Mr Hussain noted in an email to Dr Lynch in November 2009, Morgan Stanley were Autonomy's "*best client, v happy*"; which is perhaps unsurprising, since they were on the "*the lowest client rates in existence*".

3562. Likewise, the Claimants dismissed Dr Lynch's suggestion that Morgan Stanley were exerting pressure for a new deal. They accepted that it was true that Morgan Stanley had issued a generic document that showed they were attempting to cut the costs of their enterprise infrastructure software in 2009. However, this document was a nonspecific strategy presentation, which did not even mention Autonomy. The Claimants submitted that it:

> *"would be a stretch to conclude, on the basis of that presentation, that Morgan Stanley would have moved to a competitor if Autonomy was unwilling to cut prices."*

The dispute whether the inclusion of SPE was a contrivance

3563. Last but not least, the Claimants contended that the last-minute[449] addition of SPE Basic to the definition of the software to be provided to Morgan Stanley under the Q4 2009 MS Agreement was a fiction devised to persuade Deloitte that there was

[449] According to Mr Egan's evidence in his witness statement, a draft version of what became the Q4 2009 MS Agreement which was sent to Mr Crumbacher by Morgan Stanley's external lawyers on 30 December 2009, just one day before the transaction was concluded, contained no reference to SPE; SPE was only added to the draft in the early hours of 31 December 2009.

substance in the sale of a new licence as well as a broader commercial justification for the transaction as a whole.

3564. The position with respect to SPE, which the Claimants emphasised was (apart from updates) the only new or additional software included in the Q4 2009 MS Agreement, is factually convoluted and disputed. The dispute engendered a considerable amount of evidence as to the nature of SPE, its utility generally and in particular to a Lucene safe operator such as Morgan Stanley, what Deloitte had been told and whether they were misled, and the veracity of Dr Lynch's claim during the Q4 earnings call on 3 February 2010, that *"although the deal was many other things, [SPE] was one of the key differentiators"* and his evidence to me when cross-examined that the addition of SPE was *"the basis on which Morgan Stanley were happy to commit to us for a long time".* These issues are relevant not only to the matters under discussion in this section of this judgment, but also as a test of my conclusions about the accounting treatment accorded to the hybrid hosting model which I addressed in the preceding section.

3565. In broad summary, the Claimants contended that SPE Basic[450]:

(1) was in its infancy at that time, and in the event was never integrated with Digital Safe;

(2) according to Dr Blanchflower, would need to have changed considerably to enable it to be harnessed with Digital Safe to access and search structured data;

(3) in any event would not have been capable of use on a Lucene safe without further work by Autonomy which, according to the Claimants, was never done; and in any event;

(4) was not asked for, discussed or required by Morgan Stanley: its inclusion in the Q4 2009 MS Agreement was in consequence of a directive from Mr Hussain at the end of December 2009 that it should be included (whether or not requested, and for free) in all IDOL deals worth more than $250,000;

(5) Morgan Stanley itself did not focus on, or even appreciate, the addition: thus, for example, Morgan Stanley's Mr Furman, who was head of archiving at Morgan Stanley at the time, sent two chasing emails in January 2010, after the Q4 2009 MS Agreement had been concluded, asking for information about SPE after reading about it in the Financial Times, and apparently unaware that it had been supplied to Morgan Stanley already.

3566. The Claimants submitted in the round that in the particular context of the Q4 2009 MS Agreement, SPE was included to give the semblance of a more extensive licence and as the means of persuading Deloitte that the new licence had independent value.

3567. The Claimants relied especially on the evidence in the witness statement of Mr Egan, who was directly involved in the negotiations with Morgan Stanley. He stated:

> *"SPE was included in the deal at a very late stage. The reason for this was that, for the revenue to be recognized, it was necessary to distinguish the software package under the restructured deal from that under the prior arrangement. I discussed this issue with Mr. Hussain, including what would satisfy the appropriate level of distinction in order to enable revenue*

450 Structured Probabilistic Engine.

recognition. I understood that we either had to add software or include a different version of the software to that previously provided. Therefore, I understood that if we had not included SPE in the deal, and the deal had been restructured as it had originally been negotiated (without SPE), it would have threatened revenue recognition. To my knowledge, based on my involvement in the negotiation with Morgan Stanley, SPE was not part of the commercial justification for Morgan Stanley's decision to restructure their existing arrangement. Indeed, I believe that Morgan Stanley would have done the deal without SPE."

3568. The Claimants observed, and I accept, that much of this evidence was not challenged in cross-examination:

(1) Mr Egan's evidence that he and Mr Hussain discussed the need to differentiate the software licensed to Morgan Stanley from that which had already been licensed to them under the First MS Amendment Agreement, and that Mr Egan was left with the understanding that some software needed to be added to the agreement in order to enable revenue recognition was not challenged.

(2) Nor was there any challenge to Mr Egan's evidence that he did not discuss SPE with Morgan Stanley and that he believed that Morgan Stanley would have done the deal without SPE.

3569. The Claimants also pointed out, and I also accept, that Mr Egan's explanation was supported by the contemporaneous documents:

(1) When Autonomy pitched the restructuring to Morgan Stanley, it never made any mention of SPE. This was true of the pitches made by Mr Hussain and Mr Egan to Mr Lucas, Mr Cooke, and Mr Huber.

(2) Dr Lynch attempted to explain away Mr Hussain and Mr Egan's exchanges with Morgan Stanley on the basis that Mr Lucas was an investment banker with little understanding of the bank's IT functions, and that Mr Cooke and Mr Huber were "*just interested in getting a good deal*" and "*making sure the system runs*", respectively. They were later dismissed as "*low-level operational people*". However, Mr Cooke was head of procurement at Morgan Stanley, and Mr Huber was an executive Director who appears to have been Mr Furman's boss, in charge there of Archiving and Digital Safe, and of sufficient corporate weight to have been suggested as a contact for Dr Lynch. In other words, Mr Huber and Mr Cooke were senior and important individuals within Morgan Stanley's IT function; and the contemporaneous documents show that they knew nothing at all of SPE.

(3) It is also consistent with Mr Egan's evidence that the draft restructuring agreement sent to Mr Crumbacher by Morgan Stanley's external lawyers, Sidley Austin, on 30 December 2009, just one day before the transaction was concluded, contained no reference to SPE and that SPE was only added to the draft agreement in the early hours of 31 December 2009, after Mr Hussain and Dr Menell had issued their directive to include it (for no charge) in all IDOL deals worth more than $250,000.

3570. Further in relation to paragraph 3566 above and the suggestion that the inclusion of SPE was a means of persuading Deloitte to accept that the new licence was materially

different, the Claimants supported their case by reference to Deloitte's working paper, which stated that:

> *"SPE is a new Autonomy product, launched in Q3 2009. SPE gives additional functionality to IDOL, which allows it to search structured information, such as databases. Combining this software with DS allows customers to sort and archive data directly from their third party databases.*
>
> *In order to understand the commercial rationale for this purchase by MS and to establish how significant the addition of SPE is (in order to justify the $12m price tag) we have held discussions with Pete Menell (CTO). Pete noted that under the original DS deal, MS was only able to sort and archive its undstructured [sic] data, such as e-mails and other documents produced by standard desktop applications (Microsoft Office etc.). What the addition of SPE allows MS to do is to sort and archive all of their structured data from their transactional databases i.e. the databases that the bank uses to manage its customer accounts, value its numerous financial products and manage its finances. Given the volume of structured data held by MS globally, by purchasing DS with SPE, MS has significantly increased the amount of its data that can be archived in accordance with regulatory requirements. In Pete's opinion, from MS's point of view, when compared to other options for archiving all of their global structured data, a price of $12m is tiny.*
>
> *…*
>
> *Now that we have identified the commercial rationale and the technical reasons for the transaction, we must consider whether the licence fee of $12.0m represents fair value or whether an element of the upfront fee relates to the provision of future services. To do this, we must consider the exact nature of the additional software provided to MS and the other elements in the deal, such as the future support and maintenance fees and the ongoing storage rates. These are considered in turn below…*
>
> *…*
>
> *Note from the above that the storage rates have now been reduced significantly, so that the ongoing storage charge from year two onwards is at the rate previously reserved for year five onwards under the original agreement. Per discussion with the CFO we noted that the reason why the storage rates have now been reduced is due to the commercial pressure to keep MS as a customer."*

3571. The Claimants contended that the information provided to Deloitte by Dr Menell was misleading, because (a) SPE could not be used with Digital Safe because it was never successfully integrated into it; (b) even if it had been integrated, Morgan Stanley would not have been able to use it unless Autonomy created a new IDOL cache specifically to enable SPE to work with a Lucene Digital Safe, or Morgan Stanley converted to an IDOL Digital Safe, neither of which happened. Indeed, the Claimants suggested that even on the Defendants' evidence, further configuration of Morgan Stanley's Safe would have been needed before it could use SPE, and there is no credible evidence that this ever occurred. Dr Menell's explanation was also, according to the Claimants, misleading by omission. He neglected to mention that he and Mr

Hussain had issued a directive that SPE should be included in all IDOL deals with a licence fee greater than $250,000 "*at no additional cost*". In those circumstances, they suggested that it is *"surprising"* that he was willing to tell Deloitte that the $12 million that Morgan Stanley paid for its licence to SPE was "*tiny*".

3572. The Defendants sought to rebut each of these contentions, insisting that SPE was:

(1) Compatible with Morgan Stanley's Lucene safe and usable through an IDOL 'cache': according to the Defendants, the Claimants' submissions failed to take into account that by at latest November 2009[451], Morgan Stanley had commenced (and were some way in the process of) *"IDOL-ising"* its safe by (in Morgan Stanley's case, given its huge structured data archive) installing extensive parallel IDOL architecture in the form of an IDOL cache;

(2) From, at latest, November 2009, part of what Dr Lynch called the *"roadmap"* for the development of Morgan Stanley's use of IDOL for both unstructured and structured data: the Defendants maintained that structured databases of customers such as Morgan Stanley could be searched using a combination of IDOL, Digital Safe and SPE. Indeed, as both Dr Blanchflower and Mr Wang (though with some caveats) accepted when cross-examined, such a use of SPE was being considered for another institution, BofA, at around this time;

(3) Of considerable value to Morgan Stanley, given its vast structured data archives: the Defendants emphasised that Morgan Stanley certainly had a use for SPE, as Mr Goodfellow eventually conceded, and Dr Lynch referenced in that context both correspondence in October 2009 mentioning Morgan Stanley's interest in SPE (amongst other products and functionalities) and also meetings which he told me he had personally had with senior executives of Morgan Stanley (including Mr David Riley, Morgan Stanley's CIO of enterprise infrastructure) in Q4 2009, as well as a breakfast and town hall meeting at the Morgan Stanley Investor Conference on 10 November 2009[452]. Dr Lynch also told me in the course of his cross examination that he recalled discussing SPE further with Mr Rosenthal, Morgan Stanley's CTO and Mr Traverso, and that these discussions had concerned Morgan Stanley's interest in Autonomy's roadmap of its technology and the extent to which Autonomy would be able to handle other types of data (which would increasingly become available for archiving following the November 2009 deal).

3573. In the latter context, Dr Lynch insisted, when pressed to explain why SPE was only included at the last minute, that this was a misunderstanding: according to his evidence, in fact SPE capability was already included in IDOL 7.5, and the decision to *"break out"* SPE was *"so that we could actually use that from a marketing point of view"*, that is to say, *"for branding purposes"*.

---

[451] In paragraph 8 of his third witness statement, Mr Yan suggested that Morgan Stanley *"only had an IDOL cache installed in its production safe in the first half of 2011"*. However, that was contradicted by the documentation, from which it is clear that (as the Defendants submitted) the process was well underway by November 2009.

[452] The evidence of his diary extracts also supports Dr Lynch's recollection of meetings with Morgan Stanley's CTO and other senior IT employees on 28 September 2009, and his attendance at a breakfast and town hall meeting at the Morgan Stanley Investor Conference on 10 November 2009.

3574. He insisted also that, contrary to the Claimants' suggestion, SPE was an important factor in persuading Morgan Stanley at the highest approval level to commit to a five-year engagement: Dr Lynch told me that he had met with Mr David Riley, Morgan Stanley's CIO of enterprise infrastructure, amongst others. It seems clear from the documents (and especially an email from Mr Scott Coleman of Morgan Stanley to Dr Lynch dated 2 November 2009) that this discussion included email archiving.

3575. The Defendants denied that Deloitte had been misled by them or Dr Menell or anyone else. Dr Lynch repeated once again that *"No one was trying to mislead Deloitte and Deloitte could easily check anything they needed to know."* When it was put to him that he would surely have appreciated that "*the acceleration of revenue was improper given that the so-called licence contained in this agreement was artificial"* he added further:

> *"I disagree that it was improper to do that structure and it's one that Deloitte and the market knew and understood. The market was well aware that we were doing that and it's one that HP well understood and there was nothing improper about it. The commercial strategy here was actually a highly successful one for the business which led to us being one of the largest cloud providers, if not the largest, at the time."*

3576. As to Dr Menell's failure to mention that no separate charge was made for SPE, Dr Lynch gave the following answer in cross-examination:

> *"Q. Do you see that Dr Menell told Deloitte that from Morgan Stanley's perspective $12 million would be a tiny price for SPE?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. He doesn't mention that he had instructed Mr Crumbacher to include it in all licence deals over $250,000 for free, does he?*
>
> *A. Yes, but this is tied into the archiving pricing of the per megabyte. So what's happening is they take in SPE, they take in unstructured data -- sorry, structured data, they then still have to pay on the per megabyte basis, so we're going to make a lot of money out of it.*
>
> *Q. Dr Lynch, Dr Menell tells Deloitte that, from Morgan Stanley's perspective, $12 million would be a tiny price for SPE in circumstances where, as he knew and you knew, an instruction had been given to include it in all licence deals over $250,000 for free?*
>
> *A. On the basis of the licence deal. So, remember, it's part of IDOL so that IDOL transaction that's being added to will have a limit on it. So here the limit is very large because this is a large deal. So the equate you're making is not apples to apples. So if I license IDOL to a customer they then get SPE Basic, you're calling it for free, but the point is they're only getting that for what they've licensed IDOL for. So if they've licensed IDOL for a certain amount of data or a certain amount of users -- remember we talked about instances and users and things like that -- that's all they're getting SPE for. The reason why this is so much more expensive is this is a massive system.*

Q. They already had a licence for IDOL, correct?

A. They already had a licence for one level of IDOL, yes.

Q. And they were restructuring in a way where the only additional software was SPE, correct?

A. SPE for a large amount of data, yes.

Q. I suggest Dr Menell was misleading Deloitte, correct?

A. Completely disagree."

3577. In the round, Dr Lynch remained adamant that (a) for the reasons explained above, the size of the fee was justified by the size of Morgan Stanley's structured data and the value to it of using the software in such circumstances, adding *"what you are buying is the rights for the size of what you are doing. Morgan Stanley here is buying a very big version of IDOL, if you like to think of it that way"*; (b) there was no reason why Morgan Stanley couldn't use SPE to process new structured data; and (c) there was nothing misleading about telling Deloitte that there was a risk that Morgan Stanley would leave: as Dr Lynch put it, *"obviously, if something is 10 times more expensive than the competition, you're going to move."*

My assessment of the commerciality of the transaction and Deloitte's apparent approval

3578. There is no doubt that Mr Hussain came to place reliance on the deal as a source of revenue to enable Autonomy to meet its quarterly target. That was the obvious driver for Autonomy's need to strike the deal before the end of the quarter. The rush betrayed the purpose. In assessing the commerciality of the transaction, the question is whether there was any other purpose; and, if so, whether that is sufficient to justify the transaction as the product of a reasonable commercial decision, rather than a costly expedient to ramp up revenue in a hurry in respect of which any side benefit was just that and not the driver.

3579. The Defendants asserted that the deal was commercially a good one for Autonomy. Dr Lynch's written closing submissions emphasised that:

(1) Autonomy locked in $12m of licence revenue.

(2) From a commercial perspective this was a good moment to renegotiate with Morgan Stanley and lock in a new commitment. They were coming towards the end of the contractual period anyway, and had the right to terminate at will. There were also very substantial amounts of new data in prospect.

(3) Locking in Morgan Stanley was a justified objective; they were known to be cost-sensitive and an internal document showed that their "*top priority*" was in controlling and reducing costs, including by strategic sourcing.

3580. Mr Egan's briefing note to Mr Hussain explained the commercial proposition (in the second paragraph, starting "*Regarding the Digital Safe rate reduction deal*"):

(1) It referred to the value proposition of the migration to Ironman IDOL cells offered by the new arrangements. It also made the following point:

> *"Autonomy wishes to constantly provide MS with incentive to store more volume in the safe. By capping software expense and lowering the rates MS is incentivized to migrate other types of data to the safe. An example would be the legacy migration project that is going on right now. Or for instance, Autonomy can take retired application data into the safe etc."*

(2) This showed that Autonomy was envisaging Morgan Stanley migrating other types of data into the Digital Safe. This included "*retired application data*", which would be structured data: a use case for SPE. Mr Goodfellow accepted this:

> *"Q. And this is dealing with incentivising them to deal with other types of data including a legacy migration project, yes?*
>
> *A. That's correct, yes.*
>
> *Q. There's also a reference to Autonomy taking retired application data into the safe, do you see that?*
>
> *A. There is there, yes, correct.*
>
> *Q. And retired application data is likely to include data from financial applications, isn't it?*
>
> *A. That is correct.*
>
> *Q. Which is likely to include relational structured data, yes?*
>
> *A. That is correct.*
>
> *Q. And that is a use case for SPE, isn't it?*
>
> *A. It's a potential use case for SPE as we've already covered."*

(3) The final paragraph of Mr Egan's email stated:

> *"Overall, this license proposition and rate reduction commercially underpins constant innovation to lower costs to Morgan Stanley on a per unit basis so that the Autonomy Digital Safe becomes an increasingly attractive and cost efficient archive platform for greater volumes and breadth of data."*

(4) The Claimants' witness, Mr Goodfellow, who had stated in his witness statement that he could not see *"any commercial justification beyond revenue recognition for re-restructuring",* was unable to adhere to that when cross-examined, as the following extract shows:

> *"Q. ... So overall the message to Morgan Stanley is it's being offered incentives to put greater amounts of data into archiving, yes?*
>
> *A. That's correct, yes.*
>
> *Q. And that fits with Morgan Stanley's commercial programme which it's told Autonomy about of trying to lower its costs and achieve economies of scale, yes?*
>
> *A. That seems a perfectly -- reducing costs seems a perfectly reasonable goal for Morgan Stanley.*
>
> *Q. And at the same time Autonomy stands to benefit from getting more data?*
>
> *A. Potentially, yes."*

3581. When cross-examined, Dr Lynch, with characteristic fluency, elaborated his case as to the commercial rationale of the transaction as follows:

> *"Q. …You appreciated that this transaction was not in the commercial interests of Zantaz, correct?*
>
> *A. I think it was an extremely commercial deal for Zantaz in that you managed to tie in one of the marked customers for another five years, you managed to set rates in a market where they were falling, you managed to get them to become a reference for your new technology, you got the possibility of opening up much more data than you already had because you now had the argument of going into Morgan Stanley and saying, "You've already got the SPE licence, turn on structured archiving for us". So, no, I think it was a very, very good deal. And of course because we lowered the rates, they sent us more data.*
>
> *Q. I suggest that substantial savings were being offered to Morgan Stanley in circumstances where there was in fact no risk of them leaving and as a result of that, Zantaz actually received substantially less revenue as a result of the restructuring; correct?*
>
> *A. That's wrong on so many levels. So, first of all, your assumption is*

> *that although their contract ended in six months' time, they would continue for the next five years at the rate at that point despite the fact that storage costs were falling and had continued to fall very, very aggressively. So that's the assumption that you've made there. Secondly, you haven't included any concept of pricing having an effect on demand so the fact that the rate was lower meant that they put more data in. And, in terms of moving, Morgan Stanley could have decided to completely change their archive over, I agree that that would have been a very large amount of work and probably not necessary, but all they had to do to switch to a competitor was take the pipe that was bringing new data and switch it over to their competitor. And in fact the other possibility was when there were banking transactions. So one of the things that happens here; because of this deal, we win a deal for a joint venture that Morgan Stanley does and we wouldn't have been able to win that if we hadn't got this new basis for doing the business. So the reality is it was an extremely good commercial situation where we got more data and we got more types of data, we got a long-term commitment, we fixed a price in a falling market, we kept out competition who couldn't match us and we became Morgan Stanley's choice where they did have completely green field situations such as their joint venture with Citigroup."*

3582. The additional commercial factors referred to by Dr Lynch illustrate that commercial decisions may have many strands. Where there are competing commercial arguments, the Court is most reluctant to second-guess the balance between them struck by directors; nor even, in most cases, which was the predominant consideration; that is a matter for their business judgment. The question is whether that is the situation in this case.

3583. In my judgment, this is not really a case of competing commercial arguments as to how best to serve and advance the interests of the company: it is a case where the operative reason for what was done could not be relied on as being in the interests of the company at all.

3584. Even accepting that the transaction offered the various benefits identified and emphasised by Dr Lynch, what drove the transaction was Mr Hussain's requirement for recognised revenue to try to achieve the target for Q4 2009. Whilst I suspect that Morgan Stanley would have proceeded with the transaction even had it not been supplied with the structured data functionality, and on balance could in any event have made use of that functionality on its Lucene safe with further work by Autonomy, in my judgment (and I find) Autonomy would not have proceeded but for its management's need for, and perception that the transaction could be structured so as to generate, revenue which could immediately be recognised in its quarterly accounts and presented to auditors (and by them to the Audit Committee) in such a way as to secure their approval.

3585. It seems to me likely, and I find, that part of the reason for Autonomy's adoption of this strategy was that the hosted hybrid transactions, and in particular the issue of a licence, could be presented as having commercial benefits for both contracting parties. The fact that the licence could reasonably plausibly be presented as the means of

securing continuing loyalty and the "bird in the hand", and the appearance of there being commercial benefits for both contracting parties from the transaction, were essential if the payment for the licence was not to appear too obviously to be what it really was: a prepayment of hosting costs and charges.

3586. That is not to say that those other benefits were all illusory; but I do not consider that any was the real reason for Autonomy's adoption and espousal of the model. In particular (but without elevating it into some sort of litmus test, since I have considered all the alleged benefits both individually and cumulatively) I cannot accept that the late addition of SPE (in the early hours of 31 December 2009) was anything more than cosmetic: it was made for the reasons given by Mr Egan as recorded in paragraph 3567 above. I cannot accept Dr Lynch's evidence in this regard. His claim in cross-examination that the reason that SPE was added was *"because that was the basis on which Morgan Stanley were happy to commit to us for a long time"* (and see paragraph 3564 above) was not credible; and his attempt to justify what he had said in the earnings call for Q4 2009 that SPE was *"the key winning differentiator"* in securing that commitment was likewise unconvincing: what he had said in the earnings call was false, and its falsity has confirmed in my view that the addition of SPE was a device. The other benefits were potentially real; but they were ancillary.

3587. In such circumstances, in my judgment, what ultimately drove the transaction was not a commercial assessment of the interests of the company, but the perceived imperative of generating revenue which could be presented as recognised revenue in its accounts to seek to meet revenue targets. That may have sustained the share price; but it is well established that the proper business of the company does not extend to pursuing such an objective.

3588. I consider that the Q4 2009 Morgan Stanley transaction provides a further illustration and confirmation that treating the sale of a licence as a separate component of a hybrid hosting restructuring was without foundation and led to improper accounting and misstatement of recognised revenue. There was barely more than a residual recourse to the licence as making any real difference, let alone an identified and separate difference. The arguments highlighted that even on the Defendants' case, save only for the extension of the licence to SPE which I have determined was contrived at the last minute and was provided to others free of charge, the real commercial rationale was the *quid pro quo* offer of reduced data storage rates and service and maintenance charges in return for an upfront prepayment. As briefly mentioned in paragraph 3583 above, I doubt whether in such circumstances the pursuit of that objective could ever be justified as a proper exercise of business judgment or management powers.

3589. I have concluded that the driver for the transaction was the need for recognised revenue, that this was not a commercial decision weighing the interests of the company but one borne of the Defendants' objective of maintaining Autonomy's reputation of meeting revenue forecasts which underpinned its share price, and that it was a breach of duty giving rise to loss.

3590. I confirm that I do not consider that the fact that Deloitte considered and approved the transaction provides any defence. On the contrary, it seems to me that Deloitte were materially misled, that what they were told to address concerns they expressed about SPE was false and that the perceived need to dress the transaction up for them is further proof of its impropriety. The position is particularly stark because Deloitte were misled so directly in response to a concern they had specifically raised.

3591. Deloitte were plainly concerned about the transaction, and in particular that SPE was the only additional software to that which had been licensed to Morgan Stanley under the First MS Amendment Agreement. In January 2010, Mr Welham had asked Mr Chamberlain whether Autonomy was *"saying that Morgan Stanley have paid $12 million for SPE Basic?"*

3592. More generally, Deloitte was dubious as to "*what caused the agreement to be renegotiated*", noting that, "*from Autonomy's point of view, they had MS tied in to a lucrative S&M and storage contract…*" prior to the restructuring. Unsurprisingly, given that the storage rates under the agreement were lower than Autonomy's previous estimates of fair value,[453] Deloitte wanted to consider the "*substance of the [Q4 2009 MS Agreement] to establish if the relevant elements have been determined at fair value*".

3593. In paragraph 3570 above, I have already quoted Deloitte's working paper recording Autonomy's explanation of the transaction, and the inclusion of SPE. I have previously also addressed the dispute whether SPE could be used on Morgan Stanley's Lucene safe (and concluded that it could, but only with further work by Autonomy). Even leaving those aside, the reply recorded in the working paper as having been given by Dr Menell to Deloitte on the specific concern and resulting question they had raised is, in my view, sufficient to undermine any purported reliance on their approval. Deloitte were not in a position to know what SPE comprised or what its true value was. Dr Menell's statement, as recorded in the working paper, that the price of $12 million *"when compared to other options for archiving all of their global structured data"* was *"tiny"* was thoroughly misleading without being in the context of the undisputed fact that (as previously mentioned in paragraph 3571 above) he and Mr Hussain had issued a directive that SPE should be included for free. In my judgment, this was more than *"surprising"* (again see paragraph 3571 above): it was false. I do not consider that Dr Lynch's attempt to explain it away in the passage of his cross-examination I have quoted in paragraphs 3576 and 3577 above, though characteristically ingenious, was credible.

3594. Further, it appears from the final paragraph of the quoted text from Deloitte's working paper above, that Mr Hussain himself misled Mr Welham into believing that Morgan Stanley had applied commercial pressure to reduce storage rates, and that Autonomy had been concerned that, if it did not reduce the storage rates, Morgan Stanley might terminate the First MS Amendment Agreement. There is nothing to suggest that this was in fact true. This depiction of Morgan Stanley as a flighty customer contemplating a move was at odds with Mr Hussain's own evidence earlier that Morgan Stanley were Autonomy's *"best client, v happy"* (see paragraph 3561 above) and with Dr Lynch's description of them as *"reasonably happy"* (see paragraph 3600 above). Further, the Claimants pointed out that:

(1) Mr Hussain did not merely suggest that Morgan Stanley might use a new provider for new data; he suggested to Mr Welham that Morgan Stanley might terminate the existing arrangement, which would require it to move its

[453] Mr Smolek had remarked that if the transaction went ahead, Autonomy would "*need to establish a new VSOE rate* on *storage in order to not require a carve on this license*" but that "*Sushovan is 100% in support of this deal & assured [Mr Egan] that he'd handle any Accounting/VSOE adjustment that need to happen to make this Q4 license deal stick*".

existing data to a new provider. Dr Lynch himself accepted that a customer would be very unlikely to do that.

(2) In fact, as explained above, Autonomy could not have had any cause for concern regarding Morgan Stanley's continuing use of Digital Safe, given the extremely low rates that Morgan Stanley was already benefiting from, and the difficulties, mentioned above, with any customer switching hosting provider.

3595. In the round, therefore, in my judgment, the Claimants' factual case in relation to the Q4 2009 MS Agreement is well-founded and a breach of duty and improper use of power has been established. I shall consider later what loss was thereby caused.

The second Morgan Stanley Schedule 12D transaction: Q1 2011

Outline of the Claimants' case

3596. The Claimants' case with respect to the third amendment to the original agreement in Q1 2011 (which I shall refer to as "the Q1 2011 MS Agreement", and which was a re-re-restructuring in the Claimants' parlance), echoed their case in respect of the re-restructuring in Q4 2009 discussed above.

3597. At the time of the Q1 2011 MS Agreement, Morgan Stanley's existing arrangements entitled them to renew for up to six years on consecutive one-year terms. Morgan Stanley had already exercised its option to extend its existing arrangements.

3598. The licence fee under the Q1 2011 MS Agreement was $5 million. The new licence covered (a) the software already licenced under the hosting agreement, with the addition of (amongst other things) Digital Safe version 9, StorHouse/RFS and StorHouse/RM, Autonomy Investigator and Early Case Assessment, and (b) a separate package of software to be supplied by Autonomy pursuant to an 11th Amendment to the Software License Agreement dated 31 March 2011.

3599. Under the Q1 2011 MS Agreement, which was concluded on the last day of the quarter, 31 March 2011:

(1) Morgan Stanley agreed to pay a licence fee of $5 million;

(2) Autonomy agreed to reduce the data storage charge from an already extremely low rate of $0.00312 MB per annum to a rate of $0.0023 per MB per annum for the year beginning April 2011, and then to reduce yet further at various intervals thereafter to $0.0016767 per MB per annum;[454]

(3) Otherwise, the terms of the agreement and the options to extend remained substantially unchanged.

3600. The Claimants sought to impugn the Q1 2011 MS Agreement as a contrived and commercially indefensible deal. They dismissed as unsustainable the Defendants' presentation of the rationale of the deal, on the basis that (put shortly):

(1) Dr Lynch's claim that *"the old hosting rates were no longer competitive"* and that a further reduction was needed to ensure Morgan Stanley's continued loyalty ignored (a) the fact that by virtue of the Q4 2009 MS Agreement,

454 The Agreement itself reads "*$0016767/MB*". This appears to be a typographical error.

Morgan Stanley already enjoyed extremely (and artificially) low storage rates, (b) his own evidence in cross-examination that Morgan Stanley was already *"reasonably happy"* and also (c) the fact that at the time that what became the Q1 2011 MS Agreement was being negotiated, Morgan Stanley had already shown its satisfaction in exercising its option to extend the existing agreement;

(2) Dr Lynch's argument that under the Q1 2011 MS Agreement Autonomy supplied additional software which was both a benefit to Morgan Stanley and a prospective source of further profit for Autonomy from its use and maintenance was contrived: Morgan Stanley had not requested the additional software and the principal addition as put forward by Dr Lynch (Digital Safe version 9) did not even exist.

3601. The Claimants invited me to reach the conclusion that the only real purpose of the transaction from Autonomy's point of view was revealed to be accelerated revenue recognition, for which it paid the price of having to agree even more deeply discounted storage rates. Once more, according to the Claimants, Autonomy was, in effect, purchasing its own revenue and swallowing the cost.

3602. The Claimants sought to elaborate and fortify these points by reference, in particular, to:

(1) the difficulties which Autonomy apparently had in finding any plausible justification for a re-re-restructuring;

(2) what on the Claimants' case was Autonomy's contrived resort to the inclusion of what was described as Digital Safe version 9 (which the Claimants claimed simply and starkly, did not exist) and the reference to structured data load capabilities as provided by FileTek Storhouse RFS and StorHouse RM software simply as expedients to differentiate the Q1 2011 deal from the Q4 2009 deal;

(3) Mr Welham's evidence that Deloitte was not made aware of fundamental aspects of the transaction and would not have considered revenue recognition appropriate had they known about them.

3603. I address these points in turn, with some additional elaboration of the convoluted and confused issue relating to whether or not Digital Safe version 9 was in existence, which is relevant also to another transaction which the Claimants impugned as improper and loss-making between Zantaz and Deutsche Bank.

Instigation of the transaction

3604. Dealing first with the instigation of the transaction by Mr Hussain and his team, it seems that in around the middle of February 2011, Mr Hussain identified Morgan Stanley as one of a number of *"deals possible this [quarter]"* and encouraged his team to set about trying to identify what else they could offer to Morgan Stanley to justify another transaction and another upfront licence fee which would generate recognised revenue.

3605. The twin problems which emerged were that (a) Mr Crumbacher's hurried review of the existing contractual arrangements did not suggest any restrictions or deficiencies in Morgan Stanley's existing contractual entitlements which might have offered an easy opening for a further sale, and (b) when Mr Hussain tasked Ms Gustafsson with

checking *"the model, [updating] it and [sending] it to [Mr Egan] and me with any possibility of restructure. Urgent"* Ms Gustafsson replied the same day, highlighting that Morgan Stanley storage rates were already at what Autonomy had set as "fair value": *"we are already at VSOE…"*.

3606. Notwithstanding these difficulties, on 15 March 2011, Ms Gustafsson sent a draft proposal to Mr Egan, copying Mr Hussain, presenting Morgan Stanley with *"an opportunity to save your company in excess of $9m in five years"* in return for an upfront licence fee of $5m for software that was yet to be identified. The suggested savings were later revised down to approximately $5.9 million over five years assuming a flat storage rate of $0.00312 per MB per annum, thus not taking into account further decreases in the storage rate at various intervals that featured in the final version of the contract.

3607. On 16 March 2011, Mr Egan explained to Mr Furman and Mr Cooke of Morgan Stanley that *"through a restructure of your license the Digital Safe we can reduce for storage cost per MB by 26.2%, saving Morgan Stanley a total of $5.9m (37%) over a five-year period… In exchange for a $5m Digital Safe license, we would be able to reduce the storage rate…"*. Again, there was no mention of the software that Autonomy was proposing to licence to Morgan Stanley. The Claimants contended that this demonstrated that:

> *"the approach appears to have been to identify how much of the ongoing storage fees could be moved into the upfront licence fee in order to create substantial revenue for Autonomy for the quarter, and the savings that Autonomy would need to offer to Morgan Stanley to persuade it to pay the license fee, and then to work out what software Autonomy could licence to Morgan Stanley to justify the licence fee."*

3608. The Claimants referred to two emails from Mr Hussain to Mr Egan as illustrating the pressures he felt he was under and the pressures he put on those below him in the hierarchy: on 16 March 2011, he emailed Mr Egan saying *"2 weeks for MS is an eternity!! We definitely need the deal"* and on 21 March 2011 his email subject line read *"no pressure but need MS!"*.

3609. Meanwhile, the software to be licensed to Morgan Stanley had still not been identified. Mr Egan emailed Dr Menell, Mr Hussain, Mr Crumbacher and Mr Scott on 24 March 2011, saying:

> *"As discussed with Sush, I need a list of new software that would be additive to Morgan Contract but related to IDOL, DS, audit center and S6 that can be added to the contract to support their accounting position for keeping old and new package amortizing simultaneously. Need urgently."*

3610. Mr Hussain forwarded this email to Mr Chamberlain, who responded: *"Just met with Pete [Menell] and Poppy [Gustafsson]. She is drafting an email. Plenty of extra we can give them"*. Around 15 minutes later, Ms Gustafsson sent Mr Egan a *"PROPOSED SOFTWARE OFFERING"* which included *"Digital Safe v9.0 Digital Archive System with FileTek structured data-load capabilities"*. Mr Egan then asked her to "*line item the idol functions*". Ms Gustafsson duly did so by lifting a list from

another customer's Digital Safe contract. Mr Chamberlain forwarded this list to Mr Crumbacher, copying Mr Egan, saying:

> *"THIS NEEDS TO BE VERIFIED BY THE TECHNICAL TEAM AS BEING RELEVANT AND DELIVERABLE".*

3611. When cross-examined, Ms Gustafsson acknowledged that she had little idea of what the software set out in her emails actually was. She told me:

> *"…I was very rarely, if ever, involved in what was actually licensing, I was agnostic to it, It certainly didn't change the metrics that I was putting in…*
>
> *What I can see here is that there's a long list of technical things that then I would have had no idea what any of those are, now I have no idea what any of them is - - what's a kick-start metadata? I have literally no idea. What this looks like to me is a copy and paste from a similar or equivalent agreement…"*

3612. The Claimants submitted that this demonstrated that she had simply put together a description of varieties of software offering, culled from previous agreements without discrimination in terms of customer suitability, from which others could select what would be appropriate, not for the customer's needs, but to ensure that the revenue from the licence fee could be recognised upfront.

3613. When it was put to her that it was clear that she had been called upon to put together the software offering to ensure that the revenue from the licence fee could be recognised upfront she told me:

> *"Q. You would have been concerned from a revenue recognition perspective to ensure that the software that was licensed was something new from that which had previously been licensed, correct?*
>
> *A. It would have been important, yes, to be able to demonstrate it was separable.*
>
> *Q. That's why you're involved in the discussion as to what software is going to be licensed, to make sure there's something new in there which can justify recognising the revenue, correct?*
>
> *A. I don't think that's correct."*

3614. Ms Gustafsson's explanation for the fact that she was tasked with putting together the first formulation of the software licence was that she had:

> "*a lot of visibility of the other contracts readily at my disposal and [she could] copy and paste them from another legal agreement, if that's possibly helpful*" and she was "*bringing up things that could be used as a frame of reference … to sort of start drafting the legal agreements*".

3615. The Claimants submitted that this was not credible evidence: it was improbable that Mr Crumbacher, one of Autonomy's lawyers, would have needed Ms Gustafsson's help in sourcing a suitable precedent for a Digital Safe licence. Moreover, if the software licence were being put together with Morgan Stanley's commercial and technical needs in mind, one would expect to see the person negotiating with Morgan Stanley passing information back to Autonomy's technical department, which would identify the products that met the customer's technical needs, and would in turn pass the list of products to Autonomy's Legal and Finance departments to ensure that the proposal was documented correctly. But Ms Gustafsson, on her own admission, was "*not involved in conversations that are happening there with the customer*". The Claimants invited me to conclude that the only rational explanation for Ms Gustafsson being tasked with putting together the software offering was that it was primarily driven by accounting considerations.

3616. I have concluded that this is indeed the most rational explanation. Ms Gustafsson struck me as uncomfortable in telling me *"I don't think that's correct"* and her attempt to explain her role was not convincing. Her evidence revealed clearly that though she had little, if any, idea what the software comprised, she knew what she was tasked to do and the target she was required to hit:

> *"...from my perspective, and I stand by my statement, that what we are licensing is not really relevant. What's important here is that the licence is a separable element to that bundle of contracts that we are doing. Whether it's IDOL licence 7.0 or 6.0, whatever it is, it could be anything. What matters to me is that this is a separable component of the bundled agreement."*

3617. The second limb of the Claimants' contentions was the claim that some of the software included in order to appear to differentiate the Q1 2011 MS Agreement from the previous agreements did not even exist in March 2011, and was only made available to customers some three and a half years later, in November 2014.

3618. A considerable body of evidence was put forward on the dispute as to the existence or not at the time of version 9 of Digital Safe (an issue which, as will be seen is relevant also to another of the impugned Schedule 12D transactions, that between Zantaz and Deutsche Bank). By way of overall summary:

(1) The Claimants relied primarily on (i) Mr Langford's searches of the records of Autonomy software releases, (ii) Mr Langford's evidence that the listing of Digital Safe software on Automater with a suffix *"WIN"* demonstrated that Automater was not an accurate guide, still less proof of 'version 9', because Digital Safe was a 'Linux' system which was not compatible with Windows, and (iii) the recollections of Messrs Yan, Wang, Langford and Goodfellow as to when Digital Safe version 9 was released.

(2) Dr Lynch's position was that this was no more than a "*dispute over semantics*": and that there was a version of Digital Safe called 'version 9' prior to 2014 and "*it is irrelevant that a 2016 version of Digital Safe may also been called Digital Safe version 9*". Further, Mr Langford's evidence as to the incompatibility of Digital Safe and Windows was wrong: Digital Safe could be adapted to be compatible with Windows, as shown by a number of

documentary references to Windows compatible versions of Digital Safe and, for example, the supply of a Windows compatible version to Manulife.

(3) Mr Hussain's case was that he understood that version 9 was placed on Automater in March 2011.

3619. It is clear that there was some uncertainty within Autonomy at the time as to the availability of version 9, and considerable confusion as to what was in the event placed on Automater for downloading. After receiving Ms Gustafsson's list on 24 March 2011, Mr Crumbacher asked Dr Menell and Mr Avila to confirm that the additional software could be delivered by the end of Q1 2011:

(1) Dr Menell and Mr Avila replied in the affirmative the following day, but Mr Crumbacher was clearly not satisfied with their answers, because he asked Mr McCarthy to confirm that the products were deliverable a few days later.

(2) Mr McCarthy explained in an email to Mr Crumbacher dated 28 March 2011 that he did not have a version 9 of Digital Safe as a "deliverable": but he noted that he had *"heard rumours that Roger may have a copy but it isn't on Automater"*.

(3) Mr Crumbacher relayed to Mr Goodfellow and Mr Lucini:

> *"Chris, Fer, is there a version 9 of the Safe? Need it for Morgan Stanley (8.0 won't work), and Michael's telling me there's no v.9 on Automater. If Ver 9.0 exists, can we get it up on Automater for delivery?"*

(4) Mr Lucini responded saying "*...we will put [version 9] up there*" but he stated in his witness statement that he could not recall what was uploaded; "*It may have been a copy of an earlier version of Digital Safe, or possibly just an empty zip file*". Indeed, Mr Lucini's evidence, which he confirmed in cross-examination, was that somebody – he thought possibly Dr Menell – told him that it didn't matter what software was uploaded.

(5) The software that was eventually uploaded was sent by Mr Wang to Mr Goodfellow, who passed it to Mr Booth for uploading onto Automater. Mr Wang could not be sure what he sent to Mr Goodfellow, but suggested that it was most likely to have been Digital Safe version 8.

(6) Mr Goodfellow too believed that it was most likely to have been a predecessor to Digital Safe version 9, albeit he thought it was more likely to have been Digital Safe 7.4.

3620. This evidence on the part of the Claimants' witnesses was at best confused. But the Defendants' evidence, largely provided by Dr Lynch himself despite his position that he was barely involved, did not clarify the matter either. It was less than convincing, partly because it was based on supposition, but also because it turned on the assertion that the evidence of Mr Wang, Mr Yan, Mr Goodfellow and Mr Langford could be disregarded on the simple basis that *"It's not for the engineers to name the products"* and that "engineers" would not be either involved in or (apparently) even aware of the name allocated by marketing.

3621. In greater detail, what Dr Lynch asserted in his evidence was that the marketing department had taken the decision to brand the combination of Digital Safe version 8, StorHouse, and dense cells as "Digital safe version 9" sometime around the time of the conclusion of the First MS Amendment Agreement. Dr Lynch went on to suggest that the software engineers would have continued to refer to this combination as a *"dot release"* on version 8 (viz. as Digital Safe version 8.1 or version 8.2 or similar), while the rest of the company, particularly customer-facing departments and the lawyers, referred to it as Digital Safe version 9.

3622. The Claimants neatly pointed out a number of difficulties with this explanation, and in particular, that:

    (1) Mr Goodfellow did interact occasionally with customers, as also (less often) did Mr Wang and Mr Yan; and it is hard to imagine how they were meant to talk to customers about the products for which they were responsible without the naming conventions that the sales and marketing departments, and therefore the customers, were using;

    (2) It is hard to see how Autonomy could have run an effective business if its legal and sales departments were using different naming conventions from the engineers, with neither of them aware of the different terminology being used by the other;

    (3) There is no evidence beyond the fact of the entries on Automater of any decision to rebrand Digital Safe version 8 with StorHouse and dense cells as Digital Safe version 9;

    (4) Dr Lynch's suggestion that Autonomy's marketing function would have renamed the relevant iteration of Digital Safe as version 9 *"some time… around the Morgan Stanley first deal"* cannot be right: the First MS Amendment Agreement was signed in June 2008, some 18 months before Autonomy purchased the StorHouse software that Dr Lynch claimed was a critical feature of version 9.

3623. Dr Lynch's explanation, though characteristically ingenious and delivered with assurance, is not credible. The Defendants' other witness on the issue was Mr Martin. His evidence on version 9 was speculative and no more persuasive than Dr Lynch's.

3624. The Defendants' stronger point was that the records in evidence showed that by May 2011 at least Automater did list a product called version 9 as a shippable/deliverable. Furthermore:

    (1) On 31 March 2011 Mr Adam Booth (who oversaw the Automater system) wrote to Ms Dolan (an in-house lawyer) and Mr Martin in relation to the version of Digital Safe software to be provided to Philip Morris, which had just signed a Digital Safe software purchase contract. Mr Booth wrote: "*We put "Zantaz Digital Safe v9" on Automater earlier this week. I can't see a list of products as such, shall I just ship that?*"

    (2) In May 2011, Mr McCarthy was providing Mr Young with a list of "*Automater shippable*". This included Digital Safe version 9.

(3) On 16 June 2011, Mr Booth provided Mr Goodfellow with a list of Digital Safe software potentially shippable to a customer (Compliant Phones), asking which software was to be shipped. The list included Digital Safe version 9.

(4) An email from Mr Nick Ng to Mr Avila dated 7 December 2011 attached a list of "*shippables from michael*". The document lists all the products which were put up on Automater and shippable to customers as at 28 October 2011. Digital Safe version 9 was included on the list.

3625. However, to my mind, this shows nothing more than that software named Digital Safe version 9 appeared on Automater, in line with what Morgan Stanley were told they were being provided with.

3626. I have concluded that in a sense Digital Safe version 9 did exist, and the issue was a semantic one, as Dr Lynch insisted: but it was a new name for an old lamp, or more accurately a collection of old products, bestowed in order to give the impression of something new and novel because that was what was needed to distinguish the new licence from the old one. It was obviously necessary to ensure that the software as described should appear as a deliverable on Automater; but as Mr Langford explained, that presented no real difficulty, at least in part because Automater was simply a delivery platform. I accept:

(1) Mr Wang's evidence in cross-examination that:

> *"…we sometimes put up just a binary and name it something that matches the name of the contract. That's why when we went through the list that you had pulled up for Automater, the files may be there by name but essentially you could put any file and name it, which we have done for previous contract fulfilments of software delivery."*[455]

(2) Mr Langford's similar evidence in cross-examination that: one "*could put something in Automater that purported to be a version of the software*" even though "*it wouldn't be the version you could actually deploy*" and that "*there was never any check or balance on Automater to ensure that actually what was being uploaded would have resulted in something that actually worked*" the effect of which was that "*you could list anything you want in Automater and it wouldn't matter*". He added that all the emails that he was shown by the Defendants could prove was that:

> *"… there was an entry in Automater that said Digital Safe version 9. That doesn't mean there was an actual functioning installation media under that."*[456]

3627. My conclusion that "Digital Safe version 9" was simply a name chosen to convey novelty does not mean, however, that the new licence contained no more software than the old. Although the Claimants did also challenge the inclusion of 'StorHouse' in the

[455] Indeed Mr Wang suggested that this happened once in relation to Digital Safe version 8.

[456] Mr Langford also said that he had conducted his own checks through SIDCAP, which according to his evidence was a significantly more robust record of when software was released than Automater, to establish when various versions of the Digital Safe software were released. Those searches apparently showed that Digital Safe version 9 was not certified as being fit for installation in customer safes until November 2014.

definition of software to be provided, the Defendants pointed out also that none of the other new or additional or upgraded software to be supplied pursuant to the Q1 2011 MS Agreement (which included Autonomy Investigator and Early Case Assessment, Autonomy Consolidated Archive ("ACA") Server, Autonomy Social Media Connect DS Mail and Supervisor S6) was alleged to be superfluous, unusable or otherwise not of value and benefit to Morgan Stanley, and in terms of charges for additional ongoing support and maintenance fees and prospective add-ons to Autonomy as well.

3628. The dispute about the value of StorHouse[457] centred on whether it could be successfully integrated with Digital Safe. The Claimants contended that it never had been: certainly, they said, not at the level of code-integration. The Defendants contended that, on the contrary, StorHouse was substantial and valuable software even if not properly integrated at the code-level, as Mr Goodfellow explained. Ultimately, the Claimants' other witnesses did not gainsay this:

(1) Mr Yan, whose evidence in his witness statement was that StorHouse had never been successfully integrated into Digital Safe because *"it did not make sense to integrate"* the two (since Digital Safe *"does not interrogate structured data"*), conceded in cross-examination that he *"would not know"* whether nevertheless it would have been useful to Morgan Stanley in non-integrated form and that Mr Wang would know more.

(2) Mr Wang had suggested in his witness statement that Morgan Stanley "*would not have been able to make any use of StorHouse's capabilities in a Digital Safe context*". However, when cross-examined, he eventually accepted that StorHouse was a useful product for customers without a deep code integration; and when asked more specifically about its utility to Morgan Stanley he stated:

> *"If Morgan Stanley's requirement was directly what StorHouse provided for nearline database offloading, then that would have been useful. I just don't know what Morgan Stanley's requirements were."*

3629. The issue whether what was provided did justify both the further substantial fee and its treatment as a separate component for the purpose of revenue recognition ultimately became reduced, as regards these other software additions, to whether the addition was to meet the customer's requirement or need, or simply contrived to achieve that purpose.

3630. When it was suggested to Dr Lynch that this software was not being included at the request of the customer and was added for revenue recognition purposes, he demurred, insisting that Morgan Stanley's needs would have played a role in the selection of the software, and that "*the customer won't be requesting a carburettor, but they will expect a system that actually works like a car*".

[457] StorHouse, it may be recalled from the section of this judgment in which I addressed the transaction between Autonomy and FileTek in Q4 2009 which was impugned as reciprocal (RT 3), was one of FileTek's two main products (the other being "Trusted Edge"). StorHouse was a database archiving product that allowed customers to archive databases and conduct searches across them. It had two main components: (i) StorHouse Relational File System ("RFS"), which essentially was a file system hosted in the cloud and (ii) StorHouse Relational Manager ("RM"), which was a means by which a customer could offload its database to the cloud and conduct searches across the database.

3631. The Claimants contended that the reality was that Morgan Stanley had not requested version 9 of Digital Safe, or StorHouse; nor had they requested the functionality provided by either piece of software.[458] Dr Lynch's analogy with a carburettor provided no answer: on the Defendants' case, the addition was not simply of a part necessary to make the car already provided work: it was a new piece of equipment. I have concluded that the inclusion was directed without regard to the customer's need: it was included to support the accountancy case.

Were Deloitte misled?

3632. As in the case of the Q4 2009 MS Agreement, the Defendants relied on Deloitte's approval of the Q1 2011 MS Agreement, although it is fair to note that in both contexts Deloitte's focus was on revenue recognition, rather than on testing commercial purpose and propriety (which in the ordinary course would be matters for management). Neither Deloitte (according to Mr Welham) nor the Audit Committee (according to Mr Bloomer) were provided with detailed material which would have enabled them to test how the transaction had arisen and its objectives and purposes.

3633. The Claimants elaborated on what they presented as deficiencies in what Deloitte and the Audit Committee were told and the information provided to them, relying especially on Mr Welham's evidence (which was not directly challenged and was confirmed by Mr Bloomer from the point of view of the Audit Committee) premised on the assumptions he was asked to make that:

(1) Deloitte was not told that Morgan Stanley had not requested Digital Safe version 9 or StorHouse. Similarly, the Audit Committee did not know whether Morgan Stanley had requested this software or could use it.

(2) Nor was Deloitte told that version 9 of Digital Safe did not exist at the time and that StorHouse had not been successfully integrated with Digital Safe.

(3) Further, neither was provided with Autonomy's internal exchanges, or its communications with Morgan Stanley.

3634. Subject to the modified approach I have taken, and the qualified answer I have given on the question whether or not Digital Safe version 9 existed at the time, and whether the inclusion of StorHouse differentiated the new licence from the old, I accept that the approval of Deloitte and the Audit Committee was based on a misappreciation of the facts. That in turn was based on what Deloitte was told by Autonomy. I think it unlikely that the Defendants were unaware of what Deloitte were being told. Mr Welham confirmed in cross-examination that obviously any audit view would depend on the actual facts. The fact that it is surprising that Deloitte, who must have appreciated that it was a re-re-restructuring inviting especially sceptical review, asked no more questions does not avail the Defendants.

Conclusions

3635. In my judgment:

[458] Not only is there no evidence of this in the contemporaneous documents, it is also unlikely to have been true given the *nature* of Morgan Stanley's archived data. Mr Yan's unchallenged evidence was that Morgan Stanley never put meaningful amounts of structured data (the type of data that StorHouse was designed to handle) into its Safe.

(1) Autonomy did conceive and press for the Q1 2011 MS Agreement as a means of generating recognised revenue to enable it to achieve revenue forecasts. It is more likely than not that it was that perceived advantage which prompted Mr Hussain to suggest the re-re-restructuring to Morgan Stanley; and it is clear that it was the need to achieve forecast for the quarter which explained its urgency. Revenue recognition was the objective which drove the transaction.

(2) There were ancillary benefits, including the value Mr Hill repeatedly emphasised of the *"bird in the hand"* especially at a time (and it was accepted that this was a time) of swiftly softening rates. But that did not alter the reality that the transaction was promoted, structured and eventually concluded for the overriding purpose of securing immediately recognised revenue from the sale of a licence which in reality conferred no new rights or benefits of any utility.

(3) The real essence of the transaction was that Autonomy had to offer and agree a deep discount on future storage charges as the price of an immediate licence fee of $5 million.

(4) In my judgment, therefore, the Claimants have established the factual premises of their case in respect of both of the two MS Amendment Agreements and a breach of duty and improper use of power has thereby been established.

Deutsche Bank Q1 2011 re-restructuring

3636. The third of the four Schedule 12D transactions impugned by the Claimants took place in the same quarter as the Q1 2011 MS Agreement and was made between Zantaz and Deutsche Bank.

3637. Deutsche Bank was a long-standing customer of Zantaz. On 4 October 2005, the New York branch of Deutsche Bank had entered into a three-year contract with Zantaz for email restoration services ("the Original DB Agreement"). Pursuant to the Original DB Agreement, Zantaz had agreed to provide digital archiving services on an SaaS basis for an initial storage rate of $0.105 to $0.10 per MB per annum subject to a clause which obliged Zantaz to share with Deutsche Bank the benefit of any savings resulting from a decrease in the cost of providing the services.

3638. In May 2008, shortly before the Original DB Agreement was due for renewal, the parties entered into a 17th amendment, which restructured the arrangements into a hybrid hosting contract. The Claimants referred to this as "the First DB Amendment Agreement".

3639. The core terms of the First DB Amendment Agreement, which was dated 21 May 2008, were as follows:

(1) Deutsche Bank agreed to purchase a Digital Safe licence with certain functionalities for a fee of $5.227 million;

(2) The term of the amended contract and the software license was from 1 June 2008 to 31 May 2013, subject to Deutsche Bank's rights (a) to terminate the agreement on six months' notice; and (b) to extend the arrangements for a maximum of three years from 31 May 2013, a fee of $1,045,000 being payable for each consecutive annual extension;

(3) Deutsche Bank agreed to pay storage fees of $0.0092 per MB per annum.

3640. The Claimants impugned the First DB Amendment Agreement as a Schedule 6 transaction, alleging that the immediate recognition of revenue from the sale of the Digital Safe licence was improper on the basis that the licence had no separable substance or value, did not confer any usable right or benefit on Deutsche Bank which had no intention of taking its data on-premise and its treatment as a separate component of the overall transaction was a pretence: their case was that it was merely a device to seek to justify accelerated revenue recognition.

3641. The Claimants emphasised in their written closing submissions that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain were aware of the restructuring from the outset and appear from the contemporaneous documents to have been in no doubt as to its importance to Autonomy's quarterly revenue targets. The Claimants pointed out that:

(1) On 7 February 2008, Mr Hussain told Mr Egan, among others, that "*DB are "hot" right now – so which ones are Q1 opps (and which can be made into licence)?*".

(2) The same day, Mr Jim Still, VP for North American Field Sales, informed Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch that Zantaz was looking to see if the arrangement with Deutsche Bank could "*be turned into a licence*".

(3) At the beginning of April 2008, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch letting him know that Autonomy should hit its revenue target of $117m by the end of Q2 2008 if three "*large deals*" were concluded, including the deal with Deutsche Bank.

(4) In an email copied to Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain later stressed the importance of doing the "*Digital Safe restructuring*" for Deutsche Bank "*asap*"; he explained that "*they want to buy and I am telling them they have to buy now*".

3642. The Claimants also brought to my attention documentation which they submitted appeared to suggest that, in the Defendants' own perception and from Deutsche Bank's perspective, the purpose of the deal was to achieve cost savings. Thus:

(1) In an email to Mr Hussain on 7 April 2008, an Autonomy sales representative categorised the restructure as "*cost savings / license revenue*".

(2) Later in April 2008, Mr Egan emailed Mr Hussain, copying in Dr Lynch, saying that they could now "*push Dan Marovitz much more directly on the cost savings proposition*".

(3) A few weeks later, on 8 May 2008, Mr Egan provided Deutsche Bank with an overview of the proposed restructure, referring to "*$8.2M nominal savings figure over 5 years*" and "*$5.3M real savings over 5 years or an 18% savings as compared to the current structure*" without any mention of the licence element at all.

(4) Mr Egan also attached an illustrative table of the savings that could be achieved, saying that this helped to "*communicate the kind of savings that can be realised through restructure*".

(5) Mr Hussain forwarded Mr Egan's email to Dr Lynch the same day. Mr Egan sent another email the same day to Deutsche Bank, copying in Mr Hussain, telling them that "*in the case of the Digital Safe restructure the software is currently live and yielding significant value. The restructure would create savings vs expense for Deutsche Bank*", which Mr Hussain forwarded to Dr Lynch shortly after. This, the Claimants contended, demonstrated, and was evidently Autonomy's attempt to reassure Deutsche Bank, that the restructure was only about finances and that, in substance, everything would stay the same.

(6) As with the Morgan Stanley restructures above, the software appears to have been an afterthought. On 14 May 2008, only a week before the restructure, and many weeks after negotiations began, Mr Scott emailed Dr Menell, copying in Mr Egan, asking for "*…a clear list of software to be licensed to DB as part of the current deal which contemplates a licensed Digital Safe. Please give me a call asap as we are trying to get an amendment out to DB very quickly…*".

(7) The effect of the First DB Amendment Agreement was that Deutsche Bank obtained a significant reduction in storage rates in return for paying an upfront fee to license Digital Safe, a result which was described by Mr Egan to Deutsche Bank as a "*win/win*".

3643. In addition, the Claimants identified features, said to be indicative of Deutsche Bank having no intention to take Digital Safe on-premise, so that the licence was of no utility to it. These included the fact that the term of the Digital Safe licence was coterminous with the term of the First DB Amendment Agreement, so that if it had wished to move on-premise, Deutsche Bank would have had to terminate the First DB Amendment Agreement and forfeit the sums it had paid thereunder.

3644. For reasons I have sought to set out in the preceding section of this judgment, I have accepted the Claimants' case that Autonomy, to the knowledge of the Defendants, improperly accounted for the Schedule 6 transactions. For comprehensiveness, I confirm that the features of the First DB Amendment Agreement which the Claimants brought to my attention to indicate particular grounds for considering immediate revenue recognition in respect of the licence sale to have been improper, appear to me to be consistent with, and to confirm, the general conclusion I reached in that part of this judgment.

3645. In particular, I consider of particular significance that (a) the terms of the licence and the hosting agreement were coterminous, (b) Autonomy's clear objective was immediate revenue recognition, and (c) the evidence indicated that Deutsche Bank had no intention of moving on-premise and would have forfeited sums it had paid under the First DB Amendment Agreement if it did so. These facts support the conclusion that the licence was a contrivance, and could not realistically be characterised as a separate component of the hybrid model so as to justify immediate recognition of the sale revenue in Autonomy's accounts.

3646. The Claimants did not, however, seek to impugn or claim any loss in respect of the First DB Amendment Agreement as an improper loss-making Schedule 12D transaction, though they noted that it secured for Deutsche Bank savings (and thus in a sense a concomitant reduction in overall revenue for Autonomy) of some $8.1 million (representing a saving compared to what it had to pay under the Original DB Agreement of approximately 37%). The Claimants did not claim any direct loss in respect of the First DB Amendment Agreement: it was not one of the Schedule 12D transactions. I need say no more about it and now revert to the further restructuring in respect of Autonomy's hosting agreement with Deutsche Bank which was the subject matter of the Schedule 12D claim. I refer to this as the Second DB Amendment Agreement which as mentioned in paragraph 3636 above, was, after long negotiation, finally executed in Q1 2011.

The Second DB Amendment Agreement: the restructuring negotiations

3647. The re-restructuring negotiations commenced some time earlier, in April 2010. The Claimants spent some time in chronicling what they presented as Autonomy's *"multiple (failed) attempts to push the deal through each quarter, until it was finally executed in Q1 2011"*.

3648. Much time was spent in the parties' respective closing submissions on the exchanges of correspondence, both internal within Autonomy and between Autonomy and Deutsche Bank:

    (1) The Claimants' aim was to show that the process was initiated by Autonomy and that substantially the whole focus was on Autonomy trying to get Deutsche Bank to enter into a new licence and pay a fee in return for offering Deutsche Bank considerable data storage savings, and on Autonomy trying to find ways of justifying a new licence as conferring substantive rights different from those that Deutsche Bank already had under the First DB Amendment Agreement.

    (2) The Defendants' aim, on the other hand, was to show that (a) it was Deutsche Bank which approached Autonomy to try to negotiate downward its storage charges on the basis (as it stated in an email from Mr Dan Manners of Deutsche Bank to Mr Sullivan of 12 April 2010) that it was *"looking to dramatically increase [its] data volumes in the UK as [it was] moving to a capture all scenario"* and wished to discuss how pricing might be *"extrapolate[d] to the larger scope"*; (b) Deutsche Bank needed and wanted further software and software rights and that there was real substance therefore in its corresponding need for a new and more extensive licence, and (c) what Autonomy might theoretically stand to lose in consequence of reducing its data storage charges it would in reality gain from retaining Deutsche Bank as a customer and storing considerably increased amounts of data for it.

3649. In my view, all these strands are evident from the documentary evidence. I can summarise the position as having been that Deutsche Bank, appreciating that Autonomy was certainly keen, and indeed in something of a hurry, to strike a further agreement, deployed both carrot and stick. Deutsche Bank made clear that its corporate plans included a substantial migration of its data, but (hinting at moving to a competitor) that it was not going to increase the usage of its UK Digital Safe unless it negotiated a substantial overall fee reduction, and obtained also a discount on an IDOL-isation project for its Lucene Safe which it considered it required to enable full migration into Digital Safe. It pressed, in particular, for free installation of an IDOL index and full IDOL functionality.

3650. When the Second DB Amendment Agreement was eventually concluded on 31 March 2011 its provisions included the following:

    (1) Deutsche Bank agreed a fee of $7.1 million to license a package as before, but now including Digital Safe version 9 together with IDOL dense-cell (sometimes known as "Ironman") implementation;

    (2) The term of the agreement was extended to 31 March 2016, (and thus a three-year extension on the First DB Amendment Agreement);

    (3) Storage rates were reduced to $0.00445 per MB per annum;

    (4) Deutsche Bank would be given a credit if it increased the data in its UK Digital Safe from 0.34 TB to 2.37 TB.

3651. It should be noted that Deutsche Bank was previously a Lucene user and had not licensed an IDOL version of Digital Safe (e.g. version 8).

Claimants' case

3652. The Claimants alleged that:

(1) Deutsche Bank had no need or use for and had not requested IDOL dense-cell implementation, because it operated a Lucene–powered safe which used only Lucene dense-cells; and

(2) Digital Safe version 9 did not exist as of 31 March 2011, and Deutsche Bank had never requested a licence for it. This was substantially the same allegation (*mutatis mutandis*) as was made in respect of the Q1 2011 MS Agreement (see above).

3653. In paragraph 106Y of its RRAPoC, the Claimants invited the conclusion that:

> *"It is to be inferred… that Autonomy included these licences in the software definition in the Second DB Amendment Agreement in order, in part, to deliberately mislead Deloitte into believing that the licence fee of US$7.1 million had been paid in return for new software that DB had requested, and intended to use, and thus to support the case for recognising the revenue from the licence fee upfront, when in reality no new software had been requested by, or was (in the case of Digital Safe version 9) to be made available, or (in the case of IDOL dense cell capability) of any use, to DB."*

3654. As to (1) in paragraph 3652 above, according to the Claimants:

(1) IDOL dense cells were not a licensable piece of software at all; they were part of the architecture for the Digital Safe system, and it therefore made no sense at all to include them in a software license that was apparently to be delivered electronically;[459] and

(2) In any event, IDOL dense-cells were of no use to Deutsche Bank since Deutsche Bank had a Lucene Safe and such dense cells were incompatible with Lucene-powered safes, for which there were Lucene-dedicated dense cells.

3655. Further, and in anticipation of the argument that it was a substantive thing of value provided under the agreement which would also facilitate the conversion of Deutsche Bank to an IDOL safe with greater data usage, the Claimants also ran an argument in their closing oral submissions that the provision in the agreement for dense cell installation and implementation (described as merely *"included within the software"*) simply confirmed a commitment made by Autonomy (through Mr Egan) for a free upgrade under the First DB Amendment Agreement. They argued that this could not itself substantiate the licence arrangements under the Second DB Amendment Agreement.

3656. On the basis of those propositions, the Claimants contended that the only real substance of the Second DB Amendment Agreement, and the true *quid pro quo* for the licence fee, lay in its provisions for data storage fee reductions, resulting in losses to

[459] Mr Goodfellow stated in his witness statement that *"[b]uying and implementing dense cells was an Autonomy overhead – the benefits derived from dense cells were only felt by Autonomy (through a reduction of its internal costs). It was not a piece of software that was licensed to clients."* Mr Yan said a dense cell was a piece of *"storage architecture"*. Mr Sullivan stated in an internal Autonomy email in August 2012 that *"Cells can be considered appliances because they are hardware with software pre-installed."*

Zantaz/Autonomy. They accordingly denounced the licence element as a dishonest contrivance, which purported to give rights which were illusory to software which DB did not want and could not use, and in the case of Digital Safe version 9 did not exist, simply in order to enable Autonomy to present it as sale of goods generating revenue which could be recognised "upfront" but which should have been spread over the term of the Second DB Amendment Agreement.

3657. That argument primarily goes to the accountancy issue of revenue recognition. But the Claimants relied on it to show that the transaction lacked any proper commercial purpose, and caused loss. As to loss, they submitted that the savings to Deutsche Bank from lower data storage fees (estimated internally at $8.6 million over five years) were considerably in excess of the licence fee ($7.1 million); and that any suggestion that the lower rate would be balanced or exceeded by greater ingested volume (as Dr Lynch did quite strenuously suggest in cross-examination) was false. They submitted that in fact, modelling at the time suggested that ingested volumes were expected to decrease, not increase, following the transaction.

3658. The Claimants concluded that not only was the licence a contrivance, and the transaction was simply an example of Autonomy resorting to the purchase of its own revenue at considerable cost. They submitted that the Defendants cannot have believed that the Second DB Amendment Agreement, which resulted in reduced revenues and profits, was in the commercial interests of ASL, nor can Mr Hussain have believed that it was in the commercial interests of Zantaz. On that basis, the transaction was improper, and the Defendants were in breach of their duties to ASL and, in the case of Mr Hussain, to Zantaz, in bringing about the transaction. The company which had suffered the loss should be compensated accordingly.

3659. The Claimants calculated that the loss arising from the Second DB Amendment Agreement was $6,368,357.[460] The loss has been calculated in the same way as the Q4 2009 and Q1 2011 MS Agreements. This was set out at length by Mr Bezant in his Supplemental Report.

Defendants' answers to Claimants' case

3660. The Defendants refuted this case in its entirety. They mounted a sustained attack on the evidence of each of the Claimants' witnesses, both as to its apparent but suspicious consistency and as to its revealed and revealing inconsistency. As indicated above, the witnesses marshalled a great deal of detail, but it can fairly be summarised by reference to the principal propositions in the Claimants' case as I have summarised those above.

3661. The nub of the Defendants' answer to the Claimants' proposition that Deutsche Bank had no need for IDOL dense cell implementation, supposedly because it operated a Lucene–powered safe which used only Lucene dense cells, was that the documentary evidence contradicts this. The Defendants contended that it shows that, on the

[460] In the RRAPoC, Schedule 12D, the loss is stated to be $6,724,420. This difference is the result of three errors, which are summarised in Table A13-12-2 of Mr Bezant's Fourth Report. The first is explained in Mr Bezant's instructions, and arose from an error in calculating the application of various volume-based archiving credits, which results in an adjustment of $381,816 in the Defendants' favour. Mr Bezant has confirmed that this adjustment is correct. The second arises from a failure to include certain actual data volumes, and results in an adjustment of $14,363 in the Claimants' favour. The third arises from a formula inconsistency, and results in an adjustment of $11,390 in the Claimants' favour.

contrary, Deutsche Bank (a) had, for some time before the re-restructure, wanted to IDOL-ise its Lucene Safe, and to utilise IDOL functionality and search on its archived data; (b) initially sought to brow-beat Autonomy into providing it for free (which Mr Sullivan dismissed in an internal email dated 9 December 2009 as *"an absurd position"* for them to take *"without a deal"*) but (c) eventually negotiated the provision of IDOL Digital Safe and IDOL dense cell implementation as part of the Second DB Amendment Agreement, as the final wording of that agreement confirmed.

3662. The Defendants pointed to a number of what they depicted as unsatisfactory features of the evidence given by the Claimants' witnesses, and in particular:

(1) Mr Yan had said in his witness statement that he did not even understand what was meant by *"IDOL dense cell implementation"*; but he was reminded in the course of his cross-examination that he was personally involved from 2011 in the project to convert Deutsche Bank's Lucene-powered Digital Safe into an IDOL-powered safe. Once taken through some contemporaneous email exchanges (and especially an email dated 31 May 2011 from Mr Goodfellow) he accepted that this phrase probably referred to the use of ironman/dense cells for the project to IDOL-ise Deutsche Bank's safe.

(2) Mr Wang said in his witness statement that he had not heard of *"IDOL dense cell implementation"* before. He too omitted to mention the project to IDOL-ise Deutsche Bank's Digital Safe, notwithstanding his own involvement in it. With some initial reluctance, he eventually conceded in cross-examination that active steps were indeed taken to move all of Deutsche Bank's data to an IDOL-powered Digital Safe and that he *"would not disagree with Mr Yan…if that is what Mr Yan had attested to"* that the phrase from the contract most likely referred to the use of ironman/dense cells for this purpose.

(3) Mr Goodfellow did remember the project to IDOL-ise the Deutsche Bank safes but he could offer no explanation to explain the omission from his witness statement of any mention of it other than to say that he did not intend to give a misleading impression.

3663. The Defendants relied on the above also to counter what Mr Hussain described in his written closing submissions as the Claimants' *"fall-back position"*, which was advanced via the evidence of Mr Goodfellow. This was to the effect that even if Deutsche Bank did require the ironman/dense cells, that could only be to enable the IDOL-isation of its Digital Safe, and Mr Egan had already given Deutsche Bank a separate undertaking, outside the contract, to IDOL-ise the Digital Safes for free. That was suggested by the Claimants to provide another reason for doubting the commerciality of the Second DB Amendment Agreement and for presenting it as in substance simply an agreement to pre-pay data storage charges as the means of obtaining an unusually deep discount.

3664. The Defendants objected to this *"fall-back position"* on the basis that it was a new line of argument that had not been pleaded[461]. They also dismissed it as *"another bad point"* They stressed that it was quite plain that the discussions for IDOL-isation took place within the context of the discussions for the restructuring, and the obligation to

[461] As succinctly summarised by Mr Hill QC in his oral closing, *"… It's a new case. It is contrary to the pleadings and their own witness statement. The pleaded case is that Deutsche Bank couldn't use this software, not that it could."*

provide Deutsche Bank with IDOL dense cell implementation was contained in the Second DB Amendment Agreement itself and not elsewhere, and was in terms stipulated by Deutsche Bank by amendment to the travelling draft.

3665. The Defendants further emphasised that:

(1) Although (as Mr Hussain put it) *"Cs may not like it, the legal position is that [Autonomy] and Deutsche Bank contractually agreed that the licence would include Digital safe version 9 with IDOL dense cell implementation."*

(2) There was no suggestion that the contract was some sort of a sham; and furthermore, Deutsche Bank took the trouble of amending the draft of the Second DB Amendment Agreement (by email dated 11 March 2011) to tighten Autonomy's obligations from the provision of *"IDOL dense cell capability"* to *"IDOL dense cell implementation"*.

(3) The contract is the only place where the agreement to provide the dense cell implementation is formally recorded;

(4) Mr Goodfellow ultimately accepted in cross-examination that Deutsche Bank did need to establish a contractual entitlement to the IDOL Digital Safe software, and that could only be found in the Second DB Amendment Agreement.

(5) He also eventually agreed that, contrary to the message given in his witness statement, Deutsche Bank did have a use for IDOL dense cell implementation, specifically wanted it and had contracted for it.

3666. As regards the Claimants' second proposition (that Digital Safe version 9 simply did not exist as of 31 March 2011, see paragraph 3656 above), the Defendants' case was that (a) version 9 was put up on Automater, (b) it was an IDOL version of Digital Safe; (c) it was put up with the active involvement of Mr Wang, Mr Lucini and Mr Goodfellow, (d) it was available for delivery, and was delivered, to Deutsche Bank, and (e) none of the witnesses suggested that he thought he was involved in anything improper. Furthermore, and as I return to below, Dr Lynch contends that he was not involved in any way.

3667. I have addressed this issue as to whether Digital Safe version 9 was in existence at the time in the context of the Q1 2011 MS Agreement. I add only that in the context of the Second DB Amendment Agreement the Defendants submitted that the Claimants' witness statements were once again seriously misleading and unaccountably failed to disclose the witnesses' role in providing version 9 of Digital Safe to Deutsche Bank via Automater. In particular:

(1) Although Mr Wang had stated in his witness statement that *"a customer bought version 9 of Digital Safe at a time it did not exist"*, he neglected to mention that he had been the person responsible for providing Mr Goodfellow, and indirectly Mr Booth, with the version of Digital Safe that was put on Automater as version 9 for delivery to customers. Under cross-examination, Mr Wang (a little equivocally) accepted that the file that he provided to Mr Goodfellow to put on Automater was *"eventually put on Automater as version 9"*. He accepted that the file that he provided would have been likely to be Digital Safe software. He also accepted that, if it was going to satisfy

Deutsche Bank's requirements, it needed to be an IDOL version of the software. Mr Wang could give no reason why his own involvement in getting version 9 onto Automater was not dealt with in his witness statement.

(2) Similarly, Mr Lucini had stated in his witness statement that he could not recall what was uploaded: *"it may have been a copy of an earlier version of Digital Safe, or possibly just an empty zip file."* Mr Lucini had added in the same paragraph of his witness statement that he recalled *"someone, possibly Dr Menell, telling me that it did not matter"* what was uploaded. As also mentioned in the context of the Q1 2011 MS Agreement, the Defendants submitted that both were fabrications. They dismissed Mr Lucini's evidence as an incoherent invention, falsified by Mr Wang's evidence, and demonstrating that he was an untruthful witness. It was, they said, obviously inconsistent with the sequence of events apparent from the documents which do not suggest any involvement on the part of Dr Menell or anyone other than Mr Lucini, Mr Goodfellow, Mr Wang and Mr Booth;

(3) Mr Goodfellow's witness statement also grossly understated his role in the event, referring only to an email from Mr Lucini stating *"okay, we will put it up there"* and not to his own actions in implementing that. Under cross examination, Mr Goodfellow had to accept that he was the person who actually uploaded version 9 onto Automater, that although he was now trying to suggest that he thought version 9 and version 7.4 were the same, he did not say so or suggest that at the time, that that would have been unlikely since version 7.4 was a Lucene version, and that he knew that the fact that version 9 was for IDOL-isation purposes and was being supplied was important for revenue recognition purposes. The Defendants characterised Mr Goodfellow's evidence as contrived and dishonest with a constant but irrelevant refrain, which appeared to be a peddled script and was little more than a distraction, that IDOL-isation was not provided under the Second DB Amendment Agreement but by a prior commitment made by Mr Egan (see above).

3668. The Defendants also relied on the further evidence showing the inclusion of Digital Safe version 9 in the Automater record of shippables/deliverables, and its compatibility with Windows, which I have previously addressed in the context of the Claimants' like contentions in respect of the Q1 2011 MS Agreement: see paragraphs 3624 to 3631 above.

3669. More generally, the Defendants stressed the overall commerciality of the transaction:

(1) Contrary to some parts of the Claimants' submission, Deutsche Bank did need a licence: as noted above, it had not previously had any licence to operate IDOL-based software[462] on its Lucene Safe.

[462] The Claimants were inconsistent in this regard. They appeared in parts of their written closing submission to persist with an argument that Deutsche Bank did not need a licence because none was needed for initial installation of an IDOL Digital Safe. However, on page 1956 of their written closing submissions, the Claimants did concede that *"Admittedly, if Deutsche Bank's hosted Safe was being converted to IDOL, and it wanted a licence to the Digital Safe software deployed on that Safe, it would need a licence to the IDOL version of the Digital Safe software, as Mr Wang accepted in cross-examination…"* That is what was provided for: what Deutsche Bank wanted and was getting was (a) Ironman/dense cells and implementation and (b) version 8 or 9 of IDOL Digital Safe software to use IDOL functionality paired with its Lucene safe.

(2) It is true that both parties had an agenda in wishing to include software in the new licence which would clearly differentiate the new licence from the old: it was important to Deutsche Bank that the new licence should be in addition to, and not terminate, the old licence, because it wished to amortise the old licence in its accounts, which required its continuation; and it was important to Autonomy that the new licence should be a substantive sale of goods, for all the reasons discussed previously.

(3) It is true also that both parties recognised that the differentiation was in part driven by accountancy objectives. But what was eventually agreed to be licenced was materially different, and was useful to Deutsche Bank, as well as to Autonomy (not least in terms of the value of market penetration).

(4) Further, the Defendants contended that from Autonomy's point of view, the Second DB Amendment Agreement:

(a) turned the speculative prospect of Deutsche Bank extending (at its option) the remaining term of the First DB Amendment Agreement beyond 2013 into a contractually certain term until 2016, in circumstances where rapidly falling data storage rates (and costs) meant that customers were naturally looking to improve their 'deal' rather than simply roll over;

(b) locked in revenue and greatly increased the likelihood of retaining Deutsche Bank as a customer both in this context and in other business contexts then being pursued: that was a positive in itself, and was the means of avoiding the very considerable negative in the market place of a large multinational bank leaving Autonomy;

(c) brought Deutsche Bank into the IDOL ecosystem and that would have provided perceived upsell opportunities, as envisaged in Mr Egan's email of 20 December 2010 where he explicitly stated (in respect of the IDOL-isation) that:

> "*this would ready the safe for additional use of Autonomy software that uses advanced IDOL function like DSMail or ECA or other but those products would still need to be licensed by DB for usage and hardware expense can scale depending upon the scale of the DB usage*"

(d) generated an incentive for Deutsche Bank to store more data in due course with Autonomy in circumstances where the migration of its data was on the cards; and

(e) strengthened the ties between Autonomy and Deutsche Bank and the prospect of future collaboration, it being recorded in an email from Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch dated 30 November 2011 written to brief Dr Lynch before a lunch engagement with Mr Dan Marovitz of Deutsche Bank that, in addition to Digital Safe UK and US there were existing relationships between the Bank and Autonomy in Supervision US and UK, ECA in the UK, Search Global Internet and an "Electronic commerce project in London"; and Mr Hussain

wrote that Deutsche *"want to use us in more areas: IDOLise the DS, Supervision in Asia and DS in Japan"*.

My assessment

3670. I turn first in my assessment to the dispute as to whether Deutsche Bank had any use for ironman/dense cells, and whether the inclusion of ironman/dense cells in the software covered by the licence granted as part of the Second DB Amendment Agreement was (as the Claimants in effect seemed to me to be contending) window-dressing to give credence to the presentation of the new licence as more extensive than the first.

3671. It seems to me that the key to the dispute in this regard is to determine quite what ironman/dense cells actually were, and what their use actually was.

3672. A premise of the Defendants' case was that ironman/dense cells comprised software, properly included as such in the Second DB Amendment Agreement and appropriately treated as valuable software items. This, on that case, demonstrated that the licence relating to the Second DB Amendment Agreement was materially more extensive than that relating to the first.

3673. As mentioned previously (see paragraph 3654 above)[463], the Claimants depicted the dense cells differently, as hardware, and not a licensable piece of software at all so that the licence to *"IDOL dense cell implementation"* was a *"mirage"*. As Mr Goodfellow explained in his witness statement:

> *"Over time, as technology improved, Autonomy updated its hardware and storage cells. When this happened, cells usually became "denser" and this reduced the cost to Autonomy of storing data. Buying and implementing dense cells was an Autonomy overhead – the benefits derived from dense cells were only felt by Autonomy (through a reduction of its internal costs). It was not a piece of software that was licensed to clients…"*

3674. This explanation, and its designation of dense cells as part of the hardware architecture, was echoed and supported by both Mr Yan and by Mr Sullivan. Although the Defendants criticised Mr Goodfellow sharply for not acknowledging, and as they saw it, seeking to obscure, both (a) his knowledge of and involvement in the project for IDOL-isation of Deutsche Bank's Lucene safe in his witness statement, and (b) that ironman/dense cells were proposed to be deployed to enable it, neither his evidence nor that of Mr Yan and Mr Sullivan that such dense cells were hardware and not a piece of software that was licenced to clients was challenged. I accept that evidence: ironman/dense cells were hardware and not software and were not licensable as software.

[463] And the footnote to the paragraph which I repeat here for convenience: Mr Goodfellow stated in his witness statement that *"[b]uying and implementing dense cells was an Autonomy overhead – the benefits derived from dense cells were only felt by Autonomy (through a reduction of its internal costs). It was not a piece of software that was licensed to clients."* Mr Yan said a dense cell was a piece of *"storage architecture"*. Mr Sullivan stated in an internal Autonomy email in August 2012 that *"Cells can be considered appliances because they are hardware with software pre-installed."*

3675. Two points made by Mr Goodfellow then fall into place. First, the omission from his witness statement of any reference to the fact that dense cells were proposed to be deployed in the project to IDOL-ise Deutsche Bank's Lucene safe was by no means as open to criticism as the Defendants suggested it was. Once it is understood that the dense cells were only to be deployed by Autonomy, the Defendants' contention that Mr Goodfellow, Mr Yan and Mr Sullivan were all disguising their utility to Deutsche Bank carries little force. Secondly, his point that another reason why the inclusion of the dense cells in the licence was window dressing, was that Autonomy had already agreed to provide them as part of its project to IDOL-ise Deutsche Bank's safe also is clarified and compelling. It was his evidence, elicited in cross-examination, that Autonomy had indeed committed to the project and more particularly, had agreed to do it, and thus incidentally provided the means of doing so including the ironman cells, for free.

3676. The pleading point then seems to me to fall away also. None of this was new. It was not a *"fall back position"* as it was described in Mr Hussain's written closing submissions, nor a *"rear guard response"* as described in Dr Lynch's. It was all part of the Claimants' original case that the extension of the licence purportedly to cover dense cells was window dressing, as indeed I find it to have been.

3677. The only other respect in which the licence granted in the context of the Second DB Amendment Agreement was said to give more extensive rights to software than did the earlier licence was the purported provision of "Version 9".

3678. I have set out in my discussion of the same point in the context of the Morgan Stanley Q1 2011 transaction the reasons for my conclusion that this too was window dressing, and I need not repeat them.

3679. In my judgment, and in agreement with the submission to that effect made by the Claimants, the Defendants' reliance on the "software" that was licensed to Deutsche Bank as the mainstay of their argument that the licence had true substance is misconceived. I endorse and adopt the Claimants' conclusion that the true position is that Deutsche Bank paid the $7.1 million licence fee in exchange for savings; the addition of what purported to be software was an afterthought. In the case of what was described as "version 9" it was not new; in the case of the dense cells it was not software at all; and in neither case did the licence provide anything of utility which Deutsche Bank had not been provided with or already promised or available for free.

3680. As in the case of the Morgan Stanley transactions I would accept that the transaction did offer some benefits. Dr Lynch described the deal as *"a very elegant solution to protect the value in Zantaz's future relationship with Deutsche Bank"*. I would not discount the value in customer retention, especially since (as I have already noted in paragraph 3649 above) Deutsche Bank's wont was to strike a hard bargain using carrot and stick, and it had (for example) already expressly threatened *"to move our email platform…to a hosted Microsoft solution"*.

3681. But none of this was what drove the transaction. The essential characteristic of the deal was (as described in the Claimants' written closing submissions) *"savings for Deutsche Bank in return for upfront revenue for Autonomy"*. What drove the transaction, and its timing, was Mr Hussain's desperate need for more revenue: in the words of an email dated 3 December 2010 from Mr Hussain to Mr Sullivan subject-headed *"what i need"*, the transaction was an *"absolute must"*.

3682. That imperative, and the objective of the transaction, were well known to Dr Lynch, and I infer from all the circumstances, shared and approved by him. He could have been in no doubt about the driver. On 10 December 2010, Mr Hussain had sent him an email containing the following:

> "*Really don't know what to do mike. As I guessed revenue fell away completely yet SMS report shows massive activity. But I speak with the vp's who are far more accurate. Also stouff, Joel and mike I think keep separate sheets and unless I am v wrong don't discuss the sheets hence plane crashes and they don't know. We've covered up with bofa and hopefully db and Doi but if latter 2 don't happen it's totally bad.*"[464]

3683. I can deal much more briefly with the Claimants' allegation that Deloitte were misled.

The Claimants' allegations that Deloitte and the Audit Committee were misled

3684. I accept the Claimants' case that Deloitte were misled about the true nature of the transaction with Deutsche Bank, and in particular, were not told that the new software licensed to Deutsche Bank was inserted only at the last minute or that version 9 only existed in the sense explained in paragraphs 3626 and 3627 above.

3685. I see no reason to doubt Mr Welham's evidence in his witness statement that if:

> *"the inclusion of additional software in the contractual documentation was made only at the last minute…simply to support an argument that the licence was of new software, then that would undermine the supposed commercial rationale for the deal and call into question the recognition of the revenue, as well as suggesting that the documentation had been drafted in a manner to mislead Deloitte. It would also be a matter of real concern if, as I am asked to assume, the additional software that was purportedly being sold included software that did not in fact exist or which could not have been used by Deutsche Bank."*

3686. The Claimants supplemented this with an allegation that Autonomy's Audit Committee had not been provided with Autonomy's internal exchanges, or its communications with Deutsche Bank, and did not know whether Deutsche Bank had requested the licensed software, whether they could use it, or whether it had already been promised to Deutsche Bank separately to the restructure. More particularly, it was said, the Audit Committee did not know that Deutsche Bank was motivated to enter the transaction on the basis of the savings that it was offered, rather than any interest in the software that was ultimately licensed; nor that Autonomy entered into the transaction so as to accelerate revenue recognition.

3687. The fact that, as it was, both Deloitte and the Audit Committee approved the transaction is, in my judgment, of no assistance to the Defendants. In my judgment, the Claimants' allegation that the Q1 2011 Deutsche Bank re-restructuring was commercially unjustified and a breach of duty and improper use of power has been established. I shall consider later what loss was thereby caused.

Metropolitan Life

[464] Emphasis added.

3688. Chronologically the last of the impugned Schedule 12D transactions was a further restructuring in Q2 2011 of a hybrid hosting contract between Autonomy Inc and Metropolitan Life Insurance Company ("MetLife") which had been concluded in June 2010.

3689. Like Deutsche Bank, MetLife had been a long-standing customer of Zantaz. Until the end of Q2 2010 it had contracted with Zantaz on a SaaS basis, on the terms of an agreement dated as of 15 March 2002. At the end of Q2 2010, MetLife and Autonomy Inc agreed an amendment and restructuring of their existing SaaS arrangement to a hybrid arrangement ("the First MLIC Amendment Agreement"), made as of 30 June 2010.

3690. Under the First MLIC Amendment Agreement:

(1) MetLife agreed to license Digital Safe and Related Software for a licence fee of $7.025 million; and

(2) MetLife agreed to pay storage rates starting at $0.001313 per MB per month ($0.015756 per MB per annum) and reducing to $0.001125 per MB per month ($0.0135 per MB per annum) in the fourth year of the contract;

(3) The agreement was for a five-year term ending on 30 June 2015, and MetLife had options to extend for additional one-year periods.

3691. In conformity with the usual pattern, (a) Mr Hussain had needed and pressed for the deal to achieve quarterly forecasts (he described it in an email to Mr Chamberlain and Ms Gustafsson as *"a key deal for the quarter")* and (b) in its negotiations, Autonomy's sales pitch focused on the potential savings from the restructure over time, while ensuring that Autonomy secured an upfront licence fee on which it could rely for revenue recognition. Autonomy made no secret of this: and in an email to Mr Hussain, Mr Sass said "*I shared that rev rec will guide what we can do"*.

3692. According to a spreadsheet prepared by Autonomy for MetLife, MetLife stood to save $10.6 million over five years from entering into the First MLIC Amendment Agreement. Even so, MetLife initially balked at the licence fee, and Autonomy eventually agreed slightly extended payment terms, which became terms of the deal.

3693. Barely a year later, in May 2011, Autonomy approached MetLife about the possibility of a further restructuring with the inducement that it would lower storage rates again. Dr Lynch did not dispute that it was Autonomy that made the first approach.

3694. The initial term of the First MLIC Amendment Agreement then still had around four years left to run. Mr Hussain's written closing submissions noted, however, that under the First MLIC Amendment Agreement MetLife was paying more ($0.015756 per MB per annum) than Morgan Stanley had paid in 2008 ($0.0092 per MB per annum) and that MetLife's rates were plainly uncompetitive in light of the rapid fall in the costs of hosting.

3695. Nevertheless, Autonomy initially proposed only a reduction in maintenance and support fees. On 2 June 2011, Mr Sass sent Mr Egan a draft of his proposal to MetLife, setting out three different options, each involving the abolition of the maintenance fee. Mr Sass noted that Autonomy was "*proposing a licence "refresh" of the Digital Safe/Audit Center/Supervisor/Investigator Software (aka 2010 License software). This*

refreshed licence grant will include all the software licensed under the June 2010 agreement"; in respect of two options, it would also extend the expiration date of the licence.

3696. The Claimants drew my attention to Mr Egan's response and its aftermath: "*I would change word "refresh" to "increase" for both reve rec purposes and so that they can continue to amortize the license they have*". Mr Sass proposed "*update*" instead of "*refresh*" or "*increase*", noting a concern, at least with one scenario, "*that we are not adding anything per se*". Mr Egan agreed, indicating that Mr Sass would have to "*<u>figure out how to [add] something</u>*" to the agreement. Mr Sass sent the proposal to Mr Kelly the same day (2 June 2011).

3697. MetLife were not interested in paying upfront simply for a reduction in maintenance. When that became clear, Mr Sass proposed a generous reduction of 60% in storage rates in return for an upfront licence fee of $5.8 million. Having made the offer, Mr Sass reported to Ms Gustafsson that he had what he called *"sellers remorse"* that it was too generous to MetLife. Ms Gustafsson reassured him:

> "*Don't worry! It is a five year deal, and they are only getting 25% discount on NPV – I have seen many higher than that! We are close to Q end so if we want a deal then we have to get them focussed straight away*".

3698. MetLife again balked at the licence fee, prolonging the negotiation. Mr Sass sent an email to Ms Gustafsson on 16 June 2011 requesting *"immediate help"* and reporting that though MetLife *"like the deal"* they were *"fishing for a better deal"* and were asking (a) to extend by a further year from five to six year to enable them to amortise the cost of the licence over that longer period, (b) to reduce the licence fee and (c) to reduce the storage cost. He asked Ms Gustafsson to *"do some analysis (and magic)."* The upshot was a re-engineering of the proposal to (i) reduce the licence fee to $5.5 million, (ii) increase the term to 63 months and (iii) further reduce storage charges to $0.0004888 per MB per month.

3699. As that summary of the exchanges demonstrates, there was no focus or even mention in the negotiating process on what software was to be licensed to MetLife to attempt to justify the sizeable upfront licence fee. As at 13 June 2011, nothing had been *"figure[d] out"* (see paragraph 3696 above). Mr Crumbacher reminded Mr Sass on that date that he needed to identify some software to license: "*you didn't state what software your licensing [sic]. Is this a termination of the old license (Digital Safe) and then a relicense of the same/most recent version of the Digital Safe software with a lower maintenance rate?*". Mr Sass told him that it was a "*relicense with lower maintenance and lower reduced storage*". Not until 17 June 2011 was any alteration made to the software to be provided; even then, according to the Claimants, it was only because Mr Hussain decided that a DiscoverEngine SharePoint connector should be included. There is nothing in the evidence to suggest that the addition was requested by MetLife, or that the additional functionality was actually required. I elaborate on this in paragraph 3711 to 3714 below.

3700. A deal was agreed just before the end of the quarter. Mr Hussain was plainly involved in the negotiations and the ultimate transaction; and he was, for example, fully aware of and involved in the unilateral addition of software to the solution provided.

3701. Dr Lynch denied having had anything more than an awareness *"at a high level, very high level"* that a deal was being negotiated. However, he acknowledged in cross-examination that he had been informed that Autonomy was negotiating a further deal with MetLife, and he did not dispute that he would have known from one of Mr Hussain's many revenue target lists that the deal would be important in terms of meeting Autonomy's quarterly revenue targets. Further, he implied that he knew enough about it to try to justify the transaction (in fact, incorrectly) on the basis that MetLife was *"an unhappy customer"* (as further elaborated in paragraph 3704 below). This evidence was typical of Dr Lynch's attempts to offer explanations of a transaction which were to his advantage whilst protesting he had next to no knowledge of the transactions themselves. The Claimants submitted that *"it is to be inferred"* that Mr Hussain *"kept [Dr Lynch] informed"* of the matters complained of. In all the circumstances and in light of the instances and pattern of Dr Lynch's involvement and the way Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain worked together as chronicled in this judgment, the inference is justified. I have been left in little doubt that he knew what was going on, at least sufficiently to know what was Autonomy's true objective (revenue acceleration to help plug gaps in achieving forecast).

3702. Under the Q2 2011 deal ("the Q2 2011 MetLife restructuring"):

(1) MetLife agreed to licence Digital Safe and Related Software, and the five year term under the Q2 2010 hybrid hosting agreement was extended for 15 months to September 2016, for an aggregate fee of $5.5 million;

(2) DiscoverEngine was added to MetLife's licensed software package;

(3) MetLife's monthly storage fees were substantially reduced.

Claimants' case

3703. The essential factual elements of the Claimants' claim in respect of the Q2 2011 MetLife restructuring were the Claimants' propositions that:

(1) The Q2 2011 MetLife restructuring was conceived and instigated by Autonomy as a pretext to enable Autonomy to generate immediately recognised revenue from a licence sale at the cost to Autonomy of discounted data storage rates and thus a reduced future revenue stream;

(2) Its true substance was simply a payment by MetLife of the licence fee in return for a considerable reduction in data storage charges (under which MetLife stood to save in excess of $10 million over the term, almost double the licence fee);

(3) The only difference in terms of the software licensed to MetLife under the Q2 2011 restructure compared to its previous agreement was a licence to a connector called DiscoverEngine that enabled the extraction of data from a Microsoft Office document management and storage system, known as SharePoint;

(4) DiscoverEngine was introduced into the Q2 2011 MetLife restructuring by Autonomy at the very last minute, without any demonstration to, or discussion with, MetLife or any assessment of its suitability for MetLife;

(5) Initially, Autonomy proposed to provide DiscoverEngine for free; the true reasons why DiscoverEngine was included in the Q2 2011 MetLife restructuring had nothing to do with any requirement of MetLife and everything to do with (a) seeking to mislead Deloitte into believing that MetLife wanted and intended to use DiscoverEngine and the licence fee had been paid for this new software, and so as to justify to Deloitte another licence and another upfront licence fee and (b) assisting Autonomy in persuading Deloitte that there was a genuine demand for DiscoverEngine from Autonomy's customers;

(6) In terms of the interests of Autonomy as a corporate entity, there was no justification or commercial rationale for the Q2 2011 MetLife restructuring, especially during the currency of the earlier hybrid deal and so soon after it: there was no basis for any suggestion that the restructuring was prompted by any real concern about customer retention; and

(7) Both the Defendants knew all this.

I address these points, and the Defendants' responses to them, in greater detail below.

3704. Dr Lynch suggested when he was cross-examined about this deal that his memory of the background of the Q2 2011 restructuring was that MetLife were *"an unhappy customer…it had been a bit of a bumpy relationship with MetLife."* He suggested this was another matter that could be clarified from the *"corpus"* of documents. He also said that he did not think they were thinking of leaving, but *"had had issues with us"*; and that he did not know who had approached whom. He accepted that he had not mentioned this in either of his witness statements.

3705. No documents were found by the Claimants in the *"corpus"* supporting Dr Lynch's memory; and none was suggested to Dr Lynch when he was re-examined. The Claimants instead relied on and put to Dr Lynch an email dated 16 June 2011 from Mr Sass to Ms Prentis (now Ms Gustafsson) stating (as they put to Dr Lynch) *"We are in good shape…they like working with us";* but that was after the proposal for restructuring had been floated: the missing words after *"We are in good shape"* were *"(meaning they like the deal)…"*; so the email does not support either side.

3706. Points of general application in the context of hosted restructurings made in Mr Casey's oral closing submissions on behalf of Mr Hussain were that (a) hosted customers were well aware that storage rates were going down fast, could transfer or reduce data storage needs at any time, were *"hard-nosed"* and could be expected to be on constant watch for a better deal; (b) although the Claimants had emphasised that once committed to data storage with one host, there were difficulties in moving and customers tended to "stick", that was *"overstated"* and there were at least two documented examples of very large movements of data during the Relevant Period and a number of threats by other customers to do the same; (c) it was *"far-fetched to suggest that what Zantaz/Autonomy should have done was to sit back and expect customers to pay whatever happened to be the current rate for hosting"*; and (d) a post-acquisition email referred to MetLife as being *"very sensitive to pricing".*

3707. I would, of course, accept that pro-active engagement with a customer to retain its goodwill would be understandable and indeed expected in what Mr Casey described as a business *"which was far more dynamic than the Claimants acknowledge, the customers were more hard-nosed"* and *"it's far-fetched to suggest that what Zantaz*

should have done was to sit back and expect customers to pay whatever happened to be the current rate for hosting". He added that the Claimants' suggestion of customer reluctance to move was overstated: *"We know that there were two very large movements of data during the relevant period: Citi's from hosted archive to on-premises and JPMC's move to IBM. Other customers…threatened to do the same."*

3708. However, it was in this case a very short time since the previous substantial restructuring. There was no real evidence, beyond the say-so of Dr Lynch for which he claimed support which never materialised, of customer dissatisfaction or restlessness. It seems reasonably clear, and I find, that the impetus for the transaction came from Autonomy, and that but for Mr Hussain's need to find more revenue, no restructuring would have been proposed.

3709. The Claimants' characterisation of the true substance of the restructuring as being the payment of an upfront licence fee in return for deeply discounted data storage rates seems to me to be accurate. That does not exclude the likelihood that as in other contexts, such as the Deutsche Bank restructurings, there were other potential commercial benefits; but it encourages sceptical review of them.

3710. The real issue, to my mind, is whether, notwithstanding the rational commercial justifications advanced for the Q2 2011 MetLife restructuring, the imperative of somehow finding revenue which could be recognised in its accounts to *"cover up"* what Mr Hussain had described in his email to Dr Lynch of 10 December 2010 as the complete falling away of US IDOL revenue at the end of 2010 (see also paragraph 3682 above) was in reality the only, or at least plainly the predominant, driving force, and if so whether that invalidates the decision or renders it or Mr Hussain's conduct improper. The adventitious addition of DiscoverEngine as the sole extra software licensed is of particular interest in this context.

3711. As to the commercial features of the transaction, the extension of the term was always part of the package. It is clear, however, that the addition of DiscoverEngine software came late in the day, after the contours of the deal for Autonomy to reduce data storage charges in return for MetLife committing to a licence fee for an extended term: although there is email correspondence suggesting that Autonomy had identified in May 2011 a sales opportunity for *"Connectors for the capture and archive of documents (SharePoint, JIVE collaboration)"* the addition of DiscoverEngine was made on the initiative of Autonomy, rather than of MetLife.

3712. As submitted by the Claimants, the process leading up to that decision is revealing:

(1) When on 13 June 2011, Mr Crumbacher pointed out to Mr Sass that he needed to identify some software to license: "*you didn't state what software your licensing [sic]. Is this a termination of the old license (Digital Safe) and then a relicense of the same/most recent version of the Digital Safe software with a lower maintenance rate?*", Mr Sass told him that it was a "*relicense with lower maintenance and lower reduced storage*". There was no suggestion of including a SharePoint connector.

(2) A few days later, on 15 June 2011, Mr Scott emailed Mr Hussain identifying "*several customer opportunities where we may want to offer the Sharepoint connector as part of our overall solution*", including MetLife. Mr Scott had been asked to compile the list by Mr Hussain.

(3) The message about offering DiscoverEngine to customers including MetLife had reached Mr Rothman, an Autonomy lawyer, who was involved in documenting the MetLife deal. On 17 June 2011, Mr Rothman emailed Mr Sass to say that he understood "*we now need to add Share Point Connector to … this document … correct?*".

(4) But the message had not reached Mr Sass, who had been leading the negotiations with MetLife. He was entirely unaware of a reason for adding a SharePoint connector to MetLife's contract. He replied: "*sorry. no clue what you are talking about*". Mr Rothman explained: "*My understanding is that Sush has decided we should give this connector to MetLife … (for free) as a way to promote this product. Hence, I was asked by [Mr Crumbacher] to include a reference in both documents. Do you have any objection …?*"[465]. Mr Sass responded "*Let me call Sush*". A few hours later, Mr Sass reverted to Mr Rothman indicating that he was content to include DiscoverEngine in the agreement.

(5) When on the evening of 17 June 2011, Mr Sass forwarded the draft produced by Mr Rothman to Mr Kelly, he made no mention of the fact that DiscoverEngine had been newly inserted into the agreement,[466] as shown by the "*redline*" he attached. Mr Sass's failure to mention the new software belies any suggestion that MetLife had requested it or the functionality it provided.

(6) The reality, to my mind, and I find, was that DiscoverEngine, though intended to be a promotional offer to others for free, was added in this case as if it justified a considerable fee as the available means of satisfying what Mr Egan had described as the need to *"figure out how to [add] something"*.

(7) MetLife itself barely noticed the addition. The Claimants drew my attention to an email dated 1 September 2011 from MetLife to Ms Beth Ladd at Autonomy expressing interest in *"the strategy for SharePoint and capturing data that is traditionally maintained in an application or structured environment as opposed to just documents and emails"*, suggesting (so they contended) that MetLife was not even aware that it had purchased a SharePoint connector as part of that agreement.

3713. Even though it is worth remembering that (as I have determined in the chapter of this judgment dealing with "VARs") Autonomy had purchased DiscoverEngine to put DiscoverTech in funds, I am prepared to accept in this context Dr Lynch's evidence that DiscoverEngine was superior to Autonomy's own product and did offer real benefits to MetLife; and that this was in turn of benefit to Autonomy. I accept also that it was in Autonomy's interests to improve its relationship with MetLife, address its complaints (which especially concerned cumbersome processes and service deficiencies), and pave the way for more business (including building an IDOL Index on its entire safe with 120 TB data requirements). This is apparent from the notes of a QBR (Quarterly Business Review) meeting between Autonomy and MetLife at

[465] Emphasis added.
[466] A previous draft of the agreement that was sent to MetLife did not include DiscoverEngine.

operational level in May 2011. There were commercial considerations which also supported the transaction.

3714. But that was not the rationale of its addition of DiscoverEngine or more generally of the sale of a new licence. I accept the Claimants' contention that the operative reason for the late addition of DiscoverEngine, reminiscently of the late addition of IDOL dense cells in the Deutsche Bank deal, was to support the misleading impression that MetLife was getting something for its $5.5 million which could be seen to be separate and apart from the benefit of reduced storage charges.

3715. Reverting to the transaction itself, the negotiations around the upfront licence fee for Autonomy and the overall savings for MetLife continued. After some last minute re-negotiation which resulted in a reduction in the licence fee to $5.5 million, coupled with reduced storage rates, which created an additional saving to MetLife of over $1 million, on 29 June 2011, Mr Sass informed Mr Hussain that the deal with MetLife should complete that quarter, which it did. The following day, 30 June 2011, Mr Sass told Mr Hussain "*MetLife ($5.5M) IN*". Mr Hussain's response again reveals Autonomy's true motivation for entering into the transaction: "*Any possibility of recognising $5.8m?*". First and last, that was, in my view, Autonomy's and the Defendants' real focus.

Relevance of Deloitte's review and approval?

3716. In this context, as in all others where an accounting treatment was questioned, the Defendants sought to draw support from the approval of Deloitte. But in this context, as in all others, Deloitte saw only what was presented to them. Whether those involved in Deloitte should have adopted and pursued a more sceptical approach is not for me to determine: Deloitte's conduct is not on trial, and they are not parties. What is relevant for present purposes is whether their approval was given on a basis which reflected reality.

3717. The basis of their decision is evident from their internal working papers detailing their approach to the accounting treatment of the Q2 2011 MetLife restructuring. In particular:

(1) Although the overall description of the deal is stated as involving *"an extension of term, a renegotiation of fees for both storage and go-forward maintenance, and the addition of the 'DiscoverEngine' connector for Digital Safe"* that is the only mention of DiscoverEngine in the assessment;

(2) The key terms are described as follows: –

> *"The licence term is extended out to 30/09/16*
>
> *Monthly storage fee reduced to $0.00048888 per MB per month for remainder of terms (reduced from $0.001313) -62.8%*
>
> *Annual S&M fee reduced to $275,000 for remainder of term (reduced from $351,250)"*

(3) Immediately after that, Deloitte recorded:

> *"we note that such deals are reasonably common with large customers – as the cost of storage for Autonomy falls, large customers are able to renegotiate their storage fees lower in exchange for a non-refundable upfront licence payment…*
>
> *We have reviewed the original agreement and the amendment and noted no terms that would restrict the upfront recognition of revenue. As such recognition of revenue upfront is deemed appropriate."*

(4) Having reviewed the maintenance element, and Autonomy's management assessment concluding that it complied with the VSOE, Deloitte concurred that the established rates were reasonable.

(5) After noting that MetLife were one of the largest listed insurers in the US so that collectability should not be an issue, in formally approving revenue recognition, Deloitte recorded that:

> *"(a) The risks and rewards of ownership passed to the customer when the items were delivered. As all of Autonomy's obligations have been fulfilled the risks and rewards have been transferred.*
>
> (1) *Autonomy has not retained any managerial control.*
>
> (2) *The revenue can be measured effectively as it is stated on both invoice and in the contract*
>
> (3) *it is probable that economic benefits will flow to autonomy*
>
> (4) *there are no costs incurred in this transaction."*

3718. There was no consideration given to what any broader objectives of the transaction might be; there was no focus or sceptical review of the by now fairly evident pattern of transactions of many varieties late in the quarter which as a fact bolstered revenue otherwise than by what might be termed plain vanilla sales.

3719. I do not see any sufficient reason not to accept:

(1) Mr Welham's evidence that, had Deloitte known that DiscoverEngine had not been requested by MetLife, and was included in the deal to give the impression that MetLife was getting something for its $5.5 million licence fee, Deloitte would not have considered it appropriate for Autonomy to have recognised the licence fee as revenue in Q2 2011; and

(2) Mr Bloomer's evidence that, if it were the case that DiscoverEngine had been inserted into the agreement without any suggestion that the customer wanted it, it would have been "*contrary to [his] understanding at the time*" and he would have wanted to understand the "*conflict between*" what Deloitte was told and the true state of affairs.

Defendants' knowledge of impropriety

3720. I have already found that both Defendants knew what was the driving purpose of the transaction. For comprehensiveness I confirm that, in my judgment, they appreciated that all the other claimed benefits were peripheral, even if necessary in presentational terms, and that the transaction would not have been pursued but for the objective of accelerated revenue recognition, which would come at a substantial net cost and loss.

3721. In my judgment, the decision made was not one simply of commercial judgement in which the Court should not usually intervene. Its driver was a transaction based on a contrivance. That infected the decision and rendered it, to their knowledge (since they were aware of the contrivance), improper.

Overall conclusion

3722. In my judgment, the Claimants' allegation that the Q2 2011 MetLife restructuring was commercially unjustified and a breach of duty and improper use of power has been established.

3723. I shall consider later what loss was thereby caused.

OTHER TRANSACTIONS

3724. The Claimants sought to impugn a sixth (and final) category of transactions, described in both the RRAPoC Schedule 7 ("Schedule 7") and in its closing submissions as *"Other Transactions"*[467]. This amorphous collection related to another set or sets of transactions that allegedly had, and were designed to have, the effect of enabling Autonomy to recognise or accelerate the recognition of revenue for the purpose of achieving revenue forecasts in a given quarter.

3725. The four individual sets of transactions which were the subject of Schedule 7 are:

(1) A series of agreements with Tottenham Hotspur plc ("Tottenham Hotspur"): (a) a software licence agreement between ASL and Tottenham Hotspur pursuant to a purchase order dated 30 June 2010 ("the 2010 Tottenham Sale") but not actually signed until 5 July 2010, (b) a Shirt Sponsorship Agreement dated 5 July 2010 ("the 2010 Tottenham Purchase") between the same parties and also Tottenham Hotspur Football & Athletic Co Limited (together with Tottenham Hotspur "the Club") under which Autonomy committed to pay shirt sponsorship fees of an aggregate of £63 million payable over five seasons, and also a MAF calculated as 30% of "Total Net Qualifying Revenues" being revenues from customers referred by the Club to ASL as sponsor; (c) a further agreement between ASL and Tottenham Hotspur dated 31 March 2011 for the sale to Tottenham Hotspur of additional software licences and "managed services"; and (d) an amendment to the Short Sponsorship Agreement also dated 31 March 2011 altering the amounts payable in the subsequent seasons and also changing the definition of "Qualifying Revenues" with the effect of a further MAF being payable to the Club;

(2) An amendment dated 10 December 2010 ("the Prisa First Amendment") to a software licence agreement dated 31 March 2010 between ASL and a Spanish company in the Prisa group called Ediciones El Pais SL ("EEP"), (Q4 2010);

(3) A Hosting Services and Licence Addendum ("the Hosting Addendum") entered into between Autonomy Inc and Amgen Inc ("Amgen") on 21 December 2010, which was part of a wider project for the provision by Autonomy of hosting and related e-Discovery services (Q4 2010); and

(4) An agreement dated 3 June 2011 under which Autonomy Inc sold Iron Mountain Information Management Inc ("Iron Mountain") a perpetual licence and associated maintenance and support services, which was concluded on the same day that Autonomy Inc acquired the Iron Mountain digital business from Iron Mountain Inc (Q2 2011).

3726. The Claimants did not, apparently *"due to time constraints",* cross-examine Dr Lynch in relation to any of these four transactions. Therefore, the Claimants accepted that they cannot allege that Dr Lynch had knowledge of their false accounting.

3727. However, they submitted that the Other Transactions remain relevant given that:

[467] Each described in Schedule 7 of the RRAPoC.

(1) the Claimants maintained that there was false accounting in relation to each of the transactions and they continued to allege that Mr Hussain knew of that false accounting; and

(2) if (as the Claimants alleged) there was false reporting in relation to the Other Transactions, they fell to be taken into account when assessing loss.

3728. The Claimants addressed the Other Transactions at considerable length in their written opening, and again in their closing submissions. They impugned the Other Transactions on various grounds, including the apparent linkage between ASL's sales to and purchases from Tottenham Hotspur, and the alleged failure in the case of all the transactions to satisfy the revenue recognition criteria in IAS 18.14. However, the focus of this aspect of the Claimants' case as regards the first three transactions (Tottenham Hotspur, Prisa and Amgen) was their allegation that the sale of licences in each case involved (as a substantial part of the overall sale) the provision of services after the sale to initiate and enable the use of the software supplied.

3729. The Claimants' case in respect of those three transactions is that what was sold was not simply a piece of software purchased together with separately charged additional services, but a composite 'solution' of which the provision of services was an integral part[468]. Since nothing of immediate value was transferred until the integral services were provided, it was wrong to recognise revenue at the point of sale (as Autonomy had done) and revenue recognition was required to be deferred until the delivery of a fully functioning product had been concluded, or at least until some subsequent stage in the installation of the software for the customer had occurred enabling its use as a working solution.

3730. The Claimants' case in respect of the fourth 'other' transaction (Iron Mountain) was of a different nature. It raised a separate and different issue about whether the revenue from an IDOL licence sold to Iron Mountain after its acquisition by Autonomy was booked at fair value; and in particular, whether there was any proper basis for Autonomy having increased the revenue recognised in respect of a software licence sold to Iron Mountain in Q2 2011 by way of what purported to be a 'fair value adjustment' of $5.5 million.

3731. The Claimants also contended that in the case of all four Other Transactions, the true position in respect of the relevant transaction was concealed from Deloitte.

3732. The Defendants rejected all these claims. Dr Lynch, in addition to the point agreed that having not been examined, it could not be suggested that he had dishonest knowledge of false accounting, dealt with the claims in relation to Other Transactions inside three pages. He dismissed each, at least as against him, as never having made any sense at all, and more generally, as based on *"nuanced matters of detailed accounting, and accounting judgement"* in respect of which Autonomy had taken, and Deloitte had approved, a perfectly permissible view.

3733. Mr Hussain's closing submissions dealt with the Other Transactions in more detail than in his opening submissions; but he too sought to dismiss the claims as turning on

[468] "Solution" is not a term of art, nor even a well-defined accountancy or business term. It was used by the Claimants to connote an agreement for the provision of both software (in this case invariably under licence) and implementation services where the provision of both is, as a matter of substance, so intertwined that it would be unrealistic and inappropriate to recognise separately the two elements of the sale.

matters of nuance and accountancy judgement, maintaining that the approach taken by Autonomy when accounting for them had been entirely legitimate, and Deloitte had concurred with it.

3734. The competing accounting views were argued out by the parties' respective experts. Each adopted the approach typical of his report. Mr Holgate relied on a series of assumptions of fact ("the Assumptions") given to him in his instructions. The Defendants criticised the Assumptions as framed in a way which funnelled him to a conclusion favourable to the Claimants. As noted in all other contexts in which he provided his expert opinion, Mr Holgate did not see, or call for, the relevant contracts. Nor did he consider Deloitte's working papers or any of the work Deloitte had undertaken in reaching their views about the accounting for these transactions. Mr Holgate agreed (as did Mr MacGregor) that in the real world an accountant would have had to be familiar with the contractual terms and all other available evidence about each individual transaction and reach a decision on revenue recognition case by case.

3735. On the basis of the Assumptions he was instructed to make, Mr Holgate's conclusions in respect of the first three transactions, put summarily, were that (a) Autonomy was in each case providing not simply a piece of software but also services as an integral part of the whole 'solution' sold, so that (b) revenue from the whole 'solution' could not be recognised unless and until it had been provided in full and (c) on the basis of the second of the Assumptions (in respect of Tottenham Hotspur and Prisa), as there was no clear statement of work for the project, nor were the deliverables or acceptance criteria defined, it was not possible to measure the costs reliably, as was required by IAS 18.20 before revenue from services could be recognised.

3736. Mr MacGregor's report was more open-textured. He concurred with the applicable tests but took a different view of the shape of the overall transaction in each case. In his first report, he identified as the main claim, and thus the main area of disagreement, in respect of the first three transactions as being whether the economic substance of the transactions was the provision of a "solution" to which the provision of services was integral, or (in the words of his report) "*whether or not the transaction could be split into separately identifiable components by reference to IAS 18.13, and whether the costs to complete the project or the outcome of the transaction could be estimated reliably by reference to IAS 18.26.*"

3737. With reference to the relevant agreements, and to Autonomy's general policy as set out in Autonomy's Consolidated Financial Statements for revenue associated with professional services, Mr MacGregor concluded that it was a legitimate approach, and in line with that general policy, to regard each of the first three transactions as comprised of separate components in accordance with IAS 18.13, and the costs of completing the project or the outcome of the project as susceptible to reliable estimation by reference to IAS 18.26.

3738. Although they reached different conclusions, Mr Holgate agreed in cross-examination that:

(1) the essential question for these deals was whether the sales in question were to be regarded as a sale of a licence or an agreement to provide a solution;

(2) that is a matter of judgement to be determined on the basis of the facts known to the accountant;

(3) it is possible for one agreement to include a licence and other services as long as they are separately identifiable;

(4) the question whether the costs of any service element can be measured is a matter of accounting judgement to be assessed against the factual evidence available at the time.

3739. A brief factual analysis of the first three transactions is necessary to understand the application of these questions to the facts.

Tottenham Hotspur: the two sets of transactions

First set: Q2 2010

3740. The transaction with Tottenham Hotspur was one of the "*big deals*" of Q2 2010, as described by Mr Hussain in the revenue summary spreadsheet he provided to Dr Lynch on 30 June 2010.

3741. Autonomy's sale of a software licence to Tottenham Hotspur ("the 2010 Tottenham Sale") was established pursuant to a purchase order dated 30 June 2010 ("the 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order"). The licence fee under the 2010 Tottenham Sale was a total of £3.9 million plus VAT, and professional services were contracted to be provided in order to provide Tottenham Hotspur with "*a fully implemented system*" with a view to the football club becoming "*the most technically advanced club amongst its peers*". The 2010 Purchase Order was signed by Mr Kanter on behalf of ASL following its approval by Mr Hussain.

3742. Although the 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order was dated 30 June 2010, i.e. right at the end of Q2 2010, the contemporaneous documents show that the 2010 Purchase Order was backdated; it was not signed by the parties until 5 July 2010. Given it appears that Mr Hussain gave his approval for the 2010 Purchase Order on 1 July 2010 (the final draft only having been produced that day), he must have been aware that it was going to be executed after the quarter end, even though it was dated 30 June 2010.

3743. The Shirt Sponsorship Agreement was established at the same time as the 2010 Tottenham Sale following discussions between Dr Lynch and Mr Daniel Levy (the Chairman of Tottenham Hotspur). The Shirt Sponsorship Agreement between ASL and Autonomy and Tottenham Hotspur was correctly dated 5 July 2010. The Shirt Sponsorship Agreement, which was signed by Mr Hussain on behalf of each of ASL and Autonomy, was for five seasons with fees totalling £63 million. The sponsorship fee payable to Tottenham Hotspur for the first season (2010/11) was £9 million, which rose to £12 million for the 2011/12 season (save that the fee would be reduced to £9 million if Tottenham Hotspur failed to generate 'Qualifying Revenues' of £4 million). Qualifying Revenues were revenues from sales by Autonomy to third party customers introduced by Tottenham Hotspur, with Tottenham Hotspur being entitled to a marketing assistance fee (MAF) equal to 30% of the Qualifying Revenues.

3744. The following points are to be noted in relation to this first Tottenham transaction:

(1) The 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order and Sale and the Shirt Sponsorship Agreement were negotiated alongside each other and (though dated differently) were entered into at or around the same time. The 2010 Purchase Order recorded – in language expressly approved by Mr Hussain – that there would be no annual support fee payable by Tottenham Hotspur provided that it continued "*to maintain a strategic relationship with Autonomy*", which was plainly a reference to the Shirt Sponsorship Agreement.

(2) It was recited in the 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order, at the request of Mr Levy that the goal be identified, that the licence was intended *"to enable a system to provide the following functions at the level found in a Premiership football club's ordinary operations: CRM, ticketing, player analysis, retail, internet and web design. It is the goal of the parties for Licensee to represent the most technically advanced club amongst its peers".* The Claimants submitted that thereby Tottenham Hotspur contracted to receive a 'solution' to which the provision of services was integral: it required a bespoke solution to its website needs, a project involving not just the provision of software and support, but also services to conclude the delivery of a fully functioning website that would meet Tottenham Hotspur's requirements. They added that the software purchased under the 2010 Tottenham Sale was not of any use to Tottenham Hotspur until that solution had been delivered. The only witness who gave evidence in relation to the deal was Alastair Martin, but he accepted that he was not involved in its negotiation and, thus, had no knowledge of the discussions that had taken place between the parties prior to them entering into the 2010 Purchase Order.

(3) The 2010 Purchase Order provided no defined scope of work for the project; it did not define the deliverables or key milestones against which delivery could be measured, nor did it contain any defined acceptance criteria.

(4) The documents show that the project stalled and delays resulted, as Mr Martin accepted. As at 18 October 2010, nothing had happened on the project. At the end of October 2010, the parties had another "*Project Kick Off*" meeting, at which a further presentation was given by Autonomy, from which the embryonic nature of the project is clear: see, for example, the "*Work package summary*", including the "*Solution design*" workstream. Matters continued to stall thereafter and no professional services were provided following that meeting. Thus;

   (a) By late April 2011, i.e., more than six months later, the solution design had still not been agreed between Autonomy and Tottenham Hotspur.

   (b) Indeed, as late as early June 2011, Mr Martin raised with Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter the fact that Tottenham Hotspur was "*not overly happy with our responsiveness and attention*" to their website "*refresh project*", due to Autonomy's failure to apply adequate resources to it. Mr Martin acknowledged that the "*project is still in the design phases*". Dr Lynch replied on 6 June 2011 that the account was "*another one for a remedial plan*" and should be fixed, and asked that Mr Martin report back in a week.

The second transaction

3745. On 31 March 2011, ASL entered into a further agreement with Tottenham Hotspur to provide additional software licences and "*managed services*" for a period of three years. The agreement was recorded in a purchase order dated 31 March 2011, which was signed by Mr Kanter on behalf of ASL ("the 2011 Tottenham Purchase Order"). The licence fee was £4 million (plus VAT), with a 5% support fee for the first year (£200,000 plus VAT). On the same date, the Shirt Sponsorship Agreement was also amended, (i) increasing the sponsorship fee payable for the 2011/12 season from £9 million to £11 million, and (ii) altering the definition of 'Qualifying Revenues' so as to include licence revenues paid not just by third party customers, but also by Tottenham Hotspur to ASL, such that the £3.9 million payable under the 2010 Purchase Order and the £4 million due under the 2011 Purchase Order qualified ("the Amendment Agreement"). Mr Hussain signed the Amendment Agreement on behalf of ASL and Autonomy.

3746. A number of points should be noted in relation to this set of transactions:

(1) The 2011 Purchase Order and the Amendment Agreement were plainly linked transactions: they were negotiated together and the parties operated on the basis that the two agreements would "*complete*" at the same time.

(2) Indeed, it is notable that the 2011 Purchase Order and the Amendment Agreement were broadly for the same value: £4.2 million was payable by Tottenham Hotspur under the former; with £4.37 million payable to it under the latter, being the total of (i) the £2 million increase in the sponsorship fee for the 2011/12 season, and (ii) a MAF of £2.37 million, resulting from the combined total of £7.9 million payable under the 2010 Purchase Order and the 2011 Purchase Order now constituting 'Qualifying Revenues' (the MAF amounting to 30% thereof).

(3) The 2011 Purchase Order did not deliver any significant incremental value to Tottenham Hotspur. It stated that the licensed software was for use in relation to Tottenham Hotspur's web services and social media, indicating that it formed part of the overall project to provide the club with its website requirements under the 2010 Purchase Order. In other words, this sale formed part of the wider commitment by ASL to deliver to Tottenham Hotspur a functioning website. Thus, the software licensed under the 2011 Purchase Order was of no use to Tottenham Hotspur until the solution contemplated by the 2010 Purchase Order had been delivered.

(4) Again, as with the 2010 Purchase Order, the 2011 Purchase Order contained no defined statement of work for the project, key delivery milestones, defined deliverables, or defined acceptance criteria.

3747. Autonomy accounted for the Autonomy licence sale side of the first two transactions as follows:

(1) Licence revenue of £3.9 million less £30,000 under the 2010 Purchase Order was recognised immediately by Autonomy on 30 June 2010, that £30,000 representing a total of 6 months' services at £5,000 per month which

Autonomy carved out of the upfront licence fee as the value of future services to be provided over time[469];

(2) Licence revenue of £4 million under the 2011 Purchase Order was recognised immediately by Autonomy on 31 March 2011.

3748. As I explain below, the focus of the submissions on all sides was on the first set of transactions, which Deloitte considered were not reciprocal and so the 2010 sale and the 2010 purchase should be accounted for separately. I did not understand that to be challenged. In particular my focus is on Autonomy's accounting treatment of the 2010 sale, in which Deloitte concurred, as comprising separately identifiable components. The Claimants submitted that this accounting was wrong.

3749. Addressing the fundamental question and applying the criteria agreed between the experts as adumbrated in paragraph 3738 above, what is to be determined is whether the sales were of a licence, with separate arrangements at a separate price for servicing, or whether in reality the agreement should be characterised as providing for the sale of a 'solution'.

3750. There is no dispute of principle between the experts on this point. The issue that requires resolution is one of fact, not accounting principle, and turns on whether the substance of the deliverable to be provided to Tottenham Hotspur was a working solution.

3751. The Claimants submitted that plainly, it was. The terms of the 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order itself, which provided that the software licences that were the subject of the contract were "*intended to enable a system to provide the following functions at the level found in a Premiership football club's ordinary operations: CRM, ticketing, player analysis, retail, internet and web design*" (see paragraph 3744(2) above) reflected that Tottenham Hotspur were contracting to receive "*a fully implemented system*". According to the Claimants' characterisation:

(1) The objective that Tottenham Hotspur sought to achieve by entering into the 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order is plain on its face: they wanted a "*system*" which would provide the various specified "*functions at the level found in a Premiership football club's ordinary operations*", but the detail of what that involved was left to be discussed and agreed between the parties subsequently;

(2) The software licences the subject of the 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order were of no use to Tottenham Hotspur in and of themselves: they required Autonomy to provide the professional services in order to put in place the yet to be defined "*fully implemented system*" and the 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order simply included an exhaustive list of the software "*required in relation to management of a typical peer website*".

3752. Accordingly, the Claimants' case is that the substance of the deliverable to be provided to Tottenham Hotspur was a working solution (i.e. "*a fully implemented system*"), not simply a piece of software, and the provision of services was integral to that solution. Thus, nothing of immediate value was transferred to Tottenham Hotspur at the time of entry into the 2010 Purchase Order and, therefore, no revenue should have been

[469] Deloitte's working papers show that Deloitte considered that the carve-out should have been $90,000 but that no adjustment was proposed because the difference was *"clearly trivial"*

recognised by Autonomy in relation to the 2010 Purchase Order at 30 June 2010. It was not suggested to Mr Holgate in cross-examination that his conclusion was wrong if the substance of the deliverable was a working solution.

3753. For the Defendants, Mr MacGregor agrees that, if the contract – when assessed from the perspective of the customer – was for the provision of a working solution, then revenue should not have been recognised when it was. He put it as follows:

> *"A. ... Look, at the end of the day, on each of these things, again this is going to come down to a reading of what the contract information says about whether there was a sale of a licence or whether it's not as simple as that and what was being provided was the sale of a licence only in the context of something which was then had to have substantial amounts of work done on it so that it could be operated by the purchaser –*
>
> *Q. Again –*
>
> *A. – in the manner it wanted.*
>
> ...
>
> *...as I say, it's at paragraph 20, goods and services were integral to the delivery of the project and that that project was for Autonomy to deliver. If that's not the case, then you're going to recognise the revenue upfront. If it is the case, you're not. That is the – I think in many respects there's probably not a disagreement between Mr Holgate and myself. It's more a disagreement as far as the facts are concerned which, as I've said, is not for me to opine on."*

3754. However, subject to that caveat, Mr MacGregor expressed the view in his first written report that:

(1) He had seen nothing on the 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order to suggest that the goods were sold subject to installation, or (whether expressly or implicitly) that payment was subject to the services being provided.

(2) Based on the email confirmation of delivery and the revenue confirmation letter he had seen, he agreed with the view taken by Deloitte that the contemporaneous evidence supported the conclusion that revenue could be recognised from the sale of the licence before the services were delivered.

(3) He agreed with Deloitte that the 2010 Tottenham Sale could fairly be regarded as comprising separately identifiable components of a single sale to which the revenue recognition criteria could properly be applied separately.

Were Deloitte misled?

3755. The Claimants submitted that, as between the experts, the view of Mr Holgate on the characterisation of the 2010 Tottenham Sale as a 'solution' was to be preferred, and that the Defendants' reliance on Deloitte was misplaced because the true position in relation to the Tottenham Hotspur transactions was concealed from Deloitte.

3756. They relied in this respect on Mr Welham's evidence in his witness statement that:

(1) Contrary to the assumptions the Claimants asked him to make, he had not understood that (a) *"the parties understood at the date of the agreement that what was required was the delivery of a solution, namely a fully-functioning and much enhanced website"*, (b) *"delivery of the solution required the provision of significant services, but in the absence of a defined scope of work or key delivery milestones, there was no means reliably to measure the outcome of the transaction or the costs to complete the project"*.

(2) While he could not determine now how precisely the revenue would have been recognised over the lifetime of the contract, had Deloitte appreciated that *"the agreement was intended to deliver a solution"*, then *"it is likely that it would not have been appropriate to recognise software licence revenue at the outset of the transaction."*

3757. They relied also on the fact that Mr Bloomer confirmed in cross-examination that the Audit Committee was not told the full picture. The Audit Committee was informed of the 2011 Tottenham Purchase Order, but not the (linked) Amendment Agreement. He stated that if the two transactions were linked, that would have been an important point for him to consider in relation to revenue recognition. The Audit Committee understood that the deal was the sale of a software licence, rather than the sale of a solution which required the provision of significant but unquantifiable services.

3758. Dr Lynch did not address these further points, but Mr Hussain's written closing submissions did, and the allegation that Deloitte were misled was there described as *"utterly spurious"*. Those submissions emphasised that *"the parties made the contract they made, Deloitte reviewed a copy of it, and came to the view that AU's approach was acceptable."*

My assessment whether Tottenham 2010 Sale should have been accounted for as a 'solution'

3759. I accept and would agree with the view of the experts that the essential question can be characterised as whether the sale should be characterised as a sale of a licence or an agreement to provide a 'solution'.

3760. I do not, however, agree with the Claimants that the factual position was clear and necessarily demanded characterisation of the 2010 Tottenham Sale as a 'solution' and could not be treated as comprised of two elements (the sale of a licence and the provision of services at a price). I do not consider that in reaching their view Deloitte were misled. Deloitte's working papers confirm that Deloitte were well aware of the recital on which the Claimants placed such reliance and the provisions of the contract in relation to the provision of future services. They concluded that the provision of future services was a separate element for which an appropriate deduction could and should be made. In fact they considered to be inadequate the amount that Autonomy carved out of the upfront licence fee and had agreed should be deferred over the period: they would have required a carve-out of $90,000 equalling almost double the

amount of £5,000 per month adopted by Autonomy. However, they concluded the difference to be *"clearly trivial and as such, no adjustment has been proposed."* Mr Welham was simply stating what Deloitte's view might have been on the basis of Assumptions he was required to make. Likewise, Mr Holgate's opinion was the product of Assumptions which did mandate an answer, and he had never considered the contract.

3761. I do not therefore accept the Claimants' conclusion that the 2010 Tottenham Sale was on the face of the 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order and in fact a contract under which the deliverable was a 'solution', namely a fully implemented system for which Autonomy had contracted to provide 200 hours of service, and from which it was wrong to recognise revenue before the implementation process had been completed. It seems to me that it is an available and respectable view that in form and substance the 2010 Tottenham Purchase Order established a contract for a licence and the separate provision of services, with the licence and the services to be paid for separately. It does not seem to me that Tottenham Hotspur's obligation to pay was contingent on either the provision of the services or the outcome of implementation. I do not accept that Deloitte were relevantly misled in this context; and I do not consider the facts clear enough to overturn the contemporaneous judgement call made of the contract and the facts.

The second Tottenham Hotspur transaction

3762. As mentioned briefly above, there was no dispute between the experts that in the case of the second set of purchases and sales, the Tottenham Hotspur 2011 Purchase Order and the Amendment Agreement were linked transactions which needed to be considered together to understand their substance and to determine the appropriate revenue recognition under IAS 18.13. Nor was there any dispute between the experts that looking at the two agreements together, revenue under the 2011 Purchase Order should have been net accounted with the cost of the Amendment Agreement. As Mr MacGregor put it, the *"net effect of [the sale] is nil, when considered with the MAF and additional sponsorship payment that became due as a result of [the Amendment Agreement]"*.

3762A. The second Tottenham Hotspur transaction was largely subsumed in point of analysis into the first by all parties. Noting that the experts had agreed that the 2011 Tottenham Hotspur transaction had been incorrectly accounted for, Mr Hussain did not address the position any further in his written closing submissions, and nor did Mr Casey in his closing speech (although he did address the first of the Tottenham transactions). Mr Hussain's pleaded defence was to the effect that the accounting judgment made at the time was not unreasonable, and had been approved by Deloitte. Mr Welham acknowledged this in his witness statement, but made clear that this was on the basis that *"Autonomy management told us that the new software included in the second deal provided significantly enhanced functionality for Tottenham Hotspur."* Any defence to the claim relating to the second transactions on the part of Mr Hussain amounted to piggy-backing on the defence to the first of the transactions. With some considerable hesitation, I have concluded that though the defence in the context of the 2011 transaction is (at best) stretched, I have not the degree of conviction, even on a balance of probabilities, required to make a finding of "guilty knowledge" and fraud. In any event, I doubt that the single transaction will make any material difference to the computation of damages.

Prisa (Q4 2010)

3763. The second transaction gives rise to broadly the same issues as the Tottenham Hotspur transactions.

3764. On 31 March 2010, ASL entered into an End-User Software Licence Agreement with a Spanish company called Ediciones El Pais SL ("EEP"). EEP was part of the Prisa group of companies, which, at the time ASL entered into the agreement, was "*a global media conglomerate that had four main business units: newspaper and editorial content (El Páis was its largest newspaper); television and satellite (the largest pay TV operation in Spain); an education-based unit (the largest publisher of textbooks in Spanish and Portuguese-speaking markets); and radio (with between 13,000 and 14,000 radio stations globally)*".

3765. Following negotiations involving Mr Hussain, a First Amendment to that Agreement ("the Prisa First Amendment") was entered into on 10 December 2010 between Autonomy Spain SL ("Autonomy SL") and EEP acting for itself and on behalf of its subsidiary company, Prisa Digital SL ("Prisa"). The Prisa First Amendment involved the provision by Autonomy SL of software licences, three years support and maintenance, 2,640 days of professional services and training for use on EEP and Prisa's website, audio, video and other digital products. The Claimants relied on the 2,640 days of services and training as demonstrating the importance of the services aspect of the contract, suggesting that the licensed software was of no use without these services and the two were indivisible.

3766. The agreement provided for fees totalling about €9.6 million (plus VAT), including €6.8 million in respect of software licences. It is clear from an email dated 15 October 2010 from Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch subject *"getting to 236"* that the entry into the Prisa First Amendment was recognised by the Defendants as forming a critical part of Autonomy meeting the market consensus for Q4 2010. The documentary evidence shows that Mr Hussain provided regular updates to Dr Lynch in relation to its progress.

3767. The background to the Prisa First Amendment was described in the Claimants' closing submissions as follows:

(1) At the time it was concluded, Mr Rahul Puri ("Mr Puri") was Managing Director of Innovation and Chief Software Architect at Prisa. Mr Puri joined Prisa in May 2010 with the remit to transform the company's technology, moving it from a traditional analogue media organisation to a digital centric organisation. In his witness statement, Mr Puri elaborated as follows:

> *"To do that, we had to change Prisa's entire technology platform. As part of the exercise, we wanted to build Prisa's online brand and maximize the revenue streams from our website. We therefore needed to implement web content management systems, data management systems and recommendation systems to enable the use of our apps that we also were building. It was a full top-down technology transformation."*

(2) In its pitch in the tender process that took place, Autonomy made clear that it could provide all the technology, tools and services that Prisa needed to

transition into a digital media organisation within a three-year transformation process. Autonomy made a number of presentations to Prisa prior to contracting:

(a) The first was in Madrid in August 2010. The presentation given by Autonomy on that occasion recorded Prisa's objectives, and the "*solution*" that Autonomy was able to provide. Mr Puri was challenged during his cross-examination that Prisa "*hadn't defined your objectives and goals*", but this presentation shows that is wrong. As Mr Puri noted, Autonomy's solution, as referenced in the presentation, was "*its organisation bringing their technology, their people to bear to help us realise our strategy and our vision*".

(b) There was a follow up presentation in October 2010, which again reflected the custom built "*solution*" that Autonomy could provide to meet Prisa's objectives.

(3) As a result, Prisa decided to retain Autonomy. It is clear that the ability of Autonomy to tailor its core products to Prisa's needs was the key reason why Prisa elected to contract with Autonomy.

(4) That resulted in the parties entering into the Prisa First Amendment, pursuant to which Prisa purchased the software which was required in order for the digitalization project to be implemented.

(5) However, as Mr Puri explained, (i) successful implementation of the project required Autonomy's software to be tailored in order for the solution sought by Prisa to be delivered, and (ii) Prisa had no use for the software it had purchased beyond the scope of the project, and it could not use any of the software for the project without the involvement and support of Autonomy personnel. As Mr Puri explained in cross-examination:

(a) "*the intent was to have a comprehensive solution. So we could not execute on the technology without executing on the professional services, so they went hand in hand rather than just splitting up into two different components*"; and

(b) as a standalone product, the Autonomy software was of no use to Prisa: "*As a stand-alone we would not have been able to use that software; we required Autonomy's expertise to implement that software*".

(6) It can be seen from the contemporaneous documentation that Prisa made clear to Autonomy that the contract would need to include "*every product and functionality for the project*" as Autonomy understood the requirements at that time.[470] As Mr Puri put it in cross-examination, "*We were looking for an entire solution that we could implement to realise our strategy and vision for*

[470] See also Alvaro Etcheverry of Autonomy's email to Mr Hussain dated 18 August 2010, in which he referred to the fact that "*we had a very successful POC meeting with the some of the top directors of Prisa in Madrid. Not only did we fully cover all their expectations and objectives we also demonstrated the added value of the Autonomy solution*".

Grupo Prisa. ... when we looked at the contract, we looked at it as a full comprehensive solution to meet our objectives and goals as an organisation".[471] He noted that "*the reason we had Autonomy do the services, they knew their technology best and would be able to provide an integrated solution for us to meet our overall objectives and goals from a strategy and vision perspective*".

(7) In his witness statement, Mr Avant suggested that "*the license component of the deal was more significant than the services component*" and that "*the agreement was primarily for the purchase of software*". However, Mr Avant accepted in cross-examination that he was not involved in the negotiation of the deal (which took place before he joined Autonomy), and as he accepted, the statements in his witness statement were based simply upon a review of the agreement after the event. In any event, he is wrong: the agreement was for Autonomy's software licences and services together because the two elements were indivisible. Similarly, Mr Martin purported to give evidence about the nature of the deal with Prisa, but he was not present at the pre-contract presentations, nor was he involved in negotiating the contract with Prisa.

(8) Although the Prisa First Amendment was entered into on 10 December 2010, no statement of work had been agreed by that time; indeed, it could not be agreed until further discussions about Prisa's requirements and testing on its systems had taken place. As a result, as is not disputed by Dr Lynch's witnesses, the scope of the project was not agreed as at 31 December 2010 and work on the project had not begun by that date. Indeed, on 31 December 2010, Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain received a status update which indicated that there was no project plan in place at that time.

(9) In fact, the scope of the project in relation to the flagship phase (Prisa Radio), which required the bulk of Autonomy's services and software, was not agreed until about a year later, in a statement of work dated 19 December 2011,[472] which was signed by Autonomy on 26 December 2011 and Prisa on 27 December 2011. It outlined a project schedule that indicated the project initiation had started in February 2011 and set a "*target go live date*" for the new website of February 2012. In the event, however, the project was never completed, according to the Claimants because Autonomy could not get its technology to work, and was cancelled.

3768. Thus, as with the Tottenham Hotspur transactions, the Prisa First Amendment did not provide any defined scope of work for the project, nor did it define the deliverables or key milestones against which delivery could be measured, nor did it contain any

[471] "*The reason we had Autonomy do the services, they knew their technology best and would be able to provide an integrated solution for us to meet our overall objectives and goals from a strategy and vision perspective*".

[472] In his witness statement, Mr Martin said that the 19 December 2011 statement of work only concerned Prisa Radio, which was one of many projects with Prisa. It is right that statements of work for other parts of the overall project were envisaged and negotiated, but only one other was signed by Prisa. However, that was dated 12 July 2011, so it cannot account for revenue having been recognised by Autonomy on 31 December 2010; indeed, it expressly related to services to be performed between 18 July and 30 September 2011. In any event, due to the problems that arose in relation to the flagship phase (Prisa Radio), all other initiatives were put on hold.

defined acceptance criteria. The Claimants made the point that this is unsurprising in circumstances where the parties recognised at the time of contracting that a statement of work addressing these issues would need to be agreed subsequently.

Appropriate accounting treatment

3769. On 31 December 2010, licence revenue totalling about €6.8 million[473] (out of a total consideration of €9.6 million) was recognised in full in respect of Prisa in Autonomy's accounts.

3770. For the same reasons as in relation to the Tottenham Hotspur transactions, the Claimants submitted that this accounting was wrong. In particular, they contended that:

(1) The substance of the deliverable to be provided to Prisa – when assessed from their perspective, which Mr MacGregor accepted is the correct approach[474] – was a solution, to which the provision of services by Autonomy was integral.

(2) Nothing of immediate value was transferred to Prisa at the time of entry into the Prisa First Amendment (31 December 2010), and therefore, no revenue should have been recognised by Autonomy in relation to the Prisa First Amendment at 31 December 2010.

(3) The deliverable under the Prisa First Amendment was not well defined, and in the absence of an agreed statement of work it was not possible to measure with any reliability important measures such as the stage of completion or costs to complete the transaction as was required in order to recognise revenue from services under IAS 18 §20.[475]

(4) In any event, as at 31 December 2010, no services had been provided to Prisa, and thus no costs had been incurred, so there was no revenue and no costs to account for in the FY 2010 accounts.

3771. In his expert reports, Mr MacGregor asserted that the Prisa First Amendment was not a 'solution'. The Claimants objected that it is unclear how he is able to opine on that

---

[473] The licence revenue recognised was €6,820,208, being (i) the €6,745,000 licence fee appearing in the Prisa First Amendment, and (ii) a further amount of €75,208 carved out from the "*One Off Fee*" in the Prisa First Amendment (of €243,208) for a one month extension and support.

[474] PwC's guidance stated in this regard as follows: "*The substance will not only be based on the transactions' visible effect; it will also have to be analysed based on all the transactions' contractual terms, or the combination of the contractual terms of linked transactions….in assessing the transactions' substance, the transaction should be viewed from the perspective of the customer and not the seller; that is, what does the customer believe they are purchasing? If the customer views the purchase as one product, then it is likely that the recognition criteria should be applied to the transaction as a whole. Conversely, if the customer perceives there to be a number of elements to the transaction, then the revenue recognition should be applied to each element separately.*"

[475] Indeed, this appears to have been recognised within Autonomy. On 19 May 2011, Mr Lucini sent an email to Mr Hussain in which he stated: "*As I get the facts it becomes clear that we are about to embark on a complicated project without the appropriate measures to actually positively deliver and get acceptance from the customer. what's more I think that in the present conditions we can never succeed as the customers perception and reality of what they are going to receive is simple that…a perception …There is no objective acceptance criteria…we are hoping the client likes it at this point*".

issue as he accepted it is a question of fact. They noted that in cross-examination, Mr MacGregor accepted that, as with the Tottenham Hotspur transaction, if the transaction is properly characterised as the provision of a solution, the revenue should not have been recognised in full as at 31 December 2010.

3772. However, what I consider Mr MacGregor meant was that the determination of the substance of the transaction depends on the facts and is ultimately a matter of accountancy judgement. In any event, the matters he put forward to explain his conclusion that on the basis of his understanding of the position are of relevance, though the Claimants did not trouble to address them.

3773. In particular, he drew attention to Mr Puri's own description in his witness statement of the scope and nature of the Prisa transactions, as suggesting that the customer perceived it was purchasing the underlying technology and, separately, additionally priced services for the implementation of the software products. The passage read as follows (emphasis as supplied by Mr MacGregor):

> *"[PRISA] entered into an agreement with [Autonomy] involving the purchase by Prisa of certain <u>Autonomy software licences, three year's support and maintenance and 2,640 days of professional services and training</u>, for use on El Pais and Prisa's website, audio, video and other digital products. The agreement provided for fess totalling approximately €9.6m, <u>including €6.8m in respect of software licences. Autonomy was to provide the underlying technology for many of the components required for the project, as well as provide services for the implementation of those products for Prisa.</u>"*

3774. Mr MacGregor also emphasised that the contract itself expressly stipulated a separate and defined rate for the services to be provided, and provided as well for further incremental increases in the service rates after the exhaustion of the contractual number of man day services contractually agreed.

3775. Furthermore, he made the point that the Claimants had *"not explained how they believe the professional services revenue should be accounted for if the components of the transaction were not considered separable, given that these services were invoiced as and when such services were performed, and are therefore (it must be assumed) matched to the cost of the service being performed."*

3776. Mr MacGregor's conclusion was that on the facts as he understood them, as reflected in the above discussion, it was within a range of proper accounting judgement to account for the Prisa transactions as Autonomy had accounted for them; and if his understanding of the facts was wrong, he did not believe that the professional services under the contract should have been accounted for other than in line with the called for provision of those services, leading in effect to the same conclusion that the accounting treatment in fact according to the transactions was probably correct and at least was proper.

Were Deloitte misled?

3777. As in the case of the Tottenham Hotspur transactions, Deloitte's working papers confirm that Deloitte were well aware of the terms of the agreement, and thus of the provisions for a licence fee, a support fee and professional services and managed

services thereafter. They were satisfied with the "carve-out rate" of 7% and concluded that the accounting treatment proposed was satisfactory.

3778. As in the context of the Tottenham Hotspur transactions, the Claimants relied on the evidence of Mr Welham in his witness statement that the true position was withheld from Deloitte, in respect of the Prisa First Amendment. But his evidence was premised upon the conclusory assumption he was instructed to make that the *"parties understood at the date of the contract that what was required was the delivery of a solution (to transform Prisa from a traditional media group to a predominantly digital media group…)"* and that there was *"no way to reliably measure the outcome of the transaction or the costs to complete the project"*. The assumptions commanded the conclusion sought by the Claimants.

My assessment whether the Prisa Sale should have been accounted for as a 'solution'

3779. Again (as in the context of the Tottenham Hotspur transactions) I accept and would agree with the view of the experts that the essential question can be characterised as whether the sale should be characterised as a sale of a licence or an agreement to provide a 'solution'.

3780. I do not, however, agree with the Claimants that the factual position was clear and necessarily demanded characterisation of the Prisa First Amendment as a 'solution' and could not be treated as comprised of two elements (the sale of a licence and the provision of services at a price).

3781. I accept the points made by Mr MacGregor as described above. I particularly agree with his analysis, as articulated also on behalf of Mr Hussain, that at least in its form, the Prisa First Amendment was, unequivocally, an agreement for the licencing of software and separately for the provision of services. Mr Puri agreed in cross-examination that this was indeed *"the way the contract is structured"*. The question then is whether what Mr Puri told me, in a following passage of his cross-examination, that *"the intent was to have a comprehensive solution"* and *"we could not execute on the technology without executing on the professional services, so they went hand in hand rather than just splitting up into two different components"* is sufficient to require a different reading of its effect as a matter of substance.

3782. In my view, it is not. Although in other contexts (especially in the context of the numerous impugned VAR transactions) I have accepted that it is substance rather than form which controls the accounting treatment of transaction, I have also made clear that the contractual form is usually the best guide to intention. The position is no different in this context. The following summary of the effect of the contractual provisions was put forward in the closing submissions on behalf of Mr Hussain, and I adopt it:

(1) It was for Prisa to determine on an as needed basis whether and in what quantity to deploy the (defined) Software (by putting it into operational use for access by its users) during the defined Deployment Period (Clause 4).

(2) Even if Prisa decided not to deploy the Software during the Deployment Period, it was nonetheless liable to pay the annual Support Service Fee (as defined) in full.

(3) At the end of the Deployment Period, it was for Prisa to provide an inventory of its use of the Software during the deployment Period. At that stage, the parties would consider the quantities of licences that Prisa would need in the future.

(4) The licence fee for the Software was payable up front and was non-refundable. The parties could have agreed, but did not agree, that the fee would be staggered or that Prisa's obligation to pay would be contingent upon the deployment/implementation of the Software or upon the Software achieving a particular outcome.

(5) If the parties mutually agreed a statement of works ("SOW"), Prisa would be entitled to call upon Autonomy to provide 2,640 man days professional services at the agreed bulk rate and thereafter at a rate of €900 per day.

3783. Mr Puri did agree that the arrangement was (as it was put to him in cross-examination):

> *"to have the software which gives you the building blocks and to have professional services and for you mutually to agree on the statement of works."*

3784. I also agree that the totality of what the parties agreed and promised each other can be understood from the written agreement itself. Unlike the position as I have found it to be in the case of the impugned VAR transactions, no assurances were given that the contractual agreement would in practice not be enforced. It was not suggested that there was any side understanding. What Prisa apparently hoped might be the benefits of collaboration and their confidence that Autonomy shared and would help it achieve its rather vaguely expressed objectives cannot subvert their stated and agreed understanding. In short, and again adopting Mr Casey's closing submissions on behalf of Mr Hussain:

(1) Prisa's obligation to pay the licence fee and software support services in full was unconditional and the fees were non-refundable. Its liability was not contingent upon its use of the Software for its intended or any other purpose.

(2) At the date of the Prisa Agreement, Prisa had no concrete ideas of what it wanted to do with the Software, other than a generalised aspiration to achieve the digital transformation of its business. Furthermore, the professional services work could only begin once the SOW had been mutually agreed with Autonomy.

(3) At its highest, Autonomy had agreed that Prisa could call upon it to provide professional services (subject to the terms of the agreement) but it had not agreed to perform any specific services (that being a matter for consensus in the SOW) nor had it agreed that it would achieve any specific outcome or result. It is common in business for contractors to be paid in phased stages of time or on the achievement of performance milestones. Autonomy and Prisa could have agreed that the licence fee would be paid in either of these ways, but did not do so.

(4) Thus, Prisa assumed the risks, among others, that on analysis the project would be far smaller in scale than anticipated in December 2010; that in the event it would choose not to pursue the project at all; that the SOW that it wanted could not be agreed with Autonomy in full; and that some or even the majority of the Software would prove to be superfluous to the project once Prisa properly defined it. Even if these circumstances materialised, Prisa had no right to, or expectation of, a refund of any part of the Software licence fee.

(5) In short, there is no warrant for the suggestion that the economic substance of the Prisa First Amendment was any different to its form.

3785. In all the circumstances, I do not accept that Deloitte were relevantly misled in this context; and I do not consider the facts clear enough to overturn the contemporaneous judgement call made of the contract and the facts they made.

Amgen (Q4 2010)

3786. Autonomy Inc entered into a Hosting Services and License Addendum (the "Hosting Addendum") with Amgen Inc ("Amgen") on 21 December 2010. This enabled Amgen to archive and access electronic communications in a hosted online electronic communications archiving and management system. It formed part of a wider project for the provision by Autonomy of hosting and related e-Discovery services, in relation to which there had been three prior agreements. The software and services to be provided under the Hosting Addendum related to Digital Safe technology[476].

3787. The Claimants made three points in respect of the Hosting Addendum in support of their case of improper accounting.

3788. First, they submitted that what, in substance, Amgen purchased was a 'solution', namely the "*Digital Safe System*". This comprised: (i) Digital Safe and related software (namely, DS Mail and Anywhere Archive), which was to be "*hosted and used for archiving*"; and (ii) hardware. The Digital Safe System was to be implemented for the provision of "*Hosted Services*", which consisted of "*DS Mail and Digital Safe Archiving services, which are a hosted online electronic communications archiving and management solution that enables [Amgen] to archive its electronic communications and enables Users to access such communications*". The services also included the purchase of a "*Dedicated Digital Safe*", which meant that all required servers (i.e. hardware) and software components were isolated for exclusive use by Amgen.

3789. Secondly, the Claimants invited me to note that the fees charged to Amgen by Autonomy, which were in two categories, were for a license and services (including infrastructure) which were not separately identifiable components of the overall 'solution' but rather were an integral part of the provision of the Digital Safe hosting services that Amgen had purchased. The Service fees of $11,382,076 which were charged comprised (i) an *"Infrastructure and Support Fee"* of $6,379,363 and (ii) an *"Archiving Fee"* of $5,002,713 (for volumes of data to be *"ingested into the Digital Safe"*). The Claimants submitted that these elements, along with the license to Anywhere Archive Software, were an integral part of the hosting product and neither was a separately identifiable component of the overall solution.

[476] By way of brief reminder, Digital Safe was an archiving solution that allowed customers to store, search and retrieve their data.

3790. Thirdly, the Claimants submitted that the licence element was artificially structured into the Hosting Addendum so that Autonomy could recognise as much revenue upfront as possible. It will be recalled (and see my consideration of the "Hosting claim") that such was the complexity of Digital Safe that generally (as here) it was provided as part of a hosted arrangement, whereby the Digital Safe system (on which the customer's data was stored) was: (i) located in Autonomy's data centres; and (ii) run by Autonomy on the customer's behalf. Part of the Claimants' complaint relating to the Amgen Hosting Addendum was that it provided for the restructuring of Amgen's hosting arrangements so that as the *quid pro quo* of greatly reduced hosting fees in the future, Amgen would pay a licence fee for an "Anywhere Archive" software licence entitling it (it was said merely notionally) to bring Digital Safe in-house.

3791. The Claimants' case impugning the Hosting Addendum appears to have two aspects.

3792. One aspect of the Claimants' case, which may not be advanced separately from the second (see below), is the Claimants' contention that the restructuring and the "Anywhere Archive" licence comprised a device. The burden of the complaint in this respect was it is clear that Amgen did not desire an "Anywhere Archive" software licence: it had no commercial effect in practice since as a practical matter, moving in-house was not feasible, Amgen had no wish to attempt it, and the services provided to Amgen were wholly unaffected by the sale of the licence. The purpose of the "Anywhere Archive" licence, it was said, was simply to enable Autonomy to accelerate and recognise revenue from its sale. This part of the Claimants' case reflects or expounds the same arguments as its "Hosting Case", though the Claimants had by trial limited their Schedule 12D "Hosting Case" (asserting direct claims for transactional losses for breaches of duty) to re-restructurings of existing hosting arrangements. However, although not confirmed by the Claimants in their submissions, my understanding of their case as pleaded in their RRAPoC, is that the alleged artificiality of the licence is not separately relied on to establish the claim. The claim as pleaded is that no revenue should have been recognised, not because of any alleged artificiality, but because the 'solution' had not yet been provided. The pleading was:

> *"The Digital Safe system had not been successfully implemented as at 31 December 2010 or by the end of the Relevant Period (30 June 2011), and no hosting services had been provided to Amgen prior to this date. Accordingly, no revenue should have been recognised in relation to this transaction at 30 June 2011."*

3793. In the circumstances, I have assumed that the Hosting Addendum was not intended to be an unexplained and unpleaded extension of the Claimants' Hosting Case; and in accordance with the pleadings, I take it that the claim must stand or fall according to the second part of it.[477]

---

[477] That is so even though I note that in Mr Hussain's written closing submissions it was accepted that the first part would *"clearly follow"* the outcome of the "Hosting Case" and (as will be seen) the Claimants' expert dealt with what I shall call the 'artificiality point' substantively.

3794. The second, and on the basis of that approach the gist, of the Claimants' case impugning the Hosting Addendum is that the Claimants' contention that the licence to "Anywhere Archive" software was not a separately identifiable component of the overall arrangement (under IAS 18 §13) and that the artificiality of the licence serves to underline that the intention and understanding of Autonomy and Amgen was that both the Digital Safe System and Amgen's data would be hosted, and all associated services would be performed, by Autonomy at its data centres. That was the substance of the transaction. Nothing was transferred to Amgen that was of independent value as the Anywhere Archive software could not be used separately from the Digital Safe System, which itself could not be used independently of Autonomy's support services. As events transpired, the purchased Digital Safe System was not implemented by the conclusion of the Relevant Period. The Hosting Addendum contained agreed milestones for the completion of the project with an expected completion date of 30 June 2011. This expected completion date was not met and formed part of a complaint by Amgen against Autonomy on 5 November 2012. In short, until all the constituent elements of the 'solution' were provided no revenue should have been recognised.

How Hosting Addendum (a) was and (b) should have been accounted for on pleaded case

3795. Before the agreement of the Hosting Addendum on 21 December 2010, there was internal discussion within Autonomy about the amount of revenue that could be recognised. On 10 December 2010, in an email from Mr Mooney to Mr Chamberlain, copying in Mr Hussain, the view was expressed that Autonomy would be able to recognise the licence element (of $3.5 million) and the first two years of fees. When the deal eventually closed, Mr Mooney sent Mr Hussain an email stating "*Should be able to recognize very close to what's been committed. ($7.4M)*".

3796. Ultimately, Autonomy recognised revenue for Q4 2010 of: (i) $3.5 million in respect of the "Anywhere Archive" licence on 29 December 2010; and (ii) $2,201,745 in respect of accrued infrastructure fees on 31 December 2010.[478]

3797. The Claimants' case is that this was improper: by reference to all these considerations, no revenue should have been recognised in relation to the Hosting Addendum when it was or indeed at any time before the end of the Relevant Period (30 June 2011).

(1) Nothing was transferred to Amgen that was of independent value as the Anywhere Archive software could not be used separately from the Digital Safe System, which itself could not be used independently of Autonomy's support services. Thus, the software licence should not have been accounted for separately from the overall Digital Safe hosting arrangement.

(2) In the case of the infrastructure fees, again, the lack of separability of the infrastructure element from the overall Digital Safe hosting arrangement (see above) meant that it was not appropriate to account for it separately.

(3) Accordingly, in both cases, the revenue recognition criteria should have been applied to the transaction as a whole in accordance with its overall substance, namely the provision of a service over time. Revenue should, therefore, have been recognised over the period that any hosting services were actually provided, in accordance with the recognition criteria for the provision of services under IAS 18 §20. These include the requirement that "*the stage of*

[478] Mr Hussain was involved in discussions about the appropriate accounting treatment of this transaction.

completion of the transaction at the end of the reporting period can be measured reliably".

(4) The Digital Safe System was not implemented, and the provision of hosting services did not commence, by the end of the Relevant Period, as explained above. Therefore, no infrastructure or licence revenue should have been recognised (even rateably) at all. Indeed, it was inherently unlikely that the Digital Safe project would even have commenced, let alone completed, at the time revenue was recognised within just 10 days of the Hosting Addendum being signed.[479] It was, therefore, inappropriate to recognise any revenue by the end of Q4 2010.[480]

3798. Mr MacGregor cautioned that the evidential record was sparse. But on the available evidence, and especially having regard to the terms and provisions of the Hosting Addendum, (which Mr Holgate had not read) he took a different view from Mr Holgate. In particular:

(1) He did not agree that it was necessarily the case that the "infrastructure" and support fees could not be separately identified. He did not accept Mr Holgate's conclusion, based on the Assumptions he was told to make, that the "infrastructure" could not be regarded as in any way independent or operate independently from the Digital Safe services.

(2) Whilst accepting that it would not have been possible for Autonomy to provide the archiving services prior to Amgen putting any data into the Digital Safe, it appeared to him, based on his review of Deloitte's working papers (which Mr Holgate did not consider) that it was possible for Autonomy to set up the systems and infrastructure to hold such data at the outset of the contract. Also, it made sense to him that, if (as appeared) Autonomy was designating servers for Autonomy's use of a term of five years, Autonomy should be entitled to charge Amgen for these dedicated servers from the beginning of the contractual use term (of five years) regardless of whether Amgen made use of the servers or not.

(3) Further, in the absence of any evidence from Amgen as to its expectation and intentions, those could only be ascertained from the contractual documentation. The Hosting Addendum itself undoubtedly treated them separately, and provided for payment in any event on or before 12 February 2011. Mr MacGregor made the point that if, as suggested by Mr Holgate, the licence was in substance part of the provision of an overall service and was considered to be so, it was open to Amgen, and he would have expected it, to have protected its interests by specifying that it would only be obliged to pay once the services had been provided, or would be entitled to a refund if in the event they were not. As it was, Autonomy contracted for and received

[479] The milestones for the project envisaged a draft of the project plan being produced at a later point in time, namely 10 January 2011. Thus, revenue was recognised before the project had been planned, let alone implemented.

[480] Mr Holgate also expressed the view that, even if the criteria for sale of goods applied to the transaction (which they do not), the fact that the Digital Safe System had not been implemented shows that criteria (a) and (b) of IAS §14 had not been met.

payment from Amgen of the licence fee and the infrastructure and support fee on 11 February 2011.

(4) Generally, he concluded that there was *"insufficient information to impugn the accounting treatment as recorded by Autonomy and detailed on Deloitte's files."*

Were Deloitte misled?

3799. The Claimants contended that had Deloitte been aware of the true facts in relation to the Amgen transaction, it would not have considered it appropriate to recognise revenue up-front.

3800. As to this, according to the Claimants:

(1) The Deloitte report for Q4 2010 shows that Deloitte considered the transaction based on a false understanding. It stated that the deal "*had been structured to split the licence fee into a licence fee payable upfront and an infrastructure fee payable over the term of the licence*" and that "*Both elements have been recognised in revenue as there are no further obligations on Autonomy's part now that the software has been delivered*". However, as shown above, in substance the transaction was for the delivery of a solution and that solution was, in fact, not delivered at all during the Relevant Period. Autonomy had many further obligations at the time the software was delivered.

(2) In cross-examination, Mr Welham explained that Deloitte's view of the Amgen transaction was "*based on what we knew at the time*", in response to which the cross-examiner said, "*I'm not going to debate the assumptions you've been asked to make*". It was not suggested to Mr Welham that Deloitte would still have considered it appropriate to recognise revenue if those assumptions were, in fact, true - as indeed they are.

3801. The Claimants also relied on Mr Bloomer's confirmation in cross-examination that the Audit Committee was not told the full picture. As to this, it was led to understand that: (i) the Amgen sale was the sale of a Digital Safe software licence and storage – rather than, according to the Claimants, the sale of a solution absent the implementation of which the software could not be used; and (ii) there were no further obligations on Autonomy's part as the software had been delivered – even though the solution had not been implemented at the time revenue was recognised. The Claimants contended that the Audit Committee were thus deprived of relevant considerations. As Mr Bloomer confirmed, it would "*certainly have been relevant for Deloitte at the time to ensure that the revenue split was right between whatever had been delivered by the end of this quarter <u>and whatever remained to be delivered as ongoing services</u>*" (emphasis added).

3802. However, and although the Claimants in their oral closing argument submitted that there had been no challenge to this evidence (Mr Miles having stated he did not intend to *"debate the assumptions"* and Mr Casey not having cross-examined on the issue at all) as I read the evidence of Mr Welham he was simply expressing the conclusions already implicit (and even sometimes explicit) in the Assumptions he was required to make. As in other contexts, the evidence did not seem to me to carry the analysis any further.

My assessment

3803. On the basis that the Claimants have not pleaded or advanced this claim as an extension of their "Hosting Case" (see above), the gist and basis of the claim is the recognition of revenue before delivery of the 'solution'. Although there appear to me to be a number of unanswered questions as to the basis for splitting off part of what in the round appears may well have been acquired as an indivisible whole, the evidence in this context was relatively sparse.

3804. Against that, the terms and provisions of the Hosting Addendum did separate out the various elements of what Autonomy engaged to provide and the amounts payable at each contractually agreed stage.

3805. I have concluded that in the particular context, and taking into account the nature of the claim as part of a fraud case where, as to this part of it, I have heard from neither of the two Defendants, there is insufficient factual basis to overturn the express provisions of the contract and the contemporaneous judgement call made of the contract and the facts made by Autonomy and approved by Deloitte.

Iron Mountain (Q2 2011)

3806. The fourth and last of the "Other Transactions" impugned by the Claimants was a sale of a perpetual licence to IDOL and associated maintenance and support services by Autonomy to Iron Mountain Information Management Inc ("Iron Mountain") for a licence fee of $1.5 million, with an additional $75,000 support and maintenance fee. As mentioned earlier, the transaction was concluded on the same day that Autonomy acquired the Iron Mountain Digital business from Iron Mountain Inc (a related group company). It is also worth noting that this is one of the impugned OEM transactions (OEM61).

3807. In the written closing submissions on behalf of Mr Hussain, the Iron Mountain transaction is described as *"a one-off in the case"*; and it is correct that the transaction is unlike any of the three "Other Transactions" addressed above, and the basis of impugning the transaction is specific and particular.

3808. The Claimants' essential complaint can be summarised as follows:

(1) As was common ground between the parties' respective experts was the correct approach, Deloitte determined that the perpetual licence sale to Iron Mountain and Autonomy's acquisition of the Iron Mountain Digital business were linked transactions and that in consequence it was necessary, in determining how much revenue from the sale could be recognised, to establish the *"fair value"* of the licence sold under IAS 18. That was more difficult than might appear since (as previously noted) IDOL had no standard price or value, with much turning on the particularities of different customers.

(2) Autonomy calculated the fair value of the licence by identifying what it considered to be eleven comparable sales with seven different customers. Details of these were set out in a table which Autonomy sent to Deloitte. Autonomy then calculated the average price (adjusting to the same 5-year term

as the Iron Mountain licence[481] if the allegedly comparable licence term was different) before excluding three of the comparables on grounds of a material difference undermining comparability[482].

(3) The comparables left gave rise to an average value of just over $11 million. In an email dated 20 July 2011 to Messrs Murray and Welham and copied to Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain stated that:

> *"This supports a fair value of $10-11m. Given the subjectivity we have gone for a slightly lower value - $7m – as we believe this to be a prudent and strongly supportable position."*

3809. The Claimants contended that the way that Autonomy assessed and determined the *"fair value"* was unjustifiable for two main reasons:

(1) First, the notion of determining "*fair value*" by comparison to other deals was misconceived because there was no standard pricing for Autonomy software, including IDOL:

(a) On 12 April 2011, Mr Welham sent an email to Mr Mercer (copying in Mr Hussain) expressing concern with the revenue treatment for two deals signed with Discover Tech. One was for end-user FINRA, and the other was for end-user Prisa. Both concerned e-Discovery software, into which IDOL was incorporated.[483] Mr Welham said: "*These are identical, i.e. products sold, number of users etc but the purchase price is $1.1m vs. $3.8m. We need help understanding how this works from a fair value and arms' length perspective*".

(b) The next day, Mr Chamberlain sent the following explanation to Mr Welham (again, copying in Mr Hussain): "*it is not uncommon for the same software to be sold to different customers for very different prices. The buying decision is all around ROI and different organisations can achieve different returns with the same software. The negotiations are complex and lead to very different answers from time to time*".[484]

---

[481] Management took a 5-year term to be what in reality is equivalent to a 'perpetual' licence in the software industry as after that point it is likely that the technology will be outdated. Deloitte's working paper noted this as follows: *"As the Iron Mountain licence is a perpetual licence, management has assumed that in reality perpetual in the software industry only means around 5 years, as after that point the technology is largely redundant and a new licence would need to be purchased – on that basis, management has extrapolated the value of any licence with a term <5 years up to 5 years, to represent the value of the licence if it had been sold as a perpetual licence"*.

[482] Three were excluded on the ground that *"Autonomy is a fundamental part of the customer offering"* which, based on Deloitte's working paper, the Claimants took to mean that it was not possible *"to split out the IDOL search related value"*

[483] Mr Welham's email concerns impugned VT30. As is apparent from the relevant letter agreement dated 31 March 2011, the software licensed to Prisa was e-Discovery software. IDOL was incorporated into such software by the time of this deal. Given that the deal with FINRA was "*identical*", the same must have been true for the software licensed to FINRA too.

[484] Dr Lynch confirmed in cross-examination that what Mr Chamberlain told Mr Welham was true. When it was put to him that there was no standard market price for Autonomy software, Dr Lynch said this would depend on the software – but he did not specify particular software that did have a standard market price. Nor was Dr

(c) Accordingly, the same piece of Autonomy software could be sold on identical terms to two different customers at two very different prices from a fair value perspective. Prices were determined by the idiosyncrasies of the particular customer and the complex process of contractual negotiation.

(2) Secondly, even if it were possible to compare prices, the particular transactions selected for comparison in Autonomy's spreadsheet were inappropriate. In their written closing submissions, the Claimants included a detailed table explaining their contentions in this regard by reference to each "comparable", concluding that none of the selected transactions was an appropriate comparable, for reasons which included variously (a) the licence covered different software and/or a different number of functionalities covered by the licence (b) the licence restricted the number or type of permitted users or the nature of permitted use (whereas the Iron Mountain licence was for an unlimited number and type of users and did not restrict use) (c) the licence was restricted to English, whereas the Iron Mountain licence included all languages supported by Autonomy (d) in four cases (a licence sold to Capax Discovery (RT 1), a licence sold to VMS (RT 2), a licence sold to Filetek (RT 3) and a licence sold to EMC (RT 5)) the sale was part of a transaction alleged (and which I have found) to be reciprocal.

3810. These criticisms were well put together and persuasive in demonstrating that the exercise was imperfect. But the difficulty is in fashioning any less imperfect alternatives.

3811. Mr Holgate suggested none, and acknowledged that it was not possible to be definitive about an alternative figure. In plumping (as he did) for the transaction price of $1.5 million, on the residual approach that he considered that *"no other number suggests itself as being preferable to $1.5 million"* Mr Holgate undermined the whole rationale for requiring (as IAS 18 did and does) the assessment of fair value in the first place (that is, that in a linked transaction the purchase price paid might well not be the 'right' price).

3812. Mr MacGregor made the point that *"Simply because arriving at a fair value is difficult does not mean that it should not be done; in fact international accounting standards require it must be done in certain circumstances."* Even accepting that *"views may (and…often do) differ as to what constitutes a "comparable" transaction, as there are so many different characteristics to be considered as well as the relative weight given to each"* there may be little alternative. Mr MacGregor considered that:

(1) Absent any indication of "standard price" or price list, such an approach, i.e. by reference to comparable transactions, was reasonable.

(2) Deloitte had carefully considered Autonomy management's fair value exercise (as recorded in its working paper, which show that Deloitte undertook a full review) and reached the conclusion that *"management has used a representative sample of deals and that the average used (excluding the one outlier) provides a prudent estimate of fair value"*. He noted that Deloitte had also brought the matter to the attention of the Audit Committee (though it is to

Lynch's qualification expanded upon in re-examination.

be noted that Mr Bloomer confirmed that they were not provided with details of the 'comparable' transactions). Overall, Mr MacGregor saw no reason to second-guess that assessment.

3813. The Claimants were critical of Mr MacGregor's answers about these matters in cross-examination. In particular, and although more circuitously expressed, I took the effect of their criticism to be that he had (a) appeared to downplay the extent to which transactions even needed to be comparable and (b) done nothing to defend the management's assessment of fair value and appeared to accept that the comparators relied on by Autonomy did not establish anything more than that the default figure of $1.5 million might not be correct and (at most) that a higher figure might be justified. There was some substance in this: and I was left wondering whether he had himself lost confidence in the comparability of the transactions identified, though he refrained from any such admission.

3814. The Claimants submitted that the description of the fair value adjustment exercise to the Audit Committee was highly misleading. The Deloitte report dated 30 June 2011 stated that management had "*determined fair value with reference to seven similar sized licence deals*" although that sample did include "*one significant outlier*".[485] Mr Bloomer confirmed that the Audit Committee was not provided with any details of the comparator deals. Thus, the Audit Committee's understanding was that the fair value exercise was undertaken by reference to seven other deals, and that the deals used were "*relatively similar*". The Claimants submitted that neither of these factors was true: the sample of transactions actually utilised in the calculation consisted of just four transactions from three customers, and the deals used were not similar at all.

3815. They suggested further that the comparables had been specially selected by Autonomy to justify a figure Autonomy already had in mind and needed to achieve. They relied in that respect both on what they described as the inappropriateness of the transactions they considered and on an email exchange between Mr Chamberlain and Mr Hussain on 15 July 2011 (and thus before the analysis was undertaken) in which Mr Chamberlain first requested from Mr Hussain *" a summary of comparable transactions so we can justify the fair value adjustment".*

My assessment

3816. I was left with a feeling of unease about the exercise adopted and the choice of comparables. Nevertheless, the fact remains that, as emphasised in Mr Hussain's closing submissions, the exercise was fully examined by Deloitte and Mr Welham did not suggest in his witness statement that Deloitte was in any way misled about this transaction: and they could assess the comparables for themselves.

3817. The Claimants made much of Mr Bloomer's evidence that the Audit Committee was not provided with any details of the "comparator deals" (see paragraph 3814 above). But it was for Deloitte to determine what detail to provide in their report and the balance of Mr Bloomer's evidence was that the approach which had been taken *"seemed a reasonable approach"*, and he and the Audit Committee well understood that "similarity" was a relative concept. The following exchange in his cross-examination seems to me to illustrate this:

[485] The outlier referred to is Eli Lilly. As recorded by Deloitte, this transaction was excluded because: (i) of the different sizes of Eli Lilly and Iron Mountain; and (ii) because the value of IDOL had declined since 2008 (see Deloitte workbook tickmark (a)).

> *Q. And you would have understood that the comparator deals used for the fair value exercise were similar to the Iron Mountain transaction, yes?*
>
> *A. As I say, relatively similar given the variability in the licence and the deals that Autonomy did, it – you know, there's an element of art rather than science in trying to do this exercise but they would have been similar enough to do it in this way."* [My emphasis]

3818. In the round, and again having heard from neither of the Defendants, I have concluded that I was not shown a sufficient evidential basis for disturbing the assessment made by Autonomy and approved by Deloitte.

Overall conclusion on the "Other Transactions"

3819. Accordingly, I do not consider that the Claimants' case for impugning the Other Transactions was made good in any of them. I consider them, for a number of reasons, to be distinguishable from the other claims in this case, which may explain their bundling together, and possibly even why Dr Lynch was not cross-examined on them.

3820. As a general observation, the question, which I would have found difficult, as to the effect on the calculation of loss when a claim has been made good against one Defendant but not the other, does not arise in the context of the Other Transactions, or in relation to any of the claims in this case.

DECEIT AND MISREPRESENTATION CLAIMS

The pre-acquisition misrepresentations alleged

3821. The Claimants have also pleaded claims against the Defendants in common law deceit and/or under the Misrepresentation Act 1967 ("the 1967 Act" or "s.2(1)"). The Claimants' case is that in the course of the acquisition process the Defendants made a series of misrepresentations to HP on which HP/Bidco[486] relied in deciding to purchase Autonomy, and the price it was willing to pay. Subject to the 'wrinkle' that the claims are brought by Bidco, these claims are 'direct' claims: that is to say, they rely on what was allegedly represented to HP itself by Dr Lynch and/or Mr Hussain, rather than on what Autonomy represented to the market in its published information.

3822. In paragraph 207 of its RRAPoC, Bidco limited its direct claims against the Defendants in deceit and/or misrepresentation to loss attributable to the acquisition from them of the shares and share options that they each sold to Bidco in aggregate amounting to some US$420 million (being the dollar equivalent on the date these claims were issued (30 March 2015) of £284 million, the shares having been denominated in sterling)[487].

3823. Its claim (through Bidco) in deceit required HP to establish that:

(a) the Defendants made representations of fact that were untrue;

(b) they made those representations, directly or indirectly, to HP;

(c) they did so knowingly, without belief in their truth, or reckless as to their truth;

(d) they intended HP to rely on those representations; and

(e) HP did so rely, and thereby suffered loss.

3824. Bidco's alternative claims in misrepresentation under s.2(1) do not require proof of the third element (that the false representations were made fraudulently, that is, without belief in their truth or reckless as to their truth). Rather, if the other elements adumbrated above are established, the claims are made out unless the Defendants prove that they had reasonable grounds to believe, and did believe up to the time they sold their shares and share options to Bidco, that the facts represented were true.

Summary of the representations and the claims made in respect of them

3825. The eight sets of pre-acquisition representations which the Claimants alleged were made to HP were grouped by the Claimants into three stages of the acquisition process:

---

[486] Again, the *Bidco point* arises: see paragraphs 484 to 500 above. References in this part of this judgment to HP should be taken to it as the controlling mind of Bidco and/or on the basis that representations to HP were intended to be relied on by HP and any acquisition vehicle that HP might use to acquire Autonomy.

[487] Bidco's case is that HP generally operated in US dollars at all relevant times, that it had to purchase sterling to effect the acquisition, and that Bidco, as the corporate vehicle that HP used to purchase Autonomy, foreseeably bore loss in US dollars: see paragraph 196C of the RRAPoC. I will address further in a judgment on quantum issues as to the currency of account and the currency of calculation of loss.

(1) the initial approach to HP by Qatalyst and introductory meetings in January to March 2011;

(2) the more detailed discussions in London in June and July 2011; and

(3) the due diligence process in August 2011.

3826. In summary, the Claimants based their claims on:

(a) Representations made in January and February 2011 in slide decks ("the January and February Slides") sent by Mr Quattrone of Qatalyst ;

(b) A further slide deck presented at a meeting in March 2011 ("the March Slides");

(c) Representations allegedly made by Dr Lynch at a meeting attended by representatives of HP and Autonomy in London on 29 June 2011 ("the June meeting");

(d) Further representations allegedly made at another meeting on 29 July 2011 ("the July meeting");

(e) Representations allegedly made in the course of due diligence calls in August 2011, on 1, 2 and 4 August 2011.

3827. The representations on which HP based its case in general reflected Autonomy's published information. The Claimants acknowledged that their case on the falsity of the representations, and on the Defendants' knowledge of (or recklessness as to) that falsity, generally followed from their case on the alleged false accounting. If the Defendants succeeded in defending the allegations about false accounting, many of the misrepresentation claims would have fallen away: but they have not done so.

3828. The Defendants denied fraud and deceit. Their over-arching defences were that:

(1) Qatalyst was not acting as their or even as Autonomy's agent, and the Defendants cannot be liable for any misrepresentation made by Qatalyst, but not by them or on their behalf.

(2) The Claimants relied on some representations made by Dr Lynch and on others allegedly made by Mr Hussain, and (for example) in their counterfactual submissions as to loss, they did not distinguish in respect of each alleged misrepresentation which, if either, was responsible; but each Defendant had to be considered separately, and in considering a claim against one, only those misrepresentations found to have been made by him, or on his behalf, can be taken into account. Neither was alleged to have nor had any liability in respect of statements made by the other (save insofar as the Claimants allege that Dr Lynch, by his silence, acquiesced in a misrepresentation made by Mr Hussain; I deal with this below in the context of the 29 July 2011 meeting).

(3) Neither had conscious knowledge at the time that they had made any representation which was false.

(4) The Claimants had not proved inducement/reliance.

(5) The Claimants had not proved loss.

3829. In addition, Mr Hussain contended in his Defence that even if, contrary to his primary case, he knew that statements made in Autonomy's reported financial results and its other public statements were false (or had no honest belief that they were true):

(a) Mr Hussain always made it clear to HP, and it was understood by all parties to the negotiations, that it was for HP to carry out its own due diligence in relation to the Autonomy acquisition.

(b) In repeating those statements to HP, or referring HP to Autonomy's published information, he was "*at its highest*" representing that those sources <u>contained</u> the statements in issue, and was neither making such statements himself, nor representing that they were accurate, or even that he reasonably believed them to be accurate.

3830. In his closing submissions this contention, which was not advanced by Dr Lynch and which the Claimants dismissed as unrealistic, was not repeated in the context of the January and February Slides[488] but it was in relation to the 1 August 2011 due diligence call, and I take it to have remained part of his case in both contexts. [489]

The January and February Slides

3831. The first two sets of misrepresentations relied on by the Claimants were made in the January and February Slides.

3832. The Defendants' position was that:

(1) Neither of these slide stacks or presentations was prepared by either Dr Lynch nor Mr Hussain, nor were they sent by them to HP, or used by either of them on a call or meeting. According to the Defendants, these were not representations by either Dr Lynch or Mr Hussain, nor were they made to Bidco. Instead:

(a) The January Slides were emailed by Mr Quattrone to Mr Lane of HP on 26 January 2011.

(b) The February Slides were emailed by Mr Quattrone to Mr Robison on 3 February 2011.

---

[488] *"At its highest, any representation by Mr Hussain would have been to the effect that he believed that AU's financial information was accurate and not misleading. Any such representation would have been true"*

[489] In that context, Mr Hussain's pleaded defence was that *"Mr Hussain was simply repeating information from the Q2 2011 Quarterly Financial Report and investor presentation…As a matter of English law, Mr Hussain's repetition of such information amounted, at most, to a representation that those sources contained the relevant figures, but not that those figures were accurate."*

(c) Both sets of Slides were prepared by Qatalyst on its own accord, as an investment bank's tool to drum up a transaction from which it could profit: neither set was prepared by either of the Defendants.

(d) Like the Slides sent by Qatalyst to Oracle at around the same time, they were sent "*for the purpose of our* [i.e. Qatalyst's] *<u>independently</u> pitching Autonomy as an idea*".[490]

(e) Neither of the Defendants was even aware that the slide stacks were being prepared.

(2) The January and February Slides preceded the acquisition by more than six months, at a time when no transaction was in prospect, and when HP and Autonomy were at an early stage of getting to know each other.[491] They played no part in HP's decision in August to proceed with the acquisition of Autonomy.

(3) The January and February Slides were prepared on the basis of and reflected Autonomy's published information, which was accurate.

(4) Even if (contrary to the Defendants' case) the published information was in some respect not accurate, Dr Lynch's case in particular was that he believed it was, and reasonably so: accordingly, even if these documents are treated as containing misrepresentations by Dr Lynch, there would be no fraud, and Dr Lynch would have a defence to a claim under s.2(1).

(5) In any case, at that stage, neither of the Defendants was intending to promote or bring about a sale. At that stage, according to the Defendants, Qatalyst was simply (quoting Dr Lynch's written closing), *"arranging meetings with several companies on a low-key basis, preparing for the possibility of an unsolicited bid defence."*

3833. The Claimants did not accept any of this. Their position was that Dr Lynch and/or Mr Hussain made these representations, or caused them to be made, as part of the strategy of enticing a bidder and inducing a sale:

(1) Mr Quattrone was shopping Autonomy to a set of potential purchasers that he had discussed with Dr Lynch. This "*potential acquiror universe*" included HP. Qatalyst produced and provided the January and February Slides to HP as part of that process and on behalf of Autonomy.

(2) The January and February Slides included information taken from a slide deck with the file name "*corpoverview2010*" sent by Dr Lynch to Mr Quattrone by two emails in advance of their video conference on 6 December 2010, and shortly before Mr Quattrone began approaching potential purchasers. The Claimants contended (and put to Dr Lynch) that the material was provided to

[490] Email from Mr Quattrone of Qatalyst to Dr Lynch, 29 September 2011.

[491] See Mr Johnson's evidence in the US criminal proceedings that the video-conference on 3 February was a "*typical first meeting with the company to learn a little bit more about what they do, a little bit about their products, but fairly high level, from what I remember*", and that "*you start at a very high level because we're talking to a lot of companies all the time*".

Qatalyst with the intention that Qatalyst should use the material to pitch Autonomy to potential buyers. As to this:

(a) I was told that the attachments to these two emails have been lost; and the Claimants had therefore referred to the slides sent by Dr Lynch to Mr Quattrone as the *"Lost Slides"*.

(b) However, two other Autonomy presentations from around this time – one with the file name "*Corporate overview November 2010*" (the "November 2010 Slides"); and another with the file name "*Company Overview – December 2010*" (the "December 2010 Slides") have been located. Dr Lynch accepted that Autonomy used standard slides, which it updated as needed, and that he along with others would work on them: "*one deck is used as the starting point for another*".

(c) A comparison of the November 2010 and December 2010 Slides with the January and February Slides (and indeed the March Slides, discussed below) shows significant overlaps, as was shown in detail in cross-examination. Materially:

(i) The representations as to overall revenue, gross margin and net profit in the January and February Slides were contained in the "*Autonomy Overview*" slide in each deck. Those Slides extensively reproduced material (including but not limited to materially identical representations) contained in four separate slides in the November 2010 Slides: "*Introduction to Autonomy*"; "*Autonomy's Power of Three"*; "*Financial Overview*"; and a slide containing bar charts. Those slides from the November 2010 Slides were later reproduced and updated in the March Slides.

(ii) The representations as to organic IDOL growth in the January and February Slides were contained in bar charts in the "*Key Financial Metrics*" slide in each deck, which reproduced and updated an otherwise substantively identical bar chart labelled "*Quarterly Organic Growth*" in the November 2010 Slides.

(iii) The representations as to revenues by category in the January and February Slides were contained in the pie charts reproduced at paragraph 3842(4) below, which substantively reproduced and updated a table of the same data in the November 2010 Slides. The same table was itself reproduced and updated in the March Slides.

(iv) The representations as to IDOL OEM in the January and February Slides were contained in the "*IDOL Software Business Model*" slide in the January and February Slides. Those slides extensively reproduced material (including but

not limited to materially identical representations) from the December 2010 Slides.

(d) The Claimants submitted that it is clear that the January and February Slides were heavily based on the Lost Slides (updated appropriately), including the representations in issue.

3834. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch (in answers that struck me as having been thought about in anticipation of this line of questioning) admitted that the January and February Slides "*may*" have been based on the Lost Slides, but (i) initially claimed that the Lost Slides were publicly available on Autonomy's website; and (ii) pointed out that many of the representations concerned publicly reported figures. He also insisted that none of this was done, nor was Qatalyst's involvement with a view, to pitch Autonomy to potential purchasers. He told me:

> *"We were interested in the idea of having the ability to, if we got an irresistible bid, to have more than one bidder and the possibility of having a better home for the company that we could carry on with our vision and also we were very happy to take up these introductions to the most senior people in the technology sector in the world".*

3835. I am not persuaded that the derivation of the content of the January and February Slides has as much significance in determining whether the Slides amounted to representations by the Defendants as the Claimants suggested it did. It seems to me to be obvious that Qatalyst would have asked for information, and that Autonomy would have wished to, and in the event did, supply it. As the Claimants pointed out, if the compilation in the Lost Slides was available on and easily mined from Autonomy's website, there would have been no need to go to the effort of dividing the deck up into two parts and sending them to Mr Quattrone by email, as Dr Lynch did; he could simply have sent a link for Mr Quattrone to download. The coincidence of timing between the sending of the January and February Slides, and Mr Quattrone's approaches also suggests some connection between the two.

3836. All in all, it seems to me plain that the derivation or source of the information was the slides prepared by Autonomy: and there would have been no point in Qatalyst re-inventing the wheel from publicly available information. However, in my view, the form and content of the January and February Slides, and the fact that both were presented on their face as being Qatalyst documents, suggests (and I find) that, whatever their derivation, they were put forward by Qatalyst as its own documents.

3837. The more pertinent and difficult question is whether the documents were put forward at the meeting with HP on 3 February 2011 in the presence of the Defendants and without objection or correction from either of them. The Claimants contended that the February Slides were indeed shared with HP <u>during</u> the 3 February 2011 video-conference with HP that both Defendants attended (and there is no suggestion that they demurred from the representations made in them). They relied in this regard on Dr Lynch's own evidence in his first witness statement, where he said <u>(emphasis added)</u>:

> *"HP claims that there were misrepresentations about the amount of revenue recognisable from OEM relationships, the growth of Autonomy's OEM business and the existence of royalties from OEMs in three PowerPoint slides shared or shown to HP in January, February and March 2011. <u>The February</u>*

> *and March slides were shared with HP during video-conferences that I attended.*
>
> *The January and February slides were prepared by Mr Frank Quattrone and Qatalyst…"*

3838. However, in the course of cross-examination, Dr Lynch claimed for the first time that the February Slides had not been shared during the video-conference, and rather that some other, previously unidentified and (he seemed to suggest) no longer extant, presentation deck was shared instead. The Claimants urged that this evidence should be rejected, given that:

(1) The passage cited from Dr Lynch's first witness statement is unambiguous and cannot sensibly be construed in the context of what immediately precedes and follows it as referring to some slide deck other than the February Slides.

(2) No correction was made to that paragraph between 14 September 2018, when that evidence was served, and the moment when Dr Lynch made his new claim in the course of cross-examination.

(3) Dr Lynch has not identified an alternative set of slides, nor have the Claimants been able to locate one.

3839. In the circumstances, I do not feel able to accept Dr Lynch's evidence in cross-examination contradicting what he had said in his witness statement. He himself retreated to saying that *"Yes, there's been a lot of confusion about these slides"* and he oscillated between denial that the slides had been put forward at all and general assertion that *"…these would not be slides that I would do for a presentation because they're all about things that I don't know about"*. In short, the best that can be said about his evidence in this regard was that it was confused.

3840. I find that the February Slides were based on material provided for the purpose of such a presentation and were put forward under the name of Qatalyst at the 3 February 2011 meeting in the presence of Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain, neither of whom dissociated himself in any way from their content.

3841. Furthermore, even if Dr Lynch's claim that the February Slides were not shared with HP during the video-conference were correct, there is no dispute that they were provided to HP around the same time. I agree with the Claimants that the points made above in respect of both the January and February Slides would still apply, and that Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain both in effect adopted their presentation, and implicitly vouched for their accuracy.

Substance of representations in the January and February Slides and their alleged falsity

3842. The Claimants' case (the elaboration of which I have taken very largely from their written closing submissions) is that the January and February Slides included the following false representations (set out here following the order of the slide decks, which is identical in each case)[492]:

[492] The analysis which follows reflects an exercise undertaken by the Claimants and their valuation expert to contrast certain financial metrics reported to the market by Autonomy with what, on the Claimants' case, it

(1) The Autonomy group's total revenues were said to be $740 million in 2009. The Claimants' case is that True total revenues were $646.8 million; or $593.8 million excluding the undisclosed pure hardware sales; and $870 million in 2010, when True total revenues were $722.3 million; or $623.3 million excluding the undisclosed pure hardware sales.[493]

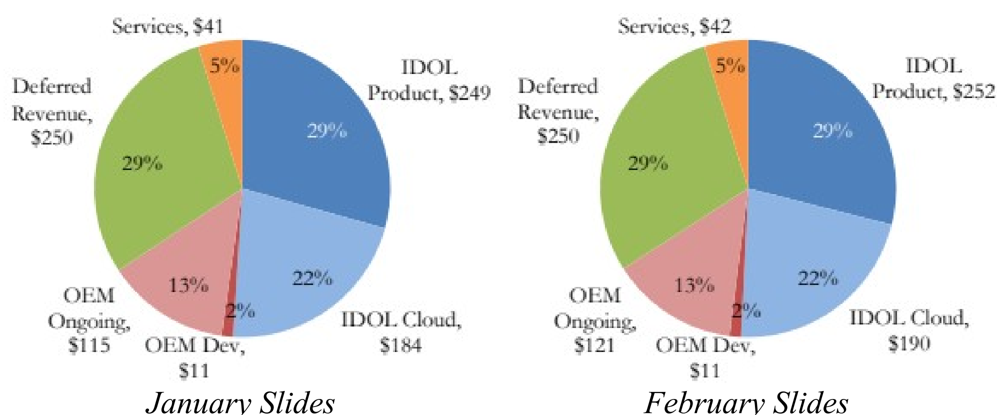
(2) The Autonomy group's adjusted gross margin was said to be 88% in 2009, when in fact the True adjusted gross margin (correcting only for the treatment of hardware costs) was 83.3%. Its adjusted gross margin was held out as 87% in 2010; the True adjusted gross margin (on the same basis) was 83.6%.[494]

(3) The Autonomy group's net income (corresponding to "net profit (adjusted)" in the Quarterly Reports) was said to be $233 million in 2009, when in fact the True net income of the software business (excluding hardware costs and revenues) was $179.2 million; and $292 million in 2010, when in fact the True net income (on the same basis) was $199.8 million. As the hardware sales were loss-making, True figures including the hardware business were lower still.[495]

(4) Autonomy's purportedly "*Attractive Revenue Mix*" was represented as follows:

should have reported. In accordance with the shorthand used by the Claimants' valuation expert, Mr Bezant: "**Represented**" denotes figures actually reported by Autonomy, while "**True**" refers to the restated figures advanced by the Claimants as "corrected" (only) for the effects of the false accounting of which they complain. Mr Bezant and the Claimants accepted that, given the disconnect between Autonomy's underlying accounting records on the one hand, and Autonomy's reported revenues by product category on the other, there is no perfect way of correcting the latter to reflect the Claimants' case. The Claimants used two approaches: (a) they prepared what they called the **Restated Revenue Schedule** (which was built up from the underlying accounting records); and (b) they also undertook what they called the **Cross-check** (based on manually identifying transactions in the Hussain Revenue Spreadsheets from which the reported revenue figures by category were taken). In the former, "True total revenues" denoted what the Claimants contended were Autonomy's actual revenues excluding "pure" hardware sales, and "True adjusted gross margin" similarly was a calculation of gross margin with a "correction" for hardware costs. Mr Giles criticised the Restated Revenue Schedule but agreed with the Cross-check, and accepted that "*the two methodologies come up with something quite close*". In this part of this judgment, for ease of reference, True figures are taken from the Restated Revenue Schedule, in line with Mr Bezant's main analysis (in the slightly updated form exhibited to Mr Bezant's 4th Report to accurately reflect the Claimants' case). Figures based on the Cross-check are provided in footnotes for completeness.

[493] 2009 figures in January Slides, 2009 and 2010 figures in February Slides.
[494] 2009 figures in January Slides. 2009 and 2010 figures in February Slides. True figures *per* Schedule 2 PoC were confirmed by Mr Bezant, which was not challenged.
[495] 2009 figures in January Slides, 2009 and 2010 figures in February Slides. True figures calculated as follows: (i) Effective tax rate on adjusted basis calculated by dividing reported provision for tax by reported profit before tax (adj), in each case as set out in the 2010 Annual Report. Thus 2009 effective tax rate = 90,268 ÷ 323,066 = 27.9%; 2010 effective tax rate = 86,705 ÷ 378,921 = 22.9%. (ii) Tax at calculated effective tax rate deducted from True cash pre-tax income, as set out in Adjusted Deal Model: "Target IS" tab (cells S31:T31), with scenarios set to "Original" ("MB assumptions" tab) and "True Position" ("Accounting assumptions" tab). Thus 2009 True adjusted net income = $248.6 million × (1 – 27.9%) = $179.2 million; 2010 True adjusted net income = $259.1 million × (1 – 22.9%) = $199.8 million.



January Slides *February Slides*

(5) The slides did not specify the periods to which these pie charts were said to relate, but the January Slides appear to correspond to the reported figures for the 12 months ending in Q3 2010, and the February Slides appear to correspond to the reported figures for FY 2010. The Claimants contended that these pie charts made the following false representations:

(a) They portrayed Autonomy's revenues as being made up entirely of the categories shown: software licensing, and related services (including software as a service).[496] In fact, for the 12 months ending in Q3 2010, True hardware revenues were $83.6 million (12% of the True total), while for 2010 that figure was $100.7 million (13.9% of the True total).[497]

(b) As the total revenues shown in the pie charts included substantial hardware revenues, it follows that the revenue figures shown for one or more of the categories were significantly overstated.

(c) IDOL OEM revenues were substantially overstated. In the 12 months ending in Q3 2010, True IDOL OEM revenues were only $21.7 million (3.1% of the True total), rather than the $126 million or 15% as stated.[498] In FY 2010, True IDOL OEM revenues were only $22.8 million (3.2% of the True total), rather than the $132 million or 15% stated.[499]

(d) IDOL Cloud revenues were also significantly overstated. In the 12 months ending in Q3 2010, True IDOL Cloud revenues (i.e., in particular, absent the wrongful acceleration of revenue recognition) were $119.3 million (17.1% of the True total), rather than $184 million or 22%. In FY 2010, True IDOL Cloud revenues were $119.2 million (16.5% of the True total), rather than $190 million or 22%.[500]

[496] Autonomy said that the "deferred revenue release" category "*[stemmed] principally from support and maintenance contracts recognized in arrears*".
[497] True figures: see footnote 499 above. Cross-check hardware revenues – 12 months to Q3 2010: $82.1 million, representing 11.7% of the total. FY 2010: $99.8 million, representing 13.8% of the total.
[498] These numbers are arrived at by adding "OEM Ongoing" and "OEM Dev" together. The same applies to the stated IDOL OEM revenues for FY 2010 in the February Slides.
[499] True figures: see footnote 499 above. Cross-check IDOL OEM revenues – 12 months to Q3 2010: $22.7 million, representing 3.2% of the total. FY 2010: $23.8 million, representing 3.3% of the total.
[500] True figures: see §Error: Reference source not found. Cross-check IDOL Cloud revenues – 12 months to Q3 2010: $126.9 million, representing 18.1% of the total. FY 2010: $129.1 million, representing 17.9% of the total.

(6) The slides also included charts that purported to show year-on-year organic IDOL revenue growth consistently between 10% and 20% per quarter for 2009 and 2010.[501] In fact, True organic IDOL revenue (as defined, excluding loss-making pure hardware sales and improperly recognised revenue) declined by 5% from 2008 to 2009, and was flat from 2009 to 2010.[502]

(7) IDOL OEM revenue was said to be:

(a) growing significantly year-on-year (35% in the January Slides and 32% in the February Slides) when in fact True IDOL OEM revenue declined year-on-year at comparable rates (between 20.9% and 59.3% for each of the first three quarters of 2010, and 29.5% for FY 2010);[503] and

(b) "*Royalty-based ~3%*", when in fact, few if any true IDOL OEM transactions generated, or could reasonably be expected to generate, a recurring royalty stream of around 3% of licence sales.

3843. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he knew that Autonomy's reported revenue figures included hardware revenues, revenues from VAR transactions and revenues from what on the Claimants' case were improper reciprocal transactions.[504] Dr Lynch also accepted in cross examination that he knew that the IDOL OEM revenue figures included revenue from transactions that, on the Claimants' case, did not come within Autonomy's own description or definition of its IDOL OEM revenue. Further, he accepted that he was aware that the IDOL Cloud revenue figures included some non-recurring licence fee revenue (which, on the Claimants' case, did not come within Autonomy's own description of its IDOL Cloud business or revenue). Mr Hussain accepted that he knew all this too. What the Defendants did not accept was that the representations were false, or that they knew they were false.

3844. In my judgment:

(1) The Defendants were content for Qatalyst to make the representations conveyed by the January and February Slides as detailed in the preceding paragraphs. I accept and find that Qatalyst was, as the Claimants put it in their written closing submissions:

> *"shopping Autonomy to a set of potential purchasers that he [Mr Quattrone] had discussed with Dr Lynch. This 'potential acquiror universe' included HP. Qatalyst produced and provided the January and February Slides to HP as part of that process."*

(2) Strictly, the company (Autonomy) as a legal entity had no corporate interest in any auction which might be in contemplation or developing for its shares. The persons interested are the company's shareholders (the shares being their personal property), and the directors act in respect of inviting, promoting and developing any bid in effect as (a) potential and then actual auctioneers and

[501] February Slides; the January Slides included an identical graph, save that it did not include Q4 2010

[502] True figures *per* the Claimants' Restated Organic Growth Schedule.

[503] True figures: see footnote 499 above.

[504] Dr Lynch also accepted that the (adjusted) gross margin figures stated in the slides would have been lower if all of the hardware costs had been accounted for in COGS.

(b) communicators of matters relevant for the shareholders to know in making their decision on any eventuating bid. It seems to me that representations made by Qatalyst on the basis of what they were told, or information supplied by the Defendants, were in effect made on their behalf.

(3) Although the Defendants maintained that they did not know that any of those representations was false, in light of my conclusions and findings in relation to the Claimants' cases on Hardware, VARs, Reciprocal Transactions, Hosting and OEM, that is not sustainable.

(4) It follows that the representations were in material ways false; and

(5) both Defendants knew the representations were false, or were at least, reckless as to their truth or falsity.

3845. For the avoidance of doubt, in the light of my previous findings, I do not accept that it avails the Defendants that Autonomy's published information had been prepared by Autonomy's finance department and scrutinised and approved by Deloitte. The finance department was controlled by the clique; and Deloitte were repeatedly misled. Neither Defendant can rely on assumptions as to the accuracy of their work or avoid liability by reference to what Deloitte did or did not know or do.

Did HP rely on the January and February Slides? What effect had the Disclaimer?

3846. The Defendants' final answer was to deny reliance.

3847. As to reliance, HP maintained that the January and February Slides prompted HP's interest and led to the March meeting (see below) so that there was a continuum of reliance which concluded with HP deciding to offer, and offering, £25.50 per share for Autonomy, including the shares owned by the Defendants. They presented the misrepresentations in issue as *"fundamental parts of"* (i) the initial approach to HP concerning the possible sale of Autonomy (of which the January and February Slides were part); (ii) the Defendants pitching Autonomy to HP directly (including by the February Slides); and (iii) the Defendants' responses to HP's due diligence requests.

3848. With particular reference to the January and February Slides they contended that:

(1) The January Slides, sent as part of Mr Quattrone's initial approach to HP, led to the 3 February 2011 video conference, which with the related February Slides, led in turn to the 4 March 2011 meeting at which the March Slides were presented; and

(2) The representations in the February Slides were of "*particular interest*" to Mr Robison (who was HP's Chief Strategy Officer and Head of SCD) and his colleagues in the SCD group, and they relied on them when considering whether Autonomy would be a suitable fit for HP.

3849. The Defendants, on the other hand, contended that the January and February Slides had no material impact on HP in deciding to make the bid:

(1) They were not the cause of HP's interest, since HP was already aware of Autonomy as a potential target from late 2010.

(2) In January and February 2010, HP was not thinking of acquiring Autonomy: its focus was instead on Tibco.

(3) Mr Apotheker did not remember reading and/or looking at the Slides, still less focusing on them; and though Mr Robison's witness statement made claims about features in the slides that were interesting to him, and posited questions he would have wished to ask if gross margins had been presented as lower, he did not attend at trial, and since it was not possible to test his evidence they submitted that little weight should be placed on his account.

(4) There was no evidence provided that any of these Slides were shown to HP's board. The documents did not feature at all in the subsequent documentation showing HP's consideration of the acquisition (for which HP relied on analysis by its own corporate analysts, and third party advice from Perella Weinberg and BarCap).

(5) In any case, it was unrealistic to suppose that these Slides had any operative effect at all at the time of the bid many months later.

3850. The Defendants also relied in their defence on a boilerplate disclaimer at the end of the two slide decks in support of an argument that HP did not rely on the representations contained in them, or that any such reliance was unreasonable. They suggested that the disclaimer estops Bidco from contending that it relied on the representations. These contentions were not, however, elaborated or even put forward in their submissions, and I have not been persuaded that, of themselves, the warnings in small print provide a defence or found an estoppel.

3851. As to reliance, the Defendants concluded that it was not realistic to think (and the Claimants had not sought to argue) that either set of slides had any impact on their thinking by the time Bidco came to make an offer for Autonomy. They contended, in effect, that it is unrealistic to think that the January and February Slides still operated on the minds of those concerned on behalf of the Claimants months later and after so much other information had been provided.

Summary of my assessment re the alleged falsity January and February Slides

3852. I agree with the Defendants that it is unlikely that HP called to mind the January and February slides when it came to determining to bid, nor were the slides any real influence by then in their determination of the price.

3853. Further, in my view, even if retained in the mind, the facts and impression so retained would be subject to further information provided and especially the due diligence exercise. The representations made would not independently be actionable as such.

3854. However, I accept HP's argument that the January and February Slides whetted HP's appetite. In a vacuum, I would not accept that this, nor the fact that the slides encouraged their further interest, would be sufficient. But the slides do need to be seen as part of a continuum, over the course of which the information provided and the representations made by Autonomy gave HP a picture of a company capable of

enabling HP to achieve Mr Apotheker's target of moving HP into the mainstream of the advanced software sector, and thereby transformational change.

3855. In particular they need to be taken into account in conjunction with the March slides, to which I now turn.

The March Slides

3856. On 3 March 2011, HP and Autonomy entered into a Mutual Non-Disclosure Agreement. On 4 March 2011, Autonomy and HP spoke again via video conference. HP participants included Mr Robison, Mr Johnson, Mr Levadoux and Ms Marge Breya. The meeting took place in HP's offices in Palo Alto, California. Mr Hussain attended in person, with Mr Quattrone; and Dr Lynch joined by videolink. The third set of misrepresentations as alleged by the Claimants was made in a further stack of slides presented at that meeting ("the March Slides").

3857. Dr Lynch maintained that the March Slides were prepared by Autonomy using publicly available information. Dr Lynch said that he believed that he had delegated the preparation of the slides to various team members, and that he instructed Mr Kanter to include some additional background information about Autonomy to respond to particular questions that HP had raised (via Mr Quattrone) in advance of that meeting; but that otherwise he had little involvement.

3858. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch claimed that he had, in fact, refused to address many of HP's requested topics:

> *"All I'm prepared to do is give them an introduction to the company which is a public document and then some slides on other information that's already public, which is functions, geographies, head count and org explanation. What that doesn't say is: please prepare slides with the P&L for the next three years, with cloud Saas business model, with balance sheet overview, with market share over time, with historical revenue growth. So there's lots and lots of things here which are not going to be given in this meeting but you can't blame them for asking."*

3859. This was not entirely accurate. It is right to say the final deck did not include P&L projections for the next three years. Mr Quattrone had recognised that Autonomy would not want to "*give them precise forecasts at this stage*", and suggested instead "*giv[ing] them orally some directional input*"; and in any event, Autonomy always maintained it did not <u>have</u> such projections, hence the 4 August 2011 due diligence call (addressed below) to discuss the reasonableness of the assumptions and projections contained in parts of HP's Deal Model. But all of the other items referred to by Dr Lynch were covered in the final version of the March Slides: the IDOL Cloud business model; an overview of the balance sheet; market share over time (OEM market share was said to be "*almost total*" in any event); and historical revenue growth.

3860. The Claimants submitted that Dr Lynch's claim that he had not been prepared to give HP such information, when in fact the slides included it, was a misguided attempt to obfuscate his evident enthusiasm for interesting HP in a potential purchase of Autonomy. When pressed, Dr Lynch accepted that he saw HP as a potential purchaser but insisted that a purchase by HP

> *"would not be a probability at this stage. This is a first meeting. There has been no discussion of anything to do with financials or price or anything like that. Remember, this is one of the largest technology businesses in the world. It's a big customer of Autonomy's and we're getting to meet the CTO and we' re getting to explain the way our business is wonderful. Yes, that could end up in an acquisition, yes, they're probably interested in learning as much as they can; but from our point of view it would be a very gentle process, and…you'll see in the emails that's very much how we view it.* "

3861. I accept that although these were early days, nevertheless by this time, Dr Lynch did have in mind HP as a potential suitor, and the information provided, which was impressively packaged, was no doubt designed further to whet the appetite. But the Claimants' suggestion to the effect that Dr Lynch's efforts to downplay its content was an effort to camouflage an established determination to achieve a sale is, to my mind, exaggerated.

3862. Three hours were allocated to the video presentation; but according to Dr Lynch's account, at the meeting on 4 March 2011, he presented the technology and positioning slides; other people dealt with the other slides. Dr Lynch attended throughout. Mr Johnson explained in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings that the meeting was primarily about the technology, but with a "*little bit of financial information"* at the very end of the meeting, presented by Mr Hussain rather than Dr Lynch. I accept that Dr Lynch may largely have left matters of general presentation to others, though that would have been atypical of him, judging from his contributions in Earnings Calls. But that does not serve to disassociate him from the content: see further in paragraphs 3866 to 3867 below.

Representations in the March Slides

3863. The Claimants' case was that the March Slides contained material misrepresentations which they sought both to summarise and quantify as follows:

(1) The slides made a series of claims about financial metrics, which were untrue because they reflected the false accounting addressed in earlier parts of this judgment. They included those set out, with what the Claimants presented to be the corresponding True metrics, in the following table (which with the underlying derivations I have taken from the Claimants' written closing submissions with very little alteration, but which it should be remembered will require amendment in assessing loss and damage since it includes adjustments which I do not consider to be justified in respect of amounts reflecting (a) the Claimants' claims in respect of the Realise/Credit Suisse VAR transaction (VT15) and the Schedule 7 "Other Transactions" which, in the event, I have rejected, and (b) overstatements of Autonomy's revenues for Q2 2011 in consequence of what the Claimants asserted (but never pleaded) was misaccounting for a Q2 2011 Schedule 6 Iron Mountain transaction[505]):

[505] For the avoidance of doubt, I confirm that I have accepted the Defendants' submission that this allegation, which the Claimants did not assert to be based on fraud, and which was not mentioned in their RRAPoC except as a footnote to Annex 6, nor ever properly pleaded nor put to Dr Lynch, should be ignored.

Metric	Stated figure	True figure
2010 total revenue	$870 million *slides 4, 58, 59*	$722 million ($623 million excl pure hardware)
2009 total revenue	$740 million *slide 58*	$646.8 million ($593.8 million excl pure hardware)
2010 IDOL Product revenue	$251 million *slide 59*	$222.7 million[506]
2010 IDOL Cloud revenue	$190 million *slide 59*	$119.2 million[507]
2010 IDOL OEM revenue	$132 million *slide 59*	$22.8 million[508]
2010 IDOL OEM revenue as % of total	15% *slides 18, 20*	3.2%[509]
IDOL OEM growth year-on-year	30–35% *slides 17, 18, 19*	(56.1%) (i.e. decline) in 2009[510] (29.5%) (i.e. decline) in 2010[511]
2010 operating profit (adjusted)	$377 million *slide 58*	$246.3 million[512]
2009 operating profit (adjusted)	$329 million *slide 58*	$239.2 million[513]

506 FY 2010 Cross-check IDOL Product revenue of $204.4 million.

507 FY 2010 Cross-check IDOL Cloud revenue of $129.1 million.

508 FY 2010 Cross-check IDOL OEM revenue of $23.8 million.

509 FY 2010 Cross-check IDOL OEM revenue represents 3.3% of the total.

510 This represents the decline in IDOL OEM revenue between 2008 Represented revenue and 2009 True revenue.

511 Cross-check IDOL OEM growth – 2010: (26.4%) i.e. decline. 2009 not calculated because the 2008 revenues are not adjusted.

512 Restated Profit Schedule: “Restated profit measures” tab (cell R39). Includes hardware.

513 Restated Profit Schedule: “Restated profit measures” tab (cell M39). Includes hardware.

(2) Slide 17 described Autonomy as having a "*Pure Software Model*". The same slide repeated the representations made in each of the January and February Slides as to the alleged "*Royalty-based ~ 3%*" nature of Autonomy's IDOL OEM revenue. On the Claimants' case and interpretation of the phrase, that was false, for the reasons previously discussed.

(3) Slide 18 repeated the misrepresentation made in each of the January and February Slides as to the alleged "royalty"-based nature of Autonomy's IDOL OEM revenue, save that the percentage "royalty" was now said to be "*~4%*". That was, again, false for the reasons previously discussed.

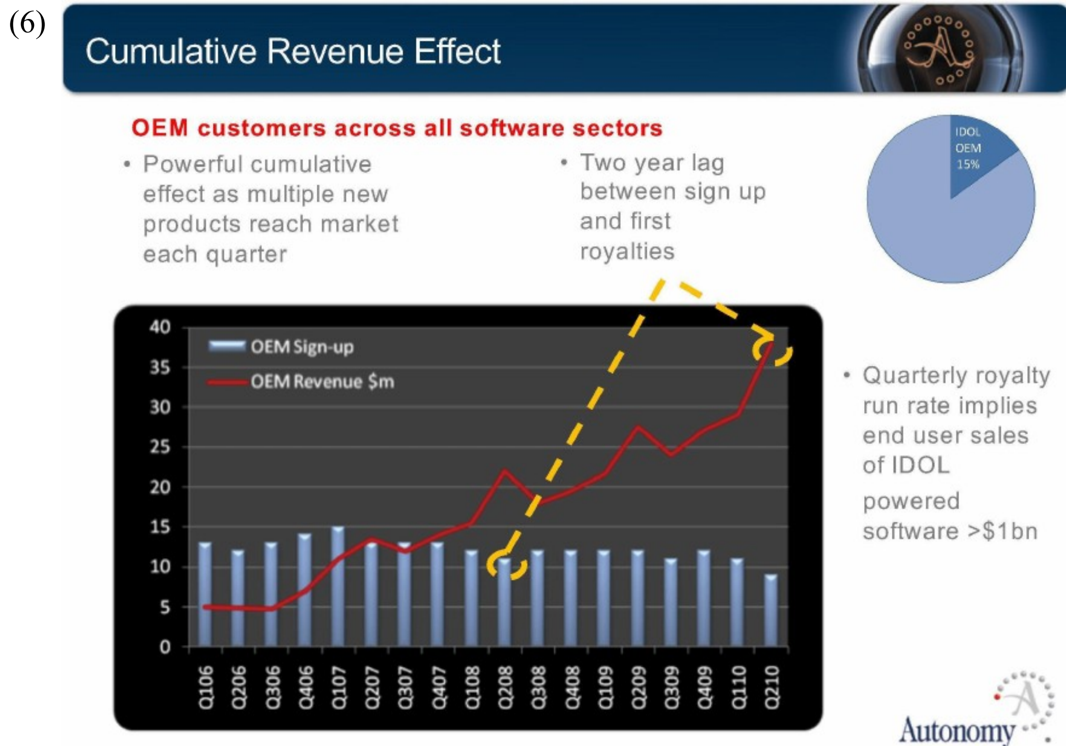
(4) Slide 19, headed "*IDOL OEM*":

(a) included the logos of 17 purported OEM customers. All of those companies were in the business of licensing software.[514] The obvious implication was that Autonomy's IDOL OEM revenue was obtained from those (and similar) companies. In fact, much of the revenue reported as "IDOL OEM" arose from transactions with companies or entities that did not license software, and so could not embed Autonomy software in any software product of their own; and

(b) claimed that "*Revenues today relate to deals signed two years ago*". This was a reference to (and so impliedly repeated) the Defendants' regular claim that IDOL OEM revenues consisted substantially of royalty payments on OEM partners' products, with such products typically released around two years after the OEMs' contracts with Autonomy were signed. The Claimants alleged that this was false, on the basis that much reported IDOL OEM revenue (around 80%) was neither (i) an upfront fee paid to an OEM partner; nor (ii) an ongoing royalty payment.

[514] This does not appear to be in dispute.

(5) Slide 20 purported to show that Autonomy's OEM business had a "*[p]owerful cumulative effect*" on revenues "*as multiple new products reach market each quarter*", via the following graph, which compared, on a quarterly basis, the number of new OEM customers (blue bars) and "*OEM Revenue*" (red line).

(6) 

This slide was said to merit attention in light of and by way of rebuttal of the Defendants' case that, in Dr Lynch's words, the reference to "*~4% royalties*" (like that to "*~3% royalties*" in the February slides) was "*an example*", and "*did not represent that all of Autonomy's OEM sales generated annual royalties of 4%*":

(a) The red line showed the total quarterly IDOL OEM revenue reported by Autonomy, which had risen to $38 million in Q2 2010, the last quarter shown.

(b) The dotted yellow line was said to illustrate a "*two year lag between sign up and first royalties*" (emphasis added). It drew a link from the number of new OEM customers (shown by a blue bar) in Q2 2008 to the red line in Q2 2010. The Claimants contended that the reasonable reader would thereby understand that the red line – and hence Autonomy's total reported IDOL OEM revenue – consisted materially of royalty revenues.

(c) Further, the slide claimed that "*Quarterly royalty run rate implies end-user sales of IDOL powered software > $1bn.*" This was alleged by the Claimants to be false given that: (i) the only revenue figures shown on the slide were those plotted by the red line; and (ii) if the 3–4% figures cited by Autonomy and Dr Lynch were remotely accurate indications of the level of IDOL OEM royalty payments, then $38 million of IDOL OEM revenue could only

imply more than $1 billion in quarterly end-user sales by Autonomy's OEM customers if the great majority of the former indeed consisted of royalty payments, the clear implication was thus that the "*quarterly royalty run rate*" approximated total reported IDOL OEM revenue.[515]

(d) The slide thus represented that IDOL had been widely adopted by other software companies in their own products (as Dr Lynch accepted it did), and that ongoing, recurring revenues from those companies' sales would be substantial. However, on the Claimants' case, those representations were false: ongoing royalty payments from OEM customers in fact made up only a small part of reported IDOL OEM revenue.

(e) In cross-examination, Dr Lynch claimed for the first time that when the slides were presented to HP, Autonomy would have explained that IDOL OEM revenue in fact included revenue from upsells and PODs. However, there was never any public explanation of that point by Autonomy in the Relevant Period.[516]

(f) Dr Lynch also claimed that the slide was "*not discussing revenues*", on the basis that it was in a section of the deck entitled "*Business Models*". That appeared to be contradicted by a slide entitled "*Cumulative Revenue Effect*", which includes a graph of "*OEM Revenue*".

(7) Slides 55 and 58 repeated what the Claimants contended were the false claims about Autonomy's gross margin made in the January and February Slides, described earlier.

(8) Slide 59 set out a table of 2010 reported revenues by category, with year-on-year growth rates for Q4 revenues. This table:

(a) made no reference to hardware sales, but included revenue from such sales in some or all of the five categories of revenue listed, so

---

[515] In cross-examination Dr Lynch disputed this interpretation, claiming: "*there's a bit more information given away here than really should be because, if you take 3% – if you take 1 billion and you apply 3% and you gross down, it's in effect giving you the non-derived part of the OEM. Because if it was – if what you were saying was true, that number would be about 6 billion*". However, $1 billion of quarterly IDOL OEM sales, at a 3–4% royalty rate, would imply $30–40 million ($1 billion × 3–4%) in royalty revenues per quarter – so the claim of "*>$1 billion*" in IDOL OEM sales is exactly in line with the most recent quarterly IDOL OEM revenues ($38 million in Q2 2010) shown on the slide. By contrast, $6 billion of quarterly IDOL OEM sales at the same royalty rate would imply <u>$180–240 million</u> in royalty payments per quarter – several times the IDOL OEM revenue that Autonomy reported. It may be that Dr Lynch was trying to suggest that "*end-user sales … of >$1 billion*" should be construed as referring to <u>annual</u> sales, but: (i) that is not what the slide says on its face; (ii) the reasonable reader would not read a sentence that refers in terms to a quarterly metric and understand that the other metric cited is intended to apply to a quite different time period; and (iii) even the highest quarterly IDOL OEM revenue shown ($38 million in Q2 2010), using the 3% rate cited by Dr Lynch, does not imply $6 billion in IDOL OEM sales annually in any event.

[516] The Claimants suggested that the implausibility of the suggestion is reinforced by the fact that the "intentional misinformation" document that Dr Lynch sent to HP's Mr Robison on 13 September 2011 (addressed in more detail in the OEM section of the judgment), which purported to provide (among other things) an explanation of the "revenue profile" of IDOL OEM, made no mention of the fact that IDOL OEM revenue included revenue from upsells and PODs.

making the same misrepresentation described in paragraph 3842(5)above; and

(b) claimed that these figures "*implied*" IDOL OEM revenue for 2011 of $167 million, which claim the Claimants contended was neither honest nor reasonable as it would have represented more than 600% growth over the True 2010 IDOL OEM revenue of $22.8 million.

(9) The slide also claimed that Autonomy had the "*advantage of growth in annuity streams*". This too was said by the Claimants to be false: True IDOL OEM revenue was declining (see paragraph 3842(7)(a) above).

3864. The Defendants' answer to these claims was in summary as follows:

(1) Overall, the claims that the various statements as to Autonomy's revenues (overall and by category), profit and revenue growth, which according to the Claimants were "*untrue because they reflected the false accounting*" were groundless because there was no false accounting, for reasons already given.

(2) The slide headed "*Pure Software Model*" was not a representation that Autonomy sold only software: indeed, the same slide made reference to Autonomy's appliance sales. More generally, these slides would not have been considered in isolation from Autonomy's accounts, and those accounts made clear that the reference to "*Pure Software Model*" was intended to distinguish Autonomy from companies deriving significant revenues from services (and see paragraphs 654 to 657 in the part of this judgment dealing with the Claimants' "hardware" claims).

(3) The slide setting out revenue and growth by category, together with implied figures for 2011, accurately stated revenue and growth rates. As discussed in the "OEM" part of this judgment, the Defendants contended that the reference to "*advantage of growth in annuity streams*" was a fair comment.

(4) The remainder of the alleged misrepresentations related to Autonomy's OEM business. These representations have already been dealt with in the OEM section above.

(5) Further, Dr Lynch claimed for the first time in cross-examination that Autonomy's hardware sales were discussed at the 4 March 2011 meeting, relying on a slide in the March Slides that described "*Drag Along Third Party Revenues*". Although, as Mr Rabinowitz put to him in cross-examination, it had been part of the Claimants' case since April 2015 that the March presentation contained misrepresentations because nothing was said to HP about or to explain the hardware sales, this suggestion that there had been discussion about hardware sales as an example of *"drag along revenues"* was not pleaded in Dr Lynch's defence and was not mentioned in his witness statements. Dr Lynch suggested that it had been mentioned before, but without going through all the documents he could not be more specific; and when challenged again, he responded with studied calm and said he *"would have to disagree"* with the suggestion made to him that this was *"just another one of*

your opportunistic inventions". No mention was made of the point in Dr Lynch's closing submissions. I have attached no weight to it.

Summary of my assessment re alleged falsity of the March Slides

3865. My assessment of the Claimants' allegations in respect of the falsity of the March Slides and the Defendants' answers to those claims can be summarised as follows:

(1) In light of my conclusions and findings in relation to the Claimants' cases on Hardware, VARs, Reciprocal Transactions, Hosting and OEM, I have concluded that it follows, and I find accordingly, that (a) the March Slides reflected false accounting in respect of those important aspects of Autonomy's business, so that (b) the representations in the March Slides based on that false accounting were in material ways false.

(2) I also consider that the representation made that Autonomy was a *"pure software company"* or *"pure software model"* was intended to convey a special selling point, the success and self-sufficiency of its software business without the need for other revenue streams, whilst in fact disguising volume third-party hardware sales.

The Defendants' involvement in and responsibility for the representations in the March Slides

3866. There is no real dispute that the representations in the March Slides were made by the Defendants to HP:

(1) Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain were both involved in preparing the slides. Mr Hussain admitted as much and Dr Lynch did not deny it. The evidence of his involvement is summarised above.

(2) Dr Lynch's name appears on the front of the deck.

(3) The Defendants admit that they presented the slides to HP.

(4) In cross-examination, Dr Lynch admitted to presenting the "*technology and positioning slides*". He claimed that "*other people did the other slides*", which was not consistent with his pleaded admission that there were two presenters - himself and Mr Hussain. In any event, he admitted that he listened to the whole presentation, and there is no suggestion that he disavowed any of the representations made in the deck under his name.

(5) Likewise, through presenting part of the deck, and his acquiescence during the rest, Mr Hussain adopted those representations he did not directly make.

3867. In my judgment, both Defendants had "guilty knowledge" of the false accounting and therefore knew the representations were false, especially in giving no inkling of substantial sales of *"pure hardware"*; or they were, at least, reckless as to their truth or falsity.

Did the Claimants rely on the March Slides?

3868. The Claimants dismissed as *"fanciful"* the Defendants' argument that these representations did not induce Bidco to acquire their share and share options in Autonomy.

3869. They contended that:

(1) Mr Robison "*relied on*" the March Slides, which gave an "*impressive picture of Autonomy's financial performance and business*".

(2) The "*pure software model*" they described was, according to Mr Robison:

> "*a very attractive model for HP, a predominantly hardware company that was looking to acquire an asset that would enable it to expand in the software market. The fact that Autonomy's business model was focused almost exclusively on software, with only a small amount of services as disclosed in its public filings and presentations to HP, was important to HP and affected the price that HP was ultimately willing to pay, and did pay, for Autonomy."*

(3) According to Mr Robison's witness statement, the size and growth of IDOL Cloud as described in the March Slides was "*important to HP because of the relative predictability and recurring nature of the revenue stream*".

(4) The presentation of "*strong*" IDOL OEM revenues and revenue growth was also "*important to HP*", indicating "*that other companies valued Autonomy's technology*". HP therefore considered IDOL OEM to be "*a highly profitable, growing revenue stream that was recurring in nature and an indicator of the quality of the technology"*.

(5) Mr Robison described the overall "*message conveyed during the March 4 meeting was that Autonomy was a high-growth, pure software company*". Mr Robison described the presentation Dr Lynch gave of the March Slides as "*pretty compelling stuff*".

(6) Mr Sarin, who did not attend the 4 March meeting but who reviewed the March Slides shortly thereafter, also thought that the March Slides described "*a very compelling business*", given its apparent scale and growth.

3870. However, the Claimants did not mention Mr Apotheker in this connection. The Defendants presented him as the lynch-pin, and as the only one of the witnesses relied on by the Claimants in this context who could be cross-examined. Their argument was that:

(1) In March 2011, Mr Apotheker was not yet focussed on Autonomy as a possible acquisition target and the March Slides (which he did not refer to either in his witness statement or in cross-examination) played no part in his decision-making.

(2) On 19 March 2011 Mr Robison sent Mr Apotheker some slides showing a comparison between Tibco and Autonomy. Even by this stage Mr Apotheker was not personally considering Autonomy as a possible acquisition target. In his witness statement Mr Apotheker said that the first time he recalled Autonomy appearing on the list of companies that were part of HP's Finance and Investment Committee's "M&A Pipeline" was at a meeting some time later, on 25 May 2011.

(3) Mr Robison's account of his reliance on the slides was general and could not be tested in cross-examination. The Defendants acknowledged that Mr Robison's witness statement made various very specific claims about what he thought in relation to particular slides, and how he relied on them; but it is hard to believe that these were genuine recollections when his witness statement said that "*I do not recall now whether I received a copy of the presentation at the time.*" The Defendants submitted that this has all the hallmarks of forensic reconstruction; a concern heightened by the fact that so many of the witness statements for the Claimants were palpably over-lawyered. This is a matter that Dr Lynch would have wished to test in cross-examination; and given that Mr Robison did not attend to give evidence, they submitted that no weight should be placed on what he says on this topic.

(4) In any event, none of the Claimants' witnesses suggested that the March Slides continued to have any impact on their, or HP's thinking by the time that HP's board decided to proceed with the acquisition in August. It is implausible that the March Slides played any real part in that decision, so long later, and after further investigation and negotiations must in all likelihood have relegated the March Slides far to the background, if ever they had any real prominence at all.

3871. As in the context of the January and February Slides (see paragraphs 3852 and 3853 above), I have concluded on the issue of reliance that:

(1) Subject to (3) below and to paragraph 3872, it is unlikely that HP specifically focused on or called to mind any of the January and February and March Slides when it came to determining to bid;

(2) The representations made would not independently be actionable as such;

(3) The March Slides, and what Mr Robison described as the *"impressive picture of Autonomy's financial performance and business"* conveyed by them and Dr Lynch's *"compelling"* presentation of them, were nevertheless intended to influence and were in fact influential in reinforcing HP's overall impression of Autonomy as (a) a *"pure software model"* which, as such, was particularly attractive to HP and ultimately (to quote Mr Robison's evidence, which I accept in this regard) *"was important to HP and affected the price that HP was ultimately willing to pay, and did pay, for Autonomy"*; and (b) having two sizeable and growing revenue streams, IDOL Cloud and IDOL OEM, which were relatively predictable and recurring in nature and (especially in the case of IDOL OEM, a good indicator of the quality of Autonomy's technology).

3872. I accept HP's argument that the March Slides, like the January and February Slides, whetted HP's appetite and informed its approach (including the development of its Deal Model): they need to be seen as part of a continuum, over the course of which the information provided and the representations made by Autonomy gave HP a picture of a company and business with strong revenue streams and quality technology capable of enabling HP to achieve Mr Apotheker's target of moving HP into the mainstream of the advanced software sector, and thereby transformational change.

29 June 2011 meeting: the fourth set of alleged misrepresentations

3873. A meeting on 29 June 2011 between HP and Autonomy representatives was held in London. This followed two earlier meetings, one between Dr Lynch and Mr Robison at the beginning of June and another a lunch meeting between Dr Lynch and Mr Apotheker in Paris in mid-June.

3874. At the earlier meeting on 2 June 2011, the focus had been largely on HP and in particular Mr Apotheker's and Mr Robison's vision of making what Dr Lynch stated in his first witness statement he was given to understand was *"a key strategic shift away from its existing low-margin, commoditised hardware business, towards high-margin software".* Dr Lynch described that he left the 2 June meeting *"excited about* [Mr Robison's] *ideas"* and went on that this was:

> *"the first meeting where I believed it was possible that HP would make an offer for Autonomy. After the meeting, I reported to Mr Quattrone that the meeting had been productive, but I expected it would be a slow partnership."*

3875. Dr Lynch described his lunch meeting with Mr Apotheker in Paris on 16 June 2011 notably briefly in his first witness statement:

> *"We discussed at a high level whether there might be any possibility of combining the two companies. While it was a serious discussion, it was brief."*

3876. According to Dr Lynch in his first witness statement, the purpose of the meeting on 29 June 2011 was to meet with HP's corporate development, software and cloud services team to discuss how HP and Autonomy might be able to work together. HP's participants included Mr Robison, Mr Sarin, Mr Levadoux and Ms Breya, while Autonomy was represented by Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Dr Menell.

3877. Mr Robison sent lists of discussion topics and detailed questions to Dr Lynch in advance of the meeting. Mr Sarin and Mr Levadoux both made notes of the meeting, which Mr Sarin stated in his witness statement was characterised as a "partnership discussion" to minimise the chances of rumour or speculation about a purchase transaction.

3878. The Claimants contended that Dr Lynch made the following misrepresentations at the 29 June 2011 meeting:

(1) According to Mr Sarin's evidence in his witness statement, Dr Lynch again described Autonomy as a "*pure software*" company. This was challenged in cross-examination, but Mr Sarin maintained that he distinctly recalled the

phrase being used multiple times. It does not appear to have struck him at the time that this was of significance though: his notes made no mention of the phrase; and although in their written closing the Claimants suggested that Dr Lynch *"ultimately accepted that he had used the term"*, I understood his evidence rather to be that he explained Autonomy's model as a software business which was unusual in doing no material services.

(2) Dr Lynch said that Autonomy's OEM business was growing, and that it involved many other software companies incorporating IDOL into their own products, which made the IDOL platform ubiquitous. Mr Sarin's evidence to this end was not challenged, and Dr Lynch accepted that it was possible that he might have made the statements that Mr Sarin says he made. The Claimants reiterated their contention that what was stated about Autonomy's OEM business was false, because True IDOL OEM revenue was a fraction of that reported, and in decline.

(3) According to Mr Sarin's witness statement evidence, Dr Lynch also represented that:

(a) Being royalty-based, the costs of Autonomy's IDOL OEM revenues were very low, so that the gross margins of Autonomy's IDOL OEM business were close to 100%; and

(b) IDOL OEM produced a "*reliable income stream*", because the use of IDOL in other companies' software gave rise to a "*network effect*", which Mr Sarin explained in his witness statement:

> "*refers to the increased value that a good or service has as its user base increases – the telephone, for example (like, say, PayPal or Facebook) became much more valuable to its users as the number of those users increased.*"

(c) Mr Sarin added:

> *"Autonomy described their OEM business as the glue in many companies' products; it was very 'sticky', in the sense that once a company started to use IDOL as a component of its own products, it became very difficult for the company to cease doing so*."

3879. Mr Levadoux's notes (which he summarised in an email dated 1 July 2011 to Mr Robison and others, copying (amongst others) Mr Andy Johnson) echoed this:

(1) They suggested that Dr Lynch had represented that Autonomy's technology was

> *"very sticky, and even if many competitors OEM their technology, it would be very difficult for them (i.e. IBM/Lotus/Oracle, Adobe) to switch vendor"*; and

(2) They noted that the impression given was that:

> "*A core element of [Autonomy's] strategy is to scale by allowing others to build vertical apps on this platform (i.e. through OEMs). Focusing on being a platform business is also what allows them to be so profitable*".

3880. The Defendants suggested that Mr Sarin's witness statement *"was affected by the forensic process, rather than reliable recall"*, that Mr Sarin's reference to Dr Lynch having described Autonomy as a *"pure software company"* looked like a *"forensic afterthought"* and that he was especially *"muddled"* as to what truly had been discussed about the OEM line of business, and had perhaps forgotten that in reality there had only been discussions about the broad pattern of OEM business and not about gross margins or other detailed facets of it.

3881. It was put to Mr Sarin that his contemporaneous notes of the meeting showed that the discussion at the meeting was "*all in the context of barriers to entry. It wasn't a general discussion about OEM or the OEM business model*" and "*when you suggest there was specific discussion about OEMs, gross margins and that sort of thing*", it was "*a muddle on your part.*" This part of the cross-examination of Mr Sarin was uncharacteristically convoluted; and I was not persuaded that it achieved what I took to be its purpose of suggesting and showing that nothing of any materiality or specificity had been said about the OEM business. I agree with the Claimants that the Defendants' suggestion that the discussion centred only on *"barriers to entry"* was a distraction, because the (alleged) fact that competitors could not easily enter the market was precisely one of the things that was said to make IDOL OEM a "*reliable income stream*".

3882. Further, the suggestion that a discussion about barriers to entry was not also a discussion about the reliability or profitability of IDOL OEM revenue is belied by the way Dr Lynch explained the concept in other contexts. For example, Dr Lynch explained on the Q1 2008 earnings call that:

> "*The OEMs market is very important for us because it allows penetration of the IDOL technology into many different areas without us having to write those applications, and it produces a very strong network effect*";

and in the Q3 2010 Quarterly Report, Dr Lynch said:

> "*The continued strong growth in our IDOL OEM revenues is both a further endorsement of the unique capabilities of IDOL and reflects a growing network effect as more software companies choose to design their products with Autonomy inside*".

3883. Moreover, the specific point about high gross margins recalled by Mr Sarin is also echoed in Mr Levadoux's notes:

> "*A core element of [Autonomy's] strategy is to scale <u>by allowing others to build</u> vertical apps on this platform (i.e. through OEMs). <u>Focusing on being a platform business is also what allows them to be so profitable</u>*" (emphasis added).

3884. In any event, as Mr Sarin pointed out in cross-examination, what he described Dr Lynch as saying about Autonomy's OEM business during the 29 June meeting was consistent with how Autonomy described its OEM business in the Q1 Quarterly Report, "*which we had read by this time*", and later in the Q2 2011 Quarterly Report. Indeed, the claim about near-100% gross margins on royalties was in the March Slides.

3885. Bringing this together:

(1) I consider it more likely than not, and therefore find, that Dr Lynch did refer to Autonomy as a *"pure software company",* that the meaning that Mr Apotheker and others at HP (including Mr Robison) took from the phrase was the meaning adumbrated in paragraph 3865(2) above, and that this did encourage HP because it was through acquisition of a strong specialised *"pure software company"* having no need for or dependence on other revenue streams that Mr Apotheker planned to effect "transformational change" for HP.

(2) The main focus of the meeting appears to have been on the special value and attraction of Autonomy's (a) IDOL technology and (b) OEM business as a reliable income stream with incremental prospects because of a *"network effect"*.

(3) The overall effect was to reinforce the message that Autonomy was a strong software-focused business with ground-breaking technology, as indeed Mr Sarin stated in his witness statement. There is no dispute about the enthusiasm it engendered in HP: Mr Robison wrote that evening to Mr Apotheker referring to a *"REALLY good meeting today"* and Mr Apotheker confirmed his and Mr Robison's considerable enthusiasm for the potential deal by that stage.

3886. The Claimants did not allege that the ground-breaking potential of Autonomy's IDOL technology was exaggerated; however, I have concluded in the context of the OEM Claim that the nature of Autonomy's OEM business was misrepresented and its success and growth was inflated in its accounts, to the knowledge of both Defendants.

3887. Once again, I doubt that anything said at the 29 June 2011 meeting can plausibly be said to have induced the acquisition, other than in the general sense of encouraging HP's continuing interest and enthusiasm. The influence the meeting had was more general than specific: a purchase was not by then yet a real prospect and I doubt that the representations made were specifically called to the mind of those who eventually directed HP/Bidco to make a bid. However, (and like the January, February and (most especially) the March Slides), they were intended to and did encourage and inform HP as it worked towards the decision to bid, and in its work in developing and refining the Deal Model which eventually provided the parameters for agreement of a bid price.

3888. In other words, like the earlier slides, the representations made at the 29 June 2011 meeting were an important element of the continuum which eventually informed the bid and ultimately induced HP to purchase Autonomy at a considerable premium.

3889. I return to the issue of reliance in the context of these deceit/misrepresentation claims in paragraphs 3979 to 3988 below.

29 July 2011 meeting and its background: the fifth set of alleged misrepresentations

3890. On Friday, 29 July 2011, what HP described as the second set-piece meeting between HP and Autonomy took place at the Berkeley Hotel in London. No NDA was yet in place. HP was represented by Mr Robison, Mr Sarin, Ms Breya and Mr Levadoux. Autonomy was again represented by Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Dr Menell. The primary purpose of the meeting was to discuss the approach to and intended process of due diligence. In cross-examination Mr Sarin accepted that it was agreed at the meeting that Autonomy would not be providing substantive information: it would be about process, the process by which information would be provided.

3891. The immediate background to the 29 July 2011 meeting was a meeting the previous day between Mr Apotheker, Mr Robison and Dr Lynch in Deauville. It was at that meeting on 28 July 2011 that a bid price was discussed for the first time although the Claimants had begun developing an early version of a discounted cash flow ("DCF") model (which became "the Deal Model") to try to determine the standalone value of Autonomy some time earlier (in early February 2011).

3892. Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that until then he had thought a bid possible but not probable; but as from 29 July 2011 Autonomy was clearly *"in play"*. HP had even pencilled in and was targeting an announcement of acquisition on 18 August 2011 (leaving a short time for due diligence)[517].

3893. Dr Lynch had been pressing for £27 per share. He, Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison had agreed that if HP was to acquire Autonomy, HP would need to offer a price in an agreed range. Dr Lynch's initial recollection was that this range was between £25.50 and £26.50 per share, but it now appears to be common ground that the range in fact agreed was between £24.94 (which was precisely a 45% premium over the previous end-day closing price of £17.20) and £26.94 per share (representing a premium of 57% over the previous evening's closing price). Those latter figures were as stated in a draft indicative offer letter sent by HP to Autonomy the next day (29 July 2011). Having reached agreement on range of price, HP and Autonomy agreed to proceed to due diligence.

3894. The 29 July 2011 meeting was thus a new stage: a bid was by then on the cards, and it is plausible to assume (and intend) that the final decision and negotiations to fix on a final bid price would be influenced by subsequent details provided, and the due diligence process which had been agreed.

3895. The Claimants alleged that two representations were made at or arose from the 29 July 2011 meeting: one in the course of the meeting itself, and the other in a table that the Defendants agreed at the meeting to provide:

(1) Mr Sarin's evidence was that at the meeting, Mr Hussain *"told us that HP should rely on Autonomy's publicly available financial information"*. Both

[517] Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination that he did not think *"anyone in their right mind expected to do the deal on 18 August."* He added: *"I now know why they had to do it on the 18th, but I didn't at the time…I've never seen a deal done at this speed."*

what was actually said and what was intended to be and understood to be conveyed by this was disputed.

(2) Second, it is common ground that following discussions at the meeting, Mr Hussain, with the assistance of Mr Kanter, prepared a table in response to item III(A)(3) on the Tesla Question List, which was uploaded to the Data Room. The table set out quarterly revenue figures by product category for the period Q1 2009 to Q2 2011. Those figures matched, and were expressly said to derive from, Autonomy's quarterly earnings releases.

3896. As to (1) above, the Claimants alleged that what Mr Hussain said *"constituted an implied representation by Lynch and Hussain that Autonomy's published information was accurate and not misleading."*

3897. The Claimants' case is that by telling HP to rely on Autonomy's publicly available financial information, and by uploading the table to the data room in response to HP's due diligence question, Mr Hussain – and Dr Lynch, through his acquiescence – represented that in each case that information was complete, accurate, and not misleading.

3898. The Defendants did not accept this, and contended that this was not what was said or intended:

(1) Mr Sarin had a list of due diligence questions, and there was a discussion about how the answers would be provided, or where they could be found. In relation to some of those questions, he wrote "Doc" on his list. He explained what that meant in cross-examination:

> *"Q. It was being explained to you, wasn't it, by -- it was Mr Hussain who was talking at that point and he was explaining to you, wasn't he, that much of the information about these things was in the published material?*
>
> *A. Much of the basic financial information was in the published material, yes."*

The Defendants submitted that in this passage, "*these things*" is a reference to the points where he had written "Doc" on his list and that it was not some general statement by Mr Hussain that HP should rely on Autonomy's published information, nor would it have been taken as such by any reasonable person hearing what Mr Hussain said.[518]

(2) Secondly, Mr Hussain submitted that all that he had said, and was understood to have said, and certainly all he had meant, was that much of the information that HP had requested was available from the published material. In other words, he was not doing, or not intending to do, more than directing HP to where information would be available, without confirming its accuracy, still

[518] See *Property Alliance Group Ltd v Royal Bank of Scotland plc* [2018] 1 WLR 329 (CA) citing Toulson J (as he then was) in *IFE Fund SA v Goldman Sachs International* [2007] 1 Lloyd's Rep 264 , para 50, (quoted in paragraph 3907 below).

less warranting it. In any event, if (contrary to this) any representation was to be implied, his alternative position was that it would have been limited to Mr Hussain's belief that Autonomy's published information was accurate and not misleading: and, he maintained, any such representation would have been true.

(3) Thirdly, for his part, Dr Lynch emphasised that he made no such statement, nor should such a statement be attributed to him., and that Mr Hussain was not acting as his agent. HP argued that Dr Lynch through his silence demonstrated acquiescence and adopted Mr Hussain's statement. But Dr Lynch countered that silence does not ordinarily give rise to liability in deceit or misrepresentation;[519] that HP did not identify any legal obligation on Dr Lynch to correct or qualify anything said by Mr Hussain; and that Dr Lynch was not subject to any duty of disclosure.

(4) Fourthly, Dr Lynch contended that the Claimants did not in fact rely on the fact that he said nothing at this point. If they had wanted any assurance from Dr Lynch about the content of Autonomy's published information, they could have asked him directly: indeed, they could have requested a warranty from him as to the accuracy of Autonomy's accounts (something they never did). While Mr Sarin stated in his witness statement that Dr Lynch did not disagree with Mr Hussain's comment about the published information, he did not say that he paid any attention to – let alone relied on – Dr Lynch's silence. And as already noted, Mr Sarin played no part in the decision making process.

(5) Fifthly, Dr Lynch submitted that there was no actionable representation by him (and there was certainly no representation made to Bidco or its agent), but that even if there had been, the representation could have been no more than that he believed the published information to be accurate, which he did. He also had reasonable grounds to do so. Accordingly, the alleged representation would not give rise to liability, either in deceit or under s. 2(1).

3899. Although an issue of law may arise, which I discuss below, the primary question is one of fact, as to what was actually said and what was meant. Neither HP nor the Defendants were very clear on important details: for example, although Mr Sarin's evidence was that *"Dr Lynch did not disagree"* with Mr Hussain's statement, he did not actually state that Dr Lynch was there, or what the context was from which it was said to be apparent that Dr Lynch *"did not disagree"*. Further, the statement which Mr Sarin attributed to Mr Hussain that *"HP should rely on Autonomy's publicly available information"* was imprecise, as the present dispute as to its meaning shows: a direct quotation might have given more of an insight as to whether Mr Hussain was simply informing HP about a useful source, or indicating that what was stated was true and correct and need not further be assessed. Mr Sarin did not even in his witness statement confirm exactly what he understood Mr Hussain to mean, nor did he give any explanation as to why he had concluded that Dr Lynch understood what was said

[519] Clerk & Lindsell on Torts (22nd Ed, 2017), §18-06. And bearing in mind that this is alleged to have been an *implied* representation, see *Marme Inversiones v NatWest* at §123: "*a number of principles can be distilled from these authorities: (1) First, it is possible for a representation to be made expressly or impliedly through words or conduct. For a representation to be implied, silence or mere assumption is not usually enough as there is no general duty of disclosure.*"

to have meant that Mr Hussain was verifying the published information (rather than identifying a source of information to be verified by HP).

3900. Indeed, although the Claimants' written closing submissions stated that Mr Hussain had made the relevant statement to HP *"in Dr Lynch's presence"* and cited Mr Sarin's witness statement in support, Mr Sarin did not actually say that, although there is some basis for an inference that Dr Lynch was present from Mr Sarin's evidence that the statement was made when going through with Dr Lynch and Messrs Hussain and Kanter and Dr Menell for that purpose what was called the *"Tesla Question List"*.

3901. As so often in this hugely detailed case, the finer details are nevertheless lacking or elusive. Once again, the difficulty in determining what was said, and more especially its nuances, is made very difficult by the absence of Mr Hussain, who therefore could not be tested on either. Mr Kanter might have assisted me: but he withdrew and was not cross-examined: and the same applies in respect of Dr Menell.

3902. Dr Lynch himself did not expressly deny that the statement had been made. He did not assert that he did not hear it being made. He was, as it struck me, uncharacteristically wary when he was cross-examined. The following passages serves to illustrate this:

> *"Q. So where information could be found in publicly available documents, you wanted HP to rely on that information, correct?*
>
> *A. As I recall, Mr Robison was the person who first decided that a lot of the work could be done off of public documents, but we were happy for that to be a starting point.*
>
> *…*
>
> *Q. Now, Mr Sarin's evidence is that in the meeting Mr Hussain said that HP should rely on Autonomy's published information. You don't deny that in your pleadings. Is that because you don't remember it or you have no recollection of it?*
>
> *A. I think it was a generally accepted term, but, as I say, I remember Mr Robison bringing it up and I wasn't in all the meetings anyway.*
>
> *Q. You didn't disagree with what Mr Hussain said when he said that HP should rely on Autonomy's published information?*
>
> *A. I don't know about the technicalities of "rely" from a legal sense but obviously I would expect HP to read all the public information.*
>
> *Q. But you didn't disagree with what Mr Hussain said when he said to you…*
>
> *A. I wouldn't disagree that it was a good idea to go and read all the public information, along with all the analyst reports, everything you could get your hands on.*

Q. It would have been obvious to you, Dr Lynch, that when HP was told to rely on that information, HP would understand that it was being told that that information was accurate and not misleading?

A. A couple of things here. So first of all, I do believe that information was accurate, not misleading, but secondly, it's not for us to tell HP how to do its due diligence. Under the UK system they can request whatever information they want to request. We then decide whether to give that information. We can't tell HP how it needs to arrive at its decision or what process it needs to do, it must make those decisions itself.

Q. When you tell them or when Mr Hussain says to them "You should rely on Autonomy's published information", you would have understood that HP would have understood from that that they were also being told that the published information was accurate and not misleading?

A. I believe that the public information was accurate."

3903. In addition to the questions of fact raised, it is necessary to consider certain authorities referred to by the Claimants as to the effect of a person making reference in this way to public information as the answer to enquiries. These can conveniently be dealt with now.

3904. The Claimants cited *Webster v Liddington* [2015] 1 All ER (Comm) 427 in the Court of Appeal at [46][520], where Jackson LJ (with whom Briggs LJ and Christopher Clarke LJ both agreed) gave examples of possible "scenarios" in which, absent a contractual warranty, a person had passed on information produced by someone else, and how these might variously be regarded as him having (i) adopted the information as his own; (ii) represented that he has reasonable grounds to believe the information; or (iii) simply passed on information about which he has no personal knowledge or belief. The Claimants submitted that this is not a case that can plausibly fall into the third category: Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain were, respectively, the CEO and CFO of

[520] In *Webster v Liddington* [2015] 1 All ER (Comm) 427 the defendants/appellants were qualified clinicians who handed a lay patient a brochure prepared by another which described the treatment which the clinician was offering to carry out. It was held at trial and confirmed by the Court of Appeal that the defendant clinicians, in handing over the brochure, adopted its contents and impliedly represented them to be accurate, even though the brochure was not, as it were, his document.

Autonomy, and had personally approved Autonomy's published financial results. Indeed, this was not information produced by someone else at all: it was their information and in passing it on they endorsed its truth and accuracy.

3905. The Claimants argued further that implicit in any representations Mr Hussain made about figures or statements made in the accounts was that so far as he was aware those figures and statements could be relied on as giving a true and fair view: and see *MAN v Freightliner* [2005] EWHC 2347 (Comm).

3906. Mr Hussain's case was that all he said, and was understood to have said, was that much of the information that HP had requested was available from the published material; in his RRAD he pleaded that he merely "passed on" information and that his references to information being in Autonomy's financial reports *"amounted, at most, to a representation that those sources contained the relevant figures* [or statement]*, but not that those figures* [or statement] *were accurate"*. His statement was in the nature of giving directions as to whereabouts, and not any warranty of the accuracy of what was then found. In any event, Mr Hussain contended that any representation would have been limited to his belief that Autonomy's published financial information was accurate and not misleading: and that each was true.

3907. As Jackson LJ acknowledged in *Webster v Liddington,* those scenarios are not a complete statement of the range of possibilities and there are other intermediate positions. They are simply illustrations of the more general proposition explained by Toulson J (as he then was) in *IFE Fund SA v Goldman Sachs International* [2006] EWHC 2887 (Comm), [2007] 1 Lloyd's Rep 264[521] at [50] and approved by Jackson LJ in *Webster v Liddington* that:

> *"In determining whether there has been an express representation, and to what effect, the court has to consider what a reasonable person would have understood from the words used in the context in which they were used. In determining what, if any, implied representation has been made, the court has to perform a similar task, except that it has to consider what a reasonable person would have inferred was being implicitly represented by the representor's words and conduct in their context."*[522]

3908. What is required, therefore, at the first stage is not an assessment of which of the scenarios identified in *Webster v Liddington* most nearly equates to the position (as the Claimants appeared to suggest) but what in all the circumstances a reasonable person would have been likely to infer from Mr Hussain's references to the information sought by HP being available in Autonomy's published information, which it may be added, so far as it concerned financial information about Autonomy, was prepared by

[521] An appeal from that decision was dismissed by the Court of Appeal [2007] EWCA Civ 811, [2007] 2 Lloyd's Rep 449

[522] In *IFE Fund SA v Goldman Sachs International*, Goldman Sachs had sent on a Syndicate Information Memorandum ("SIM") to IFE which IFE stated it had relied on in proceeding with an acquisition and which turned out to be false. The SIM was not prepared by Goldman Sachs but by a third party, and it contained express written disclaimers including that Goldman Sachs had not independently verified the information in the SIM. Toulson J did not accept IFE's case that Goldman Sachs was making an implied representation that it was unaware of any facts showing that the information was or might be materially incorrect (even though in fact Goldman Sachs had been advised by Arthur Andersen of some inaccuracies).

or under the aegis of Mr Hussain himself. I say "the first stage" because it seems to me that, having determined what the statement was taken to mean by the addressee, it is then necessary to determine whether that is the meaning which was intended by the addressor (and see *Arkwright v Newbold* and paragraph 466 of the Introduction).

3909. I turn to my assessment of the factual issue as to the received and intended meaning and effect of Mr Hussain's disputed statement referring HP to Autonomy's published information.

3910. I accept that a major part of the meeting was simply an exercise in assisting HP to understand where information might be found; and I note that Mr Sarin himself accepted in cross-examination that:

(1) As mentioned in paragraph 3890 above, the 29 July meeting was about the process by which information would be provided, and Autonomy would not be providing any substantive information (not least because no Non-Disclosure Agreement was yet in place).

(2) At the meeting, those concerned simply went through the *"Tesla Question List"*[523] together and annotated the list to identify where the information requested might be found and/or its source.

(3) The answer in many cases was "the published information"; but all that was expressly said was to the effect that *"much of the information about these things was in the published information."*

3911. It is unsatisfactory to have to determine the first factual question, as to what Mr Hussain actually said, without having the benefit of any evidence from him. I take it that he would have denied having said, or having intended to be understood as saying, anything more than that for many of the questions which would arise in the course of the due diligence process HP should look first for the answer in the published information. I shall proceed on the factual premise that this was all that he did say or intended to say. I doubt that Mr Hussain would have intentionally expressed himself in such a way as to appear to be confirming, still less warranting, the accuracy of what was set out in the material. After all, the published information carried its own warranty of truth and accuracy, to the best of the issuer's knowledge and belief.

3912. The next question is what was conveyed by what I have determined he said. I consider that HP would have assumed that he was not aware at that time of anything material that he knew was not in that material and undermined its reliability.

3913. Then the question is whether Mr Hussain would have intended that to be what was conveyed. In my judgment, Mr Hussain, with what he knew of the quick time table and the constraints it imposed on the due diligence process, must have expected and intended that in referring HP to the published information as its first source (see above) he was conveying to them that he did not himself know of financial and other information which was material and undermined the reliability of that primary source.

3914. I have concluded, despite the lack of direct evidence, that Dr Lynch was present and aware of whatever it was that Mr Hussain said. He did not say he was not, despite being given every opportunity to do so when cross-examined: it seemed to me that in

[523] Tesla being the code name for Autonomy at that time

his cross-examination he deliberately stepped away from suggesting that he was not. Having the same appreciation as Mr Hussain of the constraints on the due diligence process, and with the knowledge he had, Dr Lynch would have expected HP to take what was being conveyed as being that Mr Hussain was not aware at that time of anything material that he knew was not in that material and undermined its reliability; and that he would have shared Mr Hussain's intention that HP should do so (as I find he did).

3915. On the basis of my previous conclusions that Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch had "guilty knowledge" that (a) the accounting treatment of important aspects of Autonomy's business was improper and gave a false impression of the true position and performance of Autonomy and (b) the nature and amount of an important part of the revenue attributed to the software sales had been generated over the course of the Relevant Period by hardware reselling, and that this and a significant proportion of the costs of it had been concealed or disguised, both would have known that HP were being directed to an unreliable source.

3916. Whilst of course I accept that ordinarily there is no duty to speak, in the particular circumstances, Dr Lynch was there to represent Autonomy as its CEO in assisting HP in proceeding with the process of due diligence, and Mr Hussain was there as CFO to assist HP; Dr Lynch shares responsibility with Mr Hussain for the latter having led them to what I have determined he knew was a misleading source and implicitly encouraged them to rely on it.

3917. At least in the case of Mr Hussain, I consider that I am reinforced in this assessment by the table which, after the discussions at the 29 July 2011 meeting, Mr Hussain prepared with the assistance of Mr Kanter (and see paragraph 3895(2) above). This table, which was in response to part of the *"Tesla Question List"*, set out quarterly revenue figures by product category for the period Q1 2009 to Q2 2011 (and was uploaded to the Data Room). Those figures matched, and were expressly stated to derive from, Autonomy's quarterly earnings releases. Of particular note is that no mention was made of hardware sales. Neither of the Defendants addressed this point.

3918. In my view, and I find, Mr Hussain, in presenting this material and causing it to be uploaded to the Data Room for the purpose of the due diligence exercise, would have been taken to and did represent that he believed, as CFO, that the information given was complete, accurate and not misleading; and the table gave a misleading impression by omitting any reference to hardware sales.

3919. I have also concluded that Mr Hussain knew that he was representing that the information to which he directed HP, and that which he provided in the table he produced after the meeting with the assistance of Mr Kanter, was true and accurate to the best of his belief.

3920. However, no evidence was provided sufficient to establish that Dr Lynch was involved in either the compilation or presentation of the table: and I find that he was not involved in either. That does not, however, cause me to change my overall conclusion that he knew and intended that what was represented by Mr Hussain was done so with his endorsement.

Alleged misrepresentations in the course of due diligence 1 August 2011 to 18 August 2011

Overview

3921. I have described in the Introduction to this judgment the process of due diligence which took place between 1 August 2011 and 18 August 2011. It may be recalled that Dr Lynch, for his part, sought to impugn HP's conduct of due diligence as rushed, and suggested that HP cut corners, failing to obtain information – most strikingly, Deloitte's work papers – that would have been provided had HP not gone ahead and announced the acquisition on 18 August 2011, and revealed some of the matters that the Claimants complain about. By contrast, the Claimants submitted that those claims were not only factually wrong but also irrelevant as a matter of law, since it is trite law that it is no defence to a fraud claim that the victim should have discovered the truth, or even that he was careless in not doing so.

3922. I return to the process of due diligence now to address the Claimants' separate contention that Mr Hussain made a number of misrepresentations in the course of certain due diligence calls on which HP also relied in proceeding with the Acquisition, in particular, in the course of telephone calls as part of the process on 1, 2 and 4 August 2011.

3923. In addressing the three sets of misrepresentations (the sixth, seventh and eighth sets) alleged to have been made in the course of due diligence calls on 1, 2 and 4 August 2011, I focus first on whether there was any misrepresentation in each case. I address the issue of reliance compositely at the end of this section since it seems to me to be artificial not to look at them together and in the round.

1 August 2011 due diligence call: the sixth set of alleged misrepresentations

3924. On a "finance overview" due diligence call held on 1 August 2011, Mr Hussain gave an overview of the business and presented Autonomy's Q2 2011 results. The Claimants alleged that in doing so he made a series of misrepresentations, all of which were recorded in a contemporaneous note of the meeting made by Rob Binns ("Mr Binns") of HP, and were also described by Mr Sarin to the same effect in his witness statement (which was not challenged in this regard).

3925. Mr Binns noted that Mr Hussain made the following representations in his overview of Autonomy's business:

(1) Autonomy's gross margin range was 87%–90%, and its operating margin range was 42%-50%.

(2) Although Autonomy's accounts were drawn up in compliance with *"IFRS not US GAAP"*, revenue-recognition policy was *"closely aligned to US GAAP"* (though I note that this may refer only to Interwoven since it was explained as being *"due to prior US listing"*).

(3) Autonomy's COGS included support costs, managed service data centre hosting costs, and *"very little 3P [third-party] royalty costs"*.

(4) The market consensus forecast for Autonomy's 2011 revenue was $1.06 billion.

3926. The Claimants alleged that each of these representations was false. According to the Claimants:

(1) If all hardware costs were allocated to COGS as the Claimants contended they should have been, and none to sales and marketing, Autonomy's reported gross margin (on the adjusted basis reported by Autonomy) would have been 83.3% in 2009, 83.6% in 2010 and 86.7% in H1 2011. (The unadjusted IFRS measures were substantially lower.)

(2) According to the Claimants, Autonomy's revenue recognition policy and practice did not meet even the less prescriptive IFRS standards.

(3) Mr Hussain's statement as to COGS made no mention of hardware costs, which even after Autonomy's wrongful inclusion of large parts of those costs in sales and marketing expenses still represented very large proportions of Autonomy's reported COGS: 37.7% of COGS in 2009 ($33.1 million of $87.7 million reported); 73.2% in 2010 ($81.7 million of $111.5 million reported); and 69% in H1 2011 ($40.4 million out of $58.6 million reported).

(4) Mr Hussain's statement as to the market consensus forecast for 2011 of revenues of $1.06 billion amounted to an implied representation that there were reasonable grounds for that consensus, which was false because that consensus was based on false and misleading historical financial statements.

3927. The Claimants also alleged that in presenting Autonomy's Q2 2011 results, Mr Hussain further impliedly represented that they were complete, accurate and not misleading, but that he well knew that they were not. According to the Claimants:

(1) As a result of false accounting, the Q2 2011 Quarterly Report included numerous incorrect and misleading metrics. They included those set out, with what the Claimants presented as the corresponding True metrics, in the following table (though it is to be noted that when I assess quantum the figures will have to be further adjusted to strip out claims in which the Claimants have not succeeded as identified for like purposes in paragraph 3863(1) above).

Metric	**Stated figure**	**True figure**
Q2 2011 total revenue	$256.3 million *pages 1, 3, 9, 16*	$211.3 million ($190.5 million excl. pure hardware) [524]
Q2 2011 IDOL Cloud revenue	$64.3 million *page 3*	$49.1 million[525]
Q2 2011 IDOL OEM	$47.2 million	$3.8 million[526]

524 Cross-check Q2 2011 revenue is the same as the True Position revenue to the nearest $0.1 million.

525 Cross-check Q2 2011 IDOL Cloud revenue is $43.6 million.

526 Cross-check Q2 2011 IDOL OEM revenue is the same as the True Position revenue.

Metric	Stated figure	True figure
revenue	*page 3*	
Q2 2011 IDOL OEM year-on-year growth	26% *page 3*	(60%) from $9.6 million to $3.8 million[527]
H1 2011 total revenue	$476 million *pages 2, 3, 9, 16*	$388.9 million ($348 million excl pure hardware)[528]
H1 2011 IDOL Cloud revenue	$117 million *page 3*	$78.2 million[529]
H1 2011 IDOL OEM revenue	$84.3 million *page 3*	$7.5 million[530]
H1 2011 IDOL OEM year-on-year growth	27% *page 3*	(44%) from $13.5 million to $7.5 million[531]

(2) The Autonomy group's adjusted gross margin was said to be 88% in H1 2011 and 87% in Q2 2011. The True figures (correcting only for the treatment of hardware costs) were 86.7% and 86.2% respectively.

(3) The Q2 2011 Quarterly Report also repeated, on pages 3 and 4, the claim that Autonomy operated a "*pure software*" model, which the Claimants alleged was false as previously explained and addressed above.

3928. As previously mentioned, Mr Hussain pleaded and contended as a general matter that all that he was doing in "presenting" the Q2 2011 Quarterly Report and results was telling HP that there was information available in the public domain, on which HP could take its own view: his presentation added nothing, and no-one on the call could have thought that he was making any kind of personal representation. I have not accepted that general defence in the context of the 29 July 2011 meeting, and the position is in my view clearer in the present context, after due diligence had started, and matters had progressed from the preparatory stage to the substantive stage.

3929. In my view, and I find, when making statements in the course of the due diligence exercise about Autonomy's financial information, or in repeating or paraphrasing what was said about Autonomy's financial position and performance in published information for which he had, or shared, responsibility, he was not only passing on

[527] Cross-check Q2 2011 IDOL OEM year-on-year growth of (64%) i.e. a 64% decline ($10.6 million to $3.8 million).

[528] Cross-check H1 2011 total revenue of the same.

[529] Cross-check H1 2011 IDOL Cloud revenue of $75.6 million.

[530] Cross-check H1 2011 IDOL Cloud revenue of $75.6 million.

[531] Cross-check H1 2011 IDOL OEM year-on-year growth of (48%) i.e. a 48% decline ($14.5 million to $7.5 million).

information: I consider it would have been naturally supposed by his audience, as he must have been aware and intended, that, as CFO with responsibility in that context, he believed and was satisfied that the information thus conveyed was accurate, and not untrue or misleading.

3930. I also agree with the Claimants that implicit in any representations he made about figures or statements made in the accounts was that he believed that those figures and statements could be relied on as giving a true and fair view: and see *MAN v Freightliner*.

3931. As to the particular misrepresentations alleged, Mr Hussain responded:

(1) The gross margin percentage range he had referred to accurately reflected Autonomy's published information, which he believed had been prepared in accordance with IFRS and vetted by Deloitte (including in relation to the allocation of part of the costs of hardware reselling to sales and marketing rather than COGS). Furthermore, it was the evidence of Mr Bloomer, as the chairman of the Audit Committee, that fluctuations in Autonomy's margins within a handful of percentage points would not have had a significant effect on investors' perception of Autonomy or its market valuation.[532] In the quarter in question (Q2 2011), even on the Claimants' case the adjustment required to correct the alleged misallocation of hardware costs in the quarter was immaterial (Autonomy reported adjusted gross margin of 88% in H1 2011 and 87% in Q2 2011, whereas the Claimants' 'correction' resulted in figures of 87.6% and 86.2% respectively).

(2) Anything that Mr Hussain had said about Autonomy's revenue recognition being closely aligned to US GAAP was (at most) a comment on Autonomy's accounting policies. It was not on its face any kind of representation about the accounting treatment of individual transactions.

(3) As to the impression alleged to have been created by the omission from the description of COGS of any significant hardware costs that there were none, Mr Hussain contended that:

(a) The description given was not, on its face, concerned with the proportionate monetary contribution of the various types of costs included in COGS;

(b) HP knew of at least Autonomy's sales of appliances and therefore that its COGS did include some hardware costs;

(c) It was open to Mr Sarin to ask questions to explore the costs of appliance sales or other sales but he did not do so because he had not taken what was said as a representation as alleged.

(4) Mr Hussain's reference to the market consensus forecast for Autonomy's 2011 revenue of $1.06 billion was not a representation that there were reasonable

[532] Mr Bloomer explained: *"If you compare Autonomy to a company that operates on very tight margins, such as a supermarket, the impact of reported margins is very different. A supermarket…might have margins of 2-3%. In a business like that, a 1-2% fall is very significant. For a company with margins around 80% or 90% that fluctuated by a few percentage points up and down every quarter, movements in margin are less relevant"*

grounds for such consensus, nor any additional warranty of the accuracy of the published information: he was simply pointing out the availability of the public information and he believed that Autonomy's published information was accurate.

(5) In any event, no reliance had been demonstrated, in particular because:

(a) No evidence had been led to show that Mr Sarin, who was not a decision-maker, had reported this alleged representation to anyone who was; and

(b) Mr Sarin accepted without equivocation in his cross-examination that no buyer would ever rely on the target's evaluations.

3932. As to (1) above, even if (as I would accept is likely) the gross margin percentage range Mr Hussain gave did accurately reflect Autonomy's published information, and even if (as I would accept) Mr Hussain was aware that Deloitte had vetted the accounts, Mr Hussain knew there to be material information which falsified the figures given and nullified the fact of apparent approval by Deloitte.

3933. As to (2), Mr Hussain's reference to Autonomy's revenue recognition being closely aligned to US GAAP, even if ostensibly only a comment on Autonomy's accounting policies, would have been known by him to be untrue, in that the way Autonomy accounted for VAR sales was radically different than that required under US GAAP: and indeed it was only the difference which enabled the use of VAR sales as an improper means of accelerated revenue recognition. That strategy would have been impossible under US GAAP.

3934. As to (3) in paragraph 3931 above, I consider and find, that Mr Hussain's continued adoption by reference of Autonomy's treatment of COGS in its financial statements and published information, was or amounted to a misrepresentation as to there being no material hardware sales, which was false.

3935. I cannot accept Mr Hussain's point in 3931(4) above either. On the basis of my previous findings, Mr Hussain knew that market consensus figures were derived from incorrect figures in Autonomy's financial statements.

3936. As explained above, I address paragraph 3931(5) above later, taking together all the allegations in respect of alleged misrepresentations in the course of due diligence. I also address later the dispute as to the extent of any involvement by and knowledge of Dr Lynch in the due diligence process as a whole, after considering the seventh and eight set of alleged misrepresentations and the due diligence calls on 2 August 2011 and 4 August 2011 during the course of which the Claimants contended they were made.

3937. Thus, in my judgment, Mr Hussain misled HP during the 1 August 2011 due diligence call in each of the respects alleged.

2 August 2011 due diligence call

3938. The seventh set of alleged misrepresentations was made during the second financial due diligence call, held on 2 August 2011. This call addressed Autonomy's business model, revenue streams, revenue recognition practices and tax policies.

3939. HP had sent questions to Autonomy in advance. Mr Johnson, Mr Sarin and others attended for HP, together with representatives of BarCap, Perella and KPMG (including Mr Gersh). Notes were taken by Mr Sarin (on his copy of HP's questions) and by Mr Murali of BarCap. Mr Sarin's unchallenged evidence was that it was Mr Hussain who addressed most of HP's questions. The Claimants alleged that Mr Hussain made two misrepresentations in the course of the call.

3940. The first alleged misrepresentation arose from Mr Hussain's response to the first of the questions provided in advance by HP:

> *"1. Describe your sales model by product or vertical (i.e., hosted vs. SaaS vs. on-premise license vs. OEM vs. appliance). For each, describe the standard elements in each arrangement by sales model and how revenue is recognized with each.*
>
> > *a. Do all or only certain arrangements include license, maintenance, professional services or hosting/subscription?*
> >
> > *b. Include discussion of how each element in the agreement is priced (i.e., % of license, users, cost per seat/node etc.)"*

3941. Mr Sarin explained his thinking and objective in asking this question as follows:

> *"In short, we were asking Mr Hussain to describe Autonomy's business by product, so that we could understand the revenue streams associated with each of these products. The request was intended to be broad. We were looking to elicit information from Autonomy, and Mr Hussain in particular, about everything that Autonomy sold (whether referred to in Autonomy's public filings or not) and wanted to know how revenue was recognized in relation to each revenue stream. We wanted to understand the full picture around Autonomy's revenues."*

3942. Mr Gersh (who had been involved with KPMG in putting the question list together) explained his thinking behind the questions as follows:

> *"The question [list] was intentionally broad ... [It] did not exclude (and was not intended to exclude) any particular product or type of sale or any element of Autonomy's business. We wanted to gain a broad understanding of Autonomy's sales model and how different types of revenue were recognized because revenue recognition differences between IFRS (which Autonomy used) and US GAAP (which HP used) might impact the business after an acquisition."*

3943. Both Mr Sarin and Mr Gersh gave evidence that Mr Hussain's answer to HP's question made no reference to the pure hardware sales that had made up more than 10% of all Autonomy's reported revenues (and a larger percentage of what the Claimants recalculated and presented as being its "True revenues") over the preceding eight quarters. Thus:

(1) Mr Sarin stated:

"We knew about Autonomy's appliance sales, which Autonomy described as a small part of its business, where customers had an urgent need to deploy IDOL, involving a pre-installed license on appropriate hardware, and which was said to be conducted at a margin not widely dissimilar to Autonomy's license business. However, we knew, and were told, nothing about any sales by Autonomy of third-party hardware without any Autonomy software …"

(2) Mr Gersh's evidence on this aspect was as follows:

"*I recall that Question 1 was asked on the August 2 call. As I explained to the jury in Mr. Hussain's criminal trial, if Autonomy was reselling any significant amount of hardware as an element of its contracts (with pre-loaded software or as standalone hardware), I would have expected Mr. Hussain or others in Autonomy management on the call to disclose and discuss any such arrangements in response to Question 1. They did not."*

3944. During the US criminal trial Mr Gersh was asked whether he recalled that "*as a part of the response to Question 1 … Mr Hussain said that Autonomy sold hardware as a matter of convenience when Autonomy software was needed to work with hardware*" (emphasis added). Mr Gersh said that he did recall this, later making clear (as the original question put to him by Mr Hussain's US attorney did) that he thought Mr Hussain was talking about appliances. Mr Gersh then further emphasised this in his witness statement in these proceedings by way of response (and in rebuttal) to Dr Lynch's suggestion that Mr Hussain had in fact described Autonomy's pure hardware sales on the call.

3945. Both Mr Sarin and Mr Gersh were cross-examined on behalf of Dr Lynch about Mr Hussain's comments; but their evidence that Mr Hussain made no reference to Autonomy's pure hardware sales on the 2 August call was not itself challenged. Indeed, in his pleading, Mr Hussain did not deny that his answer to Question 1 omitted any reference to Autonomy's pure hardware sales.

3946. The Claimants contended that by omitting any reference to Autonomy's pure hardware sales from his answer to Question 1, Mr Hussain gave the false impression on the 2 August call that Autonomy's revenues were derived entirely from software, and related services (including software as a service), except only for the "*very small*" appliance business conducted at returns comparable to the rest of its pure software business that Autonomy had disclosed and represented as effectively software sales.

3947. Mr Hussain denied making any misrepresentation, and counter-attacked that Mr Gersh, in particular, was well aware that Autonomy sold hardware otherwise than as an appliance. More specifically, Mr Hussain contended that although the notes taken by Mr Sarin and Mr Murali both seem to make clear that all of those other revenue streams were discussed in terms on the call and only hardware went unmentioned, his defence pleaded that no false impression was given by Mr Hussain's answer because:

> *"Mr Hussain's notes exclude references to a number of revenue streams, including support and maintenance, professional services and eDiscovery services … HP would have been aware that any response by Mr Hussain based on such notes would not have been an exhaustive description of Autonomy's revenue."*[533]

3948. In addition to his contention that he expressly mentioned hardware sales for the convenience of customers, Mr Hussain contended in his written closing submissions that Mr Gersh's knowledge of substantial hardware sales should be inferred from:

(1) Mr Gersh's evidence in cross-examination that he had read all the contracts that Autonomy placed in the due diligence data room: these included at least two contracts for the sale of hardware;

(2) The lack of any apparent foundation for Mr Gersh's explanation, which appeared to confirm that he had read the contracts, but assumed that they were all part of a *"solution involving Autonomy's product"* or an appliance;

(3) An internal KPMG email from Mr Gersh dated 7 August 2011 which expressly stated that he was not sure that the 40 contracts in the data room *"captured everything…since as far as I can tell they have not captured free software or hardware pass-through"*;

(4) The (alleged) falsity of Mr Gersh's suggestion in cross-examination that *"that's a reference to the hardware component of appliances and where they're selling a solution"*, it being submitted that such falsity was shown by Mr Gersh's use of the expression pass-through sales to denote hardware and distinguish hardware sales from appliance sales: the context being Mr Gersh's discovery (post-acquisition) of a $41 million purchase from Dell which he considered too large to relate to an appliance sale and Mr Gersh's approach then in distinguishing appliance sales from pass-through hardware sales; and

(5) The frailty (as Mr Hussain presented it) of Mr Gersh's explanation that:

> *"We use the term generally, sort of "pass-through hardware" in a software sense because software companies aren't making hardware, they're purchasing it from somebody, they're putting their software on it and they're selling the product with the hardware delivery mechanism, so as it's described as an appliance…"*

(6) Other evidence suggesting that (contrary to what Mr Gersh maintained he had understood) "pass-through hardware" was not used in "a software sense" included both (i) KPMG in their post-acquisition report and (ii) E&Y in their memorandum of December 2012 (addressing HP's write-down of $8.8 billion)

533 This point was not pursued in Mr Hussain's Closing Submissions.

used the term *"hardware pass-through"* to denote what they described as *"standalone hardware sales"*.

3949. It is necessary to separate out three strands in these competing presentations:

(1) Whether what Mr Hussain said on the 2 August 2011 telephone call gave the false impression that Autonomy's revenues were derived entirely from software;

(2) Whether Mr Sarin and/or Mr Gersh became aware that Autonomy sold hardware, and more particularly, hardware otherwise than as an appliance ('standalone' hardware);

(3) Whether the issue of hardware sales was, or if properly understood, would have been, a matter of importance to KPMG, Messrs Sarin and/or Gersh, and HP.

3950. I have addressed the last two points, which, as it seems to me, go to the issue of reliance, rather than whether or not there was any misrepresentation, in the context of the Hardware claim. I have concluded that neither Mr Gersh (or KPMG) nor Mr Sarin appreciated, prior to the Acquisition, that Autonomy had been reselling, in substantial quantities, hardware other than with Autonomy software built into or embedded in it, or as part and parcel of an identified software sale.

3951. Focusing for present purposes on point (1) above:

(a) Whether or not evident from other sources read or available to HP that Autonomy had engaged in substantial "pure" or "standalone" hardware sales, the fact remains that Autonomy's published information did not contain any reference to such sales;

(b) In those circumstances, in my judgment, in directing HP to that published information without any warning, Mr Hussain perpetuated and reinforced the impression that Autonomy did not sell material amounts of non-appliance (i.e. standalone) hardware;

(c) Further, in my judgment, this was intentional in that Mr Hussain did not wish HP to know that Autonomy had (a) undertaken hardware sales as an expedient to make good any shortfall in software sales and to ensure that Autonomy either did meet or came close to meeting quarterly revenue forecasts, and (b) disguised its use of that expedient by accounting for costs and losses of sales as sales and marketing expenses: and see my assessment of and conclusion on the Hardware claims.

3952. The <u>second</u> misrepresentation concerned Autonomy's IDOL OEM revenue. As Mr Sarin's notes recorded, HP was told that such revenue generally consisted of an upfront payment by the OEM partner followed by royalty payments based on the OEM partner's sales, as the following excerpt from Mr Sarin's notes showed:

OEM
↳ upfront payment. (recognized as s/w is accepted)
↳ royalty reports come in
↳ recognized in arrears; quarterly

3953. Mr Murali (of BarCap) also made notes which recorded in relevant part:

> *"Rev rec around OEMs – Upfront fee + royalty (from a licence perspective),"*

though he did also note after that: *"did not understand 100% Need to clarify"*.

3954. The Claimants alleged that this representation was false, because as discussed in the part of this judgment dealing with the OEM claims, only a small fraction of the IDOL OEM revenue reported by Autonomy was derived from ongoing royalties.

3955. For reasons set out in some detail in the part of this judgment in which I consider the OEM claims, I have concluded that the depiction of Autonomy's OEM business as generating from OEMs an especially valuable royalty revenue stream was incomplete, inaccurate and false, to the knowledge of both Defendants; and that Mr Hussain's representation was likewise false, and known by him to be so.

4 August 2011 due diligence call

3956. The eighth set of alleged misrepresentations were made on a due diligence call held on 4 August 2011. The call was attended for HP by Mr Johnson, Mr Sarin, Ms Hsiao and others, as well as representatives of BarCap. Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain participated for Autonomy, as (it appears) did Brian Cayne of Qatalyst: none of them gave evidence.

3957. During the 29 July 2011 meeting, HP had asked (not for the first time) for internal three-year financial projections. Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain had said that no such projections existed. It had therefore been agreed that HP would show Mr Hussain parts of its Deal Model, and that Mr Hussain would comment on the reasonableness of the assumptions and projections it contained. The Claimants relied on the fact that this agreement was recorded in Mr Sarin's notes of the 29 July 2011 meeting, where against HP's questions concerning Autonomy's three year projections Mr Sarin noted: "*walk thru HP model*"; and on Mr Sarin's email to his team following the meeting:

> "*They do not have a 3 year financial plan ... As such, I have offered to Sushovan (CFO) that we can walk him through our stand-alone model (just the income statement and associated assumptions) to get his perspective*".

3958. In cross-examination Mr Sarin told me:

> *"The purpose of the August 4 call was really because we didn't have access to management's own long-term forecast. The idea was for us to really run at a*

> *high level some of the assumptions that were driving our projections for the valuation of Autonomy and so, as we have discussed before, looking at growth rates and margins was particularly important. So we were showing a subset of the model that was only looking at Autonomy, to Autonomy CFO and we were walking through that just to make sure we got comfort that some of those numbers were indeed correct, and we weren't really missing anything in the process ...*
>
> *So the idea of talking to executive management really is they are more involved in running the business, they have more insight on their own business than anybody sitting from the outside would glean over a two to three-week period. So the idea was to elicit from management: here is how we're looking at the business, here is how we're evaluating the business, here is how we're looking at the projections of the business; looking at your historical numbers, do you believe this makes sense?"*

3959. Mr Sarin made contemporaneous handwritten notes of the call and gave evidence by reference to them. The notes were a few lines long; but Mr Sarin told me that the meeting lasted about an hour.

3960. During the call, Ms Hsiao (a member of Mr Sarin's team) shared her computer screen with the other attendees and Mr Sarin *"walked them through"* parts of the Deal Model. As Mr Sarin explained, "*it was limited to inputs*[534] *that would be needed to figure out top line and other elements of P&L until 2016, but no assumptions that would be relevant for a valuation*", because "*I wouldn't want to share with the target if the valuation that I'm coming up with is higher than the market value, because at this time the deal hasn't really been, you know, signed and so you don't want to tip your hand in terms of value.*" Mr Chamberlain took screenshots, which he emailed to Mr Hussain. There was a dispute, which I need not decide, whether those screenshots provide a complete or partial record of what was shown. Revenue projections were shown by product line, but only up until 2016.

3961. According to the Claimants, Mr Hussain *"largely confirmed the assumptions and projections that he was shown, but suggested some tweaks, which HP largely adopted."* The *"tweaks"* which the Claimants suggested were made at Mr Hussain's suggestion related to two aspects of the Deal Model which the Claimants said were adjusted in the course of the conversation: (a) the forecast growth of IDOL Product revenues (as to which, according to Mr Sarin's contemporaneous notes, Mr Hussain stated that the original 5% annual growth projection was "*very low*" and his suggestion was to use 10% instead), and (b) the formula used to project maintenance fees (which according to the same notes suggest that Mr Hussain placed the renewal rate at 90%). The result, as can be seen by comparing the first and second of Mr Chamberlain's screenshots, was slightly to reduce total projected revenue for 2011 (from $1.08 billion to $1.06 billion) and 2012 (from $1.27 billion to $1.25 billion).

3962. The Defendants gave a rather different depiction, and in particular, submitted that any changes that were made to HP's model following the call were not made in reliance on any comment of Mr Hussain, but rather on HP's own assumptions, and that in any case, Mr Hussain was not seeking to push up the numbers: on the contrary, he

---

534 The transcript says "imports", which is an obvious error.

suggested that some of HP's proposed figures be reduced. Further, substantial changes were made to the model at a later stage between 4 and 18 August 2011, as Mr Sarin accepted. The Defendants relied on Mr Sarin's own evidence in cross-examination:

> *"Q ... Now, you, of course, understood that you were here looking at your own projections, and that projections like this are always a matter of opinion, aren't they?*
>
> *A. Yes, there is an element of subjectivity involved.*
>
> *Q. No buyer would ever rely on the target's own evaluation of these things; these were your own projections, correct?*
>
> *A. Correct."*

3963. The dispute in this regard is relevant to, and in assessing, the Claimants' allegation that, Mr Hussain made the following misrepresentations in the course of the call:[535]

(1) That the consensus analyst estimate for Autonomy's 2011 revenues was $1.05 billion, but that UBS's forecast of $1.06 billion was more accurate. The Claimants cited Mr Sarin's notes recording a statement there attributed to Mr Hussain that the consensus was "*a little behind*", so that actual revenue "*could be a little higher*", before he cited the UBS figure. The Claimants contended that this statement was false because, like the consensus figure, UBS's forecast reflected the false accounting underpinning Autonomy's published financial results.

(2) That the projections in the Deal Model for licence (i.e., IDOL Product), IDOL Cloud and IDOL OEM revenue were "*reasonable*". Again, the Claimants contended that this was false because Autonomy's 'True' revenues in those categories were inconsistent with such projections.

(3) That the consensus forecast for Autonomy's 2012 revenues was $1.25 billion. As described above, this corresponded to the revised projection in the Deal Model that resulted from the adjustments which the Claimants contended were made during the call. The Claimants submitted that this amounted to an implied representation that there were reasonable grounds for the market consensus, but that in fact the consensus simply reflected the false accounting. Mr Sarin told me:

> *"when somebody is looking at the revenue elements that comprise the full Autonomy revenue, he's looking at the disaggregated gross*

[535] Mr Sarin also explained that during the call Mr Hussain said that HP's assumptions about the various gross margins that applied to Autonomy's different product categories were "*right*". It was suggested to Mr Sarin in cross-examination that he had only asked about Autonomy's overall gross margin, rather than the margins on individual components; however, he explained later in his oral evidence that that was, and indeed he told Ms Harvey of HP in an email dated 10 November 2011 that "*The gross margin split was not officially provided by Autonomy. We had made assumptions based on our understanding, public comparables etc. During one of the diligence sessions we vetted the assumptions, at a high level, with their CFO*". The suggestion put to Mr Sarin is inconsistent with the comment recorded in Mr Sarin's contemporaneous note: "*gross margins right*" (emphasis added). Further, if all HP were asking were whether the weighted average of its individual gross margin assumptions was in line with Autonomy's reported overall gross margins, it could have done the necessary, simple sums itself.

> *margins by those five elements. To the extent there is a significant piece of information that is missing, which would have a material impact on the valuation and our understanding of the business, that would have been an appropriate time to flag it."*

3964. Mr Hussain dismissed the call as *"wholly insignificant"*. He submitted:

(1) In fact, he had pointed Mr Sarin to lower projected revenue figures (of $1.05 billion) and the effect of his suggestions, as Mr Sarin had accepted in his evidence and confirmed in cross-examination, was to reduce projected revenues compared to those in HP's suggested model (which had projected revenues for 2011 of $1.076 billion).

(2) All that he was doing was referring to analyst estimates which were publicly and easily available to HP. He denied having said that HP's figures were "reasonable" and although the Claimants again cited Mr Sarin's contemporaneous notes as recording just such a comment, he said that all he was doing was explaining the assumptions and the comment was Mr Sarin's own gloss.

(3) In any event, as Mr Sarin confirmed in cross-examination the further and substantial changes later made to the model between 4 and 18 August 2011 were made unilaterally by HP without any reliance on any statement made or allegedly made by him.

3965. Insofar as the Claimants were seeking to rely on the exchanges during the 4 August 2011 call as amounting to Mr Hussain confirming the validity of HP's Deal Model and its assumptions, and as going beyond or providing a basis for a claim independent of their allegations as to the falsity of Autonomy's accounting information I do not accept that. Nor do I accept that HP would have been entitled to or did treat what was said as validating their Deal Model, or as the basis on which they made alterations to it. At most, in my judgment, Mr Hussain was refining representations already made, and by inferential repetition, reinforcing them. If relevant at all, that is really relevant principally to reliance. Whilst the call was not wholly insignificant, what happened was not such as to found any separate claim for misrepresentation.

3966. That leaves for consideration two matters that I reserved until after dealing with the representations made during the process of due diligence: (a) the involvement of Dr Lynch in the due diligence process and (b) the issue of reliance.

Dr Lynch's involvement in the due diligence process

3967. Dr Lynch has sought to portray himself as having played very little part in the due diligence process. He says that he did not attend any of the calls between the senior leaders on both sides to which he was invited. But Mr Sarin's evidence was that he did, noting that Mr Robison for HP "*sat through every call*", and would not have joined if "*his counterpart*" (Dr Lynch) did not. Indeed, Dr Lynch claimed not to remember speaking to Mr Sarin at all after 1 August 2011, but the evidence shows that he did.

3968. More generally, although it is true that Dr Lynch's name is on very few due diligence emails or documents, that does not mean he was not involved in drafting them. Rather, consistently with his general practice, Dr Lynch repeatedly commented on other people's emails in draft, and indeed himself drafted or redrafted emails for other people to send.

3969. Dr Lynch claimed in cross-examination that he did so because "*there was an explicit request from Andy [Kanter] that all emails should go through him for purposes of the recording for the UK takeover process*", but plainly Dr Lynch could simply have copied Mr Kanter on any emails sent by him. Indeed, Dr Lynch was happy to email HP directly about due diligence issues when it suited him. (Dr Lynch's claim is certainly not supported by Mr Kanter's email of 1 August 2011 asking him and others to avoid emailing <u>documents</u> on the basis that they had to go through the data room.)

3970. What is more, his involvement went beyond drafting or commenting on emails. He had conversations with Mr Hussain about how best to respond to HP requests. As described in the OEM section of the judgment, Dr Lynch was involved in putting together a list for HP of Autonomy's "*Top 10 OEM customers by revenue for FY 2010*". Despite attempting in his first witness statement to distance himself from this episode, it is clear from the contemporaneous materials that he discussed the list with Mr Hussain on at least two calls.

3971. Dr Lynch continued to deny these allegations generally. He claimed that he did not participate in any of the financial or legal due diligence calls, though he did join a few technical calls to discuss Autonomy's products. He sought to maintain this in cross-examination:

> *"So if you look at the calls I'm on, they're all about product, technology and positioning. I don't attend the finance and legal calls."*

3972. His written closing submissions suggested also that this was broadly confirmed by Mr Sarin when he was cross-examined, relying on the following passage:

> *"Q.… if we just consider the due diligence process from 1 August onwards, okay, and just define it as that for a moment, during the period after 1 August, you can't recall Dr Lynch providing any information to you, can you?*
>
> *A. So just to make sure I understand the question, when confirmatory diligence begins with the first call on August 1, your question is do I recall Dr Lynch providing me specifically any information?*
>
> *Q. Yes. During any call that you were involved with or any email that you received?*
>
> *A. My calls were largely with Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter. I probably did speak with Dr Lynch occasionally about some things, for example the*

call with Deloitte that happened in -- later on down the road. I don't believe he and I were spending time going through diligence materials.

Q. Right. Just on that call involving Deloitte, you're not suggesting that he was actually part of the Deloitte call? Are you talking about process again?

A. Process again.

Q. Right, and he again says that he wasn't actually part of that conversation and that's something you've just misremembered?

A. I think there is an email to that effect, which says, "This is what Dr Lynch and I have agreed in a prior conversation and therefore we will -- instead of getting the auditor work papers, we will go ahead and have a call with Deloitte".

Q. We can look at that in due course –

A. Sure.

Q. -- but he cannot recall any discussion with you during the period after 1 August?

A. I don't recall any substantive diligence-related call. There might have been process-related calls."

3973. Dr Lynch's closing submissions acknowledged that later in his cross-examination, Mr Sarin suggested that he had a conversation with Dr Lynch in relation to OEMs, sometime between 16 and 18 August 2011; but it was pointed out that this was not something which Mr Sarin dealt with in his witness statement, and when cross-examined he sought to justify the omission on the basis that this was because "*it wasn't really any diligence-related item per se*", and that "*There wasn't anything material that I ought to have then written out in the witness statement*". In the circumstances, Dr Lynch submitted that no weight should be placed on this supposed incident.

3974. Dr Lynch also said that he did not attend any of the calls between the senior leaders on both sides that he was invited to; and he pointed out that his name is on very few financial due diligence emails.

3975. However, with reference to that last point, the Claimants marshalled examples which they submitted demonstrated that, although not apparently involved, Dr Lynch was actually (as Mr Rabinowitz put it to him in cross-examination) *"directing what HP is and is not told in the background…"*. In particular:

(1) They referred to a response, apparently from Mr Kanter, to an email from Mr Levadoux listing certain key things which HP wanted to be dealt with as due diligence entered its second week (including *"Top Tesla OEM arrangements")*, and relied on an email chain to show that in fact it was Dr Lynch who had drafted the response and simply told Mr Kanter to send it to Mr Levadoux.

(2) They put forward another example, of an email from Dr Lynch directly instructing the addressee, Mr Kanter, as to the content of a response to an email from Mr Sarin.

(3) Another email, dated 12 August 2011, from Mr Kanter to Dr Lynch concerning information sought by Mr Sarin, including relating to OEM business, received the response "*Could you draft answers for us to review*", suggesting a supervisory role on the part of Dr Lynch.

(4) A fourth example was an email dated 10 August 2011 from Dr Lynch to Mr Kanter with Dr Lynch's editorial changes of a draft email to Mr Sarin which Mr Kanter had prepared or caused to be prepared and obviously sent to Dr Lynch for comments. Dr Lynch stated that he had *"edited a lot"*. Mr Sarin had asked various questions, focusing especially on Autonomy's hosting business, and had requested *"…off the shelf/regularly produced management reports (monthly/quarterly) that you use to manage the $300 million business…"*

3976. Dr Lynch sought to dismiss the suggestion that he was directing what HP was told and not told *"in the background"* as a *"bit of kite-flying"* forming no part of the Claimants' pleaded case and which, in any event, was not true. However, as it seemed to me:

(1) His explanation of the examples above of his involvement behind the scenes in responses to Mr Sarin, which was that "*there was an explicit request from Andy [Kanter] that all emails should go through him for purposes of the recording for the UK takeover process*", and *"emails are supposed to go through Mr Kanter…"*, seemed to confirm rather than disprove the fact of his involvement.[536]

(2) There were also instances suggesting that Dr Lynch was happy to email HP directly about due diligence issues when it suited him.

(3) There are indications also that his involvement went beyond drafting or commenting on emails. He had conversations with Mr Hussain about how best to respond to HP requests. For example, he was involved in putting together a list for HP of Autonomy's "*Top 10 OEM customers by revenue for FY 2010*", and it is clear from the contemporaneous materials that he discussed the list with Mr Hussain on at least two calls.

3977. The impression which I formed generally was that Dr Lynch was simply indisposed towards permitting an important part of Autonomy's business being run by others, indeed perhaps personally incapable of doing that. As in other contexts, which I have

[536] Dr Lynch's claim is also difficult to reconcile with Mr Kanter's email of 1 August 2011 asking him and others to avoid emailing documents on the basis that they had to go through the data room.

addressed, even if he was not involved routinely, or in day-to-day details, Dr Lynch never relinquished a general supervisory role in any sphere of importance to Autonomy's business. Where not ostensibly involved, he was in any matter of importance involved behind the scenes. He would almost invariably involve himself at a more micro-level, sometimes sporadically but often more routinely, according to his concern and interest. In my view, this is illustrated in the present context of the due diligence.

3978. In my judgment, Dr Lynch shared with Mr Hussain knowledge of the impropriety of the way aspects of Autonomy's actual business activities had been accounted for and disclosed (or rather disguised, concealed, or misleadingly presented). For the proposed Acquisition to proceed at the price agreed, both knew that the false presentation had to be maintained. I consider it much more likely than not that Mr Hussain would have kept him informed of the progress of the process on a regular basis. Dr Lynch was involved in this, as in all other important matters relating to the company. He did not need to know and I doubt he did know the details of every stage; but I am satisfied that in the due diligence process overall he was, as I have described him elsewhere, the éminence grise and well aware of what the message to HP had to be, and intended that it should be, and knew that it was being, delivered in the form of the information provided in answer to HP's questions and in the representations made. He knew that thereby HP were being deceived. In my judgment, Dr Lynch was responsible accordingly and liable with Mr Hussain as if he also had been the actual representor.

Whether HP relied on the Defendants' misrepresentations

3979. It is common ground that in order to make good their claims in deceit HP had to show not only that the Defendants made representations of fact to HP which they knew to be untrue, and did so knowingly, without belief in, or reckless as to, their truth[537], but also that they intended HP (or, where the representations were made indirectly, recipients in a class including HP) to rely on those representations and HP did so rely.

3980. The Defendants contended that even if found to be such, none of the misrepresentations set out above were intended to or did induce Bidco to buy the Autonomy shares and share options they agreed to sell.

3981. The Claimants dismissed this as *"fanciful"*. They submitted that the misrepresentations in issue were fundamental parts of: (i) the initial approach to HP concerning the possible sale of Autonomy; (ii) the Defendants pitching Autonomy to HP directly; and (iii) the Defendants' responses to HP's due diligence requests. That process concluded with HP deciding to offer, and offering, £25.50 per share for Autonomy, including the shares owned by the Defendants. They contended *"non-exhaustively"* that the evidence shows that HP was induced by the representations in the following ways.

3982. The Claimants' case as to the January, February and March Slides is as follows:

[537] Bidco's alternative claims under s.2(1) Misrepresentation Act 1967 do not require proof of the third element – that the false representations were made fraudulently, i.e. without belief in their truth or reckless as to their truth. If the other elements are established, the claims will be made out unless the Defendants prove that they had reasonable grounds to believe, and did believe up to the time they sold their shares and share options to Bidco, that the facts represented were true.

(1) The January Slides, sent as part of Mr Quattrone's initial approach to HP, led to the 3 February 2011 video conference which, with the related February Slides, led in turn to the 4 March 2011 meeting at which the March Slides were presented.

(2) The representations in the February Slides were of "*particular interest*" to Mr Robison and his colleagues in the SCD group. Mr Robison, who was HP's Chief Strategy Officer and Head of SCD, relied on them when considering whether Autonomy would be a suitable fit for HP.

(3) Mr Robison "*relied on*" the March Slides, which gave an "*impressive picture of Autonomy's financial performance and business*". The "*pure software model*" they described was, as Mr Robison explained in his witness statement:

> *"a very attractive model for HP, a predominantly hardware company that was looking to acquire an asset that would enable it to expand in the software market. The fact that Autonomy's business model was focused almost exclusively on software, with only a small amount of services as disclosed in its public filings and presentations to HP, was important to HP and affected the price that HP was ultimately willing to pay, and did pay, for Autonomy."*

(4) The size and growth of IDOL Cloud as described in the March Slides was "*important to HP because of the relative predictability and recurring nature of the revenue stream*".

(5) The presentation of "*strong*" IDOL OEM revenues and revenue growth was also "*important to HP*", indicating "*that other companies valued Autonomy's technology*". HP therefore considered IDOL OEM to be "*a highly profitable, growing revenue stream that was recurring in nature and an indicator of the quality of the technology"*.

(6) The overall "*message conveyed during the March 4 meeting was that Autonomy was a high-growth, pure software company*". The presentation Dr Lynch gave of the March Slides was "*pretty compelling stuff*".

(7) Mr Sarin, who did not attend the 4 March meeting but who reviewed the March Slides shortly thereafter, also thought that the March Slides described "*a very compelling business*", given its apparent scale and growth.

3983. As to the representations made in June and July 2011 the Claimants submitted that:

(1) The representations made at the 29 June 2011 meeting, including in respect of IDOL OEM, led Mr Sarin to conclude that Autonomy was "*a strong business*".

(2) HP also relied on the Defendants' repeated representations that Autonomy was a "*pure software*" business. Had HP known about Autonomy's hardware sales, and their contribution to Autonomy's reported rate of revenue growth, it would have viewed them as a significant negative, which would have affected how much (if anything) HP was willing to pay for Autonomy. Likewise, had

Mr Sarin's team been aware of the hardware sales it would have asked detailed questions for the purpose of valuing Autonomy.

(3) HP relied, as the Defendants told it to rely at the 29 July 2011 meeting, on Autonomy's publicly available financial information, including the H1/Q2 2011 results presented to them directly by Mr Hussain.

(4) Most importantly, HP relied on that information also when building the Deal Model, the bedrock of which was Autonomy's reported historic revenues and costs.

(5) BarCap, acting for HP, also checked the historic revenue numbers in the model against the table provided by Mr Hussain described in paragraph 3895(2) above. Had the table been accurate, there would have been major discrepancies, and the falsity of the published numbers would have been discovered.

3984. As to the representations made during due diligence:

(1) Mr Sarin's evidence was that he and his team relied, in developing the Deal Model, on the information provided in due diligence. That included the comments on the Deal Model provided by Mr Hussain on 4 August 2011. According to Mr Sarin's witness statement:

> *"Confirmation from Autonomy's CFO that the key assumptions and projections in our valuation analysis were consistent with his knowledge of Autonomy's business was very important to us. I recall after that call feeling very comfortable that the projections in the model were reasonable. Of course, I recognized that Mr Hussain would probably be motivated to be upbeat about the projections so as [to] get a good price, and I weighed his feedback to reflect this potential bias, as well as the fact that people's views can differ. Thus, when he said that he thought our 5% year-on-year IDOL Product growth rates were too low and could be doubled to 10%, I took account of his views but did not fully adopt them. Ultimately, however, I believed that as the CFO of a large, publicly-listed company, Mr Hussain would be truthful in his statements to me and the public market."*

(2) Likewise, on 8 August 2011, Mr Johnson told Mr Robison that there were three areas in which HP hoped to "dig deeper" on due diligence: Deloitte's work papers, an open-source code scan, and:

(3) "*One click deeper on financial projections – While they do not have a 3-year plan, they probably have a financial model that they will use with Qatalyst for fairness purposes. <u>Our financial diligence to date has been predominantly Q&A with Sushovan</u>*" (emphasis added). HP never obtained Qatalyst's model, and Mr Hussain's answers on the 4 August 2011 call were what it principally relied on for confidence that its key forecasts and assumptions for Autonomy were in line with Autonomy management's views.

(4) Mr Apotheker and the SCD group in turn focused on the analysis in the Deal Model when considering the value that Autonomy presented to HP, which, in turn, informed the price that HP was willing to pay for it.

(5) It was suggested to Mr Sarin that HP did not rely on what Mr Hussain said in the 4 August 2011 meeting; Mr Sarin strongly disagreed. The Claimants dismissed this suggestion as *"hopeless"* and submitted that the whole purpose of the call was for Mr Hussain, the CFO of Autonomy, to provide HP with guidance on its forecasts and assumptions in the absence of any internal projections by Autonomy (which HP had repeatedly sought). They emphasised their point that there would have been no point in HP asking Mr Hussain to comment on its forecasts and assumptions if HP did not intend to rely on what he said.

3985. More generally, as set out above, the Claimants insisted that most of the representations in issue were responding to specific questions from HP. Thus:

(1) in the case of the March Slides, HP's questions covered topics including Autonomy's historical revenue growth and the size of the OEM and Cloud businesses;

(2) in the case of the 29 June 2011 meeting, HP asked about Autonomy's product categories and historical and projected sales; in the case of the 29 July meeting, HP's detailed questions gave rise to both the representation that it should rely on Autonomy's published information for many answers, and the specific table of revenues by product category complained of; and

(3) in all of the due diligence calls (1 August 2011: overview of Autonomy's financials requested by Mr Sarin; 2 August 2011: HP sent detailed lists of questions; 4 August 2011: Mr Hussain was asked to comment on specific forecasts and assumptions in the Deal Model), Mr Hussain was likewise responding to specific questions.

3986. The Claimants suggested that if, rather than either misrepresenting the truth or staying silent, the Defendants had told the truth, then the discrepancy between that truth, and the claims in Autonomy's published financial information, would have become apparent. In such circumstances, as Mr Apotheker described:[538]

> *"I would have been highly suspicious and demanded answers ... The facts that I have been asked to assume would have raised material and serious questions about the accuracy of Autonomy's public description of its business and its success, and perhaps more importantly, raise[d] significant doubts about the integrity of Autonomy's management, whose names and signatures appeared in descriptions of the business contained in the Annual Report. Matters such as substantial sales of third-party hardware by a software company, round-trip transactions, overstatement of IDOL OEM revenues, inflated revenue growth figures, and other inaccuracies or misstatements would have*

[538] Mr Apotheker was asked in various ways whether he would have been reassured to learn that Deloitte knew some of the underlying facts and had approved the accounts. He made clear that he would still have asked questions. But those questions, as premised, are not relevant here. If the Defendants had told Mr Apotheker that Deloitte was satisfied, that would obviously have amounted to an implied representation that Deloitte was correctly satisfied – and if the alleged fraud took place at all, that implied representation would have been equally false.

> *suggested that Autonomy's management was engaged in a systematic effort to portray Autonomy's business as stronger, better-managed, more vibrant and more successful than was truly the case …*
>
> *If such information had come to my attention prior to announcing the deal, I nevertheless think it possible that I would have given Autonomy and its leadership an opportunity to explain the discrepancies. If, as seems most likely, the explanation I heard was not satisfactory, I have no doubt that I would have recommended to HP's Board that it should abandon the deal, because I would have had no interest in bringing into HP a team that I could not trust and whose judgement I doubted, and a company significantly less relevant to HP's strategy and successful than initially thought. I am confident the Board would have shared my concerns."*

My overall assessment of the due diligence process and its relevance

3987. In summary, in my judgment, the cumulative effect of the Slides and the representations made were to depict Autonomy as having a special selling point as a pure software company with especially valuable and dependable revenue streams (especially from its IDOL Cloud and IDOL OEM) accurately and reliably described and quantified in its published information. Due diligence on a tight timetable was undertaken on that premise, and the answers to the questions raised by HP in the course of the due diligence process reinforced the representations made and further encouraged and induced HP to rely on Autonomy's financial reports and the public statements therein of its business, the sources and nature of its revenue streams, its software revenue growth, and its overall financial position and performance.

3988. HP/Bidco relied on these representations in the round, together with the published information they appeared to refresh and validate, in pursuing a potential bid, negotiating the price and ultimately entering into the Acquisition (including the purchase of the Defendants' respective shares and share options) at the price finally agreed. The suggestion that HP/Bidco did not rely on the representations as well as the published information is incorrect: they were complementary and reliance was placed on both in that all these matters impacted the mind and affected the judgement of HP/Bidco in determining to proceed and eventually conclude the Acquisition, including the purchase of the Defendants' respective shares and share options, at the agreed bid price.

The Non-Disclosure Agreement

3989. Finally, Dr Lynch (but not Mr Hussain, despite a passing mention in his Defence) sought in his RADC to invoke the provisions of the Non-Disclosure Agreement ("the NDA") entered into by HP and Autonomy on 3 March 2011 in an attempt to defeat the Claimants' misrepresentation claims. The plea relied on the effect of the NDA as a matter of Delaware law: but no evidence of Delaware law was provided. Dr Lynch did not mention the NDA in his closing submissions, and I take him to have abandoned the point.

3990. Further, if I am wrong and the point is sought to be maintained, I do not consider that, taking Delaware law to be the same as English law, as I must in default of any

evidence of Delaware law, the NDA would avail Dr Lynch as a defence to a claim for fraud. Dr Lynch cannot rely on a contractual term to exclude his own liability for fraud, as a matter of public policy: *HIH Casualty and General Insurance Ltd and others v Chase Manhattan Bank* [2003] 1 All ER (Comm) 349, *per* Lord Bingham at §16 and Lord Hoffmann at §76.

3991. As to Bidco's claims under s.2(1) Misrepresentation Act 1967, pursuant to s.3 of that Act, contractual terms cannot exclude or restrict liability save insofar as they satisfy the requirement of reasonableness under s.11(1) Unfair Contract Terms Act 1977. That was for Dr Lynch to prove, and he has not even alleged that the terms of the NDA satisfy the statutory requirement. It is in any event doubtful that a contractual term that purports to exclude or restrict liability for fraud can be regarded as reasonable, especially in the circumstances of the present dispute.

3992. Further, and in any event, I agree with HP that the provisions invoked by Dr Lynch have no such effect even on their own terms:

(1) First, Dr Lynch sought to rely on clause 5 of the NDA as estopping Bidco from "*advancing any claim by reference to confidential information defined therein*". As to this:

(a) "*Confidential Information*" was defined in clause 1. The definition excluded, among other things, information that "*prior to or after the time of disclosure becomes part of the public knowledge or literature*", save by the fault of the receiving party.

(b) It was unclear which, if any, of the misrepresentations set out above were being said by Dr Lynch to relate to "*Confidential Information*" within the meaning of the NDA – particularly given his case that the representations in issue "*generally reflected Autonomy's [public] financial statements*". The burden was on Dr Lynch to plead and prove those matters: and he did not do either.

(2) Second, Dr Lynch relied in his pleading on clause 13, which provided:

> *"This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement among the parties hereto and supersedes all other prior agreements and understandings, both written and oral, among or between any of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and thereof. All modifications of, waivers of and amendments to this letter agreement [sic] must be in writing and signed by both parties hereto."*

(3) However,

(a) That is, in terms, an entire-agreement clause, providing that the Non-Disclosure Agreement supersedes "*prior agreements and understandings*". Entire-agreement clauses do not ordinarily exclude liability for (non-negligent) misrepresentations; if that is what is intended, then it must be expressly stated: *Mears Ltd v Shoreline Housing Partnership Ltd* [2013] CP Rep 39 §16.

(b) The clause is only concerned with agreements and understandings "*with respect to the subject matter*" of the NDA– that is to say, the use of Confidential Information. Even if "*understandings*" did mean

"*representations*", the clause would have no effect on representations that did not concern the use of Confidential Information.

(c) Clause 13 defines the agreement "*among the parties hereto*", i.e., HP and Autonomy. Neither Bidco nor Dr Lynch is a party to the Non-Disclosure Agreement, and neither is mentioned in clause 13 (whether directly or by any reference to "*Associates*"). Dr Lynch had no right to enforce clause 13 against Bidco, nor is Bidco bound by it.

(4) In any event, even on Dr Lynch's case, he could only have invoked clause 13 in respect of representations made before the date of the Non-Disclosure Agreement, i.e. 3 March 2011: i.e., those in the January and February Slides.

Conclusion on the claims in deceit and misrepresentation

3993. In my judgment, the Claimants have established their claims in deceit and misrepresentation against each of the Defendants in respect of each of the misrepresentations addressed above.

RELIANCE AND LOSS REVISITED

Ambit of this Chapter

3994. Before turning to the Direct Loss claimed, I return to address in more fact-related detail, and as regards all the various FSMA claims, the issues of "reasonable reliance" and loss. I also address some associated issues in respect of the Deceit and Misrepresentation Claims.

3995. I have dealt in the Introduction with the law applicable in this context as I perceive it. I have also identified the persons within HP/Bidco primarily engaged in the process which ultimately led to the Acquisition (see paragraphs 158 to 178); and I have chronicled (a) how HP came to identify Autonomy as a target (see paragraphs 153 to 157); (b) the development of HP's interest and the preparation and refinement of HP's detailed analysis; (c) the exploratory and then more detailed negotiations about price (see paragraphs 222 to 233); (d) the process of due diligence (see paragraphs 234 to 278); and (e) the negotiations and their final conclusion with agreement on price, the approval and announcement of the bid on 18 August 2011 and the declaration of it becoming unconditional as to acceptances on 3 October 2011 (see paragraphs 279 to 304 and 321).

3996. Further, in paragraphs 3236 to 3247 I have addressed in some detail the question as to whether Autonomy's published information induced a false understanding of Autonomy's OEM business (and concluded that it did, and that HP/Bidco reasonably relied on a depiction of the extent and nature of that business which was false). I have focused especially on the presentation of OEM in Autonomy's published information for a number of reasons. First, in that context (OEM) there was a more pronounced issue in light of the dispute as to the meaning and extent of the OEM metrics voluntarily provided. Secondly, there was especially focused dispute between the parties as to whether any reliance had been placed by HP/Bidco on any particular understanding of what Autonomy's OEM business comprised. Thirdly, it is clear that HP/Bidco regarded the OEM business as (quoting from Mr Apotheker's cross-examination) a *"very, very important part of the business model, and a very smart one"* for which in its DCF analysis (see below) it projected gross margins of 98%: it is clear, and I find, that HP/Bidco placed particular reliance on their understanding derived from Autonomy's published information about the nature of IDOL OEM revenue, its rapid growth (for example, 27% growth was recorded in Autonomy's Q2 2011 Quarterly Report) and its high gross margins on what appeared to be recurring revenue.

3997. However, the matters I referred to in paragraph 3242 in reaching my conclusion that HP/Bidco reasonably relied on the depiction of the nature and scope of OEM's business in proceeding with the Acquisition at the bid price also exemplify the false and misleading exaggeration of key elements of Autonomy's business which led HP/Bidco to conclude that its revenue streams were more reliable and valuable than was in truth the case.

3998. My purpose now is to gather together strands already apparent as regards Autonomy's other business lines, and to confirm and clarify my conclusions as to the fact, extent and reasonableness of HP/Bidco's reliance on Autonomy's published information. This is necessary both for comprehensiveness and so as to enable determination of the related but separate issue of compensable loss in respect of the FSMA claims and the

relevant counterfactual by reference to which to assess it. In doing so, I also consider the interplay between the FSMA claims and the personal claims in deceit and misrepresentation.

Summary of Claimants' case on reasonable reliance

3999. The Claimants submitted that in the context of their FSMA claims, as in the context of deceit, they had established that the Defendants were each responsible for untrue and misleading statements or omissions made dishonestly, and that the "presumption of inducement" applied and had not been rebutted. However, they also described at some length the process leading up to the negotiations which eventually culminated in the agreed bid, the construction of a DCF analysis[539] ("the Deal Model"), the formulation and agreement of a bid price, and the eventual Acquisition.

4000. The Claimants' overall factual case on reliance was that HP/Bidco's decision to proceed with and conclude the Acquisition at the bid price was materially informed and influenced by the untrue and misleading depiction of Autonomy as a *"pure software"* model achieving high margin sales with consistent organic software revenue growth based on the sale of IDOL (what Autonomy regularly referred to as *"IDOL organic growth"*) and an attractive mix of business in the amounts and having the characteristics described in Autonomy's accounts, including "annuity-like" flows of business and profits from rapidly growing OEM business.

4001. According to the Claimants, HP's approach and its Deal Model used to establish standalone and 'with synergies' valuations of Autonomy were falsified by the undisclosed reality that in what the Claimants' valuation expert, Mr Bezant, took to be the 'True Position',[540] Autonomy was (a) a much smaller business (at both revenue and profit levels); (b) not a pure software business but one that had a material and increasing proportion of sales of third-party hardware; (c) growing less rapidly than represented; and (d) based on a less attractive mix of business.

4002. As to the requirement of showing that their reliance was reasonable, the Claimants' position was that:

> *"there is no sensible basis on which it could be argued that it was unreasonable of HP and Bidco to rely on the accuracy of Autonomy's published information."*

Summary of the Defendants' contrary case

4003. The Defendants, in addition to denying reliance on the basis of their *"Bidco point"*, also did not accept that the "presumption of inducement" has any application in the context of a claim under s. 90A/Schedule 10A of FSMA, and submitted further that even where the presumption is applicable the burden lies on the investor (here, HP/Bidco) to identify precisely what misrepresentations they relied on, to establish that but for those misrepresentations they <u>would</u> have acted differently (it being

[539] As described by Mr Apotheker in his witness statement, *"A DCF model estimates the future performance of a business, and assesses the present value of the cashflows that it is expected to generate."*

[540] The 'True Position' represented the position had accurate information been published historically. Mr Bezant recorded in this regard that the basis on which he had been instructed was that, in assessing the FSMA Loss, he was instructed *"to assume that, but for the breaches of duty alleged by the Claimants: (1) Autonomy's published financial information would not have been subject to the false accounting of which the Claimants complain; but (2) the impugned transactions would still have been entered into."*

insufficient to show that they <u>might</u> have acted differently) and that in all the circumstances any such reliance was reasonable.

4004. The Defendants appeared to accept that the misrepresentation need not be the sole inducement, and that it is sufficient in a claim under FSMA to show that the claimant's *"mind was disturbed by the misstatement of the Defendants, and such disturbance was in part the cause of what he did"*; but they emphasised that the misrepresentation must play a *"real and substantial part in inducing the representee to act"* and that it must be shown to have been *"actively present to* [the claimant's] *mind".* In this regard, on the facts, they contended that HP/Bidco (a) had relied on a variety of sources, and especially its own corporate analysts and third party advice from Perella Weinberg (on broad strategy issues) and Barclays Capital ("BarCap"), (on the specifics of the Acquisition) in determining whether to bid for Autonomy and at what price; (b) did not have in mind the published information or the Slides when it made the formal bid, even if those matters had encouraged and influenced its initial approaches; and (c) would have proceeded with the Acquisition on the same terms even in the absence of the alleged fraud, and so could not prove either the relevant degree of reliance or loss.

4005. In the latter context, the Defendants contended that in reality, Mr Apotheker drove the bid forward and his focus was at all times not on the published information or the financial state of Autonomy as there portrayed, but rather on the synergies that could be created by the Acquisition. They relied especially on an email from Mr Apotheker to Mr Lane dated 5 September 2011, in which, in seeking to defend the bid, he emphasised the importance of the envisaged synergies that the combined companies could generate, more than the stand-alone value of Autonomy (and see the footnote to paragraph 201 and paragraph 311).

The issues requiring analysis

4006. It seems to me that, in the light of those competing contentions, the following principal issues require analysis:

(1) What were the principal metrics and factors by reference to which HP/Bidco pitched its bid price and eventually concluded the Acquisition?

(2) More particularly, what were the principal metrics and factors underpinning the Deal Model?

(3) How ultimately did HP/Bidco make its decision at board level?

(4) Does the fact that HP/Bidco took into account the views of analysts and specialist advisers, especially in assessing Autonomy's likely future performance, suggest that it did not rely sufficiently on Autonomy's published information to establish its claims and substantial loss?

(5) Was anyone whose knowledge is to be attributed to HP/Bidco aware, before the Acquisition, of any material matters which falsified the depiction of Autonomy in its published information?

(1) *What were the principal factors and metrics by reference to which HP/Bidco pitched its bid price and eventually concluded the Acquisition?*

4007. With Mr Apotheker (as CEO) the persons primarily charged with the identification of suitable targets to enable HP to realise Mr Apotheker's vision of *"evolve[ing] the Enterprise Business from low-margin products and services to become a full services and solutions partner for businesses, providing the essential/strategic parts of the technology 'stack'[541]"* were the members of the SCD Group and its Corporate Development sub-team particularly aligned with software business.[542] In the case of Autonomy, they were, principally, Mr Apotheker, Mr Robison (head of the SCD Group), Mr Sarin, and (though less engaged because diverted by a serious family illness) Mr Johnson. It was ultimately their assessments, together with the Deal Model and the assessments of HP/Bidco's advisers (Perella Weinberg and BarCap) that went to the Board of HP and informed the final decision.

Mr Apotheker

4008. Mr Apotheker accepted that the only financial report he personally read relating to Autonomy was its 2010 Annual Report and Accounts. He did not read anything earlier, nor the Q1 or Q2 2011 Quarterly Reports. But he told me, and I accept and find, that he read the 2010 Report and Accounts *"very carefully"*. As well as the formal status, Responsibility Statement and the fact that the accounts were audited by Deloitte, Mr Apotheker's evidence (which I accept) was that he noted in particular that the Annual Report stated that:

(1) Autonomy's revenues in 2010 were $870 million, and that this was an increase of 18% from 2009;

(2) IDOL organic growth (revenue growth not attributable to acquisitions) was 17%;

(3) Autonomy's IDOL OEM business generated $132 million in 2010, up 32% from 2009; and

(4) IDOL Cloud growth was *"strong"*, with 2010 Cloud revenues of $190 million.

4009. Mr Apotheker noticed also that the Annual Report referred in various places to Autonomy as being a rare example of a *"pure software model"*. Subject to the caveat that he accepted in cross-examination (as I have noted in paragraph 1626(1) above) that he took this to mean also that Autonomy *"was in the business of providing excellent software with as little services as possible"*, his evidence was that he *"understood this to mean that Autonomy made virtually all of its revenues and profits from the development, use, marketing and sales of software"* and that this was very important to him.

4010. In my judgment, the more general impressions he formed, on the basis of his reading, that Autonomy appeared to be "*a very successful, high-growth, high margin"* enterprise encouraged his interest in pursuing negotiations, and encouraged him also to anticipate having to pay a significant premium over its then share trading price, which he took into account during the negotiations which followed, but such generalised impressions were not such as Mr Apotheker did rely or could reasonably have relied

[541] See paragraph 144 above as to what this meant and comprised.
[542] See footnote 24 in paragraph 141 above.

on without much more detailed analysis and support. However, I am satisfied, and find, that the untrue representation that Autonomy was a *"pure software model"* generating substantially all its revenue and growth from high margin software sales, and the concealment accordingly of the substantial pure hardware sales undertaken to disguise shortfalls in software revenues and the true performance of Autonomy's software business, impacted on his mind and informed his judgement (and that of the SCD Group) at every stage of the process, including the final decision to make a bid at the price eventually agreed, and ultimately to conclude the Acquisition.

4011. Further, Mr Apotheker and the SCD Group also placed reliance on the fact that the 2010 Annual Report (as in fact did subsequent Reports) (a) segmented Autonomy's revenues into five categories of (i) IDOL Product, (ii) IDOL Cloud, (iii) IDOL OEM, (iv) Deferred Revenue Release (broadly signifying maintenance) and (v) Services, (b) did not suggest that there was any other revenue category and (c) stated that Services accounted for only about 5% of total revenues. That apparently exclusive description of the sources of Autonomy's revenues made no mention of sales of third-party hardware. Mr Apotheker took all of this to be consistent with and confirmatory of Autonomy's representation as a *"pure software model"*, with the exception he noted of a small amount of "appliance" sales, which was presented and he read as a sensible strategy, being (as he understood it) confined to sales of hardware with Autonomy software preloaded into it, and thus to what he called *"a delivery channel for software sales"* generating (as the Annual Report expressly stated) a *"margin profile…not widely dissimilar to our traditional licence business."*

4012. In the mind of Mr Apotheker (as also in the minds of others in the SCD group, see below) that (false) depiction of Autonomy as a company deriving substantially all its revenues and meeting its forecasts from software sales in the apparently exclusive five categories of revenues listed in paragraph 4011 above was an important distinguishing characteristic of Autonomy; and it provided a litmus test of the success of its signature product (IDOL). That depiction was an important factor in assessing Autonomy and in the construction of the Deal Model (especially in projecting likely revenue forward) and reliance on it was, in my judgment, plainly reasonable.

4013. Mr Apotheker also focused on, and was especially attracted by, Autonomy's Cloud business, which was presented as largely comprised of delivery of IDOL on a 'Software-as-a-Service' (SaaS) model. As this business line was represented, he considered it would be of particular value in meeting HP's *"specific need to develop and grow its cloud business"*, as well as providing immediately, and apparently into the future, a source of recurring revenue, complementing Autonomy's fast growing IDOL OEM business (which was especially attractive for all the reasons previously explained). As with the representation of Autonomy as a *"pure software model"*, these were characteristics and qualities of Autonomy's business as depicted which I have been persuaded impacted on his mind and influenced his judgement, and that of the SCD Group, throughout the process, including the eventual Acquisition.

4014. However, Mr Apotheker made clear, both in his witness statement and when cross-examined, that HP obviously did not rely simply on his reading of the 2010 Annual Report, and more generally, would not have made a formal bid or proceeded with the Acquisition without having undertaken a full and careful financial analysis of its own, nor without a process of due diligence. The centrepiece of HP's assessment was its DCF analysis and Deal Model.

4015. The following evidence in Mr Apotheker's witness statement was not substantially or effectively challenged:

> *"When considering the value that Autonomy actually presented to HP, however, the SCD Group and I focused on HP's DCF analysis. That analysis, based on Autonomy's public financial statements, analyst reports, etc., sought to estimate Autonomy's standalone value by estimating the cash it could produce in the future, and also to take account of the synergies we hoped that HP could achieve from the deal. In considering a price that would be appropriate to pay for Autonomy and to recommend to the HP Board, I focused on ensuring that the price paid by HP was justified by the value we believed it would receive (including Autonomy's cash), that HP would pay as little as possible above Autonomy's share price, and on retaining for HP's shareholders as much as possible of the value of the synergies that we hoped to achieve from the transaction. I also recognized that Dr. Lynch would seek to obtain as much value as possible for his shareholders."*

4016. As to the suggestion that Mr Apotheker and HP had in reality proceeded on the basis of the synergies and *"transformational opportunity"* to be realised by the Acquisition, rather than on the basis of Autonomy's stand-alone value, I accept the explanation and answers provided by Mr Apotheker himself in his second witness statement and then in the course of his cross-examination as to the relative importance of stand-alone value and prospective synergy values:

(1) As he explained in cross-examination:

> *"there is a sequence here that is very important. It had to be a sound asset… The acquisition was based on the intrinsic value, stand-alone value of Autonomy plus the synergies…the actual value of the company was the foundation"*.

(2) When asked to confirm that nevertheless he was *"looking at the time at the long-term benefits of owning Autonomy"*, he said:

> *"A. Well, I'm looking at two things essentially to form an idea. I'm first of all looking at the present value of Autonomy as a stand-alone business, because that's where you start, that's what you pay for essentially. Anything else, the synergies, if you take an objective look, objective view of this, clearly the risk on the synergies is on the HP shareholders, not on the Autonomy shareholders. So when you negotiate these things you want to be in a position where it's the HP shareholders who get the maximum benefit out of these synergies, so the price point has to take that into account."*[543]

(3) This corresponded with his evidence in his second witness statement:

> *"in evaluating whether a software company's product is effective and successful, it is essential also to evaluate its financial performance, because that performance reflects whether customers who use the technology perceive*

[543] On HP's analysis, at the price it paid for Autonomy, it retained 90% of the synergy value that it hoped to create through the Acquisition, and yielded 10% to Autonomy's shareholders, which Mr Apotheker thought *"a fair compromise"*.

> *it as valuable and worth the associated costs. The fact that Autonomy's reported financial results gave the impression that it had achieved significant and fast-growing shares of the markets in which it operated was an important part of our assessment that its technology would be valuable to those markets in the future. It would have made no sense to look only at the technology without also putting significant focus on Autonomy's financial information."*

4017. When cross-examined, Mr Apotheker reiterated the importance of the underlying finances of a target company, and just as much so where the proposed acquisition was a *"strategic"* one with anticipated synergies: as he put it, *"the actual value of the company was the foundation."* It was put to him that (a) he *"[wasn't] particularly interested in the metrics* [because he was really] *interested in buying a transformative business"* ; (b) he *"never looked in any detail at the DCF valuation produced by HP…"*; and (c) what really prompted him was that Autonomy offered *"essentially a unique opportunity"* hinging on the synergies anticipated. His answers in summary were:

(1) He wanted a transformative business; but *"good financials"* were essential:

> *"I wanted both…I wanted to buy a good company with good financials and for me the financials were actually a proof point of the success of the business."*

(2) He did not study the spreadsheet nor did he look at every number, but he was adamant that he looked at the DCF valuations in detail, and *"of course"* he considered the assumptions used to satisfy himself of their reliability.

(3) Although he accepted both that Autonomy was unique in offering IDOL and the route into the unstructured data space and that the anticipated synergies were also very important in differentiating Autonomy and justifying a substantial premium on the then market price of its shares, he insisted that the underlying financial position of the company as it appeared in its Reports was the bedrock, as was apparent from the following exchanges:

> *"Q. What you say is that you presented to the board your business case hinging more on the synergies than on the stand-alone capabilities and that's what actually happened, isn't it?*
>
> *…*
>
> *A. It is impossible to achieve the synergies without the actual company and therefore one needs to pay for the company and then add to it the synergies. The price of the company was determined by the actual value of the business and some of the synergies. We came to the conclusion in the conversation of this trial that it was about 10/11% of the synergies. That's how the maths works.*
>
> *Q. You never did that maths, the board never said, "I'll tell you what, you can go up to 10% of the synergies", that's just where you ended up, isn't it?*
>
> *A. But the board had all the information. These are smart people, they can do a simple arithmetic calculation.*

Q. The truth is that what this deal was driven by was your vision about the synergies that HP could make out of acquiring the software, wasn't it?

A. But it is clear that HP wasn't going to buy the company and not integrate it and therefore not extract synergies. The whole idea of this deal was to extract these synergies. That is absolutely right and that's the only reason that they really wanted to do any acquisition, be it Software AG or any other company. So in this case as well, the real reason of course that any company would want to acquire another company, we are not - as we said yesterday, we are not a private equity investor or a stand-alone investor, this is an industrial IT company who wants to buy a company in order to extract the value and the synergies out of it, obviously. But the price calculation and therefore what it is that you end up paying for this business is based on the value of the business first of all." [My emphasis]

4018. Mr Apotheker was unequivocal in his evidence in his witness statement not only that he had no knowledge or awareness prior to the Acquisition of third party hardware sales except appliances sold as *"a delivery channel for software sales"*, but also that he had no knowledge or awareness of *"the round-trip transactions that created the false appearance of revenue and profit"*; or that *"Autonomy converted a significant portion of its Cloud revenue into license revenues…enhancing current reported revenue and reported revenue growth and reducing the long-term value of this part of the business"*; or that *"Autonomy greatly overstated the amount of its IDOL OEM revenues, and revenue growth"*; or (though he did *"of course"* understand the widespread use of resellers by software companies) that in this case, VARs were being *"used to enable Autonomy to recognize revenue or to accelerate the recognition of revenue in a manner inconsistent with relevant standards."* These matters resulted in a difference between what was reported and what properly should have been recorded of some $145 million: a roughly 17% reduction. He considered that these inaccuracies and misstatements suggested to him *"a systematic effort to portray Autonomy's business as stronger, better-managed, more vibrant and more successful than was truly the case"* and he found it *"hard for me to conceive of an innocent explanation for the fact that no such information was apparent from my careful study of the Annual Report."* The discrepancy between the represented position and what was *"truly the case"* was plainly such as in his view to alter materially and substantially the attractions and value of Autonomy to HP.

4019. I accept Mr Apotheker's evidence as above summarised.

Mr Robison

4020. Although in places over-lawyered, and also untested since he did not attend at Trial (see paragraph 166 above), Mr Robison's witness statement appeared to me to be credible and convincing as regards:

(1) his specific consideration of both Autonomy's IDOL OEM revenues (which he understood to be derived from sales *"when Autonomy software was embedded in other companies' products"* and which he especially identified as *"important to HP"* because their stated growth *"was an*

indicator that other companies valued Autonomy's technology") and its IDOL Cloud revenues as reported in Autonomy's published information and confirmed in the Slides (showing nearly 20% growth year-on-year and representing some 22% of total revenue recognised), and the perception encouraged that these were particularly attractive and high-margin sources of recurring revenue;

(2) his perception that the emphasis in both Autonomy's published information and in its management's repeated presentations that Autonomy was a *"pure software model/company"* with *"a compelling software product in IDOL"* demonstrated that its reported revenue growth was based almost exclusively on high-margin software sales (with a very small amount of appliance sales which were also high-margin); and that this powerfully endorsed the market success of Autonomy's software and its signature product, IDOL;

(3) his perception also that Autonomy's pure software model (as it was represented to be) was highly complementary to HP's plan to develop its business in high-growth, high-margin software markets and not in lower-margin hardware sales (HP already being one of the world's largest hardware manufacturers);

(4) his focus on the particular attraction and value of Autonomy's IDOL OEM business as represented in Autonomy's published information and purportedly confirmed in other presentations;

(5) his emphasis on the importance of the historic performance as presented in Autonomy's published information in assembling the DCF/Deal Model and in particular in forecasting future cashflows and growth, and his confirmation that both would have been markedly lower but for the material overstatement and false depictions of Autonomy's historic revenue streams; and

(6) the continuation of his understanding of and reliance on those matters up to and including the Acquisition.

4021. In my judgment, that evidence further supports the Claimants' case that Autonomy's published information, and in particular the statements of its revenues and their growth and its assertions that Autonomy was a *"pure software company",* continued to have an impact on the mind and influence on the judgement of those within HP involved in the analysis of the merits of the proposed Acquisition and its eventual conclusion.

Mr Sarin

4022. As previously explained, Mr Sarin was a key member of the Corporate Development sub-team of the SCD Group, and reported to Mr Johnson (HP's Head of Corporate Development, who in turn reported to Mr Robison who reported to Mr Apotheker). He and his team had line responsibility both for the preparation of HP's Deal Model and (with KPMG) for the due diligence undertaken by HP. In the process leading up to the Acquisition, Mr Johnson relied unusually heavily on Mr Sarin especially in relation to the due diligence exercise since he himself was having to deal with serious illness in his close family and (as he told the US court in the criminal proceedings there) he was unable to travel.

4023. Mr Sarin stated in his witness statement that:

> *"We were heavily reliant on Autonomy's published information and on analysts' projections for Autonomy, which were, in turn, reliant on Autonomy's published information."*

4024. It was common ground that Mr Sarin carefully read Autonomy's 2010 Annual Report and its Q1 and Q2 2011 Quarterly Reports (but not the 2009 Annual Report nor the 2009 Quarterly Reports). He also appears to have read some (unspecified parts) of the 2010 Quarterly Reports, and the transcripts of the Q1 and Q2 2011 Earnings Calls.

4025. Amongst the matters which according to his evidence (which I accept in this regard) Mr Sarin derived from those reports and documents were:

(1) The accounting information, and in particular, Autonomy's historic revenue figures split amongst the five categories (see paragraph [] above) which (as I elaborate later) were fed into and provided the bedrock of the Deal Model;

(2) The statements and explanations in the 2010 Annual Report as to Autonomy's strategy, products and the size and performance of its five revenue streams;

(3) The statements in the Q1 2011 Quarterly Report, in particular those indicating that (a) all of Autonomy's product lines were achieving double-digit growth, (b) organic growth of Autonomy's IDOL Product and IDOL Cloud businesses purportedly at an annual rate of 17%, (c) 28% annual growth in Autonomy's OEM business, and (d) gross margins (which in its 2010 Annual Report Autonomy identified as a *"key performance measure"* and an *"[i]ndicator of success of the company's business model"*)[544] of 88% and operating margins of 43%;

(4) The results reported in Autonomy's Q2 2011 Report, in particular showing (a) consistency with Autonomy's previously-reported financial performance, (b) consistency with HP's own estimates (reported revenues of $256.3 million compared to HP's estimate of $245.7 million), (c) continuing strong organic growth of IDOL business year on year in H1 2011, with represented organic growth figures for H1 2011 in IDOL OEM, IDOL Cloud and IDOL Product of 27%, 17% and 13% respectively leading to the summary that (d) *"Cloud and OEM, both recurring models, account for 62% of IDOL software sales, reaching an inflection point"* (all such figures in fact being materially false for all the reasons addressed in this judgment)[545].

---

[544] Autonomy reported gross margin on an *"adjusted basis"* which excluded certain specific, non-recurring and non-cash charges, thereby enabling investors, and Autonomy management, to assess the performance of Autonomy's operations.

[545] The 'True Position' (being the financial position which would have been presented to the market on the assumptions which the Claimants' valuation expert, Mr Bezant, was instructed to make and in effect were intended to enable the correction of the false accounting and descriptions of Autonomy's business as alleged by the Claimants), will be re-examined and tested as part of my quantum judgment: but, according to Mr Bezant's analysis, *"In the True Position, Autonomy's historical revenue growth over the period 2009 to H1 2011 was less than half that in the Represented Position"* with true organic growth even worse, and a materially less attractive product mix (with True IDOL Cloud effectively flat from Q2 2009 through Q1 2011, but with an

4026. Mr Sarin made clear that neither he nor (so far as he was aware anyone else at) HP was aware pre-Acquisition that Autonomy was improperly accelerating hosting revenues and profit and including non-recurring revenue in IDOL Cloud and IDOL OEM. This was not substantively or successfully challenged in cross-examination. He was likewise adamant that he was not aware that a significant part of Autonomy's reported revenues in the period before the Acquisition resulted from the sale of hardware that included no Autonomy software; and he added that he *"would certainly have expected any such hardware resales to be described"* when, in the course of the due diligence exercise and in order *"to better understand each of Autonomy's existing and foreseeable revenue streams"*, he asked Autonomy's management to describe all of the products sold by Autonomy and *"major product categories and new products under development"*.

4027. Mr Sarin's evidence was for the most part supported by contemporaneous evidence. His cross-examination focused on an attempt to get him to accept that HP's forecasts of Autonomy's financial results had little to do with its reported financial results, and that HP did not rely on those results, or on what it was told in the process of due diligence. Mr Sarin rejected this and I consider that this attempt failed. I accept his evidence in his witness statement quoted above as to their reliance on Autonomy's published information and on analysts' projections for Autonomy *"which were, in turn, reliant on Autonomy's published information."*

Mr Johnson

4028. Mr Johnson, to whom Mr Sarin reported, was principally engaged in planning and overseeing the process of due diligence. Although not a member, he also attended (with Mr Apotheker, Ms Lesjak and Mr Robison) some meetings of HP's Finance and Investment Committee of HP's Board (including those on 25 May 2011 and 18 August 2011), which was also involved in the continued financial assessment of potential acquisitions. However, and as previously mentioned, because of a family illness he arranged for Mr Sarin to take a larger role in that. Mr Johnson did not provide a witness statement in these proceedings; but he did give evidence in the US criminal trial against Mr Hussain, which was admitted into these proceedings by a hearsay notice on behalf of the Claimants.

4029. Mr Johnson's evidence in the US criminal proceedings very largely related to the process of due diligence, the public announcement of the bid, and the post-Acquisition denouement and especially a dispute as to whether Mr Johnson had told Ms Lesjak that more than $5 billion of the eventual write-down was attributable to accounting improprieties. When asked in re-examination in those proceedings whether he had relied on Autonomy's financial statements, he answered *"very much so."* But he was not invited to condescend to more detail and did not do so.

4030. Mr Johnson confirmed, however, that the warranties as to the truth and accuracy of Autonomy's financial reports given by the Defendants to Bidco when irrevocably undertaking to assent their respective shares in Autonomy into HP/Bidco's offer had further encouraged and resulted in such reliance on Autonomy's public statements as to its financial position.

---

uptick in Q2 2011) and True IDOL OEM revenues having in truth diminished over the Relevant Period, so as to represent only 2.5% of 'True software revenues' in the final twelve months.

4031. As I elaborate later, the decisions at board level were predominantly based on the reports made by Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison, the reports of the SCD and of the Finance and Investment Committee, and the Deal Model (as to which see below), as well as the perceived absence of any "red flags".

4032. In my judgment, the statements and figures in the published information identified above undoubtedly influenced, through Mr Apotheker, Mr Robison, Mr Johnson and Mr Sarin not only HP's initial approach, but also its Board's decision to proceed with a bid for Autonomy in preference to any other, and more particularly, in preference to a bid it had contemplated for another software company, Software AG (code-named "Singapore" within HP). Most important of all, however, was that the historical revenue figures underpinned the DCF analysis and Deal Model, to which I next turn.

(2) *The Deal Model and its bases*

4033. There is no real doubt, and I also find, that HP's Deal Model that produced HP's standalone valuation of Autonomy, which was revised and updated throughout the acquisition process, was predominantly based on Autonomy's published information.

4034. That is so notwithstanding the Defendants' energetically pursued point that Mr Apotheker only read the 2010 Annual Report, and Mr Sarin read the 2010 Annual Report and the Q1 and Q2 2011 Quarterly Reports but not the 2008 or 2009 Annual Reports, nor the Q1 and Q2 2009 Quarterly Reports. The main 2009 results were reproduced in the 2010 Annual Report, and the main Q1 and Q2 2010 results were reproduced in the Q1 and Q2 2011 Quarterly Reports; and in any event, the fact remains that (subject to caveats mentioned by Mr Sarin and addressed below) the historical results in the Deal Model were taken from the published information.

4035. It is apparent from the various iterations of the Deal Model, and Mr Sarin's evidence was, that he and his team used the historic revenue and costs figures for 2008, 2009, 2010 and the first half of 2011 in Autonomy's published information in constructing their DCF analysis and Deal Model. Even in exercising judgements about other inputs, including assumptions underpinning future revenue growth and margins, those historic revenue and costs continued to provide the bedrock. Mr Sarin's evidence in his witness statement, which I accept in this respect, unequivocally supported this. Thus:

(1) The Deal Model was based on a DCF analysis, using an analysis of the historic performance of the target to estimate its future performance and the present value of the cashflows that it could be expected to generate as the means of establishing standalone value (that is, value of the target in its own right without regard to potential synergies to be obtained from the combination of businesses and resources pursuant to the acquisition). That analysis was necessarily based on historic figures provided by Autonomy in published information.

(2) The DCF analysis set out within the Deal Model focused on (a) *"Rev Buildup"*, which set out historical and forecast revenues and gross profits; (b) *"Target IS"*, which set out historical and forecast operating costs, profits and cash flows; and (c) *"Stdaln DCF"* which set out the calculation of the net present value ("NPV") of forecast cash flows during the explicit forecast period of H2 2011 to 2021, and the terminal value of Autonomy (being the

value of Autonomy into perpetuity as at the end of a forecast period of ten years, assuming continuation forever having reached a steady state).

(3) The calculations set out in the *"Rev Buildup"* tab of the Deal Model were based on HP's analysis and forecasts of future revenues in five revenue categories, being (a) *"IDOL Product Licence"*, corresponding to the IDOL Product revenue category in Autonomy's financial reports; (b) *"IDOL Cloud"*, corresponding to the IDOL Cloud revenue category in Autonomy's financial reports; (c) *"OEM"*, corresponding to the IDOL OEM revenue category in Autonomy's financial reports; (d) *"Maintenance"*, corresponding to the Deferred Revenue Release revenue category in Autonomy's financial reports (which was said to stem *"principally from support and maintenance contracts recognized in arrears"*); and (e) *"Services"*, corresponding to the Services revenue category in Autonomy's financial reports.

(4) The *"Rev Buildup"* tab set out historical revenues between 2008 and H1 2011 adjacent to HP's projections of Autonomy's future revenues over the explicit forecast period (H2 2011 to 2021). Mr Sarin explained in his witness statement that *"the historic revenue and costs were derived from Autonomy's annual audited accounts, its quarterly reports, and quarterly earnings calls that Autonomy had with analysts."* He added that *"we considered, and relied on, Autonomy's historic revenue figures for 2008, 2009, 2010 and the first half of 2011, as Autonomy had provided them to the market."*

(5) I accept that evidence, though with two caveats that Mr Sarin accepted in cross-examination. One caveat was that Autonomy did not report IDOL Cloud separately until Q4 2009, but rather provided one combined figure for what was later split into IDOL Product and IDOL Cloud, so the split between Product and Cloud revenues applied in the Deal Model for 2008 and 2009 reflected estimates provided by Goldman Sachs. The second caveat was that the historic revenue figures could only provide a starting point and future growth could not simply be extrapolated from past growth[546], though Mr Sarin also made clear that *"Where we used our own projections (in particular for later years), we paid particular regard to Autonomy's publicly reported organic growth to date…"*

(6) Mr Sarin's evidence, which I also accept, was that while HP obviously did not unthinkingly "carry forward" prior years' growth, historical revenue growth, and particularly historical organic growth, played a central part in HP's forecasts for the period through 2021: it was put to Mr Sarin in cross-examination, and he was asked to agree, that HP did not base its 2014-2021 revenue growth forecasts on historical organic growth rates up to 2011, and had in reality relied more on market growth projections than on Autonomy's reported results; but he did not agree and reiterated that whilst the projection of growth rates naturally took account of various sources and market projections, it remained *"based on what was prior growth and prior revenue."* He emphasised: *"Where we used our own projections (in particular*

[546] Mr Sarin explained in cross-examination that he thought a simple extrapolation would be inaccurate because *"…given a business like Autonomy with various revenue segments, there are different growth rates, different capital investment assumptions, all of that factors into a much more thoughtful free cash flow number than just trying to take history and grow it at a certain rate."*

for later years), we paid particular regard to Autonomy's publicly reported organic growth to date…" When asked in re-examination whether reported historic revenues had any effect on the DCF analysis, he answered:

> *"They do…the model is very sensitive to margins, growth rates and a whole host of other factors. If the reported numbers are different or historic numbers are different, then the model would be very different."*

(7) Similarly, the three categories of operating expenses (research and development, sales and marketing, and general administrative costs) which were also reflected in the Deal Model to build up a projection of gross margins were also grounded in the historical reported numbers. The three categories were projected as a percentage of revenue, based on their reported historical relationships, though for the purpose of the Deal Model HP held the relevant percentages constant from 2013 to the end of the forecast period because (as Mr Sarin explained) that was a conservative assumption to make given the significant revenue growth projected. Forecast costs were then deducted from the forecast revenues to produce forecast operating profits.

(8) In turn, and demonstrating once again the continuing bedrock influence of Autonomy's published historical figures, (a) HP's forecast of free cash flows through 2021 in the *"Target IS"* tab of the Deal Model was based on adjustments to those forecast operating profits to account for taxes, capital expenditures and working capital needs[547] and (b) the calculation of standalone value was based on the sum of (i) the free cash flow forecast through 2021, and (ii) the *"terminal value"* of Autonomy, that is to say, the value of its free cash flows after 2021 calculated on the assumption that the free cash flows projected for 2021 would grow at a *"terminal growth rate"* for which HP's central estimate was 4% *per annum.*

(9) Then, to establish enterprise value[548], each of the above components was discounted to present value by reference to HP's estimate of Autonomy's weighted average cost of capital ("WACC"), which was 10%. This resulted in an estimate of Autonomy's enterprise value of some $9.5 billion. Adding Autonomy's net cash reserve of $705 million produced an equity value of $10.207 billion.

---

547 As Mr Bezant explained in his expert's report, HP calculated future free cash flows as it forecasts:
(1) Operating profits (as above derived), plus
(2) Amortisation expenses (assumed to be nil from 2011 onwards), less
(3) Tax (assumed at a rate of 28%), plus
(4) Depreciation (calculated as the product of forecast revenues and its expectations of depreciation as a percentage of total revenue), less
(5) Increase in working capital (calculated as trade receivables less trade payables informed by their historical values) plus
(6) Increase in deferred revenue (on assumptions informed by the historical relationship between deferred revenue and revenues in 2008, 2009 and 2010) less
(7) Capital expenditures (calculated as a percentage of forecast revenues).

548 *"Enterprise value"* represents the standalone value of Autonomy as calculated in accordance with the discounted cash flow analysis in the Deal Model; Mr Sarin explained in his witness statement that *"Enterprise value ignores cash and debt, and adjusting for these items produces the equity value of Autonomy. The focus of our valuation exercise was on enterprise value."*

(10) The Deal Model then also included an estimate of the synergies that HP hoped to realise by combining its resources with those of Autonomy, which (after deducting certain "dis-synergies" in respect of the likely discontinuance of some of Autonomy's OEM relationships where the OEM was a competitor with HP), amounted to $7.6 billion, leading to a combined standalone and synergistic value of $17.1 billion. Mr Sarin explained that the quantification of likely synergies was a rather different exercise, which relied principally on a *"thorough understanding of HP's own business"* and was undertaken principally by Ms Breya and Mr Levadoux (leaving Mr Sarin and his team to focus on constructing the financial model). Mr Sarin explained, and I accept and find, that *"Standalone value is given more weight in pricing decisions than any estimated synergy value because standalone value is based on an existing performance history"*; once more underlining the importance and impact of the historic figures derived from Autonomy's published information.

4036. In short, although (inevitably) HP had regard to other sources of information and other analyses in building the Deal Model, the fundamental importance and influence in the building of the Deal Model of the historical figures in Autonomy's published information is obvious. For the avoidance of any doubt, it was in my judgment clearly established.

(3) *How ultimately did HP's Board make its decision?*

4037. The Deal Model could not and did not dictate the price: that was inevitably the product of negotiation and then consideration and approval (or not) by HP's Board. However, the Deal Model did provide, in effect, the lower and upper boundaries of a suitable bid price, in the form (respectively) of its figures for the standalone value of Autonomy and the valuation incorporating synergies. It was ultimately common ground, and in any event it seems to me to be clear, that the standalone value generally formed a lower bound to the price, above which the buyer will seek to pay over as little as possible of what it might obtain from potential synergies. A bid price within that range then had to be fixed by reference (principally) to (a) the standalone value (b) Autonomy's then current share price and (c) what premium HP was persuaded would be necessary (and thus what proportion of the synergy value which HP hoped would result would have to be surrendered to Autonomy's shareholders) to achieve the objective of an agreed bid.

4038. The Deal Model was not, of course, the only analysis put before the HP Board. Before finally agreeing the bid price and approving the Acquisition, HP's board was also presented with what the SCD Group called the *"IRB Shell"* in the form of a deck of slides and information built up over the course of the bid process. An important function of the *IRB Shell* was to show and explain the SCD's working valuation of the target. Mr Sarin explained that the *"...purpose of the IRB Shell was to deliver all the key information in relation to an acquisition to HP's senior executives and the relevant Board committees in a format that was familiar to, and could easily be followed by, those executives and committees."* Perella Weinberg and BarCap supplemented this with presentations of their own (including valuation analyses).

4039. The *IRB Shell* produced to HP's Board on 5 August 2011 incorporated a valuation section that included most of the key types of analysis that would typically inform a

board's deliberations in determining whether to proceed with a large acquisition, most importantly, DCF valuations on both standalone and synergistic bases, but also trading and transaction multiples, together with analyses of earnings accretion/dilution and a range of potential bid premia. In this case, the deck included a chart summarising the key analyses graphically in a format referred to as a *"football field"* chart.

4040. In parallel with the continuing process of due diligence in the following two weeks after 5 August 2011, HP's board and relevant committees continued detailed assessment of the proposed deal. The Deal Model continued to be fine-tuned. Negotiations also continued to agree finally the bid price, taking into account a more than 10% decline in Autonomy's share price since the original range (of £24.94 to £26.94 per share) had been agreed between Dr Lynch and Mr Apotheker and Mr Robison in Deauville on 28 July 2011. The bid price of £25.50 per share (which was thus further toward the bottom of the range agreed at Deauville) was finally agreed (subject to Board approval by both HP and Autonomy) on 15 August 2011. That was then considered by the SCD, Perella Weinberg and BarCap, and then also the Finance and Investment Committee, and the matter then went forward to the Board of HP with their recommendations and supporting material.

4041. When the question whether finally to approve the Acquisition at the bid price agreed came before HP's board for the final time on 18 August 2011, the deck and the presentations by the SCD and by Perella Weinberg and BarCap also included investment appraisal metrics, by way in effect of cross-checking the DCF-based valuations, and comprising:

(1) historical bid premia: the range of premia over the share price paid in comparable transactions can be used both to sense-check a proposed bid and to gauge the likelihood that it will be accepted by shareholders. These were provided by Perella Weinberg and BarCap;

(2) internal rate of return ("IRR"): the discount rate that, when applied to forecast cash flows, results in a net present value of zero. This can be compared to a predetermined "hurdle rate" that defines the minimum rate of return required by the investor. BarCap calculated the internal rate of return implied by SCD's DCF estimate of total synergistic value at the offer price; and

(3) earnings accretion/dilution: analysis of whether, and when, a proposed transaction will increase the return to shareholders of the acquiring company. Such analysis was provided by SCD, Perella Weinberg and BarCap.

4042. Perella Weinberg and BarCap's presentations included materially similar standalone DCF valuations to those presented by SCD, both of which were based on HP's forecasts.

4043. All the various presentations and the *"football fields"* showed that HP's board considered and approved the bid price by reference to (a) a standalone valuation of Autonomy and (b) a valuation including both standalone value and synergies. All the assessments were underpinned by the historical figures and metrics in Autonomy's published information. The bid price was at a premium to the standalone valuation, but significantly less than the valuation combining standalone value and synergy value: the bid price did not require HP to cede more than about 10% of its anticipated synergy benefits, which the Board was satisfied was reasonable, and by reference to analyses of historical acquisition premia paid for UK listed technology companies was

so. The Board unanimously resolved to authorise HP to proceed with the transaction, and the bid proceeded through its subsidiary, Bidco.

(4) *What is the relevance of HP/Bidco's reliance on other sources of information and advice?*

4044. It will already be apparent and it was not in dispute that HP/Bidco took into account the views of analysts and specialist advisers, especially in assessing Autonomy's likely future performance (including, for example and as already noted above, relying on Goldman Sachs estimates in splitting annual IDOL Product and IDOL Cloud revenue figures for 2008 and 2009 which Autonomy had not provided).

4045. Also, HP used other valuation techniques, including trading and transactions multiples analyses, historical bid premia comparisons, calculations of Internal Rate of Return and earnings accretion/dilution analyses produced by BarCap and Perella Weinberg, as well as Perella Weinberg and BarCap's own materially similar standalone valuations, to inform its deliberations.

4046. It seems to me unlikely that in any large transaction of this nature a bidder would proceed exclusively by reference to the target's published information even if tested by rigorous due diligence.

4047. However, in my judgment, none of this undermines my conclusion that the foundation of HP's assessment and ultimate decision was the description of historical revenue performance, organic software revenue growth, gross margins and the description of its business and five revenue streams put forward in Autonomy's published information and providing the bedrock for the Deal Model.

4048. Autonomy's published information also, of course, influenced the market, the share price, the anticipation of a bid premium and the expectations of shareholders in gauging the sufficiency of any bid offer price. That in turn had to be taken into account by HP in determining what bid price to agree and offer; and as already mentioned, one of HP's cross-checks was an analysis of bid premia in similar acquisitions. However, in my judgment, that does not militate against HP/Bidco having relied on the published information: on the contrary, it is a further manifestation of the fact that Autonomy's published information inevitably informed not only its analysis but its eventual decision.

(5) *Was HP/Bidco actually aware of any matters falsifying the published information?*

4049. I have concluded in earlier parts of this judgment that no one involved in due diligence on the part of HP, or in the negotiation and ultimately approval of the bid and Acquisition, whose knowledge would be attributed to HP/Bidco, was aware, before the Acquisition, of any material matters which falsified the depiction of Autonomy in its published information.

4050. As also previously explained, a defendant found guilty of deceit cannot establish a defence based on contributory negligence or the principle of *"caveat emptor"* (and see paragraph 519 above).

Conclusion on reliance (FSMA Claims)

4051. I am entirely satisfied that the Claimants have established reliance on Autonomy's published information and that such reliance was reasonable.

4052. If, as I consider to be the case, the presumption of inducement applies, it has not been rebutted; but even if I am wrong and it does not apply in the context of FSMA claims, as Mr Miles rather tentatively argued, inducement is established in any event in the case of each one of the claims that HP/Bidco based their assessment, constructed their Deal Model and proceeded on the basis of representations and statements in Autonomy's published information which have been demonstrated by the Claimants to have been untrue and/or misleading.

4053. As summarised in paragraph 522 above:

(1) HP/Bidco have established reasonable reliance on what was stated in the published information in respect of all the aspects of Autonomy's business now said to have been misrepresented; and more particularly, HP/Bidco reasonably relied on that published information as having conveyed that:

(a) Autonomy was a *"pure software company"* having no need to rely on any sources of revenue other than those from its software licence sales;

(b) All revenue recognized in its accounts was generated by substantive transactions which had been properly accounted for;

(c) Autonomy's OEM business revenue was a particularly valuable source of recurring revenue derived at least predominantly from development licence sales and recurring revenue from royalties;

(d) Autonomy's hosting business, which was accounted for as part of its IDOL Cloud business, was growing as a result of increased hosting revenue streams which by their nature were recurrent;

(e) Sales by Autonomy from which revenue was recognized were genuine transactions of commercial substance, and properly accounted for accordingly.

4054. In the circumstances it was reasonable for HP/Bidco to rely on Autonomy's published information and they did so; but in the respects I have sought to set out, that published information was untrue or misleading to the knowledge of both of the Defendants; and there were matters omitted from Autonomy's published information which were required to be included in it, both Defendants knowing that the omissions constituted dishonest concealment of material facts.

4055. In reality, Autonomy was a smaller company with a materially less attractive revenue mix, with lower growth and less success in the market and (overall) lower profit margins than it was represented and appeared from its published information to be.

Introduction to issues of quantum

4056. In my judgment, absent the fraud, HP would not have proceeded with the transaction at the bid price. The question then is whether HP would have proceeded with the transaction at all, and if so, at what price. However, I have reached the provisional

view, in the context of the FSMA Claims, that even if accurate information had been given and Autonomy's financial position and performance had been properly and accurately disclosed, HP/Bidco would nevertheless have wished to proceed to a bid and to conclude the Acquisition, but at a significantly reduced bid price.

4057. Although serious, in my judgment the misrepresentations did not negate the value of the core product IDOL nor the potential for the Acquisition of Autonomy's software business to provide the platform and catalyst for the transformational change in HP's focus away from its low-margin hardware business towards enterprise software, and the better use of its vast resources and market presence in that area and in the developing field of unstructured data analysis.

4058. The question then is whether Autonomy's shareholders would have accepted a lower bid price. The Claimants pleaded that they would have done so (or at least would have been likely to do so): see the quotation from the RRAPoC in paragraph 530 above.

4059. The premise of this is that Autonomy's published information should be assumed to have been corrected and that the shareholders would have been properly informed by accurate information, but would not have known of the fraud. As noted in paragraph 529, and expressly stated in Dr Lynch's closing submissions, it was common ground that in assessing the FSMA Loss, the relevant counterfactual is that accurate information would have been published historically, since loss falls to be calculated on the assumption that Defendants did not cause Autonomy to breach its obligations under FSMA, so that Autonomy's published information would have reflected the correct accounting in respect of the impugned transactions. I have taken it also thereby to be common ground that this accurate information would have informed the market, and thus Autonomy's share price and its shareholders' expectations. Accordingly, my understanding is that, on the case as argued I need not be troubled by a question that had at one time concerned me about whether the transaction would inevitably have been abandoned because whilst the position would have been corrected as between HP and Autonomy, the shareholders (whose agreement to sell was necessary) would still have had the perception of value and expectations of premium informed by the (inaccurate) published information.

4060. On the assumptions explained above, my provisional view is that it is more likely than not that shareholders would have accepted a lower bid price, even a considerably lower bid price.

4061. The assessment of what bid price, on that basis, would have been recommended and agreeable is a difficult one. As Mr Bezant acknowledged, it is not possible to provide a scientific determination and there is inevitably subjective judgement involved. The reality, as it seems to me, is that though valuation techniques provide a floor and ceiling, ultimately the price to be paid depends upon what is to be taken to be the then current share price and what premium is necessary to win the likely support of a strong majority (probably 90% of the shareholders). Autonomy's share price would have been lower, and shareholders' expectation of premium moderated; and HP's DCF modelling and other valuation cross-checks would only have justified a lower price and lesser premium to ensure an agreed bid. As Dr Lynch himself recognised, a bid becomes irresistible if at a premium which most shareholders are likely to find irresistible; and the Defendants could not have resisted or vetoed such a bid.

4062. What that price would have been remains to be assessed in a later judgment on quantum, which will need to take into account the recalibration of the Deal Model and other cross-checks in light of my findings as part of an overall enquiry to assess what in Autonomy's 'True Position' its share price would be likely to have been, what premium would reasonably have been required to be paid, and whether a bid at the resulting price would have been within acceptable parameters having regard to HP's (properly recalibrated) Deal Model (including its revised assessment of synergy value) and other cross-checks.

4063. In doing so I shall also wish to consider further the Defendants' expert, Mr Giles's, central themes that Mr Bezant had adopted a flawed approach both to the assessment of remaining synergy value and to the effect of the required adjustments on a DCF valuation, it being Mr Giles's view that *"Overall the Accounting Adjustments [would] very likely have no impact or very little impact on cash"* and that in consequence a DCF valuation would *"not be materially affected by the Allegations".*

4064. I am also likely to need further guidance on (if it becomes relevant) the *"No-Transaction scenario"* (the quantification of which would depend, amongst other things on whether synergy value of Autonomy in the hands of HP is to be included) and the differences in the *"FSMA Counterfactual"* and the *"Misrepresentation Counterfactual"* (as to which see further below).

4065. For the present, I do not feel it appropriate or possible to express any final view; but I presently and provisionally consider that the Claimants' FSMA loss will be established to be, though substantial, substantially less than the amounts claimed.

Issues relating to the Deceit/Misrepresentation Claims

4066. As previously explained, the FSMA claims did not seek to recover loss relating to the acquisition of shares and share options held by Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain. Conversely, the claims for common law deceit and under the Misrepresentation Act 1967 against the Defendants were confined to loss attributable to the purchase of their shares and share options (the amount claimed being approximately $420 million). A further complexity relates to the different considerations which the parties agreed were applicable in relation to the counterfactual to be assumed for the Deceit and Misrepresentation Act claims.

4067. Whilst I have taken the claims to be complementary, and to have been established in both cases, it is of course important to keep in mind that whereas the basis of the FSMA claims against the Defendants is the recovery from the Defendants (by way of breach of duty claims) of Autonomy's loss in consequence of it having accepted liability to HP/Bidco for the untrue or misleading statements and omissions dishonestly concealing material facts in published information for which the Defendants were responsible as PDMRs, what the Claimants described as the *"conceptually simpler"* claims in deceit/misrepresentation were direct claims against the Defendants, based on their personal deceit/misrepresentation. I have had to be (and have been) satisfied in the one (the FSMA claims) that HP/Bidco reasonably relied on Autonomy's published information in proceeding with the Acquisition at the bid price; and in the other (deceit and misrepresentation) that HP relied on the representations in purchasing the Defendants' respective shares and share options.

4068. The Claimants also stressed an important difference between the two sets of claims in respect of the measure and calculation of loss they asserted. As explained above, in the

FSMA claim, and for the purpose of assessing the FSMA Loss, the counterfactual (*"the FSMA Counterfactual"*) presented is one in which the Defendants did not cause Autonomy to breach its obligations under FSMA, so that Autonomy's published information would have been compliant with FSMA and reflected the correct accounting in respect of the impugned transactions throughout. In the FSMA Counterfactual, therefore, HP would never have been aware that the published information was inaccurate or misleading, still less that the misrepresentations were the product of dishonesty. In the deceit/misrepresentation claims, however, the counterfactual is different. Unlike the FSMA Counterfactual, the *"Misrepresentation Counterfactual*" which the Claimants presented does not assume any correction to Autonomy's published information until the negotiation stage, and so HP would have at some stage become aware that the published information had been materially inaccurate or misleading, although it would after that disclosure or discovery then have proceeded on the corrected information.

4069. Quite when and in what terms it is to be assumed that the disclosure or discovery would have been made is likely materially, perhaps determinatively, to affect whether, in the context of the direct misrepresentation claims, the transaction would have proceeded at all.

4070. Thus, the Claimants contended (though Mr Bezant was not entirely consistent in this regard) that the correction would have revealed or required the revelation of dishonesty; and that in those circumstances it may then seem implausible that HP would have pursued an acquisition of Autonomy at all. In that context, Mr Bezant was instructed by HP to assume, in constructing the Misrepresentation Counterfactual that:

(1) but for the breaches of duty alleged by the Claimants, the misrepresentations alleged to have been made by the Defendants directly to HP would not have been made; but the impugned transactions would still have been entered into, and Autonomy's published financial information would have been the same as it was in fact; and

(2) insofar as HP continued to pursue an acquisition at all, price negotiations on both sides, and the decisions of the selling shareholders, would have been informed by the same information about Autonomy's "True" historical performance that would have been available to the market in the FSMA Counterfactual.

4071. Mr Bezant stated in his first report that he read this as in effect requiring him to

> *"assume that, during the course of negotiations, Autonomy would have informed HP of the True Position and thereby that its published information was false and misleading. In that scenario, I anticipate that, HP may well have terminated negotiations. If HP did not do so, I would not expect HP to have proceeded with negotiations until Autonomy had fulfilled its obligation to disclose the True Position to the market. In any event, consistent with my instructions, disclosure by Autonomy would be required in order for negotiations to proceed with the selling shareholders and Convertible Bond holders aware of the True Position."*

4072. The Defendants, on the other hand, contended that no such revelation of dishonesty would have been necessary and in the construction of the Misrepresentation

Counterfactual none should be assumed. According to the Defendants, it would have been (as it was stated in their written closing submissions) sufficient for Autonomy to *"say that it had learned that the accounting ought to be different and then provided HP with the correct accounting treatment"* and accordingly the Misrepresentation Counterfactual should simply be based on the assumption that *"HP would have had a full view of the transactions in question."* In short, and as Dr Lynch's valuation expert Mr Giles approached the matter, neither the issue whether the transaction would have proceeded nor the counterfactual value of Autonomy should be discounted by reference to the *"stain"* of accounting issues.

4073. Further, if it is assumed for the purpose of the Misrepresentation Counterfactual that the transaction would have proceeded, the question arises as to what information revealing the need for correction would have been known when, and by whom, and what, even if no disclosure of dishonesty is to be assumed, what (if any) other repercussions of revelation should be assumed.

4074. In that context, Mr Bezant's approach was that:

> *"... disclosure of the True Position would cause the market to reassess the value of Autonomy for:*
>
> (1) *the business' prospects in the True Position; and*
>
> (2) *additional uncertainty arising from knowledge that Autonomy had misrepresented its operations and results in public filings and its communications with the market.*
>
> ...
>
> *This uncertainty a buyer would have faced would adversely affect both the Actual Value of Autonomy and the Revised Price. I am unable to quantify with certainty the discount to value that would result from taking such matters into account."*

4075. The Defendants again disagreed. Consistently with their position that the Misrepresentation Counterfactual should not involve any assumption that Autonomy's historical conduct was in any way improper (but also they contended, in any event), they and Mr Giles rejected any suggestion that any correction required would have any lasting effect on *"the long-term expectations for revenues, profits and cash flow that determine value"*. They contended further that *"by the time that HP was provided with the information about the transactions, it would also know that the matter had been looked into and this is what had been identified. Any further discount for the stain would be double-counting."*

4076. I consider that these points, which I have only sought briefly to introduce, raise challenging difficulties both in terms of legal principle and in their effect on the ultimate decision whether the transaction would have proceeded, and according to that, the construction of the appropriate Counterfactual and the quantification of loss. For these reasons, and also because the figures so far produced seem likely to be affected by my findings, I have considered it appropriate both to express only a provisional view as to whether (a) in the FSMA context and (b) in the deceit/misrepresentation context HP would have proceeded with the transaction, and more generally to defer

my determination of quantum to enable further submissions. I shall need particular assistance in seeking to resolve, and if possible, reconcile the two different approaches: I would find it difficult to accept that it would be a satisfactory result for there to be a material difference in the quantification of loss according to whether the context and counterfactual relates to (a) the acquisition of shares and share options from Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain and (b) the acquisition of shares from all other shareholders.

DIRECT LOSSES

4077. This Chapter addresses the Claimants' claims against each of the Defendants for breaching their duties as directors and/or employees of three companies within the Autonomy Group, namely, Zantaz, Autonomy Inc (the 4th Claimant), and ASL (the 3rd Claimant) (and/or in the case of ASL, for breach of Dr Lynch's fiduciary duty of loyalty, see paragraph 3521 above).

4078. The claims are for direct losses[549] suffered by particular Autonomy subsidiaries (including the 3rd Claimant and 4th Claimant, which bring the claims) as a result of the Defendants' breach of duty in causing the relevant subsidiary to act to its detriment, essentially by spending, or foregoing, money which it was not in the subsidiary's best interests to spend or forego, and which the Defendants did not believe to be in the subsidiary's best interests.

4079. In these further claims, the 4th Claimant (Autonomy Inc) sues (a) in its own right, but also (b) as the legal assignee of Zantaz's direct claims under this head, there having been a valid assignment to it of all of Zantaz's claims.

4080. I have already addressed such of the direct loss claims as relate to Autonomy's "Hosting" business. In relation to the direct claims made in respect of the four hosting transactions, I have set out in detail in the hosting section, my conclusion is that all four of the impugned contracts were not commercially in the relevant company's best interests, and the Defendants both knew that, because the contracts were entered for the purpose of falsely inflating Autonomy's apparent revenue.

4081. In the course of my analysis in that context, I have reached a number of conclusions of relevance to the matters addressed in this Chapter, which for convenience I summarise below.

4082. As to the dispute whether Dr Lynch had any directorial role in the three companies concerned, I have found that:

(1) both Defendants owed duties as *de jure* directors to Autonomy Inc;

(2) Mr Hussain was *de jure* a director of ASL and Zantaz;

(3) Dr Lynch was not *de jure* or *de facto* a director of Zantaz, but he was a *de facto* or shadow director of ASL.

4083. I have concluded that the only proper claimant for any of these direct claims is (a) the company to which either of the Defendants owed and breached a duty as director or employee (or, in the case of ASL, fiduciary in the sense described in (paragraph 3521 above) or (b) a valid legal assignee of such a claim. More particularly, I have determined that the existence of the transfer pricing arrangements where losses are transferred from one subsidiary to another within the group does not give a right to the transferee to sue for those losses.

549 Described in the RRAPoC as "transaction-based losses".

4084. I have also found (again when dealing with the direct claims in respect of the hosting transactions) that no relevant duties were broken by either of the Defendants in their roles as directors of ASL in relation to the transfer pricing arrangements whereby losses incurred by Autonomy Inc, Verity Inc and Zantaz were transferred (but not assigned) to ASL. In my view, on the evidence put forward, those transfer pricing arrangements did not affect the right of the Autonomy company to which a duty was owed and broken by one or both of the Defendants in respect of the impugned transactions to make a claim. An agreement to transfer losses (as distinct from an assignment of the underlying rights) does not carry with it the conclusion that no loss has been sustained by the original claimant, nor that the right to claim has been lost or transferred. How the claimant which has suffered the loss has sought in the past or in the future seeks to deal with the loss which has been sustained has no bearing on its right to sue, or the quantum it may claim.

4085. I concluded in respect of the Hosting claims that because Dr Lynch was not a director of any sort or employee of Zantaz, he owed no duty in respect of the three Zantaz contracts impugned in these direct claims under hosting, and the claim against him in respect of those contracts fails accordingly. It succeeds against Mr Hussain. In relation to the fourth contract, namely between Autonomy Inc and MetLife, the loser was Zantaz, because it was Zantaz which was the original contracting party with MetLife, whose payments were reduced by the later contract with Autonomy Inc. Although Dr Lynch was a director of Autonomy Inc, because Autonomy Inc suffered no loss there is no valid claim against Dr Lynch in respect of this fourth impugned hosting contract. I emphasise that the reason the claim fails against Dr Lynch in relation to this fourth contract is not because of the transfer pricing arrangements, but because Autonomy Inc suffered no loss in the first place.

4086. In my judgment, the same approach as regards the status of Dr Lynch and the identification of the proper claimant and what if any loss was sustained applies to the remaining transaction-based/direct loss claims under the three remaining heads (Hardware, MAF payments to VARs, and reciprocal transactions (VAR and non-VAR)). The breach of a duty owed by the Defendants to the company which sustains the loss, must be established. Such a claim is not affected by loss transfers which fall short of assignment, nor do such matters result in the company suffering no loss. Further, the transfer pricing arrangements made by ASL cannot form the basis of a claim because the entering into of the transfer pricing arrangements cannot successfully be impugned as a breach of duty.

4087. Turning to the factual basis of the claims under these remaining heads, the parties dealt with these three heads of claim relatively shortly in their submissions. So will I.

Hardware

4088. The only difference on the threshold issues in respect of the hardware transactions is that unlike the hosting contracts Autonomy Inc did suffer the losses because they were the buyer and seller of the relevant hardware.

4089. The Third and Fourth Claimants put their case as follows:

(1) The relevant purchases and sales were made for the improper purpose of inflating Autonomy's reported revenue rather than for any genuine commercial purpose.

(2) Both Defendants (a) were directors of Autonomy Inc and (b) actively, albeit in different ways, promoted these hardware sales.

(3) The losses on the hardware sales related to and resulted from a breach by the Defendants of their duties to Autonomy Inc as the relevant company that sustained them.

4090. The Defendants' principal defence of course was that the hardware transactions were legitimate. Otherwise, they were left with arguments as to the effect of the transfer pricing arrangements and questions as to the extent of Dr Lynch's duty and knowledge. I have already dealt with these, as explained above.

4091. I have concluded that the Claimants must succeed on this aspect of their claims. That includes their claim for recovery of $250,000 paid as bonuses in respect of the hardware transactions.

4092. The Defendants have points on the quantum of these claims, which I will deal with in my quantum judgment.

MAF Payments to VARs

4093. The Claimants put their claim under this head as follows:

(1) All three subsidiaries paid so-called marketing assistance fees (MAFs) to VARs. The VARs did not assist in any marketing efforts, notwithstanding the paper trail in relation to various of the MAFs suggesting the contrary.

(2) These were inducements for the relevant VAR to participate, and a reward for having participated, in a transaction that would enable Autonomy to report revenue improperly, and were thus paid in breach of the Defendants' duty to the relevant subsidiary. That would in principle include foregone receipts on certain transactions, including in respect of Verity Inc, where amounts were paid to a VAR by an end user, as a designated payee on a transaction between Autonomy and the end user, which exceeded the amounts paid by Autonomy to the VAR, being in effect another mechanism for payment of a MAF.

4094. Again in principle, I have found the factual basis alleged by the Claimants made out in my detailed consideration of the VAR claims. I also find that procuring the companies to make MAF payments or forego receipts was a breach of duty as a director.

4095. It was not altogether easy or even possible to unravel from the schedules the extent to which ASL or Autonomy Inc was the original payer (and not simply a party to which a cost was subsequently transferred under transfer pricing arrangements). If either was the original payer, a claim lies against both Defendants. To the extent the original MAF payer was Zantaz the claim will only be against Mr Hussain.

4096. The schedules of MAF payments identify all three companies as payers depending on the relevant MAF payment. In principle I find both Defendants are liable for the Autonomy Inc payments or foregone receipts. I find only Mr Hussain is liable for the Zantaz payments (or foregone receipts).

4097. In relation to the ASL payments, although the evidence is unclear, it appears in respect of a limited number of the MAF payments that ASL was the original payer. Both Defendants were responsible for those payments being made, and in those circumstances both Defendants are liable for the ASL MAF payments.

4098. Again, I will consider precise quantum in my quantum judgement. However, I note that the Defendants did not raise any positive points against the quantification of this head of loss advanced by the Claimants (and amounting to $8,883,221), and did not challenge at trial Mr Bezant's verification work in respect of those figures as set out in Schedule 12C of the RRAPoC.

Reciprocal Transactions

4099. The Claimants put their claim under this head as follows:

(1) All three subsidiaries were involved in either: (i) the impugned reciprocal transactions; and/or (ii) improper reciprocal transactions used to unravel VAR transactions (i.e. where the relevant subsidiary bought something it did not need in order to put the VAR in funds to settle its proposed debt).

(2) The losses incurred similarly represent damages for the Defendants' breaches of duty.

4100. For the reasons I have set out at length in my consideration of the VAR Claims, and Reciprocal Claims made under FSMA I find the premise of this head of claim made out, namely there was no commercial justification for these reciprocal transactions and this was known to both Defendants because their purpose was falsely to inflate Autonomy's apparent income. In my judgment, both Defendants authorised these transactions.

4101. As with each of the four separate claims for breach of duty owed by the Defendants to Autonomy companies, against which Defendant the claim can be made depends on which subsidiary entered the impugned transaction. In their closing submissions the Claimants identify which entity has suffered the loss in respect of the reciprocal transactions as follows:

> *"Of this total amount, [around $20m] $739,450 was suffered by Zantaz and the remainder resulted in a loss to ASL by virtue of the aforementioned transfer pricing arrangements."*

4102. They added in a footnote:

> *"The Claimants advance an alternative case, which reflects the position before the transfer pricing arrangements. Under this case, the net loss is recorded in the entity that recorded the purchase transaction. This approach results in losses of*

> *$2,980,444 to ASL, losses of $14,469,910 to Autonomy Inc and losses of $3,215,000 to Zantaz: PoC Schedule 12, Table 12B."*

4103. They also asserted that Mr Bezant had confirmed that he had not identified any inaccuracies in PoC Schedule 12, Table 12B. Mr Bezant's evidence on this point was not challenged in cross-examination.

4104. I did not understand the Defendants to take any points on quantum on this head of claim if liability were to be established. However, although no points were raised, I will leave the assessment of these losses to my quantum judgment.

4105. In those circumstances I find that the subsidiary which suffered the losses were as identified in the alternative claim, set out in the footnote. The amounts of that claim have not been challenged but will finally be determined in my separate judgment on quantum.

COUNTERCLAIM

4106. Lastly, I should briefly address Dr Lynch's Counterclaim against the First Claimant (Autonomy), though ultimately only to confirm that it seems to me to follow from my findings in the main claim that it falls to be dismissed.

4107. In summary, the gist of the Counterclaim was that HP's public announcement on 20 November 2012 of the $8.8 billion write-down of Autonomy, and the various briefings on that day, contained statements seriously impugning the conduct and damaging the reputation of Dr Lynch which (according to the Counterclaim) were untrue, that Autonomy authorised the false statements made, and that in doing so it was in breach of a duty of trust and confidence, alternatively duties in tort and under the Data Protection Act 1998 ("the DPA"), which it owed to Dr Lynch.

4108. The Counterclaim identified a series of eleven specific statements made in the course of the announcements and calls referred to above, including serious allegations against *"former members of Autonomy's management team"* accusing them of a *"wilful effort to mislead investors and potential buyers",* and alleged each to be false. Most of the eleven statements impugned the way the business of Autonomy had been conducted and accounted for on broadly the same grounds as have been put forward by the Claimants in the main proceedings and alleged that those *"former members of Autonomy's management team"* had *"used accounting improprieties, misrepresentations and disclosure failures to inflate the underlying financial metrics of the company, prior to Autonomy's acquisition by HP"*. Three of the statements referred, misleadingly it was claimed, to the circumstances in which the alleged improprieties came to light, one to the impact of the alleged improprieties and misrepresentations in causing HP to pay too much for the acquisition of Autonomy. A further statement related to the role of Deloitte and HP's alleged reliance on them.

4109. The claims were not brought in defamation: it does not seem to have been disputed that any defamation claims were statute-barred. Nor did Dr Lynch seek to recover damages for reputational damage. Rather, the claims asserted that the allegedly false statements caused such reputational damage to him that it caused two very substantial prospective investors in his company, Invoke Capital, to withdraw. The sums claimed in the Counterclaim were considerable: Dr Lynch claimed that if the investments had been made, he would have earned considerable equity gains and fees through Invoke Capital of at least $160 million.

4110. The claims depended upon Dr Lynch demonstrating (on the usual balance of probabilities) that (a) the identified statements were false, (b) Autonomy authorised the making of the statements and thereby assumed responsibility for them, and (c) Autonomy owed Dr Lynch duties of which it was in breach. There was also a dispute about causation, and about quantum.

4111. As may be apparent from my description in the Introduction to this judgment, and especially in paragraphs 384 to 414, I have never been convinced that at the time of the Announcement of Impairment in November 2012 HP had yet established the facts necessary to justify the very serious allegations which the Announcement contained. The references in the Announcement to *"intense internal investigation"*, which were relied on as underpinning and justifying the representations and allegations made, had

not been completed and, so far as the evidence went, were largely undocumented (though the Claimants suggested that a claim made to privilege might in part at least explain that).

4112. Still less had there been any exercise to correlate the irregularities alleged to the amount of the write-down sought to be explained and justified, as internal emails make clear (see paragraph 396(2) above). Indeed (as may also be relevant to the question of quantum), any correlation between the amount of the write-down and the improprieties alleged to have justified is difficult to discern, and appears to be belied by the way it was calculated at the time. Of the total write-down of $8.8 billion, $3.6 billion was the result of increasing the discount rate from the 9.5% used in August 2012 (when no impairment was thought necessary) to 16% (an extra percentage point having been added at the very last minute). According to an HP infographic circulated on 19 November 2012, the remaining $5.2 billion was attributable to (a) $2.9 billion for lower margins, (b) £1.8 billion for lower growth rates and (c) $1.3 billion for the effect of re-baselining revenue to reconcile the accounts. No mention was made of the alleged accounting improprieties (though they may be compendiously taken into account in those calculations without express identification).

4113. There are grounds for supposing (and see paragraphs 409 to 413 above) that HP had hurried to inform the market before it had completed the necessary investigations because it urgently needed to revalue the component parts of its business following a reduction in its market capitalisation in 2012 and to satisfy the requirement of US accounting rules that the sum of the parts of a business plus 30% control premium could not exceed its market capitalisation. The huge write-off neatly resolved this problem. Writing down the value of Autonomy ensured that no write-down was required of HP's own Software division (which, as explained in paragraph 411) HP wanted to avoid. The signs are that HP proceeded before it was really ready in light of market and accounting exigencies, and the write-down was in an amount which satisfied both. That may also explain why the allegations were not even put to Dr Lynch before they were vigorously publicised.

4114. However, whilst these matters did encourage in me original scepticism about the claims and their quantum, I do not consider it necessary to consider them in any greater detail. Nor do I need to explore and determine the various and considerable difficulties in Dr Lynch's way (including the difficulty of demonstrating that Autonomy assumed an obligation in respect of HP's Announcement), which would have confronted him even had he succeeded in the main claim. For the fact is, as pleaded by the Claimants, and whether or not sufficiently underpinned and documented at the time that they were made, the statements as to the conduct of the business and its accounts which Dr Lynch identified were, in my judgment, true. The fundamental premise of the Counterclaim was that the statements were untrue, and the premise having been falsified, the claim must fall away. That is so even if the representations as to the basis of the statements were untrue, incomplete or inaccurate: there would be no realistic prospect of establishing loss.

4115. Accordingly, as I indicated would be the result in my Summary of Conclusions (in Appendix 6), I dismiss the Counterclaim.

CONCLUSION

4116. I approached the Claimants' case with considerable scepticism. This was not a case like Theranos, which raised more than $700 million to develop and support a product which never had any substance. Autonomy was a successful cash-generating enterprise, audited by Deloitte, with substantial cash reserves at the close of 2010, and a world-beating software product, which had opened up for analysis the then uncharted but vast area of unstructured data (IDOL) and which Ms Whitman herself had apparently described as *"almost magical technology"*.

4117. However, I have been satisfied and concluded that the evidence reveals a clear pattern of Autonomy's central management resorting, under the direction of the Defendants, to a variety of what the Claimants had termed *"levers"*, which (quoting from the Claimants' written closing submissions) *"the Defendants could pull, as and when desired, to achieve their overall goal of misrepresenting Autonomy's financial condition so as to make it appear that the business was operating in line with market expectations"*.

4118. Although the Defendants advanced the semblance of commercial justification for hardware sales, VAR transactions, reciprocal sales, "hybrid hosting" and the inclusion within the "OEM" category of subsequent sales said to have been generated by OEM transactions, those justifications lacked substance.

4119. Further, the extent to which the Defendants had consistently and successfully sought to conceal the true substance and purpose of material parts of Autonomy's business and to disguise their adverse effect has become clear. No good or sufficient reason was ever provided, for example, for the failure properly to disclose the hardware sales and the treatment of their associated costs which made them loss-making.

4120. Both individually and together the effect of the deployment of these "levers" was to portray Autonomy as a much larger and more successful company than it really was, with a history of meeting and beating market expectations which was sustained only by resort to undisclosed or incorrectly described sources other than proper software licence sales.

4121. I have determined that the Defendants were responsible for a strategy of sales of third-party hardware which were not appliances or in any meaningful way a *"delivery channel for software sales"*, and the purpose of which was to plug shortfalls in software licence sales and thus to disguise the true performance of Autonomy's software business.

4122. I have accepted the Claimants' case that the series of VAR sales which I have described lacked any real substance and the apparent revenue they purportedly generated should not have been recognised: in every case (with one exception where the allegation was not established) the sale to the VAR was put in place to make good revenue lost when a sale to a genuine end-user failed: the reseller was never intended to, nor ever did, play any part in the resale of the software purportedly sold to it; nor was it intended to pay Autonomy from its own resources if an end-user sale eventuated; nor did it have any part to play in any sale to the proposed or a substitute end-user, which Autonomy alone would seek to negotiate and conclude, without regard to or any participation by the reseller.

4123. I have accepted also the Claimants' case that by a variety of reciprocal transactions Autonomy put its customers in funds to buy Autonomy products, by buying products from the customer despite having no or no real commercial rationale for doing so.

4124. Both the pure hardware sales (which Autonomy subsidised by buying the hardware and then reselling it at a loss) and the reciprocal transactions (where in effect Autonomy was paying a customer to buy Autonomy products) amounted to Autonomy buying its own revenue.

4125. Moreover, I have accepted that the Defendants well knew that Autonomy had repeatedly misrepresented the nature and scale of its IDOL OEM revenues, which they knew would be and were especially highly regarded by HP, and had materially exaggerated its hosting revenues.

4126. In reaching these conclusions, I have borne in mind throughout that Autonomy had well-known and reputable auditors, and through much of the Relevant Period, an Audit Committee chaired by a well-regarded and very experienced accountant, and an equally well regarded and experienced non-executive Chairman, all of whom had access to the accounting records without restraint. For reasons I have sought to explain, the Defendants' reliance on them as denoting that the accounting treatment of the impugned transactions may sometimes have 'pushed the envelope', but was within the parameters of reasonable judgements and propriety, justifies or provides a conclusive litmus test. The fact is, as I have concluded, that the evidence (including, especially, emails of which Deloitte, Mr Bloomer and Mr Webb QC were not aware) shows that the Defendants knew that the true purpose of the various 'levers' they deployed was dishonest, as further demonstrated by the efforts the Defendants made to conceal or misdescribe the true nature and scope of the business undertaken.

4127. In the result, I have determined that the Claimants have succeeded in substantially all their claims, except in respect of one impugned VAR transaction and in their claims relating to the *"Other Transactions."* They have established, on the civil standard of the balance of probabilities, that the Defendants dishonestly misrepresented the financial position and performance of Autonomy during the Relevant Period. I consider that HP/Bidco bought a smaller and less successful company than it was represented to be and that HP was led to and did believe that it was acquiring.

4128. One of the tragedies of the case is clear: an innovative and ground-breaking product, its architect and the company will probably always be associated with fraud.

4129. The length of this judgment may well be unparalleled. I have sought to set out the detail I have thought appropriate having regard to the gravity of the claims and the enormity of the consequences for the parties (and especially the Defendants). If there is excuse for its length it is that this has been a most unusual case.

4130. Ordinarily, even the most complex cases tend to be resolved ultimately by reference to a small collection of documents which become dog-eared with repeated citation during the course of the trial, and discrete passages of oral evidence likewise cited so often as to verge upon becoming leitmotifs. In this case, however, the allegations travelled over all the major aspects of the way Autonomy generated revenue, over (in all) more than 100 transactions each with supporting documents. The pattern which I have concluded emerges in the round had to be tested against each one, not least in case some

differences emerged which falsified the general description. The number and variety of transactions, documents and extracts from witness evidence referred to in this judgment may demonstrate the unusual nature of the case, as may also the volume of transcripts which exceed some 18,000 pages and the hundreds of pages of evidence from the US criminal proceedings admitted into evidence in these proceedings as hearsay.

4131. Another unusual facet of the case which necessitated particularly detailed focus on the extensive documentary record has been, conversely, the absence of not only, and most obviously, one of the only two Defendants (Mr Hussain) but also (as already recorded) of a number of key individuals who might have assisted me, and in particular, Mr Knights and Mr Mercer (the lead partners for Deloitte over the course of the Relevant Period), Mr Sullivan, Mr Johnson and Mr Scott (who gave evidence in the US criminal proceedings but not before me) and (on the Defendants' side) Mr Chamberlain, Ms Eagan, Mr Kanter, Dr Menell (all of whom I have concluded were part of a clique responsible with the Defendants for the operation of the impugned 'levers').

4132. The length and complexity of the judgment, my delay in completing my assessment, the need for an extended period to enable the parties' legal representatives to consider, correct and comment upon the draft and my concern about the difficulty of maintaining strict confidentiality pending final formal handing down of the finalised version, caused me to follow an unorthodox course in delivering my conclusions and reasoning. First, I took the unusual step of setting out a Summary of my conclusions and their basis at a public hearing on 28 January 2022[550] (see Appendix 6). Shortly thereafter I provided my draft judgment (first circulated on 31 January 2022, and supplemented in stages thereafter) to nominated individuals for correction and appropriate comment under conditions of the strictest confidence.

4133. As it transpired, rather longer was required for the process of correction and comments, and their consideration, than originally estimated; but the corrections and comments provided by all parties have been extremely useful, and I am grateful to all concerned. I am grateful too for the confirmation provided by all to whom any previous drafts were provided to enable the process of correction and comment, which remain embargoed that any such drafts, will (to ensure confidentiality) be delivered up and destroyed.

4134. More generally, I reiterate my thanks to the parties and their representatives for their patience and unstinting assistance throughout the long process of pre-trial hearings, the Trial itself and the regrettably long period of this judgment's gestation. The advocacy on all sides was of the highest quality, and the support on which it rested was equally exemplary.

4135. I shall need the same assistance in respect of the issues of quantum, which (as I have indicated) will be the subject of a separate judgment in due course after further submissions (in respect of which I shall give directions at a subsequent hearing which is to be arranged).

Postscript

[550] The Summary I provided on 28 January 2022 is, for convenience, attached as Appendix 6 to this judgment. Where there is any inconsistency with this judgment, this judgment prevails.

4136. This postscript addresses three points which have arisen in the process of providing corrections of and comments on the embargoed original draft of this judgment.

The position of Mr Chamberlain

4137. First, on 6 April 2022, Clifford Chance sought my permission "*to notify Mr Chamberlain's US and UK counsel that the judgment includes findings of wrongdoing against Mr Chamberlain, so that he can (if so advised) apply to come inside the embargo or take whatever other steps he is advised to take."* In that regard, they noted that *"the draft judgment contains a number of findings against Mr Chamberlain, who is facing prosecution in the United States alongside our client. The judgment makes findings against a number of other individuals, but Mr Chamberlain is the only one of these individuals facing prosecution. Mr Chamberlain is, of course, not aware of the fact that the judgment will include findings against him and will not have any opportunity to take legal advice on the implications of the civil judgment before it becomes public."*

4138. When I declined to give permission, but invited further explanation of the basis of the request, Clifford Chance by further email dated 20 April 2022 helpfully referred me to the decision in *MRH Solicitors v Manchester County Court* [2015] EWHC 1795 at [24], [32] to [39] as being what they had had in mind, though they stated also that it was *"not an issue that affects our client directly."*

4139. *MRH Solicitors v Manchester County Court* concerned findings made in an *ex tempore* judgment by a Recorder, after a four-day trial, dismissing a claim for personal injury and consequential losses on the basis that the underlying motor accident was staged and the claims were fraudulent. In the course of his judgment, the Recorder found that the solicitors for the claimant driver in that action (MRH Solicitors) were party to the fraud, as also (he held) were two companies which had provided and charged for hire cars provided to the claimant. A passenger was separately represented: but neither the solicitors nor either of the two car hire companies were party to the proceedings. The Recorder subsequently approved a transcript of his judgment which included those findings. MRH Solicitors and the two car hire companies brought proceedings for judicial review to seek to undo what they submitted was a breach of natural justice which had resulted in their integrity being impugned unfairly. They sought and obtained interim relief to prevent the circulation of the approved judgment and as their substantive relief they sought an order quashing parts of the approved judgment.

4140. It was submitted on the applicants' behalf in the judicial review proceedings in the Administrative Court that:

(1) The Recorder had behaved unfairly in expressing final conclusions that the Solicitors and car hire firms had behaved fraudulently, especially since (i) none of the three had been heard or had an opportunity to be heard; (i) no claim of fraud had been pleaded, (iii) there was no evidence for the findings of fraud made.

(2) Judicial review was the appropriate route and remedy since there was no route of appeal by non-parties.

4141. The Divisional Court declined to grant the order sought, since *"no more than on appeal can we re-write the judgment of [the] Recorder…"* They also declined to make declaratory relief; but that was because they considered that it was unnecessary in light of the unequivocal determination in their judgment, where they stated that:

> *"…the Recorder was not entitled to make a conclusive finding of dishonesty or fraud against MRH [or the two hire companies] and they should be treated as not having such a finding made against them."*

4142. The Divisional Court also provided general guidance, stating that in

"the unlikely event that something similar to this should happen in the future, in our view the right course would be for the third party who believes they have been unfairly criticised in a judgment to apply to be joined as a party."

The person concerned could then appeal (or seek permission to do so). At the same time, however, the Court stressed that the decision was a discretionary one, and emphasised that:

> *"… we are not saying that a third party who is criticised will necessarily be entitled to be joined as a party. There are many cases heard in the civil courts (and also family and criminal courts) where the conduct of an absent person falls to be considered. For example, in a conspiracy case not all the alleged conspirators may be before the court as parties or witnesses. In complex commercial frauds it may well be part of the case there's an absent personal institution was party to dishonest conduct somewhere in the chain. Everything will depend on the facts of the individual case."*

4143. It seems to me that two questions thus need to be considered: (a) whether, prior to public circulation of the judgment, the court should pre-circulate any person(s) in respect of whom it has made serious findings to enable them to make representations for the judgment in some way to be anonymised or even altered; and (b) whether at that stage or thereafter the court should, on application by the person concerned (or indeed on its own motion), order their joinder as a party to enable an appeal.

4144. In determining not to give the permission requested by Clifford Chance to make available this judgment to Mr Chamberlain and his advisers before its final handing-down, I have had in mind particularly the following considerations:

(1) Although Mr Chamberlain's decision not to provide evidence or attend is understandable in light of his indictment in the US, and his right of silence in the criminal proceedings there, that was his decision: he nevertheless had the opportunity to give evidence in these proceedings and declined it.

(2) As mentioned previously, he was not alone in declining that opportunity; and even if his reasons may be stronger than theirs, there would be a variety of persons in the same position as he, the common denominator being that in each case I considered it essential to consider his or her role in what was done as part of the process of determining the claims against the two Defendants. Mr Chamberlain must have appreciated, as must all the others, that their conduct would be reviewed; and it was on the cards that it might be criticised.

(3) This is, in my judgment, just the sort of case which the Divisional Court had in mind in emphasising that such findings might be necessary.

Furthermore, I do not consider that there was any means of successfully anonymising some part(s) of the judgment; nor that any good would come of any process which enabled Mr Chamberlain or others in a similar position to, as it were, offer their commentary and evidence on the findings I have made, without being bound by evidence or exposed to the scrutiny of cross-examination. I have been acutely aware throughout of the obvious imperative that judges should be extremely cautious before impugning the honesty of persons who have not had an opportunity to defend themselves, and I have taken every care accordingly, even though in this case, they did have an opportunity but declined it.

(4) I emphasise nevertheless that nothing in this judgment constitutes a finding of liability or formal finding of guilt against anyone other than the two Defendants. My findings against others are ancillary to my findings against the Defendants.

4145. In those circumstances, and given that (as the Court noted in *MRH Solicitors v Manchester County Court*) *"it is axiomatic that appeals are brought against orders, not the reasons for orders"*, I would not of my own motion consider it appropriate to join Mr Chamberlain or any other of the persons I have found to have been involved in the frauds on the basis of which I have held both Defendants to be liable.

4146. I very much doubt that an application to be joined would be appropriate or serve any purpose, since I have not been asked, do not intend to and could not properly make any order against Mr Chamberlain or any non-party I have criticised. However, since no application has been made, and theoretically, I suppose, could be so, I do not finally decide that now, but certainly do not encourage any such step.

Extant copies of embargoed draft judgment and related documents

4147. The content and copies of all drafts of my judgment circulated to the parties after I had delivered a summary of my conclusions on 28 January 2022 in open court were strictly embargoed. In the unusual circumstances of this case, I attached express conditions, including that all copies should be returned and destroyed once the process of finalising and handing down final judgment had been completed. The purpose of the embargo and of these conditions was to assist, safeguard the confidentiality of, the necessary process of enlisting the assistance of the parties in identifying and correcting suggested errors and omissions (including any parts of the draft(s) which might require clarification or amplification) before finalising the judgment and (by hand-down) putting it in the public domain. I had understood that the conditions I stipulated in relation to drafts of earlier and superseded versions of this judgment and associated documents proposing corrections were accepted, and certainly nothing to the contrary was intimated until 10 May 2022.

4148. However, Clifford Chance on behalf of Dr Lynch have now asked to be permitted to retain copies and the parties' proposed corrections for the purposes of pursuing any application for permission to appeal, and if permission is granted, any appeal itself. After I had indicated that I was not persuaded that this was appropriate, and very shortly before this judgment was finalised for publication, they have indicated that they may wish to put forward further arguments in support of this. I shall consider this

further and make directions to the parties accordingly. In the meantime, I should explain briefly why (subject to consideration of any further arguments and (possibly) interim arrangements for safe custody) I consider that earlier drafts should remain strictly embargoed and be returned or destroyed.

4149. I fully recognise that the process has been more extended and complex than usual, and the corrections proposed considerably more numerous. The parties have all assisted me greatly in identifying typographical errors and in reconstructing paragraph references. They have also, especially in the case of the Claimants, identified other errors both of expression or detailed fact, including some where I had overlooked documents or submissions which I was invited to (and did) revisit with a view to their correction. Dr Lynch, in particular, objected to various of the corrections suggested by the Claimants on the basis that the *"Claimants' comments cross[ed] the line from corrections to submissions on findings in the draft judgment".*

4150. I have considered every such objection carefully by reference to any source material or submissions cited or repeated. Where I have made corrections, I have done so because it seemed to me necessary either to clarify the language I had used or to reflect my own review of some particular aspect of the record or submissions to which I had been directed and which I felt, with the perspective offered by a little distance from the original drafting process, I had not sufficiently accurately recorded or taken into account. In light of the same process of review, I have also included additional sections to address matters which I considered required further explanation of my conclusions. (These include, in particular, an additional chapter on Reliance which I considered both clarificatory and a necessary introduction to the issue of quantum, on which I shall require further submissions.)

4151. In no case were any corrections suggested or made by reference to evidence or submissions which had not been before me. In no case was any correction suggested or made which altered my overall approach or substantive conclusions as summarised in my Summary (subject only to the caveat below). I am satisfied that the corrections made were appropriate and necessary to ensure both clarity of expression and detailed accuracy in explaining those conclusions in this my final judgment .

4152. As should perhaps go without saying, this version of my judgment, as handed down, is the only version and record to be made public of my final conclusions and reasoning in this case.

Differences between the Summary of Conclusions and this judgment

4153. As to the caveat mentioned above, Simmons & Simmons have suggested to me that in certain instances there are differences between the wording in this judgment and the wording of my Summary of Conclusions. Of the differences to which they drew attention the following remain:

(1) Paragraph 42 of the Summary should be taken to be replaced by paragraph 524 of this judgment which is more nuanced.

(2) Paragraph 48 of the Summary does not reflect that ASL as well as Autonomy Inc have claimed for direct losses.

(3) Paragraph 50.1 of the Summary states that the quantity of pure hardware sales was $100 million whereas in this judgment the total aggregate over the Relevant Period has been corrected to $200 million.

(4) Paragraph 50.4 of the Summary describes the Claimants' case as the foregoing of future recurring revenue in exchange for a "one off and heavily discounted capital sum for a licence", which has been amended to remove the words "and heavily discounted" in paragraph 16(4) of this judgment, though in fact the capital sum provided a discount compared to licence fees otherwise payable over time.

(5) Paragraphs 50.5 and 80 of the Summary describe OEM as Autonomy software being embedded in an OEM's hardware: the judgment has corrected this to an OEM's software at paragraph 16(5), consistently with other parts of the judgment.

4154. Simmons & Simmons have accepted that these corrections are minor. But they have suggested that in light of them, the Summary should now be removed from the Courts and Tribunals website, and not included as an Appendix to this judgment. I do not consider that either course is required. It seems to me that such minor differences are inevitable and had been anticipated in my Summary, where I expressly anticipated differences and stated that in the event of any conflict my judgment would prevail.

4155. Nevertheless, I shall give instructions for the version of the Summary publicised at the end of January to be re-issued with an endorsement in bold, referring readers to this judgment (which will by then have been handed down) and reiterating that in the event of any differences between the Summary of Conclusions and this judgment, this judgment prevails. It may also be possible to include in the Summary an electronic link to this judgment.

APPENDIX 1

DRAMATIS PERSONAE

[Names in **BOLD CAPITALS** are parties. Names in CAPITALS were principal witnesses who gave oral evidence; names in *italics* were other witnesses, including in parenthesis those whose evidence in the US was admitted into these proceedings under hearsay notice; names in capitalised *ITALICS* were individuals of principal importance who did not give evidence]

Name	Description of role *The roles of Autonomy individuals (and associated third parties) relate to the Relevant Period (Q1 2009 to Q2 2011) unless otherwise specified* *The roles of HP individuals relate to the date of HP's acquisition of Autonomy unless otherwise specified*
Anderson, Antonia	Autonomy Group Financial Accountant and Revenue Director (from 2011; previously Manager at Deloitte).
APOTHEKER, LÉO	HP President and CEO (November 2010 to September 2011). *Witness for the Claimants*.
Araujo, Neil	CEO Protect, Professional Markets at Autonomy (from August 2009).
Ariko, Barry	Member of Autonomy's Audit Committee.
Avant, Donald "Don"	Group Head of Operations at Autonomy (from July 2011). At the time of trial, VP, Customer Experience at Darktrace, an investee company of Invoke Capital (founded by Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain). *Witness for Dr Lynch.*
Avila, Eloy	Held various technical roles at Autonomy, including Chief Technology Officer (from November 2010). At the time of trial, Chief Technology Officer, Americas at Darktrace. *Witness for Dr Lynch.*

BAIOCCO, JOHN	Managing Partner at Capax Discovery. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Barris, Bob	Vice President of Sales, Dell.
Bettencourt, Michele (formerly Anthony)	CEO of Verity Inc (acquired by Autonomy in December 2005). Thereafter headed up Autonomy's integration of Zantaz and Interwoven (left Autonomy in December 2009). *Witness for Dr Lynch (but not cross-examined).*
Bhagat, Varoon	Member of the Corporate Development sub-team within HP's Strategy and Corporate Development group ("**SCD**").
Binns, Robert	Member of the worldwide Field Operations team, who worked within HP's Software & Solutions team.
Black, Ian	Autonomy Head of Global Operations.
BLANCHFLOWER, SEAN	Autonomy Head of R&D. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Blank, John	Member of HP's Enterprise Financial Reporting ("**EFR**") group, focused on M&A Technical Accounting.
BLOOMER, JONATHAN	Chairman of Autonomy's Audit Committee (from 2010). *Witness for Dr Lynch.*
Bordeaux, Dean	Account Executive, Dell.
Broli, Corrado	Autonomy sales executive (covering Italy). At the time of trial, Country Manager, Italy at Darktrace.
Brossard, Gerard	Vice President for Planning, Strategy and Operations (HP Software); led the Project Management office focused on the Autonomy integration.
Brown, Derek	Investor Relations, Autonomy.

Breya, Marge	Senior member of HP's software marketing team.
Brunnick, Michael	Autonomy Vice President of Federal Sales.
(Camden, Dominic)	Responsible for sales at Zones Inc, an IT solutions provider and hardware reseller. *Evidence in the US admitted as hearsay (Claimants and Defendants).*
CHAMBERLAIN, STEPHEN	VP, Finance at Autonomy (until March 2012). Chief Operations Officer at Darktrace (until 2018). Part of the 'Clique' or 'Cabal'.
Chan, Otto	Managing Director, Global Technology Operations, Citibank.
Chang, Hung	Lawyer at Autonomy.
(Channing, Roger)	Chief Technology Officer and Senior Vice President at MicroTech. *Evidence in US admitted as hearsay (Claimants and Defendants).*
COLLET, HARALD	Autonomy Vice President of Business Development (October 2007 to May 2008); Autonomy Head of OEM Sales in North America (May 2008 to June 2010). Co-author of Joe Bloggs correspondence. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Colomar, Vanessa	Autonomy Head of Communications (August 2011 to September 2012). At the time of trial, Head of Communications and Investor Relations at Invoke Capital. *Witness for Dr Lynch*.
Cooke, Stephen	Partner at Slaughter and May (Mergers and Acquisitions practice). *Witness for Dr Lynch (but not cross-examined).*
Corado, Ray	Financial Analyst, Autonomy.
Corley, Tom	Sales Account Manager, Zones Inc.
Crumbacher, James	Associate General Counsel of Autonomy Inc.

"Jim"	
Daoust, Mark	Vice-President of e-Discovery, Autonomy.
Debban, Vince	Senior Vice President, End User Computing / Desktop and Electronic Communications, Bank of America.
Desroches, Robert	Vice-President of Digital Safe Operations, Autonomy.
Dolan, Julie	Autonomy Senior Corporate Counsel. At the time of trial, Senior Legal Counsel at Darktrace.
Duckworth, David	HP's Mergers, Acquisitions, Divestitures and Outsourcing Finance Integration Project Manager (until March 2012). *Witness for the Claimants.*
Eads, Richard	Global Procurement Officer and Director of Credit and Collections, Autonomy.
EAGAN, NICOLE	Autonomy Chief Marketing Officer. At the time of trial, co-CEO of Darktrace. *Withdrawn as witness for Dr Lynch.*
EGAN, CHRISTOPHER "STOUFFER"	CEO of Autonomy Inc. *Witness for the Claimants.*
(Esterrich, Tomas)	CFO at MicroTech. *Evidence in the US admitted as hearsay (Claimants and Defendants).*
Faughnan, Michael	Global Account Manager, Dell.
Fitzgerald, Lisanne	Senior Manager and Professional Standards Reviewer, audit, Deloitte.
Flanagan, Tom	Chief Information Officer, Amgen.
Frischknecht, Dominic	Member of the Supply Management team, Credit Suisse.

Furman, Al	Chief Technology Officer, Morgan Stanley.
Gallagher, Darren	Autonomy Head of Development.
Geall, Marc	Autonomy Head of Corporate Strategy and Investor Relations (until May 2010).
Gersh, Andrew	Managing Director at KPMG. Led the KPMG financial due diligence team retained by HP in respect of the Autonomy acquisition and the KPMG team engaged by HP in October 2011 to assist HP in understanding Autonomy's closing balance sheet. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Goldfarb, Neil	Latin America Sales, Autonomy.
GOODFELLOW, CHRISTOPHER	Chief Technology Officer of Infrastructure at Autonomy. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Goodman, Peter	Investor Relations, Autonomy.
GREENWOOD, PHILIP	Autonomy Head of Connectors. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Guiao, Livius	Autonomy Associate General Counsel.
GUSTAFSSON (NÉE PRENTIS), POPPY	Autonomy European Financial Controller (from June 2009) and later Autonomy Corporate Controller. At the time of trial, co-CEO of Darktrace. *Witness for Dr Lynch.*
Harris, Elizabeth "Lisa"	Autonomy's Financial Controller. Joined an Invoke Capital company as a Finance Manager in 2013. At the time of trial, a Director of Darktrace. *Witness for Dr Lynch.*
Haverfield, Rachel	Senior legal counsel at Autonomy. Joined Invoke Capital as General Counsel in December 2013.
HOGENSON, BRENT	CFO for Autonomy in the Americas (whistleblower whose employment was terminated in late July 2010).

Humphrey, David	Chief Technology Officer of Virage Inc. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Humphries, Brian	Head of HP's Corporate Development sub-team within the SCD group (until March 2011).
HUSSAIN, SUSHOVAN	Second Defendant and Autonomy's CFO (who did not give evidence).
Hyson, Malcolm	Chief Technology Officer, DiscoverTech.
Hsiao, Emily	Member of HP's Corporate Development sub-team within the SCD group.
Jackson, Alex	Member of the Deloitte audit team.
Jimenez, Antony	CEO of MicroTech.
(Johnson, Andrew)	Head of HP's Corporate Development sub-team within the SCD group. *Evidence in the US admitted as hearsay (Claimants and First Defendant)*.
Johnstone, Ben	IT specialist, Deloitte.
KALBAG, SAMEER	Chief Technology Officer of Autonomy's Federal group. *Witness for the Claimants.*
KANTER, ANDREW	Autonomy Chief Operating Officer and General Counsel. At the time of trial, non-executive Partner at Invoke Capital. Part of the 'Clique' or 'Cabal'. *Withdrawn as witness for Dr Lynch.*
Kelly, Brian	Director, Global Procurement, MetLife.
Kelly, Frank	Member of Autonomy's Audit Committee.

Khan, Hafeez "Daud"	Financial analyst who covered Autonomy for Merrill Lynch (2001 to 2003) and for Cazenove (2006 onwards). *Witness for the Claimants.*
King, Martina	Head of Aurasma UK (May 2011 to May 2012). At the time of trial, was working at Featurespace, an Invoke Capital investee company. *Witness for Dr Lynch.*
KNIGHT, ROB	Member of the Deloitte audit team.
KNIGHTS, RICHARD	Deloitte audit engagement partner for Autonomy (2005 to 2010).
Krakoski, James (or Jim)	Autonomy sales executive selling Digital Safe.
Ku, Helen	Autonomy Revenue Manager.
Ladd, Beth	VP, Customer Marketing at Autonomy.
Lafreniere, Joanne	Planning & Strategy Manager, Bank of Montreal.
Lamond, Andy	Director, Realise.
Lane, Raymond	HP's Chairman.
LANGFORD, JONATHAN	Autonomy Development Support Engineer (from July 2010). At the time of trial, Service Management Director at Micro Focus. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Lee, Mickie	Autonomy Senior Counsel.
Lenschow, Raimo	Analyst, Merrill Lynch.
LESJAK, CATHERINE "CATHIE"	Executive Vice President and CFO of HP. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Letelier, Sergio	Director of HP's Corporate, Securities and M&A Operations team and in-house lawyer.

Levadoux, Jerome	Vice President in HP's Products, Information Management and Analytics group; involved in the Autonomy integration.
Levine, Marc	HP's Corporate Controller (from May 2012).
Livermore, Ann	Member of HP's Board of Directors.
(Loomis, William "Bill")	CEO and CFO of FileTek. *Evidence in the US admitted as hearsay (Claimants and Defendants).*
Louw, Gerry	Chief Information Officer, VMS.
Lucas, Christian	Managing Director, Morgan Stanley.
LUCINI, FERNANDO	Autonomy Head of Pre-sales and Chief Architect. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Lynch, Christopher	CEO of Vertica.
LYNCH, MICHAEL	First Defendant and CEO and Managing Director of Autonomy.
Lytle, Charles	Managing Director, Citibank.
Mackenzie-Smith, Simon	Chairman of Bank of America Merrill Lynch, UK.
Manners, Daniel	Director, Global PMO Manager, Deutsche Bank.
Mark, Robert	Autonomy Global Accounts Director.
Marovitz, Daniel	Managing Director, Deutsche Bank.
Martin, Alastair "Al"	Group Head of Autonomy's Technical and Customer Operations, EMEA & APAC. At the time of trial, VP, Technical Operations at Darktrace. *Witness for Dr Lynch.*

McCarthy, Michael	Autonomy Contracts Manager.
McMonigall, John	Senior member of Autonomy's Audit Committee.
Meier, Ed	Equity Analyst, Schroder Investment Management.
Meiers, John	Sourcing Leader in H&R Block's procurement department. *Witness for the Claimants (but not cross-examined).*
MENELL, PETER	Autonomy Chief Technology Officer. Currently head of R&D Technology at Invoke Capital. Member of the 'Clique' or 'Cabal'.
MERCER, NIGEL	Deloitte audit engagement partner for Autonomy (from May 2010).
Mohammadi, Rafiq	Chief Technology Officer of Interwoven; Group Chief Technology Officer of Autonomy following its acquisition of Interwoven.
Mooney, Michael	Senior Vice President, Field Sales Operations at Autonomy.
Morland, Paul	Financial analyst at brokerage firm Astaire Securities (July 2008 to June 2010) and at Peel Hunt (from June 2010). *Witness for the Claimants.*
Murali, Shailesh	Vice President, Technology Mergers & Acquisitions, Barclays Capital.
Murphy, Tony	CEO, Realise.
Murray, Tom	Assistant Manager, audit, Deloitte.
Niemier, John	Business Development Manager, Zones Inc.
Orton, Emily	Member of Autonomy's marketing department (2009 to 2010); Assistant to Dr Lynch (2010 to 2011). At the time of trial, Chief Marketing Officer at Darktrace. *Witness for Dr Lynch.*

Pao, Frank	CEO & President of Vidient Systems, Inc (and previously an Autonomy employee). *Witness for Dr Lynch.*
Pasini, Cesare	Prefect of the Vatican Library.
Patel, Dipan	Autonomy sales executive.
Pearson, Philip	Fund Manager at GLG Partners who invested in and traded Autonomy stock. At the time of trial, a Partner at Invoke Capital. *Witness for Dr Lynch.*
Perachio, Glenn	Senior Vice President of Protect, EMEA Autonomy.
Pereira, Mariana	Held roles in the marketing, R&D and sales teams at Autonomy; Director of Rich Media at Autonomy (until August 2011). At the time of trial, in the marketing department at Darktrace. *Witness for Dr Lynch.*
Perle, Richard	Member of Autonomy's Audit Committee.
Prasad, Reena	Autonomy Director, Americas Credit & Collections.
Puri, Rahul	Managing Director of Innovation and Chief Software Architect, Prisa. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Quattrone, Frank	CEO of Qatalyst Partners.
Robertson, Chris	Deloitte audit partner who oversaw the Autonomy Q1 2010 review.
Robins, Harry	Partner at Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP who advised Autonomy on merger control filing requirements in relation to its acquisition by HP. *Witness for the Claimants (but not cross-examined).*
Robison, Shane	Chief Strategy & Technology Officer of HP and Head of HP's SCD group. *Witness statement on behalf of the Claimants*

	admitted as hearsay.
Rothman, Ivan	Autonomy Senior Corporate Counsel.
Ryan, Patrick	Autonomy AVP Sales.
SARIN, MANISH	Senior Director in the Corporate Development sub-team of HP's SCD group. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Sass, Robert	Senior Vice President, North America Sales at Autonomy. At the time of trial, Managing Director, North America at Darktrace.
Sayad, Laila	CFO, VMS.
Scannell, Bill	Global Sales and Customer Operations, EMC.
Schultz, John	HP General Counsel (from 2012).
(Scott, Joel)	Chief Operating Officer and General Counsel, Autonomy US. *Evidence in US admitted as hearsay (Claimants and Defendants).*
Shelley, Philip	Co-head of Corporate Broking and UK ECM team at Goldman Sachs. *Witness for Dr Lynch.*
(Smith, Reagan)	Head of Bank of America's procurement team for software purchases. *Evidence in the US admitted as hearsay (Claimants).*
Smolek, Phil	Autonomy Senior Financial Analyst (until December 2009).
(Stephan, Matthew)	Autonomy Senior Finance Manager (2009 until early 2011). *Evidence in the US admitted as hearsay (Claimants and Defendants).*
Sullivan, Michael	CEO of Zantaz (July 2007 to 2009); CEO of Autonomy Protect (the archiving and litigation discovery division of Autonomy)

	(from 2009). *Witness Statement on behalf of the Claimants and evidence in the US admitted as hearsay (Claimants and Defendants). He gave oral evidence in the US criminal trial but not in these proceedings.*
Sunderwala, Meeta	Senior Director, Accounting Policies and M&A Reporting, in HP's EFR team.
SZUKALSKI, GARY	COO and Chief Marketing Officer of FileTek. At the time of trial, Chief Channel Management Officer at Darktrace. *Witness for Dr Lynch.*
Tejeda, Percy	Autonomy Director of Revenue in the Americas.
Truitt, Dan (brother of David and Steve Truitt)	Federal District Sales Manager, Autonomy.
(Truitt, David) (brother of Dan and Steve Truitt)	Founder and CEO of Microlink. Co-founder of MicroTech. Co-founder of DiscoverTech. *Evidence in the US admitted as hearsay (Claimants and First Defendant).*
(Truitt, Steve) (brother of Dan and David Truitt)	Chief Operating Officer of MicroTech. *Evidence in US admitted as hearsay (Claimants and Defendants).*
Uffelman, Andy	Managing Director, Operational Services Control, Charles Schwab.
Veghte, Bill	Executive Vice President, HP Software; temporarily oversaw the management of Autonomy from May to September 2012.
Walton, Charles "Woody"	Vice President of Technology, Federal at Autonomy.
WANG, ROGER	Vice President of Product Development for Digital Safe at Autonomy. *Witness for the Claimants.*
Watkins, Cynthia	Autonomy's Corporate Controller.

Webb QC, Robert	Non-Executive Chairman of Autonomy. At the time of trial, Chair of Luminance (another Invoke Capital investee company) and Darktrace. *Witness for Dr Lynch (but not cross-examined).*
WELHAM, LEE	Member of the Deloitte audit team for Autonomy (2005 to 2008); Deloitte Senior Manager on the Autonomy audit team (2008 to August 2011). *Witness for the Claimants: the only one from Deloitte.*
Wengryn, Peter	CEO, VMS.
Wharton, Tim	Co-founder of MicroTech. Co-founder of DiscoverTech (and owned a 20% stake in Microlink, out of which DiscoverTech was spun).
WHITMAN, MARGARET "MEG"	Member of HP's Board of Directors (January 2011 to September 2011); President and CEO of HP (September 2011 to November 2015); CEO of Hewlett Packard Enterprise (November 2015 to January 2018). *Witness for the Claimants.*
YELLAND, CHRISTOPHER	Autonomy CFO (April 2012 to February 2013). Autonomy Financial Controller (February 2013 to September 2017). *Witness for the Claimants.*
YAN, SAMUEL	Chief Architect in the Product Development team for Digital Safe at Autonomy. *Witness for the Claimants.*
You, Harry	EMC Executive.
Youngjohns, Robert	Senior Vice President and General Manager of HP's Autonomy / Information Management business unit (from September 2012). *Witness for the Claimants.*
Zanchini, Marco	Systems engineer in Autonomy's Milan office. At the time of trial, Cyber Defence Education Specialist at Darktrace.

APPENDIX 2

SCHEDULE OF BRIEF BIOGRAPHICAL DETAILS OF FACTUAL WITNESSES (OTHER THAN PARTIES) AND OF VARIOUS OTHER KEY PERSONS WHO DID NOT GIVE EVIDENCE

The Claimants' witnesses (listed alphabetically)

Mr Léo Apotheker

1. Mr Apotheker started working in the software business not long after he graduated from university in 1976. In 1988 he joined SAP, which has become one of the largest software companies in the world. He started as the managing director of a small SAP subsidiary, and worked his way up, eventually becoming sole CEO of SAP in May 2009.

2. Mr Apotheker was approached by HP in August 2010. At that stage HP had recently fired its CEO, Mr Hurd, in connection with allegations about expenses. Ms Lesjak, a longstanding HP executive, had been appointed as interim CEO.

3. After he was head-hunted, Mr Apotheker wrote a paper for the Search Committee (an HP committee charged with selecting the next HP CEO) to support the hypothesis that HP needed to transform its business towards enterprise software; and it was not disputed that he was selected with that in mind. He was not a Silicon Valley insider, but SAP had a substantial presence in Silicon Valley and so he was not a stranger to it.

4. He was appointed President and CEO of HP on 30 September 2010 (to take effect from 1 November 2010). He had initially been offered the position of Chairman as well as CEO, but turned down the chairmanship. In conformity with European norms and best practice, he considered it was preferable to segregate the positions.

5. At the time of Mr Apotheker's appointment, HP was a low margin traditional hardware company employing some 300,000 people with an annual turnover of about $125 billion. His view was that it needed to evolve to provide a full technology "stack" which he described as comprising *"the hardware, software and network layers that stand between the basic infrastructure of data creation, storage and distribution and the end user of information."*

6. Mr Apotheker perceived there to be special potential value in the integration of structured and unstructured data. He recognised Autonomy as one of the market leaders in unstructured data analysis. He led HP's acquisition of Autonomy.

7. His appointment was terminated by the Board on 22 September 2011, just over a month after the acquisition had been announced.

8. Mr Apotheker was the first witness called by HP and he was cross-examined for two days. His evidence primarily concerned his perception and perspective in relation to the acquisition of Autonomy.

Mr John Francis Baiocco

9. Mr Baiocco was during the Relevant Period, and remains, the Managing Partner of Capax Discovery LLC, perhaps Autonomy's most favoured of its stable of 'friendly' VARs. Capax Discovery was a subsidiary of Capax Global LLC, of which Mr Baiocco was (and remains) also effective CEO.

10. Mr Baiocco gave evidence to the Grand Jury and in the US criminal proceedings against Mr Hussain. He had his own lawyer, paid for by HP.

11. Mr Baiocco retained close links with HP after the Acquisition: for example, he was appointed to the partner advisory board of HP in 2013 and Capax Discovery became a "preferred partner" of HP at about the same time. When Mr Baiocco was first interviewed by HP's lawyers in 2013 Capax Discovery was making about $15 million a year from contracts with HP.

12. He was cross-examined in these proceedings for one day. His evidence addressed the impugned VAR and reciprocal transactions to which Capax Discovery was a counterparty, including VT2, VT3, VT4, VT10, VT16, VT20, VT21, VT27, VT28 and VT34.

Dr Sean Mark Blanchflower

13. Dr Blanchflower joined Autonomy in 2000 as a Research and Development Engineer in Cambridge after a PhD in applied mathematics and then a year of research at Trinity College, Cambridge. From the end of 2004, his job title was Head of Research and Development. He was the leader of IDOL development, though not everyone in R&D reported to him (for example, the R&D teams in the US and in the web content management division did not report to him). He reported to Dr Menell.

14. After the Acquisition he continued working first for Autonomy and then for HP. At the time of giving evidence, he was Vice President of Engineering for IDOL at Micro Focus (which had acquired the software business of Hewlett Packard Enterprise ("HPE") in 2017).

15. Dr Blanchflower attended the trial pursuant to a witness summons. His evidence predominantly addressed technical issues, and especially (a) the development of SPE; (b) Autonomy's approach to purchasing third-party software; (c) the purchase of SAT from MicroLink (though he was not aware of the purchase at the time); (d) the purchase of StorHouse from FileTek and its use thereafter; (e) the VMS transaction; and (f) the Vidient transaction. He was cross-examined for one and a half days.

Mr Harald Peter Ferdinand Collet

16. After a brief interlude at a marketing and media services company, Mr Collet (who graduated from Yale University in 2000) joined Oracle. He was there for seven years, holding the positions of Director of Global Sales Support from October 2005 to July 2006, and Senior Director of Governance Risk and Compliance from July 2006 to October 2007.

17. In October 2007, he joined Autonomy in its New York office, as Vice President of Business Development. In around May 2008, he became Head of OEM Sales in North America.

18. In June 2010, Mr Collett left Autonomy and joined Bloomberg LP and held the position of Global Business Manager for Governance and Compliance Products from July 2010 to August 2016 at which point he left Bloomberg and began a consulting practice. In January 2017, he founded a start-up company in the financial tech sector called Alkymi of which he was CEO at the time of giving evidence.

19. Mr Collet was the author of the 'Joe Bloggs' communications (see paragraphs 312 to 313 and 3235A to 3235C in the main body of my judgment) sent to various industry and financial analysts at the end of August 2011 in which he (and a colleague when at Autonomy, an engineer called Mr Alex Marshall who left Autonomy shortly after Mr Collet to join him at Bloomberg) sought to express concerns about the way in which Autonomy's OEM business was reported to the market, raising a number of questions that they felt HP should ask about its OEM revenues.

20. Mr Collet was cross-examined for a full day. His evidence primarily concerned (a) his assessment of the true nature of Autonomy's "OEM" business; (b) the basis of his concerns as communicated in the 'Joe Bloggs' communications; and (c) his account of Dr Lynch's involvement in providing misleading information to a company called Lone Pine (see paragraphs 3195 to 3207 in the main body of my judgment).

Mr David John Duckworth

21. Mr Duckworth worked for HP for more than 22 years. His job title in 2011 was Mergers, Acquisitions, Divestitures and Outsourcing ("MADO") Finance Integration Project Manager.

22. He had responsibility for the integration of Autonomy's financial systems and processes into HP's financial accounting structure following the Acquisition. That involved the "mapping" of Autonomy's financial information on a spreadsheet showing key parameters such as (a) Autonomy's various legal entities to HP's company codes, (b) Autonomy's organisational structure compared to HP's, (c) Autonomy's product lines to HP's business areas and (d) Autonomy's various general ledger accounts to HP's general ledger accounts.

23. His evidence addressed whether in that process he came to know of Autonomy's *"pure hardware"* sales, and he was cross-examined on that for about two hours: he denied any such knowledge.

Mr Christopher "Stouffer" Bradley Egan

24. After graduating with a BA in Economics from Trinity College in Hartford Connecticut in 1991, Mr Egan worked in a sales capacity for Glaxo Pharmaceuticals. In 1995 he joined Dataware Technologies, again in a sales capacity, before moving to Autonomy.

25. Mr Egan initially joined Autonomy Inc in March 2001 as a salesperson based in Boston and was given responsibility for managing sales on the U.S. east coast within

approximately six months. He was promoted to the position of Head of Sales for the entire USA within a year.

26. In 2003, he moved to San Francisco in California and from 2004 until 2012, Mr Egan was the CEO of Autonomy Inc responsible for Autonomy's sales activities in North and South America.

27. Mr Egan was principally involved in almost all of the impugned VAR transactions. Towards the end of November 2017, Mr Egan entered into a Deferred Prosecution Agreement ("DPA") with the US DoJ, in which he admitted that he was part of a fraudulent scheme to deceive purchasers and sellers of Autonomy's securities about the true performance of Autonomy's business, and that this scheme involved artificially inflating Autonomy's revenues using many of the means complained about by the Claimants. The DPA obliged Mr Egan to pay $923,391 in disgorgement and interest to resolve an action brought against him by the Securities and Exchange Commission. Under the DPA Mr Egan also admitted all facts as set out in a Statement of Facts attached to it, and promised full co-operation with the US DoJ. Any departure from the Statement of Facts or other breach of the DPA would expose him to being charged for all the conduct the subject of the DPA and any other conduct. Mr Egan testified in Mr Hussain's criminal trial as part of his agreement in the DPA to co-operate with the DoJ.

28. Mr Egan gave evidence in these proceedings via video-link from New York pursuant to a 28 U.S.C. §1782 order directing him to do so. His evidence addressed the general sales management process at Autonomy, as well as four categories of impugned transactions, namely, the VAR transactions, the reciprocal transactions, the pure hardware sales and the hybrid hosting arrangements. Mr Egan spoke to these transactions in general terms; he also spoke to a number of the specific transactions in which he had direct involvement. He was cross-examined over a video-link for three shortened days.

Mr Andrew Keir Markham Gersh

29. At the time of the Acquisition, Mr Gersh was a Managing Director at KPMG LLP, the US member firm of the KPMG network. He had been working for KPMG since 1992, first in the UK and, since 1999, in the United States. He is a qualified Scottish chartered accountant, a US Certified Public Accountant, and a licensed accountant in Massachusetts and California. As already stated, at the time of the Autonomy acquisition he was a Managing Director in KPMG; he became a Partner in October 2012. Between 2004 and 2011, Mr Gersh worked on at least 50 financial due diligence engagements for HP, all of them associated with HP's M&A activity, as well as dozens for other clients. He was familiar with both US GAAP (which was his primary expertise) and IFRS.

30. He was cross-examined for about three-quarters of a day in these proceedings. His evidence primarily related to the allegation that HP knew of Autonomy's pure hardware sales before the Acquisition, which he denied.

Mr Christopher James Robin Goodfellow

31. Mr Goodfellow joined Autonomy in October 2004 as a sales engineer and became the Europe Middle East and Africa pre-sales manager. He subsequently was in the Global

Accounts department: he claimed to be its Director, but this was disputed and unclear. He worked in Global Accounts until 2008.

32. Between 2009 and 2013, he was Chief Technology Officer of Infrastructure at Autonomy. During the Relevant Period, he worked with the Digital Safe Sales Team, Digital Safe Product Development Team, the Digital Safe Operations Team and the post-sales support team for Digital Safe customers. Organisational diagrams showed him as reporting to Mr Alastair Martin (then Group Head of Technical and Customer Operations); but he insisted that in practice he reported to Dr Menell. He was senior on the technical side, but not one of Autonomy's leaders.

33. Following the Acquisition, Mr Goodfellow became the Chief Technology Officer of HP HAVEn OnDemand and moved to Micro Focus when it acquired HPE's software business. He subsequently left Micro Focus on 28 February 2018.

34. A witness summons was issued on behalf of the Claimants to ensure his attendance at trial. He was cross-examined for two days. His evidence related primarily to Autonomy's hosting business, some of the reciprocal transactions and one of the VAR transactions.

Mr Phillip Howard Greenwood

35. Mr Greenwood graduated from the University of St Andrews in 2000 with a degree in physics and joined Autonomy as a software developer in Autonomy's Research and Development team based in Cambridge. While in that team, he initially worked on "fetches" also referred to as connectors which extract data from one system to another.

36. In 2002 he moved to another software development team within Autonomy before returning in 2005 to the connectors team to become the Head of Connectors. His main report was Mr Gallagher, who in turn reported to Dr Menell. At the time of the trial, Mr Greenwood was the Connector Team Lead at Micro Focus.

37. Mr Greenwood attended the trial pursuant to a witness summons and he was cross-examined for part of a morning. His evidence related to (a) the development of Autonomy's own *"SharePoint connector"* which enabled the extraction of data from 'SharePoint' (which is a Microsoft Office document management and storage system) and its input into another system such as IDOL, and (b) the acquisition of another 'SharePoint' connector from MicroLink. He also addressed the merits of DiscoverEngine (another SharePoint connector) which Autonomy acquired from DiscoverTech.

Mr David Humphrey

38. At the time of the trial, Mr Humphrey was CTO of Rich Media at Micro Focus. From 2005 until September 2017 (when HPE sold its software division to Micro Focus) he had been CTO of Virage, Inc ("Virage"), an Autonomy group company. Virage developed and sold Autonomy group video analytics products. Until Dr Lynch left Autonomy, Mr Humphrey in theory reported to him; but in practice he reported to Dr Menell and Mr Hussain.

39. His witness statement addressed a series of allegedly reciprocal transactions in Q4 2009-Q1 2010 (RT4 and OEM15) and Q3 2010-Q4 2010 (RT 4 and OEM 34) which are discussed in my main judgment and which related to the purchase by Vidient from Autonomy of IDOL and Virage software with funds provided by a purchase from Vidient by Autonomy of Vidient's SmartCatch software.

40. He was compelled to attend trial by witness summons and was cross-examined for about one and a half hours.

Mr Sameer Sadanand Kalbag

41. After graduating from Cornell University with a degree in Computer Science, Mr Kalbag worked at Intel Corporation, followed by Convera Corporation, the primary focus of which was on search technology.

42. Mr Kalbag joined Autonomy in August 2007 as the Vice President of Technology of the Federal Group. Towards the end of 2009, he was appointed as Account Executive of the Federal Sales Team within Autonomy, which was responsible for sales to government agencies.

43. In mid-2010, he became Director of Federal Sales, responsible for managing a small team in Federal Sales and then in around January 2011 he became interim Vice President of Federal Sales. In around June 2011, he was appointed Chief Technology Officer within Federal responsible for providing assistance to Federal Sales team members.

44. Following the Acquisition, he continued to work for Autonomy and then for Micro Focus following its acquisition of HPE's software business in September 2017. He left Micro Focus in April 2018 and at the time of giving evidence worked as the President and Chief Executive Officer of Trenzai LLC, a data analytics company.

45. Mr Kalbag was cross-examined in one day. His evidence primarily related to the Claimants' case on hosting (and in particular the aspect of it relating to e-Discovery, see paragraphs 3400 to 3448 in the main body of my judgment) and impugned VAR transactions.

Mr Hafeez Bux Daud Khan

46. Mr Khan graduated from the University of Cambridge and qualified as a chartered accountant with PwC, becoming a technology analyst, initially for Merrill Lynch and then, from 2006 to 2011, Cazenove, which was acquired by JP Morgan in 2010. From September 2011 to December 2015 he worked at Berenberg, and from 2016 to early 2018, Cannacord Genuity. At the time of this trial, Mr Khan was a Vice President of Corporate Development at WANdisco, a technology company specialising in distributed computing.

47. Having initially been bullish about Autonomy he became progressively bearish, having concluded that Autonomy was not able to sustain organic growth and was increasingly dependent on growth by acquisition. He cast doubt on the way Autonomy presented and accounted for its organic growth. His relationship with Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain, originally cordial, deteriorated and he was accused of

regulatory breaches and excluded from Autonomy Earnings Calls. Autonomy sought to portray him as ill-informed and even (when he changed his Autonomy share recommendation to "sell") "corrupt".

48. He was cross-examined about this and related matters for nearly a day. It was suggested that he had used *"non-public information"* and had tried to drive Autonomy's share price down in order to please unspecified clients with short positions by seeking to manipulate consensus, because according to one set of forecasts for Q1 2011 he had the highest revenue forecast and one of the lowest target prices. He denied this.

Mr Jonathan Paul Langford

49. After graduating from the University of Cambridge with an M.A. and an MSci in Biochemistry in 2007, Mr Langford joined Autonomy as a Development Support Engineer in July 2010.

50. After the Acquisition, between November 2011 to June 2013, he became a Technical Support Team Lead and then between June 2013 to September 2015 was Applications Support Manager. From September 2015 to the date of his evidence he held the position of Service Management Director, with a focus on the Digital Safe product set.

51. Mr Langford was cross-examined for part of one day. His evidence related to the Claimants' case on hosting.

Ms Catherine Anne Lesjak

52. Ms Lesjak worked at HP for over thirty years and at the time of the Acquisition she was Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer. Pending Mr Apotheker's appointment, between August and November 2010 she had served as Interim CEO. She was, as it were, HP born and bred and was very much committed to the company.

53. In November 2015, she became CFO of HP Inc. (when HP split into HPE and HP Inc) and at the time of giving evidence had stepped down from that role to become Interim COO.

54. Ms Lesjak was cross-examined over two days. The primary focus of her evidence was the impairment charge that HP announced in November 2012 after the Acquisition, and when she came to know of Autonomy's sales of hardware.

Mr Fernando Lucini Gonzalez-Pardo

55. After graduating with a degree in electrical engineering from the University of Kent in 1998, Mr Lucini joined an IT consultancy firm called Dataware Technologies where he held the position of Solutions Center Manager. Dataware changed its name to Leading Side and Mr Lucini remained at Leading Side until around 1999.

56. In 2000, Mr Lucini joined Autonomy working in pre-sales, Autonomy's technology selling arm whose members were known as Systems/Sales Engineers. His precise title and position within the organisation in the Relevant Period was a point of contention between the parties; but it is not disputed that during the Relevant Period, he worked

in pre-sales at Autonomy and on the technical side. It was common ground that he was of relatively high seniority amongst the technical individuals, though in describing himself as "Chief Architect" the Defendants contended that he inflated his position; he was not one of the leaders of the organisation.

57. Mr Lucini remained with Autonomy following the Acquisition and left HPE in 2016. At the time of his evidence he was the Managing Director of Artificial Intelligence at Accenture, a global professional services company.

58. He was compelled to attend trial by a witness summons and was cross-examined for two and a half days. His evidence covered principally (apart from extended questioning of his own role): (a) SPE, (b) Autonomy's approach to purchasing third party software, (c) the purchase of StorHouse from FileTek and subsequent integration work, (d) the VMS transaction, (e) the DiscoverEngine purchases from DiscoverTech, (f) the MicroTech/Vatican Library VAR transaction, (g) the Prisa "*other*" transaction and the DiscoverTech/Prisa VAR transaction and (h) the Morgan Stanley Q1 2011 hosting transaction.

Mr John Meiers

59. Mr Meiers was employed by H&R Block, a tax preparation services company, between August 2007 and January 2015. He had previously worked for DST Output, a subsidiary of DST Systems, Inc, where his role included managing complex IT and manufacturing systems.

60. When he joined H&R Block he was employed as an IT Contracts Project Manager. In March 2008, he became Sourcing Leader in H&R Block's procurement department, and in that role he was responsible for negotiating all of H&R Block's in-bound software licensing agreements.

61. Mr Meiers provided a witness statement on behalf of the Claimants, but the Defendants decided not to cross-examine him. His evidence, which was thus unchallenged, principally concerned his negotiation of a $2 million software deal with Autonomy, and in particular the fact that when negotiating that deal, he was not told and was unaware that just three months earlier, Autonomy had been involved in the resale of hardware by Zones Inc to H&R Block. This (unchallenged) evidence was relied on by the Claimants as further support for their case that there was no real linkage between Autonomy's hardware reselling and its software sales: see paragraphs 1159 to 1182 in the main body of this judgment.

Mr Paul Gilmer Morland

62. Mr Morland started working as an analyst in 1994, and began focusing on technology stocks when technology emerged as an independent sector from 1998 onwards. He started covering Autonomy in 2005 when working at Société Générale. He covered Autonomy throughout the Relevant Period as an analyst first at Astaire Securities, and then (from June 2010) at Peel Hunt. Thereafter, he was self- employed, before moving to Arden Partners in October 2014. He joined Canaccord Genuity in February 2016 where he remained at the time of the trial.

63. Like Mr Khan he was initially bullish about Autonomy but after mid-2009 he increasingly began to question Autonomy's results and accounts, resulting in Autonomy accusing him of making a *"knowingly false accusation"* that Autonomy was *"misaccounting"*, and (falsely) suggesting he was in possession of inside information. Mr Kanter escalated this into a complaint to the FSA.

64. Mr Morland's evidence in his witness statement was directed to explaining why he came to doubt Autonomy's accounting and especially (a) its *"organic growth"* figures, (b) its change to the way it structured its hosting contracts which *"flattered"* its true performance and accelerated receipts at the expense of longer term revenue and (c) its overly aggressive revenue recognition and its poor cash conversion rate. Mr Morland was fiercely attacked in his cross-examination over the course of a full day and it was alleged (for example) that, in bad faith, he tailored his reports to assist clients holding short positions.

Mr Rahul Puri

65. Between May 2010 and September 2013, Mr Puri was the Managing Director of Innovation and Chief Software Architect at Promotora de Informaciones S.A., a Spanish media conglomerate known in these proceedings as Prisa, which was presented as the proposed end-user in the context of a VAR sale by Autonomy to DiscoverTech (see VT30 and paragraphs 591 to 707 of the Schedule of Impugned VAR Transactions).

66. Mr Puri gave evidence about one of the "other transactions" impugned by the Claimants, a transaction between Prisa and Autonomy in Q4 2010. He also gave evidence in respect of impugned VAR transaction VT30, to the effect that (a) he had not even heard of DiscoverTech and DiscoverTech had not at any time contacted Prisa, until 2018 when he was testifying in the US criminal proceedings and (b) the software which was the subject of the VAR sale (e-Discovery software) would not have been of any interest to Prisa. Mr Puri was cross-examined in these proceedings for about one hour.

Mr Harry T. Robins

67. Mr Robins was at the time of the trial (and I assume still is) a partner in the New York office of Morgan, Lewis & Bockius LLP ("Morgan Lewis"), which has acted in the US for HP in connection with HP's investigation into Autonomy and the subsequent US criminal proceedings, but also advised Autonomy on US merger control filing requirements relating to its acquisition by HP/Bidco.

68. Mr Robins provided a witness statement in which he addressed a suggestion made by Dr Lynch that on 16 and 17 August 2011 (very shortly before the acquisition was announced) Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain sent Morgan Lewis spreadsheets detailing Autonomy's revenue breakdown for 2009 and 2010, including hardware revenue, and that the information thus provided to Morgan Lewis is attributable to HP. Mr Robins made clear that Morgan Lewis was at that time and for that purpose acting for Autonomy and not HP, and that the spreadsheets were not forwarded to HP's antitrust advisers, Freshfields. The Defendants did not require Mr Robins to attend to be cross-examined and his evidence was not challenged.

Mr Shane V Robison

69. Mr Apotheker was assisted by Mr Robison, the Chief Strategy & Technology Officer and Head of HP's Strategy and Corporate Development Group ("SCD"). Mr Robison was in favour of the strategy to move further into enterprise software.

70. Mr Robison had worked as a staff engineer at Evans & Sutherland, a computer graphics company before moving to Schlumberger to work on artificial intelligence in 1984. He later worked at the Advanced Technology Group at Apple, where he became the Vice President and General Manager of the Personal Interactive Electronics Division. In 1995 he joined Cadence Design Systems which produces software to design integrated circuits and chips before joining AT&T Labs as President of Internet Technology and Development.

71. In 2000, he joined Compaq as the Chief Technology Officer and Head of Corporate Strategy. In May 2002, Compaq was acquired by Hewlett-Packard Company and he became the Chief Strategy & Technology Officer of Hewlett-Packard Company and Head of HP's SCD from mid 2002 until 20 October 2011.

72. Mr Robison made a witness statement which was adduced into evidence under a hearsay notice. He did not attend at trial for medical reasons.

Mr Manish Sarin

73. Before joining HP, Mr Sarin had been a Director in Merrill Lynch & Co's Technology Investment Banking Group. He has an MBA from Columbia Business School.

74. He joined HP in the SCD team and became a Senior Director in February 2010. He reported to Mr Andy Johnson (HP's Head of Corporate Development) who in turn reported to Mr Robison. (Mr Robison reported to Mr Apotheker.)

75. At the time of giving his evidence, Mr Sarin had left HP and was Vice President of Proofpoint Inc, an enterprise security company in California.

76. Mr Sarin was cross-examined over two days. His evidence principally concerned his role in the due diligence process and in the SCD's assessment of Autonomy's results and in assessing and valuing Autonomy for the purpose of assisting HP's leadership.

Mr Michael Sullivan

77. Mr Sullivan co-founded SteelPoint Technologies Inc ("SteelPoint") which specialised in the management of unstructured information and litigation support services. SteelPoint was founded in 1993 and was acquired by Zantaz Inc in 2004. Mr Sullivan was made Senior Vice President of Operations and Services of Zantaz, responsible for the delivery of all software and services to customers. In 2009, following the acquisition of Zantaz by Autonomy in 2007, he became and remained CEO of Autonomy Protect, the archiving and litigation discovery division of Autonomy.

78. After the acquisition of Autonomy by HP in October 2011, he held the position of Senior Vice President of Information Management and Governance, responsible for Autonomy's SaaS business.

79. From 1 September 2017, upon HPE's software business being spun out and merged with Micro Focus, he oversaw the information management and governance product portfolio at Micro Focus, reporting directly to the CEO. In November 2017, he left Micro Focus to become CEO of a different company.

80. Mr Sullivan gave evidence in the US criminal proceedings but (being resident outside the jurisdiction) he was not willing to, and did not, appear before me. His witness statement was adduced as hearsay evidence. No order was sought for video-link evidence.

Mr Roger Wang

81. Mr Wang began working as a program manager for Verity Inc, a search technology development company, in 2002. In 2008, following the acquisition of Verity Inc by Autonomy in 2005, he was promoted to Vice President of Product Development for Digital Safe, reporting to Dr Menell.

82. He left Autonomy in or around January 2013. At the time of this trial Mr Wang worked as a Senior Product Manager at BitGo Inc.

83. Mr Wang was cross-examined for two days. His evidence related principally to the Claimants' case in relation to hosting and the impugned reciprocal transactions with FileTek.

Mr Lee Peter Welham

84. Mr Welham joined Deloitte in 2002 and qualified as a chartered accountant in 2005. From late 2005 to 2011, he was a member of the Deloitte audit team for Autonomy. Through the period of 2008 to August 2011, he was a Senior Manager on the Autonomy audit team. He was made a Partner at Deloitte in 2016.

85. Mr Welham was the only person from Deloitte who gave evidence in these proceedings. He was cross-examined for a full three days in relation to all Deloitte's audit work in the Relevant Period.

Ms Margaret ('Meg') Cushing Whitman

86. Ms Whitman is a graduate of Princeton and Harvard Business School. She had held executive roles at a number of large companies including Walt Disney and Proctor & Gamble. She also served as CEO of eBay from 1998 to 2008. Between 2009 and 2010 she ran unsuccessfully for Governor of California.

87. In January 2011, she joined the Board of Directors of Hewlett-Packard Company before succeeding Mr Apotheker as President and CEO in September 2011.

88. Following Hewlett-Packard dividing into Hewlett-Packard Enterprise Company and HP Inc in November 2015, she became CEO of HPE, stepping down on 31 January

2018. She also served as Chair of the Board for HP Inc from November 2015 to July 2017.

89. Ms Whitman was cross-examined over two days. Her evidence was directed towards Dr Lynch's criticisms of the way HP handled the integration of Autonomy after the Acquisition and the Defendants' case that when the write-down was announced HP had no basis for its amount, and the exercise was one of the new board abdicating its responsibility and seeking to shift any blame on HP's side to Messrs Apotheker and Robison.

Mr Samuel Hald Yan

90. Mr Yan joined Zantaz Inc in October 1998 as a Systems Architect and Director of Development for Digital Safe. Following Autonomy's acquisition of Zantaz in July 2007, he was appointed Chief Architect of the Product Development Team for Digital Safe. In the Relevant Period, Mr Yan was one of the lead engineers in the Digital Safe Product Development team, reporting to Mr Wang.

91. Following the spin-off of HPE's software business to Micro Focus in September 2017, he remained in the Product Development team.

92. Mr Yan was cross-examined over two days, principally in respect of the Claimants' allegations relating to Autonomy's hosting business, and the theoretical and practical viability of moving Digital Safe on-premise.

Mr Christopher Henry Yelland

93. Mr Yelland was Autonomy's CFO from April 2012 until February 2013. After graduating from the University of Warwick he joined Arthur Andersen and qualified as a Chartered Accountant. He worked there for three and a half years before becoming a tutor at the Financial Training Company training people to become accountants. In 1995, he joined the Rover Group. He moved to Compaq in January 2000. In April 2004, after Compaq's merger with HP, he was appointed Finance Manager of HP's UK software and enterprise[551] storage and servers business. In 2007 he became the Finance Director of HP's Personal Systems group in the UK and Ireland. In September 2010, he was promoted to Finance Director of HP's EMEA Software business, and in April 2012, after the Acquisition, he was promoted to be CFO in Autonomy. From February 2013 to September 2017, he was Autonomy's Financial Controller. After Micro Focus had acquired HPE's software business (effective on 1 September 2017), he became Vice-President of Finance at Micro Focus, with responsibility for group Financial Planning and Analysis.

94. Mr Yelland's witness statement primarily related to his experience as CFO of Autonomy from April 2012, including the "rebasing" exercise conducted in June- July 2012 and its enquiry into Autonomy's historical financial performance, preparing various revised business forecasts, and preparing ASL's 2011 statutory accounts and restated 2010 financial results.

95. Mr Yelland was cross-examined for more than a day. His cross-examination focused principally on his perceptions of the "rebasing" exercise.

[551] HP's "enterprise" business focused on the provision of hardware (such as servers, network infrastructures and storage devices), software, and services to large commercial businesses.

Mr Robert Harold Youngjohns

96. After graduating from the University of Oxford, Mr Youngjohns worked for IBM for 17 years before working at Sun Microsystems Inc as Executive Vice-President of Global Sales and later Executive Vice-President of Strategy. Mr Youngjohns then held the position of President and CEO of Callidus Software before joining Microsoft Corporation in 2007 as President of Microsoft North America.

97. On 17 September 2012, he joined Autonomy as Senior Vice President and General Manager of HP's Autonomy/ Information Management business unit. In May 2014, he was promoted to Executive Vice President and General Manager of HP Software.

98. In December 2016, Mr Youngjohns left HP Software and has since founded his own investment and advisory firm with a focus on software and services industries.

99. Mr Youngjohns' evidence was directed towards Dr Lynch's allegations that HP mismanaged the integration of Autonomy. He was cross-examined for about half a day.

The First Defendant's witnesses (listed alphabetically)[552]

Mr Donald Leonard Avant, Jr

100. Mr Avant only joined Autonomy in mid-July 2011, less than a month before the Acquisition was announced. His title when he joined was Group Head of Operations and his evidence was that, as such, he oversaw a group of 400 to 450 people which had *"responsibility for all Autonomy functions in the post-sales space, including professional services, training, and technical support services."* He continued to work for Autonomy for five years thereafter. Since November 2017, he has been employed by Darktrace, in which he is a shareholder.

101. His witness statement discussed (a) Autonomy's provision of services using third party partners; (b) the utility of a licence to use and run Digital Safe on-premise; (c) what he called *"HP Autonomy Culture",* and what he perceived to be the *"dysfunction [which] grew during the time of HP's ownership"*; and (d) his *"observations"* on Autonomy's agreement with Prisa. However, and unsurprisingly given that he had not been working for Autonomy at the time and had had no active role, his 'evidence' was largely interpretation and surmise.

102. Mr Avant was cross-examined for just over an hour. There was no reference to or reliance placed on Mr Avant's evidence in the Defendants' closing submissions.

Mr Eloy Avila

[552] Of these, none provided a witness statement in the first round of evidence.

103. Mr Avila joined Autonomy in January 2004 as a sales engineer. He became Chief Corporate Architect in September 2009, before being promoted to Chief Technology Officer (Americas) in May 2010, and subsequently became the worldwide CTO in November 2010, a position he held until June 2013, when he became the Vice President of Worldwide Pre-Sales for Big Data, a division within HP software. He held this role until he left HP in September 2015. He is currently employed by Darktrace as its CTO for the Americas, a position he has held since April 2018.

104. After being promoted to worldwide CTO, Mr Avila reported directly (and regularly) to Dr Lynch. Before then he reported to Mr Lucini and Dr Menell (more often, the latter). His witness statement covered (a) Autonomy's general rule or philosophy of preferring to develop its own software rather than buying in third party software; (b) SharePoint connectors; (c) the practical feasibility of moving Digital Safe on-premise; (d) SPE; (e) Filetek Storhouse; (f) VMS; and (g) post-acquisition and corporate culture.

105. Mr Avila was cross-examined on all these issues and gave evidence over the course of two days.

Ms Michele (previously Anthony) Bettencourt

106. Ms Bettencourt (who before and when working for Autonomy was known as Anthony) joined Verity Inc in 1995 as a Vice President in its sales department, was promoted to the position of President and ultimately served as its CEO from 2003 to December 2005 (when Verity Inc was acquired by Autonomy). Ms Bettencourt worked within the Autonomy group from January 2006 until October 2009, focusing first on the integration of Verity Inc and thereafter on various acquisitions and potential acquisitions. Ms Bettencourt headed up the integration process of (a) Zantaz Inc when Autonomy bought Zantaz Inc in July 2007, and (b) Interwoven Inc after its purchase by Autonomy in March 2009, before leaving Autonomy in December 2009.

107. Ms Bettencourt provided a witness statement on behalf of Dr Lynch. Its main object was to address the doubts raised in the witness statements for the Claimants casting doubt on the development costs and substance of SPE: her evidence set out her awareness of and involvement in Autonomy's plans to grow its structured data capability, SPE having been developed for that purpose. However, Ms Bettencourt accepted that she was not personally involved in the development of SPE or the acquisition of other technology to develop Autonomy's move into structured data.

108. Ms Bettencourt also explained that she had been involved in preliminary approaches to two potential targets for Autonomy, namely TIBCO and Informatica, and before she left Autonomy had been *"working to improve relations between the companies with a view towards a possible merger or acquisition."* The Claimants chose not to cross-examine her.

Mr Jonathan William Bloomer

109. Mr Bloomer was formerly CEO and CFO at Prudential Plc, having trained and qualified as an accountant and auditor at Arthur Andersen where he became a partner in 1987 and remained for 20 years. Whilst at Prudential Plc, he was appointed the

Chairman of the Practitioner Panel at the Financial Services Authority. He then became a partner at Cerberus European Capital Advisors and founder and CEO of Lucida Plc from 2006 to 2012. He had served on the audit committee at both RT Group plc and Hargreaves Lansdown plc. He became a non-executive director of Autonomy in August 2010.

110. In September 2010, Mr Bloomer became the first permanent chair of Autonomy's Audit Committee. Prior to Mr Bloomer's appointment: (i) there had not been a permanent chair of the Committee, but its members had instead served as chair on an *ad hoc* basis; and (ii) none of the members of the Committee was an accountant or had any formal accountancy training,[553] which was unusual: Mr Bloomer said that the majority of Audit Committee chairs in listed companies would be qualified chartered accountants.

111. Between his appointment and the acquisition of Autonomy by HP, Mr Bloomer chaired four meetings of the Committee held on the following dates: (i) 18 October 2010, in relation to Q3 2010; (ii) 28 January 2011, in relation to FY/Q4 2010; (iii) 19 April 2011, in relation to Q1 2011; and (iv) 25 July 2011, in relation to Q2 2011. The other members of the Audit Committee over this period were Mr Frank Kelly and Mr John McMonigall.

112. During his tenure as chair, meetings of the Audit Committee were also attended by Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter, Mr Chamberlain, Deloitte and occasionally Mr Webb QC. In his witness statement, Mr Bloomer stated that Mr Mercer "*and occasionally more junior members of the Deloitte team*" attended the Audit Committee meetings but, in fact, the minutes show that Mr Welham attended three of the four meetings chaired by Mr Bloomer.

113. In his evidence about the Audit Committee meetings, Mr Bloomer addressed hardware sales and revenue recognition, VARs, Reciprocals, COGs, account receivables and provisioning. He was cross-examined for three-quarters of a day.

Ms Vanessa E. Colomar

114. Ms Colomar joined Autonomy as Head of Communications in August 2011. She thus had no relevant evidence to give in respect of the pre-Acquisition period. The focus of her evidence was thus on HP's statements to the market in November 2012.

115. Ms Colomar resigned from Autonomy in late May 2012 and shortly thereafter joined Invoke Capital as a Partner and its Head of Communications and Investor Relations. Invoke Capital's website described her as a "founding partner" but she denied that she was, insisting that she *"joined Invoke in September when it was fully formed"* and was not involved in setting it up. She also sits on the boards of Darktrace and Luminance. Throughout the course of the trial, she was responsible, along with the Brunswick Group, for Dr Lynch's PR in relation to these proceedings.

---

[553] In addition to Mr McMonigall, the previous members of the Committee were Mr Barry Ariko and Mr Richard Perle. Mr Ariko was a former executive of several computer and software companies. Mr Perle was former US Assistant Secretary of Defense.

116. Ms Colomar was cross-examined for one hour. Her evidence concerned Dr Lynch's Counterclaim, and is of very limited relevance since in light of my conclusions on the main claim the Counterclaim has fallen away.

117. Of suggested relevance to the main claim, she was taken to documents to show that, in the lead up to the 20 November 2012 announcement by HP, Dr Lynch was making preparations "*in case we really get blamed*", and he requested that Ms Colomar prepare a "*red secret list*" for that eventuality. Ms Colomar told me that she had no idea what Dr Lynch had meant by "*red secret list*", but nor could she recall whether she had sought clarification from Dr Lynch as to what he was referring. The Claimants submitted that this is implausible: Dr Lynch had instructed her to produce the list and she would have acted on that instruction, either producing the list or, if she had been under any uncertainty, seeking his clarification. That seems to me to be credible: but I need make no finding. Ms Colomar was almost invariably in court during the trial; but she was a peripheral witness.

Mr Stephen John Cooke

118. Mr Cooke joined Slaughter and May in 1982, became a partner in 1991, headed its Merger & Acquisitions practice from 2001 to 2016 and at the time of the Trial was its Senior Partner. Slaughter and May was approached by Autonomy in October 2010 (on the introduction of Mr Webb QC) and Autonomy confirmed its intention to appoint the firm as defence counsel in the event of a potential takeover. Autonomy engaged Slaughter and May to advise on the HP acquisition in July 2011. Mr Cooke led the team.

119. In his witness statement on behalf of Dr Lynch, Mr Cooke confirmed that (a) if Autonomy was seeking a buyer for the company in late 2010 and early 2011, he was not aware of that; (b) he was not aware of Autonomy seeking to prevent specific information going to HP; (c) he was not personally involved in the drafting of either a non-disclosure agreement (dated 3 March 2011) or a draft exclusivity agreement (signed by HP on 29 July 2011), but he was aware that Slaughter and May advised the removal of terms sought by HP to impose a requirement for Autonomy to provide all information requested by HP, so that in the result Autonomy never agreed to grant such unrestricted access (which he confirmed also would *"as well as being completely unacceptable to nearly all sellers, be highly unusual in a UK takeover bid").* He also confirmed that he was not directly involved in the due diligence process.

120. The Claimants did not require Mr Cooke to attend for cross-examination, and so his witness statement was not challenged.

Ms Poppy Gustafsson (whose maiden name was Prentis)

121. Ms Gustafsson began working at Deloitte in September 2004 and was assigned to the Autonomy audit soon after she joined. She left Deloitte in April 2008. She joined Autonomy's finance department in June 2009, working on the costs side of the business, before transitioning to work on the revenue side at the end of 2009. She left Autonomy shortly after its acquisition by HP in 2011, and co-founded Darktrace in June 2013. At the time of her evidence she was co-CEO of Darktrace with Ms Eagan.

She was also a substantial shareholder in Invoke, with shares worth around $15 million.

122. Ms Gustafsson accepted that she remains a "*good friend*" of Mr Hussain's, whom she regards as a "*mentor*". She suggested that she had "*no personal loyalty*" to Dr Lynch; but she accepted that he was "*the founding money behind*" Darktrace, a company she set up and of which she was, at the time of her evidence, co-CEO. Indeed, she maintained that she was motivated to "*come and tell [her] side of the story*" because she did not think that Dr Lynch's "*perspective has always been fairly represented*". She was sometimes too obviously an advocate for the Defendants.

123. She gave evidence in relation to (a) the conduct of Deloitte's audits and relationship with Autonomy; (b) her perception of the purpose and strategic rationale of hardware sales, and the reasons why no separate disclosure was considered necessary; (c) her understanding of Autonomy's transactions with VARs, and the issues raised about revenue recognition; (d) her understanding of SPE (she was not involved in its technical development, but her evidence was that she recalled it being talked about and celebrated) and its shipment to VMS; (e) her involvement in accounting for Autonomy's hosting transactions, Autonomy's purpose in adopting the so-called "hybrid model" and her emails, on which she was cross-examined, suggesting that her view was that Autonomy should *"steer clear of upfront payment"* unless it achieved accelerated revenue recognition; and (f) her experience of processes within Autonomy for the collation and monitoring of time sheets and labour costs.

124. Ms Gustafsson was cross-examined for a little less than one and a half days.

Ms Elizabeth "Lisa" Jane Harris

125. Ms Harris qualified as a chartered accountant with KPMG in 1987. She commenced employment with Autonomy on 1 April 2005, working on costs accounting in the finance team. From August 2005, when Mr Steve Chamberlain joined Autonomy, she reported to him. She was made Group Financial Controller in 2009. She worked for Autonomy in the same role after the Acquisition but left in February 2013. After three months gardening leave she left to work for an Invoke Capital company.

126. Her evidence covered (a) Autonomy's finance department functions and structure; (b) Deloitte's role and the audit process as she perceived it, and her impression of their work; (c) her awareness of Deloitte's investigation of the allocation to 'Sales and Marketing' of the costs of loss-making hardware sales (in which she was not herself involved); (d) her awareness of but separation from VAR sales notwithstanding having to approve payments of MAF; (e) her involvement with the sales team in paying staff expenses, commissions and salaries; (f) her perception of work post-Acquisition and on the various exercises to integrate Autonomy's accounting systems and processes into HP's and (in the case of the *"rebasing exercise"*) to find any errors and (as Ms Harris put it) *"prove things were incorrect"* and (driven by Mr Yelland) *"to look for any, and every, little mistake";* and (g) her view that a number of people within HP (including Mr Yelland and Mr Duckworth) were aware of hardware sales from the ledger codes.

127. She was cross-examined for (in all) about one day. Her cross-examination also covered an allegation against her that after she had determined to leave, but whilst still employed by Autonomy, she copied on to a USB drive/ pen drive copies of Autonomy's and HP's confidential documents. She shared this with Mr Hussain because she considered that the documents held on the pen drive showed that HP knew of the hardware sales. She was also cross-examined on an attendance note of an interview of her by HP's lawyers which she claimed was inaccurate (which she addressed in a second witness statement also).

Ms Martina Ann King

128. Ms Martina King had worked at Yahoo and then pursued a *"plural career"* until she joined Aurasma UK (an Autonomy group company) in May 2011 as its Head. She resigned in May 2012 and subsequently joined Invoke Capital.

129. Her witness statement addressed: (a) her experience of working with Dr Lynch (about whom she spoke very highly) and in the work environment he cultivated and (b) HP's interaction with Aurasma (which she maintained HP did not understand or seek to foster and support, and with which HP struggled).

130. Ms King was cross-examined for a little less than one hour.

Mr Alastair James Martin

131. Mr Martin joined Autonomy in September 2004 as a sales engineer, having graduated from the University of Sheffield with a 1st class degree in Computer Science. His role became increasingly managerial, and by the time of Autonomy's acquisition by HP/Bidco his title was Group Head of Technical and Customer Operations, EMEA & APAC which in practice meant that he oversaw Autonomy's sales engineers in EMEA and Asia. He described this role as *"technical customer facing",* which he intended to mean that he *"worked a lot on the support side, helping customers with their technical issues."* He was not in product development but asserted familiarity with *"the technical language"* such that he *"could liaise between Autonomy's developers and our customers."* After leaving his role at HP in 2015, he joined Darktrace. He gave evidence for Dr Lynch.

132. Mr Martin's witness statement addressed a broad variety of the claims against Autonomy. His evidence was in summary that, contrary to the Claimants' case (a) it was not accurate to say that Autonomy never bought software from third parties (and he provided examples of such purchases to the contrary) (see paragraph 2417(3) of the main body of my judgment); (b) there were good reasons why there was customer demand for a connector made by MicroLink which Autonomy acquired from it, and for a product called DiscoverPoint Engine which Autonomy acquired from DiscoverTech; (c) it was not the case that software sold by Autonomy to Tottenham Hotspur plc was of no use to it until Autonomy provided a full 'solution' (cf paragraph 3744 in the main body of my judgment); (d) Prisa made full and substantive use of software it acquired from Autonomy (see paragraph 3767(7) and footnote 473 in the main body of my judgment); (e) SPE was a real and valuable product for which there was real customer demand and which was incorporated as a module of the IDOL platform (see paragraphs 3623 to 3624 of the main body of my

judgment); and (f) Digital Safe was capable of being used by a customer on-premise and there was no difficulty in training Sales Engineers to assist customers to do so (though see paragraph 3377(5) in the main body of my judgment). He also described the differences in the working ethos of Autonomy compared to that of HP.

133. There was considerable overlap and some repetition between Mr Martin's evidence and that of Mr Avila (to the point that certain passages were identical). The Claimants submitted that in cross-examination (over the course of just over an hour) Mr Martin *"was frequently willing to speculate on matters beyond his ken, but was unwilling to accept the obvious (for example, that either he or Mr Avila had copied the other's witness statement)."*

Ms Emily Orton

134. After graduating from Cambridge University in 2009, Ms Orton started working at Autonomy in September 2009 as a graduate European Marketing Executive in the marketing department in London. From early 2010, for around 18 months, she worked as Dr Lynch's assistant, before returning to the marketing department in various roles. By the time she left Autonomy in the summer of 2012, she had become the European Marketing Manager. She then joined Invoke Capital as a Senior Associate. She later became Head of Marketing at Darktrace, and then Darktrace's Chief Marketing Officer. She has been rewarded by around 1.5% of the equity in Invoke Capital, and shares and options in Darktrace in *"life changing"* amounts.

135. Ms Orton's witness statement addressed (a) her perception of Autonomy's workplace culture and contradicted Mr Youngjohns' witness statement disparaging it; (b) her experience of working for Dr Lynch, and her perception of Mr Hussain (though she did not work directly for him); (c) her understanding more generally of Dr Lynch's role and activities, which she described as involving him spending some 50% on *"public facing matters",* leaving little time to deal with internal operational matters, and his relationship with line managers such as Mr Lucini. She mentioned that *"Operationally, while in the office, Dr Lynch was more inclined to be involved with marketing strategy…particularly ensuring the messaging was correct."* She also offered her evidence that *"After the acquisition, to my knowledge there were no tangible steps to integrate the companies."*

136. She was cross-examined for part of an afternoon predominantly on (a) the extent of Dr Lynch's control of expenses and day to day matters and his way of working, and (b) her perception that HP's senior management barely involved themselves in Autonomy after the Acquisition.

Mr Frank Pao

137. Mr Pao, who had formerly been employed by Autonomy, joined Virage as its CEO (see also the short description of Virage's CTO, Mr Humphrey, above) before it was purchased by Autonomy in 2003, remained there for a little over four years, and then left to become Chief Executive Officer and President of Vidient Systems, Inc ("Vidient"). He held that role for approximately three years. Vidient (which designed and developed search and surveillance products) went out of business in November 2010.

138. Mr Pao's evidence was in response to Mr Humphrey's evidence and addressed a series of transactions which the Claimants impugned as reciprocal and which Mr Pao had made on behalf of Vidient.

139. Mr Pao was cross-examined over the course of one morning. The Claimants accepted his evidence on the negotiations that led to the allegedly reciprocal transactions (where consistent with the contemporaneous documents), whilst rejecting and inviting the Court to disregard what they described as his *"speculation and attempts to insulate the Defendants."*

Mr Philip Michael Pearson

140. Mr Pearson, a good personal friend of Mr Hussain, initially worked at UBS and then managed a technology hedge fund at GLG Partners ("GLG") (one of the largest hedge funds in Europe at the time), where he worked from late 2001 to the summer of 2015. He began following Autonomy in 1999 (while still at UBS) and continued to do so at GLG. GLG invested in Autonomy and made at least £20 million from HP's acquisition. He became a partner at Invoke in May 2017, and at the time of giving evidence sat on the board of two of its investments: Darktrace (a company in which he also has a personal shareholding) and Featurespace.

141. His witness statement addressed: (a) how Autonomy was perceived by analysts and the market; (b) methods of valuation (and EPS v DCF models); (c) the relevance of organic growth and the valuation of Autonomy; (d) how disclosure of hardware sales would have affected the perception and valuation of Autonomy; (e) his understanding of "OEM derived revenues" and the value placed on them (his thesis being, contrary to the rest of the evidence, that OEM revenue was a less valuable stream, though when cross-examined he conceded this was his personal and not a market view); and (f) market perception of the constitution of Autonomy's IDOL Cloud revenue. Some of his evidence appeared to be in the nature of opinion evidence, often without reference to supporting evidence or documents.

142. He was cross-examined over the course of a morning.

Ms Mariana Mato Machado de Paiva Pereira

143. Ms Pereira joined Autonomy in September 2008 as a Marketing Executive, an entry level role in the marketing department. In her short (4-page) witness statement she described her primary role as having been product marketing, including supporting the demo team by producing short marketing videos. She worked with the research and development team and the sales team during the period 2008 to October 2009. She then moved to San Francisco as the director of 'Rich Media'.

144. She resigned from Autonomy in September 2011 and moved to Brazil, freelancing for a time until she was hired by HP Brazil in 2012 for a few months, before she left to study for an MBA. After obtaining her MBA degree she worked at Heinz and then started her own company. She then joined Darktrace's marketing department in September 2017 at the request of Ms Eagan (Autonomy's Chief Marketing Officer), with whom she had worked when at Autonomy.

145. The purpose of her evidence was to respond to the evidence of Dr Blanchflower and Mr Lucini concerning the development of SPE and to explain her role in that respect. This came down to having produced a video to demonstrate the product's capabilities and also having worked (indirectly) on its launch. She felt able to say that IDOL SPE *"was a genuine product which followed the normal path of development…".* She was cross-examined for less than 30 minutes. The cross-examination confirmed that she had little direct involvement (even, for example, in the press releases) in SPE, and none at all before September 2009. She was a peripheral witness; the Claimants submitted that the decision to call her simply highlighted the failure to call Ms Eagan.

Mr Philip John Shelley

146. Mr Shelley was the co-head of Corporate Broking at UBS for several years prior to September 2010, and then joined Goldman Sachs in December 2010 as co-head of their combined Corporate Broking and UK ECM[554] team. Whilst at UBS he covered a range of clients as corporate broker, including Autonomy. UBS continued in its role as Autonomy's corporate broker (sharing that role with Citibank) after Mr Shelley left; but in around May/June 2011, Goldman Sachs was appointed as Autonomy's third corporate broker. Mr Shelley left Goldman Sachs in May 2015 and joined Barclays in June 2015 as Vice Chairman of European Banking. He left Barclays in February 2018 and founded his own company, Arlington Capital Markets, Ltd., which (he explained) *"advises companies on how best to communicate their strategy and proposition to potential investors."* Mr Shelley has no ongoing business connections with Dr Lynch.

147. Mr Shelley's witness statement contained a useful analysis of Autonomy's shareholding constituency (and he noted especially that some 60% of its shares were held by its top 20 shareholders) and addressed (a) his view of how the market regarded Autonomy (largely positive with a belief in the potential of IDOL for sustained market penetration, but with a particularly vocal negative constituency too); (b) his perception of Autonomy's approach to reporting (which he regarded as generally transparent); (c) his views on the 'negative analysts' (especially Mr Morland and Mr Khan); (d) his reaction on learning subsequently of the extent of Autonomy's hardware sales (he said he was not *"shocked or astonished"*); (e) his view that the constitution of Autonomy's OEM sales was not a particular area of interest for analysts and investors; and (f) his lack of any recollection of any market questions or discussions regarding the composition of revenues from hosting deals included in IDOL Cloud.

148. He was cross-examined for just over half a day. I have dealt with points emerging in my judgment. The Claimants pointed out that the Defendants did not refer to Mr Shelley's evidence at all in their closing submissions.

Mr Gary Gerard Szukalski

554 European Capital Markets.

149. Mr Szukalski worked for FileTek from January 1986 until August 2000, then for Verity (where he continued after its acquisition by Autonomy at the end of 2005) until 1 January 2009 when he re-joined FileTek as its President.

150. His witness statement addressed allegedly reciprocal transactions with Autonomy whereby FileTek purchased Autonomy software and Autonomy purchased FileTek's StorHouse software. He also addressed a reciprocal VAR transaction with Autonomy for end-user USDVA.

151. The Claimants made a number of points in support of their contention that *"Mr Szukalski's witness statement was not entirely satisfactory."* Although Mr Szukalski stated in his witness statement that he had "*read the witness statement of Stouffer Egan*" and purported to comment on certain paragraphs in Mr Egan's statement, it emerged in cross-examination, however, that Mr Szukalski had not been provided with a copy of Mr Egan's witness statement prior to signing his own witness statement, and therefore had not read it. Although Mr Szukalski initially appeared to say that he was given excerpts from Mr Egan's witness statement to comment on, he later clarified that he had not read the witness statement "*until fairly recently*" and so "*didn't read these witness statements prior to putting together my witness statement*". Rather, someone from Dr Lynch's legal team had sought to give Mr Szukalski the gist of what was stated in Mr Egan's witness statement. Mr Szukalski also was not shown the transcript of the testimony of Mr Loomis (FileTek's CEO and CFO) in the US criminal proceedings before signing his witness statement, even though Mr Szukalski's statement was presented as part of Dr Lynch's reply evidence (served in the supplemental round), by which time the Claimants had already put in a hearsay notice in respect of Mr Loomis' testimony. Furthermore, it emerged during cross-examination that, prior to signing his witness statement, Mr Szukalski was not shown any contemporaneous documents to refresh his memory, apart from the single email cited in the statement itself. The Claimants submitted that the unsurprising result was a witness statement that was inaccurate in material respects, and needed to be corrected during examination-in-chief. It failed faithfully to convey the reality of Mr Szukalski's recollection of events, as it emerged during his oral evidence.

152. Mr Szukalski was cross-examined for just short of a day and a half. His depiction in the course of cross-examination of FileTek's role as being that of a *"fulfilment partner"* with no real role or intended participation in any onward sale to an end-user was relied on by the Claimants. Indeed, although Mr Szukalski was called by Dr Lynch, the Claimants invited me to attach *"very significant weight to the oral evidence of Mr Szukalski."*

Mr Robert Stopford Webb QC

153. After a successful career as a barrister, Mr Robert Webb QC was General Counsel at British Airways Plc (1998 to 2009) and Rolls Royce Plc (2012 to 2015). He also held non-executive directorships and chairman positions with various British companies, including The London Stock Exchange (2001 to 2015), the BBC (2007 to 2012) and Argent Ltd (2009 to 2012). He became non-executive Chairman of Autonomy in mid-2009 and continued in that position until the Acquisition. At the time of the trial he was Chairman of Darktrace and Luminance (amongst other roles).

154. Mr Webb's witness statement responded to (and contradicted) Mr Robison's evidence that in 2011 Autonomy's management was trying to find a buyer for the company, and also provided (a) his perception of the culture at Autonomy; (b) his impression of the way Mr Hogenson's concerns were addressed (his impression being that *"Mr Hogenson was being given the opportunity to say everything he had to say…"*); (c) his understanding of the extent and purpose of Autonomy's sales of hardware; and (d) his assessment of the views of analysts and how Autonomy addressed their questions.

155. The Claimants chose not to cross-examine Mr Webb.

The following individuals did not provide any evidence but played key roles

Mr Stephen Chamberlain

156. Mr Chamberlain was an ex-Deloitte Chartered Accountant. He joined Autonomy as the Vice President of Finance in August 2005. He was based in Cambridge, where the main group finance function was based. Ms Anderson (ex-Deloitte), Ms Gustafsson (ex-Deloitte), Ms Harris (ex-KPMG) and Mr Stephan (ex-Deloitte) all worked in the finance department and reported to Mr Chamberlain. All finance teams in group companies elsewhere also reported to him. He reported to Mr Hussain.

157. Mr Chamberlain was described by Mr Welham in his witness statement as his *"main point of contact throughout the audit and review processes"* and the *"first point of contact for many requests from the Deloitte audit team for information."* In his first witness statement, Dr Lynch described the Finance Department as being *"headed by Stephen Chamberlain"*, though when cross-examined Dr Lynch suggested that Mr Hussain (as CFO) headed the department and Mr Chamberlain *"would be the number two."* It seemed to me that Mr Chamberlain had day to day control of the department, whilst Mr Hussain oversaw Autonomy's operations, with Dr Lynch: Mr Chamberlain was the energetic *aide de camp* to the general staff. He was (with Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter) directly and closely involved in the due diligence process.

158. He left Autonomy in March 2012. Following his departure, he was appointed as the COO of Darktrace. Dr Lynch has maintained personal contact with him and is paying his legal fees in the ongoing US criminal proceedings.

159. The Claimants described Mr Chamberlain as being *"all over the documents"*. He was part of the core management team and what I have called the "clique" or "cabal". I would have been interested in and greatly assisted by his evidence. He did not provide any.

160. The explanation offered was that he had been indicted by the US DoJ and also charged by the FRC in this country with acting dishonestly and/or recklessly (as well as failing to act with competence and due care). Neither had happened in September 2018 when the first round of witness evidence was served. Dr Lynch told me he did not know whether there was any reason why Mr Chamberlain could not have given a statement.

Ms Nicole Eagan

161. Ms Eagan was Chief Marketing Officer at Autonomy and (as Dr Lynch acknowledged) a member of Autonomy's core management team. She was one of the individuals from Autonomy who helped Dr Lynch set up Invoke Capital. She was, at the time of her witness statement, co-CEO (with Ms Gustafsson) of Darktrace and on its board.

162. She had direct knowledge concerning the sales and marketing of SPE whereas the individual called to speak to that (Ms Pereira) did not.

163. I would have expected her to be called as a witness; and, as in the case of Mr Kanter, she provided a witness statement and was included as a witness in every version of the trial timetable prior to late August 2019, slated to be cross-examined for one day. Not until a letter from Clifford Chance dated 22 August 2019 was it indicated that Ms Eagan (again like Mr Kanter) would not be giving evidence at trial. Dr Lynch suggested that (like Mr Kanter) Ms Eagan declined to appear in light of the continuing investigations being made of them by the US DoJ.

Mr Brent Hogenson

164. At the time of Autonomy's acquisition of a company called Interwoven in 2009, Mr Hogenson was its Vice-President of Finance. Following that acquisition, Mr Hogenson became CFO for Autonomy in the Americas and was based in Autonomy's office in San Jose.

165. Mr Hogenson did not give evidence in these proceedings. However, his contemporaneous expressions of concern especially about the way Autonomy accounted for its sales to VARs (and in particular, Capax Discovery) were well documented, as was how Dr Lynch dealt with them. The *'Hogenson Episode'*, as the Claimants referred to this aspect of the matter (see paragraphs 2232 to 2289 in the main body of this judgment, also led to revealing exchanges with the FRRP/FSA (see paragraphs 2290 to 2336 *ibid.*).

166. Autonomy and Mr Hogenson concluded a settlement agreement (executed on 19 November 2010) pursuant to which Mr Hogenson was paid $750,000. One of the terms of the settlement required Mr Hogenson to deliver an affidavit, which he did. The affidavit was calculated to give the impression that Mr Hogenson had recanted.

167. Read closely, however, Mr Hogenson preserved his position: the most he stated was that he did not consider himself an "*expert*" in IFRS, as distinct from US GAAP, that he "*would not have had access to the complete books and records of the company*" and that, as a result, he "*would not have been in a position to reach conclusions on all of the matters that I raised*" and understood that "*some of the matters I raised <u>may have</u> been wrong <u>or</u> immaterial*" (emphasis added).

Mr Andrew Kanter

168. Mr Kanter is admitted to practice law in California and in his early career was an associate at US law firms in California and London.

169. He was employed by Autonomy Systems Limited a wholly owned subsidiary of Autonomy Corporation Plc from July 2000 to May 2012. From 2001, he served as Autonomy's Chief Operating Officer and General Counsel and in 2012 as Chief Operating Officer only. He was closely involved in many of the impugned transactions. I have described him as one of the members of the 'clique' or 'cabal' through whom Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain effectively ran the Autonomy group.

170. Mr Kanter formally resigned from Autonomy in May 2012 and helped to form Invoke Capital as a founding partner in July 2012. He remains employed by Invoke Capital.

171. Mr Kanter provided a witness statement on behalf of Dr Lynch and it was envisaged that his cross-examination might take four days. I would have been assisted by his evidence. As it was, following Dr Lynch's evidence, Dr Lynch's solicitors gave notice that Mr Kanter's lawyers had informed them that he would not be testifying and they had decided not to seek to compel his attendance (though his address was given as being a residential address in London in his witness statement).

172. Reports in the press suggested that Dr Lynch's team had made the decision not to call Mr Kanter (or Ms Eagan). On the other hand, Dr Lynch suggested that Mr Kanter (like Ms Eagan) declined to appear in light of the continuing investigations being made of them by the US DoJ. In any event, he was not called and his witness statement was withdrawn without further explanation.

Mr Richard Knights

173. Mr Richard Knights was the Deloitte audit engagement partner in respect of the 2008 and 2009 financial statements for Autonomy as well as for the quarterly review work during that period. He shared partner responsibility for the first quarter 2010 work with Chris Robertson. He was involved in all the auditing decisions and discussions in that period.

174. However, Mr Knights gave no evidence in these proceedings, even though a Settlement Agreement the Claimants entered with Deloitte in April 2016 gave the Claimants unusual control over him as a potential witness: cl.6 gave them the right (inter alia) to require Mr Knights to prepare for and attend interviews, sign statements and attend voluntarily as a witness at this trial. I would have been assisted by his evidence. The Claimants' explanation for not calling him is that he was involved in the disciplinary proceedings brought against him by the FRC, which included allegations that Mr Knights breached the fundamental principle of integrity.

Dr Peter Menell

175. Dr Menell worked as Autonomy's Chief Technology Officer from 2004 to 2010. He became Autonomy's Chief Research Officer ("CRO") in November 2010. He was based in Cambridge.

176. Dr Menell was one of the members of what I have called "the clique" or "the cabal". He signed off technological justifications for a number of Autonomy's reciprocal purchases (which I have determined were largely spurious).

177. At the time of trial Dr Menell worked for Invoke Capital. He was one of those involved in the setting up of Invoke Capital.

178. Dr Menell did not give evidence during the trial. I would have been assisted by his evidence. When Dr Lynch was asked if there was a good reason for the failure to call Dr Menell as a witness, he alluded to a "*personal*" matter which should not be referred to in open Court and then said, "*I guess you would call it a medical issue*". This was never further explained or substantiated.

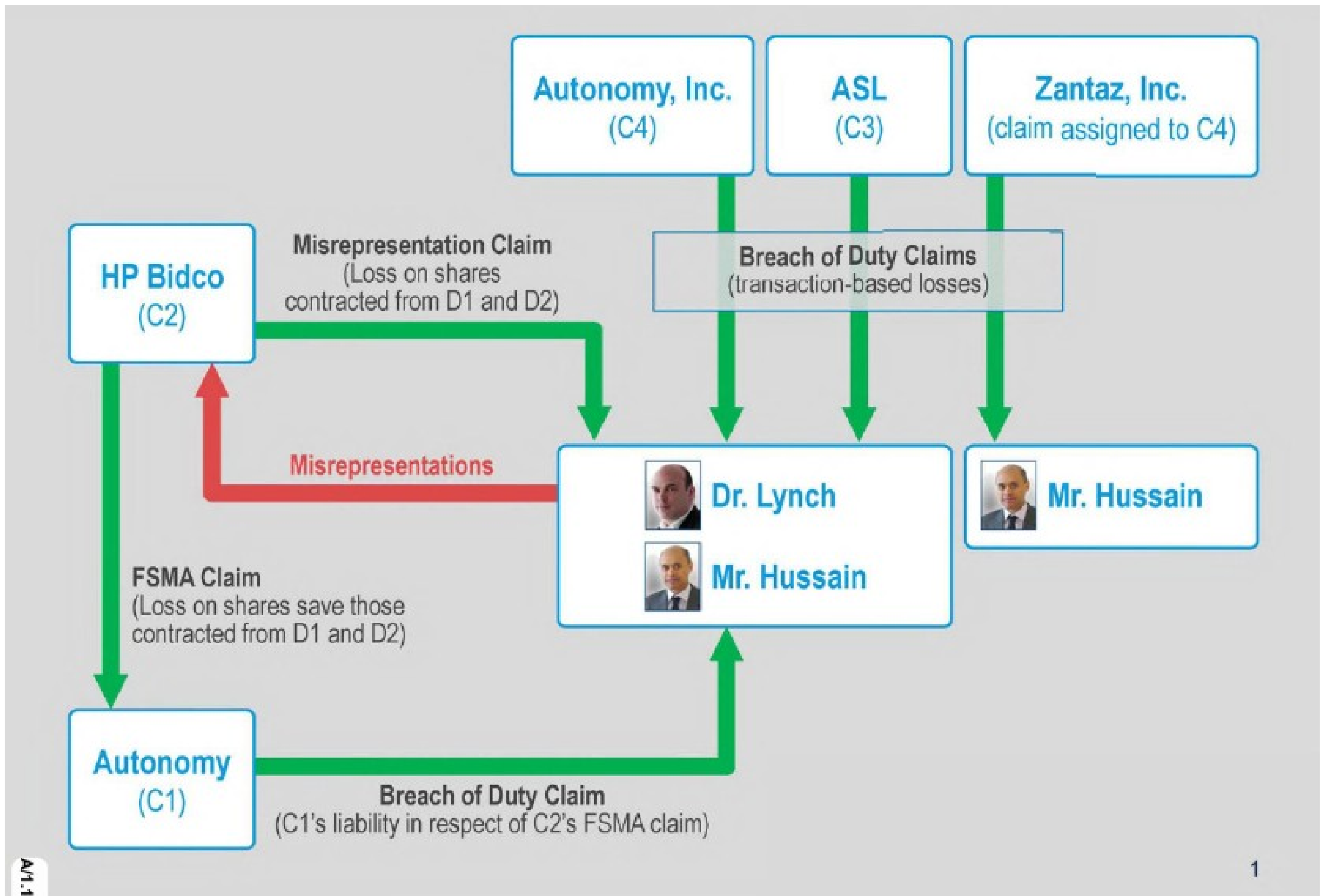
Mr Nigel Mercer

179. Mr Mercer worked for Deloitte and took over responsibility as audit engagement partner on the Autonomy account in around May 2010 and was responsible for Q2 2010 through to Q2 2011.

180. Mr Mercer was as such involved in the audit decisions in that period. His name again appeared on many documents and he was referred to repeatedly in the course of the evidence; and he was involved in all the important accounting decisions at the time. Mr Bloomer gave evidence about his discussions with Mr Mercer before and at Audit Committee meetings. Mr Mercer too was required by the Settlement Agreement to co-operate with the Claimants and, if they wished, to provide them with a statement and appear voluntarily at the trial.

181. However, he gave no evidence in these proceedings: the Claimants cited the same reason that the FRC had brought disciplinary proceedings against him, though the allegations against him did not include any breach of the fundamental principle of integrity.

APPENDIX 3



APPENDIX 4

Chart 1: Reported Revenue in each Quarter of the Relevant Period

Chart 2: Impact of undisclosed pure hardware revenue and revenue claimed to have been recognised improperly

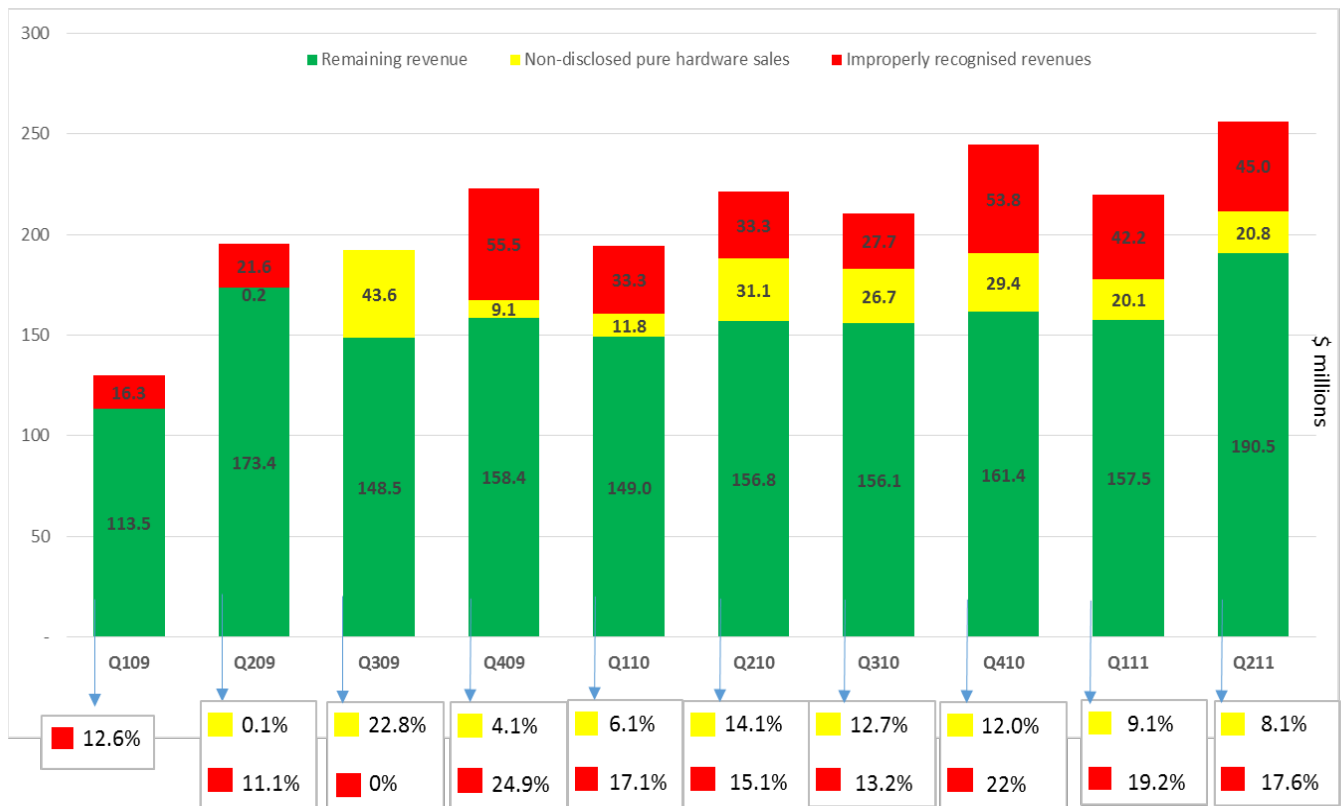


Chart 3: Revenue performance relative to market expectations

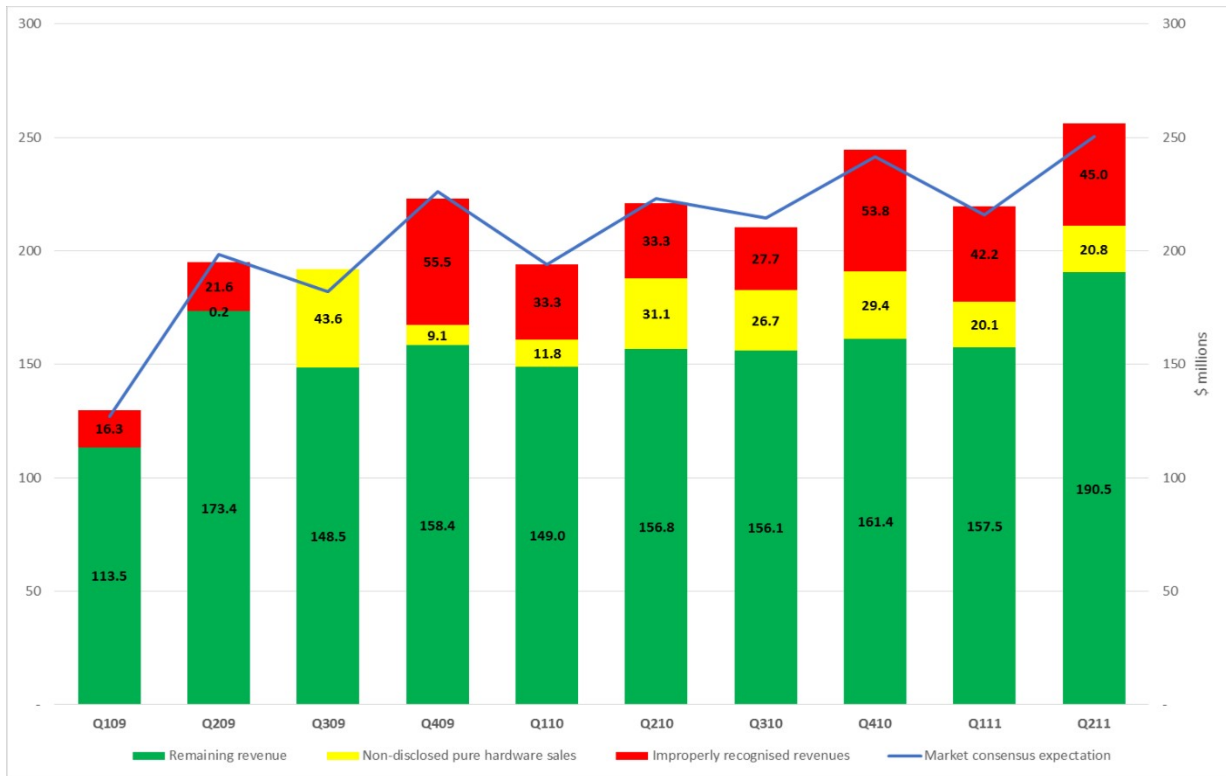
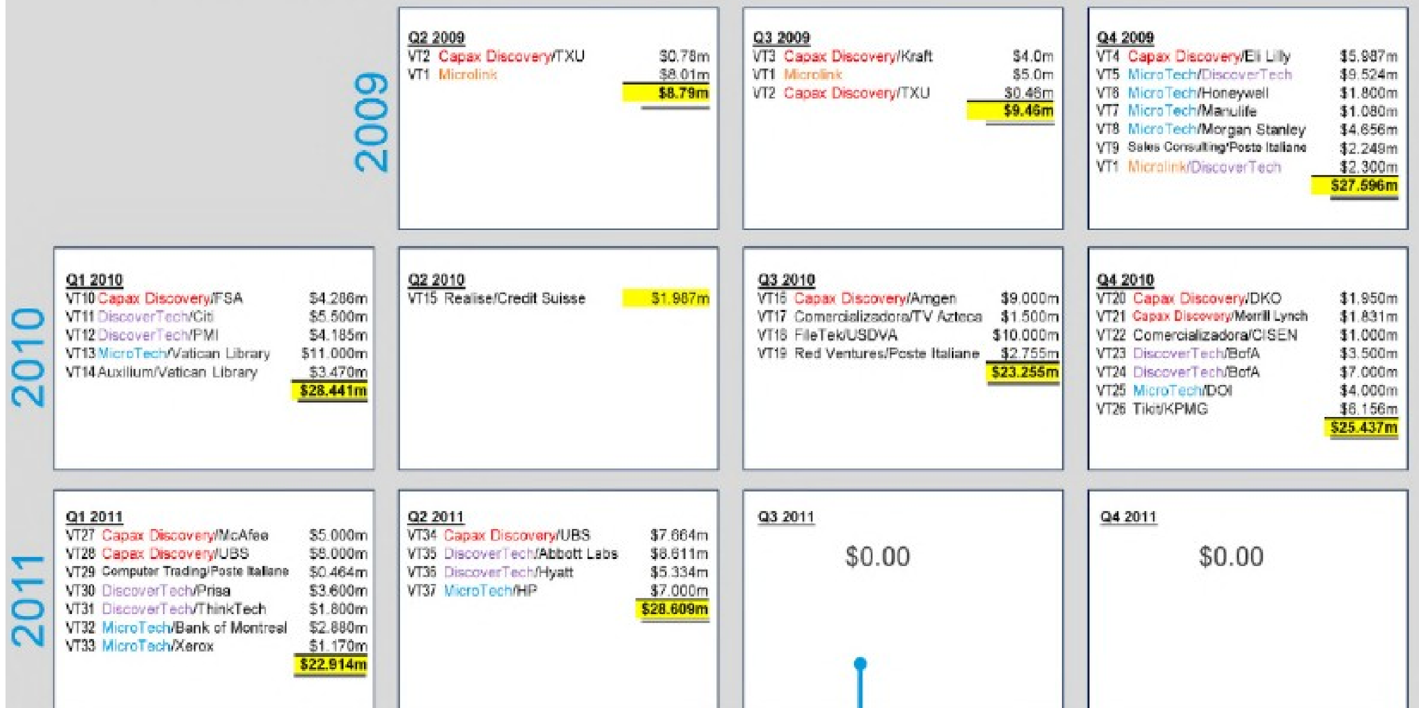


Chart 4: Overview of yearly revenues in the Relevant Period

APPENDIX 5



APPENDIX 6

THE APPROVED FINAL JUDGMENT [2022] EWHC 1178 (Ch) WAS HANDED DOWN ON 17 MAY 2022 . IN THE CASE OF ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THAT APPROVED JUDGMENT AND THE SUMMARY OF CONCLUSIONS SET OUT BELOW AND PROVIDED ON 28 JANUARY 2022, THE APPROVED JUDGMENT PREVAILS.

(1) ACL NETHERLANDS B.V. (AS SUCCESSOR TO AUTONOMY CORPORATION LIMITED)
(2) HEWLETT-PACKARD THE HAGUE BV (AS SUCCESSOR TO HEWLETT-PACKARD VISION BV)
(3) AUTONOMY SYSTEMS LIMITED
(4) HEWLETT-PACKARD ENTERPRISE NEW JERSEY, INC

-v-

MICHAEL RICHARD LYNCH AND SUSHOVAN TAREQUE HUSSAIN

SUMMARY OF CONCLUSIONS OF MR JUSTICE HILDYARD - 28TH JANUARY 2022

This summary

1. I will summarise my key findings in the statement I am about to make. This is a public statement. However, I will also deliver by 8pm today to the parties' legal representatives, but only to them, a copy of my draft judgment setting out much more fully the reasons for my conclusions. **That draft will remain at all times strictly embargoed.**

2. Neither that draft, nor any part of its contents, is to be made available to persons other than those on the lists notified by the parties' legal representatives to me, and agreed by me. **Any breach of the embargo would be a contempt of court**. My final judgment will be handed down after the usual process of checking and correction is completed. As the judgment is of considerable length, that will take longer than usual. That is the

principal reason for this summary of my conclusions today. As with any summary, it may not entirely capture what the much longer document is intended to convey. If there is any conflict between this summary and my judgment as finally delivered, my judgment will prevail.

3. Even this summary of the draft is not short. Copies can be made available. But I do not wish to cause unnecessary suspense. I will start by saying that the Claimants have substantially succeeded in their claims in these proceedings. Quantum will be determined in a later judgment, but I would anticipate that, although substantial, it will be considerably less than claimed.

The proceedings

4. These proceedings relate to acquisition ("the Acquisition") for approximately $11.1 billion in cash of the entire issued share capital of Autonomy Corporation Limited ("Autonomy") by a special purpose vehicle called Hewlett Packard Vision BV, which was incorporated in the Netherlands for the purpose of the Acquisition . I will refer to the acquisition vehicle as "Bidco". By a merger in 2018, all of the assets and liabilities of Bidco were transferred to the Second Claimant.

5. The Acquisition was declared wholly unconditional on 3 October 2011, and completed on 5 January 2012.

6. The fallout from the Acquisition has spawned not only these proceedings, but also at least two sets of criminal proceedings in the Northern District of California, USA. One has led to the conviction of the Second Defendant (hereafter "Mr Hussain"), for wire fraud under US legislation, and he has been imprisoned. He could not attend this trial. The First Defendant, (hereafter, "Dr Lynch") has been indicted in a further set of criminal proceedings in Northern California, in respect of which the US authorities now seek to extradite him to face trial there.

7. All of the assets and liabilities of Autonomy, including all claims it has against the Defendants, were transferred to the First Claimant in 2017.

8. The real bidder and acquirer, through Bidco, was Hewlett Packard Company ("HP"). HP was the ultimate holding company in the Hewlett Packard group, one of the first companies to set up in Silicon Valley and since then a household name.

9. Autonomy was and is an English company. Autonomy acted as a holding company for a group of companies, all in the business of infrastructure software ("the Autonomy group").

10. Autonomy was founded in 1996. It was spun out of a company called Cambridge Neurodynamics, which was an early venture into using "machine learning" to develop software techniques which Dr Lynch had explored in his PhD thesis at Cambridge University and his subsequent research fellowship in "adaptive pattern recognition".

11. Autonomy, and in particular its core product called IDOL, was the creation of Dr Lynch. IDOL is an acronym for Intelligent Data Operating Layer. IDOL was the core technology at the heart of nearly all of Autonomy's software. IDOL technology was focused on the analysis of unstructured data.

12. Put shortly, using IDOL technology, computers could make sense of unstructured data. There are two types of data: structured and unstructured. Structured data is found in spreadsheets or in prescribed fields in a database. When data is entered into a database it is easily searchable. Unstructured data is data that is not contained in the prescribed fields. Most data is unstructured. Books, newspaper articles, websites, voice recordings, videos and indeed, most forms of communication comprise unstructured data. Unstructured data is obviously much more difficult for computers to interpret and analyse. In 2009, the vast majority of computer software could only process structured information. It was Autonomy's ability, using IDOL technology, to handle unstructured information that set it apart. HP chose barely to acknowledge this in the course of the proceedings, but IDOL was, in words attributed to Meg Whitman, who became CEO of HP, "almost magical"

13. In consequence, by the beginning of the period to which the contested accounting information related, Autonomy had grown from a small start-up into a market leader in enterprise technology, especially in the field of unstructured data analysis. It went public in 1998, with an initial listing on the EASDAQ. It was admitted to the official list of the LSE in November 2000. It joined the FTSE 100 in 2008.

14. The Autonomy group was highly profitable. It generated annual revenue of about $900 million, collected all the cash it reported, and (as an illustration) held cash reserves of $1.1 billion at the close of 2010. Its customers included blue-chip companies in every sector. In 2011, based on market capitalisation, it was the largest British software company.

15. On the other side of the Atlantic, HP was a giant company, with an annual turnover of $130 billion, but it was in the doldrums. Its focus and reputation had remained in hardware, where margins are very tight. A new CEO, Mr Apotheker, wished to change this. He was wanting to effect what he called "transformational change" by the acquisition of a software company to drive a reorientation of HP towards high margin software. Software margins can be well over 60%.

16. However, when, together with other changes in HP's business, the Acquisition was announced, the markets reacted badly. Just over a month later Mr Apotheker was removed. The Defendants' case is that the claim was "manufactured" to cover and justify a change of corporate mind, and to cast the Defendants as scapegoats for what in reality is buyer's remorse coupled with management failings. The Claimants' case is that they were fundamentally misled.

Brief summary of the basis of each Claimant's claim

17. Before giving a brief summary of the various claims, I would note some matters of terminology:

    17.1. Throughout this summary, unless stated to the contrary, I use the term "the Claimants" as a shorthand to denote the Claimant making the particular claim. The Claimants do not in reality make any claims jointly. I should also clarify

that in terms of describing the acquirer, I use the descriptions HP and Bidco interchangeably. I shall explain why later by reference to an issue in the case which was called the *'Bidco point'*.

17.2. My references to "Autonomy" in the context of the various impugned transactions are by way of short-hand. In the context of an impugned transaction the reference is intended to denote (unless otherwise stated) whichever of the Autonomy group companies was the contracting party.

17.3. References to the "Defendants" are to whichever of the two of them is alleged to have been implicated in wrongdoing. I have sought to identify them individually when issues arise as to that individual's knowledge or involvement. On almost all other matters, Mr Hussain adopted Dr Lynch's arguments.

18. I shall now very briefly summarise the claims. The Claimants' essential complaint in respect of the Acquisition is that they were induced into making the Acquisition by dishonest statements and omissions in Autonomy's published information, and other representations made personally by the Defendants. The Claimants have in these proceedings accused both Defendants of fraud.

19. There are also other claims which do not relate to the Acquisition, but to alleged breaches of duty on the part of the Defendants whilst directors or shadow directors of Autonomy group companies.

The First Claimant's claim

20. By far the largest of the claims is brought under Schedule 10A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 ("the FSMA claim"). The gist of the FSMA claim is fraud on the part of the issuer (Autonomy) in respect of statements or omissions in its published information on which the Claimant relied in making an investment decision. It is claimed that "*persons discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuers"* ("PDMRs") knew those statements or omissions to be untrue or misleading, or to amount to the dishonest concealment of a material facts. (An issuer's "published

information" is specially defined but for present purposes the ordinary meaning it conveys will suffice.)

21. The FSMA claim depends on establishing first that Autonomy was liable (as issuer) to Bidco, and second, accordingly (as explained below) that the Defendants were liable to Autonomy.

22. It is not disputed that both Defendants were, for the purposes of the FSMA claim, PDMRs within the meaning of Schedule 10 A of FSMA (and previously section 90 A (4) before it's amendment). The basis for the issuer's liability is fraud on the part of at least one PDMR.

23. It may at first blush seem surprising that the claimant in the FSMA claim is the First Claimant, ACL Netherlands BV, which is the successor to Autonomy. Autonomy might appear to be suing in respect of its own fraud. The explanation is that its claim is in the nature of what is sometimes called a "dog leg claim". It is to recover from the Defendants the loss that Autonomy suffered by having (voluntarily) accepted liability for a claim brought by Bidco against it to recover its losses in having been induced to enter into the Acquisition.

24. The amount of accepted liability by Autonomy to Bidco is the sum of $4.55 Billion USD. That is therefore the principal sum which the First Claimant claims from the Defendants.

25. The reason for the "dog leg" structure of the claim is that under Schedule 10A of FSMA, only the issuer of published information is liable to persons induced to make investment decisions in reliance on dishonest statements or omissions in that published information. The position was the same under the equivalent provision of FSMA, section 90 A (3) which applied until 30 September 2010 and which Schedule 10A replaced. But a claim by HP against Autonomy would be of no benefit to HP since HP owned Autonomy. What HP/Bidco needed was recourse against the Defendants. Crucially under FSMA, an issuer can seek to lay off its own liability by suing key management persons called PDMRs on the basis that they were responsible for, or at least had knowledge of, the falsities.

26. To enable HP/Bidco to sue the Defendants, the following steps were taken.

    26.1. HP/Bidco notified its claim to Autonomy.

    26.2. Controlled by HP, Autonomy (whose assets and liabilities are now held by the First Claimant) has admitted liability to Bidco (whose assets and liabilities are now held by the Second Claimant). The Claimants have accepted that this admission does not bind the Court. That liability has to be determined.

    26.3. Autonomy then blamed and sued the two Defendants, who are both admitted to be PDMRs, for the loss.

27. No objection in principle was made by the Defendants to the 'dog-leg' nature of the claim, although every part of its substance is contested. The Defendants' case is that Autonomy had no liability to Bidco and should not have submitted to its claims.

28. Bidco's FSMA claim was thus founded upon allegations that, when proceeding with the Acquisition, HP and therefore Bidco reasonably relied on Autonomy's published information, which contained untrue and/or misleading statements and/or dishonestly concealed material facts which were wrongly omitted from the published information.

The Second Claimant's claim

29. The Second Claimant claims an aggregate principal amount of $420 million against Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain for false representations which it claims were made by them to HP/Bidco knowingly and/or recklessly and/or without reasonable belief in the truth thereof, and which they claim induced the Second Claimant to purchase shares in Autonomy from the First and Second Defendants. Those false representations include reaffirmations of the false statements within the published information.

30. The damages are claimed pursuant section 2(1) of the Misrepresentation Act 1967 and/or the tort of deceit.

The Third and Fourth Claimants' claim

31. The Third and Fourth Claimants claim against the Defendants for direct losses suffered by them in loss-making transactions which they claim Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain caused them to enter into in breach of their fiduciary duties or employment contracts.

32. These claims do not arise out of the Acquisition, but out of the Defendants' management conduct. The losses occasioned by those transactions are estimated by the Third and Fourth Claimant to amount to $76.1 million:

33. In the case of Dr Lynch, the claim is pursued against him as shadow director or assumed fiduciary of Autonomy Systems Limited (hereafter "ASL") and as an officer of Autonomy Inc, pursuant to the Companies Act 2006.

34. In the case of Mr Hussain, the claim is pursued against him as director of ASL under the Companies Act 2006 and under his contractual and fiduciary duties as an employee of ASL in respect of the Fourth Claimant. Those losses include those of another group subsidiary Zantaz Inc ("Zantaz"), the cause of action to which was assigned to Autonomy Inc on 31 October 2014. This is pursued against Mr Hussain on the basis of breach of his fiduciary duties as a director and officer of Zantaz.

The Defendants

35. Dr Lynch was the Director of Autonomy from the time of its incorporation in 1996 up until 30 November 2011. Throughout the period with which this litigation is concerned, he was the driving force and leading figure within Autonomy.

36. Mr Hussain was the Autonomy Group's Chief Financial Officer from June 2001 until 30 November 2011 and was a director of Autonomy from 1 June 2003 until 30 November 2011.

The fraud alleged

37. The fraud alleged, which underlies the legal heads of claim arising out of the Acquisition (the FSMA claim, the direct fraud and/or Misrepresentation Act claims, as distinct from the breach of duty claims for transactional losses) consisted of the

publication of information to the market which was known by the Defendants to be false.

38. The allegation was based on (a) the allegedly dishonest description of Autonomy as being a "*pure software company"* when in fact it undertook and had become accustomed to inflating what appeared to be the revenues of its software business by undertaking substantial hardware sales and (b) the allegedly dishonest presentation of its financial performance, which did not disclose (and instead disguised) improper practices which Autonomy adopted to boost and accelerate revenue.

39. The Claimants contended that all this resulted in Autonomy being in fact a considerably less valuable enterprise than it appeared on the basis of its published information.

40. These alleged improper practices included:

40.1. artificially inflating and accelerating Autonomy's revenues;

40.2. understating Autonomy's costs of goods sold by characterizing such costs as sales and marketing expenses so as to protect gross margins;

40.3. misrepresenting Autonomy's rate of organic growth; and

40.4. misrepresenting the nature and quality of Autonomy's revenues as well as overstating its gross and net profits.

Financial Services and Markets Act claims

41. In the FSMA claims, it is common ground that the Claimants need to make good their case at each stage, ie the liability of Autonomy, and the fraud by the PDMRs .

42. They have accepted also that each of Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain will not be liable except in respect of misstatements or omissions by the issuer about which he himself knew. It is not sufficient for the Claimants to demonstrate that the transactions or the way that they were accounted for was improper (the first limb). They need also to prove personal knowledge and dishonesty in respect of the false accounting on the part of the Defendants as PDMRs (the second limb).

43. As far as Bidco is concerned, the Defendants contended that no liability was owed to it because no representations were made to it, and it placed no reliance on any statements made. This is the *Bidco point* to which I have referred earlier. I have found that, if the necessary elements are made out, Bidco (and therefore the Second Claimant) have a valid claim (both under FSMA and in respect of direct fraud and Misrepresentation Act 1967 claims against the Defendants).

44. I have accepted the Claimants' argument that the fact that it was HP which claims to have been influenced by Autonomy's published information (and specific representations) and that it was HP which undertook due diligence, does not mean that Bidco cannot satisfy this part of the reliance test. For the purpose of the acquisition, HP can be treated as the controlling mind of Bidco, and HP's reliance can be treated as Bidco's reliance.

Direct Fraud and/or Misrepresentation Act 1967 claims against the Defendants

45. The claims for fraudulent misrepresentation and/or under section 2(1) of the Misrepresentation Act 1967 are direct claims against the Defendants: they are based on personal liability, not on the liability of the issuer.

46. Specific representations are averred against the Defendants which in many cases traverse the same territory as the FSMA claims. The quantum of those claims is much lower than the FSMA claims: the damages sought relate only to loss attributable to the shares and share options which the Defendants themselves each held and sold to Bidco. The pleaded quantum of this loss is $420 million. Any sum recovered under this head of claim will be in the alternative to the FSMA claim. There cannot be double recovery.

47. A point which may be of general interest is that it is no defence to a FSMA or a fraud claim that the claimants had the means of discovering the truth. No defence of contributory negligence is available. Thus, even if (though I have made no finding that it was) HP's due diligence were considered to be rushed and deficient, and HP might

have been expected to unearth and probe further into matters about which complaint is now made, that would not be a defence. It would be beguiling but wrong to think that the answer could be "caveat emptor". Of course, had I found that HP was in fact aware, before the Acquisition, of the matters of which complaint is now made, that would be different, for in those circumstances it could not say that it had reasonably relied on what it saw and read. But I have found that it was not actually aware and that its reliance was reasonable.

Breach of Duty Claims brought By Autonomy Companies Against the Defendants

48. The claims for transactional losses based on breaches of fiduciary and employee duties stand on a different footing. They do not arise in consequence of the Acquisition (except in the sense that they would almost certainly not have been brought if the Defendants still directed Autonomy). They are claims for direct losses suffered by Autonomy Inc, Autonomy's main operating company in the US, incorporated in 1996 (now the Fourth Claimant) and another group subsidiary called Zantaz as a result of the Defendants' breaches of duty in causing the relevant subsidiary to enter into the impugned transactions without regard to the interests of that subsidiary.

49. The Claimants accept that in the ultimate quantification of loss, they must give credit for a recovery of $45 million made in a settlement of related claims (against Autonomy's auditors), after deducting the cost of such claims and any tax payable in respect of the settlement sum.

Factual basis: the FSMA and direct fraud and / or Misrepresentation Act claims

50. In relation to the first two of the three legal heads of claim that I refer to above (that is to say, in relation to the FSMA and direct fraud and Misrepresentation Act claims), the factual basis of the claims relate to six areas of Autonomy's business and accounting. These claims, each of which is substantial, are very briefly described below.

    50.1. The "**hardware case**" relates to the purchase and resale by Autonomy (usually at a loss) of "pure" hardware (in broad terms, hardware unaccompanied by any Autonomy software) in quantities (of over $100 million). The Claimants

allege that these transactions were never disclosed to the market that by boosting apparent revenue, they gave a false impression of the performance of Autonomy's business. The Claimants say that they belied its presentation in its published information as a *pure software company.* The hardware case also raises issues as to (a) whether a proportion of the cost of the sales were improperly accounted for as marketing expenses so as artificially to increase gross margins, and (b) whether Deloitte, who approved Autonomy's accounting treatment of the sales, were misled as to the true purpose of the hardware sales.

50.2. The "**reseller case**" or "**VAR case**" relates to 37 transactions between Autonomy (or in some cases, Autonomy Inc or Zantaz) and a small group of value-added resellers. The Defendant treated these transactions as sales giving rise to revenue which could be and was recognised immediately in Autonomy's accounts. The Claimants contended that this simply interposed a reseller between Autonomy and a true customer, and that these were not in substance true sales at all. The only true sale was to an end-user, if one eventuated. In many instances no end-user sale did eventuate, giving rise to a difficulty which I explain later. The Claimants' case is that in each VAR sale, the VAR was only a passive placeholder with no further participation expected or permitted of it after the VAR sale. Thus, the VAR sales were, in effect, devices to accelerate recognition of revenue in Autonomy's accounts, with the intended effect of misrepresenting its performance.

50.3. The "**reciprocal transactions case**" relates to certain transactions with the VARs which are described below, and what the Claimants alleged were back-to-back transactions with friendly counterparties. It is claimed that Autonomy purchased from the counterparty software or other goods or services that Autonomy did not need, in order to fund the purchase by that counter party of high margin software from Autonomy. The Claimants contend that these reciprocal, or round-trip transactions, also were contrived with the dishonest purpose of artificially boosting apparent high margin software sales. It is said that this had the effect of giving an exaggerated depiction of the success of Autonomy's core business.

50.4. The "**hosted case**" relates to transactions between Autonomy (or Zantaz) and existing customers. Under these transactions, Autonomy agreed to forego future recurring revenue from the provision of hosted archiving services (which was a substantial and lucrative part of Autonomy's business) for monthly (or other periodic) fees in return for the customer paying a one-off and heavily discounted capital sum for a licence to use Autonomy software outside the hosted environment. The licence was alleged to be illusory, and its issue and sale was said to be for the dishonest purpose of treating it as akin to sale of goods so as to justify the immediate (that is at the transaction date) recognition of the sale proceeds as revenue. Again, it was alleged that the intended effect was artificially to boost apparent revenue in the period in question.

50.5. The **"OEM case"** relates to the presentation in the narrative part of Autonomy's accounts of information about the revenue from its OEM business, variously described as "*OEM*", "*OEM derived*" and latterly "*IDOL OEM*". The Claimants' case is that revenue so presented would be taken in the market to have been generated by a transaction with an Original Equipment Manufacturer ("OEM") for Autonomy software to be embedded in the OEM's hardware. Autonomy would in return receive royalty payments on all their sales of such hardware (and thus a recurring revenue stream). The Claimants say that in fact Autonomy included in what was compendiously described as the *"OEM Metric",* revenues from one-off sales of software licences to customers which were not OEMs under contracts which did not provide for royalties or any other recurring revenue. The Claimants did not impugn the transactions themselves but contended that it was misleading and dishonest to include the latter revenues within the OEM metric. The Claimants claim that this gave the false impression of a valuable recurring category of revenues, and thereby dishonestly misrepresented the quality and reliability of Autonomy's revenue and earnings.

50.6. The "**Other Transactions case**" relates to an amorphous collection of four sets of transactions entered into in late 2010 and early 2011 by ASL, Autonomy Spain SL and Autonomy Inc (and which I refer to as the "Other

Transactions"). The Claimants' case in respect of three of those transactions is that what was sold was not simply a piece of software purchased together with separately charged additional services. They say that it was in fact a composite 'solution' of which the provision of services was an integral part. The Claimants alleged that it was wrong to recognise revenue at the point of sale (as Autonomy had done) and that revenue recognition was required to be deferred until the delivery of a fully functioning product had been concluded, or at least until some subsequent stage in the installation of the software for the customer had occurred, enabling its use as a working solution. The fourth transaction raised an entirely separate and singular issue about whether the calculation of the *"fair value"* of the licence sold (to a company called Iron Mountain) was correct, which also determined whether revenue from the transaction had been correctly stated or overstated by Autonomy.

Factual basis: the breach of duty claim for transactional losses

51. The third legal head of claim was the breach of duty claim for transactional losses. This relates to four categories of transaction: (i) loss-making "pure hardware" sales; (ii) VAR transactions where a marketing assistance fee ("MAF") was paid to the VAR; (iii) alleged reciprocal; transactions and VAR transactions involving a reciprocal element and (iv) Schedule D hosting transactions.

52. In Schedule 12 of the Re-Re-Amended Points of Claim ("Schedule 12"), the Claimants identified a number of the hosting lump sum transactions (set out specifically in Schedule 12D). Autonomy Inc, the Fourth Claimant, was the contracting party for most of these transactions. Zantaz was the contracting party on three out of four of the Schedule 12D hosting transactions, and also for some of the MAF payments, and reciprocal transactions. ASL, as well as being the company within the group to which losses arising from these transactions were transferred (but not assigned), was also the original contracting or paying party in respect of some of the MAF payments and reciprocal transactions. Zantaz assigned to Autonomy Inc all of its rights, title to and interest in, amongst other matters, any claims, rights and causes of action that Zantaz had against third parties, and notice of such assignment was given to the Defendants on 27 March 2015.

Findings

53. In summary, my findings in relation to each of the heads of claim are as follows:

Findings: the FSMA and direct fraud and / or Misrepresentation Act claims

The hardware case

54. The purpose of the hardware selling strategy was to meet market expectations of revenue maintenance and growth, by misleading the market as to the true market position of Autonomy. These loss-making transactions were not commercially justified on any basis. The justifications advanced by the Defendants were no more than pretexts to increase stated revenue in the accounts. The strategy was not for the purpose of raising software revenue sales. That justification was a pretence, fashioned principally for the audit committee and Deloitte, who would not have approved the accounting treatment without the pretence.

55. Both concealment of the hardware sales and their true cost in Autonomy's accounts and other published information were necessary because revelation of the Autonomy's use of hardware sales, and the erosion of gross margin would have nullified their true purpose. This would have exposed that Autonomy's software business was not generating the accelerating revenue and profits which the market thought it was, and which heavily influenced its price.

56. In my judgment:

56.1. The hardware reselling programme was conceived, expanded and implemented in order to enable Autonomy to cover shortfalls in software revenue by selling hardware and including the revenue without differentiation in revenue shown in the accounts as generated by Autonomy's software business.

56.2. To succeed, the hardware reselling had to be concealed from the market, but sufficiently revealed to Autonomy's auditors and audit committee to secure their apparently fully informed approval of the company's accounts.

56.3. The imperative that the reselling should be concealed from the market required a variety of accounting devices which had to be presented in such a way as to secure the approval of the auditors and the audit committee. In particular, their approval had to be secured to treat the costs of the hardware reselling programme, not as Costs of Goods Sold ("COGS"), which would have eroded gross margin and encouraged both analyst and market inquiry and concern, but instead as Sales and Marketing expenses which had no such adverse effect on key investment parameters.

56.4. The means by which this difficult balancing act was achieved are set out in my judgment. Suffice it to say that the auditors and audit committee were persuaded to regard the purpose of all hardware sales as being to generate revenue and new orders for the software business, and to account for hardware costs accordingly.

56.5. The strategy also required that the contribution of hardware reselling revenues to overall revenues should be disguised or concealed, and that again the auditors and audit committee nevertheless being satisfied that such disclosure as was given was sufficient. That balancing act also was successfully achieved.

56.6. The purpose of the hardware reselling strategy/programme was dishonest, and the way it was accounted for depended on its dishonest presentation.

56.7. The Defendants were well aware of this.

56.8. Although I doubt that this justifies the quantum of loss in the amount claimed in respect of it, in terms of liability the Claimants' hardware case has been established.

57. The Claimants reasonably relied on the truth of what was said about the revenue in the accounting material and were induced to buy Autonomy for $11.1b.

58. These facts satisfy both limbs of the FSMA claim and also give rise to liability on the part of both Defendants to the Claimants in respect of the direct fraud and/or Misrepresentation Act claims, and for breach of duty as employee and/or directors owed to the Autonomy companies in embarking on the hardware selling strategy.

The reseller or VAR case

59. Sales to VARs enabled Autonomy to recognize income before any sale to an end user. This enabled Autonomy to make good shortfalls in software business revenues relative to market forecasts. Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain kept a very careful watch over revenues, especially towards the end of a quarter when Autonomy would have to post its results. If such a shortfall became apparent, a VAR sale would be arranged, usually on the same day, to cover it, with no questions asked. Almost all the impugned VAR sales were to a small group of "friendly" VARs.

60. Although the "VAR buyers" accepted they were legally bound by the terms of the contracts, the impugned VAR transactions had no commercial substance. They were a means by which Autonomy could maintain the appearance of meeting revenue targets at the end of a quarter.

61. In truth there was a pattern which emerged very clearly from all of the impugned VAR transactions. They were all large, entered into at the very end of the quarter, after no investigation by the VAR of the liability they were legally undertaking. The VAR would often not have the financial ability to meet the stated payment obligation out of its own resource, and in reality there was never any expectation or intention that it should do so, there never being any expectation on the part of either Autonomy or the VAR that the contractual terms would ever be enforced. There was a clear understanding, and it was invariably the fact, that the VAR would play no part in seeking to procure any contract with the end-user. If payment were ever required from a VAR, it would come either from the end-user, or if no contract were made with the end-user, payment would be waived or another transaction would be generated. This would involve Autonomy providing the VAR with the means to meet any obligation it owed under the VAR transaction. No VAR was ever to be left "on the hook" or "carrying the bag".

62. The purpose of the strategy was to ensure that Autonomy continued to appear to be a company which met its forecasts out of the sales of IDOL and related software and thereby maintained its share price. The VAR strategy became of additional importance and increased in volume when the hardware selling strategy underwent difficulties when Autonomy's main hardware supplier suddenly drew back from its association with Autonomy. VAR sales and hardware sales were turned on and off by Autonomy at the end of each quarter depending on the levels of revenue required to be shown in the accounts.

63. The VAR strategy was directed by Mr Hussain and encouraged and presided over by Dr Lynch. Both knew that the VAR transactions were not being accounted for according to their true substance. Both knew that the recognition of revenue on the sale to the VAR was improper, and that the accounts were thus false.

64. Deloitte did not see the full picture, or alternatively preferred to accept reassurance that ostensibly negated the true purpose of the VAR transactions. In any event neither the approval of Deloitte nor that of the audit committee was fully and properly informed, and the fact of it does not avail the Defendants, who knew that.

65. The Claimants reasonably relied on the truth of the financial information provided by Autonomy (both numerical and narrative), including what was said about the revenue in the accounting material, and were induced to buy Autonomy for $11.1billion.

66. These facts satisfy both limbs of the FSMA claim and also give rise to liability on the part of both Defendants to the Claimants in respect of the direct fraud and/or Misrepresentation Act claims, and for breach of duty as employees and/or directors owed to Autonomy companies in embarking on the VAR strategy.

The reciprocal transactions case

67. There were two types of, so called, "reciprocals".

68. In the case of the VAR reciprocals (related to the VAR case above), which involved the purchase by Autonomy of a product from a VAR, I am satisfied that in each case Autonomy purchased from the VAR a product for which it had little or no identified need or use. It was done in order to funnel funds to the VAR to enable it to appear to discharge its indebtedness to Autonomy under a VAR agreement. The purchase by Autonomy was the means of getting the VAR "off the hook" of the legal obligation to pay, which it was never expected or intended it would in fact be required to meet out of its own resources. No revenue should have been recognized. The Defendants were in each case aware of the contrived nature of Autonomy's purchase and its true purpose. They had guilty knowledge accordingly.

69. In the case of reciprocal transactions, Autonomy would identify a counterparty with an interest in purchasing Autonomy software, but which would in all probability not make any purchase at the price set by Autonomy unless it could sell Autonomy its own products and use the sale proceeds to fund its own purchase. The strategy was assisted by the fact that Autonomy had no list price for IDOL and could in effect choose its price. This would be a matter of indifference to the reciprocal purchaser, since it would be receiving funds from Autonomy under its reciprocal sale to Autonomy. By increasing the price, Autonomy could maximise its apparent revenue.

70. I am satisfied that in the case of each of the transactions impugned on this ground, the reason for Autonomy's purchase was to enable the counterparty to purchase a licence for Autonomy software. This would generate recognized revenue which Autonomy could show in its accounts to cover shortfalls in revenue for the relevant quarter. Thus, Autonomy's purchase was another means of Autonomy buying recognised and reportable revenue at substantial cost. The purchase and sale should have been accounted for on a net basis. I am satisfied that both Defendants knew that these reciprocal or round-trip transactions also were contrived with the dishonest purpose of artificially boosting apparent high margin software sales, with the effect of giving an exaggerated depiction of the success of Autonomy's core business.

71. As with the VAR, and Hardware cases, I find reasonable reliance on the part of the Claimants, and liability established on the FSMA claim.

72. There are also direct fraud and Misrepresentation Act claims made out in respect of these reciprocal claims. I also find the case made out in respect of those direct claims.

The hosted case

73. The impugned hosted transactions all involved a lump sum payment being made by the existing Autonomy customer who was already making periodic payments for Autonomy hosting its archive, for what on the face of it appeared to be a software licence. An example would be the right to transfer Autonomy software from Autonomy's hardware to the customer's in-house hardware, or to a third-party's directed hardware. These transactions inevitably also involved substantially reduced periodic payments going forward. All of the lump sum would be recognised immediately as income by Autonomy. This was a true way of accounting for that income, if it was truly a payment for software rights. If it was no more than the price paid for the reduction in the later periodic payments for hosting services, then it was misleading to treat what was compensation for a later reduction in revenue as an immediately realized sum.

74. The lump sum arrangements I have just described were in reality almost invariably a response not to customer interest, but to the Defendants' obsession with ensuring Autonomy achieved or came as close as possible to meeting revenue forecasts. The licence was a device calculated to justify revenue recognition which conferred legal rights which neither side intended or expected would ever be deployed.

75. The introduction of a formal legal right of no intended commercial consequence would not in any material way alter the hosting arrangements between the contracting parties, which both parties intended to carry on as before.

76. Both Defendants were aware of the true nature of these lump sum arrangements and that they were driven by income recognition. Any software rights bestowed were never

expected to be exercised. They knew it gave a false impression to recognise the income immediately.

77. The Claimants relied on the figures given as to revenue including the lump sum payments and it was reasonable for them to do so.

78. I have concluded that both limbs of the FSMA claim are established.

79. In Schedule 12, the Claimants identified a number of the hosting lump sum transactions (set out specifically in Schedule 12D) which involved significant reductions in periodic payments. The Claimants contended these contracts were commercially unjustifiable. Because they were only motivated by the desire for income recognition, the deals were commercially unfavourable to Autonomy and they had no purpose beyond income recognition, I find the breach of duty established in respect of each of the Schedule 12D transactions.

The OEM case

80. I have concluded that the perception and attraction of the OEM Metric as presented to the market was that it comprised a distinctive revenue stream, which was recurring and reliable because it derived from royalty payments made by or through the OEMs in whose hardware the Autonomy software was embedded. That revenue stream also included incremental revenue from sales to the OEM of updates and upgrades for that software. It was a stream of income which involved little or no further cost of sales. OEMs also usually had established market reputations; and the embedding of Autonomy software in their hardware assisted Autonomy in terms of market penetration. There was evidence that the market placed special value on OEM business for all these reasons.

81. However, a substantial proportion of the sales categorized as OEM sales in the accounting documents, and in the representations made by the Defendants from March 2011 onwards, did not have this recurring nature, nor were they to OEMs. Instead, they were one-off sales to buyers. They would not offer the same advantages, did not yield a recurring royalty or royalty type payment, and they would not ensure the same

certainty of incremental purchases of updates and upgrades to protect and enhance the OEM's own product and reputation.

82. I have found that both Defendants knew that the accounts and the representations they made in this regard gave a misleading picture of Autonomy's OEM business. They did so because they knew revenues were included from transactions lacking the characteristics associated with OEM business. They knew that such revenues were considered in the market to generate a particularly dependable and valuable revenue stream.

83. The direct representations which the Defendants made confirmed the depiction of Autonomy's OEM business and the revenue it generated which was given in Autonomy's published information.

84. This was another matter on which HP reasonably relied on in proceeding with its Acquisition for $11.1 billion.

85. Both the FSMA claim and the direct fraud and/or Misrepresentation Act claims are made out against the Defendants.

86. There are no breach of duty claims under this head

The Other Transactions case

87. The Other Transactions allegedly had, and were designed to have, the effect of enabling Autonomy to recognise or accelerate the recognition of revenue for the purpose of achieving revenue forecasts in a given quarter.

88. The Claimants did not, apparently *"due to time constraints",* cross-examine Dr Lynch in relation to any these four transactions. Therefore, the Claimants accepted that they could not pursue an allegation that Dr Lynch had knowledge of their false accounting.

89. However, they submitted that the Other Transactions remain relevant given that:

89.1. the Claimants maintained that there was false accounting in relation to each of the transactions and they continued to allege that Mr Hussain knew of that false accounting; and

89.2. if (as the Claimants alleged) there was false reporting in relation to the Other Transactions, it fell to be taken into account when assessing loss.

90. In my draft judgment I have considered each of these four Other Transactions in detail. I have concluded in respect of each of them, that the Claimants have failed to establish that the accounting treatment adopted with the approval of Deloitte was wrong rather than a matter of accountancy judgement on which views might properly differ. In those circumstances, the question of Mr Hussain's guilty knowledge does not arise, and this head of claim makes no contribution to any loss calculation.

Findings: the breach of duty claim for transactional losses

91. In relation to the claim for transactional losses, Dr Lynch was the President of Autonomy Inc, and he owed legal duties to that company as a director. He was a de facto director of ASL and owed duties to it. I find that Mr Hussain was a de jure director of all three relevant subsidiaries, Autonomy Inc, Zantaz and ASL,- and owed duties to all three.

92. I find that the transfer pricing arrangements which gave rise to the losses from transactions being transferred to ASL do not allow ASL to sue for those losses, and nor is there any legal basis for impugning the conduct of the Defendants in entering into those arrangements. But nor do they cause the subsidiaries who suffered the original losses to be treated as though they had suffered no loss, nor deprive them of the right to claim in respect of the losses. How they deal with the losses subsequently for example by price shifting arrangements does not effect the claims.

93. In respect of each of the transactions impugned under the four heads identified in this claim, as being of no commercial benefit to Autonomy Inc, ASL and Zantaz I find that

case made out. I find that both Defendants breached their duties in causing or allowing these transactions to take place in respect of ASL and Autonomy Inc.

94. I emphasise that the breach of duty in respect of ASL is not the transfer pricing arrangements, but the original involvement in the Schedule 12 identified MAF payments, and reciprocal transactions.

95. I find Mr Hussain liable in respect of each one of the Zantaz impugned transactions in Schedule 12, and their claim may validly be made as assignee by ASL. Dr Lynch was neither a de jure nor de facto director of Zantaz, and no direct claim succeeds against him in respect of any of Zantaz transactions.

96. The pleaded quantum of the loss for the direct claims is $76.1 million. Whether that is the correct figure, I will determine in the quantum judgment.

97. That concludes a summary of my findings. I now deal with a number of other matters.

Quantum

98. I have not included in my embargoed draft judgment to be delivered to the parties today detailed findings or conclusions on quantum. The parties have called evidence and addressed full argument on quantum. I considered it inappropriate to delay my judgment on liability when it could have an effect on other proceedings, in particular the extradition proceedings, to allow completion of the quantum section. I have however provisionally determined that even if adjusted to take account of the fraud, HP would still have considered Autonomy, with its signature product, IDOL, a suitable acquisition whereby to effect transformational change. I would expect the quantum to be substantially less than is claimed.

99. The evidence on the quantum part of the case was dense and voluminous. There was extended cross-examination. I will now proceed to consider that aspect of the case. That section will take some time to complete and further submissions may be necessary.

Counterclaim

100. Dr Lynch also brought a Counterclaim. Dr Lynch contended that HP's public and much- publicised announcement of a claim against the Defendants of $5 billion was precipitate and had no properly formulated basis. I need say nothing about this. My findings in the main claim undermine his counterclaim. I have not therefore addressed it in my draft judgment. If there remains anything of substance, I am sure I will be told of it.

Final matters

101. This has been an unusually complex trial, 93 days long. Dr Lynch was cross-examined for 20 days. There was a database of many millions of documents from which there was extracted a trial bundle containing more than 28,000 documents. These documents have been the most reliable source of evidence. But there were also hundreds of pages of hearsay evidence, largely comprised of transcripts from previous proceedings in the United States, both civil and criminal. The determination of this matter in its plainly natural forum has been made the more difficult by the concerns I have had about the reliability of some of the Claimants' witness and hearsay evidence, which bore signs of having been fashioned, rehearsed and repeated in the course of multiple previous proceedings in the US and the preparatory stages for them, and in some cases, of the constraints (such as the terms of promised immunity) under which it had been given.

102. Nevertheless, I have reached clear conclusions in these proceedings on the civil liability of Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain for fraud under FSMA, common law, and the Misrepresentation Act 1967, applying, of course, the civil standard of proof of the balance of probabilities.

The Parties' representatives

103. Finally, the legal representation and assistance provided to me in this case have been of the very highest standard. The longer my labours have continued the more I have

understood and appreciated theirs and quite how much work has been put into these proceedings. I have been shown patience and understanding throughout. I wish to express my profound and genuine appreciation to them all for the quality of their work, and in particular the enormous help they have provided to me in what has been for everyone involved an exceptionally onerous case.

End.

SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS	
Headings	*Paragraphs*
Structure of this Schedule	1-5
PART I OF SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS	
Various exemplars of the impugned VAR transactions with 'friendly' VARs	6
VT1: comprising the 11 impugned MicroLink VAR deals	7-17
Did Defendants know that MicroLink transactions were improperly accounted for?	18-23
Autonomy's purchases from MicroLink	24
The SAT purchase	25-29
The AIS purchase	30-35
Acquisition of MicroLink by Autonomy	36-44
Summary of conclusions in respect of VT1 and associated purchases	45-46
The Capax Discovery VAR deals in Part I: VT2, VT3, VT4 and VT10	47
Various antecedent points	48
A relevant antecedent arrangement?	49-59
Standard terms of the Capax Discovery VAR sales	60-61
Audit Confirmation Letters in every case	62-63
VT2: Capax/TXU in Q2 2009 and Q3 2009	64-70
My assessment of VT2	71-77
Particular points on the Defendants' involvement and knowledge of VT2	78
Mr Hussain's knowledge	79-82
Dr Lynch's knowledge	83-89
VT3: Capax/Kraft	90-105
Approval by Deloitte	106-121
My assessment of VT3	122
Particular points on the Defendants' involvement and knowledge of VT3	123
Mr Hussain	124-125
Dr Lynch	126-132
VT4: Capax/Eli Lilly (Q4 2009)	133-150
Defendants' alleged knowledge of false accounting in respect of VT4	151-152
Particular matters highlighted by VT4	153-167
VT10: Capax/FSA (Q1 2010)	168-183
Four particular matters relating to VT10 emphasised by the Claimants	184-204
Summary as to propriety of recognition of revenue in respect of VT10	205
Defendants' alleged knowledge of false accounting in respect of VT10	206
Mr Hussain	207

Dr Lynch	208
Summary as to whether the Defendants had "guilty knowledge"	209
Conclusions on Capax Discovery transactions VT2, VT3, VT4 and VT10	210
MicroTech impugned VAR deals: VT5, VT6, VT7, VT8, VT13, VT25, VT32, VT33 and VT37	211
MicroTech itself and the MicroTech VAR agreement	212-221
VT6, VT7 and VT8: MicroTech/Honeywell, Morgan Stanley, ManuLife, all Q4 2009	222-247
Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT6, VT7 and VT8	248-254
VT5: Autonomy/MicroTech sale of 'Control Point' licence in Q4 2009	255-269
Knowledge and involvement of the Defendants in VT5	270-279
VT13: MicroTech/Vatican Q1 2010	280-298
Claimants' case on VT13	299-329
ATIC	330-357
My assessment of the dispute re the ATIC	358-369
Defendants' knowledge of VT13 and the ATIC transaction	
Mr Hussain	370-377
Dr Lynch	378-395
Summary	396-397
VT25: MicroTech/DoI Q4 2010	398-412
Did the Defendants have "guilty knowledge" about VT25?	413
Mr Hussain	414-417
Dr Lynch	418-424
VT32 and VT33: MicroTech/Bank of Montreal and Xerox: Q1 2011	425-429
VT32: MicroTech/Bank of Montreal	430-438
Summary assessment	439-440
VT33: MicroTech/Xerox	441-449
Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT32 and VT33 and direct deals	450
Mr Hussain	451-454
Dr Lynch	455-459
VT37: MicroTech/HP Q2 2011	460-481
Federal cloud purchase and the payment by MicroTech it enabled	482-491
Knowledge and participation of Defendants in VT37 and Federal Cloud transaction	
Mr Hussain	492-495
Dr Lynch	496-501
DiscoverTech reseller deals	502-515
VT11: DiscoverTech/Citi Q1 2010	516-567
Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT11	568-574

VT12: DiscoverTech/PMI Q1 2010	575-590
VT30: DiscoverTech/Prisa Q1 2011	591-595
Alleged backdating	596-614
Calibration with hardware sales: two levers to manipulate revenue?	615-630
Never any intention that DiscoverTech would negotiate or conclude an end-user sale	631-640
Was DiscoverTech let off the hook by funds from purchases by Autonomy?	641-645
First DiscoverEngine purchase: Q2 2011	646-671
Second DiscoverTech purchase (Q3 2011): source code	672-688
My assessment re VT30 and the Discover Engine purchases in the round	689-692
Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT30 and backdating	693-698
Defendants' knowledge of backdating	699-707
VT31: DiscoverTech/ThinkTech Q1 2011	708-720
My assessment re VT31	721-723
Were the Defendants aware and involved?	724-725
VT35: DiscoverTech/Abbott Labs Q2 2011	726-735
My Assessment of VT35	736-743
VT36: DiscoverTech/Dell/Hyatt Q2 2011	744-753
VT18: FileTek and USDVA Q3 2010	754-776
Particular points on VT18	777-796
Collapse of the USDVA deal and its aftermath	797-803
Q1 2011 StorHouse purchases	804-806
Q2 2011 StorHouse purchase	807-811
Q3 2011 StorHouse purchase	812-822
My assessment of VT18 and the 2011 StorHouse transactions	823-833
Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT18	834-839
PART II OF SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS	840-841
Four further impugned transactions with Capax Discovery	
VT20: Capax Discovery/DKO Q4 2010	842-857
Defendants' knowledge of false accounting in respect of VT20	
Mr Hussain	858-861
Dr Lynch	862-866
VT27: Capax Discovery/McAfee Q1 2011	867-879
The 'staging tools' transaction	880-907
Defendants' knowledge	
Mr Hussain	908
Dr Lynch	909-915
VT28: Capax Discovery/UBS Q1 2011 and VT34: Capax Discovery/UBS Q2 2011	
The first Capax Discovery/UBS purchase order	916-919

The second Capax Discovery/UBS purchase order	920-938
Knowledge of the Defendants	
Mr Hussain	939
Dr Lynch	940-948
PART III OF SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS	949
The Bank of America ("BofA") transactions: VT16, VT21, VT23 and VT24	950-964
Splitting up of the BofA deal into smaller pieces sold to VARs	965-974
VT16: the original Capax Discovery/Amgen deal in more detail	975-980
Whether the VAR's role in respect of VT16 in its first incarnation was misrepresented to Deloitte and the Audit Committee	981-989
The "re-purposing" of VT16 and its second incarnation	990-1012
MAF	1013-1022
Backdating?	1023-1026
Deloitte's understanding of the transaction	1027-1041
VT21: Capax Discovery/Merrill Lynch: Q4 2010	1042-1053
VT23 and VT24: DiscoverTech/Bank of America Q4 2010	1054-1082
Defendants' alleged knowledge of false accounting in respect of the BofA deals	
Mr Hussain	1083-1087
Dr Lynch	1088-1094
PART IV OF SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS	
Other impugned VAR transactions where side-agreements are alleged	1095-1099
VT15: The Realise/Credit Suisse deal Q2 2010	1100-1116
My assessment of VT15	1117-1124
Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT15 and the Release acquisition	1125-1130
VT26: Tikit/KPMG Q4 2010	1131-1153
My assessment of VT26	1154-1164
Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT26 and subsequent arrangements	
Mr Hussain	1165-1168
Dr Lynch	1169-1175
VT14: Auxilium/Vatican Library (Q1/2010)	1176-1190
Defendants' knowledge that revenue should not have been recognised from VT14	1191-1193
PART V OF SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS	
The "Collectability VARs": VAR deals impugned but no side agreement is alleged	1194-1198
VT9: Sales Consulting SRL / Poste Italiane (Q4 2009)	1199-1221
Defendants' knowledge of wrongful revenue recognition in respect of VT9	1222-1226
VT17: Comercializadora/TV Azteca Q3 2010	1227-1242
Defendants' knowledge of improper revenue recognition in respect of VT17	1243-1245

VT22: Comercializadora/CISEN Q4 2010	1246-1252
Defendants' knowledge of improper revenue recognition in respect of VT22	1253-1256
VT19: Red Ventures/Poste Italiane Q3 2010	1257-1268
Defendants' knowledge of improper revenue recognition in respect of VT19	1269-1271
VT29: Computer Trading/Poste Italiane Q1 2011	1272-1279
Defendants' knowledge of improper revenue recognition in respect of VT29	1280-1282
Overall conclusions as to the Collectability VAR claims	1283-1284

SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS

Structure of this Schedule

1. In this five-part Schedule to the main body of this judgment I address each of the impugned VAR transactions. Although more conveniently set out in a Schedule, the findings I make should be treated as if in the main body of the judgment. The discussion is intended to complement the more general analysis in the main body of the judgment and my conclusions there, and to provide detailed exemplars of the 'pattern' which the Claimants alleged and which I have concluded was demonstrated.

2. Although some repetition of the more general points made in my general analysis of the impugned VAR transactions in the main body of this judgment is inevitable, my intended focus is on any significant evidence or features which have not emerged from, or which provide a particularly significant illustration of some feature identified in, my overview of the impugned VAR transactions in the main body of the judgment.

3. There is a general point on the issue of knowledge, and in particular, Dr Lynch's knowledge of improper accounting of the individual impugned VAR transactions, which I should clarify. Although I do address this issue in respect of the individual impugned VAR transactions, the Claimants' position was that, in particular as regards the bulk of the impugned transactions which were with 'friendly' VARs, they did not need to establish that Dr Lynch knew about every one of them; and that it was sufficient that he knew of and authorised the practice of calling upon a friendly VAR, as and when required by a shortfall in aggregate revenue, to recognise revenue improperly. Accordingly, in some cases, they did not put forward transaction-specific evidence of his "guilty knowledge". I confirm that I have concluded, in line with this submission, that Dr Lynch knew of and authorised the practice, which became a pattern of which all the impugned VAR transactions were exemplars, of improperly recognising revenue from sales to VARs which lacked any real substance in order to make good (to the extent possible) shortfalls in properly recognised revenue from software sales. Subject to the proviso that if in any instance there was positive evidence to show that the relevant Defendant (in effect, Dr Lynch) did <u>not</u> have any knowledge the burden would be on the Claimants to provide additional positive evidence the other way, I have broadly (and except as otherwise appears in the context) accepted the Claimants' approach.

4. Most of the VAR transactions addressed were impugned by reference to some form of side agreement or understanding; but some (the *"pure collectability VARs"*) were impugned only on the basis that none satisfied the requirements of IAS 18.14(d). This Schedule is structured as follows:

    (1) Part I addresses VT1 (with MicroLink), VT2, VT3, VT4 and VT10 (all with Capax Discovery), VT5, VT6, VT7, VT8, VT13, VT25, VT32, VT33 and VT37 (all with MicroTech), VT11, VT12, VT30, VT31, VT35 and VT36 (all with DiscoverTech) and VT18 (with FileTek).

    (2) Part II addresses four further impugned VAR sales to Capax Discovery which followed VT10. These were VT20 (in Q4 2010, for end-user DKO), VT27 (in

Q1 2011, for end-user McAfee), VT28 (in Q1 2011, for end-user UBS), and VT34 (in Q2 2011 also for end-user UBS).

(3) Part III addresses VAR transactions comprising the parts into which a very large composite deal with BofA (or subsidiaries of BofA) was split in circumstances described below. Two (VT16 and VT21) were with Capax Discovery and two (VT23/24) were with DiscoverTech.

(4) Part IV addresses three impugned VAR transactions (VT14, 15 and 26) with counterparties other than those I have called "the friendly VARs" (that is to say, Capax Discovery, FileTek and the Truitt companies).

(5) Part V addresses the remaining five impugned VAR transactions (VT9, 17, 19, 22 and 29), all with counterparties which were not "friendly VARs, and in respect of which no side-agreement or the like was alleged (the *"pure Collectability VAR transactions"*).

5. I adopt the same definitions in this Schedule as in the main body of the judgment.

PART I OF SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS

Various exemplars of the impugned VAR transactions with 'friendly' VARs

6. In this Part of this Schedule, I have grouped various exemplars of the impugned VAR transactions with 'friendly' VARs. They are grouped according to the identity of the VAR involved, rather than chronologically: this reflects the way they were addressed in the written closing submissions.

VT1: comprising the 11 impugned MicroLink VAR deals

7. I have already noted some basic details about MicroLink in paragraph 1963 of the judgment. As there stated, MicroLink was the VAR in a series of reseller transactions in 2008 and 2009, of which the Claimants have impugned 11, all entered into in 2009. The Claimants referred to this series of transactions as "VT1".

8. MicroLink was one of a growing stable of 'friendly' VARs. It was headed by Mr David Truitt (who subsequently headed DiscoverTech, another 'friendly' VAR, and who co-founded MicroTech, a third 'friendly' VAR of which Mr David Truitt's brother, Mr Steve Truitt, was made Chief Operating Officer at Mr David Truitt's instigation). Without thereby pre-judging their activities with Autonomy, it is to be noted that Mr Stephan gave the following evidence at the US criminal trial:

> *"From my - what I saw at MicroLink, I was concerned that was the modus operandi of all these resellers, that the head of the company would sign whatever we wanted them to sign for the auditors but they had no intention of paying."*

9. The MicroLink transactions were the first of the *"at risk deals"* or *"acceleration deals"*[1] which Autonomy embarked on using 'friendly' VARs as vehicles through which Autonomy could recognise revenue in the quarter in which the transactions occurred to cover shortfalls identified in revenue from other sources identified by Mr Hussain. Impetus was given to the use of this expedient when EMC withdrew from its close association with Autonomy and the use of the favoured alternative programme of hardware sales for the same purpose became more difficult.

10. Autonomy had undertaken various transactions with MicroLink before the impugned VT1. None of the transactions with MicroLink prior to the Relevant Period was impugned, though (as explained above) no details were provided of their number or nature, except for a brief reference by Mr Egan, when he was cross-examined, to some of them being *"at risk deals"* (see footnote 283 in the main body of the judgment). The Defendants also referred to deals with MicroLink in 2009 which were not impugned: but again, no details were supplied.

11. The prospective end-users in the 11 impugned VAR sales referred to under the rubric 'VT1' were Allstate, JICPAC, United States Postal Service, United States Federal Government, Public Works & Government Services Canada, CIPM, VA VACO, IBM-Ameriprise, Navy Commander Sub Forces and DiscoverTech (though in respect of the last no side agreement was alleged to have been made and the transaction is impugned by reference to the alleged use of funds from Autonomy's later acquisition of

[1] See footnote 283 in the main body of the judgment.

MicroLink). The Claimants did not suggest that anything turns on the individual details of the various VT1 transactions: their claims apply across them all.

12. All of the purchase orders in respect of the VT1 transactions were made under the *'Autonomy Government Reseller Agreement'* made between Autonomy and MicroLink on 20 November 2003 ("the Q4 2003 MicroLink VAR agreement"). Under the terms of that agreement:

    (1) MicroLink was obliged to pay Autonomy irrespective of whether it closed a deal with an end-user. Clause 5.5 provided:

    > *"Government Reseller shall not be relieved of its obligations to pay fees owed to Autonomy hereunder by the nonpayment of such fees by an End-User."*

    (2) Clause 5.1 provided that once Autonomy's products on a purchase order had been shipped (which happened electronically), MicroLink could not cancel or amend the purchase order without prior written consent from Autonomy. Clause 5.1 also provided that the agreement superseded any pre-printed terms and conditions that could appear on any purchase order.

    (3) Clause 14.4 provided that no amendment to, change, waiver or discharge of any provision of the agreement was valid unless in writing and signed by an authorised representative of each party.

    (4) Clause 14.10 was an entire agreement clause which confirmed there were no other representations, understandings or agreements.

13. In aggregate, the total licence fees invoiced by Autonomy for the VT1 transactions amounted to $15,317,488 (all of which Autonomy recognised as revenue at the date of the transactions). It is not disputed that only $2,098,772 of this was ever paid by MicroLink to Autonomy; but it is alleged by the Claimants that even this payment was only generated as a result of a purchase by Autonomy from MicroLink of software produced by MicroLink known as Search Analysis Tool ("SAT") for $4,100,000.

14. Mr Egan provided a general review of Autonomy's transactions with MicroLink as follows:

    > "*In around 2008 and 2009, Autonomy did a series of what I called "at risk" VAR deals with Microlink.*[2] *They followed the pattern I have described in the section above headed "Value Added Resellers". In my discussions with Mr. Truitt I followed the guidance that Mr. Hussain gave me as described in paragraphs 28 and 29 above. In many instances, Microlink was not involved in the pursuit of the sale with the end-users*[3]*. In some situations, where the end-user deal could not be completed by the end of a particular quarter, Autonomy asked Microlink to submit a purchase order to Autonomy. The purchase order identified the software that we were attempting to license to the end-user customer and stated that the software was to be licensed to Microlink for sublicense to the end-user. Autonomy would invoice Microlink*

[2] See footnote 283 in the main body of the judgment.

[3] And it was not involved in any of the impugned VAR transactions.

for the software, deliver the identified software to Microlink, and recognize revenue on this paper transaction in the quarter that was ending.

I then continued to attempt to sell a license to use the same software to the true customer. On many occasions, either Autonomy or Microlink succeeded in making the sale to the end-user; on others, the end-user sale was delayed for a long period of time, but eventually was made. In yet other situations, no sale to the end-user was ever made. I believe that in one way or another, including, ultimately, Autonomy's purchase of Microlink, we made sure that Microlink never suffered a loss on these deals, in accordance with the understanding between Mr. Truitt and me in respect of these deals."

15. The basis on which the Claimants impugned the 11 VT1 sales can be summarised as follows:

    (1) In each, Autonomy's sole purpose of resorting to a VAR was to enable it to recognise revenue in the quarter of the sale to the VAR notwithstanding delay or difficulties in closing a transaction with what Mr Egan described as its *"true customer"*, that is a prospective end-user.

    (2) In none of the VT1 transactions was there any evidence of MicroLink making any effort to sell to the end-user: rather, the evidence available is that Autonomy continued its efforts to sell a licence for the same software to the *"true customer"*.

    (3) In none of the VT1 transactions did MicroLink contract with an end-user. The end-user deals were between Autonomy and the end-user.

    (4) Even though in various cases no end-user deal eventuated, there is no evidence that MicroLink was ever required to post a loss, and Mr Egan's unchallenged and uncontradicted evidence was that he believed that:

    > *"in one way or another, including, ultimately, Autonomy's purchase of Microlink, we made sure that Microlink never suffered a loss on these deals, in accordance with the understanding between Mr Truitt and me in respect of these deals."*

    (5) Furthermore, there was no evidence that the VT1 transactions were ever accounted for in MicroLink's accounts. The only money ever paid by MicroLink to Autonomy in respect of the 11 transactions was money that Autonomy had channelled to MicroLink for that purpose.

    (6) I address in greater detail below (see paragraphs 25*ff*) the basis on which the Claimants contended that the SAT purchase and a further purchase of Autonomy / SharePoint Integration Suite for MOSS ("AIS") software (in Q3 2009) were contrived to fund MicroLink to enable it to appear to discharge its indebtedness to Autonomy, and that the purpose of Autonomy's subsequent acquisition in Q1 2010 of the entire issued share capital of MicroLink was to enable Autonomy to release MicroLink's very substantial remaining deficit in its deals with Autonomy on an intra-group basis.

16. Against this, the Defendants' case was based on the following:

(1) Both Mr Egan and Mr David Truitt were clear that they understood MicroLink to be *"on risk"*; they meant this in the sense that the legal liability to pay was clear, unequivocal and unconditional, as is apparent from the account of their evidence already given in my overview above.

(2) When cross-examined in the US criminal proceedings, Mr David Truitt confirmed (albeit in the context of DiscoverTech transactions) that the VAR acquired the licensed software, and full ownership and control of it, which it would be left with and have to realise value from if an end-user contract did not eventuate:

> *"Q. And is what you meant is that once you made the agreement, you, be it Discover Tech, MicroTech, whoever made the agreement, owned the software? It was your software?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And was -- if it didn't close, it's still your software and you owed money; right?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. If you sold it to the end-user, the terms were already set. It was there in the agreement; right?*
>
> *A. Correct.*
>
> *Q. So you had control of the software, you owed the money, and you were fully the owner; right?*
>
> *A. Yes."*

(3) In the same proceedings, Mr David Truitt also said that there was never an understanding that he could cancel the deals with no further obligation if the end-user did not purchase the software.

(4) In addition to the plain contractual terms, MicroLink signed the usual confirmation letter acknowledging the indebtedness and confirming that:

> *"…there are no side letters or other agreements in respect of the subject matter of this request…"*

(5) According to Deloitte's working notes, and contrary to the Claimants' case, at least one of the impugned transactions was originated not by Autonomy but by the VAR: thus, Mr Egan had given information to Deloitte in respect of one of the impugned deals (for end-user US Federal Government[4] in Q2 2009). This was a deal for the National Security Agency ("NSA"). Mr Egan had informed Deloitte as follows:

> *"We discussed this deal with Stouffer Egan (CEO of Autonomy US) and noted that MicroLink won this contract with the NSA off the back of another project with a major US intelligence agency. The NSA are upgrading their entire national network with IDOL search. In the past, it used to*

[4] National Security Agency.

take about 1 day to search the entire network to gather the information they required. MicroLink has the relevant security clearance to go and integrate this software into the NSA network. It will be a year- long project for MicroLink to do this, and they charge the NSA based on a day rate. None of the professional services work comes back to Autonomy, it is only the perpetual licence that they contribute."

(6) Deloitte's conclusion as regards this transaction was that the risk and rewards of ownership had passed to MicroLink, and that the other revenue recognition criteria were satisfied. In cross-examination, Mr Egan was asked whether he had any reason to disagree with Deloitte's conclusion; he said he did not, though he did also make clear that this was really because he did not *"have much memory of this deal"*.

(7) Dr Lynch accepted that Mr Stephan's evidence that MicroLink had made no provision for any liability to Autonomy in its accounts was *"the literal truth"*, but suggested (contrary to the Claimants' contention) that this did not reveal anything untoward. According to Dr Lynch he had discovered no more than that *"MicroLink did its accounting net, not gross, so it accounts on a basis where it doesn't take the licences through its books. That doesn't mean to say that in any way those liabilities are not there."*

(8) As to Mr Stephan's failure to clarify this, Dr Lynch emphasised that Mr Stephan had not attended trial and he characterised his evidence admitted under a hearsay notice as not only vague and untested (since the Defendants had no opportunity to cross-examine him), but also as given under significant pressure from the US DoJ. According to Dr Lynch, Mr Stephan was intercepted by them when on holiday in the USA and told that he would be prosecuted if he did not cooperate. Dr Lynch submitted that no reliance should be placed on the evidence thus procured (though I note that Dr Lynch himself relied on other parts of Mr Stephan's testimony in the context of the hardware allegations in the US criminal trial, where he said that he saw nothing wrong in a software company selling hardware *"to bring in revenue, to meet a target"* as it was put to him in his cross-examination).

17. As to these arguments:

(1) The Defendants' reliance on the contractual terms and the audit confirmation letters as confirming contractual indebtedness and legal control is a reflection of their main general point, which they maintained in respect of all the VAR claims, that even if the contractual position is not conclusive, it is of preponderant weight. I have concluded, however, that whether the purchase price should be regarded as recognised revenue for the purposes of the seller's accounts depends on the real economic substance of the transaction; that the substance of the transaction is to be determined according to the true intentions of the parties, as opposed to their strict legal rights and obligations, and according to the economic intent and substance of the transaction as thus revealed.

(2) The Defendants never satisfactorily addressed any of the matters referred to in paragraph 15 above.

(3) I was not persuaded by Mr David Truitt's evidence, admitted as hearsay, that there was never an understanding that he could cancel the deals with no further obligation if the end-user did not purchase the software. His evidence in this regard was given to try to overcome contemporaneous documentary evidence in the form of an email headed *"Cancellation of VAR agreements"* sent by him to Mr Joel Scott and dated 23 September 2011. That email, though it in fact refers to DiscoverTech transactions[5], provides a revealing insight which certainly does not assist the Defendants' case:

> *"Hello Mr. Scott, I am writing to formally request that VAR agreements signed on June 30th, 2011 between Discover Technologies and Autonomy, regarding Abbott Laboratories and Dell/Hyatt be cancelled. Per my discussions with Stouffer Egan, under the condition that the end customer did not ultimately license the proposed Autonomy software, the agreements would be cancelled with no further obligation on the part of Discover Technologies. Thank you for your attention and prompt response."* [Emphasis as supplied by the Claimants]

(4) Indeed, it seems to me that this rather let the proverbial cat out of the bag, requiring the explanation offered by Mr David Truitt that it was a mistake. Mr Scott's reply on 26 September 2011 corrected the "mistake" but not the actual economic result of DiscoverTech being *"let off the hook"* by the 'liability' being erased:

> "*Having checked internally and spoken with Stouffer, I think you misunderstood; however, given that you haven't closed the deals and there is no prospect of us getting paid, we are prepared to write these off."*[6]

(5) The Claimants' closing submissions did not address Dr Lynch's main point in relation to Mr Stephan's evidence that his inspection of MicroLink's accounts, after Autonomy's acquisition of MicroLink, when Autonomy's finance team were provided with MicroLink's books and accounting records, showed that the VT1 transactions were never accounted for in MicroLink's accounts, which was that MicroLink accounted on a net rather than gross basis. I was not shown accounts which would have (presumably) revealed the basis of MicroLink's accounting. In the circumstances, I do not feel able to make a finding on this intriguing point. However, it remained the case that notwithstanding the shortfall between the amounts charged by Autonomy and

[5] Mr MacGregor, who referred to Mr David Truitt's denial of any understanding that if an end-user deal did not occur, the deals would be cancelled, suggested that this was referrable to MicroLink transactions just as much as DiscoverTech transactions because Mr Truitt referred to *"deals going back to 2006"* (when DiscoverTech did not exist).

[6] The upshot was that on 29 December 2011, Autonomy Inc issued DiscoverTech with credit notes covering the entire ostensible indebtedness. The Claimants submitted that *"There could hardly be a clearer indication that these transactions lacked economic substance in the first place."*

the payments apparently generated by MicroLink, there was no accounting evidence which reflected the fact that MicroLink had suffered a loss. (Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination on Day 50 that he suspected that there must be some such evidence but none was ever identified.) Further, I would accept Mr Stephan's evidence in the US criminal proceedings of his own impression, which seems to me to be consistent with the other oral evidence, that:

> *"From my – what I saw at MicroLink, I was concerned that the modus operandi of all these resellers, that the head of the company would sign whatever we wanted them to sign for the auditors, but they had no intention of paying."*

(6) In all the circumstances I accept the Claimants' arguments that the intention of the parties was in truth that (a) MicroLink would never be required to pay, that any legal obligation to do so would be cancelled, forgiven, or somehow funded by some other apparently but not actually separate transaction with Autonomy to put money in the hands of MicroLink which would then be 'paid' to Autonomy; and (b) Autonomy retained managerial involvement and effective control in the sense that only Autonomy would negotiate its sale, and any end-user contract which eventuated would be a sale by Autonomy to the end-user. In Mr Egan's words, the *"true customer"* would throughout be the end-user, and it was only from the *"true customer"* that Autonomy had any real expectation of receiving revenue at the end of the day.

(7) That undermines the accounting treatment of VT1. Revenue recognition in respect of the VAR sale was wrong. That is so notwithstanding the approval of that accounting by Deloitte and the Audit Committee. Their view could only have been based on what they saw (and in particular, the signed documentation). Deloitte were not, of course, told of what I have held to have been the true intentions and expectations of the parties; and the Audit Committee were substantially reliant on Deloitte's reports. Whether or not Deloitte or the Audit Committee should have detected signs of the untoward is beside the point in a claim to which they are not a party. In my judgment, on this simple basis, the Defendants' reliance on the approval of Deloitte and the Audit Committee for the VT1 transactions must fail.[7]

Did the Defendants know that the MicroLink transactions were improperly accounted for?

18. The Claimants did not rely on any evidence specific or particular to the VT1 transactions themselves in respect of their allegation that the Defendants knew that their accounting treatment was improper. As the Defendants pointed out, neither the RRAPoC nor the Claimants' Further Information of 30 January 2018 identified any material facts specific to VT1 in that regard. The basis of the Claimants' claim that both

[7] Deloitte's working papers for the VT1 transactions, so far as made available, demonstrate a careful and methodical, but essentially process-driven, approach based on the apparent contractual arrangements. The criteria stipulated by IAS 18.14 were ticked off against the contractual provisions and buttressed by the audit confirmation letters: but the economic reality was not sceptically examined. (As Mr MacGregor noted, Deloitte's working papers for 7 of the 11 VT1 transactions were available but not for the remaining four.)

Defendants had "guilty knowledge" was the evidence given, especially by Mr Egan, of the way the *"at-risk deals"* were implemented. The Claimants also relied on the Defendants' knowledge of the subsequent transactions to put MicroLink in funds (and ultimately Autonomy's acquisition of MicroLink) to ensure that it was not left *"holding the bag"*: see below.

19. Dr Lynch, in particular, denied any involvement in or knowledge of the MicroLink transactions comprising VT1. His written closing made the point that there was no cross-examination of him with regard to his involvement and/or knowledge of those transactions. This culminated in the submission that the Claimants had *"not even put any case to Dr Lynch".*

20. However, the Claimants did cross-examine Dr Lynch about the subsequent purchases made by Autonomy which put MicroLink in funds to pay amounts outstanding under VT1, and also about MicroLink's subsequent acquisition by Autonomy. Further, as recorded in paragraph 3 above, I have accepted the Claimants' position that they did not need to prove knowledge of every individual transaction and that proof that Dr Lynch knew of and authorised the practice of calling upon a 'friendly' VAR as and when required to generate revenue to cover a shortfall sufficed. If and insofar as Dr Lynch sought the dismissal of this part of the claim against him on the basis of the case not having been put, I do not think that was warranted: there is no proper basis for dismissing the claim on that ground.

21. Notwithstanding the absence of transaction-specific evidence of knowledge in relation to VT1, I have concluded (as always, on the balance of probabilities) that both Defendants knew that its accounting treatment was improper.

22. I have been especially influenced in reaching that conclusion by:

    (1) The fact that the VT1 transactions were the first of the *"at-risk deals"* marking the commencement of what became, in effect, a programme of vital importance to the Defendants and key to Autonomy meeting its revenue and earnings per share targets in every quarter. Having concluded that Mr Hussain conceived and directed the strategy and that Dr Lynch (though not usually involved in implementation) presided over and encouraged it, it seems to me that both would have known and kept themselves well informed about the fact and progress of the first of the impugned VAR transactions.

    (2) The amounts involved in the licence sales were such as would undoubtedly have come to the attention of Mr Hussain, who would have closely monitored their implementation and progress, and would in all likelihood have kept Dr Lynch informed in any event, even if he had not been involved in the overall strategy. The total fees invoiced by Autonomy for the 11 transactions comprised in VT1 amounted to $15,317,488, of which only $2,098,772 was ever paid by MicroLink to Autonomy, and even then, the payment was funded by a reciprocal purchase by Autonomy.

    (3) In those circumstances, it is more likely than not that Mr Hussain would also have known about, and kept himself well informed about, Mr Egan's

continuing attempts to conclude a deal with the end-user, and that Mr Hussain would have reported those attempts to Dr Lynch.

(4) More generally, it seems to me clear that Mr Hussain was well aware of the transactions and that they were contrived; Mr Hussain habitually reported to Dr Lynch on any matters of significance, value or importance; and I cannot accept that Mr Hussain was on a frolic of his own. In general terms it seems to me more likely than not that Dr Lynch knew what Mr Hussain knew.

(5) Both Defendants were involved in the subsequent purchases from MicroLink by Autonomy, and I have concluded (for reasons I have set out below) that each was aware that their true or driving purpose was to put MicroLink in funds to pay down some of its debt to Autonomy to fulfil the assurances given to MicroLink that it would not be left *"holding the bag"*.

23. It is to those purchases and then the acquisition by Autonomy of MicroLink that I next turn.

Autonomy's purchases from MicroLink

24. As mentioned above, the only money ever paid by MicroLink in respect of the transactions comprising VT1 was money that Autonomy had channelled to MicroLink for that purpose. The way Autonomy did this was to contrive purchases of software though it had no need or use for it, and in the end, to acquire MicroLink itself (which eliminated the debt on consolidation).

The SAT purchase

25. In Q1 2009, Autonomy purchased a one-year licence to use MicroLink's SAT software (defined in paragraph 13). The agreed purchase price for the one-year licence was $4.1 million. Mr Kalbag explained in his witness statement that his understanding was that the SAT was:

> *"a tool to monitor and visualise statistics such as search performance and search behaviour of users to allow administrators to better tune the search results."*

26. The Claimants described the SAT purchase in considerable detail; but I think the purchase and the basis on which the Claimants portrayed it as contrived to fund MicroLink rather, or more, than to benefit Autonomy can briefly be summarised as follows:

(1) At the time of the purchase, Autonomy already had a comparable product called Statistical Server ("Stat Server"). This was a feature of IDOL which Mr Kalbag believed was included for free as part of the IDOL package rather than being sold to customers as a separate product. According to Mr Kalbag, the SAT and Stat Server had very similar functionality and could achieve predominantly the same results.

(2) It was Autonomy's stated policy to develop and grow its own software products rather than buying in, if at all possible: it would only usually buy in if the functionality of its own product proved deficient in some material way or its performance proved unsatisfactory. The purchase of a licence was an aberration from that policy; and yet there was no evidence to suggest that prompting the purchase was any perception of deficiency in Stat Server or some specific need to buy in a product which seems so similar to one of Autonomy's own.

(3) There is no evidence that before the SAT purchase any technical evaluation was made by anyone within Autonomy of the SAT software. The purchase was driven by Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Mr Egan, none of whom could or would have been involved in such an evaluation. The only technical input was comprised of an urgent review by Dr Menell three days before completion of the purchase, and two days after Mr Hussain had asked for his approval urgently. Dr Menell's report was *"ok – tech pieces look fine"*. No document has been produced recording any prior interest in buying SAT before the purchase was driven forward.

(4) No-one on the technical side, other than, at the last minute, Dr Menell, was consulted or involved. Dr Blanchflower would have expected to be so; but his unchallenged evidence was that he was *"not aware of this transaction at the time"*. He added that had there been a perceived need to extend the functionality of Autonomy's own product (Stat Server) to include a user interface like the SAT's, that could easily have been done, but no one had ever suggested it was needed.

(5) The purchase was ascribed considerable urgency within Autonomy. No reason was suggested in evidence. Dr Lynch speculated that perhaps the product was needed urgently for a customer: but he accepted this was no more than speculation.

(6) The rationale developed thereafter, with the assistance of Dr Menell, was that (according to Deloitte's working note after discussions with him) the SAT allowed Autonomy *"access to the portals to surface IDOL functions directly into a federally certified SharePoint Environment. This creates IDOL function capabilities in SP Portals within the Fed."* SharePoint was presented as *"a product which is actively used by US Federal Government departments"*.

(7) However, according to the Claimants, the reason thus recorded in Deloitte's working paper would not have been a good reason for purchasing the SAT, because SAT had nothing to do with SharePoint.

(8) Dr Lynch's attempt to explain this in cross-examination tended to confirm the impression that those explaining the matter to Deloitte (and, in particular, Dr Menell) did not really know what the rationale was, and reinforced the conclusion that no one within Autonomy conducted any technical evaluation of the SAT in advance of the purchase. Dr Lynch told me that he thought there had been *"confusion between two different products"* namely SAT and AIS, and explained that whilst SAT was a *"tool that analyses the searches done on IDOL…AIS is a web part for SharePoint"*. He added that he did not know how the confusion had happened. But the metadata showed that Deloitte's working

paper was dated 29 April 2009, some four months prior to Autonomy's purchase of AIS on 2 September 2009. The Claimants suggested that it was *"hard to see how on 29 April 2009 Deloitte could have confused SAT with a different product that Autonomy only decided to buy four months later"* and that the inaccurate description was likely to have come from Dr Menell. They supported the suggestion by pointing out that when later on, in October 2009, Deloitte prepared a further interim review summary memorandum to consider both the purchase of the SAT and AIS, they recorded that Dr Menell had *"noted that both items of software related to the Microsoft Sharepoint software"*. The Claimants summarised the position as being that:

> *"there is no contemporaneous document which records a commercial rationale for the purchase of SAT which reflects SAT's true functionality."*

(9) There is no evidence either of anyone within Autonomy making any use of the SAT after the SAT purchase. Dr Lynch said that Dr Blanchflower's evidence that it was never used either internally within Autonomy or by customers was wrong, but when pressed for examples could provide none. No witnesses were called by Dr Lynch to assert that they had used SAT at any time or sold it to customers.

(10) The payment flows of the purchase moneys show, and Mr David Truitt in his deposition in the MicroTech litigation confirmed, that MicroLink did indeed immediately use all the money it received from the SAT purchase to pay down some of its debt to Autonomy. At that time, MicroLink had no available resources of its own from which to do so.

27. Against this, the Defendants submitted that the transaction had in fact a sound commercial rationale: the SAT was useful software developed by MicroLink on the basis of their specialist expertise in working with customers on Autonomy products. They relied on the following:

(1) SAT was said to enable *"clients to capture and analyse metrics regarding their utilisation of IDOL server and IDOL-based applications."*

(2) Dr Blanchflower accepted in cross-examination that the SAT had more differences from Autonomy's own Stat Server software than he had identified in his witness statement. He had suggested that the only real difference was that Stat Server did not have an interface to display results diagrammatically, and that this did not justify paying anywhere close to $4.1 million. His evidence was based on a review of the SAT licence and a proposal document by MicroLink *"to determine what it was trying to do"*: he had not analysed the actual SAT software, because he did not have a copy of it.

(3) The SAT had core features and additional and useful capabilities and functionality of real utility which IDOL's Stat Server did not have, as email exchanges in August 2009 revealed had been noted within Autonomy.

(4) Further, and as Dr Lynch emphasised particularly in cross-examination, SAT could export to systems like 'Cognos' providing business intelligence reporting capabilities, which again Stat Server could not, as then configured.

(5) Although Dr Blanchflower talked of writing additional functionality within an hour, that was likely to have been greatly exaggerated.

(6) Even where there was an overlap in functionality between Stat Server and SAT, there was evidence that the Stat Server was poorly regarded within Autonomy.

(7) Further, the Defendants submitted that SAT was acquired at fair value, and indeed that the Claimants did not suggest otherwise at trial.

28. The Defendants did not, however, have evidence to contradict the other two points relied on by the Claimants in relation to the SAT: they acknowledged that the evidence of the use after its purchase was *"not clear"*, and they did not dispute the flow of funds, instead submitting that it was irrelevant if the transaction (which was endorsed by Autonomy's board of directors) was a sound one for fair value.

29. In my judgment, the preponderance of the evidence is such as to cast real doubt on the reasons relied on by the Defendants for the purchase of the SAT at such a price. As so often, the Defendants could muster ostensibly coherent points of justification (as, for example, for the 'pure' hardware sales); but the weight of evidence against those points having really driven the decision is considerable and, in my assessment, clearly preponderant. I cannot accept that the Claimants did not suggest that the price paid was excessive: that was the inevitable consequence of their arguments, and Dr Blanchflower expressly stated that the SAT was not worth nearly as much.

The AIS purchase

30. The second transaction which the Claimants relied on in this context was Autonomy's purchase in Q3 2009 of resale and distribution rights in respect of AIS software from MicroLink at a cost of $5.2 million.

31. MicroLink's presentational material explained that AIS, which had two principal components (AIS webparts and AIS Fetch) had been developed by MicroLink, leveraging its long experience of both Autonomy's products and Microsoft SharePoint, to enable its customers to enhance their use of Autonomy's products by allowing them to utilise IDOL 7 and Microsoft SharePoint in a unified platform. It was designed to have encryption levels up to US federal standards so that it could successfully be deployed to the US Government and Fortune 500 companies.

32. The Claimants made very similar points in relation to the AIS purchase as in relation to the SAT purchase, contending that:

(1) No proper evaluation was undertaken by Autonomy prior to purchase;

(2) Autonomy already had its own SharePoint connector prior to the purchase;

(3) The creation of such a connector is not particularly complex, and Mr Greenwood (who was Autonomy's Head of Connectors) was not challenged on his evidence that it would probably not have taken more than 3-4 weeks of a developer's time; but Mr Greenwood was not consulted or even told about the AIS purchase;

(4) There was sparse, if any, evidence of its use within Autonomy after its purchase; and

(5) The payment flows between Autonomy and MicroLink, showing the moneys received by MicroLink being paid on to Autonomy almost at the same time, constituted further strong evidence that the true reason for the purchase was to put MicroLink in funds with which to pay its debt in respect of its VAR transactions with Autonomy.

33. Likewise, the Defendants rejected the Claimants' contentions in relation to AIS on much the same basis as they had sought to reject the SAT allegations, contending that:

(1) Contrary to the Claimants' case (and evidence on their behalf from Mr Greenwood) there had been a proper evaluation including by Mr Lucini, which had also satisfied Deloitte which reviewed it with the assistance of its in-house technical expert, Mr Ben Johnstone, who consulted both Mr Lucini and Dr Menell;

(2) The AIS product did not overlap with Autonomy's connector product. The Claimants' suggestion to the contrary was based on a narrow review of only one element of the product, known as the AIS Fetch (as the connector was called), whereas the product's other element, the "webparts" constituted the real *"heart of the product"* which was both different and of great utility to customers (offering, for example, enhanced search and encryption levels), as illustrated by its deployment in Government and Fortune 500 companies (including the US Joint Forces Command and NASA) for use with their IDOL and SharePoint products;

(3) There was no suggestion that the purchase was not at fair value: and Deloitte had been satisfied in that regard also.

34. Again, as in relation to the SAT, the evidence of subsequent use within Autonomy was sparse; but the Defendants pointed to the fact that there is no reason to suppose that the product was not used, given the evidence of its use in the market, and also to the fact that although the Claimants had originally pleaded that Autonomy never used the product, they had amended to delete and abandon that plea. As to the money flows, the Defendants made the same point as in the context of SAT: that if the transaction was a commercially fair one, what was done with the proceeds was irrelevant.

35. I consider the assessment whether the AIS purchase was predominantly an expedient to rescue MicroLink from the *"hook"* to be more finely balanced than the similar question relating to the SAT. On balance, however, even if there was a coincidence of benefit to Autonomy and an imperative to release MicroLink, the episode is consistent with, and mildly supportive of, it having always been the intention and shared understanding that MicroLink should not be left *"on the hook"*.

Acquisition of MicroLink by Autonomy

36. The third of the transactions relied on by the Claimants as further evidence of the side agreement or understanding they alleged in the context of VT1 was the MicroLink acquisition, which closed in January 2010 for $55,000,000.

37. The Defendants contended that the MicroLink acquisition was made for solid and sound commercial reasons: being to ensure that Autonomy could continue sales to the US Federal Government after the US regulatory clearance which it had through a US subsidiary called Verity Inc expired. This happened when the US Federal Government changed the rules and prohibited foreign companies (such as Autonomy) conducting such business through a US subsidiary unless that subsidiary was ring-fenced or segregated in management terms from its foreign parent. Dr Lynch gave the following explanation in his witness statement:

> *"285. MicroLink was a longstanding partner of Autonomy based in the US. It had federal security clearances and thus could sell to and work with the US Federal Government, like the National Reconnaissance Office, which typically only purchased through companies with security clearances. MicroLink were very familiar with Autonomy technology and its marketability in the federal space. They had been a partner of Autonomy's since 2004.*
>
> *286. As a UK company, it was difficult for Autonomy to get federal security clearance. Prior to the MicroLink acquisition, as a workaround solution, Autonomy's US federal business was run by Verity, a US subsidiary that did have these clearances. In Autumn 2009, the US Federal Government changed the rules on how foreign companies could conduct US federal business. Using a US subsidiary was no longer sufficient; the subsidiary had to be ring-fenced from the parent. This was not practical with Verity because the majority of its business was commercial, and its commercial and federal businesses were integrated. Autonomy therefore needed to acquire a company that would be solely federal, that could be ring-fenced from the commercial business. MicroLink was a good choice for Autonomy-it had contacts in the federal space, had the requisite security clearances and was already a strong Autonomy partner. We thought the acquisition would keep our federal business alive and strengthen it. Autonomy approached Mr Dave Truitt, then CEO of MicroLink, about the idea. He was receptive and saw that it was a good business opportunity.*
>
> *287. The negotiations were led by Messrs Kanter and Hussain. I agreed with the strategy to acquire MicroLink and was kept abreast of developments by other members of management. Autonomy valued MicroLink at $55M and that was the price ultimately agreed. It was also agreed that Mr Dave Truitt could spin out certain business from MicroLink to form DiscoverTech. Mr Dave Truitt negotiated a deal whereby DiscoverTech would own the IP to certain MicroLink products that were in their infancy, including DiscoverEngine, which DiscoverTech could then further develop and sell.*
>
> *288. It was further agreed that Mr Dave Truitt would stay at MicroLink for one year after the acquisition, to facilitate the transition, and then be allowed to move to DiscoverTech full-time as the CEO. I understand HP has suggested that something nefarious can be inferred from the fact that Mr Dave Truitt was involved with a number of the resellers implicated in their claims. As explained, Mr Dave Truitt was the prior CEO of*

MicroLink who then became the CEO of DiscoverTech, a business he spun out of MicroLink. I now know that he was also a silent investor in MicroTech, where his brother Mr Steve Truitt worked, but had no role in the management of the MicroTech business. I do not recall being aware of this at the time. However, from my perspective, nothing improper can be inferred from the above and Mr Dave Truitt's role in both MicroLink and DiscoverTech did not raise any concerns for me at the time.

289. From my perspective, $55M was a fair price for the acquisition of MicroLink. The federal business was a reasonable slice of Autonomy's business but we felt we were underrepresented. In acquiring MicroLink we acquired the necessary clearances and cleared personnel to be able to operate in the US federal sphere. Security clearances can take years to come through, making MicroLink much more valuable than an ordinary services company. It turned out to be a very successful acquisition and led to considerable business for Autonomy.

290. Autonomy's Board of Directors approved the acquisition after reviewing information regarding the strategy behind the deal and the valuation. I also understand that Deloitte handled the acquisition accounting and assessed the value of MicroLink, how it should be valued on our books and what to do with the inter-company debt. To my knowledge, Deloitte did not raise any concerns about our accounting for the acquisition."

38. In those circumstances, the Defendants contended that Autonomy had limited options, which Dr Lynch presented as having been as follows:

    (1) It could seek to restore Verity's clearance by imposing the strict segregation required. However, this was considered to be commercially unrealistic given the substantial size of Verity and the level of integration of Verity's business, products and staff with the wider group.

    (2) It could exit the federally cleared business, transacting only such deals as it could achieve with cleared resellers who dealt with those federal customers. This would be to cede a substantial potential business stream to middlemen, leaving Autonomy with far less control of the business and forced to pay margin to the reseller on any sale. Dr Lynch explained (in fact, in connection with the ATIC transaction) that Autonomy had striven over the years to get itself out of the position of being beholden to the margins extracted by large resellers such as Lockheed Martin. The prospect of operating in this arena without a federally cleared subsidiary was not attractive.

    (3) Autonomy could alternatively acquire a federally cleared reseller which was able to maintain as a sufficiently segregated entity that it complied with the clearance requirements, but without impeding the integration of important members of the group (as would happen if Autonomy attempted to restore Verity's clearance). This, according to Dr Lynch, was precisely what the MicroLink acquisition offered.

39. The evidence of full board of directors' approval of the acquisition after careful explanation was clear. Deloitte, which was fully aware of MicroLink's indebtedness,

also prepared a detailed analysis paper, addressing primarily whether after acquisition MicroLink would have to be treated as a separate segment for accounting purposes but dealing also with the structure and rationale of the acquisition including the prior spin-off of the DiscoverPoint business which formed a prong of the Claimants' attack as described below.

40. The Defendants pointed out that the Claimants' own witnesses, and in particular Mr Egan and Mr Kalbag, supported the rationale and the decision. Mr Egan said he was *"100% for this, absolutely, yes"* though he also made clear that his memory of the transaction was very limited. He added that his belief at the time was that it *"was a nice benefit of it"* that the debt *"would be effectively forgiven because MicroLink would be a part of Autonomy"*. When cross-examined on the broader statement in his witness statement that he believed that to have been also the perspective of Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter, he accepted that he did not have evidence of their belief or outlook: *"It was just a belief that I had…"*

41. Against this, the Claimants' case was that it was that benefit which was an operative, and probably the primary, rationale of the acquisition. They accepted that the rationale offered by the Defendants was also part of it, but they asserted that it was not the whole or even the largest part of it. They relied in summary on the following matters:

    (1) By September 2009, MicroLink owed Autonomy some $22.7 million, which would cause problems also for any future deals when Deloitte assessed collectability, as Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination he knew.

    (2) Although Dr Lynch added that it *"wasn't due…"*[8] and there was an email from Mr Hussain supporting that, the Claimants suggested that the effort to downplay the position was *"carefully-crafted"* and that there was real concern about the debt and MicroLink's deteriorated position, including the concern that Deloitte would be against further sales to MicroLink on collectability grounds.

    (3) Mr Egan's evidence in his witness statement was that from his perspective and (again as he perceived it) also that of both Defendants and Mr Kanter forgiveness of debt which it would enable was *"one reason for Autonomy to purchase Microlink"*.

    (4) Even though there was a likely benefit to Autonomy in acquiring a federally-cleared reseller such as MicroLink, that was not an imperative. The acquisition was not necessary in order for Autonomy to continue selling to US government customers: they pointed out that Autonomy could instead have sold through federally-cleared resellers, and they cited in that context an email to Dr Lynch dated 14 September 2009 where Mr Kanter had said just that.

    (5) The process (between Mr Hussain and Mr David Truitt) which then started to negotiate terms was far from arms' length. Various proposals were discussed; but a hallmark of each was the focus of both parties on ways of structuring the deal so that (a) Mr Truitt would pay for certain proprietary products/rights

[8] An email dated 14 September 2009 from Mr Hussain to Mr Egan cc Dr Lynch stated that the indebtedness was not such a concern because *"June 09 deals not owed is $10.9m leaving $11.8m; $9.6m is owed from the EDD deal in December 08 which had long payment terms; so as long as we receive about $1.5m we should be up to date"*.

from MicroLink to enable him to carry on business using them in a new vehicle of his own (which was the basis of DiscoverTech) (b) the acquisition price for MicroLink would be calibrated to cover the purchases and (c) in that way Autonomy would be able to recognise revenue from the sales of assets taken out.

(6) MicroLink's financial position by December 2009 was difficult (if its indebtedness to Autonomy was real). It had paper assets of just under $24.5 million; only some $362,069.17 of these assets were in cash, and by far the largest asset, in the sum of $13,711,426.50, which was classified as *"Inventory Asset"*, was stated to be *"Licences purchased from Autonomy not yet resold"*. Its total liabilities were stated at $26.9 million, of which the vast majority, $23,961,729.22, consisted of *"Accounts Payable"* explained as being sums *"Due to Autonomy"*. There was little or no prospect of MicroLink paying Autonomy out of its own resources. If some or all of the Autonomy software held in in MicroLink's inventory could not be onsold then MicroLink's liabilities would very substantially exceed its assets.

(7) In the event, MicroLink's outstanding indebtedness was duly forgiven or written off after the acquisition in October 2011.

42. The Claimants added to this that the purchase price of the acquisition was, in effect, enhanced by $10,000,000 so that, in return, Mr David Truitt's new company, DiscoverTech, would have the funds to purchase a software licence of the same sum from Autonomy so that Autonomy could recognise $10,000,000 of revenue in respect of the impugned VAR transaction between Autonomy and MicroTech for end-user DiscoverTech referred to as VT5. I shall deal later with that last point relating to VT5: see paragraphs *255ff*.

43. In concluding my assessment of the issue as to the rationale of the MicroLink acquisition it is fair to acknowledge the following points of importance:

(1) There was considerable dispute as to the exact net position in MicroLink given that (a) Dr Lynch was correct in saying that not all the indebtedness to Autonomy was yet due and (b) some of the *"inventory"* of Autonomy software licences that MicroLink had not yet onsold was capable of being realised, though it does appear that its value was written down shortly after the acquisition by $10.66 million;

(2) Dr Lynch was adamant in cross-examination that *"the company was not struggling, it was very successful and growing rapidly and had blue chip customers"*;

(3) Autonomy's board of directors unanimously approved the acquisition on the express basis that it was *"critical to accelerate the adoption of Autonomy solutions in the Federal space, where our growth prospects are limited by the lack of direct selling ability due to security requirements"*;

(4) The Claimants acknowledged that this was an important factor in the decision to acquire MicroLink;

(5) Mr Egan's evidence was that he did think at the time that the acquisition proved successful and there was evidence suggesting, for example, that some six or seven months after the acquisition, MicroLink was awarded a very large contract (the largest, it was said, in its history) by a major US Federal agency.

44. Nevertheless, the coincidence and urgency of the timing, the nature of the negotiations between Mr Hussain and Mr David Truitt, and the basic fact that the effect was to enable MicroLink's indebtedness to Autonomy to be dissolved, have persuaded me that the latter was a substantial part of the rationale for the acquisition, and that it is supportive of the Claimants' case that one way or another, Autonomy did what was necessary to ensure that its 'friendly' VARs were not left *"on the hook"*.

Summary of conclusions in respect of VT1 and associated purchases

45. In summary, the three purchase transactions addressed above reinforce my conclusion that the VAR transactions comprising VT1 were not true sales, and the obligations assumed in law were never intended or expected to be enforced.

46. I accept the Claimants' case in relation to the VT1 transactions that:

(1) Notwithstanding the legal enforceability of the provisions of the contracts governing them, in reality it was never intended or expected that the VAR would have any role in respect of the negotiation and sale to an end-user of the software licenced to it: that was intended to be and in the event was exclusively a matter for Autonomy. The VAR was in terms of what was actually intended or expected of it, no more than a placeholder.

(2) It was not expected or intended that the VAR should ever be required to pay, or in fact pay, any sums due under the VAR sale out of its own resources. The three purchase transactions provide confirmatory evidence of this.

(3) The Defendants knew this; and that recognition of revenue from the VAR sale was improper.

The Capax Discovery VAR deals in Part I: VT2, VT3, VT4 and VT10

47. I turn to address the following impugned VAR transactions with Capax Discovery: VT2 (for proposed end-user TXU), VT3 (for proposed end-user Kraft), VT4 (for proposed end-user Eli Lilly) and VT10 (for proposed end-user the UK FSA). I have selected those four transactions with Capax Discovery as providing examples from the formative stages of Autonomy's engagement with Capax Discovery and thereafter a reasonable chronological spread, and also because they appear to me to illustrate particularly clearly, but representatively, certain important aspects of that engagement.

Various antecedent points

48. Before turning to the specific transactions, however, it is convenient to record certain details of the antecedents to the VAR sales to Capax Discovery, which provide some insight into the pattern of those sales, and a few key points relevant or common to all the impugned VAR sales to Capax Discovery.

A relevant antecedent arrangement?

49. The first of these key points relates to the background to Autonomy's use of Capax Discovery as a VAR. Autonomy's first engagement with Capax Discovery was not a VAR sale. It was a licence and distribution agreement made between Autonomy Inc and Capax Discovery on 31 March 2009 (the last day of Q1 2009), signed by Mr Egan on behalf of Autonomy Inc and Mr Baiocco on behalf of Capax Discovery ("the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale"), which forms part of the Capax reciprocal transaction, which I address in detail in the chapter of this judgment that deals with the "Reciprocal" transactions. The term of the agreement was five years from the effective date of 31 March 2009.

50. The licence and distribution agreement provided for Autonomy Inc to grant Capax Discovery a licence to use software whilst providing services or installing Autonomy software (which included Autonomy's e-Discovery software, Introspect and EAS) for the benefit of Autonomy customers. The consideration for the licence grant was (i) an initial licence fee of $7,500,000, (ii) a royalty fee equal to 20% of the net revenues earned by Capax Discovery, which was payable once Capax Discovery's net revenues from distributing Autonomy's services and/or providing its own Software-as-a-Service ("SaaS") offering exceeded $25 million, and (iii) an annual support fee equal to 5% of the licence fee, i.e. $375,000, the first two years of which was payable with the initial licence fee. The initial licence fee and the support fee for the first two years of support services, totalling $8,250,000, were payable in accordance with a schedule set out in the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale. The first instalment of $500,000 was due on 30 April 2009. There were then eight instalments of $968,750, which were due at three-month intervals thereafter until 31 March 2011. Autonomy recognised the $7,500,000 licence fee as revenue in Q1 2009.

51. The first Capax Discovery/EDD sale was clearly important to Autonomy's quarterly revenue targets, as the emails demonstrate. On 31 March 2009, Mr Robert Sass ("Mr Sass") sent Mr Hussain and Mr Egan (among others) an email marked with 'high importance' saying: "*CAPAX IS IN (SIGNED COPY IN HAND)*". A few hours later, Mr Hussain replied, copying Dr Lynch, saying "*Very well done to the both of you – I like $7.5m deals!*".

52. The problem was that, at the time, Capax Discovery was a newly-formed entity, established by Mr Baiocco to set up an e-Discovery business. It had no substantial assets, no revenue stream and no trading record, as documentary evidence makes clear Mr Hussain and Autonomy's finance department were well aware. According to the Claimants, this was no real impediment from the point of view of Mr Baiocco and Mr Egan because they had reached an agreement that Autonomy would channel sufficient funds to Capax Discovery to allow it to pay instalments due under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale, and to provide what Mr Baiocco referred to as a *"champagne smacking"* profit. But it was a problem from the point of view of establishing a paper trail of financial information sufficient to justify a deal of such magnitude with such a fledgling counterparty.

53. When Mr Chamberlain outlined the financial information he would want to see from the new entity, including "*at least the first years[ʻ] worth of payments as funding*" and a budget to demonstrate that it was expected to be a profitable business that would be able

to generate cash to meet the longer term obligations, on 31 March 2009, Mr Baiocco provided Mr Sass with financial statements for Capax Global. But this was accompanied by a letter stating that:

> *"Capax Discovery LLC is looking forward to a successful business relationship with Autonomy. The specific contract terms are being finalized and the contract should be ready for signature shortly.*
>
> *In the meantime, Autonomy has requested financial information for Capax Global LLC. We are here providing that information but with the express understanding that Capax Global LLC is a separate and distinct entity from Capax Discovery LLC. All contractual obligations will be between Capax Discovery LLC and Autonomy only."*

54. The message was clear: it should <u>not</u> be assumed that Capax Global would stand behind the financial obligations of Capax Discovery. As Dr Lynch was keen to point out in his first witness statement and in his oral evidence, in the real world, parent companies will often be expected to stand behind their subsidiaries, for reputational and other reasons. Mr Baiocco's letter negated any such expectation. If it was not already apparent to Autonomy that a reason for Mr Baiocco forming the new entity was to insulate Capax Global, that point was driven home by this letter.

55. According to Mr Welham, that clear message was not, however, shared with Deloitte: it was Mr Welham's unchallenged evidence that Deloitte was <u>not</u> provided with a copy of this letter, either during its review or at any time thereafter. As the Claimants submitted, it is not easy to think of an innocent explanation for why Autonomy withheld the letter from Deloitte; even Dr Lynch was stumped: he resorted to a generality about a parent always wanting to avoid reputational risk, not able to come up with an explanation. Mr Hussain could not be asked: but the Claimants submitted, as must be right and I accept, that with the finance department so exercised about the issue it is most unlikely he did not know about the difficulty or that any of this happened without his knowledge.

56. If a paper trail to justify the position could not be developed, the importance of showing that Capax Discovery was in fact paying its debts became all the more important. Consistently with what according to the Claimants' case had been agreed between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco (as they each confirmed it had been), the process adopted to give the appearance of a fast-developing revenue stream from which Capax Discovery could (and in the event, did) pay the instalments due under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale was for Autonomy to invoice and pay Capax Discovery for "*outsourcing*" what were described as 'specialised EDD services' to Capax Discovery.

57. According to the Claimants, the supposed *"outsourcing"* was a fiction. It was Mr Egan's clear evidence that, just a week or so after the licence, Capax Discovery was not then in a position to perform e-Discovery services for Autonomy's customers; in other words, Autonomy could not outsource its own e-Discovery work to Capax Discovery. Mr Egan accepted in cross-examination that he did not *"proactively tell"* anyone in Autonomy's finance department; but he was firm in his belief that Mr Hussain and Dr Menell would certainly have known this from the fact that the work could not possibly have been done so little time after the licence.

58. To return to the 'handshake' agreement between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco, it is to be noted that the existence of an arrangement between Mr Baiocco and Mr Egan was not challenged. Rather, the challenges came in the form of: (i) the timing of the arrangement, (ii) its terms, and (iii) who else knew about it. There was considerable dispute about all three issues, and especially the question of the terms of the agreement in light of conflicting evidence that a note of an interview with Morgan Lewis in February 2013 suggested Mr Baiocco had given, to the effect that the only agreement was that Autonomy was going to send Capax Discovery enough business to cover the instalments due under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale, rather than that Autonomy would initially fund such instalments.

59. For reasons more elaborately explained elsewhere (see paragraphs 2497 to 2502 in the main body of the judgment) I have concluded that the 'handshake' agreement was before the written agreement, as Mr Baiocco told me it was; and that the agreement was a means of getting the funds to Capax Discovery to enable it to pay instalments due under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale. But for present purposes, the more immediately relevant points are, as it seems to me, that these arrangements (a) do suggest a previous track record of arrangements between Mr Baiocco and Mr Egan that sat outside a contract, and quite radically altered its economic substance from that apparent from the legal terms and (b) provide a foretaste of the arrangements which on the Claimants' case underpinned all the impugned VAR sales.

Standard terms of the Capax Discovery VAR sales

60. The second of the 'key points' is that each of the Autonomy/Capax Discovery VAR sales transactions took place under a VAR agreement between Autonomy and Capax Discovery dated 30 June 2009 ("the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement"). This provided for the following, amongst other things:

    (1) Clause 5.1 stipulated that there was required to be a purchase order for each sale transaction, and in the event of any conflict between the terms of a purchase order and the agreement, the terms of the VAR agreement would prevail.

    (2) Clause 23 stated:

    > *"__ENTIRE AGREEMENT: AMENDMENT__. This Agreement sets forth the complete and exclusive agreement between the parties with respect to its subject matter and supersedes any and all other written or oral agreements previously existing between the parties with respect to such subject matter. No alterations, modifications or additions to this Agreement shall be valid unless made in writing and signed by a Director or Officer of each party. The terms of any purchase orders or the like submitted by the VAR which conflict with any terms in this Agreement whether or not countersigned as accepted by Autonomy shall not be binding on Autonomy, regardless of Autonomy's failure to object to such terms."*

    This provision was drawn so as to invalidate the legal effect of even written variations drawn up in purchase orders between Capax Discovery and

Autonomy. Any variation necessarily needed to be in writing and signed by a director or officer of Autonomy. The clause similarly negated any prior arrangement reached between Capax Discovery and Autonomy (or more pertinently, any Autonomy salesman).

(3) Clause 7(c) made it clear that Capax Discovery was unequivocally on risk for any purchase, irrespective of whether or not Capax Discovery could obtain payment from an on-sale to an end-user:

> *"VAR shall not be relieved of its obligations to pay fees owed to Autonomy hereunder by the non payment of fees by an end-user."*

61. These provisions made crystal clear the legal position that no side or collateral agreements would be effective in law to modify in any way the legal obligations assumed, and that the VAR's obligation to pay was not in any way conditional on itself receiving funds from an end-user.

Audit confirmation letters in every case

62. The third of the 'key points' is that this position in law was further buttressed by the requirement of the auditors that the VAR (here, Capax Discovery) must sign 'debtor confirmation letters' in respect of the debt arising under the impugned VAR deals. The debtor confirmations are identified further below by reference to the individual transactions. For example, in VT16 (which *inter alia* related to the Amgen deal) the debtor confirmation stated:

> *"The items listed above were properly charged to our account and were unpaid as of 30th September 2010 and there are no side letters or other agreements in respect of the subject matter of this request, except as noted below:*
> *[Nothing was noted.]*
>
> *We acknowledge that Autonomy Corporation plc retains no continuing managerial involvement in the delivery of this product or service, other than stipulated in the licence agreement."*

63. Fourth of the 'key points' was that Mr Baiocco, who invariably represented Capax Discovery in each of the sales, confirmed in his evidence that he *"absolutely believed"* the debtor confirmations he signed to be true. Mr Egan also believed them to be true. In Mr Baiocco's witness statement, in language smacking of considerable lawyering, Mr Baiocco set out his view of the nature of the Capax Discovery transactions in general terms as follows:

> *"A value-added reseller ("VAR"), as that term is usually used, is a company that purchases a product from a manufacturer or supplier to which it adds features or services and then resells the package (usually to an end-user) as an integrated or completed solution. However, that was not the nature of the relationship we had with Autonomy. Instead, Mr Egan told me that Autonomy*

often faced the situation where it was very close to completing a sale to an end-user, which it was not able to conclude by the end of the quarter. Rather than Autonomy lowering the price to get the end-user to sign a contract before quarter end, Autonomy wished instead (a) to enter into an agreement with us at quarter end supposedly for on-sale by us of the software in question to the end-user, and then (b) to continue to negotiate with the end-user and to close the deal with the end-user in the following quarter. In return, Capax Discovery would receive a 10% fee."

VT2: Capax/TXU in Q2 2009 and Q3 2009

64. The Capax Discovery/TXU VAR transaction (VT2) was the first VAR sale by Autonomy to Capax Discovery. Mr Baiocco's evidence was that he was approached in around May or June 2009 by Mr Egan, asking whether Capax Discovery would become a reseller for Autonomy.

65. VT2 was in two parts. Both sales were on the terms of purchase orders issued under the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement (see paragraph 60 above) for prospective end-user TXU. The first purchase order was dated 30 June 2009 and was in an amount of $783,086 for the licence fee plus $78,309 for support and maintenance to be paid in three instalments within 90, 180 and 270 days respectively of 30 June 2009. The second purchase order was dated 30 September 2009 and was in an amount of $462,840 for license ($61,652), support and maintenance ($6,165) and hardware ($395,023).

66. The Claimants relied especially on the following features of VT2:

    (1) At the time, Capax Discovery had only very recently been incorporated. At least if looked at as an entity legally separate from its parent (Capax Global), the risk in taking on a liability of $1.3 million was very considerable.

    (2) Although Mr Baiocco accepted in cross-examination that part of the incentive for doing the TXU deal was that Capax could try to build a relationship with TXU, and Capax did then obtain some business from TXU, the Claimants contended that the risk was so disproportionate to the reward for a recently incorporated entity that it lacked any *"sensible business justification"* absent some other explanation of its acceptability to Capax.

    (3) The Claimants submitted that the obvious explanation of this basic mismatch between legal exposure and the rationality of taking the risk was that there was a side agreement or understanding that Autonomy would relieve it of the risk.

    (4) They contended further that that explanation is supported by the fact that there is no evidence of any price negotiation between Capax Discovery and either Autonomy or TXU, nor of any assessment by Capax Discovery of the inherent risk by reference to the then state of negotiations for an end-user deal and the reliability of the end-user and its covenant.

    (5) There is no evidence that Capax Discovery was ever intended to, or did in fact, have any involvement in Autonomy's ongoing attempts before and after the purchase orders to negotiate an end-user deal with TXU. Only Autonomy negotiated with TXU.

(6) After its exclusive negotiations with TXU, Autonomy entered into a direct Master Services Agreement with TXU and a Product Purchase Agreement exhibited to it on 18 September 2009 for the sale and purchase of both software and hardware for a total fee of $1,693,404 with an additional fee for consulting and training of $112,500.

(7) The 'direct' sale differed in substance from the VAR sale: and the fees payable were more than double those payable under the first Capax Discovery purchase order. In an email dated 15 September 2009 from Mr Livius Guiao ("Mr Guiao") to Mr Hussain, Dr Menell, Mr Kanter, Mr Chamberlain and others Mr Guiao expressed the need to check that given that *"the terms of this deal were not contemplated at the outset, and largely defined in response to customer demands in the context of the negotiation"* and "*Given the one-off nature of where we ended up",* all concerned were *"Ok with moving forward".* Of course, Autonomy had it in its power to deliver software whether or not the subject of the VAR sale, and to make an agreement without regard to any restrictions that might apply to a VAR.

(8) Although the contract was "direct" between Autonomy and TXU, the direct sale agreements provided that TXU was to pay Autonomy or Autonomy's designated payee. On 30 September 2009 Autonomy notified TXU that all fees due under the Product Purchase Agreement were to be paid to Capax Discovery.

(9) The sums thus to be paid to Capax Discovery exceeded the sums payable under the first purchase order by almost double; it was (so the Claimants alleged) because of this that Autonomy arranged for Capax Discovery to issue the second purchase order for the purchase of software and hardware.

(10) Mr Baiocco gave unchallenged evidence that:

> *"TXU paid Capax Discovery $47,000 per month over the next 36 months. Between December 31,2009 and September 6, 2011, Capax Discovery paid Autonomy the full amount of the two TXU purchase orders and retained the balance of $370,000."*

(11) Although Capax Discovery thus pocketed some $370,000 despite having no role in bringing about any sale of the software licence to TXU, unusually the payments from TXU came in 36 relatively modest tranches: and, significantly according to the Claimants, this coincided with (or the Claimants would say, resulted in) an exactly corresponding delay in Capax Discovery paying on to Autonomy what was owed. That, the Claimants suggested, evidenced a side agreement or understanding that Capax Discovery would only pay if and when paid.

67. The Claimants' case was that the vice of the arrangements was further demonstrated by the fact that Autonomy never told Deloitte about the direct Autonomy/TXU agreement; and in (allegedly) unchallenged evidence Mr Welham stated in his witness statement that this was would have been relevant for Deloitte:

> *"…because evidence of revenue reversals on sales to Capax Discovery would have been relevant to our assessment of the timing of revenue recognition in relation to further Capax Discovery sales. As I will explain further below, Deloitte became aware in the first two quarters of 2010 of a handful of VAR transactions being replaced by direct deals between Autonomy and the end-user, and these caused Deloitte concern."*

68. Mr Welham added that he would have expected any direct deal with TXU in Q3 2009 to have been included in a list of all revenue deals of $100,000 or more provided by Autonomy to Deloitte for the purpose of its Q3 2009 review: but it was not. The Claimants contended that by not including the direct TXU deal in Autonomy's list of Q3 2009 transactions with revenues exceeding $100,000 Autonomy deliberately concealed from Deloitte the fact of the direct dealing because (it was stated in the Claimants' closing submissions):

> *"the existence of the direct sale would have given rise to a concern that the agreement with Capax Discovery had, in effect, been reversed and would later be seen by Deloitte as part of a pattern of such reversals."* [9]

69. The Defendants disputed all these contentions, and submitted that:

    (1) The terms of the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement made it clear that the VAR was obliged to pay (and was not relieved by any non-payment by the end-user) and that the agreement comprised the entire agreement between the parties. The terms of the contractual arrangement also made it clear that the risk of ownership had passed, and that managerial control was not retained.

    (2) None of this was said to be a sham. The June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement represented the intentions of the parties, and they had promised they had no other.

    (3) Further, there was no 'direct' evidence of any side agreement or understanding. On the contrary, Mr Baiocco had accepted that on all the Capax Discovery VAR deals, including this one, Capax Discovery was well aware of the terms of the arrangement and the nature and legal fact of the risk; he accepted the risk because he was confident that an end-user deal would be closed and in the hope and expectation of immediate profit and then longer term reward by way of a direct and valuable relationship with the end-user. Mr Egan did not specifically address the TXU deal in his witness statement, and did not suggest there was anything unusual or improper about it.

    (4) The second purchase order was not occasioned to *"remedy the disparity between Capax Discovery's 30 June 2009 purchase order and the Autonomy/TXU agreement"* (as the Claimants alleged) but to cover additional licences, newly agreed managed services and support and hardware, as recorded in an internal Autonomy email dated 15 September 2009 from Mr Livius Guiao to Mr Hussain, Dr Menell, Mr Kanter, Mr Chamberlain and others requesting confirmation of the deal, which stated (*inter alia*) as follows:

[9] Being precisely the concern later expressed by Deloitte in 2010.

> *"Background: We sold licence and support through our reseller CapAx last Q, and they submitted a PO for $783k licence + 10% maintenance. It has since evolved into a managed services engagement for which TXU will pay CapAx $47k per month for 36 months. This fee is payment for Qfiniti licences, hardware and managed services (including support). It's my understanding that we are waiting for a second PO for CapAx to cover the managed services and hardware."*

(5) As mentioned above, Capax Discovery did indeed subsequently enter into a sub-contracted service agreement with TXU; and Mr Baiocco confirmed in his testimony in the US criminal proceedings that the deal worked *"in the way we hoped it was going to work"* (though it is fair to add that he said this to contrast the position with later deals).

(6) The statements in the Goldberg Segalla letter (see paragraph 2024 in the main body of the judgment) were true: and see paragraphs 2020 to 2028 in the main body of the judgment. The most that was said between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco was that Autonomy would try to assist Capax Discovery if the end-user did not close by slotting Capax Discovery into another deal (*"backfilling"*, which did not deprive the original VAR deal of substance and did not undermine revenue recognition in respect of it). Mr Baiocco did not regard this as a side agreement at the time, or consider that he was involved in anything fraudulent.

(7) Capax Discovery had the ability to pay, if it had to. Deloitte expressly noted in their Q2 2009 review that it had a profitable business model, and drew comfort from the fact that the prospective end-user (TXU) was a Texas power company serving around 2 million homes, with latest accounts showing revenue of some $15 billion. Further, Capax Discovery's parent company, Capax Global, had adequate resources; business with Autonomy was potentially very profitable and a source also of valuable service work, all of which default would have squandered.

(8) Criticism of the second purchase order was misplaced: there was nothing improper in completing the overall transaction via the reseller, the reseller having already assumed the risk in relation to the first (major) portion.

(9) Likewise, criticism that Capax Discovery made a *"tidy profit"* was misplaced and did not suggest any side agreement or impropriety: risk deserved reward.

(10) The provision for Capax Discovery to be paid by TXU as designated payee was unobjectionable likewise: the fact that Capax Discovery paid Autonomy only as and when paid by TXU might show reluctance or forbearance in the exercise of contractual obligations, but not that there was no real sale, nor that risk or reward or managerial control had been retained.

(11) Deloitte had reviewed the revenue recognition on the deal as part of their Q2 2009 review (in July 2009) and, with an expressly recorded recognition in their "method statement" that particular care was required since *"given the nature of Autonomy's business…revenue is seen as a driver for market assessment of the performance of the business",* were satisfied that revenue was correctly recognised.

70. As to the allegations that Deloitte was misled, the Defendants submitted that:

    (1) It was only later, in 2010, that Deloitte became interested in being told about deals that had gone direct and where the VAR was relieved of liability as a result. After Deloitte had expressed that concern, Autonomy's finance department made a point of informing Deloitte of any such deals where the reseller was relieved of its liability as a result. The TXU deal occurred at an earlier stage.

    (2) In any event this was not a deal where the VAR was relieved from liability (rather, it was paid by TXU as its designated payee). Dr Lynch was asked about this in cross-examination. He told me he was not involved and did not know whether Deloitte was told of the direct deal; but he added that (a) in the case of a *"designated payee deal"*, *"the original deal isn't cancelled, it stays"* (b) Deloitte *"were given free run of all deals"* and (c) it was quite *"incorrect"* to suggest that Deloitte were intentionally not informed lest it might cause Deloitte to question the propriety of recognising revenue on VT2.

    (3) There was no reason to include the direct deal in the list of Q3 2009 deals in excess of $100,000 provided to Deloitte because that list was for revenue deals, whereas the direct deal raised no revenue additional to the Q2 2009 and Q3 2009 sales to Capax Discovery which had already been included in the revenue sheets, and it would have been wrong to double-count.

    (4) In reality, such complaint as the Claimants might have does not impact on the recognition of revenue from VT2: the most Mr Welham was prepared to say was that its disclosure *"would have been relevant to our assessment of the timing of revenue recognition in relation to further Capax Discovery sales."* It did not, in other words, affect their assessment of VT2.

My assessment of VT2

71. In my judgment, VT2 is not sensibly explicable except on the basis that the shared intention and expectations of the parties to it were that Autonomy's *"real customer"* (to use Mr Egan's phrase) was the end-user, and Capax Discovery was in substance what the Claimants labelled a *"placeholder"* for the real transaction, expected to do nothing and pay nothing out of its funds.

72. It is not realistically conceivable that a newly incorporated VAR which was genuinely at risk would have played such a minimal role after no due diligence and left Autonomy to carry on negotiations without participation of any kind or any process of keeping it updated and informed.

73. Nor is it really conceivable that Autonomy would have expected to be paid by the newly incorporated entity set up (according to Mr Baiocco) to provide a further layer of insulation from any risk, or accepted payment in dribs and drabs from the VAR once the end-user sale was closed, unless the real deal was of a different nature and substance than the contractual one, and ascribed to the VAR in effect a nominal role.

74. Any notion, sometimes suggested by the Defendants, that Autonomy was acting as agent for Capax Discovery and not on its own behalf is, in my view, almost impossible

to square with the 15 September 2009 email from Mr Guiao referred to in paragraph 66(7) above, which demonstrates the extent to which Autonomy was negotiating for itself and without regard for the VAR, and the substantive economic irrelevance of the VAR sale save to trigger revenue recognition. It is a vivid illustration, to my mind, that Autonomy's customer was the end-user.

75. I cannot regard the contractual terms as precluding an accountancy treatment consistent with the true substance of the transaction. The legal position would have held sway in any legal proceedings; but the accounts were intended to reflect its economic substance, and to include as recognised revenue only the revenue from a true sale where any onward sale to the end-user would truly be the adventure and responsibility of the VAR.

76. I do not accept the argument that such a conclusion is based on hindsight, which is impermissible. The events which occurred did not alter the substance of the transaction: they reveal its true substance and what it always was intended to be. In my judgment, these considerations, which of course do relate in part to facts occurring after the date of the VAR sale, are relevant in determining the real intentions of the parties and the economic substance of the transaction.

77. My conclusions as above summarised are fortified by the failure to notify Deloitte of the fact of the "direct deal". I do not accept the distinction sought to be made by Dr Lynch for these purposes between a "cancelled" deal and a "designated payee" deal: the effect that the VAR was provided with the funds whereby to pay off the amounts due under the VAR sale and that the VAR sale otherwise became an irrelevance (so that the VAR apparently retained no rights under the licence notionally granted) appears to have been the same in both. I do not think any good reason was provided or suggested for the failure to disclose. In my judgment, the most likely explanation is, and I find, that Deloitte were not told because it would have upset Deloitte's understanding of the nature of the transaction and led to questions about the role of Capax Discovery.

Particular points on the Defendants' involvement and knowledge of VT2

78. The Claimants contended that both Defendants were aware of facts demonstrating the impropriety of the decision to recognise revenue from VT2 and that both are culpable accordingly.

Mr Hussain's knowledge

79. As regards Mr Hussain in particular, the Claimants contended in summary that:

(1) The idea of involving Capax Discovery was, at least in part, his; and he took the credit for it: when Mr Egan reported to Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch by email dated 1 July 2009 that some large deals (*"Big ones"* with VMS, JPMC, Morgan and Intel) had successfully closed and also that *"...MM [Mr Mooney] got a $700k+ in from CAPAX that was not in Sush's planning"* Mr Hussain quickly responded that *"Unfortunately TXU (Capax) was in my planning but it came in a bit bigger!"*

(2) Mr Hussain (as well as Dr Menell, Mr Kanter, Mr Chamberlain and others) was responsible for the allegedly inappropriate issue by Capax Discovery of a

second purchase order to cover the unanticipated difference between the licence fees payable under the Autonomy/TXU direct agreement and those payable by Capax Discovery under the first purchase order (and see paragraph 66(7) above);

(3) Mr Hussain was well aware, and kept a careful track, of the correlation between the staggered (36 in all) (i) receipts by Capax Discovery from TXU and (ii) payments by Capax Discovery to Autonomy, and was thus aware of the matters alleged by the Claimants to reflect and demonstrate the "pay only if and when paid" side agreement or understanding;

(4) Mr Hussain was also aware of the direct deal between Autonomy and TXU: the Claimants appear to imply (there is no direct allegation) that Mr Hussain would have known that this should have been reported to Deloitte and that he should have ensured that it was so; likewise, they contended, he should have ensured the inclusion of the TXU direct deal in the list of revenue deals for the purposes of Deloitte's Q3 2009 review (see paragraph 68 above). The Claimants went on to assert that Mr Hussain probably authorised both omissions with a view to ensuring that the direct deal did not prompt a concern on the part of Deloitte about deal "reversals".

80. Except for emphasising his position as regards (4) in the preceding paragraph that *"it was right not to include the TXU deal in the revenue list and indeed it would have been wrong at that point to recognise revenue from the direct deal"* Mr Hussain did not respond in detail to these allegations, but he denied that there was any impropriety in anything that was done in respect of VT2.

81. In my judgment, Mr Hussain was closely involved in the salient elements of VT2 and knew that the VAR sale was simply intended to provide the basis for revenue recognition prior to the "real deal" with TXU. He was aware and indeed party to the fact that there was never any intention of requiring Capax Discovery to do or pay anything; and he knew and was involved in the arrangements which resulted in the "designated payee" way of enabling Capax Discovery to discharge its obligations under and make a profit on the VAR transaction which then became in law the irrelevance which in substance it had always been.

82. I also find that Mr Hussain knew and approved of the decision not to include the Q3 2009 direct deal between Autonomy and TXU in the list of revenue deals over $100,000 compiled for the purposes of Deloitte's Q3 2009 review, because to attribute revenue to direct deals which followed impugned VAR transactions (in respect of which revenue had already been recognised) would have been double-counting. I do not consider that decision to have been improper in the case of VT2, given that both the Q2 2009 and the Q3 2009 sales to Capax were included in the revenue sheets.

Dr Lynch's knowledge

83. As regards Dr Lynch, the Claimants did not in their pleadings identify any involvement or participation in VT2 on his part; and the Claimants' Further Information in respect of the allegations of knowledge against Dr Lynch did not identify any particulars in relation to VT2. The only specifically transaction-related evidence of his involvement that the Claimants advanced was his receipt of the email exchange on 1 July 2009

between Mr Egan and Mr Hussain which I have quoted above (of which he was an addressee).

84. Nevertheless, he was cross-examined as if he must have known about the transaction and understood that Capax Discovery was to be a "placeholder", required to do nothing and required to pay nothing in return for a large fee for (in effect) facilitating the improper recognition of revenue by Autonomy.

85. Dr Lynch rejected every aspect of this, emphasising that:

(1) He had no knowledge of or involvement in the TXU deal beyond what he had been told in the email exchange of 1 July 2009 referred to above;

(2) He had no reason to think that either the direct deal or the payment of a MAF was in the least improper (and nor was it ever suggested to him on what basis he should have known there was anything improper about the transaction);

(3) He was not involved in determining how the deal should be reported to Deloitte, but he had no reason to believe that Deloitte had not been told of the direct deal because of a concern that it might cause Deloitte to question its propriety;

(4) In any case, Deloitte had been *"given free run of all deals"*, with open access to Autonomy's books and accounting records, to see whatever they wanted to see about any of them;

(5) Furthermore, this was not, in his view, an example of a cancelled deal: it was *"a designated payee deal…in which case the original deal isn't cancelled; it stays"*;

(6) He also rejected the description used by the Claimants of Capax Discovery being a mere *"placeholder to facilitate the improper recognition of revenue"* as being a self-minted term or tag which, notwithstanding the VAR's unquestioned liability, assumes some inherent impropriety in a VAR deal where there was none.

86. I cannot accept this, or its implicit suggestion that Mr Hussain was on a frolic of his own or prepared to proceed in such a matter and in such a way without keeping Dr Lynch informed. Furthermore, this was the first VAR deal with a new 'friendly' VAR, Capax Discovery. It seems to me very unlikely that Dr Lynch would neither himself have kept an eye nor been informed as to its features and progress.

87. Further:

(1) Autonomy was a tight-run company, managed in effect by a small 'gang' of which Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain were at the apex, and who corresponded regularly with each other;

(2) Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain often shared an office, and always worked closely together;

(3) I had not the opportunity to observe Mr Hussain; but the documentary record, especially of his emails to Dr Lynch before Earnings Calls and other pressure

points, suggests to me that Mr Hussain is a highly strung and anxious person, who was apt to share his concerns with, and seek assistance and reassurance from, Dr Lynch;

(4) There was no reason for Mr Hussain to bear alone the burden of what I have held he knew about the impugned VAR deals: a natural inclination, stronger for someone in need of reassurance, would have been to discuss what was on any view an area of some risk and sensitivity (and exposure);

(5) Dr Lynch was, or at least after 2008 had become, fixated on meeting revenue forecasts, and followed revenue targets and shortfalls closely and continuously in close conjunction with Mr Hussain: it is not disputed the VAR deals were an obvious integral part of this, being (it was common ground) resorted to frequently for revenue recognition purposes;

(6) It is, to my mind, much more likely than not that Mr Hussain kept Dr Lynch informed, and Dr Lynch (who was controlling and interventionist) would have wished to and did discuss the position with him in some detail.

88. I have concluded, on a balance of probabilities, that Dr Lynch would have been kept informed by Mr Hussain and made well aware of the importance of the deal in the context of Mr Hussain's need to cover a revenue shortfall, and would have recognised the transaction as fitting the format that Mr Hussain had conceived and which he and Mr Hussain needed and encouraged as I have previously described. In short, I consider it more likely than not (and I find) that in accordance with the strategy the sale to Capax Discovery VT2 was in commercial terms illusory, despite its ornate legal clothing.

89. In other words, in my judgment, the only real sale was the direct one by Autonomy to TXU; no revenue should have been recognised from the VAR sale; and both Defendants knew that.

VT3: Capax/Kraft

90. VT3 was a VAR transaction between Autonomy Inc (referred to in the agreement and below as Autonomy) and Capax Discovery in Q3 2009. It was established by a purchase order in September 2009 for a licence fee of $4,000,000 and a maintenance fee of $200,000 in which the prospective end-user was Kraft (a well-known American grocery manufacturing and processing conglomerate, and, by Q3 2009, already a long-standing customer of Autonomy).

91. The Kraft deal, which was to convert Kraft's then-existing data hosting relationship from a pure fee-for-service arrangement into a licence plus hosting arrangement, was a large (originally some $4,300,000) and important one for Autonomy, and negotiations to close it were a matter of keen interest to both Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch.

92. Although as early as 31 August 2009 Mr Hussain reported by email to Dr Lynch that *"Kraft is won at $4.3m"*, that proved over-optimistic, and negotiations continued in September, so that by 23 September 2009 Mr Patrick Ryan, one of the Autonomy salespeople involved, was *"not sure they can pull it off"*. When Mr Hussain forwarded this gloomy report to Dr Lynch, he replied in his blunt and dictatorial style, *"Ryan is as always useless someone else must close"*.

93. When cross-examined on whether he could recall that deal at around this time, Dr Lynch described the Kraft deal as "key to the quarter" he replied:

> *"I don't, but it's a $4.3 million deal a week off the end of the quarter, so, yes, it's going to be an important one."*

Its importance, and the pattern of Mr Hussain keeping Dr Lynch closely and regularly informed, was emphasised again in an email from Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch and others on the next day (24 September 2009) noting:

> *"…Key are eli, ameriprise, kraft"*

94. On 25 September 2009, Mr Hussain sent a series of emails including one in the morning to Mr Egan starting *"so the wild card is kraft (stouff – good luck!) – we really need this deal"*, and one a little later to Dr Lynch reporting on an *"Overall miserable day"* because expected deals had not materialised (including Kraft). Later that day, however, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch saying,

> *"I have an idea on kraft".*

95. There is no written evidence as to the nature of that idea, so the Claimants contend it must have been elaborated and discussed orally between Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch. Again, there is no record of that discussion, but Dr Lynch (though he explained he had no specific recollection) said in cross-examination that he *"suspect[ed]"* that it was to use a VAR to take over the Kraft deal and to enable revenue to be recognised in Q3 2009 notwithstanding delays in concluding the end-user deal. Plainly that was the reason and purpose: Dr Lynch's equivocation on this, and also his refusal to concede that by then Autonomy no longer expected to conclude a deal with Kraft in that quarter (though he accepted that it was *"certainly looking less likely"*) seemed to me to be designed to suggest detachment and was unconvincing.

96. Mr Hussain, in an email shortly before midnight on 25 September 2009 sent to Mr Egan (which was not sent to Dr Lynch), stated that *"we may have to use capax for the K[raft] deal??".* The Claimants suggested that the implicit hesitation in using Capax Discovery was caused by Mr Hussain's concern that there were still outstanding amounts due from Capax Discovery in respect of the prior Capax Discovery EDD (RT1) and TXU transactions (VT2), which could prevent Deloitte from agreeing to the recognition of revenue on a further Capax Discovery transaction in view of IAS 18 §14(d) (lack of collectability). Mr Hussain therefore told Mr Egan he needed "*paperwork for capax - suggest $750k or so?*"

97. The Claimants alleged that what this signified was that Autonomy was to channel further funds to Capax Discovery (in the event, $1 million rather than $750,000) to enable Capax Discovery to pay down its outstanding debt: the *"paperwork"* required was for this purpose. Such a payment would enable Autonomy to present Capax Discovery to Deloitte as a counterparty that was complying with the payment schedule in its prior deal.

98. Mr Egan then approached Capax Discovery with a proposal that Capax Discovery should submit a purchase order to Autonomy for a Digital Safe licence for onward licencing to Kraft for $4,000,000. In his witness statement he said:

> *"At Mr. Hussain's direction, I approached Mr. Baiocco (Capax Discovery) with a proposal. I told him about the status of the Kraft deal, including the fact that I expected it to close shortly after the end of the quarter. I asked Capax Discovery to act as a VAR, to submit a purchase order for a Digital Safe license for onward licensing to Kraft, and to agree to pay $4 million for that software -- the same price I had been discussing with Kraft. I followed the guidance that Mr Hussain gave me as described in paragraphs 28 and 29 above. I told Mr Baiocco that Autonomy would continue its efforts to close a deal with Kraft and, when we were successful, we would get Kraft to pay its license fee to Capax so that Capax, in turn, could pay Autonomy. I also told him that, if for some reason we could not get Kraft to pay Capax, we would find another way to make sure that Capax did not have to reach into its own pocket to make a payment to Autonomy. I agreed that Autonomy would pay Capax 10% of the purchase price for assisting us by submitting a purchase order that said that Capax Discovery was obligated to pay for the software under the terms of its VAR agreement with Autonomy. I told Mr. Baiocco that the 10% fee arrangement was the normal margin for resold deals."*

99. On 30 September 2009, the last day of the quarter, Capax Discovery issued a purchase order for a licence of Digital Safe archiving software for on-sale to end-user Kraft. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he would *"probably have known shortly after quarter end"*. Mr Baiocco's evidence, which Dr Lynch said he had no basis to dispute, was that *"Capax's purchase order was drafted for us by Autonomy"*. The inference (which I accept) is that Autonomy had to draft the purchase order because it was only Autonomy (rather than Capax Discovery) that knew what software was being offered to Kraft and at what price.

100. The Claimants relied on the following features of the purchase order itself:

    (1) The amount was almost the same as the original proposed deal between Autonomy and Kraft.

    (2) Kraft was the only authorised end-user under the terms of the purchase order: Capax Discovery could not sell to anyone else. Thus, if a deal with Kraft could not be closed, then, according to the contract, Capax Discovery would still have to pay Autonomy, but be unable to recoup its payment by a sale to another third party.

    (3) The licenced software was Digital Safe and related products, and a hosted arrangement was envisaged: the Claimants submitted that Capax Discovery *"could have no conceivable role to play in that commercial context"*.

101. The Claimants submitted that, having regard to these features, the VT3 deal made no commercial sense at all, unless accepted to be an expedient to enable Autonomy to accelerate into Q3 2009, revenue that would be likely to be earned in Q4 2009 by the mechanism of introducing Capax Discovery as a placeholder, which would sign up to an agreement on the basis of an assurance that it would not have to do anything for its

reward and, whatever the agreement might provide in law, would in reality not have to pay Autonomy if the end-user deal failed.

102. The Claimants further submitted that the conclusion that this indeed was the key to what they presented as the otherwise commercially incoherent, was supported by the further evidence that:

   (1) When, on 30 November 2009, the $3.8 million balance payable by Capax Discovery in respect of the Kraft purchase order fell due, it was not paid. This non-payment was entirely consistent with the handshake agreement between Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco: as at 30 November 2009, no end-user deal with Kraft had been concluded, and so Capax Discovery was not expected to pay Autonomy.

   (2) The end-user deal eventually struck was another direct deal between Autonomy and its established customer Kraft for the identical software as was detailed in the purchase order from Capax Discovery: just as, according to the Claimants, had always been expected by the "placeholder" (Capax Discovery).

   (3) Although Autonomy requested Kraft to pay Capax Discovery, which would have enabled Capax Discovery to pay Autonomy, Kraft declined and insisted on its arrangements being exclusively with Autonomy; again consistently with the alleged assurances, Autonomy took steps to relieve Capax Discovery, and on 29 December 2009, they entered between them a letter agreement cancelling the licence fees due from Capax Discovery in recognition of the direct receipts by Autonomy from Kraft.

   (4) The same letter agreement also provided for Capax Discovery to be paid a *"one-time fee"* of $400,000, which the Claimants contended was:

      > *"to reward Capax Discovery for having acted as a placeholder in order to enable Autonomy to recognise revenue improperly and as an incentive to do additional, similar deals with Autonomy."*

103. Finally, the Claimants contended that both the fact of the impropriety of these arrangements and the knowledge that they were so on the part of the Defendants is shown by the steps that the Claimants claimed were taken to mislead both Deloitte and Autonomy's regulators.

104. Before addressing that latter question whether Autonomy misled its auditors and regulators about VT3, it is convenient to record the basis on which the Defendants sought to rebut the Claimants' contentions as to its features and their alleged conformity with the Claimants' case that, in accordance with the side agreement or understanding they alleged, Capax Discovery was only ever a *"placeholder"*.

105. As to the Defendants' rebuttal:

   (1) They again stressed (a) the unequivocal nature of the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement's provisions as to (i) the unconditional transfer of risk and reward (ii) the unconditional obligation to pay (iii) the absence of any

provision for Autonomy to retain any managerial control and (iv) the entire and exclusive nature of the contractual agreement, and (v) the stipulation that to be valid any modifications would have to be in writing signed by a director or officer; and (b) Mr Baiocco's evidence, written and oral, that (i) Capax Discovery was genuinely on risk (ii) Capax Discovery perceived there to be a good commercial rationale sufficient to warrant the risk; and (iii) there was no side arrangement or understanding such as might impact on revenue recognition. In this context, the Defendants again pointed out that Mr Baiocco has expressly vouched on oath for the accuracy of the Goldberg Segalla letter which confirmed the above, and for the confirmation letters to Deloitte.

(2) They rejected the Claimants' contention that there was anything wrong or improper in the admitted circumstance that the Kraft VAR transaction (VT3) was (a) entered into right at the end of the quarter, because (b) delays with Kraft meant that the deal with Kraft could not be signed until October 2009 and (c) the VAR deal enabled Autonomy, by securing the deal with Capax Discovery, to recognise revenue in Q3 2009.

(3) They referred to and adopted Mr Baiocco's evidence in the US criminal trial, which he reiterated in cross-examination in these proceedings, that Capax Discovery had its own line of credit, and that even if that *"would have been painful",* it could have drawn down on it and would have been able to pay what it owed.

(4) They rejected any suggestion that the software was not delivered to Capax Discovery, citing Mr Baiocco's express confirmation that it had been delivered in the usual way, on execution, through Autonomy's electronic portal (Automater).

(5) They made the point that the fact that Capax Discovery could legally only sell on to Kraft only impacted against it if the end-user sale was in doubt: but the Kraft deal, though delayed, was secure.

(6) Further, they stated that the Claimants' suggestion that because (a) Kraft was Autonomy's customer and Autonomy would probably handle negotiations for closing the end-user deal to it and (b) the Digital Safe element was to be hosted there was no realistic prospect of Capax Discovery forging a relationship with Kraft (so that a primary perceived commercial benefit to Capax Discovery would never in fact eventuate) was factually incorrect. Digital Safe was the biggest but not the only element of the software package sold. The package included also Autonomy Legal Hold. In the event, Capax Discovery did in fact provide services to Kraft, including in connection with Autonomy Legal Hold.

(7) They also emphasised that the original intention was that the end-user (Kraft) should purchase from the reseller (Capax Discovery). There was nothing abnormal, still less improper, for a reseller to be interposed to complete a deal even where the manufacturer had been involved in the negotiations. Nor, in any logic, so they argued, would revenue recognition be affected by who was at meetings and carried on negotiations with Kraft, the end goal being a shared one, to achieve an end-user sale.

(8) They denied that the provisions for cancellation of Capax Discovery's obligations when Kraft insisted on a direct deal with and direct payment to Autonomy demonstrate any impropriety. There was no anterior agreement; and the cancellation was a proper way of dealing with the events that happened. It also ensured that revenue would not be recognised twice in respect of a sale of the identical software. Dr Lynch explained in cross-examination:

> *"…the problem is that we've now got a reseller who has gone on risk in good faith that when the Kraft opportunity, if it appears, they will be the one that's in the queue to supply it. Kraft, for whatever reason, have decided that they don't want to work with these people. We don't want Kraft to be unhappy because they're an important, big customer, and we don't want one of our resellers to get turned over by events which are beyond their control and so we have come up with a solution and the solution here…looks like a sensible outcome to us in that there's $4 million worth of real deal – remember, the software goes on and is used by Kraft and thousands of employees so it's a perfectly real thing – and there's $4 million of cash coming in and we end up with Kraft being happy and we end up with Capax being happy.*
>
> *Another way of looking at this is, what would be the situation if we supplied Kraft and then we left Capax unable to sell to Kraft, then we'd be looking like we were behaving with our partners in very bad faith in that situation. And that would be very damaging to the business and the ecosystem with partners. Why would anyone work with us? Why would anyone trust us in that situation?*
>
> *It's a commercial decision ultimately about how you handle a difficult situation…"*

(9) Likewise, they contended that the payment of a fee to Capax Discovery did not connote that anything improper had happened, or that Capax Discovery had not been on risk, or that the revenue was not properly recognised. It was (as Dr Lynch said in cross-examination) *"eminently reasonable"* to pay Capax Discovery a fee in circumstances where Capax Discovery had gone on risk, but Autonomy had taken the Kraft sale opportunity (and any upside from it) for itself.

(10) They relied on Deloitte's assessment of VT3 and their conclusion that each of the criteria of IAS 18.14 was satisfied.

(11) They rejected the allegation that they had misled Deloitte, and also the FRRP, about VT3 and in doing so further demonstrated its lack of commercial sense and real substance.

Approval by Deloitte

106. As the Defendants emphasised, Deloitte reviewed VT3 and were satisfied with the revenue recognition. It is clear from Deloitte's working papers for the transaction that their approval was in the full knowledge that (a) Autonomy had been negotiating

directly with Kraft throughout Q3 2009 but the deal could not be struck directly before quarter-end due to time constraints; (b) Autonomy continued to be in negotiation with Kraft after the date of the VAR transaction (as recorded in the working papers); (c) during Q4 2009, Kraft made clear that it wished to deal directly with Autonomy, rather than through Capax Discovery, and ultimately, the deal went direct with Kraft; (d) the VAR deal was cancelled to make sure (as Mr Welham explained in his cross-examination) that *"revenue wasn't, as it were, recognised twice"*; and (e) a MAF was paid to Capax Discovery so that (to quote from Deloitte's working paper) *"the VAR retained the margin they would have got, had the end-user actually signed with them"*.

107. Deloitte did not apparently consider that any of these features were an issue for revenue recognition, whether as regards the *"genuine commerciality"* of the VAR agreement or otherwise. (They have more recently confirmed that this remains their position in their own defence in the Formal Complaint against them brought by the Financial Reporting Council ("the FRC")).

108. The Claimants sought to answer this on the basis that Deloitte was fundamentally misled as to vital aspects of the true transaction. In particular, the Claimants claimed that:

(1) Deloitte was misled into treating Capax Discovery as a creditworthy counterparty because it was able to and did pay a deposit of $400,000 for the VT3 transaction: Deloitte was not told, and did not know, that the funds used by Capax Discovery to pay the deposit were principally derived from payments by Autonomy for allegedly non-existent EDD services;

(2) Deloitte was misled into believing that behind Capax Discovery stood the resources of Capax Global and the group, and that it had always kept up to date on payments for previous large deals: Deloitte was not told, and did not know, that Mr Baiocco had set up Capax Discovery as a separate entity in part to bolster the alleged assurance that it would not be at real risk by making it unprofitable to sue, and had written (on 31 March 2009) to Autonomy expressly disavowing any suggestion that Capax Global could be expected to stand behind Capax Discovery's obligations;

(3) Deloitte was misled by Autonomy's management into an understanding that it was intended that Capax Discovery would on-sell to Kraft and that Capax Discovery would at least participate with Autonomy in negotiations with Kraft: whereas in truth (so they contended) Autonomy never expected Capax Discovery to have any dealings at all with Kraft, still less to complete a deal with Kraft;

(4) Deloitte was misled into concluding that Capax Discovery was genuinely taking the risk that no end-user deal might eventuate: they were not told and knew nothing of assurances given by Mr Egan which (so the Claimants alleged):

> *"meant that, in commercial reality, Capax Discovery was not intended to be left out of pocket if no end-user deal eventuated"*.

(5) Deloitte was misled into concluding that the cancellation of the VAR transaction was simply a necessary way out of a most unusual eventuality, and that the payment of a MAF was a suitable recompense for depriving Capax Discovery of its expectation of an end-user deal and future service fees, for which it had taken on substantial risk: whereas in truth, some method of reversing or cancelling the VAR transaction was always going to be required, Capax Discovery had never in truth had any such expectation and the MAF was a gratuitous payment for its role as a *"placeholder"*.

109. As to (1) in the preceding paragraph 108, it does appear that Messrs Hussain, Chamberlain and Egan did have concerns that Deloitte might have an issue about Capax Discovery taking on such a large debt whilst there remained outstanding amounts due from Capax Discovery on the TXU (VT2) deal, and did press for this to be resolved. E-mails exchanged between Messrs Chamberlain, Hussain and Egan in October 2009 demonstrated their concern in this regard:

(1) On 1 October 2009 at 12.06 a.m., Mr Chamberlain sent an email to Messrs Hussain and Egan saying:

> "*It would be a big help on rev rec if Capax pay the amount due on TXU. 1/3rd ($287,131,66) of the Q2 deal was due on 28 Sept 2009. Taking such a large deal through someone not up to date on payment presents issues. Can you get the cash?*"

(2) Mr Hussain then wrote to Mr Egan:

> "*Important that we try to get something – auditors will be an issue, I didn't know this one was o/s*" (i.e. that the Capax Discovery/TXU debt was outstanding)

(3) Mr Egan replied:

> "*me neither, does it have to be today or can we get it asap. Remember they have sent 400k against the 4M Fedex today*"

(4) Mr Hussain replied:

> "*Find out if they got the cash on the first txu deal – I assume they did*"

110. This concern regarding collectability continued into October 2009 as Deloitte considered revenue recognition on the Capax Discovery/Kraft deal:

(1) On 9 October 2009, Mr Stephan sent an email to Mr Hussain (copied to Messrs Egan and Chamberlain) saying:

> "*On the Capax/Kraft deal, the auditors want to understand the status of the deal between the reseller and the end-user (is the deal closed and if not, when is it expected?). This is necessary because Capax is not a big company and it would probably be difficult for Capax to prove that they could pay us if they did not get paid by Kraft*".

(2) Mr Hussain replied:

> "*I'll let stouff handle but obviously capax have given us an unconditional PO and are upto [sic] date with all payments. PLUS and most importantly they have paid 10% on signing so the risk is lower than most other deals!*"

111. Mr Miles took Mr Welham, in the course of his cross-examination, to invoices and confirmation letters in relation to the TXU deal, which were sent to Deloitte in October 2009, and also to a "Debtor testing spreadsheet" e-mailed to Mr Tom Murray of Deloitte on 15 December 2009 making clear to Deloitte that Capax Discovery's debt remained outstanding. Furthermore, Deloitte's working paper schedule recorded that indebtedness as outstanding. Thus, it seems clear that Deloitte actually knew that the VT2 amounts remained outstanding, as Mr Welham had eventually agreed. Mr Welham also agreed that (a) he had in effect been misled by it being framed as an assumption in his instructions that there were amounts outstanding and that Deloitte did not know this (when in fact it did) and (b) as a matter of fact, this was not an issue which impacted their assessment of revenue recognition anyway.

112. As to (2) in paragraph 108 above, it is true that Deloitte were not specifically shown the letter from Mr Baiocco (dated 31 March 2009) making clear, when providing financial information for Capax Global at the request of Autonomy in the general context of discussions about VAR deals with Capax Discovery, that Capax Discovery was a separate and distinct entity from Capax Global. However, when cross-examined as to his evidence in his witness statement that the letter *"may have been of some relevance to the exercise we undertook of assessing the collectability of revenue from Capax Discovery"* he accepted that Deloitte were well aware that Capax Discovery was a new company, legally separate from Capax Global, and emphasised the next following phrase in his witness statement that:

> *"…it is fair to say that we were not proceeding on the basis that other companies within the group would be guaranteeing Capax Discovery's payment obligations."*

113. As to (3) in paragraph 108 above, and as stated previously, it seems that Deloitte were aware that Autonomy had handled all the negotiations with Kraft prior to the VAR transaction and were also well aware that it would continue such negotiations directly with Kraft after it. In the course of his cross-examination, Mr Welham confirmed as accurate the following paragraph in Deloitte's Defence to the FRC's Formal Complaint:

> *"…it is admitted that Deloitte and Mr Knights were aware (a) that Capax's principal role was to allow Autonomy to complete a sale and for revenue to be recognised in the quarter in which the Kraft deal was negotiated because it could not be formally completed with Kraft in that quarter, and (b) that Autonomy were negotiating directly with Kraft."*

114. It was clear also from Deloitte's working papers that Deloitte did not consider that either the fact that Autonomy had brought Capax Discovery in when the direct deal could not be closed, or the fact that Autonomy was negotiating with Kraft after the sale, affected the genuine commerciality of the agreement, or whether revenue should be recognised. Indeed, it appears that Deloitte took some comfort from Autonomy's continuing involvement in the negotiations with the end-user, in that it reassured them on the collectability issue; the Deloitte spreadsheet records:

> *"Note that we have also seen an email from Joel Scott ... that contained draft professional service contracts between Autonomy and Kraft, thus evidencing that the two parties continue [to] negotiate in good faith and that the deal is progressing.*
> *Given that we have seen evidence that directly links Autonomy and Kraft, both pre and post the deal with Capax, we conclude that there is satisfactory evidence to support the fact that Kraft are the end-user. As such, we conclude that this amount is recoverable, on the basis that Kraft are a multi-national blue chip company, who will be able to pay Capax for the purchased licence."*

115. Mr Welham's reservation appears to have been that if Autonomy were under what he called a *"performance obligation"* to close the deal, that might suggest that perhaps risk had not passed. This was a matter taken up in my own questions after his cross-examination, and Mr Welham explained that if the VAR:

> *"…habitually had an agreement, albeit not written down but verbally, where Autonomy would sell to the VAR but the VAR would be under the understanding that Autonomy close the deal, that would be different to our understanding at the time and that would suggest to me that perhaps risk hadn't passed"*

But he then continued:

> *"But the trouble with accounting is that, perhaps unlike law, it's never really black and white. There's a lot of judgment involved."*

116. In supplemental questions after mine, Mr Miles asked Mr Welham to elaborate as to what he meant, in the context, by the notion of a *"performance obligation"*. After some rather vague answers appearing to suggest that it would depend on the level of involvement required of the VAR and the seller, he reiterated that ultimately it was a matter of accounting judgement, and would depend on the extent and nature of the seller's involvement. As to that, he said that although *"some involvement may well be OK",*

"…I think extensive would be more problematic."

117. Mr Miles pressed him on this, given that Deloitte had actually seen evidence of extensive continuing involvement but had not expressed concern. Mr Welham answered:

> *"You can have isolated cases. Clearly, if you take Kraft as an example, the deal with the end-user was very, very close to completion, so I'm not sure you would need extensive involvement because it's so close. I can't remember the specifics of the Eli Lilly deal[10], but I think if it were always the case that there was extensive involvement in closing a deal, then that would be a problem, yes."* [My underlining]

118. Mr Miles pressed again:

> *"Q. Going back to my point about whether Autonomy was* [under] *some sort of obligation, leave aside for a minute the question whether that's a legal obligation or not, so I'm not assuming that it's a legal obligation. But as between the parties, the VAR is, as it were, saying that it's for Autonomy to do, to close a deal.*
>
> *That's one case, but take a case where it's something Autonomy may well choose to do because it's got a good relationship with the end-user, the end-user wants to speak to Autonomy about the technology and so on, so there are good commercial reasons, if you like, for Autonomy continuing to deal with the end-user, again, in that case, it's all a matter of judgment, isn't it, on the particular facts and a matter of nuance?*
>
> *A. Yes, so I think what you've described there is a little bit different to what we were talking about before. If there's continuation of involvement because of commercial reasons, and it's more assisting the sales process and the close process that the VAR is doing, then I think that's where it's more nuanced and there's judgement involved, but that's a little bit different to what we're suggesting where it's the obligation or sole responsibility of Autonomy to close. That's quite different.*
>
> *Q. Yes, and that's a different case?*
>
> *A, Yes, agreed."*

119. I have dwelt on these answers because they seem to me to demonstrate that the Defendants' point – well made, as far as it goes – that Deloitte knew of Autonomy's involvement in discussions with Kraft after the VAR sale does not, on analysis, go very far. In particular:

    (1) It seems clear from Mr Welham's approach that Deloitte did not know that the negotiations were proceeding solely between Autonomy and Kraft, to the exclusion of the VAR: and there was no evidence to suggest that they did;

[10] See paragraphs 133ff below.

(2) Nor is there anything to suggest that they were aware that Autonomy was negotiating in reality on its own account with a view to a direct contract; and

(3) The points above have additional power given Mr Welham's singling out of Kraft as a deal where the deal was so close that extensive further involvement would be difficult to justify.

(4) Furthermore, Deloitte assumed that the object of Autonomy's involvement was to conclude a sale by the VAR: but (as I find) the objective throughout was a direct deal, and the fiction that at the last moment Autonomy's old customer suddenly determined it wished to deal with Autonomy rather than the VAR is just that – fictional. Although in an email dated 28 December 2009 to Mr Scott and Mr Egan, Mr Hussain (in response to a question whether Mr Hussain was aware of repayment arrangements with Capax Discovery in respect of the Kraft deal after conclusion of the contract between Autonomy and Kraft) wrote that *"Kraft decided to reissue the order direct to us for the same amount as Capax – strange but I guess they decided it was too strategic a project for them to buy the software from a partner"* it was not in the circumstances *"strange"* at all.

120. As to (4) in paragraph 108 above, the issue as to whether Deloitte knew of the side agreement or understanding pleaded by the Claimants is of course premised on there having been one in the first place; but I have concluded that there was, whether described as understanding, agreement or shared intentions and expectations. Plainly, Deloitte knew nothing of that and was never told of any such thing.

121. As to (5) in paragraph 108 above, it appears that Deloitte reviewed the VT3 deal and were in fact aware of, and saw no problem in, the cancellation of the VAR sale, repayment to Capax Discovery of its deposit, and the payment to it of a MAF. Various internal Deloitte documents confirm this, including a Memorandum dated 22 January 2010, the stated objective of which was *"To summarise the facts surrounding the sale to Kraft (using Capax Discovery) in Q3 2009 and the subsequent deal signed directly between Autonomy and Kraft in Q4 2009"*. An extract from the Memorandum, which also records as being Deloitte's main concern the need to ensure *"that only one amount of revenue has been recognised over this deal in the year…",* reads:

> *"This was a deal where Autonomy had been negotiating directly with Kraft throughout Q3 2009 but due to time constraints the deal could not be signed directly before quarter end….. During Q4 2009 Kraft expressed a willingness to sign the deal directly with Autonomy rather than through Capax. As such, Autonomy negotiated a fee with Capax to purchase the contract off them so that a deal could be signed directly between Autonomy and Kraft. In exchange for this right, Autonomy agreed to pay Capax $0.4M and waive Capax's contractual obligations to Autonomy under the original contract.*
>
> . . .
>
> *We conclude that as no additional revenue has been recognised in Q4 2009, the year-end debtor position has been corrected and the full year revenue position is correct that this accounting treatment is satisfactory."*

My assessment of VT3

122. Some of my conclusions with respect to VT3 will by now be apparent. However, in summary:

(1) The Kraft deal/VT3 provides, in my judgment, a very clear example of the use of a VAR as a placeholder, the VAR being intended and expected to do nothing and pay nothing from its own resources (as is the most arresting characteristic of all the impugned VAR deals).

(2) That use is clear from the oral evidence, from the way VT3 proceeded (with the VAR entirely excluded from the process and eventually entirely by-passed except when it came to arrangements to compensate it for its nominal role), and from what Deloitte were not told.

(3) Although the Defendants emphasised and relied on the apparently informed approval given by Deloitte after obviously careful and fully documented consideration of the transaction, Deloitte were not told and did not know any of the matters referred to in (1), which, in my judgment, cast a fundamentally different light on the nature and substance of the transaction.

(4) Had Deloitte appreciated those matters, I have no real doubt that they would have determined (a) that in economic substance there was no sale, (b) that notwithstanding the position in law, in reality Autonomy was in full control of the software to be sold to Kraft, that if no sale eventuated Autonomy would have somehow to reverse the VAR transaction or in some other way rescue the VAR from the legal *"hook",* and that the risk of a sale not eventuating was its risk, so that (c) the criteria of IAS 18.14 might apparently be, but were not actually, satisfied so that no revenue should be recognised from VT3 at the stage of the impugned VAR sale. Mr Welham was clear in his oral evidence that:

> *"….the standard requires you to consider the substance of what the transaction is. So although you might have a legal document, if there is persuasive evidence that any arrangement exists then that would be relevant."*

In my judgment, on the facts, it was both relevant and determinative.

(5) Even taking into account a generous margin of appreciation, it does not seem to me that revenue recognition of the VAR sale in VT3 can be justified.

Particular points on the Defendants' involvement and knowledge of VT3

123. The question then, as ever, is whether the Defendants or either of them had "guilty knowledge". For the present, I note only the following factual matters specific to the VT3 transaction which may be of relevance in my assessment of the allegation that the Defendants knew the VAR sale was not in reality a sale at all and/or that its accounting treatment was improper.

Mr Hussain

124. As regards Mr Hussain, the Claimants relied especially on the following:

(1) As may be seen from paragraph 95 above, the introduction of a VAR to enable revenue recognition in Q3 2009 notwithstanding the delay in closing the end-user deal with Kraft was Mr Hussain's *"idea"*.

(2) It was Mr Egan's evidence that:

> "*At Mr Hussain's direction I approached Mr Baiocco…with a proposal..[for] Capax Discovery to act as a VAR, to submit a purchase order for a Digital Safe licence for onward licencing to Kraft, and to agree to pay $4 million for that software…I followed the guidance that Mr Hussain gave me…*"

(3) Mr Hussain was clearly conscious of the need to persuade Deloitte that the $4.2 million debt was collectable from Capax Discovery in light of Capax Discovery's other payment obligations to Autonomy, including its outstanding indebtedness under the TXU sale, and its continuing commitments in respect of the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale; and he was closely involved in the process of persuading them. That involved very selective disclosure: for example, Mr Hussain was aware that Capax Discovery was up to date on the Capax Discovery/EDD transaction only because Autonomy had sent it cash for non-existent EDD services; and that Autonomy had in effect funded Capax Discovery to pay the deposit on the Kraft sale which was intended to present a picture of independent credit-worthiness.

(4) Indeed, the Claimants contended that it was again Mr Hussain who master-minded and oversaw the alleged channelling of funds (amounting in all to $1,000,000) to Capax Discovery to enable it to pay down its existing debt before undertaking VT3 and (to quote from the Claimants' closing submissions) to:

> *"enable Autonomy to present Capax Discovery to Deloitte as a counterparty that was complying with the payment schedule in its prior deal."*

(5) Mr Hussain was well aware that Autonomy was negotiating with Kraft, to the exclusion of Capax Discovery and with the objective of completing the sale which had been nearing completion before the end of the quarter. Mr Egan also said in an unchallenged part of his witness statement that it was only <u>after</u> Autonomy's deal with Kraft was complete that he asked Kraft's representatives if Kraft would be willing to take its licence from Capax Discovery or to pay Capax Discovery as Autonomy's designated payee. His evidence was that *"Kraft was unwilling to involve Capax Discovery in any capacity"* so that *"… we had to find another way to make Capax Discovery whole, consistent with the intent of the deal we had agreed with Mr Baiocco."* Mr Egan added that (a) Mr Hussain approved all the ensuing arrangements to return Capax Discovery its $400,000 deposit and to pay it its 10% ($400,000) "profit"; and (b) though Mr Hussain stated in an email of 28 December 2009 that *"the referral fee should be paid to capax…as it was contracted"* the truth was that Capax Discovery did not refer Kraft to Autonomy and the $400,000 was not a referral fee: as Mr Hussain well knew, it was a fee for signing a purchase order "at risk" to enable Autonomy to recognise $4 million revenue in Q3 2009 in accordance with Mr Hussain's *"idea"*.

125. I have concluded that Mr Hussain must have been aware of the true nature of VT3, that Capax Discovery was a compliant placeholder, that Autonomy's true customer was Kraft, and that the only true sale ever envisaged was a sale direct to Kraft. He was a trained accountant. He must have known this was wrong. I find that he did.

Dr Lynch

126. As regards Dr Lynch's knowledge in relation to Kraft:

(1) Overall, his position was that he *"didn't know anything about what happened on the ground in Kraft."*

(2) His position emerged more elaborately from a sequence of answers to questions in cross-examination, as follows:

> *"Q. You knew that Capax Discovery had been given the assurance described by Mr Egan in order to get it to agree to enter into a contract to buy from Autonomy the software for Kraft, didn't you?*
>
> *A. I did not know that. Mr Baiocco confirmed that he thought he was on risk, so he obviously didn't consider that to be the case. And thirdly, he was capable of reading the contract.*
>
> *Q. And you knew in particular that Capax Discovery had been told that Autonomy would do everything it could to avoid Capax having to dip into its own pocket to pay for the software if an end-user deal failed to eventuate?*
>
> *A. No, I didn't.*
>
> *Q. You also knew that Capax Discovery had been told that Autonomy would continue its efforts to close the deal with the end-user?*
>
> *A. I didn't know that, no.*
>
> *Q. And you knew that Capax Discovery would not be making any efforts to close a deal with the end-user?*
>
> *A. No, I didn't know that.*
>
> *Q. You knew that the VAR was not in reality taking the significant risk of ownership of the goods?*
>
> *A. No. The VAR -- you know, I wouldn't have gone away and looked at the purchase order, but all our purchase orders were the same and they were absolutely clear: they owned the goods and they were on risk.*
>
> *Q. You also knew, following the VAR deal, that Autonomy retained continuing managerial involvement or control of the goods?*
>
> *A. No, I didn't.*
>
> *Q. And you knew it wasn't probable that Capax Discovery, a new company, would pay from its own resources for those goods?*
>
> *A. No, I would have expected and I understand my finance*

> *department did do that test and that was checked by Deloitte and the judgment was correct.*
>
> *Q. You well understood that it was wrong for Autonomy to recognise the revenue on this Capax Discovery transaction, correct?*
>
> *A. No.*
>
> *Q. And you knew that the same was true of all the subsequent VAR deals with Capax Discovery that are at issue in these proceedings?*
>
> *A. No."*

(3) He was made aware by Mr Hussain by email dated 25 September 2009 that the Kraft deal was unlikely to close that quarter, and he understood that this *"increased [the] risk"* of Autonomy having a shortfall on its revenue target for Q3 2009. He did not recall seeing Mr Hussain's email about his *"idea on Kraft"* but accepted that *"there would have been some communication, I assume, yes"*. He said that he would have regarded it as perfectly normal to use a VAR in such circumstances. He would have expected Capax Discovery to be getting involved because *"by getting a reseller involved in a deal, it gave them the ability (a) to introduce themselves to the end-user, if they weren't already, and (b) it meant that they could then do services"*. He referred in that context to "Capax Discovery" as *"our largest services partner in terms of number of engagements"*.

(4) He had no basis for disputing Mr Baiocco's evidence that the purchase order was drafted entirely by Autonomy. He did not see the Capax Discovery purchase order at the time, nor any of the other paperwork, and so it was unlikely he would have known of the restriction on any onward sale by Capax Discovery except to Kraft: but he expressed his view that if despite Autonomy dealing directly with Kraft, Capax Discovery had been required to fulfil its payment obligations under the purchase order, Autonomy would no doubt have taken a commercial decision to allow Capax Discovery to sell to other end-users.

(5) He would *"probably have known shortly after quarter end"* of the VAR deal (VT3) and *"quite possibly"* proceeded on the basis that the VAR deal was for essentially the same amount as the Kraft deal.

(6) When questioned as to the ability of Capax Discovery, as a newly-formed entity, to have any means of paying, and how Deloitte were to be persuaded of collectability, he stated that he thought *"the reason they would have been reassured was the 400,000 that was paid on signing"* but when asked whether he knew that was using Autonomy's money, he said he did not know where the money would have come from.

(7) He told me he did not know whether Mr Egan had said to Mr Baiocco that Autonomy would deal with and close a direct deal with Kraft and would then get Kraft to pay Capax Discovery so that in turn Capax Discovery could pay Autonomy; but in any event, that did not strike him as *"problematic"*.

(8) He said he had no *"first-hand knowledge"* that Autonomy was negotiating directly with Kraft to conclude a deal after the VAR sale and was not able to say whether Capax Discovery had been involved at all in those negotiations; but he seemed to me to accept (albeit remonstrating that he could not police every meeting, and it was the reseller's choice if it did not participate) that the impression he gave in his witness statement, and which was given to Deloitte, was that Autonomy was only seeking to help Capax Discovery to close a deal. He saw no difficulty either way: *"…if I'm wrong, then fine".*

(9) He said he did not know that Kraft had refused to agree to pay Capax Discovery and was not consulted about the cancellation of VT3 after Autonomy's direct deal with Kraft: he said that he assumed *"it would have gone to the level of Mr Hussain and perhaps Mr Kanter."*

(10) He defended the payment of a MAF for going on risk, even if in the event the reseller did no more and was never called upon, saying *"You've got to at least give them some compensation for that situation"*; but he did not recall whether he had been specifically consulted about the $400,000 payment to Capax Discovery.

127. Dr Lynch also made the following, for the most part more general, observations in the course of cross-examination:

(1) He told me he did not know what Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco had discussed before striking the deal, nor what guidance Mr Hussain had given Mr Egan, but said:

> *"I think Mr Hussain would have been happy with the normal industry general warm comments that are given. I don't think Mr Hussain would have said anything more than that."*

(2) He added:

> *"…as the CEO of the company sitting in London, what I rely on is the fact that no matter what the sales guy says that I can't control in a meeting on the other side of the world in a closed room with someone, the paperwork is absolutely clear, which is: you're on risk, you're going to have to pay us, and this piece of paper contains all the terms of the deal. If ever there was a dispute, they would lose, they would have to pay us.*
>
> *If Mr Egan said more than warm words, then he wasn't authorised to do that. But also Mr Baiocco is not an idiot. He knows perfectly well that that's worthless."*

(3) Equally memorably, he observed:

> *"I think you can't legislate against hope. For good commercial reasons the reseller would hope that in the case of something going wrong, that the vendor would try and help them, but the vendor is*

under no obligation to do that, other than the reputational damage of being seen to leave a reseller in the lurch."

128. These two passages seem to me to encapsulate Dr Lynch's position in these proceedings as to how he perceived this transaction and, more generally, Autonomy's use of VARs and what he would have understood the understandings of the parties to be. Dr Lynch consistently maintained that whilst Mr Egan may have given assurances that fostered and encouraged the hope and belief in the VAR that the risk was worth taking and that if the worst eventuated, Autonomy would do all it could as a business partner to assist, he knew of nothing that had been said to indicate, and would have regarded it as unauthorised to indicate or invite the understanding, that the VAR would be taking anything less than the significant risks and responsibilities of ownership and managerial control over the goods. He was clear that he would have expected Mr Baiocco, and all VARs, to have understood they were bound, and whilst they might hope for assistance, they could not depend on release: none of them was *"an idiot"*.

129. Dr Lynch expressed himself with cogency and conviction. He seemed to me to have persuaded himself by the time of trial of the truth of what he said, and in particular, that VT3 was in the general run of VAR deals not impugned in these proceedings which Autonomy had been undertaking for many years. His reference to not legislating against hope carried real force in general terms; I do not, however, accept his evidence.

130. VT3, like the other impugned VAR sales, was not in the general run of deals. The impugned sales were marked out by features which inexorably and fundamentally distinguished them, as the Claimants' case identified. Capax Discovery was not proceeding on the basis of hope; it was proceeding on the basis of a settled understanding which was a basic feature of all the impugned VAR transactions, which would have been far too rich a commercial risk without it. Dr Lynch had no real answer to these special features and the sales' lack of substance which they revealed: the probability is, and I find, that he did know of them, as I have found Mr Hussain plainly did.

131. I accept that in the context of VT3 and more generally, there is little direct evidence of any direct and express conversations between Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch relating to the terms of the sales or how matters proceeded after an impugned VAR sale. Again, however, it seems to me much more likely than not that they shared the same understanding of a strategy which was becoming so essential to them. The same considerations and factors as I have set out in relation to VT2 apply in the context of VT3 (and indeed all the impugned VAR transactions).

132. Put shortly, I have concluded that Mr Hussain knew, and that it is more likely than not that from him, Dr Lynch would have known if he could not see for himself (which I suspect he could), that in VT3 and those other sales the VAR was (a) a 'best friend' (b) resorted to (as it well knew) as an urgent expedient (c) to whom a considerable *"champagne smacking"* fee would be paid (d) to take on a legal obligation on paper which each was assured would not be enforced but which (e) could not have sensibly taken on such an existential risk without more than usually warm comfort and in any event, (f) had not the resources itself to pay and which (g) where necessary to persuade Deloitte of collectability, had been put in funds by Autonomy through purchases with

that as at least part of their aim, and which (h) was never expected, or intended, or itself expected or intended to, or ever did, pay (out of its own resources) or do anything.

VT4: Capax/Eli Lilly (Q4 2009)

133. I turn to the next impugned VAR transaction to which Autonomy Inc and Capax Discovery were the parties, in respect of which the prospective end-user was the pharmaceutical company Eli Lilly, another large existing customer of Autonomy. The VAR transaction was entered into on the last day of Q4 2009.

134. VT4 was another big transaction: the licence fee for the purchase order was $5,986,827, plus a support and maintenance fee of $299,342. The software sold was a *Licensor Archiving Solution*, which included Digital Safe, Digital Safe Retention-Deletion and Digital Safe Audit Center Software, as well as Aungate Legal Hold and Aungate Real-Time Policy Management.

135. As in the case of VT2 and VT3, the sale was under the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement. I have set out the most relevant terms of that agreement in paragraph 60 above; but in summary the agreement made clear that the reseller was obliged to pay (and was not relieved by any non-payment by the end-user), that the agreement comprised the entire agreement between the parties and that there could be no valid modifications without following the stipulated formalities. According to the terms of the contractual arrangements, therefore, the legal risk of ownership had passed, and managerial control was not retained.

136. In terms set out in Exhibit "B" to the purchase order, the *"End-User"* was defined as Eli Lilly. As in VT3 (Kraft), the *"Authorised Use"* was restricted (to use by that end-user; so Capax Discovery had no contractual right to sell the software to any other end-user if no deal with Eli Lilly eventuated. The purchase order stated that payment in full was to be made within 90 days (so, by 31 March 2010). Capax Discovery did pay a deposit of $400,000; but it did not make any other payment by 31 March 2010.

137. This was another impugned VAR transaction which was not followed by an onward sale by the VAR. Ultimately, on 15 June 2010, Autonomy entered into a direct deal with the end-user, under the terms of an agreement which provided for Eli Lilly to pay Capax Discovery as Autonomy's designated payee. The direct sale to Eli Lilly was for the same software, but at the lower licence fee of $5,303,431 plus support and maintenance fee of $265,172.

138. Again, the Claimants alleged non-compliance with IAS 18.14(a) (they submitted that there was in substance no transfer of risk of ownership); with IAS 18.14(b) (they contended that Autonomy in substance retained managerial control of the goods); and IAS 18.14(d) (they alleged there were grounds for doubting collectability).

139. The Claimants submitted that:

(1) Capax Discovery was introduced as a VAR on the very last day of the quarter as a response to Autonomy's urgent financial response to a delay in closing a direct deal between itself and Eli Lilly, and with no time for Capax Discovery to assess the prospect of an end-user deal eventuating, or to negotiate on price or other terms.

(2) The large amounts involved made it especially important for Autonomy to establish a transaction from which revenue could be recognised. Failure to secure the revenue from it in Q4 2009 would have materially reduced quarterly earnings and imperilled the achievement of the market expectations for that quarter.

(3) The evidence of Mr Baiocco that the purchase order *"was drafted for us by Autonomy"* and that Capax Discovery *"had no dealings with Eli Lilly before it issued its purchase order and did nothing to try to sell software to Eli Lilly after it issued its purchase order"* was not contradicted, except to the extent of a bare (though four-times repeated) assertion by Dr Lynch that he had *"seen information"* that *"Capax were actually working inside Eli Lilly at this point anyway"*. Nor was the evidence of both Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco that Capax Discovery would not be required to participate in the continuing negotiations for a sale to Eli Lilly and played no role in discussing the terms of the direct sale eventually agreed, contradicted either.

(4) Capax Discovery acted simply as a *"placeholder"* for a fee (10% of the total contract price, and so in excess of $600,000), having been assured (so it was alleged) that Autonomy would require nothing from it, and (apart from a $400,000 deposit for which Autonomy would indirectly provide the funding) would require payment only if and when the end-user deal was closed, again consistently with the assurance alleged.

(5) The Claimants referred also to email exchanges when Autonomy's accounts department pressed for payment. Mr Baiocco is reported as having said that Capax Discovery was *"waiting for payment from Eli Lilly and once they get the payment Capax will issue a payment to Autonomy"*. When Mr Baiocco complained to Mr Egan about being chased Mr Egan responded *"Got your message. The calling will stop."* Mr Baiocco forwarded that response to one of his business partners, with the comment, *"Fyi this is autonomy CEO telling me not to worry about the collection calls!!!",* which the Claimants also relied on as signifying that Mr Baiocco relied on Mr Egan having the authority of a CEO.

(6) As it was, Capax Discovery did not pay until after the direct deal was closed; but it did pay as soon as it received Eli Lilly's payment to it as Autonomy's *"expressly designated payee"*.

140. Against all this the Defendants again relied on (a) the evidence of Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco, both generally as regards the Capax Discovery VAR transactions and with particular reference to VT4, that they well appreciated that Capax Discovery was genuinely at risk, and nothing that Mr Egan did could alter this, and that there was no side agreement or understanding that impacted on revenue recognition; (b) the contractual terms including the entire agreement clauses, as well as the strict instructions to sales employees prohibiting side agreements and understandings; (c) Mr Baiocco's evidence specifically confirming that he saw the reseller deal with Autonomy as a way of becoming an approved vendor of professional services to Eli Lilly, even though in the event his objective was not achieved; (d) the fact that Deloitte carefully reviewed the accounting for the transaction at the time and were satisfied with the revenue recognition; and (e) the fact that Deloitte reviewed the accounting treatment afresh in the light of Mr Hogenson's allegations (as to which see paragraphs 2232 to 2289 in the

main body of the judgment) and continued to be satisfied that the revenue was correctly recognised.

141. Further as to (d) and (e) in paragraph 140 above, the Defendants emphasised that:

(1) Deloitte had considered shortly after the reseller deal had been entered into that there was a real prospect that this deal would end up going direct. They concluded that this did not bar the revenue recognition. Mr Welham told me in cross-examination that his perception was that a direct deal was a risk but not his expectation: and went on to suggest that had it been his expectation then that might have precluded revenue recognition. However, in his almost contemporaneous email (dated 16 January 2010) to Mr Knights he stated that he *"would expect that both Eli Lilly and Morgan Stanley will go direct to Autonomy during the course of Q1 2010"* and in the next paragraph recorded that he understood from Mr Chamberlain that *"what I have described above may well happen"*.

(2) Mr Welham confirmed that Deloitte knew that the Autonomy/Eli Lilly agreement allowed Autonomy to designate a payee to which Eli Lilly should submit a purchase order and pay fees. They knew that Autonomy had directed that Eli Lilly should submit its POs and pay its fees to Capax Discovery, and that Capax Discovery would in turn pay Autonomy in fulfilment of its obligations under the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement.

(3) Mr Welham also (in cross-examination) confirmed as correct the following extract from Deloitte's Defence to the FRC Formal Complaint:

> *"…Mr Hogenson raised queries in respect of transactions, including Eli Lilly, and these were treated with appropriate scepticism by the audit team. It was because of Deloitte's earlier work which had already been carried out with heightened scepticism and enhanced procedures that Mr Hogenson's queries were not alarming: these issues had already been the subject of careful consideration."*

(4) This was one of the transactions specifically queried by Mr Hogenson (see paragraph 2264(1) in the main body of the judgment). His queries in relation to the Eli Lilly transaction were not seen by Deloitte as alarming, because the issues raised had already been the subject of careful consideration by Deloitte.

(5) Deloitte's summary of their views on this transaction after seeing and investigating Mr Hogenson's complaints about it included the following:[11]

> *"We have discussed and reviewed management's views on the matter as summarised above and concur with the accounting policy in place. The determination of the revenue recognition of the Capax sale as at 31 December 2009 is consistent with our understanding of this transaction at that time."*

[11] Mr Welham suggested in his witness statement that he did not see Mr Hogenson's complaint as amounting to an allegation of improper conduct by management.

142. As they did in the context of VT3, the Claimants contended that Deloitte were knowingly misled by the Defendants about the true nature of VT4. They relied especially on draft responses to Deloitte's request to Autonomy management to justify the recognition of revenue on VT4, which Deloitte sent after receiving Mr Hogenson's letter dated 26 June 2010 raising concerns about possible false accounting in respect of the Eli Lilly transaction (see paragraphs 2232 to 2289 in the main body of the judgment). These draft responses were prepared by Mr Hussain, and sent in draft to Dr Lynch, Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain, before Mr Hussain sent them on (in substantially the same form) to Deloitte attached to an email dated 5 July 2010.

143. I set out below the assertions in the draft response to Deloitte on which the Claimants particularly relied, the Claimants' submission in respect of them, followed in each case by the Defendants' response:

(1) The Claimants first criticised the assertion that:

> *"Additionally management were aware that an ultimate end-user was identified - Eli Lily ["Eli"] who are a major multi-national business that had a track record of purchasing Autonomy software ($22m). Indeed Autonomy had spent some time seeking to sell this product direct to Eli before ultimately selling it to Capax. The key feature that Capax was able to offer to Eli was an ongoing partner/servicing arrangement."*

As to this:

(a) The Claimants submitted that this assertion was false for two reasons: (i) that it gave the impression that it was the introduction of Capax Discovery that assisted the end-user sale, whereas there is no evidence that Capax Discovery's willingness to offer services to Eli Lilly had anything to do with the matter; and (ii) that in fact, since the licensed software was Digital Safe which was to be hosted, along with Eli Lilly's data, in Autonomy's data centre, Capax was not in any position to offer any services.

(b) The Defendants sought to counter this submission on the basis that the assertion was fair: Capax Discovery was able to offer Eli Lilly an ongoing partner/service arrangement, especially in respect of the elements of the package sold other than Digital Safe; and Mr Baiocco himself confirmed in cross-examination that he had entered into the reseller deal with the aim of providing professional services to Eli Lilly and becoming one of its approved vendors. Although this objective was not realised, Mr Baiocco firmly believed in the opportunity, certainly did not believe that Capax Discovery had nothing to offer, and continued to pursue it even after the direct deal, as shown by his email to Eli Lilly dated 23 August 2010 (which I interpolate should be noted to be some time after the direct sale) asking for a meeting and stating:

> *"The biggest reason I have been calling you, is to get connected as a vendor to Lilly. I can promise you, that if you*

get us in front of your folks, we will blow them away with our capabilities in both the MS [Microsoft] and Discovery/Autonomy lines."

(2) The Claimants criticised also the assertion that:

"There were ongoing conversations between Eli and Autonomy as Eli remains a significant customer although it was expected that Capax and Eli would be in contract as at 31 December 2009. These conversations resulted in a revised agreement with Eli and Autonomy in June 2010, though the agreement provides for Capax to invoice Eli directly and, importantly, Capax remain fully liable to Autonomy for the obligation established under the original PO."

As to this:

(a) This too, the Claimants submitted, *"included lies"*, in that Autonomy management had no expectation that Capax Discovery and Eli Lilly "*would enter into a contract*" by 31 December 2009. They had entered into the Capax Discovery transaction precisely because Autonomy could not reach agreement with its long-time customer, Eli Lilly by the end of Q4 2009. Capax Discovery was not even approached by Autonomy until 31 December 2009; and Capax Discovery never even tried to sell a licence to Eli Lilly. The transaction with Capax Discovery had been concluded solely as a means of enabling Autonomy to meet its revenue target for Q4 2009.

(b) The Defendants accepted that this assertion (which was made some time later in similar form in a letter to the FRRP)[12] was *"not precisely phrased"* but submitted that *"Everyone knew that the deal between Capax and Eli Lilly had not been done by that stage"*, and the assertion should be interpreted sensibly as signifying an expectation that there would in the future be a contract between Capax Discovery and Eli Lilly, not that one had already been made.

(3) Thirdly, the Claimants criticised the assertion that:

"We have discussed and reviewed management's views on the matter as summarised above. Their determination of the revenue recognition on the Capax sale as at 31 December 2009 is consistent with our understanding of the original transaction at that time.

As a result of unforeseen circumstances arising in Q2 2010 we understand that additional work was involved on this transaction as summarised in the information from Brent [Hogenson] and as explained above. As these events took place in 2010 this information

[12] See Autonomy's letter to the FRRP dated 3 March 2011 in relation to investigations made by the FRRP after Mr Hogenson had raised concerns: and see paragraph 2304 in the main body of the judgment.

> *was not known as at the time of completing the 2009 group accounts and accordingly adjustments, if any, would fall to be treated in 2010."*

As to this:

(a) The Claimants submitted that this too was false: it proceeded on the basis that something unforeseen had happened in 2010 that was not known about as at 31 December 2009, whereas in fact, what happened was always foreseen (including especially that Autonomy would continue negotiating directly with Eli Lilly, regardless of the VAR transaction).

(b) The Defendants did not address this specifically in their written closing submissions; but they asserted generally, and both experts accepted, the need to assess revenue recognition as at the date of the VAR agreement, and not by reference to events afterwards; and they rejected the notion of there being anything improper in Autonomy continuing to negotiate with the end-user.

144. The Claimants also relied on Autonomy's responses to the FRRP in March and June 2011, when it too asked Autonomy's management for their response to Mr Hogenson's allegations about VT4. I set out below the assertions relied on by the Claimants as being false, and again I summarise, in respect of each of the Claimants' arguments, the Defendants' counter-arguments:

(1) The Claimants referred to Autonomy's response dated 3 March 2011 to the FRRP's letter dated 2 February 2011 as follows:

> *"It was expected that the VAR and end-user would be in contract as at 31 December 2009. However due to evolving regulatory requirements, conversations between Eli Lilly and Autonomy resumed in 2010, resulting in an agreement between Eli Lilly and Autonomy in June 2010. This was accommodated because of the relationship between the companies with Autonomy as a key supplier."*

As to this:

(a) The Claimants submitted that these *"were further, deliberate falsehoods"* on the basis that, in reality, the Defendants never expected Capax Discovery to contract with Eli Lilly, whether by 31 December 2009 or at all. They invited me to reject Dr Lynch's evidence in cross-examination in this regard as unconvincing. Further, they submitted that it was not some unforeseen *"regulatory"* issue which resulted in direct contact being *"resumed"*: rather, it had been the intention all along that Autonomy would deal directly with Eli Lilly.

(b) The Defendants offered the same explanation for the *"not precisely phrased"* language as they had in relation to the draft response to Deloitte; and although they accepted that Autonomy had always intended to carry on negotiating with Eli Lilly (as they considered, as did Deloitte, to be both proper and commercially of obvious

sense and advantage), they again rejected the suggestion that a direct deal had been intended all along.

(2) The Claimants then also criticised Autonomy's response (by letter dated 8 June 2011) to the FRRP's follow-up letter dated 5 April 2011 asking for an explanation as to *"why Eli Lilly decided to contract direct with Autonomy rather than seeking to revise its contract with Capax."*

In that regard:

(a) The Claimants criticised Autonomy's reply that it was *"unable to comment further on the reasons that Eli Lilly decided to ultimately contract with Autonomy"* on the basis that *"No attempt was made to correct the FRRP's evident misapprehension."* Further, the Claimants criticised what Autonomy went on to say, which was:

> *"Under the terms of the subsequent direct agreement between Autonomy and Eli Lilly, Capax are a party to the contract and are invoicing Eli Lilly for the software."*

The Claimants submitted that this was untrue, since Capax Discovery was not a party to the direct agreement but was *"merely Autonomy's designated payee."*

(b) The Defendants rejected both criticisms, denying any need to say anything further about Eli Lilly's preference to deal direct (since they regarded that as ultimately Eli Lilly's choice even if it was always on the cards), and depicting that and (given that in effect the arrangement was tri-partite in that Capax Discovery became a *"designated payee"*) the following criticism as *"nit-picking"* and *"unfair"*.

(3) In conclusion, the Defendants rejected the Claimants' final salvo in this context that:

> *"the Defendants displayed no compunction about dissembling to the regulatory authorities"*.

145. The Claimants further relied on two other explanations or arrangements that they alleged were *"demonstrably untrue",* or fraudulent pretexts advanced by the Defendants to mislead Deloitte and the regulator. Both relate to the arrangements made after the direct deal for reimbursement of Capax Discovery and payment of a MAF:

(1) The first was a letter dated 30 September 2010 which Mr Kanter sent to Capax Discovery which described Capax Discovery as a *"Referral Partner"* and set out terms and conditions that purported to *"formalize our prior discussions."* These included:

> *"Referral Partner will: (1) introduce Autonomy into the deals with Eli Lily [sic] ("<u>End-User</u>"); (2) obtain quotes from Autonomy on*

behalf of the End-User; and (3) work with the End-User to assist in executing purchase orders and contracts with Autonomy.

Autonomy will (1) pay Referral Partner commissions in the amount of $629,000 as a result of Referral Partner's direct and proximate participation in the account …".

(a) The Claimants submitted that this was *"another work of fiction"*. Capax Discovery had not, and was not expected to, introduce Autonomy into deals with Eli Lilly, or to obtain quotes from Autonomy on Eli Lilly's behalf, or to work with Eli Lilly to assist in executing contracts. Capax Discovery had nothing to do with the transaction between Autonomy and Eli Lilly. The natural interpretation, the Claimants submitted, was that this was a contrivance made necessary by the perceived need to avoid putting in to writing or in any way leading to the supposition that the real reason for the payment was that:

"Capax Discovery was being paid for providing documentation that enabled Autonomy to recognise revenue prematurely."

(b) The Claimants also made the point that in opening they had made clear that Mr Kanter would have to explain what they regarded as this fabrication: but he had been subsequently withdrawn as a witness. They contended that the subterfuge was further compounded when, on 30 September 2010, Mr Hussain approved payment *"on the basis that we have a signed MAF"*.

(c) Dr Lynch, under cross-examination, said he did not know whether he had approved this letter. He appeared to me to be somewhat flummoxed, stressing when asked what it was referring to that he was not a lawyer and was *"just reading this cold here"*. He suggested that the letter (and the payment for which it provided) appeared to him to be dealing, at least in part, with the future and the need to ensure that Capax Discovery did not use their introduction to Eli Lilly to compete with Autonomy; but although the letter did also contain what was in effect a non-compete stipulation, that explanation was not convincing in relation to the express wording that:

> *"Autonomy will pay Referral Partner commissions in the amount of $629,000* [equating to 10% of the deal already done] *as a result of Referral Partner's direct and proximate participation in the account…"*

(d) When it was put to him that *"Mr Kanter's letter is simply laying a false paper trail",* he disagreed and said that *"all that he's done is taken a standard MAF agreement"* and the letter appeared to him to look *"like a perfectly standard MAF paperwork…the normal*

paperwork we would use, something like that"; but that did not explain its reference to Capax Discovery's *"direct and proximate participation"*. Dr Lynch appeared discomfited; and his responses were not convincing.

(e) As it seems to me, Mr Kanter's perception of the need for such a letter does support the Claimants' case that at least he felt uncomfortable paying a MAF without (a) some written agreement and (b) the reseller having actively participated in the transaction in some way.

(2) Secondly, the Claimants relied on the steps taken to reimburse or protect Capax Discovery from liability to pay for the shortfall of some $700,000 between the VAR transaction licence fee (for which Capax Discovery remained legally liable) and the lower amount eventually charged by Autonomy to Eli Lilly in the direct deal. Again, the Claimants contended, it was Mr Kanter who devised a solution, which I have already dealt with in some detail above (see the section in the main body of the judgment where I deal with the Capax Discovery/EDD reciprocal transaction (RT1)), and again it involved pretence.

In summary:

(a) By email to Mr Hussain and Mr Egan dated 6 October 2010 Mr Kanter referred to *"experiencing bandwidth constraints on EDD processing"* as the basis for recommending (so as to *"ensure availability of service for customers"*) an *"increase in European EDD processing availability for Capax of 500GB per month for the next seven months"* at a price of approximately $100k per month.

(b) There is thus an exact coincidence with the amount of shortfall; and the coincidence in timing is notable also.

(c) Mr Egan stated in his witness statement that Mr Kanter had *"generated emails that created the appearance that Capax was actually providing overflow EDD services for Autonomy"* though he (Mr Kanter) knew that was not the case, and the emails were pre-textual. Mr Egan also referred to the fact that he *"knew that Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain had made similar pre-textual statements."*

(d) Mr Baiocco's evidence in his witness statement was that these payments were made following a proposal from Mr Egan and Mr Kanter that the shortfall be covered by Autonomy, though in cross-examination he clarified that he did not discuss the matter with Mr Kanter, at least until much later. Mr Baiocco further confirmed that:

> *"…Capax Discovery did not work on any 'European projects'. I believe that this documentation was simply designed to paper the payments by Autonomy to Capax Discovery to cover the shortfall on the Eli Lilly transaction."*

(e) This evidence was not really contradicted. Indeed, it will be recalled that at the commencement of his cross-examination when asked whether there were any matters that on reflection he felt were untoward, Dr Lynch singled out the issue as to the purchase orders and payments made to Capax Discovery for EDD services as his one area of concern that there might have been wrongdoing, although he insisted that he had no knowledge of this at the time, and did not accept that Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain had either. Dr Lynch told me that he did not think that Mr Kanter knew, or had any reason to know, that money was being sent to Capax Discovery for doing nothing because he sat:

> *"in a legal office in Cambridge, he doesn't go to the US, he doesn't stand in data centres and he's getting approvals from Mr Egan saying that the work has been done."*

(f) However, there is no doubt that Mr Kanter was involved in the process under which Autonomy contracted for Capax Discovery to provide the EDD services; and, for example, there was a statement on the face of the purchase order in question, *"REQUESTED BY: Andrew Kanter"*.

(g) When it was suggested to Dr Lynch that surely Mr Baiocco would not have failed to tell Mr Kanter that Capax Discovery was not doing any work, he denied this tersely, reasoning that if Mr Baiocco had told Mr Kanter that (in effect) he was defrauding Autonomy, Mr Baiocco would have been sued. When the riposte from Mr Rabinowitz was that this might be so unless, of course, there was agreement on a contrivance, including by Dr Lynch, Dr Lynch dismissed that completely.

(h) It would certainly have been helpful to hear from Mr Kanter on these points; but I did not, in circumstances I have previously explained. In his absence, and for reasons I have already given, I have concluded that the likelihood is that these arrangements were a contrivance orchestrated by Mr Kanter, and implemented by Mr Egan and Mr Baiocco, each of whom knew that at the time Capax Discovery was not able to provide the overflow EDD services it was purportedly issuing a purchase order in respect of, and being paid for.

(i) The Claimants submitted that whether or not Mr Baiocco, Mr Egan or Mr Kanter actually told Dr Lynch about the specifics (as to which see below) the contrivance was:

> *"entirely in keeping with the arrangement – which the Court should find Dr Lynch had authorised (or at the very least knew about and supported) – of ensuring that Capax Discovery was not left out of pocket, thus enabling Autonomy to call upon*

Capax Discovery as and when required to enable revenue to be recognised improperly."

(j) I address the issue as to what the Defendants knew of this below.

146. The final episode of VT4 relates to the process by which, in the end, the $299,342 support and maintenance fee was dealt with, which the Claimants also relied on as the final implementation in the context of the transaction of the side agreement or understanding they allege, and improper accordingly. As to this:

(1) Capax Discovery never paid that sum, and Autonomy never threatened any recovery process.

(2) Rather, on 28 July 2011, Ms Helen Ku of Autonomy's finance department informed Mr Baiocco, copying Mr Chamberlain, that the outstanding balance on the Eli Lilly purchase order was $299,680. Mr Chamberlain forwarded this to Mr Hussain the same day, and said, "*Down to $300k which is the maintenance credit that I need to sort*". Mr Hussain responded, and did not dissent from, the notion that a credit should be given.

(3) Accordingly, on 8 August 2011, Autonomy issued a credit note to Capax Discovery in the amount of $299,342, effectively cancelling Capax Discovery's remaining payment obligation relating to the Eli Lilly deal. Mr Chamberlain approved the issue of the credit note.

(4) The Defendants dismissed the suggestion that this was improper as *"unreal"*. As with the Kraft transaction, after Autonomy had closed a direct deal with Eli Lilly, it was commercially sensible, and avoided counting the same revenue[13] twice, to issue a credit note in respect of the outstanding support and maintenance component, which Autonomy had instead committed to undertake for a commensurate fee.

(5) In the circumstances as they then were, plainly, the Defendants are correct that the revenue could not be counted twice, and the loose end of the VAR sale had to be tied up. But the Defendants' dismissal of any complaint about this last part of the process as *"unreal"* does not answer the overall picture painted by the Claimants, and which I accept as encapsulating the economic result, which was that as regards Capax Discovery's total debt of $6,286,169 under the Eli Lilly purchase order:

(a) Capax Discovery paid about $5.3 million using money which Autonomy was entitled to receive from Eli Lilly, but which Autonomy directed Eli Lilly to pay to Capax Discovery, so that Capax Discovery could, in turn, hand it over to Autonomy;

(b) Capax Discovery paid $700,000 using money which Autonomy channelled to Capax Discovery for fictitious services, so that Capax Discovery could then pay it back to Autonomy; and

(c) Autonomy cancelled Capax Discovery's obligation to pay the remaining $299,342.

[13] Is it the same revenue or is (1) revenue for software delivered via Automater to VAR, the other is revenue from sale of software presumably delivered by Autonomy directly to Lilly.

147. In effect, the difference between the Claimants and the Defendants as to this was that the Claimants contended that outcome further justifies the inference that, at the time of the purchase order, Capax Discovery did not genuinely take the risk of having to pay $6,286,169 (or any amount) to Autonomy from its own resources; whereas the Defendants presented it as illustrating how far Mr Egan, Mr Baiocco, and Mr Kanter were prepared to go to preserve the goodwill of Capax Discovery and the VARs, and what Dr Lynch was fond of referring to as the *"ecosystem of resellers"* on which *"a company like Autonomy stands or falls…"* Dr Lynch put up an energetic case for the latter:

> *"So one of the crucial things is to make this ecosystem of resellers strong because not only do they bring you business, not only do they keep the competitors out, not only do they do the marketing for you, but they're also the ones that are there supporting the customers and doing the installations, so – and of course if they don't get the revenue through their books, they have to go and do it with competitors.*
>
> …
>
> *And you know, yes, I guess theoretically Autonomy could turn round and say, well, even though we sold it to you, we're going to sell it again, but in that case, as soon as the ecosystem heard about that, no one would trust you anymore, so there's a sort of mutually assured destruction in that situation."*

148. This was energetically put and well thought out: but I am not persuaded that it has anything much to do with the present case. Of course, a company in the position of Autonomy would not wish to let a reseller down; of course, it would not seek to extract a double revenue; of course, if a direct sale resulted, Autonomy would need to pay the VAR what, or substantially what, it would legitimately have expected had it re-sold, Autonomy having destroyed the prospect of an onward sale. But the result was the real purpose of the arrangements, and not an unexpected one, and I am persuaded that it conformed with the intentions of Autonomy and Capax Discovery all along.

149. In my judgment, therefore, the explanation offered by the Claimants is plainly the most likely.

150. In the round, I have concluded that VT4 lacked economic substance; the only real substantive sale was direct by Autonomy to Eli Lilly. In my judgment, no revenue should have been recognised from impugned VAR sale VT4; and the repetition of its features in subsequent sales is of general relevance and requires the like conclusion in respect of subsequent Capax Discovery sales accordingly.

Defendants' alleged knowledge of false accounting in respect of VT4

151. As to the second limb of their case, that the Defendants both knew that the inclusion in Autonomy's accounts and published information of recognised revenue from VT4 was misleading, the Claimants relied on the following:

(1) Their general or overriding case to the effect that the introduction of a VAR so late in the day, and only because of a delay in closing the intended end-user deal with Eli Lilly, and the fact that after the VAR transaction, Autonomy continued to conduct the negotiations which led to a direct sale by it to Eli Lilly (rather than an onward sale by Capax Discovery as the VAR to Eli Lilly as end-user) were ultimately directed by Mr Hussain and must have been known by Dr Lynch;

(2) The specific arrangements made for (a) Eli Lilly to make a payment, at Autonomy's direction, to Capax Discovery (rather than) Autonomy to enable Capax Discovery to discharge its indebtedness to Autonomy under its VAR transaction and (b) the payment of a MAF to Capax Discovery, though (as the Claimants saw it) it was not expected or intended to participate at all (so that it was merely a *"placeholder"*) were similarly known to, and known to be improper by, Mr Hussain, and it is to be inferred, also by Dr Lynch;

(3) The further arrangements to ensure that Capax Discovery was either held harmless in respect of, or given funds to discharge, any remaining indebtedness under the VAR transaction to which legally Capax Discovery remained subject by reason of the lower sums achieved in the direct sale were known by Mr Egan, Mr Baiocco, Mr Kanter, Mr Hussain, and by inference, Dr Lynch to be contrivances or (as the Claimants put it) *"works of fiction"*;

(4) The guilty knowledge of both Defendants being confirmed by the fact that they did, and perceived the necessity to, (a) neutralise Mr Hogenson and (b) mislead both (i) Deloitte and (ii) the FRRP and the FRC about the true nature of the VAR transaction and the ultimate direct deal.

152. The points in (1) and (2) above substantially relate to the same 'pattern' and reflect points already addressed in relation to VT3. I do not propose to repeat my assessment of them. I turn to address, however, (a) various matters that the dispute in relation to VT4 highlighted, and which have a more general significance to this and the other Capax Discovery impugned VAR sales; then (b) the question whether either of the Defendants knew that the arrangements made to pay Capax Discovery for EDD processing were a contrivance (see in paragraph 145(2) above); and then (c) whether the way that Mr Hogenson was dealt with and/or the way VT4 was presented to Deloitte and the FRRP demonstrates "guilty knowledge".

Particular matters highlighted by VT4

153. The Claimants focused especially in the context of VT4 on a spreadsheet prepared by Mr Hussain, which he sent to Dr Lynch on 29 December 2009:

(1) The spreadsheet contained, between columns W and AB of the "*revenue*" worksheet, a table setting out the daily progress of the large deals on 15, 16, 17 and 18 December 2009 (cells X16 to AA16):

	15th dec	16th dec	17th dec	18th dec			
HOME OF	3	3	0	1			
MOD #1	2.5	2.5	2.5	2.4			
MOD #2	2	2	2		out		
MT	10	10	10	10	24th dec		
Dell oem	2	2	2		risk		
Dell MS	5	5	10	5	MS + BofA closed for $1m		
BNP	3.3	3.3	3.3		signed		
Eli	6.6	0	0		out		
D&T	2	0	0		out		
JPMC	5	10	10		disappeared		
Vat	19	19	19				
capax				6.5			
microtech				5			
Verdasys					collections		
integracion				2.5	collections		
HP OEM							
Filetech				8	recognition		
frank pao				1.5			
Imperva				1			
MS				12	risky		
Schwab	3.5	3.5	3.5		signed		
VT		2	2	1.9			
	63.9	62.3	64.3	56.8	0	0	

(2) Row 24 (marked with the first red arrow above) showed "*Eli*" (cell W24) with a value of $6.6 million on 15 December 2009 (cell X24), reduced to zero as at 16 and 17 December 2009 (cells Y24 and Z24) together with the comment "*out*" (cell AB24).

(3) Row 28 (marked with the second red arrow above) now had a new entry for "*capax*" (cell W28). This row was blank for 15, 16 and 17 December 2009 (cells X28 to Z28) but had a value of $6.5 million as at 18 December 2009 (cell AA28).

(4) It is easy to see that, as at 18 December 2009, the $6.6 million potential deal with Eli Lilly was to be replaced with a deal for approximately the same amount ($6.5 million) with Capax Discovery.

154. Dr Lynch said in cross-examination it was "*possible*" but "*unlikely*" he looked at this spreadsheet. But he was the primary addressee of Mr Hussain's email attaching it (Mr Stephan and Mr Chamberlain were copied, no doubt because they were working with Mr Hussain in the finance department). The Claimants submitted that Mr Hussain would not have sent it unless he expected that Dr Lynch would look at it. It is true that Dr Lynch (who said he disliked spreadsheets) considered that Mr Hussain was over-fond of them. But although Dr Lynch sought to portray his *"multi-page, multi-column, multi-everything"* spreadsheet as "*pretty incomprehensible*", that struck me as rather exaggerated in the particular instance: it contained a user-friendly table charting the day-by-day position on the major deals. Given his focus on revenue, and on the large deals which would make the difference between achieving forecast and falling short of it, I agree with the Claimants that that would have been of considerable interest to Dr Lynch, and the likelihood is that he read it.

155. The Claimants urged me to find that Dr Lynch knew that Mr Hussain's plan was to try to recognise revenue on the potential Eli Lilly deal in Q4 2009 by using Capax Discovery as a placeholder, on the basis of the same assurances as had been made in respect of the Kraft transaction. Although taken as a whole, I would have agreed with Dr Lynch that this rolled up set of assertions was *"going a bit further than the data on this spreadsheet"*. I accept that he would have gleaned from it quickly that Mr Hussain planned to use Capax Discovery if Eli Lilly did not complete in time or fell out. Furthermore, whether he read it properly or not, the fact that it was sent to him demonstrates both Mr Hussain's perception that Dr Lynch was not aloof from everyday detail or concerned only with strategy as a CEO of a listed public company but rather wished and expected to be involved in such detail, and also Mr Hussain's wish and propensity to share information with Dr Lynch and seek his support or guidance. I find it inherently unlikely that Mr Hussain would have wished to share this sort of detail whilst keeping to himself the matters of which he was aware as to how in truth the impugned VAR deals were intended to operate.

156. A second point of detailed evidence relates to the fact that VT4 was only proposed to Capax Discovery on the very last day of Q4 2009, and had to be (as it was) completed by midnight. Capax Discovery (a fledgling entity which its parent had indicated it would not support in this regard) had no time, and made no attempt, to assess the potential for an end-user sale and thus the $6 million risk which on the Defendants' case it was undertaking for an upside fee of 10% and the possibility of future servicing work for Eli Lilly if that proposed end-user deal eventuated. Dr Lynch sought to address the obvious point that such an indifference to risk might suggest that it was not a real one (or that some other reliable comfort was available to cover it) with a suggestion to the effect that Capax Discovery already had available the information:

> *"Q. Mr Baiocco's evidence is that Capax Discovery had not had any dealings with Eli Lilly about this potential transaction before Capax Discovery issued its purchase order. Again, that wasn't challenged. I don't understand you to dispute that either, do you?*
>
> *A. Well, other than I think I've seen information that says that Capax were actually working inside Eli Lilly at this point anyway."* [My emphasis]

157. Dr Lynch repeated this "understanding" three more times in the course of his cross-examination, but never gave any indication of its source or any other support for it. No evidence was provided to support it; and it was not suggested or put to Mr Baiocco that Capax Discovery was already working for Eli Lilly prior to 31 December 2009. It was suggested to Mr Baiocco that Capax Discovery subsequently became an approved vendor of professional services to Eli Lilly: but Mr Baiocco's evidence was that this did not end up happening.

158. A third point of focus in relation to VT4 was the arrangements made to pay Capax Discovery for the provision of EDD services, which as I have explained above the Claimants alleged were contrived to make good a liability to which Capax Discovery was contractually exposed because of a shortfall of some $700,000 representing the difference between the licence fee under the direct agreement between Autonomy and Eli Lilly (about $5.3 million) and the licence fee that had been agreed with Capax Discovery (about $6 million). I have described above how this was done and the

Claimants' case that it was all a contrivance (which I have accepted): the question now is as to what the Defendants knew.

159. There are three facets to this question: (a) whether purchase orders issued by Autonomy supposedly in respect of *"EDD Services"* related to any actual EDD work done or to be done by Capax Discovery; (b) whether, if not, the Defendants knew that and (c) whether the Defendants were aware of the arrangements in the particular context of VT4 for which Capax Discovery's shortfall was to be paid off and their alleged contrivance.

160. As to (a), I have summarised in paragraphs 2507 to 2510 in the main body of the judgment and elaborated in the part of this judgment dealing with the allegations about 'Reciprocal Transactions', the question whether Capax Discovery had that capability at the time of the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale at the end of March 2009. I have concluded that it did not. The Claimants' case was that it did not develop a capability to provide EDD overflow services until late 2011. By way of summary:

(1) The device of using purchase orders for *"Specialist EDD processing"* on the purported basis that Autonomy had such a volume of EDD processing work that it could not do it itself and thus needed to secure from Capax Discovery *"overflow capacity"* had been devised in April 2009 to provide funds to Capax Discovery to enable it to make instalment payments under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale and had become well-established: and see paragraphs 2507 to 2524 in the main body of the judgment.

(2) Use of such purchase orders was extended in May 2009 to cover hardware purchases from Autonomy to enable Capax Discovery to start an EDD processing facility and build capacity itself to do EDD processing work.

(3) It was then extended again to cover instalments due to Autonomy by Capax Discovery under a second Capax Discovery/EDD sale in early 2010.

(4) As at April 2009, and for a considerable time after that, probably until early 2011, Capax Discovery had not in fact the ability to do specialist EDD processing.

(5) The truth that Capax Discovery had no ability to deliver specialised EDD processing throughout this period was established by the evidence of Mr Baiocco, Mr Egan and Mr Sullivan, and by the absence of any proof of it ever being provided. Further, Mr Sullivan, who as CEO of Zantaz, had detailed insight of its e-Discovery business, stated in his witness statement that he

> *"knew of no instance of EDD work being outsourced to Capax or any other third party. Further, I do not believe that Autonomy needed standby EDD support services. When capacity constraints did arise, as in the case of our extremely large EDD contract with BP, Autonomy scaled up its operations by adding hardware and hiring additional staff to handle the additional workload."*

(6) The fact that the purchase orders, which were never followed by any contract to establish terms for the provision of services, were simply a means of generating funds for Capax Discovery was also discernible from the clear

pattern which developed: Capax Discovery would never pay instalments unless and until it had received payment under the purchase orders. Indeed it was that pattern which Mr Hogenson discerned and expressed concern about in late June 2010 (see paragraphs 2239 to 2242 in the main body of the judgment), as (in July 2010) did Mr Tejeda as Autonomy Inc Director of Revenue in the Americas.

(7) Documentary evidence such as a spreadsheet sent by Mr Baiocco to Mr Kanter on 4 March 2010 under cover of an email explaining that it *"reflected the deal from q1 09"* and also drew attention to the fact that as regards the *"q4 deal"* it had not yet been populated *"because there has been no payments related to that deal as of yet"*, confirmed the expectation that funds would be provided for Capax Discovery to enable it to pay down its debt. Thus, the spreadsheet had a column for the "*Total Owed to Capax*", which listed the instalments due to Capax Discovery in order to fund Capax Discovery's payments under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale, and then various columns showing when Capax Discovery paid Autonomy following receipt of funds from Autonomy pursuant to various e-Discovery purchase orders. The spreadsheet indicated that Capax Discovery was expecting Autonomy to pay it amounts equivalent to the instalments due under the first Capax Discovery/EDD sale and was using the funds it received from Autonomy under the guise of e-Discovery services to pay those instalments. The difference between the amounts in the Total Owed to Capax Discovery column and the amounts recorded in the column headed "Check Breakdown" was Capax Discovery's profit.

(8) If this was not clear enough from Mr Baiocco's spreadsheet, Mr Baiocco then sent Mr Kanter a follow up email, saying:

> *"...sorry to hit you again here. Just wanted to reiterate that we were promised more than a dollar for dollar on this. We were promised a profit as well. Trying not to sound ungrateful in any way, just that we were nowhere near ready to do a deal like this."*

(9) Dr Lynch himself acknowledged, when asked early in his cross-examination, whether having seen the material adduced and listened to the evidence up until then, he was still adamant that there was no wrongdoing, that he was concerned about impropriety in relation to the payments to Capax Discovery for EDD, in that he had seen evidence that:

> *"...we were paying for the provision of EDD outflow services and that Mr Baiocco was not in a position to actually provide that if that had been required and Mr Egan knew that."*

(10) As earlier noted, the invoices referred to *"Outsourced Specialist EDD Services...for European projects"*, but Mr Baiocco's evidence, which was on this point not challenged or contradicted, was that Capax Discovery never did work on any *"European projects."*

(11) Not only was the use of purchase orders purportedly for *"Specialist EDD processing"* an established device and pretence, but the propensity of those

directly engaged in the deployment of the device, including especially Mr Egan, Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain, to co-operate in the creation of pre-textual correspondence with an eye to the auditors, which might otherwise not be likely, is apparent from an earlier email in the same email chain as culminated in Mr Kanter's *"bandwidth"* email of 6 October 2010 to Mr Hussain and Mr Egan dated 6 October 2010 (see paragraph 145(2) above). In that earlier email, Mr Kanter pretended to have been *"impressed with Capax's contribution to the FSA transaction"* so as to justify a MAF. He knew, and they all knew, that Capax Discovery had in fact done nothing.

161. As to who knew of the pretence:

(1) Mr Egan, Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain worked together in this area as a tight, close-knit team. They were all also part of what Dr Lynch considered to be his core management team. Of course, Mr Egan was on the ground in the US, whereas for the most part Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter were in the UK, sharing an open plan office when in London with Dr Lynch, and being in close proximity to each other when working in Cambridge; and they were able to and did keep in close contact with each other, both in writing, as the email chain itself illustrates, and in undocumented discussions. It seems to me much more probable than not that Mr Hussain would have come to know what Mr Egan and Mr Kanter knew.

(2) I consider it unlikely that Mr Kanter or Mr Egan would have contrived all this without the knowledge and approval of Mr Hussain; and all the more unlikely that either would have dared to do so alone and implicated the others by including them in emails seeking their approval. They were a tight team, all aware of the assurances given to Mr Baiocco, and the need to find a solution to fulfil them. It seems to me reasonably clear that Mr Kanter and both recipients of his "bandwidth" email were well aware of the device and its development and purpose.

(3) The documentary evidence lends further support by revealing a sharp difference in the way Mr Baiocco's frequent and increasingly urgent enquiries as to payment as instalment dates under the various EDD contracts became imminent were treated within Autonomy's finance department according to whether they did or did not know that no EDD work was in fact being done by Capax Discovery. By way of illustration of this:

(a) When Mr Crumbacher (who was not in the know) tried to find out in February 2010 who was dealing with Capax Discovery EDD purchase orders after Mr Phil Smolek had left (in December 2009), Mr Sullivan (who was not in the know either) responded that he did not know but assumed that Mr Chamberlain would be able to say, prompting Mr Crumbacher to ask:

> *"Doesn't your team have to tell finance how much processing work was done, and for what fee? Who are they giving that information to now? Or has no EDD work been done by Capax since Phil left?"*

(b) Those in the know, such as Mr Kanter (who had become by then responsible for the e-Discovery purchase process, which of itself is of interest), simply dealt with the enquiries for what they were: enquiries as to when Mr Baiocco would get the funds he needed. Thus, for example, after Mr Crumbacher had once more sought information about EDD sales after urgent enquiries from Mr Baiocco, Mr Kanter appears to have enquired of Mr Egan how much was required, and when told that an increased amount was outstanding, simply increased the payment by a total of some $350,000 without requiring or providing any explanation.

(c) Mr Egan, Mr Kanter and Mr Baiocco were in constant contact, and email evidence suggests that increasingly Mr Kanter kept a close eye on any purchase order from Capax Discovery relating to EDD Processing, without involvement on the part of others in the finance department.

(d) They kept a close eye on purchase orders with respect to EDD.

162. The third question, and the one of most specific relevance to VT4, is whether the Defendants knew that the purchase order which generated the funds used to cover Capax Discovery's shortfall of $700,000 was likewise a pretence. As to that:

(1) It seems to me clear that the purchase order was a pretence, just as the preceding purchase orders for *"Outsourced specialist EDD Services"* were pretences, to justify the payments that in effect Mr Baiocco had been promised would be made to enable Capax Discovery to make the instalment payments due by it, and in the case of VT4 the shortfall that had arisen;

(2) In the circumstances detailed above, I have concluded that Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Mr Egan were all aware of this and indeed involved in it;

(3) That leaves only the question of what Dr Lynch himself knew.

163. Dr Lynch was aware of the direct Autonomy/ Eli Lilly contract (not least, from Mr Hogenson's expressed concerns). However, he denied in cross-examination that either Mr Egan or Mr Kanter told him about this arrangement to cover Capax Discovery's shortfall. Dr Lynch's position was that, as far as he was concerned, the payments were for services which Autonomy needed to sub-contract; nothing suggested to him that the payments were for fictitious services.

164. The Claimants rejected this and submitted that "*given that the arrangement involved paying $700,000 to Capax Discovery in exchange for nothing, that is highly implausible."* But that assumes against the Defendants the very point in issue, which is whether the payment was in fact for services. Nevertheless, having concluded that Mr Hussain was involved (see paragraph 161 above), in addition to Mr Egan and Mr Kanter, I do not think it likely that they would all have kept from Dr Lynch the arrangement which lay behind the exchanges, which I have concluded they devised to fulfil the assurances given by Mr Egan and to ensure that Capax Discovery was not left out of pocket.

165. I consider that I am fortified in that conclusion by the following:

(1) On 9 December 2010 Dr Lynch was asked to approve the $700,000 purchase order by an Accounts Assistant, obviously on the instructions of Mr Hussain and/or Mr Kanter and/or Mr Egan (all of whom had previously given their approval), with a careful, but unusual, explanation that his (Dr Lynch's) approval was needed *"as the total exceed 30,000USD"*. Dr Lynch wrote *"ok"* from his iPhone. He asked no questions at all.

(2) This needs to be set in the context of the fact that in July 2010 Mr Percy Tejeda ("Mr Tejeda"), Director of Revenue at Autonomy Interwoven, had raised specific queries about various issues relating to VT4 and the Eli Lilly contract, including whether Autonomy were genuinely sub-contracting EDD services to Capax Discovery. He had also referred to the shortfall in question. Mr Tejeda's email had been forwarded by Mr Hogenson to Autonomy's Audit Committee on 8 July 2010, copying Mr Knights and Mr Knight of Deloitte and Mr Kanter. It was put to Dr Lynch in cross-examination that in light of these concerns, he would surely not *"have just said "okay" without asking any questions about these purchase orders?"*

(3) I accept this "dog that did not bark" point. In his oral evidence, Dr Lynch told me that he also sought to dismiss the concerns of Mr Tejeda and Mr Hogenson as *"nothing new"* and he had in fact drawn additional comfort that there was nothing amiss about the EDD purchase orders[14] from Deloitte's investigation finding nothing untoward. However, I cannot accept this justification for Dr Lynch having raised no questions in respect of an issue that had become such a focus of concern:

(a) It seems to me most unlikely that this request for approval came out of the blue: it is much more likely, in all the circumstances, that Dr Lynch had been told by Mr Hussain or Mr Kanter what to expect and why.

(b) That is especially so because it appears that the requirement for his approval of anything over $30,000 was new, and thus the request fairly new too. In that context, Dr Lynch disputed that there was any such rule at all: but in that case the request would surely have appeared all the more questionable unless pre-explained.

(c) Furthermore, in relation to EDD payments to Capax Discovery, he had no basis for supposing, let alone getting comfort as he suggested, from Deloitte's review: Deloitte never did consider EDD payments.

166. In summary, therefore, I have concluded that all of the core management team of Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and (for these purposes) Mr Egan were aware that the purchase order for $700,000 was a pretence, and was the mechanism whereby to appear to justify covering Capax Discovery's exposure in the VT4 transaction. That further substantially supports the Claimants' case for impugning VT4 and for liability on the part of the Defendants under FSMA.

[14] He told me in cross-examination: *"The irony, which may be a slightly sad one, is that after Deloitte had looked at all this, I actually felt confident in these things."* The fact is, however, that Deloitte were not aware that Capax Discovery had no ability to provide the relevant EDD processing, and had never done so, as I have found to be the position; and if Dr Lynch knew this, the point rebounds on him.

167. In my judgment, the Claimants have established both limbs of their case in relation to VT4.

VT10: Capax/FSA (Q1 2010)

168. By mid-March 2010, Autonomy was close to concluding a substantial sale of software to the UK Financial Services Authority ("the FSA"). The sale was being negotiated by Mr Chris Hartley (a senior sales executive with ASL, based in Cambridge) directed and assisted by Mr Hussain. The FSA deal was one of the main targets for the quarter.

169. Mr Hussain told Dr Lynch by an email dated 15 March 2010, Autonomy at that stage needed *"5-8 more"* and though Mr Hussain still hoped to close the proposed FSA deal of about $4,500,000, which would have greatly assisted it to meet its revenue target for Q1 2010 of $195,500,000, by then the prospects were fading of doing so before the end of the quarter.

170. As at 29 March 2010, it was clear that no deal could be concluded with the FSA within Q1 2010. Dr Lynch sent Mr Hussain a document setting out the transactions that he understood needed to be concluded in order for Autonomy to achieve its total revenue target for Q1 2010. The attachment identified $4 million in revenue as coming from "*FSA PARTNER MT*". The use of the suffix "*PARTNER*" denoted the use of a VAR in order to recognise the revenue in Q1 2010, as Dr Lynch accepted.

171. Dr Lynch denied that he was thereby instructing, or at least, authorising Mr Hussain to enter into a VAR transaction to enable revenue to be recognised, but he accepted that he was content with Mr Hussain doing so. He went on to accept the following:

> *"Q. And so what Mr Hussain was proposing and you were going along with was for Autonomy to get this VAR to submit a purchase order that would enable Autonomy to recognise the revenue in Q1, correct?*
>
> *A. I assume that's what it would want to do, yes."*

172. On 30 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent Mr Hussain an attachment entitled "*115Done.docx*" and said in his covering email, "*Ok heres [sic] my list*". The attachment attributed $4 million of revenue to "*FSA PARTNER MT*". Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that MT "*could be*" MicroTech. No other meaning has been suggested.

173. The plan became to use as the VAR a company called Centennial, an affiliate of FileTek, which Mr Szukalski described to me, in the context of the FileTek/USDVA deal, as being *"very comfortable and familiar with these types of transactions"*:

    (1) On 30 March 2010, Mr Egan asked Mr Kanter to create a purchase order for Centennial "*to agree with the parameters you finalize on for FSA deal*".

    (2) The same day, Mr Egan, Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain discussed what terms should be included in the purchase order. Mr Hussain said, "*the problem is rev rec on the reseller – are they financially strong?*"

    (3) On 31 March 2010, Mr Crumbacher, at Mr Egan's request, set out in an email a list of "*big issues*" in the proposed FSA contract "*for your communication with Centennial tomorrow*". The list made apparent that the FSA deal was

complex and there were a large number of potential issues for consideration by Centennial.

(4) That day (31 March 2010), Mr Hussain emailed Mr Egan saying, "*this doesn't look good to me*". Mr Egan agreed, "*I know I think I need to either do straight on the FS deal as financing or do FT deal*". Mr Hussain replied, "*With these guys I think you can only do a FT deal. PMI and citi thru DT. FSA?*". The Claimants submitted, and I accept, that this signified that they considered that a different VAR needed to be found.

174. Also on 31 March 2010, at 12:38 pm, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch (and Mr Egan) another revenue route-map document. The overall target was revenue of $200 million, equating to earnings per share of $0.25. A list of transactions was given to reach that target, including "*FSA 4.5*". No VAR was identified on this list.

175. Later that day (31 March 2010), at 7.19pm, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch a further version of the same document which stated at the foot of the page, under the heading "*ISSUES*", "*FSA??*". The VAR was still not identified on the list.

176. At 11.31pm on 31 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent Mr Hussain a further version of the document. He stated in the subject field of his covering email "*Important sheet ring if awake ... midnight italy*". Next to the reference to the $4.5 million FSA transaction, Dr Lynch wrote the letters "*cx*". Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that this was a reference to Capax Discovery. He explained how Capax Discovery had come to be chosen as the VAR for the FSA deal as follows:

> *"Q. On 31 March, you are identifying Capax as the VAR to use to recognise revenue on the potential transaction with the FSA?*
>
> *A. No, someone will have told me that that is who we are talking to about doing it.*
>
> *Q. Who?*
>
> *A. It could have been Mr Egan. It could have been Mr Hussain."*

177. There was still time to do a deal with Capax Discovery, because Capax Discovery was located on the US East Coast (five hours behind London time). Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he had no reason to think that Capax Discovery (a New Jersey company) had had any dealings with the UK financial services regulator. It was the unchallenged evidence of Mr Baiocco that the first he heard of a possible transaction for end-user FSA was "*when Mr Egan called me right at the end of the quarter*".

178. On 31 March 2010, at 10.14pm, Mr Crumbacher emailed Mr Baiocco a draft purchase order for him to execute and return, which he did. The purchase order, drafted by Autonomy, stated a licence fee of $4,285,714 plus $214,286 for one year of support. Payment was required as follows: $450,000 by 30 April 2010, $1.05 million by 31 March 2011, $1.5 million by 31 March 2012 and $1.5 million by 31 March 2013. The software included Introspect (i.e. e-Discovery), Aungate Investigator and ECA. The payment order was issued under the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement, summarised at paragraph 60 above, and which made clear that the reseller was

unconditionally obliged to pay (and was not relieved by any non-payment by the end-user) and the agreement comprised the entire agreement between the parties. As the Defendants also emphasised, the terms of the contractual arrangements (which are not said to be a sham and must thus be given full effect in law) made it clear that the risk of ownership had passed, and that managerial control was not retained by the seller (Autonomy).

179. Notwithstanding the extreme hurry (necessitating the choice of a VAR in a different time zone) to enable recognition of revenue by the use of a VAR in anticipation of an end-user sale to the FSA, it appears that in the immediate aftermath there was some shilly-shallying as to whether or not to take the revenue in that quarter, or defer it. In particular:

(1) In the early hours of 1 April 2010, Dr Lynch (who was in California) emailed Mr Hussain to say, "*everything expected in IDOL US closed*" and attached an update. The update continued to show $4.5 million of revenue on an FSA deal, through Capax Discovery.

(2) Also on the morning of 1 April 2010, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Egan, subject "*update pls*". The body of his email identified the following transactions:

(a) *"Filetek 8m"*
(b) *"Discovertech – pmi & citi"*
(c) *"Capax – fsa"*

(3) But on 8 April 2010, Mr Chamberlain emailed Cynthia Watkins and Matt Stephan to say that "*Powers greater than me*" were making decisions which required adjustments to revenue, including "*Defer Capax (FSA) - $4,285k*".

(4) Then, on 12 April 2010, Mr Chamberlain emailed again, saying, "*We have had to make further changes to your numbers*", and identified "*Capax (FSA) back in*". The same day (12 April 2010), Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch an "*audit update*" which stated, "*MT is ok (subject to some evidence) Capax ditto*".

180. In the event, Autonomy recognised the licence fee revenue immediately as at 31 March 2010, with the support and maintenance recognised over the course of the following year.

181. Subsequently, in August 2010 Autonomy entered into a direct agreement with the FSA which provided for three years of hosting and archiving services, together with software licences, for a total amount of $6,676,102 payable in stages subject to acceptance criteria not finally satisfied until August 2011. The last stage payment was not due or paid by the FSA until September 2011. In June 2011 Capax Discovery paid $1.5m due in respect of its obligations.[15] After Autonomy had invoiced the FSA in respect of the sale, Autonomy credited Capax Discovery in respect of the balance of the debt due.

182. Some of the Claimants' submissions in respect of VT10 broadly mirrored those in respect of the other impugned VAR transactions between Autonomy and Capax Discovery (other than those relating to EDD). Thus:

---

[15] The Claimants allege that this payment resulted from Autonomy's ramp up payment in respect of Capax Discovery's NearPoint services, dealt with at paragraphs 198 to 202 below.

(1) The VAR deal was offered to Mr Baiocco at literally the eleventh hour and Capax Discovery had no time or opportunity to assess the prospect of the proposed end-user deal, nor to negotiate price. Mr Baiocco said that he was told that *"the deal with the FSA was very close to closing, and that we would get a 10% commission once Autonomy had closed it"*; but Capax Discovery could and did make no enquiry of its own, and simply settled in to passively awaiting whatever Autonomy negotiated. It had not the time or the means, nor (if in reality it was taking none) any reason, to measure the risk.

(2) The Claimants relied on the unchallenged evidence of Mr Baiocco that Capax Discovery had no involvement in the negotiations, which continued after the VAR deal much as before, to conclude and close a deal with the FSA, so that Capax Discovery was entirely dependent on Autonomy for information about the progress of the negotiations;

(3) When on 30 April 2010 the first instalment (of $450,000) became due and payable by Capax Discovery under VT10, Capax did not pay, and yet Autonomy did nothing to enforce the debt pending a deal with the FSA;

(4) Although it had done nothing to assist the ultimate deal with the end-user, Capax Discovery was paid a MAF as if they had made a substantial contribution;

(5) After the direct deal had closed, Autonomy agreed with Mr Baiocco, in wording confirmed by Mr Kanter in a letter, that it would apply the payments it received (this time directly) from the FSA against Capax Discovery's account with Autonomy which, the Claimants submitted:

> *"in effect, involved waiving Autonomy's right to be paid $4.5 million by Capax Discovery, if that amount was paid to Autonomy by the FSA pursuant to a separate contract to which Capax Discovery was a stranger."*

183. The Claimants submitted that all this fitted the 'pattern' and was consistent with and confirmatory of the Claimants' overall case that Mr Egan had assured Mr Baiocco that Capax Discovery would not be required to pay for VAR deals like the FSA deal from its own resources. The Claimants submitted further that:

> *"Indeed, absent the handshake agreement, Mr Kanter's confirmation makes no sense: there is no other reason why Autonomy should be giving credit to Capax Discovery for a sale to the FSA which Capax Discovery had done nothing to bring about."*

Four particular matters relating to VT10 emphasised by the Claimants

184. Even though not with direct reference to VT10, I have addressed these matters in the context of my general analysis, and further in relation to VT3 and VT4. My comments there should be read in here *mutatis mutandis*. However, there were four matters particular to VT10 on which the Claimants placed considerable emphasis:

(1) One was the oddness and lateness of the sudden change to engaging Capax Discovery as a VAR, having originally contemplated engaging Centennial.

(2) The second was the Claimants' complaint that Deloitte was simply not informed of the direct FSA deal at all during their Q3 2010 review; and in cross-examination, Mr Bloomer told me that he did not recollect it being mentioned to the Audit Committee either.

(3) The third arose out of the provisions for deferment of payment under the direct deal, which meant that Capax Discovery remained legally *"on the hook"*. The Claimants highlighted two aspects of this: the first was that Autonomy never pressured Capax Discovery to pay out of its own resources until after the direct deal was closed in August 2010; and the second was that, when the position of Capax Discovery's outstanding indebtedness became a source of pressure and embarrassment for Capax Discovery, Autonomy allegedly contrived a transaction, the *"NearPoint"* transaction, as a means of passing funds to Capax Discovery to enable it to discharge part of that indebtedness. Capax Discovery was not pressed to pay for so long as the instalment payments due from FSA were deferred.

(4) The fourth matter related to the payment of a MAF, and more particularly, the rationale advanced for its payment, which (as previously noted) suggested some concern as to its true justification.

185. As regards the first of these particular matters, the hurried resort to Capax Discovery was certainly even more rushed than usual (such that Capax Discovery's time zone was of itself a necessary resort); and the Claimants' point that Capax Discovery was based in San Francisco and had had no contact with the FSA in the UK, so there was nothing to suggest that it had any ability to negotiate, or even materially assist in the negotiation of a transaction, seemed to me to be fairly made, even if of limited significance in the round (in light of my previous conclusions). The further suggestion floated by the Claimants, however, was that Capax Discovery had shown itself ready in the Kraft and Eli Lilly transactions to act *"obligingly"* (as the Claimants perceived and described it) in a *"placeholder role"* without any real interest in the end-user sale save if it brought a useful contact and a MAF.

186. Dr Lynch's response in cross-examination to these suggestions seems to me fairly to encapsulate his own outlook (even though he stressed he had very little involvement in either the VAR transaction or the direct deal):

> *"Q. I would suggest, just going back to this transaction with the FSA, that in proposing Capax you had very much in mind the placeholder role which I've suggested Capax performed on the Kraft and Eli Lily transactions.*
>
> *A. Well, first of all -- and it's getting repetitive, but I wasn't proposing anything. I'm just keeping a track of what's going on. Secondly, FSA, I now know, was a deal that required a very large amount of services. And, thirdly, we wanted one of our good partners to do those services. And then the outcome was that Capax actually did do services at FSA. So, to me,*

> *this is all a perfectly fine commercial decision which looks like a good one, getting a services partner in there. Secondly, I understand that the VARs all consider that they were on risk."*

187. Especially since it was not until much later that Capax Discovery did secure a service agreement with the FSA, there was obviously the use of hindsight in that response. But to my mind the greater objection is that it obscures the fact that Autonomy inserted a reseller minutes before midnight because it wished urgently to plug a shortfall in recognised revenue and trusted and paid Capax Discovery to take the legal risk but do no more. When Mr Baiocco agreed to Capax Discovery's use in this way, he would have known nothing about the potential for it to provide future services; and the emails he sent shout the message that he was in it first and foremost, for *"champagne-smacking"* commission. That may not of itself be improper; but the effort to disguise it tells against the Defendants' comfort with its propriety, and the fact of it fits the pattern relied on by the Claimants.

188. The second point of particular note is the FSA direct deal was not disclosed to Deloitte during Deloitte's Q3 2010 review, nor until long afterwards. The Claimants highlighted that (a) the direct deal was of a value many multiples of the $100,000 threshold for deals that were to be disclosed to Deloitte and (b) as Autonomy's finance department acknowledged and thus knew, Deloitte were expressing concern as to whether the reversal and replacement of VAR deals in two previous quarters (involving end-users Kraft (VT3), Morgan Stanley (VT8) and ManuLife (VT7)) called into question whether Autonomy had in fact retained managerial control and thus whether it had been appropriate to recognise revenue at the point of the original VAR transactions.

189. This was of some significance; for, as Mr Hussain knew, Deloitte was, at just this time, expressing concerns about the fact that some earlier VAR sales[16] had been replaced by direct end-user deals; and the importance attached by Deloitte to the issue was reflected in a note in that review:

> *"that no value added reseller deals have been reversed this quarter and resigned directly with the end-user and this supports management's policy of revenue recognition at the point of sale to the value added reseller".*

190. However, the Defendants pointed out (as to (a) in paragraph 188 above) that the disclosure required was of revenue-earning deals: and since Autonomy had already recognised the revenue from the VAR deal, it would have been wrong to include revenue from the direct deal in the list. That was especially so because (as Dr Lynch, with notable attention to detail) pointed out under cross-examination, there were acceptance criteria in the FSA direct deal which would not have permitted revenue recognition at that point.

191. Dr Lynch also made the point (especially with reference to (b) in paragraph 188 above) that Deloitte's concern related to reversals of previously booked revenue with resellers:

[16] Deloitte expressly noted in their H1 2010 report that they had raised the concern, reminding that it would not be appropriate to recognise revenue if Autonomy was required to maintain ongoing managerial duties in respect of the product sold to the reseller or if the reseller could not show it could pay, and Autonomy's management had acknowledged it.

and (until much later) there was no reversal of revenue, because Capax Discovery remained on the hook for the debt, as Mr Baiocco acknowledged[17]. There was a reversal only in September 2011, after the FSA had paid. The Defendants submitted that Deloitte were only interested to know about actual reversals of previously booked revenue and that in this case, there was no reversal of revenue as such until much later, in September 2011 when (it was common ground) the last instalment due was paid by the FSA and Capax Discovery's obligations were formally cancelled. Then, according to Mr Welham, when Deloitte subsequently learned, in Q1 2011, of a deal between Autonomy and the FSA, they did not associate it with the Capax Discovery/FSA VAR transaction.

192. Dr Lynch submitted that, for the same reason, the passage in the Q3 2010 report to the Audit Committee was accurate, and not misleading.

193. In my judgment, Dr Lynch's explanation did not grapple with the basic point underlying Deloitte's concern, which was whether there was developing a pattern of direct deals suggesting an intention that Autonomy should retain managerial control, and the signs that it in fact did so. Further, the suggestion that the note in the Q3 2010 report was accurate is a blinkered and self-serving one. It seems to me obvious that Deloitte would have wanted to know about a direct deal contemporaneous with their warning, especially such a large and important deal.

194. In relation to the third and double-faceted point summarised in paragraph 184(3) above, there is no doubt that Autonomy did not chase Capax Discovery to pay the instalment of $450,000 due under VT10 in April 2010, and made clear efforts to cover its indebtedness. Then, on 27 September 2010, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Egan, Mr Scott and Mr Kanter, subject "*capax*", noting that Capax Discovery currently owed $18 million and, having received the Eli Lilly cash, should pay $5.5 million: "*That leaves $12.5m of which $5m is for FSA which is being sorted out as we went direct*". In a further email in the same chain, Mr Hussain said, "*Steve will sort out FSA*". The entirety of the chain was then copied to Dr Lynch.

195. The Claimants submitted that Dr Lynch must, therefore, have known that Autonomy had contracted directly with the FSA, and that Capax Discovery was not going to be made to pay from its own resources, and would instead be "*sorted out as we went direct*". Then on 30 September 2010, Mr Chamberlain sent Mr Hussain an email, subject "*FSA*", stating:

> *"Don't think we need to resolve this today but will keep going on this if you want me to. My recommendation would be that we enter into a one pager with Capax saying that they remain liable for this but that we will provide a credit as we receive amounts from FSA. To the extent we have a shortfall they have to make that good since they entered into an irrevocable PO."*

---

[17] Dr Lynch stated:

> *"I think you're conflating two situations…The situation with Capax at this point is that Capax has not been lef off the hook, it's just that the payments from FSA are being allocated against their requirement, so no credit note is issued to Capax at this point. So it's a different situation to the one…where…the deals that have been sold to the VAR being undone and a credit note issued."*

I consider this was a recitation of the legal position, but in reality all concerned knew that the direct deal released Capax Discovery.

196. The Claimants relied also on a transaction referred to as the *"NearPoint ramp-up fee"* as further illustrating (especially by reference to its context and timing) how arrangements were always made to ensure that any legal obligations undertaken by the VAR should be covered by Autonomy in one way or another.

197. As regards the context, as the end of Q2 2011 approached, Capax Discovery's debt in respect of the FSA purchase order totalling $1.5 million was overdue. Mr Baiocco's evidence in his witness statement was that by then he had *"rising concern about the paper debt relating to [the FSA transaction], which was causing me issues with my fellow partners at Capax, all of whom wanted to know what was going on"*. He had expressed this concern in an email to Mr Kanter dated 7 March 2011. He sent a number of chasing emails, all expressing rising concern and in effect calling upon Autonomy to do something to release Capax Discovery. After months of prevarication in response, by the end of Q2 2011 it was clear to Autonomy that something had to be done.

198. The *"NearPoint ramp-up fee"* was what Mr Hussain finally proposed (by email of 13 June 2011) as an answer. This was a fee Mr Hussain suggested might be paid to Capax Discovery, ostensibly at least to assist it to develop (*"ramp up"*) infrastructure to support legacy customers using the *"Nearpoint"* archiving product which Autonomy acquired as part of its acquisition of Iron Mountain software assets. Mr Hussain explained his proposal to Mr Baiocco in carefully orchestrated terms:

> *"Further to our meetings last week I would be grateful for a proposal from you to help us with our integration of the recently completed Iron Mountain Digital acquisition. As we discussed there are several areas which we believe you could immediately assist us:*
>
> - *The NearPoint asset is a direct competitor to EAS and we would want Capax to take over servicing the support and maintenance base*
> - *The Stratify asset and the DRCCM asset is a direct competitor to Introspect and Digital Safe. We would like to upgrade the data centres with additional products to enhance the offering.*
>
> *Can you come back to me with a quick high level proposal and we can then discuss further. Please feel free to call me. As i said at the meetings we are looking at a relatively small budget initially of between $5m and $6m and we are looking to engage quickly."*

199. When Mr Baiocco responded affirmatively, Mr Hussain wrote again on 24 June 2011 (copying Mr Kanter):

> *"John- further to our numerous discussions on Capax starting to engage on Nearpoint maintenance i'd like to propose the following: capax starts to build up the team and infrastructure and for that we pay you a fee of $2m to $2.5m. As we get all the information on Nearpoint customers consolidated from Iron Mountain we will provide the information to you and gradually get you to takeover the provision of maintenance. This should then follow the EAS*

structure whereby you take over the smaller contracts initially, leaving the very large strategic customers with us and then gradually we shift those customers to you.

If this is ok with you then Andy can start the paperwork process."

200. Unsurprisingly, Mr Baiocco, who had not in fact asked for $2-2.5 million, responded within hours, "*This sounds perfect*". This was not surprising in that it appears that Mr Hussain was volunteering the payment of an upfront fee of $2-2.5 million to Capax Discovery for taking on new business that would be profitable to Capax Discovery in any event. Mr Baiocco told me in cross-examination that:

> *"I would have done it for free with no ramp-up charge. It was good business for us, I would have done it for free."*

201. The Claimants claimed that in truth the fee was simply part of a circular funding process to enable Capax Discovery to appear to pay off its outstanding indebtedness to Autonomy in respect of instalment payments due under VT10, both for audit presentation purposes and to honour the side agreement/understandings they alleged. It is enough for present purposes to note that it is not disputed that:

   (1) Autonomy paid Capax the entirety of the $2,000,000 ramp-up fee, even before expiry of a 60-day grace period, and

   (2) The same day Capax made a payment of $1,500,000 in respect of VT10 as requested by Mr Hussain.

   (3) Mr Baiocco's concerns about outstandings under the FSA deal were not repeated, until a final instalment became due.

202. My impression that Mr Baiocco is something of a braggart, suggests to me that he may have exaggerated in saying he would have gone ahead with Mr Hussain's original proposal even without any ramp-up fee[18], even if he would in fact have been prepared to accept less, very possibly much less and thought he had done a good deal for his company. I also accept Dr Lynch's evidence under cross-examination that the immediate payment by Capax Discovery upon receipt was of advantage to both because of its positive effect on the "days sales outstanding" ("DSO") calculation in the books of account of each. Thirdly, I have taken into account that Deloitte reviewed the transaction, and noted that Autonomy had purchased support services from Capax Discovery, and the ramp-up fee was considered in substance to be prepaid support. Deloitte considered there to be nothing to indicate that this was not a commercial arm's length transaction.[19] Nevertheless, it seems to me more likely than not that the NearPoint ramp up fee was at least in substantial part a means of funding Capax Discovery. Both its amount and timing seem to me to point strongly to that conclusion: and it fits a pattern. Furthermore, that Mr Baiocco saw a link between the NearPoint fee paid by Autonomy and Capax Discovery's payment of the debt under the FSA purchase order is apparent from his version of the Capax Discovery Aging Report, to which he referred during his examination-in-chief and to which he was taken again in re-examination,

[18] Especially given that his original view, expressed in 2013, was that some level of ramp-up fee was warranted.
[19] [Deleted].

which included the $2 million NearPoint fee within the "*FSA*" worksheet (red arrows added for ease of reference):

Customer Name	Invoice #	Invoice Date	Due Date	Invoice Total	Received From AU	Paid to AU	Capax Commission	Commission Received	Notes
FSA	6815-ANA	03/31/09	04/30/10	$ 450,000.00					
			03/30/11	$ 1,050,000.00					
			03/30/12	$ 1,500,000.00					
			03/30/13	$ 1,500,000.00					
							$ 450,000.00	07/10/2010	
FSA 2				$ 4,500,000.00					
		30/06/2011				$ 1,050,000.00			
		30/06/2011				$ 450,000.00			
		30/06/2011			$ 2,000,000.00				NearPoint rampup

203. The fourth and last matter of special relevance relates to the payment of a MAF. In that regard:

    (1) On 6 October 2010, Mr Kanter emailed Mr Hussain and Mr Egan, subject "*Capax*", to say:

> *"Having been impressed with Capax's contribution to the FSA transaction, I am comfortable that they have earned a marketing assistance fee in line with our standard terms. I have prepared the attached to document properly the transaction. Please can I have your views."*

(2) Mr Egan responded "*Agreed*" and Mr Hussain responded "*ok*" .

(3) There was no challenge to Mr Baiocco's evidence that Capax Discovery "*did not make any attempt to license Autonomy software to the FSA or participate in setting the terms of the license that I understand Autonomy sold to the FSA*".

(4) The Claimants' written opening specifically noted that this email would be explored with Mr Kanter in cross-examination. In particular, the Claimants would have challenged Mr Kanter to identify precisely what "*contribution*" to the FSA transaction on the part of Capax Discovery had so "*impressed*" him. The Claimants contended that the only truthful answer Mr Kanter could have given is that Capax Discovery made no contribution to the FSA transaction, and that Mr Kanter's email was, therefore, pretextual.

(5) Dr Lynch in cross-examination sought to justify Mr Kanter's email on the basis that Capax Discovery "*were doing a lot of the work to actually show the technology and use it for FSA*". However, it was not put to Mr Baiocco in cross-examination that Capax Discovery had started doing any work for the FSA by 6 October 2010, and there is no evidence to that effect.

(6) The same day, 6 October 2010, Mr Kanter sent a letter to Mr Baiocco, which was in essentially the same terms as the MAF letter for the Eli Lilly transaction. The letter again described Capax Discovery as Autonomy's "*Referral Partner*" and purported to record that Capax Discovery was to introduce Autonomy into deals with the FSA, obtain quotes from Autonomy on behalf of the FSA and assist in executing purchase orders and contracts.

(7) It was the unchallenged evidence of Mr Baiocco that Capax Discovery "*did none of these things; and I never discussed any of this with Autonomy*".

(8) After the necessary internal approvals, on 7 October 2010, Autonomy paid the $450,000 fee to Capax Discovery.

204. As in the Eli Lilly transaction, it is not the payment of a MAF which is objectionable; it is the confected basis for paying it which invites the conclusion that Mr Kanter, Mr Egan and also Mr Hussain were aware that Capax Discovery had done little or nothing to merit such a payment. I am not persuaded by the argument that Mr Kanter's letter of 6 October 2010 was simply an inapt deployment of a standard form: I consider its wording was chosen to present a justification to Deloitte because the truth that Capax Discovery had in substance done nothing would have invited a potentially difficult line of enquiry.

Summary as to propriety of recognition of revenue in respect of VT10

205. In my judgment, for all these reasons, some common to VT2 and VT3, others particular to VT10 itself, the recognition of revenue from the sale to the VAR in the context of VT10 was not proper.

Defendants' alleged knowledge of false accounting in respect of VT10

206. As to the necessary second limb of their case, that the Defendants both knew that the accounting treatment of VT10 was false, the Claimants relied on the following.

Mr Hussain

207. As regards Mr Hussain, and in addition to his alleged role in encouraging and giving guidance to Mr Egan in the use of VAR transactions to accelerate revenue when required to meet revenue targets or forecasts (which I have discussed above):

(1) Dr Lynch thought it was either Mr Egan or Mr Hussain who had identified Capax Discovery as the appropriate VAR to use in the emergency that developed.

(2) Mr Hussain knew at the time of the direct deal that Deloitte were concerned about the fact that some earlier VAR transactions had been replaced by direct deals: he was sent (and sent on to Dr Lynch) Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee for Q3 2010 noting that *"no value added reseller deals have been reversed this quarter and re-signed directly with the end-user"*.

(3) It was also Mr Hussain who, with Mr Chamberlain, devised and put in place the process for Capax Discovery to remain legally liable unless and until the FSA paid Autonomy, whereupon the receipts from the FSA would be taken as a credit against Capax Discovery's indebtedness.

(4) Mr Hussain concurred in Mr Kanter's recommendation of payment of a MAF to Capax Discovery for its *"contribution to the FSA transaction"* though he must have known that Capax Discovery had made none in terms of assisting the end-user transaction.

(5) It was Mr Hussain who made the initial proposal for the NearPoint ramp-up fee, and it was Mr Hussain also who coordinated the payment of the fee to Capax Discovery and Capax Discovery's same day payment of the two VT10 outstanding instalments to Autonomy.

Dr Lynch

208. As regards Dr Lynch:

(1) It was he who, two days before the quarter end, sent Mr Hussain a document listing transactions that needed to be concluded in order for Autonomy to achieve its total revenue target for Q1 2020. The list identified [$]4 [million] as coming from *"FSA Partner"*, which Dr Lynch accepted referred to the use of a VAR.

(2) Dr Lynch denied thereby instructing Mr Hussain to do so, but he accepted that he was at least content that Mr Hussain should, introduce a VAR whereby to enable Autonomy to recognise revenue on the sale to that VAR: he told me that he did not *"have any issues about partners being involved in deals"*.

(3) On 30 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent the list referred to in sub-paragraph (1) above, apparently envisaging that MicroTech would be the VAR of choice.

(4) Mr Hussain kept Dr Lynch closely informed by email of the transactions needed to reach the target, sending a sequence of updated versions of a *"revenue route-map"* document.

(5) It was Dr Lynch who appears from one of such exchanges to have suggested the use of *"cx"* which he accepted was a reference to Capax Discovery, referring in the subject line of one email to *"midnight Italy"*, signifying close involvement going well beyond the overall strategic role which Dr Lynch sought to depict, and at least an awareness in the context of the importance of different time zones.

(6) Mr Chamberlain and Mr Hussain kept Dr Lynch closely involved as to what deals were ultimately included on the revenue recognition tally.

(7) Dr Lynch confirmed that an agreement with the UK financial regulator was an important win for Autonomy and that he would probably have been told about it. However, he did not think he would have known anything about how the deal was negotiated.

(8) Although he told me that he was not normally sent Deloitte's reports to the Audit Committee that does not appear to have been wholly accurate. In any event, even if he was not on Deloitte's circulation list for these purposes there is documentary evidence of covering emails from Mr Hussain sending him such material fairly routinely; certainly, it appears that Mr Hussain sent him the report for Q3 2010 which included the note on page 6 that no VAR deals had been reversed in the quarter. I think it likely that the issue was topical: I think it likely that, having been sent it, Dr Lynch would have read it.

(9) Dr Lynch told me that he was not involved in and knew very little about the direct deal, and that included the payment of a MAF: although, in the latter context, he suggested reasons why the payment of a MAF could be justified. He emphasised the point that he was not on any of the emails relating to the agreement to pay a MAF for Capax Discovery's *"contribution"* nor was it suggested that he was responsible for approving it.

(10) Dr Lynch does not appear to have been sent any of the various emails relating to Mr Baiocco's concerns about his aging debt (see above) but he did approve the agreement for the NearPoint ramp-up fee and the early payment of that fee.

Summary as to whether the Defendants had "guilty knowledge"

209. I have concluded that both the Defendants knew that, in accordance with the 'pattern', Capax Discovery's role in the FSA VAR deal was nominal and that Capax Discovery

was not intended to pay or do anything. I think it more likely than not, and I find, that they each knew that the VAR sale should not have triggered revenue recognition.

Conclusions on Capax Discovery transactions VT2, VT3, VT4 and VT10

210. The examples I have addressed at some length earlier seem to me to provide a representative sample, in the sense of illustrating features relied on by the Claimants as demonstrative of the 'pattern' on which they relied and the Defendants' answer.

MicroTech impugned VAR deals: VT5, VT6, VT7, VT8, VT13, VT25, VT32, VT33 and VT37

211. I turn next to identify particular features of the nine VAR deals between Autonomy and MicroTech which were impugned by the Claimants.

MicroTech itself and the MicroTech VAR agreement

212. MicroTech was described by the Claimants as *"a friendly VAR of choice"*. As will be recalled, it was one of the *"Truitt companies"*. Mr Steve Truitt was its COO, Mr Jimenez its owner (who had decision making power). I have described MicroTech itself and Mr Steve Truitt's perception of the various transactions in my overview of his evidence in paragraphs 2036 to 2048 in the main body of the judgment.

213. Autonomy's VAR transactions with MicroTech during the Relevant Period accounted for over $43 million of Autonomy's reported revenue. Each was for a sum exceeding $1,000,000.[20]

214. All the purchase orders for the impugned MicroTech VAR transactions were governed by the June 2006 MicroTech VAR agreement, entitled *"Autonomy Government Reseller Agreement"* ("the June 2006 MicroTech VAR agreement").

215. Like the agreement between Autonomy and Capax Discovery, the June 2006 MicroTech agreement, which was governed by the law of the State of California, made it clear that MicroTech was legally on risk and that the written contractual terms constituted the entire agreement between the parties and could not be modified except in writing signed by an authorised representative of each party.

216. More particularly:

(1) MicroTech was obliged to pay Autonomy unconditionally, irrespective of whether it closed a deal with an end-user. Clause 5.5 provided:

[20] 1. VT5 MicroTech/DiscoverTech is licence fee of $9,532,810 plus $476,190 support and maintenance.
2. VT8 MicroTech/Morgan Stanley is $4,656,000 licence fee plus $232,800 support maintenance.
3. VT6 MicroTech /Honeywell is licence fee of $1.8m and $90k support and maintenance.
4. VT7 MicroTech / ManuLife is licence fee of $1.08m and $104k support and maintenance.
5. VT13 MicroTech /Vatican Library is $11m licence and $550,000 support and maintenance.
6. VT25 MicroTech /US DoI is licence fee of $4m and support and maintenance of $200k.
7. VT32 MicroTech /Bank of Montreal is licence fee of $2,880,000 with maintenance and support of $144,000.
8. VT33 MicroTech / Xerox is license fee of $1,170,000 and maintenance and support of $58,500.
9. VT37 MicroTech /HP is licence fee of $7m with support and maintenance of $350,000.

> *"Government Reseller shall not be relieved of its obligations to pay fees owed to Autonomy hereunder by the nonpayment of such fees by an End-User."*

(2) No amendment to, change, waiver or discharge of any provision of the agreement was valid unless in writing and signed by an authorised representative of each party (clause 14.4). The agreement also superseded any pre-printed terms and conditions that could appear on any purchase order (clause 5.1).

(3) Once Autonomy's products on a purchase order had been shipped, MicroTech could not cancel or amend the purchase order without prior written consent from Autonomy (clause 5.1).

(4) There was a comprehensive entire agreement clause which confirmed there were no other representations, understandings or agreements. Clause 14.10 provided:

> *"This Agreement and the Exhibits to this Agreement represent the entire agreement between the parties with respect to its subject matter, and there are no other representations, understandings or agreements between the parties relative to such subject matter."*

217. In each of the impugned MicroTech VAR transactions MicroTech provided debtor confirmations directly to Deloitte, stating amongst other things that there were no side agreements or understandings with regard to the purchase orders and/or invoices referable to the transactions impugned. Mr Steve Truitt regarded them as accurate at the time, though it will be recalled that he came to be persuaded by the US prosecutors that the assurances he understood he had been given that somehow MicroTech would have the means to pay its debts effectively amounted to a side agreement.

218. The Defendants' case was that MicroTech was on risk in respect of each of the reseller transactions; and MicroTech acquired on transfer of the relevant software management control of it such as to comply with the accounting rules.

219. They relied on the contractual documentation which specifically stipulated the passing of risk and management control, and furthermore precluded any side-agreements which might affect those legal criteria. They added that there were no relevant discussions between Mr Egan and Mr Steve Truitt and that Mr Steve Truitt was clear about that in the evidence that he gave the US criminal court. Mr Steve Truitt also stated that he had never spoken to or met Mr Hussain, marked by Claimants as intended to be relied on.

220. The Defendants' case in summary was that given the documentation, there was nothing that could have been said which would have altered the fact that MicroTech was on risk, but nothing material was said in any event.

221. As in the context of the Capax Discovery sales, I turn to deal with examples of the impugned MicroTech VAR sales, starting with VT6, VT7 and VT8. (I address VT5 later, since it was an exception in that no side agreement was alleged).

VT6, VT7 and VT8: MicroTech/Honeywell, Morgan Stanley, ManuLife, all Q4 2009

222. Autonomy had tried to make sales to each of Honeywell, Morgan Stanley and ManuLife in Q4 2009, but was unable to close any of them prior to the end of the quarter. The failure to close the three deals left, in the Claimants' words, *"an unwanted gap in the revenue"* for Q4 2009.

223. The prospective deal with Morgan Stanley was substantially the largest of the three, and was described by Dr Lynch in an email of 26 December 2009 to Mr Hussain, Mr Egan, Mr Scott and Mr Mooney as being of *"criticality to the quarter"* .

224. Mr Hussain was personally involved in the proposed transaction, and according to an email dated 31 December 2009[21] from him to Mr Christian Lucas, Managing Director of Morgan Stanley Investment Banking who advised Autonomy from time to time, seeking urgent help on the last day of the quarter/year in trying to conclude it, it had *"suddenly been stopped by someone in [Morgan Stanley] legal"*. In the event, no part of the transaction, including the sale of hardware, was concluded by quarter end, leaving a considerable shortfall on revenue expectations.

225. The other two deals failed to close also:

(1) On 24 December 2009, an internal Autonomy email sent to Mr Avila (among others) recorded that no deal had closed with Honeywell Aerospace.

(2) On 28 December 2009, an internal Autonomy email stated, as regards a proposed sale to ManuLife, that "*Unfortunately – this does not look like it will make the Dec 31 timeframe we all hope for*".

226. Mr Egan's evidence in his witness statement, which was not challenged in this respect, was that on 30 and 31 December 2009 he asked Mr David Truitt if MicroTech would agree to purchase a number of "at risk" deals, including these three deals. Mr Egan stated further that the purpose of these deals:

> *"…was to get the revenue associated with the corresponding prospective end-user deals into the fourth quarter of 2009."*

227. Following Mr Egan's conversation with Mr David Truitt, MicroTech submitted purchase orders to Autonomy:

(1) A purchase order for end-user Honeywell, with a licence fee of $1.8 million and $90,000 support and maintenance (VT6);

(2) A purchase order for end-user ManuLife, with a Digital Safe licence fee of $1.08 million and $104,000 support and maintenance (VT7); and

[21] The legal difficulty was not explained. The email was relied on by the Defendants in support of an argument that hardware sales at a loss fertilised (as it were) software deals, and in the email Mr Hussain stressed that *"the fact that we show value for the software and are selling hardware at a loss in our proposal is a commercial decision for us."* This might suggest that this may have been the origin of the legal query: but this was not explored and I can take it no further.

(3) A purchase order for end-user Morgan Stanley, with a licence fee for identified software of $4,656,000 plus $232,800 support and maintenance (VT8).

228. Autonomy recognised the licence fees on all three purchase orders as revenue as at 31 December 2009.

229. As with the other MicroTech reseller transactions, these deals were governed by the terms of the June 2006 MicroTech VAR agreement (see paragraph 214 above) which provided expressly that MicroTech was obliged to pay Autonomy for its orders unconditionally, irrespective of any sale to an end-user, that there was no other understanding or arrangement between the parties, and that modifications must be in writing.

230. Mr Steve Truitt gave evidence in respect of these deals that MicroTech knew it was on risk but wanted to do the deal because of the prospect of establishing a new customer relationship and providing services. His evidence was that MicroTech entered into three other at risk transactions at around the same time. The Claimants have not sought to impugn those transactions.[22]

231. MicroTech signed debtor confirmations in respect of these deals, each of which both Mr Steve Truitt and Mr Egan later confirmed was true and accurate. Thus:

(1) Honeywell: MicroTech provided written confirmation to Deloitte on 13 January, 8 July and 15 October 2010 that the invoices listed in the confirmations were proper and due, and that there were no "*side letters or other agreements*".[23]

(2) ManuLife: MicroTech provided written confirmation to Deloitte on 13 January 2010 that the invoices listed in that confirmation were proper and due, that there were no "*side letters or other agreements*", and that Autonomy retained no continuing managerial involvement.[24]

(3) Morgan Stanley: MicroTech provided written confirmation to Deloitte on 13 January 2010 that the invoices listed in that confirmation were proper and due, that there were no "*side letters or other agreements*", and that Autonomy retained no continuing managerial involvement.[25]

232. However, no-one at MicroTech had any relationship with any of the three proposed end-users, nor any knowledge of the state of negotiations thus far. Mr Steve Truitt confirmed in his deposition evidence in the MicroTech proceedings in the US (which was admitted in these proceeding as hearsay evidence) that he did not speak to any of them before (as it were, blindly) submitting MicroTech's purchase orders.

233. It was thus not intended by anyone that MicroTech should, following the submission of the purchase orders, make any effort to negotiate, or conclude, an onward sale to any of

[22]The transactions were for end-users KPMG, Assurion and CenturyLink. Steve Truitt referred to them in his testimony in the US trial against Mr Hussain.
[23] The signature on the first of these is dated '1/13/2009' – presumably a typographical error.
[24] See the footnote above in relation to the signature.
[25] *Ibid.*

the three end-users; and MicroTech did not do so. At the US criminal trial, Mr Steve Truitt testified (and this testimony was likewise admitted as hearsay evidence) that:

> *"We didn't know anybody at these end-users, first of all. Secondly, the circumstances about why these opportunities were available was ostensibly that these were very late in the sales cycle with the Autonomy sales team. They were going to close imminently so there would be no need for our involvement to attempt to sell it. We would just, if all worked out well, service these accounts after they closed."*

234. In the event, MicroTech made no approach to any of the end-users to try to get follow-on business either, even though Mr Steve Truitt had given the prospect of doing so as a central part of the rationale for doing each VAR deal.

235. I cannot accept that the above is compatible with any genuine sale. I cannot accept either that it is consistent with any real expectation on Mr Steve Truitt's part that MicroTech could be left "on the hook" if the end-user deals did not eventuate. That would go a long way beyond commercial insouciance, especially given Mr Steve Truitt's acknowledgement (at the US criminal trial, in evidence also admitted in these proceedings as hearsay) that if MicroTech had really been left "on the hook" that *"would have been disastrous for MicroTech".* Nor can I accept that Autonomy ever relinquished managerial control or involvement: it was always to be the supplier of the software to the end-user if a contract eventuated, and MicroTech had no say or input at any stage or in any way.

236. That conclusion is fortified by what actually occurred:

(1) No deal was concluded with Honeywell by either MicroTech or Autonomy: MicroTech purported to pay Autonomy what it owed under the purchase order, but it is said by the Claimants that it was enabled to do so only by Autonomy's payment to MicroTech in respect of a transaction in Q4 2010 called "the ATIC transaction" which is discussed below.

(2) In March 2010, Autonomy entered into a larger, direct, deal with ManuLife. Shortly afterwards, Autonomy issued a credit note to MicroTech for $1,184,000. Later, in April 2010, Autonomy paid MicroTech a MAF of $118,400, followed by a further MAF of $101,908 in August 2010.

(3) In February 2010, Autonomy entered into a direct deal with Morgan Stanley for $5,288,800: however, this was for the sale of hardware, and not (nor anything like) the software (including DS Mail, Introspect and Autonomy Sharepoint Connector) which had been sold to MicroTech with a view to onward sale to Morgan Stanley. Nevertheless, in March 2010, a credit note was issued to MicroTech in the amount of $4,888,800. Autonomy thereafter (in April 2010) paid MicroTech a MAF of $488,880 (10% of the value of the original VAR deal).

237. In summary, therefore, in all three cases, Autonomy saw to it that one way or another MicroTech's ostensible liability was addressed, and MicroTech was rewarded by MAFs totalling $709,188.

238. In addition to the usual 'pattern' which these transactions further demonstrated, the Claimants relied on three specific matters in respect of them as showing that revenue ought not to have been recognised at the point of the VAR deals in respect of any of them:

    (1) The automatic acceptance that a later direct deal of whatever nature would be treated as negating the VAR deal invoice and releasing MicroTech from continuing liability: the Claimants referred me in particular to an email dated 4 February 2010 from Mr John Cronin (an ex-employee of Autonomy who, though an independent contractor, effectively acted first as MicroLink's and then MicroTech's sales manager) to Mr David Truitt which seems to suggest an automatic assumption that a direct deal would be treated as negating the VAR deal invoice:

    > *"The large trans, Morgan Stanley, is happening any moment. However, it will probably be going directly to Autonomy per customer request. A credit of some type will be issued to negate that invoice. MicroTech will still get the fee.*
    >
    > *Will have updates on the other trans shortly".*

    (2) The fact that the reversals of the ManuLife and Morgan Stanley VAR deals (VT7 and VT8) troubled Deloitte and prompted them to give a warning in their report to the Audit Committee for Q1 2010 that:

    > *"Management alerted us to the fact that two deals sold to Microtech in Q4 2009 have been credited in this quarter and resold directly to the two end-users. This was as a result of the end-users wanting to transact directly with Autonomy. This reduced the profit in the period by approximately $4 million. As there is no significant history of deals being reversed in this way, management has recognised the revenue at the point of sale to the reseller. Management has confirmed that these were isolated incidents which are not expected to be repeated in future periods.*
    >
    > *...*
    >
    > *...With regards to the reversal of revenue on two sales to the reseller Microtech in the quarter, we highlight to the Audit Committee that any further evidence of revenue reversals may jeopardise management's ability to recognise revenue at the point of sale to the reseller".*

    (3) The fact that MicroTech was first released from its obligations under the Morgan Stanley VAR purchase order and was then paid a MAF, even though the ultimate end-user transaction between Autonomy and Morgan Stanley for the supply of hardware had nothing really to do with the VAR deal for the purchase of software, and the 10% fee paid cannot have represented compensation to Micro Tech for lost margin (a sale of hardware never being in its contemplation).

239. The Defendants emphasised that Deloitte carefully reviewed the deals and approved the revenue recognition; and it is necessary to consider how or on what basis it is that they

came to a conclusion so different than seems to me to emerge from a consideration of the matters addressed above.

240. The starting point is to clarify Deloitte's basic approach. In summary, this was based on the only relevant sale being the sale to the VAR, and on the characteristics of that sale being determinative of the issue of compliance with IAS 18.14 for revenue recognition purposes. Deloitte then took from this that, provided that the VAR sale fulfilled the criteria in IAS 18.14, the VAR's arrangements with the specified or any other end-user were not of concern. In consequence, as Mr Welham put it in his witness statement, Deloitte

> "*did not therefore seek to interrogate either Autonomy or third parties as to the subsequent negotiations of the VAR's sale to the proposed end-users*".

241. This approach reflected, indeed implemented, Autonomy's insistence (which Deloitte well understood) that the position with the end-user was an irrelevance. When, for example, a senior associate at Deloitte queried with Mr Stephan the status of discussions with the end-user (called Sprint/Century Link) in the context of a VAR deal in January 2010 with MicroTech which has not been impugned, he received a dusty response. The associate had asked for supporting documentation in respect of the proposed end-user sale and *"...assuming this* [the sale to the VAR] *was put through Microtech late on, if we could see support of Autonomy's negotiation during the quarter direct with end-user that would be useful; or any discussion/agreement with Autonomy and end-user to go through a VAR."* Under cover of an email to the associate stating *"Steve sums it up pretty neatly I think"*, Mr Stephan forwarded in response a reply dated 12 January 2010 from Mr Chamberlain (to whom Mr Stephan had referred the query), which read as follows:

> *"I don't care if Microtech have closed their deal with Century Link. I have an order from Microtech not Century Link. I am providing maintenance to Microtech not Century Link.*
>
> *Microtech have an obligation to pay us irrespective of whether they get paid by Century Link or indeed close an order with Century Link. The issue is whether or not MT have capacity to pay. Nothing else."*

242. Mr Welham was asked in cross-examination whether he agreed also that the issue of credit notes, in effect releasing the VAR from liability under the purchase order where a direct deal had taken place, was a commercial decision which raised no issues of principle or caused any difficulty with the decision to recognise revenue from the VAR deal, so long as they remained exceptional items. Mr Welham (somewhat ruefully, it seemed to me) replied *"That was what was explained to us, yes",* though he did stress the caveat that it had to be exceptional and *"not something which happens regularly"*.

243. He was also asked to confirm that, in light of Mr Hogenson's concerns, Deloitte had re-reviewed the three transactions presently under consideration. That prompted a more guarded response:

"Q…Again, Deloitte re-reviewed these and were content with the accounting treatment, weren't they?

A. Yes. Albeit, as we've said before, we did then raise the point with regard to the fact that, if this was a pattern of events, then it would impact revenue recognition going forward.

Q. Well, that's the point that we've discussed a number of times today. That's the point about probabilities and whether, as you explained it earlier on, there might need to be some sort of reduction to reflect the probability?

A. Yes, or change the whole policy if it's happening across all VAR transactions, yes." [My emphasis]

244. That caveat (as underlined) was an important one; but even that was later glossed by Deloitte to accord with their client. Deloitte's later memorandum dated 13 January 2011 on proposed changes to the VAR agreement to provide (in effect) for the VAR to be entitled to be paid out of any direct deal an amount to hold it harmless against its obligations under its purchase order also noted, in relation to the four deals from 2009 that had gone direct (including the above three deals), that:

> *"When compared to the number of deals done through VARs (c60 per annum) historical occurrences that would trigger this clause (hereafter "Direct Sales") have been rare.*
>
> *Four deals from 2009 were noted that subsequently became Direct Sales, three of which eventually being signed with Autonomy in 2010. Whilst large in the context of the average deal size, they were not material (total value c60% of materiality).*
>
> *Since the Phillip Morris and Citigroup deals that were signed as Direct Sales in Q2 2010 there have been no further Direct Sales.*
>
> *Based on this, management's assessment that the probability of current VAR deals becoming Direct Sales in the future is remote is considered reasonable.*
>
> *Total license revenue recognised in the quarter on VAR PO's with the above clause present is $14.6m, over four deals. The largest of these deals accounted for $7m of the total figure.*
>
> *Given the total value of these deals and the low number of VAR deals that actually became Direct Sales (based on a historical average for 2009/2010 of <1 deal per quarter, we would not expect there to be any Direct Sales in Q4), the likelihood of material misstatement of revenue based on the above is deemed low."*

245. In all this, what, having in effect been warned off, Deloitte did not apparently know, and certainly what they did not factor in, was that the VAR sale was not intended or

expected to result in the VAR doing anything at all, or paying anything out of its own resources. Even Mr Chamberlain's terse and vigorous response quoted above seems to me to be premised on there being an expectation of some real activity and exposure on the part of the VAR to signify a real change in the position of the parties to the VAR sale with respect to the control of the product and who would bear the risk of an end-user sale not eventuating. That is so even if, on Mr Chamberlain's approach, the nature of that activity was considered not relevant for accounting purposes. Put another way, Mr Chamberlain's approach assumes that the VAR sale has real economic substance; the question it overlooks is whether that is so, or whether the substantive reality is that the "true sale" was the envisaged sale to the end-user, and Autonomy's "true customer" was that end-user, and the VAR sale was all form and no substance. The assumption of legal risk is not determinative if it is never in reality intended or expected to be visited on the purchaser; and the delivery of the product is of no real consequence if it is never intended to be or in fact used or dealt with by the purchaser before its cancellation once the "true sale" has been either accomplished or abandoned.

246. The Defendants sought to downplay the caveats rather tamely introduced by Mr Welham, predominantly on the footing that in comparison to the universe of VAR deals done by Autonomy (though neither their number nor any detail was ever provided) the number of cancelled VAR deals was very small. But that is not, in my judgment, the right comparator to assist in the detection of a pattern. A proper comparator was the universe of VAR deals over $1 million with a 'friendly' VAR which had either been replaced by 'direct' deals or cancelled. The ratio revealed a pattern. The fact that the impugned VAR deals were egregious, in the sense of being different from the standard, does not alter this.

247. In my judgment, therefore, the fact that Deloitte went along with their client does not absolve the latter: the accounting treatment was wrong. This is not a case against Deloitte, who settled the claim against them by HP. So I need not decide whether this was primarily because Deloitte were misled (as they were) or beholden to and leant on by their client (as also they were) or simply mistaken (as they were): the point is, as I have concluded, that their approval provides no escape from the conclusions I have expressed above, nor ultimately assistance to the Defendants.

Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT6, VT7 and VT8

248. Mr Hussain was plainly involved in all three VAR deals and the subsequent direct sales.

249. Dr Lynch did not mention any of the three transactions in either of his two witness statements. In cross-examination, he maintained his position that he had had very little dealing or involvement in these deals; but he accepted that he probably knew that they were entered into at around the quarter-end:

> *"Q. Do you accept that you knew either at the time they were entered into or at any rate early in 2010 that Autonomy had entered into these transactions with MicroTech?*
>
> *A. I doubt if I knew when they were being entered into, but I would probably have seen a sheet listing deals for the quarter at the end."*

250. Mr Hussain sent a spreadsheet to Dr Lynch on 1 March 2010 (i.e. a couple of months later) which recorded that the "*Honeywell*" and "*ManuLife*" (VT6 and VT7 respectively) transactions had been entered into with MicroTech. It seems to me surprising that he was not aware of the three MicroTech deals before then. Certainly in the case of VT8 (Morgan Stanley), Dr Lynch's email dated 26 December 2009 emphasising the deal's *"criticality to the quarter"*, shows that he was aware of and abreast with the Morgan Stanley deal from its earliest stage. Further, Mr Hussain forwarded to Dr Lynch his 31 December 2009 email seeking to enlist the help of Morgan Stanley's Mr Lucas; on 5 January 2010 he sent Dr Lynch a reconciliation spreadsheet showing (in the *"IDOL summary worksheet"* and next to an entry *"dell – morgan stanley"*) a figure of $4,656,000 of revenue; and on 12 April 2010, he sent Dr Lynch an email subject-headed *"audit update"* stating that *"MT is okay (subject to some evidence)"*.

251. It was suggested to Dr Lynch in cross-examination that he *"knew that MicroTech was serving the same role as we've seen Capax Discovery serve in the Kraft and Eli Lily transaction, namely to act as a placeholder by submitting a purchase order which Autonomy could use to recognise revenue improperly*". In closing submissions, Dr Lynch objected to this question, on the basis that it invited him to subscribe to the Claimants' own dictionary, *"placeholder"* being their description of the role played by the VAR in the impugned VAR transactions. At the time, Dr Lynch simply reiterated that he had had very little involvement, but emphasised that what he did understand was MicroTech considered that *"it was on risk in all of these deals"*. That was the case as far as the legal position went, and:

(1) Mr Steve Truitt's evidence was that he was genuinely purchasing the software and wanted to establish a relationship with the end-user and to *"service these accounts after they closed"* (in relation to the Kraft and Eli Lilly transactions Mr Baiocco's evidence was to the same effect).

(2) Neither Mr Egan nor Mr Steve Truitt (or Mr Baiocco in relation to the Kraft and Eli Lilly transactions) thought that there was anything improper, and Mr Egan thought that revenue was being properly recognised.

252. The Claimants did not cross-examine Dr Lynch on any specific documents. The Defendants dismissed the cross-examination of Dr Lynch as *"perfunctory"*. It was submitted for Dr Lynch that:

(1) There was no explanation or exploration in the cross-examination as to the basis on which Dr Lynch is supposed to have thought that these deals had been entered into in order to enable improper revenue recognition;

(2) The Claimants did not identify any information Dr Lynch had that was not also known to Deloitte whose job they said it was to check revenue recognition;

(3) The Claimants put to Dr Lynch that he *"knew it was improper to pay a fee to MicroTech for its involvement in the transactions"* but did not indicate or put to Dr Lynch any basis on which Dr Lynch was supposed to know that the payment of a MAF was improper.

253. As to these points:

(1) It is true that the Claimants did not put any specific documents to Dr Lynch to demonstrate knowledge of impropriety in the three transactions. They relied on Mr Hussain's knowledge of the facts, what the facts revealed as to the transaction's lack of real substance and what was kept from Deloitte.

(2) I have described what Deloitte were not told and did not know: they were warned off any enquiry as to the VAR's engagement with the end-user which might have revealed the facts that demonstrated that the VAR was to do nothing and pay nothing, which would have disqualified the transactions for revenue recognition purposes.

(3) I would accept that no specific additional reasons were put to Dr Lynch as to the impropriety of the payment of MAFs to compensate the VAR for going on risk in respect of an adventure ultimately not pursued: but that in my view comes back again to whether any real risk was assumed.

254. In summary: I have concluded that these three transactions demonstrate, and illustrate, the pattern which the Claimants identified and relied upon; they add little to the issue of knowledge; but for more general reasons explained above, I consider that both Defendants knew that the VAR sale lacked substance and was indeed a *"placeholder"* for the *"real sale"* to the *"true customer"*.

VT5: Autonomy/MicroTech sale of 'Control Point' licence in Q4 2009

255. VT5 was a transaction between Autonomy and MicroTech for the sale of a perpetual licence for the 'Control Point' module (which included some IDOL server software called "Retrieval Lite", though not full-blown IDOL capability). The licence fee was $9,523,810 and there was a first-year support fee of $476,190. The prospective end-user was DiscoverTech. The sale to MicroTech was on the terms of the June 2006 MicroTech VAR agreement, summarised in paragraph 216 above.

256. The Claimants' claims in respect of this transaction, which arose in connection with the acquisition by Autonomy of MicroLink, (see paragraphs 36 to 44 above) were different from those made in relation to other impugned VAR transactions. It was, on the Claimants' case, another example of revenue generation through a series of transactions in a circle: it was not in reality a VAR transaction, as explained below. In particular, the Claimants did not allege that there was any side agreement or understanding in the context of VT5 such as to (on their case) alter the true substance of the arrangements; and there was no direct sale. However, the transaction throws light on the relationship between the Truitts and Mr Hussain and Mr Egan, and their willingness to devise or structure transactions for the sole substantial purpose of showing revenue in Autonomy's accounts.

257. According to the Claimants, the essence of VT5 was that when Autonomy acquired MicroLink for $55,000,000 it designedly overpaid Mr David Truitt and Mr Tim Wharton (Mr David Truitt's minority partner in both MicroLink and DiscoverTech) by $10,000,000 (see paragraph 42 above) with a view to their new company, DiscoverTech, then having the funds to pay MicroTech for DiscoverPoint and Control Point software, enabling MicroTech then to pay Autonomy under VT5.

258. The Claimants relied on Mr David Truitt's evidence in his deposition in the MicroTech trial, which was verified by reference to documents evidencing each of the payments and was adduced as hearsay evidence in these proceedings, as follows:

> *"Q. And the way the transaction worked was that Autonomy paid $55 million in the aggregate for the purchase of MicroLink; is that right?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. Okay. 80 percent to you, 20 percent to Mr. Wharton; is that right?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. Okay. And some of that money was put in an escrow for a period of time; is that right?*
>
> *A. Yes. That's correct.*
>
> *Q. And then you and Mr. Wharton deposited funds into Discover Tech's bank account, which together amounted to $10 million; is that right?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *…*
>
> *The way the software side of the equation worked was that Autonomy licensed the software to MicroTech as the reseller and MicroTech resold that software to Discover Tech?*
>
> *A. Yes, sir.*
>
> *Q. Okay. And then Discover Tech paid MicroTech $10 million for the software and MicroTech paid $10 million to Autonomy all on substantially the same day?*
>
> *A. Yes, sir.*
>
> *Q. So you got paid on January 4th, 2010; is that right?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And you and Mr. Wharton put the money in Discover Tech on January 4th or 5th; is that right?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And then on January 4th or January 5th that money then was flowed by Discover Tech to MicroTech; is that right?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And on January 6th, MicroTech paid Autonomy the same $10 million?*
>
> *A. I believe that's correct, yes."*

259. In addition, the Claimants relied on the following as demonstrating the contrived and circular nature of the arrangements:

(1) An email dated 18 November 2009 from Mr David Truitt to Mr Hussain, in which Mr David Truitt suggested the transaction be structured so as to generate revenue:

> *"What I was thinking was that we would include the purchase of DiscoverPoint in with the Control Point OEM, so Autonomy would show revenue on both products in the 10 million dollar order. So total at closing for the MicroLink purchase would be 55 million with an immediate purchase of DP and Control Point OEM for 10 million from the New Company. I would take about 6 people from the development staff and one or two commercial sales reps (probably would not be needed by Autonomy anyway) and I would eventually transition out to run the new company when everything is running smoothly with MicroLink/Autonomy group. Autonomy would retain their rights to all of our other SW IP, including our AIS (Autonomy Integration Suite) and fetch framework. We can go through specifically what I would want to take with DP IP but that is the general concept…."* [My emphasis]

(2) The fact that the price of $10,000,000 originally proposed by Mr David Truitt for two pieces of software (DiscoverPoint and Control Point) remained the same even though, at Mr Hussain's suggestion according to Mr David Truitt[26], DiscoverPoint was spun out to DiscoverTech before the acquisition and Autonomy ended up selling only Control Point to DiscoverTech (through MicroTech) but for the same $10,000,000 price, suggesting arbitrary pricing and/or contrived attribution of value;

(3) The fact that (as Mr David Truitt confirmed in his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings) DiscoverTech never managed to sell Control Point to anyone, suggesting that it was worth little and certainly less than the price attributed to it;

(4) The fact that DiscoverTech paid MicroTech on 5 January 2010 and MicroTech paid Autonomy on 6 January 2010, even though MicroTech had 30 days (i.e. until 29 January 2010) to pay, a suggested indication of a circular and contrived transaction;

(5) The fact that Mr Scott and Mr Kanter knew (and stated in an email) that the money would need to *"go through 3 wires"*, signifying transfers from Mr David Truitt (as part of the proceeds of the sale to MicroLink) to DiscoverTech, then to MicroTech and finally to Autonomy is again suggestive of contrivance and circularity;

[26] In his deposition evidence in the MicroTech proceedings in the US Mr David Truitt said: *"I thought it was going to work a bit differently where they were going to sell me the software, our software, that MicroLink had built. But in further conversations, it – you know, [Mr Hussain] preferred me to do the larger Control Point deal and allow me to take the software for free."*

(6) The fact that the original proposal from Autonomy was that 10% of the purchase price for the MicroLink acquisition should be placed in escrow, yet the escrow amount was only $4,500,000, suggesting a real purchase price of $45,000,000, and the contrivance of additional circular payments of $10,000,000 to give the appearance of revenue generation. This was confirmed by Mr David Truitt in his deposition evidence in the MicroTech civil proceedings:

> *"Q. ...And so it is correct that the escrow amount was $4.4 million, which was 10 percent of the $55 million that you got paid minus the $10 million that you paid back to Autonomy?*
>
> *A. Yes, that's true."*

260. The Defendants' answers were that:

(1) Mr David Truitt originally wanted $60,000,000 for MicroLink; Autonomy originally offered $45,000,000; after negotiation the agreed price was $55,000,000 but DiscoverPoint was spun out before the acquisition (to the newly-formed DiscoverTech).

(2) The MicroLink transaction for $55,000,000 was at a fair value, and reflected the value placed by Autonomy more on the services side than the product side of MicroLink's business: there is no basis (nor was there any evidence) for regarding the value of either the MicroLink shareholding or the Control Point software as inflated.

(3) There was no evidence that the amount of Control Point software ultimately licenced was not fairly valued at $10,000,000; further, the Claimants' submissions overlooked the fact that (a) as part of the arrangements MicroTech received from MicroLink the DiscoverPoint IP (b) the Control Point deal included "lite" IDOL technology (though not the full IDOL suite), permitted MicroTech to use that technology in its own products, and thereby enabled Mr David Truitt to start a new company with new technology.

(4) Mr David Truitt was adamant that, contrary to the Claimants' contentions, the $55,000,000 price for the acquisition was not related to the price of the software, and that the $10,000,000 order and purchase had no relationship with the $55,000,000 acquisition amount, other than that the acquisition gave Mr David Truitt (and through him, his new company DiscoverTech) the resources and commercial reasons to make the purchase.

(5) Mr David Truitt's reference in his email dated 18 November 2009 to including the purchase of DiscoverPoint in with the Control Point OEM *"so Autonomy could show revenue on both products in the 10 million dollar order"* could not in such circumstances bear the weight sought to be placed on it by the Claimants: the suggestion was in any event odd and misplaced since (as Dr Lynch pointed out in cross-examination) it was MicroLink, not Autonomy, which owned and could sell DiscoverPoint.

(6) The escrow arrangements did not suggest a true purchase price of $45,000,000: the $4,500,000 escrow amount was what Autonomy had offered as part of its original proposal to pay $45,000,000 and the simple explanation was that it was not changed when the price agreed eventually was higher.

(7) The Claimants' theory that the purchase price for the MicroLink shares was inflated by $10,000,000 so as to fund the $10,000,000 purchase of software was commercially unrealistic, not least because it failed to take into account tax payable on the acquisition consideration.

(8) DiscoverTech's success or otherwise with its business is immaterial given that it genuinely wanted the software at the time that it bought it, as Mr David Truitt confirmed. He explained that the reason why the product integrated with Control Point faced obstacles in penetrating the market was because of Microsoft's integration of FAST search which took over SharePoint search following Microsoft's acquisition of FAST:

> *"A. We immediately integrated that software into our platform. We demonstrated that software many times. In March of 2010, Microsoft integrated their billion dollar acquisition of FAST Search that took over for SharePoint Search. So when we would go and intro our DiscoverPoint product with Autonomy Control Point and IDOL on the back, we would get, Why would I put another search engine in here if FAST was their biggest competitor? It had lots of the same capabilities. Nobody wanted to introduce complexity into their Microsoft SharePoint environment. So over time, we phased out our investment of Autonomy software and went and integrated FAST into our product and continued on with a different search engine. So the answer to the question is, no. We weren't successful, but we tried really hard."*

(9) The overall deal was approved by Autonomy's Board of Directors and by Deloitte. Deloitte noted as regards the $10,000,000 Control Point acquisition:

> *"We understand the commercial rationale for the acquisition. We have reviewed the purchase agreement and have not noted any unusual terms…"*

261. The Claimants accepted none of this. They contended that both the Board and Deloitte were misled; and that, in particular, (a) they were not told of the links through the Truitt brothers (David, Steve and Dan) between MicroLink, MicroTech, and DiscoverTech (which would have been relevant as a factor in the consideration of whether the acquisition was at a fair and proper value) (b) they were not told that addressing MicroLink's mounting debt to Autonomy under VAR transactions was part of the rationale for the acquisition and were led to believe that only a relatively small amount of the acquisition price for MicroLink represented bad debts that would need to be written off, (c) they were misled as to how MicroTech was able to finance the payment

of $10,000,000 and (d) they were given a misleading impression as to the arrangements between MicroTech and DiscoverTech.

262. As to (a) in the preceding paragraph, I do not accept the Claimants' contention that Deloitte was not told of the links between the Truitts and their companies; although he had given the impression in his witness statement that Deloitte was uncertain of these links, in cross-examination Mr Welham accepted that Deloitte did know about them[27] and Deloitte's working paper on the acquisition expressly noted this. As to (b) in the preceding paragraph, there was no dispute.

263. The last two matters ((c) and (d) in paragraph 261) related more specifically to VT5 and the payment of $10,000,000, and concern certain of the answers given by Mr Chamberlain in a draft document dated 11 January 2010 entitled *"ML auditor queries"* to queries raised by Deloitte about the transaction. Thus:

(1) Question 2(2) asked what insight Autonomy had into how MicroTech had "*financed this $10m*". The answer given was, "*The $10m was financed from their operating cash.*" The Claimants submitted that this was untrue, since the only expected source was the exceptional receipt of sale proceeds remitted through DiscoverTech.

(2) Question 3 sought information about Autonomy's trading history with DiscoverTech and DiscoverTech's ability to finance the $10 million payment. The answer was, "*No trading history with Autonomy. We have not done a deal with them, the deal is via a reseller*". The point about DiscoverTech having had no trading history with Autonomy was factually correct, but only because DiscoverTech had only recently been incorporated. Given the close nexus between the companies and the funding arrangements, these answers were plainly misleading. The Claimants submitted that this was an attempt to create the appearance of distance between the $10 million purchase, on the one hand, and the acquisition of MicroLink, on the other.

264. In Dr Lynch's written closing submissions, it was suggested that:

> *"This was not Dr Lynch's document and the Claimants did not challenge his confirmation that he did not see the document at the time. The author (Mr Chamberlain) was unlikely to have known how MicroTech financed the purchase, and it was reasonable to suppose that he was addressing the issue from a collectability perspective."*

265. Although the collectability point was probably fair, the rest of this explanation was weak, especially since the draft responses that Mr Chamberlain prepared were circulated to Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter. The Claimants understandably made the point that if Autonomy senior management felt they lacked sufficient knowledge of the arrangement between MicroTech and DiscoverTech to give an accurate answer to Deloitte's question, they should have said precisely that, rather than provide a misleading answer.

---

[27] It appears from an entry in a documented response to various questions that Deloitte had about the MicroLink acquisition, someone had written against the question about the nature of such links *"Not sure. These are independent companies with different groups of shareholders"*. That may be the origin of the misunderstanding clarified by Mr Welham in cross-examination.

266. The last point to note in respect of VT5 is that MicroTech was paid $100,000 for its role, and in particular, for acquiring $10 million worth of Autonomy software for immediate resale to DiscoverTech. In his 'direct' evidence (evidence in chief) in the MicroTech proceedings in the US, Mr Steve Truitt acknowledged that this was for *"doing practically nothing"*. He added that he had entered into the purchase arrangements at the direction of and to assist his brother (Mr David Truitt) who wanted to do the deal quickly. Put shortly, on the Claimants' case, this was an improper payment to recognise MicroTech's help in portraying a false impression; on the Defendants' case it was the price of, in effect, a guarantee to ensure satisfaction of collectability tests. In my judgment, both are probably true; but the first point demonstrates impropriety whether alone or in combination with the second.

267. In summary, I agree with the Claimants' depiction of the essence of VT5 as being a contrived and circular transaction involving:

(1) An artificial and unwarranted increase in the agreed purchase price for MicroLink from $45 million (which was correctly reflected in there having been a 10% deposit of $4.5 million) to $55 million: Autonomy designedly overpaid Mr David Truitt and Mr Tim Wharton (Mr David Truitt's minority partner in both MicroLink and DiscoverTech) by $10,000,000 (see paragraph 42 above) with a view to their new company, DiscoverTech, then having the funds to pay MicroTech for Control Point software, enabling MicroTech then to pay Autonomy under VT5;

(2) Incorrect responses to Deloitte's queries about (a) the rationale of the MicroLink acquisition (b) the financial position of MicroTech (c) various disguised efforts by Autonomy to create the appearance of distance between the $10 million purchase, on the one hand, and the acquisition of MicroLink, on the other, including (d) the true arrangements between MicroTech and DiscoverTech resulting in the purchase of software in order to provide recognised revenue for Autonomy before the end of the relevant quarter and (e) the source of the $10 million eventually paid by DiscoverTech;

(3) The payment of a MAF to MicroTech as a reward not for any properly rewardable contribution but for its participation in the contrivance.

268. Apart from the payment of a MAF, the contrivance is, to my mind, laid bare in the email dated 18 November 2009 from Mr David Truitt to Mr Hussain (which I refer to at paragraph 259(1) and 260(5) above). That email included the following:

> *"What I was thinking was that we would include the purchase of DiscoverPoint in with the Control Point OEM, so Autonomy could show revenue on both products in the 10 million dollar order. So total at closing for the MicroLink purchase would be 55 million with an immediate purchase of DP and Control Point OEM for 10 million from the new company…"*

269. In my judgment, the recognition of revenue of $10 million by Autonomy in its quarterly accounts which was enabled by the contrived and circular transactions comprising VT5 was improper.

Knowledge and involvement of the Defendants in VT5

270. Mr Hussain plainly knew about VT5; he was the recipient of Mr David Truitt's email of 18 November 2009; and there is nothing to contradict Mr David Truitt's evidence (see paragraph 259(1) and footnote 26 above) that it was Mr Hussain who suggested that DiscoverPoint should be spun out to DiscoverTech in advance of Autonomy's acquisition of MicroLink and it was he who also negotiated the $10 million price for DiscoverTech's purchase of software; he was (with Mr Kanter) copied into Mr Chamberlain's draft responses to Deloitte's questions (see paragraph 263 above); and he knew of the arrangements for the sequence of payments to *"go through 3 wires"*. I accept the Claimants' submission that Mr Hussain was involved first-hand in this transaction and knew the relevant facts.

271. There is no dispute that Mr Hussain kept Dr Lynch informed about the MicroLink acquisition. On 18 November 2009, Mr Hussain wrote to Dr Lynch regarding "*project DC*", which was the code word for the acquisition of MicroLink, as follows:

> *"I believe agreement in principle is possible on the following basis:*
>
> - *Valuation $55m*
> - *We would buy ML without the as yet not in production product "DiscoverPoint", 6 developers plus 2 sales reps*
> - *Dave would stay on for integration but eventually transition out*
>
> *Let me know if you are ok with this and I'll write up the Board Paper."*

272. The next day (19 November 2009), Dr Lynch replied "*ok*". Then, on 15 December 2009, Mr Chamberlain provided a memorandum entitled "*Financial Due Diligence*" to the board of directors of Autonomy regarding the MicroLink acquisition. Dr Lynch confirmed in cross-examination that he would have read this memorandum with care. It showed that MicroLink had total assets of just under $24.5 million. Only $362,069.17 of these assets were in cash. By far the largest asset, $13,711,426.50, classified as "*Inventory Asset*", was stated to be "*Licences purchased from Autonomy not yet resold*". For good measure, the memorandum went on to explain, "*The inventory assets relate to licences purchased from Autonomy that have not yet been resold to the end-users*". Accordingly, there was little prospect that MicroLink could pay any substantial part of what it owed to Autonomy. The fact that this did not apparently cause him consternation suggests that it did not come as a surprise and that Dr Lynch, like Mr Hussain and the others involved, well understood that MicroTech was not expected to find the means of paying out of its own resources. But the memorandum did not explain either (a) how a valuation of $55 million for MicroLink could be justified or (b) the arrangements for DiscoverTech to purchase Control Point and acquire DiscoverPoint for (in aggregate) $10 million.

273. On 17 December 2009, Mr Kanter sent Autonomy's directors, including Dr Lynch, a number of documents, and in particular, a Memorandum about the acquisition of MicroLink prepared by himself and Mr Hussain, which (given its importance) I accept Dr Lynch must have read. That Memorandum referred to and discussed the proposed spinning-out of DiscoverPoint and expressed the view that they did *"not believe there is a material business in DiscoverPoint, and not materially different from technology*

Autonomy already has, and thus are happy for it not to be part of the transaction." Again, little detail was given.

274. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he would have known about the $10,000,000 transaction before it was concluded. He was asked whether Mr Hussain had told him about it: he supposed that he would have seen it from the board papers when it went for board approval. In cross-examination he also accepted that he knew that $10 million of the purchase price for MicroLink was "coming back":

> *"Q. You knew about this transaction, both about the amount that was going to be paid out, the 55 million, and the 10 million that was coming back?*
>
> *A. I think I did, yes."*

275. Dr Lynch said in cross-examination that, at the time, he regarded VT5 as separate from the MicroLink acquisition and that Autonomy would have gone ahead with the acquisition whether or not DiscoverTech had proceeded with the acquisition of Control Point. When pressed he said:

> *"Well, they're linked in the normal sense that you wouldn't need to buy the software if you weren't spinning out the company. So if he wasn't selling his company, he doesn't need to buy the software, because he's buying the software for his new company which is spun out from the old one. So in that sense they're linked, but, as I said, Autonomy's board were happy to continue with the acquisition even if Mr Truitt had not decided he wanted to buy software. We viewed it round the other way, which is he was making it a condition of the deal that he would sell provided he could have a business to carry on with and that was the DiscoverPoint business. And in fact the software sale is heavily negotiated and he doesn't get what he wants."*

276. In arguing that there was no basis, nor had the Claimants put to Dr Lynch any basis apart from conclusory assertion with which he disagreed, on which Dr Lynch was supposed to have known that the purchase price was (allegedly) inflated, Dr Lynch relied on the following:

    (1) Although he knew that $55 million was being paid to the shareholders, and $10 million would be being paid by DiscoverTech (ultimately) for the software, it was submitted that this did not suggest that the MicroLink acquisition price was inflated.

    (2) David Truitt confirmed in his hearsay evidence that there was no relationship between the acquisition price and DiscoverTech's purchase of the software, and the material passing to Dr Lynch also showed that $55,000,000 was the negotiated price for MicroLink.

277. The Claimants referred Dr Lynch to Mr David Truitt's email of 18 November 2009 which I have also quoted from in paragraph 259 above. This email was not sent to him but to Mr Hussain. Dr Lynch's evidence was to the effect that his understanding was that the reason that the escrow was at that level was because that was the original proposal from Autonomy for the escrow amount (when their opening offer was at

$45m), and that while the headline figure had been negotiated upwards no one bothered to move the escrow amount. In this regard he was later taken to an email from the lawyer for MicroLink to Mr Kanter on 30 December 2009 attaching a revised version of the draft escrow agreement (stated to be nearly ready for execution) changing the escrow amount from $5,500,000 to $4,500,000; but the email was not sent to Dr Lynch. When asked to agree that the email and its attachment showed that his supposition that the $4,500,000 was simply a hangover from a previous draft must be incorrect he answered:

> *"My understanding, and as I say I wasn't involved in this, was that the original price and escrow number that was agreed was 4.5 million, there was then a negotiation and it came to 55 and then this email seems to be a discussion about whether it should be 10% or it should still be the 4.5."*

278. What emerges from all this is that Dr Lynch was well aware of the overall picture, including (as well as the $55 million acquisition) of the broad detail of the arrangements for DiscoverTech to acquire DiscoverPoint and purchase Control Point for $10 million. I think it more probable than not, and I find, that he knew that the real purchase price for MicroLink was $45 million, that the escrow arrangements reflected this and that the additional $10 million was to enable MicroTech to pay back Autonomy. He may not have known how the $45 million was calculated: but that is of little moment.

279. In my judgment, both Defendants thus had "guilty knowledge" of accounting impropriety, which was part of the false presentation of Autonomy's financial position and performance in its published information.

VT13: MicroTech/Vatican Library Q1 2010

280. VT13, which was referred to at trial as "the Vatican Library deal", was prospectively by far the largest of the impugned VAR sales: and it illustrated in a variety of ways what the Claimants called "the pattern".

281. From early 2009, Autonomy had hoped to be involved in a project, which was initially secret, for the digitisation and saving in Digital Safe of the Vatican Library's collection of over 80,000 manuscripts and over 40,000,000 documents so as to make it widely available for scholars and the public for the first time. The overall project was huge (in value terms in the region of Euro 75,000,000); it was likely to take years, and involve a programme of installation and sustained servicing; it was also prestigious, with huge potential marketing benefits for Autonomy. Dr Lynch perceived this as a flagship project for Autonomy, which Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination, would *"certainly have been a contender for"* Autonomy's biggest ever single deal. Dr Lynch was clearly excited by the whole idea which he described as *"a wonderful thing for humanity"*.

282. It appears from email exchanges between Mr Goodfellow and Mr Lucini in October 2009 that Autonomy envisaged and proposed that Autonomy would provide *"the whole solution – hardware, software & services"* in conjunction with an Italian implementation partner. It also appears that the Vatican Library wanted, if possible, to fund the project through a foundation which would be funded, in whole or part, by public and corporate donations.

283. In February 2010, after the replacement of its original Italian partner, Selex (part of Finmeccanica), because of its involvement in an Italian corruption scandal (the replacement partner being Poste Italiane, the Italian postal service), Autonomy was sent confirmation by the Vatican Library that Autonomy could begin what was called a "*Test-BED*" of the digitisation project. An email from Mr Luciano Ammenti ("Mr Ammenti") on behalf of the Vatican Library stressed that Autonomy would have to pay for the hardware and labour and "*AUTONOMY won't have anything to claim to the Vatican Library in case the project of manuscripts digitalization won't take off*". In other words, Autonomy would be proceeding with the test bed entirely at its own economic risk.

284. This was followed by discussion of a Memorandum of Understanding to regulate the partnership between Autonomy and Poste Italiane and the Vatican Library in respect of the project. A draft of this was in circulation on 18 March 2010, although the terms were fairly broad, and did not constitute a contractual agreement. Some 8 days later, on 26 March 2010, a Letter of Intent was signed between the Vatican Library and Postecom SpA, providing for a 60-day period of negotiations with a view to the parties then discussing *"in good faith the terms of their possible collaboration."* However, Autonomy was not a party; the letter of intent was no more than that; and it was expressly agreed that its terms did *"not bind the parties in signing any collaboration contract."* This Letter of Intent was forwarded to Autonomy on 28 March 2010.

285. Although there is some suggestion that there was talk of a deal before the end of March, that was entirely unrealistic.

286. By 29 March 2010, it was clear that there could be no realistic expectation that the Vatican Library's proposed charitable foundation would be in a position to issue a purchase order to Autonomy by the end of the quarter; and indeed, that final closing of a deal was some way off.

287. It seems from the content of an email dated 29 March 2010 entitled *"BAV – the route to closing the deal tomorrow"* sent by Mr Hussain to Mr Broli (Autonomy's sales executive covering Italy), which Mr Hussain sent also to Dr Lynch, that Mr Broli suggested the involvement of an Italian partner. Mr Hussain appears to have welcomed that, on the basis of the partner acting as a VAR (in return for a suggested margin of 5%). Mr Hussain expressed his approach to Mr Broli, stating that *"having an Italian partner would be very useful to us"* but that:

> *"the partner that we would use would have to be sufficiently strong financially for us to be able to recognise the revenue and only if the [Purchase Order] and contract is signed this quarter."*

288. On 31 March 2010, the last day of the quarter, Monsignor Cesare Pasini (the Prefect of the Vatican Library) sent Mr Broli a new Letter of Intent between the Vatican Library and Postecom. Mr Hussain requested a translation from Mr Zanchini. This changed the exclusivity period to 50 days, extendable by a further 40 days subject to the agreement of the Vatican Library, but otherwise was essentially the same. Recital (f) to this Letter of Intent stated:

> *"It is understood that if by the terms as in d) of this preamble BAV finds the financial contributions to destine to the BAV Project and that the amount will*

> *be sufficient to cover at least the First Phase of the BAV Project, these contributions will be entirely used by BAV to pay Postecom the amounts due for such first Phase as defined at point a) of the Preamble."*

289. Evidently, therefore, the question of funding the digitisation project remained unresolved as at 31 March 2010. In the circumstances, it was plain that there was no prospect of the Vatican Library itself – or any newly established foundation – signing a contract in Q1 2010.

290. However, Autonomy needed recognised revenue from a sale prior to the end of the quarter. Without a Vatican Library transaction, Autonomy was at risk of missing the market consensus figures for revenue and earnings per share in Q1 2010: this was in the region of $193 million (revenue) and $0.25 (adjusted earnings per share). Accordingly:

    (1) On 28 March 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch an email which made it clear that to achieve $195 million in revenue for the quarter "*we will need Vat and Stouffer's deal*".

    (2) On 29 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent Mr Hussain and Mr Egan a document setting out his suggestions or 'route-map' on which transactions were needed to achieve revenue of $196 million in the quarter. He identified $15 million of revenue from a "*VAT*" deal: this signified the Vatican Library transaction and what became VT13. This was larger than any of the other listed deals. Dr Lynch continued to work at ways of delivering results commensurate with revenue forecasts.

    (3) At 23:30 on 31 March 2010, Dr Lynch sent Mr Hussain a new iteration of his route-map document. This noted that: $22.5 million of revenue needed to be recognised from "*VAT*", the Vatican Library, in order to achieve revenue of $205 million in Q1 2010: a "*VAT contribution*" of $10 million was needed to achieve $193 million of revenue, which would involve Autonomy announcing earnings per share of less than $0.25; and a "*VAT contribution*" of $17 million was needed to achieve $195 million of revenue, which would enable Autonomy to announce earnings per share of $0.25. This document therefore picked up on the $193 million consensus revenue figure and the $0.25 market consensus earnings per share figure that had been identified in an email on the same day (31 March 2010) from Mr Peter Goodman (who worked in Autonomy's Investor Relations team).

291. Only at the last moment did Autonomy resort to MicroTech. There is an issue whether in fact it was by then too late. It seems that it may be that the purchase order was not signed until 1 April (see paragraphs 323 to 327 below); but even on the basis of the Defendants' account, VT13 was not agreed until the dying hours of Q1 2010 (indeed, only then by the use of a VAR in a western time-zone). Mr Egan gave this evidence in his witness statement:

> *"Mr Hussain asked me to see if MicroTech would agree to take a part of the deal that Autonomy was trying to sell to the Vatican Library. He ultimately gave me the amount: $11.5m. I contacted David Truitt and asked him whether MicroTech would take an $11.55m Vatican Library deal on the usual terms. David Truitt said he would check with Steve Truitt, the MicroTech COO. At*

David Truitt's request, we then prepared a description of the deal terms for John Cronin who, in this context, was acting for MicroTech. MicroTech agreed to take the deal."

292. Dr Lynch was asked about his "route-map" document referred to at paragraph 290(2) above which the Claimants relied on as showing calculations of the size of any VAR sales according to Autonomy's fluctuating requirement for recognised revenue. Dr Lynch dismissed this: he was adamant that the amounts were not calibrated by reference to revenue forecasts, but according to *"political"* considerations. His explanation, as I understood it, was that this signified simply consideration of the possibility of parts of the deal being sold off to different prime or sub-prime resellers, given the very considerable size of the deal, and given the likely political imperative of including an Italian partner[28], one of which might *"end up being the prime"*. This initially struck me as plausible: but an email dated 2 April 2010 from Dr Lynch to Mr Hussain stating *"I saw that MT is 11 so if we can get data more than that would be good"*, though not altogether clear (the reference to data appearing extraneous), suggested that Dr Lynch would have wanted to "sell" more to MicroTech (and see also paragraph 311(5) below). This seems to me to show that (a) Dr Lynch remained personally and directly involved and that (b) he knew full well that the size of the VAR deal was calibrated not by reference to any prospective and realistically anticipated end-user deal (there was none) but by reference to Autonomy's requirement for recognised revenue.

293. The VT13 purchase order for Autonomy software (IDOL Server and Autonomy Archive Solution with Digital Safe Core Appliance) for end-user Vatican Library was issued under the June 2006 MicroTech VAR agreement (see paragraph 214 above). This provided expressly that MicroTech was obliged to pay Autonomy for its orders irrespective of its sales to an end-user, and confirmed that there was no other understanding or arrangement between the parties.[29]

294. The licence fee for VT13 was $11,000,000, plus $550,000 for support and maintenance and was payable within 90 days (i.e. by 29 June 2010). The authorised use of the software was confined to use for the Vatican Library digitisation project and within the territory of the Vatican Library. VT13 related only to a part of what had always been envisaged as a larger Vatican Library deal.

295. In the event, no deal was concluded with the end-user (Vatican Library), either by MicroTech or by Autonomy. It appears from a letter dated 15 May 2014 from the Vatican Library to HP Autonomy, that some considerable time later, in March 2014, the Vatican Library selected and contracted with a different supplier of software, NTT Data, to undertake the digitalisation of its archives.

296. However, MicroTech remained under its legal liability pursuant to the terms of the agreement. The question which arose, in accordance with the usual pattern where no end-user deal had eventuated, was how it could be let *"off the hook"*.

297. The Claimants' case is that MicroTech was only rescued by a transaction between itself and Autonomy for the purchase by the latter of goods that Autonomy did not in fact

---

[28] A large Italian integrator called Selex (part of Finmeccanica) was originally identified, but the Vatican Library removed Selex because of a corruption scandal. Poste Italiane was then considered. See paragraph 283 above.
[29] And see paragraph 216(4) above.

need (the "ATIC" transaction, of which more later), which (exemplifying the 'pattern' asserted by the Claimants to be typical) got MicroTech *"off the hook"*.

298. More generally, the Vatican Library transaction was not only prospectively the largest of the VAR transactions: it was also a transaction which demonstrates many of the principal features of the Claimants' case on impugned VAR sales, and the Defendants' answers to their allegations. It also illustrated especially clearly the role expected of the VAR, in this case, MicroTech. It was dealt with at considerable length at the hearing, no doubt for that reason; and I deal with it at some length below.

Claimants' case on VT13

299. The Claimants highlighted the following particular features of VT13 and its context in support of their case that it made no commercial sense whatsoever to suppose that MicroTech perceived itself to be taking any more than a nominal risk for which it was to be handsomely rewarded for doing absolutely nothing. It was, in their language, no more than a *"placeholder"*.

300. First, the Claimants emphasised that MicroTech had no prior relationship with the Vatican Library, nor any knowledge of the Vatican Library project before agreeing to act as a VAR and signing up to the VT13 purchase order. MicroTech was based in Northern Virginia, USA. There is no evidence that it had Italian speakers working for it or any experience working for any customer located in Italy, let alone the Vatican Library. On the contrary, Mr David Truitt testified in the MicroTech proceedings in the US that MicroTech had not done any work outside the US, and had no employees located outside the US. The obvious choice of a VAR would have been one based in Italy, and indeed an "Italian partner" had been suggested (see above): but it seems likely, not least in light of the unlikelihood of any imminent end-user sale, that Autonomy needed a 'friendly' VAR and there was none there.

301. The Claimants submitted that Dr Lynch's justification under cross-examination that MicroTech *"had a couple of hundred people doing services and that's actually very difficult if that's done by people that are speaking Italian rather than English and it's much better done co-located nearer our own technical resources"* made no sense; and that Dr Lynch *"gave no evidence…to explain how a US reseller, with no insight into the Vatican Library, could ever hope to achieve such a sale"*. They quoted Mr Stephan's statement in the US criminal trial that he was *"incredulous"* when he learned that the VAR for the Vatican Library deal would be in the Washington D.C. area. They noted and adopted his view that:

> *"It suggested that – to me it indicated that they were just a conduit for giving us paperwork to close – to book deals in the quarter end because there was no linkage in my mind between a U.S. federal government reseller and, you know, the Vatican in Italy."*

302. The Claimants also noted Mr Stephan's further evidence that he had telephoned Mr Chamberlain, who had shared Mr Stephan's surprise about the Vatican Library deal going to MicroTech; and that he had made clear to Mr Chamberlain that, as he considered:

> *"…these deals were, you know, garbage. They were not worth the paper they were written on, and I wasn't happy to front them up as good deals to our auditors".*

His recollection was that Mr Chamberlain's response was that it was not his call: it was Mr Hussain's call, and that *"we just need to do our job and put it to the auditors"* but was resigned to the fact that it was *"Mr Hussain's call".* Mr Stephan added the more general observation about Mr Chamberlain that:

> *"That was always his – his stance was like, troops in an Army. The general says what to do and we have to follow our orders."*

303. Dr Lynch submitted that Mr Stephan's hearsay evidence should be given no weight. His team had had no chance to cross-examine him and as previously noted, Dr Lynch gave evidence that Mr Stephan had, in effect been coerced (see paragraph 16(8) above). Plainly, it would be wrong to accept Mr Stephan's surprise and characterisation of the transaction as of itself demonstrative of the true nature of the transaction: but his recitation of his surprise and characterisation, though highly coloured, had the ring of truth, and was at least consistent with the inherent unsuitability of MicroTech for any more than a nominal role in the matter.

304. The Defendants' defence of the choice of MicroTech was that (a) *"much of the services work would not have required attendance in Italy",* (b) it was *"common for software and service providers to provide services to international customers"* and (c) for example, according to the Defendants Capax Discovery had itself worked for Prisa, a Spanish company. This was not, to my mind, persuasive. In particular (a) Mr David Truitt's evidence was that MicroTech had no international experience nor even the service capability; (b) in any event, MicroTech's last ditch retention by Autonomy was notionally for the purpose of selling on the software: and its total lack of experience, lack of Italian speakers, lack of contacts, and unfamiliarity with the Vatican Library made it entirely unsuitable in that regard[30]; and (c) no details were provided of what "Capax Discovery" did for Prisa[31], nor even of which "Capax Discovery" company it was or why it was chosen, and the example offered carried the matter no further.

305. The second feature highlighted by the Claimants was the clear and complete absence of any engagement on the part of MicroTech in any part of the negotiations with the Vatican Library: they were carried on exclusively by Autonomy. Mr Steve Truitt confirmed this in his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings as follows:

> *"Q. Did MicroTech at any time contact the Vatican Library in an effort to sell the identified software, the software identified in [the MicroTech purchase order], to the Vatican or to assist Autonomy in Autonomy's efforts to sell that software?*
>
> *A. No.*

[30] The Defendants made the point that Mr Steve Truitt had expressed enthusiasm for MicroTech providing services to the Vatican Library: but enthusiasm is obviously not enough.
[31] As will be seen, one of the impugned VAR sales involved Prisa: but the VAR selected was DiscoverTech, and so cannot have been the same deal as in the example offered.

> *Q. Did – did MicroTech, to your knowledge, have any involvement in the negotiation with the Vatican Library of the terms of a proposed transaction involving the software identified in [the purchase order]? [objection omitted]*
>
> *A. No."*

306. This was confirmed by a letter written considerably later (15 May 2014) by the Vatican Library to HP:

> *"As you well know, BAV [the Vatican Library] has never dealt with the company MicroTech and was not even aware of its involvement with Autonomy at the time of the latter's contacts with BAV to analyze the possibility of a possible collaboration on the digitisation project."*

307. MicroTech made no effort to even approach the end-user with a view to service work after any end-user sale, as Mr Steve Truitt confirmed in his deposition evidence in the MicroTech civil proceedings in the US:

> *"Q. Did you – did MicroTech at any time, to your knowledge, approach the Vatican Library in an effort to obtain service business from the Vatican Library?*
>
> *A. No."*

308. Indeed, in the same deposition evidence, Mr Steve Truitt made it clear that in his view, MicroTech did not have the capability of providing such services:

> *"Q. Mr. Truitt, in 2010/2011, did MicroTech have people on its staff who were familiar with Autonomy software?*
>
> A. *I'm going to say no. It's possible we had one or two, but also there -- there were people out working on contracts that knew stuff. I mean, you know, we didn't have on the -- we didn't have anybody on the bench, I don't think."*

309. A third feature pointed out by the Claimants was that, as Mr Lucini described it in his witness statement, Autonomy's proposal was for an "*end to end solution*". Although the Defendants contended in their written closing submissions that Mr Lucini's evidence had not stood up to cross-examination and he had accepted that numerous aspects of the overall project would naturally have had to be undertaken by professional services partners, the fact remained that Autonomy had stressed the advantage of a single point of supply in its own proposal to the Vatican Library:

> *"In order to minimise TCO Autonomy can provide a fully managed solution as part of its Digital Safe offering including Software, hardware, Support, Installation, Monitoring & Administration…A full Autonomy solution also provides the traditional advantages of single supplier sourcing."*

310. The Claimants acknowledged that, of course, Autonomy might have decided to subcontract some of its work or, as Mr Lucini said in cross-examination, it might have used a professional services firm for particular parts of the project. However, the Claimants made the point that the notion that Autonomy would outsource the licensing of the Autonomy software itself, i.e. that the Vatican Library would contract with Autonomy for the whole of the project, but with the specific exception of the Autonomy software, which the Vatican Library would instead purchase from a third party, made no sense. There is no evidence that anyone at Autonomy understood this to have been the plan at the time.

311. Fourthly, the Claimants pointed out that VT13 was even riskier than other deals from the point of view of a VAR, had it really been substantively on risk:

(1) The progress of the project depended on attracting funding for the foundation which the Vatican Library wished to use for the digitisation project: see paragraphs 280*ff* above. By 31 March 2010 the funding issue remained unresolved, was (given the size of the project) an enormous undertaking, and was plainly some considerable way from being addressed.

(2) It was thus apparent by then that delay in any end-user deal was almost inevitable: Dr Lynch's evidence in cross-examination that *"the feeling at the time was that it was very close to being signed"* and that *"it was considered to be a project that was very close to happening"* was based on emails containing vague expectations, and the terms of the Letter of Intent between the Vatican Library and Postecom (to which Autonomy was not even a party) confirm that any such expectations were entirely unrealistic, as was Dr Lynch's evidence accordingly.

(3) Any onward sale was confined to the Vatican Library as end-user and was dependent, not only on the end-user wanting to purchase the goods purchased by the VAR, but also, since the software was only part of what was needed for the project, on the end-user proceeding with the larger project in a manner that made it still require the software.

(4) It made no sense to commit in March/April 2010 to pay $11,500,000 on the footing that the VAR would be able to on-sell the software licence to the Vatican Library within a reasonable time and at a profit, especially in circumstances where the VAR knew nothing of the end-user and was intended and expecting to have no participation in negotiations to bring about a resale.

(5) Dr Lynch's evidence in cross-examination when asked to explain what commercial benefit there could have been for MicroTech was to the effect that the advantages were (a) it would get *"an introduction into commercial business"*; (b) *"the services of doing all the gluing work"*; (c) *"the marketing effect of being able to say that they were part of this incredibly prestigious project"*; and (d) *"the revenue on the deal"*. Dr Lynch added that he would have signed off on a cost of $10 million *"just from a marketing point of view, just to be involved in it."* I did not find any of this persuasive. The *"introduction to commercial business"* struck me as somewhat condescending and unfocused generality; the *"services…gluing work"* was neither offered nor expected, or even within its capabilities; and though Mr Steve Truitt gave evidence in the US criminal trial (relied on by the Claimants themselves) that

he was very excited by the project and *"the services add on here would be tremendous"* that was undermined by the fact that it was dependent on the risk in question (there never being an end-user deal) not eventuating, and upon MicroTech having a capability which (see above) Mr Steve Truitt had denied; and the marketing opportunity for MicroTech was very restricted in comparison to what Dr Lynch claimed for it, given MicroTech's low profile and minimal involvement. That leaves only the revenue on the deal.

312. The reality this confirms is that MicroTech could proceed only because it was never going to be *"left holding the bag"*. The VAR sale was a commercial proposition for it only because it was not required to take any real risk; it was required, as always, to do *"next to nothing"* in return for a substantial MAF.

313. Fifthly, the Claimants relied on Dr Lynch's replies to a question testing the aim of Autonomy's negotiations with Vatican Library and in particular, how the prospect of an onward sale by MicroTech would have been impacted, as follows:

> *"Q. Can you just explain this: what does Autonomy's considerable effort have to do with the fact that MicroTech was not able to close a deal with the Vatican?*
>
> *A. Because if Autonomy had closed a deal with the Vatican then that would have closed MicroTech's deal.*
>
> *Q. How so?*
>
> *A. Because it was a consortium deal. So if we'd closed the thing and the consortium had got going, then the software that MicroTech had would have been used as part of that consortium."*

314. The Claimants took this to mean that if Autonomy had closed a deal with the Vatican Library, that would have ensured that the software sold to MicroTech would be used. On that basis, they submitted that it could not be clearer that, in Dr Lynch's understanding, Autonomy was going to retain managerial involvement and control over that software; and MicroTech had not assumed the significant risks or rewards of ownership, precluding revenue recognition.

315. Sixthly, the Claimants alleged that Deloitte were misled (as also they submitted, were the Audit Committee) about the true nature of VT13, and especially as to the role intended to be played by MicroTech. The Claimants contended that Deloitte were misled into thinking that MicroTech was intended to and did participate in the transaction, whereas in fact, it was not involved at all (other than on paper and in a passive, in reality nominal role) and the Vatican Library did not even know of its existence.

316. Deloitte's understanding of the position is shortly stated in a working paper dated 16 April 2010 which recorded the following:

> *"Per discussions with Sushovan Hussain, Microtech is still considered to be a key reseller of Autonomy licence and as a result has entered into one deal*

> *with Autonomy in Q 1 2010 with the end-user of the Vatican for $11.5 million. The end-user has been informed of the fact that the licence will be supplied through Microtech, therefore Autonomy management is confident that it is appropriate to recognise the revenue on the transfer of the risks and rewards to Microtech."*

317. The Claimants maintained that it was untrue that the Vatican Library had been "*informed of the fact that the licence will be supplied through MicroTech*"; and they relied on the Vatican Library's letter of 15 May 2014 to HP (see paragraph 306 above) making clear that the Vatican Library had never dealt with MicroTech and was not aware of its involvement with Autonomy at the time. This led on to the submission that if the Defendants had really thought that there was nothing wrong about their plan in relation to MicroTech and the Vatican Library transaction (that plan being that MicroTech would do nothing and that Autonomy would continue negotiating as before), they could and would have been open and honest with Deloitte about it. But they were not.

318. The Claimants submitted further that it was clearly an important point from Deloitte's point of view that (as was recorded in Deloitte's working paper dated 16 April 2010) the end-user had been *"informed of the fact that the licence will be supplied through MicroTech"*. But the Vatican Library's letter of 15 May 2014 (referred to above) made clear that the Vatican Library had never dealt with MicroTech and was not aware of its involvement with Autonomy at the time.

319. Moreover, and as also noted in the background section of the same working paper, Deloitte had recently found out that the Q4 2009 MicroTech deals for end-users Morgan Stanley and ManuLife (which have been addressed above) had gone direct. This had raised a question as to the recognition of revenue on deals with MicroTech. Deloitte had been told (it is to be inferred, by Mr Hussain) that the reason that these two deals went direct was because the end-users in question had not wanted to deal with a reseller; rather, they wanted to contract directly with Autonomy.

320. Accordingly, the fact (at least according to Mr Hussain) that the end-user had been informed of MicroTech's involvement was said ("*therefore*", see paragraph 316 above) to explain why Autonomy management was confident that it was appropriate to recognise the revenue on the transfer of the risks and rewards to MicroTech. That reflected Deloitte's expectation that, from April 2010 onwards, it would be MicroTech, rather than Autonomy, that would be negotiating to supply the software licence to the Vatican Library.

321. Dr Lynch's efforts to answer this point by suggesting that he thought the Vatican Library's "*agents were"* informed were far from convincing. He mentioned what he thought might be the name of one of the *"agents"* (he named Mr Ammenti) but in a way which struck me as some possibility plucked out to provide some sort of footing which did not exist, and he could not name anyone who might have told Mr Ammenti beyond saying he thought that it would have been *"the technical people"*. When it was put to him that he was *"literally making this up"* he resorted (as became something of a pattern as his cross-examination drew out) to unidentified documents in the 'corpus'; which he assured me would back him up[32], but which were never identified or produced.

[32] Dr Lynch made a vague reference to documents and getting "*the names off of those documents I'm sure*".

He was more credible in saying later that he simply *"didn't know about many of the things you ask me about and I'm telling you the background of how these things work."*

322. In my view, Dr Lynch had no basis for supposing that the Vatican Library had been informed of MicroTech's involvement, and his evidence amounted to an acknowledgement that they should have been, in accordance with ordinary procedure. I find that as they later told HP (see their letter referred to in paragraph 306 above) they were not told, and that Deloitte were misled in being given to understand otherwise. (The Claimants claimed that one of the reasons why one of Dr Lynch's notified intended witnesses, Mr Marco Zanchini, a systems engineer in Autonomy's Milan office, who had been engaged in the transaction and would have been in a position to say whether anyone had been told about MicroTech's involvement, was withdrawn as a witness is that his evidence would have confirmed this.)

323. A more egregious element relied on by the Claimants (but not one which was unique, as will appear later) was that to achieve its only true purpose of enabling Autonomy to book the sale price as recognised revenue the VT13 purchase order had to be and was backdated.

324. As to this:

(1) Both documentary evidence and the evidence of Mr David Truitt appear to establish that the VT13 purchase order was not signed by Mr Steve Truitt until 1 April 2010 even though it bears the date 31 March 2010;

(2) Mr David Truitt's evidence was that prior to 1 April 2010 he had not even heard of any potential transaction with the Vatican Library; according to his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings he was telephoned that day by Mr Egan who asked him whether MicroTech would take a deal dated 31 March 2010, involving the Vatican Library end-user: and this appeared to be confirmed by an email chain dated 1 April 2010 between Mr Cronin and Mr Steve Truitt and in particular an email from Mr Cronin stating *"I just talked w/Dave re the most recent AU conversations. I'm available to help w/this…am awaiting details from AU…."* which was followed up when Mr Cronin sent Mr Steve Truitt the purchase order, stating *"It needs to be signed and emailed back to me, assuming it meets your expectations".* (It was signed and returned that day.)

(3) Mr Steve Truitt confirmed in his deposition in those proceedings that he had not signed until some time after 6pm on 1 April 2010.

325. Dr Lynch's response to all of this (in addition to emphasising that he was not sent any version of the purchase order and knew nothing of any backdating) was that the deal was agreed prior to the quarter end, even if it was only memorialised in writing the next day. He acknowledged that, if the document was intended to be effective from the date of the earlier oral agreement, that should have been stated; but that omission may have complicated matters and was not critical for revenue recognition. Mr Welham confirmed with regard to this transaction that there was no specific requirement under IAS 18.14 for a written contract, so long as there was a binding agreement on the relevant date. Dr Lynch relied also on the following:

(1) In cross-examination, Mr Egan said that his *"memory of this deal was that it was done inside of the quarter in which it was submitted"*, and seemed to think also that Autonomy and MicroTech had discussed the proposed deal at the end of March 2010; but Mr Egan cautioned that he didn't have *"specific knowledge of the dates"*.

(2) Mr Steve Truitt stated in his evidence to the Grand Jury which indicted Mr Hussain that his *"understanding"* was that he had actually agreed a deal before the end of the quarter; but his later evidence was to the contrary.

(3) A delivery confirmation appeared to show that the software was made available to MicroTech on 31 March 2010, signifying a transfer of risk on that date; but that did not necessarily assist Dr Lynch because (a) there was nothing to stop Autonomy sending MicroTech a delivery confirmation, even though MicroTech had yet to commit to buy and in any event (b) Mr Steve Truitt testified at the US criminal trial that this confirmation was *"false"*, both as to the delivery of the software and as to the date of delivery.

326. I consider it clear that the purchase order was not signed prior to the quarter-end. Accordingly, it was backdated. But I think it likely that a deal was struck in broad principle on or about 31st March. Whether the terms were sufficiently set out is debatable; the price was made clear and arguably the inference may be, and it might be sufficient that, there was already a definition of the terms in the draft agreement which had governed previous deals. However, I do not propose to make a finding in this regard, for (a) the relevance of VT13 in the broader context is primarily that it exemplifies the use of a VAR, whether at the very last minute or beyond it, to book recognised revenue without there being any intention or expectation of the VAR ever doing anything else, apart from assuming a liability from which it fully expected to be relieved, and on that basis (b) the transaction should not have been accounted for as having generated revenue to be recognised; so that (c) such a finding would be superfluous.

327. In addition, I do not think that there is sufficient evidence that Dr Lynch was, at the time, aware of the details to infer knowledge of the facts alleged to amount to backdating and thus forgery. I accept that:

(1) There is no evidence that Dr Lynch was sent any version of the purchase order.

(2) In the absence of specific proof of involvement it is unlikely that Dr Lynch would have been involved in this level of detail.

(3) Dr Lynch's denial of knowledge struck me as credible.

328. The last of the points particularly relied on by the Claimants was a familiar one in the pattern. The Claimants contended that the illusory nature of the transaction and their case that all the impugned VAR transactions were subject to side agreements or understandings intended to ensure that the VAR was not substantively at risk were confirmed in the context of VT13 by the extraordinary steps taken by Autonomy to ensure that MicroTech was, in effect, provided by Autonomy with the funds to meet its obligations.

329. The Claimants relied in this regard on (a) a contrived transaction involving the purchase by Autonomy of an exclusive three-year licence to use what was described as MicroTech's "*Advanced Technology Innovation Center*" ("ATIC") for $9,600,000; (b) the routing to MicroTech of further funds for the same purpose of enabling MicroTech to discharge its obligations to Autonomy under the VT13 purchase orders; and (c) the write-off of the remaining VT13 indebtedness in the "Dark Period" immediately after the announcement of the acquisition of Autonomy by HP.

ATIC

330. The ATIC was a facility built by MicroTech. It was often referred to in contemporaneous documents as the "I2C". It was essentially to be a mobile demonstration centre and a display facility which MicroTech was constructing to demonstrate MicroTech's own capabilities. The facts relating to Autonomy's purchase of a three-year non-exclusive licence to use ATIC for a fee of $9.6 million are complex and, in most instances, disputed.

331. Put in a nutshell, whereas the Defendants sought to justify the transaction and the ATIC facility as of great utility to Autonomy, especially in the context of its cleared federal contracts and projects, the Claimants' case is that ATIC was a facility which Autonomy did not in fact need, of which large parts were never even built. According to the Claimants, the purchase of a licence to use it was a transaction contrived to fund MicroTech when it was apparent by the end of Q4 2010 that Autonomy was no closer to securing an end-user deal with the Vatican Library: it was another example of Autonomy using its own funds to purchase or reimburse the costs of a purchase of its own revenue.

332. The Claimants contended that the purchase was also driven by the need urgently to assuage Deloitte's developing concerns and deflect further questions about the collection of the VT13 debt (which had become due in full on 29 June 2010). Deloitte noted these concerns in its Audit Committee report for Q3 2010, dated 17 October 2010, in which they warned that:

> *"We understand that Microtech has yet to receive the amounts due from its end-user and as such is delaying payment to Autonomy. As a result, this amount remains unprovided at this time. We highlight this as a significant balance which management will need to re-assess for the purposes of the 2010 year-end financial statements. Should a substantial proportion of this balance not be recovered by year end, provisioning will need to be considered."*

333. Mr Bloomer confirmed in cross-examination that the importance of getting some form of payment from MicroTech would have been apparent to those present at the related Audit Committee meeting (on 18 October 2010), when (he said) there had been considerable "*discussion about this topic and the deal with the Vatican*". He was also asked about the reference to the presentation that MicroTech was awaiting *"amounts due from its end-user"* (see quotation above):

> *"Q. So you were told that the reason why MicroTech had not paid Autonomy was that MicroTech had not been paid by its end-user, the Vatican, yes?*
>
> *A. Yes.*

Q. And that's what you understood at the time, yes?

A. Yes.

Q. So you would have understood that MicroTech was looking to get paid by the Vatican in relation to the deal, yes?

A. Yes.

Q. If MicroTech had never had any dealings with the Vatican of any kind, that would have been contrary to your understanding at the time, yes?

A. It would have been surprising."

334. In fact, the Defendants well knew that MicroTech had not had, and it was never intended that it should have had, any dealings with the Vatican Library.

335. The Claimants also relied on the following as demonstrating the contrived nature of the ATIC transaction, and its true objective (being to fund MicroTech and enable it to pay back its liability under VT13):

    (1) Autonomy showed no interest in ATIC when MicroTech first (and then repeatedly) pitched for business in November and December 2010. Dr Lynch acknowledged this in cross-examination. The Claimants suggested that the interest came first from Mr Hussain as a response to the need to find a way of paying down MicroTech's indebtedness.

    (2) There is no evidence that Autonomy's technical department conducted any analysis of the ATIC beyond reading MicroTech's proposal.

    (3) Email exchanges between Mr Hussain, Mr Scott and Mr Chamberlain appear to demonstrate that it became important to Autonomy to reach a deal on ATIC to justify a payment by Autonomy to MicroTech *"in 2010"*. An email from Mr Chamberlain to Mr Hussain and Mr Scott dated 17 December 2010 (subject "MT") illustrated the link and Autonomy's real concern:

        "How close are we to agreeing? Need to collect their overdue balances"

    (4) The deal originally proposed was for a one-year licence for $3,747,500: Mr Scott testified at the US criminal trial that the impetus behind the increase in the size of the deal came from Mr Hussain. The development of the proposals was haphazard, and the Claimants suggested that it appeared to be driven by some purpose other than by reference to what Autonomy needed of the ATIC. For example, the cost breakdown had little logic, and the price went within a fortnight from $3.4 million for a one-year deal to $9.6 million for a three-year deal, and it included an advance payment of the full salaries of five MicroTech employees to staff the ATIC for three years after its completion which Mr Kalbag told me was neither necessary nor justified. In other words, the size of the deal appeared to be calibrated according to the level of MicroTech's indebtedness.

(5) No written contract was ever drawn up to detail the respective rights of the parties in relation to the construction and operation of the ATIC: Mr Scott identified this as very unusual for such a large deal of such a type.

(6) Mr Steve Truitt gave evidence at the US criminal trial that a purpose of the ATIC was indeed to obtain funds with which to pay MicroTech's debt to Autonomy, and testified to the same effect in his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings. He added that the price for the ATIC was reverse-engineered: the price was arrived at by starting with a *"final number, and we would work backwards to provide goods and services that were worth about that much"*.

(7) The price paid by Autonomy exceeded the total construction costs for the display facility launched in July 2011: this made no sense where all Autonomy was getting was a three-year, non-exclusive licence to have its software displayed in the facility, potentially in competition with other companies.

(8) According to Mr Steve Truitt's deposition in the MicroTech proceedings, he was not aware of any other company paying MicroTech more than a million dollars to display their hardware or software at the ATIC. Yet when ATIC – the basic display facility - (by then renamed as the *"I2C"*) was launched in July 2011, (a) no mention was made of Autonomy in promotional videos and (b) none of the other companies show-cased had paid anything close to what Autonomy had paid; (c) the launch was labelled "Product Agnostic", and Mr Jimenez (CEO of MicroTech) sent an internal MicroTech email explaining the approach to be taken, which suggests no prominence was given to Autonomy:

> "*The intend [sic: intent] of doing a Grand Opening is to increase awareness (about our technical dominance) and to not only show our customers that we are ready for prime time but to show our partners that we are levels above the other partners they are leaning on.*
>
> …
>
> *Please be very sensitive to the "Product Agnostic" title we carry, but at the same time be sensitive to the fact that Microsoft, EMC, Dell, HP, VMware, Autonomy and Cisco account for more than half of our revenue and more than 90% of Product revenue and that even though we have received great support from Hitachi, Fujitsu, SGI, Christie Lucus, T-Mobile and others for our I2C they are not providing us with the Millions in revenue the big "7" provide and if they (Microsoft, EMC, Dell, HP, VMware, Autonomy, and Cisco) decide to take their ball and go home we will take a very hard hit!!!!*
>
> *The bottom line is - We will try, even though we know we can't show love to everybody, but let's make sure we remember where MicroTech's bread is buttered and let's be respectful of that and show homage to the companies that have paid the dues over the years and have a seat at the BIGGER table!!!!"*

(9) The manner in which payment was made and the way the funds were used was also relied on as reinforcing the conclusion that the true purpose of the ATIC

was to route money to MicroTech so that it could pay down a significant part of its debt to Autonomy. As to this:

(a) As set out above, Autonomy paid the entire contract sum in full on 31 December 2010 and one day after it submitted its two-sentence purchase order. It paid in full, before the ATIC was constructed. There were no progress payments as the facility was constructed. Autonomy paid the salaries of the five most senior persons who were to work at the ATIC months before the need for the MicroTech employees to begin their work could have arisen, not as those salaries were incurred. The Claimants argued that, had this been a genuine commercial transaction, it is difficult to see why, commercially, this is something to which Autonomy would possibly have agreed. No credible explanation for this structure has been offered by the Defendants.

(b) An internal MicroTech email dated 30 December 2010 refers in its subject line to an "*Expected Incoming Payment and Associated Out-Going Wire Payment*". The body of the email notes that there was to be an "*incoming payment*" of $9.6 million from Autonomy Inc. and that there would then be a "*request for a wire transfer back to Autonomy as payee*" in the amount of $6.3 million. Mr Steve Truitt testified at the US criminal trial that this was "*Absolutely*" part of the purpose of the ATIC purchase.

(c) At his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings, Mr David Truitt agreed that it was his understanding that MicroTech was to use part of the $9.6 million paid by Autonomy for the ATIC in order to pay down MicroTech's debt to Autonomy. In fact, on the <u>same</u> day that ASL paid $9.6 million to MicroTech, MicroTech paid $6,305,140 to Autonomy Inc. Of that $6.3 million, $1.89 million was used to settle MicroTech's debt on VT6 (Honeywell) and $4.321 million was used as a partial payment on VT13 (Vatican Library).

(10) Lastly, the Claimants contended that *"large swathes of what were set out in MicroTech's $9.6 million proposal were never built"* including the following (i) the mobile data centre featured in the proposal (ii) the *"medical scientific research solution"* promised in the proposal (iii) the Department of Defence record management and archiving solution described in the proposal (iv) the intelligence investigation solution set forth in the proposal and (v) a test evaluation laboratory using Autonomy applications. The Claimants noted further that Autonomy made no complaint (suggesting indifference); and that in respect of the part of what was described in the MicroTech proposal that the Claimants accepted MicroTech <u>did</u> build – the basic ATIC display facility – Mr Kalbag's evidence was that, so far as he was aware, the ATIC facility was not used by Autonomy or any of its customers (whether for demonstration purposes or otherwise). Autonomy's salesforce were not even told of the purchase: thus, for example, Mr Kalbag (Director of Federal Sales) was not aware of the purchase until he attended the *"I2C"* launch in July 2011.

336. Having paid Autonomy $4,321,000 after receipt of the ATIC monies, MicroTech still owed some $6,700,000 in respect of the VT13 purchase order. During Q2 and Q3 2011, MicroTech paid a further $4.4 million to Autonomy Inc:

    (1) Of this, $2 million was paid on 21 April 2011.

    (2) A further payment of $2.4 million was paid by cheque dated 1 July 2011 though it is recorded in Autonomy's accounting data as having been made on 30 June 2011. The $2.4 million was paid after receipt of funds received by MicroTech on 1 July 2011 from DiscoverTech, which, in turn, had been received from Autonomy. This is explained further in the context of VT30 below.

337. That still left $2.3 million of the original $11.55 million outstanding. That amount was never paid. Instead, Autonomy Inc wrote off this balance as at 30 September 2011 (three days before the HP acquisition completed). On 12 October 2011, Ms Lisa Harris sent an email stating, "*We need to write-off the attached list of debts on the AR modules as at 30th Sept*". The email was sent to Mr David Mobley and two others (all of whom I assume worked in Autonomy's finance department) and circulated to five others on Autonomy email addresses (who appear from the body of the email to have been working in the "collection teams"). Its attachment included the remaining debt of some $2.3 million due from MicroTech under VT13 as one of those to be written off as of 30 September 2011.

338. Ms Harris confirmed in her oral evidence that the write-offs included $2.3 million owed by MicroTech in respect of the Vatican Library transaction though she insisted that the write-offs were simply an accounting exercise to reflect accounting provisions already made. Dr Lynch, however, was adamant that the write-off *"was done by HP Finance after the acquisition"*. I return to this dispute later.

339. The Defendants rejected the suggestion that the ATIC transaction was contrived purely or predominantly to provide the means for Autonomy to fund MicroTech and enable it to discharge enough of its indebtedness under the VT13 purchase order to assuage Deloitte and the Audit Committee and give the appearance of substance to the transaction. On the contrary, Dr Lynch defended the transaction as having a sound commercial rationale, which was entered into at fair value, and which was approved by Deloitte. Mr Hussain endorsed and adopted his case. Further, the Defendants contended that when MicroTech did build the ATIC, it incorporated most of the features in MicroTech's initial proposal to Autonomy, and did employ the highly experienced staff who had been recruited for it.

340. Dr Lynch's answer to the Claimants' allegations, as adopted by Mr Hussain, can conveniently be dealt with under five headings: (a) what the ATIC comprised; (b) its commercial rationale; (c) the Defendants' case on fair value; (d) Deloitte's review; and (e) construction and use of the ATIC.

341. As to (a) above, the ATIC was designed and subsequently run by Dr Roger Channing, then Chief Technology Officer and senior Vice President at MicroTech ("Dr Channing"). He was highly qualified and had current US secret clearance.

342. The ATIC was proposed to have a number of components. There were three main components which were costed. First, a "MicroData Center", a demonstration of private

cloud technology solutions. Secondly, an "Emerging Technology Center", for MicroTech to highlight Autonomy software in a virtual store front. These were subsequently built. Although its footprint was not large (it was described by Mr Steve Truitt as something you could have (and MicroTech did in fact for a while have) in a *"trailer in the garage"*[33]), Dr Channing explained in the US MicroTech trial that the ATIC was usually in a building, and that "*that impressive room that you saw in the video*[34] *is where the Emerging Technology Center was*," and that that was where he demonstrated Autonomy software. Mr Kalbag explained that that was also demonstrated to him. Thirdly, a "Test, Evaluation and Integration Laboratory". (Dr Channing explained in the US that that was also built, and Autonomy software had been used there).

343. As to (b) in paragraph 340 above and the commercial rationale for the ATIC transaction, Dr Lynch told me that, after initial lack of interest, Autonomy then had a change of heart after Autonomy had installed a system for GCPD (which he explained referred to *"a number of UK intelligence community systems"* generating or storing classified items which Dr Lynch referred to as *"secret squirrel"*). The reason for this change of heart was that Autonomy had no cleared facility to demonstrate its capabilities to these customers. ATIC was identified within Autonomy (principally by the Defendants) as a vehicle which might assist in boosting Autonomy's federal business by showcasing functionalities of multiple products to a wide range of government and intelligence agencies in a purpose-designed security-cleared demonstration centre, staffed by cleared personnel with extensive experience with cleared customers.[35]

344. The federal business within Autonomy was an area that Autonomy was struggling to grow. Mr Kalbag,[36] a salesman in the federal business, accepted this. Mr Kalbag also accepted that this was an area of potential growth. He considered (which the Defendants' closing submissions did not mention) that what Autonomy really needed was wider exposure to more federal customers through *"a wider pool of integrators who are able to sell your product rather than having to go through MicroLink"*[37].[38] Mr Kalbag accepted that in theory having the ATIC was one route to giving Autonomy this increased exposure to federal customers.

---

[33] There was a dispute as to what he meant. The Claimants' presentation gave the impression that he was describing the whole ATIC facility. What he said (in his depiction in the MicroTech proceedings in the US) was that a part of the facility, the MicroData Center (MDC) which was to feature Autonomy-based MicroTech "Private Cloud Solutions", was *"not big. Like you could have it in a trailer in the garage like we did at MicroTech for a while"*. The Defendants argued that he was not saying that the whole ATIC consisted of a large facility in a building. In the MicroTech proceedings, Dr Channing estimated its size as 3,000 sq feet. No evidence was provided to me otherwise.

[34] A video of the facility was shown to the Court in the MicroTech trial in the US, but neither that video nor any other, or any other photographs were provided to me in these proceedings. The Claimants' closing submissions mentioned that Dr Channing conceded when cross-examined that no video had been disclosed in the Microtech proceedings in which any mention was made of Autonomy.

[35] Dr Lynch was plainly intrigued by business with US and other Intelligence agencies and spoke almost conspiratorially of *"the Five Eyes"* services.

[36] Called by the Claimants.

[37] It will be recalled that MicroLink was a small integrator favoured by Autonomy as a VAR, which had what was known as a "GSA Schedule" which meant that it was pre-approved for conducting business with US Federal Government departments and agencies.

[38] Mr Kalbag's theory was that Autonomy should have been making more use of the larger resellers and integrators such as Lockheed Martin. Dr Lynch explained the problem with this approach at paragraph 38.(2) above, it would have made Autonomy beholden to the large Government suppliers, stripping out Autonomy's margin. Mr Kalbag accepted that his approach would have meant paying over margin.

345. Dr Menell described this (in an email dated 16 December 2010 to Mr Scott and Mr Hussain) as potentially providing *"a massive advantage if we can offer in the US a fully accredited storage capability for protectively marked content"*. Mr Hussain (so he wrote to Dr Lynch on 14 December 2010) considered *"the income potential could be huge but would require some investment from us…"*.

346. Mr Kalbag accepted that all the technology described above was likely to be a useful way of showing technology to customers. Mr Kalbag accepted further that the proposed staff were suitable for the work, the staffing structure was appropriate, and the costs were reasonable in terms of running the facility.

347. The personnel costs were a large proportion of the proposed cost to Autonomy of the ATIC: but Mr Kalbag confirmed that the staffing levels in terms of numbers and relevant accumulated expertise were reasonable. The other main cost of the ATIC was equipment related. Mr Kalbag accepted that this was reasonable also.

348. The Defendants relied on a combination of Dr Lynch's description (which omitted (2) and (3) below) and email evidence as demonstrating an orderly approval process for the project, as follows:

    (1) On 5 November 2010 MicroTech had provided Mr Scott with an initial proposal. This costed the facility for only one year, at a cost of $3.745m.

    (2) In the thread of emails is one from Mr David Truitt to Mr Scott dated 5 November 2010 explaining that he had been provided with the Proposal by MicroTech to pass along, and commending the proposal as offering Autonomy *"a unique and strategic advantage that will ultimately result in growing market share within the Federal Sector."*

    (3) Mr Scott forwarded the email to Mr Hussain that same day (5 November), but nothing was done until 13 December 2010 after Mr Scott sent Mr Hussain a reminder, having himself *"Got another ping from MT"*.

    (4) On 14 December 2010 Mr Hussain forwarded the proposal to Dr Lynch, stating:

    > "*Given the success of GCPD and MicroLink in providing services in the federal space I think it may be a good idea to begin considering the need for a data centre and test bed for cleared federal data and projects. I believe the income potential could be huge but would require some investment from us. This is a proposal for Microtech who now owns our GSA schedule I believe. If you think it appropriate, I can review with Pete and get some prices.*"

    (5) Dr Lynch, who understood at the time that the opportunity had an intelligence focus, responded the next day: "*ok I assume this is secret squirrel so pls be careful who you talk to*". Mr Hussain responded that he would run it past Dr Menell (who was cleared) and that only cleared people would be involved. Dr Menell, when asked by Mr Scott whether he supported the purchase, replied:

    > *"Yes, it's a massive advantage if we can offer in the US a fully accredited storage capability through protectively marked content"*

(6) Mr Scott negotiated with MicroTech over the price. On 22 December 2010 Mr Scott emailed Mr Hussain, Dr Menell and Mr Chamberlain with regard to negotiations that he had conducted on the one-year proposal, which he thought was "*the best we will do*". On 24 December 2010 Mr Scott explained to Mr Hussain, Dr Menell and Mr Chamberlain about the disadvantages of the one-year limitation in the proposal, and that he had negotiated pricing under which the best achievable discount involved a 3-year commitment for $9.6m. Again, there has been no suggestion that Mr Scott was acting improperly in this regard. Dr Menell confirmed that the pricing looked "*in the right ball park if not relatively reasonable*". He recommended some due diligence on comparative staff compensation to see if there was any "*wiggle room for further negotiation*". Mr Scott had done the negotiation and did not think there was.

Mr Hussain approved the purchase. Mr Scott then forwarded the approvals, with a deal summary, to Dr Lynch, and followed that up later in the day with a further email *"just to clarify this has already been run by Andy, and Sushovan and Pete have both signed off."*

(7) Dr Lynch approved it in terms which suggested that he had not read the deal summary but referring to an intelligence focus:

> *"Ok i assume this is the spooky stuff... God bless America"*

349. Dr Lynch emphasised the point that in the round this was all a matter of business judgement.

350. Turning to (c) in paragraph 340 above, Dr Lynch's position in his written closing submissions was that (i) the ATIC was purchased at fair value and (ii) the Claimants had not contended otherwise. As to (ii), however, the Claimants attacked the issue of fair value in their own written closing submissions, as has been referred to above. Further, Mr Welham had been instructed to assume for the purpose of his witness statement that *"what Autonomy paid for the right to use the ATIC licence substantially exceeded the value (if any) of the ATIC transaction to Autonomy"*.

351. According to Dr Lynch:

(1) Contrary to the Claimants' case, the increase in the lifespan of the ATIC deal from one year to three years at an almost three-fold increase in the price was not motivated by a wish *"to put MicroTech in funds to pay more of its outstanding debt"*; rather, Autonomy was interested in the arrangement continuing for more than one year because "*most government projects span more than 1 year from inception to award, with larger projects spanning 2 and 3+ years in many cases*". MicroTech offered terms for a multi-year arrangement including up to 5 years for $15.5m. In the event, Autonomy chose the option with the highest discount (16.77%), not the largest payment. This was $9.6m for 3 years.

(2) Mr Kalbag accepted in evidence that the component parts of the cost summary were reasonable.

(3) Dr Menell also thought at the time that the costs were reasonable given what was provided, but pushed Mr Scott to negotiate the best discount. Mr Scott, who had been handling the negotiation, considered the price offered to be "very compelling".

352. The Defendants placed reliance also on the review and approval of Deloitte (see (d) in paragraph 340 above). This was, in a sense, adventitious. In his witness statement, Mr Welham had stated that the ATIC purchase was not brought to Deloitte's attention by Autonomy, and it only became apparent to Deloitte when a member of the Deloitte team came across it when reviewing Autonomy's general ledgers as part of their 2010 audit work.[39]

353. Deloitte reviewed the ATIC purchase to satisfy themselves that it made commercial sense, was at fair value, and was not a reciprocal/barter transaction. In their workpaper they were content with the rationale and price (though they caveated this with the statement that given the uniqueness of the purchase they had no "conclusive evidence"), and were satisfied that it was not a *"barter transaction"*.

354. In relation to the construction and use of the ATIC (see (e) in paragraph 340 above) the Defendants contended that the facility was built, that whilst some features were not yet included it was capable of being and was used successfully for the purposes for which it was of utility to Autonomy, and that there was nothing in the Claimants' case that the purchase was a contrivance to put MicroTech in funds.

355. The ATIC was under construction by MicroTech in the first half of 2011. Dr Channing, who was the main designer, developer and operator of the ATIC and was highly experienced with Autonomy software and an enthusiast about it, also gave evidence in the MicroTech case in the US in relation to the building and subsequent operation of the ATIC. The Defendants referred to the following points, which they maintained were not disputed by Mr Kalbag, who (they said) had *"positively endorsed"* some of them:

(1) The costs of designing, developing, building and operating the ATIC between 2011 and 2014 were in excess of $8m. Mr Kalbag confirmed: "*Well I saw it, so I can imagine that may be a fair price.*"

(2) As regards Autonomy being showcased without its competitors, Dr Channing's evidence was:

> *"Q. Were any of Autonomy's competitors ever a part of ATIC?*
>
> *A. No. The many competitors for Autonomy were other discovery engines, like FAST that Microsoft had and some others, but we never -- no, we never had a competitor for Autonomy. That was always our number one search and discovery engine."*

(3) The centre first opened in July 2011. Demos were run for customers and the ATIC had around 1800 customers from 300 organisations. Contrary to the

[39] Dr Lynch was keen to emphasise that the transaction was visible on Autonomy's ledgers, to which Deloitte had open access, and was not concealed in any way; and that Deloitte always had full access to Autonomy personnel.

Claimants' assertion that the ATIC was not used, Dr Channing's evidence was:

> *"During the time that the facility was open, our best estimate from people signing in, we had about 1,800 visitors they were from about 300 different organizations and 21 different countries. And I did almost all those briefings."*

(4) Dr Channing confirmed that he got the basic form of IDOL to do live demonstrations, though (and it is of some note) he added (a) *"we didn't get any of the peripheral – we would keep asking…"* and (b) demonstrations were further restricted because *"…there was a portal that had numerous applications of Autonomy and they would not give us – we couldn't get access to that portal"* (unless an Autonomy rep. was present who could provide a log-in and password key). He added that Autonomy was in every briefing that he gave.

(5) Dr Channing pitched to commercial clients as well as Government clients, but the Government clients were the majority. The Government institutions to which Dr Channing gave demonstrations included all the "three letter organisations", by which he meant intelligence organisations. They also included health organisations, the Army and Department of Defence.

(6) Mr Kalbag accepted that the ATIC was built and he saw it. He thought it a *"great showcase"* (though see below).

(7) The ATIC was also visited and used by HP. There is also documentary evidence that HP and MicroTech were also planning various demonstrations of Autonomy software in the I2C (i.e. ATIC).

356. The Defendants accepted the Claimants' contention that some features or proposed functionalities of the ATIC were not built; but they submitted that the Claimants had exaggerated this and that in any event they had missed the point, which was that the main features of the ATIC were built. Thus, according to the Defendants:

(1) The Claimants referred to the fact that MicroTech did not construct the "mobile data center" for Autonomy, and sought to make some play of the events relating to this aspect of the facility: but the Defendants depicted this as immaterial on the ground that that part of the proposal was not even costed in the proposal. The Claimants dismissed this as misconceived.

(2) Certain *"more subordinate features of the facility"* were not built; but according to the evidence of Dr Channing in the MicroTech proceedings, the *"medical scientific research solution"* was not provided because MicroTech did not have the requisite licences; the Department of Defence record management and archiving solution was not installed because it was decided that the facility already had *"the ability, with resources, to implement most of the listed capabilities"*; and the Intelligence/Investigative Solution was not provided because, in the event, Autonomy did not want or support it. As to the test evaluation laboratory, Dr Channing's evidence was that this was built, and

had IDOL software running on it (points which were glossed over by the Claimants), albeit that it did not have other Autonomy application software. The Defendants submitted that none of this impacted on the commercial rationale or fair value of the ATIC investment at the time that it was made.

357. In conclusion, the Defendants rejected the Claimants' criticisms of the merits and purpose of the ATIC purchase as *"misguided in any event"*. They depicted the Claimants' presentation as having *"ignored the fact that MicroTech did build the ATIC, and did employ the highly experienced staff who had been recruited for it"*. That is what the funds provided by Autonomy paid for; they did not fund repayment under VT13: the money could not be spent twice. In the round, they accused the Claimants of building a *"distorted case though their witness statements, in particular from Mr Kalbag"* and submitted that when it came to his cross-examination, *"he in fact accepted most of the propositions which undermined [sic] the Claimants' case."*

My assessment of the dispute re the ATIC

358. There was exaggeration on both sides of the record in their respective cases concerning the ATIC.

359. The Claimants' alleged that the ATIC was little if anything more than a room and a vehicle trailer, largely uncompleted, the only purpose of which was to demonstrate MicroTech's own capabilities and which was of no utility to Autonomy because all its demonstrations could be done more easily on a computer screen were overblown.

360. On the other hand, I do not consider that the Defendants' accusation against the Claimants of presenting a highly *"distorted case"* was appropriate or made good; and they never satisfactorily provided any realistic and reasonable explanation of why it was and how it was justified that alone among all the companies whose software was demonstrated in the ATIC, only Autonomy paid for the privilege, still less how the privilege of a three-year non-exclusive licence justified a price in excess of the entire build and most of the manpower bill. I address both sides of the argument in more detail below.

361. It seems clear, for example, that the Claimants' suggestion, based on Mr Kalbag's evidence in his witness statement, that the ATIC facility was not used by Autonomy or any of its customers, was exaggerated. The Defendants could point to a number of emails suggesting some use; and to the evidence of Dr Channing[40] that he demonstrated Autonomy software in the part of the facility referred to as the *"Emerging Technology Center"*, that there were many customers visiting the ATIC including all the *"three letter"* organisations[41], and that he mentioned Autonomy software in every briefing that he gave to visitors to the facility, which he numbered at about 1,800. However, the Claimants' broader point was that, in circumstances where Autonomy had spent $9.6 million on the ATIC licence of just three years, one might have expected an urgent and major effort to use it and deploy all Autonomy's range there: but there is no evidence of any such effort at all.

[40] Dr Channing stated in his US evidence in the MicroTech proceedings that *"People call me an Autonomy zealot because I super-believed in the software and capability and things that it can do for society and government"*.
[41] Signifying (as explained by Dr Channing in his evidence in the MicroTech proceedings in the US) intelligence services, health organisations, the Army and Department of Defense.

362. To take another example: the Defendants submitted that the Claimants had miscast Mr Steve Truitt's evidence given at the US criminal trial that a purpose of the ATIC was to obtain funds with which to pay down MicroTech's debt to Autonomy. They submitted that the Claimants should have made clear that the idea had come from Mr David Truitt and was not that Autonomy should simply fund MicroTech but that MicroTech should come up with a genuine business transaction that would create value. However, Mr Steve Truitt's evidence (admitted as hearsay) gave the strong impression, to my mind, that the transaction was taken up by Autonomy as a useful funding mechanism, even if it may have had other potential advantages (for MicroTech itself especially):

> *"Q. Okay. And -- and is it correct that David Truitt said to you in substance that getting Autonomy involved in some way relating to the ATIC would be a way to get money -- would be a way to get Autonomy to pay money to MicroTech that could be used to pay down what was owed on paper with respect to the Vatican deal?*
>
> *...*
>
> *THE WITNESS: Yeah, in a nutshell.*
>
> *Q. Okay. And --*
>
> *A. The thought being that we could create value in excess of the cost, ideally, and that would be a way that we could do business with them directly that would allow us to earn the money to pay out from under these debts for the ones that weren't closing that we had taken on."*

363. It is dangerous to parse or read too much into hearsay evidence of this kind: but the impression I was left with, having regard to the context, was that funding was at least a major driver, and utility to Autonomy a subsidiary consideration. ATIC was a useful vehicle. That impression is in part informed also by the notably limp way in which Autonomy pursued any opportunity offered by the ATIC facility (see paragraph 361 above).

364. It is also informed by the clear coincidence between the payment made by Autonomy for the ATIC and the use of the funds by MicroTech to discharge MicroTech's debt. The Defendants characterised this as *"an insubstantial point"*. They contended that it was *"unsurprising that Autonomy would want to pay its debts promptly, and even more unsurprising that Autonomy would expect a debtor customer to pay Autonomy when Autonomy made its own payment."* I have not found this convincing: it smacked to me of special pleading and overlooks and seeks to deflect attention away from the manner and circumstances in which the price was agreed and then agreed to be revised, and the way the payment to MicroTech was made. In particular:

    (1) As Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination, in mid-December 2010 Deloitte were pressing to know when MicroTech would pay down its debt.

(2) I agree with the Claimants that the link between agreeing a purchase of an ATIC licence from MicroTech, and the collection of MicroTech's overdue Vatican Library balance, all before imminent year-end, is clear.

(3) The only evidence advanced in support of the price agreed for a one-year deal (of $3.3 million), and then $9.6 million for a three-year deal with a commitment to pay in 2010, was Mr Scott's evidence that this was the product of negotiation; but Mr Scott's evidence indicated that Mr Hussain was involved throughout and he stated at the criminal trial that the impetus behind the increase in the size of the deal came from Mr Hussain, who *"said to me he would like to do a larger deal with MicroTech in the 9 to 10 million-dollar range and asked me to take that back to Dave Truitt, at which point I did, and this reflects the larger deal that Sushovan had asked for"*. That is not a negotiation at all. I see no reason not to accept that evidence, which I consider to be inherently plausible, especially given the pressure to ensure repayment. There was no real evidence of fair value.

(4) The only documentary basis for the ATIC transaction was a one-page purchase order referring to the ATIC as described in MicroTech's Proposal and providing for payment of $9,600,000 on 31 December 2010, without further terms. The Proposal was written in marketing language and made no attempt to define the parties' legal rights and obligations. Mr Scott made the point which I also accept, that typically an investment of almost $10 million would be the subject of detailed terms and conditions.

(5) The obvious inference is that none was needed because the product was not the principal purpose: it was the payment by the end of the year, and not the ATIC or the parties' plans in respect of it, which was the essence of the arrangement. Likewise, there was no specified requirement for, and no evidence was provided of, build progress or the like. MicroTech's "Proposal" for the ATIC was in the form and style of a marketing document, proposing an idea, not a business plan: but that is all Autonomy ever got.

(6) The purchase price covered (a) payment of the full salaries for three years after construction of five MicroTech employees who were to staff the ATIC and (b) the entirety of the construction costs of the ATIC facility, in circumstances where Autonomy got only a three-year non-exclusive licence to have its software displayed in that facility.

(7) Furthermore, the entirety was payable in advance, and was in fact paid in full in advance on 31 December 2010. I agree with the Claimants that none of this made commercial sense.

(8) The acceleration of payment, together with the immediate payment down of MicroTech's debt that same day, is also consistent with, and in my judgment in the context supports, the Claimants' case. So too does the fact that there was apparently no record of the five MicroTech employees (for whose services Autonomy supposedly paid $2,874,000) ever performing any material services for the Autonomy group. The Claimants suggested that the evidence of Dr Channing was that the principal person who was to undertake work was Dr Mayall, who had not spent anything like the 1500 hours per year on

Autonomy-related projects that had been budgeted (and paid) for; and neither Mr Guzman nor Mr Kirsch had spent appreciable time on Autonomy-related projects either; and that in fact only some $200,000 had been spent on the salaries of two engineers who, with Dr Channing himself, did some Autonomy-related work. Yet Autonomy had made no complaint.

(9) In addition, and to my mind of particular importance, there was no evidence that any other company was prepared to or did pay anything in return for the usage of the ATIC. In his deposition in the MicroTech trial, Mr Steve Truitt professed not to know whether that was the case or not. Dr Channing was closely questioned about the issue in the MicroTech trial. It is fair to note that he made clear that he had nothing to do with cash receipts: but he did not make clear, and it was never mentioned, who did. In any event, it seems to me to be most unlikely that he would not have had any awareness at all about cash support for the project, even if he was not involved in accounting for it. He was not able to point to a single contribution from any of the various entities that had their products featured in the ATIC. These included HP: and if HP had contributed any money, it would have been easy for it to have provided evidence accordingly. I infer that it made no payment; and if it did not, the further inference is that others did not either. In other words, Autonomy paid $9.6 million for something for which the others in the non-exclusive group using ATIC paid nothing. That seems to me strongly supportive of the Claimants' case.

(10) Dr Lynch's perceived "trump card" was the notion that since MicroTech built and paid for the facility, the money paid cannot have been intended to be, and could not be, used to discharge indebtedness: as Dr Lynch put it: *"It's a real thing. It's really built"*: *"I don't understand how you spend money twice"*. This is not the answer Dr Lynch appears to have convinced himself it offers. To my mind, it presents another point against his case. There is nothing to suggest that the build costs of the ATIC had to be met immediately. It was a valuable asset in MicroTech's ownership. There is no reason to suppose it had no other means or facility to fund it. Even more obviously, the undisputed fact is that a substantial proportion (amounting to $6.3 million)[42] of the money paid by Autonomy came back to Autonomy in discharge of MicroTech's debt that same day: it is certain that most of Autonomy's money did not fund the ATIC.

(11) Large parts of the ATIC as originally proposed were never built. Dr Channing testified in the MicroTech trial in the US that MicroTech did not construct (i) the mobile data centre featured in its original proposal; or (ii) the *"medical scientific research solution"* promised in that proposal; or (iii) the Department of Defence record management and archiving solution described in the proposal; or (iv) the intelligence investigation solution promised in the solution or (v) a test evaluation laboratory using Autonomy applications. Mr

[42] Of that $6.3 million, $1.89 million was used to settle MicroTech's debt on VT6 (end-user Honeywell) and $4.321 million was used as a part payment on VT13 (end-user Vatican Library). MicroTech made further payments in respect of the remaining debt by payments of $2 million in April 2011 and $2.4 million in early July 2011 (which the Claimants contended was paid using funds received by MicroTech from DiscoverTech, which, in turn, had been received from Autonomy in the context of VT30). The remaining $2.3 million of the total of $11.55 million was never repaid. Instead, it was written off as at 30 September 2011 (three days before the HP Acquisition completed).

Kalbag confirmed that he was not aware of MicroTech having built any of this. Yet no-one from Autonomy ever pressed MicroTech to deliver any of these things, as Dr Channing confirmed in his evidence in the MicroTech trial in the US. Dr Lynch also told me in cross-examination in these proceedings that he took no steps to find out whether MicroTech had built what it had promised. That too is consistent with, and in my judgment supportive of, the Claimants' case that Autonomy did not need the ATIC and was largely indifferent to it: and that it was a funding operation not a commercial investment.

365. As in other contexts, I do not consider the fact that *"Deloitte analysed the transaction and were content with the rationale and price"* is the trump card that the Defendants suggested it was. Had Deloitte known, as I have found to be the case, that (a) Autonomy had no real need or intended use for the ATIC and/or (b) its real objective was to ensure that funds were available to MicroTech to enable it to pay down the majority of its liabilities to Autonomy, they would not have agreed to the accounting treatment accorded to it, as Mr Welham expressly confirmed.

366. The context tells against the depiction of the correlation between payment and repayment being an insubstantial point. The circumstances as a whole, as well as the back-history, tell against the ATIC deal being simply a self-standing arrangement born of a coincidence of interest and the payments and repayments made being in the ordinary course of trade; MicroTech plainly needed to find some way of funding its debt; it had always expected that Autonomy would find or accede to some means of achieving that; the correlation between payment and repayment was legitimately relied on by the Claimants as a further indication that the ATIC deal was the way that was found.

367. In my view, the Defendants' depiction of Mr Kalbag's evidence as in effect helping them more than it hindered them was based on an unfortunately selective reliance on evidence which in the round gave a very different picture. I can take a few examples to illustrate this:

(1) The Defendants submitted that Mr Kalbag *"ultimately agreed with most of the commercial rationale that Autonomy had at the time"*. But in fact, what Mr Kalbag told me was that *"it didn't make sense"*. He elaborated:

> *"I think in general there are many big integrators who have these showcases, so there's nothing wrong with having that. I think the issue is that for most of our software we would do the sales and even MicroLink would do the sales by going to the customer and being at the customer's site. Also Autonomy software was pretty much back end software, it wasn't something that was very exciting graphically. Autonomy specifically decided not to focus on user interfaces as much as possible, so the idea that putting in a very expensive demo centre where, you know, what you're trying to show is archiving or some other thing that you can show on a laptop, it just – to me, it didn't make sense, and at the time I wasn't even aware that we had paid for it so my impressions were based on what I saw when I went to see a demo of it, it didn't even seem applicable to what our sales people were trying to do."*

(2) The Defendants cited Mr Kalbag's evidence that the ATIC was a *"great showcase"*; but they omitted to mention that he went on in the next phrase to say:

> *"The problem was that the majority of that…centre was focused on hardware and not our software. I mean, when I left that demo, I was like this is a great showcase for Microtech possibly - I didn't even know what their business was – but I did not feel that this was, you know – like I would have been super surprised that we had actually paid for it at that time…"*

(3) Later in his cross-examination, though accepting that MicroTech would be *"leveraging its own ability to sell into the federal space and to provide services in the federal space"*, which might assist Autonomy when using MicroTech as a VAR, Mr Kalbag elaborated as follows:

> *"It might help them sell more hardware for Microtech and that was the impression that I left…it was that this is a demo centre for Microtech…this was a Microtech demo centre, and yes, there was a room with our technology in it, but I never brought a customer to it afterwards…I can tell you for sure that the impression that was left on me after seeing the demonstration…was that this was primarily around selling Microtech's capabilities…than the primary purpose being for Autonomy…"*

(4) He responded to the arguments put to him that nevertheless Autonomy might be assisted as follows:

> *"So I mean, you know, I think all of your arguments and what you're asking me is in theory and I would argue, yes; <u>just when you add it all up it doesn't make sense to me.</u>"* [My emphasis]

368. Even if Mr Kalbag tended to overlook that though primarily a showcase for MicroTech the ATIC could be and was a useful and successful display centre for others, there was no logic in Autonomy paying nearly $10 million for 3-years of rights and benefits other companies got for free without limit of time: that did not make sense. Although the Defendants sought to wrap this in the clothing of a business decision, it is still necessary to be satisfied what business rationale lay behind it: and I have not been persuaded that there was a business rationale for paying so much for what others paid nothing. Some other rationale must have driven that decision.

369. In short, I have concluded and find that the real point of the payment (for the ATIC), and its calibration, was to get as much by way of funding as possible to MicroTech to enable it to make payments in part payment of its obligations and in satisfaction of Deloitte's expectations and concerns.

Defendants' knowledge of VT13 and the ATIC transaction

Mr Hussain

370. The Claimants' principal submission with particular reference to Mr Hussain's role in VT13 was that he knowingly misled Deloitte (a) first, by giving them to understand that the Vatican Library had been informed that the licence was to be supplied through MicroTech: they alleged that he must have known that what he was telling Deloitte was untrue, and in any event, there was certainly no factual basis on which he could have believed it to be true; and (b) secondly, by representing to them during the FY 2010 audit that MicroTech had concluded a sale to the Vatican Library and that the only reason why Autonomy had yet to be paid was that the Vatican Library had yet to pay MicroTech.

371. As to (a) in the preceding paragraph 370, Mr Hussain relied on Dr Lynch's evidence that the fact of MicroTech's involvement was well known to the Vatican Library's agents (see paragraph 321 above). As to (b) in that paragraph 370, Mr Hussain made the point that it was quite apparent from, for example, the notes for the audit planning meeting and Dr Lynch's evidence that Deloitte were well aware that there was no deal between MicroTech and the Vatican Library.

372. I have determined (see paragraph 322 above) that Dr Lynch had no basis for supposing that the Vatican Library had been informed of MicroTech's involvement, and his evidence amounted to an acknowledgement that they should have been, in accordance with ordinary procedure. I find that as the Vatican Library later told HP (see their letter referred to in paragraph 306 above) they were not told, and that Deloitte were misled in being given to understand otherwise.

373. I have also determined that Deloitte were told that MicroTech had made a deal with the Vatican Library as end-user, that the Vatican Library had been informed that MicroTech was to be the supplier of the software sold, and that MicroTech would thus receive payment from the Vatican Library. Deloitte's working paper makes the above clear.

374. In my judgment, Mr Hussain knew the true nature of VT13 and did mislead Deloitte.

375. As to the ATIC, the Claimants contended that it was Mr Hussain who fastened on MicroTech's proposal (in an email from Mr David Truitt dated 5 November 2010, which Mr Scott forwarded to Mr Hussain that day) for Autonomy to purchase a licence to use the ATIC as a means of funding MicroTech under cover of a transaction which could be presented as having a separate commercial purpose; and that Mr Hussain's true objective was demonstrated by (a) his emails chasing for closing of the deal to enable MicroTech to make a payment which would assuage Deloitte's concerns about its outstanding obligations and (b) the impetus he gave to increasing the licence fee payable by Autonomy.

376. Against this, Mr Hussain adopted Dr Lynch's case that the ATIC transaction had a rational commercial purpose at the time it was made, and that no complaint could legitimately be based on his part in representing the transaction accordingly to Deloitte. In his written closing submissions, Mr Hussain summarised the position as follows:

> *"it would be fair to say that Cs' case that Mr Hussain misrepresented that there was a commercial rationale for the transaction collapsed at trial. Sameer Kalbag conceded that AU was struggling to grow its federal business; that it had insufficient exposure to US government agencies; that the use of a demonstration unit was a recognised way to increase exposure and to showcase*

the functionalities of software; and that ATIC was a means of achieving these ends. When he was shown MicroTech's proposal document for the ATIC he agreed that it was a useful way of showing technology to customers. The furthest his evidence ultimately went was that it was a matter of business judgement whether the ATIC was the best route for addressing Autonomy's admitted need to improve its federal business, or whether there was an alternative or lower cost route. Indeed, it emerged during his evidence that his alternative proposal of demonstrating AU's software to US intelligence agencies on a laptop would not have worked: Mr Kalbag did not have any clearance level to do such a thing."

377. For the reasons I have stated at some length above, I disagree with this assessment. Mr Hussain was, I consider, the principal proponent of the ATIC deal as the means of enabling a substantial payment down of MicroTech's debt before the year-end as Deloitte had emphasised was important and they expected. In my judgment, he knew that the ATIC deal was primarily a means of enabling MicroTech to pay and Autonomy to honour MicroTech's expectation that it would not be "left on the hook"; and Mr Hussain had "guilty knowledge" of the impropriety of the accounting treatment both of the ATIC deal and of VT13 accordingly.

Dr Lynch

378. Dr Lynch, who was cross-examined at some length about his knowledge and involvement in VT13, accepted that the project was certainly a contender for the *"biggest ever single deal done by Autonomy"* and that he was well aware of it at the time. He was also *"kept appraised of how it was going"*. He emphasised, however, that he *"wasn't at the level of actually negotiating it or doing the technical details…"*. He denied being aware of any impropriety in the transaction or the accounting treatment of it, and he submitted that the Claimants had not shown *"even the vestige of a case"* to show that he was.

379. I do not agree. In my judgment, it is more likely than not, and I find, that Dr Lynch was well aware that MicroTech's introduction into the Vatican Library deal as a VAR (of which he accepted he was aware at the time) was solely to enable Autonomy to book revenue from a transaction to which MicroTech was (except for the purposes of remuneration) in substance a placeman. Although Dr Lynch told me he thought that "agents" for the Vatican Library knew of MicroTech's involvement this did not carry conviction (and I have determined against it above).

380. I think it more likely than not, and I find that at the time (a) Autonomy had had to resort to a VAR precisely because funding for the Vatican Library project (from the unnamed *"Mexican billionaire"* from whom Dr Lynch told me a large donation had been on the brink) had fallen through, and the deal was bound to be substantially delayed since the Vatican Library was unwilling to fund the project itself; (b) Autonomy had no intention of stepping back from the negotiations and no intention or expectation of MicroTech becoming involved from the US in any way in such negotiations (for which MicroTech was singularly badly placed and ill-equipped in any event); (c) MicroTech had limited reserves and could not realistically have taken on an $11 million risk without assurances that it regarded as water-tight (Dr Lynch's suggestion to me that he would have been

happy on behalf of cash-rich Autonomy to pay such a sum for the opportunity of being involved in such an important project being entirely inappropriate in the case of cash-strapped MicroTech).

381. I also consider it more likely than not, from the available evidence and my own impression when Dr Lynch was cross-examined and sought to dispute what was put to him along these lines and to blame Deloitte that (i) Dr Lynch was aware that Mr Hussain had told Deloitte that the Vatican Library had been informed of the sale to MicroTech, and knew this was not correct; and (ii) he was also aware that Deloitte was consistently given the impression, which was reflected in their reports which were sent to Dr Lynch, that MicroTech was dealing with and expecting payment from the Vatican Library as end-user, and that this was untrue.

382. In summary, I have concluded and find that Dr Lynch knew that the sale to MicroTech was not intended or expected to result in any substantive change in the way Autonomy dealt with the Vatican Library in respect of the goods "sold", or in the way the goods would be made available to the Vatican Library if the sale still hoped for by Autonomy to the Vatican Library did eventuate. He knew further that Deloitte had been given to understand otherwise, because it was necessary for the purpose of their approval of revenue recognition that the "sale" to MicroTech should be regarded as having real substance. This was typical of a pattern of which he was more generally aware, and a further demonstration of his "guilty knowledge" in respect of all the impugned VAR sales.

383. The Claimants also cross-examined Dr Lynch in respect of the ATIC transaction, again at some length. I have set out the process by which the proposal was assessed and the sequence of steps leading up to approval of the proposal in paragraph 348 above. Dr Lynch's position was that:

(1) (as he put it in cross-examination):

"The decision by Autonomy to buy it had nothing to do with the collateral effect of creating cash flow for MicroTech, Of course MicroTech still has to spend all the money to build this thing, so it's not getting free money here. It can't use the money twice."

(2) He was not involved in the detail; for example, he maintained in cross-examination that he did not even know that the proposal was originally for a one-year deal.

384. Dr Lynch's more general involvement is clear. Also clear to me, from my observation of him when giving his evidence, was the particular pride and interest he had in the application and use of IDOL in the intelligence community and its usage in the *"secret squirrel"* sphere[43]. I feel sure that had the purpose of the ATIC deal been, or predominantly been, to provide the means of marketing to the *"Five Eyes",* Dr Lynch would have made sure that he was closely involved in it. He liked what he called *"the spooky stuff"*.

---

[43] Dr Lynch explained in cross-examination: *"GCPD…represents a number of UK intelligence community systems and the reference to "secret squirrel" is a reference to classified items."*

385. As it was, however, Dr Lynch told me he *"wasn't particularly involved in the details"*. He told me that he had no memory of the original one-year proposal because *"it wouldn't have been very useful for just one year"*, and said that would not really have been of interest. He rejected as inaccurate the suggestion put to him that *"it went from a one-year deal to a larger deal because Mr Hussain wanted to do a deal in the 9 to $10 million range"*; and he denied that Mr Hussain had explained to him that Autonomy needed to make a large purchase to put MicroTech in funds to pay down its outstanding debt, repeating once more (as he did again and again) that he could not see *"how you could use the money twice in that hypothesis"*. He added that although payment of the debt by MicroTech was important *"you know, at the end of the day they can just have a provision."*

386. Dr Lynch thought he was more likely to have discussed the transaction with Dr Menell than any of Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Kanter, since Dr Menell was cleared to a high level and had been identified by Mr Hussain as the person to make the recommendation on the transaction. He shrugged off Mr Kalbag's evidence as *"the sort of idle musings of a mid-level sales person…"* and Mr Kalbag's suggestion that Autonomy did presentations off a laptop as *"just crazy"*.

387. Although he understood that the licence that Autonomy obtained was stated to be non-exclusive, so that there was nothing in it to stop a competitor company's software being showcased in the facility, he told me in cross-examination that there was *"an arrangement that they wouldn't put competitive software in there…"* He had not mentioned this before, and when challenged as to whether that was documented he explained that this was his *"understanding of the arrangement"* and saying that he was *"pretty sure that it was agreed at some point"*. He added that in any event there was:

> *"also the de facto reality on the ground which is, if they had put a competitor in there, then they were reliant on us for their livelihood, it would have been the dog that bit the hand that fed it."*

388. There was, to my mind, something in this, notwithstanding that (as the Claimants remonstrated) it had not been a point made by Dr Lynch before, and it was advanced in a somewhat smuggled way. There was some support for this in the original Proposal and in the evidence of Dr Channing in the US MicroTech proceedings. In the Proposal, it was stated that *"MicroTech envisions the ATIC as the primary Autonomy solutions demonstration center on the U.S. East Coast"*. Dr Channing's evidence (admitted in these proceedings as hearsay) was that (a) the reason why the licence was non-exclusive was because Autonomy's software needed hardware infrastructure (some of it supplied by EMC, but with other makes, according to Dr Channing, *"that our Government partners might be using"*); but that (b) none of Autonomy's direct competitors in unstructured data (such as Microsoft FAST) were showcased: MicroTech *"never had a competitor for Autonomy. That was always our number one search and discovery engine"*. In addition to the fact that Autonomy had few competitors in that particular niche anyway (Microsoft's FAST being the only one mentioned), I accept that showcasing them would have been most unwise for MicroTech if it valued its connection with Autonomy (as of course it did).

389. However, even if accepted, it does not dispose of the point that the ATIC was the showcase for a variety of hardware and hardware/software companies who made no

payment at all. Nor does it address the point raised by Dr Lynch's own justification: if, because it valued its relationship with Autonomy, MicroTech would not have hosted and showcased a direct competitor, the payment did not secure Autonomy any more compliance than would have been afforded to it as a matter of MicroTech's commercial interest in any event. In my assessment, it is not likely that Dr Lynch did not appreciate these fairly self-evident points at the time.

390. On the question of fair value, Mr Kalbag had already given evidence to the effect that the price for all the component parts of the ATIC was reasonable (see paragraphs 346 and 347 above); the Claimants put to Dr Lynch that nevertheless the amount paid for a three-year licence was so disproportionate to the overall cost of the ATIC itself as to be commercially irrational. Dr Lynch did not accept this:

> "*No, I don't agree. What we had was access to the facility and that had a set of costs. Those costs actually pretty much line up with what we paid, plus a small amount of profit for MicroTech. And let's just remember, this thing was built. The leases were taken on, the equipment was put in, the systems were set up. People with stella-cleared CVs were employed and the whole thing existed. That cost the money and you can go through the costing and it would pretty soon come out to what we paid plus a bit of profit for the poor people that are doing the work and it was all done. You cannot spend the money twice, it's that simple.*"

391. Dr Lynch was asked about Mr Kalbag's idea that a better solution for growing federal sales was to give a licence to an integrator which had its own demonstration centre. This was a question of business judgment, and Mr Kalbag's idea was in any event flawed. Dr Lynch explained this:

> **"***Q. Do you recall that Mr Kalbag said it would have been much cheaper to have given Autonomy software licence to an integrator which already had its own demonstration centre?*
>
> *A. Yes, again, what we're doing here is getting the sort of idle musings of a mid-level salesperson on what you might or might not do. Let me take you through why that's a bad idea.*
>
> *Q. No, let me ask my question. Do you accept that that is true, that it would have been much cheaper to give an Autonomy software licence to an integrator which already had its own demonstration centre?*
>
> *A. No, because that integrator would then control the customer and would take margin off of us which would cost us a lot of money and they may well bid our competitors against us which would also cost us a lot of money, so it would turn out to be a lot more expensive in the end. So the problem with these integrators is they have power with the customer, they control the customer and then they make their suppliers bid to supply them. So the reason why we have to have an independent channel is that we don't get*

squeezed like that. The point being that MicroTech was sufficiently dependent on its Autonomy business that if, for example, we'd seen them bid our competitor into a situation, we would have had them under control, whereas if, for example, it was Lockheed Martin, then all Lockheed Martin would do is it would go around four or five to get the lowest price from the suppliers and it would keep the margin for itself. So a wholly unrealistic understanding of the reality of how these things work.

Q. There's no evidence that anyone even thought about that alternative before deciding to pay $9.6 million to MicroTech?

A. I spent about a decade working with that alternative and continually them doing exactly what I've just described of using their power in the marketplace to cram down their suppliers. What was really important in these areas was to have an independent route that you controlled to the end customer. You needed to have people that could talk to the DIA or the CIA or the NSA or the NRO. As soon as you were going through Lockheed Martin, they would get you and the way they made money was to give a fixed price to the customer and then get the suppliers to bid against each other and you would lose all your margin because you didn't control the customer."

392. Dr Lynch was equally dismissive when asked about Mr Kalbag's evidence that he could demonstrate software on his laptop:

"Okay, I don't want to use the word "absurd" but in a first meeting in a normal commercial environment you might turn up and show something to someone on a laptop, but in terms of any normal part of the sales process for multi-million dollar software sales, you can't show it on a laptop. Actually in this market you can't even show it on a laptop because you're not allowed to take laptops into the customers. Because the customers are sensitive customers, you're not allowed to take in electronic equipment. So, for example, if you go and visit the DIA, or over here their equivalents, you have to leave your phones and your laptops and everything in a special building away from the main building because you can't take it in. When Meg Whitman -- when I took Meg Whitman in to meet these customers, even she had to leave everything and her bodyguard outside. So the idea that you do this business off of a laptop is just crazy. The process for selling software like this is you may well have a first meeting and if it's not a cleared customer and you can show a laptop, you might put something on a screen. But then the normal procedure is to do a POC, which is a proof of concept, and a proof of concept is set up to show what the software can do, but also how it scales, how reliable it is, and that requires setting up a big server, and quite often you'll have to take data and show the customer what you can do with the data. That whole

> *process of a POC can take three to four months. In the cleared case, what they will often do is give you analogous data, so data that's like their problem but it isn't actually their problem and then they want to do things like test scaling, so they want to test what it does under very large volumes, which of course you can't possibly put near a laptop."*

393. But in my assessment, Dr Lynch's aggressive attempts to dismiss Mr Kalbag's evidence was intended to deflect attention away from the unanswerable points mentioned previously: that no-one else paid to be showcased, that the primary beneficiary of the showcasing was MicroTech, and that the money it paid did not get Autonomy anything more than it had or had the means of obtaining already.

394. I accept that Deloitte approved the ATIC license deal. However, (a) there is no evidence that Deloitte were told or aware of the matters summarised in the preceding paragraphs, and they appear to have assumed that any entity which wanted to have the right to use the facility would have to pay a licence fee; and (b) Deloitte did not feel they had sufficient evidence[44] of fair value to opine, and left it instead to be dealt with by a representation letter confirming that the transaction "*was conducted on an arms' length basis and at fair value."*

395. In the round, I cannot accept Dr Lynch's case that he simply relied on others' assessment of the ATIC; and on what he knew he thought that it was a proper business transaction, and was entitled to do so. In my judgment, it is more likely than not that he was aware that the need and size of the payment was dictated by the necessity of providing funds to MicroTech to enable it to pay a substantial proportion of its outstanding debt at a time when Deloitte had expressed concerns. His suggestion that it was not a requirement, and that it was always an option simply to make a provision in the accounts, was disingenuous: the use of VARs to accelerate revenue when needed, which had become an essential part of the strategy to sustain the share price, would have been imperilled and probably fatally undermined.

Summary

396. I have spent some time on VT13 and the ATIC transaction, not only because of their size, and the extended analysis undertaken by both sides, but also because these transactions, and their inter-play, seem to me to illustrate in highly coloured terms features or characteristics of the VAR transactions more generally. The transactions were not typical; but they are illustrative.

397. In my judgment,

    (1) VT13 was contrived to generate recognised revenue in a substantial sum to cover a shortfall in circumstances where, to the knowledge of the Defendants, there was no real prospect of an end-user deal in the near or medium term.

[44] Deloitte stated that *"given the uniqueness of this purchase and the customer relationship being offered, we have no conclusive evidence, other than the signed contract and our knowledge of the sales potential of future deals into the US federal space to support this value further."* Since *"conclusive"* evidence in its literal sense must be rare in such a context, I take this to mean sufficient evidence on which to justify a conclusion. It is to be noted that there was no *"signed contract"* other than the purchase order.

(2) MicroTech was retained as a VAR as a matter of urgency because it was a friendly VAR which could be relied on to take on an enormous payment obligation such as to pose an existential risk because it knew the payment obligation would never be enforced unless and until Autonomy found the means of either funding or dissolving it.

(3) The ATIC was the means found to fund the obligation, and the Defendants knew that that was its true primary purpose.

(4) No revenue should have been recognised from the VAR sale to MicroTech. Both Defendants knew that too.

VT25: MicroTech/DoI Q4 2010

398. By comparison with VT13, VT25 was a simple transaction, but it also exhibits many of the characteristics of that and other impugned VAR transactions. It is chiefly remarkable for (a) the desperation about the prospects for software sales that appears from email exchanges to have been the context for Mr Hussain's resort to a VAR transaction at the end of Q4 2010, and (b) the issue of credit notes to MicroTech when no end-user deal materialised.

399. In November and early December 2010, Autonomy had been negotiating with an existing client, the US Department of Interior ("DoI"), a potential deal for the restructuring of DoI's Digital Safe hosting arrangements for an upfront fee (which Autonomy could and intended to recognise as revenue). The prospect of a deal closing within Q4 2010 had seemed positive until (as recorded in an email dated 13 December 2010 from Mr Sullivan to Mr Hussain and others in Autonomy, but not Dr Lynch) DoI decided, for *"strategic"* rather than financial reasons, to *"pass"* on Autonomy's offer and instead undertake a full procurement exercise and then *"evaluate all options"*.

400. A deal with DoI had been one of three (the others being BofA and Deutsche Bank) on which Mr Hussain had been pinning his hopes of (in his own words) *"covering up"* a shortfall on revenue forecasts for the quarter in what he described in an email to Dr Lynch dated 10 December 2010 as bad trading conditions with revenue falling away *"completely",* calling for *"radical action, really radical…"*.

401. There was a longer lead time than usual before a VAR transaction was arranged: but the evidence does not reveal what happened prior to the issue of a purchase order. The purchase order for the transaction ("the VT25 purchase order") was issued on 31 December 2010 and was (as usual in the case of MicroTech deals) governed by the terms of the June 2006 MicroTech VAR agreement which expressly provided that MicroTech was obliged to pay Autonomy for its orders irrespective of its sale to an end-user. The licence fee was $4,000,000, plus a first-year support fee of $200,000.

402. The VT25 purchase order contained a provision also found in substantially the same form in VT20 (with Capax Discovery, see paragraph 846 below), as follows:

> *"Although End-User and VAR currently anticipate entering into such a license transaction, in the unlikely event End-User, instead, enters into a direct agreement with Autonomy or its affiliate to licence the Software, then VAR shall distribute the Software to End-User upon receipt of written notice (which may be via email) from Autonomy ('Distribution Notice') of such*

> *direct license transaction. In the event distribution is accomplished by reason of a Distribution Notice, upon such time as Autonomy has received payment in full for such license fee and support fee, Autonomy shall pay to VAR an amount equal to the license fee paid by End-User to Autonomy less the Licence fee described above…, but in no event more than US$400,000, as full compensation in connection with VAR's efforts in securing End-User's procurement of a license of Autonomy software."*

403. The Claimants submitted that this language was misleading in that (a) (according to them) the DoI had no intention of contracting with anyone to buy the Autonomy software licence and had made (according to the email of 13 December 2010 referred to in paragraph 399 above) a *"final"* and *"strategic"* decision to *"pass"* on the deal; (b) if (hypothetically) the DoI had been going to buy Autonomy software, it would have done so directly from Autonomy and not from MicroTech; and (c) the software included Digital Safe: only Autonomy could implement, manage and service a Digital Safe Archive, and so MicroTech could not offer or provide any value to the transaction.

404. The Claimants further claimed that the language actually misled Deloitte. They relied on Mr Welham's evidence in his witness statement that the true facts would have been relevant to Deloitte's assessment of revenue recognition. The Claimants further claimed that Deloitte was also misled by untrue audit confirmation letters, signed by Mr Steve Truitt, confirming the absence of any side agreement or any continuing managerial involvement. They relied on Mr Steve Truitt's evidence in the US criminal trial (adduced as hearsay in these proceedings) as follows:

> *"Q. All right. With respect to where it says no side letters or other agreements, was that true?*
>
> *A. No, because of, again, the fact that I was no longer worried about somehow getting the money to pay them.*
>
> *Q. And in the bottom here they've added (reading): "We acknowledge that Autonomy Corporation PLC retains no continuing managerial involvement in the delivery of this product or service other than stipulated in the license agreement." Was that true?*
>
> *A. It was not true and to my discredit, I didn't even notice the language at the time. But, no, it was not true. …"*

405. The Claimants also stressed Mr Steve Truitt's further evidence at the same trial as follows:

> *"Q. After you signed this purchase order –*
>
> *A. Yeah.*
>
> *Q. -- did you or, to your knowledge, anyone else associated with MicroTech attempt to sell this software to the Department of the Interior?*
>
> *A. No.*

Q. Did you help Autonomy in its efforts to attempt to sell this software?

A. No.

Q. Did you discuss with Autonomy what would be the terms of sale to the Department of the Interior?

A. We didn't.

Q. I'm sorry?

A. No.

Q. Okay. Did you – did Autonomy run by you terms that it was considering offering to the Department of the Interior or that it had offered to the Department of the Interior?

A. No."

406. As explained below, little was said of VT25 in Dr Lynch's submissions and there was little if any specific evidence suggestive of any participation in or knowledge of it after Mr Hussain's anxious email (see paragraph 400 above); but those submissions advanced the following correctives of what were described as the Claimants' *"tendentious"* criticisms of the transaction:

    (1) It was contended that the Claimants were wrong to suggest that DoI had made a final decision such that a licence could not have been sold to them and that in fact the DoI were still considering purchasing a licence. I am not persuaded by the email provided in support of this since it appears from the email that the license concerned was not for restructuring of the DoI's Digital Safe hosting arrangement, but for a smaller deal (still in excess of $2,000,000 though) for an email archiving system. In my view, even if the DoI had not finally closed the door on any deal when writing in December 2010, they had made clear that it was uncertain that they would.

    (2) The Defendants contended that the Claimants were also wrong to suggest that Mr Steve Truitt accepted in his evidence in the US criminal trial that the DoI would only ever have bought from Autonomy and not from MicroTech. Dr Lynch contended that the *"whole thrust"* of his evidence was that he was going on risk and intended to make the sales to the end-users with whom he would be establishing relationships. However, I cannot accept that either, at least in the general terms in which it was put. Later in the same transcript of Mr Steve Truitt's evidence, he was asked again about the DoI transaction; and he expressly accepted that that deal *"was Autonomy's to take care of*". He never envisaged negotiating with or concluding an end-user sale to DoI.

407. As it happened, and as was common ground between Dr Lynch and the Claimants[45], Autonomy failed to conclude any deal with DoI. Tellingly, the upshot of there being no end-user deal was not that Autonomy required payment from MicroTech. Rather, it was

[45] There was a footnote in Mr Hussain's submissions which appeared to suggest otherwise; but it seems clear that Dr Lynch and the Claimants were right.

that on the last business day before the HP Acquisition closed, Mr Chamberlain emailed Ms Helen Ku (an Autonomy revenue manager) stating *"DOI – we need to credit the $4.2m (4 invoices) and invoice direct. Have we not invoiced the DOI directly."* The next day Ms Ku notified Ms Gustafsson and Ms Anderson: *"We will reverse this revenue tmr."* Four credit notes, each dated 30 September 2011, were then issued to MicroTech, writing off the entire amount of MicroTech's debt. The obvious explanation in the circumstances is that this honoured the assurance that had been provided, that one way or another MicroTech would not be left on the hook.

408. As usual, the Defendants relied on the approval of VT25 by Deloitte both as confirming its propriety and as an answer in any event (that is, whether Deloitte were right or wrong) to any suggestion that the Defendants knew that the accounting treatment of the transaction was improper.

409. Deloitte certainly reviewed VT25, including the provision referred to in paragraph 402 above (which they noted in their report was *"common to almost all VAR purchase orders"*). They were satisfied that revenue recognition was satisfactory. They do not, however, appear to have been told or aware that the end-user deal with DoI as originally contemplated was no longer on the cards, and that any surviving prospect of an end-user deal depended on the inherently uncertain outcome of a full procurement exercise.

410. The Claimants relied on Mr Welham's evidence in his witness statement that this *"would have been relevant to Deloitte's assessment of the revenue recognition criteria"* and that *"if it was aware of this, I would have expected Autonomy management to have told us this information"*. His evidence did not, and could not, anticipate what the result would have been; and I take it that in this context he accepted, as in other similar contexts, that the actual response would have depended on a *"whole series of conjectures about what might or might not have happened"* (to adopt the way Mr Miles put a similar issue to Mr Welham, and Mr Welham accepted). Deloitte were also unaware that MicroTech neither intended nor was it expected to negotiate with DoI, and it was not in its contemplation to on-sell to DoI.

411. In those circumstances, the fact of Deloitte's approval cannot assist the Defendants; on the contrary, the fact that they were misled in the ways indicated tells against them, particularly as regards the state of mind of anyone responsible for their instruction as to the characteristics of VT25.

412. I have concluded in the circumstances described above that it was wrong for the sale to MicroTech in VT25 to be treated as generating recognised revenue.

Did the Defendants have "guilty knowledge" about VT25?

413. I turn to the second issue, as to whether the Defendants had "guilty knowledge".

Mr Hussain

414. The Claimants asserted that Mr Hussain must have been aware of VT25 and its accounting treatment *"since it is he who had to approve the recognition of the revenue."* No further evidence was suggested that he knew that its accounting treatment was wrong than is summarised above.

415. I consider that by this time, late December 2010, the Defendants' obsession with meeting and beating revenue forecasts had become so ingrained that it displaced rational analysis of individual cases on the part of Mr Hussain and those concerned within Autonomy. The expedient of resorting to a friendly VAR if an anticipated end-user deal was delayed or likely to be delayed was now tried, tested, and virtually automatic. Mr Hussain had devised the template and would have expected it to be followed with such alteration as ensured revenue recognition in the quarter for which it had been anticipated, with any appropriate arrangements to be made to rescue and recompense the VAR if the deal went direct or did not eventuate.

416. The credit notes were issued on 30 September 2011. The Claimants contended that the scale on which Autonomy *"cleaned up unpaid debts"* during the *"Dark Period"* was so extraordinary that:

> *"it is inconceivable that Mr Hussain was not involved (as Ms Harris agreed she would have expected, and as Mr Scott's evidence of Mr Hussain's desire to make the VARs whole also implies)".*

417. I would accept the likelihood that Mr Hussain was involved, and that the person in direct control of the operation, Mr Chamberlain, was directed by Mr Hussain. I consider later, in the context of an analysis of write-offs in the *"Dark Period",* whether that in turn is further evidence of *"guilty knowledge"*.

Dr Lynch

418. Dr Lynch denied any involvement in the transaction. The Claimants did not allege that Dr Lynch had any specific knowledge of or involvement in VT25 (beyond the email from Mr Hussain mentioned above before any VAR deal, when a direct deal seemed on the cards). However, they invited me to infer that:

> *"Mr Hussain was acting within the scope of a broad authorisation from Dr Lynch to call upon friendly VARs as and when required to plug gaps in revenue."*

419. Further, and with reference to the release of MicroTech's liability after no end-user deal could be secured, they added that it was not:

> *"...plausible that write-offs and credit notes on such scale could have taken place without the agreement of Dr Lynch – whose authority, it will be recalled, was required for all purchases over $30,000."*

420. There was nothing else in the Claimants' Closing Submissions about this, and there was a dispute as to whether Dr Lynch had been cross-examined relevantly about the transaction. If by this it is meant that he was not asked questions about the transaction prior to the issue of credit notes, I think that the Defendants are right that any challenge to him about the specifics of VT25 was perfunctory. But the Claimants' real points, as summarised above, went to (a) the general issue as to whether Dr Lynch was aware of

the overall use of VARs and his approval of it and (b) the more particular issue as to the issue of credit notes in the *"Dark Period"* to extract MicroTech from any exposure.

421. The Defendants dealt brusquely with the latter (the issue of credit notes), submitting that *"this was a post-transaction event, which could not have affected the original recognition of revenue."* They submitted further that:

> *"In circumstances where the end-user had chosen to deal directly with Autonomy so that Autonomy received payment for the software from the end-user it was a sensible business decision to cancel the reseller deal. The alternative would have been to leave the reseller on the hook despite Autonomy having taken the customer opportunity. That would have been damaging to the relationship."*

422. Those submissions are readily understandable but (at least in the context of VT25) ignore three important points. First, I agree with the Claimants that events post-transaction may (though they may not) reflect and expose the anterior intentions of Autonomy at the time of the VAR transaction. Secondly, in the case of VT25, there was no end-user deal, so the logic offered for cancellation of its exposure is inapplicable. Thirdly, the inapplicability of the logic offered is further confirmed by the fact that in VT25, there was never any question of the end-user electing as between MicroTech and Autonomy: MicroTech was, from its point of view, never involved at all.

423. In summary, I consider that even if Dr Lynch had no or little specific knowledge of VT25 at the time of the VAR transaction, the fact remains that he was well aware of and had approved the strategy of which VT25 was an example. I do not consider that it is likely, or even conceivable, that such a transaction would have been implemented without Dr Lynch's approval.

424. Further, even if (as I think is likely) Dr Lynch was not aware of the specific event of the issue of a credit note, the issue of credit notes and other means of extinguishing VAR liability of which again VT25 provides an example must have been approved by him. I consider later, in the context of an analysis of write-offs in the *"Dark Period",* whether that in turn shows awareness of some impropriety.

VT32 and VT33: MicroTech/Bank of Montreal and Xerox: Q1 2011

425. In March and April 2011, Autonomy had been negotiating with Bank of Montreal and Xerox Corporation ("Xerox") an Autonomy software sale, in the latter case with a view to Xerox on-licensing the software to General Motors Corporation ("GM").

426. In the case of the Bank of Montreal, the deal appeared to have been given the *"Green light"* (as Mr Sass informed Mr Hussain by email dated 23 March 2011, circulated to Mr Egan, to which Mr Hussain immediately replied *"yeehah"*). However, on 30 March 2011, as the end of the quarter fast approached, the Bank of Montreal's representative (Ms Joanne Lafreniere) informed Mr Patrick Ryan (in Sales) at Autonomy that she had *"found out that the size of this contract with [sic] require the signature of our Group Head. We will not be able to get this done by eod tomorrow."* Although Mr Ryan sought to press by threatening in his email in reply that the *"deal dies tomorrow – and will cost BMO millions. No questions asked"*, Bank of Montreal was not to be moved away from

its prescribed processes. When, on the evening of 31 March 2011, Mr Sass sent Mr Egan, Ms Eagan and Mr Hussain a status update on the transactions he was trying to close, he stated as regards Bank of Montreal *"not today"*. That same day, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch a blank email headed *"flagging a problem at Bank of Montreal – 3m – sass on his way there now."*

427. Similarly, Autonomy was not able to conclude a transaction with Xerox by the end of the quarter (Q1 2011). The reason given by Xerox, according to an email from Mr Sass to Mr Hussain and Mr Egan dated 28 March 2011 recounting a telephone conversation with Xerox, was that it could not approve the deal at that time, because of a spending freeze imposed in consequence of an earthquake in Japan, but that the freeze would not stop the deal and Xerox remained eager and expected closing to happen in early Q2.

428. On 31 March 2011, Mr Scott sent the following purchase orders to Steve Truitt, who duly (and it seems automatically) issued them on MicroTech's behalf:

(1) One for end-user Bank of Montreal, with a licence fee of $2.88 million plus $144,000 for annual maintenance and $50,000 for annual premium support (VT32); and

(2) One for end-user Xerox, with a licence fee of $1.17 million, plus $58,500 support and maintenance (VT33).

429. Both purchase orders were issued under the June 2006 MicroTech VAR agreement, summarised at paragraph 214 above.

VT32: MicroTech/Bank of Montreal

430. Mr Steve Truitt's evidence in his MicroTech deposition (admitted as hearsay in these proceedings) was that (a) prior to issuing the purchase order he did not contact Bank of Montreal to establish the prospects of a deal being concluded; (b) MicroTech did not refer Bank of Montreal to Autonomy; (c) MicroTech did nothing after submitting the purchase order to try to sell the software to Bank of Montreal and (d) MicroTech did not control pricing or any of the terms of the Bank of Montreal deal.

431. MicroTech provided written confirmations to Deloitte on 19 April, 12 July and 14 July 2011 that the invoices listed in the confirmations relating to the Bank of Montreal deal were proper and due, that there were no "*side letters or other agreements*", and that Autonomy retained no continuing managerial involvement.

432. A direct deal was concluded between Autonomy and Bank of Montreal in June 2011 for a licence fee of $2.8 million.

433. In August 2011, Autonomy issued credit notes to MicroTech in respect of the amounts owing under the March 2011 purchase order. The Claimants drew particular attention to the fact that on 16 August 2011, Mr Steve Truitt emailed Mr Scott, subject "*Bank of Montreal*", stating, "*Just got three credit memos from Chris Chu for Bank of Montreal Invoices. What is the back story on those? Thanks*". The Claimants submitted that it was surely remarkable that Mr Steve Truitt should receive a credit from Autonomy worth $3 million and not even know why this had happened. Mr Scott asked Mr Chamberlain, who explained, "*We had to bill direct as the BMO deal closed directly. Deal credited*

from MT's books". Mr Scott forwarded Mr Chamberlain's explanation to Mr Steve Truitt.

434. The Claimants further submitted that Mr Chamberlain would not have credited these sums back to MicroTech without, at least, the authorisation of Mr Hussain; and that the decision to credit these amounts demonstrates that MicroTech's role was to act as a placeholder, and remain entirely disengaged while Autonomy proceeded to negotiate an end-user deal.

435. As always, the Defendants sought to rely on Deloitte's approval. Deloitte had reviewed VT32 and approved the decision to recognise revenue in respect of it in the amount of the purchase price. However, the Claimants' case, based on Mr Welham's evidence at the US criminal trial, was that he did not see the direct agreement between Autonomy and Bank of Montreal until he gave his evidence in chief, and that when they undertook their review Deloitte were not aware of the direct deal. He said in his witness statement in these proceedings that Deloitte:

> *"routinely requested that Autonomy provide us with all copies of licence agreements over $100,000 and…we had made clear to Autonomy management our concerns about VAR transactions being replaced by direct agreements with the end-user".*

436. The Claimants submitted that in those circumstances Autonomy's management were required but failed to bring these matters to Deloitte's attention during their Q2 2011 review, and that this can only have been a

> *"deliberate attempt to circumvent Deloitte's earlier warnings about the serious consequences for Autonomy's revenue recognition practices if further VAR agreements were replaced by direct deals."*

437. However, according to the Defendants:

(1) The direct deal was not a revenue deal because no additional revenue was being booked (it had been booked in respect of the VAR deal).

(2) Although Deloitte had separately expressed an interest in knowing about earlier VAR deals being "cancelled" or credited following a deal going direct, Autonomy would not normally do this unless and until it had been paid for the direct deal.

(3) Deloitte were in fact made aware of the deal later in 2011, as Mr Welham had to accept under cross-examination when confronted with documentary evidence to that effect.

438. I consider the Defendants' attempts to justify not having disclosed the full relevant facts to Deloitte at the proper time to be far from satisfactory:

(1) Deloitte had made clear its concerns about VAR transactions being replaced by direct agreements with the end-user after observing the Kraft (VT3),

ManuLife (VT7) and Morgan Stanley (VT8) deals discussed earlier in this judgment (see paragraph 2180 in the main body of the judgment). They had explained on the basis that such direct deals called into question whether it had been appropriate to recognise revenue at the point of the original VAR transaction.

(2) Deloitte had given express warning to the same effect in their report to the Audit Committee for the H1 2010 review. Autonomy had acknowledged this and assured Deloitte that those deals were exceptional.

(3) Deloitte had made clear how important this was in their Q3 2010 report to the Audit Committee noting that (so they understood) there had been no further reversals of transactions with VARs in the form of direct deals.

(4) The Defendants knew full well that Deloitte would have expected to be informed of any direct deals. The submission that the direct deal following VT32 was not reported because it was not a revenue deal since no additional revenue was being booked as it had been booked in respect of the VAR deal is nonsense.

(5) For the same reason the second point made by the Defendants is likewise nonsense.

(6) According to Mr Welham, whose evidence I accept, Deloitte were not made aware of the direct deal until October 2011, long after Deloitte's Q2 2011 review, and far too late.

(7) The Defendants' resort to reliance on Deloitte was misplaced: their conduct in failing to keep them properly informed is further confirmation of their awareness that if they had been so they would not have approved the recognition of revenue in respect of VT32.

Summary assessment

439. In summary, in my judgment, the 'sale' to MicroTech in VT32 had no substance, the only real sale being the direct sale to the end-users which Autonomy failed to advise Deloitte until far too late to make a difference to the way it was shown in Autonomy's accounts.

440. Mr Hussain's involvement and knowledge is clear. Dr Lynch's knowledge is, in my judgment, to be inferred from the 'pattern', from the unlikelihood that such a transaction would have been implemented without his knowledge and approval, and from the various factors I have identified in paragraphs 98 to 103 in the main body of the judgment as characteristic of the way he and Mr Hussain interacted and the business was run.

VT33: MicroTech/Xerox

441. After the issue by MicroTech of purchase order VT33, Autonomy continued to negotiate with Xerox, without any involvement by MicroTech. Thus, on 12 April 2011, in an email to Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch (among others), Mr Sass said that, as well as expecting closure on Bank of Montreal that month, he (Mr Sass) was also "*pushing for*

GM as well". Mr Steve Truitt confirmed during his deposition that MicroTech made no effort to achieve a sale to Xerox. It is plain that it was not expecting and not intending to do so: negotiations with, and any sale to, an end-user were left entirely to Autonomy

442. Nevertheless, MicroTech provided written confirmations to Deloitte on 19 April, 12 July and 14 July 2011 that the invoices listed in the confirmations were proper and due, that there were no "*side letters or other agreements*", and that Autonomy retained no continuing managerial involvement.

443. The negotiations were not concluded as rapidly as had been hoped. In the process, there was an episode during June 2011 when, in the course of Autonomy's ongoing negotiations with Xerox, Autonomy gratuitously inserted a reference to DiscoverEngine into the draft Xerox/GM contract, resulting in the need for Mr Avila to devise an explanation as to how that software would benefit GM. Although Autonomy had been hopeful of concluding a deal in Q2 2011, Mr Sass informed Ms Eagan and Mr Egan on 28 June 2011 that "*GM is a concern*".

444. In the event, it was not until 29 July 2011 that an Autonomy group company, Verity Inc, entered into a direct sale agreement with Xerox, for an amount of $1.3 million in respect of the licence fee plus support and maintenance, as well as a $14,175 fee for a Spanish module.

445. The direct agreement provided for Xerox to make payment, at Autonomy's express direction, to Autonomy's designated payee. On 1 August 2011, Ms Mickie Lee (an Autonomy lawyer) informed Xerox that MicroTech would be invoicing Xerox for the amount due. She explained that "*MicroTech is a minority and small business vendor*" (which suggests that Xerox had never heard of MicroTech). On 4 August 2011, Ms Lee sent a formal letter to Xerox in which Autonomy designated MicroTech as its payee. Ms Lee's covering email was copied to Mr Chamberlain.

446. On 26 October 2011, MicroTech paid Autonomy $475,572 and, on 23 May 2012, MicroTech paid $752,928, for a total of $1,228,500.

447. These payments were less than the sum payable by Xerox to MicroTech at Autonomy's direction. The difference was $85,675, which MicroTech retained. In addition to their reliance on VT33 in the context of their FSMA claims, the Claimants seek recovery of that amount as damages due to ASL or alternatively Verity Inc for the Defendants' breach of duty.

448. Deloitte again approved the accounting treatment of VT33, permitting revenue from it to be recognised as at the date of the VAR deal, and thus within the relevant quarter. Once more the Defendants placed reliance on this for the reasons explained above, and also on the fact that Deloitte had expressly considered and approved the provision for payment to a "*designated payee"* of which use was made in this context. However, Deloitte's approval of revenue recognition in respect of VT33 was based on the same mis-presentation as in the case of VT32 (see above). The only substantive difference was the utilisation of the "*designated payee"* mechanism.

449. My conclusion that the sale to MicroTech in VT33 had no substance and that the only real sale was that eventually negotiated and contracted with the end-user, Xerox, is based on substantially the same considerations as my conclusion in respect of VT32.

The same conclusion also follows that the recognition of revenue from the sale to the VAR was wrong, and would have been recognised as wrong by Deloitte had they been kept fully and timeously informed. The *"designated payee"* provisions, reminiscent of the early VAR deals in 2009, do not affect the substance of the VAR sale (or rather, the lack of it) and make no difference to my assessment.

Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT32 and VT33 and direct deals

450. My conclusions about the Defendants' "guilty knowledge" likewise mirror my previous conclusions in the context of VT32.

Mr Hussain

451. It seems plain from email exchanges that Mr Hussain knew and approved the resort to a VAR transaction and the subsequent direct transaction in each case. It also seems more likely than not that he was aware that in neither case was the VAR expecting or intended to be involved in the negotiations that resulted in the respective direct deals.

452. It was not expressly alleged, but I take it to be implicitly suggested, that as part of the Autonomy management Mr Hussain was responsible for the alleged deliberate attempt to *"circumvent"* Deloitte's warnings in respect of direct deals by not revealing the fact of the direct deal between Autonomy and Bank of Montreal.

453. Further, the Claimants alleged that the arrangements for and the direction to Xerox to pay MicroTech as Autonomy's designated payee *"had no doubt been approved by Mr Hussain as well."*

454. In my judgment, Mr Hussain plainly had "guilty knowledge" that the accounting treatment of VT33 was improper.

Dr Lynch

455. The Claimants also submitted that the court should infer that these transactions *"fell within the broad approval granted by Dr Lynch to Mr Hussain to call upon a friendly VAR as and when required to plug gaps in revenue."*

456. Beyond that, however, the Claimants made no further particularised allegation of knowledge against Dr Lynch in respect of either VT32 or VT33, and they did not cross-examine him about them (or the direct deals) either.

457. Nevertheless, and once again for substantially the same reasons as I have given and referred to in the context of VT32, I have concluded that the sale to the VAR (MicroTech) and its accounting treatment would not have been proposed and implemented but for Dr Lynch's approval of the strategy pursuant to which they were so and the need to book revenue of which he was aware.

458. If he had no specific knowledge of the actual transaction and its accounting treatment, that would only have been because by now the pattern was well established and the implementation of VAR sales pursuant to it as and when Mr Hussain identified the urgent need to cover a shortfall had become all but automatic.

459. I am satisfied therefore that Dr Lynch too had "guilty knowledge" of the improper accounting treatment of VT33.

VT37: MicroTech/HP Q2 2011

460. In chronological terms, this June 2011 sale was the last of the impugned VAR transactions. It was a large sale for a fee of $7 million with an additional $350,000 for a single year's maintenance, and by June 2011 Mr Hussain was relying on it to achieve revenue forecasts. This can be seen, for example, from an email from Mr Hussain to Mr Egan on 7 June 2011:

> *"Stouffer – assume you are on your way to St Louis but where is the HP proposal?...If we don't close HP then we are *****d…"*

461. VT37 is complicated by the fact that the ultimate end-user was one of HP's existing clients, which Autonomy was seeking to persuade to adopt Digital Safe for its archiving needs instead of HP's own product (with which it was not happy). Autonomy pursued a dual-track strategy to this end, seeking either (i) to sell Digital Safe to HP for it to use to provide archiving services to its client, the United States Postal Service ("USPS") or (ii) to sell Digital Safe direct to USPS itself. In the end, no end-user deal involving either MicroTech or Autonomy eventuated before HP's acquisition of Autonomy, and it appears that after that acquisition, HP, which by then owned and/or controlled the Autonomy software, stepped in to do a direct deal itself.

462. The transaction is further complicated by the Claimants' associated allegations relating to Autonomy's purchase from MicroTech of the Federal Cloud platform for $8.2 million in Q3 2011: those allegations being to the effect that there was no commercial rationale for the Federal Cloud purchase and that it was executed solely to put MicroTech in funds to meet existing liabilities to Autonomy, including its liability (according to contract) under VT37. It is necessary for an understanding of its evolution and the ultimate failure to close an end-user deal to describe the background of the transaction.

463. Prior to Q2 2011, HP was the appointed technology provider to USPS which also used HP's software (an archiving offering called RISS) for archiving. Dr Lynch explained in his witness statement (and this was not challenged) that:

> *"HP's archiving offering was called RISS [which] was an earlier version of Digital Safe and was extremely outdated. In early 2011, USPS was involved in a number of lawsuits and needed a functional archive system and EDD system to preserve and review relevant data. Due to its track record, USPS was not convinced HP's offerings would be up to the task of helping USPS prepare for litigation. In Q2 2011, USPS abandoned its existing EDD solution and moved to Autonomy's software. Autonomy closed a multi-million-pound EDD deal with USPS in the quarter. It was my understanding that USPS also considered moving away from HP's archiving offering and considered Autonomy a frontrunner for the replacement. There were two possible ways that Autonomy could structure the deal. Either Autonomy could have sold archiving software*

> *to USPS directly or to HP who would use Autonomy software to improve its offering to USPS. Autonomy pursued both possible deals."*[46]

464. Dr Lynch's evidence in cross-examination was that (a) Autonomy had already recently done a good deal with USPS for e-Discovery which was working well (b) Autonomy were being told by USPS that *"they'd said yes already"* (c) USPS were exasperated with HP's archiving product *"that had failed and was losing things. And so there was big legal liability because the archive wasn't archiving"*; so that (d) according to him, a deal with USPS looked like a good prospect, the only problem being that HP (Mr Veghte) was *"giving us a bit of a run-around"*.

465. Mr Egan, on whose witness statement the Claimants principally relied in this context, explained the position as follows:

> *"As the end of the quarter approached, we were making good progress on the direct Postal Service deal, but not much progress on the HP side. Mr. Hussain asked me to take an HP deal to a reseller. I spoke to either David or Steve Truitt and asked that MicroTech take an HP deal. I explained the greater risk that MicroTech would be taking with respect to this deal because of the uncertainty of the end-user deals. I identified the paths that were available to get MicroTech paid. I said that we might be able to complete a sale to HP (but the prospects of such a sale were not in good shape at that time but that we would keep trying that route). Alternatively, we might be able to license the same software directly to HP's end customers like the Postal Service who had shown they were interested and needed the software as an alternative. In all events, I said we would use all efforts and means available to protect MicroTech from holding the bag."*

466. Apart from Dr Lynch's Counsel suggesting to Mr Egan (as he accepted) that it was more likely he spoke to Mr David Truitt (who the Defendants emphasised was not a MicroTech decision-maker) than Mr Steve Truitt, Mr Egan's evidence in this respect was not challenged in cross-examination.

467. Accordingly, I accept that (a) it was Mr Hussain who suggested to Mr Egan that a sale to a VAR should be arranged in light of difficulties or delays in closing a deal within the quarter with either USPS or HP; (b) Mr Egan made clear to MicroTech that there was more than usual risk that an end-user deal would not be achieved; and (c) Autonomy would *"use all efforts and means available to protect MicroTech from holding the bag"* (though Dr Lynch reminded me when he was cross-examined on the paragraph that *"the*

[46] Dr Lynch explained in cross-examination that USPS were unhappy with HP because the HP product for archiving *"had failed and was losing things. And so there was a big legal liability because the archive wasn't archiving. So USPS had basically told us that they were going to switch over to Autonomy which made sense because they'd just switched over the eDiscovery, and then they wanted us to work through HP who were their technology provider just like Dell was for Hyatt."*

contracts that they signed made it clear that they could only rely on what was in the contract and that did not put an obligation on Autonomy to do any such thing").

468. Nevertheless, MicroTech agreed to take the VAR deal without any prior assessment of the prospect of an end-user deal or of the risks to MicroTech. On 30 June 2011, Autonomy prepared, and Mr Steve Truitt signed, a purchase order that included a licence fee of $7 million, plus $350,000 for one year's maintenance. Autonomy recognised licence revenue of $7 million that same day.

469. The VT37 purchase order was governed, as usual in the case of MicroTech VAR deals, by the terms of the June 2006 MicroTech VAR agreement (see paragraph 216 above for a summary of its terms) which provided expressly that MicroTech was obliged to pay Autonomy for its orders irrespective of its sale to an end-user, and which confirmed that there was no other understanding or arrangement between the parties. The VT37 purchase order also incorporated the provision, noticed previously in other later MicroTech transactions, permitting a direct deal, but stating that the parties *"currently anticipate"* an onward licence transaction between MicroTech and HP.

470. This was not true: an onward sale by MicroTech was never in the contemplation of either MicroTech or Autonomy. In Dr Lynch's written closing submissions, it was argued that a sale of Autonomy software was still a good prospect because *"[t]he main question was not whether Autonomy software would be used but whether the deal would be done through HP as the continuing archive provider".* The thrust of the Claimants' case was that the only real prospect was of a direct deal between Autonomy and USPS, but that was uncertain given HP's interest and Mr Veghte's obvious wish to retain USPS for HP.

471. In any event, MicroTech was not in the frame at all. There was no real reason to suppose that HP would have entertained a sale from them. Mr Steve Truitt accepted in his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings in the US that it was *"a weak expectation at best"*. The Claimants described that as *"if anything, an overstatement"*, especially since the licence was for the use of Digital Safe software and MicroTech had never installed[47], nor could it have installed, Digital Safe. It seems to me that the reality was, and I find, that the prospect of an end-user deal between MicroTech and USPS was vanishingly small.

472. In an effort to explain how MicroTech could rationally have signed the purchase order and taken on the risk unless assured that Autonomy would see to it that the risk would, one way or another, be covered by Autonomy, Dr Lynch asserted that:

> *"the one thing we haven't mentioned is that they had the right to sell that software to any other party as well. So it wasn't – although we're talking about this as though it's an HP/USPS deal, they had the right to sell that software to anyone."*

473. But he was mistaken. The purchase order named HP as the "*End-user*" (item 1) and stated (item 3) that HP was licensed to deploy three separate instances of Digital Safe, with each instance to be used "*solely for the purposes of hosting and archiving data from a single Client's Internal environment for access solely by such Client. A "Client" is an end-user customer of End-User*". Thus, HP could use the software for up to three

[47] As Mr Steve Truitt acknowledged in his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings in the US.

of HP's own customers. However, MicroTech was not free to sublicense the software to anyone other than HP. When confronted with the terms of the purchase order, Dr Lynch said he was "*surprised*" and said he would "*have to go away and find out more as to why I have a different understanding*". No further explanation was subsequently provided.

474. The Claimants added to this what I can compendiously describe (meaning no underestimation of them) as the usual points in respect of these later impugned VAR transactions with MicroTech, to the effect that MicroTech never had or even attempted any contact with either HP or USPS, and it was never envisaged by either party to VT37 that they should.

475. I need note only in this regard that on this occasion, Dr Lynch sought to contradict this, in that in the course of his cross-examination he stated his understanding to be that MicroTech, as a federal reseller, had *"their own federal relationship"* and did know *"some people in HP Federal and they had communications with them".* When further pressed, he named a Ms Amy Santucci and a Mr Tom Hempfield (both of whom worked at HP) as being those *"people".* He also referred very generally to *"quite a few emails"* with Ms Santucci (which so far as referred to related to a contact between HP and Autonomy but not with MicroTech).

476. Dr Lynch's evidence in cross-examination on the point was uncharacteristically vague and meandering, and he named no person at MicroTech involved in, nor any instance of involvement on the part of MicroTech in, negotiations of any kind with either HP or USPS. Eventually, after a particularly long and discursive answer by Dr Lynch, Mr Rabinowitz pressed him to identify who at MicroTech he said had been involved; he could not do so, and simply repeated the names of persons working for HP whom he thought might be known to MicroTech, before trying to deflect the question away by saying *"But the whole thing was just a disaster."* Even when confronted with the suggestion that his evidence was *"completely made up"* Dr Lynch could do little more than fall back on naming again Ms Santucci, and then revert to another discursive explanation of the complications at the time.

477. I cannot accept Dr Lynch's evidence that MicroTech was involved in any dealings or negotiations in the matter. It was unpersuasive in itself, and there was no other basis for it. I accept Mr Steve Truitt's own evidence in his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings that MicroTech made no approach or seek to sell the software to either HP or USPS. Accordingly, I take VT37 to provide another illustration that the VAR sale did not interrupt or impact Autonomy's negotiations with the end-user, nor the likelihood (or not) of a sale by Autonomy to the end-user eventuating. MicroTech simply signed the purchase order and then stepped back, as was the intention and expectation of both Autonomy and MicroTech.

478. Autonomy resumed its efforts in pursuit of its dual track strategy, with Dr Lynch's personal involvement. But these did not result in Autonomy reaching a deal with either HP or USPS. In his witness statement, Dr Lynch stated that MicroTech *"was not able to sell the software on to HP or USPS"* . When cross-examined on this, he tried to defend this as simply a statement of fact; but I consider that it was plainly intended to give the impression that MicroTech was involved and was intended to pursue and become the contracting party to any ultimate deal, which it was not, and (at least by the time of his witness statement) he knew it. (His contemporaneous knowledge is addressed later.)

479. As it was, email exchanges between Dr Lynch and Mr Veghte at the end of June 2011 seem to me to suggest that, though they also suggest that the process was complicated by the fact that HP felt restricted in its dealings with USPS in light of the danger of any breach of confidentiality about the proposal for HP to acquire Autonomy then under discussion, HP quite deliberately used this as the reason for (in effect) cutting Autonomy out of discussions with USPS. Thus, on 30 June 2011 Mr Veghte stated in an email to Dr Lynch:

> *"Circled with the HP team on the ground and we received instructions from USPS Procurement not to discuss the USPS environment with you directly and while this may be inconsistent with other communications from USPS, we do need to honour that request. In addition, USPS is raising awkward questions to our account team as to whether and what relationship HP and Autonomy may have or be developing and I think it is in our collective best interests to limit that speculation as I am sure you would agree.*
>
> *In consideration of this and other factors, HP believes it best if we proceed separately with respect to USPS…"*[48]

480. The question which then arose, however, was as to how, given that there was no end-user sale to generate funds, MicroTech was to be saved from its contractual payment obligations. The problem was both more pressing and more difficult because, as at 5 July 2011, MicroTech owed Autonomy in excess of $25,000,000, of which $10,300,000 was already overdue at 30 June 2011, as set out in a spreadsheet attached to an email of that date from Mr Chamberlain to Mr Egan, copying Mr Hussain and Mr Scott.

481. As Mr Steve Truitt put it in his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings, *"We needed a fix for all of it"*. He went on to confirm that Mr David Truitt asked him to develop a proposal as the path to resolving at least part of their outstanding obligations. In that deposition, he was asked whether Mr David Truitt had suggested a proposal relating to a Federal Cloud platform as part of a fix. He said:

> *"… don't recall it being a cloud solution, but, yes, he asked me to put together a proposal. I don't think it's important, though, that it's - whether it's cloud or not, but, yes, he did."*

Federal cloud purchase and the payment by MicroTech it enabled

482. The Claimants' case is that the proposal developed as the means of getting funds to MicroTech was the purchase by Autonomy from MicroTech in Q3 2011 of the *Federal Cloud* platform briefly mentioned above for a purchase price of $8,200,000. The Claimants alleged that there was no commercial rationale for this transaction, and it was executed solely to put MicroTech in funds to meet existing liabilities to Autonomy: it was the *"fix"* which MicroTech needed.

[48] It is difficult not to sympathise with Dr Lynch's complaint that Mr Veghte *"was giving us a bit of a run-around"*, with HP trying to keep its client to itself, whilst improving its product by incorporating instead Autonomy software, in which HP ultimately succeeded (see above at paragraph 464).

483. The Federal Cloud purchase is one of the six Reciprocal VAR transactions listed (as *MicroTech/HP*) in Schedule 12B to the RRAPoC. It is relied on by the Claimants as having been undertaken solely to put MicroTech in funds to meet contractual liabilities to Autonomy under impugned VAR sales. The Claimants relied on the Federal Cloud purchase both as exemplifying the variety of ways in which Autonomy contrived to ensure that VARs party to impugned VAR transactions were not *"left on the hook"*, and also as giving rise to transactional loss (which the Claimants seek to recover).

484. I have set out in greater detail in another part of this judgment the factual history and the respective positions of the parties in respect of transactions said by the Claimants to have been devised in order to fund on a 'friendly' VAR to enable it to appear to meet its contractual obligations under VAR contracts with Autonomy. That includes the six Reciprocal VAR transactions listed in Schedule 12B in respect of which the Claimants seek recovery of transactional losses, including the Federal Cloud transaction.

485. The following matters stand out, in my view, from the Claimants' submissions in respect of the Federal Cloud transaction in relation to the question now in issue:

(1) The impetus for the transaction initially came from Mr David Truitt and Mr Hussain. An email dated 28 July 2011 from Mr Hussain to Dr Menell and Mr Egan headed *"SSA contract"* introduced the matter by stating *"…as you both know we have a very large $24m plus deal with SSA via Microlink"* and went on to relate a conversation between Mr Hussain and Mr David Truitt about a proposal for Autonomy to purchase from MicroTech certain *"software and data facilities"* which Mr Hussain stated he believed would *"help us deliver our very large project"*. The project was in fact a contract between MicroLink and the US Social Security Administration ("SSA") for the provision of on-site (not cloud) information and e-Discovery solution.[49]

(2) No evidence was adduced suggesting that anyone in Autonomy's technical department had suggested a need for further software for the purpose of the project. The timing, the genesis of the proposal through Mr Hussain, and the lack of anything supporting technical need support the suggestion that the focus was not on the product but on a "fix".

(3) It is apparent from email evidence and the evidence of Mr Steve Truitt in his deposition in the US MicroTech proceedings that there was considerable but unexplained urgency attached to the preparation of the proposal.

(4) On 31 July 2011, Mr Steve Truitt sent Mr David Truitt and Mr Jimenez a draft "*Autonomy proposal*". On 1 August 2011, Steve Truitt sent the proposal to Mr Hussain, describing it in his covering email as a "*proposal from MicroTech to develop FISMA compliant hardware stacks and operational approaches to deliver Autonomy software solutions to US Federal clients from a cloud computing model*". The attached proposal, which ran to 7 pages, was for

[49] The "*SSA*" is a US government agency. The "*SSA contract*" was a contract between MicroLink (by then an Autonomy subsidiary) and SSA for the provision of an email archiving/e-Discovery/email records management system, pursuant to a Blanket Purchase Agreement dated May 2011. As stated in an internal Autonomy email dated 20 May 2011, the scope of the project was that "*SSA plans to deploy an onsite end-to-end Information Governance and eDiscovery solution …*".

Autonomy's software to be configured to support the requirements of the SSA for email archiving and, given the potential growth of archived data, "*the SSA could very easily decide that it makes sense to move both its email infrastructure and its email archiving to the cloud. Should that occur, MicroTech stands ready to assist Autonomy with the move to help maintain and enhance its relationship with a key Federal customer*".[50]

(5) However, and as the wording reflected on close reading, there was no reason to think that SSA was going to move this particular project to the cloud: Autonomy's brief was to create an onsite solution, not one based in the cloud. Further, Mr Kalbag's evidence was that a federal cloud platform was never discussed or even mentioned in his discussions with SSA, that SSA was an "*on premise*" customer with its own data centre, due to security concerns, and that so far as he was aware a federal cloud platform would have been of no interest to SSA. Apart from putting to him the general Cloud First policy of the US federal government, none of that evidence from Mr Kalbag was challenged in cross-examination. No document has been identified prior to August 2011 in which SSA expressed any interest in changing its archiving system from an on-premise arrangement to a cloud-based one.

(6) $8.2 million was what Mr David Truitt had told Mr Steve Truitt should be the purchase price: Mr Steve Truitt confirmed this and testified that he started with the end price and then worked backwards to identify the amounts of equipment and labour that would support such a price.

(7) The contractual terms were vague and unspecific, lacking any technical detail, and more in the style of a proposal than a serious commitment. Further:

(a) There was no defined deadline for the provision of the end-product. Indeed, Mr Steve Truitt's evidence was that Autonomy never asked MicroTech when delivery would take place; and there is no evidence to the contrary.

(b) Although the contractual documentation provided for services to be provided according to a "*schedule as mutually agreed by the parties*", no such schedule was ever proposed or agreed.

(c) The contract did require MicroTech to "*periodically document its efforts by furnishing written progress reports as request by Autonomy*". However, as Mr Steve Truitt testified, MicroTech never submitted any written progress reports, and was never asked for them. As it was, MicroTech never delivered anything to Autonomy, and Autonomy never requested delivery of anything from MicroTech.

[50] The proposal was for MicroTech (i) to deliver an Autonomy Solution Stack comprising IDOL Server, Zantaz Fetch Module and "other software" to meet the SSA's business requirements for a payment of $8.2 million and (ii) if Autonomy wanted to deploy an Autonomy Solution Stack for a second client, MicroTech would do so for a further payment of $7 million and (iii) an Autonomy Solution Stack for any subsequent Autonomy clients would be $6.2 million for each one. Mr Steve Truitt testified that Mr David Truitt had stipulated that the price should be $8.2 million, and so he had started with the end price and then worked backwards to identify the amounts of equipment and labour that would support such a price.

(8) Moreover, although the contract specified that Autonomy had 30 days to pay, Autonomy paid the stipulated purchase price of $8.2 million immediately on the first day. Mr Steve Truitt testified that this was *"so that we could then retire some of the debt that we had with them"*.

(9) On 17 August 2011, one day after that payment by Autonomy, and also of course the day before the HP acquisition of Autonomy was announced, MicroTech paid the entire amount of $7.35 million payable under its VAR contract (in respect of VT37), in advance of the actual payment date.

486. The Defendants' answers to this can be summarised as being that:

(1) Autonomy expected SSA soon to need and require cloud-based storage and e-Discovery capability: in December 2010, the US Government had adopted a *"Cloud First"* policy under which Government agencies were obliged to identify three services to move to the cloud within three months, and then to move one within 12 months and two within 18 months.

(2) Under the SSA's blanket purchase agreement with Autonomy (through its MicroLink subsidiary) the contract spend was at the discretion of the SSA and it was structured as a "*call-off*" contract. As a result, MicroLink had to be able to provide the services at all times. The first stage of the project was a pilot which did not require a cloud solution, but given the Government's "cloud first" policy, Autonomy's management anticipated that a cloud solution would offer benefits to the SSA in the future.

(3) MicroTech, a company with which Autonomy had a good relationship, also thought that the SSA might be interested in a federal cloud solution because "*the SSA [were] doing lots of things that would make it hungry for storage*" and "*if we could figure out a way to make it convenient and cheap for them, they might bite at it*". Over the years, Autonomy had received Requests for Proposals from federal bodies requiring FISMA compliance.

(4) MicroTech's proposal "*to deliver Autonomy software solutions to US Federal clients from a cloud computing model*" (sent on 31 July/1 August 2011 – see paragraph 485(4) above) drew on the input of Roger Channing of MicroTech. MicroTech proposed that they would build a security-compliant data centre that could be used by one of Autonomy's customers with unlimited data storage for five years. The solution could be deployed at the customer's facility (where their data would be hosted by either the customer, Autonomy or MicroTech) or a security-compliant facility built by MicroTech (where the customer's data would be hosted by MicroTech). The proposal specifically noted Autonomy's contract with the SSA and highlighted that the business case for a federal cloud platform was supported by the fact that "*the SSA could very easily decide that it makes sense to move both its email infrastructure and its email archiving solution to the cloud*".

(5) There was support for the commercial rationale of a federal cloud solution in testimony at trial: (a) Mr Baiocco explained the interest that Capax also had in the federal cloud business; and (b) Mr Kalbag viewed this as a strong growth area and had generally confirmed that Autonomy did not have FISMA certification and that Autonomy needed to engage with a FISMA-certified

third party in order to host data for federal customers. Indeed, Mr Kalbag agreed that it was becoming a must for Autonomy to have the ability to host its software on a FISMA-certified Cloud, and that it was going to be difficult for Autonomy to acquire federal clearance and run a federal cloud platform.[51]

(6) Although Mr Kalbag considered that it would have been more logical and economic for Autonomy to have partnered any of a number of businesses providing cloud storage, rather than to develop its own cloud, that was a commercial judgement: and Mr Kalbag *"was a middle-ranking salesman with no involvement in these kind of judgements"*.

487. The Defendants' case that a Federal Cloud solution was becoming essential was, to my mind, persuasive; and I agree that the choice of how to achieve that was a commercial judgment. Even so, I have not been persuaded that this disposed of the Claimants' case that the Federal Cloud purchase itself, at the time and on the terms it was made, was devised in order to place MicroTech in funds. In particular, in my judgment, the Defendants did not address satisfactorily:

(1) The fact (as for the avoidance of doubt I accept it to be) that the SSA contract itself provided for an on-site and not a cloud solution, and it was a matter of speculation whether the SSA would want a cloud solution in the immediate future;

(2) Mr Kalbag's further evidence in cross-examination that the SSA had expressly been asked whether they would be interested in a cloud offering but

> *"it was made clear to me at that time this had to be an on-site solution because of the sensitivity of the SSA data and they were very protective and were concerned with hosting that data outside of their own data centres…"*

(3) The fact that (a) whereas the Defendants focused on whether a federal cloud platform would be useful generally, under the terms of the proposal the solution offered at the price of $8.2 million was available only for the SSA, with cloud solutions for any other customers to be provided separately and at a significant additional cost; (b) Mr Hussain's suggestion in email correspondence that the proposed cloud solution was needed for the SSA contract was demonstrably wrong; and (c) having regard to Mr Kalbag's evidence described above, the prospect of SSA wanting a federal cloud platform was not illogical or misguided but it was speculative and it was not immediate;

(4) The urgency attached to generating a proposal, establishing a contract of purchase, and accelerating payment to enable MicroTech to pay down its debt is difficult to square with an anticipated but so far unexpressed and speculative generalised future need;

(5) Most important of all perhaps, not only was the product so insufficiently specified as to cast doubt on whether it was anything more than a proposal

---

[51] Any idea of using MicroLink would have been hampered by the strict rules in place governing how Autonomy communicated with MicroLink (which were necessary to maintain MicroLink's security clearance).

fashioned to give descriptive but not real substance to an idea, the fact is that it was never delivered at all.

488. Taken in the round, I accept the Claimants' contention that the Federal Cloud contract was primarily devised and implemented in order to put MicroTech in a position to pay down indebtedness to Autonomy. There is no evidence that Autonomy needed the goods for the contract with SSA, no evidence that the goods were ever provided, and no evidence that any complaint was ever made in that regard.

489. In my judgment, the context, the urgent genesis and the way the price was calibrated according to what Mr Dave Truitt thought was needed all smack, to my mind, of the "fix" which the Truitt brothers had conceived was necessary; and MicroTech's anticipation of Autonomy's collaboration in such a "fix", together with Autonomy's ready engagement, are, in my judgment, strongly supportive of the Claimants' case that it was well understood and intended that MicroTech would never really be at risk at all in respect of its contractual commitment under VT37.

490. I have concluded that the VAR sale in VT37 exemplified the pattern by then well established, and despite the usual legal trappings, it was not a sale in commercial substance at all. The only distinguishing feature of VT37 tended to embolden the pattern: whilst there was no intention to negotiate or conclude a sale by MicroTech, in this case there was also real doubt whether any end-user transaction would be concluded by Autonomy either, in which case (since MicroTech's legal obligation was either to be funded or forgiven) Autonomy stood to receive no 'new' money at all.

491. In my judgment, the VT37 VAR sale lacked substance and did not satisfy IAS 18.14: its accounting treatment as giving rise to recognised revenue was improper.

Knowledge and participation of Defendants in VT37 and Federal Cloud transaction

Mr Hussain

492. There is no doubt about Mr Hussain's detailed involvement in and knowledge of VT37: Mr Egan's evidence (which was not challenged in this regard and which I accept) was that it was Mr Hussain who asked him to take the deal to a reseller once it became clear that the envisaged deal with HP would not eventuate and HP were showing every sign of wishing to edge Autonomy out of any direct deal with USPS. It is plain from emails that Mr Hussain knew that the *"8a"* VAR chosen was MicroTech.

493. The 'pattern' for Autonomy and not the VAR to negotiate and contract with the end-user was devised by Mr Hussain, and I have seen nothing to suggest any reason for supposing otherwise in this instance. In any event, the overall likelihood is that he was well aware of it; Mr Egan's evidence was that the plain intention was that Autonomy would continue alone its efforts in that regard. The only evidence was of direct engagement between Autonomy and USPS, with no suggestion of any involvement on the part of MicroTech. I find that Mr Hussain did not intend or expect MicroTech to play any active role in any onward sale.

494. I infer from this, from the pattern and from what actually transpired, that Mr Hussain knew that the introduction of MicroTech was as a placeholder and there was no real substance in the VAR sale. I also infer and hold from this and all the circumstances that

Mr Hussain was aware that the prospect of any direct sale was weak, given the demonstration of HP's desire to keep the USPS relationship to itself.

495. Mr Hussain was a trained, experienced and commercially sophisticated accountant. He knew the rules relating to revenue recognition, and that they were required to be satisfied not just on paper but in reality. He knew that the 'sale' to MicroTech was not intended to have any substantive effect as regards Autonomy's efforts to sell the goods or as to the ultimate direct contract which was the objective. He had 'guilty knowledge'.

Dr Lynch

496. Dr Lynch said that he *"had limited involvement in the deal"* (VT37). In Dr Lynch's closing submissions it was stated that *"the Claimants had no basis for suggesting that Dr Lynch was aware of any impropriety or any false account with regard to the MicroTech/HP transaction."*

497. Dr Lynch's evidence was that although the end-user archiving deal did not close with either HP or USPS in Q2 2011 as had been hoped, he and those concerned at Autonomy all thought that (I quote from his first witness statement):

> *"…HP was still interested in Autonomy's archiving software because they had a very angry customer and they needed to provide USPS with a workable software solution. Thus, we were confident USPS would need Autonomy software."*

498. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he had been emailed by Mr Hussain on 2 July 2011 saying *"We got the edd processing deal and we got the hp digital safe deal via 8a"* and that he knew that a VAR had been used. The subject line of the email was simply *"usps"* which suggests that Mr Hussain thought it safe to assume that Dr Lynch understood the underlying end-user deal sufficiently to be aware of the connection with USPS. His evidence was that he was not involved in negotiating the terms.

499. The Claimants did not suggest to Dr Lynch in cross-examination that he knew the VAR was not at risk, or that the VAR sale was not genuine or improper; or that the revenue was improperly recognised. They did however cross-examine him on his understanding that MicroTech was not to be involved in the sale other than in a nominal capacity. It was put to him that Mr Steve Truitt had made clear that MicroTech had not made any approach to USPS nor any effort to onward sell to either USPS or HP: understandably, he said that he could not comment on what Mr Steve Truitt did or didn't do. But when it was put to him that he would not have expected MicroTech to make any such approach or effort I found his answer that he thought MicroTech had *"their own federal relationship"* (see paragraph 475) above unconvincing. No support for this was provided, nor any evidence found to support any contact between them at all. More generally, in my view, Dr Lynch's answers on the issue of whether MicroTech was intended to play any role did not carry conviction.

500. I have already addressed the uncharacteristically vague and meandering nature of the evidence that Dr Lynch gave in an attempt to support this. Suffice it to say that my impression was that Dr Lynch knew that MicroTech were to do nothing, and Autonomy were to continue negotiating and dealing with the software which USPS wanted and for which Autonomy had notionally sold MicroTech a licence as if that sale had never taken

place. Although not a trained accountant, Dr Lynch was an experienced CEO intimately engaged in the direction and presentation to the market of Autonomy's business and well aware of the requirement that to qualify for revenue recognition it was essential that the sale be unconditional and effect a substantive transfer of risk and control. I find that he either knew that the VT37 'sale' to MicroTech in substance and commercial reality effected neither, or was reckless in that regard.

501. In light of my conclusions in paragraph 489 above, I find also that both Defendants were aware that the Federal Cloud purchase was pursued, and pursued with such urgency, because of the need to get MicroTech "off the hook".

DiscoverTech reseller deals

502. I turn to Autonomy's VAR sales to DiscoverTech in the Relevant Period (starting at the end of Q1 2010), other than VT5 (because I have already dealt with that transaction).

503. I have briefly described DiscoverTech in paragraph 1963(4) in the main body of the judgment. It will be recalled that it was established in December 2009 by Mr David Truitt (together with Mr Wharton) initially as a vehicle for the DiscoverPoint business spun out of MicroLink at the time of the MicroLink acquisition.

504. As with the other reseller deals, there was testimony from the main protagonists on both sides of the transactions between Autonomy and DiscoverTech, confirming that DiscoverTech was on risk.

505. Mr Egan's evidence (as described in paragraphs 1976 to 1998 in the main body of the judgment) related to the deals with DiscoverTech as it did to the deals with the other resellers. Mr Egan's evidence confirmed that the reseller was on risk, knew that it was on risk, knew that the reseller agreements were binding, and knew that any words of comfort that Mr Egan could offer were not intended to have any effect on the reseller's obligations to Autonomy.

506. Mr Egan's testimony on these points was corroborated by Mr David Truitt's hearsay testimony given in the US trial against Mr Hussain and in the MicroTech proceedings in the US (as described in paragraph 1999 in the main body of the judgment). In that evidence, he confirmed:

(1) That DiscoverTech was at risk, and would have to pay for the purchase whether or not it sold onto the end-user. DiscoverTech would be stuck with the purchase and the debt; and

(2) That there was never an understanding that DiscoverTech could cancel or otherwise walk away from the deals with no further obligation if the end customer did not purchase the software.

507. With regard to collectability, MicroLink had substantial debts when DiscoverTech was spun off; but MicroLink's debts were not assumed by DiscoverTech. In evidence introduced by hearsay notice by the Claimants, Mr David Truitt confirmed that he had been paid $39,000,000 when the acquisition of MicroLink happened, and that he could fund the DiscoverTech business to the extent that he wanted to; and Mr Wharton as 20% shareholder could help him.

508. DiscoverTech's reseller transactions were governed by an individual reseller agreement for each deal. The agreements were all in materially the same terms, which included the following:[52]

(1) A provision binding the reseller irrevocably to the purchase, once executed:

> "*this Agreement including all Product Schedules attached hereto, constitutes a non-cancellable purchase commitment, all fees and expenses specified herein are non-refundable*".

(2) A wide entire agreement clause. Clause 6 provided:

> *"Any waiver, amendment, supplementation or other modification or supplementation of any provision of this Agreement shall be effective only if in writing and signed by both parties. If for any reason a court of competent jurisdiction finds any provision or portion of this Agreement to be unenforceable, that provision of this Agreement shall be enforced to the maximum extent permissible so as to effect the intent of the parties, and the remainder of this Agreement shall continue unmodified except as necessary to avoid unfairness. This Agreement, including the pricing set forth in Section 2, represents the entire Agreement between the parties hereto concerning the subject matter hereof and supersedes any and all prior correspondence, quotations and negotiations. VAR expressly agrees that this Agreement shall have priority aver any contrary terms or additional terms contained in any purchase order or other form hereafter delivered by VAR to Autonomy and any such inconsistent or additional terms shall have no effect."*

509. DiscoverTech also executed debtor confirmations in respect of its debts under the various purchase orders issued in respect of its impugned VAR transactions with Autonomy. These confirmed that the debts under the deals were owing, and that there were no side-agreements or side understandings.

510. The Defendants contended that there is no realistic basis for the Claimants' arguments that DiscoverTech was not fully on risk in respect of its purchases, or that the revenue was not properly booked; still less that the Defendants had "guilty knowledge" such as to found a claim under FSMA.

511. As to knowledge, the evidence of Mr Egan and Mr David Truitt was that Dr Lynch was not involved in any of the negotiations between Autonomy and DiscoverTech. Dr Lynch's case is that he was not aware of any of the detail of the underlying transactions between Autonomy and the reseller, nor was he involved in the accounting. He approved a MAF payment to DiscoverTech in respect of just one of the eight deals, but even in respect of that he made clear at the time that he did not know the detail of the situation and needed to ask Mr Hussain about the proposal.

[52] See, for example, the agreement in respect of the DiscoverTech/Citi deal.

512. Mr Hussain submitted that in relation to the large majority of the VAR deals, the written contract was all that he ever saw, and he was entitled to rely on those contracts. He further submitted that he was never involved in the negotiations and had virtually no other contact with the principals of the VARs, emphasising that Mr Egan gave evidence that he had no recollection and no knowledge of Mr Hussain involving himself in negotiations or speaking to the VARs before deals were closed.

513. The Claimants maintained that both Defendants were well aware of the pattern and the particulars. I return to these issues in the discussion which follows of individual impugned VAR transactions, to which I turn.

514. Of the impugned VAR sales, 8 paired transactions were with DiscoverTech: VT11 (end-user Citigroup Technologies), VT12 (end-user Philip Morris International ("PMI"); VT23 and VT24 (end-user BofA); VT30 (end-user Prisa, a Spanish and Portuguese language media group), VT31 (end-user ThinkTech, Inc as contracting party for the brokerage firm TD Ameritrade), VT35 (end-user Abbott Laboratories, a healthcare company) and VT36 (end-user the Hyatt hotel chain via Dell as reseller).

515. I address below three pairs of transactions: VT11/12, VT30/31 and VT35/36. I have addressed the remaining pair of DiscoverTech impugned VAR transactions (VT23/24) in Part III of this Schedule. The reason for dealing with VT23/24 separately is because they formed part of a complex composite deal with BofA (or its subsidiaries of BofA) and it is convenient to deal with them together with the other transactions (VT16 and VT21, for which the VAR was Capax Discovery) in that composite deal (also in the same Schedule).

VT11: DiscoverTech/Citi Q1 2010

516. Citi was an existing Zantaz/Autonomy client which (according to Mr Goodfellow) had, by 2010, become one of Autonomy's largest accounts. During 2010 Autonomy was seeking to conclude a sale to Citi of archive storage cells (hardware with software embedded). The aim was to increase the capacity in Citi's archive which was at risk of running out of storage capacity.

517. Email exchanges in March 2010 show that Mr Hussain was personally involved, and that negotiations resulted in him putting forward what he described in an email to Mr Otto Chan of Citibank dated 18 March 2010 as *"a really special quarter end offer…of an additional 10% discount…in the spirit of partnership"* which (when that offer was not taken up) Mr Hussain then (by email of 25 March) further offered to improve if the deal was closed before the quarter end.

518. However, Citi did not accept the revised offer on that basis and on 27 March 2010, Mr Robert Mark (a director in Autonomy's Global Accounts department) notified Mr Crumbacher by email, that the deal was *"Dead for the quarter."*

519. In these circumstances, Mr Egan approached Mr David Truitt with a view to a VAR transaction for the end-user deal. According to Mr David Truitt (who it always must be borne in mind was also the CEO of MicroLink, by then a subsidiary of Autonomy) he perceived the deal to be exciting and advantageous to DiscoverTech in that (a) Citi was an existing client of Autonomy and it was hoped that it would lead to sales by DiscoverTech of software and services to Citi and (b) DiscoverTech stood to earn a substantial margin or fee.

520. On 31 March 2010, DiscoverTech issued the VT11 purchase order for end-user Citi with a licence fee of $5,500,000 plus $275,000 for support and maintenance. The VT11 purchase order was for 62 "instances" of the smart cell software; it was thus confined to software and made no mention of storage cells, which constituted the hardware element of the package that Citi required. In light of DiscoverTech's recent incorporation, its limited assets and the history of MicroLink's indebtedness, Mr Egan asked for and DiscoverTech agreed to pay 20% of the licence fee upfront, funded by way of capital contribution from Mr David Truitt (as to $1,627,000) and Mr and Mrs Wharton (as to $406,000).

521. It is convenient briefly to peer ahead to set the context for the issues of primary focus in relation to VT11, after it became apparent that Citi needed not only the software the subject of VT11 but also storage cells (which DiscoverTech had not purchased and could not provide). Autonomy negotiated a special tripartite agreement, entitled a *"One-Time Reseller Processing Agreement",* entered as of 9 August 2010, to which (through Zantaz) Autonomy was a party, together with Citi and DiscoverTech, for the supply to Citi of the software and hardware which Citi required. This provided:

    (1) By clause 1, that Autonomy would deliver Citi's purchase order to DiscoverTech, and that DiscoverTech would process it and facilitate delivery of the applicable products to Citi.

    (2) By clause 2, that Citi would pay the applicable fees to Autonomy, but that Autonomy "*shall receive such payment on behalf of Reseller and ... Autonomy shall be responsible for payment to Reseller of fees due to Reseller for the processing of the Order of Products as contemplated hereunder*".

    (3) Clause 5 nevertheless confirmed that Autonomy "*shall remain responsible for its obligations*" under its Master Services and Software License Agreement with Citi.

522. Autonomy paid DiscoverTech a MAF (in this instance described as a *"Referral Partner commission"*) in the amount of $497,000, which was said in a letter from Mr Kanter to be *"as a result of Referral partner's direct and proximate participation in the account."*

523. Deloitte were aware of VT11 and the VT11 purchase order, and of the subsequent tripartite agreement. They were also aware of the payment of the "*Referral Partner commission".* They did not consider, at the time, that any of this raised any concerns about revenue recognition or other audit concerns, as Mr Welham confirmed in the course of his cross-examination (though he attached the gloss, *"Not for this isolated case, no"*).

524. Three particular issues arise in connection with VT11 which seem to me to merit special focus:

    (1) What was the reason for, and significance of, the VT11 purchase order being confined to software when (it is common ground) the end-user also always needed the storage cells constituting the hardware component of what Citi had negotiated to purchase;

    (2) What role DiscoverTech played after the VAR transaction was agreed, what the significance was of the special tripartite agreement, and whether Deloitte

were misled into thinking that DiscoverTech had tried to make a direct sale to Citi and were only prevented from doing so for administrative reasons;

(3) Whether the payment of a MAF (in this instance described as a *"Referral Partner commission"*) was purportedly justified on a false basis suggesting impropriety.

525. As to (1) in paragraph 524 above, it is common ground that (a) the VT11 purchase order as issued by DiscoverTech on 31 March 2010 was for software only (the software component of the archive storage cells but without the cells themselves) whereas (as previously explained) the deal discussed with Citi included an element of hardware (the storage cells with software embedded).

526. The Claimants' argument was that the ostensible restriction of the purchase order to software was an expedient to enable revenue recognition in Q1 2010: it was necessary because by the time of the purchase order, the hardware element was no longer capable of being delivered within the quarter, whereas software could instantly be delivered electronically; and Autonomy wanted to recognise at least the lion's share of the revenue from a sale to Citi in the quarterly results for Q1 2010.

527. Mr Goodfellow explained this as follows (and his account was not challenged):

> *"I do not recall the events leading up to this conversation specifically but I believe that I received a phone call from Mr Crumbacher that day (31 March 2010) where he asked for the storage cells to be shipped immediately (to DiscoverTech). I would have explained that this was impossible as it required physical delivery of both hardware and software and we did not have the required hardware available to deliver. I confirmed that we could, though, deliver the software almost instantly. I recall that it was Autonomy's focus to deliver a product, whether hardware or software, by the end of the quarter to enable it to recognise revenue. Delivering software was the only means of achieving that."*

528. Following this telephone conversation, Mr Crumbacher sent Mr Egan and Mr Scott a further email, also dated 31 March 2010, in which he stated:

> *"Stouffer, Following up on my voicemail, I just talked to Chris G and understand this is no longer a hardware resale deal but, instead, a software resale. We'll be licensing Discover Tech 62 instances of Zantaz Digital Safe Smart Cell software. …"*

529. The Claimants contended that all that had changed was the discovery by Mr Crumbacher that Autonomy would be unable to effect delivery of hardware to DiscoverTech that day, precluding revenue recognition for the entire purchase, and that this was what led to the DiscoverTech purchase order being confined to software, delivery of which could be effected instantaneously.

530. Thus, they submitted, the confinement of the DiscoverTech deal to software alone had nothing to do with any commercial reality, nor any specification or preference on the

part of the VAR, and everything to do with Autonomy's desire to recognise revenue in Q1 2010.

531. This was put to Dr Lynch in cross-examination. He offered a simpler explanation:

> *"No, it's because DiscoverTech wanted to buy software, it didn't want to buy the hardware.*
>
> *...*
>
> *They had no interest in buying the hardware, from what I understand."*

532. When pressed as to the basis for this understanding, Dr Lynch's response was equally simple:

> *"I've never seen any – anything that leads me to believe that they wanted to buy the hardware.*
>
> *Q. So you have no basis one way or another?*
>
> *A. Well, I do, otherwise I would expect to see something saying that they want to buy hardware. I've never seen that, I think it's a very simple case of a reseller knows that there is software that has to go into a solution for a third party that can be sold to many third parties and does a deal to buy the software part of it. They're not buying the hardware part of it, they don't have to."*
>
> *...*
>
> *Q. Were you aware of this transaction at the time?*
>
> *A. I may have had it on a list, but I wouldn't have had any more involvement than that.*

533. It was then put to Dr Lynch that despite the change in the identity of the product being sold to DiscoverTech, as compared to the combined product offered to Citi, the price in the VT11 purchase order was essentially the same as the price Autonomy proposed to charge Citi for both the software and the hardware. Dr Lynch was taken to the following extract from Mr Goodfellow's second witness statement:

> *"However, I did not appreciate at the time, that the software was licensed under the DiscoverTech VAR Agreement for substantially the same price as the storage cell deal that was being discussed between Autonomy and Citi (which included hardware and software). This struck me as odd when I learned about it as I would have expected the price paid by DiscoverTech for the software alone to be materially less than the price which we had been discussing with Citi for delivery of the storage cells (which included the hardware on which the software was to be loaded)."*

534. Dr Lynch answered as follows:

> *"Q. So the point Mr Goodfellow makes is that, despite confining the DiscoverTech purchase order to software alone, the price remained substantially the same as the price Autonomy had been trying to get from Citi for the hardware/software combination and that was not challenged evidence. Do you dispute it?*
>
> *A. They bought more software than they would have done if they had bought the hardware and the software together.*
>
> *Q. Mr Goodfellow says he would have expected the price for the software alone to be materially less than the price of the combination --*
>
> *A. Not unless they're buying more software, which is what they did."*

535. As noted previously, one of the difficulties in assessing Dr Lynch's evidence is that he was routinely invited to comment or speculate on the reasons or motivation for things in which he had said he had not had any substantive part, and he took to answering from his research and understanding years after the event without invariably reminding the questioner that he was really providing not evidence of facts, but a subsequently informed gloss or *ex post facto rationalisation*. Dr Lynch's sometimes insouciant style tended to exacerbate the difficulty. In this particular context, a subsequent exchange in cross-examination clarified that Dr Lynch was simply offering an alternative explanation based on subsequent review:

> *"A. My understanding is that, yes, they were buying a higher amount of software.*
>
> *Q. What's the basis for your understanding?*
>
> *A. Because all the value is software. There's no hardware in that value*
>
> *Q. So you're simply looking at the value of the contracts and saying, well, they must have bought something different to what was being sold to Citi?*
>
> *A. I had a look at - - you know, as I say, with many of these things you're asking me about I wasn't involved at the time. I had a look at it as part of these proceedings and that was my understanding, so I could go back and have another look."*

536. In any event, and as the Claimants pointed out, Dr Lynch's *ex post facto* rationalisation was flawed. The unchallenged evidence of Mr Goodfellow was that Autonomy had been seeking a price of $5,488,538 from Citi for 64 storage cells. That would have required 64 instances of the software. However, DiscoverTech's purchase order was for only 62 instances of the software. The Claimants are plainly right, in my judgment, that DiscoverTech were not involved in the negotiations as to either price or quantity, whether before or after the VT11 purchase order; and the VT11 purchase order did not represent DiscoverTech's carefully refined view of what it wanted to buy and sell on: it was in all probability, as it seems to me, substantially dictated by Autonomy.

537. The Claimants depicted this as *"another attempt by Dr Lynch to mislead the Court."* I think it is more complicated and less stark than that. Dr Lynch has convinced himself of

the righteousness of his position. From the premise that all was correctly done, he glossed events with a mixture of insouciance and plausible conviction. I doubt he told me many things he had not come to believe (though I am afraid that he did tell some). In this instance, he offered an explanation which evidence disproved. I would not, in this instance, say more than that.

538. In the circumstances, the Claimants submitted that their explanation that the hardware element had been stripped out of the VT11 purchase order because if it extended to hardware delivery it could not be effected before the end of the quarter, and thus revenue recognition would not have been defensible or accepted by Deloitte, was left beyond real challenge.

539. Their further implicit submission was that DiscoverTech's indifference to whether what it had purchased and had to sell met the requirements of the proposed end-user was a further illustration of the lack of any real substance in VT11: it was simply paperwork to justify revenue recognition: DiscoverTech did not care because once it had completed the purchase order its part was over, there never being any intention or expectation that any effort be made to achieve an onward sale by the VAR (as distinct from a direct sale by Autonomy).

540. I accept these submissions (express and implicit). The stripping out of any hardware content from the VAR transaction did reflect the need for immediate electronic delivery, in order to achieve a sale before the end of the quarter and justify revenue recognition in that quarter. That was impossible in the case of hardware. I also suspect that a VAR such as DiscoverTech would not have wished to hold (and thus have the burden of storing and then delivering) physical inventory. The purchase order was confined to software simply in order to enable revenue recognition which would otherwise have been denied in respect of the whole transaction. The Claimants are plainly right, in my judgment, that DiscoverTech were not involved in the negotiations as to either price or quantity, whether before or after the VT11 purchase order; and the VT11 purchase order did not represent DiscoverTech's carefully refined view of what it wanted to buy and sell on: it was in all probability, as it seems to me, substantially dictated by Autonomy. I do not accept Dr Lynch's *ex post facto* rationalisation.

541. As important, to my mind, as this further illustration of the use of friendly VARs to trigger revenue recognition is the apparent indifference of the VAR in question to what it ordered or the price: it had no interest in either since in reality the goods remained in Autonomy's control and the VAR would never be called to pay the price.

542. Turning to (2) in paragraph 524 above, the Claimants contended that DiscoverTech played no substantive role in any negotiations with Citi after the VAR deal was made, nor (though party to the tripartite arrangements recorded) in the transaction eventually concluded between Autonomy and Citi. They placed reliance in this regard on the evidence of Mr Goodfellow. This was to the effect that he would have expected to have known about it if DiscoverTech had played any role in the transaction between Autonomy and Citi, and as far as he was aware it did not. The Claimants relied also on the hearsay evidence of Mr David Truitt that DiscoverTech did not have any relevant contacts at Citi (nor at PMI) nor did it *"participate in any sales efforts"* on this account. By the time DiscoverTech became involved the issue of what was to be sold to Citi and at what price had already been determined between Autonomy and Citi, and in that sense it was fair to say that Autonomy "*were in control"*.

543. As a corollary of this, the Claimants submitted that from Citi's point of view, the tripartite document was meaningless, and the joinder of DiscoverTech as a third party an irrelevance. Citi was to deliver its purchase order to Autonomy, it was to make payment to Autonomy and it was to look to Autonomy for performance of all obligations owed to Citi. The mismatch between writing and fact is illustrated by the simple fact that DiscoverTech had no hardware to sell, and it was the unchallenged evidence of Mr Goodfellow that Autonomy delivered the storage cells directly to Citi.

544. The Claimants further submitted that the purpose of executing the agreement had:

> *"nothing to do with Citi's actual requirements and everything to do with Autonomy's revenue recognition manoeuvres. This piece of paper was designed to allow Autonomy to persuade Deloitte that the sale to Citi was made by DiscoverTech. However, as the chronology... makes clear, this was pure illusion. It was the unchallenged evidence of Mr Goodfellow that DiscoverTech played no substantive role in the transaction between Autonomy and Citi…That is consistent with David Truitt's testimony…that DiscoverTech did not "participate in any…sales efforts on either of these accounts." There is no evidence to the contrary."*

545. The Claimants coupled to this a further contention that Deloitte were indeed misled into thinking that DiscoverTech did try to engage with Citi and make an onward/end-user sale but were stymied simply by administrative impediments. The Claimants cited in support the history recorded in Deloitte's working paper (suggesting that what was stated there must surely reflect what Deloitte had themselves been told by their audit client), as follows (typographical errors are in the original):

> "*This debtor relates to a Q2 2010 Digital Safe licence deal sold to the end-user Citigroup, through the VAR Discover Technologies LLC.*
>
> *These balances have not been paid directly by Discover Technologies, but have been settled by Citigroup for the following reasons.*
>
> *Discovery Tech had not traded with CitiGroup before, and CitiGroup are very strict about only trading with approved suppliers. The processes to become an approved supplier takes a long time, and so it would not have been possible to make Discovery Tech an approved supplier before the due date on the invoice owed to Autonomy.*
>
> *Autonomy is however an approved supplier of CitiGroup, and so a 3 party agreement was created whereby CitiGroup would transact directly with Autonomy and settle the gross debt between them, bypassing Discover Tech. In the process, the debtor from DiscoverTech, which is aged here, would be forgiven."*

546. The Defendants disputed this, and they too relied principally on the evidence of Mr David Truitt. The Defendants particularly cited the following extract from his cross-examination in the US criminal proceedings:

"Q. In the…Citi deal, did Mr Cronin make a lot of effort to get involved with Citi?

A. He definitely reached out to - to procurement folks that we were referred to. He – you know, there was a vendor list that we were attempting to try and get on. So there were conversations that he was having with some folk within Citi.

Q. One of the reasons that DiscoverTech wanted to be the reseller on this Citi deal was that you hoped that it would lead to sales of software and services with Citi?

A. Yes. That's correct.

Q. And a small company getting a relationship with a big company like Citibank would be an advantage, as far as you were concerned?

A. Absolutely.

Q. And that's why you wanted to be a reseller in the deal?

A. Yes. That was very enticing to us."

547. The Defendants also relied on the following further extract, this time from Mr David Truitt's evidence in chief, which had been side-lined by the Claimants:

> *"Q. …Mr Cronin is writing (reading):*
>
> > *"It appears that a method is being worked where DT would be the reseller, Autonomy would be acting as a DT agent and executing an agreement with Citi directly."*
>
> *Can you help us understand what that means?*
>
> *A. Not – not specifically but, you know, they were -- we were looking to --- Discover was having conversations with procurement at Citi. We were trying to figure out what it would take for them to deal with us directly, and what we found was that they had concerns about that. It was a very long process…to get put on their approved vendor list…"*

548. The Defendants submitted on the basis of this evidence that:

(1) DiscoverTech did make efforts to be involved with Citi on the deal and both DiscoverTech and Autonomy were seeking to have Citi issue any purchase order to DiscoverTech; Autonomy was not seeking a direct sale to Citi. In the event, Citi's internal processes did not permit DiscoverTech to accede to approved purchaser status, and the best that could be done was the tripartite arrangement.

(2) Accordingly, the impression given to Deloitte that DiscoverTech had been trying to make a direct sale to Citi but had been prevented from doing so for administrative reasons was not false: it was true. Mr David Truitt had explained these attempts in his testimony, marked up as hearsay by the Claimants themselves.

549. As it seems to me, a substantial part of what Deloitte appear to have been told as recorded in their working paper was true: DiscoverTech had not traded with Citi before, and Citi were strict about only trading with approved suppliers. The processes to become an approved supplier did probably take a long time, and so it would not have been possible to make DiscoverTech an approved supplier before the due date on the invoice owed to Autonomy. (See especially the third paragraph of the Deloitte note quoted at paragraph 545 above.)

550. What was not true, however, was that there was ever any real intention for DiscoverTech to negotiate with or sell to Citi: DiscoverTech never became part of the negotiations, and it was always intended to be a direct deal with Autonomy (or nothing). Mr David Truitt's evidence (see paragraph 547 above) was evasive and fell short of saying that it did. An email from Mr Mark of Autonomy to Mr Goodfellow dated 14 May 2010 starts with the words *"Citi won't do a reseller deal…",* Citi maintained the position through until August 2010.

551. Indeed, it seems clear that Citi were only persuaded to become party to the tripartite agreement on the basis that (a) it imposed no obligations upon them, made clear that, although delivery would be via DiscoverTech, Autonomy remained *"responsible for its obligations"* and provided for payment by Citi to Autonomy leaving the joinder of DiscoverTech as a matter essentially between Autonomy and DiscoverTech relating to invoicing and payment; and (b) Citi received a 40% discount (which Mr Hussain agreed expressly in an email to Mr Mark of Autonomy dated 5 August 2010, stating *"Alright if thru discovertech and close this week"*). The Claimants' closing submissions noted that Mr Hussain was willing to countenance a 40% discount in order to have DiscoverTech however notionally, in the loop.[53]

552. In my judgment, the tripartite agreement was put in place, not because Autonomy had to be brought in as an intermediary, but because Autonomy was the true seller, as principal, in a direct sale, which if apparent would have concerned Deloitte. The first sentence of the Deloitte note (see again paragraph 545 above) was simply false: there had been no sale through DiscoverTech to Citi, and given Citi's clear insistence that it would not entertain such a deal, none had ever been intended.

553. Further, in my judgment, the false impression given was intentional. It was supplemented by an equally false email (after the transaction and as part of the audit process) from Mr Chamberlain to Mr Welham and Mr Murray of Deloitte dated 13 October 2010, in which Mr Chamberlain stated *"Citi could not get DiscoverTech entered into their systems in time for a 30th sept close and so we had a three way agreement with us accepting payment on behalf of DT."* It achieved the result intended of heading off Deloitte's concern that, if a further VAR agreement were to be replaced by a direct end-user agreement, this would call into question whether the VAR had genuinely assumed the risks of ownership. What Deloitte understood, in the words of Mr Welham's witness statement, was that:

[53] It should be noted that Citi were very tough in the negotiation, and it would not be accurate to regard the 40% discount as entirely referable to Autonomy's need for the deal to be routed through DiscoverTech. At one point, Citi indicated that it was regarding Autonomy's efforts to maintain its price as *"a relationship issue",* and in an email dated 5 August 2010 even relayed a message from "Otto" who was in charge of the negotiation for them that *"He says he will spend every working minute to ensure that we get off the digital safe if we cannot get the discount he is asking for".* But the fact that Autonomy needed this special arrangement left them in a weak bargaining position.

> *"it was for purely logistical reasons that DiscoverTech did not itself make the sale to Citi, i.e. because DiscoverTech, having negotiated with Citi, could not be added to Citi's supplier account listing in good time, thus resulting in Autonomy stepping in instead…This explanation distinguished the position from our understanding of the other direct deals that we had identified in our Q1 and Q2 Audit committee reports*[54] *(where we were concerned whether the VAR had in fact assumed the risks of ownership)."*

554. VT11 also illustrates how mechanical the role of a friendly VAR had become; and the friendlier the VAR, and the firmer its trust based on its experience that Autonomy would not leave it in the lurch, the less the need for any protracted or focused consideration of anything more than the potential upside from its point of view which I consider to have been very largely, and sometimes exclusively, the payment of a MAF (by whatever name called). The VAR contract was a necessary step. It had legal effect. The VAR was bound on the terms of its purchase order and the underlying VAR agreement. In his evidence in the US criminal proceedings, introduced in relevant part by the Claimants as hearsay evidence in support of their case, Mr David Truitt expressly agreed that he understood and accepted that DiscoverTech (a) owned the software (b) had full control of the software and (c) owed the money whether or not an end-user deal eventuated. But that did not represent the full understanding of the parties. Only in the technical sense of there being no formal agreement binding on Autonomy was there no side agreement. In substance, the parties knew that (a) DiscoverTech would never interfere or be allowed any say in the negotiations for onward sale and no onward sale by the VAR was ever intended (b) all the parties were subscribed to the assurance that Autonomy would never leave DiscoverTech on the hook, and (c) accordingly neither risk nor control ever in reality passed from Autonomy.

555. The third issue which I have identified in sub-paragraph (3) of paragraph 524 above is the issue as to the basis and propriety of the payment of what in the context of this transaction was labelled a *"Referral Partner commission",* similar to a MAF. In particular, my focus is on the way the payment was presented and sought to be justified.

556. An email dated 15 October 2010 from Mr Egan to Mr Kanter, copying Mr Hussain, recorded the agreement of Mr Hussain and Mr Egan that *"DiscoverTech is due 10% on the Citi deal"* and requested Mr Kanter to *"create the letter today and approve wiring funds for today."* Mr Kanter's letter to DiscoverTech of the same date (and dated accordingly) purported to formalise a *"prior discussion"* and evidence an agreement to pay DiscoverTech $497,000 as a "*Referral Partner commission*". The letter provided in relevant part as follows:

> *"Referral partner will: (1) introduce Autonomy into the deals with Citi Group ("End-User"); (2) obtain quotes from Autonomy on behalf of the End-User; and (3) work with the End-User to assist in executing purchase orders and contracts with Autonomy.*

[54] It will be recalled that Deloitte were not told about the direct deal with the FSA in Q3 2010 (in which the VAR was Capax Discovery) either, and so in their Q3 2010 report to the Audit Committee Deloitte had noted that there had been no further reversals of transactions with VARs in the form of direct deals. Deloitte had expressly warned about its concerns if another deal went direct.

> *Autonomy will: (1) pay Referral Partner commissions in the amount of $497,000, as a result of Referral Partner's direct and proximate participation in the account; (2) deliver products directly to the End-User; and (3) use reasonable efforts to provide mutually agreed upon sales assistance. With respect to any Lead (as defined below), including the End-User obtained by Referral Partner through Autonomy, Referral Partner agrees not to market or sell any products competitive with the Autonomy software to such Lead for the specific Lead opportunity identified and will promptly notify Autonomy is such Lead is considering a competitive product…".*

557. The Claimants submitted that DiscoverTech had not performed any of these roles. As Mr David Truitt testified in the US criminal trial:

> *"Q. Did Discover introduce Autonomy into the deals with Citigroup?*
>
> *A. We did not.*
>
> *Q. (reading) "(2) Obtain quotes from Autonomy on behalf of the end-user." Did Discover Technologies do that?*
>
> *A. We did not.*
>
> *…*
>
> *Q. Beyond signing the purchase order in March of 2010 and taking the risk as you described, did Discover Tech provide any marketing assistance to Autonomy?*
>
> *A. No. Again, these existing customer deals, there really wasn't much to do. We did not."*

558. Dr Lynch confirmed in cross-examination that he had no basis on which to dispute Mr David Truitt's evidence though (as elaborated below) he explained his different understanding of the letter, and he did not accept that, in the round, a false impression was given of DiscoverTech's role.

559. The Claimants also made the point that there is no evidence before the Court from Mr Kanter. They submitted that therefore there is no basis on which the Court could find that he (Mr Kanter) honestly believed the description in this agreement of DiscoverTech's role to be true, or that he had any basis for holding such a belief.

560. Accordingly, the Claimants submitted that the payment of a nearly $0.5 million fee was for doing *"nothing other than facilitating an improper acceleration of income."*

561. Against this, the Defendants contended that, even if the presentation was not entirely accurate, there was a clear rationale for the payment, as Deloitte accepted in their review. The letter from Mr Kanter contained standard form language and was capable of being used, in that (a) the first obligation of Autonomy was to pay DiscoverTech for its *"direct and proximate participation in the account"* which covered DiscoverTech's planned and eventual role and (b) the agreement also had forward-looking obligations,

including a restriction on competition from the VAR which Dr Lynch stated in cross-examination was of importance because:

> *"…in return what we want is the ability to have the relationship through them with the customer and them not to go along and do things like, for example, bring in our competitors and that sort of thing."*

562. When pressed by Mr Rabinowitz to accept that *"it's obvious that the letter from Mr Kanter gives a false impression of what role DiscoverTech was actually playing here"* Dr Lynch reiterated that this was not his understanding. The suggestion was then put to him that:

> *"the problem for Autonomy was that if it documented the real reason for paying a fee to the VAR, that would involve stating that the VAR was being rewarded for enabling Autonomy to recognise revenue improperly, correct?"*

563. Dr Lynch responded:

> *"I disagree. If the VAR letter had just said, "We're going to pay a marketing assistance fee" or, you know, "a fee", there would be nothing wrong with that. There doesn't have to be a specific reason given. Especially if the commercial reality is obviously the VAR wants to make a turn on its deal. Again, this is industry standard stuff, everyone does it, including HP."*

564. The Defendants thus dismissed the Claimants' point as a *"forensic rather than a real one".*

565. The question, as it seems to me, is whether Mr Kanter's letter was really just a handy template, some broadly applicable to the facts, some not but adopted out of convenience and not to misrepresent; or whether the description of the services purportedly provided by DiscoverTech was intentionally crafted to secure approval from Deloitte and/or the Audit Committee. Did Mr Kanter intentionally exaggerate and misstate DiscoverTech's role? Dr Lynch said it did not.

566. In my judgment, the letter was all of a piece with the misrepresentation of the whole nature of the transaction. It was false because the whole notion that the VAR was doing anything at all was false. The letter was intentionally in terms which sought to bolster the appearance of, in the words of the letter itself, a commission being paid for *"direct and proximate participation in the account",* direct contact with and delivery to the end-user and *"reasonable efforts to provide mutually agreed upon sales assistance".* A fee would probably not of itself have been objectionable; nor do I think it has been established that it was known to be a reward for impropriety. It seems to me likely that Mr David Truitt's simple explanation that *"we took the risk by issuing the order, and… expected to be paid a margin when the deal closed"* was the reality in this context, as in many similar VAR deals. But the letter was part of the entire presentation: and, in my

judgment, whether template or made to measure, it was misleading, and known by Mr Kanter to be so.

567. Finally, I would note one further typical feature: Dr Lynch accepted that the deal did not ultimately result in follow-on work for DiscoverTech either. In seeking to justify a fee by reference to the need to secure loyalty in the context of that future work, Dr Lynch was once again speaking more theoretically than accurately. Moreover, the 'friendly' VARs tended to present the opportunity for future service work as both (a) the main commercial reason for the VAR undertaking the risk and also (b) a valuable prospective contribution or *"added value"* from Autonomy's point of view, since its objectives included minimising its own service business (and relying on sub-contractors or partners instead) and maximising its software licence sales.

Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT11

568. There is no issue as to Mr Hussain's knowledge of and participation in VT11 and in offering a discount in exchange for agreement to the subsequent tripartite agreement and payment of a *"Referral Partner commission"* or MAF (which Mr Hussain approved). He appears to have been sent a copy of Mr Kanter's letter of 15 October 2010.

569. Dr Lynch's case was that he (Dr Lynch) knew of but was not involved in the negotiation of this reseller deal, nor in the accounting for it. Nor was he involved in the later tripartite arrangement, or in the MAF payment. Dr Lynch was cross-examined on this transaction:

(1) Dr Lynch understandably said that he would not know whether DiscoverTech had a relationship with Citi.

(2) He was asked why he had not mentioned either this transaction or the one with PMI in his evidence; he replied by saying *"I don't think there's anything wrong with a willing buyer buying software off you in the hope of selling it on.*"

(3) It was put to Dr Lynch that he was aware that "*Autonomy was proposing to get DiscoverTech to submit a purchase order for end-user Citi to enable Autonomy to recognise revenue of $5.5 million in the quarter*". Dr Lynch answered: *"I think that's the goal, yes".*

(4) The Claimants put to Dr Lynch their argument about the Citi deal ultimately including hardware and software as well. Dr Lynch made clear that he was not involved in or aware of any of this detail at the time. He said: *"I may have had it on a list, but I wouldn't have had any more involvement than that.*" He was not challenged on this evidence.

(5) Dr Lynch was asked about the wording of Mr Kanter's MAF letter. It was not suggested that Dr Lynch had played any role in preparing this letter, or that he had even seen it at the time. When asked questions about it, however, Dr Lynch did not accept that the letter was misleading: he explained that these were standard terms which contained a forward-looking element. He also made the point that this was a standard way of compensating a reseller in the industry, and that resellers did in fact assist in marketing continually.

570. Dr Lynch submitted in the round that none of the points raised by the Claimants in cross-examining came near to justifying the contention that he was aware of any impropriety or false accounting with respect to this transaction.

571. In my judgment, Dr Lynch plainly knew of the use of DiscoverTech as a VAR for the transaction. On 31 March 2010 Mr Hussain had notified him of this by an emailed note which summarised the *"Route to 25c requires $200m"* and had an entry *"Citi – Disc tech 5.5"*. But there is little transaction-specific evidence to tie him to the various subsequent events described above.

572. Nevertheless, and given the usual course of monitoring of deals identified as necessary to enable forecasts to be met, I think it more likely than not that Mr Hussain did keep him informed of the progress towards a deal; and in light of their usual practices, and Mr Hussain's personal need and tendency to share such matters with Dr Lynch, I also think it likely that Mr Hussain told Dr Lynch of (a) Citi's threat to walk away from the relationship if not given a discount (see above), (b) Mr Hussain's agreement to 40% and (c) the accommodation agreed in the form of the tripartite agreement (which Dr Lynch would have known would be presented to Deloitte). More generally, in my judgment, Dr Lynch knew that the VAR was expected to do nothing in every case. Once again I would in addition refer to and read in paragraph 2192 to 2195 in the main body of the judgment *mutatis mutandis.* Given the $30,000 approval policy, I consider also that Mr Hussain would have referred to Dr Lynch before approving a payment out as a MAF of some $0.5 million.

573. All in all, therefore, I have concluded that both Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch knew that VT11 had no real substance, and the recognition of revenue from it in Q1 2010 was wrong and that Deloitte were giving approval in ignorance of the true nature of the transaction (and in particular, its lack of any real substance).

574. VT11 (in Q1 2010) seems to me to illustrate well the strategy of using 'friendly' VARs to make good revenue shortfalls and the pattern adopted (with variations to suit particular exigencies) to implement it, which involved the VAR in doing nothing beyond accepting a legal risk and thereby enabling Autonomy to present the 'sale' as mandating revenue recognition whereas in truth the only real sale was any which Autonomy could negotiate and agree with an end-user.

VT12: DiscoverTech/PMI Q1 2010

575. VT11 was transacted in tandem with another impugned VAR transaction (VT12) between Autonomy and DiscoverTech for prospective end-user Philip Morris International ("PMI"), the tobacco company.

576. The VT12 purchase order was issued subject to a reseller agreement on substantially the same terms as that used for VT11, which I have summarised at paragraph 508 above. It was set out in a letter dated 31 March 2010 from Autonomy to DiscoverTech, signed by Mr Kanter and counter-signed by Mr Malcolm A. Hyson (as Vice President) for DiscoverTech. The agreement expressly provided that it constituted the parties' entire agreement and put DiscoverTech fully on risk. The licence fee was $4,185,000 (with $878,850 payable immediately upon execution) plus a first-year support fee of $209,250.

577. Mr David Truitt's evidence was that the PMI deal presented an opportunity he wanted to participate in. He wanted to provide services to the end-user, and assumed the risk of the transaction in order to do so. He also funded the first instalment payment from his own resources. Mr David Truitt's evidence corroborated Mr Egan's evidence that DiscoverTech was on risk.

578. The only issue on which I need to focus in respect of VT12 seems to me to concern the circumstances in which PMI entered into a direct deal with Autonomy, rather than a deal with DiscoverTech.

579. The Claimants focused in this regard on an email dated 4 August 2010 from Mr Hussain to Mr Kanter (copying Mr Egan) seeking approval for a payment of a MAF to DiscoverTech, in which Mr Hussain explained the history and sought to justify the payment of a MAF on the basis of:

> *"the history being that because PMI were so concerned about compliance that they placed the order direct so the DiscoverTech PO was replaced."*

580. The Claimants contended that this explanation was contrived and untrue, *"as all those involved in the exchange would have known"*. In truth, they contended, PMI had:

> *"placed its order with Autonomy because it had been negotiating with Autonomy all along and had no relationship with DiscoverTech."*

581. The Claimants relied on a sequence of emails demonstrating that it was Autonomy which pushed for the deal it eventually struck with PMI to be *"pushed through DiscoverTech"*. At one point, in early June 2010, this appeared to be nearly agreed since PMI at that time contemplated itself dealing through its "partner", SHI. But PMI changed its mind because that idea was causing internal problems for it. At that point, Autonomy continued to press for the deal with PMI to be "pushed through" via DiscoverTech, and put this forward in what the emails described as a *"higher level approach"*; but in the same email it was recognised within Autonomy that if that higher level approach failed, they would *"need SH to approve the direct route"*. That effort did fail: PMI declined to place an order with DiscoverTech and insisted that any deal be direct with Autonomy; and a direct deal was then concluded. The Claimants submitted that this transaction thus followed the standard 'pattern', with the irrelevant exception that at one point, and at Autonomy's urging, the end-user did toy with the idea of dealing via DiscoverTech. None of this signified that there was any real intention for DiscoverTech to take any active part in the negotiation or execution of a transaction with PMI; it was always to be entirely passive, in accordance with the 'pattern'.

582. The Defendants, on the other hand, presented the background to be, in summary, as follows. After the VAR deal had closed, PMI wanted to use its own partner for the deal, SHI. Autonomy was content with this provided that PMI's partner dealt through Autonomy's partner, DiscoverTech. As at 4 June 2010, DiscoverTech were waiting for a purchase order from SHI, and would be shipping them the software that had been shipped to DiscoverTech by Autonomy (using Automater) in the previous quarter.

583. In the event, PMI changed its mind with regard to having any partners on the deal and the purchase was implemented as a direct deal. In circumstances where Autonomy had taken the opportunity and the purchase order directly, leaving DiscoverTech without the end-user prospect envisaged, a credit note was issued to DiscoverTech and a MAF was paid. The amount of the MAF reflected the margin between the sale to DiscoverTech and the subsequent end-user sale.

584. In effect, the Defendants sought to contend that the direct deal between Autonomy and PMI was an unexpected substitute for an expected end-user sale by DiscoverTech to PMI, necessitating and justifying the credit note as the means of making good DiscoverTech for the direct deal having caused DiscoverTech to miss out on the end-user sale for which it had purchased the software. The sub-text was that the sale to the VAR was a substantive sale in the expectation of an onward sale by the VAR to PMI.

585. I cannot accept that an end-user sale was ever the expectation; and even if PMI had agreed to sell to DiscoverTech (which, as has been seen, it did not) the reality would have been that this would simply have been a convenient means of settling Autonomy's direct sale. Vis-a-vis PMI the seller was always Autonomy. The objective of the negotiations was always a direct sale. Autonomy's urgent recourse to a VAR in order to trigger revenue recognition in the desired quarter did not alter either the negotiations or their objective. The Defendants' depiction of VT12 as having been entered into with a view to DiscoverTech entering into an onward end-user sale to PMI is inconsistent with the chronology and the emails I have referred to above.

586. I agree with the Claimants, therefore, that VT12 was another exemplar of the usual pattern. It follows, and I find, that Mr Hussain's email of 4 August 2010, in giving the impression that only concerns about compliance issues had led to the direct sale, was false.

587. There is no dispute as to Mr Hussain's knowledge of VT12, and he was kept informed at every stage after it which ultimately resulted in the proposed onward sale by DiscoverTech to PMI's partner, SHI, being replaced by a direct sale by Autonomy to PMI and the issue of a credit note by Autonomy to DiscoverTech. Mr Hussain also approved the payment of a MAF.

588. Dr Lynch did not address VT12 in his witness statements. He explained in cross-examination that he had *"almost no involvement"* in either PMI or Citi, or in their accounting treatment. He accepted that he knew that a VAR was to be involved, and he made clear that he was content with that:

> *"As I've said, I would have had no issue about a deal that we were working with an end-user, a VAR becoming involved in that and that sale happening to the VAR if the end-user deal was delayed or the VAR gave us other advantages."*

589. I would repeat *mutatis mutandis* what I have said in paragraphs 568 to 574 above in relation to VT11 and the Citi deal, and the Defendants' "guilty knowledge" and express the same conclusion.

590. The only further point I need note in respect of the transaction is the Claimants' assertion that:

> *"Thereafter, the Defendants were more careful to ensure that Deloitte was kept in the dark about the phenomenon of VARs being reversed and replaced by a direct end-user deal. Until Q3 2011 – a quarter that was not reviewed by Deloitte – Autonomy developed other ways to protect the relevant VARS."*

VT30: DiscoverTech/Prisa Q1 2011

591. Promotora de Informaciones SA ("Prisa") was (and is) an IT service management and media company operating in Spain, Portugal and (so Dr Lynch thought) Latin America. It was an existing Autonomy customer with which Autonomy was in discussions during 2011 with a view to a hosting transaction under which Autonomy would *"swipe the hosting business away from IBM",* as Mr James Murray at Autonomy described it in an email dated 15 March 2011 to Mr Hussain and Mr Wyse, which was copied to Dr Blanchflower. In the same email Mr Murray noted that Prisa understood that Autonomy *"would try to squeeze it into this quarter."*

592. The possibility of such a transaction was initially described by Mr Hussain in an email to Dr Lynch dated 17 March 2011 as a *"real long shot"*. However, after a meeting in Madrid, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch on 24 March 2011 saying *"Prisa going well. Need bbc"*, and again on 28 March 2011 to say the prospects were 50/50. However, when Dr Lynch requested a further update from Mr Hussain on 30 March 2011 (which is demonstrative of the frequent contact and process of updating that apparently was the norm between Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain), Mr Hussain's spreadsheet sent in reply no longer mentioned Prisa; and in the event, however, no deal had transpired before the end of the quarter.

593. The collapse of the prospect of the Prisa deal in Q1 2011 gave rise to the risk of a shortfall of quarterly revenue (compared to forecast). Prisa became one of several deals in respect of which Autonomy resorted to a VAR transaction with DiscoverTech, the terms of which were set out in a letter agreement bearing the date 31 March 2011. Those terms were substantially the same as the terms set out in earlier letter agreements between Autonomy and DiscoverTech, and included the provisions referred to in paragraph 508 above (including the provisions for the passing of risk and control, and an entire agreement clause).

594. Looking ahead, no deal in relation to this software was eventually concluded with Prisa, by either DiscoverTech or Autonomy. The Claimants' position is that although DiscoverTech satisfied its obligations in respect of this deal[55] it was only enabled to do so by a 'reciprocal' transaction which they sought also to impugn.

595. To return to the VAR transaction itself, the Claimants' complaints in relation to this transaction, VT30, had four principal strands (though one related to the hardware case rather than the VAR claims):

[55] The Claimants complain about the purchases by Autonomy of DiscoverEngine software. See section C.5.12 below.

(1) First, there was an allegation of backdating. It was said that Mr Hussain only asked Mr David Truitt (via Mr Egan) to take a deal for Prisa as prospective end-user some time in the week after the end of Q1 2011, that the Prisa deal was in fact not entered into until 4 April 2011, and the letter agreement was backdated to the quarter end so that revenue could be booked as earned in the quarter (Q1 2011), which in truth it had not been;

(2) Secondly, the deal was also said to illustrate the use of hardware sales as a discretionary fund, use of which could be calibrated with VAR sales;

(3) Thirdly, the Claimants contended that there was never any real prospect of a sale to Prisa because Prisa had no need for the software offered;

(4) Fourthly, the Claimants contended that although DiscoverTech did pay its debts to Autonomy on the deal (despite there being no end-user sale), DiscoverTech was enabled to do so by Autonomy purchasing DiscoverTech's *"DiscoverEngine"* software.

Alleged backdating

596. The Claimants' case that the Prisa VAR deal was dishonestly backdated to 31 March 2011 (see paragraph 595(1) above) was principally based on the evidence of Mr Egan in these proceedings and on Mr David Truitt's testimony when cross-examined in the US criminal proceedings. They also relied on more limited evidence from Mr Scott also given in the course of the US criminal proceedings.

597. Mr Egan described the circumstances of the VAR deal (VT30) in his witness statement as follows:

> *"In early April 2011, Mr Hussain told me that he needed a deal to make up for a revenue shortfall in Q1 2011. He asked me to get DiscoverTech to take a deal for PRISA as end-user. He told me that the deal documents had to be dated March 31, 2011. I called David Truitt. I asked him, as a favor and as a one-time request, to do a deal that would be backdated to March 31. On April 4, 2011, I sent Mr. Truitt a letter agreement dated March 31 that gave DiscoverTech a license to sublicense to PRISA certain identified eDiscovery and archiving software. The license fee was $3.6 million, plus $200,000 for support and maintenance. I asked that a signed purchase order be sent to my personal email, rather than my Autonomy email address, so that I could separate the signed license agreement (dated March 31) from the electronically dated covering email (which would be dated April 4 or 5) and could then provide a copy of the license agreement only to Autonomy for its records.*
>
> *Mr. Truitt said that he was uncomfortable with this request. I said I was equally uncomfortable with it. Nevertheless, Mr. Truitt agreed to have his CTO Malcolm Hyson sign the letter agreement. The signed agreement was sent to my personal email address. I countersigned the agreement and dated my signature March 31, 2011. …"*

598. The Claimants contended that Mr Egan's account was also borne out by an instant messaging chat on 4 April 2011 between Mr David Truitt and Mr Hyson. Mr David

Truitt was confused by Mr Egan's request to "*pdf me an email*" and sought Mr Hyson's advice on what it meant. He explained that "*Autonomy wants me to PDF an order, said that it will not change the date on the document if it is PDF?*". The Claimants contended that the reason for a PDF was to conceal the fraudulent backdating.

599. When he was asked by Counsel for Mr Hussain in these proceedings why he had not revealed the backdating earlier to HP's lawyers (and only then when trying to get an immunity deal), and why he had made no mention of it in his letter to the US Air Force in relation to the Prisa deal, Mr Egan's evidence was that he felt "*uncomfortable*" about the backdating, that he *"buried it"* as a "*very unpleasant memory*". He accepted that *"in the truest sense of the word"* he had not forgotten it and would "*never forget about it*". He said, "*I felt at the time when I was doing it that it was the wrong thing to do*".

600. His explanation for not having mentioned the backdating earlier to HP's lawyers was that he was not asked about the DiscoverTech/Prisa transaction and was not volunteering information on transactions he was not asked about:

> *"I really wasn't volunteering any information in general. I was asked to and really advised to answer everything and anything asked of me truthfully."*

601. When asked whether he accepted that it was possible that his recollection *"might have been affected by the threat that you might be prosecuted and imprisoned"* he said he did not accept that, adding that he *"never felt as though there was any prospect that [he] was in that kind of jeopardy"*. He did accept, however, that it was possible (*"a truism in the world"*) that his recollection might have been affected by the process of talking to lawyers.

602. Mr David Truitt's evidence in the US criminal proceedings was that the backdating was for him too *"very concerning because it was out of the norm of what I knew business to be"*. Mr David Truitt also said that he *"reached out to both Mr Egan and Mr Scott and let them know that I was concerned about what I had been asked to do;"* he *"wanted to make sure that I wasn't doing anything improper. I did not want to put myself in a situation where I could be in trouble."*

603. Mr David Truitt's evidence was that it was in light of his concerns that a meeting took place between Mr Egan, Mr Hussain and himself on 14 April 2011, in respect of which he sought reassurance. The Claimants and the Defendants presented the nature and effect of the discussions very differently.

604. In summary, the Claimants painted a picture of Mr Hussain reassuring Mr David Truitt that since Autonomy traded out of the UK, it was not within the purview of the US Securities and Exchange Commission and that international accounting principles allowed "*some flexibility*", but that in light of Mr David Truitt's misgivings, it would not happen again. The forensic impression the Claimants sought to create was that the reassurance was in effect that the backdating was unlikely to be discovered by the regulators, and Autonomy would not run the risk again.

605. The Claimants dismissed the suggestion made on behalf of the Defendants that Mr David Truitt's discomfort was alleviated by the reassurance given that the documenting of a previously reached agreement was permissible under IFRS; they submitted that the suggestion was *"inherently implausible, uncorroborated by any contemporaneous*

documents, unsupported by any evidence from Mr Hussain, and Mr Egan did not have any memory of it". The Claimants made the point that if the purpose of the purchase order was merely to record a previously concluded oral agreement, it is hard to see why the documentation could not simply have said so: it would have been easy for the document to have borne the genuine signature date but stating that it was memorialising an oral agreement reached in March 2011.

606. The Defendants, on the other hand, depicted Mr David Truitt's concern as having been that for accounting purposes the relevant date was not when the transaction was agreed but when it was formalized in writing, and that therefore his signature on a backdated document had resulted in substantively improper accounting, (which, he said, *"is why I was concerned"*). The Defendants contended that this concern was misplaced. It was based on a misunderstanding as to the effect under IFRS of papering a deal agreed within a given quarter, but not reduced to writing until after the end of the relevant quarter. It was their case that the relevant date for IFRS purposes was the date of agreement, and not the date of the paper recording or evidencing agreement. On that basis, the backdating of the document had no substantive effect in terms of revenue recognition in Q1 2011 if the date on the document reflected the date of an earlier oral agreement.

607. The factual premise of the Defendants' presentation was thus that the relevant Prisa deal had in fact been agreed before the end of the quarter, as one of many in a *"slate of deals"* agreed orally. However, neither Mr David Truitt nor Mr Egan could be sure of this. In a sense it offered Mr David Truitt a graceful exit; for Mr Egan it was more dangerous, first, because if there was a prior agreement, it could be said that it was his own failure to get the paperwork done which had caused the problems, and secondly, because his approach to the US prosecuting authorities was to confess and avoid, and hope they would pursue bigger fish; and, further, his deal with the US authorities required him to maintain consistency with the version of events he agreed with them.

608. Mr David Truitt's evidence was that Autonomy had approached him within the last days of the quarter. They had offered a *"slate of deals"* which Mr Truitt agreed to do; he thought that the Prisa deal *"very well could have been"* in that slate of deals, but he could not say for certain one way or the other. He thought that he and Mr Egan were talking about the slate of deals on the Thursday (the last day of the quarter); the paperwork for the Prisa deal was not completed until the Monday.

609. Mr Egan accepted that he could not be sure, or anywhere near sure, that David Truitt's recollection was wrong. He accepted that his own memory of the meeting and what specifically was said was vague; but whilst accepting that it was possible that Mr David Truitt's recollection was right, he did say *"It's not my memory";* and he subsequently added:

> *"…My feeling was I did not feel as though we had done the deal, so I had bad feelings about papering it after the end of the quarter."*

610. That encapsulates the factual difference: the dispute is not as to whether the document was backdated but whether before the document was executed the parties were already in fact in agreement on the terms of the deal.

611. The evidence given by Mr Scott in the US criminal proceedings is of some relevance in this context. He confirmed that Mr Hussain had asked late on 31 March 2011 for a list of *"8a deals"* which he had taken to be a request for a list of the VAR deals that Autonomy had executed on 31 March 2011. When Mr Scott responded (on 1 April 2011) listing the deals for which purchase orders had been issued, he identified two DiscoverTech deals, neither of which was a Prisa deal. No explanation was offered by the Defendants as to why, if done by then, the Prisa deal was not included in the list. There was no documentary evidence to support the theory that Prisa was proposed to and agreed by DiscoverTech on or before 31 March 2011.

612. I have reached the conclusion, on the balance of probabilities, that the Prisa deal was presented to DiscoverTech after the end of the quarter. It seems to me probable that it had been omitted in error from the "slate of deals" presented to DiscoverTech, and that when the error was discovered (perhaps after the list obtained from Mr Scott did not mention it) the error was sought to be cured by the wrongly dated letter agreement: given that Mr Hussain had earlier pressed hard for a direct deal with Prisa before quarter-end that seems to me more likely than the alternative explanation of it being an after-thought. In my judgment, therefore, VT30 was backdated, and the backdated document did not evidence any prior finalised oral agreement.

613. It would follow that revenue was prematurely recognised in an earlier quarter than was justified.

614. Ironically, in fact the revenue from VT30 was not required to achieve the quarterly revenue forecast. That leads on to another facet of the Claimants' contention that the Prisa deal shows *"that, for the Defendants, the revenue recognition decision was to be reverse-engineered from the target figure for total revenue, regardless of the underlying facts."*

Calibration with hardware sales: two levers to manipulate revenue?

615. This aspect of the case ties in with parallel allegations in the context of the Claimants' claims in relation to hardware sales to the effect that Autonomy was treating the revenue from hardware sales as a discretionary fund that could be recognised as and when it was needed to meet quarterly targets, and that the figures were manipulated by Autonomy after the quarter-end.

616. In the context of the Prisa deal, the Claimants focused on two emails in particular. The first was an email from Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch dated 11 April 2011, with the subject "*Q/e*", stating:

> *"If we defer prisa then we are at 218.1m but 24c and 85% [gross margin]. If we don't defer prisa but defer equiv low margin we are at same revs but now at 25c and 88%. To discuss when I land or you can discuss with steve [Chamberlain]."*

617. The reference to *"equiv low margin"* was to low margin hardware revenue, which the Claimants contended was turned on and off according to whether it was needed to meet revenue forecasts. In short, the Claimants contended that in this email Mr Hussain was identifying various options that he considered might be adopted in relation to revenue

recognition at this time, and in particular was questioning whether to recognise revenue in Q1 2011 on the DiscoverTech/Prisa transaction (which was, in fact, not entered into until early April 2011, but was backdated to 31 March 2011), or instead to recognise hardware revenue – the benefit of the former course being the advantageous effect it would have on gross margin and earnings per share (given the comparatively low margin or loss on hardware sales).

618. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch stated that he did not accept that Mr Hussain was "*saying that there's necessarily a choice in all of this*". However, the Claimants submitted that it is plain from Mr Hussain's email that Mr Hussain was doing precisely that: he was making clear to Dr Lynch that they could do one thing ("*defer prisa*") or the other ("*defer equiv low margin*"). Moreover, if Mr Hussain was not presenting a choice, there would be nothing for Dr Lynch to discuss with Mr Hussain or Mr Chamberlain on the back of the email ("*To discuss when I land or you can discuss with steve*"). That is plainly correct: I accept it[56].

619. The second email exchange relied on was on the following day. Mr Chamberlain's email to Mr Hussain the following day, 12 April 2011, with the subject "*Numbers*" read as follows:

> *"Three options:*
>
> *1) recognize Prisa, defer $3.6m Hardware - $218.1m, 88%, 24.8c*
>
> *2) Defer Prisa, recognize $3.6m HW - $218.1m, 86%, 23.7c*
>
> *3) recognise BBC $1.6m, defer Prisa, recognize $2.0m HW - $218.1m, 87%, 24.2c*
>
> *Need to speak asap to lock this down. We announce in 9 days and if we don't stop moving I cannot deliver timetable."*

620. Thus, according to the Claimants' reading of the email, Mr Chamberlain presented "*Three options*":

(1) The first option was to recognise the Prisa VAR transaction and to defer the equivalent amount of hardware revenue ($3.6 million), which would result in total revenue for the quarter of $218.1 million, a gross margin of 88%, with earnings per share of 24.8 cents.

(2) The second option was to defer Prisa and instead recognise hardware revenue of $3.6 million, which would result in the same overall revenue ($218.1 million), but a lower gross margin (86%) and earnings per share (23.7 cents) due to the hardware deals being loss-making.

(3) The third option was to recognise a transaction with the BBC with revenue of $1.6 million, again defer Prisa, but recognise hardware revenue of $2 million, which would generate the same overall revenue, but mean that gross margin and earnings per share were at 87% and 24.2 cents respectively.

[56] This is also relevant to the hardware claim, as it shows hardware was seen as a flexible mechanism to meet revenue targets.

621. The Claimants submitted that the fact that these were intended to form options is reinforced by Mr Chamberlain's concluding paragraph, in which he said that he needed to speak to Mr Hussain as soon as possible so as "*to lock this down*".

622. Dr Lynch told me that this was not how he interpreted the email. Dr Lynch did not accept that Mr Chamberlain was really presenting a choice between options: rather, he suggested that the email identified the various ways in which revenue would be affected according to whether it was possible to recognise revenue from the various transactions identified, which would depend on a review of whether or not the accountancy criteria were satisfied.

623. Dr Lynch also sought to distinguish between on the one hand, picking and choosing what revenue to recognise (which he had accepted was not permissible under IAS 18.14) and, on the other hand, determining by reference to criteria whether it was permissible to recognise the revenue by reference to accountancy criteria such as collectability, or whether delivery had successfully been completed. Thus, Dr Lynch rejected the suggestion put to him that the email demonstrated "*a willingness to pick and choose what revenue to recognise which you knew was improper*". He maintained that his understanding was that this was explicable as one of the legitimate judgements that have to happen after the quarter end and before the finalisation of the quarterly report: in particular:

> *"A. …After the end of the quarter, my understanding is there are a series of judgments that have to be made. One of them is to do, for example, with creditworthiness, and in this quarter DiscoverTech had submitted three orders and there was a judgment to be made about whether DiscoverTech's credit was worthy of having three or two or one, or which of the two, and that decision had to be made.*
>
> *At the same time there was also issues about whether all of the necessary proof to meet all of the acceptance criteria about hardware had been met. And this is part of the normal process that happens past the quarter end where all of the paperwork and the terms and the evidence is reviewed."*

624. Dr Lynch further elaborated this as follows (in a passage which I also consider reinforces my conclusion that the backdating was to cover an oversight) when pressed as to whether he understood the process at the time:

> *"I would definitely have understood at the time the general principle I just outlined to you because what happened at the quarter end was there would be complete chaos in the last couple of days of the quarter as the deals are done, then the deals start to come in, the paperwork, over the next few days. Then they go through legal and finance, so legal will check that there's no amendments that make it not recognisable or acceptance criteria, whatever. Then finance will look at it. As we've seen, Mr Chamberlain then has to get together evidence for whatever –"*

625. This has, in general terms as opposed to particular application, the ring of truth and practical reality. In the parallel context of the recognition or deferral of hardware revenue, both Mr Bloomer (Audit Committee Chairman from September 2010) and Ms Harris (Autonomy's Financial Controller) confirmed that there is nothing improper in reviewing, after the quarter end, whether to recognise revenue in the previous or subsequent quarter according to a judgment as to the satisfaction or not of revenue recognition criteria. As Mr Bloomer said:

> *"…it's normal in any company, when you finish a quarter or a half-year or year, annual accounts, to have a -- there are always things that need sorting out after the end of the period…[such as]…did things actually get delivered in the quarter or the next quarter, the bad debt provision always gets sorted out after the quarter-end…I'd want and would expect the auditors to look at that as part of their review of cut-off and be comfortable that whatever decisions were made were appropriate for the end of the period and what should fall into the next period."*

626. Ms Harris also stressed that any late post-quarter or other accounting period changes, and especially revenue recognition changes, would be scrutinised with special care by auditors, who typically remained on site in the weeks after the quarter-end.

627. I accept the evidence of Dr Lynch, Mr Bloomer and Ms Harris that post-accounting period review and alterations were plainly normal, appropriate and indeed necessary, especially as regards revenue recognition (whether in respect of sales of hardware or software). But the real question is whether that was the process recorded or invited by the emails to which I have referred. The Claimants contended that it was not, and they dismissed Dr Lynch's further justifications as not credible.

628. I have concluded that the email exchanges referred to above cannot satisfactorily be explained away as showing merely the usual and proper process of checking that revenue recognition criteria (such as completed delivery or achievement of designated 'milestones') have been satisfied prior to the end of the quarter. The impression I have formed is, and I find, that by early 2011 Mr Chamberlain and Mr Hussain had begun to think of the revenue recognition criteria, especially in their application to hardware revenue, as being malleable. Further, the 'options' adumbrated by Mr Chamberlain demonstrated that, by then, the two of them (at least) were prepared occasionally to stretch the normal process of revenue recognition review after quarter-end to extend to some fluid self-serving review, which could be described as manipulation, of the timing of revenue recognition, perhaps taking advantage of a certain fluidity and chaos, to suit the objectives of (a) meeting and beating revenue forecasts, (b) achieving healthy gross margins and (c) maximising earnings per share.

629. Given that (as was common ground) IAS 18.14 not only permits but requires revenue recognition if the criteria it identifies are satisfied, so that, as Mr Welham put it in his witness statement, *"[e]ither the revenue was earned in Q1 2011, or it was not"*, a determination of the timing of revenue recognition after the end of a quarter in which it was apparently earned which is influenced and even driven by such objectives is a departure from the approach stipulated, as well as being obviously improper. It is not consistent with IAS 18.14, as all concerned must have known.

630. In the event, revenue from the DiscoverTech/Prisa VAR transaction was allocated to and recognised in Q1 2011. A comparison between the hardware revenue that Mr Sullivan achieved in Q1 2011 ($22.1 million) and the amount recognised in that quarter ($20.1 million) indicates that some $2 million out of $3.6 million of hardware revenue was deferred. The upshot was that Autonomy was able to report total revenue for the quarter of $220 million, gross margins of 88% and adjusted earnings per share[57] of 26 cents.

Never any intention that DiscoverTech would negotiate or conclude an end-user sale

631. The third strand of the Claimants' case on the Prisa deal (see paragraph 595(3) above) was their assertion that there was never any real prospect of any onward sale to Prisa, and that there was never any real intention either that DiscoverTech should even attempt to effect such a sale.

632. The Claimants relied in this context on the evidence of Mr Rahul Puri ("Mr Puri"), who was between May 2010 and September 2013 Managing Director of Innovation and Chief Software Architect at Prisa (based in Madrid). Mr Puri, who also gave evidence at the US criminal trial, stated that he only learned of Autonomy's agreement with DiscoverTech (VT30) in the context of that criminal trial, and had never heard of DiscoverTech before then. He stated that:

> *"DiscoverTech did not at any time contact Prisa and, in particular, did not attempt to license any Autonomy software or to sell any Autonomy services to Prisa. All of my interactions were with Mr Murray and his colleagues from Autonomy."*

633. Furthermore, Mr Puri added that the software licence which was the subject matter of VT30 would not have been of interest to Prisa. His evidence was:

> *"I have been shown a copy of the agreement between Autonomy and DiscoverTech. The software in question, including e-Discovery software, was of no interest to me or Prisa. I am confident that, if Prisa had made an acquisition of Autonomy software for a sum as large as $3.6 million, or had a need for such software, I would have known about it. Furthermore, I note that the only language listed in the agreement was English. However, this would have been of little use to Prisa. As I have already explained, the key languages from Prisa's perspective were Spanish and Portuguese."*

634. It was suggested to Mr Puri in cross-examination that Prisa would have been interested in a hosting platform that "*could handle litigation if it arose*". However, Mr Puri said that the initial purpose of the hosting platform was for Prisa's media assets and media content, not the back office. It was also suggested to him, giving as an illustrative example of standard needs of a large media group, an agreement between Zantaz and Sony Pictures Entertainment, which included a licence of Introspect (e-Discovery software). Mr Puri answered "*Depends on the company and depends on the need*" and rebuffed any suggestion that Prisa would need such software. There was no challenge to

[57] Adjusted for conversion of loan notes.

Mr Puri's evidence that Prisa's interest would, in any event, have been in Spanish- and Portuguese- language versions of the software.

635. As well as stressing their general point that the likely level of Prisa's interest was something for which, having purchased the software, DiscoverTech was bearing the risk, the Defendants contended that the Claimants' argument (a) inaccurately and unfairly characterised the deal with DiscoverTech which was not just for electronic discovery software and (b) was dependent on evidence from Mr Puri which overstated his involvement with the hosting part of Prisa's plans and should be treated with considerable caution.

636. As to (a) in the preceding paragraph 635, the software purchased under VT30 included not only e-Discovery software but also a complete "Archive Solution", which included Autonomy Consolidated Archive ("ACA"), Software for Microsoft Exchange, ACA Mail, Autonomy Legal Hold and Autonomy Investigator for use with ACA software. Mr Puri accepted that this package would, for example, have permitted archiving of emails: and it was not disputed that Autonomy was in discussion with Prisa about selling it archiving software (and indeed Mr Puri himself had been "supportive" of a deal which he knew Autonomy wanted to squeeze into Q1 2011). Further, Prisa's needs were broad-based: it was looking to consolidate all management and infrastructure across the group and had put out an RFP for a hosting platform for content. As Mr Puri accepted in cross-examination, this amounted to a *"platform migration for the whole of the Prisa infrastructure"*. Mr Puri also accepted in cross-examination that Autonomy continued to discuss a possible hosting deal with Prisa after the end of the quarter.

637. The Defendants added that even as regards the electronic discovery component of the sale to DiscoverTech, the Claimants' arguments were exaggerated. Prisa was (and is) a vast Spanish media conglomerate with, amongst other things, its own in-house legal counsel (included in the shortlist for The Lawyer's Global In-house Lawyer of the Year in 2018). Contrary to the evidence given by Mr Lucini in his witness statement, electronic discovery software was in principle a suitable product for a large media company (as exemplified by the sale of EAS Discovery to Sony Pictures Entertainment in 2007).[58] Prisa was always likely to be a good prospect for purchasing EDD software. In cross-examination, the furthest Mr Puri could go was to say only that litigation software was not the primary technology purchased by media groups (which is unsurprising), and he admitted that EDD software could be a normal thing to include, depending on the company and the need.

638. As to (b) in paragraph 635 above, the Defendants submitted that Mr Puri's evidence as to the scope of Prisa's hosting and archiving requirements must be treated with considerable caution: although when cross-examined in these proceedings he repeatedly sought to emphasise the importance of his role and his oversight of all aspects of what he called *"the transformation"*, it became clear that he was neither the decision maker nor an attendee at the key meetings relating to the transformation of Prisa's managed services infrastructure (the key decision maker, who controlled a separate budget, being a Mr Luis Garcia). Indeed, in the US criminal proceedings Mr Puri said he *"wasn't really interested in the hosting project"*; and he accepted that he knew at the time that

[58] See also the sale of EAS Discovery to Fox Entertainment Group in 2008. EAS Discovery was another legal e-discovery product: see Goodfellow.

Prisa *"was going through a process of looking at their managed services infrastructure, but I was not directly involved in the process…"*.

639. My impression of Mr Puri was of an eager witness who tended to overstate his involvement in areas of the "transformation" for which he did not have immediate responsibility. I do not accept his evidence that Prisa had no need for the software which was included within VT30; and I do not accept the implicit suggestion that Autonomy foisted on DiscoverTech software which it had no basis for thinking Prisa had any need, and thus built a reseller deal around a fabricated prospect. As Deloitte noted in their own review, the purchase of a suite of software including an archiving and e-Discovery solution is commonplace for a large firm operating globally with the ever-present threat of litigation. The commercial need for such software is all the more understandable in the case of a company with a traditional but global media business which was undertaking a transformation from analogue to digital and introducing new systems across its entire infrastructure.

640. However, even if there might have been some prospect of a sale to Prisa, the prospect would not have been realised by DiscoverTech but by Autonomy. As usual, and in accordance with the pattern, the VAR was not expected or intended to have any say or participation in the negotiations for a sale to the end-user, and all that was in contemplation was a direct sale by Autonomy. As to this:

(1) Mr David Truitt testified in his deposition in the MicroTech proceedings in the US that, at the time, he had never heard of Prisa, thus had no contacts with it, and (wrongly) believed it to be a New Jersey rather than a Spanish media company. Dr Lynch said he suspected that he (i.e. Mr David Truitt) *"knew very little about them."*

(2) Mr Puri's evidence in these proceedings that DiscoverTech *"did not at any time contact Prisa, and, in particular, did not attempt to license any Autonomy software or to sell any Autonomy services to Prisa"* was not challenged, and Dr Lynch told me he did not dispute it.

Was DiscoverTech let off the hook by funds from purchases by Autonomy?

641. The fourth strand of the Claimants' case on VT30 (see paragraph 595 above) was their allegation that although DiscoverTech did appear to satisfy its contractual payment obligation to Autonomy under the VT30 purchase order (despite there being no end-user sale), DiscoverTech was only enabled to do so by Autonomy making two purchases, first of a licence for and then further instances of software source code in respect of DiscoverTech's *"DiscoverEngine"* software[59]. (Those purchases also provided the funding to enable DiscoverTech to pay what it contractually owed under VT31 (see below), a VAR deal for end-user ThinkTech.) This strand of the Claimants' case requires something of a detour before I return to the main issue as to the overall propriety of VT30.

642. It may be recalled that the DiscoverPoint business, of which DiscoverEngine was a product, had been spun out of MicroLink before the acquisition of MicroLink by Autonomy. DiscoverEngine was a certified Microsoft SharePoint connector (SharePoint

[59] Sometimes referred to as *'DiscoverPoint Engine'*

being a content management system produced by Microsoft). At the time of the spin-off, Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter advised the board of Autonomy in a memorandum dated 16 December 2009 that Autonomy's management did not believe there was *"a material business in DiscoverPoint"*, or at any rate that it was *"materially different from technology Autonomy already has."*

643. Autonomy's first purchase in respect of DiscoverEngine, of a licence, took place on 30 June 2011. The price for the DiscoverEngine licence, which Autonomy paid the very same day, was $4,400,000 ("the Q2 2011 DiscoverEngine purchase"). The subsequent purchase of additional software and also the source code at a cost of $3,200,000 was in September 2011 ("the Q3 2011 DiscoverEngine source code purchase").

644. The Claimants' case was that Autonomy had no need for a licence to use DiscoverEngine, and certainly had no need to purchase the source code, since it already had its own offering of three different SharePoint connectors, including 'AIS Fetch' (which it owned through MicroLink), and that the purchases were in each case simply the solution arrived at as a means of channelling funds to DiscoverTech to enable it to settle its debt to Autonomy. Further, in light of the advice at the time of the spin-off, the amounts paid appeared over the odds.

645. It is necessary in this context to distinguish between (a) whether DiscoverEngine, as a product, had any utility (b) whether there was any real need for Autonomy to purchase it and (c) whether need for the product or the objective of putting the VAR in funds was the determinant of the price and the purchases at the times they were made.

First DiscoverEngine purchase: Q2 2011

646. The main thrust of the Claimants' case in relation to the Q2 2011 purchase can be summarised as follows:

(1) Especially given the assessment at the time of the spin-off of the DiscoverPoint business, to the effect that there was nothing in it *"materially different from technology Autonomy already has"* (see paragraph 273 and 642 above) some evaluation of the functionality of DiscoverEngine as compared to Autonomy's own products would be expected before making such a purchase and paying such a price. But it appeared to be accepted by the Defendants that none was conducted within Autonomy: there was no assessment made as to (a) how another third-party SharePoint connector differed from Autonomy's existing SharePoint connectors or (b) whether any such differences could readily be matched by making adjustments to one or other of those existing Autonomy connectors.

(2) The impetus for the purchase came, not from Dr Menell or anyone within Autonomy with knowledge of any potential advantages of DiscoverEngine compared with Autonomy's own similar products or of any technical shortcomings in the latter, but from Mr Hussain.

(3) The suggestion repeatedly made by Dr Lynch that the DiscoverEngine licence was specifically needed for specified Autonomy customers, namely, Bloomberg, National Bank of Canada and MetLife to solve a problem which

needed to be solved, so that the purchase would be a prelude to a "sell-through" to them for commercial advantage, was untrue.

647. As to paragraph 646(1), the Claimants relied particularly on the evidence of Mr Greenwood[60], who, at the time of trial, worked for MicroFocus International plc as "Connector Team Lead" and who started his working life as a software developer at Autonomy focusing on the development of what were then referred to as "fetches" and are now more commonly known as connectors.[61] There was no challenge to Mr Greenwood's evidence that (a) the Autonomy Connector was capable of evolution and did evolve in line with succeeding versions of SharePoint without difficulty (he estimated it would have taken only a week for his team to re-configure the 2007 version to be compatible with the 2010 version of SharePoint); (b) he conducted no evaluation of DiscoverEngine prior to its purchase from DiscoverTech and he was "*not involved in or aware of*" the purchase of a DiscoverEngine licence, had no contemporaneous familiarity with the product, and no knowledge of his own of it being used at any time during or after the Relevant Period; and (c) he was not aware of Autonomy having had any particular problem with Microsoft during the Relevant Period which might have affected his team's ability to develop connectors to SharePoint or any other Microsoft product, and they had the access they needed through a MSDN subscription. There was no evidence that DiscoverEngine was the subject of any evaluation by anyone else in Autonomy's technical department in June 2011 either. When Deloitte approached Dr Menell in July 2011 for an explanation as to the technical/commercial rationale for the DiscoverEngine purchase, he (Dr Menell) did not know what it was. Mr Welham stated in his email dated 19 July 2011 to Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain:

> *"Purchase of DT software – we talked to Pete M about this today but he was not aware of the technical/commercial rationale for the purchase. We need to understand this so that we can be sure that it makes commercial and technical sense and is at fair value."*

648. The Claimants also relied on that email, together with Mr Chamberlain's reply, as evidence that the impetus came from Mr Hussain (see paragraph 646(2) above). Mr Chamberlain responded on 20 July 2011 with the following explanation:

> *"Pete may not be the best person to talk to this. This related to the DiscoverPoint engine which was included in sales to Bloomberg, National Bank of Canada and Metlife. Sushovan can provide more background on the call."*

649. As to paragraph 646(3) above, Dr Lynch said in his first witness statement that Autonomy bought the DiscoverEngine licence "*for customers Bloomberg, National Bank of Canada, and MetLife*". That was also the understanding given to Deloitte. Deloitte were told that DiscoverEngine was needed for Autonomy customers; and when

[60] Mr Greenwood became "Head of Connectors" at Autonomy in 2005 and in the period 2005 to 2011 he had oversight of two connector teams, one in Cambridge (where he was based) and the other in Calgary, Canada. He reported to Mr Darren Gallagher, the Head of Development at Autonomy. The only member of Autonomy's senior management with whom he had occasional contact was Dr Menell.

[61] A "fetch" or "connector" is a tool which extracts data from one system and transfers it to another.

they reviewed the DiscoverEngine transaction, they noted that it was being sold through to customers and expensed to costs of sales (COGS).

650. According to the Claimants, the presentation that customers needed the specific functionality offered by DiscoverTech and Autonomy acquired that software to meet customer need was untrue. They contended that at the direction of Mr Hussain, Autonomy simply foisted the product onto customers by inserting references to DiscoverEngine into deals that Autonomy was negotiating in June 2011 in circumstances where the customer had no need for the product, or even any understanding of what the product offered or why it was being supplied. They gave an example as the MetLife contract.

651. Thus, on 17 June 2011, Mr Ivan Rothman, an Autonomy lawyer, said that he understood that SharePoint Connector (a mistaken reference to DiscoverEngine) needed to be added to the draft MetLife contract. Mr Sass, the salesman for the MetLife deal, said he had "*no clue what you are talking about*", prompting Mr Rothman to explain that it was his understanding that the connector should be given to MetLife (and Bloomberg) for free:

> *"My understanding is that Sush has decided we should give this connector to MetLife and Bloomberg (for free) as a way to promote this product. Hence, I was asked by [Mr Crumbacher] to include a reference in both documents. Do you have any objection to that?"*

652. Mr Sass replied saying that he would "*call Sush*". Later that day, Mr Sass confirmed that Mr Rothman could add DiscoverEngine to the MetLife contract (see paragraph 3712(4) in the main body of the judgment). Mr Rothman said he had "*added the language Sush requested re the connector (actually called "DiscoverEngine", not "SharePoint")*".

653. The Claimants relied additionally on an email dated 17 June 2011 from Mr Crumbacher to Mr Scott regarding DiscoverEngine, which added a new name to those to be provided with DiscoverEngine (Tracfone) and read as follows:

> *"FYI, information on the product to be inserted into MetLife, Tracfone, National Bank of Canada, and Bloomberg. Dave Truitt describes it as multi-tenant Sharepoint connector, and it's called "DiscoverEngine." Dave said he provided Sushovan with a proposal for reselling the product and wanted to send to me ... I told him that I wasn't told I'd be managing or even involved in that transaction, so he should hold off sending me anything with $$ in it.*
>
> *McCarthy has been made aware of its existence, so hopefully we'll minimize all the stress and wasted time his sky-is-falling response to third party software products would cause. Michael [McCarthy] did say that, when third party software is included, he has to [sic] the billing team know what the cost to us is, for commission purposes. Alex and Ivan are putting this into Bank of Canada, Bloomberg, and MetLife, and I'll put it in Hung's Tracfone schedule.*
>
> *Again, you might want to reconsider including Tracfone as one of the customers to get this connector. I don't see anything that has [sic]*

> *says "sharepoint'' to me in the call center and Explore software they licensed. In its place, we could consider Morgan Lewis (draft attached is Internal ediscovery software and already has a Sharepoint connector, LF $1.1M), and if Morgan's a no-go, I can do some research to come up with others. But, since Sushovan asked you, personally, to come up with the customers and since I don't know what criteria were given in choosing them, I'll follow your lead."*

654. The Claimants submitted that Mr Crumbacher's email makes clear that he, a lawyer, had been tasked with plucking customers out of the air on whom DiscoverEngine could be foisted, as distinct from responding to any customer demand or need for that software. Dr Lynch maintained in cross-examination that Mr Crumbacher's email "*may be the understanding of the lawyers sitting in San Francisco but it's not the basis on which this is being done*". The Claimants dismissed this too as inherently implausible.

655. The pattern continued with an email dated 24 June 2011 from Mr Hussain to Mr Scott reminding him to ensure DiscoverEngine was included in a number of deals "*particularly MetLife and BB [Bloomberg]*". Mr Hussain asserted also that "*UBS definitely need it*"; but the need was not explained and there is no document that indicates that Mr Hussain had been prompted to say this by some input from the technical department, the sales team or from UBS. In an email the same day (24 June 2011), Mr Crumbacher instructed Ms Julie Dolan (an Autonomy lawyer) to include DiscoverEngine in the UBS deal because "*Sushovan has asked*".

656. To this the Claimants added a number of other examples (including a potential contract with Xerox which the Claimants put forward as particularly striking) showing, as they contended, that DiscoverEngine was being inserted into draft contracts, willy-nilly, at the dictation of Mr Hussain, without any request from the customer, or even any understanding, whether on the part of the customer or the salesman, of its use and still less need.

657. The Claimants' punchline in this context was that it could not be clearer that, in and after June 2011, Autonomy was, on Mr Hussain's instruction, including DiscoverEngine in draft contracts with customers, regardless of customer demand or technical need; and that this strongly suggests that Autonomy's reasons for purchasing the DiscoverEngine licence were <u>not</u> based on a genuine customer need. Mr Hussain was insisting that DiscoverEngine be included in customer contracts, despite the absence of demand for its functionality, in order to justify the purchase (on a false basis) to Deloitte.

658. The Claimants further submitted that it also follows that Deloitte were misled. Deloitte's understanding was that DiscoverEngine was needed for the three Autonomy customers (Bloomberg, National Bank of America and MetLife). Deloitte was not aware that DiscoverEngine was inserted gratuitously into IDOL licence sales to customers who had no interest in it.

659. Likewise, the Claimants submitted that the Audit Committee was also misled in the same way. Mr Bloomer's evidence was as follows:

> *"Q. So you were told that Autonomy paid this $4.4 million because it needed DiscoverPoint to complete IDOL licence sales to Bloomberg,*

National Bank of America and MetLife, yes? Sorry, National Bank of Canada and MetLife, yes?

A. Yes.

Q. And that was your understanding at the time?

A. Yes.

Q. You were told that those three customers required DiscoverPoint, yes?

A. As part of the product, yes.

Q. And that's what you understood?

A. Yes.

Q. If it was the case that those three customers did not need DiscoverPoint, that would have been contrary to your understanding at the time, yes?

A. If that was the case, yes.

Q. If, for example, DiscoverPoint had simply been inserted into the contracts with those three customers, without any suggestion that the customers needed or wanted it, you would have wanted to understand why Autonomy was paying $4.4 million for DiscoverPoint, yes?

A. Yes, and given again Deloitte's commentary down below that they specifically looked at the rationale and the linkage with the sales above and discussions with the group's chief research officer, et cetera, given your presumption or assumption, the conflict between those."

660. The Defendants painted a very different picture, though (to carry on with the metaphor) Dr Lynch retouched the painting markedly in the course of cross-examination. Initially, they presented DiscoverEngine as a substantially superior product in terms of functionality and efficiency to anything Autonomy could offer or was likely to be able to offer without considerable further diversion of resource and delay. They emphasised also the importance of the fact that it was a Microsoft-certified connector, with a materially higher level of encryption.

661. They dismissed the notion that it was comparable to Autonomy's own connectors, and explained the views expressed at the time of the spin-off as in effect overtaken by subsequent events and developments. They pointed out that in June 2010, before either of the impugned transactions, Autonomy had in fact entered into a *"Software Distributor Agreement"* giving it a 3-year renewable licence to copy, install and integrate DiscoverPoint, including DiscoverEngine, within a *"Bundled Module"* (defined as *"Autonomy's software products which incorporate some or all of the Licensor's Software Products"*) and it should be assumed to have been considered useful. They asserted (it was not clear to me what the evidential basis was, and none of this appeared in Dr Lynch's witness statements) that *"…the DiscoverTech business and*

DiscoverEngine product had obviously developed significantly since its early stage status in Q4 2009. It had acquired other customers by 2011".

662. When taken to the Rothman/Sass exchange (see paragraphs 651 to 652 above) in cross-examination, Dr Lynch asserted that this *"is another example of looking to the wrong area for understanding things"* and that this email was between people who "*really have no idea what is going on*" (though, as the Claimants pointed out, Mr Sass was the salesperson who was dealing directly with MetLife[62] and the exchange was between a salesperson and a lawyer, suggesting little reason to doubt that these individuals understood what was going on).

663. In cross-examination, Dr Lynch shifted the explanation towards the need being driven, not by customer demand, but by Autonomy's appreciation of inadequacies and frailties in its own offering and the resulting need to make available a more satisfactory replacement. On this revised version, the Defendants contended that:

(1) The decision was largely based on the perception of an urgent need to catch up with the huge growth in popularity and use of SharePoint and to provide Autonomy customers with a certified, encrypted, and working connector in place of a product which was not certified, had deficient encryption, and which Autonomy recognised had quite serious deficiencies and problems which Autonomy had tried, and over some time failed, to resolve (as above described). For example, and as the Claimants did not dispute, if a customer wanted to index its cloud-based SharePoint system (then called BPOS), it needed a Microsoft certified connector. Certification was a long process and Autonomy had never achieved it. Autonomy needed a quick fix to provide functionality and certified and encrypted connection to SharePoint that customers needed, without the risk of customer complaint and dissatisfaction: DiscoverEngine offered it.

(2) Further, according to Dr Lynch, a confidential fact, which was not appreciated by the salesmen or the lawyers at Autonomy, and which Dr Lynch had never mentioned before, was that Autonomy's own offering had been hacked. This concern was compounded by the fact that (a) it had not been certified for connection to Microsoft; (b) any damage caused to a customer's software or equipment would not be covered and (c) MicroLink's security clearance could be put at risk.

(3) Dr Lynch accepted that prior to the licence purchase there was no formal "buy versus build analysis"; but the reality was that Autonomy had problems with its own connector which over a considerable period it had tried and failed to fix. Further, the aged architecture of that connector would have had to be replaced, with substantial consequential delay. Dr Lynch stressed that DiscoverEngine was a very different product, with (for example) *"efficiency ratios of the fetching of the two products which [were] phenomenally different"*; but he summarised the real problem as being that:

[62] The Claimants pointed out also that Mr Sass is a current Darktrace employee, and that he was not called as a witness by Dr Lynch so as to offer a different explanation for what they submitted was the plain meaning of this email exchange.

> *"We can keep going on for a very long time down into the weeds and the minutiae on this one, but the simple – to bring it back to the simple level, Autonomy's SharePoint connector was not fit for purpose and was likely to have Autonomy put in a position of significant liability due to data loss or missing regulatory information."*

(4) According to Dr Lynch's evidence, Autonomy wished to overcome this problem by moving its customers off its own product and onto DiscoverEngine, analogous to repairing a faulty part:

> *"What we were trying to do was quietly move over to something that was quality and worked and was tested and would deal with that problem…"*

(5) Dr Lynch accepted that he did not, when approving the first purchase on the basis that Autonomy was selling DiscoverEngine through to Autonomy customers, mean that he understood there to be purchase orders for the product; he understood Autonomy to be meeting known customer requirements for a working connector and did not expect that customers would have been asking for DiscoverEngine specifically. His understanding was (and he stressed that he was not involved in the negotiations nor in any technical assessment of DiscoverEngine) that there were existing customers of Autonomy which wanted a SharePoint connector with full access, and that DiscoverEngine would be supplied to them as (a) the best functioning product that Autonomy could supply and (b) as a substitute for an Autonomy product which had potential flaws as explained above. He did not regard it as either surprising or problematic if (as he suspected) Mr Hussain had gone down the list of everyone who had been supplied with Autonomy's own connector with a view to providing DiscoverEngine instead. He rejected the Claimants' allegation that DiscoverEngine was, at the instance of Mr Hussain, provided *"willy-nilly"* to customers for nothing to give a false appearance of its profitable deployment at the customer's request.

(6) The Defendants relied on the evidence of Mr David Truitt in the US criminal trial to the effect that DiscoverTech was offering the licence at what Autonomy's management perceived to be a substantial discount representing a very good price. Mr David Truitt also explained that Autonomy purchased the instances of DiscoverEngine at a much lower price than other purchasers, and as the manufacturer of the software that DiscoverEngine supported, Autonomy could sell to all its customers:

> *"So to give you some perspective, though, we sold to Glaxo and to Lockheed Martin -- an instance cost $25,000. The deal that we ended up cutting with Autonomy averaged $5,000 per instance.*
>
> …
>
> *Not only did they get a good deal, but they were not any other customer. They were the manufacturer of the software that we were trying to support. So they had all of the Autonomy*

customers that they could go and give this solution to."

664. In relation to (1) and (2) in the preceding paragraph, it is, I think, worth quoting Dr Lynch's explanation in full during the course of his cross-examination:

> *"If I could explain what this is all about. So Autonomy had a connector basis, which connected to a thing called SharePoint. SharePoint was a Microsoft product and, unlike most corporate IT where the system is set up by IT centrally and run by them SharePoint was a product that ordinary people could set up in a department without having to go near IT.*
>
> *So at this time there was an absolute explosion in SharePoint because people in companies were tired of waiting for IT to do things and it didn't work, so SharePoint became a major movement in the industry and appears everywhere. And suddenly our customers have a big problem in that when they get a legal investigation, they have an obligation to bring all the documents that are relevant to the court or the Senate, or whatever. And that's relatively easy when you have a system that's run by IT and that you know where everything is and you go there and you get it.*
>
> *But with SharePoint the problem was that there were vast numbers of these things. So you may recall Mr Lucini when he was talking about it talked about a SharePoint forest. Some people talk about weeds or a forest, but the idea is vast numbers of these things everywhere. And in order to meet legal requirements you've got to go and look at all of them.*
>
> *So it was a big problem. The difficulty we had was our own SharePoint connector, which was what was going into this arrangement, had some difficulties in that it had been hacked and we'd had a little scandal that we'd managed to keep under control of it being a security risk. It was also not certified, which meant that if it did any damage to the customers' systems, then – well, technically it wasn't allowed to be used by the customers and it also wasn't encrypted.*
>
> *Then it also had another problem, which it was highly inefficient. So that the SharePoint connector that we had could only do – go to a place, get everything and bring it all back. And whilst that's okay when you've got a centralised system, with SharePoint it means that you've got to go everywhere and bring everything back. So even though you might only want documents about this particular employee who was fired, say, for a legal matter, you have to bring back every document in the company centrally and it meant that it took a horrendous amount of time and slowed the network down.*
>
> *So we had a whole series of issues that we were quietly trying to clear up here, and the idea was that we were going to drop in our – take our*

> *faulty product and supply these customers with the new one and was certified and thus avoids the problems.*
>
> *The product was much better and didn't have the problems which we had which were pretty fatal, actually."*

665. To this he added later in his cross-examination, when asked whether Autonomy could not have completed IDOL-based sales without this product, the following:

> *"I don't think so. I think taking into account the efficiency issue, I think we'd have had very, very unhappy customers if they were trying to backhaul SharePoint on the size that these people were thinking of doing it, using our technology. And that's before you take into account the liability we'd have had if we'd put in the insecure product and then they'd been hacked. Imagine MetLife, an insurance company, if all its customer data had been extracted through our leaky SharePoint connector. We'd have had a major issue on our hands.*
>
> *So we were very happy to quietly shift everything over to something that was reliable and secure."*

666. As to the price paid, Mr David Truitt's evidence explained that he considered that Autonomy made a good deal on the software and purchased it for much lower than the price that was offered to other customers. The Claimants did suggest that the number of instances sold by DiscoverTech was not enough to establish a market price. That would not be sufficient to justify an allegation that the transaction was not at fair value. Nor did the Claimants suggest that Dr Lynch knew that there was (allegedly) no market price. Dr Lynch rejected the suggestion in any event. Mr David Truitt expressed the view that there was an established price and that Autonomy had received a good deal.[63]

667. In my judgment, however, and even though I accept that DiscoverEngine was a potentially useful connector, what had driven the purchase was the need to fund DiscoverTech so that it could pay down its debt to Autonomy.

668. No documentary evidence was put forward to support the new suggestion of flaws, inadequate security and hacking issues; and very little, if any, of this was in Dr Lynch's witness statement. It was put to him that as he could so easily have explained that his case was that Autonomy's SharePoint connector was not fit for purpose and was likely to expose Autonomy to complaint and liability, his failure to do so suggested that it was an afterthought (with an implication, though the cross-examiner's challenge faltered, of unreliability at best). Dr Lynch retorted that the claim against him was not particularised in this aspect, and in any event, he had since collated other views and been able to set out in more detail why the decision was made. He added that he had sometimes had difficulties in understanding the true extent of the claim *"because it*

[63] See paragraph 663.(6) above. See also David Truitt's evidence: "*A: We could certainly sell and did sell to other customers. We had sold prior to that to customers, and that software was more valuable to Autonomy because they had the customers. It was built for Autonomy technology. So they could distribute that software to thousands of customers. So it was very valuable, in my opinion, to them*."

diverges from the reality that I know…" and was unsure what detail to put in to answer it. He suggested, a little sardonically, that the next time he did a witness statement he would *"try harder to put more and more detail in"*. This was not convincing.

669. The notion that there was an appreciation within Autonomy of flaws and a history of hacking of a particular product without there having been generated any customer complaints, nor any report by Autonomy or any other documentary evidence of a cyber security breach, is not an easy one to accept. That is especially so given the delegation of the task of identifying customers which might need or be interested to Mr Crumbacher and Mr Scott, who were not in a position to know (see paragraph 653 above).

670. Further, examples given by the Claimants of the reaction of a customer and/or a salesman to being told that DiscoverEngine was to be included in the deal struck me as telling. I have referred in paragraphs 655 to 656 above to certain customers; another related to the Tracfone contract mentioned in paragraph 653 above. When on 20 June 2011, another Autonomy lawyer, Mr Hung Chang, was negotiating the contract with Tracfone (see paragraph 653) he mentioned to the relevant sales executive (Mr Dipan Patel) that he understood that *"we are adding some kind of Discovery Engine to the PQ"*. Mr Patel answered that this was news to him, and that he had no idea what it comprised or why it would be included. Mr Chang responded that he too would be interested to know *"as it was a directive from Sushovan."* When Mr Patel enquired more widely about DiscoverEngine, none of his sales colleagues knew what it was either and thought it must be a mistake.

671. It is also interesting to compare the price agreed by Autonomy in June 2010 under the Software Distributorship Agreement (see paragraph 661 above) which was $224,000 for up to 5,000 users with that to which it committed under the Q2 2011 purchase of $5,500 per instance up to 800 instances.

Second DiscoverTech purchase (Q3 2011): source code

672. In Q3 2011, Autonomy purchased additional *"instances"* of the DiscoverTech software[64] and also what Dr Lynch described as a *"pared-down version"* of the source code for $3.2 million. These purchases coincided with an urgent need for Autonomy to tidy up its books and obtain payment or other discharge of any debts owed to it prior to completion of its imminent acquisition by HP.

673. In the US criminal trial, Mr David Truitt testified that these further purchases arose out of a discussion he had with Mr Hussain following the announcement of HP's acquisition. The discussion related to DiscoverTech's various outstanding contractual commitments (including in respect of VT30 and VT31). Mr David Truitt's evidence placed the second purchase firmly in the context of the need to find a way to discharge those commitments. He said:

> *"…we had a discussion regarding potentially more instances of our product, which would enable me to then pay down some of that obligation.*

[64] An *"instance"* means the number of servers on which the software could be run.

> *They did go back, and over a period of a week or two, they determined, you know, how much more they could buy, and we did a few more of those purchases over the next month or so."*

674. The original proposal from DiscoverTech for this further transaction had been for a purchase of the product itself, with unlimited distribution rights, for $10.35m. The document explained the commercial basis for this:

> *"Autonomy is currently authorized to distribute one copy of DiscoverEngine for each copy of IDOL server shipped to Autonomy customers as well as existing IDOL customers under Autonomy annual support. Autonomy's current purchase price for DiscoverEngine is at an average price of $2,700,000 per 500 hundred instances plus an annual maintenance fee of $270,000 dollars for each bundle of 500 DiscoverEngine instances. Discover Technologies is offering to sell to Autonomy the DiscoverEngine product and allow unlimited distribution as an Autonomy owned product for $10,350,000. Autonomy's IDOL software exists in hundreds of thousands of environments throughout the world. The purchase of the DiscoverEngine product under the proposed terms will allow Autonomy to significantly reduce its costs to distribute the DiscoverEngine while providing value to a larger segment of Autonomy's customer base."*

675. A review of the software was undertaken by Mr Lucini and Mr Chen (an Autonomy systems engineer). Dr Menell summarised and forwarded their findings to management. Their assessment was fairly low-key:

> *"Basically if we wanted to [purchase] it could be used within the Control Point suite as part of data triage and set up. Its [sic] workmanlike and utilitarian so difficult to get enthusiastic about…Does what it says on the tin even if it's a dull tin. We could obviously do this but would need to drop other more important pushes."*

676. The assessment did not mention the existence of Autonomy's own SharePoint connector and contained no analysis of any similarities or differences between that and DiscoverTech's product, even though on Dr Lynch's argument that was the main task. As in the context of the first purchase, there was no mention of any problems such as hacking, or customer dissatisfaction with Autonomy's own product. Nor was there any mention of any experience that Autonomy might have garnered from its first licence purchase.

677. Mr Lucini accepted that when first instructed he was asked to identify what overlap there was with Autonomy's own products, but that this was soon cut down by Dr Menell simply to assessing its utility. No assessment of the comparative time and cost to develop Autonomy's own product appears to have been undertaken either. The Claimants submitted that this was because Dr Menell had warned Mr Lucini off a comparative approach knowing that it would undermine the rationale for any purchase.

Mr Lucini's line was that (a) he had not been asked to assess and comment on any overlap with Autonomy products and did not do so, and (b) in fact in a conversation after an initial brief, Dr Menell had given express instructions, which he felt he had to accept, that the assessment should not make any *"head-to-head"* comparison with Autonomy's own products. The fact that such a comparison seems obviously necessary and yet there is nothing to suggest that Dr Menell or Mr Hussain thought that the report was deficient, or that Mr Lucini had not done what was required of him, gives credence to Mr Lucini's version of events in this respect.

678. However, the Defendants submitted that there was nothing to support this subsequent alleged instruction, and that Mr Lucini had invented it. The Defendants argued that, on the contrary, it was because it was clear that DiscoverTech did offer advantages over Autonomy's product, and certainly did not duplicate it: they suggested that if the field engineering team and Mr Lucini had thought the product simply replicated Autonomy's own product they would surely have said so. The Defendants' case is that Autonomy's technical engineers gave independent and objective consideration to the second purchase and confirmed to Autonomy that DiscoverEngine was a useful and valuable source code to buy.

679. In an email on 15 September 2011 to Dr Lynch and the rest of the core management team in response to Dr Menell's confirmation of the product's utility, Mr Hussain suggested that he was thinking of a price of between \$8m and \$10m for the source code (i.e. a discount from DiscoverTech's proposal), or a purchase of more limited software for \$6m. Dr Lynch responded, "*that is too much*". Mr Hussain replied, thanking Dr Lynch *"for the direction"* and stating that he would negotiate, he believed Autonomy were in a strong position, and he would aim for below \$2 million. This extreme and off the cuff reduction in the price to be offered, and especially (a) Mr Hussain's alacrity in moving from his initial estimate to one which was one-fifth of it, and (b) Dr Lynch's suggestion of the lower price without any explanation, suggests to me that the price they determined to offer was calibrated according to some more general considerations than its list price or true value. It also suggests a certain confidence that Autonomy would not be rebuffed.

680. Emails ensued as follows:

(1) On 21 September 2011 Mr Hussain emailed David Truitt, stating:

> "*Hi Dave – technical have evaluated and we want to buy but we can only pay \$1.6m".*

(2) On 23 September 2011 Mr David Truitt provided a revised proposal. The new proposal stated that: "*We have reduced our price significantly down to 3 million dollars and have reduced the components of the DiscoverEngine solution accordingly*".

(3) Mr Truitt went on to explain what was now included and not included in the new proposal. His email made clear that key points from the earlier proposal were still present (including all the points highlighted by the field engineering team and Dr Menell), concluding: "*The value proposition is still compelling in*

that the ability to distribute to SharePoint 2010 customers as well as leverage our Microsoft certification is still included".

(4) On 26 September 2011 Mr Hussain forwarded the revised proposal to Dr Menell and Mr Scott, saying "*we are prepared to pay $1.7m max*". Dr Menell said in response to this that "*price is a commercial call I can't really advise"*, but did not dissent from Mr Hussain's approach, and gave a positive indication of the potential market for the product.

> "*It's very dull but Rafiqs point about Open Deploy, bank of America and the utility space is the market for something simple, done well and with a compliant slant is large especially if coupled with an umbilical cloud distribution channel as large as ours (which by the way and needless to say I imagine is only going to get dramatically bigger with HP!)*".

(5) On 27 September 2011 Mr Scott requested approval from Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain for the purchase of 285 additional instances of DiscoverEngine for $1.5m. Mr Scott explained that most of the prepay had been used up and that Autonomy needed to purchase additional volumes for the customer deals it was tracking.

(6) On 27 September 2011 David Truitt gave Mr Scott DiscoverTech's "*best and final proposal*" for the source code sale. This stated:

> *"Our price has been reduced to 1,700,000 dollars contingent on Autonomy purchasing an additional 285 instances of the DiscoverEngine for resale distribution under our current Software Distributor Agreement prior to 9/30/11."*

(7) On 27 September 2011 Mr Scott forwarded DiscoverTech's updated proposal to Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain and Dr Menell. The email made clear that DiscoverTech had reduced its price for the source code from the $3m proposal, in consideration of the fact that Autonomy was purchasing the additional instances of the software. The email also indicated that Autonomy had customers for the additional purchases. It should be noted that the additional instances would be of the full DiscoverEngine product in a form ready to be shipped to customers. The source code that Autonomy was purchasing was more limited or *"pared-down"*, following the reduction of the scope of the sale explained in David Truitt's email of 23 September 2011.

(8) Dr Lynch approved the purchase in response to Mr Scott's email, saying "*ok this is much better*".

681. Mr David Truitt's evidence with regard to the sale of the source code was that this was something he "*wasn't a big fan of doing*" because his company was selling its know-how; but he felt he had no alternative. He said:

> *"So effectively I had to give up a product that we had built and that, you know, had high hopes for, but, you know, I was willing to do it because we were able to clear our debt.*"

682. Dr Lynch summarised the position as he understood it at the time in his first witness statement:

> *"296. Autonomy bought a pared-down version of the source code, which did not include all DiscoverEngine functionality, for a competitive price. The price was further discounted because Autonomy agreed to purchase additional instances of DiscoverEngine around the same time. It made commercial sense to purchase the additional instances because Autonomy had used up most of its prepaid instances, but still had customers interested in the functionality offered by the product. The additional instances included all DiscoverEngine functionality (unlike the source code Autonomy had purchased) and it could be shipped to customers immediately.*
>
> *297. The UK management team approved these purchases. I gave the final approval. I approved the purchases because I understood that we needed the product and was informed that we had customers lined up to which we could sell it. In my opinion, these purchases were in Autonomy's interest and we exercised sound commercial judgment in buying the DiscoverEngine software. We were able to sell the products on to customers."*

683. A considerable time was spent on the competing submissions as to the utility of DiscoverPoint and its source code, and as to whether Autonomy might itself have developed its own enhanced and improved product. The Defendants also criticised the Claimants for muddling the two purchases, and also for failing to be clear as to what part of the purchase price of the Q3 2011 purchase related to instances and how much to the source code.

684. I do not think either criticism alters the analysis; and I do not consider it necessary to go through this evidence: as it seems to me, what the Defendants' justification came down to was the simple but substantial point made by Dr Lynch in cross-examination that, irrespective of specific request or individually identified need, Autonomy naturally wished to provide customers who asked for a SharePoint connector with the best functioning connector that Autonomy could supply, and that was not its own connectors but DiscoverEngine. No specific customer request or need was on that basis necessary, and nor was any sale of the connector since it would simply be included as "best of breed" in the overall solution sold; as Dr Lynch put it in one of his many analogies in the course of his cross-examination:

> *"They didn't request it. DiscoverEngine is a very technical piece of software that solved a particular problem. Those customers needed that problem solved but they didn't – it's a bit like you buying a car. You don't request a carburettor, but you have to have a carburettor in order for the car to go. So it was a necessary piece of technology for what these people wanted to do."*

685. The problem from the Defendants' point of view was the lack of evidential underpinning for this explanation. Furthermore:

(1) This explanation was not the same as or even consistent with that given by Dr Lynch in his witness statement, which was very much based on sales of the connector to satisfy individual customer specific requirements. As Dr Lynch put it in his first witness statement:

> *"I approved the purchases because I understood that we needed the product and was informed that we had customers lined up to which we could sell it"*;

(2) Whilst the explanation might have covered the first purchase of a three-year renewable licence, it was difficult to fit with the second purchase of further 'instances' for customers which were never identified;

(3) Although Dr Lynch advanced theoretical justifications for preferring a buy-in (diversion of valuable talent and delay) these seemed to me insufficient to explain why Autonomy did not develop its own enhanced connector, especially given Autonomy's avowed policy of supplying its own products if at all possible;

(4) No coherent explanation was offered as to the basis on which Autonomy sought to include (for free) the DiscoverEngine connector rather than any of its own in solutions for customers: Dr Lynch suggested that this was primarily driven by Dr Menell who had the expertise, but there is no support in the evidence for that suggestion, and the signs are that it was driven by Mr Hussain, who had no such expertise and whose eyes were on the financial objective of clearing outstanding indebtedness; and

(5) The lack of any paper record of (i) complaints or concerns about Autonomy's connectors and (ii) why it would be better to buy in, added to the impression that the second purchase, like the first, was driven primarily by some other consideration.

686. In summary, my conclusions on both DiscoverEngine purchases are as follows:

(1) DiscoverEngine was a serviceable product, probably superior to Autonomy's and advantageous to customers because of its certification.

(2) But Autonomy did not need it: I do not accept Dr Lynch's evidence that the frailties of its own product were such that Autonomy had to substitute DiscoverTech in its place irrespective of customer demand or identification to them of any issue.

(3) The price was excessive, in comparison to (a) the likely costs had it needed to develop its own product (including any costs of diverted software expertise), (b) what Autonomy paid for its June 2010 licence and (c) the value placed at the time of the spin-off; and it seems clear that it never did sell on to customers who had a genuine need / had requested it.

687. As in the case of the first purchase (see paragraph 645), it is necessary in this context to distinguish between (a) whether DiscoverEngine, as a product, had any utility (b) whether there was any real need for Autonomy to purchase it and (c) whether need for the product or the objective of putting the VAR in funds was the determinant of the price and the purchases at the time it was made.

688. In short, I have concluded that the predominant driver for both purchases was the need to assist DiscoverTech; it was the method selected to achieve the objective in a way which could be presented in such a way as to pass muster with Deloitte and the Audit Committee, and albeit contrived (in the sense that but for its true primary purpose it is unlikely that Autonomy would have entered into it) it was not fanciful (in that DiscoverEngine was useful and could be presented as being so).

My assessment re VT30 and the DiscoverEngine purchases in the round

689. Having come to the end of that detour, I turn to my assessment of the Prisa (VT30) VAR transaction as a whole.

690. In my view, VT30 was typical of Autonomy's deals with DiscoverTech, demonstrating what was by early 2011 Autonomy's almost automatic recourse to a 'friendly' VAR to cover revenue shortfalls in a quarter:

(1) There was no other purpose in the introduction of a VAR, and DiscoverTech in this case, than to book recognised revenue; and it was never expected or intended that the VAR should have any active part to play at all, nor even that it would be a contracting party to any ultimate sale to the prospective end-user.

(2) The VAR (in this instance, DiscoverTech) never acquired any autonomous control of the software notionally licenced to it. Any onward sale would be negotiated and (if the negotiations were successful) closed by Autonomy. The VAR was dependent on Autonomy for both reimbursement and reward.

(3) The DiscoverEngine purchases, despite their factual complications, had the simple predominant objective of making good Autonomy's commitment to DiscoverTech (as to all its 'friendly' VARs) to see to it that they were not left 'on the hook'. The fact that the purchases may well have had other legitimate purposes demonstrates no more than that the 'rescue' transactions were well chosen to obtain approval from Deloitte and the Audit Committee.

(4) In consequence, the role of the VAR (DiscoverTech in this case) was nominal: there was no real transfer of risk or control, which was in reality retained by Autonomy.

691. In my judgment, recognition of revenue from VT30 was improper.

692. The backdating of the VT30 VAR agreement was an additional but egregious (though not unique) impropriety. The email exchanges between Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain relating to the possible deferral of revenue (see paragraphs 619 to 621 above) demonstrate also that by that time, Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain (at least) were prepared to allocate revenue flexibly in the week or so following quarter-end. This

echoed similarly improper manipulation of revenue as in certain of the hardware sales, and further demonstrates what in my judgment is the impropriety of VT30 as a whole.

Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT30 and backdating

693. In my judgment, the use of 'friendly' VARs, and in the Prisa case, DiscoverTech, for this purpose was well known to the core management group in Autonomy and in particular not only to Mr Hussain but also to Dr Lynch. They also knew that if no end-user sale eventuated, Autonomy would need somehow to finance or absolve the friendly VAR.

694. I have also concluded that both Defendants knew that the DiscoverEngine purchases were devised as the means of financing DiscoverTech.

695. The position against Mr Hussain is reasonably clear; he was directly involved.

696. Dr Lynch was at one remove. However, he did approve both purchases. I have concluded that (a) this is something on which Mr Hussain would have forewarned and consulted with him about and (b) his one-line approvals without feeling the need for any further enquiry, coupled with the quite extraordinary grasp of the detail of which he manifestly was capable, and his exceptionally close control of the company, suggest that he was aware of the true drivers of the purchases. I think it is more likely than not that he knew enough to know that the purpose of the purchases was predominantly to fund DiscoverTech to enable it immediately to pay down its debt and enable Autonomy to take DiscoverTech's outstanding indebtedness off its books.

697. Neither Mr Hussain nor Dr Lynch can have thought this use of VARs to be a proper basis for recognising revenue from delayed and inherently uncertain deals.

698. In my judgment, both Defendants knew that the sale in VT30 lacked substance and in reality transferred no risk or control of the software. Both Defendants had "guilty knowledge" of the accounting impropriety accordingly.

Defendants' knowledge of backdating

699. Mr Hussain's defence to the allegation of backdating of VT30 was not that he did not know but that the Prisa deal was amongst the 'slate of deals' approved on 31 March 2011, and that the documentation properly memorialised the earlier agreement.

700. However, I have held that the Prisa deal was not on the 'slate': see paragraph 612 above, and the question therefore is whether, on a balance of probabilities, Mr Hussain knew that. I consider it more likely than not that he did.

701. I consider also that Mr Hussain's email to Dr Lynch of 11 April 2011 presenting a choice whether to *"defer Prisa"* (see also paragraph 616 above) some two weeks after the end of the quarter demonstrates that Mr Hussain was willing to adjust the record to reflect whichever option was agreed, and it would have fallen to him to arrange whatever needed to be done, even if the doing of it was delegated.

702. In the round, I have concluded on the balance of probabilities, that Mr Hussain was aware of and probably directed the backdating of VT30.

703. In considering the position of Dr Lynch it is necessary to take full account of the fact that he was involved in the mechanics of the deals much less than Mr Hussain was, even though (as I have found) he was aware of the strategy and its impropriety.

704. In his closing submissions Dr Lynch dismissed the claim that he was knowingly involved as *"more forensic froth"* and contended that the exchanges between Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch did not identify any knowledge or involvement on Dr Lynch's part in the terms of the deal, and certainly did not identify any knowledge of backdating or involvement in it. Insofar as they sought to rely on the email (see paragraphs 619 to 621 above) from Mr Chamberlain to Mr Hussain of 12 April 2011 (as they had in opening, but seemed only elliptically to do so in closing) Dr Lynch made the point that none of it had anything to do with backdating and he was not in any event a party to it. He suggested further that neither he nor Mr Hussain had any motivation to backdate the Prisa deal, because *"the contemporaneous documents show that there was no shortfall in revenue"*. By contrast Mr Egan had a plain motive because he had:

> *"missed his target…So I think this is more likely the case that Mr Egan, for whatever reason, didn't get the paperwork done when he should have done and then realised he was going to miss his personal number and did the number."*

705. That does not seem to me adequately (or at all) to explain Mr Hussain's email to Dr Lynch of 11 April 2011 (which I have quoted in paragraph 616 above)[65] nor why, almost two weeks after the end of Q1 2011, Mr Hussain was discussing with Dr Lynch whether revenue should be reported for Q1 2011, as though this was discretionary, and in circumstances where there was no documented deal between Autonomy and the end-user at that time. That presupposes that according to the option elected there may be a need to demonstrate earlier revenue recognition. The later emails of 12 April and thereafter, which I have also referred to earlier, seem to me also to reinforce the likelihood that Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch were not troubled by the actual factual sequence in determining whether or not to "defer" Prisa. Dr Lynch's evidence that Mr Hussain would not have *"operated in that manner"* (that is backdated documents) needs to be considered in that light.

706. Dr Lynch's justification for his own acceptance that the question whether to recognise revenue in Q1 2011 from VT30 was even in April 2011 still elective or optional was that these were typical matters of judgement that had to be made (for example, if doubts had emerged about the VAR's credit-worthiness, or as to whether all acceptance criteria had been met) in the immediate aftermath of every quarter. But although I have accepted the necessity and commonplace nature of the process in general terms I have not felt able to accept that it explains the emails. I consider that Dr Lynch was aware that Mr Hussain would take steps necessary to ensure recognition of revenue or not according to the election made, and that this would depend on whether the revenue was needed in the

---

[65] *"If we defer prisa then we are at 218.1m but 24c and 85% [gross margin]. If we don't defer prisa but defer equiv low margin we are at same revs but now at 25c and 88%. To discuss when I land or you can discuss with steve [Chamberlain]."*

previous quarter to make up a shortfall, or was better reserved for the subsequent quarter.

707. In such circumstances, although it may well be that Dr Lynch did not know how the election would be documented, and it is possible that Mr Hussain did not refer back to Dr Lynch before finalising that (the die having already been cast), I cannot accept that Dr Lynch was not aware that the decision was going to be made on the basis not of chronological truth but revenue need, and that if the latter prevailed, any documentation of the decision would be false.

VT31: DiscoverTech/ThinkTech Q1 2011

708. In March 2011, Autonomy was seeking to conclude a transaction with the brokerage firm TD Ameritrade ("Ameritrade"), for which the contracting end-user would be its subsidiary, ThinkTech, Inc ("ThinkTech"). The desired transaction was an amendment to ThinkTech's existing Digital Safe hosting arrangement so as to add a licence for Zantaz Supervisor (S6).

709. However, the transaction could not be concluded within the targeted quarter. On 23 March 2011, Robert Sass notified Mr Hussain that the deal was "*highly unlikely for March*", though Mr Hussain encouraged him to "*keep pushing*". Then, on 29 March 2011, it emerged that Ameritrade had "*said 'no' – not why, not later, just 'no'*". The Claimants contended that this bad news was doubtless relayed to the Defendants, given Mr Hussain's recent involvement in pushing for the deal to be concluded.

710. As had become habitual (or what I have called the pattern) when a targeted deal which Autonomy needed to satisfy revenue forecasts was delayed, Autonomy sought to set up a sale to a friendly VAR. On 31 March 2011, DiscoverTech signed an agreement with Autonomy Inc for a licence of the same software, for the same end-user, ThinkTech. The licence fee was \$1.8 million plus \$180,000 support and maintenance. Autonomy recognised the licence fee as revenue immediately, that is to say, in Q1 2011.

711. The VAR letter Agreement dated 31 March 2011 was on the usual terms which stipulated that DiscoverTech was on risk irrespective of whether an end-user sale was concluded, and that the agreement represented the entire agreement between the parties. Mr David Truitt confirmed in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings that he understood that DiscoverTech was on risk.

712. The Claimants' central point relates to the fact that on 29 March 2011 there was an email from the indirect end-user which the Claimants referred to as the "just no" email. In that email, which was part of an internal Autonomy exchange reporting on the status of certain deals that Mr Hussain was pressing should be closed before the quarter-end, an Autonomy sales manager reported as follows:

> *"TD Ameritrade said "no" – not why, not later just "no"*
>
> *We are working to get more info"*

713. The Claimants (who did not quote the second sentence of the email) construed this as denoting Ameriprise/ThinkTech's categorical withdrawal; and they relied on the fact

that, in the end, no licence was sold to ThinkTech as further support for that construction. On that basis they advanced the argument following:

> *"The question that immediately arises is this: why would DiscoverTech take on a liability to pay $1.8 million, in the hope of selling a licence to ThinkTech, in circumstances in which, as noted above, ThinkTech had already said it did not want one….*
>
> …
>
> *In fact, the only sensible explanation for this otherwise irrational behaviour on the part of DiscoverTech is the existing of the intention described in Chapter 6 [the side agreement] as well as the promise of a MAF."*

714. The Claimants also sought to rely on evidence given by Mr David Truitt in the US criminal trial which they portrayed as having been as follows:

    (1) DiscoverTech probably would not have had the ability to pay for the order, in the absence of an end-user sale.

    (2) Autonomy exercised control over what to sell to ThinkTech, when, and at what price.

    (3) It was Autonomy that would be responsible for consummating any sale with ThinkTech: Mr David Truitt observed during his testimony, "*That is the way it worked.*"

715. The Claimants emphasised that Mr Welham was unaware of the "*just no"* email at the time and that there was nothing to suggest that either Mr Hussain, or anyone else, drew it to Mr Welham's attention. In Mr Welham's witness statement he said that had he known about this email, he would have wanted to understand the commercial rationale for the sale to DiscoverTech, given such remote prospects of an end-user sale.

716. To all this, the Defendants submitted that the real answer to the Claimants' rhetorical question was the one actually given by Mr David Truitt in a passage the Claimants themselves had marked up as hearsay evidence that they wished to adduce and rely on: his recollection was that Mr Egan had given him an *"indication that they were very close to closing"*.

717. The Defendants contended also that the Claimants' portrayal of Mr David Truitt's evidence was unfair and out of context:

    (1) Mr David Truitt's evidence was in fact that DiscoverTech <u>could</u> have been put in funds to meet all its sales obligations.

    (2) As to the contention that Autonomy had control over the goods, the quoted passage of Mr David Truitt's deposition evidence in the US criminal proceedings was only making an observation about what he understood from the restrictions in the <u>reseller agreement</u>. Their line was that those provisions did not suggest that Autonomy exercised managerial control for the purposes of IAS 18.14.

(3) They asserted (though Mr David Truitt did not say this) that the idea of the relationship with Autonomy was that DiscoverTech would be the contracting party with the end-user, enabling it to commence a relationship under which it would provide services.

718. The Defendants also contended that, to the extent relevant, the *"just no"* email did not mean at all that there was no prospect of a deal being done with the end-user, contrary to the Claimants' case. Less than a month later on 26 April 2011, there is documentation showing that negotiations continued, and that Autonomy's salesmen were forecasting a "50% plus probability" for a deal with Ameritrade (though what deal and at what price is not disclosed).

719. The Defendants did not deal specifically with the fact that Deloitte were not told of the "just no" email. It is not clear when Deloitte undertook their review of the revenue deals for Q1 2011; and, more particularly, whether negotiations for a deal had re-started or were on-going (such that the "just no" email was no longer of any material relevance). As usual, Deloitte focused on the VAR agreement and concluded that all the relevant criteria were satisfied to enable and require revenue recognition. As to the end-user all they noted was as follows:

> *"The end-user, ThinkTech Inc is a subsidiary of TD Ameritrade, a large listed stockbroking firm. The purchase of a compliance archiving product with Bloomberg integration appears to be a rational purchase for such an entity."*

720. The Claimants also relied in the context of VT31 on the DiscoverEngine software purchases for the same reasons and on the same basis as they had in the context of VT30: they contended that the purchases were simply a means of passing money to DiscoverTech to make good on the agreement or understanding they alleged.

My assessment re VT31

721. In my view (and I find that) at the time that the VAR deal with DiscoverTech was entered into:

(1) Autonomy's sales department had been told, and Mr Hussain (who had been keeping an eye on and had been pushing for the deal to be concluded) would have been informed and appreciated, that the prospect of a sale to Ameritrade/ThinkTech was very slim. It is more likely than not that Mr Hussain would have informed Dr Lynch, who also monitored closely the likelihood of deals which were part of the means of achieving the quarterly revenue target eventuating.

(2) Deloitte should have been told of the *"just no"* email; and it is more likely than not that it was withheld deliberately, lest it prejudice revenue recognition in the targeted quarter, at the instance of Mr Hussain.

(3) DiscoverTech would have had great difficulty in meeting its contractual obligations under VT31 out of its own resources, and it was never in reality expected or intended by either Autonomy or Mr David Truitt that it would be required to do so.

(4) DiscoverTech was not intended or expected to participate or be involved in any way in any future effort to conclude a deal with ThinkTech, the objective of which would continue to be a direct deal between Autonomy and ThinkTech. DiscoverTech was never intended or expected to deal with or use the software notionally 'sold' to it in any way.

(5) The 'sale' was a device with no economic substance to enable revenue recognition, regardless of whether or not any sale to ThinkTech ever eventuated.

722. In my view, VT31 is a further demonstration of the by now habitual and routine way or pattern in which Autonomy resorted to friendly VARs, and especially DiscoverTech, to bolster quarterly revenue. Further, it shows that by now at least, Autonomy was prepared to exaggerate the prospects of an end-user deal, and trust in some other mutually beneficial commercial solution to preserve the loyalty of the VAR and reward it for taking on risk if no end-user sale eventuated. A further aspect of the pattern appears to be emerging: recognition of revenue even in circumstances which at the time of such recognition there appeared to be little likelihood of the putative end-user deal eventuating at all.

723. In my judgment, this is the pattern well established by now. It is inconsistent with proper revenue recognition.

Were the Defendants aware and involved?

724. Mr Hussain's involvement and 'guilty knowledge' is plain.

725. I accept that Dr Lynch was not involved in the detail of this deal. But I consider that it is more likely than not that he was informed that it was, as at the end of Q1 2011, most unlikely to result in a deal with Ameritrade/ThinkTech, and that there was at least real doubt whether it would ever eventuate in the then proposed form and price. Accordingly, it is more likely than not that Dr Lynch was aware that a VAR was being introduced solely for the purpose of triggering revenue recognition, without any intention of the VAR being involved in any way or dealing with the software notionally sold, and (in the particular case of VT31) regardless of whether in the end any revenue in fact was generated. He was aware also, since with Mr Hussain he was an architect of the practice of resorting to 'friendly' VARs in order to recognise revenue in a targeted quarter where there was a delay in closing the prospective end-user deal, of the tacit understanding shared with all the 'friendly' VARs, that though legally at risk, they would never be expected or required to pay out of their own resources. That, in my judgment, constituted "guilty knowledge".

VT35: DiscoverTech/Abbott Labs Q2 2011

726. In an email to Dr Lynch dated 11 June 2011 (subject: update) Mr Hussain referred, as one of three new potential deals, to the *"chance of a $15m software deal"* with Abbott Laboratories ("Abbott"), a healthcare company which was an existing customer of Autonomy. Though this was, as Dr Lynch accepted, a large deal (he cavilled at *"very large"*), he had not mentioned it in his witness statements; and his position was that he did not think he had had any involvement in it (apart from being updated occasionally as to its status by Mr Hussain).

727. It is clear that the prospective Abbott deal was large enough to become of increasing concern as the end of June approached without its successful agreement. When Mr Sullivan informed him on 27 June that Abbott *"say they need till tomorrow",* Mr Hussain almost immediately responded *"Fingers and toes crossed we need it"*.

728. In the event, Abbott would only agree to a substantially reduced deal, and demanded very extended payment terms, which Mr Hussain agreed. Mr Wilner of Autonomy reported to Mr Sullivan by email dated 30 June 2011 as follows:

> *"Sr. Atty* [negotiator for Abbott] *veto'd by GC* [General Counsel] *who says (and has said in the past) that they will 'never authorise forward-looking commitment levels.' Nothing left to be done.*
>
> *Utterly ridiculous conclusion to a ridiculous process. Wish the news were better. Sorry we couldn't get this one done."*

729. Later that day, Mr Hussain updated Dr Lynch by email as to the "state of play", reporting in relation to the Abbott deal as follows:

> *"Abbott – 2 deals being worked – a $2.5m deal direct (we negotiated this last night, not on good terms though) and one thru partner".*

730. It appears, therefore, that when the larger deal with Abbott that it had hoped to close by the end of the month failed to materialise, Autonomy decided to resort to a VAR in accordance with its usual practice in such circumstances. On 30 June 2011, DiscoverTech issued a purchase order for the licence that Autonomy had been trying to sell Abbott. The licence fee was the very precise sum of $8,611,011.07, which Autonomy recognised as revenue immediately. The total amount payable under the purchase order, taking account of additional sums for hosting and support and maintenance, was $9.45 million.

731. As in other DiscoverTech VAR deals, the reseller agreement placed DiscoverTech on risk irrespective of whether an end-user sale was concluded, and contained a clause stipulating that the contract represented the entire agreement between the parties. This was a further transaction on which DiscoverTech understood that it assumed the legal risk, and the evidence from Mr David Truitt and Mr Egan confirmed that.

732. Mr David Truitt gave further evidence about this transaction specifically in the US criminal trial. He said that Mr Egan convinced him to do the deal and that he accepted the risk and DiscoverTech owed the money on the deal:

> *"Q. Let's talk a little bit about the Dell Hyatt and Abbot Labs deals in the third quarter of 2011.*
>
> *Again, this is all Mr. Egan. Mr. Egan came in and convinced you to do it; right?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. Told you that these deals were about to close?*
>
> *A. Yes.*

Q.	*Told you that these were long-term customers of Autonomy who were going to have to buy eventually --*
A.	*Yes.*
Q.	*-- right? And persuaded you that this was something that you wanted to do?*
A.	*Yes.*
Q.	*And to the extent that -- you didn't talk to Mr. Hussain about the Abbott deal, did you?*
A.	*No.*
Q.	*Mr. Egan didn't tell you that the -- they were having problems getting the general counsel to agree to a license?*
A.	*No.*
Q.	*Okay. Did you know that eventually they did get Abbott to agree to a license?*
A.	*No.*
Q.	*But, again, these were deals that you accepted the risk on and you owed the money on?*
A.	*Yes, sir."*

733. Earlier in his testimony David Truitt had also made the same points. His evidence was that Mr Egan told him that "*the deal was going to happen sometime soon*". There was consensus between the parties that if Mr David Truitt had been told that Abbott had vetoed a forward-looking commitment, he would not have done the deal. The Defendants indeed relied on this evidence, which had been marked up by the Claimants as hearsay evidence upon which they relied, as confirmation that Mr David Truitt regarded DiscoverTech as on risk, and as thus being inconsistent with the Claimants' case.

734. However, the real thrust of the Claimants' case in respect of the Abbott deal (VT35) was that it was *"devoid of economic substance"* and even *"absurd"*. The Claimants contended that:

(1) DiscoverTech had no ability to pay, absent an end-user transaction, and there was no real prospect of an end-user transaction with Abbott in light of it having been vetoed by its General Counsel.

(2) Mr David Truitt was not told about the General Counsel's veto.

(3) DiscoverTech was to have no involvement in any negotiations with the end-user and made no effort and was not expected or intended to effect a sale itself: after the VAR 'sale' as before, any sale to Abbott was intended to be a direct sale by Autonomy. That demonstrated Autonomy's *de facto* continuing managerial control of the software sold which would disqualify revenue recognition. Mr David Truitt was asked in his cross-examination in the US criminal proceedings whether he would say Autonomy exercised control over what to sell to Abbott and on what terms; his answer was unequivocally "yes".

(4) Mr Hussain then misled Deloitte about the rationale of the proposed end-user deal (DiscoverTech/Abbott) in (a) telling Deloitte that it was using DiscoverTech because it had 8A status, knowing that it did not; and (b) keeping back from Deloitte the fact that Abbott's General Counsel had vetoed any deal involving a *"forward-looking commitment"*.

(5) When no onward sale to the end-user eventuated, Autonomy, at Mr David Truitt's request, simply "cancelled" and wrote off the obligations under VT35. The Claimants placed great reliance in this context on an email dated 30 September 2011 from Mr David Truitt to Mr Scott under the subject heading *"Cancellation of VAR agreements"* in support of the allegation that according to Mr David Truitt, this is what Mr Egan had at the outset agreed should be done if no end-user deal eventuated. That email read as follows:

> *"Hello Mr. Scott, I am writing to formally request that VAR agreements signed on June 30th, 2011 between Discover Technologies and Autonomy, regarding Abbott Laboratories and Dell/Hyatt be cancelled. Per my discussions with Stouffer Egan, under the condition that the end customer did not ultimately license the proposed Autonomy software, the agreements would be cancelled with no further obligation on the part of Discover Technologies. Thank you for your attention and prompt response"*.

(6) Such a cancellation and write-off in the aggregate sum of $15 million would not have been made without the approval of both Defendants.

735. The Defendants' responses were:

(1) Whether or not DiscoverTech was good for the amounts for which it assumed an obligation to pay was an issue of collectability. Collectability was a judgmental area, was assessed by Deloitte, and was considered satisfactory. In any event, this would not render the transaction *"devoid of economic substance"*. Mr David Truitt's answer to the question whether DiscoverTech had sufficient money to pay for the purchase order if the end-user sale failed was *"No, not within the company"*. But Mr David Truitt and his partners had funds; and he confirmed that they could put DiscoverTech in funds to pay the DiscoverTech reseller deals.

(2) It was common ground that Mr David Truitt was not told of the alleged veto by Abbott's General Counsel. That may explain why he proceeded, and the Defendants argued that, if anything, the point tends to undermine rather than support the Claimants' contention that Mr David Truitt was to be held harmless in any event.

(3) Further, (and this is relevant also to (1) above), Dr Lynch did not accept that the General Counsel's "veto" was really such as to preclude a further deal. He explained that while this was not good news he had seen deals in this position come back, and that he had experienced this kind of thing before as a negotiating tactic. Dr Lynch also observed correctly that Abbott did in fact come back subsequently. With regard to the Abbott deal and the reseller deal generally, Dr Lynch also explained that this was a very sizeable opportunity

with a very large demand from Abbott for e-Discovery. Dr Lynch's analogy was that rather than selling Abbott the multiple deliveries of milk they would need, Autonomy was offering the cow, and was likewise offering the cow to the reseller (who could itself supply either the cow or the milk to the end-user).

(4) The criterion in IAS 18.14(b) is about whether the seller retains managerial involvement or control over the goods.[66] Under the reseller deals Autonomy had no continuing contractual obligations in respect of the software and no rights to control what happened to it. The fact that the reseller may have left it to Autonomy to carry on negotiations, with a view to a sale of the goods by the reseller to the end-user does not mean that the criterion was not fulfilled. Mr David Truitt's evidence in fact confirmed repeatedly that DiscoverTech did have managerial control: there was a true sale under which managerial control of the goods passed without qualification. When asked in more detail about managerial control, Mr David Truitt's understanding was that the preservation of managerial control by Autonomy arose out of the terms of the reseller agreement (which in fact provided the opposite).

(5) DiscoverTech does not appear to have been a section 8A business; and the Defendants accepted that it was recorded as being so on a Deloitte workpaper after a discussion between Mr Hussain and Mr Welham relating to the Abbott deal, but erroneously so. However, the Defendants contended that there was no evidence to explain why this was so, still less that Deloitte had been deliberately misled whether by Mr Hussain (whom the Claimants implicated) or anyone else. Mr Welham had no recollection himself; and though he was not challenged on his evidence that he *"would be surprised if we wrote it down incorrectly"* there was nothing to gainsay the suggestion that *"the person who gave you the information may have been muddled".* The Defendants referred in that connection to an email from Mr Scott to Mr Hussain in April 2011 which referred to two DiscoverTech deals on a list of "8A deals", which might have given rise to a misunderstanding on Mr Hussain's part.

(6) Although the Claimants took Dr Lynch to Mr David Truitt's email dated 30 September 2011, they did not take him to Mr David Truitt's evidence about it. Mr Truitt had in fact confirmed in his testimony in the US criminal proceedings, which the Claimants themselves put forward as their evidence, that there was *"never an understanding that if an end customer didn't buy, that I could cancel the deals with no further obligation".* Dr Lynch also confirmed that that was not the arrangement with the resellers: the contracts were clear and the resellers were on risk. It was not as Mr Chamberlain understood matters either: his immediate response to Mr Truitt's email was *"must be a mistake"*.[67]

(7) As to the writing off of the debt, although Dr Lynch was not involved in it, and would like to have been consulted about it, he did not see it as remarkable in circumstances where Autonomy was being acquired. He thought the decision

[66] The experts on accounting matters were agreed that this criterion generally goes hand-in-hand with the transfer of the risks and rewards of ownership of the goods.

[67] As Dr Lynch put it in his testimony "*A. So Mr Chamberlain knows there's a contract but makes it absolutely clear that, even if Mr Egan has given some strange assurance, that it's worthless*."

would have been a commercial one. Further, in his perception, everything was transparent and Autonomy's books were always going to be open to HP.

My Assessment of VT35

736. In assessing the Claimants' case that the transaction was *"devoid of economic substance"* the essential questions, as it seems to me, are (a) whether it was ever expected or intended that DiscoverTech would negotiate and itself conclude a deal with Abbott and (b) whether Autonomy's agreement to cancel the deal (VT35) was to honour a pre-existing arrangement between Mr Egan and Mr David Truitt to cancel the deal if no end-user sale eventuated in order to persuade DiscoverTech to undertake a more than usually large and uncertain VAR transaction; or whether alternatively, it was an *ad hoc* response agreed subsequently to deal with an (until then uniquely) unusual situation.

737. As to (a), and as noted above, Mr David Truitt accepted unequivocally that Autonomy not DiscoverTech had and was expected to exercise control over what to sell to Abbott and on what terms; his answer was unequivocally "yes". He also confirmed that DiscoverTech never did make any efforts to negotiate with Abbott. That is an illustration of the usual pattern that the VARs in impugned VAR sales were not expected or intended to negotiate or themselves be party to a sale to the prospective end-user. Although the Defendants sought to ascribe this to Mr David Truitt's understanding of the terms of the VAR agreement, I am satisfied that his evidence shows what he understood to be the position in reality.

738. As to (b), I do not accept, in light of the subsequent negotiations culminating in a deal (albeit a smaller one) and the undisputed evidence as to Abbott's real need for substantial software to organise its material and data to respond to a huge investigation into it by the US Department of Justice, that Abbott's General Counsel's "veto" entirely put an end to any prospect of an end-user deal apparently envisaged in the VT35 purchase order.

739. However, I accept that (i) even if a deal could be struck, there was a real risk that only a lesser price would be achieved, (ii) the prospect of such a deal was very uncertain, and (iii) since the amounts at stake were notably large, DiscoverTech was more than usually exposed, especially given its other outstanding commitments. The size of the deal meant that the risk undertaken by DiscoverTech, if real, was an existential one. Both that and the easy agreement of Autonomy to write off such a sizeable debt does suggest a previous arrangement that Autonomy would make sure the legal obligation was satisfied or released in some other way.

740. I have taken into account that, as the Defendants much emphasised, in a passage of his testimony in the US criminal proceedings in part relied on and adduced in evidence by the Claimants themselves, Mr David Truitt disavowed any pre-existing arrangement and sought to explain his email referring to his discussions with Mr Egan as connoting that there was one (see paragraph 735(6) above) as simply his misunderstanding of what Autonomy had wanted him to write. However, all I have read Mr David Truitt as saying was that there was no pre-agreement as to the manner in which Autonomy would ensure that DiscoverTech would be released from legal risk, and no formal writing such as to constitute in his eyes a side agreement. He was not saying that he had been given no assurance that DiscoverTech would not be required to pay out of its own resources.

741. I am also satisfied that Mr Hussain had no reason to think that DiscoverTech had 8A status; and in representing to Deloitte (as I am also satisfied he did) that DiscoverTech did have such status, Mr Hussain was seeking to encourage Deloitte to approve revenue recognition by depicting the VAR as contributing to the transaction and as the company likely to enter into the contract with Abbott, knowing all of that to be false.

742. All in all, I accept the Claimants' case that VT35 lacked any real substance. To my mind, it once again exemplifies Autonomy's use of VAR deals predicated on an end-user deal even if those responsible knew the prospects of an end-user deal to be weak simply to plug gaps in revenue. It is a further illustration of a well-established pattern and its latter stage development of taking revenue even when the prospect of any real receipt was uncertain.

743. I am also satisfied that both Defendants (a) knew that the VAR sale was not intended to effect any real change in the way that Autonomy dealt with Abbott nor was it ever to result in a sale by DiscoverTech to Abbott; and (b) approved the arrangements by credit notes to dissolve DiscoverTech's substantial legal obligations. In the latter context ((b)), I accept that Dr Lynch may not have been consulted about the specific write-off and credit notes; but I do not accept that it would have been done without his overall approval for the process.

VT36: DiscoverTech/Dell/Hyatt Q2 2011

744. At the same time as the negotiations with Abbott, Autonomy was also negotiating a separate transaction with the Hyatt hotel chain in which it was envisaged that Autonomy would licence to Dell, which would in turn sublicence to Hyatt. The price which Autonomy hoped for was some $5,000,000.

745. After encouraging signs in early June 2011, by 11 June 2011 Mr Hussain was telling Dr Lynch that he was *"nervous"* about the prospect; and by 18 June 2011 Mr Hussain was reporting to Dr Lynch that the transaction was *"OUT"*. On 30 June 2011, Mr Hussain advised Dr Lynch in another *"state of play"* email, that in relation to Dell, he had *"received draft order from partner"* (signifying a VAR).

746. The purchase order for VT36 (stating a licence fee of $5,333,914 plus $266,696 for support and maintenance) was issued pursuant to a letter agreement dated 30 June 2011 which included the usual terms which placed DiscoverTech on risk irrespective of whether an end-user sale was concluded, and stipulated that the agreement represented the entire agreement between the parties. Mr David Truitt gave further evidence about this transaction specifically when dealing with this deal together with the Abbott deal. He said that Mr Egan convinced him to do the deal and that on that basis he accepted the risk and DiscoverTech had a legal obligation to pay Autonomy.

747. The Claimants' case with respect to VT36 was substantially the same as their case with respect to VT35: that (a) the VAR transaction lacked any economic substance (there being, it was said, no real prospect when it was made of any sale to Dell/Hyatt, and none of DiscoverTech itself entering into a sale since in the unlikely event of any sale at all it would be direct by Autonomy); that (b) arrangements were made for the deal to be cancelled when no end-user deal eventuated, and that (c) Mr Hussain lied to Deloitte about the rationale for transacting with DiscoverTech (its supposed 8A status).

748. Likewise, the Defendants' response mirrored that in relation to VT35.

749. In such circumstances, I do not think it is necessary to rehearse the detailed facts and competing contentions. I have concluded for like reasons as in the context of VT35 that VT36 followed the same pattern and the VAR sale lacked any real substance. The following passage from Mr David Truitt's evidence in cross-examination in the US criminal proceedings illustrates that the essential requirement in IAS 18.14 that risk and management control should pass to the purchaser and not be retained by the seller were not fulfilled:

> *"Q. Did Discovertech have any relevant contacts at Dell or Hyatt?*
>
> *A. No, sir.*
>
> *Q. Did it make any efforts to resell them software?*
>
> *A. No.*
>
> *Q. Would you say that Autonomy exercised control over what to sell to Dell or Hyatt and on what terms and at what price?*
>
> *A. Yes."*

750. The Defendants submitted that the questions were *"broad and imprecise"* and posed without any reference to the accounting concepts under IFRS, and that the answers did not undermine or detract from the legal position that risk and control had passed. I do not agree: the substance of the position was that the VAR was not intended to have anything more to do with the software, or its sale, and that it would be dealt with by Autonomy as if there had been no such sale.

751. As the Claimants submitted any confirmation required that VT36 lacked substance just as VT35 had lacked substance was provided by the arrangements made to release the VAR's ostensible indebtedness when in both cases (and as was by now becoming predictable) no end-user deal eventuated.[68]

752. Once again I am satisfied that both Defendants (a) knew that the VAR sale was not intended to effect any real change in the way that Autonomy dealt with Dell/Hyatt nor was it ever to result in a sale by DiscoverTech to Dell/Hyatt; and (b) approved the arrangements by credit note to dissolve DiscoverTech's substantial legal obligations.

753. In the latter context ((b)), I accept that Dr Lynch may not have been consulted about the specific write-off and credit notes in either VT35 or VT36; but I do not accept that it would have been done without his overall approval for the process.

VT18: FileTek and USDVA Q3 2010

754. FileTek, it may be recalled from paragraph 1963(5) in the main body of the judgment, specialized in the archiving of structured data, and was (amongst other activities) the developer of the StorHouse and Trusted Edge software.

[68] On 29 September 2011, Autonomy Inc issued DiscoverTech with credit notes for $9.45 million and $5.6 million, representing the entirety of what was ostensibly payable under VT35 and VT36 respectively

755. Autonomy had learned in May 2010 that USDVA[69] were going to issue a Request for Proposal ("RFP") for a large deal including archiving. Autonomy wanted to secure the archiving component. It could only do so by bidding and partnering with a US Government pre-approved vendor. USDVA was a repeat customer of Autonomy which had been working with Autonomy on an email archiving system, but Autonomy was not a pre-approved vendor and under US regulations could not supply it directly. It could only do so in conjunction with or through a pre-approved vendor.

756. According to Dr Lynch's evidence in his witness statement, a number of pre-approved vendors were planning to bid on the RFP, and of those the majority were willing to partner with Autonomy and include its software. Autonomy decided on that course.

757. Mr Hussain had hoped that the process would proceed fairly quickly, and that it would be possible to include revenue from a sale in the Q3 2010 figures. On 7 August 2010, Mr Hussain had sent Dr Lynch an email entitled *"latest revenue"* stating that projected revenue for Q3 2010 was $215 million and projected earnings per share were $0.30, and that he would *"need VA and most probably one other"*.

758. The size of the deal, its importance in terms of Autonomy's revenue figures, and Dr Lynch's management style and active supervision are all demonstrated by a vigorous email response from Dr Lynch that same day (7 August 2010) to Mr Hussain and a number of other Autonomy personnel (Mr Still, Mr Egan, Dr Menell, Mr Mooney, Mr Sullivan and Mr Bryan Rellinger) as follows:

> *"…this is the biggest deal in the quarter and the idea that some no-name proserv guy is allowed to potential f this up and we are even having debates about charging them is a MAJOR MANAGEMENT FAILURE. THIS CANNOT BE DELEGATED. ALL of you own this.*
> *Jim, stoff,mikem,mikes,bryan,pete you need to be minute to minute experts on this deal, nothing is said to the customer with out it being cleared by someone senior, no meetings occur with out someone with a brain present, NO F-ing abdications of responsibility or delegation. If there is any problem I WANT TO KNOW ABOUT IT IN A F***ING MILLISECOND from all of you.*
>
> *We cannot act like muppets on a deal of this size … break the rules and do it right.*
>
> *AND we will bid with anyone the customer wants us to, none of this Autonomy favoured nation shit anymore".*

759. Nevertheless, this vigour expressed to Autonomy employees could not of itself galvanise USDVA, and by mid-August 2010 it was becoming clear that, unless government agency financial rules compelled USDVA to hurry to issue a RFP (which would trigger the tender process) and move forward with speed, there was little prospect of any deal before Q4 2010. When Dr Lynch asked Mr Hussain in an email dated 13 August 2010 (a) *"how sure are we will win?"* and (b) *"how sure are we it will be q3"* Mr Hussain's replies were (a) as there were what he termed *"EAS issues"* and he had not yet seen an RFP he was not able to assess the prospect, but his overall feeling was

---

[69] United States Department of Veteran Affairs

that *"it's a low probability"*, and (b) on timing and whether the deal could be done in Q3 2010, he said: *"I can't see it unless they have to spend the funds"*.

760. By 25 August 2010, no RFP had yet been issued. Through late August and September, the prospect of a deal in Q3 2010 further receded. On 8 September 2010 Mr Hussain reported to Dr Lynch by email that the deal was *"AT RISK – Need RFP to come out to have a hope"*. On 15 September 2010 Mr Hussain reported again to Dr Lynch, this time removing USDVA from the list of expected revenue for Q3 2010.

761. It was nonetheless a large deal, and an important prospective revenue source. Mr Egan's unchallenged evidence was that he and *"Mr Hussain…discussed the need to be able to take the deal to a VAR in order to be able to recognise revenue in the quarter."* At that stage, Mr Hussain and Mr Egan were discussing using MicroTech and MicroLink as a *"partner"*. It is not clear why, on 28 September 2010, they turned to FileTek.

762. Autonomy had established a close relationship with FileTek through a number of deals, including two which the Claimants impugned as *"reciprocal"* or *"round trip"* transactions (and which are addressed later in the main body of the judgment in the chapter on alleged 'Reciprocal Transactions')[70]. None of those deals, however, was a VAR deal. FileTek was not a VAR[71]; as Mr Szukalski confirmed in cross-examination, being a reseller was not part of FileTek's business and it had never resold Autonomy software. VT18 was the only VAR transaction FileTek ever entered into with Autonomy.

763. Indeed, when Autonomy contacted FileTek almost at the end of Q3 2010 with a view to its participation as a *"partner"* in VT18, Mr Szukalski had not initially been keen on the idea because he did not consider it was FileTek's business model to resell other companies' software. He had suggested to Mr Egan that Autonomy might instead use a company called Centennial, a VAR that FileTek had a relationship with and that was accustomed to handling these types of deals. However, Autonomy was not familiar with Centennial and *"Mr Egan or others at Autonomy wanted FileTek to be involved, because Autonomy knew FileTek and had dealt with it over several years"*. Mr Egan also suggested that Centennial *"did not pass the eligibility criteria for our resellers*", and Autonomy reverted to FileTek: but this was not further explained.

764. Following a call with Mr Hussain and Mr Egan on 30 September 2010, Mr Loomis of FileTek recorded in an email that "*We will be licensing through a prime contractor. Autonomy will coordinate for us*". In his witness statement, Dr Lynch described the purpose as being *"to de-risk the deal."* But the need for revenue in the quarter was plainly the driving reason.

---

[70] The two transactions with FileTek impugned as reciprocal transactions (both referred to in the RRAPoC, in Schedule 5, as "RT 3") were (1) a purchase in Q4 2009 by Autonomy from FileTek of a licence for FileTek's StorHouse software for integration with Digital Safe at the same time as (and alleged to have been made in order to enable) a purchase by FileTek of a license for IDOL and (2) a purchase in Q1 2010 by Autonomy from FileTek of a further licence for StorHouse and a purchase at the same time by FileTek from Autonomy of a further licence for IDOL in Q2 2010.

[71] As elaborated in the chapter of this judgment on Reciprocal transactions, FileTek's specialisation was in the archiving of structured data and its development and sale of its two principal products (*"StorHouse"* and "*Trusted Edge"* software)

765. VT18 was, in legal terms, governed by a letter agreement dated 30 September 2010, which granted FileTek the right to sublicence the specified Autonomy products either directly or through an agreed prime contractor to the USDVA or an Alternate Licensee (subject to the terms of clause 3). The licence fee was $10,000,000 and there was a first-year support fee of $500,000.

766. The VT18 agreement was in the form of a counter-signed letter dated 30 September 2010. As was part of the pattern, it provided:

    (1) (by clause 1) that once executed by FileTek the agreement constituted a non-cancellable purchase commitment on the part of FileTek;

    (2) (by clause 7) that the agreement represented the entire agreement between the parties concerning its subject matter and any discussions outside the four corners of the agreement would not have any legal effect.

767. Only clause 3 of the letter agreement was more unusual in expressly providing for FileTek to have the ability to sell to other end-users within a prescribed time (90 days from 30 October 2010). That right was, however, subject to the proviso that the VAR agreed:

> *"not to sublicence and distribute the Autonomy Software Products and Maintenance Services hereunder to any party or entity that sells, licenses, or distributed [sic] products, services, software, or offerings competitive with the products, services, software and/or offerings of Autonomy or its affiliates."*

768. As was also required and invariable, FileTek countersigned audit confirmation letters verifying its indebtedness, confirming that there were no *"side letters or other agreements in respect of the subject matter of this request, except as noted…"* and acknowledging that Autonomy retained:

> *"no continuing managerial involvement in the delivery of this product or service, other than stipulated in the licence agreement."*

769. It was common ground that Mr Egan had given FileTek (through Mr Loomis) assurances of assistance if no deal with USDVA eventuated. Mr Egan's evidence in his witness statement, with specific reference to VT18, was that the gist of what he said at the time that the VAR transaction was entered into was:

> *"Autonomy would be responsible for arranging a licensing transaction with the winning contractor; FileTek would not engage in the actual sales efforts. If, for some reason, the VA deal was not completed, Autonomy would use all efforts to find another end-user for the same software or some other way to make sure that FileTek would get paid and could then pay Autonomy."*

770. As may also be recalled (and see paragraphs 1991 and 1993 in the main body of the judgment), Mr Egan elaborated some of this by reference to VT18 as follows:

(1) All he meant by *"backfilling"* was that he was going to *"take other deals from Autonomy's forward-looking pipeline and then give them to the reseller to backfill…in other words, basically substitute another deal for it…"*; and in the meantime

(2) Unless and until a substitute deal was arranged *"they had to make their payments in line with payment terms",* not least because

(3) Any assurance given by him was not legally binding on Autonomy and was not intended to affect the legal obligation to pay (*"No, 100% not"*).

771. There was something in these explanations for both sides, resulting in considerable dispute as to the extent and status of these assurances. The Claimants relied on VT18 as a further exemplar of the 'pattern'; but the Defendants themselves also placed emphasis on VT18 as a good test of the furthest extent of the assurances given in the context of the impugned VAR transactions. Indeed, this appears to have emboldened Dr Lynch to state in his written closing submissions that:

> *"Of all the reseller transactions the evidence in respect of the FileTek transaction in fact takes the Claimants' case the furthest. But even if the conversation had run as Mr Egan suggested (and…this is a very big if), what he said would not have undermined revenue recognition."*

772. Aunt Sally or litmus test? I turn to the details of the transaction. In this section I focus primarily on (a) the evidence given by Mr Loomis in the US criminal proceedings (which was admitted into these proceedings under a hearsay notice) (b) the evidence of Mr Szukalski in these proceedings (c) particular distinguishing features of the transaction and (d) Autonomy's purchase of StorHouse software from FileTek, which the Claimants alleged was contrived to save FileTek from *"holding the bag"* when, in the event, no end-user deal with the USDVA was ever concluded.

773. Mr Loomis's evidence in the US criminal proceedings in relation to FileTek's role in VT18 was in outline as follows:

(1) He said that he understood that FileTek was at *"full risk"* in that *"FileTek owed the money once they agreed to it"* and was aware that FileTek provided signed audit confirmation letters to Deloitte confirming its indebtedness. He also understood that there was an entire agreement clause applicable;

(2) The risk was considered proportionate and acceptable because (a) USDVA was already a current customer of Autonomy (b) Mr Loomis's understanding was that Autonomy would have closed the deal itself without any recourse to a VAR but for delays *"because of government procurement issues"* (c) Autonomy *"were very confident that it was going to be concluded shortly"* and (d) FileTek on completion of the deal would get a mark-up or margin on the licence sale to the USDVA of 10% equating to about $1,000,000;

(3) Thus, FileTek was *"an investor"* (as he put it) in the proposed end-user sale because FileTek *"would be dependent on the closure of that sale to the Veteran's Administration for us to receive a revenue"*;

(4) When asked whether it would have been a problem for FileTek if the sale to the proposed end-user *"dragged on and didn't close for months at a time"*, Mr Loomis replied *'yes'*, and some form of reassurance was sought from Autonomy in this respect. In an email dated 30 September 2010 from Mr Loomis to Mr Bill Thompson summarising the proposed transaction, reference was made to three scenarios having been considered, which were (i) completion of the end-user sale as planned in Q4 2010, or (ii) deferral of the end-user sale to Q1 2011 or (iii) *"Disaster: something fully unexpected either further delays or eliminates the opportunity"* in which case *"Our plans for each are as per our telephone conversation"*, it being noted also that *"We have ability to reassign the license";*

(5) Mr Loomis was not asked about his conversation with Mr Thompson but confirmed that he had a telephone conversation with Mr Hussain and others at Autonomy at the very end of September 2010. He professed that his recollection was *"vague"* but that the purpose of the conversation with Mr Hussain was to hear from someone at Autonomy with the stature of Mr Hussain *"the same story that we were hearing from Stouffer Egan";*

(6) Beyond a statement that the conversation was reflected in the email referred to above, the content of that *"story"* was not explored in either examination or cross-examination in the US criminal proceedings. However, whatever was discussed appears to have satisfied Mr Loomis; and the concern he expressed about what would happen if the end-user sale collapsed focused on the loss of the margin of $1 million, not the exposure to risk in respect of the VAR purchase;

(7) Mr Loomis became concerned when after 45 days or so the end-user deal had not completed, and became frustrated by Autonomy's lack of communication about its progress and prospects: it was clear that FileTek played no part in the process or the negotiations;

(8) After a small initial deposit, Mr Loomis determined not to make and did not in fact make any payments to Autonomy because (a) *"it was a lot of money"*; (b) *"we did not have status updates"; and (c) "it was a way to help leverage the status update…";*

(9) His evidence was that when by June 2011 the end-user deal had not eventuated, it was agreed that Autonomy would buy StorHouse software from File Tek and

> *"the arrangement was that we would take the proceeds from the sales and utilize those proceeds or a substantial portion of those proceeds to pay down the liability we had to Autonomy for the VA transaction"*.

774. In summary, and it is obviously an assessment made on a transcript, rather than on the basis of 'live' cross-examined evidence, the impression given in the transcript is that, however this was conveyed to him, Mr Loomis had no intention of paying Autonomy unless and until the end-user deal closed, and if it did not eventuate, he never envisaged FileTek being left to pay down its indebtedness out of its own resources: some arrangement would be made.

775. Mr Szukalski's evidence in these proceedings in relation to VT18 may be summarised as follows:

(1) His understanding from Mr Loomis was that FileTek was on risk, but that Mr Loomis was comfortable proceeding because (a) the end-user deal was likely to proceed and take place well within 45 days and before any further payments would be due from FileTek; (b) under the terms of the transaction, FileTek was able to sell the software to any customer, and Mr Egan had told Mr Loomis, and Mr Szukalski and Mr Loomis believed, that *"Autonomy would help us out by putting us in contact with another buyer in the unlikely event that the USDVA deal fell through for some reason"*;

(2) He did not expect FileTek to play any active part in the sale of the software on to the end-user, and his understanding was that Autonomy was going to coordinate the licencing of the software through a prime contractor acting merely as a *"fulfilment partner"*:

> *"Q. And the reason why Autonomy would help prepare the purchase schedules is that FileTek didn't know what Autonomy software the USDVA might be interested in buying?*
>
> *A. This was just a fulfilment transaction quite frankly in the sense that we were told that there was a deal at the USDVA, Department of Veteran Affairs, that was going to close in approximately 45 days, was the number that we were given, and that would we mind holding the paperwork for those 45 days and in exchange we'd earn a certain margin on the deal. I think the number turned out to be around $1 million worth of - - to do that. So that's what we were asked to do. Again, I would have rather this gone through Centennial but it went through FileTek.*
>
> *Q. And apart from holding the paperwork, FileTek wasn't going to be expected to do anything else?*
>
> *A. That was it. We really were told there were several bidders on this particular transaction and it was just a matter of awarding the deal to one of those bidders and all of them was bidding Autonomy software so it would be a, you know, no brainer/slam-dunk kind of transaction."*

(3) Mr Szukalski repeatedly emphasised that FileTek:

> *"had no contact with the [USD]VA and…no contact with the six primes that were bidding on the deal.*
>
> *Autonomy gave us the assurance that this particular transaction was going to happen through one of those bidders, it was going to include IDOL, and it would happen in the next 45 days. That's the summary of basically what we had. So we didn't have any contact with those systems integrators."*

(4) He told me later in the course of his cross-examination that in his experience it was not unusual in the industry for there to be a reseller partner which had no expertise in selling the technology, which would do no more than *"just push paper"* and which took a margin for their role without adding value beyond acting as a "fulfilment partner": but see further paragraph 785 below.

(5) In his witness statement, Mr Szukalski had given the impression that all that FileTek could expect from Autonomy if the USDVA sale failed was that Autonomy would help by finding an alternative buyer, but that in the meantime Autonomy would be entitled to enforce its rights. However, when cross-examined, he made clearer that he did not expect that FileTek would ever have to find a replacement end-user itself: Autonomy would find a replacement end-user, failing which the intention and expectation was that Autonomy would find some other way of enabling FileTek to discharge its legal obligation (and would not press for payment in the meantime):

> *"Q. So Mr Loomis' expectation was that Autonomy would find a way to ensure that FileTek got paid so that FileTek could pay Autonomy?*
>
> *A. That is correct also.*
>
> *Q. And Mr Loomis trusted Autonomy to honour that assurance?*
>
> *A. He did but this particular transaction didn't come without risk, obviously, in that disaster scenario. It was different than the other transactions.*
>
> *Q. And the risk was that Autonomy doesn't honour the assurance that had been given to Mr Loomis?*
>
> *A. That is correct."*

(6) In response to the Claimants' suggestion that FileTek wanted to use the audit confirmation letters, which were marked for Mr Szukalski's attention but signed on behalf of FileTek by one of three others (namely, Ms Leslie Levy, FileTek's "Controller", Mr Howard Patrick, FileTek's General Counsel and contracts negotiator, and Mr Bill Loomis), as leverage over Autonomy, the gist of Mr Szukalski's evidence was again that FileTek's was a real debt, that they wanted the USDVA deal and were prepared to accept the risk for that and the reward by way of margin:

> *"A. So as I said before, we used certain milestones, whether it was a payment date or an auditor letter in this case, to kind of trigger or get Autonomy to respond to our request for where are we in this process, because we feel very, very uncomfortable signing this auditor letter or moving forward*

> *without, you know, continued update or assurances that the [USD]VA deal is real and coming through.*
>
> *Q. Or that Autonomy would find you someone else who would buy the software for more than $10 million –*
>
> *A. Yes, at this time we really didn't focus our efforts on that. We really wanted that [USD]VA deal and that is a continuing theme throughout the next several months that I'm sure we'll get to, but that was -- that there was a VA deal and it was real."*

776. Mr Szukalski had not been shown the transcript of Mr Loomis's testimony or Mr Egan's witness statement (although he told me that someone had given him the gist of the latter) before signing his witness statement evidence and so did not address either. Nor (save for one email) was he shown any contemporaneous documentation at that time. The result was that Mr Szukalski's evidence in cross-examination differed from some parts of his witness statement. I agree with the Claimants that his oral evidence was more reliable. However, the inconsistencies were not such that the essential message of his evidence was unclear.

Particular points on VT18

777. Five points about VT18 were particularly emphasised by the Claimants, as indicating its lack of substance and the fundamental ways in which it failed to satisfy the criteria for revenue recognition.

778. The first such point related to the true nature of the assurances given by Mr Egan as to how the legal risk which the VT18 agreement undoubtedly imposed on FileTek would be covered in the event of no sale to USDVA, or a long delay before such a sale could be concluded; the central question in this, as in all the other impugned VAR sales, being whether the reseller would be called upon to pay out of its own resources.

779. According to the Claimants, the basis of the VAR transaction was that from its inception, and with the consensus of both parties, FileTek had received an assurance that in reality Autonomy would cover its risk and FileTek had entirely abdicated from any continuing managerial involvement to the degree usually associated with ownership of the goods sold: accordingly, it was Autonomy, and not FileTek, which had the significant risks of ownership and effective control of the goods sold, thus disqualifying revenue recognition because of IAS 18.14(a) and (b), as well as because the 'sale' lacked any real substance.

780. The Claimants further supported this conclusion on the basis that, in any event, FileTek had none of the information or expertise to negotiate and effect an end-user sale: it had never previously sold Autonomy software to anyone; the software purchased included Digital Safe, which FileTek had no experience in implementing, nor any ability to maintain. For the same reason, clause 3 of the VAR Agreement governing VT18, which appeared to give FileTek some latitude to sell to another end-user if the USDVA deal

failed, was largely illusory: the prospects of FileTek being able to find a third party buyer for this software at a price of $10 million were very remote.

781. The following passage from Mr Szukalski's evidence in cross-examination (which I have quoted in part in paragraph 775(1) above) elaborates these points:

> *"Q. ....In the disaster scenario, the plan was that Autonomy would help you to reassign the software licences to another potential customer?*
>
> *A. That is correct.*
>
> *Q. Yes. So Autonomy would find a different customer who was willing to pay at least $10 million for the software?*
>
> *A. That is correct.*
>
> *Q. And then Autonomy would put FileTek in touch with that customer?*
>
> *A. Or Autonomy would act on our behalf and we would be just the fulfilment partner, again, not adding a lot of value in terms of selling but the paperwork would go through FileTek. So again very common practice. We don't have to necessarily have the expertise in IDOL or Autonomy software, we would leverage the expertise of Autonomy but the paperwork, the contractual paperwork would have gone through FileTek.*
>
> *Q. So Autonomy would draw up a contract with this other customer but it would then insert FileTek as either the contracting party or the party who would receive the payment?*
>
> *A. That is correct.*
>
> *Q. And then after that was done, this other customer would pay FileTek and then FileTek would use that money to pay Autonomy?*
>
> *A. That is the reassignment, yes.*
>
> *Q. And that's what you understood Mr Loomis expected to happen here on the basis of his discussions with Mr Egan and Mr Hussain?*
>
> *A. That is correct.*

> *Q. So Mr Loomis' expectation was that Autonomy would find a way to ensure that FileTek got paid so that FileTek could pay Autonomy?*
>
> *A. That is correct also.*
>
> *Q. And Mr Loomis trusted Autonomy to honour that assurance?*
>
> *A. He did but this particular transaction didn't come without risk, obviously, in that disaster scenario. It was different than the other transactions.*
>
> *Q. And the risk was that Autonomy doesn't honour the assurance that had been given to Mr Loomis?*
>
> *A. That is correct."*

782. Furthermore, in the event of a deal in the conclusion of an end-user delay extending beyond instalment payment dates, it was not intended or expected that Autonomy would call upon FileTek to pay. In cross-examination, Mr Szukalski told me that he understood that Mr Loomis's plan was to pay Autonomy only after FileTek received the money. He told me:

> *"...that kind of a structure in terms of payment after we get paid from a transaction where we are the fulfilment partner is a standard kind of reseller transaction. That's not something unusual to this transaction. That is something that, if you're a reseller fulfilment partner that often is the case."*

783. Indeed, and the second point emphasised, his understanding was that FileTek did not have the financial resources to meet its obligations under VT18 unless the end-user deal was closed and paid within the 120-day payment terms applicable to the VAR deal (i.e. VT18). Mr Chamberlain shared that understanding (as is apparent from an email from him to Mr Egan copying Mr Hussain in October 2010). The Claimants contended that the deal was inordinately risky for FileTek unless it was given the assurances they alleged, and it could be reasonably sure that in the meantime it would not be called upon to pay (which it never was and never did).

784. The Claimants further supported this point by referring to an email dated 1 February 2011 from Mr Szukalski to Mr Loomis, reporting on a discussion with Mr Egan after it became clear that the end-user deal with USDVA was in trouble. This included a paragraph stating: *"He wanted to ensure [sic, presumably assure] us that there is no risk to us"*. As regards that statement, Mr Szukalski's evidence was as follows:

> *"Q. So that reflects the assurance that Mr Egan gave you that there was no risk to FileTek?*

A. That's correct.

Q. What that means is that there is no risk to FileTek that Autonomy will fail to honour the assurances that had been given to you at the time of signing the purchase order?

A. That is correct.

Q. And you trusted that assurance?

A. We did. We had trust but it didn't come without a little bit of agita and concern that we were still on the hook for $10 million.

Q. If Autonomy fails to honour the assurance?

A. That is correct."

785. The third point emphasised by the Claimants was that FileTek was to have no further involvement in the sales effort to close the prospective deal with the USDVA. Mr Szukalski told me in cross-examination:

> *"A. ...One thing I do want to say again is that is not an unusual -- there are reseller partners that act as pure fulfilment partners. What I mean by that is it's just a contractual vehicle by which to sell -- resell software through. So there are partners who have no expertise in the technology or selling technology but they're just used as a simple contractual vehicle and they get a certain percentage of margin like we did. So to some extent I hear your questioning and it sounds a little bit like this is an unusual thing where we had no expertise in selling IDOL and in the world of -- the reseller world, there are partners called fulfilment partners that do just -- just push paper, that's all they do. They have no expertise, they don't add value and in this case, for this transaction, FileTek was acting as a fulfilment partner on behalf of Autonomy."*

786. The fourth point was that, according to Mr Welham, the arrangements for FileTek to have no further involvement in the sales effort to close the prospective deal with the USDVA were not disclosed to Deloitte. Deloitte were invited to and did approve VT18 on the basis of a misapprehension, which the Audit Committee (on the basis of what they were told) also shared, that FileTek would be attempting to conclude a deal with the USDVA, when in truth that was not the agreed plan. The Claimants relied in this regard on the evidence of Mr Welham in answer to a question put to him in re-examination whether:

> *"[i]f Autonomy retained sole charge of commercial negotiations with the end-user without any involvement by the VAR, that would have been relevant to Deloitte's audit judgement on whether to recognise that revenue on the sale to the VAR?";*

787. The relevance of this was basic:

> *"Because then it would suggest that the risk hadn't passed, if the VAR has to do nothing and Autonomy has to do everything".*

788. The fifth point emphasised by the Claimants relates to the same email (referred to at paragraph 784 above): the Claimants contended that Deloitte were never told that Mr Egan had given an assurance that there was *"no risk"* to FileTek. They suggested that Mr Welham's evidence to that effect was not challenged, and nor was his further evidence that, had Deloitte been aware of this, Deloitte would have wanted to understand whether there was some form of side agreement or understanding which meant that the risks and rewards of the USDVA transaction remained with Autonomy, which in turn would have prevented the recognition of revenue.

789. The Defendants countered each of these points as follows. With reference to the first (see paragraph 778 above), although the Claimants seized on Mr Szukalski's acknowledgement that he had been given *"assurances",* the Defendants maintained that the *"assurances"* to which Mr Szukalski was referring were limited to Mr Egan making every effort to "backfill" (as described above). They contended that there was no support for the vague reference in Mr Egan's witness statement to Autonomy promising that it would find *"some other way to make sure that FileTek would get paid and could then pay Autonomy"* (see paragraph 769 above).

790. Further, the Defendants insisted that there was never any understanding that FileTek would not be required to pay unless itself paid. Although the Claimants also sought to rely on Mr Szukalski's answers when cross-examined on this, which were to the effect that a "pay only when paid" structure was *"a standard kind of reseller arrangement"*, the Defendants pointed out that Mr Szukalski never suggested any actual agreement or assurance of that kind, simply an intention on the part of FileTek and an expectation that this would not be out of the ordinary. Likewise, in asserting that FileTek would not pay until paid the Defendants stressed that Mr Loomis was referring to *"my plan"*, rather than any bilateral agreement or shared understanding; and, since (they submitted) that would not suffice, that this undermined rather than supported, the Claimants' case.

791. The Defendants sought to deflect the Claimants' second point, that FileTek could not have paid $10 million out if its own resources if no end-user sale eventuated (see paragraph 783 above) by pointing out that (unusually) FileTek paid Autonomy $500,000 on the day the VT18 agreement was concluded and thereafter did in fact make payments in discharge of its contractual debt of $1.5 million in March 2011, $1 million in April 2011, $1.5 million in June 2011 and the remaining $6 million in August 2011, which in an Autonomy Accounting Update Memo on *"September 2010 to August 2011 Transactions"* were described as *"funded over time as cash flow became available"*. How that cash flow was generated, however, was the subject of dispute: the Claimants' case being that it was generated only because Autonomy bought software from FileTek for which it had no real need (the StorHouse purchases): see below.

792. As to the third point (see paragraph 785 above), the Defendants broadly accepted that FileTek was not to participate in negotiations with USDVA to close the proposed transaction: the points they emphasised were that (a) the role of 'fulfilment partner' (which was how Mr Szukalski openly and straightforwardly described FileTek's role) was standard in the industry (b) it was common practice that nothing was necessarily expected of such a fulfilment partner, except that the paperwork would go through it (c)

similarly, it was entirely normal that the supplier (here, Autonomy) would negotiate and draw up the end-sale contract and then simply insert the fulfilment partner as either the contracting party or the party who would receive payment, as Mr Szukalski confirmed, see paragraph 781 above.

793. As regards the (admitted) intention that Autonomy was to carry on the negotiations with the USDVA, and even assuming (as Mr Welham and the expert witnesses were invited by the Claimants to assume) that it was to have "sole charge" of such negotiations, the Defendants stressed the difference between a situation where that was done because the VAR (here, FileTek) recognised that the prospect of closing the end-user deal was more likely if Autonomy, with its experience of and previous contact with the end-user, continued the negotiations it had started and was simply content to leave it to Autonomy, and on the other hand, a position where Autonomy retained the right and/or the responsibility under the VAR deal to close the end-user deal. Mr Miles took me in his oral closing to detailed cross-examination where, contrary to the Claimants' suggestion that Mr Welham had not been cross-examined on this, that point was put to Mr Welham, who accepted that what he had in mind was a *"further performance obligation…to close the deal with the end-user"*, whether expressly stipulated or to be inferred from the circumstances. The Defendants submitted that neither an express stipulation nor any inference of a commitment to the same effect had been demonstrated.

794. That also was the Defendants' answer to the Claimants' fourth point (see paragraph 786 above), which was to the effect that the Audit Committee was invited to consider and Deloitte were invited to and did approve VT18 on the basis of a misapprehension that FileTek would be attempting to conclude a deal with the USDVA, when in truth that was not the agreed plan. The Defendants distinguished between who was negotiating the final deal and who was intended to be the contracting party to it when closed, which the Claimants had elided. They contended that the Claimants' assumption that FileTek was not to be a contracting party was contrived and incorrect:

(1) Although Autonomy wished to pursue the negotiations with the USDVA itself, the Defendants insisted that FileTek <u>was</u> intended to be the contracting party in any deal ultimately concluded with the USDVA;

(2) That deal was considered to be *"on the cards"* (to use the Claimants' expression) and indeed that was the basis on which FileTek had agreed the VAR transaction (as Mr Szukalski repeatedly made clear).

795. On the Defendants' case, this also answered the fifth point emphasised by the Claimants (see paragraph 788 above), based on Mr Welham's evidence in his witness statement that Deloitte were never told that Mr Egan had given an assurance that there was *"no risk"* to FileTek. No disclosure was necessary: the risk passed in the usual way.

796. The Defendants also sought to turn against the Claimants their reliance on Mr Szukalski's 1 February 2011 email and Mr Szukalski's agreement in cross-examination that the email was saying that there was *"no risk to FileTek that Autonomy will fail to honour the assurances that had been given to you at the time of signing the purchase order"* (in further support of their third point, see paragraph 792 above). The Defendants' argument was that that answer, which was much relied on by the Claimants as being supportive of their basic case that the legal transfer of risk under the VAR

agreement was illusory and that the deal lacked substance, had to be understood by reference to what Mr Szukalski meant by the *"assurances"*. If all the reference to FileTek not being at risk connoted was that Autonomy would do what it could to put FileTek in contact with another end-user, they submitted that it is extremely difficult to accept the Claimants' argument that it had a bearing on risk and reward.

Collapse of the USDVA deal and its aftermath

797. Before assessing these competing contentions, it is convenient to address what the Claimants described in their written closing submissions as the *"Unravelling of the FileTek VAR transaction"*.

798. In his email of 30 September 2010 (see above) explaining the VAR deal to Mr Thompson, Mr Loomis stated that:

> *"Three scenarios have been considered: (a)VA orders as planned, i.e. in Q4, (b) VA order is deferred to Q1, (c) Disaster: something fully unexpected either further delays or eliminates the opportunity. Our plans for each are as per our telephone conversation. We have ability to reassign the license."*

799. In the event, "disaster" occurred (though it was perhaps not *"something fully unexpected"*): no deal was concluded with USDVA by either FileTek or Autonomy. As foreshadowed above, the Claimants alleged that FileTek was only enabled eventually to discharge by instalments its debt under the VAR agreement to Autonomy because of an allegedly contrived transaction pursuant to which Autonomy acquired from FileTek the StorHouse and Trusted Edge software for which it had no real use at an overvalue.

800. As explained in paragraph 2735 and footnote 317 of the main body of the judgment, the purchases of software by Autonomy from FileTek in March, June and August 2011 ("the 2011 StorHouse transactions") were the last in a series of such purchases. The earlier purchases (in Q4 2009 and Q1 to Q2 2020) were impugned as improper "circular", "round trip" or "reciprocal" transactions (labelled together as "RT 3"). The 2011 StorHouse transactions were not labelled and impugned by the Claimants as "reciprocals", in that their alleged vice was not that they were a purchase by Autonomy to fund a sale by Autonomy (as in the case of the "reciprocals" in RT 3, which did not involve a VAR) but the means of funding VT18 (labelled by the Claimants as "Reciprocal VARs"). The 2011 StorHouse transactions were also alleged to give rise to transaction-based losses which were identified at Schedule 12B and sought to be recovered from Defendants as part of the Claimants' breach of duty claims against the Defendants.

801. The purchases comprised:

> (1) Two Q1 2011 purchases of software for on-sale to HP and to Morgan Stanley, for $1.76m and $739.8k respectively.
>
> (2) A Q2 2011 purchase for $1.596m for three specific customers in respect of the Iron Mountain data centre migration.
>
> (3) A Q3 2011 purchase for $7.5m of an unlimited licence for use in the Iron Mountain data centres.

802. It is not disputed that in cashflow terms FileTek was assisted in making payments due under VT18 by its receipt of the sale proceeds; nor that FileTek thereafter paid $1.5 million in March 2011, $1 million in April 2011, $1.5 million in June 2011, and the remaining $6 million in August 2011.

803. The Claimants addressed each of these StorHouse transactions in considerable detail in their written closing submissions in seeking to make good their over-arching allegation that it was obvious that these payments were:

> *"the means by which Autonomy honoured Mr Egan's assurance, given at the time of the VAR transaction, that FileTek would not be left holding the bag."*

Q1 2011 StorHouse purchases

804. The Claimants contended that Autonomy's justification for the two Q1 2011 StorHouse purchases, which was that they were made with a view to on-sale to Morgan Stanley and HP, was false. As to that:

(1) They submitted that there was no supporting documentation or any evidence from Morgan Stanley itself to show that Morgan Stanley needed and wanted to acquire FileTek software as part of a package also comprising licences for other Autonomy hosted software. They suggested that StorHouse software had been added onto an existing order from Morgan Stanley without any specific request for it; and they rejected Dr Lynch's explanation (when cross-examined):

> *"Q. You are not aware of any suggestion that Morgan Stanley wanted to be supplied with any StorHouse–based capability, are you?*
>
> *A. Well, they wanted the functionality it brought. I doubt if they would have known, without looking into it, the name of the product, but they certainly wanted the ability to load structured data.*
>
> *Q. It very much looks as if StorHouse is being given new software, even though it's not something Morgan Stanley had asked for, would you agree?*
>
> *A. No. Morgan Stanley is a sophisticated purchaser. It would check everything, it had a whole series of tests it would have to do, for example to do with whether there was restricted encryption and things like that, so they wouldn't accept something they didn't have some basis for understanding why it was there."*

(2) They contended that Autonomy already had existing StorHouse licences to use StorHouse for its hosted customers, and so Morgan Stanley, being a hosted Digital Safe customer, had no need for any further licence for itself. They

again rejected Dr Lynch's evidence, when cross-examined, that this analysis was:

> *"incorrect, because Morgan Stanley liked to own its own licences so it had done a deal where it owned its own software licences and so it wanted the full set of licences so that it had the option if it wanted not to be hosted. So it owned its licences which it in effect lent back to us to host. We could not allow Morgan Stanley, even if we were running it in a hosted environment, to own their licence."*

(3) The Claimants contended that the suggestion that HP wanted StorHouse was even less credible. HP had a competitor product to StorHouse. In January 2010, Dr Lynch had asked HP for a quote for that product, which presupposed that the HP product could be substituted in place of StorHouse; and (the Claimants submitted) it is implausible to suggest that HP decided to pay Autonomy to purchase from FileTek a licence of software that competed with HP's own software.

(4) The Claimants relied also on the correlation between the payments Autonomy made to FileTek and the payments then made by FileTek to Autonomy as demonstrative of their primary purpose as alleged. Thus:

(a) On 31 March 2011, Autonomy paid the $1.769 million in respect of the HP invoice but did not pay the approximately $740,000 in respect of the Morgan Stanley invoice.

(b) Then, also on 31 March 2011, instead of paying $2.5 million to Autonomy, as Ms Leslie Levy's (who worked in FileTek's accounts department) email a day before had foreshadowed, FileTek paid Autonomy the lesser sum of $1.5 million, in respect of FileTek's debt under the VAR agreement. FileTek's payment was just less than the $1.769 million that FileTek received from Autonomy that day.

(c) What FileTek did, as regards the balance of $1 million that Autonomy was expecting to receive, was to write a cheque for $1 million, which FileTek then held pending receipt of further funds from Autonomy.

(d) On 6 April 2011, FileTek received an auditor debtor confirmation letter from Mr Chamberlain. Mr Szukalski's evidence was that he used Autonomy's need for the auditor confirmation letter as leverage in order to obtain information from Autonomy about the progress of the USDVA deal or any alternate deal that could be used to put FileTek in funds.

(e) The next day, 7 April 2011, Autonomy paid FileTek the sum of about $740,000 in respect of the Morgan Stanley invoice. Once this money had arrived, FileTek had received an aggregate of $2.508 million and Mr Loomis therefore authorised the $1 million cheque to be sent to Mr Scott.

805. In relation to the Claimants' case on the Q1 2011 StorHouse purchases, the Defendants countered the Claimants' assertion that neither of those companies (Morgan Stanley nor HP) had any use for or had ever wanted the software and that Autonomy had simply added it on to the Autonomy software supplied to each as a way of showing its actual deployment on the following basis:

(1) The suggestion that Autonomy had simply insinuated StorHouse as part of the package of licences acquired by each of them was unrealistic. Both Morgan Stanley and HP would have had a use for FileTek. Moreover, both were sophisticated purchasers who would have known what they were purchasing and scrutinised their contracts. They would not have acquired software unless they wanted to.

(2) The documents supported this, showing that:

(a) numerous individuals were involved in the inclusion of this software, including Mr Avila and Mr Guiao, as well as Mr Crumbacher, Mr Chamberlain, Mr Scott, Mr Egan and Dr Menell;

(b) in the case of HP, there were specific communications highlighting the FileTek software, and its appropriate location in the contractual software list.[72]

(3) Mr Scott's suggestion in his evidence in the US criminal proceedings that Autonomy did not need a licence in order to resell to Morgan Stanley, because of the existing Autonomy licence for use in the hosted environment was simply incorrect. Although the Claimants put to Dr Lynch that this was correct, the Defendants submitted that it was in fact wrong, and obviously so: the existing licence for Autonomy to use StorHouse in its hosted environment could never have permitted Autonomy to sell a licence to Morgan Stanley, which Morgan Stanley could then take and use onsite and/or in a third party data centre.

(4) Although the Defendants suggested that this was another example of the dangers inherent in the Claimants' selective reliance on hearsay evidence that Dr Lynch has never been able to test, they also noted that in this instance, Mr Scott did in fact qualify his evidence significantly in cross-examination, which the Claimants did not go to with Dr Lynch (even though they marked up the passage as being their own hearsay evidence).

> *"A. My one hesitation is without looking at and reading through all of the agreements and trying to understand exactly how they fit together, I can't be certain; but based on the way that you've presented the facts, if Autonomy has a license where only Autonomy can use it internally and we want to give a customer the right to use this software on their own outside of the Autonomy environment, I believe that wouldn't be covered by the first license.*
>
> *Q. All right. And so you'd be wrong when you said it was gratuitous?*

[72] HP also appear to have understood that there was a structured data focus.

A. I would be wrong in that case."

(5) The Claimants had at one time also suggested that the purpose of the email from Mr Chamberlain to Ganesh Vaidyanathan (who worked within the Autonomy finance team), copying Mr Scott and Mr Hussain, on 31 March 2011 was to create a "false paper trail", but the documents do not support that, and it would not have appeared that way to anyone at the time.

806. As to the inference that the Claimants had submitted should be drawn from the correlation between the payments made by Autonomy and the payments made by FileTek to reduce its outstanding debt, the Defendants submitted that it was only to be expected that Autonomy's payment to FileTek was followed by a payment to FileTek to reduce its existing indebtedness. This was a normal business practice.

Q2 2011 StorHouse purchase

807. Similarly, in relation to the June 2011 StorHouse purchase, the Defendants' averred justification was that Autonomy had been asked to obtain such software for three customers, namely, Barclays Capital, BofA and Morgan Stanley. The Claimants rejected this also; they pointed out that in an internal email dated 18 July 2011 Deloitte had confirmed that no licence sales to those customers had in fact taken place and derided Dr Lynch's response that he did not mean that such sales were to be completed immediately as *"another example of Dr Lynch being prepared to say anything that he thought might suit his case."*

808. Further, the Claimants alleged that none of the three customers ever needed the product, all being hosted customers; and they pointed also to Mr Wang's reaction to the news of the further purchase, being:

"What's the deal, we're buying more FileTek licenses".

809. The Claimants also noted that, though it had negotiated a discount, Autonomy in fact paid, without any suggested reason, the full undiscounted amount of $1.596 million, and that on the same day FileTek used the money it received to pay $1.5 million on that same day.

810. In the case of the Q2 2011 StorHouse deal, Dr Lynch's understanding, as he explained in his witness statement, was that the expected use of StorHouse for which licences were required was to try to make Iron Mountain data centres more efficient and profitable and bring them into line with Autonomy's profitable data centres: Iron Mountain data centres, which had come under Autonomy's control when it acquired Iron Mountain's digital archiving business in Q2 2011, and which had a considerable amount of stored data, had been operating at 0% operating profit, compared to the 40% operating profit expected in Autonomy's own data centres. The Defendants noted that it was not suggested to Mr Szukalski that the sale was not at fair value (or that he did not understand there to be a genuine requirement for StorHouse for these Iron Mountain customers).

811. As to the further points made in relation to the Q2 2011 StorHouse deal, the Defendants argued that:

(1) The Claimants' suggestion that, after Autonomy's acquisition of Iron Mountain Autonomy may not have needed the licence because its existing 2010 licence to use StorHouse in its data centres could have included using StorHouse in Iron Mountain data centres was not how Dr Lynch perceived the position at the time. He told me that his belief was that this was not permitted and had been so advised (though he could not say who by). Mr Loomis likewise assumed that Autonomy needed a further licence. The Defendants suggested also that it was also noticeable that the Claimants did not put this point squarely to Mr Szukalski.

(2) Secondly, the Claimants' suggestion that Dr Lynch would have discussed this transaction with Mr Hussain and would have been told that this transaction was channelling funds to FileTek was misplaced. Dr Lynch rejected this, and indeed explained that it was unlikely that he would have discussed the transaction at all with Mr Hussain.

(3) Thirdly, in answer to the suggestion that no onward sale had taken place at the time of the purchase, there was no requirement that it should have done so.

Q3 2011 StorHouse purchase

812. As to the third and last of the 2011 StorHouse purchases (in August 2011), the Claimants portrayed as coming *"apparently out of the blue"* an email dated 1 August 2011 from Mr Hussain to Mr Egan, copying Dr Menell, which was blank except for a subject line which read *"also please on FileTek for expansion to IRM* [Iron Mountain] *data centres".*

813. The Claimants submitted that:

(1) The fact that the email was otherwise blank suggested that this was:

> *"a reminder for Dr Menell to say something about the need for FileTek in an Iron Mountain Digital context that Mr Hussain had already discussed with Dr Menell."*

(2) The exchange which followed was confected. The email duly prompted Dr Menell to send an email asking whether the existing StorHouse licences covered the Iron Mountain Digital data centres. Mr Hussain replied, "*Can we get a proposal please*".

(3) The purchase price was calibrated to ensure that FileTek would have enough to discharge the outstanding debt. Thus, Mr Egan approached FileTek for another quote for more StorHouse software for Iron Mountain Digital customers. Mr Egan gave Mr Szukalski a range of $6.9 to $7.1 million for the amount that Autonomy was willing to pay. These figures exceeded, by approximately $1 million (the amount of the margin promised to FileTek), the outstanding debt owed by FileTek to Autonomy in respect of the USDVA VAR transaction ($6 million). The Claimants submitted that this was surely not a coincidence.

814. The Claimants also relied on the urgency demonstrated by Autonomy to effect the purchase. Mr Szukalski said that Mr Egan indicated that he needed a quote for the StorHouse licence the next day, as a matter of some urgency. Mr Szukalski sensed that urgency, though not any particular reason for it; and whilst FileTek needed a solution to its indebtedness urgently too, resolved to use it as leverage to obtain a better deal for FileTek in relation to its sale of StorHouse and the maximisation of its revenue whereby to pay down its indebtedness under VT18 (it being the shared expectation of the parties that the sale proceeds would be so applied). Thus:

(1) On 15 August 2011, Mr Hussain wrote to Dr Menell and Mr Egan, copying Mr Kanter and Dr Lynch, stating:

> *"Gents – we have I believe completed the negotiations on the Filetek software for the Digital data centres. Based on Digital run rate revenues of around $150m a year the final number which is approximately $7m is fine. Remember that we have paid larger amounts for our data centres. Again I am asking for Pete's final tech sign off and either Andy or MRL for counter sign off to my sign off."*

(2) Dr Lynch gave his approval by email dated 16 August 2011. Dr Lynch said in cross-examination that, before doing so, he would have discussed it with Dr Menell.

(3) The next day, Mr Scott asked Mr Szukalski for an invoice and said that, if it could be provided shortly, "*we may be able to pay today*". Mr Szukalski obliged and Mr Chamberlain asked Ms Harris to "*process payment asap*" .

(4) Evidently, Mr Chamberlain was very concerned to ensure that the money was sent to FileTek that day: and there are email exchanges within the finance department showing his irritation when there were some minor delays. The only plausible explanation for this sense of urgency was that Autonomy needed to channel money to FileTek on 17 August 2011, so that FileTek could pay off its VAR debt, prior to HP's announcement of the Autonomy acquisition on 18 August 2011.

(5) Autonomy did indeed pay FileTek $7.569 million that day (17 August 2011), and the next day, (18 August 2011), FileTek paid Autonomy the entirety of its outstanding debt of $6 million under the VAR agreement in accordance with what Mr Szukalski had agreed with Mr Egan.

(6) The same day (18 August 2011), Mr Loomis sent Mr Thompson the news that HP was to acquire Autonomy. Mr Thompson responded, "*Now you have the explanation*". Similarly, Ms Levy (of FileTek) remarked in an email dated 22 August 2011 that the HP acquisition was "*why we probably got the deal mid quarter ... Just to close it out before new mgmt*".

815. The Defendants, however, rejected the Claimants' allegations that the funding of FileTek was the true rationale of the sequence of purchases of StorHouse licences by Autonomy.

816. They contended that all the StorHouse deals were genuine independent sales, and that StorHouse was a good and cost-effective database storage product for customers with large commercial databases which Autonomy needed to be able to offer as part of its objective of becoming a force in the market for hosting and searching structured data.

817. The features of StorHouse which made it valuable to Autonomy are elaborated in the chapter on Reciprocal Transactions in the main body of this judgment, where I also set out the facts relating to a further dispute as to whether there was ever any proper assessment made by Autonomy of the product prior to the various licence purchases. For the present it suffices to say that the Defendants maintained strongly that StorHouse was a product of great potential value and use to Autonomy, which Autonomy could not readily have built it itself, and which it did in fact deploy, and that each of the various purchases had a strong commercial rationale.

818. As to the last in the sequence of StorHouse transactions, the Q3 2011 StorHouse purchase, which was of an unlimited licence use in Iron Mountain data centres and which extended Autonomy's ability to use StorHouse to all customers operating in the Iron Mountain hosted environment (as well as the DRC-CM product, Iron Mountain's hosted products, included LiveVault, which was a cloud-based back-up and disaster recovery product). As to this, the Defendants' position was:

    (1) Dr Lynch explained in his witness statement that Autonomy had initially purchased the licence for a few customers but subsequently decided it made sense for there to be a full overhaul of the data centres.

    (2) Dr Lynch approved the Q3 2011 StorHouse purchase by email on 16 August 2011. This email chain showed Dr Menell's prior request for the licence for to cover the expected use of FileTek in the Iron Mountain data centres, as well as Mr Hussain's prior confirmation that the price was "*fine*". Dr Lynch was asked to confirm Mr Hussain's sign off and told that Mr Scott and Mr Egan had "*done the negotiations and the legals*". Dr Lynch wrote: "*yep if this gets their zero op margin stuff to our architecture*". As stated above, Dr Lynch's witness statement explained his understanding that Iron Mountain were operating their data centres at a 0% operating profit, while Autonomy's data centres operated at a 40% operating profit.

819. Dr Lynch rejected the suggestion that this transaction was done solely to put FileTek in funds, and that his own approval was a "false paper trail". The Defendants contended that it is impossible to square the allegation with (a) the acceptance by the Claimants' witnesses that the StorHouse product was in fact used to migrate customers on the DRC-CM product, and (b) the fact that Mr Lucini was enthusiastically promoting the use of StorHouse in LiveVault both to customers and to analysts in the market.

820. The Defendants also relied especially on:

    (1) Mr Szukalski's evidence to the effect that Mr Egan had approached FileTek with the transaction, and the expectation was that the funds would be used to pay down the USDVA debt. It was not suggested to Mr Szukalski that the StorHouse licence was at anything other than fair value. Nor was it suggested that he understood the desire to have StorHouse for Iron Mountain to be anything other than a genuine business desire on Autonomy's part. Mr Szukalski's testimony had in fact been that FileTek was excited about the

opportunities for adding StorHouse to Autonomy's product offerings. Mr Szukalski was not prepared to agree with the conclusion that was put to him, that it was unlikely that FileTek would have received the extent of StorHouse orders from Autonomy that it did in 2011 if it had not entered into the USDVA contract (though he did accept that it was Mr Bill Thompson's conclusion).

(2) Mr Scott, who had negotiated the Q2 and Q3 2011 purchase transactions, and whose evidence in the US criminal trial suggesting that Autonomy did not need any further licence in order to resell to Morgan Stanley because of the existing Autonomy licence for use in the hosted environment the Claimants much relied on in the context of VT18, did not consider he was doing anything illegal in making the purchases: and that was the Claimants' own hearsay evidence.

821. In their cross-examination of Dr Lynch in relation to StorHouse the Claimants questioned the extent to which StorHouse was ever eventually used. I have already addressed this issue when dealing with the other StorHouse purchases discussed in the chapter on Reciprocal Transactions in the main body of the judgment. For the present I need only mention that amongst the questions put particularly relevant to the 2011 StorHouse transactions were (a) whether there were in fact any sales, including to Morgan Stanley and HP, in addition to the inclusion of StorHouse in the database connector and (b) whether StorHouse was ever in fact set up in Autonomy's data centres.

822. In addition to their overall submission that this involved a high level retrospective view on subsequent events which had little bearing on the merits of the earlier purchase decisions at the time they were made, the Defendants contended as follows:

(1) There were in fact sales of StorHouse, including to HP and Morgan Stanley, in addition to the inclusion of StorHouse in the database connector. Moreover, StorHouse was used for the DRC-CM migration, actively offered to a number of other archiving customers, and discussions progressed to an advanced stage with Kraft before Kraft's priorities changed.

(2) In addition to installation in Pleasanton, the evidence shows that Mr Lucini was purchasing hardware in order to install StorHouse in all the Iron Mountain data centres. It is unclear how far the installation in the individual data centres progressed. However, Mr Lucini felt able to include a reference to the StorHouse/LiveVault integration in the literature for LiveVault customers, as well as to promote it to customers as part of the LiveVault structured data offering.

(3) Again, in each case, what matters is what people thought at the time, not hindsight. StorHouse was incorporated into Autonomy's product line and made available to customers. It was seen as a valuable product for that purpose at that time.

My assessment of VT18 and the 2011 StorHouse transactions

823. The FileTek/USDVA transaction (VT18) was a particularly stark one in the sense that FileTek was not a VAR and there was never any suggestion that FileTek would do anything more than be a "fulfilment partner"; all it was to do was to *"hold the paper"*. Further, it was not disputed that Mr Egan did give Mr Szukalski certain assurances, both at the time of and after the VAR transaction.

824. There were inconsistencies between them, and between Mr Szukalski's evidence in his witness statement and in cross-examination, as emphasised by the Defendants. But it seemed to me that Mr Loomis and Mr Szukalski largely agreed on what they understood to be the fundamentals of the deal. I consider that, notwithstanding certain other inconsistencies, the fundamental message of both witnesses (Mr Loomis and Mr Szukalski) was clear:

    (1) FileTek, though it had assumed legal risk, both expected to receive the proceeds of the end-user sale before its payment obligation arose, and was assured that if there was some delay, or no end-user sale eventuated, Autonomy would (a) not press for nor expect payment by FileTek out of its own resources and (b) find another end-user without FileTek having itself to make any effort to do so, to enable FileTek to pay Autonomy out of the proceeds in due course or if the worst came to the worst, Autonomy would find some other way to ensure that FileTek got paid so that FileTek could then pay Autonomy.

    (2) FileTek would have no contact with either the pre-approved systems integrators or the ultimate end-user in any event: it was simply a *'fulfilment partner'*.

825. By this I consider they meant that, all FileTek conceived it had to and in the event did do, was to act as intermediary between the supplier (here, Autonomy) and rival pre-approved suppliers of a Federal agency (here USDVA). Its assumption of legal liability was a risk, but one covered by the assurances given; and it was not intended to interrupt or affect in any way Autonomy's ability to negotiate and contract with the ultimate end-user with whom it had a long-standing relationship and which it hoped to persuade to accept a bid from one of the pre-approved systems integrators bidding for the large deal which was using IDOL software.

826. It probably does not ultimately matter whether there is a difference in the market between a fulfilment partner and a VAR. I suspect there is in the market: but in this case, there was not: however classified, none of the 'purchasers' from Autonomy under VAR sales was intended to play any active role. Further, there is danger in looking at such questions though the lens of IFRS accounting standards: any market distinction may have been agnostic in that regard. Nor without more do I accept, though it was neatly expressed, Mr Rabinowitz's submission in his oral closing that *"the clue is on the tin. Value added resellers. They add value…""* and that *"If the VAR just sits there and does nothing, then you cannot recognise revenue"*. Revenue recognition under IAS 18.14 does not depend upon the characterisation of the parties, but on the substance of the transaction, and its substantive effect (if any) in terms of the transfer of risk and management control in respect of the goods the subject of the transaction from which revenue is said to have been generated.

827. That said, to satisfy the revenue recognition criteria it seems to me to be clear that there must be some change in the substantive economic relationship of the seller in relation to the goods apparently 'sold'; and concomitantly, the purchaser must in substance and in reality take over, not only custody, but control of the goods apparently 'sold', and either use them or have effective control of their disposition or retention.

828. In the case of VT18, it is clear, in my judgment, that FileTek never had control of the goods sold in any substantive sense. Autonomy retained managerial control, and the shape of the arrangements was such that (reflecting the words of IAS18.14(b)) it remained managerially involved to a degree usually associated with ownership. Whatever FileTek was to do, it was to do at Autonomy's direction: it was (and the words on this tin are instructive) a fulfilment partner, its task being to fulfil according to Autonomy's direction the contract which Autonomy would negotiate and conclude. The relevance of the fact that FileTek was intended and expected to do, and did, nothing except *"push paper"* is that it demonstrates that effective control and management involvement was never passed to FileTek.

829. The question as to the passing of risk in this context (as in the context of all the impugned VAR transactions) is not as straightforward. The passing of risk is primarily a legal concept, and (as noted previously) the various examples given in IAS18.16 and 18.17 lead the eye to legal tests. Even so, there was ultimately no disagreement to the proposition that accountants must determine accounting treatment according to the substance of a transaction; and the question is whether in substance FileTek took on the risks and rewards of ownership of the goods. A unilateral expectation on the part of the purchaser, or even an assurance given to it, that the vendor will "see him right" does not necessarily negate the passing of the risk of ownership or remove its rewards.

830. The real question is whether in economic reality it was Autonomy or FileTek which was expected and intended to suffer the consequences or enjoy the benefit if the proposed sale to USDVA failed. In my judgment, the assurances given to FileTek reflected the reality that one way or another it would be Autonomy which would have to sort out the mess. That is undoubtedly the understanding given to FileTek and equally undoubtedly what FileTek expected, albeit with a *"little bit of agita"* (see paragraph 784 above) about the residual risk of legal liability. I accept the Claimants' case that without that assurance and expectation, FileTek's risk would have been obviously disproportionate.

831. More generally, it seems to me to be clear that VT18 was not intended to transfer to FileTek any of the incidents of ownership: it was intended to be simply the means of booking revenue in advance of a sale by Autonomy, rather than in substance a sale to FileTek. The 'sale' was a legal fact but a nominal arrangement: the real sale from which Autonomy sought to be rewarded was the direct sale by Autonomy to the USDVA. Further, or perhaps another way of expressing the same basic point, Autonomy had no grounds to suppose, nor any intention or expectation, that FileTek had the means to pay out of its own resources or any real ability to fund its obligations by a sale of the product it had nominally acquired.

832. Also in accordance with a different aspect of the pattern, the Defendants emphasised that Deloitte had approved the accounting treatment of VT18. However, as in other contexts, I do not consider this reliance was justified. I agree with the Claimants that Deloitte were not given a fair and proper description and understanding of VT18, or, in

particular, of Autonomy's continued exclusive control of the negotiations with USDVA and FileTek's essentially nominal role. Their approval of revenue recognition does not, in such circumstances, assist.

833. Given the conclusion that follows that VT18 did not satisfy the requirements of IAS18.14 or even the basic test that there should be in substance a true 'sale', so that it was not proper to recognise the 'sale' price as revenue, it is not strictly necessary for me to determine in this context whether the only real or at least the driving purpose of the 2011 StorHouse transactions was to fund FileTek in order to clear its indebtedness (a matter of particular and growing importance to Autonomy in preparation for completion of the HP acquisition). However, I can for present purposes summarise my views as follows:

    (1) The evidence has not persuaded me that Autonomy had no need or use for StorHouse, but

    (2) A powerful driver of the purchases was the objective of providing funds to FileTek.

    (3) The 2011 StorHouse transactions provide further supportive evidence of my conclusion that VT18 was not a true 'sale' and no revenue should have been recognised from it.

Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT18

834. Mr Hussain's direct involvement in VT18 is clear. Mr Egan's evidence was that it was he and Mr Hussain who told Mr Loomis and Mr Szukalski in their discussion on 30 September 2010 that Autonomy would be responsible for arranging the end-user deal and FileTek would not engage in the actual sales effort, in terms quoted in paragraph 769 above. That evidence was not challenged; and having regard also to the general matters previously referred to (including his part in the genesis of the strategy and the development of the pattern) I consider and find that Mr Hussain knew about and was responsible for Autonomy then handling the continuing negotiations with the USDVA itself and knew that FileTek had no real part to play except to *"push paper"* and act in accordance with Autonomy's directions.

835. In my judgment, Mr Hussain cannot have thought that the criteria for revenue recognition were satisfied; and his failure to see to it that Deloitte had a fair picture of what truly was FileTek's role reinforces my view that he knew it was difficult to square with any true sale: he had "guilty knowledge" that the recognition of revenue from VT18 was improper.

836. As was usually the case, Dr Lynch appears to have been kept or kept himself at one place removed. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he "*may well have been*" aware of the reseller deal before the deal was signed. He thought that this information *"would come normally from Mr Hussain*". But though interested and kept informed at a high level there was no transaction-specific evidence that he was involved in the actual selection of FileTek, or in any conversation with FileTek (and it is not suggested, for example, that he was aware of the discussion between Mr Egan, Mr Hussain and FileTek on 30 September 2010). Nor was there any transaction-specific evidence of his involvement in or knowledge of any arrangement that FileTek should not participate in

any of the ongoing negotiations between Autonomy and the end-user nor of the fact that it did not.

837. I do not therefore consider that the evidence specific to VT18 advances materially the Claimants' case that Dr Lynch had "guilty knowledge". However, the evidence is consistent with my more general conclusion that the programme of which the impugned VAR sales, including VT18, were examples, was devised by Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain together for the purpose of making good shortfalls in revenue.

838. It is clear from email exchanges that Dr Lynch did continue to take an interest in the USDVA deal; and Mr Hussain was in *"nearly daily"* contact with those concerned pressing for a deal in Q3 2010. The USDVA deal was, as Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination, *"Definitely a big deal for Autonomy".* Dr Lynch's anger when it appeared that the deal had been imperilled or delayed because someone at Autonomy had irritated the USDVA by charging them for minor expenses to fix a fault on Autonomy's software is evident from the email dated 7 August 2010 from Dr Lynch to Mr Hussain, Mr Still, Mr Egan, Dr Menell, Mr Mooney, Mr Sullivan and a Mr Bryan Rellinger which I have quoted in paragraph 758 above. The email betrays his supervision and interest, as well as his hands-on management style, exemplified by his demand that if there was a problem with the potential USDVA deal, "*I want to know about it and, you know, at a high level I'd expect to be kept informed*".

839. In all the circumstances of the transaction itself, and taking into account also his approval and encouragement of the strategy and knowledge of the pattern, in my judgment, Dr Lynch knew that the sale to FileTek was in a commercial sense illusory, that Autonomy retained risk and control and that it was improper to recognise revenue from it; and that constituted "guilty knowledge" on his part.

PART II OF SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS

840. In this Part II of the Schedule, I consider four further impugned VAR transactions with Capax Discovery which followed VT10 (see paragraph 47 in the first part of this Schedule). These were VT20 (in Q4 2010, for end-user DKO), VT27 (in Q1 2011, for end-user McAfee), VT28 (in Q1 2011, for end-user UBS), and VT34 (in Q2 2011 also for end-user UBS).

841. In my judgment, these further impugned VAR transactions with Capax Discovery:

(1) further illustrate the pattern of using a VAR as a *"placeholder"* evident from VT2, 3, 4 and 10 and the complicity of the 'friendly' VAR, Capax Discovery;

(2) provide further examples (in each case) of the basic objections to revenue recognition, being (in summary) that the sale to the VAR was illusory and the VAR, despite the legal trappings, was (a) not to be involved in any onward sale negotiations nor in any end-user sale that eventuated (save in certain cases as the passive recipient of the proceeds of a direct sale between Autonomy and the relevant end-user to enable it (the VAR) to make good its outstanding payment obligation to Autonomy) and (b) never to be required to meet any payment obligation until put in funds by Autonomy (or an end-user sale contracted directly between Autonomy and the end-user);

(3) also provide further examples of involvement and in any event knowledge of impropriety on the part of both Defendants in respect of (a) the payment of large MAFs and (b) most importantly improper revenue recognition and false presentation of the performance and position of Autonomy in its published information.

Four further impugned transactions with Capax Discovery

VT20: Capax Discovery/DKO Q4 2010

842. VT20 was a VAR transaction between (or originally between) Capax Discovery and the US Department of the Army, acting through a portal known as Defence Knowledge Online ("DKO").

843. Once again, Capax Discovery was introduced as a VAR at the very end of a quarter, in this case Q4 2010, when the prospect of finally concluding a prospective deal, in this case between Autonomy and DKO, before the end of the quarter collapsed. This was the other VAR transaction on New Year's Eve which Mr Baiocco described as *"particularly memorable"*: see paragraph 1044 below.

844. As with previous Capax Discovery VAR deals with Autonomy, VT20 was entered into on the terms of the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement (the principal provisions of which are summarised above). The relevant purchase order was prepared for Capax Discovery by Autonomy, and was for a licence fee of $1,950,197 plus $292,530 for support and maintenance. Such sums were payable in instalments as follows: $747,575.66

on 31 March 2011, $747,575.67 on 29 June 2011 and $747,575.67 on 27 September 2011.

845. The features of VT20 relied on by the Claimants, in addition to their general points, as demonstrating particular adaptations of the 'pattern', and that there was not really a sale to the VAR at all, were:

(1) A special provision in the purchase order contemplating and making provision for, but describing as *"unlikely"*, a direct deal with Autonomy: the Claimants described the provision, and another provision in the same purchase order for the payment of a MAF *"as full compensation in connection with VAR's efforts in securing End-User's procurement of a licence of Autonomy software"*, as *"a work of fiction"*;

(2) After the negotiation of a direct sale between Autonomy and DKO, its implementation by a series or convolution of sales of the relevant software licence, first by Capax Discovery to MicroTech, followed by a sale from MicroTech to DKO, necessitating also certain amendments to the terms of the Capax Discovery purchase order; and

(3) The family connection between the Autonomy salesperson (Mr Dan Truitt) and his brother Mr Steve Truitt (COO of MicroTech).

846. As to (1) in paragraph 845 above, the purchase order contained, just before the signature block, a provision like that in VT23 (discussed below) as follows:

> *"Although End-User and VAR currently anticipate entering into such a license transaction [i.e. with one another], in the unlikely event End-User, instead, enters into a direct agreement with Autonomy or its affiliate to license the Software, then VAR shall distribute the Software to End-User upon receipt of written notice (which may be via email) from Autonomy ('<u>Distribution Notice'</u>) of such direct license transaction. In the event distribution is accomplished by reason of a Distribution Notice, upon such time as Autonomy has received payment in full for such license fee and th[r]ee years of support fees, Autonomy shall pay to VAR an amounts [sic] equal to the license fee and three years of support fee paid by End-User to Autonomy less the Licence Fee and Annual Support Fee (for three years) described above, but in no event more than US$224,272.00, as full compensation in connection with VAR's efforts in securing End-User's procurement of a license of Autonomy software."*

847. The Claimants depicted this provision as *"a work of fiction"*, on the grounds that in fact:

(a) Capax Discovery and DKO did not anticipate entering into a licence agreement with one another. They had had no contact with one another. They never did have contact in respect of the licence. It was Mr Baiocco's unchallenged evidence that "*we did not expect Capax Discovery to have any dealings with DKO*". The Claimants submitted that there is no reason to suppose that DKO even knew of Capax Discovery's existence, still less of its involvement in respect of what Autonomy was negotiating to sell it.

(b) A direct agreement between Autonomy and DKO, though by no means assured, was much less "*unlikely*" than an agreement negotiated between Capax Discovery and DKO, which was never going to happen.

(c) Capax Discovery was not intended to expend, and did not expend, any "*efforts in securing End-User's procurement of a license of Autonomy software"* and there was no basis for it being compensated as if it had. Capax Discovery had only learned of the potential DKO transaction earlier the same day (31 December 2010).

848. The Defendants did not accept any of the above criticisms of the provisions. Dr Lynch submitted that:

(a) The new provision was a clause inserted into other reseller deals in the quarter.

(b) Deloitte reviewed the clause and were satisfied that it did not undermine revenue recognition. Deloitte's Defence to the FRC's Formal Complaint, which it still stands by, reads as follows:

> *"The clause therefore envisaged that on occasion Autonomy might enter into a transaction with a VAR, but subsequently deal directly with the end-user. In those circumstances, once Autonomy had received payment from the end-user, it would pay a fee to the VAR.*
>
> *The audit team concluded that this new clause did not affect revenue recognition. Upon the VAR entering into the agreement, it had accepted the risks and rewards of ownership. It had possession of the licence, and the ability to sell it to the end-user without requiring the involvement of Autonomy. It was legally required to pay Autonomy. The existence of the new clause did not change the analysis is respect of IAS 18 paragraphs 14(a) and (b) as the risk remained with the VAR, unless a direct deal was concluded with the end-user, a risk the VAR could not control."*

(c) The Claimants' criticisms of the clause were overblown. As regards the wording in the purchase order to the effect that Capax Discovery and DKO *"anticipate entering"* into a licence agreement they were misplaced. The words were standard rubric but in any event the clause reflected the expected arrangement at the time of the deal, namely that Capax Discovery would enter into the deal with the end-user, as Mr Baiocco confirmed. Dr Lynch contended that there was no basis for asserting that an agreement between Capax Discovery and DKO was *"never going to happen"*. Capax Discovery entered into the deal with the aim that it would happen, and it was assuming the risk on the faith of it.

(d) The Claimants' criticism of the reference to *"efforts"* was also misplaced. The clause was prospective, and it was clear from Deloitte's memo that

Deloitte well understood the commercial rationale for the proposed compensation of the reseller.

(e) As to the provision for the payment of compensation *"in connection with VAR's efforts in securing End-User's procurement of Autonomy software"*, Mr Chamberlain had expressly made clear to Deloitte that in previous cases where Autonomy had signed directly with the end-user as a matter of goodwill Autonomy had paid the resellers their lost margin: Deloitte were thus fully aware of that and had made no objection. Deloitte also made the point that the previous direct deals, before the introduction of the provision,

> *"highlighted the issue of risk for the VARs – relying only on the goodwill of Autonomy towards its resellers rather than formal legal recourse was deemed to be too high, and hence the clause was agreed."*

849. As to (2) in paragraph 845 above, the arrangements made in the aftermath of Autonomy's ultimately successful negotiations with DKO, and in particular, the interposition of MicroTech in place of Capax Discovery so that MicroTech could deliver to DKO the software which Autonomy had agreed to sell it, certainly invited enquiry:

(1) After hearing what was proposed, Mr Crumbacher sent an email dated 7 June 2011 to Joel Scott in response to a request that he (Mr Crumbacher) should ask Mr Dan Truitt *"to address paperwork"*:

> *"I'll call him. I think I know it already. Something about we took through one reseller and now we're replacing it with another. Brilliant."*

(2) Whether that email was intended to be admiring (or much more likely) ironic, the unusual nature of the insertion of MicroTech seems to have struck Mr Crumbacher. It was also not straightforward. Mr Crumbacher had become concerned about a mismatch between Capax Discovery's payment terms to Autonomy, under its DKO purchase order, and MicroTech's entitlement to payment from DKO under the direct deal. Mr Crumbacher explained this issue to Mr Scott in an email dated 8 June 2011:

> *"MicroTech is going to be told to pay in full net 75 days (otherwise Dan [Truitt, the Autonomy salesperson for the DKO transaction] doesn't get paid, and we all know that's the driving factor here). Capax doesn't have to pay in full for two years. It seems to me Capax should be paying as soon as they get paid by MicroTech, but their order doesn't state that, and now there's absolutely no incentive (other than good will) for Capax to revise their payment terms."*

(3) The solution arrived at was to amend the terms of the Capax Discovery/DKO purchase order. On 13 June 2011, Mr Crumbacher wrote to Mr Baiocco, stating:

> *"John, per Joel (who spoke with Sushovan), I'll be revising the amendment to the DKO PO's I sent Friday such that Capax will be paying for the DKO PO in full by the end of June. Can you please confirm? If this is not your understanding, can you please contact Sushovan to come to agreement on these payment terms? Thanks."*

(4) An evidently puzzled Mr Baiocco forwarded the exchange to Mr Hussain, adding the comment "*???*" and requesting a call. Mr Hussain responded, "*No worries I was hoping you could pay early*". Mr Baiocco asked when MicroTech would be paying Capax Discovery (he understood in 75 days' time). The Claimants submitted that this was a further demonstration that Mr Baiocco's understanding remained that Capax Discovery would not pay until it had been put in funds by Autonomy.

(5) That day (13 June 2011), Mr Kanter and Mr Baiocco executed an amendment to the Autonomy/Capax Discovery purchase order. It retrospectively expanded the classes of products that had been licensed to Capax Discovery, stipulating that certain further types of software were "*deemed to be included*" in the earlier purchase order, but there was no change in price. The change in the description was necessary, however, to bring the Capax Discovery purchase order into line with the terms of the direct agreement that had been made between MicroTech and DKO.

(6) The amendment also provided (by clause 1):

> *"Notwithstanding anything in the Purchase Order to the contrary, in the event CAPAX receives payment in full for the Software and Services from End-User or from an agent or reseller procuring the Software and Support on behalf of or for distribution to End-User, CAPAX agrees to remit payment in full to Autonomy of the total amount due under the Purchase Order not less [sic: more] than one (1) business day after the date it receives such full payment, regardless of any payment terms otherwise set forth in the Purchase Order."*

(7) Thus, it appears to be clear that the intention was that Capax Discovery should use the funds it received from MicroTech to make immediate payment to Autonomy. The intention was duly fulfilled. In July 2011, MicroTech paid Capax Discovery, and Capax Discovery paid Autonomy, $2,242,727.

(8) On the same day, 13 June 2011, Mr Crumbacher sent Mr Dan Truitt a "*draft purchase order from MicroTech to Capax for the DKO order*". This was another demonstration of the lack of any semblance of independence between the contracting parties: one Autonomy employee was sending another Autonomy employee the paperwork for a deal that was purportedly to be concluded between two independent third parties; furthermore, the relevant Autonomy salesperson, Mr Dan Truitt, was the brother of MicroTech COO, Mr Steve Truitt.

850. The Defendants again rejected this summary as *"a highly selective and unfair presentation"* which *"ignore[d] a number of background documents in this context."* As to the interposition of MicroTech, the Defendants contended that:

(1) The Claimants had ignored the fact that this was a federal contract, and the involvement of MicroTech as an approved 8A reseller was a normal commercial event.

(2) It was not sudden or unplanned. As from February 2011 it had looked likely that MicroTech would play a material role in the DKO deal. As early as March 2011, Autonomy's federal sales team were expecting that MicroTech would be contracting directly with DKO, but that MicroTech would purchase from Capax Discovery:

> "*DKO will be bought by DITCO (the govt contracts shop) via MicroTech, but then needs to go through Cap X."*

(3) MicroTech were proposing to deal directly with DKO on terms that offered them financing. This meant that they would be interposed as reseller, and could expect reseller fees. According to the Defendants' theme, Autonomy found it commercially normal that it should be paying two reseller fees in these circumstances; for example Mr Crumbacher stated in an email dated 8 June 2011:

> *"The government is actually paying Microtech somewhere north of 2.9M, but it's paid over three years and includes both the margin they make on our software as well as finance charges for MicroTech financing the government's purchase (as an aside, I'm a little concerned, being a US citizen, that the Truitt brothers are now in the business lending money to my federal government). Because its lumped in with their three-year pay out, I don't see how we can get around a double-dip on reseller fees here. And…frankly…we're using two resellers, so we shouldn't be surprised at paying two reseller fees."*

(4) None of the adjustments to the Capax Discovery purchase order made necessary in consequence was sinister or surprising, or altered the fact that Capax Discovery was on risk.

(5) Capax Discovery's payment terms to Autonomy under the deal were brought forward by mutual consent. The commercial background to this was set out in an email to Mr Scott from Mr Crumbacher. In short, MicroTech was going to be paying Capax Discovery in a shorter period than Capax Discovery was due to pay Autonomy, so Autonomy wanted to bring Capax Discovery's payment terms forward if Capax Discovery would agree (which they did). (In other words, according to the Defendants' analysis, the Claimants had wrongly asserted that this evidenced that Capax Discovery would only pay when paid: on the contrary, Capax Discovery was being invited to pay <u>early</u>).

(6) The Capax Discovery purchase order was also subject to an adjustment to the wording as to the software included.

851. As to (1) in paragraph 845 above and the payment of compensation to Capax Discovery for its *"efforts in securing End-User's procurement of a license of Autonomy software"* (in effect, a MAF of 10% of the Capax Discovery purchase order amount), the Defendants submitted that:

(1) This was to be expected in circumstances were there was the interposition of another reseller: the usual reseller margin was effectively taken by MicroTech, meaning that Capax Discovery would not obtain any margin on the deal absent a MAF payment (see Mr Crumbacher's email referred to above);

(2) The Claimants' criticism of the wording of the MAF letter as being "entirely false" in its description of Capax Discovery's contribution (on the basis that it wrongly suggested that Capax Discovery was to introduce Autonomy into deals with DKO) was *"an overblown forensic point"*: the MAF letter was drafted by a lawyer, Mr Crumbacher, was in standard form and in any event stated:

> "*Autonomy will: (1) pay Referral Partner commissions in the amount of US$224,275, as a result of Referral Partner's direct and proximate participation in the account*".

(3) Moreover, Deloitte well understood and accepted that a MAF could be paid in situations like these where a reseller could not otherwise obtain its margin.

852. The Defendants also sought to draw support from the fact that VT20 and DKO's transaction with MicroTech was dealt with in the Goldberg Segalla letter (which, it will be recalled, Mr Baiocco confirmed was accurate). That letter had stated that Capax Discovery was on risk, and that both the reseller sale and the subsequent sale to MicroTech were normal commercial transactions:

> *"Paragraph 14.c. of the memorandum accompanying the show cause letter ("Memorandum") indicates that Capax was involved in a transaction involving a Government end-user. The Government end-user business opportunity was brought to Capax in late December 2010. Although this opportunity was brought to Capax near the end of a fiscal quarter, the timing was not uncommon because Autonomy would have been working diligently to close the deal prior to the end of the quarter, just like many companies tend to do.*
>
> *Capax decided to pursue this opportunity and agreed, on December 31, 2010, to buy the software for $1,950,197, in addition to product support of $95,510 per year, for a total of $2,242,727. As originally contemplated, this transaction involved the sale of certain software by Autonomy to Capax, as the VAR, with the Government end-user ultimately receiving the software and related product support services. The purchase order reflecting this transaction is at CAPAX000015-CAPAX000017. When the purchase order was signed, the financial risk of the deal was transferred to Capax. Paragraph 14.c of the Memorandum states that "the Autonomy sales representative, nor his supervisor, nor the Government agency were made aware that Autonomy had 'closed' the deal in Q4 2010." Capax does not have any*

knowledge of the Autonomy sales representative's and supervisor's or the Government end-user's knowledge regarding when the deal closed. Capax was dealing with Autonomy's U.S. CEO and executive level counsel to close the deal on December 31, 2010.

Under this agreement, Capax, as the VAR, would receive a commission from Autonomy upon the closing of the deal between Autonomy and the Government end-user. In the event the deal with the Government end-
user did not close, Capax would own the software licenses and ultimately have to pay Autonomy for them. Capax was aware of this consequence from the advice of counsel, Frank T. Gaglione, Esq. In the event that the transaction did not materialize, Capax's only option would be to resell the software licenses to another customer. Capax evaluated this risk and decided the upside was worth the inherent risk.

Autonomy later informed Capax in June 2011 that the Government end-user preferred to purchase the software through MicroTech, instead of Capax, because it had previously worked with MicroTech, which has significant sales to the Government. The transaction ultimately closed on June 3, 2011. On June 15, 2011, MicroTech sent Capax a purchase order for the amount at which the deal closed, $2,315,959.40, which was slightly higher than the original purchase order between Autonomy and Capax. The purchase order reflecting this transaction is at CAPAX000018-CAPAX000019. Capax subsequently invoiced MicroTech, received payment in full from it, and then paid Autonomy in full.

Capax's invoice to MicroTech is at CAPAX000020. On June 30, 2011, Capax invoiced Autonomy for its commission of $231,595.94 under the terms of the VAR agreement. Capax's invoice to Autonomy is at CAPAX000021-CAPAX000022. Capax received $224,275 in July 2011, an amount less than it invoiced, which corresponded with the value of the purchase order between Capax and Autonomy.
Communications regarding this amount and payment are at CAPAX000023-CAPAX000027.

Paragraph 14.c. of the Memorandum states "there was no indication that Capax participated in this deal." This is inaccurate. Capax was the original VAR in this transaction and took on the risk inherent in. it. As described in greater detail above, this risk included the possibility that the deal with the Government end-user would not materialize, leaving Capax responsible for ultimately paying Autonomy for the software without a definite end-user."

853. The Defendants offered no explanation as to why, if MicroTech was a more suitable on-seller because of its approved status and ability to offer flexibility of finance, they originally selected Capax Discovery to act as the VAR. The reason for the choice is all the more interesting in light of the fact that Mr Mooney had originally asked Mr Hussain whether he wanted to go through MicroTech, Mr Hussain had said no, on the ground that

he did not believe MicroTech would be bidders on DKO's Request for Quotation ("RFQ") and wanted to consider companies who would be bidding: but when Mr Mooney replied MicroTech was expected to bid, Mr Hussain steered him away to *"other bidders"*; yet when it came to the last minute, Capax Discovery, though not a bidder, was selected.

854. In my view, it is difficult to escape the conclusion that Capax Discovery was the most compliant of Autonomy's usual VARs, and the most flexible and least likely to ask any questions about the proposed end-user transactions when time was really short, and revenue was urgently required.

855. Perhaps more importantly, however, the Defendants' vigorous defence of the interposition of MicroTech tended to distract attention from what seem to me to be the real points, neither of which they answered:

(1) The event which was relied on for the purpose of revenue recognition was the sale to Capax Discovery. That sale lacked substance and did not satisfy IAS 18.14. The interposition of MicroTech at the direction of Autonomy in order to effect delivery from an 8A vendor after Autonomy had alone conducted the negotiations with DKO confirmed that it was Autonomy, and not Capax Discovery or indeed MicroTech, which had control and retained risk, and showed how little substance there was in the original VAR sale.

(2) The requirement for Capax Discovery to pay early was not a sign of it being on the hook: quite the reverse because part of the arrangement was that Autonomy had to arrange for Capax Discovery to be put in funds for that purpose. That once more conformed to the pattern, and demonstrated that the payment obligation in the contract was all show and no substance.

856. The Goldberg Segalla letter was an unreliable reed to grasp. I have already explained that it too was contrived and misleading.

857. In my judgment, VT20 was part of the pattern. Recognition of revenue from the VAR sale to Capax Discovery was improper.

Defendants' knowledge of false accounting in respect of VT20

Mr Hussain

858. Mr Hussain was involved throughout. It was he who expressed himself to be *"dumfounded" [sic]* when the DKO deal faltered and clearly could not be completed in the quarter, and who emailed Mr Mooney and Mr Egan on 23 December 2010, stating *"Obviously we should consider partners"*, meaning the use of a VAR. It is fairly clear to me that this was in order to recognise revenue.

859. It is less clear whether Mr Hussain actually chose Capax Discovery: it was Mr Egan who contacted Capax Discovery so late in the day; but it seems to me to be more likely than not that Mr Hussain and Mr Egan were aware of each other's preference.

860. Mr Hussain was kept informed of the negotiations. He knew that Capax Discovery was the VAR. Mr Hussain was involved in the amendments to the Capax Discovery/DKO

purchase order, as apparent from an email on 13 June 2011 from Mr Crumbacher to Mr Baiocco recording the fact of a conversation on the matter between Mr Hussain and Mr Scott. He must have been aware from that process of the interposition of MicroTech. He was also aware of and involved in the payment to Capax Discovery of a MAF after Autonomy had received from Capax Discovery what in an email to Mr Crumbacher dated 8 July 2011 he described as *"the dko cash",* which Mr Hussain had stipulated to be a condition a week earlier. At Mr Hussain's request, the final payment had to be, and was, sanctioned by Mr Kanter. When the deal was done: Mr Mooney so informed Mr Hussain by email on 3 June 2011. The email contained no message except the subject heading: *"DKO done".* The deal needed no introduction or explanation, reinforcing my view that Mr Hussain knew all about it.

861. Mr Hussain cannot have thought that the recognition of revenue from the 'sale' to Capax Discovery as a 'placeholder' was proper in this context. In my judgment, he had "guilty knowledge".

Dr Lynch

862. Dr Lynch appears to have had very little personal involvement in VT20, except that he was emailed by Mr Hussain on 23 December 2010 indicating that the deal with DKO was unlikely to happen that quarter and complaining that *"This is just unbelievable. I bet you no one in the US actually visited DKO".*

863. No transaction-specific evidence of substance was put to Dr Lynch in cross-examination; he was asked to comment on aspects of the transaction as it developed, but he was insistent he had no direct involvement. Thus:

(1) Dr Lynch was asked in cross-examination whether he knew of the VAR deal at the end of December 2010: he said he did not know, but would not have been surprised to hear of it.

(2) He denied seeing the Capax Discovery purchase order; and when it was put to him that the statement in it that *"…end-user and VAR currently anticipate entering into such a license transaction"* was not true, he said he was not involved and could not comment or speculate as to what was anticipated.

(3) As to the provision for payment of a MAF for *"VAR's efforts in securing End User's procurement of a license of Autonomy software",* when it was put to him that this *"deliberately gives a wrong impression of what Capax's role was to be"* he stated:

> *"As I've said, first of all, this was a relatively small deal in a subsidiary, in the US, being run by other people at a level that I have no knowledge other than having seen the name on a list. So I can't comment on this for you."*

(4) Later, when pressed whether he would have expected Capax Discovery *"to have exactly the same role as I suggested that it had in other deals we've looked at"* he responded:

> *"Again, you're asking me to comment on things. I have no idea whether Capax did or did not have involvement with the end-user or,*

indeed, whether or not that is a relevant question to ask under IFRS. My understanding is it isn't."

(5) Dr Lynch was not involved in the MicroTech deal, or how the opportunity arrived, and was not challenged on this. He was nonetheless shown the email of 13 June 2011 from Mr Crumbacher to Mr Dan Truitt explaining that he had drafted a purchase order from MicroTech to Capax for the DKO order by reference to the directions of Mr Hussain (see paragraphs 849(8) and 860 above) and it was suggested that Mr Hussain was "*pulling the strings here and is causing MicroTech to buy something from Capax Discovery so that MicroTech can make the sale to DKO which has been negotiated between Autonomy and DKO*". It was not explained what relevance this would have to the original revenue recognition, but Dr Lynch did not accept it. His speculation as to what was happening was fair:

> *"A. I think what's going on here is that we have one of our resellers who has the stock and has been given the opportunity to sell to DKO. We have another one who, my understanding, had a very close relationship with DKO and knew them well, and what we're doing is putting the two parties together so that the transaction happened, which is obviously in our commercial interests and in the commercial interest of the two parties and presumably in DKO's commercial interests."*

(6) Dr Lynch was asked about the amendment in respect of the software component to the Autonomy/ Capax Discovery purchase order, but Dr Lynch was not involved in that, and (beyond speculating) he said that he could not answer the question without looking at the amendment, which was not shown to him.

(7) He was also asked about the amendment to the payment terms, but was not involved in that, and thought it extremely unlikely that he would have been told of the amendment to the purchase order.

(8) Though he was not involved at the time, Dr Lynch observed when asked about the deal that there was nothing unusual in the commercial situation represented by this deal:

> *"… my understanding is it's a straightforward situation of Autonomy sold to Capax, so Capax is Autonomy's customer, and Autonomy recognises that revenue. Then Capax sells to MicroTech, and then MicroTech sells to an end-user, DKO. And, again, there's nothing remarkable in that.*
>
> *… Again, this to me is perfectly normal commercial trading. Party sells something to one party, who then sells it to another party who sells it to an end-user and the money flows back up the chain. Almost not worthy of comment but very obvious."*

(9) It was not put to Dr Lynch that he was involved in the payment of the MAF or aware of it at the time, or involved in or aware of the letter documenting the MAF. However, Dr Lynch rejected the idea put to him that this was a false paper trail:

> *"A. First of all, I don't think it's a false paper trail. The MAF document is a standard form document that's been used for years and years and years, and I'm sure it was just picked off the shelf and used and I don't believe there's any attempt here to create a false paper trail."*

864. In summary, Dr Lynch submitted that in any event there is no basis for the allegation that he knew of or participated in any improper accounting for the VT20 revenue.

865. In my judgment, Dr Lynch was correct to focus on the 'sale' to Capax Discovery (see paragraph 863 above). He accepted that, even if he did not know about it (and he emphasised this was a relatively small deal) he would not have been surprised to hear about it. In my judgment, that is because all these impugned VAR sales were taking place as part of the strategy to cover shortfalls in revenue; and the pattern which implemented the strategy usually involved a 'sale' to a "friendly VAR". I have little doubt that Mr Hussain would have told him the constituent elements of the revenue achieved: Mr Hussain reported that to Dr Lynch almost as obsessively as he pursued revenue.

866. In my judgment, it is more likely than not that Dr Lynch knew that VT20 fell into the pattern and I find that he had "guilty knowledge" accordingly.

VT27: Capax Discovery/McAfee Q1 2011

867. In Q1 2011, Autonomy was seeking to conclude a $5,000,000 licence sale to McAfee, a software company well known for its computer virus protection products. Dr Lynch told me in cross-examination, and I accept, that McAfee was an established customer of Autonomy.

868. On 25 February 2011, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch saying: "*So overall $200m needs 1 big deal in Europe (it'll come from the middle east probably), DB from Stouff and McAfee and Rand from Mooney plus a deal from Axicom*". On 3 and 6 March 2011, Mr Hussain sent further updates to Dr Lynch by email.

869. On 10 March 2011, Mr Hussain updated Dr Lynch that "*Mooney is running mcafee (for the deal to happen either you or i may need to meet with Dewalt) …*". As the Claimants submitted, this suggests that the Defendants (or at least Mr Hussain, without apparent objection from Dr Lynch) considered that this proposed transaction merited their personal attention. The stream of updates confirms this.

870. On 15 March 2011, Mr Hussain sent an email update to Dr Lynch, noting that McAfee was "*progressing*". On 16 March 2011, Mr Hussain emailed Dr Lynch to say that the McAfee transaction was progressing well and that he (i.e. Mr Hussain) was "*all over every deal right now*".

871. However, on 17 March 2011, Mr Hussain told Dr Lynch that there had been "*no material progress today*" on the McAfee transaction. On 30 March 2011, Mr Mooney emailed Mr Hussain to say that the McAfee transaction was "*dead for the quarter*".

872. The same day (30 March 2011), in response to a request from Dr Lynch for "*Update pls*", Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch his summary revenue spreadsheet. This stated, "*Took out McAfee 5*". Dr Lynch accepted that he "*would have had a look*" at this spreadsheet. Dr Lynch said that this "*doesn't mean that it's necessarily gone as a total chance. It's just that it's not what he's [Mr Hussain is] putting his route in*".

873. Just after midnight at the start of 1 April 2011, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch a further version of the summary revenue spreadsheet, subject "*update before I turn in*". This now included a new transaction "*8A (stouffer) 5.0*". The Claimants produced a table (as below) to illustrate the juggling that went on (red arrows added for ease of reference):

closed	183.4		
8A (stouffer)	5.0		
MS (Stouff)	5.0	25th mar activity	
Bank of Montre	3.2	EMEA weaker - 3 deals o	1
HMRC	0.9	Management - d&t out	1
Ameritrade	2.0		
8A (stouffer)	6.0	28th mar activity	
Herbalife	1.1	Took out Goldmans	0.5
		Took out DB EU	1.6
Rafiq	0.1	Took out GM	1.3
Neal	2.6		
Sass	1.0	29th mar activity	
EMEA	0.4	Took out McAfee	5
Mikes	0.1	Took out QVC	2.5
SE	3.0	Rafiq small deals	1
Sanjay	0.1		
MGMT IB	0.0		
FX upside	0.5		
TOTAL	214.2		13.9

874. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he looked at this update. He would have understood the reference to "8A (Stouffer) 5.0" to refer to a reseller deal to be obtained by Mr Egan. Dr Lynch said he did not know if this was related to McAfee or not, but in my judgment, it is likely he did understand this given that the amount of revenue ($5 million) was identical to the amount stated next to "*McAfee*" in Mr Hussain's 30 March 2011 spreadsheet which he (Dr Lynch) had reviewed.

875. Although especially well illustrated, the pattern is familiar. VT27 was yet another impugned VAR transaction done on the last day of a quarter in hurried circumstances when an expected direct deal could not be closed in time before the end of the quarter. Again, Autonomy resorted through the ever-co-operative Mr Baiocco to a (particularly) "friendly" VAR, Capax Discovery.

876. On 31 March 2011, Capax Discovery issued a purchase order under the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement summarised in paragraph 60 above for intended end-user McAfee for a licence fee of $5,000,000 plus a first-year support fee of $250,000. The licence fee was payable in two tranches in July 2011 and September 2011.

877. The Claimants alleged non-compliance with IAS 18.14(a) (no transfer of risk of ownership), (b) (retention by Autonomy of managerial control) and (d) (collectability). For the most part, the argument proceeded on familiar lines and was answered in the familiar way, though Mr Baiocco and Dr Lynch both told me that Capax Discovery also had a previous relationship with McAfee, and that Mr Baiocco was therefore pleased that this new VAR transaction could further assist his relationship. The Claimants relied on the transaction as further illustration of the 'pattern' they claimed was characteristic of the impugned VAR transactions.

878. However, VT27 was another example where no end-user deal was ever closed, either by Capax Discovery or Autonomy, leaving Capax Discovery notionally exposed and in need of the assistance which it was the basis of its participation Autonomy would somehow arrange to be provided.

879. It was the way this exposure was dealt with which was the focus of the Claimants' attack on the overall transaction and which the Claimants relied on as specific evidence that Autonomy and Capax Discovery had agreed that whatever happened, Autonomy would always see to it that its VAR was never left *"holding the bag"*.

The 'staging tools' transaction

880. The Claimants' case was that to enable Capax Discovery to pay the $5,250,000 debt under the McAfee purchase order, Autonomy contrived a purchase by ASL from Capax Global of a licence to use what Mr Baiocco described in his witness statement as *"a tool set that improved or facilitated the e-Discovery process"* which Capax Global had developed and which it called "Staging Tools".

881. The licence fee was $6,000,000, which Autonomy paid on 12 August 2011 the day after receiving an invoice from Capax Discovery (11 August 2011). It was this receipt, according to Mr Baiocco, which enabled Capax Discovery to pay the sums due under VT27; and it is clear that Capax Discovery did then make two payments of $2,625,000 to Autonomy, one on 15 August 2011, and the second on 1 September 2011 (though the latter payment was not due until 27 September 2011).

882. The Claimants contended that Autonomy had no genuine commercial rationale for purchasing the Staging Tools, and that its real purpose was to put Capax Discovery in funds.

883. The Claimants also referred in this context to Mr Baiocco's evidence in his witness statement that he was concerned lest the staging tools purchase was a scam and not a real deal; and that he had raised this with Mr Egan on the telephone who (he said) *"reacted angrily to my statement that there was something suspicious about the deal"*. Mr Baiocco's witness statement also stated that it seemed to him *"as if Autonomy was urgently seeking to clean up its books",* causing him to call Mr Hussain on 17 August to ask him if Autonomy was about to be acquired, but Mr Hussain *"did not give anything away"*.

884. The Defendants submitted that Autonomy's urgent need for the staging tools, far from being a contrivance to assist Capax Discovery, was real and urgent, and that there was no basis for Mr Baiocco's purported suspicion or for the Claimants' complaint in relation to Autonomy's purchase.

885. Although highly critical of Mr Baiocco's evidence in his witness statement, they adopted in this context with some enthusiasm his evidence in cross-examination. They offered the following context and explanation, based on evidence given by Mr Baiocco of his understanding (and was subject to his warning that he was *"not a tech – not even a little"*):

(1) The staging tools were tools developed by "Capax Discovery" (in fact, according to the licence agreement between it and Autonomy (see below), by Capax Global) to improve the user operability of Autonomy's Introspect 6 software. According to Mr Baiocco's understanding, "Capax Discovery" had created a set of 9 modules designed to improve the performance of the platform. The tools improved the EDD process, speeded it up and made Autonomy's Introspect software more efficient. The "Capax Discovery" engineering team who had developed the software were experienced IDOL and Introspect experts, as was evident from their biographies (provided on an email from Capax Global). "Capax Discovery" engineers were demonstrating the tools to Autonomy by March 2011.

(2) Autonomy had itself experienced difficulties with the Introspect platform and delays in meeting performance and quality control requirements which were causing backlogs[73] and customer dissatisfaction.

(3) Further, in Q1, Q2 and Q3 2011 Autonomy was engaged in the Deepwater Horizon discovery project for BP. This was one of the largest e-Discovery projects (if not the largest) to date. Autonomy had been encountering difficulties in meeting quality control requirements under the contract, which were similarly causing performance and quality control issues.

(4) Autonomy shared some of its difficulties with Mr Baiocco and invited Capax's assistance. The solution offered involved the configuration and implementation of the nine modules for Autonomy's specific use, as described in a letter to Autonomy from Capax Global dated 27 July 2011 which Mr Baiocco told me was written for him by his technical team.

(5) Mr Baiocco recalled that high importance was being put on the staging tools for the BP e-Discovery work at the time.

(6) A Commercial Software License Agreement agreed between Autonomy and Capax Global in respect of the staging tools (dated 11 August 2011) granted not only a licence but also *"EDD workflow management and reporting – "Chain of custody" and "job" tool extension"* to assist Autonomy and its customer, BP, further in e-Discovery work for the BP project.

(7) The urgency for Autonomy was illustrated by Autonomy's request that Capax Discovery get people out to Chicago to get on with the process as quickly as possible. Mr Baiocco was *"pretty sure"* that his people did go out to Chicago.

[73] This was Mr Baiocco's understanding from what he was told at the time. Mr Sullivan also confirmed that Autonomy was encountering difficulties keeping up with what was a "*very challenging case*".

(8) In short, Autonomy badly and urgently needed the staging tools to recover ground and perform properly its enormous e-Discovery project in relation to the BP case: and the Staging Tools met that need.

886. As to "fair value", Mr Baiocco's technical team told him that the "Capax Discovery" tools could be worth more than the $6 million being paid by Autonomy:

> *"Q. And they said that the Capax tools resulted in much faster results and could be worth 6 million because of the amount of data Autonomy was processing, do you remember that?*
>
> *A. That's what they said to me, yes.*
>
> *Q. And did they say to you that they could have been worth more than the 6 million paid by Autonomy?*
>
> *A. They did.*
>
> *Q. Who did you ask that? Were those people like Mr Tucker, Mr Balam, Mr Ferbert, those characters we've seen?*
>
> *A. It would have been more Mr Gurney and Mr Williams"*[74] **.**

887. Further, the task of configuring and implementing the nine modules was a complex and substantial one, some requiring more than 15 man-days each and the use of highly qualified software engineers: having initially queried what Mr Miles meant when he suggested this, Mr Baiocco accepted this. Mr Miles emphasised that the only evidence that the Court has on fair value was that given by Mr Baiocco: the tools could have been worth more than Autonomy was paying,[75] and there was no evidence to suggest that they were worth less.

888. Cross-examination also revealed errors or inaccuracies in the witness statement evidence of Mr Baiocco in relation to this transaction. In particular:

(1) Mr Baiocco's witness statement suggested that an email of 13 June 2011 comprised a request for a proposal from Capax Global to license Autonomy staging tools, and pitch the licence fee at around $5 million or $6 million. Mr Baiocco's evidence was that he had been surprised that *"Mr Hussain suggested these arbitrary numbers without any prior discussion or negotiation"*; and that although Mr Hussain did not explicitly make the link to Capax Discovery's debt to Autonomy under the McAfee transaction, it seemed to him that this was a way of paying down the McAfee debt. Mr Baiocco referred also to having had a heated telephone discussion with Mr Egan *"around this time"* after Mr Baiocco had asked *"whether the staging tools purchase was a real deal or a scam."*

[74] Mr Baiocco told me that Mr Stephen Williams was an EDD expert and Mr Gurney was trained by him.
[75] See paragraph 886 above.

(2) However, as Mr Miles brought out, the email of 13 June 2011 did not relate to staging tools: the references there were to Stratify and DRCCM assets which were part of Iron Mountain Digital, whereas staging tools were for Introspect e-Discovery.

(3) When faced with this point in cross-examination Mr Baiocco's evidence was described by the Defendants as *"incoherent and evasive"*. Mr Miles portrayed it to him as a *"serious error"* and Mr Baiocco was patently uncomfortable.

(4) The muddle in the witness statement replicated his examination in chief in Mr Hussain's US criminal trial, where Mr Baiocco had made the same bad points: the Defendants suggested that this was *"no doubt following his preparation sessions with the DoJ"*.[76] When it was put to him that this *"was something that someone put into your witness statement and you just signed up to without thinking"*, Mr Baiocco offered no coherent response except to reiterate that he stood by the fact that Autonomy had indeed purchased the staging tools for $6,000,000.

889. The Defendants submitted that the upshot was that such evidence as Mr Baiocco gave in his witness statement on the staging tools purchase was wholly unreliable and shown to be so by his own answers in cross-examination. In that context, and contrary to what he had said and intimated in his witness statement, Mr Baiocco had confirmed both that the staging tools were seen as useful and important at the time and that his team considered that they could be worth more than Autonomy was paying.

890. This was all enthusiastically supported by Dr Lynch (who had not mentioned VT27 in his witness statement) when he explained in his cross-examination his understanding of the reason for the purchase. He confirmed that he considered it to have been done for good commercial purposes and dismissed the suggestion that the reason for the transaction was *"quick payment…simply to put Capax in funds to pay down what it owed Autonomy on end of quarter VAR deals"* as follows:

> *"No, the purpose of the money being sent was to pay Capax for something that we needed very urgently because of our BP crisis that was going on. If they used that money to pay down their VAR debt, then great. They've managed to produce something that's useful to us. Just one thing to keep context here, these resellers, their business is about taking our software and adding things which they then sell to customers. Every so often they actually make something useful and we have the ability to buy that from them. So it's not -- you know, they are actually in effect almost an extension of our R&D operation in that they're doing these things. They continually pitch the work they've done to see if we'll buy it because they've already written it for their own customers. Often the reason they've written it is it's something that's missing from our product, otherwise they could just sell our product. So we get pitched with these and we buy them and this one, the reason I know more about this one is that this was central to a very large crisis that we had at the time where we were*

[76] In his cross-examination in this trial Mr Baiocco suggested that this was his mistake, but it was obvious from Mr Baiocco's evidence in Mr Hussain's US criminal trial that this was a prepared question from the examiner in chief. Mr Baiocco was expressly asked, "*Q. Can you tell us what happened in terms of the proposal on NearPoint and on the staging tools that you had the email communication with him about?*"

> *doing British Petroleum's Deep Horizon well litigation, which at the time was the largest litigation in the world, and we were failing to the point where we'd been called into the headquarters of BP and told that they were switching to a competitor because we kept making silly quality control mistakes. So, for example, we didn't actually provide some of the documents for a deposition until after the deposition. I sent out an edict in the March to Mr Sullivan to do whatever it took to fix it and he started creating something called a new fire engine, as he called it. Then we had another showdown with BP and they threatened to pull the plug on a 10 million deal that we did, so we bought these tools and these tools were specifically designed -- they'd been around a while -- to stop these quality control problems of losing documents and things like that."*

891. Dr Lynch's understanding also reflected the information given to him in the emails going to him in connection with his approval of the purchase:

(1) On 5 August 2011 Mr Egan notified Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain that he had finalised negotiations with Capax Discovery, describing the tools purchased. Mr Hussain included Dr Lynch, Dr Menell and Mr Chamberlain on the thread, stating:

> *"Thanks Stouffer. There has been a lot of emails on this and i am glad we can get to a close now.*
>
> *I need approval from Pete on the technology····· please provide via email*
>
> *I approve the cost side but need one of Andy and Mike to counter approve given its size. For your information these products are being used against the delivery for BP so will be expensed. We have so far received $22m from BP, are charging them nearly $1m a month, the project is getting bigger as I am negotiating a $4m backup deal and a $6m disaster recovery plus 99.9% uptime deal.*
>
> *Steve- could i please ask you to put this into a PO form, and append the approvals by printing the relevant emails.*
>
> *Stouffer ····· I am keen to get the software today so lets get this wrapped."*

(2) Dr Menell stated in the same thread (copying Dr Lynch):

> *"These tools will need to be customised and configured to our environment so not only do Chicago and Camb need the sw asap we will need bodies from Capax to work alongside dev to get this done. Presumably we can get Capax crew in without being hit by another bill! Given dev is now into double figures on the versions of Dashboard we have built without success we cannot be left without help as this type of tool needs a great deal of*

> *background to manipulate and operate effectively- background self evidently we don't have. I see this as key if it's to have any impact on BP in a time frame that makes a difference. Stouffer will need your help to press Capax to fly troops asap or at least point us to who can help."*

(Mr Baiocco confirmed that the "Capax crew" did fly into Chicago.)

(3) Mr Hussain subsequently asked Dr Lynch for approval, replying on the same email thread. Dr Lynch wrote *"yes"*.

892. Turning to my assessment, the evidence was obviously rather inconsistent, and sometimes confused. My impression when Mr Baiocco was cross-examined on this transaction was that he was struggling with the evidence in respect of it attributed to him in his witness statement. I would accept that the picture that emerged from cross-examination was rather different from the neat presentation in his witness statement pointing inexorably at the staging tools transaction being suspect as to purpose and inflated as to price.

893. I do not think that Mr Baiocco was being dishonest. I regard this part of Mr Baiocco's evidence as illustrating the dangers that evidence may be polluted by rehearsal and repetition at the instance of lawyers with a forensic objective, just as much as its accuracy may be eroded by lapse of time, and the gradual replacement of real memory by nurtured assumptions and the desire for consistency with what the witness comes to believe he or she has said before. This was a salutary reminder to me, and I have at all times borne in mind, that I need to consider disputed witness statement evidence from the Claimants' VAR and other witnesses on impugned transactions with particular care and a degree of scepticism.

894. That does not of itself, however, resolve the question as to the operative purpose of the staging tools transaction, or the issue as to fair value.

895. As to the purpose of the staging tools transaction, it seems to me to be reasonably clear that the proceeds were used, and were probably always intended to be used, by Capax Discovery to pay down instalments due under the McAfee transaction. That was the consequence of the transaction, and as I find, an important part of its intended effect.

896. However, I consider that the email evidence did suggest also that Autonomy urgently needed staging tools (or some similar product), especially in the context of its e-Discovery work for BP and the difficulties it was experiencing in that context. The email exchanges were all within the cabal of Dr Lynch, Mr Hussain, Dr Menell, though usually involving also Mr Egan. To my mind, there is a whiff of artifice in some of the points in favour of the purchase which were made in those exchanges and the possibility that they were pre-textual has lingered in my mind. But I do not consider the evidence goes so far as to show that they were, and I therefore proceed on the basis that Autonomy's need for the staging tools was real and not contrived.

897. It is not easy to determine which was the predominant purpose. I have in mind also that, whilst Autonomy needed the tools, it may not have needed so many: and though there is some evidence that the order exceeded the need, it was sketchy. In the end, however, I have concluded that I need not assess the comparative weight of the two purposes: for, in my view, the vice in the transaction was that the price was contrived to enable Capax

Discovery to make payment under VT27 which was part of the purpose of the purchase, with enough surplus to fund also a MAF. In a sense, Mr Baiocco was right, even if for the wrong reason.

898. I have had very much in mind, in reaching this conclusion, Dr Lynch's point that the only evidence on the issue of fair value was provided by Mr Baiocco in cross-examination, and that evidence was that Mr Baiocco had been told by experienced e-Discovery personnel within Capax Global that the staging tools could be worth $6 million, or perhaps even more.

899. However, what on analysis stands out from that evidence is that Mr Baiocco made clear that he had not asked those he had consulted (it may be noted, quite informally) *"how much they were worth upfront"*. The question he thought he had asked was *"are they worth the price they're paying"*, and the answer he was given (according to the cross-examination evidence on which Dr Lynch relied) was *"yes"* and that this was *"because of the amount of data Autonomy was processing."* In other words, the only evidence was as to what the experts thought the staging tools would be worth to Autonomy, which in light of the use Autonomy could make of them in the context of an enormous job for which it was being or stood to be paid (literally) millions, could even exceed that. That was the distinction implicit in Mr Baiocco's distinction between "worth upfront" and whether the tools would be worth <u>to Autonomy</u> the amount they were prepared to pay; and that was why the amount of data which Autonomy was processing would feed into what Autonomy would be prepared to pay.

900. It is important to have regard both to the nature and limits of the evidence, and the actual question asked. There was no list or recommended price, nor any other mechanism to establish price. The evidence, such as it was, of "fair value" was not a formal assessment, nor was it made by those with commercial or market experience of making an assessment of "fair value". The question asked was, in effect, whether the price could be justified according to the value to be extracted from the staging tools by the particular customer. I infer and find that at some point Mr Hussain suggested the convenient figure of $6 million; and that being the price Autonomy was prepared to pay, and in the view of those with experience of e-Discovery products in general and the staging tools in particular, not being excessive according to its benefit, Mr Baiocco adopted it.

901. Put shortly, the price paid was defensible because the staging tools would be worth that to the user; but its amount was calculated by reference to Autonomy's other purpose.

902. I have concluded that the staging tool transaction was a further example of Autonomy making good on the fundamental understanding which underpinned all the impugned VAR transactions that one way or another the VAR would not be "left on the hook" or "holding the bag".

903. The Claimants also complained about the payment of a MAF (in the sum of $525,000) to Capax Discovery in respect of VT27, focusing again on the way the payment was presented, as appears from the letter dated 1 September 2011 that Mr Baiocco was asked to sign, which referred to Capax Discovery having purchased from Autonomy certain products and services for resale to McAfee, and continued:

> *"Such contemplated resale is referred to herein as the "Transaction."*

> *Capax has submitted to Autonomy invoice no. 1282, in the amount of $525,000.00, due from Autonomy as payment to Capax for marketing assistance services related to the Transaction. Such payment from Autonomy shall be deemed full and final payment of any and all fees due to Capax from Autonomy as a result of the Transaction, or otherwise in connection with Capax' resale of products and/or services to McAfee."*

904. The Claimants submitted that this *"was another work of fiction"*. There had been no sale by either Autonomy or Capax Discovery to McAfee. Capax Discovery had never contemplated itself making a "*resale*" of the Autonomy products to McAfee. Nor had Capax Discovery provided any "*marketing assistance services*" to Autonomy in relation to such a resale. In reality, the only service provided by Capax Discovery was the submission of a purchase order, which Autonomy used to recognise revenue improperly in Q1 2011.

905. Again, the Defendants' answer was that the payment of a MAF was unobjectionable for the reasons previously given above.

906. I do not accept that. In my judgment, payment of the MAF was part of the pattern: it was the price levied for signing up to nominal legal liability, and keeping out of the way thereafter.

907. Taking all the features of these transactions together, in my judgment, VT27 was another exemplar of the pattern. The sale to the VAR was illusory and effected no change in control or transfer of risk; no revenue should have been recognised in respect of it.

Defendants' knowledge

Mr Hussain

908. As always, Mr Hussain was directly involved. His usual obsession with plugging shortfalls to enable him to meet forecast prompted the transaction. He knew it was contrived. Likewise, he knew that the staging tools transaction was at the price necessary to rescue Capax Discovery and was in the know throughout. The transactions were, to his knowledge, exemplars of the strategy he devised. In my judgment, he had "guilty knowledge".

Dr Lynch

909. Dr Lynch submitted that there was no basis for the allegation that he knew of or participated in any improper accounting of the transactions. His evidence was that:

    (1) He was aware of efforts being made to close a deal with McAfee in Q1 2011, but he was not involved in the reseller deal, and certainly had no information to suggest that there was a deal with a reseller where revenue was being improperly recognised. When cross-examined he was shown documents which the Claimants suggested could have led him to infer that Capax Discovery was coming in for McAfee, but he did not accept that such a link was obvious and confirmed that he had certainly not made it.

(2) He was made "*distantly aware*" of continuing discussions between Autonomy and McAfee after Q1 2011; but he told me that he did not know whether or not Autonomy was negotiating with McAfee without Capax Discovery's involvement;

(3) He did approve the later purchase of staging tools from Capax Discovery, but he understood that he was approving a transaction put together and recommended by others and had no reason to think other than this was a sound purchase at fair value (which it was) for good commercial reasons.

(4) In any event, he did not accept the causality and linkage between the staging tools purchase and the McAfee repayment suggested by the Claimants' simplified slide and maintained that no one at Autonomy had suggested a link to Mr Baiocco at the time.

(5) He was not involved in the discussions between Autonomy and Capax Discovery regarding prompt payment (which amounted to early payment by Capax Discovery). But, asked about it in cross-examination, he saw it as unproblematic:

> *"If we had agreed to pay early in return for being paid early, then that would be a reasonable commercial action."*

(6) Further, he told me that Autonomy would naturally expect prompt payment by Capax Discovery in return, and this reduced Autonomy's days sales outstanding. Other companies took a netting approach but Autonomy did not:

> *"No, because, as we've discussed before, when someone owes you money and you owe them money, what you normally can do is just net it instantaneously, which is in both parties' interests because their day sales are outstanding, are reduced by that and it also helps their credit rating if they require credit. In our case we did actually send the money back and forth because we practise something called cash transparency, but we would only send the money on the understanding that the money would come straight back. It was equivalent to it being netted."*

(7) He was not involved in the MAF payment or letter. He told me he did not accept that the MAF was paid on his authority unless that was documented on the emails (which it was not). Although Dr Lynch was not involved in this payment, he rejected the idea that it connoted anything improper.

910. In his written closing, it was also submitted that it was not squarely put to him that he knew about the revenue recognition or knew that the revenue recognition was improper.

911. However, in my judgment:

(1) The McAfee deal was carefully monitored by Mr Hussain, and Dr Lynch was continuously updated by Mr Hussain about its status.

(2) The emails sent by Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch included information which I consider and find Dr Lynch would have appreciated meant that (a) the prospective deal with McAfee would not be closed within the quarter, (b) a sale to a VAR would be made instead, (c) the VAR would in all likelihood be a "friendly" VAR, (d) the sale would not involve real risk for the VAR nor any real change to Autonomy's dealings with McAfee thereafter and (e) the way the matter thereafter proceeded would conform to the pattern implementing the strategy over which he had from its inception presided and encouraged (and would not involve the VAR in any dealings with McAfee at all).

(3) Dr Lynch knew also of and approved the staging tools transaction. I reject the notion that he simply signed because others had, which would have been entirely contrary to (a) the requirement for his approval which his own rules stipulated, (b) the way he ran Autonomy and (c) his nature as I came to assess it.

912. The Claimants' case was adequately put to Dr Lynch: he knew that what was being put against him was the case summarised in the preceding paragraph.

913. In summary, in my judgment, Dr Lynch knew that the sale to the VAR was, as usual in the case of these large VAR transactions in the Relevant Period, illusory; and that the staging tools transaction was in substantial part required to relieve Capax Discovery from the hook.

914. The payment of a MAF would have been part of the usual pattern; but I accept that the decision to pay and the implementation of it appears to have been carried out by others (all others in fact) in the cabal, and Dr Lynch was not ostensibly involved.

915. However, I need make no determination of that: I am satisfied without a finding about the MAF, and find, that Dr Lynch had "guilty knowledge".

VT28: Capax Discovery/UBS Q1 2011 and VT34: Capax Discovery/UBS Q2 2011

The first Capax Discovery/UBS purchase order

916. In January 2011, Autonomy was seeking to negotiate a deal with UBS, the well-known bank. On 13 January 2011, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Egan and Dr Menell, copying in Dr Lynch that the negotiations were going "*v well*". Even at that time, however, there was a note of caution: the email forwarded one from Mr Glenn Perachio, another Autonomy employee, headed *"Need to speak about UBS and rumours there re Deloitte"* and Mr Hussain advised that *"…UBS legal got negative feedback from Deloitte US and it's causing concern…"*

917. In March 2011, Mr Hussain learned from an internal email (circulated to the legal department as well as Mr Hussain) that the *"quick hits"* had *"turned into an ongoing saga…and constant growth in what UBS wants us to show"*; and that UBS's demands for proofs of concept (evidence that the performance of a desired task was feasible) meant that it would "*take us several quarters to even get all of this up, running, and POC'd, let alone get them to buy anything*". There was no hope of concluding a deal in time for the end of Q1 2011.

918. On 31 March 2011, the last day of the quarter, at Mr Egan's request, Capax Discovery sent to Autonomy a purchase order for UBS as end-user. The licence fee payable was $8 million, with an annual support and maintenance fee of $400,000. The money was to be paid in two equal instalments, on 4 July 2011 and 29 July 2011 respectively.

919. Mr Scott included "*Capax – UBS*" within a list of "*8A deals*" he sent to Mr Hussain, at Mr Hussain's request, on 1 April 2011.

The second Capax Discovery/UBS purchase order

920. Despite these difficulties, negotiations between Autonomy and UBS continued in Q2 2011. On 9 June 2011, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch an email, subject, "*I need 2 out of the top 3 or 8 out of the top 10*". Third in his list of deals, with an expected fee of $8 million was UBS.

921. On 27 June 2011, Mr Hussain sent UBS a proposal with revised payment terms. That day, Ms Sarah Wilkinson of UBS sent an email to Mr Hussain, querying "*the offer you made associated with the leverage of an 8A payment agent*" and (since she had *"never heard of this construct previously"*) requesting "*a little more colour and background on this proposal*". Mr Hussain immediately forwarded the emailed to Mr Egan (copying in Mr Kanter) stating only *"Please help"*. In the meantime, Ms Julie Dolan (an Autonomy lawyer) contacted her UBS counterpart with some information. When UBS asked whether Autonomy was proposing that UBS contract directly with the 8A entity, Ms Dolan said, "*No, not at all. All agreements will be between Autonomy and UBS. We are asking that the third party entity acts as a paying agent only. All invoice and payments are pass through the third party*".

922. On 28 June 2011, Mr Hussain sent a further proposal to UBS. That day, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch an email entitled "*quick updates*", which stated, "*Ubs – no further news, we got everything over to Sarah, we have a final legal call tomorrow*". On 30 June 2011, Mr Hussain informed Dr Lynch, "*UBS – paperwork all done (1 am last night), michelle trogni for final signing this am*".

923. However, on 30 June 2011, Ms Wilkinson wrote to Mr Hussain to say that, "*Regrettably, despite huge efforts, it has just not been possible to complete the internal consultation and approval processes in time*". Mr Hussain forwarded the message to Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter without comment.

924. It would therefore have been clear to Dr Lynch and Mr Kanter that any VAR agreement in respect of a UBS deal would have to be implemented on the very last day of the quarter. Plans to do that were already on foot.

925. On 30 June 2011, Mr Scott sent Mr Hussain, Mr Egan and Mr Chamberlain a draft purchase order to be submitted by Capax Discovery, for UBS as end-user, and requested approval. Approval must have been given, because Mr Scott then sent the draft purchase order to Mr Baiocco. At this point, the licence fee was stated to be $5.5 million. However, less than an hour later, Mr Scott sent a revised draft purchase order with a higher licence fee of $6.5 million. On 1 July 2011, a yet further draft was sent, with a yet higher licence fee of $7,644,132 (plus an annual maintenance fee of $383,206.60).

926. No changes were made to the software ordered. There is no evidence of any objection, or indeed any response at all by Capax Discovery to these sudden substantial increases (of over $2 million) in the ostensible payment obligation for the same products. Nor is there any evidence of Capax Discovery ever speaking to UBS or doing anything else to determine that on-sales, much less on-sales totalling more than $16 million, could actually be achieved.

927. Mr Baiocco signed this last version, which was dated 30 June 2011 despite the fact that it was not signed until 1 July, the first day of the next quarter. Mr Baiocco gave the following unchallenged evidence about the two Capax Discovery/UBS purchase orders:

> *"As with the other VAR transactions, the terms of the purchase orders were given to us by Autonomy. Capax Discovery was not involved in the efforts to license the software to the end-user (UBS). Autonomy handled all of the negotiations with UBS."*

928. In accordance with that and the established pattern, these further negotiations with UBS were carried out by Autonomy alone (and overseen by Mr Hussain).

929. Autonomy's proposal to UBS was that UBS should contract directly with Autonomy but make payment via an 8A entity (Autonomic Resources LLC, an affiliate of Capax Discovery) as paying agent. Autonomy suggested that participation in this way in a US Federal Government-promoted scheme offered a number of benefits, especially in terms of goodwill. Autonomy also offered UBS a 3% discount for participation.

930. UBS did not favour this. It expressed concerns about the proposal that UBS should make payment under a direct deal with Autonomy to an 8A payment agent. It appears from an email dated 19 July 2011 from Ms Wilkinson of UBS to Mr Hussain (copying three individuals working for UBS) that these primarily concerned any credit risk in payment to an intermediary; but there appeared also to be an undercurrent of concern as to the basis of interposing a paying agent at all and Ms Wilkinson noted that UBS could not *"see that the use of one of these entities purely as paying agent would support the aims of the SBA [Small Business Administration] program".*[77] Ms Wilkinson's email concluded: *"On this basis, I have asked Sharon to ensure that the clause on the use of payment agents is removed from the contract."*

931. That proved to be the sticking point. As his annotations which he made on the email from Ms Wilkinson when forwarding it to Mr Kanter show Mr Hussain regarded all the other concerns as resolvable (for example, by Autonomy agreeing to hold UBS harmless); but he would not accept the deletion of the paying agent provision and told Mr Kanter to tell UBS *"Sorry it stays in".* The Claimants asked me to infer from this obduracy on a point which would not otherwise have benefitted Autonomy that Mr Hussain had to have the provision for payment to a Capax Discovery affiliate so that monies could then flow to Capax Discovery to be used by it to pay its debt under the purchase orders for end-user UBS to which Capax Discovery had committed.

932. That same day (19 July 2011) Mr Kanter advised Ms Wilkinson by email accordingly. By email sent only two minutes later, Ms Wilkinson responded:

[77] In an earlier email, dated 27 June 2011, Ms Dolan of Autonomy legal had explained to UBS that the SBA was a program supported by the US Federal Government in which a number of authorised Autonomy resellers were involved. Autonomy had offered UBS a 3% discount if it participated though an authorized reseller.

> *"Having submitted this three times to our internal legal team, and had it rejected three times, I think we're done on this.*
>
> *Sorry that we couldn't oblige, but the decision is now final."*

933. That was that: there was to be no end-user deal to generate receipt from which Capax Discovery could have paid Autonomy and discharged its indebtedness. Something else had to be done to get Capax Discovery off the hook.

934. The solution Autonomy found was a re-packaged deal with UBS. Autonomy entered into a direct agreement with UBS on 20 July 2011, with a total contract value of approximately $24,000,000, of which $13,489,860 related to the provision of Autonomy software. Under that direct deal, UBS paid Autonomy directly. There was no paying agent involved. However, Mr Chamberlain instructed Ms Ku (cc Ms Poppy Gustafsson) to issue credit notes to Capax Discovery for the two UBS purchase orders, explaining that since UBS had required their purchase to be invoiced directly Autonomy needed *"to remove these as they are no longer payable by Capax."* The Claimants contended that this made no sense, especially since if Capax Discovery was genuinely at risk, its liability would not in law be affected by any subsequent agreement to which it was not a party.

935. The Claimants submitted that this series of transactions fell into the well-established pattern:

    (1) A sale to a friendly VAR at the last possible moment (or in this case, it appears, beyond it) to make good the revenue which had been expected from a 'real' sale.

    (2) Complete indifference on the part of the VAR as to the purchase price from Autonomy, or the sale price which might be expected from an end-user.

    (3) No contact by the VAR with the proposed end-user either before or after the VAR sale to determine the prospect and likely price range of an end-user sale;

    (4) Legal documentation emphasising the absolute and unconditional nature of the VAR sale and the obligations imposed.

    (5) The continuation after the VAR sale of negotiations for an end-user sale as if the VAR sale had never taken place: in this case, only Autonomy was negotiating with UBS, and the only contract in contemplation was one between Autonomy and UBS.

    (6) The absence of any suggestion of the VAR being asked still less required to pay.

    (7) Efforts by Autonomy to ensure an apparently legitimate route to pay the VAR the proceeds of any end-user sale successfully negotiated.

    (8) If the negotiations failed and no end-user sale eventuated, the negotiation and implementation by Autonomy of other means of ensuring that the VAR was not left on the hook.

936. In the case of VT28 and VT34 the colours on the pattern were in some ways particularly vibrant:

(1) The remarkable indifference of Capax Discovery to a sequence of unexplained and substantial increases in the purchase price for the second Capax Discovery/UBS purchase order (VT34);

(2) Mr Baiocco's casual signature on 1 July 2011 of a purchase order prepared and provided to him by Autonomy unseen which had to be completed before the end of the quarter (30 June 2011);

(3) Autonomy's insistence on interposing an 8A payment agent in the Capax Discovery group (Autonomic Resources LLC) to be used as a channel for the purchase price under the end-user sale to be recycled and repaid to discharge Capax Discovery's own indebtedness;

(4) When that eventually drove UBS away from the original deals, Autonomy's immediate engagement in selling the same software to an end-user (in this case, the same end-user, UBS) whilst the VAR (which notionally owned the software) did nothing.

(5) The payment of a MAF to the VAR (in this case of $1,644,733) for doing nothing except lending its name to notional legal liability.

937. The Defendants responded that:

(1) The fact that the VAR transactions were each made at the end of a quarter does not signify anything improper if (as was the case, and Mr Baiocco confirmed) Capax Discovery was unconditionally on risk: the question was not whether the risk was wise but whether it was assumed;

(2) Mr Baiocco was keen to establish a relationship with UBS and saw the reseller deals as the way into that;

(3) Mr Baiocco confirmed the truth and accuracy of the parts of the Goldberg Segalla letter which specifically dealt with these transactions, including statements that (i) Capax Discovery took on risk and if the end-user transaction did not materialise Capax Discovery's only option would have been to resell to another customer (ii) this particular transaction also promised to be of significant benefit to Capax Discovery in that it represented a large professional services opportunity for Capax Discovery to install, integrate and implement Autonomy's software, (iii) such service opportunities and ongoing management being the basis for the strong partnership maintained between Capax Discovery and Autonomy (and subsequently HP);

(4) The arrangements for Capax Discovery to be credited with the value of the direct deal ultimately made between Autonomy and UBS up to the amount of the VAR deals (and paid a MAF) were commercially similar to those in the Kraft deal (VT3) and equally unobjectionable.

938. In my judgment, the Defendants' responses fell well short of a satisfactory answer; for the reasons identified by the Claimants and apparent from the facts as described above, VT28

and 34 fell within, and to my mind provide further striking examples of, the pattern; the 'sales' were illusory, neither risk nor control passed, and no revenue should have been recognised from them.

Knowledge of the Defendants

Mr Hussain

939. There is no dispute that Mr Hussain was involved in the UBS transactions and oversaw VT28 and VT34. He knew all the facts and matters set out above, and that revenue recognition could not be justified. He had "guilty knowledge."

Dr Lynch

940. The position was, as usual, not as clear in relation to Dr Lynch. Further, not only was no transaction-specific evidence shown or put to Dr Lynch, but the Claimants did not cross-examine him on VT28 and VT34 at all.

941. The Claimants sought to answer the fact that they did not cross-examine Dr Lynch for lack of time; and they (a) pointed out that Dr Lynch said nothing about either transaction in his witness statement, and (b) submitted that given the usual roll call of senior individuals involved – Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter, Mr Chamberlain, Mr Egan and Mr Scott – the Court should infer that the two Capax Discovery/UBS purchase orders fell within the general authorisation given by Dr Lynch for VARs to be used as placeholders, to enable the improper recognition of revenue, as and when required.

942. It was for the Claimants to use their time as they saw fit: whilst not endless it was sufficient. It is understandable why they should have decided not to devote any part of it to cross-examining Dr Lynch on a subject on which he had given no evidence. But the result was that Dr Lynch had no opportunity to traverse or set in a kinder context, the particular features of VT28 and VT34 and either to explain them or contradict the Claimants' case that he was aware of them.

943. The question is whether, because the Claimants did not cross-examine Dr Lynch on the particular transactions, they are precluded from reliance on evidence put to him and his answers on their general case as to the overall strategy of using VARs as placeholders to enable the improper recognition of revenue and its implementation by way of the pattern; and if not, whether they were able to show in a way which did not call for a fresh response from Dr Lynch that these particular transactions fell into that pattern.

944. It seems to me that the Claimants cannot rely on transaction-specific matters which they did not put to Dr Lynch as evidence of his knowledge. But I do not accept they cannot rely in relation to these transactions, on general matters common, or alleged to be common, to all the impugned VAR transactions and his responses when confronted with them, simply because they were not once again rehearsed by reference to the same basic pattern in these transactions.

945. The Claimants had plainly and repeatedly put their general case to Dr Lynch on his "guilty knowledge"; that he presided over and encouraged the strategy and encouraged its implementation in the way disclosed by the pattern. He had ample opportunity, which he took, to seek to explain why if there was any pattern, none of the features said to reveal and comprise it were such as to make revenue recognition improper, and that in any event

he was well removed and was not told and did not see anything such as to fix him with knowledge of impropriety.

946. In my judgment, it is clear that Dr Lynch did preside over and encourage the implementation of the general strategy; it was not disputed that he had been told and kept informed by Mr Hussain of the fact of these transactions, and the fact that no end -user deal within the relevant quarter had proved possible and that Autonomy had resorted to a VAR. The more difficult question is whether Dr Lynch might have had some basis in fact to dispute that he had knowledge that the particular transactions were "pattern" transactions.

947. In my judgment, the general case fairly put to Dr Lynch included that transactions which (a) were of a size that Mr Hussain was depending on them to meet revenue targets (b) had failed to complete within the quarter (c) were being remitted to a VAR and (d) handled by the 'team' of Mr Hussain, Mr Kanter, Mr Chamberlain, Mr Egan and Mr Scott, were transactions within the strategy, and would follow the pattern. By now, in 2011, he had seen it all so often before. I have concluded that Dr Lynch had "guilty knowledge" of the improper recognition of revenue from VT28 and VT34.

948. I would add, however, in case I am wrong in that approach or conclusion, that:

(1) Whether or not Dr Lynch had "guilty knowledge" of VT28 and VT34 has not affected at all my analysis of his knowledge in respect of the other impugned VAR transactions.

(2) Although individually large, the sums involved are not such as would affect my ultimate decision as to the value of Autonomy at the date of the Acquisition or the price that HP would have paid.

PART III OF SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS

949. In this Part III of this Schedule, I address the VAR transactions comprising the parts into which a very large composite deal with BofA (or subsidiaries of BofA) was split in circumstances described below. Two (VT16 and VT21) were with Capax Discovery and two (VT23 and VT24) were with DiscoverTech.

The Bank of America ("BofA") transactions: VT16, VT21, VT23 and VT24

950. In Q3 2010, Autonomy began working on a very large deal with BofA, described by Mr Hussain in emails to Dr Lynch as *"the big one"*, with an aggregate value of some $20 million. This was not concluded in Q3 2010: but it became a vital part of Mr Hussain's planned route to achieving the forecast of US revenues of $45 million in Q4 2010. In comments on an email dated 31 October 2010 from Mr Egan (which was sent to him and Mr Mooney but also circulated to Mr Scott and Dr Lynch) he stressed its importance (together with another large deal with an entity called Acxiom) as one of *"2 deals that could swing the quarter massively for us"*.

951. The importance of the large BofA deal became a consistent theme of Mr Hussain's communications with Dr Lynch during the quarter. I have taken the following factual summary very largely from the detailed account in the Claimants' written closing submissions:

(1) On 4 November 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch and Dr Menell an update on the "*big deals*". As regards BofA, he said, "*want to do a deal by end of q. will be big*" and that he will "*be chasing*".

(2) On 7 November 2010, Mr Hussain sent a group revenue update to Dr Lynch and others. His update identified the "*key deal*" as being BofA at circa $10 million to $20 million.

(3) On 8 November 2010, Mr Hussain emphasised to Mr Mooney (copying Dr Lynch) that getting the pricing proposal to BofA as soon as possible was the "*most important thing we should be doing*".

(4) Mr Hussain provided further updates to Dr Lynch (and others) on 10 November 2010, 11 November 2010, and 14 November 2010. In an update on 17 November 2010 sent to Dr Lynch and Dr Menell, Mr Hussain expressed concern about Mr Egan's management of the deal and said that he (Mr Hussain) personally would focus on it "*as this is key for q*".

(5) By 19 November 2010, Mr Hussain told Dr Lynch that the figure for the licence fee was currently between $24-26 million and that BofA "*seem to be very engaged*".

(6) In an email dated 20 November 2010 (circulated to Dr Menell, Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain), Mr Hussain reiterated that "*BofA and VMS are the key to the quarter*".

(7) On 2 December 2010, under the subject heading *"More positive update",* Mr Hussain told Dr Lynch: "*BofA – accountants and lawyers to sit in a room on Tuesday. Deal is definitely on*".

(8) By 7 December 2010, Mr Hussain informed Dr Lynch that he was including $17 million in revenue from BofA during the quarter, and that three days of discussions with BofA had been scheduled.

(9) On 9 December 2010, Mr Scott asked Dr Lynch to approve a memorandum setting out the contemplated terms. Dr Lynch gave his approval in principle that day (stating *"This looks fine to me in principle if people have done their homework on the details*"), adding a comment on the cost structure.

(10) On 17 December 2010, however, expectations of a Q4 2010 deal were pegged back after Mr Egan was told by Mr Vince Debban of BofA that the agreement would not receive the requisite internal approvals in time for it to be concluded in 2010. Mr Egan's email to Mr Hussain stated, "*I don't know what to say*". Mr Hussain raised the matter with Dr Lynch and replied to Mr Egan suggesting a form of messaging that Mr Egan should adopt with BofA, describing the deal as a "*massive opportunity for the bank*" which could not be repeated in 2011. Mr Egan's response was despondent, stating *"…but you do realize that that's it. It is not really a matter of finance being unwilling. We have watched exceptional process unfold for 10 days. You saw it first hand."* Mr Hussain's reply to that was:

> *"We have to beg and beg again.*
> *We can't have the same deal next quarter."*

952. The urgency and importance ascribed to trying even at this stage to get revenue which could be recognised within the quarter was reflected in Mr Hussain's request on 18 December 2010 that Dr Lynch and others join an "*All hands call today*", and in the activity afterwards to try to reinstate the deal:

(1) Mr Hussain again proposed messaging to BofA to the effect that there could be no deal in 2011 in the same form as the deal then under consideration, because Autonomy's auditors would require such a deal in 2011 to be disclosed and explained. Notably, Mr Hussain asked Dr Lynch whether this accounting point passed Dr Lynch's "*smell test*".

(2) Dr Lynch replied the same day, "*I would avoid using words auditor and audit*" and instead suggested different messaging:

> *"More: as previously disclosed to the market we are increasing and restructuring disclosure and this will set an unworkable comp under this new model, so this Is [sic] a unique point in time to do this deal".*

(3) Mr Hussain prepared a draft email for Autonomy's BofA deal team (which he copied to Dr Lynch), outlining the proposed message to BofA, and invited comment. The draft email, which stated in the subject heading *"Possible email that can be forwarded to the BofA team…"* and was obviously drafted for BofA's consumption, commenced in terms loyally reflecting (with a little

bit of translation) the high-pressure "now or never" message that Dr Lynch had suggested:

> *"I realize that the BofA team is having some difficulty in getting all approvals in time for 2010, but I have to stress to you that this deal is not possible for us to sign in Q1 2011. As Autonomy has previously disclosed to the equity market we are increasing and restructuring our accounting disclosure in 2011, and doing the deal in 2011 will set an unworkable comparative under this new model. So this is a unique point in time to do the deal. Our additional disclosure of a "commitment" figure in 2011 will show major movements in a 2011 BofA deal which we will need to disclose and explain – and we won't do this."*

It then set out various figures to try to persuade BofA that, on analysis, it would not actually be committing (net) more than $10.5 million, and asked for one last effort to "*get the deal over the line*". Mr Hussain continued to keep Dr Lynch apprised of his efforts with BofA on 19 December 2010 and 20 December 2010.

953. These efforts were unsuccessful. On 21 December 2010, Mr Ronald Johnson of BofA emailed Mr Hussain:

> *"Thank you for the note. Andy[78] and I both spent several hours on this late into the day yesterday. We met with Tom Korzik and decided collectively that because the entire deal structure was being re-written, the approval is actually against the full $48MM transaction. Even from a "complete transparency" perspective, we all felt like we would want the full leadership team to be aware of our activities.*
>
> …
>
> *We aren't able to give you an official response this morning but to be very honest, this is a long shot given the holidays and the number of educational conversations that would need to occur. The leaders at the top of our house frown on these last minute transactions. The perception they have of us is one of unorganized and no process rigor. Accordingly, this might be the right thing to do for BAC, just the wrong timing*".

954. Mr Hussain forwarded the news to Dr Lynch, stating only "*Oh s**t*".

955. Even then, the Defendants were not yet ready to give up. On 21 December 2010, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Egan (copying Dr Lynch) telling him "*I spoke to ron [of BofA] – he was just out of the shower, not really happy to hear from me*" and suggesting that "*Stouffer reaches out to Carol [of BofA] for one last try even if we get a smaller deal it might be worthwhile*". That same day, Dr Lynch prepared a draft email intended for BofA which stressed that the transaction "*has to be done this quarter as it requires us to take an option on some excess capacity which is not possible next year*" and stated that, "*at the last minute we have unexpectedly hit a bureaucratic hurdle*" because the relevant finance person at BofA was on holiday. The draft email requested advice on how to overcome the

[78] Possibly Mr Andrew McGowan of BofA. Mr Korzik, I assume, was part of BofA.

issue. Later that day Dr Lynch sent the email to Mr Simon Mackenzie-Smith. Mr Mackenzie-Smith was Head of BofA in London.

956. Later still, in the evening of the same day, Mr Egan forwarded to the Defendants an email he had sent to BofA recording that Mr Hussain had authorised "*a further $2M reduction in the license fee currently on offer for execution in 2010*". Mr Egan observed,

> "*I'm on the roof but will stay away from edge until we hear back.*"

957. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that Mr Hussain, for his part, was also in a state of high anxiety as to whether the potential BofA transaction would be concluded.

958. On 22 December 2010, Dr Lynch continued his correspondence with Mr Mackenzie-Smith, saying that he "*would great[ly] appreciate any subtle help*" that Mr Mackenzie-Smith could give to the matter.

959. It seems, however, that BofA had concerns "*over the value of the licenses and does this deal pass the smell test*". Mr Egan sought to address this by sending BofA an email (dated 23 December 2010) with a note emphasising that *"the answer is yes absolutely"* but pointing out that the deal *"must be thought of as a Program not just a 'Client Access License' purchased"* and explaining (interestingly[79] in the context of the Claimants' 'Hosting case', as to which see the Hosting section in the main body of this judgment) that the benefits of the purchase of the licence which the deal entailed included (primarily) the following:

> *"1. $73m without the deal; $48m with the deal*
>
> *2. $19m license fee is offset against the volume and delivery credits, so its* ***<u>$10m net new</u>*** *investment to* ***<u>access</u>*** *the savings. For this BAML gets unlimited software plus lower fees.*
>
> *3. A 50% reduction in archiving costs which come from massive lowering of archiving fees and supervision services for free + no expense on the 900tb legacy data…"*

(Emphasis as in original)

960. On 28 December 2010, Mr Hussain forwarded to Dr Lynch an email which suggested the odds of getting the deal approved by 31 December 2010 were 50/50.

---

[79] By way of very brief explanation, this is interesting in the context of the 'Hosting Case' because the essential claim in that part of the case is that the licence sold as part of what was termed a *"hybrid hosting solution"* (which had two elements, (i) a licence to software and (ii) hosting services) was presented and accounted for as conferring a right separate from the advantage it also brought in terms of reduced data storage fees. That accounting treatment enabled immediate recognition of the revenue from the licence fee whereas if the licence could not properly be regarded as separable, the revenue from its sale would be lumped together with the revenue from hosting services, and would be required to be spread over the length of the hosting contract. The interest of the explanation given to BofA is that the licence is described simply in terms of offering access to savings, and there is not a whisper in the headline description of its separable value. That would support the Claimants' case that the licence was an accounting artifice and the revenue recognition of fees from its sale was improper.

961. On 29 December 2010, with the quarter end fast approaching, Mr Krakoski emailed Mr Hussain stating that he had put calls and emails into BofA but that it was all quiet: "*Will advise on activity as soon as they [BofA] surface*". Mr Hussain forwarded this email to Dr Lynch, adding only the observation "*Almost unbearable!!*".

962. On 30 December 2010, Dr Lynch continued to make direct contact with senior individuals at BofA in the hope of concluding a deal. On 31 December 2010, Mr Mackenzie-Smith responded, "*I have emailed my colleagues in the US plus UK to give this one last push. Fingers crossed*". Dr Lynch forwarded this response to Mr Hussain.

963. However, on 31 December 2010, Mr Debban of BofA stated that an agreement would not be executed that day. Mr Hussain thanked the BofA team for their efforts and asked whether even part of the deal could be approved as a favour. Nothing eventuated.

964. As a result, there was a significant gap in revenue that needed to be filled.

Splitting up of the BofA deal into smaller pieces sold to VARs

965. It was the unchallenged evidence of Mr Egan that, when it became apparent at the very end of the year (2010) that no BofA deal would be signed during Q4 2010, Mr Hussain instructed Mr Egan to break down the deal into smaller pieces and sell the pieces to different VARs. That was necessary because of the size of the overall deal: it was too large for any single VAR (including MicroTech) to take on alone. The splitting up of the deal and the resort to VARs were plainly expedients to generate recognised revenue in Q4 2010 to cover the shortfall left by the failure to close the BofA transaction. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he knew that, prior to 31 December 2010, no VAR had been involved in Autonomy's negotiations with BofA, though he sought to distinguish this from other VAR deals, stating that *"Obviously we did other things with them…"*.

966. VT16 and VT21, together with VT23 and VT24, comprised these "smaller pieces" which were parcelled out amongst the selected VARs, namely Capax Discovery and DiscoverTech:

    (1) VT16 was originally a VAR transaction in September 2010 between Autonomy and Capax Discovery in respect of which the named prospective end-user was Amgen. Ultimately, Amgen dropped out[80] and was substituted by BofA.

    (2) VT21 was a VAR transaction in December 2010 between Autonomy and Capax Discovery in respect of which the named prospective end-user was Merrill Lynch, which had become a subsidiary of BofA in January 2009 (in the wake of the financial crisis precipitated by the collapse of Lehman Brothers).

    (3) VT23 and VT24 were sales by Autonomy to DiscoverTech for end-user BofA. Much as in VT16 and VT21, the software sold to DiscoverTech in VT23 and

[80] VT16 was originally a separate transaction concluded before Autonomy entered into initial discussions for the deal with BofA. It originally had nothing to do with the BofA transaction. It only became part of it when Amgen dropped out and was substituted by BofA in respect of the purchase of software specified in VT16. Autonomy then concluded a direct deal with Amgen in Q4 2010 for different software, rubric *"OT 3", "Repurposed"* (see below) as a BofA deal, VT16 then became a constituent element of the overall composite BofA arrangements.

VT24 was ultimately sold by Autonomy to BofA as part of the overall BofA transaction.

967. These constituent elements of the BofA transaction were, in a sense, corralled together by the introduction of a "lead reseller" namely, MicroTech (see further below). MicroTech acted, in effect, as the conduit for Capax Discovery and DiscoverTech to be paid their respective shares from Autonomy's direct sale to BofA.

968. Looking forward in the story, when (as had always been intended) Autonomy eventually concluded a direct deal with BofA in February 2011 (which included the software that it had parcelled out to the selected VARs) arrangements were made to ensure that the selected VARs received what they would have received had they themselves on-sold to BofA (though in fact it was never intended that there should be, and there never was, any end-user sale by any of the selected VARs).

969. Thus, under the direct agreement between Autonomy and BofA, it was provided that payment was to be made to Autonomy or its designated payee. Autonomy designated MicroTech as its payee, and BofA then paid the total $19,500,000 licence fee (minus an early payment discount agreed of $500,000) to MicroTech rather than Autonomy. MicroTech then paid out $10,000,000 to DiscoverTech and $9,000,000 to Capax Discovery.

970. As a result, Capax Discovery received (via MicroTech) in the case of each of VT16 and VT21 a share of the aggregate amounts paid by BofA, much as if it had on-sold the software it had acquired under its VAR transactions to BofA. Likewise, DiscoverTech received its share (via MicroTech) as if it too had on-sold to BofA.

971. The reconstituted, large composite direct deal which Autonomy eventually completed with BofA in February 2011, and which included a further restructuring of BofA's Digital Safe hosting arrangements, was of an aggregate value of some 8.9% of reported revenue in Q1 2011.

972. Although all four VAR deals came together as summarised above, I shall adopt the same basic approach as the Claimants, and focus first on the Claimants' allegations in respect of VT16 and VT21, which I deal with in tandem, albeit that those two transactions took place in different quarters of 2010, whereas VT21 was contemporaneous with VT20 (as to which see paragraphs 842 to 866 above).

973. Accordingly, I first address the Claimants' basis for impugning VT16 and the Amgen deal as it was originally conceived. I then explain the Claimants' allegations relating to how that deal was *"re-purposed"* and became part of the complex arrangements for the ultimate sale to BofA (which brought in VT21) and for the parcelling out of the BofA sale proceeds to all the three VARs concerned in VT16 and VT21. I then discuss the Claimants' allegations in respect of the cancellation of any further payment obligation on the part of Capax Discovery under VT16 and VT21, and also the controversy concerning the payment of two sets of MAFs to Capax Discovery (and also to DiscoverTech). After that, it will then be necessary for me to deal with certain features of the DiscoverTech transactions, VT23 and VT24.

974. It will also be necessary to consider the issue of 'guilty knowledge'. The Claimants contended that the size and importance of these deals, and especially of the composite BofA deal for which (on the Claimants' case) they were the interim arrangements, is

evident from and commanded the particularly close personal involvement of the Defendants.

VT16: the original Capax Discovery/Amgen deal in more detail

975. VT16 and the background to its *"repurposing"* can be summarised as follows. In Q3 2010, Autonomy was hoping to sell a software licence to Amgen (see paragraph 966(1) and footnote 80 above). The deal was a large one, and important to Autonomy in terms of revenue requirements for the quarter. However, despite offering Amgen a discount to close the deal within the quarter, on 30 September 2010 Amgen's Chief Information Officer, Mr Tom Flanagan ("Mr Flanagan") emailed Mr Egan (who was handling the matter, though Mr Hussain was also closely involved) to say that they could not do the deal in that quarter but could in the next. That email was forwarded by Mr Egan to Mr Hussain, and also to Dr Lynch (who had been sent an earlier email also, and who accepted in cross-examination that he *"may have known something"* about the deal, though he denied any involvement in the negotiations or other details).

976. In order to recognise revenue in Q3 2010, Autonomy, with the usual urgency, engaged Capax Discovery (through Mr Baiocco) to act as a VAR right at the end of the quarter. On the same day as Mr Flanagan's email and at Mr Egan's request, on 30 September 2010 (the last day of Q3 2010), Capax Discovery issued a purchase order with a licence fee of $9,000,000 plus one year's support of $450,000, for on-sale to end-user Amgen. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he knew that Autonomy resorted to Capax Discovery in order to obtain recognised revenue on a purchase order issued before the end of the quarter (though as usual he intimated he became aware only after the event, which I do not accept).

977. The purchase order stated that Capax Discovery was to pay 10% of the purchase order price ($945,000) within 30 days, i.e. by 30 October 2010, with the balance to be paid in two tranches of $4,252,500 within 90 and 120 days respectively, i.e. by 29 December 2010 and 28 January 2011 respectively. Unusually, the purchase order expressly gave Capax Discovery qualified permission (expiring after 12 months) to sell to another end-user if a sale to Amgen could not be completed. Otherwise, the purchase order was on the terms of the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement summarised in paragraph 60 above.

978. After issuing the purchase order, Autonomy continued its negotiations with Amgen. Capax Discovery was not involved at all. The Claimants contended that, consistently with the 'pattern' common to the impugned VAR transactions, there was never any intention that Capax Discovery should participate in negotiations with the (then) prospective end-user in any way, and certainly it never did so.

979. VT16 then took an atypical turn. Revenue having been recognised in respect of it, it was, in effect, moth-balled (or as it was put *"repurposed"*) to be brought out of the cupboard as part of the composite BofA deal. In the meantime, Autonomy entered into a direct but different deal with Amgen in December 2010 for a total of $14,882,076: but this was made up largely (as to $11,382,076) of hosting and servicing fees; the licence fee was much less: $3,500,000. The Claimants called this the *"other Amgen transaction"* with the rubric "OT 3", and they alleged that "OT 3" was also accounted for wrongly, not by reference to any VAR involvement but because it was (so they alleged) wrong to recognise revenue up-front in respect of the deal in Q4 2010: I address this separate and differently based allegation in the section in the main body of the judgment that deals

with the "Other Transactions". Thus, VT16 had in a sense two incarnations: and both are illustrative of Autonomy's use of 'friendly' VARs.

980. In the present context, the following aspects of VT16 and its *"repurposing"* are of particular interest in terms of the 'pattern' asserted by the Claimants:

(1) What Deloitte and the Audit Committee were told about the circumstances of VT16 and the subsequent negotiations with Amgen: it being the Claimants' case that both Deloitte and the Audit Committee were given a very different impression as to what the respective roles of Capax Discovery and Autonomy were to be in the transaction than was in fact the case, and were thus misled.

(2) The substitution of BofA in place of Amgen as the intended end-user, and its presentation as the *"re-purposing"* of VT16, which provided a mechanism to ensure that Capax Discovery was not left "holding the bag" in respect of its payment obligation under the VT16 purchase order.

(3) The justification advanced for payment of a MAF of nearly $1 million.

(4) The backdating of the documents recording and providing for the substitution of BofA *vis-á-vis* Capax Discovery.

(5) Deloitte's understanding of the transaction (including the *"repurposing"*).

Whether the VAR's role in respect of VT16 in its first incarnation was misrepresented to Deloitte and the Audit Committee

981. As regards the first of those contentions (see (1) in paragraph 980 above), Mr Baiocco's unchallenged evidence[81] in his witness statement was that Capax Discovery *"had no involvement in the negotiations with Amgen, which were conducted by Autonomy both before and after Capax Discovery issued its purchase order."* There is no evidence that Capax Discovery participated at any time, or in any way, in Autonomy's efforts to reach an agreement with Amgen.

982. The Claimants relied on Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee for Q3 2010 to support their case that this was not the impression given to Autonomy's Audit Committee. That report included the following statement (which I infer was based on information supplied by Autonomy):

> *"This is a $9.0 million Digital Safe licence deal sold to this end-user via the value added reseller Capax Discovery LLC ("Capax"). Autonomy have introduced this customer to the value added reseller in order for them to carry out the professional services implementation work required to migrate Amgen from EAS mail to DS mail. On the basis that Capax are up-to-date with their payments on the majority of the Eli Lilly sale discussed in Q2 2010, management has concluded there are no concerns over recoverability that would impact revenue recognition."*

[81] Dr Lynch was asked in cross-examination whether he had any basis to dispute this evidence: he confirmed he had not, adding *"I'm not involved at that level"*.

983. The Claimants relied also on Mr Bloomer's responses as to his understanding of this statement (and in particular, its second sentence):

> *"Q. So you were told that Autonomy had introduced Amgen to Capax Discovery, yes?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And that is what you understood at the time?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. You were told that Capax Discovery had agreed with Amgen that Capax Discovery would carry out professional services implementation work for Amgen, yes?*
>
> *A. That was the implication of this, yes.*
>
> *Q. It would have been your understanding that Capax Discovery would be the entity selling to Amgen, yes?*
>
> *A. Well, based on the introduction from Autonomy, there was clearly an implication that Autonomy may have done the sale or agreed with Amgen [what] they wanted a reseller to do – my understanding was that the resellers did the professional services which Autonomy didn't do and hence this one where Autonomy have agreed a sale but there's a reseller needed so they've introduced Capax to do that role. That was my understanding of this one.*
>
> *Q. Yes, the first sentence says that the licence has been sold via Capax, so your understanding would have been that Capax was the entity in the relationship with Amgen, yes?*
>
> *A. Certainly that the bill was going to go to Capax, the invoice, and then the invoice from Capax on to Amgen, but the fact of the introduction, my recollection at the time was that Autonomy had the relationship with Amgen but that there was a reseller needed to do professional services and Autonomy introduced Capax to fill that role, and therefore the sale went through Capax. That was my recollection at the time.*
>
> *Q. And if Capax never had any dealings with Amgen in relation to this transaction at any time, that would have been contrary to your understanding, yes?*
>
> *A. If Capax never had –*
>
> *Q. Any dealings at all with Amgen?*
>
> *A. That would have been surprising given this commentary here.*
>
> *Q. Yes. And it would have been something that it would have been relevant for you to know, yes?*
>
> *A. I'd have wanted to know that to have the discussion both with management and the auditors about the transaction as a whole."*

984. Even taking into account Mr Bloomer's suggestion that Autonomy's introduction of the VAR might have been with a view to the VAR providing services to the end-user in due course (which I do not think he can have taken to be a sufficient contribution of itself), he plainly took the statement to mean that Capax Discovery was always the party at interest and that the objective was always an end-user sale by Capax Discovery to Amgen.

985. The Claimants' case, which I accept, was that neither was the reality. The truth which was not told was that the sale to Capax Discovery was not intended to, and did not, make any difference to the negotiations carrying on between Autonomy and Amgen with a view to a sale by Autonomy directly to Amgen. In this first incarnation of the deal (as indeed in its second, after it had been *"repurposed"*) Capax Discovery was always intended to be entirely passive, with the assurance of some mechanism at the end of the day to release it from liability or give it the means of its discharge, and (as its rationale from Capax Discovery's viewpoint) the expectation of a handsome reward for its passivity. The perceived necessity to obscure (at best) the truth tells its own story against those responsible within Autonomy for misleading Deloitte, and through Deloitte, Autonomy's Audit Committee.

986. The Defendants sought to blunt the effect of this by presenting the intent and fact of a VAR's engagement (or not) in negotiations with the end-user as immaterial in determining whether the sale to the VAR qualified for revenue recognition. They relied especially on Mr Bloomer's evidence in the course of his re-examination, as follows:

> *"Q. Did you understand from your discussions with Deloitte whether there was any requirement that Autonomy itself must not negotiate with the end-user after the VAR deal had been entered into?*
>
> *A. No, not at all.*
>
> *Q. Did you understand from your discussions with Deloitte that there was any requirement that the VAR itself must conduct negotiations with the end-user?*
>
> *A. No, not necessary."*

987. However, that evidence did not answer why an accurate presentation had not been made to the Audit Committee; and nor did it properly address, let alone neutralise, the real point. Even if non-participation by the VAR in negotiations for an onward sale might not of itself demonstrate lack of substance, or no passing of risk or control for the purposes of IAS 18.14, the position is very different if the truth is that the VAR was to have not only no role but no interest, because the negotiations were not for a sale by it but for a direct sale by Autonomy. That would be a strong, usually determinative, manifestation of the reality that the VAR had not assumed any risk nor acquired any control of the goods, and its contractual obligations to Autonomy would be covered, not by onward sale proceeds, but by or via Autonomy itself (whether out of the proceeds of a direct sale by it or otherwise). Further, any remaining argument that even this might not be fatal if Autonomy could be said to be acting as the VAR's agent or quasi-agent would be disposed of if, as was also the case, the negotiation was not for an onward sale by the VAR, but the direct sale as principal by Autonomy for which Autonomy had always negotiated.

988. I have concluded that the role of Capax Discovery in VT16 (in its first incarnation) was not properly represented to the Audit Committee (or to Deloitte), and the fact that it was not gives rise to the inference that those responsible in Autonomy knew that the reality had to be disguised in order to obtain approval for the revenue recognition that was required.

989. That conclusion is fortified by at least one email: the one I have in mind was sent by Mr Hussain to Mr Egan and Mr Mooney dated 8 October 2010 stating that Capax Discovery were *"obviously… heavily involved"* which seems simply to be contrary to the facts. Such pretence invites enquiry as to why it was thought necessary. Of course, Mr Hussain might have offered a different interpretation had he given evidence: but he did not.

The "re-purposing" of VT16 and its second incarnation

990. The second aspect of VT16 of particular note concerns the steps taken by Autonomy, after Autonomy had made a different deal with Amgen and Autonomy wanted to set up a separate deal with BofA for the purchase of the same software as was covered by Capax Discovery's original VT16 purchase order, to ensure that Capax was not left "holding the bag" in respect of the payment obligation under the VT16 purchase order.

991. The need for such steps was particularly acute because (despite its overall value) Autonomy's direct sale to Amgen for a licence fee of $3.5 million left a considerable shortfall of some $5.5 million on the original VT16 deal (in which the licence fee was $9 million). Something had to be done if Capax Discovery was not to be "left on the hook" or "left holding the bag" for at least the shortfall, even if Autonomy accounted to it for the full amount of the revised Amgen deal: and in fact, under the direct deal between Autonomy and Amgen, Amgen was to pay the fees to Autonomy, not Capax Discovery. As the Claimants put it the question was:

> *"How, then, to provide for the payment of the $9.45 million Capax Discovery order?"*

992. Mr Baiocco's unchallenged evidence was that Autonomy decided to do what it first called a "swap":

> *"Mr Egan told me that Autonomy had decided that this transaction would be replaced with one relating to [BofA], in what I recall Mr Egan described as a "swap" deal involving the cancellation of our Amgen deal and its replacement with a BofA deal."*

993. This swap was dictated by Autonomy. The introduction of BofA was entirely at the instance of Autonomy. BofA was Autonomy's customer. Capax Discovery had not had any dealings with BofA regarding any potential sale of Autonomy software. Mr Baiocco's evidence to this effect was not challenged.

994. Mr Egan explained the *"re-purposing"* or "swap" in his witness statement in these terms:

> *"In January 2011, Mr. Hussain asked me to determine how payments that were to be made by Bank of America under our then-anticipated deal with Bank of America could be used to fund payments by the VARs to Autonomy on*

their "at risk" deals with Autonomy. This gave me an opportunity to solve the problem of getting money to Capax Discovery to allow it to satisfy its payment obligation under an "at risk" deal for Amgen (in the total sum of $9.45 million) as end-user done in Q3 2010. Autonomy drafted a letter for Capax in which Capax requested that its license to sell software to Amgen be converted to a license to sell software to Bank of America. The price remained the same. Capax then signed, and Autonomy approved, that request."

995. It seems clear that within Autonomy there was some uncertainty as to what this required and entailed. Mr J. Livius Guiao ("Mr Guiao"), an Autonomy lawyer who was tasked with preparing a draft of the letter that Mr Egan had in mind, sent the letter to Mr Chamberlain, under cover of an email dated 18 January 2011 copied to Mr Scott which stated:

"Attached is a draft letter from Capax to AUTN, requesting that we approve 'replacement' of the Amgen PO with a PO for BofA. Note, I left the amount blank, as I am not quite sure as to the overall structure of what we are doing."

996. Evidently, Mr Baiocco did not know quite what was happening either. On 25 January 2011, Mr Egan asked Mr Baiocco to sign and return the letter. The letter was dated 31 December 2010. Mr Egan said: "*Please sign, as is, and importantly scan vs fax*[82] *(i'm on a plane) and email return*". Mr Baiocco wrote back to Mr Egan seeking clarification as to the effect of the letter:

"So once I sign this.

I no longer owe Autonomy for Amgen/

I will still get the 950k sales referral fee?

I will then owe Autonomy 9.5 for B of A? This is on top of the deal we sold/did 12/31/10 for around 2 mil."

997. Thus, Mr Baiocco (who seems from the email hardly have been able to believe it) wanted assurances that Capax Discovery would no longer owe Autonomy and yet be paid the 10% MAF (i.e., "950K") for his Amgen purchase order. His reference to the $2 million 31 December deal was a reference to Capax Discovery's Merrill Lynch purchase order (VT21) described later. His understanding at that time was that his obligation to Autonomy would then be in respect of the BofA transaction, rather than the Amgen transaction: not that it appears that he minded, so long as any risk was removed and his commission payments were safe.

998. Mr Egan responded, "*No you will not owe au for bofa. I will call you when I land. Wait till then.*" Later that day, Mr Chamberlain clarified the position in an email to Mr Egan and Mr Guiao:

[82] The Claimants ascribed this stipulation to an intention to backdate: *"The problem with a fax, of course, is that it would immediately have revealed the fact that the letter was backdated."*

> "*Livius is correct, They are repurposing. They will absolutely owe the cash for the $9.45m. They are selling to BofA instead of Amgen but the $9.45m must be paid.*"

999. On 26 January 2011, Mr Baiocco sent Mr Egan some questions about the proposed swap which also demonstrate both his focus on his commission and confusion as to the nature of the legal position as regards Capax Discovery's obligations:

> *"Upon signature Autonomy will provide me the letter of release on Amgen (ala Kraft) immediately? We will get the PO for the commission/payable in 2 weeks or whatever you stated.*
>
> *We will get a PO from Microtek for the full amount of both deals for B of A. We will get commission for B of A signed on 12/31. Po?*
>
> *Why the 30 days payment guarantee?"*

1000. Mr Baiocco then signed and returned the letter that Autonomy had drafted for him. On 26 January 2011, Mr Egan forwarded a copy of the signed version to Mr Scott and Mr Chamberlain. The signed version, as noted above, bears a date of 31 December 2010, even though it was only drafted in mid-January 2011 and signed on 26 January 2011. It stated:

> *"As you know, Capax Discovery LLC ("Capax") and Autonomy, Inc. ("Autonomy'') are parties to that certain Value added Reseller Agreement dated as of May, 2009 (the "Agreement"). Pursuant to such Agreement, Capax submitted to Autonomy a purchase order dated September 30, 2010, relating to Capax' resell of certain Autonomy products to Amgen, Inc. (the "Amgen Purchase Order").*
>
> *Capax hereby requests that Autonomy agree to cancellation of the Amgen Purchase Order, subject to Autonomy's acceptance of this letter, which shall serve as a purchase order from Capax for Autonomy products to be provided to Capax by Autonomy and resold by Capax to Bank of America, N.A. The amount payable for such Autonomy products shall be US $9,450,000.00, invoiced immediately and due and payable from Capax within thirty (30) days from the date of such invoice. For avoidance of doubt, this letter shall serve as a purchase order from Capax in the aforementioned amount, which shall be governed by the terms of the Agreement.*
>
> *Please sign below and return an executed version of this letter to Capax, to acknowledge agreement by Autonomy to the terms set forth above."*

1001. It was put to Mr Egan in cross-examination that the substitution of BofA as end-user in place of Amgen "*took place in accordance with that contractual term*", namely the term of the Capax Discovery/Amgen purchase order that permitted Capax Discovery to sell the licence to an alternate licensee if no end-user deal eventuated within 90 days. In my view, this letter cannot be regarded as involving an exercise by Capax Discovery of its contractual right under its Amgen purchase order dated 30 September 2010.

1002. The provision in the Amgen purchase order which gave Capax Discovery a qualified right to sell the software licence to a different end-user was in the following terms:

> *"Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, in the event the [sic] Amgen fails to issue a contract, award, or order within ninety (90) days of the Effective Date by which it licenses the Autonomy Software Products and procures the Maintenance Services otherwise described hereunder, VAR shall have the right, upon written notice to Autonomy, to sublicense the Autonomy Software Products and distribute the Maintenance Services to an alternative end-user ("Alternate Licensee"), subject to the terms hereof ... Notwithstanding the foregoing, VAR's right to sublicense and distribute the Autonomy Software Products and Maintenance Services to an Alternate Licensee shall expire twelve (12) months from the Effective Date hereof, and VAR's failure to sublicense the Autonomy Software Products and distribute the Maintenance Services to an Alternate Licensee during said period shall not relieve VAR of its obligations hereunder."*

1003. The purchase order thus posited a situation where Capax Discovery, having failed to persuade Amgen to buy, might, after 90 days, find someone else willing to buy the licensed software. What happened here was very different. In summary:

(1) During the initial 90-day period, Capax Discovery made no attempt to sell to Amgen. Instead, during that period, Autonomy sought to sell to Amgen.

(2) Indeed, Autonomy was successful in achieving a sale of the licensed software to Amgen during the initial 90-day period, resulting in the direct Autonomy/Amgen deal dated 21 December 2010, albeit for a much lower licence fee;

(3) Autonomy then found an alternative buyer of Autonomy software, namely BofA.

(4) Autonomy drafted a request (backdated to 31 December 2010) from Capax Discovery to cancel the Amgen purchase order and treat the letter as a new purchase order for end-user BofA at the same price and for the same products.

(5) Though Mr Baiocco was not sure what it all meant, Capax Discovery followed Autonomy's directions and signed and sent that request.

1004. The Defendants did not fully explain their attempts to present the "swap" or "repurposing" of VT16 as effected pursuant to the provision mentioned. It was not clear to me what point Dr Lynch thereby sought to make. I have deduced that it was in order to present the substitution of BofA to Deloitte and the Audit Committee as being at the instance and pursuant to a legal entitlement on the part of Capax Discovery, rather than as an *ad hoc* means of funnelling funds to Capax Discovery to enable it to pay Autonomy. It appears to have been of importance to Deloitte that it should so appear, and it seems that Deloitte accepted the presentation: see further below. In my judgment, the fact that such disguise was perceived necessary tells against the Defendants. The reality was that far from involving the exercise by Capax Discovery of its contractual rights, this episode involved Mr Egan honouring the assurance he had given to Mr Baiocco at the outset: namely, that in the absence of an end-user deal that made Capax Discovery whole, then

Autonomy would find a different buyer of the software and slot Capax Discovery into that different deal. BofA was, in Mr Egan's language, the "*backfill*" to ensure that Capax Discovery was not left "*holding the bag*" in relation to its Amgen purchase order.

1005. The mechanism thus adopted met its objective of covering Capax Discovery's exposure and safeguarding the recognition of revenue from VT16 in its first incarnation. The broad effect was that Autonomy proceeded with its smaller sale to Amgen, repackaged the software sold under VT16 and sold it to BofA as part of the composite deal, and thereby held Capax Discovery harmless.

1006. Thus, in the event:

(1) As explained below, Autonomy ultimately concluded the larger composite deal with BofA on 9 February 2011 and designated MicroTech as the payee under that deal. On 11 February 2011, Mr Guiao then drew up the invoice for MicroTech to send BofA, as well as (among other things) a purchase order for MicroTech to submit to Capax Discovery.

(2) BofA paid \$19 million to MicroTech, which then paid \$9 million to Capax Discovery (the remainder going to DiscoverTech).

(3) On 4 March 2011, Mr Baiocco wrote to Mr Guiao stating:

> *"WE have received the monies into our account from the B of A deal. Can we please get all the necessary paperwork in place to close this out?*
>
> *1 Executed letter we sent requesting replacement of Amgen purchase with BOFA.*
>
> *2 relief letter for 450k you have received direct.*
>
> *3 our sales referral commission letter for 945k."*

(4) The reference to a "*450k*" was to the support and maintenance component of the original Amgen purchase order, as to which Capax Discovery was to receive "*relief*", i.e. release of indebtedness. Mr Baiocco also wanted Capax Discovery's \$945K "*referral commission*" in respect of the deal even though Capax Discovery had made no referral.

(5) On 7 March 2011, Autonomy Inc issued a credit note to Capax Discovery, dated 28 February 2011, for \$450,000. Mr Baiocco queried whether the credit note should refer to BofA rather than Amgen. Upon being reassured by Mr Scott, Mr Baiocco asked whether he would get a copy of the "*executed amgen BOFA swap letter back*". Mr Scott raised that issue with Mr Kanter, asking whether it was "*OK to send back to him?*" Mr Kanter's reply was, "*If Sushovan is happy with the transaction and the accounting treatment, the language of the letter is fine*". The signed swap letter was then sent to Mr Baiocco. Evidently, therefore, both Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain – as well as Mr Scott, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Egan – were kept informed of what was happening *vis-à-vis* Capax Discovery.

(6) On 15 March 2011, Mr Scott informed Mr Chamberlain and Mr Hussain that Capax Discovery had not yet paid the $9 million due on the backfilled-BofA purchase order and said "*I think that they may be holding it up because they want a MAF associated with the Amgen/BofA transaction*".

(7) On 18 March 2011, Mr Chamberlain emailed Mr Egan, Mr Hussain and Mr Scott, subject "*Capax*", to say, "*Need to resolve today. They owe $9m on BofA deal which is stalled. Joel – did MT pay Capax or do MT still hold the BofA funds?*". Mr Scott replied that MicroTech had paid Capax Discovery, and Mr Egan added that "*Capax wants to pay us*". Mr Egan then suggested that the reason for non-payment was that Mr Baiocco "*does not have clear instructions on whether to deduct MAF or expect separately*". Mr Chamberlain replied by email which Mr Egan then forwarded to Mr Hussain:

> *"Stouffer – let's be very clear here. I have no wish other than getting my $9m, I have not agreed any MAF.*
>
> *Any MAF will only have been discussed with John by you and it will need SH to be onboard. From my perspective he owes me the $9m."*

(8) In his email dated 24 March 2011 to Mr Chamberlain, Mr Baiocco stated "*We have received the monies from the BofA deal. I will work on getting them to you.*" Mr Egan responded the same day, "*Please send us invoice for the 10% of the original invoice amount and please wire the gross BofA amount to us. We will turn around your invoice immediately*".

(9) Mr Chamberlain drew the issue to Mr Hussain's attention: "*need you to approve the $945k commission to Capax for BofA/Amgen. As I indicated earlier he is holding our $9 million payment pending resolution of this issue*". The Claimants submitted that the oddity of Capax Discovery, which had effectively been relieved of a very substantial obligation and did nothing whatever to effectuate either the Amgen or the BofA transaction, nonetheless holding out for a near $1million marketing assistance fee would be glaring, if one were not aware of the "*handshake agreement*". However, Mr Baiocco was doing nothing more than insisting that the handshake agreement be honoured; and it was.

(10) Capax Discovery then paid the $9 million – which Capax Discovery had received from MicroTech – to Autonomy in discharge of its obligations to pay licence fees of $9 million under what had originally been the Amgen purchase order. It was not left "*holding the bag*".

1007. On the Claimants' case, that was a principal[83] point of the manoeuvring. They submitted that, far from involving an exercise by Capax Discovery of its contractual rights, the episode demonstrates the extent to which Mr Egan and those concerned within Autonomy's management would go to honour the assurance that underlay all the impugned VAR sales that the VAR would not be left "holding the bag".

[83] See below for the other main objective served which was to support the appearance of the software covered by the VT16 purchase order being sold by Capax Discovery to BofA, whereas in fact Autonomy sold the same software directly to BofA.

1008. The Defendants accepted that the wording of the *"re-purposing"* letter was *"clumsy, in the way that it described a cancellation of the original purchase, and the treatment of the letter as a fresh purchase order"*: but, they countered that the fact remained that Capax Discovery was entitled to redeploy to a different end-user under the original purchase order, and the letter should be treated as recording the implementation of that right, and not the cancellation of the purchase order itself (which was never intended).

1009. Dr Lynch explained this further in the course of his cross-examination, emphasising that nothing that was done affected the recognition of revenue at the point of sale to the VAR:

> *"My understanding…is that the original deal wasn't cancelled and the revenue was left in the original area.*
>
> *What happens in this deal is that the American office doesn't understand this process under IFRS, and so it produces this form of letter. But actually the auditors completely understand the process that's gone on here and it's mentioned in the audit committee pack and explained to the audit committee.*
>
> *The basic principle – I don't know what the technicalities are about whether you consider a PO cancelled or not, but the basic principle is the deal is not cancelled. So the deal – the transaction which was done at the time with Capax, that revenue stays in the books. What actually happens is that the software – and this was an explicit term of the deal – is actually dealt somewhere else, but there's no new revenue recognised or put in the books. So there's no actual transaction as far as Autonomy is concerned.*
>
> *The transaction as far as Autonomy is concerned was with the sale to Capax originally and all that is happening is that Capax stock is being given to MicroTech/Bank of America. As I say, it's covered in quite a lot of detail, I understand in the audit committee pack from Deloitte.*
>
> *Q. Capax became involved in the Bank of America deal because Mr Egan had used Bank of America as backfill to ensure Capax got paid for its Amgen purchase order?*
>
> *A. I wouldn't use the word "backfill". What it is is that Capax had stock and Mr Egan introduced the Bank of America opportunity and they could sell that stock to Bank of America, which was written explicitly in their deal.*
>
> *…*
>
> *Q. In fact 9 million gets paid to Capax as the proceeds of the Bank of America deal and that 9 million is then used to discharge Capax's debt under the purchase order for a different customer, Amgen, correct?*
>
> *A. Correct, but as Deloitte make absolutely clear, Autonomy's deal is with the reseller, the reseller is the customer. What then happens to that software, especially if there's a clause that explicitly allows it to be sold to anyone, is really not Autonomy's business."*

1010. I address Deloitte's involvement later. In the meantime, it seems to me that Dr Lynch put forward a well-worked summary of the theoretical mechanics, premised on the notion that the true intention which was lost in the inaccurate drafting by the American office of the *"re-purposing"* letter was that Capax Discovery should continue, after the *"re-purposing"* as before, to be liable to Autonomy under the original Amgen purchase order, and not under the substituted BofA deal. However, the practical realities undid the theoretical analysis.

1011. As I have explained above, the reality is that Capax Discovery never had anything to do with BofA, either before or after the "repurposing". The deal was simply fed to it: Mr Baiocco simply had to sign and willingly did so once satisfied that Capax Discovery's obligations had been dealt with and it was going to receive the nearly $1 million as a MAF. There is nothing to support Dr Lynch's apparent belief that BofA's requirements were satisfied out of stock held by Capax Discovery, and there is no evidence of delivery by Capax Discovery to BofA. As noted previously, software is easily and infinitely capable of being reproduced; and Autonomy simply had to press a button on Automater to deliver what BofA required. Dr Lynch's analysis did not address the reality or the true intention, which was that Capax Discovery should be and was released from liability because it was (albeit indirectly) relieved of it by Autonomy.

1012. In summary as to this aspect, in my judgment:

(1) The idea and impetus for the *"re-purposing"* came from Autonomy, and it was Autonomy which provided a ready-made end-user deal into which Capax Discovery was insinuated.

(2) This achieved two objectives. One was to hold Capax Discovery harmless from exposure in the Amgen deal. The other was that in its second incarnation, VT16 could be (as it was) used to present the sale on to BofA of the software described in the VT16 purchase order as a sale by Capax Discovery, whereas in truth it was a direct sale by Autonomy (see further below).

(3) The suggestion that the "re-purposing" was effected pursuant to the exercise by Capax Discovery of a right under the original purchase order was made for presentational reasons but lacked any basis in fact or law.

(4) The fact that a false presentation was perceived to be necessary, even though in the particular circumstances there was, to my mind, a more basic justification for taking steps to release Capax Discovery in respect of a purchase order (in that by its direct sale to Amgen, Autonomy had cut out Capax Discovery and destroyed the prospect of the intended end-user by reference to which Capax Discovery had issued its purchase order), is a measure of the concern of those involved within Autonomy about Deloitte's warnings that any pattern of direct deals would be likely to upset revenue recognition of VAR deals, and the determination to adopt a mechanism which did not fit and reveal that pattern.

(5) Mr Baiocco's acceptance of a solution which also appeared to secure the MAF which was the real focus of his interest is an illustration of the passive and subservient role played by Capax Discovery and the other 'friendly' VARs in all the impugned VAR transactions.

MAF

1013. As regards the MAF, on 25 March 2011, Mr Chamberlain informed Mr Hussain: "*Good news. The $9m is in. Need to get approval on the MAF now. Please advise"*. Mr Hussain replied, copying Mr Kanter, "*Approved. Per our agreement 10% on the invoiced amount after cash is received. I spoke to stouffer"*.

1014. An internal discussion then followed between Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Egan as to whether the correct amount of the MAF was $900,000 (10% of the $9 million licence fee) or $945,000 (10% of the total amount originally payable under the $9.45 million Amgen purchase order, albeit that Autonomy subsequently credited Capax Discovery for the $450,000). On 29 March 2011, Mr Hussain informed Mr Chamberlain (copying Mr Egan and Mr Kanter), "*Stouffer will be sending an email for confirmation which andy and i will need to approve but it is $900k*".

1015. On 29 March 2011, Mr Egan wrote to Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain regarding "*Final MAF for Capax*", stating:

> *"I wanted to submit for approval the MAF to Capax for their involvement in the BofA deal. It is a standard 10% fee identical to the terms an [sic: as] past MAFs paid for similar channel involvement and value add for a deal in which they added considerable value.*
>
> *We received payment in full early as well."*

1016. This was, at best, formulaic. The *"channel involvement"* was a euphemism for signing a contract and awaiting release from it, with no active participation by the VAR in the end-user deal. Nevertheless, Mr Hussain gave his approval for the MAF the same day (29 March 2011), stating, "*Ok We have received the cash from capax*". Mr Chamberlain forwarded Mr Hussain's approval to Ms Harris, noting "*Need approval from Andy*". Mr Kanter must have given approval because, on 1 April 2011, ASL paid the $900,000 fee.

1017. Some months later, on 14 July 2011, Alex Jackson of Deloitte asked Mr Chamberlain about the invoice for the $900,000 fee: "*Do you have a bit more info on this, exactly what Capax did/will do in respect of marketing etc ... and where this is living on the balance sheet/P&L*". Mr Chamberlain's response was, "*Believe this is included in marketing fees. Relates to their assistance on managing the BofA relationship*". This was untrue. Capax Discovery had done nothing to manage Autonomy's BofA relationship.

1018. The Audit Committee was informed simply that *"VARs from time to time provide goods and services to Autonomy in areas such as marketing assistance…During the quarter Autonomy has paid Capax….$0.9 million for marketing assistance services in managing the Bank of America relationship…".* Mr Bloomer told me that he would have assumed that Capax Discovery did provide some form of services and was being paid this fee in accordance with the master agreement between Capax Discovery and Autonomy. The assumption was natural; but false.

1019. Although he maintained that he was not asked to approve these payments, and would not have known about them, Dr Lynch nevertheless rejected any suggestion that the MAF payments were improper:

> *"Q. I suggest you knew it was improper to pay Capax a fee here which was being paid to enable Autonomy to recognise revenue prematurely.*
>
> *A. No. And the other thing that we mustn't lose sight of in all of this is these are real deals. So this software is sold, it's sold through a reseller. Ultimately it ends up with an end-user who install it and thousands and thousands of people across the world use it, and we get paid against the revenue. And so there's absolutely nothing improper here. The fact that the structure of these deals is that the onsale is done at the same price as the purchase means that the MAF model is used to give the reseller in effect the margin that keeps them part of the ecosystem and gives them a reason to do business with Autonomy. Every software company I know in the world runs that model just as they run the mark-up model as well."*

1020. This defence of MAFs in general was stated with apparent conviction; but it focused on general practice in contexts where VARs were actually performing a service, not on the particular case, where they had performed none. It did not explain why it was thought necessary to pretend that Capax Discovery had played a part in the BofA deal which it had not played, added *"considerable value"* when it added none, provided marketing services which it had not provided, secured a deal which it had done nothing at all to negotiate or secure, and arranged payment to Autonomy *"early"* which had nothing to do with it.

1021. Mr Egan's justification for paying a MAF on the basis that Capax Discovery had *"added considerable value"* was plainly contrived. As Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain would have known, Capax Discovery had not been involved in the BofA deal. It had added no value, let alone "*considerable value*", to the BofA deal. The fact that Autonomy received payment "*early*" had nothing to do with Capax Discovery: the timing of payment was the result of Autonomy's direct deal with BofA, which (via MicroTech) put Capax Discovery in funds to pay Autonomy.

1022. Dr Lynch sought to sweep this aside, much as he had swept aside a similar pretence in the context of VT10 (Capax Discovery/FSA) as having *"made too much of the language of the emails"*, but he offered no answers and ultimately relied on his assertion that he was not personally involved anyway. I would tend to accept that 'gilding the lily' in justifying large commission payments is a commonplace of commercial life, but in the context, and all the circumstances here, it is a further illustration of a disturbing culture within the management of Autonomy and an unsettling and unsatisfactory approach to disclosure on the part of Dr Lynch himself.

Backdating?

1023. I have considered whether the backdating of the *"re-purposing"* letter may be another illustration of this culture. The Defendants did not seek to contradict the fact that the *"re-purposing"* letter stated on its face an incorrect date (31 December 2010); and it is not disputed that the letter was not drafted until 18 January 2011.

1024. The Claimants submitted that the backdating was intentional, and in a somewhat obscure passage of their closing submissions, appeared to suggest that when asking Mr Baiocco to sign and return the letter on 25 January 2011 Mr Egan's covering email, in stating *"Please sign, as is, and importantly scan vs fax (i'm on plane) and email return",* sought to disguise the fact, suggesting that the *"problem with a fax, of course, is that it would immediately have revealed the fact that the letter was backdated."*

1025. The Defendants did not accept the suggestion that this was dishonest backdating (as distinct from an error). They pointed out (*inter alia*) that (a) the letter was drafted by Mr Guiao, an Autonomy lawyer in the US and when Mr Guiao sent the draft to Mr Egan it already bore the date of 31 December 2010, (b) the reason why Mr Egan asked Mr Baiocco to scan rather than fax the signed version was the reason stated in Mr Egan's email: he was on a plane (and presumably could not receive a fax), and (c) the dating of the letter was irrelevant to revenue recognition: the revenue in respect of this sale had already been recognised on the Q3 2010 sale to Amgen and was not going to be recognised again. Further, backdating would have implicated both Mr Guiao (a lawyer against whom no suggestion of impropriety was made) and Mr Baiocco: and Mr Baiocco was clear in his testimony that he never thought he was engaged in anything fraudulent (or criminal). Further, no reason for backdating was suggested.

1026. I am not satisfied that there is sufficient evidence of intentional backdating of the *"re-purposing letter"*. That is so even though it is also a relevant consideration that in other contexts (and in particular, the Vatican Library deal and the Prisa deal) I have concluded that management did backdate documents dishonestly, Mr Egan admitting to remorse and anxiety in that regard.

Deloitte's understanding of the transaction

1027. As is apparent also from his evidence as quoted in paragraph 1009 above, Dr Lynch placed some considerable reliance on the fact that Deloitte were well aware of the salient features both of the original VAR sale and its *"re-purposing"* and were content that it did not affect revenue recognition at the point of the original sale to the VAR for the purposes (then) of the anticipated Amgen deal.

1028. The Defendants' case in more detail was that:

(1) Deloitte reviewed the original sale to Capax Discovery for end-user Amgen, took notice of the clause permitting a change of end-user, and were satisfied with the revenue recognition, treating Capax Discovery as the customer.[84]

(2) They were aware of the switch to enable Capax Discovery to sell to BofA instead of Amgen, as apparent from Deloitte's Q1 2011 report to the Audit Committee:

> *"We note that a licence previously sold to Capax Global in Q3 2010 for onsale to Amgen ($9.5 million), has been re-assigned in*

[84]It should be noted that the Claimants appeared to be advancing a separate complaint that the software in the Q3 2010 Amgen transaction was the same as in an earlier Q2 2010 Amgen transaction. This was the subject of an assumption that Mr Welham was asked to make. This proposition was factually incorrect. The correct position was explored with Mr Welham. He accepted that the assumption was wrong and that the conclusion that he had reached on the basis of the false assumption needed to be revised. This point was not taken up with Dr Lynch in his cross-examination.

the quarter to enable a sale by Capax Global to Bank of America, as part of the large Q4 2010 revenue deal previously reported to the Audit Committee. No revenue has been recognised on the re-assignment of this licence and the outstanding receivable has been received during the quarter."

(3) Deloitte were given a breakdown so that they understood how the Amgen-BofA repurposing fitted in with the other amounts in the large BofA deal, in which Capax Discovery was not the only reseller involved.

(4) As explained at greater length below, Deloitte also specifically understood and represented in the Q4 2010 Audit Committee report, (a) that the BofA deal was going through MicroTech as the lead reseller which would be the direct seller to BofA, (b) that as of Q4 2010 there was not yet a BofA purchase order, and (c) that the same software that would ultimately be purchased by BofA had been sold to both Capax Discovery and DiscoverTech.

(5) Deloitte were also aware of payment of the MAF to Capax Discovery, following the repurposing of VT16. Deloitte understood the commercial position, and the revenue remained as recognised under the Q3 2010 agreement. Deloitte were satisfied that the revenue was properly booked.

1029. In short, the Defendants sought to stress that Deloitte knew all the material features of the transaction: and (they added) more than Dr Lynch could ever have known. Yet, contrary to the Claimants' case, Deloitte had no problem with the transaction, or the recognition of revenue. On the Defendants' case, if Deloitte were the Defendants' conscience, it would be clear.

1030. The approval of Deloitte, if given on a properly informed basis, is obviously, in this context as in all other contexts calling for accountancy assessment and judgment, a powerful point in the Defendants' favour.

1031. However, the Claimants sought to turn the point against the Defendants by demonstrating critical areas in which Deloitte (and the Audit Committee) were misinformed or misled, arguing that the impropriety (as they saw it) of the transactions was easily illustrated by what was kept back or misrepresented, and at the same time undermined reliance on Deloitte's approval. I have concluded that there is force in the Claimants' point both in theory and in application.

1032. As to sub-paragraph (1) of paragraph 1028 above and the initial VAR sale (VT16 itself), I have already referred in paragraphs 981 to 989 above to the way that the Audit Committee were misled by Deloitte's report to the Audit Committee for Q3 2010, and in that context inferred that the report was based on misleading information provided to Deloitte by Autonomy. In my judgment, that is sufficient to undermine the Defendants' position that they did, and were entitled to, rely on Deloitte's approval of the transaction.

1033. In the particular context of the *"re-purposing"* or reincarnation of VT16, the Claimants contended that both Deloitte and the Audit Committee were materially misled. Although told of the money flows for the omnibus or composite BofA deal, the Claimants contended that neither Deloitte nor the Audit Committee were told that all of the VAR deals, including the Amgen deal, had been replaced by direct deals between Autonomy

and BofA without any participation on the part of the VARs (except, in the case of Capax Discovery, signature on a pre-prepared letter). They drew my attention to Mr Hussain's memorandum to the Audit Committee for Q1 2011 (copied to Dr Lynch) which made no mention of the direct deal that had been concluded during that quarter. It simply stated:

> *"In q4 the Bank of America deal ($21m) went through two 8A partners and £ $19.3m cash has been received."*

1034. Mr Welham's evidence was that Deloitte did not appreciate that VT16 (and also the other component parts of the overall BofA deal, VT21, VT23 and VT24) *"had been replaced by a direct deal between Autonomy and BofA"*.[85] Mr Hussain's email as quoted above certainly did not reveal that.

1035. The picture is less clear in respect of the overall BofA deal. An email dated 15 April 2011 from Mr Chamberlain to Mr Welham had attached a copy of the direct agreement between Autonomy and BofA of 8 February 2011, which Mr Chamberlain had provided in response to a request from Mr Welham asking for *"the final agreement for the Bank of America deal…"* to assist in his efforts to *"work back to cash receipts, what we recorded in Q4 as revs and taking account of the old Amgen deal with Capax"*. Further, in the same email thread, Mr Chamberlain set out the amounts to be paid to the VARs concerned in respect of the BofA deal (including $9m to Capax Discovery).

1036. The Defendants contended, and Mr Miles put to Mr Welham in cross-examination, that having been provided with the BofA agreement, and the relevant numbers, Mr Welham had the information disclosing the fact of a direct deal, even if he had not appreciated its full import at the time. The Defendants took from all this that Mr Chamberlain and Autonomy would legitimately have considered they had properly disclosed the arrangements and were entitled to rely on Deloitte's approval: it was not their fault if Deloitte misunderstood the position.

1037. Mr Welham agreed that he had been provided with this, but nevertheless maintained that the information did not, to his mind at the time or now, disclose a direct deal in its true sense. By this I took him to mean that it did not disclose that in reality the VARs were entirely by-passed by Autonomy, and received payment to make good the deal they had lost, rather than for a contract by them for onward sale. Mr Welham acknowledged that the agreement between Autonomy and BofA included a *"designated payee"* provision, which provided an explanation of the payments to the VARs (as he also acknowledged); but at the time he had taken the payments to connote that the VARs were actually involved in negotiating and concluding the sales and would supply the software to Bank of America via MicroTech, so as to distinguish the position from true direct deals (an example of which, he suggested, was the Capax Discovery/Kraft deal).

[85] In Deloitte's Defence in the FRC proceedings, Deloitte's understanding was stated to be that *"DiscoverTech and Capax were to sell these licences to Microtech, which would sell them to Bank of America. In this way, Bank of America would be able to contract with a s8A accredited business (MicroTech). In addition, in Q1 2011, Capax sold to Bank of America the $9m licence it had acquired from Autonomy on 30 September 2010 (at that time, for onward sale to Amgen). No additional revenue was of course recognised by Autonomy in respect of Capax's sale to Bank of America. An agreement was signed between Autonomy and Bank of America on 8 February 2011, which contained a provision that enabled Bank of America to submit a purchase order to Microtech, as intended. In due course, Autonomy received the due payment from the relevant VARs (Capax and DiscoverTech)."*

1038. A further factor to be taken into account is the evidence of Mr Bloomer as to the Audit Committee's understanding. He too assumed that it was the VARs who would supply the software and that their deals with Autonomy remained in place.[86] He did not understand that Autonomy was negotiating and contracting directly with BofA to the exclusion of the VARs. He made the further point that in any event a direct sale did not:

> *"rule out the revenue recognition at the original point as long as you meet the relevant accounting tests at that point and have the right to the goods passed, its collectability and so on…"*

1039. That is a useful reminder, as it seems to me, that the ultimate question is whether risk and control passed under the original sale by Autonomy to the VAR: a subsequent direct sale does not alter revenue recognition unless the fact and circumstances of it demonstrate that the original sale had no substance and/or that the sale to the VAR did not result in any substantive change in the way Autonomy conducted itself with respect to the software it had 'sold'. Looked at in that way, it seems to me that what Mr Welham and Deloitte really meant was that they did not understand the agreement between Autonomy and BofA to signify that the original sales to the VARs were a dead letter, because they continued to assume that the VARs would be the suppliers of the software to BofA (under what was, in effect, an umbrella agreement reached by Autonomy).

1040. In my judgment, the question is not whether Deloitte and the Audit Committee should have understood from the material with which they were provided that Autonomy had dealt with BofA as if its original sales to the VARs could be ignored. It is whether they understood that, contrary to what would be the natural assumptions, (a) Autonomy, in making the various agreements, never had any intention that the VARs should have any say in dealings thereafter with the software licences apparently sold to them; (b) that in reality, the onward sale to the end-user of the software nominally sold to the VARs was exclusively negotiated and contracted by Autonomy with full effective control, and not the VARs, and (c) that the VARs received not the proceeds of onward sale, but compensation from Autonomy in lieu of it; in other words, that software was parked with VARs and dealt with and disposed of by Autonomy.

1041. In my judgment, Deloitte and the Audit Committee were likely to and did make the assumption that the VARs were in control of the sale process and were in a real sense the sellers and suppliers of the licences required first by Amgen and then by BofA in its place, and were misled accordingly.

VT21: Capax Discovery/Merrill Lynch: Q4 2010

1042. VT21 was, notionally at least, a VAR transaction with Capax Discovery for end-user Merrill Lynch, an affiliated company of BofA, for a licence fee of $1,830,600 (which included a two-year support and maintenance fee). It too was a constituent part of the big overall BofA deal: that was the real deal. The purchase order was, as usual, issued under the June 2009 Capax Discovery VAR Agreement, summarised in paragraph 60 above.

[86] Unlike the usual position, it seems likely that because of the need for an 8A supplier (which was the reason for MicroTech's introduction as *"the lead reseller who has the overall contract with Bank of America")* Deloitte thought that MicroTech would actually be supplying the software as an approved 8A supplier to BofA. (There is no doubt that BofA accepted MicroTech as an 8A supplier.)

1043. The Claimants' criticisms of VT21 and their contention that it lacked any real substance focused principally on the following:

(1) The extreme haste of the transaction, showing that Capax Discovery had no input into, or time to measure the risk of, the transaction before signing, and was simply given a purchase order prepared by Autonomy to sign;

(2) The fact that Capax Discovery was not intended or expected to, and did not, have any involvement at the time, or make any contribution thereafter;

(3) The fact that Capax Discovery did not meet any of the instalment dates for payment, was never pressed to pay on the relevant dates, and in the end, made no payment to Autonomy at all, before ultimately being released from its payment obligation altogether;

(4) The fact that the software apparently sold to Capax Discovery for onward sale was always intended to be sold directly by Autonomy to BofA when the BofA sale which had been broken into smaller pieces was reconstituted;

(5) The fact that Capax Discovery's liability under the original Merrill Lynch purchase order was released, and that such release was effected as part of what the Claimants depicted as a concerted *"clean-up exercise"* that occurred after the HP acquisition was announced and whilst *"crucially"* (they said) Autonomy remained in control of its finance function in Q3 2011 (which during HP's later investigations became known, and which the Claimants labelled, as the *"Dark Period"*)[87];

(6) The payment of a MAF of $183,060 for "assistance" which Capax Discovery had never in fact provided, and which the Claimants submitted could only have been for Capax Discovery's willingness to act as a placeholder so as to enable Autonomy, wrongfully, to recognise revenue on what, in this instance, was a revenue acceleration transaction.

1044. As to (1) in the preceding paragraph, VT21 was one of the two transactions (the other being VT20, as described above) which Mr Baiocco said he found *"particularly memorable"* (see paragraph 843 above) because he first learned of a potential BofA/Merrill Lynch transaction on the afternoon on New Year's Eve when staying at a hotel in Pittsburgh to watch a professional hockey game. He recalled that he had signed purchase orders prepared by Autonomy for each of the two transactions shortly before midnight that very last day of the quarter (Q4 2010), New Year's Eve. As regards VT21, there can have been no time for Capax Discovery to assess the prospective end-user sale, what the software comprised (which was Zantaz Supervisor S6) and what opportunities for servicing it might offer, or whether, and if so how, it could assist or add any value at all as a VAR. The Claimants submitted that this, together with Autonomy's own frantic resort to Capax Discovery, demonstrated clearly the pattern they asserted, and the true character of the entire transaction as a 'placeholder' arrangement involving no real sale, no substantive transfer of risk, and the substantive retention by Autonomy of the managerial control of the goods sold.

[87] Mr Baiocco's unchallenged evidence was that in the period from August to September 2011Autonomy issued credit notes to Capax Discovery totalling $21.6 million.

1045. As to (3) in paragraph 1043 above, Mr Baiocco's evidence, which was not challenged, was that though Autonomy did invoice Capax Discovery, Capax Discovery did not pay any of the fees stated in the Merrill Lynch purchase order on the instalment dates, or at all. The Claimants submitted that this further demonstrated the lack of substance and the real attributes of a substantive sale.

1046. As to (4) in paragraph 1043 above, I have already explained that, with the *"repurposed"* VT16, and also VT23 and VT24 (which I describe later), the quartet of VAR deals and the superimposition of MicroTech, were all pre-packaged *"smaller pieces"* of the overall BofA deal (see paragraphs 965 to 974 above). In each case, the software notionally sold was parked with the VAR awaiting onward sale to BofA by Autonomy under a direct deal. That left each VAR with no autonomy, no control, and nothing to do.

1047. As to (5) in paragraph 1043 above, the Claimants contended that it was not until 26 August 2011 that Mr Chamberlain informed Ms Ku that "*we need to credit the below invoices as we have now invoiced directly*" and referred to the two invoices issued under the Capax Discovery/Merrill Lynch purchase order. The same day, Autonomy issued two credit notes for $915,300 each to Capax Discovery, thereby cancelling the entirety of the amount stated to be due under the Merrill Lynch purchase order. Mr Scott sent copies of the credit memos to Mr Baiocco that day. The Claimants depicted all this as plainly improper, done to "clean up" Autonomy's accounts in the period of time following the announcement of the HP acquisition on 18 August 2011 during which Autonomy retained control of its accounting function and was safe from scrutiny because it was not subject to quarterly review in Q3 2011 either by Deloitte or by the Audit Committee.

1048. The Defendants sought to meet these criticisms of VT21 on the same grounds as in other impugned VAR transactions and rejected as irrelevant and misplaced the dark interpretation of its aftermath urged by the Claimants. They contended that:

(1) The introduction of a VAR at a late stage when an end-user sale stalled at a late stage was not objectionable, provided the VAR went on risk and that risk was not qualified or negated by side agreement or understanding. The Defendants' position in this, as in every one of the impugned VAR transactions, was that the VAR (in this case, Capax Discovery) was indeed on risk: the VAR agreement unequivocally stated so, and Mr Baiocco accepted that Capax Discovery was on risk and signed audit confirmations which he provided to Deloitte on 15 January, 6 April and 12 July 2011 expressly confirming Capax Discovery's liability, that the invoices were proper and due, and that there were no *"side letters or other agreements"*.

(2) Mr Baiocco also confirmed in cross-examination a statement in the Goldberg Segalla letter (see paragraphs 2020 to 2029 in the main body of the judgment) making clear that he regarded the risk as attenuated by the consideration that Autonomy would not want Capax Discovery to go to the wall because Capax was a *"major service and support provider to Autonomy's clients."*

(3) Non-payment did not signify or evidence a side agreement or understanding: simply commercial forbearance on the part of Autonomy. In any event, such post-transaction events did not alter the quality of the VAR transaction or undermine the decision made at the time to recognise revenue, which furthermore, Deloitte approved.

(4) The credit notes issued in August 2011 were justified: they reflected the reality that the Zantaz S6 software purchased by Capax Discovery under the purchase order for resale to Merrill Lynch/BofA had in the event been sold by Autonomy to BofA directly under the arrangements described above and which had been reviewed and approved by Deloitte. The Defendants clarified that it had originally been contemplated that BofA would pay for that software immediately and that its payment would flow through to Capax Discovery via MicroTech. In the event, however, BofA were not willing to pay immediately since they regarded the S6 software as an extension to a licence, which should not be invoiced until a later date. BofA was then not invoiced until August 2011, whereupon soon after the decision was taken to issue the credit notes, resulting in a commercial outcome substantially the same as in the Kraft deal, and equally unobjectionable. Any subterfuge was denied.

(5) The Defendants repeated their general line that no adverse inference that the payment was a reward for enabling improper revenue recognition should be drawn from the payment of a MAF. Such payments were common in the software industry, and something HP itself employed; and Deloitte were aware that Autonomy paid MAFs where the deal went direct and the reseller was being compensated for loss of margin.

1049. Once again, the fundamental problem with the Defendants' contentions is that they brush over the particular characteristics in this and (to a greater or lesser extent) all the impugned VAR sales which mark them out: the Defendants did not face up to the 'pattern' identified by the Claimants and, in particular, the inconsistency of this pattern with there being any real substance in the VAR sale or any substantive transfer of risk and management control of the licensed software.

1050. Looked at in the round, VT21, like VT16 and the other constituent packages brought together in the BofA transaction, provided a striking example of the use of a VAR without any intention or expectation of any involvement in the negotiation or contract for the onward sale, which was already pre-packaged, controlled and intended to be implemented as a direct deal by Autonomy with the end-user, with the VAR sale having no substance or economic effect save as a trigger for revenue recognition and as the origin of a counter-obligation in effect imposed on Autonomy to hold harmless the VAR in the event of some failure of the pre-packaged deal.

1051. The Defendants' contentions miss their mark because they are based on a premise of (i) a risk which was in substance illusory and (ii) intended and actual involvement by the VAR in the control of the licenced software for the purpose of an onward sale which is belied by the facts.

1052. Further, VT21 provides another example to negate the suggestion in the Goldberg Segalla letter that the prospect of future servicing business was a factor of benefit to Capax Discovery which might have justified the enormous risk: in only two deals (the TXU and FSA deals) did Capax Discovery's involvement lead to any servicing work.

1053. More generally, in my judgment, the Defendants were never able satisfactorily to answer the two fundamental points, which infected every aspect of Autonomy's business with its 'friendly' VARs, that (a) the risk assumed by the VAR (in this case, Capax Discovery, on New Year's Eve) without any assessment of the prospects of an end-user sale and no

previous relationship with that end-user was entirely disproportionate unless an assurance which Mr Baiocco considered reliable had been given that Autonomy would always find a means of holding Capax Discovery harmless against it; and (b) at no stage did Capax Discovery ever do anything consistent with it having more than nominal ownership: it never had or asserted any control over any onward sell; and it ceded to Autonomy the exclusive right to negotiate and conclude a deal with the end-user, not as agent for Capax Discovery or otherwise on its behalf, but as principal, and it was never involved actively in that context from the moment of the purchase order until the moment of completion of whatever stratagem the Claimants had adopted to ensure that it was not left on the hook. VT21 was a particularly clear illustration of a VAR acting as placeholder: the real deal was the direct deal between Autonomy and BofA when the constituent elements parcelled out to the VARs were brought together.

VT23 and VT24: DiscoverTech/Bank of America Q4 2010

1054. As explained above, the other "smaller pieces" into which the BofA deal was temporarily parcelled up were VT23 and VT24, which were VAR transactions with DiscoverTech (for end-user BofA), both in December 2010.

1055. Both VT23 and VT24 were, though "smaller pieces" of an even larger overall deal, relatively large deals. VT23 was for a licence fee of $3,675,000 (including support for the first year); and VT24 was for a licence fee of $7,000,000, plus a first-year support fee of $350,000. Although numbered in that way, in fact VT24 preceded VT23, as will be seen.

1056. In addition to the complex arrangements whereby all the "smaller pieces" were brought together in, or perhaps more accurately, unravelled and replaced by the large direct deal, the following claims by the Claimants in seeking to impugn these VAR transactions require analysis in relation to VT23 and VT24:

(1) That the VT23 purchase order was backdated by nearly one month in order to capture recognised revenue for the Q4 2010 account;

(2) That DiscoverTech did not have the ability to pay the purchase price for these large VAR deals if it could not resell the software, and it made no sense for DiscoverTech to have taken such a risk if Autonomy genuinely intended to require DiscoverTech to pay (which the Claimants maintain it never did intend);

(3) That the DiscoverTech purchase orders for VT23 and VT24 contained misleading language which gave a false impression of DiscoverTech's role in order to justify both its involvement and the substantial payments to it;

(4) That Autonomy then failed to disclose the direct deal to the Audit Committee and Deloitte and instead misled them into believing that the VARs had achieved their own onward sale to BofA;

(5) That Autonomy contrived arrangements for the sums payable by BofA under the direct deal to be routed and used to fund payments to Autonomy by the VARs in respect of their obligations under VT23 and VT24 (as well as VT16 and VT21) so that (according to the Claimants) *"Autonomy's own money was used to pay off debts ostensibly owed to Autonomy by DiscoverTech (and Capax Discovery)"*;

(6) That Autonomy made a payment, purportedly as a MAF, which was improper because DiscoverTech never provided any marketing assistance of any kind.

1057. The allegation of backdating (see paragraph 1056(1) above) concerned the VT23 purchase order, which the Claimants alleged was in fact issued on 25 January 2011 and then dishonestly backdated to show a date of 31 December 2010.

1058. It was not disputed that the VT23 purchase order for an additional $3.5 million (plus maintenance and support of $175,000) was not issued until 25 January 2011, and that until the last moment it was not clear whether the order should come from DiscoverTech or MicroTech. Thus:

(1) According to Mr Egan's witness statement, on 25 January 2011, Mr Egan asked Mr David Truitt (at Mr Hussain's request) whether DiscoverTech would *"take an additional $3.5 million licence…"* (additional, in other words, to the $7 million covered by VT24).

(2) An email from Mr Egan to Mr Hussain and Mr Scott on 24 September 2011 was in terms that suggested that right up to that moment it had not been decided whether to use MicroTech or DiscoverTech for this:

> *"I'll get the signatures. Don't you want the $3.6m from micro tech? Or do you want it through DT as well?"*

(3) By e-mail dated 25 January 2011 Mr Livius Guiao (an Autonomy lawyer) sent Mr Egan *"an additional one-time reseller agreement to be signed by DiscoverTech"* which Mr Egan sent on to Mr David Truitt under cover of a message which stated that:

> *"It will be important that it be signed as is with no additions or modifications late today and scanned and emailed back. This covers the excess amount of the order…"*

(4) Mr Egan's message appears not to have got through because Mr Hyson, DiscoverTech's CTO, sent back a signed version on which he had dated his signature *"25 Jan 2011"*.

(5) Autonomy reacted to this by supplying DiscoverTech with a fresh draft which had the date of 31 December 2010 physically typed into the signature line, which Mr Hyson then signed and returned.

1059. Dr Lynch stated that he was not at all involved in this episode. Mr Hussain gave no evidence; but he was directly and closely involved, as is apparent from the fact that he was a recipient of Mr Egan's email on 24 January 2011 (see paragraph 1058(2) above) and an email which he sent to Mr Egan, copied to Mr Scott, on 26 January 2011 in which he berated them for delay:

> *"Thought I had made it clear multiple times that I had asked for the amendment and the revenue confirm last night. Nothing received."*

1060. Mr Hussain relied on evidence given in the US criminal proceedings as follows:

(1) Mr Egan gave evidence there to the effect that he thought what was done was unexceptional and *"perfectly legal"* because he believed (and believed that Mr Hussain believed) that it involved in reality only an amendment to an existing purchase order which he considered to be common-place and unexceptionable, and the replacement of the document showing a later date was necessary *"just so there wouldn't be conflicting dates"*.

(2) Mr David Truitt gave evidence that he *"honestly wasn't"* concerned by this because *"it was simply adding to the original deal"*; but it is of some note that Mr David Truitt then continued far more equivocally, suggesting that it did not occur to him that *"this could be a – you know, we're trying to squeeze it in the later quarter scenario"*.

(3) Mr Scott, who was also directly (and he sought to convey, uncomfortably) involved, also gave evidence that he had had concerns, but had been to some extent (but, he made clear, not wholly) reassured by Mr Hussain's assurances that he would be entirely transparent with Deloitte and abide by their view whether the amount in the VT23 purchase order could be allocated as revenue to Q4 2010 or would have to be postponed to Q1 2011.

(4) Mr Welham's uncontradicted evidence, however, was that this was not something of which he was even aware or had any inkling at the time. Nor was the Audit Committee told anything about it.

1061. In my judgment, the VT23 purchase order plainly was backdated, and those concerned (including Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain, Mr Egan, Mr David Truitt and Mr Scott) were aware that it was so. No persuasive justification for what was done was ever put forward. There is no evidence that the VT23 purchase order was intended to correct an error in the VT24 purchase order and/or agreement (which perhaps might have justified what was done). Mr Egan and Mr David Truitt appear to have to some extent persuaded themselves that all that was being done was an expansion of an earlier order and that such a thing was commonplace: but whilst that may be permissible if the amendment is within the same accounting period, I am by no means persuaded that it could be permissible where the amendment is in a subsequent accounting period. Mr Scott was to some extent comforted by the promise of full disclosure to Deloitte: but he had serious misgivings. In the event, Mr Hussain entirely neglected and failed to make good his promise of disclosure to Deloitte.

1062. I cannot accept Mr Hussain's position in his closing submissions that *"there is no indication that Mr Hussain asked anyone to do anything that should be regarded as wrong."* It plainly was wrong: which is no doubt why Mr Hussain did not disclose it to Deloitte or the Audit Committee. In my judgment, Mr Hussain was, by this late stage, so driven by his obsession with meeting revenue forecasts, that he was prone and indeed eager to persuade himself of any justification that seemed arguable, and on this occasion that all that was being done was a correction or amendment to a previous order, which was simply not the case.

1063. I accept that there is no separate or transaction-specific evidence that Dr Lynch was personally involved. When cross-examined on the point, he denied firmly that he was involved. He told me he thought now that Mr Hussain believed it was *"a correction and an amendment to a purchase order for a different quarter"*. But this was speculation uninformed by the evidence. In these circumstances, the Claimants could not do more

than to rely on the evidence of Mr Hussain's pattern of consistently reporting to Dr Lynch on revenue targets and how they were to be accomplished, and to invite me to infer from that and from the evidence of Dr Lynch's insistence on overall control that *"Mr Hussain would not have taken this extreme step without authorisation from Dr Lynch"*.

1064. The BofA deal of which this was a constituent but individually large element was of prime importance in the quarter; and the BofA deal was a subject of regular report (as noted above). Especially in light of the size and importance of the BofA deal, the amount involved in the backdated transaction itself ($3,675,000) and the evidence that Mr Hussain kept Dr Lynch continuously updated about it, I consider that the inference the Claimants invite me to draw is justified. I accept that it is considerably more likely than not that Mr Hussain explained the position (and the prescription) to Dr Lynch. Further, if Mr Hussain had truly thought that the additional purchase was a correction to regularise an initial error he would have wished to report its successful resolution to Dr Lynch; if he knew that it was simply a ploy to boost recognised revenue for Q4 2010 which had succeeded he would have wished to share the coup with Dr Lynch. In any event, it was not in Mr Hussain's character as it appears from the evidence available to keep such things from Dr Lynch. I cannot accept Dr Lynch's denial.

1065. The second point relating to VT23 and VT24 is that Mr David Truitt testified in the US criminal proceedings that, at least without recapitalising the company, DiscoverTech did not have the ability to pay some $7 million if it was unable to resell the software. In other words, it was taking an existential risk. The Claimants contended, and put to Dr Lynch in cross-examination, that it cannot reasonably be supposed that it would have taken the risk if it had not been assured that it would never be called upon to pay.

1066. Dr Lynch refused to accept this. In rejecting it, he explained why a reseller could well conclude that this was a good risk to buy into. This included that the VAR would know that BofA's regulatory archive was running on Autonomy software, that this would lead to the prospective benefit of repeat purchases (and, he might have added, service opportunities) from a huge bank and could be

> *"actually pretty certain that there would be a purchase from Bank of America [in the] not too distant future…It's actually a pretty good bet for a VAR, this one."*.

1067. This answer, delivered with Dr Lynch's usual appearance of calm assurance and initial plausibility, is, in my judgment, falsified by the artificiality of the whole arrangement:

(1) DiscoverTech had no previous dealings with BofA, and it was not intended that it should deal with BofA in any way, certainly prior to the conclusion of the prospective BofA deal (and see further as to this below).

(2) The deal in prospect was not one to which DiscoverTech would be a party: it was always intended to be, and in the event resulted in, a direct deal between Autonomy and BofA.

(3) The VAR's purchase did nothing to assist it establish or deepen a relationship with BofA which would lead to any further purchases or work: the $10.65 million or more bought it nothing which it could not legitimately hope to benefit from without any such payment.

1068. The notion that the newly incorporated DiscoverTech, or any of the 'friendly' VARs, would have incurred a potentially existential risk in such circumstances without assurances that the risk would be covered by Autonomy, is very difficult to accept, and I do not accept it.

1069. In reaching that conclusion in this as in other contexts concerning impugned VAR transactions, I have taken careful account of the arguments always advanced on behalf of the Defendants that it was plausible for the VARs to subscribe the risk simply relying on Autonomy having proved itself reliable in the past, and on the commercial calculation that Autonomy would never wish or perceive it to be in its interests to *"burn a partner and leave them in the dust",* as Mr Egan had put it. But I have concluded that this was not the basis on which the VARs proceeded. In my judgment, the understandings between Autonomy and its VARs in these and other impugned VAR transactions went well beyond an expectation on the part of the VAR of loyalty and self-interest on the part of Autonomy. The patterns revealed the real deal: the VAR would co-operate by doing nothing, Autonomy would retain entire control, rescue the VAR if it became necessary, and would never demand payment out of the VAR's own resources.

1070. As to (3) in paragraph 1056 above, the DiscoverTech purchase orders ended with the following language (which had also newly been introduced into Capax Discovery purchase orders prepared by Autonomy in and after December 2010):

> *"Although End-User and VAR currently anticipate entering into such a license transaction, in the unlikely event End-User, instead, enters into a direct agreement with Autonomy or its affiliate to license the Software, then VAR shall distribute the Software to End-User upon receipt of written notice (which may be via email) from Autonomy ("Distribution Notice") of such direct license transaction. In the event distribution is accomplished by reason of a Distribution Notice, upon such time as Autonomy has received payment in full for such license fee and support fee, Autonomy shall pay to VAR an amounts [sic] equal to the license fee paid by End-User to Autonomy less the license fee described in Item 2 above, but in no event more than $816,000.00, as full compensation in connection with VAR's efforts in securing End-User's procurement of a license of Autonomy software."*

1071. This language was misleading. DiscoverTech did not "*currently anticipate*" entering into a licence transaction with BofA nor was the possibility of a *"direct agreement"* with Autonomy *"an unlikely event"*; Autonomy was the entity negotiating with BofA, and which was to continue negotiating with BofA, without any involvement by DiscoverTech, and with the objective, not of an end-user deal, but of a direct deal, as in due course eventuated. The provision for Autonomy to cover DiscoverTech's costs, together with an uplift, was the essence of the deal: there was never any intention or realistic prospect of DiscoverTech itself generating revenue from an onward sale (since there was never to be one).

1072. This language (also adopted in Capax Discovery purchase orders) was also the first time that a purchase order made any reference to the possibility of Autonomy rewarding the VAR for its involvement. However, it will be noted that what Autonomy was to pay DiscoverTech was the difference (if any) between the end-user's licence fee and DiscoverTech's licence fee, subject to a cap (here $816,000); this was not an agreement

that Autonomy should pay $816,000, nor was it an agreement to pay 10% of the end-user licence fee. Furthermore, the purchase order stated that any such amount was to be paid as compensation "*in connection with VAR's efforts*" to secure an end-user sale. In reality, neither Autonomy nor DiscoverTech intended that DiscoverTech should make any such efforts.

1073. In addition to the pretence in the wording of the purchase orders, I have already explained in the context of the *"repurposing"* of VT16, that:

(1) Mr Hussain's memorandum to the Audit Committee for Q1 2011 (a copy of which was sent to Dr Lynch) made no mention of the direct deal that had been concluded during that quarter. Instead, it stated, "*In q4 the Bank of America deal ($21m) went through two 8A partners and $19.3m cash has been received*".

(2) Mr Welham did not appreciate that the VAR deals had been replaced by a direct deal between Autonomy and BofA. Although it is clear from their working papers that Deloitte were told of the overall structure, including the use of MicroTech and *"other regularly used VARs"* as *"middle men"* in the overall deal, it is also clear that the understanding that Deloitte were given and had was that the VARs would be expected to be parties to end-users sales.

(3) The Audit Committee was misled into believing that the VARs had achieved their own onward sale to BofA. Mr Bloomer's evidence was as follows:

> *"Q. So you would have understood that to mean that the 19.3 million cash had been received from the two resellers with whom the deal had been done in Q4, yes?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. Either from their own resources or because they did a deal with Bank of America, yes?*
>
> *A. Yes.*
>
> *Q. And there's no mention here that in Q1 2011, Autonomy concluded a direct deal with Bank of America?*
>
> *A. Not on this, and I don't recall that being mentioned at the time*
>
> *Q. And presumably you were also unaware that under that direct deal, Autonomy designated a third reseller, MicroTech, as its payee?*
>
> *A. No.*
>
> *Q. Were you ever told that, pursuant to that agreement between Autonomy and Bank of America, Bank of America then paid MicroTech which in turn paid the two VARs: Capax and DiscoverTech?*
>
> *A. No. That was a level of detail we wouldn't have gone into.*

Q. And if that is what had happened, it's not something you would have understood at the time, no?

A. No, as I say, it's a level of detail we wouldn't have gone into at the time.

Q. And you would have remained of the understanding in Q1 2011 that no deals between Autonomy and a VAR had been resigned directly between Autonomy and the end-user, yes?

A. Yes.

Q. And no instances of that occurring were drawn to your attention, were they?

A. Not that I recall.

Q. If that had in fact happened in Q1 2011, that would have been contrary to your understanding at the time?

A. Yes."

1074. The Claimants also contended (see (5) in paragraph 1056 above) that Autonomy contrived arrangements for the sums payable by BofA under the direct deal to be routed and used to fund payments to Autonomy by the VARs in respect of their obligations under VT23 and VT24 (as well as VT16 and VT21) so that (according to the Claimants) *"Autonomy's own money was used to pay off debts ostensibly owed to Autonomy by DiscoverTech (and Capax Discovery)"*.

1075. It was Mr Egan's unchallenged evidence that, in January 2011, in anticipation of the direct BofA deal, Mr Hussain asked Mr Egan to determine how the payments from BofA could be used to fund payments to Autonomy by the VARs in respect of their BofA deal-related payment obligations. On 25 January 2011, Mr Egan asked Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain, "*Assume you want cash flows to be bofa/mt/dt/au not add another route?*". Mr Hussain did not dissent. The Claimants also contended that "*It is inconceivable, given the size of the amounts involved, that Dr Lynch would have been unaware of the overall plan, whether or not he knew the details."*

1076. Under the direct agreement between Autonomy Inc and BofA, payment was to be made to Autonomy or its designated payee. Autonomy designated MicroTech as its payee, ostensibly because of MicroTech's 8A status. BofA therefore paid the $19.5 million licence fee (minus the early payment discount of $500,000) to MicroTech rather than Autonomy.

1077. The impetus for involving MicroTech plainly came from Autonomy, not BofA. Indeed, on 25 January 2011, Reagan Smith of BofA asked Mr Egan to explain, "*What service, specifically, will they [MicroTech] offer as part of this?*". Mr Egan responded that MicroTech "*are not truly providing a service in the classic sense other than reselling the software*".

1078. As explained by Mr Egan, what happened next is that:

(1) MicroTech paid $10 million to DiscoverTech.

(2) DiscoverTech paid $9 million to Autonomy (having already paid Autonomy $1 million in January 2011), in substantial discharge of its "*obligation*" to pay licence fees of $7 million and $3.5 million under VT23 and VT24 respectively.

(3) The remaining $9 million was paid to Capax Discovery and used by it to pay $9 million to Autonomy.

1079. This demonstrates the circularity relied on by the Claimants; but, given the express provisions of the purchase orders, I am not persuaded that these money flows do more than give effect to the provisions ostensibly agreed for the VARs to be compensated in the event of a direct sale. To my mind, a more telling point than the contention that *"Autonomy's own money was used to pay off debts ostensibly owed to Autonomy by DiscoverTech (and Capax Discovery)"* is that the presentation of the composite arrangements, by apparently treating the VAR's obligations to repay as substantive, bolstered (artificially) the notion that the VARs were actually transacting substantive business and undertaking substantial risk. The money flow was a further means of giving substance to the illusion.

1080. In the same context, the Claimants also contended that Autonomy's justification for the introduction of MicroTech was false. Deloitte's working paper records that Deloitte were told that Autonomy had *"chosen to use Microtech, albeit through two separate VARs, to lead and integrate this produce [sic] on behalf of the end-user"* and to avail itself of MicroTech's 8A status. The Defendants queried what Deloitte had been told but accepted that the summary was *"broadly correct"* and that *"BofA were enthusiastic about paying MicroTech as an 8A. MicroTech were also going to provide services and did indeed do so."* The evidence relied on by the Defendants demonstrated acceptance not enthusiasm; and as the Claimants submitted there was no evidence that BofA had suggested the need for an 8A entity to be involved (nor was there), and neither was there evidence that BofA had requested the involvement of the VARs. No reason for this falsity as to the introduction of MicroTech was suggested to me; but, as it seems to me, it justified the payment flows, and assisted their presentation as connoting VAR end-user sales; and that may have been its purpose.

1081. The sixth and last specific criticism of VT23 and VT24 concerned the payment of MAFs to DiscoverTech. As to this, the Claimants' case was that:

(1) Autonomy paid a $1.1 million MAF to DiscoverTech. On 8 March 2011, Mr Egan said (in an email copied to Mr Hussain) that DiscoverTech should be paid a 10% MAF on the $7 million licence fee, a $400,000 fee for "*distribution*", but no margin on the $3.5 million licence fee.

(2) Mr Hussain was asked for and gave his approval to the $1.1 million MAF, as did Dr Lynch. Dr Lynch said in cross-examination that he approved the payment of this fee "*because it would have been agreed at the time that the deal was done with DiscoverTech*". However, there is nothing in any written contract at the time of these VAR transactions which entitled DiscoverTech to such a fee.

(3) The fee was invoiced as a MAF on 8 March 2011, even though, as both Defendants knew, DiscoverTech had not provided any marketing assistance of any kind.

1082. In all the circumstances, I find it difficult to accept that a payment of a MAF, let alone a payment of some $1.1 million, was justified. When his first answer about a prior contractual commitment failed, Dr Lynch talked once more in cross-examination about encouraging *"our ecosystem of partners"* and of the need to provide them with an *"incentive for doing the business"*. This was unimpressively general; but it is also necessary to consider what the ecosystem and the business being done in it really was. It was not the usual ecosystem: and Dr Lynch's evidence that such fees were common was an exercise in extrapolating a justification from a very different context. Usually, VARs make some sort of contribution. Here, the *"ecosystem"* was comprised of a small coterie of VARs whose contribution was limited to signing paperwork prepared by Autonomy to provide a ticket for revenue recognition. The BofA arrangements provided a particularly glaring example of the inactivity required of them. The incentive was for them to act as placeholders, as they did: that did not, in my judgment, justify payment of a MAF. The basis for payment of a margin or MAF was as set out in the purchase order: it depended on *"VAR's efforts in securing End-User's procurement of a license of Autonomy software."* None of the criteria was met.

Defendants' alleged knowledge of false accounting in respect of the BofA deals

Mr Hussain

1083. It is clear from the documentary evidence that it was at Mr Hussain's suggestion that the big BofA deal was parcelled into smaller pieces and 'sold' to VARs to be warehoused until the real (BofA) deal could be completed. It was inherent in the objective of the arrangements that the VARs selected should do nothing, and Mr Hussain must have known that. As previously noted, the VARs were never intended to exercise, and never did exercise, any independent right of disposition in respect of the software notionally 'sold' to them. The only real sale of the software took place when the direct BofA sale was concluded. Especially as a trained accountant and experienced CFO, Mr Hussain cannot have thought that the sales to the VARs had any real or economic substance such as to legitimately warrant revenue recognition.

1084. Mr Hussain cannot have taken any real comfort from Deloitte's approval. He knew that they did not know that the BofA sale was the only real sale, and that the VARs were not intended or expected to do anything, and never did anything, except wait for payment in due course.

1085. I find that Mr Hussain had "guilty knowledge" that the recognition of revenue from VT16, VT21, VT23 and VT24 was (in each case) improper.

1086. Further, I find that in the circumstances set out in paragraphs 1056 to 1061 above, Mr Hussain was aware of and complicit in the backdating of the VT23 purchase order, and that therefore on that ground also the recognition of revenue in respect of VT23 in Q4 2010 was improper.

1087. Mr Hussain also must have known that in such circumstances the justification put forward for the payment of large sums purportedly by way of MAFs (i.e. that the VARs' assistance had made a valuable contribution), which he personally approved, was without foundation and indeed false.

Dr Lynch

1088. Dr Lynch accepted that he was aware of and involved in the efforts to close the deal with BofA in Q4 2010[88]; but he maintained that he was not involved in or aware of the "smaller pieces" VAR deals, the implementation of the BofA deal after its closing, the payment flows to the VARs, or the MAF payments.

1089. The Claimants offered very little transaction-specific evidence of his involvement at the operational level and his knowledge, though in cross-examination he did ultimately accept that (a) he *"may have known something"* about Autonomy's efforts to do a deal with Amgen in Q3 2010 and did know that when it could not be closed, Autonomy ended up involving a VAR and recognising revenue on a purchase order from Capax Discovery in respect of VT16; (b) it was *"quite possible"* that he did discuss with Mr Hussain the latter's wish to bring in VARs, and would have had *"no issue"* with that; and (c) no sale to BofA had been closed in Q4 2010 and that instead Autonomy had made sales to VARs. He also explained his understanding to be that *"the stock from the resellers was sold to Microtech as part of this deal."* He explained this further when it was suggested to him that "*Mr Egan had used Bank of America as backfill to ensure Capax got paid for its Amgen purchase order*". He answered:

> *"A. I wouldn't use the word "backfill". What it is is that Capax had stock and Mr Egan introduced the Bank of America opportunity and they could sell that stock to Bank of America, which was written explicitly in their deal."*

1090. He also had to accept that he had approved the payment of the MAF to DiscoverTech, his position being (at least initially) that he would have approved it because *"it would have been agreed at the time the deal was done with DiscoverTech"* and because he was happy to encourage *"our ecosystem of partners"*.

1091. Apart from this, he repeated that he was not involved at any level of detail. In particular, when it was suggested to him that Autonomy negotiated with BofA without any involvement by the VARs, and that he would have known that they were not involved, he answered that he would have expected Autonomy to continue to be involved with BofA, which was a very large repeat customer of Autonomy's; that he did not know whether or not the VARs were involved in negotiations with BofA; but that in any event, he would not *"be at that level of knowledge in any case"*, given that this was taking place well below his level and in the US with a US subsidiary.

1092. Notwithstanding Dr Lynch's unusual degree of control and tendency to descend suddenly to micro-manage matters of particular interest or concern to him, I would be inclined to accept that the details of who participated in negotiations and when were not within his knowledge. However, the decision to involve VARs in the context of an especially large deal like the BofA deal seems to me to be of a different order, about which I consider he is more likely than not to have been consulted. Mr Hussain would not have wished to fragment such a deal and commit to substantial payments without first consulting Dr Lynch. Similarly, it seems to me likely that both Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch would have been careful and vigilant to ensure that nothing upset the balance with BofA. In my judgment, it is more likely than not that the strategy of involving VARs to obtain revenue recognition but keeping them altogether removed from the negotiation and closing of the ultimate prospective deal would have been discussed and developed by the Defendants.

[88] including intervening with the head of BofA in London to try and get the deal done.

Put another way, Dr Lynch with Mr Hussain set the pattern, adapting it as necessary to the particular circumstances.

1093. I have concluded, on the balance of probabilities, that Dr Lynch did know that the sales to the VARs were expedients to trigger revenue recognition which were intended to result in no substantive change so far as Autonomy's negotiations with BofA were concerned, nor any independent control of or dealing by the VAR with the software sold. I have concluded further that Dr Lynch knew that only on paper could what occurred be termed a sale; that what mattered was ultimately substance not form; and that the VARs' involvement was underpinned by their knowledge that though to fulfil the objective of the dealings their legal obligations had to be recorded, Autonomy would, one way or another, see to it that they were covered or extinguished.

1094. In my judgment, Dr Lynch had "guilty knowledge" that the only real deal was Autonomy's direct BofA deal and that recognition of revenue from the VAR deals which preceded it was improper.

PART IV OF SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS

Other impugned VAR transactions where side-agreements are alleged

1095. Eight of the impugned VAR transactions were between Autonomy and counterparties other than Capax Discovery, FileTek and the Truitt companies. Of these, five were *"pure collectability VAR transactions"* (VT9, VT17, VT19, VT22 and VT29) where no side-agreement or the like was alleged and the issue is only whether the requirements of IAS 18.14(d) were satisfied.

1096. I deal later, in Part V of this Schedule, with those *"Collectability VARs",* pausing to note here only that for two of the five (VT9 in Q4 2009 and VT22 in Q4 2010) it was common ground between the accounting experts that the requirements of IAS 18.14(d) were not satisfied and that therefore no revenue should have been recognised.

1097. Two of the transactions I discuss in this Part IV (VT15 in Q2 2010 and VT26 in Q4 2010) were alleged to have displayed the same 'pattern' as in the case of the other impugned VAR transactions, even though the VARs concerned appeared independent, were not in the small group of 'friendly' VARs, and the agreements were not transacted through Mr Egan. The VARs concerned were (a) in the case of VT15 in Q2 2010 for proposed end-user Credit Suisse, a company called Realise Limited ("Realise"), and (b) in the case of VT26 in Q4 2010, a company called Tikit Limited ("Tikit") for proposed end-user KPMG.

1098. The Claimants' case was that the Court should infer in the case of VT15 and VT26 that, as in the case of the other impugned VAR transactions with 'friendly' VARs, the 'pattern' was consistent only with there having been a side agreement that the VAR should not either make any efforts to on-sell nor ever be required to pay Autonomy from its own resources, and that the recognition of revenue was thus improper.

1099. A third transaction with an apparently "independent" VAR was part of the larger projected transaction with the Vatican Library (VT14 in Q1 2010), which Deloitte refused to approve for revenue recognition and was impugned on the narrow basis that though no side agreement was alleged, it was never intended that the relevant VAR (called Auxilium) should make, and it never did make, any efforts to on-sell the licence. I deal with VT14 last in this Part IV before addressing the *"pure Collectability VARs"* in Part V.

VT15: The Realise/Credit Suisse deal Q2 2010

1100. On 18 June 2010, with the end of Q2 2010 approaching, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch (only) a revenue summary spreadsheet identifying the key transactions for Q2 2010. These included a transaction for \$2.7 million with Credit Suisse, subject to the observation that "*sign off 29th so tight*".

1101. On 29 June 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch an updated revenue summary spreadsheet. The proposed Credit Suisse transaction was now stated to be worth \$2.4 million and Mr Hussain included the comment "*Steering committee signed off on Friday, now race to get paperwork*".

1102. On 29 June 2010, Mr James Murray asked Credit Suisse to confirm its agreement to a letter of intent, which it did on 30 June 2010, though Mr Dominic Frischknecht of Credit Suisse emphasised in his covering email that, "*we are only confirming that we*

are interested to close a contract in future but at this point not able to confirm any terms of the deal". The letter of intent stated that Credit Suisse:

> "*plans to enter into a software license purchasing agreement under which – and provided that Credit Suisse gives approval to [sic], Autonomy's chosen partner shall provide software licenses to Credit Suisse AG no later than July 31st 2010.*"

1103. That same day (30 June 2010), Mr Murray wrote to Mr Andy Lamond of Realise, forwarding a copy of the Credit Suisse letter of intent, saying "*Thanks for your time today at very short notice. The attached letter specifies the amount that Credit Suisse are prepared to pay*". That evening, Mr Murray informed Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain, "*Realise will sign the deal tonight. Please liaise with Andy Lomond*". Realise appears to have been a substantial UK technology company: *'The Scotsman'* reported its sale for £40,000,000 in 2014. It was a significant UK partner of Interwoven. The evidence did not reveal quite why or when Realise was selected. None of Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain or Mr Kanter gave evidence in these proceedings (or at all). There was no witness evidence as to what was said to induce Realise to act as a VAR, or why Realise was chosen.

1104. Also on 30 June 2010, Mr Rafiq Mohammadi of Autonomy emailed Dr Lynch, reporting that "*we did not get Credit Suisse but James [Murray] was able to find one large and one medium that added up. CS is his next quarter – so we have not lost anything*". Dr Lynch forwarded the email to Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he did learn before the end of the quarter that no Credit Suisse deal could be concluded in the quarter ("*Yes, I guess so*"); but he emphasised more than once that he was not really involved in it or in the VAR deal that followed. The frequency with which he was updated in the last days of the quarter suggests that even if not involved directly, he was kept very closely informed.

1105. On 30 June 2010, ASL entered into a One-Time Reseller Agreement with Realise, for end-user Credit Suisse Securities (USA) LLC, for a licence fee of €1,463,000 (USD equivalent $1,987,096) plus €365,750 (USD equivalent $496,774) for support and maintenance and €102,500 in consulting fees. Mr Kanter signed the agreement on behalf of ASL. The amount of the proposed deal to Credit Suisse exceeded the amount of the VAR deal and thus gave the VAR (Realise) margin on the deal.

1106. The One-Time Reseller Agreement placed Realise unequivocally on risk as a matter of law:

(1) Clause 1 provided:

> *"<u>Products Licensed and Services Provided.</u> Upon VAR's execution of this Agreement, Autonomy shall license to VAR for sublicense to the End-User the Autonomy Software. Once executed. This Agreement including any Product Schedules attached hereto, constitutes a non-cancellable purchase commitment. All fees and expenses specified herein are non-refundable. …"*

(2) Clause 9 provided:

> *"Any waiver, amendment, supplementation or other modification or supplementation of any provision of this Agreement shall be effective only if in writing and signed by both parties.*
> *...*
> *This Agreement, including the Exhibits, represent the entire Agreement between the parties hereto concerning the subject matter hereof and supersedes any and all prior correspondence, quotations and negotiations. VAR expressly agrees that this Agreement and the Exhibits hereto shall have priority over any contrary terms or conditions contained in any purchase order or other form hereafter delivered by VAR to Autonomy... VAR expressly agrees that this Agreement and the Exhibits hereto shall have priority over any additional or inconsistent terms contained on such purchase orders or other forms hereafter delivered by VAR to Autonomy."*

1107. Realise provided written confirmation to Deloitte on 30 June 2010 that the invoice listed in the confirmation they had requested was proper and due (although part-paid) and that there were no *"side letters or other agreements"*.

1108. In the event, no deal was ever concluded with Credit Suisse, by either Realise or Autonomy. In December 2010, Realise paid Autonomy in total £626,990 (representing £533,609 plus VAT) in respect of the June 2010 deal, but no further amounts.[89] A bad debt provision was made for the full amount of the remaining outstanding receivables (some £1,299,342 inclusive of VAT). That amount (£1,299,342) was finally written off long after the acquisition, in September 2012.[90]

1109. The Claimants suggested that, in the absence of any evidence from Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain or Mr Kanter, and *"no witness evidence, therefore, as to what Autonomy said to induce Realise to act as a VAR",* the Court should:

> *"infer, however, that the same assurances were given to Realise as were given to Autonomy's preferred VARs – in particular, that Realise was not expected to make efforts to sell the software to Credit Suisse and that Autonomy did not intend Realise to pay for the software from its own resources."*

1110. In their written closing submissions, the Claimants relied on the following in support of that inference:

(1) When on 15 October 2010, after Realise had not paid the first instalment (of €200,000) which fell due on 28 September 2010, ASL's credit control department sent an email to Mr Chamberlain and Mr Stephan asking whether they could *"chase them for payment yet???",* Mr Chamberlain immediately forwarded it to Mr Hussain with the message (marked High importance) simply stating *"Need guidance"*. There is no record of a response; but Realise was not chased for payment. When the remaining sum of €1,628,750 plus the consulting fee fell due on 28 October 2010 that was not paid by Realise either.

[89] It is evident that this payment was directly related to the Credit Suisse deal because the invoice number on the cash receipt – 5006 – matches that on the invoice issued to Realise in on 30 June 2010.
[90] As the Claimants have accepted at Schedule 3 to their Particulars of Claim.

(2) When no end-user deal eventuated, Autonomy agreed (by an agreement dated 20 December 2010) to purchase a stake in Realise Holdings Limited (for £2,607,208) and to *"pre-purchase professional services"* from Realise (for the sum of £570,000 plus VAT), conditional on receiving from Realise payment of £533,609 plus VAT in partial satisfaction of its debt; and all this was arranged, not because Autonomy needed or it was in its commercial interests to acquire either Realise or professional services, but to put Realise in funds to pay down part of its outstanding debt to Autonomy.

(3) Realise never paid any sums to Autonomy except as and when it received payments made by Autonomy on the understanding that Realise would use the receipts to pay down instalments. By 9 August 2011, no further payments had been made by Realise except those for which it was put in funds to make as briefly described in (2) above. When on 9 August 2011, after Realise had sought to re-activate its CSS (Customer Support Site) support account, Autonomy's credit control department asked what should be done about their overdue invoice of 300+ days, Mr Chamberlain referred the matter to Mr Kanter, stating:

> *"Need guidance here. When I spoke to them (Andy Lamond) he directed me to you and stated that they "did not need to pay". I can't give them access to a support account when they have not paid."*

(4) Mr Kanter replied (copying Mr Hussain) *"Bs. Haven't spoken to him in six months"*, whereupon Mr Chamberlain informed them both that he would stop access to their accounts and send the outstanding account to legal absent objections. Yet on the last business day (30 September 2011) before HP's acquisition of Autonomy became final, and after negotiations in which Realise made clear its understanding that it *"did not need to pay"* unless and until funded, a bad debt provision was made for the full amount of the shortfall between the funds thus far provided by Autonomy and then remitted to Autonomy by Realise and the total amounts due from Realise under the One-Time Reseller Agreement, which then was $2,030,611 (equivalent to £1,299,342 inclusive of VAT). This was (considerably) later written off in full.

(5) All the while, Realise never made any attempt to negotiate or conclude an end-user sale; it was instead Autonomy which continued to seek a deal with Credit Suisse.

1111. As to (2) in the preceding paragraph, the Claimants focused especially on Autonomy's agreement to pay Realise in advance for professional services (at a stated rate of £950 per man day for 600 days) in support of their case that the deal was contrived simply to fund Realise to enable it to repay Autonomy, and that Autonomy's moneys *"went round in a circle"*. The Claimants contended that:

(a) Autonomy had never provided any evidence as to why it had any need to purchase two years of professional services paid for in advance, except for Mr Kanter's description of the arrangement in an email to Dr Lynch and Mr Hussain dated 19 December 2010 as being *"part of the process of bringing the two companies closer"* and *"to bring [Realise] into key customers"* and an

assertion by Dr Lynch when cross-examined that Autonomy *"had continual need for services"*. Mr Kanter might have elaborated; but he was not called.

(b) When in September 2011, during the period between HP's offer and the completion of the HP acquisition of Autonomy, a question was raised as to whether a credit was applicable to Autonomy in respect of the service days promised, Mr Murphy of Realise sent an email to Mr Hussain dated 19 September 2011 stating:

> *"We rebated £533,609 + VAT (£626,990) against the service days in Dec and it was our understanding that this concluded the deal…"*

(c) No professional services were ever in fact provided.

1112. The Defendants, noting also that the Claimants had withdrawn their claims in October 2018 only to reinstate them in December 2018, but without any pleading, evidence or particulars of the side-agreement they purported to allege, dismissed any suggestion that the VAR deal with Realise lacked economic substance and could only be explained by reference to some sort of side-agreement.

1113. They referred at some length to the exchanges between Credit Suisse, Realise and Autonomy in support of their contention that Realise intentionally assumed the risk on the purchase unconditionally under its reseller agreement because it was confident of the prospects of the Credit Suisse deal closing, especially given Credit Suisse's letter of intent (see above), and there was a generous reseller margin. They relied also on:

(1) Mr Murray was engaged in speaking to Mr Lamond of Realise. The Claimants did not suggest that Mr Murray was engaged in wrongdoing.

(2) Ms Haverfield sent Mr Lamond of Realise a draft of the One-Time Reseller Agreement 27 minutes after that, copying Mr Murray and Mr Chamberlain. The Claimants have not suggested that she was engaged in wrongdoing.

(3) At 20:03, 39 minutes later, Mr Lamond said he was happy with the draft and that Mr Murphy (the CEO) would be signing it on behalf of Realise that night. Mr Lamond had evidently read and approved the terms of the document. He was the Finance Director, so was well-placed to understand what it was that Realise were signing up to.[91] Ms Haverfield sent Mr Murphy the execution copy 20 minutes later. Mr Murphy signed and returned the agreement at 22:00, saying:

> *"Please find enclosed the signed pages of the Autonomy One Time Reseller Agreement as per your email.*
> *I also enclose a combined whole signed document in one pdf for your records."*

(4) The signed agreement sent back by Mr Murphy placed Realise unequivocally on risk.

1114. As to the matters relied on by the Claimants as summarised above, the Defendants contended that:

[91] Mr Lamond's role as Finance Director can be seen from his email.

(1) First, the email of 15 October 2010 in which Mr Chamberlain said to Mr Hussain "*need guidance*" on the question of whether to chase Realise for payment was neither sinister nor suggestive of a side-agreement. Autonomy had sold this deal to Realise on the parties' mutual expectation that the Credit Suisse deal would go through. As at October 2010 it had not yet gone through. It was not until later, in April 2011 on the Claimants' case, that Credit Suisse decided to look at a competitor product. In these circumstances, the Defendants contended that it was hardly surprising from a commercial perspective that Autonomy was not automatically hounding Realise for payment in Q3 2010.

(2) Secondly, the email exchanges in August 2011 occurred after the transaction in which Autonomy had taken a stake in Realise, and after the Credit Suisse opportunity had not come to fruition. The email from Mr Chamberlain telling Mr Kanter and Mr Hussain that "*Mr Lamond directed me to you and stated that they [Realise] "did not need to pay*"" did not show that there was a side-agreement in Q2 2010. If anything, it appeared to show Realise seeking to avoid payment to their minority shareholder in circumstances where the commercial opportunity had been lost. Further Mr Kanter had rejected the suggestion that Realise need not pay as *"Bs"*.

(3) Thirdly, the fact that Autonomy continued to negotiate with Credit Suisse was immaterial. Even assuming that Realise was simply acting as fulfilment partner on the transaction, providing it was genuinely assuming the risk the revenue was correctly recognised. In this regard, the Credit Suisse approved letter of intent made it clear that the plan was for the software to be provided by Autonomy's partner.

(4) More generally, the Defendants submitted that the Claimants' arguments involve a fallacy which (as previously observed) is repeated elsewhere in their submissions: the fact that Autonomy may have continued in negotiations does not mean that the reseller was never intended to be a party to the end-user deal. On the contrary, the aim was that the end-user <u>would</u> execute the deal with the reseller, as per the Credit Suisse letter of intent.

(5) Fifthly, the fact that a deal with Credit Suisse could not ultimately be concluded (referring to events in April 2011) was not an "indicium" of a side-agreement. At the time of the reseller transaction the Credit Suisse deal was seen as a good prospect and the letter of intent approved by Credit Suisse confirmed that.

1115. The Defendants contended further that the Claimants' depiction of Autonomy's transactions with Realise after the transaction, under which Autonomy (i) sold a minority stake in a company named Okana to Realise (which was pursuing an acquisition of Okana), (ii) took a minority stake in Realise and (iii) purchased 600 man days of professional services from Realise for a total of £570,000 whereupon Autonomy agreed with Realise that Realise would make a payment of £488,000 against their existing debt, as artificial was illegitimate, distorted and misplaced.

1116. The Defendants relied on the following:

(1) The approach from Realise to Okana and Autonomy's decision to invest in Realise were patently genuine. On 25 October 2010 Mr Hampson of Okana

wrote to Dr Lynch as follows. (This email also shows the substance of Realise as a reseller):

> *"I've developed an excellent relationship with Interwoven Partner, Realise, and in particular their ChiefExec, Tony Murphy, over the last 18 months. This came about as part of our strategy to open up new channels for our core IDOL capability as chaining has become the norm. Realise look after the likes of Fidelity, Standard Life, Nikon and Channel4.*
>
> *Our joined-up thinking and exact-same view of the phenomenal market opportunity you've created for Autonomy Partners has now reached critical mass and Realise have taken a natural next step to look to acquire Okana. A cash and shares offer for 80% of the company has been tabled, this being at a valuation which Bob and I are comfortable with and would like to accept. Not only do we believe this represents the best possible outcome for Okana at this point, we are also extremely excited by the power and growth potential of a joined-up Okana/Realise organisation. We firmly believe that this is the right thing for us to do.*
>
> *Ultimately, this is all small beer to Autonomy but following the support you've given to Okana, and to me personally, I'd be delighted if we can work to have all shareholders accept the same deal, this keeping Autonomy in as a minority shareholder. Okana would become part of the Realise Group, which as you probably know, also now includes Realise Capital Markets headed up by Nick Hough-Robbins. Coverage of the combined unit would grow to span a great many facets of the Power, Protect and Promote sectors."*

(2) Mr Hussain wrote to Dr Lynch in relation to this. Mr Hussain was clearly interested in acceding to Mr Hampson's request, provided Autonomy retained shares in Realise, and was interested in a minority investment in Realise. Mr Hussain did mention the outstanding debt, but the Defendants contended that this plainly was not driving his thinking, and Dr Lynch would not have seen it that way:

> *"We need to know the valuation. Gut feel (although I could be well out) says it's being valued at £1.5m or so ex cash and £2m inc. cash. We own 18% or so of Okana so our stake would be worth c. £400k on this valuation. I'll have to check but I think we invested around £80k.*
>
> *The last 3 years has seen the following:*
> *- Revenues Mar '1 0 (£808k), Mar '09 (£795k), Mar '08 (£1 ,028k)*
> *- Operating profit £101 k, £146k, £164k*
> *- PAT £80k, £123k, £144k*
> *Cash at hand is £465k*

> *Since Realise is proposing to pay in cash and shares I would be happy to accept shares only to keep my ownership level meaningful.*
>
> *I would be prepared to invest in a minority stake in Realise and like Okana continue to put more services through them.*
> *Please note that Realise owes us £1.2m which is slightly overdue so this would work as long as the current debt was paid off.*
> *I need to know the valuation for Okana and the valuation established for the Realise shares."*

(3) The transaction was completed in December 2010. Although Autonomy secured a repayment of part of its debt out of the overall transaction there is nothing sinister in that, nor in the notion that money "went around in a circle". The Claimants did not suggest (and had not adduced any evidence) that either the stake in Realise or the professional services which were purchased were overvalued.

(4) As regards the professional services, as Mr Hampson's email made clear, Realise were a major professional service provider in connection with Autonomy's Interwoven business. Realise were a UK partner for Autonomy and there is no basis for suggesting that these were other than at fair value. The Defendants contended that the Claimants were seeking to read too much into Mr Murphy's later email in September 2011 which referred to an amount being *"rebated"*, and that amount concluding the professional services aspect of the deal: this was simply part of Mr Murphy's attempt to minimise his obligations in September 2011: Mr Kanter's response (not referred to by the Claimants) was that he was *"a little distressed"* about what he had read in Mr Murphy's email, and plainly did not agree with him.

(5) The Claimants' apparent complaint about the admitted fact that the debt was *"later written off"* was misconceived: that happened in late 2012, and was a decision of HP. In any event, the Defendants argued, these post-transaction events could have had no bearing on the earlier revenue recognition.

My assessment of VT15

1117. Realise was a longstanding service partner of Autonomy in connection with Autonomy's Interwoven business; but it was not a "friendly VAR". That, and the fact that (unlike the position in, for example, VT18 and the 'fulfilment' transaction with FileTek) Mr Egan was not in any way involved are obvious departures from the pattern.

1118. There are serious gaps in the evidence. As noted previously, the selection of Realise was unexplained; and I was provided with no details of its business, still less whether it included reselling or being a 'fulfilment partner'. In contrast with the position relating to all the other VAR transactions discussed above, where evidence had been given on behalf of the VAR in the US even if not in these proceedings, I had not the merest glimpse into the intentions or expectations of Mr Lamond or anyone else at Realise, save what was revealed by the factual sequences and coincidences I have described, and the documentation.

1119. In my view, those factual sequences and (for the most part) the documentation do give rise to an inference that Realise never expected to pay instalments under the One-Time Reseller Agreement out of its own pocket, and was obdurate in refusing to do so when the end-user deal it had expected to be completed virtually immediately did not eventuate. Those sequences and that documentation also demonstrate that Autonomy contrived a number of transactions to rescue Realise. Furthermore, it is the undisputed fact that Realise did nothing after the sale to it to negotiate with Credit Suisse or otherwise assist in establishing an end-user sale: it was wholly passive and dependent on Autonomy in that regard.

1120. The transaction did exhibit certain features characteristic or at least reminiscent of the pattern. However, it departed from the pattern in important respects additional to those already identified above. In particular, it seems plain that it was intended and expected to be the contracting party to the end-user deal; and it was from a margin on resale (which had been carefully quantified by reference to the price expressly confirmed in Credit Suisse's letter of intent) that it was to be rewarded and not by a MAF. Further, the documentation is not all one way: although the references in the exchanges in 2010 to Mr Chamberlain needing guidance could suggest some high-level understanding, the exchanges between Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain in 2011 appear genuine and indicate that neither understood any assurances to have been given by Autonomy that Realise did not need to pay.

1121. In my judgment, there is an alternative explanation for the fact pattern. This is that on the one hand, Realise (a) was content to accept uncovered risk on the deal because it was assured, and Credit Suisse's letter of intent confirmed, that the end-user deal with Credit Suisse was virtually certain and imminent and (b) regarded the minimal risk as it perceived it to be at the time, of Credit Suisse in effect going back on its statement of intent to be commercially justified in light of the margin it was to obtain, and (c) felt let down, justified in declining to pay, and in any event determined not to do so; whereas on the other hand, Autonomy (i) felt it in its own interests to try to remove the signs of a failed VAR deal and (ii) as time moved on, had an extra incentive in that regard in not wishing anything to unsettle the presentation necessary for the sale to HP.

1122. At the front of my mind, and the question I have consistently returned to and do again now is: what distinguished VT15 from the other successfully impugned VARs? I would summarise the differences as follows:

(1) The evidence on the transaction was sparse (there was no mention of it in the witness statements at all), and (as previously noted) did not explain why Realise was selected. However, Realise was a substantial UK technology company with well-established credentials in servicing and looking after major companies including Fidelity, Standard Life, Nikon and Channel 4 with no special relationship with Autonomy. Its choice as a VAR, even if only as a 'fulfilment partner' was not, on the evidence put before me, impugned in any way.

(2) There was never any suggestion of any impropriety whether on the part of anyone in Realise or on the part of those who negotiated the transaction at Autonomy.

(3) Even though Realise was not intended to negotiate with Credit Suisse, it is clear that Credit Suisse expected to contract with Realise, and there is nothing

to suggest that Realise did not intend to contract with the end-user: its MAF was dependent on the margin between what it paid Autonomy and what it would charge the end-user. I see no sufficient basis for concluding that risk and control was retained by Autonomy.

(4) It was not plausibly suggested that Mr Kanter's email response (*"Bs. Haven't spoken to him in six months"*) to Mr Lamond's suggestion that Realise *"did not need to pay"* was contrived, and the exchange is inconsistent with any known side agreement of the sort alleged.

1123. Even then, it has been a close run thing, especially given the track record prior to this deal of confected VAR arrangements; but I have not in the end been persuaded that the very limited available evidence necessarily demonstrates on a balance of probabilities that Realise entered into VT15 on the basis of a side-agreement or similar arrangement which in effect negated, or promised its release from, its contractual obligations.

1124. In case, however, I am wrong, and the inference asserted by the Claimants is on review held to have been warranted and established, I should state my conclusions on the Defendants' knowledge.

Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT15 and the Realise acquisition

1125. Mr Hussain was directly involved. If, contrary to my assessment, revenue was improperly recognised from VT15, Mr Hussain would have been aware of the facts giving rise to the impropriety and their consequences in terms of the substance of the transaction and the criteria in IAS 18.14. He would thus have had "guilty knowledge".

1126. Dr Lynch did not say anything about VT15 in either of his witness statements. He told me in cross-examination that he had very little involvement in this transaction. He accepted that he was given some, but he stressed very limited, information in relation to the progress of the Credit Suisse deal, but the information given to him in an email update on 30 June 2010 indicated that it was a good prospect for a subsequent quarter. He told me he did not recall that Autonomy had taken the deal to a VAR and had no recollection of being involved in the sale to Realise, the sale terms, or in the accounting for it.

1127. Later in 2010, he was aware of and involved at a high level in considering taking a stake in Realise, which Autonomy subsequently did. It was suggested to Dr Lynch that he and Mr Hussain "*saw this as an opportunity to address Realise's debt on its VAR transaction*". The Defendants contended that this would not be improper even if correct, but Dr Lynch rejected the proposition. Dr Lynch also explained about his understanding of the transaction as follows:

(a) The transaction involved the acquisition by Autonomy of an approximately 20% interest in Realise conditional on Realise paying £533,609 to Autonomy, and a payment by Autonomy to Realise upfront of a fee for professional services for a specified number of days in the sum of £570,000. It was an opportunity to combine two of his services partners, Realise and Okana (which Realise was about to acquire or had acquired). Autonomy would have wanted to see the debt paid off in the process.

(b) The purchase of professional services was at market rates. The Claimants did not challenge Dr Lynch's evidence on that, except to question whether

Autonomy had any actual need for professional services from Realise, and to suggest that in fact Autonomy never intended to call on Realise to provide them.

(c) Dr Lynch's answer was that Autonomy had a continual need for services. Further, he did not accept the proposition that Realise was not in fact expected to provide professional services: he did not know, after such a long time, *"whether they had services days already on the books or not"*. It will be recalled that in September 2011 Mr Kanter also did not agree with the summary of Realise's obligations given by Mr Murphy in the email relied on by the Claimants.[92]

1128. Whether or not when giving his evidence he could recall having been aware of it at the time, I have little doubt that Dr Lynch was kept informed of the Credit Suisse deal, the need to close it before the end of the quarter to bring in revenue to meet forecasts, the race to close it, the ultimate delay, and the usual last-minute resort to a VAR or 'fulfilment partner'. By the same token, it seems to me likely, however, that he would have known also that (a) Realise was not a 'friendly' VAR (b) Mr Egan was not involved (c) Credit Suisse had signed a letter of intent, the only glitch had been tightness of time, and the deal could confidently be expected to close in the next quarter.

1129. However, it seems to me that it is to be borne in mind that although it is an abiding curiosity of this case, and I suspect an omission for which each side may have a conflicting forensic explanation, that I was told next to nothing about other "innocent" VAR deals, it does seem that there was a large number of them both before and during the Relevant Period. The necessary inference is that some were entirely innocent.

1130. On balance, I do not think the evidence is sufficiently clear in this particular context to establish that Dr Lynch considered this deal to be a 'pattern' deal; and I would therefore have declined to conclude that he had "guilty knowledge".

VT26: Tikit/KPMG Q4 2010

1131. As was pointed out at the outset of the section in Dr Lynch's written closing submissions addressing this transaction (VT26), VT26 differed from all the other VAR transactions which the Claimants sought to impugn in this case, since it is common ground that it was in writing: there was a collateral letter agreement.

1132. The Claimants' principal complaint is that the side-letter should have been disclosed to Deloitte and was not, and that if it had been disclosed as and when it should have been, revenue recognition would not have been approved by Deloitte. The Claimants also alleged that revenue recognition was improper because Tikit was never intended to on-sell to the named prospective end-user, KPMG. The factual background can be summarised as follows.

1133. Autonomy's forecast revenues for Q4 2010 were $236,000,000. A potential deal with KPMG was listed in an email dated 15 October 2010 from Mr Hussain to Dr Lynch under the stated subject *"getting to 236"* as one of seven "big deals" which Autonomy hoped to close before the end of the quarter. The deal related to an Interwoven product called "iManage". KPMG were an important iManage customer, and the proposed transaction in Q4 2010 was a renewal deal.

[92] See paragraph 1116(4) above.

1134. Mr Hussain kept Dr Lynch regularly updated on progress, including by emails dated 4 November 2010 and 10 November 2010. Dr Lynch accepted in cross-examination that he knew that Autonomy was trying to conclude this direct deal, and that he knew it was a "*big deal*".

1135. Autonomy was very open about the fact that it needed the transaction to close within Q4 2010. On 10 November 2010, Mr Robert Sass, Autonomy's Senior Vice President, North America Sales, made plain to KPMG that "*In terms of timing, the opportunity to reach contracts by end of year is very key to us*", expressing the hope that the paperwork could be executed in December 2010. His KPMG counterparty, however, said he would be "*surprised if KPMG will move to purchase the solution before the end of the year*".

1136. This was prescient: on 13 December 2010, Mr Mooney informed Mr Hussain that "*KPMG said no*" and that a direct deal with KPMG would not be possible by the end of the year but would be considered in Q1 2011. He added: *"Can pay maintenance. May consider "search" but probably Q1".* Mr Hussain relayed the bad news to Dr Lynch the same day. On 15 December 2010, Mr Hussain told Dr Lynch that the transaction was "*at risk in my opinion*", though he prefaced this by saying that *"feedback is that they are still working it – getting sign offs".* He sent a further update on 17 December 2010.

1137. On 23 December 2010, Mr Hussain suggested involving Tikit to Mr Neil Araujo (CEO Protect, Professional Markets at Autonomy). Mr Hussain explained that KPMG were "*squeezing us hard*" and that the decision had therefore been made to wait until Q1 2011 to do a deal. Tikit was (and is) a substantial, publicly listed, technology services company. Dr Lynch's evidence in his witness statement was that it was a long-standing reseller of iManage, an Interwoven product, with a large team of professionals who sold, implemented and supported the product.

1138. On 27 December 2010, Mr Hussain asked Autonomy's in-house lawyers to draw up a contract with Tikit and specified the terms of the contract. The same day (27 December 2010), Mr Hussain wrote to Dr Lynch and Mr Araujo, subject "*tikit deal*", suggesting that it would be a good idea for Mr Araujo to be in the UK to close the transaction and asked "*Agree?*". Mr Hussain plainly expected Dr Lynch to understand what was meant by the "*tikit deal*", i.e. a VAR agreement in circumstances where KPMG had said 'no' to concluding a deal within the quarter. When this obvious point was put to him in cross-examination, Dr Lynch gave what the Claimants said were *"cagey answers"* and claimed, "*I don't know what I knew at that time*" (which the Claimants invited me to find was not so).

1139. On 29 December 2010, Mr Hussain was overseeing the drawing up of contractual documentation with Tikit. He said he needed "*a side letter (which will be disclosed)*", providing that, in the "*highly unlikely event that KPMG do not extend then tikit can resell similar software, part of partnership etc. start with the fact that tikit has been an autonomy partner for many years, many customers…*" . Dr Lynch agreed in cross-examination that the reference to disclosure is likely to have meant disclosure to the auditors.

1140. On 31 December 2010, Tikit issued a purchase order to ASL, for resale to KPMG, with a lower licence fee of £3,847,500 (plus £202,500 support and maintenance). Autonomy recognised the licence fee revenue immediately. The same day, ASL entered into a side letter with Tikit. Illustrating his direct personal involvement, Mr Hussain signed for

ASL. After an introduction reciting that Tikit's purchase of Autonomy WorkSite technology was for resale to KPMG, it provided:

> *"In the event that Tikit does not consummate the original transaction to at least the value set forth in the PO by 30 March 2011 then such PO shall be deemed a binding pre-purchase obligation, and Tikit shall be permitted to utilize pre-purchased software under the PO and offset amounts due to Autonomy (to a maximum of £3.1 million) under other orders placed by Tikit related to such software and maintenance under the Agreement for the period between 1 January 2011 and 30 June 2012."*

1141. The Claimants contended that the notion of Tikit consummating a deal with KPMG was a fiction. Tikit was never going to be involved. Rather, it was Autonomy, with the close involvement of Mr Hussain, which continued to negotiate with KPMG in an effort to conclude a direct deal. This provision served to insulate Tikit against the risk that Autonomy failed to conclude an end-user deal with KPMG.

1142. The side letter went on to provide:

> *"Further in the event that Tikit does not consummate the original transaction to at least the value set forth in the PO by 30 March 2011 then Autonomy and Tikit shall enter into an arrangement whereby Tikit shall be appointed as the second line support and maintenance provider to KPMG under the existing maintenance arrangement between KPMG and Interwoven for three quarters from 1 January 2011 for a fee of up to £320,000 per quarter."*

1143. The Claimants invited me to find that this provision for Autonomy to transfer to Tikit support and maintenance fees of up to £960,000 (three quarters @ £320,000), which would otherwise have been payable by KPMG to Autonomy, was simply a mechanism introduced for the sole purpose of putting Tikit in funds to pay its debt to Autonomy, so that *"Once again, Autonomy was going to get (part) paid using its own money."*

1144. Despite Mr Hussain's indication in his email of 29 December 2010 that the side letter would be "*disclosed"*, Mr Welham's evidence was that Deloitte did not see it during its 2010 annual audit. The Claimants sought to suggest deliberate concealment by reference to the alleged falsity of a representation letter dated 22 February 2011 signed by Mr Hussain, in which the directors of Autonomy represented to Deloitte that there were no side letters. The Claimants contended that it followed that the representation in the representation letter was false, must have been known by Mr Hussain to be false, but was relied on as being accurate by Deloitte.

1145. They submitted further that given that the representation was made on behalf of all of the Autonomy directors, the Court should infer that Mr Hussain would have told the relevant facts to Dr Lynch before signing it. They sought also to rely, as further demonstrating concealment, on the fact that it was only much later that the Tikit side letter came to light, not because of any action taken by the Defendants to disclose it, but because Tikit, quite properly, qualified their audit confirmation letter dated 6 July 2011 (which contained a representation that there were no side letters) by attaching a copy.

1146. Mr Welham's evidence in his witness statement was that Deloitte relied upon that representation. Mr Bloomer also said that the Audit Committee was not aware of the

letter at the time, and that it would have been relevant to consider its revenue *"implications"*.

1147. The Claimants' case was that the reason for concealing the side letter from Deloitte was that the side letter transformed the nature of the risk being undertaken by Tikit by virtue of its purchase order: on the Claimants' interpretation, instead of making an outright purchase of the software specified in the purchase order and assuming the risk of its resale, Tikit was being insulated by Autonomy against the risk that a resale would not eventuate. The Claimants submitted that the consequence was that risk never passed and that the recognition of revenue was improper accordingly.

1148. The Claimants contended further that the steps proposed and then abandoned, revised and then taken, after the VAR sale to relieve Tikit from having to satisfy in cash its obligations under the VT26 purchase order further demonstrated Autonomy's *"general practice…that [the VAR] should not be left holding the bag"*. They painted a picture of ever-changing but (as they characterised them) invariably improper efforts to unravel VT26:

(1) When in due course Autonomy was approaching the conclusion of a direct deal with KPMG, Autonomy needed to solve the problem of Tikit's outstanding debt. Autonomy therefore proposed to KPMG that contractual language be included whereby Tikit was Autonomy's designated payee. However, KPMG refused to agree. On 10 February 2011, it emerged that the KPMG board was refusing to have a third party such as Tikit introduced into the contract, regarding this as a "*red flag*" and a major problem. The problem was escalated to Mr Hussain. Dr Lynch's evidence that KPMG did not wish to purchase from Tikit because it audited Tikit's accounts was not challenged.

(2) In light of the deal going direct to KPMG without (at KPMG's insistence) Tikit's involvement, Mr Hussain appears to have been willing at one stage simply to cancel Tikit's obligations. On 7 March 2011, Mr Scott emailed Mr Kanter and Mr Chamberlain stating that "*Sushovan asked me to prepare a cancellation notice for Tikit in connection with its KPMG order... Sushovan also asked me to have a look at what we did with Capax/Kraft an [sic] Capax/Eli and to use that as a model*", and attaching a draft termination letter. As the Defendants observed in their written closing submissions, this would have resulted in a similar outcome, and for similar reasons, as the Capax Discovery/Kraft deal in Q3 2009 (VT3), which Deloitte had reviewed and understood. But in the event this route was not adopted.

(3) Instead, and after an Autonomy entity, Verity Benelux BV, had entered into a direct agreement with KPMG for $10,796,860 on 21 March 2011, the arrangements envisaged in the side letter were restored. On 28 April 2011, Mr Chamberlain (copying Mr Hussain) asked Ms Julie Dolan, Autonomy Senior Corporate Counsel, to draft a letter to be signed by Tikit and Autonomy. He explained the rationale as follows:

> *"When they issued the PO in Dec we also signed a letter effectively allowing them to repurpose if the KPMG deal did not close via them. They have received a bunch of orders for circa £1.5m. They want to offset those against the o/s debt which we are happy to do. Effectively*

the £4m will act like a prepay and they will allocate orders to burn through it. Need a document that captures this."

(4) The Claimants submitted that this explanation makes little sense. They submitted that to say that the £4 million would act as a "*prepay*" overlooks the obvious problem that Tikit had, to date, paid nothing (disregarding the offset of Autonomy's own entitlement to maintenance fees from KPMG). It had not prepaid but rather incurred a debt: far from Tikit discharging that debt by placing further orders from third parties for Autonomy software, on its face, such orders would create additional debts on the part of Tikit, rather than discharging a pre-existing debt.

1149. What in the event happened is that a series of letter agreements were entered into between ASL and Tikit, which recited the provision of the side letter and then set out various lower value deals which Tikit had concluded for sales of Autonomy software to many different end-users. The letter agreement then recorded that the value of those lower value deals would be offset against Tikit's obligations under VT26. There are two such letter agreements dated 27 May 2011, and subsequent letter agreements dated 7 June 2011 and 20 June 2011. The offsetting process seems to have continued until 28 November 2011 until the figure of £3,089,825 (i.e. the total amount due under the purchase order less £960,000 treated as already paid, as explained below) had been reached.

1150. As part of its direct deal with KPMG, Autonomy agreed to pass to Tikit the benefit of £960,000 in maintenance and support fees that would otherwise have been received by Autonomy from KPMG. Rather than have the money going round in a circle, Tikit was not paid the £960,000; rather, Autonomy simply offset the £960,000 against the monies due under VT26. The Claimants maintained that there is no evidence that Tikit actually provided maintenance and support to KPMG; and that indeed, the provision of such services would fly in the face of KPMG's opposition to the interposition of a third party. The Defendants reminded me that Tikit's business was as a service provider for iManage, and that KPMG's opposition was simply to acquiring software from Tikit, not services, but did not provide further evidence. It seems to me more likely than not, and I find, that this was a means devised by Autonomy in order to ensure that Tikit was not exposed.

1151. The Defendants, on the other hand, submitted that the Claimants had misunderstood: the commercial intent was in line with the side letter; Tikit was able to repurpose the software purchased under the Tikit/KPMG agreement towards other orders, up to the agreed value.

1152. The essential points stressed by the Defendants, and which they suggested had been overlooked or mis-appreciated by the Claimants, were that (a) Deloitte were in fact aware of the side letter in April 2011, but even if they were not (b) the side letter did not make any difference to the revenue recognition, and (c) when in 2012 Deloitte re-reviewed it, they expressly confirmed that it did not. The Defendants contended that (d) Tikit remained liable for the debt under VT26, though it would have the repurposed sales to fund the debt partially.[93]

[93] D1 closings suggests still liable and could repurpose up to agreed value, but not that it was to fund the debt.

1153. These points were supported by submissions on the part of the Defendants that:

(1) The Claimants' suggestion with regard to the side-agreement that "*the notion of Tikit consummating a deal with KPMG was a fiction*" is misplaced. The overwhelmingly likely view on the evidence is that both Tikit and Autonomy did envisage that Tikit would receive a purchase order from KPMG. The Claimants' fallacy (here and elsewhere) was to assume that the fact that Autonomy may have continued in negotiation with the end-user meant that it was not contemplated that the reseller would be involved in the end-user deal.

(2) Neither the side letter, nor the subsequent arrangements made further to the side letter after a direct deal was reached between Autonomy and KPMG, affected the initial recognition of revenue in respect of VT26. None affected the initial incidence of risk: Tikit as the VAR was on risk until released by the offsetting arrangements *pro tanto.* None of the arrangements affected Tikit's control of the goods; and it is to be noted that Tikit recorded the Autonomy software in its audited accounts as inventory, reflecting its understanding that it was on risk and the owner of the software.

(3) When Autonomy made a direct deal with KPMG in respect of substantially the same software as was the subject of VT26, from which Titkit was excluded at KPMG's insistence, it was only right that Titkit, having been deprived of its prospective end-user deal, should in some way be made good. A solution might have been simply to forgive the debt due under the VT26 purchase order, on the lines of what happened in VT3 (the Kraft deal), which Deloitte had approved. However, given the specific terms agreed at the outset in VT26 in the side letter, that was the route eventually taken.

(4) Contrary to the Claimants' efforts to present what was done as making no sense, the arrangement contemplated in the side letter and implemented broadly in accordance with it was an entirely proper and rational arrangement which, in effect, enabled Tikit to sell on software that it had acquired, and thereby with the proceeds of sale reduce its indebtedness to Autonomy (up to a pre-specified limit).

(5) The offsetting arrangements were proper and practical; and they were carefully documented. Mr Chamberlain provided Deloitte with the running state of the offsetting arrangements between Autonomy and Tikit, showing Autonomy invoices to iManage customers which had obtained software from Tikit.

(6) The subsequent sales were correctly and properly treated by Autonomy as pre-paid: having already received and recognised revenue under the original VAR sale in VT26, it would have been double-counting to recognise revenue in respect of the subsequent sales of the same software albeit that Autonomy invoiced for them.

(7) Although the Claimants had omitted altogether to mention it, when in 2012 HP asked Deloitte to reconsider the revenue recognition of VT26 in the light of the side letter which Mr Welham stated they had not seen at the time, Deloitte specifically endorsed the revenue recognition decision and confirmed that the side letter did not make any difference to revenue recognition. Mr Welham

also confirmed in cross-examination that his conclusion was that the revenue should not be adjusted as at 31 December 2010 because the criteria under IAS 18.14 had been met. Although Mr Welham suggested in his witness statement that the side letter "*cast doubt on whether all of the revenue on the transaction with Tikit could be recognised*", he confirmed in his testimony that the side letter would not in fact have made any difference to the revenue recognition. That was his view both in 2012 and now.[94] He explained this in cross-examination as follows:

> *"That's correct, because ultimately we saw this as a pre-payment, but they could only on-sell the software they had, which is an important point, so yes, in that case it doesn't affect it."*

(8) If, as Mr Welham stated in evidence, Deloitte were not provided with the side letter to review during the 2010 annual audit, that was not deliberate concealment: it was a regrettable oversight on the part of Autonomy's finance department. All Autonomy's files were open for inspection for Deloitte, and the Defendants submitted that there was no evidence of any deliberate attempt to conceal the side letter. As explained below, Autonomy were open with Deloitte about the side letter in subsequent months. Mr Welham accepted that Deloitte would in any event have known about the side letter in Q1 2011 if they had required earlier audit confirmation.[95] Tikit, entirely properly, identified the side letter in its audit confirmation letter to Deloitte dated 6 July 2011.

(9) Furthermore, the evidence suggests that Deloitte understood about the side letter and its terms by or before July 2011. When Deloitte were considering whether revenue could be recognised on Autonomy's direct deal with KPMG their review stated:

> *"It was noted that in Q4 2010, a £4 million license (c. $6 million) was signed with KPMG via the VAR Tikit Limited (documented in PY Q4-8130c). Deloitte has compared the software purchased in Q4 with the current deal and noted that the majority of the Q4 software purchased, including the maximum number of named users (WorkSite, AES, IUS Enterprise) has also been included in the current deal, which is a direct sale with KPMG. This direct sale by Autonomy therefore replaces the sale previously being made by Tikit to KPMG. PDW Steven Chamberlain (VP Finance), as stated in the December 2010 VAR agreement, the VAR may resell the software to another end-user and it has the legal obligation to pay for the license fee and therefore it is up to the VAR to reassign the software if required. Given that under the current deal, Autonomy has delivered the software to KPMG and we have assessed the recoverability of this Q1 deal as being*

[94] Mr Welham was also asked to assume that Autonomy had cancelled its purchase order with Tikit in March 2011. In fact, Autonomy did not do so, so the assumption was misplaced. In any event, however, Mr Welham thought that it was hard to say what difference it might have made if this had happened.

[95] "*Q. Now, if you had required a confirmation in Q1, no doubt you would have found out about this letter at that point? A. That's likely, yes.*"

> *satisfactory (see below), the current contract meets the requirements of IAS18 and therefore the revenue recognition is considered satisfactory."*

The point in this context is that the right to "resell the software to another end-user" that Deloitte were referring to was contained in the side letter (and only there), strongly suggesting that Deloitte must have seen the side letter before July 2011.

(10) In summary, the initial revenue recognition was proper at the time; it was considered proper when later reviewed; and nothing in the subsequent arrangements affected that or, more generally, was itself improper or lacking in commercial rationality.

My assessment of VT26

1154. In my view, the propriety of revenue recognition in this VAR transaction primarily hinges on whether the Claimants' allegation that the notion of Tikit consummating a deal with KPMG was a fiction and that Autonomy, directed by Mr Hussain in this regard, always intended that Autonomy itself would conclude a direct deal with KPMG. If so, it seems that what Autonomy intended was that Tikit's introduction was simply to enable Autonomy to book revenue, without any expectation of an end-user sale by Tikit, rendering Tikit's ownership economically nominal. Further, on that basis, the side letter contained a plain and intentional misrepresentation, casting a darker shadow over Autonomy's failure, if proved, to disclose it to Deloitte and the Audit Committee.

1155. If, in addition, Deloitte were also subsequently misled as to the effect of the side letter that would, of course, further exacerbate the position, and remove a plank of the defence.

1156. As in the case of VT15, the evidence was sparse: Mr Welham did address VT26 (he had not addressed VT15); Dr Lynch mentioned it too, and so did Mr Bloomer; but no-one gave evidence in these proceedings or elsewhere on behalf of Tikit, nor for KPMG, in respect of the transaction. The documentary record was more revealing generally; but it too was sparse as to the nature and objectives of the discussions between Autonomy and KPMG.

1157. I do not consider that the available evidence demonstrates that Tikit understood that it was not to be involved in any resale, though I think read as a whole it suggests that it is more likely than not that it had no intention or expectation of being so. However, more importantly, it does seem to me more likely than not, having regard to the documentary evidence as a whole, that Mr Hussain always envisaged and intended a direct deal between Autonomy and KPMG: a resale by Tikit to KPMG was never seriously in his contemplation. The side letter he caused to be prepared, which gave the clear impression that a direct sale was perceived and understood by both parties to be the less likely result, was misleading: I would indeed accept that, as far as Mr Hussain was concerned it was a fiction.

1158. Whether or not Deloitte somehow came to know of the side letter in 2011, it should have been but was not disclosed to them. There is no plausible satisfactory explanation, to my mind, why Mr Hussain did not cause the side letter to be disclosed to Deloitte, having given an express assurance that it would be. Of course, in a busy life, oversights

are possible, even frequent; but on the Defendants' own case, a side letter was highly unusual and ordinarily proscribed, and a representation letter is a serious matter, and it is to be inferred, in my judgment, that in signing the representation letter he would surely have been aware or reminded of the assurance he had given. I accept in its favour that Autonomy did have an "open files" policy; but that did not negate or satisfy the assurance Mr Hussain had given that the side letter would be disclosed to Deloitte or justify the terms of the representation letter given by Autonomy's Directors to Deloitte.

1159. Having (as I have) rejected oversight as the explanation, I consider it more likely than not that it was considered by Mr Hussain to be easier to present the VAR deal without the side letter, even if he might have been reasonably confident that if revealed, it was sufficiently equivocal that it could be presented as not affecting the result, as indeed Deloitte concluded when eventually it was disclosed by Tikit.

1160. Quite how Deloitte interpreted the letter and came to its view that it made no difference to revenue recognition is not easy to understand. It was certainly acted upon by Tikit as effectively permitting them to set against the amounts owed in respect of VT26 any sales of Autonomy software they thereafter negotiated. What in the event happened is that a series of letter agreements were entered into between ASL and Tikit, which recited the provisions of the side letter and then set out various lower value deals which Tikit had concluded for sales of Autonomy software to many different end-users. The letter agreement then recorded that the value of those lower value deals would be offset against Tikit's obligations under VT26. In other words, the original deal was, in the language of Mr Chamberlain "repurposed". The "offsetting" process seems to have continued until 28 November 2011 until the figure of £3,089,825 (representing the total amount due under the purchase order less the £960,000) had been reached. But it is not clear whether (a) the software sold by Tikit came from its own 'inventory' or from Autonomy or (b) whether any receipts were actually paid over by Tikit to Autonomy.

1161. Certainly when the position was reviewed in October 2012 Ms Antonia Anderson (formerly of Deloitte but by then employed by HP) assumed no such payment, her understanding being that:

> *"…as Tikit submitted additional orders, Autonomy delivered software for these orders but did not charge Tikit and created zero value orders and invoices as these orders were fulfilled. The attached excel shows which orders were set against the prepay. As you can see there was a large number of small orders."*

1162. However, this made no sense: there had been no "prepayment" by Tikit under VT26. When consulted by Ms Anderson in October 2012, Mr Welham gave a different explanation of the side letter. He said that, in his view, the side letter as written permitted Tikit to resell the <u>same</u> software to users other than KPMG. Even allowing for confirmation bias and the considerable pressures on Deloitte (and Mr Welham personally) by that time to confirm the decisions on revenue recognition which had by then been made and acted upon, I do not consider that the evidence gainsays this assertion of Deloitte's own understanding. Right or wrong, the point is that Deloitte's understanding of what was permitted was not what occurred; and on that basis its approval of revenue recognition was based on a mistaken understanding.

1163. I have concluded, though not without hesitation, that the reality known to Mr Hussain was that the economic risks of ownership and management of the software were retained

by Autonomy, and in the event that happened, Tikit was (not unnaturally) content that this was so.

1164. In my judgment, revenue should not have been recognised from VT26.

Defendants' knowledge of and participation in VT26 and subsequent arrangements

Mr Hussain

1165. The Claimants submitted that Mr Hussain, again, knew all the relevant facts. Moreover, they submitted that *"he must have taken the decision not to disclose the side letter to Deloitte, as he unquestionably should have done."*

1166. Mr Hussain could not dispute his knowledge of the facts, but he did dispute the allegation of deliberate concealment. He submitted that there was no reasonable basis on which to draw an inference that there was any concealment by Autonomy. Dr Lynch sought to assist him in the course of his own cross-examination:

> *"…by the way, it wouldn't have been Mr Hussain that was responsible for handing over that file. That would have been the legal department."*

1167. I do not accept that Mr Hussain did not himself hold the letter back. He had promised its disclosure. It was for him to see that this was done. In my judgment, Mr Hussain was personally and directly involved at all relevant stages. I have already found (see paragraph 1157 above) that as far as Mr Hussain was concerned the side letter was to an important extent a fiction. I think it more likely than not that he chose to keep it back from Deloitte for fear that it would prejudice revenue recognition: and I so find.

1168. In my judgment, it follows also that Mr Hussain knew that revenue should not have been recognised from the transaction and he had "guilty knowledge".

Dr Lynch

1169. As regards Dr Lynch, the Claimants submitted baldly that:

> *"the likelihood is that Mr Hussain kept Dr Lynch informed or, at the very least, was acting within the scope of what Dr Lynch had authorised him to do, namely to recognise revenue improperly, as and when required."*

1170. Dr Lynch accepted that he received occasional updates on the status of the KPMG renewal deal. He may also have been aware that Mr Araujo of Autonomy was meeting with Mr Lumsden of Tikit. However, he told me that he was not involved in the sale to Tikit, did not participate in the negotiations and neither reviewed nor approved the terms of the transaction.

1171. Dr Lynch said that he did not recall knowing about the side letter at the time but on reviewing it for his witness statement he did not regard it as untoward. His position was that he was not involved in the revenue recognition, and had no reason to think there were any material issues with the accounting.

1172. Dr Lynch was cross-examined about this transaction:

(1) He did not accept the proposition that Mr Hussain's email dated 13 December 2010 forwarding Mr Mooney's email of that same date headed *"KPMG said no"* (see paragraph 1136 above) meant that KPMG would not do the deal. He pointed out that KPMG were still a prospect later in December (as emails later in December confirmed).

(2) It was not suggested that Dr Lynch had seen or reviewed the side letter.

(3) Dr Lynch was referred to Mr Hussain's representation letter at paragraph 1144 above. As to this:

   (a) Dr Lynch did not think he would have reviewed this letter at the time. The Claimants did not identify or put to him any document demonstrating that he did do so.

   (b) Although he was not involved in this aspect, when asked about it, Dr Lynch did not accept that the side letter had not in fact been disclosed to Deloitte. As explained at paragraph 1153(9) above, Deloitte did seem to know of the terms of the side letter, at least by April 2011. In any event, he suggested that this was in substance a representation about there being no undisclosed side letters and that disclosure would have been a matter for the legal department.

   (c) Dr Lynch was asked "*Would Mr Hussain have discussed with you whether you should sign this representation letter despite the existence of a side letter from Tikit?*" Dr Lynch rejected this; and no evidential basis was advanced for it.

(4) It was suggested that Dr Lynch knew that "*no revenue should have been recognised on the Tikit transaction*". The Defendants submitted that it was unclear how Dr Lynch could have known this, given that:

   (a) it was not suggested to him that he knew of the side letter, and

   (b) when Deloitte (who were the experts) did consider the side letter they did not think that the revenue should not have been recognised.

(5) When it was put to him that he *"knew, just as with those earlier transactions, no revenue should have been recognised on the Tikit transaction either"*, Dr Lynch summarised his position as follows:

> *"A. That's incorrect, and of course when Deloitte -- when it's not in dispute that Deloitte do see the amendment which is a quarter later, they consider it has no effect on the revenue recognition and the revenue stands in any case. And then, when HP takes over Autonomy, it puts a lot of pressure on Deloitte to reverse this revenue and move it into the future, into their future books, and Deloitte resist that and they say that the revenue was fine. So everything I've seen about this transaction leads me to believe that actually whether or not Deloitte saw the paperwork, all of*

> *it, at the time -- and I believe they did -- that it made no difference anyway."*

1173. In my assessment:

(1) It is unlikely that Mr Hussain did not inform Dr Lynch of the side letter, though he may not have detailed its terms. It was an important feature of the transaction, in which he was keeping Dr Lynch otherwise informed, and which was a large one. It would have been both risky for him and unnecessary, given their shared objectives and strategy, to keep this from Dr Lynch.

(2) I do not accept that it was not sufficiently put to Dr Lynch that he knew of the letter. The thrust of the questioning was to demonstrate that he did know of it and (for example) should have made reference to it in the Directors' representation letter to Deloitte.

(3) I do not accept either that Dr Lynch was unaware of the relevant part of the representation letter. The way matters were presented to Deloitte was an important part of the VAR strategy, and I think it more likely than not that Mr Hussain would have alerted him to it. But even if he did not read it and was unaware of its content, my view that he was aware of the thrust of the side letter would still stand.

(4) Both Dr Lynch's quick intelligence and his opportunism were displayed by the debate he had with Mr Rabinowitz as to whether the representation contained a typographical error of some significance. The relevant representation, as it appeared, read as follows:

> *"No revenue deals containing side letters of ongoing Autonomy performance requirements…"*

It was suggested to him that the word *"of"* was an obvious typographical error and should have been *"or"* and that was how Mr Welham had understood it also. After the smallest pause to read, Dr Lynch said *"No, I think it's 'of'"*. He added that:

> *"Again, I'm reading this now but I think it's a clause to make sure that Autonomy doesn't have ongoing performance requirements that it hasn't disclosed."*

This was ingenious, but not, in my view sustainable: there was an obvious error. Corrected, it was an obvious misrepresentation, all of a piece with the desire that the letter not be disclosed.

1174. In my judgment, though there is, not unusually, little transaction-specific evidence of Dr Lynch's involvement or of what he was told or saw, the Tikit transaction (VT26) fell within the pattern which implemented the strategy instigated and encouraged by Mr Hussain and Dr Lynch, in the context of which Mr Hussain habitually reported regularly to Dr Lynch. In my judgment, it would be contrary to their usual *modus operandi* for Mr Hussain to have kept from Dr Lynch the fact of the side letter arrangements; and even

had he done so, it would be more likely than not, in all the circumstances, that Dr Lynch would have assumed something similar to have been put in place in accordance with the usual pattern.

1175. Having regard to the standard of proof, I have concluded that Dr Lynch also had guilty knowledge that VT26 should not have been accounted for as giving rise to recognised revenue at the point of the VAR sale.

VT14: Auxilium/Vatican Library (Q1 2010)

1176. In addition to the MicroTech VAR deal for end-user Vatican Library in Q1 2010 (VT13), ASL entered into a VAR deal dated 31 March 2010 with Auxilium Tech SrL ("Auxilium", another Italian reseller). The VAR Agreement was signed on behalf of ASL by Mr Kanter.

1177. A Product Schedule was signed by Mr Kanter bearing a Commencement Date of 31 March 2010 (clause 20). That stated a licence fee of €2.5 million plus €125,000 for support and maintenance (clause 17), both payable within 120 days. The authorised use of the software in the Auxilium purchase order was limited to the Vatican Library digitisation project (clause 8), permitted 10 concurrent users (clause 10) and the territory of software installation was the Vatican Territory (clause 11).

1178. It appears that, as at 31 March 2010, the total licence revenue recognised by Autonomy on this purchase was only €1,300,000 ($1,858,024), and that no further revenue ultimately ended up being recognised as at the end of Q2 2010.

1179. As noted in their Report to the Audit Committee on the Q1 2010 Review dated 20 April 2010, Deloitte considered that any revenue recognition at all on this transaction and a transaction with another Italian reseller should be deferred until *"management has more clarity on recoverability"*. Autonomy management, and in particular Mr Chamberlain rejected this, but failed to persuade Deloitte otherwise.

1180. In the event, Auxilium never did pay any amount to Autonomy, and the whole invoice value was written off in ASL's general ledger on 30 September 2011 (bad debt provisions having previously been recorded).

1181. Although falling within the description of a *"Collectability VAR"*, in that the Claimants did not aver any side-agreement and relied principally on Auxilium's doubtful ability to pay and thus an alleged failure to satisfy IAS 18.14(d) in respect of VT14 as the ground for impugning it, the Claimants also argued that neither IAS18.14(a) nor IAS18.14(b) was satisfied either. Their position was that, contrary to the way in which Mr Chamberlain presented the transaction to Deloitte (he asserted that Auxilium would be receiving payment from the end-user before it became liable to pay Autonomy), there is no evidence that Auxilium ever had any involvement with the Vatican Library, let alone any basis for expecting to be paid by it.

1182. The Claimants invited me to conclude that it was never intended that Auxilium should make any attempt to achieve a sale to the Vatican Library and, in any event, that Auxilium did not in fact make such an attempt. That fed into the Claimants' primary allegation that the debt was not collectible contrary to IAS 18.14(d) (since on that basis, Auxilium could not expect to receive any imminent payment from an end-user) but also was contended to show that in fact Autonomy retained risk and control, contrary to

IAS18.14 (a) and (b). Thus, collectability and the other provisions of IAS 18.14 are inextricably linked, as Mr MacGregor acknowledged.

1183. This is illustrated by the way that Autonomy sought to persuade Deloitte of the credit-worthiness of Auxilium. Mr Chamberlain described Auxilium to Deloitte (in an email dated 16 April 2010) as *"a reasonably sized VAR with significant revenues and assets"*. This, together with the knowledge he asserted from being *"very close to the negotiations of the end-user deal with BAV"* that *"they are expecting to receive payment from BAV on May 15th"*, which he stated *"provides us with the comfort to recognise the deal."*

1184. In fact, and contrary to what he told Deloitte, the financial information about Auxilium available to Autonomy was slim: and Mr Chamberlain had that same day (16 April 2010) described its 2008 financial statements to Mr Corrado Broli ("Mr Broli"), the Autonomy sales executive covering Italy, as *"not strong enough to support revenue recognition on their own"*.

1185. Even so, that same day (16 April 2010), Deloitte's refusal to approve revenue recognition and their production of an updated misstatements schedule, which included the revenue on the Auxilium purchase order provoked an immediate and aggressive response from Mr Hussain. Despite Mr Chamberlain's acknowledgement in his email to Mr Broli that revenue recognition could not be supported on the basis of the 2008 financial statements on their own, Mr Hussain wrote to Deloitte the very same day (16 April 2010) pressing for full recognition:

> *"Auxilium- No way am I accepting this as a judgmental item, you have the financials, you have the confirmations. These companies have quite sizeable revenues ($15m) and are profitable. They can resell $2m of software and we can't simply assume that a properly signed contract is not recognizable when there is good evidence. Many private companies keep small amounts of cash but are profitable and cash generating."*

1186. This was bluster. The truth is that Auxilium had never produced, and in the event never did produce, robust financial information. The impression of frailty was reinforced by Auxilium's failure to provide more up-to-date accounts, which even Mr Hussain described as *"very disappointing"*.

1187. Further, Mr Chamberlain's assertion that Auxilium was expecting to receive payment from the Vatican Library on 15 May was also not true. As I have found in relation to VT13 (the MicroTech/Vatican Library VAR transaction), all efforts to conclude a contract for the Vatican Library digitisation project were being undertaken by Autonomy with a view to a co-ordinated direct deal between Autonomy and the Vatican Library. I consider and find that there was never any real intention or expectation of Auxilium re-selling to the Vatican Library, and thus no real prospect of receipts from such a sale.

1188. Although I accept that this would not ordinarily affect a decision on grounds considered sufficient at the time to recognise revenue, the fact is that Auxilium did not meet its payment obligation under VT14 due on 29 July 2010. Even so, Mr Hussain continued over that time to seek to persuade Deloitte to reverse their decision to refuse recognition. In the event, Auxilium never made any payments to Autonomy at all. The whole invoice

value was written off in ASL's general ledger on 30 September 2011 (bad debt provisions having previously been recorded). The correctness of Deloitte's contemporaneous view was thereby reinforced; and Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain's efforts to overturn it appear reckless.

1189. Mr Holgate arrived at the same conclusion as Deloitte that no revenue should have been recognised. Mr MacGregor did not go further in his expert report than to say that *"there was insufficient information to reach the conclusion that Autonomy's accounting treatment in respect of the licences was inappropriate"*: allowing for the benefit of hindsight, I do not agree. There was at the time no sufficient basis for revenue recognition, as the misrepresentation of the actual position to Deloitte suggested.

1190. This conclusion is also supported by the curiosity identified by the Claimants in their written closing submissions that all of the software identified in clause 1 of Auxilium's Product Schedule – LiquidOffice, FITS PlugIn, SPE, Mediabin and Archive Solution – was already included in the MicroTech for end-user Vatican Library purchase order (VT13) signed on the same day and for exactly the same authorised use. The MicroTech purchase order permitted 200 concurrent users (clause 9), which reflected the number of users in the draft licence agreement that Autonomy hoped to conclude with Postecom. The Claimants' (readily understandable) point is that it is difficult to understand, therefore, what the point would have been of selling Auxilium a licence to use a subset of identical software, but for an additional 10 users, and that they would have wished to explore this with Mr Zanchini in cross-examination, given Mr Zanchini's personal involvement in the Vatican Library project, but for Dr Lynch's decision not to call him. All of this appears to me to confirm the artificiality of VT14.

Defendants' knowledge that revenue should not have been recognised from VT14

1191. In my judgment, Mr Hussain knew that in reality Auxilium was not expected to enter into an end-user deal which was its only realistic prospect of being able to pay Autonomy under the VAR agreement. He had "guilty knowledge".

1192. The Claimants' case that Dr Lynch also had such knowledge is once again based on the submission that Mr Hussain was *"acting within the authorisation he had received from Dr Lynch to use non-creditworthy VARs to recognise revenue improperly".* I would not accept that Dr Lynch gave such authority in such unlikely terms. No evidence was ever produced showing or even suggesting his involvement in the collectability judgement made. However, that does not conclude the matter.

1193. I have found that Dr Lynch did know that the VARs were used as placeholders. Given his close interest and involvement in the Vatican Library deal, it seems to me more likely than not that he appreciated that Auxilium would not be entering into any end-user deal and more generally had nothing to offer and no role to play except as a placeholder. He had no reason to believe that Auxilium could pay out of its own resources; and I consider it very unlikely that he was not told of Deloitte's decision to refuse revenue recognition, and Mr Hussain's reckless and unsuccessful efforts to make them change their mind. In my judgment, this amounts to "guilty knowledge", and I find accordingly.

PART V OF SCHEDULE OF IMPUGNED VAR TRANSACTIONS

The "Collectability VARs": VAR deals impugned but no side agreement is alleged

1194. As regards five of the impugned VAR transactions the criticism the Claimants made of the revenue recognition is on collectability grounds. No side agreement is alleged to have been made. The Claimants based their claims on the basis that the requirement of IAS 18.14(d), being that *"it is probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the entity"* was not satisfied.[96] The Claimants referred to these as the *"Collectability VARs"*.

1195. The Defendants sought generically and quickly to dismiss these claims as misplaced on the basis that collectability was a judgemental issue; and that, as they put it, if there were any errors in the judgements made, it is not easy to see how this is the territory of a fraud claim.

1196. Further, Dr Lynch submitted that in any event there was no evidence to show that he was involved in the collectability judgement and in point of fact he was not. Collectability judgements were being made by the finance department and scrutinised by Deloitte. In such circumstances, there could be no basis for a claim of dishonest participation against Dr Lynch.

1197. The "Collectability VARs" as described in Schedule 3 of the RRAPoC were:

    (1) Sales Consulting SRL / Poste Italiane (Q4 2009) (VT9);

    (2) Comercializadora/ TV Azteca (Q3 2010) (VT17);

    (3) Red Ventures / Poste Italiane (Q3 2010) (VT19);

    (4) Comercializadora/CISEN (Q4/2010) (VT22); and

    (5) Computer Trading / Poste Italiane (Q1 2011) (VT29).

1198. Although I address these individually below, certain introductory remarks in relation to this category of impugned transactions may assist to set the scene:

    (1) In none of these cases did an end-user deal eventuate; whilst that could not be known in advance, the fact is that in each of them, the prospect of any such end-user deal appeared problematic and unlikely. Revenue from an ultimate end-user sale was thus uncertain at best; and last-minute recourse to the VAR was not in real anticipation of an end-user sale but simply to book revenue regardless. The onus was on collectability from the VAR.

    (2) Whereas Dr Lynch characterised collectability as a judgmental issue for the finance department, in the context of which a difference of view, and even a plain error of judgement, would not of itself begin to constitute fraud, the Claimants contended that the real vice was that those directing the transactions at Autonomy knew that the VARs in question obviously had not the means to pay, never did pay, and in one case at least may not even have existed.

[96] Though in the case of VT29, a support and maintenance contract, the relevant equivalent provision is IAS 18.20(b).

(3) The essence of the Claimants' case is thus that in fact all Autonomy was doing was "parking" deals with companies for which there was no or no sufficient evidence of creditworthiness or substance simply because of an urgent need to book more revenue: the focus is really on whether the deals were contrived rather than on collectability as such.

(4) The Defendants also stressed that the issue of collectability and the judgements made at Autonomy which were questioned were not concealed or misrepresented, but discussed openly with both the Audit Committee and Deloitte. The Defendants contended that such openness destroyed the Claimants' case of dishonesty, and also emphasised the immaterial amounts (in an accounting sense) which were involved ($10,716,796 in aggregate). The Claimants answered this by contending that misrepresentations were made to both the Audit Committee and Deloitte, and in any event, Autonomy repeatedly went against Deloitte's advice, demonstrating determination to take revenue from these VAR deals notwithstanding clearly expressed doubts. According to the Claimants, the figures might be immaterial but the light cast on the practices allegedly directed and sanctioned by the Defendants respectively was not.

(5) There was also a dispute as to the burden of proof, on which the parties' respective experts also appeared to differ. In essence, the Claimants contended that since under IAS 18.14(d) the burden lies on the party seeking to recognise revenue, if there was no evidence put forward now to support collectability, the burden should not be treated as discharged, and recognition should be regarded as improper. On the other hand, the Defendants and Dr Lynch's expert, Mr MacGregor, contended (in effect) that the presumption should be that there was sufficient evidence at the time, and the burden should be on the Claimants to dislodge the judgement made at the time.

(6) The Claimants cross-examined Dr Lynch relatively briefly on the Collectability VARs, and the documentation they put forward did not overtly show or suggest any involvement on his part. In answer to the Defendants' submission that there was no evidence of Dr Lynch's involvement or knowledge, the Claimants contended that though questions of collectability were primarily considered by Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain, often alongside Mr Kanter, rather than by Dr Lynch, it is not credible to suggest that Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Kanter would have acted in the way that they did in relation to these transactions, unless they believed that Dr Lynch had authorised them to do so. Accordingly, the court should infer that Dr Lynch authorised Mr Hussain to call upon non-creditworthy VARs as and when required to deal with shortfalls in Autonomy's revenue targets, and to recognise revenue improperly on the basis of transactions with such VARs notwithstanding failure to comply with the requirements of IAS 18.14(d). Put shortly, the Claimants' case against Dr Lynch relied on the proposition that:

> *"It is not credible to suggest that Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Kanter would have acted in the way that they did in relation to these transactions, unless they believed that Dr Lynch had authorised them to do so."*

VT9: Sales Consulting SRL / Poste Italiane (Q4 2009)

1199. In October 2009, Mr Corrado Broli ("Mr Broli"), the Autonomy sales executive covering Italy, reported by email to Mr Hussain that he was pursuing two potential deals involving Poste Italiane, the Italian postal service. Mr Hussain observed in an admonishing response that only one had any prospect of coming to fruition:

> *"Corrado - you have not sold a deal with standard cash collection for the last few years - this is very bad. The only deal that is worth forecasting is the Interwoven deal which I am uncomfortable allowing any commission share. All the other deals have been forecast for many many quarters and I do not believe any of them. This is a serious issue which I want you and Nigel to address and come back to me as to the solution."*

1200. The evidence is sketchy: but it seems likely that Mr Broli's response was to engage a reseller to establish a sale with a view to on-sale to Poste Italiane. On 4 January 2010, Mr Broli sent the purchase order dated as of 31 December 2009 in the sum of €1,725,000 (including €225,000 for maintenance) to an Autonomy lawyer and asked her to "*convert*" it into what he called a "*one shot*" agreement.

1201. This resulted in the execution of an "*Autonomy One-Off Reseller Agreement*" between ASL and Sales Consulting for end-user Poste Italiane. The letter agreement stated at the top, "*effective 31 December 2009*". However, it must have been executed on or after 4 January 2010 (since it was not until then that an Autonomy lawyer was asked to draft it).

1202. In both their opening and closing submissions, the Claimants appeared to be suggesting that the letter agreement was improperly backdated. But this was not pleaded, and no such allegation was put to Dr Lynch. Further, the letter agreement is not otherwise dated and there is no pretence that it might have actually been executed on the effective date. As was emphasised in Mr Hussain's written closing submissions, and as Mr Welham accepted in cross-examination, an agreement in writing is not required for the purposes of revenue recognition pursuant to IAS 18.14, and there is nothing in itself wrong in documenting a transaction after the quarter end if the substance was agreed in the previous quarter. I do not consider that a suggestion of improper backdating is available to the Claimants, and I draw no inference of impropriety in respect of this aspect of the matter.

1203. Nevertheless, the VT9 transaction was somewhat haphazard from the start. The One-Off Reseller Agreement stated that "*Reseller should only place an order with Autonomy when Reseller has received an order from an End-User*". The Agreement also required proof of "*sell through*" by Sales Consulting to Poste Italiane on all orders in excess of $100,000. Shipment was to be made "*upon receipt of a valid purchase order*". No proof of "*sell through*" to Poste Italiane was provided to Autonomy. Thus, the purchase order did not meet the contractual requirements established by Autonomy for a valid order in the first place. There was no evidence of any effort to put in place a *"sell through"*. There is no substantial evidence that there was ever any settled prospect of a sale to Poste Italiane (and none eventuated).

1204. The somewhat haphazard documenting of the transaction was matched by the makeshift and unsatisfactory correspondence with Sales Consulting after the sale. It seems clear that there were difficulties in pinning Sales Consulting down from the start. In January 2010, Autonomy made several attempts to obtain an email address for, and financial information regarding, Sales Consulting:

(1) On 11 January 2010, Mr Chamberlain asked Mr Broli to provide an email address for it. Mr Broli provided a gmail address. On 12 January 2010, Mr Chamberlain responded, "*I cannot use a gmail address. If this is a proper organization they will have a proper e-mail address. I need that please*".

(2) On 13 January 2010, Mr Chamberlain emailed Mr Broli (copying Mr Hussain) to say, "*desperately need financials and evidence of how good they* [Sales Consulting] *are for the money. Also, still need a proper email address*". Mr Hussain followed up on the 18 January 2010 in similar vein: "*We have no information on this company …*"

(3) On 21 January 2010, Mr Broli reported that Sales Consulting had been founded on 30 July 2009 (five months before the Sales Consulting deal) and had revenues in 2009 of €1.8 million and €6.4 million projected for 2010. No information about profitability was provided.

(4) Mr Chamberlain responded, "*sorry, this does not help*" and requested further information.

(5) On 21 January 2010, Mr Chamberlain requested that Mr Broli provide evidence of "*sell through*" to the end-user. None was provided.

1205. The evidence about the likelihood of payment by Sales Consulting further deteriorated thereafter. On 19 April 2010, Mr Hussain emailed Mr Broli, copying Mr Chamberlain, complaining that no debtor's confirmation for Sales Consulting had been received, nor any up-to-date financials, and that this was "*very disappointing*".

1206. Dr Lynch, in the course of his very light cross-examination on the transaction, put this all down to business practices in Italy. But the difficulties do seem strange given that Sales Consulting was a subsidiary of BNP Paribas, a large bank.

1207. The Claimants submitted that the reality is that it is plain from this evidence that Sales Consulting was not a creditworthy counterparty for a €1.75 million transaction. That was also Deloitte's conclusion: in its Q4 2009 report to the Audit Committee, Deloitte proposed that the revenue should <u>not</u> be recognised "*as we have not seen persuasive evidence that this amount is recoverable*". However, Deloitte recorded that "*Management are comfortable that the customer has a sound financial position based on its knowledge of the customer's reputation and position in the industry*" which was said to include Sales Consulting's status as a subsidiary of BNP Paribas but added that *"…the absence of further persuasive evidence means that we are unable to reach the same position at this time."*

1208. In the event, Sales Consulting did not pay and went into liquidation. By a letter dated 24 May 2010, Sales Consulting stated (emphasis in original):

> *"Dear Steven Chamberlein, [sic]*
>
> *as anticipated through Mr Corrado Broli, on May 6th 2010 the company Sales Consulting Srl, in Via Nicolò Tartaglia 11, Rome,* ***was placed in liquidation*** *in accordance with the legislation in force in Italy.*
>
> *The reasons that led the propriety [sic] to that decision are:*
>
> *Budget losses recorded in fiscal and financial management 2009;*
>
> *Very strong market restrictions and competition from large corporations due to the global financial crisis;*
>
> *Massive cuts in spending budget of the public administration and as a consequence of private too;*
>
> *Moreover the customer named Poste Italiane SpA, who had already expressed some difficulties with its delays (which we communicated to you in the email dated in April), is not in the right condition to acquire software applications and related services throughout 2010.*
>
> *It is therefore with great regret that our company cannot maintain the conditions for the acquisition of the rights to the software registered by you on December 31st, 2009. …"*

1209. On 5 July 2010, a representative of Sales Consulting emailed a copy of the letter direct to Mr Chamberlain and Mr Broli. Mr Chamberlain forwarded a copy to Mr Hussain and Mr Kanter, stating "*Not seen this before*". The same day, Mr Kanter contacted Rachel Haverfield, an Autonomy lawyer, to ask whether Autonomy could terminate its contract with Sales Consulting "*under the bankruptcy clause*".

1210. Autonomy did not provide a copy of Sales Consulting's letter to Deloitte. It was the unchallenged evidence of Mr Welham that Deloitte "*certainly should have been told about it*", because it would have meant that what Deloitte had hitherto been content to regard as a "*judgemental adjustment*" had now become a "*known adjustment*".

1211. The Claimants pointed out that no explanation has been advanced by the Defendants as to why the letter was not forwarded to Deloitte. However, it is also to be noted that by that stage Autonomy's management had determined that the individual effect of this transaction, and the aggregate effect of the adjustments necessary to reverse the revenue recognition in respect of all prior transactions impugned on collectability grounds, was not material in the context of the financial statements as a whole.

1212. On 21 July 2010, Ms Anderson (then of Deloitte) asked Mr Chamberlain about the status of Sales Consulting. Mr Chamberlain did not tell Deloitte of Sales Consulting's bankruptcy.

1213. In an email dated 26 July 2010, Ms Rachel Haverfield, an Autonomy in-house lawyer, summarized the situation with Sales Consulting: "*In Dec 2009, one of our smaller resellers (Sales Consulting) purchased a licence on behalf of an Italian company, Poste. It appears that Poste did not go ahead with the project, so the reseller did not get paid.*" She mentioned that Mr Kanter was exploring whether Autonomy could terminate the contract on the basis of the liquidation.

1214. When, in October 2010, Deloitte raised, as an outstanding audit issue, the need for evidence of the recoverability of the Sales Consulting debt, Mr Chamberlain told Mr Hussain to "*Ignore Sales Consulting, this is not valid*". However, that position was never relayed to Deloitte either.

1215. In Q3 2011, after the HP acquisition was announced, but before it became effective, Autonomy wrote off the then-outstanding balance.

1216. As previously mentioned, the experts agreed that (in retrospect at least) revenue should not have been recognised on this transaction: so little was known or ascertainable about Sales Consulting in terms of its financial information and trading history that it could not be said that there was a sufficient basis for a conclusion that the debt was collectible and IAS 18.14(d) was not satisfied.

1217. The immateriality of the transaction in accounting and financial terms, whether looked at singly or in aggregate with other "Collectability VARs" (as confirmed by Deloitte), means, to my mind, that any significance to be attributed to it depends upon whether the circumstances I have described support the Claimants' case that the Collectability VARs, in common with all the impugned VAR transactions, were in effect contrived simply to recognise revenue regardless of their true viability and substance, and improperly.

1218. The principal question in that regard, in my view, is whether either of the Defendants were aware, at the time of revenue recognition in respect of VT9, that Sales Consulting was not creditworthy.

1219. It seems clear from the email exchanges between Mr Chamberlain and Mr Broli that (a) Mr Chamberlain was concerned to obtain proper details (as was Mr Hussain) but (b) nothing useful was received from Mr Broli (who seems to have been unable or unwilling to understand what was required, but whenever prompted painted a picture of a company quickly expanding in terms of revenue and gave repeatedly unfulfilled assurances of the provision of imminent further financial information) leaving Mr Chamberlain (and Mr Hussain) very disappointed and having (c) to hold on to the fact that Sales Consulting was a subsidiary of BNP Paribas.

1220. The Claimants submitted that in such circumstances there was no basis on which Mr Hussain could genuinely have been satisfied, as at the date of publication of the Q4 2009 results (2 February 2010) or the 2009 Annual Report (22 February 2010), that Sales Consulting was more likely than not to pay the amount specified in the purchase order, which was the effect of the condition stipulated by IAS 18.14(d).

1221. I have concluded as follows:

(1) In light of the expert evidence and the clear view of Deloitte, it was wrong to recognise revenue in respect of VT9, as later events confirmed.

(2) The likelihood is that Mr Hussain's criticism of Mr Broli that he so seldom brought forward any realistic prospective transactions caused Mr Broli to resort to a quick VAR deal and to overlook, and then prevaricate and in effect cover up, the VAR's inadequacies.

(3) The broken promises of financial information, and the frailties revealed by the little information that was provided, must have increasingly concerned Mr Chamberlain and Mr Hussain (who, the evidence would suggest, were not gullible by nature). But the VAR deal having been done, and the revenue recognised, they were plainly averse to any write-off until the apparent became the blindingly obvious; and when added to a corporate or institutional mind-set of maximising the amount of recognised revenue this caused them to subordinate their real concerns, and place erroneous reliance on Sales Consulting's apparent financial umbrella (BNP Paribas).

(4) That was wrong; the question then is whether it was dishonest. It is important to bear in mind the time line. Deloitte's Final Report on the 2009 Audit, in which they proposed an adjustment of $2.2 million since they had *"not seen persuasive evidence that this amount is recoverable"* but noted that *"Management are comfortable that the customer has a sound financial position based on its knowledge of the customer's reputation and position in the industry"*, was dated 1 February 2010. By that stage, Mr Chamberlain plainly had real concern and was voicing it to Mr Broli (and sharing it with Mr Hussain); and such concern was exacerbated after there was no satisfactory response to his email to Mr Broli of 21 January 2010 (copied to Mr Hussain) asking him to get hold of evidence of sell through arrangements that the one-off reseller agreement stated had to be provided. Although even in April, the expression on the part of Mr Hussain that no debtor's confirmation or up-to-date financials had been provided was one of disappointment (see paragraph 1205 above). But by then it seems to me plain that neither Mr Chamberlain nor Mr Hussain would have been able to say that they had confidence in Sales Consulting's ability to pay. They were, at the least, reckless.

(5) In short, I accept the Claimants' case that as at 1 February 2010 (when Deloitte recorded the difference in view between it and Autonomy's management) and/or as at 22 February 2010 (the date of the 2009 Annual Report) Mr Chamberlain and Mr Hussain had no honest belief that Sales Consulting would be able to pay.

Defendants' knowledge of wrongful revenue recognition in respect of VT9

1222. Mr Hussain was directly and personally involved. He knew the salient facts. In my judgment, he must have known it was wrong to press for revenue recognition. This conclusion is reinforced by his failure (which the Claimants said was otherwise inexplicable) to ensure that news of Sales Consulting's insolvency was promptly relayed to Deloitte. He had "guilty knowledge".

1223. As so often, the case against Dr Lynch was less clear. The Claimants accepted that there is no documentary evidence of Dr Lynch's direct personal involvement in relation to this transaction. However, they submitted that it is not credible to suggest that Mr Hussain, Mr Chamberlain and Mr Kanter participated in this transaction, without Dr Lynch's authorisation. As stated above, they urged the court to infer that Dr Lynch authorised them to recognise revenue on non-creditworthy VARs, as and when required.

1224. I do not accept that the evidence supports that inference in that form. I do accept, however, that the general policy condoned by Dr Lynch was that, if necessary to meet

forecast for revenue, VARs should be used as placeholders without proper regard for their ability to pay out of their own resources and in the knowledge that they would not receive anything from resale.

1225. Further, I think it more likely than not that Mr Hussain would have kept him regularly informed; and I think it likely that Mr Hussain would have warned Dr Lynch of Deloitte's conclusions, and of the proof that they were justified when Sales Consulting's bankruptcy became known to him.

1226. In my judgment, the likelihood is that Dr Lynch was told of the serious doubts and was prepared to turn a blind eye. In any event, he had condoned the policy: that amounts to recklessness as to whether or not the accounting might be untrue and misleading; and that is sufficient for FSMA purposes.

VT17: Comercializadora/TV Azteca Q3 2010

1227. In September 2010, Autonomy was hoping to conclude a sale to TV Azteca, a Mexican multimedia conglomerate. However, on 30 September 2010, at the end of Q3 2010, Mr Hussain sent Dr Lynch an email stating that the deal was in trouble. Almost immediately thereafter, Mr Neil Goldfarb, an Autonomy representative for Latin America Sales, sent an email marked urgent to Mr Crumbacher stating that he needed a *"one-off reseller agreement for my TV Azteca order"* and asking whether it would be possible to get this *"in template form"* for him simply *"to fill in the contact and address etc."*

1228. Email exchanges show that such an agreement was completed within the day with an entity named as Comercializadora Cobal SA de CV ("Comercializadora"). Thus, on 30 September 2010, Autonomy entered into a VAR agreement with Comercializadora for a licence fee of $1,500,000 plus $150,000 support and maintenance on the terms of a letter agreement containing the usual provisions previously noted. Payment was due on 29 December 2010.

1229. Comercializadora never paid. In Q2 2011, a bad debt provision of $549,945 was made; and in Q3 2011 Autonomy wrote off the entire debt.

1230. The Claimants' case is that at least by the time of publishing Autonomy's 2010 Annual Report, Autonomy had such doubts as to the substance of Comercializadora that provision should have been made against the debts; that Autonomy did not inform Deloitte about such doubts; and that VT17 (like VT22, another VAR deal with Comercializadora which I deal with below) is a further demonstration of serious impropriety of which the Defendants were well aware.

1231. It is not apparent who selected Comercializadora to be a VAR: Autonomy had not engaged with it previously. Deloitte (which initially pronounced the recognition of revenue in respect of VT17 to be satisfactory) noted the following about Comercializadora in its working papers:

> *"Comercializadora Cobal's is a new customer and therefore there is no payment history available. Financial statements as at 31 Dec. 2009 shows that it has cash of $5.3m in hand and its net assets amount to around $16m. Total sales of 2009 is around $24m and net profit around $8.2m…"*

1232. However, the Claimants contended that by the time of the 2010 Annual Report, evidence had come to light which cast considerable doubt on the financial substance (and even existence) of Comercializadora and on the collectability of the debt, but which (according to Mr Welham, who was not cross-examined on the point, avowedly because the point was not pleaded) was not shared with Deloitte. In particular, on 5 November 2010, Mr Richard Eads (Global Procurement officer and Director of Credit and Collections) of Autonomy notified Mr Chamberlain of "*some issues*" with the Comercializadora account:

> *"We may have some issues with this account as follows:*
>
> *1) the phone number provided on the order is no longer working.*
>
> *2) the email address provided on the order is no longer working.*
>
> *3) the domain name www.cobalsco.com.mx is not active.*
>
> *4) the email at the bottom of this thread was send from a hotmail account.*
>
> *5) we have reason to believe that Gilberto Alvarez used to work for Itegrar.*
>
> *Would you like us to continue researching here in Dallas? Or should we bring legal into the mix?"*

1233. That was a formidable list. On 10 November 2010, Mr Chamberlain wrote to Ivan Rothman, Autonomy's Senior Corporate Counsel, noting that there were "*early indicators that the reseller did not exist or has gone underground*".

1234. On 19 January 2011, Mr Gilberto Alvarez (signing as Comercializadora's Legal representative) sent an email to Mr Goldfarb attaching Accounts for 2010 which showed Comercializadora as having $4.2 million in cash, but (except for the email referred to in paragraph 1249 below) any attempts to contact Mr Alvarez and Comercializadora further were unsuccessful, and in an email to (amongst others) Mr Eads, Mr Rothman and Mr Goldfarb dated 20 January 2011, Mr Stephan wrote:

> *"Neil – I don't understand. They can't pay us even half the cash from their Q3 deal without raising bank financing yet they have $4.2m in cash? Excuse my cynicism but either these financial statements have been falsified or they should be paying us the full balance from Q3 immediately. What's the true story here?"*

1235. The evidence is at best patchy as to how the issue of revenue recognition and any appropriate provision was thereafter dealt with, except that Deloitte's Report to the Audit Committee for the year ended 31 December 2010 (dated 26 January 2011) proposed a judgmental adjustment (and bad debt provision accordingly) of $2.7 million to cover both VT17 and VT22 *"given the long overdue nature of the balance and lack of recent correspondence".* The same report noted additionally, however, that this was not material in the context of the financial statements as a whole.

1236. Although Mr Welham was not cross-examined on the point (on the apparently erroneous basis that it was not pleaded) it was suggested in Mr Hussain's closing submissions that it was untrue that Autonomy had kept Deloitte in the dark about the difficulties it was having in contacting Comercializadora, as Mr Welham appeared to suggest, since

Deloitte's 2010 year-end Report to the Audit Committee (see paragraph 1235 above) commented on management having to chase overdue balances and the *"lack of recent correspondence"*.

1237. Further, and as was pointed out in the written closing submissions on behalf of Mr Hussain, Deloitte's *"Evaluation of Misstatements"* document records a discussion with Mr Chamberlain, Mr Hussain and the Audit Committee on 26 January 2011 about Deloitte's proposed judgmental misstatements and the reasons for them (including, I think I should assume, the doubts that Mr Eads had expressed to Mr Chamberlain in his email of 5 November 2010).

1238. Nevertheless, the depth of the difficulties and Autonomy's concerns were still not shared with Deloitte, and were entirely inconsistent with any attempt to contradict Deloitte's own doubts.

1239. To complete the picture, no sale to TV Azteca was achieved: the evidence was sparse in this regard but there was little or nothing to suggest that it was ever likely. The result of the recourse to the VAR was thus not to accelerate but to fabricate revenue which was never in fact received from any source.

1240. In my judgment, VT17 was another illustration of what by the end of 2010 had become a propensity on the part of Autonomy to resort to a VAR as a means of booking revenue with very little analysis on its part either of the VAR's ability to pay or the prospect of the direct sale by Autonomy to an end-user from which alone there was any prospect of actual revenue receipt.

1241. It is also an illustration of the mismatch between Autonomy's speed to recognise revenue and its reluctance to (in effect) reverse any part of it even in the face of widespread doubt as to collectability.

1242. The truth is that in these cases, revenue was recognised when in reality the expectation of any receipt was uncertain (and in the event, none eventuated). In my judgment, the recognition of revenue was unjustified and indeed reckless.

Defendants' knowledge of improper revenue recognition in respect of VT17

1243. Mr Chamberlain plainly knew the relevant details. The Claimants' case that Mr Hussain knew the relevant facts is based on the proposition that *"Given his* [Mr Chamberlain's] *close working relationship with Mr Hussain, it is likely that he kept Mr Hussain informed of them."* The Claimants also relied on the fact that neither Mr Chamberlain nor Mr Hussain had attended trial to offer evidence to the contrary. I accept this: it is unlikely that Mr Chamberlain proceeded without keeping Mr Hussain informed.

1244. Dr Lynch was not cross-examined on the transaction, and no transaction-specific evidence of his involvement was provided. The only basis on which Dr Lynch was said to be implicated was that he had (it was alleged) given general authorisation for transactions with non-creditworthy VARs. As in the context of VT9, I do not think he knew of the particular transaction; but he condoned the policy.

1245. In my judgment, as I have held to be likely, Mr Hussain would have kept Dr Lynch informed. But even if that were not so, Dr Lynch had condoned the policy: that amounts

to recklessness as to whether or not the accounting might be untrue and misleading; and that is sufficient for FSMA purposes.

VT22: Comercializadora/CISEN Q4 2010

1246. Although slightly out of chronological sequence (since another Collectability VAR, VT19, preceded it) I next discuss the second transaction with Comercializadora, which was entered into in Q4 2010. The transaction comprised a VAR sale in the sum of $1,000,000 (plus $100,000 support and maintenance) for end-user Centro de Investigacion y Seguridad Nacional ("CISEN", the Mexican intelligence agency).

1247. This second Comercializadora deal revealed the same pattern and traits as the first (including the very late introduction of the VAR right at the end of the relevant quarter, and the complete failure to pay followed by a $366,630 bad debt provision in Q2 2011, followed by a 100% write-off in Q3 2011). Its principal interest is in the fact that by the time that it was made Autonomy was well aware of serious doubts about Comercializadora's financial position (and even, existence), and, although Deloitte declined to approve revenue recognition, Autonomy recognised the revenue regardless.

1248. Again, the difficulty in this transaction is the sparseness of the evidence: indeed, the evidential position is materially less clear than in the case of VT17. The Claimants relied on the experts: but the experts relied on assumptions as to the facts and do not assist in assessing how it was that Autonomy came to resort to this doubtful VAR and persuade itself that revenue could properly be recognised.

1249. In my judgment, what emerges from the very limited documentary evidence, and especially an email from Mr Gilberto Alvarez (breaking his previous silence) to Mr Ray Corado (an Autonomy Financial Analyst) and Mr Goldfarb, dated 26 January 2011, is that Comercializadora was not in a position or intending to pay unless and until its end-user paid. The Claimants never suggested any side agreement to that effect: it was simply the position Comercializadora (or, if it was not an existent entity, those speaking for it) took. Thus, when the Mexican Treasury suspended resourcing of open projects, Mr Alvarez appears to have taken it as read that Comercializadora would not pay Autonomy notwithstanding the terms of the VAR Agreement (again in a letter with the usual terms).

1250. Deloitte's working papers record satisfaction that the requirements of IAS 18.14 as to the transfer of risk and reward, managerial control and economic benefits had been satisfied, except that they proposed that an adjustment be made to defer revenue recognition, stating as follows under the heading "Collectability":

> *"Based on Comercializadora's historic dealings with Autonomy and the fact that the most recent available financial information (as at 31 December 2009) on Comercializadora shows that it has insufficient means by which to pay this current deal and the Q3 2010 deal of $1.65m. As such, we conclude that there is sufficient doubt over the recoverability of this deal such that revenue should be deferred."*

1251. The Claimants alleged further that *"Autonomy recognised the revenue regardless"*. Although Deloitte advised an adjustment to defer recognition of revenue, Autonomy stuck to its view. Deloitte were less than robust despite the obvious red flags, and

ultimately the resolution appears to have been that the effect of the difference in view was immaterial to the accounts. However, for present purposes what is important is that once again recourse had been made to a VAR, and the 'sale' proceeds booked in full as recognised revenue, without any sufficient prospect of revenue ever being received.

1252. As it was, Comercializadora never did make any payment to Autonomy on this transaction. By Q2 2011, a bad debt provision of $366,630 had been recorded. In Q3 2011, the invoice was written off in full. No sale to CISEN ever eventuated.

Defendants' knowledge of improper revenue recognition in respect of VT22

1253. Again, the Claimants' case is that Mr Chamberlain knew all the facts. He was expressly warned by Mr Eads that the deal was *"complete nonsense…We have no reason to believe that this [is] a good order…"* I think it more likely than not he would not have withheld any of this from Mr Hussain. He did not, of course give any evidence to gainsay that. Mr Hussain himself knew about the contemplated transaction with CISEN: it is documented that he pressed for updates on its progress, and that he also knew that it had proved, before year-end *"a heroic failure"* and that a VAR was to be involved to book revenue, the transaction being (as described by Mr Scott *"a big one that we are counting on"*). In my judgment, Mr Hussain had "guilty knowledge".

1254. Dr Lynch maintained that he was not involved[97] and that the revenue recognition decisions were made by Autonomy's finance department. He was not cross-examined at all on either VT17 or VT22; but since his position was that he could give no evidence that is more understandable.

1255. As in the case of the other impugned Collectability VAR transactions, I accept that there is no transaction-specific evidence of Dr Lynch's personal involvement. I doubt he knew the details: but he had condoned the policy, even in its extreme form where revenue was booked without any real prospect of receipt. That was not honest. Again, the question is whether Mr Hussain would inevitably have informed him, despite the relatively immaterial amount involved, or whether if not it suffices that Dr Lynch had condoned this sort of transaction.

1256. In my judgment, Mr Hussain would have kept Dr Lynch informed. But even if that were not so, he had condoned the policy: it amounts to recklessness as to whether or not the accounting might be untrue and misleading; and that is sufficient for FSMA purposes.

VT19: Red Ventures/Poste Italiane Q3 2010

1257. On 30 September 2010, Mr Kanter, on behalf of ASL, signed a VAR agreement with Red Ventures srl ("Red Ventures"). The agreement appointed Red Ventures to act as a VAR on behalf of four end-users in Italy, namely Poste Italiane, the Italian Ministry of Justice, the Italian Ministry of Health and Terna (the operator of the Italian transmission grid).

1258. The agreement provided, by clause 2, for a sale of software licences, with licence fees of €2 million and one year's support fees of €100,000. The payment terms were 90 days from invoice.

[97] In closing submissions it was submitted Dr Lynch was not involved in the collectability judgments being made by the finance department and Deloitte. Dr Lynch said he had no role in the post-quarter collectability judgments that were made.

1259. Autonomy recognised the licence fee revenue at the time of the VAR Agreement. The Claimants contended that it was clear even at that time that Red Ventures was not good for the money and that *"the recovery of this licence fee was never probable"*.

1260. It appears from email exchanges that Autonomy had some difficulty in obtaining any financial statements from Red Ventures, despite repeated efforts by Mr Hussain and Mr Chamberlain to obtain them. There is no indication that adequate financial statements were ever produced.

1261. Deloitte's working paper said it had "*not seen any persuasive evidence that this deal is recoverable*", with the consequence that it had been recorded as a "*likely misstatement*". Similarly, Deloitte's Q3 2010 report to the Audit Committee stated Deloitte's belief:

> "*that there is currently insufficient evidence of recoverability and therefore that it is not appropriate to recognise revenue at this stage*".

1262. In the event, Red Ventures never did make any payment to Autonomy on this transaction. On 13 April 2011, Mr Kanter was sent an update on non-payment, which noted that, "*There is a telephone number [i.e. for Red Ventures], but it doesn't answer*". By Q2 2011, a bad debt provision of $965,213 had been recorded and, on 30 September 2011, the total invoice was classified as a bad debt and written off.

1263. The Claimants submitted that the court should accept Mr Holgate's evidence that, on the facts assumed by him, this transaction did not satisfy the requirements of IAS 18.14(d). Mr MacGregor did not agree. He concluded that he did "*not have enough information to conclude whether IAS 18.14(d) was met*" and that on that basis, there was "*insufficient information to reach the conclusion that Autonomy's accounting treatment in respect of the licences was inappropriate*". However, the Claimants submitted that on that basis he should have reached the opposite conclusion that the absence of sufficient information to satisfy IAS 18.14(d) should prevent a finding that Red Ventures was more likely than not to pay Autonomy. The Claimants contended that this was therefore *"another transaction where Deloitte never approved the recognition of revenue, despite which Autonomy nonetheless went ahead and recognised it anyway"*.

1264. This latter contention is not quite accurate. It conflates three separate accounting events: (a) the recognition of revenue at the time of the VAR sale in September 2010; (b) the subsequent Q3 2010 review of and Audit Committee report on that decision by Deloitte proposing reversal of revenue as a "judgemental adjustment"[98]; (c) the determination of materiality and whether and how to reflect the results of the review in the Q3 2010 reported results.

1265. As to (a) in the preceding paragraph 1264 above, there appears to have been little or no evidence available to Autonomy as to the standing and financial position of Red Ventures. It remains unclear why Red Ventures' was chosen as a VAR. Insofar as Red Venture's ability to pay depended on a successful re-sale to end-users, it appears that the contracting party was proposed to be Poste Italiane, although other Italian governmental or quasi-governmental departments or entities were intended users. As in previous contexts, the one-off VAR agreement (dated 30 September 2010) expressly provided

[98] Which Mr MacGregor explained as being *"the difference in judgment between Deloitte and Autonomy's management at the time"*.

that *"VAR should only place an order with Autonomy when VAR has received an order from End-User or its authorized agent."* No such order from End-User was received at the time or thereafter. The evidence was sparse: there was none that an end-user deal was a probability, or even on the cards; and Poste Italiane had proved unreliable in the past.

1266. As to (b) in paragraph 1264 above, the Defendants stressed that Deloitte's proposal subsequently that an accounting adjustment should be made to reverse the value of Autonomy's sale to Red Ventures (and the corresponding debtor balance) does not of itself impact on the original decision to recognise revenue: it reflects the different view they took, presumably once the difficulty in obtaining information emerged and also (it would appear) in light of some specific (but unexplained) concern about one of the end-user's (Poste Italiane's) ability to pay.

1267. As to (c) in paragraph 1264 above, it appears that the decision not to include the adjustment in the Q3 2010 reported results was because (a) Autonomy's management still hoped that payment could be made and (b) Autonomy's management considered, and Deloitte concurred, that the adjustment would not have had any material effect on the financial statements taken as a whole.

1268. In my judgment, VT19 is another example of Autonomy tending to take advantage of any leeway available and to stick by its judgement to recognise revenue unless and until unequivocally required to reverse it. Autonomy was prepared to take a clear risk of never receiving revenue for the immediate advantage of booking revenue to meet target. That was not honest. The transaction was flawed and no revenue should have been recognised from it.

Defendants' knowledge of improper revenue recognition in respect of VT19

1269. The Red Ventures VAR deal was signed by Mr Kanter. Although there is no evidence of his involvement before then, it was Mr Hussain who pursued (entirely unsuccessfully) financial information about Red Ventures after the event. It is more likely than not that he knew (from Mr Kanter) about the deal and its frailty. He was responsible for its revenue recognition and the lack of any substantial basis for it. I consider that this amounted to "guilty knowledge".

1270. The Claimants did not put any transaction-specific evidence nor indeed any case of specific dishonest knowledge to Dr Lynch in relation to this transaction. Again, however, it is more likely than not that Mr Hussain kept him abreast; and in any event, even if he did not know the details, he had condoned the policy, even in its extreme form where revenue was booked without any real prospect of receipt.

1271. In my judgment that amounts to recklessness as to whether or not the accounting might be untrue and misleading; and that is sufficient for FSMA purposes.

VT29: Computer Trading/Poste Italiane Q1 2011

1272. The last, and in value terms least, of the Collectability VAR transactions was a purchase order from an Auxilium group company called Computer Trading dated 10 February 2011 for support and maintenance services and support on IDOL products for a period of 15 months (1 January 2010 to 31 March 2011) for end-user Poste Italiane. The price

was €340,000. There would probably have been a governing agreement, but it was not shown to me and I note that Mr MacGregor had not seen a copy either.

1273. A notable feature of VT29 for present purposes is that Autonomy recognised the sum of €340,000 as licence revenue in its income statement on 31 March 2011, despite this transaction relating to the sale of maintenance and support services. It appears from ledger extracts referred to in Mr MacGregor's Supplemental Report that Autonomy originally recorded the transaction in full as support revenue, but that this was reversed the same day and transferred to licence revenue in the income statement: but the reason for this was not explained. Mr MacGregor postulated that perhaps the reason was that the services were to be and perhaps had in fact been provided over the prescribed period, and on that basis he considered that:

> *"…it is reasonable that the revenue was recognised in full by that date, although ordinarily I would expect for this revenue to have been spread over the period in which services were provided…"*.

1274. It appears from Mr Broli's email to Mr Hussain dated 10 February 2011 that Computer Trading (Auxilium) had been required and had promised to pay €340,000 upon receipt of Autonomy's invoice. Mr Hussain had insisted they pay *"since they already owe us for BAV we can only recognise on cash received."* In the event, Computer Trading paid nothing until it paid the lesser sum of €70,000 on 19 October 2011. No further payments were received and the remaining balance was written off in September 2012. The Claimants focused on the alleged lack of financial evidence of Computer Trading's ability to pay as the basis for impugning VT29.

1275. The Claimants alleged, supported by the evidence of Mr Holgate, that the recognition of revenue in respect of VT29 was not compliant with IAS 18.20(b), which applies to the supply of services. IAS 18.20(b) requires that *"it is probable that the economic benefits associated with the transaction will flow to the entity"* in order that revenue shall be recognised. Mr MacGregor did not accept this because he was *"not able to reach a conclusion as to the appropriateness (or otherwise) of Autonomy's accounting treatment for this transaction"*.

1276. As in the case of VT19 (Red Ventures), the Claimants submitted that "*the absence of evidence means that the requirement of a 51% likelihood of payment was not satisfied."* In my judgment, the question is broader than that: it is whether at the time when the decision to recognise revenue was made there was a sufficient basis in the contemporaneous information available to Autonomy for concluding reasonably, even if ultimately wrongly, that the VAR would pay within a reasonable time.

1277. As Mr MacGregor noted, there is no witness statement evidence, nor any Deloitte working papers, specific to this transaction. The transaction was not mentioned in Deloitte's Report to the Audit Committee for Q1 2011, presumably because it was immaterial. The sparseness of the evidence available in this context makes an assessment now of the judgment then very difficult.

1278. The Defendants' position was that as the Claimants bear the burden of proof in the proceedings, the lack of evidence is fatal to their claims. I do not agree. In my judgment, having regard to all the circumstances including the demonstrated unreliability of Poste Italiane and the 'pattern' evident of recourse to a VAR without prospect of payment, the

lack of evidence of a likelihood of payment suggests that IAS 18.14(d) was not fulfilled. Further, and more specifically, the VAR deal itself required payment immediately upon receipt of Autonomy's invoice; and none was made. In such circumstances, in my judgment, the evidence that revenue should not have been recognised is clear.

1279. I would regard this transaction as being all of a piece with the other Collectability VARs: there was no evidence of any proper basis for recognising revenue from it.

Defendants' knowledge of improper revenue recognition in respect of VT29

1280. Although it was a relatively small transaction, Mr Broli kept Mr Hussain updated about it. Mr Hussain had stipulated payment against invoice; and it must be likely that he knew this had not been fulfilled. He had "guilty knowledge" accordingly.

1281. I accept that there is no transaction-specific evidence of Dr Lynch's personal involvement. Again, the question is whether Mr Hussain would inevitably have informed him, despite the relatively immaterial amount involved, or whether if not it suffices that Dr Lynch had condoned this sort of transaction.

1282. In my judgment it does: it amounts to recklessness as to whether or not the accounting might be untrue and misleading; and that is sufficient for FSMA purposes.

Overall conclusions as to the Collectability VAR claims

1283. In summary, in my judgment, the Collectability VARs demonstrate a pattern of knowing improper recognition of revenue simply to book revenue to meet targets without any sufficient regard to whether any revenues would in due course be received.

1284. Both Defendants were implicated and had "guilty knowledge" of the wrongful accounting and consequent false depiction in Autonomy's published information.